

**DUE DATE SLIP**

**GOVT. COLLEGE, LIBRARY**

KOTA (Raj.)

Students can retain library books only for two weeks at the most.



# THE CHILDREN'S DICTIONARY

*Edited by*  
HAROLD WHEELER

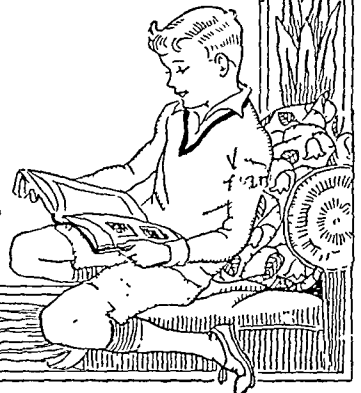
*Associate Editors :*

R. WOOD SMITH  
ERNEST G. OGAN  
A. BOLLAERT ATKINS  
A. B. GOUGH

VOLUME ONE  
A — CARNELIAN

INDIA & BURMA :

The Standard Literature Co., Ltd.,  
Calcutta and Rangoon.





**T**O THOSE who would acquire an armoury of words adequate to the battle of life, and who would possess knowledge sufficient to enable them to appreciate all that our great authors, and poets, and historians have felt, and believed and spoken, all that they tell us of the past, record of the present, and read into the future, to these severally and collectively is this, the first children's dictionary, dedicated.

# THE DICTIONARY HABIT

WISE people who have a genuine desire to increase their knowledge, cultivate what may be called the dictionary habit—that is to say, they refer at every possible opportunity to one of those storehouses of words bearing the prosaic but significant title “Dictionary.”

It is amazing how one's fund of knowledge will gradually but unfailingly be enriched in this way, and it is no less amazing how frequently one is called upon to refer to such a work, even if only a working knowledge of a language is desired.

In the course of our every-day conversation we make use of words that are, naturally, familiar to us; but in the course of our daily reading, how often do we meet with words that are unfamiliar? It may be that some of these words, as words, are known to us, yet we do not fully appreciate their meaning, or their different meanings—for many words possess a number of meanings—nor would we know exactly how, where, or when to use these words if we wished to include them in our conversation or our writings.

Pronunciation, too, we may find another barrier difficult to overcome, and this may well be so, considering that in very many instances there is a difference of opinion even among authorities on the English language as to the way in which certain words should be pronounced.

No matter how much we may read, or how often we may listen to the speech of others, it is not possible for us to become acquainted with the proper use of words and their correct pronunciation without the aid of a dictionary. Nor will an ordinary dictionary meet all our requirements, for ordinary dictionaries often fail just where we most need help.

What is really wanted is a dictionary that explains the meaning and gives the pronunciation of every word that we are ever likely to look up, and, in addition to this, shows us, by means of stories and other explanations, how the words are used. To take an example. All dictionaries will tell us what the word *bucolic* means, and also how it is pronounced; but we may search in dictionary after dictionary and never find—as we shall in THE CHILDREN'S DICTIONARY—exactly how to pronounce the adverb *bucolically*, and how it is used.

The pictures, too, will be found an invaluable help. While their artistic standard is very high, their main purpose is to explain. Photographs have been used when the camera has been able to meet this end, but in explaining technical words pen, pencil, and brush have in many instances been found to bring out the meaning more clearly. Which of us can fail to realise what *abrupt* means when looking at the sheer and giddy drop of the cliff illustrating this word?—which of us will not know a good deal about the *barbette* of a battleship after studying the drawing on page 336?

These are but two examples of the many thousands of pictures contained in THE CHILDREN'S DICTIONARY, pictures that indicate as surely as words the meanings of the subjects they illustrate. There is not a page without a picture, and often there are several pictures on one page. The crude wood engravings so often seen in the early dictionaries and, indeed, in some modern dictionaries, find no place here.

As stated above, the explanation of technical terms is sometimes helped out in an interestingly diagrammatic way, but for the most part the illustrations are made

direct from photographs of actual things, or people, or animals, or of people or animals performing the actions, or using the objects, or in other ways exemplifying the words that are being defined. Nor are common nouns—which we know are the names of living things or things without life—the only words illustrated. The meanings of abstract nouns, as well as of adjectives, verbs, and other parts of speech, are also brought out by means of pictures.

Most girls and boys—and most grown-ups, too—are interested in nature study, and this fact has been recognized in **THE CHILDREN'S DICTIONARY**. Apart from the actual articles on different animals and plants, written in far greater detail than is usual in dictionaries, there are pictures of very many of the species, as well as a large number of fascinating colour plates, such as that showing the various kinds of birds' beaks.

Throughout, what may be called the story interest has been kept in the forefront, for everybody likes a story. Sometimes the history of a word is full of interest, and then the story of the word is brought out clearly. Sometimes a word, perhaps not very interesting in itself, may be the parent of many other words, and when this is so, the meaning of the various words is often shown in the course of some story of days that have passed.

All the many traps that the English language sets for the unwary are pointed out in the places where they would naturally be looked for. Not everybody is always quite sure, for instance, whether to use *lain* or *laid*, or whether to say *different from* or *different to*, or *consist in* or *consist of*. Such difficulties as these are made clear.

Volume VIII of **THE CHILDREN'S DICTIONARY** contains many valuable features that have never before been included in a dictionary. Here we need only draw attention to two. One of them is the exceptionally instructive vocabulary builder, a feature unparalleled in the history of dictionary compilation. By following this specially devised system the merest tyro will be enabled to build up a highly serviceable vocabulary with the smallest expenditure of mental energy.

The other, entitled "Literature's Golden Story," is an outline of English literature from earliest times to the present day. This survey of the great English authors and their work is carried out in great detail, and will prove of inestimable value to every student of the English tongue.

In short, with **THE CHILDREN'S DICTIONARY** at our elbow, we are enabled not only to understand what has been written or spoken, but also to write and speak what can be understood.

# The Children's Dictionary

## "Who's Who"

### *Editor*

HAROLD WHEELER, F.R.Hist. S.,  
Member of the Oxford Historical Society.

Editor of "The Book of Knowledge," "The Romance of Famous Lives"; author of "Makers of the British Empire," "The Twentieth Century," "The Story of the British Navy," "The French Revolution from the Age of Louis XIV to the Coming of Napoleon," "The Story of Napoleon," "The Story of Nelson," "The Story of Roberts," "The Story of Kitchener," etc., etc.

### *Art Editor*

R. WOOD SMITH

Art Editor of "Compton's Pictured Encyclopedia," "The Book of Knowledge," "The Romance of Famous Lives," "The Outline of History," and other educational publications.

### *Associate Editors*

ERNEST G. OGAN

Editor of "The Harmsworth Universal Gazetteer Atlas of the World"; sectional editor of "Harmsworth's Universal Encyclopedia"; contributor to "The Encyclopædia Britannica" (tenth edition), etc.

A. BOLLAERT ATKINS

Member of the editorial staff and contributor to "The Encyclopædia Britannica" (eleventh edition), "Harmsworth's Universal Encyclopedia," "The Book of Knowledge," "The Romance of Famous Lives," etc.

ALFRED BRADLY GOUGH, M.A., Ph.D.

Sometime lecturer in English at the University of Kiel, Prussia; member of the editorial staffs of the "New English Dictionary (Oxford)," "The Encyclopædia Britannica" (eleventh edition), and "Harmsworth's Universal Encyclopedia"; editor of Spenser's "Faerie Queene" (Book V), Bacon's "New Atlantis," Cowley's "Essays and other Prose Works," Swift's "Gulliver's Travels," etc.

### *Special Literary Contributors*

DONALD ATTWATER

Editor of "Pax," the review of the Benedictine monks of Caldey, since 1922; contributor to Catholic and other publications in Great Britain, Ireland, and the United States of America.

J. S. BAINBRIDGE, B.Sc.

Engaged in research work in bacteriology and chemistry of food and fuel technology for many years; contributed extensively to the daily Press, "The Household Encyclopedia," "The Business Encyclopedia," etc.; author of "Diet for the Million," etc.

MARGARET CHIESLIE BEVINGTON, M.A.

Senior history mistress, Sheffield County Secondary School, 1916-17; intelligence officer, War Office (overseas), 1917-18; author of thesis, "The Separation of Powers in the Modern State"; contributor to "Pitman's Encyclopedia of Economics and Industrial Organization."

H. CHELLEW, M.A., D.Sc., Ph.D.

Formerly lecturer at London School of Economics; Political Science lecturer at London University, 1918-20; for several years adviser to the Federation of British Industries on industrial education, etc.; author of "Concentration and the Laws of Mental Efficiency," "The Philosophy of History," etc.

H. BROMLEY COLEMAN

Author of "The Shadow," "Vagabond Thoughts in Rhythm," etc.

J. W. COULTER

Tutor of English, mathematics, and drawing. Former resident master of Coleraine Academic Institution and Wesley College, Dublin, and lecturer at Larne Technical School; literary and dramatic critic to the English and Irish Press; late editor of "The Ulster Review."

L. H. DAWSON

Editor of "Sonnenschein's Best Books," 1907; for twelve years a member of the editorial staff of Messrs. Cassell & Co., Ltd.; formerly editor of "English," a magazine devoted to the study of the English language; author of "Historical Allusions," "Introductions to London," etc.

H. C. DENT, B.A.

Has held various scholastic appointments, including masterhips at Thetford Grammar School, Norfolk, and Brighton, Hove and Sussex Grammar School, Sussex; appointed headmaster of The Gateway School, Leicester, 1928.

J. H. FREESE, M.A.

Former Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge; member of the editorial staff of "The Encyclopædia Britannica" (eleventh edition) and "Harmsworth's Universal Encyclopedia"; contributor to the Loeb Classical Library; author, editor, and translator of numerous works.

*The Children's Dictionary "Who's Who"*  
(continued)

**Cecil Hann**

Formerly member of the editorial staff and musical critic of "The Spectator"; author of "Economics of the Hour," etc.

**G. F. Harnden**

Author of the "Mayfield Conversation Guides," "How to Read the Menu," "Ships of the British, French, Russian and German Navies," "Christmas Sayings," "Sweet Lavender," etc.

**Arthur William Holland**

Chief assistant editor of "Harmsworth's Universal Encyclopedia," etc.; managing editor of "The Encyclopædia Britannica" (thirteenth edition); author of "Germany to the Present Day," "Alsace-Lorraine," etc.

**E. R. Huson**

Contributor to "The Children's Newspaper," "The Book of Knowledge," "The Romance of Famous Lives," etc.; author of children's stories.

**A. Bain Irvine, F.S.A. Scot.**

Editor of "The Scots Year Book," contributor to "T. P.'s Weekly," etc.; author of "Robert Burns: Chapters of Self-revelation," "Minor Scottish Poets," etc.

**P. H. Johnson, B.A., B.Sc., L.C.P., F.R.G.S., F.Z.S.**

Assistant in zoology department at University College, London; general biologist on the S.Y. "St. George" in the scientific expedition to the South Seas, 1924-5; joint author of "New Outlook Geographies," "The South Seas of To-day."

**Eván Jones, B.A.**

Teacher of English at a technical college and an engineering training college, and London County Council evening class instructor in English and history.

**F. M. Kelly**

Contributor to "The Burlington Magazine," "The Connoisseur," "Apollo," "The Harmsworth Universal History"; author of "Historic Costume," "The Book of Gloves," etc.

**A. J. Liversedge, Assoc. M. Inst. C.E., F.R.S.A., etc.**

Edited "The Engineering Supplement of the 'Daily Mail' Overseas Edition"; contributor to "Harmsworth's Universal Encyclopedia," "Chambers's Encyclopædia," "The Times," "The International Journal of Commerce," "The Fortnightly Review," etc.

**J. S. Reed, F.R.G.S.**

Associated for many years as Corrector of the Press with medical and scientific publications; contributor to German technical periodicals; lecturer on nature study topics, including botany and entomology.

**Elizabeth Ryley**

Fully qualified teacher and specialist in English language; prolific writer of children's stories, and contributor to the leading London newspapers and periodicals; author of "The Soul of June Courtney," etc.

**F. H. Shoosmith, Ph.D., B.Sc.**

Formerly editor of "The Nature Lover" and "The Teachers' Times"; author of "Symbolism in Plant Life," "Short Studies in Nature and Folklore and Song," "The Stars in Nature and Mythology," "The Natural History of Some Garden Plants," "Flowers of the Prime," "Trips Abroad," "Genetic Geography," "Good Health," "This Body of Mine," "Observation Lessons in Animal Life," "Observation Lessons in Plant Life," etc.

**J. F. Stirling**

Managing editor of "An Outline of Christianity," editor of "The Study Bible"; author of "An Atlas of the Life of Christ," "The Holy City in Bible Times," etc.

**M. W. Thomas, B.A., Barrister-at-Law**

Senior history master and senior English master at Brigg Grammar School, 1922-26; lecturer to the Selborne Society, 1926; author of "Old Testament Drama," etc.

**E. Penberthy White**

Author of botanical articles, child life studies, and nature sketches.

**Archibald Williams, B.A.**

Editor of "Engineering Wonders of the World"; author of numerous popular technical books for young people, including "Victories of the Engineer," "Conquering the Air," "The Mechanics' Friend," "The Romance of Modern Invention," "The Romance of Exploration," etc.; contributor to "Harmsworth's Universal Encyclopedia," etc.

**F. T. C. Williams**

Song composer and contributor of poems, short stories, articles, etc., to various magazines and journals; writer of many lyrics set to music by Coleridge-Taylor and other prominent composers.

**A. Wood Smith**

Contributor to "The Book of Knowledge," "The Romance of Famous Lives," etc.

**Arnold Wright**

Formerly of the editorial staff of the "Times of India" and London editor of the "Yorkshire Post"; founder of the "London Argus"; author of numerous works dealing with political and social questions, including "Parliament Past and Present" (jointly), "Great Orations," "Early English Adventurers in the East," "The Romance of Colonisation," "Twentieth Century Impressions of Ceylon," etc.

**J. Peat Young**

An authority on Canadian life; author of "A Newcomer in Canada," etc.; contributor to "The Book of Knowledge," "The Romance of Famous Lives," and of nature articles to the London Press.

*Special Art Contributors*

ARTHUR H. BROWNE  
FRANK E. COLLINS

ESTELLE HARBORD  
ROBERT H. SMITH

# THE DIRECTING EDITORS

of the  
Children's  
Dictionary



R. Wood Smith



Ernest G. Ogan



Harold Wheeler  
F.R.Hist.S.

Editor of  
"The Book of Knowledge,"  
"The Romance of Famous  
Lives," etc., etc.

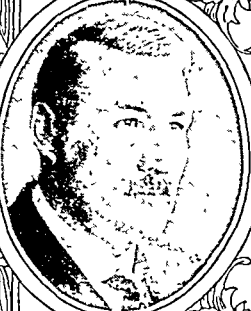


Alfred B. Gough  
M.A., Ph.D.



A. Bollaert Atkins

# SPECIAL CONTRIBUTORS



A. Bain Irvine  
J.P., F.S.A.Scot.



Cecil Hann



E. R. Huson



J. S. Reed  
F.R.G.S.



A. Williams  
B.A



A. Wood Smith



H. C. Dent  
B.A.

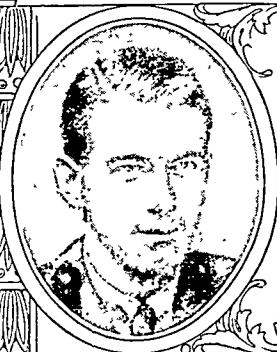


P. H. Johnson  
B.A., B.Sc.



J. H. Freese  
M.A.

# SPECIAL CONTRIBUTORS



J. F. Stirling



D. Attwater



M. W. Thomas  
B.A.



A. H. Browne



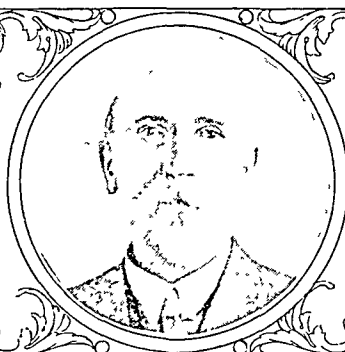
E. Penberthy White



Arnold Wright



F. E. Collins



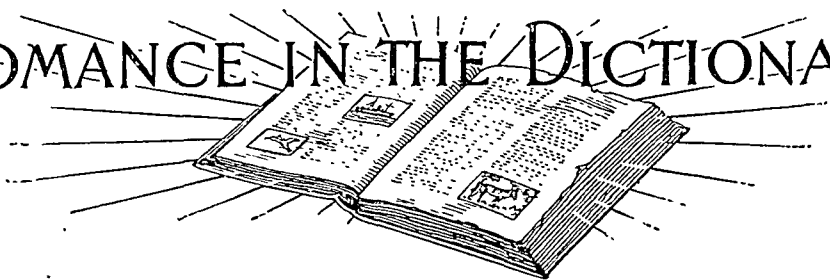
A. J. Liversedge  
A.M.I.C.E., F.R.S.A



R. H. Smith



# ROMANCE IN THE DICTIONARY



*The Wonder Book that Makes the Treasure Trove of English your Own.*

A LITTLE boy, propped up by pillows in the middle of a huge four-poster bed that looked like a room without walls, was turning over the pages of a book. He had taken it from a table close at hand, where it lay open during the day to enjoy the sunshine. To its owner the covers were eyelids, which were most faithfully closed by him at night so that the beloved volume might sleep like ordinary mortals.

The little boy only "read" the illustrations.

The words meant nothing at all to him. Indeed, they were rather a nuisance, because if they had not been put in there would have been more room for picture companions of a royal Bengal tiger, a Roman warrior, a ship in full sail, Saturn and its rings, and hundreds of other wonderful animals, people, and things.

The book was a dictionary, and the child was myself. The tattered volume is in front of me as I write, shabby and old, thumbed and broken at the corners. The illustrations are crude wood engravings, for pictures made direct from photographs, such as you have in the following pages, were unknown. Perhaps I should not have had quite so much respect for my literary treasure had I been able to read it. I think I should have formed the idea that words were dull, lifeless things, very useful, but exceedingly uninteresting. Their meanings were usually given in long and difficult phrases that would have required looking up in other books to understand. All works of a similar kind were modelled on the same pattern, like a row of houses. The editors seem to have indulged in a game of follow-my-leader.

Please do not imagine for one moment that I am blaming the men who toiled at an exceedingly difficult task and doubtless gave their best. That would be as foolish as to laugh at Columbus because he did not discover America by aeroplane. Education had not yet come out of its cave to bask in the light. Much has altered since then. We know more, and we see things differently. This is the day of wider knowledge, of ever increasing marvels that are not regarded as the special possessions of the few.



The little boy in the big bed could only "read" the illustrations in his book.

The little boy in the big bed lived in a world that knew nothing of wireless or of tube railways, battleships then used sails as well as steam, submarines were weapons of the future, horses had not given place to motor-cars, Edison was still experimenting with electric light, balloons were the only form of aircraft, the magic-lantern was the nearest approach to the kinematograph, and the daily picture newspaper was unborn.

Life moved more slowly then. It was thought that man had almost come to the end of his discoveries. The North and the South Poles were not yet found, but most people were quite content that the opposite ends of the earth should keep their icy secrets. The conquest of the air was regarded as the dream of madmen. To-day the word "impossible" is used with caution.

The way has thus been prepared for a work such as this. The old type of dictionary aimed at being nothing more than a reference book, for service when the spelling, pronunciation, or meaning of a word was in dispute. It was a kind of court of last resort, to be used only in cases of absolute necessity.

It only aimed at instructing, and no more attempted to entertain than did a ready reckoner. Just as boys and girls of a previous generation were expected to be "seen and not heard" at meals, so the dictionary was to be consulted but not read.

THE CHILDREN'S DICTIONARY has a wider horizon. It definitely seeks to interest by providing a wealth of delightful stories that will help you to appreciate to the full the rich treasure trove of the English language and to make it your own. To have included every word would have reduced the definitions or explanations to mere skeletons, but an attempt has been made to give all words that you are likely to want. Certain terms which are mainly of importance to specialists have been omitted.

To make reference easy some words are grouped together under a parent word. Thus, under "book" you will find quite a large family, including book-debt, book-marker, book-keeping, bookish, and so on. Therefore when you do not see a word in the large type that denotes a main entry look for it in the smaller type below.

Some readers seem to have difficulty in knowing where to look for words in a dictionary, but all you have to remember is that they follow each other as do the letters from A to Z. Thus under B, words beginning with baa are first, followed by those that start with bab, bac, and so on.

If, for example, you wished to find the word "print," you would turn first to the section of the dictionary containing words beginning with the letter P. Then you would glance quickly down the second letter of these words until you came to "r," then down the words beginning with "pr" until you came across those having "i" as the third letter. Continuing in this way, you would at last, but much more quickly than it takes to explain, come to the word you require. At the top of each page the first and last parent words appearing on that page are given in capitals as a further help.

After each word you will see its pronunciation and its definition, followed by the

word in modern French. Then comes a little story or something else interesting about the word and the way in which it is used. At the end its etymology or history is given, together with a list of synonyms—words with a similar meaning—and antonyms—words with an opposite meaning.

The following pages will make you familiar with many queer, quaint, and curious creations. Men and women of every clime, our friends and foes of the animal and vegetable kingdoms, the starry hosts of the night, the myriad marvels of land, sea, and air, the things that men have thought, and made, and done figure in them.

If my tattered little literary friend of yesterday could come to life it would make friends with its big successor and take a peep at a tiger as he really is, and not what an artist imagined him to be. The old dictionary would find not only a Roman soldier correctly pictured and ready to tramp to the four quarters of the known world, but gladiators and amphitheatres, and much else that helped to make "the glory that was Rome." As for ships, there is scarcely a type of vessel that is not shown, and Saturn and its rings are revealed as something more than a circle surrounded by ovals.

Yours is a richer heritage, made possible by the whole-hearted devotion of an army of men and women whose enthusiasm for truth changed the unknown into the familiar. Small wonder then that we sometimes refer to the magic of words. Without them

progress would cease. It is by words that the pioneers set down their knowledge, and by words that we reap what they sowed.

Instead of regarding a dictionary as a very dull book you will find it a cheerful companion that will help you not only to think, talk, and write correctly but to pass many pleasurable and profitable hours. According to the legend, Atlas supported the heavens on his shoulders and found it a tiring task. THE CHILDREN'S DICTIONARY enables you to hold the world in your hands and to enjoy its countless interests at your ease.

HAROLD WHEELER.



"The Children's Dictionary" enables you to hold the world in your hands.

# SOME FAMOUS BOOKS OF WORDS

*Early and Later Attempts to Record our Noble Language*

LESS than four centuries have passed since the first English dictionary was given to the world. There had been Latin-English dictionaries, but Richard Huloet was the pioneer writer to compile a book in which the meanings of English words were explained in the same language. The "Abecedarium," as he called it, saw the light in 1552, when Edward VI was king.

In 1623 Henry Cockeram issued in London an "English Dictionarie: or An Interpreter of Hard English Words." No subject was then studied with the painstaking care that is now given to every branch of learning. It is therefore not surprising that Cockeram's explanations sometimes erred, for his information was often based on no more exact evidence than "it is said."

## *Travellers' Fairy Tales*

Little was known about animals of other lands. There was neither a Zoo nor a Natural History Museum in the London of those days, and the so-called facts brought home by travellers were often as unreliable as fairy stories. The writer describes the lynx as "a spotted beast, much like a Wolfe, it hath a most perfect sight, in so much as it is said, that it can see thorow a wall." The hyena is "a subtill beast like a Wolfe, having a mane and haire on his body, counterfeiting the voyce of a man; in the

night it will call shepherds out of their houses, and kill them: hee is sometime male, and sometimes female." The dolphin is "the swiftest fish in the Sea, they are said to burie their dead in their sandie graves; it is likewise a friendly fish unto mankind." Arteries, according to Cockeram, are "hollow sinewes or veins, wherein the spirits of life do walke."

## *Another Quaint Definition*

An incubus is quaintly defined as "A divell, which some terme the nightmare, when one in his sleepe supposeth he hath a great weight lying on him, and feeleth himselfe almost strangled, in such sort, that he can not turne himselfe, nor sit up, or call for helpe, the commons doe think it to be a divell, but it is a naturall disease, caused by undigested humours in the stomacke, which fuming up into their braines, do there trouble the animal spirits; stopping the passage into the sinewes, so that the bodie can not move."

The work evidently met with success, for a second edition was printed in 1626, and was sold by Edmund Weaver "at his Shop at the great North dore of Paul's Church." This information is in itself a little footnote to history. It reminds us that before the destruction of old St. Paul's (1666) shops were built close to its walls.



The Sage of Fleet Street in his patron's ante-room. As patiently as possible Dr. Johnson awaits an interview with the proud Lord Chesterfield. On completing his Dictionary in 1755 Johnson reminded the Earl that seven years had passed "since I was repulsed from your door."

"Glossographia," by Thomas Blount, published in 1656, aimed at "interpreting all such hard words, whether Hebrew, Greek, Latin, Italian, Spanish, French, Teutonic, Belgick, British, or Saxon; as are now used in our refined English Tongue." The author tells us that he was led to write the book after he had "bestowed the waste



Noah Webster

hours of some years in reading our best English Histories and Authors" and been "often gravelled" by terms that he had no knowledge of or could only partly understand.

In the mouths of "Common people" in London, he adds, he heard such words as "piazza" and "balcone," and in the country "Hocktide" and "Quintins."

"Nay, to that pass we are now arrived," Blount goes on, "that in London many of the Tradesmen have new Dialects; the Cook asks you what dishes you will have in your Bill of Fare; whether Olla's, Bisques, Hachies, Omelets, Bouillon's. . . Others [will furnish you] with . . . Coffa, Chocolate, etc."

Blount's volume was followed in 1658 by "The New World of English Words: or, a General Dictionary," the work of Edward Phillips, Milton's nephew. The compiler's interest in the language had doubtless been aroused by the great poet, who had lived with his widowed sister for a time and taught her two sons.

#### *Description of a "Girle"*

The book seems to be a marked improvement on anything of a similar nature produced before. It is not, however, a general Dictionary of English, but chiefly of learned, technical, obsolete, and foreign words, together with proper names. For instance, there is no entry for "girl," but "Girle" is mentioned as "a term in Hunting, being a Roebuck of two years." The volume has a curious secondary title-page with portraits of English authors, views of Oxford and Cambridge, and a picture of a "Scholer" of each university.

"Glossographia Anglicana Nova: or a Dictionary, interpreting such Hard Words of whatever Language, as are at present used in the English Tongue, with their Etymologies, Definitions, etc.," was published

in 1707 by an author who preferred to remain unknown. On the title page it is described as "Very useful to all those that desire to understand what they read."

Those were the days when dictionary-makers fought wordy wars amongst themselves. An attack on Phillips, entitled "A World of Errors discovered in the New World of Words, or General English Dictionary," had already been published in 1673, and in the new book the same author was again trounced, together with Blount, who, we are told, "went a-simpling (gathering medical herbs) in a field twenty years, as himself confesses, without discovering many new plants; which had been pardonable in him, had he given us the true names, and not been mistaken in the description, virtues, and qualities of several of the old." As for poor Phillips, he "was no better qualified for paving the way to any one of the sciences, having neither skill, tools, nor materials."

#### *Wesley's Little Joke*

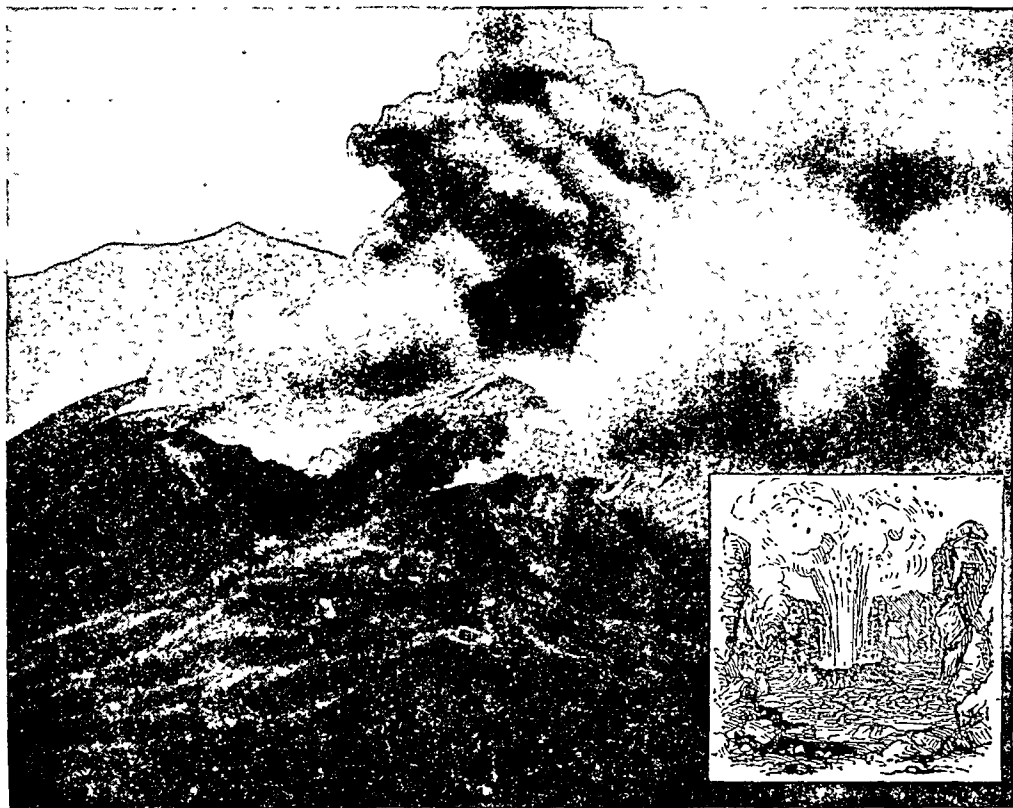
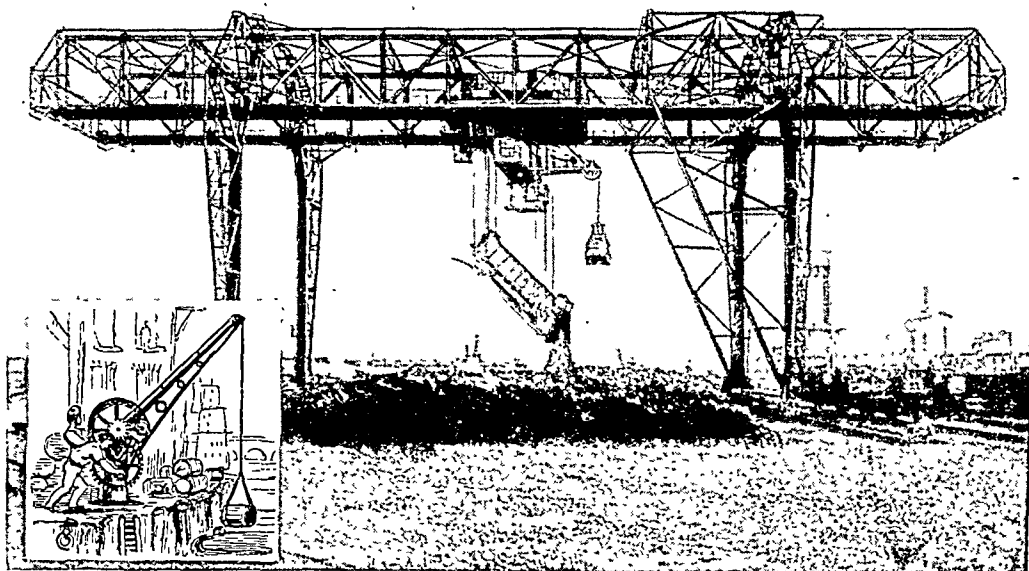
John Wesley, chiefly honoured as the founder of Methodism, must also be included in the army of compilers. He describes his efforts as "not only the shortest and the cheapest, but likewise, by many degrees, the most correct which is extant at this day." We must not take this too seriously. It was the great evangelist's quiet way of poking fun at those authors who larded their title-pages with fulsome flattery of themselves. Although called "The Complete English Dictionary," the words given number only about 5,000, and the definitions are extremely brief. It appeared anonymously in 1753, but was stated to be "By a Lover of Good English and Common Sense."

In 1747 Dr. Johnson dedicated the plan of his famous Dictionary to the fourth Earl of Chesterfield, then Secretary of State. The compiling of such a work, he admitted, "is generally considered as drudgery for the blind, as the proper toil of artless industry, a book that requires neither the light of learning nor the activity of genius, but may be successfully performed without any higher quality than that of bearing burdens with dull patience, and beating the track of the alphabet with sluggish resolution."



Archbishop Trench

# PICTURES FROM A DICTIONARY OF YESTERDAY AND OF TO-DAY



The dictionaries of yesterday, if illustrated at all, were adorned with a few outline drawings. Compared with the photographic illustrations like those found in this dictionary they appear almost crude. Here we show old and new illustrations of a crane and the crater of a volcano. The type of crane shown in the old woodcut is still used for lifting small articles, but the companion picture shows a travelling crane that lifts a large loaded railway wagon from a siding and dumps its contents where they are wanted. This powerful modern machine is capable of raising many tons at a time.

The long and tiresome task was not completed until 1755, whereupon Chesterfield, who had taken little or no notice of Johnson during the time of his struggles with the book, began to betray interest. This was not at all to the liking of the Sage of Fleet Street, who wrote a long letter to the Earl in which occurs a passage that suggested a famous picture of the incident :

"Seven years, my lord, have now passed, since I waited in your outward rooms and was repulsed from your door ; during which time I have been pushing on with my work through difficulties of which it is useless to complain, and have brought it at last to the verge of publication without one act of assistance, one word of encouragement, and one smile of favour. Such treatment I did not expect, for I never had a patron before."

Nearly 250 years separated the publication of Huloet's "Abecedarium" in 1552 from the first native-born American dictionary, which did not appear until 1798. The colonists had snapped the political links that bound them to their Motherland, but the language they spoke was a stronger and more elastic strand. Strangely enough the author of the work was a Samuel Johnson, whose more famous namesake had been laid to rest in Westminster Abbey in 1784. It is pleasing to know that although the American writer lived in Connecticut, the village bore the name of Guildford, the county town of Surrey. The book itself was published in New Haven.

A far more ambitious and worthy attempt was that of Noah Webster, already the author of a widely-used "Spelling Book." He spent over twenty years in compiling his "American Dictionary of the English Language." It included some 12,000 words and between 30,000 and 40,000 definitions

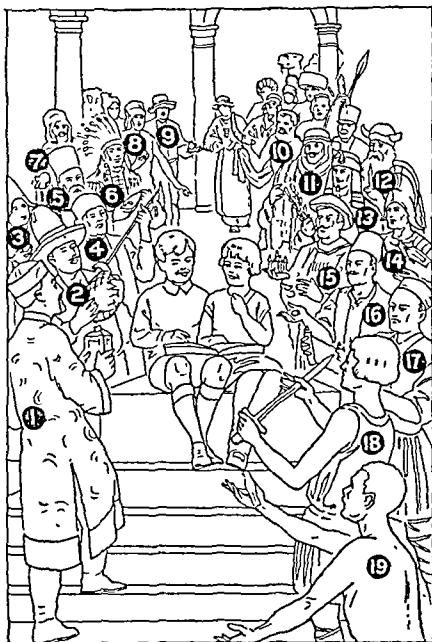
that had not appeared in any similar work. Some of his researches were carried out in Paris and Cambridge, and it was at the latter that he brought them to an end in 1825. "When I arrived at the last word," he wrote, "I was seized with a tremor that made it difficult to proceed. I, however, summoned up strength to finish the word, and then, walking about the room, I soon recovered."

Published in 1828, Webster's two volumes were followed in 1846 by Joseph Emerson Worcester's "Universal and Critical Dictionary of the English Language." Then, in 1857, Richard Chevenix Trench, author of "The Study of Words" and at the time

Dean of Westminster, conceived the idea of "A New English Dictionary on Historical Principles," the greatest project of the kind ever attempted.

In connexion with this invaluable undertaking, to which every present-day dictionary-maker is indebted, a tribute must be paid to the devoted labours of Sir James Murray and Dr. Walter William Skeat. As a youth the latter began to study the local differences in speech which we call dialect, collecting strange words with as much enthusiasm as his schoolfellows hunted butterflies and exchanged postage stamps. Afterwards he became a clergyman, but when he was twenty-eight years of age a serious illness laid him aside.

Defeated but not dejected, Skeat returned with good heart to his first love. His "Etymological Dictionary of the English Language" and his many other works prove the enthusiasm of the man who became Professor of Anglo-Saxon at Cambridge. Sir James Murray edited the "New English Dictionary" from 1879 until within a few days of his death in 1915. Its ten mighty volumes constitute a monument as enduring as imperishable bronze.



KEY TO THE FRONTISPIECE.

- (1) Chinese : tea. (2) Mexican : cocoa.  
(3) Dutch : toy. (4) Spanish : rapier. (5) Hebrew : jug. (6) North American Indian : moccasin. (7) Persian : orange. (8) Hindustani : bangle. (9) Portuguese : apricot.  
(10) Australian : boomerang. (11) Syrian : damask. (12) Norse : knife. (13) Egyptian : papyrus. (14) Latin : jovial (Jove). (15) French : castle. (16) Turkish : turquoise.  
(17) Greek : Bible. (18) Saxon : sword.  
(19) West African : canary.

## HOW WE GOT OUR ALPHABET



*Although Beasts and Birds have no written language they helped Man to make his first A B C and thus contributed to his Conquest of the World.*

**I**F you were asked the question, "What is the alphabet?" you would very likely answer, "The letters of the English language." In making that reply you would be partly right only. Actually the alphabet consists of the letters of any language—not English alone—which is built up in that way, and there are a great many of them.

As you know, the English language has an alphabet of 26 letters, but not all languages have a similar number. Some have many more; others find it possible to get along with fewer. In the Sanskrit alphabet there are 49 letters, the Persian has 45, the Slavonic 40, and the Armenian 36. The alphabet of the French has one letter fewer than our own, the Greek has 24, and the Latin 23, while the Italians manage with only 21 letters.

In China they do not use letters at all, except in very rare cases of business. Instead they have what appear to us very curious characters or signs, called ideograms or ideographs. These characters represent separate things or ideas, whereas our letters express just simple sounds. The Chinese language has so many of these signs that only a few of the people ever use more than

a small part of them. The average Chinaman seldom makes use of more than 2,000 ideograms, and anyone employing as many as 20,000 is regarded as a very learned person.

The Japanese, like the Chinese, also depend very extensively on ideograms, and in addition they employ 73 syllabic signs, each of which expresses one or more syllables. These syllabic signs of themselves, however, are far from being sufficient, and in writing an ordinary book there would have to be included something like 4,000 ideograms. There is a tendency in Japan, even more developed than in China, to adopt the Latin alphabet, as ours is called, for business purposes.

For the origin of the alphabet, the first use of letters instead of pictures, we have to go back several thousands of years. About 3000 B.C. the Egyptians had a kind of alphabet mixed in with their hieroglyphics or pictures of animals, weapons, trees, and other objects which stood for words. But it was not in general use, and never took the place of their picture writing.

This Egyptian alphabet has been compared with the Semitic (Arabic and Hebrew) alphabet of about the ninth century B.C., with a view of showing that the Semitic grew

out of the Egyptian, but although there is more or less definite likeness between some of the letters the connexion has not been really proven. Nor have the efforts to trace the origin of the Semitic alphabet to the cuneiform, or wedge-shaped, writing of Babylonia been any more successful.

As a result of discoveries made by him in Crete, Sir Arthur Evans has declared that the Phoenicians cannot be regarded as the inventors of the alphabet. He advances the view that the people of Crete had an alphabet which the Philistines carried from that Mediterranean island into Palestine. It was from the Philistines, he contends, that the Phoenicians acquired the alphabet, and that it did not come to them by the way of the Egyptians. Although it is possible that this may have been the true origin, it is not at all certain, and it is, therefore, still permissible to suppose that the Semitic was the first true alphabet.

The Semitic alphabet, which consisted of 22 letters, was carried into Greece by the fearless sea-going traders of Phoenicia, a coastal land at the far east of the Mediterranean. The Semites never wrote their vowels, but used *a*, *e*, *o* as aspirates, like our *h*, and *i* and *u* for the consonants *y* and *w*. The Greeks, however, needing written vowels, adopted these five letters for this purpose. They also introduced the letter *f*, which they sounded like *w*, but soon dropped it.

Somewhere about the sixth century B.C. the Greek alphabet found its way into Italy, where it became the medium of the classical literature of Rome. It then contained 26 letters, but no use could be found for certain of them and the number was reduced to 21, or three fewer than in the Greek alphabet as finally formed.

It was this alphabet—the Latin alphabet—which was first used in Britain but before

it arrived it had undergone further changes, so that by the time we adopted it it consisted of 23 letters. These proved scarcely sufficient for our needs, and so the present alphabet was completed by adding *w*, previously expressed by *vv*; *u*, whose duty as well as its own was formerly performed by *v*; and *j*, for which *i* had hitherto served.

There have been many different alphabets since the days of the Phoenicians, probably as many as four hundred, but all were developed from the Semitic combination of letters. The majority of these no longer

exist, although about fifty still survive. None can be regarded as perfect, because the perfect alphabet would need to have a separate letter for every sound, and any one sound should not be expressible by more than one letter.

In this respect all alphabets fail to satisfy. The English language, for example, has 42 sounds, but the alphabet provides us with only 26 letters with which to give expression to them. Thus we often have to use two letters in uttering certain sounds, as in the case of *ch* in church, chosen, champion, etc., and *th* in thank, think, thunder, etc.

Then all the vowels have several different sounds. In the words *bar*, *bat*, *bate*, *ball*, *bare*, the vowel *a* is sounded differently in each case, and in a dictionary the varying sounds have to be shown by accents. In the words *cell*, *fern*, *be*, the vowel *e* is sounded differently in each case, and it is the same with the other vowels. These examples indicate clearly the failure of our alphabet to express all sounds by the use of its letters only.

On the other hand, the English alphabet contains some letters that could very well have been omitted. The letter *c* is one of them, because *k* or *s* could be used instead, according to the sound required: others



How pictures became words in China. Under each little drawing is the word into which it grew.



are *q* and *x*, their respective sounds being just as well expressed by *k* and *ks*, *gz*, or *z*.

With all its faults, the alphabet is far more serviceable in speech and writing than the pictures from which it developed. Not only does it enable us to write with far greater speed, but it also rules out the possibility of misunderstanding to which picture writing is liable.

Just imagine what a vast and wonderfully expressive language we have been able to build up out of these 26 letters that we call our alphabet. Perhaps it will be easier to realize this when it is stated that in an ordinary standard dictionary there are from 350,000 to 500,000 words, all of them capable of being formed by arranging in the desired order the necessary letters taken from our A B C.

It is fortunate, perhaps, that not one single living person is ever called upon to make use of the whole of this vast collection of English words, or even one-tenth of them. This would be a formidable undertaking for the most learned. Even a great writer like Shakespeare called to his service less than 25,000 different words, nearly a fifth of which he found it necessary to use once only. But the formation of 25,000 or 100,000 or 500,000 words by means of our extremely simple and serviceable collection of letters would be a feat easy indeed compared with that of forming them by the Chinese method.

In view of the great accuracy of hand and power of intellect that would be required to accomplish such a definite amount of literary work in Chinese, including as it would thousands of distinct characters, and many more thousands of groups of signs, it is not difficult to appreciate that there are no dictionaries of Chinese words to compare in the number of their entries with the chief work, of the kind in the English language.

In England, as in other countries that possess an alphabet, most people are able to write a certain number of words, sufficient to be able to make themselves understood by those to whom they write. In countries which do not possess the advantage of an alphabet, and whose people depend upon pictures and signs to express their thoughts on paper, the art of writing is limited, the accomplishment being the proud possession of a select few.

In comparison, then, we can claim to have

a much easier method of forming words. But even so it is not so simple that an alternative method has not been suggested. This is what is called the phonetic system of spelling, the system by which all words are spelt exactly as they are pronounced. Very many words in the English language are, of course, already spelt exactly as they are sounded, but very many are not.

There are arguments both for and against spelling by sound, and one of the chief arguments against it is the fact that the clue often given to the etymology or history of a word by its spelling would be lost were the

phonetic method adopted.

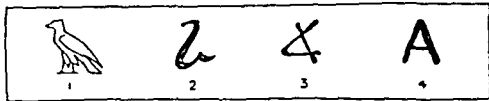
Whatever the effect of such a drastic change, whether advantage would accrue or not—and on this point there is wide difference of opinion—it is certain that the English alphabet, which has remained unaltered for so many years, would be obliged to part company with three of its faithful servants. There would be no work left for *c*, *q*, and *x* to do; their reason for existence would have ceased.

Not the least interesting fact connected with the alphabet is the story of the word itself, which is formed by two letters, *alpha* and *beta*, the *a* and *b* of the ancient Greeks who gave so much thought and beauty to the world.



A document of papyrus showing the hieroglyphic or picture-writing of the ancient Egyptians.

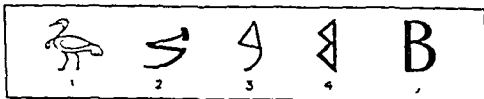
**A** MOST of you know that certain birds have helped men to write by providing the quills that were used as pens before the steel nib was invented; but do you know that some of the members of the bird kingdom actually helped in making the letters that were later written with their quills?



One of the letters that originally took the shape of a bird is the vowel *a*, the first letter of the English alphabet and of many others. The Egyptians adopted a bird to represent it, and their choice fell upon the lordly eagle, drawn like the one shown on this page (fig. 1). Its appearance was changed when it came to be made in the running hand of the Egyptian scribes, and fig. 2 shows the form the letter then assumed in hieratic, or sacred, writing.

This the Phoenicians found difficult to carve in stone, so they altered it to what is known as a plane rectilinear angle, with a line through it (fig. 3). When the Greeks received the alphabet from the Phoenicians they more or less retained its shape, but placed it upon its feet. They varied its appearance, the cross-bar sometimes running from the base of the left stroke to a higher position on the right stroke, at other times in exactly the opposite way. At length it came to look more like our own *A* (fig. 4), which form they finally adopted.

**B** THE letter *b* is another that began its career as a bird, the Egyptians' choice in this case being the crane (fig. 1). In sacred writing, however, it had an entirely different appearance, looking rather like a childish effort at producing the figure 5 or the capital letter *S* (fig. 2).



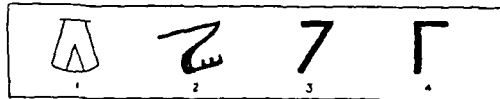
A simpler form adopted later by the Egyptians bore a certain resemblance to the outline of a tent (fig. 3), so when the Phoenicians took it into their alphabet they named it *beth* (Greek *beta*), which means "house." Some forms of the letter actually

looked more like the outline of a two-roomed house, one room above the other, than that of a tent.

The early Greeks fashioned the letter like fig. 4 above, and in later days turned it about so that it bore a greater likeness to the letter as it at last came to be formed in the Latin alphabet, which is, of course, our own capital *B*. Although in most European alphabets *b* is the second letter, in others, especially Eastern, it takes various positions. In Sanskrit it is the twenty-third of the consonants, and in Armenian it is placed twenty-sixth in an alphabet of thirty-six letters.

**C** REFERRING to the third letter in our alphabet, Ben Jonson, the famous English poet and dramatist, said: "It might well have been spared. for it has no peculiar sound."

This is quite true, for its place could very well be taken by *k* in words where *a*, *o*, or *u* is the next letter or where any other consonant than *h* comes next to it, and *s* would serve the purpose of *c* whenever *e*, *i*, or *y* is the following letter. Yet *c* is a very busy letter, as you will find if you turn to the section of this dictionary where words beginning with it are collected.



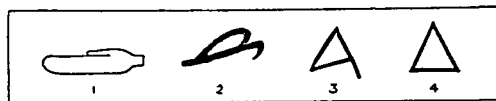
The Egyptians must have thought highly of *c* since they pictured it in a royal way as a throne (fig. 1). In their sacred writings they drew it something like a humped camel lying down (fig. 2), because their name for it was *gimel*, which means camel. The Phoenicians also called it *gimel*, which evidently suggested the Greek name *gamma*, and they wrote it very much like a seven (fig. 3). This form did not quite meet with the approval of the Greeks, who decided to turn it about, after altering it slightly (fig. 4). The Romans made a further change, preferring a circular symbol to an angular one, so they rounded it out, and gave it the familiar shape it has now.

Very early in its history *c* had the hard sound of *g*. That is why we sometimes see the proper names Caius and Cnaeus spelt Caius and Gnaeus. The Romans also gave it the sound of *k*, which it had when it first arrived in England.

**D** THE letter *d* has not had quite such an exciting history as most of its companions, and has managed to retain something of its earliest shape of a hand, which was given to it by the Egyptians (fig. 1). In their sacred writings it looked not unlike our script letter *s* lying face downwards (fig. 2).

The Phoenicians, who called it *daleth*, which means "door," fashioned it like an unfinished four (fig. 3), and later on, deciding that the tail was unnecessary, lopped it off. It is difficult to see any likeness to a door in this figure, either with or without the tail, but then it must be remembered that the "houses" of the Phoenicians were usually tents and their "doors" the coverings to the triangular openings of these portable dwellings.

The Greeks named the letter *delta*, and used a similar triangular symbol (fig. 4). This form was kept for quite a long while, although it did not always stand flat on its base, but was given various positions, sometimes being turned upside down, at others having the apex pointing to the right.



It was while in the latter position that it first received its present shape, and the change came about in this way. The Romans tried to make the two right-hand sides of the triangle in one stroke, with the result that they made them look more like a half-circle. This was certainly a quicker and easier way, and thus *d* came to get its present shape.

**E** HAVE you ever noticed the curious maze-like pattern on the border of some stair linoleums? It is called the key-board pattern, and is very old. Well, when the Egyptians wanted a picture to represent the letter *e* they took a small section of this design (fig. 1). It was called "maeander," and was simply intended as the sign of a breathing.

About 3000 B.C. the Egyptians in their sacred writings began to show the letter in

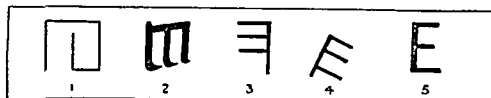
a somewhat different way, the picture they used being a window (fig. 2). The Phoenicians named it *he*, which is pronounced *hē* and means "window." Although there is a certain resemblance to that object, it really looks more like the prongs of a garden rake.

After a time the Phoenicians, who wrote from right to left, found it easier to form it with the prongs facing the way their writing travelled, that is towards the left, and so they made it look like a turned-about letter F (fig. 3), with an added crosspiece.

When the Greeks adopted the Phoenician alphabet they at first used the *e* that had satisfied this ancient Semitic people. Later they found it more convenient to turn it in the opposite direction (fig.

4), since they wrote from left to right just as we do.

The Greeks also decided to use it as a vowel, and before it passed into the Latin alphabet it had come to stand upright and look like our own E (fig. 5).



**F** IN the picture-writing of the Egyptians, the letter *f* took the form of the cerastes (fig. 1, p. xii), a "horned asp." When it came to be written in the sacred books of the Egyptians its form and position were altered, the head with the two horns being uppermost and turned to the right (fig. 2).

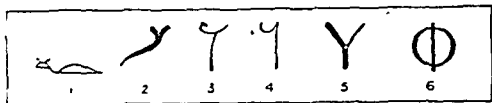
The Hebrews and the Phoenicians changed it into a simpler form, an upright stroke with a small curved piece at the top (fig. 3). This in turn came to be written with the curved piece at the left hand side of the upright (fig. 4). The Phoenicians called this *vau* or *waw*, meaning hook or peg, to which it certainly bore a resemblance.

The early Greeks wrote it like a Y (fig. 5), and later on they gave it the name of *digamma*, meaning "two gammas," because they thought that it looked like two of their *gammas* (letter *c*).



A royal scribe of Egypt 3000 years ago.

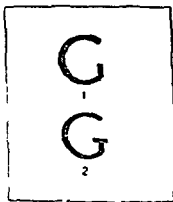
It was first called "ef" by the Romans, who also changed the form of the letter to that which we now use, a form which has a greater likeness to two gammas, one above



the other, than the Greek form. Before the Romans gave it the sound which it has to-day, it was sounded like our *w*, and sometimes like *v*. Its place in the English language is sometimes taken by *ph*, a digraph, or two letters with only one sound, and that the same, as in words like *elephant*, *pharmacy*, *diphthong*, and in digraph itself. The digraph *ph* comes from the Greek *phi* (fig. 6).

**G** THIS letter might be described as one of the juniors of the alphabet; certainly it is quite young compared with the majority of the other members of the family. The Egyptians had no use for the letter, nor had the Phoenicians, and when the Greeks took over the alphabet from this Eastern Mediterranean race they, too, found no occasion to introduce a *g* into it.

It was the Romans who first realized the need of such a letter to express certain sounds, but even they were a very long while—hundreds of years—before they saw the use to which it could be put. Previously they had been satisfied to use *c* to express both its own sound and that of *g*, but this so often led to difficulties, as you can imagine, that they decided to give the *c* a slightly different appearance



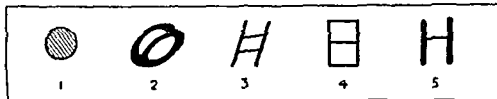
when it was required to indicate the sound of *g*. It is on account of its coming late into the Latin alphabet that we often find *c* used for *g* in Latin inscriptions. Examples of this are given in the history of the letter *c*.

The first Roman to use the changed form is said to have been Spurius Carvilius Ruga, at least that is what Plutarch, the famous Greek writer, has told us. He wrote his name RVGA—the *V* was still used for *U* on stone tablets as it was easier to carve—instead of RVCA. At first it was not always possible to say which was a *c* and which a *g*, because the end of the *g* was

just turned straight up, but this difficulty was easily overcome by placing a bar at the top of the upward stroke (fig. 2).

**H** THE letter *h* seems to have caused a certain amount of trouble throughout most of its existence. In some of our words it has the value of an aspirate, or a strong breathing, but in others it prefers to be ignored. It is therefore quite possible to understand how easy it is for uneducated people to make mistakes in pronouncing words that have it for their initial letter.

In their picture-writing the Egyptians used to represent it as a sieve (fig. 1), but in their sacred writings they gave it quite a different appearance (fig. 2). From this it came to look rather like a bent two-rung ladder (fig. 3), and to this symbol the Phoenicians gave the name of "fence." When it was taken over by the early Greeks they decided to straighten it out, change the position of the bars, and at the same time



add another bar, which made their *h* appear like two small oblong figures placed one upon the other (fig. 4). This shape they retained for many years. Finally they hit upon the idea of leaving out the top and bottom bars and giving the letter the form in which it passed into the Latin alphabet and which is so familiar to us (fig. 5).

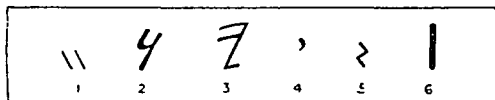
The Hebrews and the Phoenicians called it *chet*, which was a guttural that is a letter sounded chiefly by the throat. Its sound was something like that of *ch* in the Scottish word *loch* (pronounced *lokh*). The early Greeks made it into a breathing sound like our *h*, but later they used it also for *eta*, the long *e*. Nowadays even *h* has different sounds in different Latin alphabets, in some of which it is a consonant and in others an aspiration, or breathing.

**I** ALTHOUGH a most important letter—its sound is evident more often in the English language than any other, and its actual appearances are only exceeded by the letter *e*—our *i* has never grown up. Right from its birth as the parallels (fig. 1, p. xiii) in Egyptian picture-writing to its entry into the English alphabet it has occupied less space than any of its companions.

The form given to it in Egyptian sacred writings (fig. 2) was very different from the pictograph from which it developed, and, if anything, bore a greater resemblance to the sign adopted by the Phoenicians (fig. 3), who gave it the name of *yod*. It probably had the bar at the foot added so that it should not be mistaken for their *k* (*kaph*) when carelessly written. *Yod* meant hand, and if we strain our imagination rather violently it is possible to believe that the sign has some likeness to a hand and wrist.

The Hebrews made it look a very tiny letter (fig. 4), so little in fact that its name came to be used for anything that was small. There is a word in our own language which has come from the Phoenician name of *yod*. The word is *jot*, and it means a particle or tittle, that is, something very small indeed.

Another English word with a similar meaning which can be traced to *yod* is *iota*. This was the name which the Greeks gave to the letter *i*. The early Greeks wrote it as a zig-zag shape (fig. 5), but this looked rather like their *sigma*, which became our letter *s*,



so they rounded off the angles and later on straightened it out into the single-line upright figure that we write so easily (fig. 6).

Although we have always used it as a vowel, the letter *i* has also led the life of a consonant in certain Latin words.

**J** If you refer to a dictionary that was printed about three hundred years ago you will not be able to find any words beginning with the letter *j* unless you have been let into the secret. If you have already had the mystery explained, then, of course, you will look for such words under *i*, because until about the seventeenth century words having *i* or *j* as their initial letter were always placed together.

Originally *i* and *j* were forms of the same letter, and it was not until some time in the fifteenth century that it was realized how convenient it would be to make the consonant look unlike the vowel by adding a tail to it; and that is the simple way in

which cur *j* came into existence.

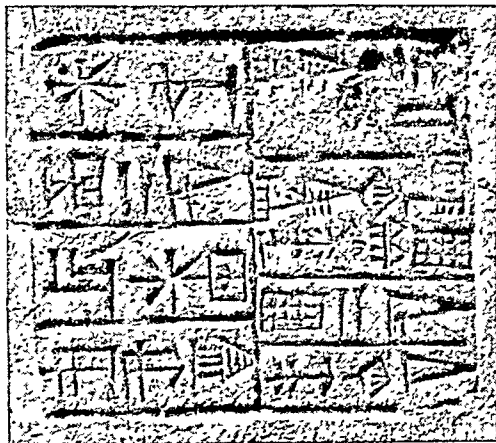
This new letter was used for the initial of words because it was rather more ornamental, and so it came to be a consonant while *i* continued as the vowel. Its original sound was that of the letter *y*, which it still has in the German alphabet, but later it acquired the value, or sound, of our *g* in words like *gem*, *gesture*, *gentleman*, that is, the soft sound of *g*.

Now that you know the story of this letter, you will quite understand that *I*upiter, *I*ustinus, and other names that appear in Roman inscriptions and on Roman medals, are not wrongly spelt, but that the initial letter is really a *J* and not an *I*. Sometimes on maps with index squares you will notice the letters go from *I* to *K*; this is not because map makers have not got a *J* in their alphabet, but just to avoid mistakes arising, for all *I* and *J* are still rather like twins.

**K** If you were asked to pick out what stood for our letter *k* in the Egyptian picture alphabet, you would have to search for a picture that was intended to represent a bowl (fig. 1, p. xiv).

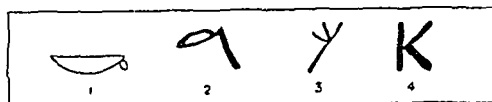
It did not look much like a bowl when it came to be written instead of drawn (fig. 2), and as a matter of fact it bears a greater resemblance to the palm of a hand, which is the meaning of the name *kaph* that was given to it by the Phoenicians. This likeness can be better appreciated if you point the first finger and the thumb of the right-hand towards the left, with the tips touching.

The change made by the Phoenicians when they acquired the letter gave it an appearance more like the letter as we know



How the Babylonians wrote on brick about 2,300 years before the birth of Christ.

it now (fig. 3), except that the angular strokes were on the opposite side. When it passed into the Greek alphabet the new owners turned it about and slightly altered its form, giving it the name of *kappa* and almost the exact appearance of the Latin letter which at length came into our alphabet (fig. 4).

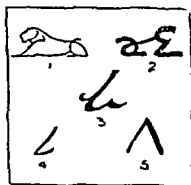


But before this happened the letter was actually allowed to drop almost entirely out of the Latin alphabet, the Romans using *c* instead to express the sound of *k*, and they only used the latter as an abbreviation in certain circumstances.

In very early times our own alphabet had no letter *k*, but to avoid confusion, when *c* was given the sibilant, or soft, sound of *s* in words like *cease* and *century*, it was found necessary to introduce *k* for the hard sound that *c* still has in many words.

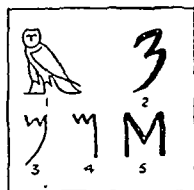
**L** NONE of the early Egyptians could ever have foreseen that their picture of a lioness (fig. 1) would come to be the letter *l* of the English and other Latin alphabets. At a later date, in Egyptian manuscripts, it looked far less like a lioness (fig. 2) than the earlier pictograph, and still later it was given another shape (fig. 3), which can easily be imagined to look like a bird of some sort in flight. This change was the first step towards taking the shape of our own letter *l*.

It was given the name of *lamed*, meaning "ox-goad," by the Phoenicians, from its likeness to that implement. Some authorities think *lamed* was intended for a spit or a prong on which meat is roasted, and others that it represented a cudgel. Whatever it actually stood for, the Phoenician symbol (fig. 4) was much more like our letter *l* than that of the Greeks, who made it look like an upturned *V* (fig. 5), or a carat or insertion sign. They called it *lambda*. In Phoenician manuscripts that have been preserved their letter (fig. 4) is reversed, and the reason given for this is that it was easier to write in the right-to-left manner which was the custom of this Semitic race.



In the early Latin alphabet it again appeared something like the Phoenician letter, but about 50 years before the Christian era the Romans gave it an appearance that was almost the same as the form it has in our own alphabet.

**M** THE letter *m*, the thirteenth in the English and Latin alphabets, can claim to bear some resemblance to the picture used by the early Egyptians about sixty centuries ago. They used to draw an owl with the face pointing towards the left (fig. 1) when they wanted to make the letter. In this position the head rather had the appearance of our capital *M*, in which you can almost see the face of an owl.

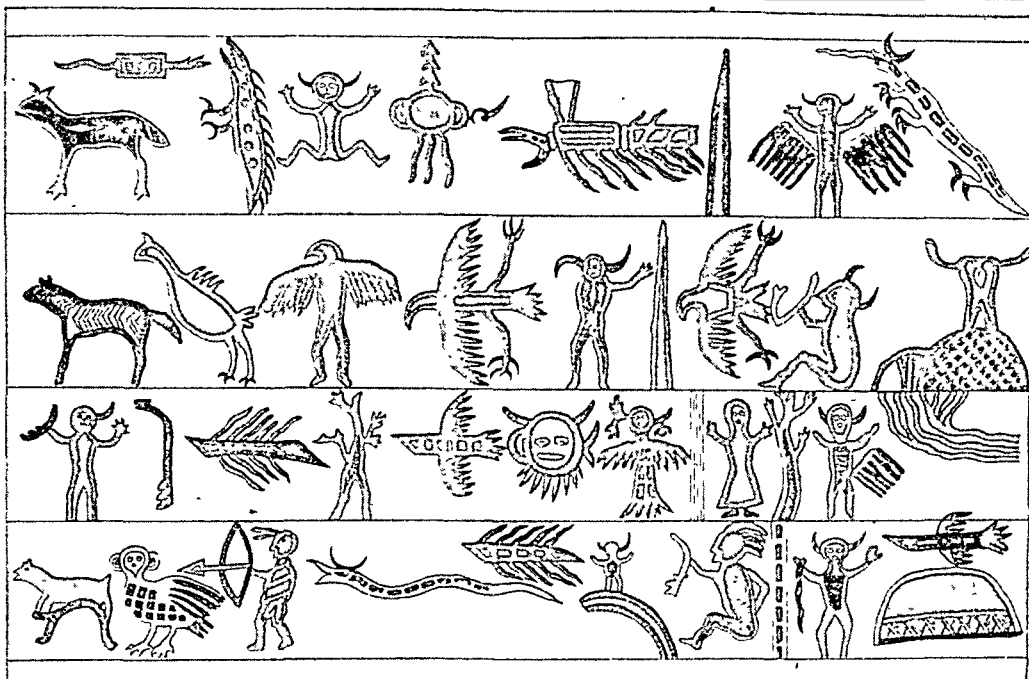


In the papyrus writings of four to five thousand years ago, it looked rather like a figure three (fig. 2), and showed a tendency to develop towards our present letter. This development is more noticeable in the symbol of the Phoenicians (fig. 3), who made it a more angular figure, for the reason that they found it much easier to chisel on stone than the rounded form which came to them from the Egyptians.

The early Greeks used a form very much the same in design (fig. 4), and in the early Latin alphabet of about 800 B.C. a similar figure, only with the long stroke on the left, did duty. It is quite easy to realize how this shape, by gradual change, came at length to assume that now given to the letter in our own alphabet. This form, as already stated, bears a certain likeness to the original picture letter of the Egyptians, and it is curious to note that in other alphabets the owl shape has not altogether been lost to sight, an ear, the beak, or some other portion of the bird being apparent.

**N** ONE of the hieroglyphics of the ancient Egyptians was something like the edge of a saw. It was called the "water-line" (fig. 1, p. xv), and stood for the letter *n*, the fourteenth in our own alphabet. The Egyptian scribes wrote it quite differently in their papyri (fig. 2), although it bore some small likeness to the earlier "water-line."

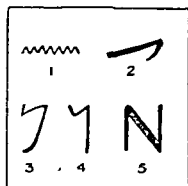
When the letter was taken over by the Hebrews and the Phoenicians, who called



The quaint picture-writing of the Ojibbeway tribe of Red Indians. It is cut on a wooden tablet and coloured. From Ratzel's "History of Mankind."

it *nun*, meaning a fish, they gave it rather the appearance of our figure seven (fig. 3), the short stroke at the top very likely being added so that it should not be confused with their *gimel*, which, you will remember, is almost exactly like our seventh unit. The Egyptian written letter (fig. 2) is, if anything, more like a fish than the Phœnician, which has rather the appearance of a hook used in catching the dwellers in the sea.

The early Greeks, when the Phœnician alphabet was acquired by them, made little alteration in the letter *n*; they retained the shape, but straightened it up (fig. 4), and when it passed into the early Latin alphabet, about eight centuries before the Christian era, it was turned round the other way, the short upward stroke being made into an upright. About 50 B.C. the Romans used to shape it very much like our own letter (fig. 5), a form it received some 1500 years later.

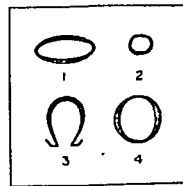


turned round the other way, the short upward stroke being made into an upright. About 50 B.C. the Romans used to shape it very much like our own letter (fig. 5), a form it received some 1500 years later.

**O** THERE is little doubt that the Egyptians managed to do without a sign for *o*. In fact it is generally agreed that they did not even make use of a sound like that given to the letter

*ayin* of the Phœnicians. This Eastern Mediterranean people gave it the appearance of our capital O turned on its side (fig. 1), and they used this form to indicate an eye, which is the meaning of the word *ayin*. A later form was smaller and rather more circular, but not so regular in shape (fig. 2).

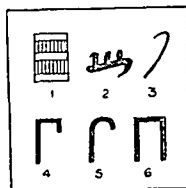
Although the letter *o* has generally retained a more or less rounded form in passing from one alphabet to another, it has, nevertheless, in the course of its history assumed a variety of shapes. Sometimes we may see it looking like the ace of diamonds on a playing-card, at others it has become almost square, while it has often taken an upright oval form.



The Greeks, however, took it over almost as it appeared in the Phœnician alphabet, but in their alphabet the guttural *ayin* became the vowel *omicron* (little *o*), and still remained a very small letter. In the course of time it came to have a rival, the Greeks introducing another letter *o* which is known as *omega* or great *o* (fig. 3). This, the twenty-fourth and last in the Greek alphabet, had the sound of our long *o*, as *omicron* had the value of our short *o*. The English *o* is a direct descendant of the Greek and Latin letter (fig. 4).

**P** WHEN you look at a window or a door which has the light shut out by a piece of board, are you ever reminded of the picture letters of the early Egyptians? Probably not, because you very likely do not know that a shutter (fig. 1) represented one of their letters—P. They also used the “flying-bird,” the figure of a bird with wings spread, but not nearly so often.

In their sacred writings the Egyptians employed an entirely different symbol (fig. 2) and also one similar in shape but more like the form that was adopted by the Phoenicians (fig. 3). In the Semitic alphabet of this people, the letter was given the name of *pe*, which means mouth, and it is easy to believe that the written letter of the Egyptians, which had three prong-like bars or teeth, gave them the idea for its name. They did not include the teeth in writing their letter, which bears some likeness to two other letters of their alphabet, *gimel* and *nun*, the ancestors of our *c* and *n*.



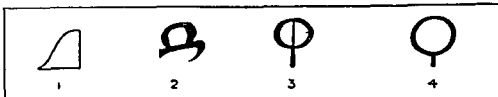
When *p* was taken over by the Greeks, they changed its appearance after a while by making the horizontal stroke point to the right, adding to it

a short downward bar, and squaring up the sign generally (fig. 4). The downward bar was later given the same length as the left-hand vertical stroke, so that the Greek *pi* came to appear like a square with the base cut away (fig. 6). These two forms passed into the Latin alphabet, where they were rounded out, at first looking like our letter *J* turned upside down (fig. 5) and then taking the form in which it came into the English alphabet.

**Q** A LOT of discussion has been caused by the letter *q* since it was first used by the Egyptians some six or seven thousand years ago. They used to draw an outline that was possibly meant to be a knee (fig. 1), or an angle, but in their papyri they gave it a far different shape, somewhat like a childish attempt to draw a man's bowler hat (fig. 2).

It was the form (fig. 3) chosen by the Phoenicians—they called it *qoph*—which has given rise to all the discussion. It has been suggested that this circular form with the vertical line passing through it and downwards

was intended to be an ape, the line being the tail. It is very hard to see any likeness to an ape, and therefore it is easier to believe that it may have stood for an aperture, or opening, such as the eye in a needle through which the cotton is threaded. But most people who have studied the problem are of the opinion that it was meant to

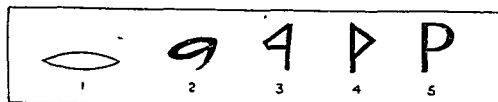


represent a knot, and we can, without much effort, imagine it to look like a looped piece of string. It was sounded very much like *kaph*, the Phoenician *k*, and it is just possible that they both originated from the same source.

As a letter, *koppa* (fig. 4), as it was called, was allowed to pass out of the Greek alphabet, and the sign was retained in Greece as a numeral only, its value being 90. In the Latin alphabet, however, it found a place, and came to acquire the shape that we have so long been accustomed to.

**R** AMONG the pictures that formed the alphabet of the Egyptians was one that was intended to represent a mouth (fig. 1). This was the letter *r*. About 1500 or 2000 years later, when the scribes came to write it in a running hand, it had assumed an entirely different form (fig. 2). The Phoenicians, when they took it into their alphabet, apparently saw in it a likeness to a head, for that is what is meant by *resh*, the name they gave it. They found its rounded shape difficult to cut in stone, so they gave it an angular appearance (fig. 3), and thus it lost something of its supposed resemblance to a head supported by the neck.

There was a time when *R* looked exactly like our *P*; that was after it had passed



into the Greek alphabet. At first the Greeks used a similar symbol to that of the Phoenicians, only facing the opposite way (fig. 4), but later they rounded it out so that it became like our *P* (fig. 5). It is curious that the Greeks, after adding a tail to this form and thus making it look more like the English letter, should have changed





On page xv is a specimen of the picture-writing of a Red Indian tribe, and here we see a native outside his wigwam "drawing words" on the skin of an animal.

back again to the earlier P form, which they have continued to use for more than 2000 years.

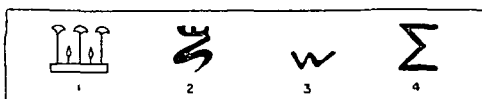
The English alphabet was taken from the Latin, and as the Romans remained loyal to the R shape in its rounded form we also came to write it in the same way. If we had copied our A B C from the Greeks we should have a letter R without a tail, and then of course our P would have had a different appearance, just like a square with the bottom stroke missing.

**S**OME people, especially the South Sea islanders, find the letter *s* as difficult to pronounce as the early Egyptians must have found it to draw. They used to depict what was known to them as the "inundated garden" (fig. 1), that is a garden under water. Those tall and short uprights are supposed to be papyrus or lotus plants, which have sprung up from the well-watered soil of the garden. The Egyptian scribes made use of an entirely different form (fig. 2), which was known to the Phoenicians as "teeth," or *shin* as they used to call it. The lower teeth are represented in this symbol, and below them are the chin and beard, or at least so we are given to understand.

If you pay close attention to the two characters it is quite possible to see how the Phoenicians got their form (fig. 3) from the written sign of the Egyptians. The

Phoenician letter, which looks like our W pushed out of shape, is similar to the "teeth" portion of the Egyptian letter, and this they evidently kept, doing away with the chin and the beard.

When the Greeks came into possession of the Phoenician alphabet, among the other alterations they made was the turning of the *s* on to its side, and thus making it like our E (fig. 4), without the middle bar and

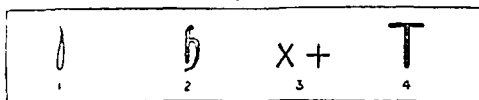


with its side dented in. They called it *sigma*. Later in its life the bottom stroke was done away with, and it took the shape that our S would have if it were formed in an angular way. Then, at length, the Romans gave it a rounded form, just like it has to-day.

**T**REGARDING some of the picture letters of the Egyptians there is difference of opinion as to what they were intended to represent. The letter *t* is one of them. Some authorities believe the form they used (fig. 1, p. xviii) was intended for a lasso or noose, and others, who are probably correct, that it was meant to represent the tongue. In their running hand the Egyptian scribes wrote it differently, something like an outline of our small letter *h* (fig. 2), but a

similarity can yet be seen to the original sign.

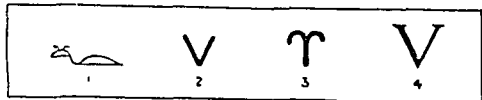
Passing into the alphabet of the Phoenicians, who called it *tau*, they wrote it like a plus or a multiplication sign (fig. 3). No doubt you have noticed how sheep have a mark branded on them to show their ownership. Well, the Hebrews and the Phoenicians also branded their animals, and they used for the purpose



these two cross signs. It is probably one or other of these signs which is referred to in Ezekiel ix, 4. It is easy to see how the Greeks get their letter *tau* (fig. 4)—they simply put the horizontal piece of the cross at the top of the upright stroke, and gave it just about the shape we use ourselves.

By the way, there is usually something peculiar about our small (or minuscule) *t*. Just look at the left side of the cross-bar and you will see that it is "blotted." This is a survival of the way in which it was originally formed, by making the cross-bar first and then without removing the pen, the vertical stroke. Now look at the italic small *t* (this one will do). The blot is missing—that is because the cross-bar was never made first.

YOU remember that we got our letter *i*, after various changes from cerastes (fig. 1), the "horned asp" of the picture alphabet of the Egyptians. Well, four other letters have been obtained from that symbol. They are *u*, *v*, *w*, and *y*. The Egyptians had no use for any of these letters, nor had the Phoenicians, while it was not until the lapse of hundreds of years after acquiring the alphabet from the



Phoenicians that the Greeks realised there was a need for some of them.

You will recall how *i* and *j* came to have separate values (see J), when the latter was placed at the beginning of words and *i* always given a medial, or an inside position. This is just what happened in the case of *u* and *v*. At first the Greeks always made *u* to look like *v* (fig. 2), because it was easier to cut on stone. In classic Greek, about 500 B.C., *upsilon*, as *u* was named, had some-

what the appearance of our small *r* (fig. 3), while the classic Roman letter of 50 B.C. was like a fancy capital *v* (fig. 4) in our own alphabet. Then some time later, in the Latin alphabet, the two letters began to show signs of becoming different in form. At length, in the tenth century, *u* took an inside place leaving *v* to become an initial or first letter of a word, which is exactly what happened with *i* and *j* about 500 years later still. Since the position of vowels is generally within the word rather than at the beginning, *u* came to have a vowel value, and *v* that of a consonant.

V IN the story of the letter *j* you were told why words beginning with that letter and *i* are frequently found together in dictionaries printed three or more hundred years ago. If you were to refer to a dictionary of that period you would find the same thing happens with words having *u* or *v* as their initial, and for the same reason, because they were at one time forms of the same letter. In the Latin alphabet *v* once performed the double duty of acting as a consonant and a vowel, but as explained in the story of the letter *u*, it passed its vowel duty on to that letter.

Sometimes in stone inscriptions on modern buildings you will see a letter *v* in a word that you know very well should have a *u* instead. That is because the man who carved the word has done it in a very ancient way; he has followed the style of the early Greeks and Romans, who found it simpler to cut two slanting strokes with their chisels than two upright strokes joined by a curve at the bottom.

Have you ever come across anyone who sounds *v* like *w*? Some people do; for example, they say *wan* for *van*, and *wery* for *very*. Well, although they probably do not know it, that is the sound the Romans used instead of our *v* sound.

W THE letter *w*, the twenty-third in the English alphabet, has a sound that is not met with in any other language. The French *oui* (pronounced *we*) and the Spanish *hua* (pronounced *wa*, the *a* as in father) have some resemblance, but for proper names which in English begin with *w*, these languages use *gu*, as in Guillaume for William.

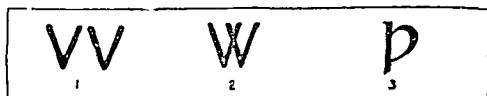
If you refer to the history of the letters *u* and *v* you will get a very good idea of why



In the cold scriptorium or writing room of the monasteries the monks made copies of manuscripts until the discovery of printing relieved them of the work which they had performed with such loving care.

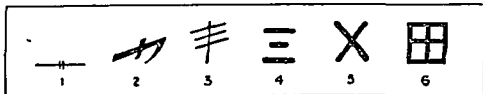
we call this letter *double u* (*uu*), and not *double v* (*vv*), which it certainly more closely resembles. It was simply that *u* was originally like a *v*, and that when *uu* made their appearance in our alphabet they were often written as two *v*'s (fig. 1). That was somewhere about the eleventh century. Later the two *v*'s were joined together (fig. 2), but since they were really two *u*'s, they remained faithful to their proper sound, that of *double u*—not *double v*.

From this you will gather that *w* was never a specially formed letter, but owes its existence to the binding together of two letters. This is known as a ligature, other examples of which are seen in the printing of (*ff*) and (*ffi*). Look at these letters in any book or newspaper and you will notice that they are an impression from a single piece of type. The diphthongs *æ* and *œ* are also ligatures.



If you ever come across an Anglo-Saxon manuscript keep a sharp look out for a letter like our small *p* (fig. 3), but do not mistake it for that letter, for it is actually what our early ancestors used for a *w*. It is called the *wen* rune, that is the letter called *wen* in the Anglian Runic alphabet. Its place was taken by *vu*, and from this our *w* was developed as stated above.

**X** THE Egyptian ancestor of the letter *x* was a "chair-back" (fig. 1), at least that is what their picture was supposed to represent. In their sacred writings its form was very different (fig. 2), and had a slight suggestion of a post fixed in the ground, from which fact the Phoenicians probably came to give it the name of *samekh*. Their symbol in turn was quite unlike that of the Egyptian scribes, and bore some resemblance to a young



child's attempt to draw a telegraph pole and wires (fig. 3).

In the Greek alphabet this form had its place taken by two others. One was three parallel bars one above the other, the centre one being smaller than the other two (fig. 4), and the second was just like our *x* (fig. 5) when written hurriedly.

It is believed that *samekh* once looked something like a window (fig. 6), and it is thought that the two Greek forms came from this, the three bars being what remains after the sides are taken away, and the other form being the cross without the frame, only turned on to two feet. The former in classic Greek was used to denote the sound *ks*, and the latter had the value of *kh* and was called *chi*.

In the Latin alphabet *x* once occupied the fifteenth position, but when it was given two forms, the second of these was placed at the end of the alphabet, while the other, whose sound was similar to *s*, was later allowed to pass out of the alphabet altogether.

The Greek *x*, quite a different letter, stood for *kh* or *ch*.

**Y** THE last letter but one of the English alphabet, *y* is one of the four letters which are direct descendants of the Greek *upsilon* (fig. 1). Thus, as you have read under the story of *u*, it had as an ancestor the Egyptian pictograph that stood for *f*. This was the "horned asp" (fig. 2), whose horns and body may be seen to better advantage in *y* than in *f*.

It was during the first century B.C. that this letter was given a place in the Latin alphabet, the object of its introduction being to obtain

times *y* was also used for *i* in "nothyng," "thynketh," and many other words.

In Anglo-Saxon *y* (fig. 3) was often used for *ii* or *i*, but this custom long ago passed out of use. There was a time in the early days of the English language when *y* took the place of *th*. That was because of the likeness of *y* to the Anglo-Saxon character which had the sound of *th* (fig. 4). We sometimes see this exchange to-day in inn and other signs, as in "Ye Olde Swan Inn," but *the* was never pronounced in the same way as *ye*.



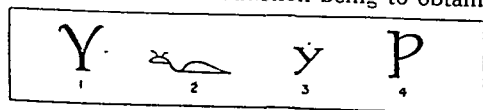
In China a mandarin gains his rank by passing a written examination.

**Z** LIKE several of its companions, *z* was represented by a bird in the Egyptian picture alphabet, the hieroglyphic used being a duck (fig. 1). There was little likeness to the duck left when the Egyptian scribes wrote the letter in their sacred writings (fig. 2), and their symbol actually bears a greater resemblance to the sickle which the *zayin* of the Phoenicians is supposed to represent. The Phoenician form was something like our letter *H* turned over on its side, the cross-bar being slanting (fig. 3), and in their alphabet occupied the seventh

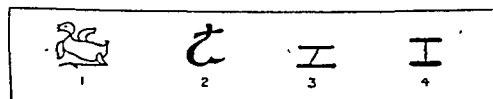
position, between *vau* and *cheth*.

*Zeta* (fig. 4), the name adopted by the Greeks, retained the seventh position in their alphabet, and also in that of the Romans until the latter decided to do away with it in the third century B.C. About two centuries later, however, in the time of Cicero, it was found desirable to restore the letter to the Latin alphabet, as it was necessary for the purpose of transliterating certain Greek words, that is changing them letter by letter into another language. It had, however, lost its place as the seventh letter, and had taken up a position at the end of the alphabet. Its form, too, was changed, its appearance being that of the letter we have to-day.

The name *zed* which we have for this letter was also that of the Phoenicians, and is the only one of their names which has passed into our alphabet.



a sound nearer to the Greek *v* than was possible by the existing Latin alphabet. The tail flourish of this letter made it a favourite with writers of the Middle English period, and they often changed *i* into *y* when it was the last letter in a word. In this way words like "city" and "kindly" came to be written with *y* as the final letter. In early



# THE WONDERFUL STORY OF THE ENGLISH LANGUAGE

*The Adventures and Struggles of Words that are our familiar Friends and how they came to us from all Parts of the World*

HAVE you ever played the game of trying to write down all the words you know? How many did you get? Two hundred, three hundred, five hundred even? And, when you had put down every single word you could remember, did you have a look at a dictionary, see how many thousands upon thousands of words it contained, and wonder whether you would ever know them all?

No one knows all the words in the English dictionary. No dictionary contains all the words in the English language. No one knows exactly how many words there are in our language; the number is always changing, for every year fresh words are added, and every year some words are used for the last time. Altogether, counting everything, there are perhaps half a million. Half a million is easily said, but try to imagine what the number means. If you were to count at the rate of one word a second for eight hours every day, the task would take you two and a half weeks to finish.

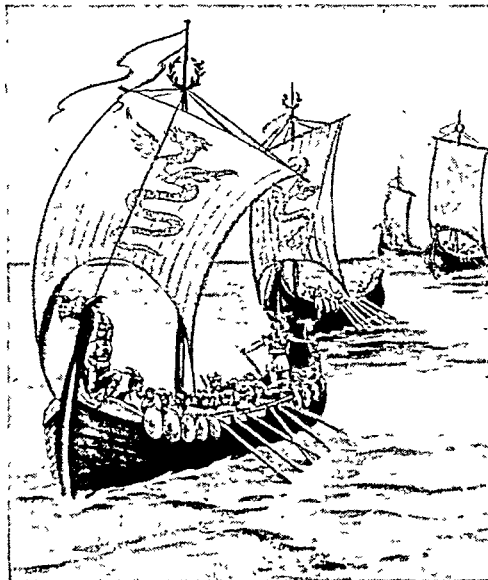
Where did all these words come from, and how did they get into our language? How old is the English language, and who first spoke it? Has it altered much since that time, and in what ways? These are some of the questions we are going to try to answer for you. The story is a wonderfully interesting one, for our language has had adventures and struggles, and has even had to fight for its life. It is only because, hundreds of years ago, English people were determined they would speak English, and no other language, that you speak it to-day

First, what is a language? The word is the French *langue* in English dress, and this word comes through the French *langue*, from the Latin *lingua*, meaning tongue. It is generally understood to mean human speech, the understandable sounds, or words, which we use to express our ideas. In a wider sense, however, language includes more than the spoken word. The sounds made by animals, the gestures and signs of deaf and dumb people, the pictures or hieroglyphics of the ancient Egyptians,

all these are means of communicating ideas, and must, therefore, be considered as language. Moreover, we write a language as well as speak it.

How did language first begin? Nobody is quite sure; various suggestions have been made, but none entirely answers the question. Most probably primitive man very gradually learnt speech in much the same way as a baby learns to speak. First, he only made noises in his throat, just as the other animals did, and just as a baby does when he chuckles "Ah, ah!" or cries "Dah!"

"Dah!" These sounds were most likely expressed quite unintentionally or unwillingly, and were caused by some feeling of emotion, by fear, by anger, or by pleasure. The lower animals have never got beyond this stage of making noises—a parrot merely imitates—but primitive man had a keener brain than the animals, and noticed that he always made the same sound when he was afraid, and the same when he was angry, and the same when he was pleased. So he practised his sounds, as



In the fifth century Angles, Saxons, and Jutes came in their long ships to lay the foundation of the English language.

baby practises his "Ahs" and his "Dahs," and learnt more and more. As he lived always with his family, and as the family grew to be a tribe, everybody imitated these sounds and developed them until they became words which everyone knew. Then man gradually began to communicate ideas as well as emotions, using other sounds; very, very simply, by pointing to the rising sun, perhaps, and making a sound to say it was day, or by rubbing his face and making another sound to show he was hot.

From these simple beginnings language was developed, ever so slowly, until after many thousands of years of practice man came to give expression to his thoughts in the way he does to-day, in whole sentences, each connected with the next, but using words very different from those now spoken. From this early language grew the languages of the ancient world, which were often carried hundreds of miles by wandering tribes before they settled down in a permanent home.

### *Before Julius Caesar Came*

English was not the first language of our own country. The Britons whom Julius Caesar found living here in 55 B.C. had never heard of it. Their language was quite different; it is still spoken to-day, very, very much altered, by people in Wales, in north-west Scotland and in Ireland. Then, when a hundred years later, from A.D. 43, Britain became a Roman colony, the Romans taught the Britons Latin. By A.D. 410, when the Romans left Britain, most people in the country probably knew Latin as well as their native tongue.

Not many years after the Romans left, fierce tribes from the Continent, who then lived in what is now Denmark and western Germany, and who before had plundered the coasts of Britain, began to swarm across the North Sea and gradually conquered this country for themselves. You all know the story, and that the invaders were the Angles, Saxons, and Jutes.

### *A Baby 1500 Years Old*

They spoke English, and as the first of them came to stay about A.D. 450, we can say that English has been spoken in this country for nearly 1500 years. The name *England* comes from *Angle-land*, and *English* is the language of the *Angles*.

Supposing one of the original Angles could come to life again, should we understand

him when he spoke? Not a bit of it. Every language changes as it grows older, and English has changed as much as any other. In just the same way, a boy changes as he grows. Ask your father to show you a photograph of himself as a baby, and see if you can recognise him. Yet he is the same person; and so your English, the language you speak to-day, is the same language as Old English, but very much grown up. Old English—that is, the English spoken before the Norman conquest (some people call it *Anglo-Saxon*)—is the baby from which modern English has grown. It is already nearly 1,500 years old; older, really, for the language was spoken for hundreds of years before it came to England.

### *Three English Languages*

Actually, three English languages came to England, one for each of the three tribes. You know how differently a Yorkshireman speaks (not writes) from a Londoner? There was just about the same amount of difference between the languages, or dialects, of the Angles, the Saxons, and the Jutes. For some eight hundred years, from about A.D. 600 to about A.D. 1400, there were three slightly different English languages spoken and written in this country—one from Edinburgh to the Humber, one in the Midlands, and one south of the Thames. The English you speak is most closely connected with the Midland dialect.

If an Angle who lived, say, in A.D. 627 could come to life and speak to you, and if you listened very carefully, you might catch here and there a word that you recognised. He would pronounce them very strangely, but he, like you, said *wind* and *corn*, talked of *gold* and slept on a *bed*; he said *his* and *him*, and that a thing was *under* or *in* another.

### *Words that have Died*

Many other words used by him are the same as yours, and many more have only changed a little in all that long time. You might understand when he explained how he loved the *sunne* in *sumor* and hated the *ceald* winter. But many of his words you could not understand at all, for they are not used now, or have changed too much; such words as *egeslic*, meaning terrible, *lichoma*, meaning body, and *spanan*, meaning to persuade.

Now have you noticed that whenever you meet a person who uses words that are new to you, you at once begin to use those words



The reading of the first royal proclamation in English instead of French, which had been the language of the Court and of all important people since the coming of William the Conqueror. This took place in 1258, when Henry III was king. It was not till 1353 that English was ordered to be used in schools.

yourself, particularly if they are "catchy" or slang words? We all do, and that is one way in which new words get into a language. People of one country meet people of another, borrow words from them, and use those words until they come to be part of their own language. English has always been particularly good at borrowing.

It started by borrowing just a very few words from the Britons; not many, because the English would have nothing to do with the Britons, but killed and enslaved them or drove them into the hills of Wales and Cornwall. But *combe* and *down* are Briton words, and the Englishman learned from the Briton the word *ceastre*, which the Briton had learned from the Roman, who built his town round his *castra*, "camp"; and that is why the names of so many towns in England end in *—cester*, *—caster*, or *—chester*.

### *The Church Plays its Part*

In A.D. 597 Augustine and his monks came from Rome to England to preach Christianity. The English quickly learned from them *monk*, *bishop*, *priest*, *cup*, and other words connected with the church services; they also learned in ordinary conversation new names such as *box*, *cheese*, *kettle*, *penny*, *pound*. As they liked them, they kept them, and they have been in our language ever since. They liked the Latin alphabet, too, so they took to that, only keeping two or three of their own letters.

Then the Danes began to invade this country. They spoke a language very much like English, and probably, in King Alfred the Great's time, an Englishman and a Dane could understand each other fairly well, even though each spoke his own language. When the Danes settled down in England they quickly learnt English, but the English managed to borrow quite a few new words from them, words such as *arrow*, *knife*, *husband*, *fellow*, *earl*, *hit*, *take*, *call*, and *until*.

### *Beginning to Grow Up*

But, taking everything into account, English did not borrow much before the Norman Conquest: only about a dozen British words, about two hundred Latin, and a number of Danish—it is not easy to say how many, because this language was so very like English. The first really enormous growth of the English language came to pass because William of Normandy took a fancy to England and conquered it.

In A.D. 1066 English was a pure language, that is, a language consisting almost entirely of words as old as the English tribes. It was a language of short, homely, gruff words, with a number of consonants in them and very few vowels. (Look at *drink*, *strength*, *word*, *gold*, and you will see what is meant.) It was an *inflected* language, that is, its verbs, nouns, pronouns, and adjectives had a host of different endings to express changes of meaning; for example, *til*, meaning good, could become *tilne*, *tiles*, *tilum*, *tile*, *tilu*, *tila*, *tilre*, or *tilra*, as was necessary. *Til guma* meant a good man, but *tilra gumena*, of good men.

### *After the Norman Conquest*

During the next 300 years the English language had to fight for its life. The Normans spoke French, and after the Norman Conquest French was spoken by all the important people. Only in the labourers' cottages, in the fields where the labourers ploughed and reaped, and in the servants' hall in the castle was English spoken. For about 150 years Normans and English kept sullenly apart from each other; they would not mix in any way, and refused to speak each other's language. Then, strange to tell, English began gradually to drive out French. By A.D. 1400 almost everybody was speaking it.

### *The Normans Learn English*

How did this miracle happen? 'The Normans who came over with William the Conqueror were given lands in England. Some of them had lands also in Normandy; some had not. Travelling in those days was difficult and dangerous, and as the years went by many barons, particularly those who had no lands in Normandy, began to look upon England as their home. Their children were born and brought up in England, and felt still more at home. As time went on (remember, all this happened very slowly) they began to respect the English among whom they lived. English soldiers fought bravely side by side with Norman barons; English farmers looked after their land while they were away at the wars; English merchants grew rich again, and English priests began to occupy high posts in the Church.

As the English would not learn French, the Normans learnt English, not in schools or from books, but by living with and talking to the English. English and Normans began to



intermarry, and their children grew up speaking English. But, naturally, while the Normans learnt English, they kept on using a lot of French words, and these the English learnt from the Normans.

In 1204 the King of France conquered Normandy and took it away from King John of England. Then the Norman nobles who still held lands in Normandy had to decide whether they would be Englishmen or Frenchmen. In 1215 the Normans and the English together, headed by an Englishman, Stephen Langton, Archbishop of Canterbury, made John sign Magna Charta, and then, perhaps for the first time, they felt that they both belonged to one country—England. But see how slowly things moved. It was not till 1258 that the King, Henry III, issued a royal proclamation in English instead of French, and it was not till 1353 that English was ordered to be used in schools in the place of French.

Then a great poet began to write in English, and all who could read enjoyed him. His name was Geoffrey Chaucer, and his greatest work was the "Canterbury Tales." His poems helped the English language in many ways. First of all nobody was ashamed to speak English after so great a poet had written so splendidly in it. Secondly, they helped to decide that in future there should be one English language, and not three. You remember the three dialects? Chaucer wrote in the Midland dialect, which was spoken in the great city of London and at the Universities of Oxford and Cambridge. After his time the Midland dialect became the English language, the King's English, and whatever dialect you might speak, you wrote in this English. Thirdly, Chaucer's poems helped to settle which French words were going to become once and for all English words, for he used both English and French words so naturally that people could not help feeling that the new words were part of the language.

At the same time another very great man, John Wyclif, a learned priest, was busy translating the Bible (from the Greek *biblia*,

meaning writings) into simple and beautiful English prose. His followers, the "poor priests," or Lollards, as they were called, carried his translations to all parts of the country, and everywhere Englishmen heard the Scriptures in their own language. Chaucer

and Wyclif showed between them that men could write in English both graceful and musical poetry and strong, clear, musical prose.

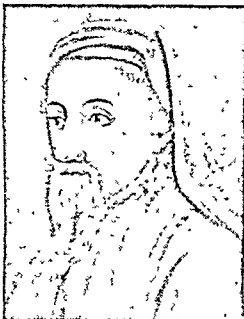
By A.D. 1400 English had triumphed gloriously, and was once more the language of everyone in this country. But it was a very different and, on the whole, a far finer language than when it started on its long struggle with French. To begin with, it had lost most of its inflections; a single ending,—e, had taken the place of a multitude of Old

English endings. This would no doubt have happened in time even if there had been no Norman Conquest, but the coming of French into England hastened it. Even then it took 350 years.

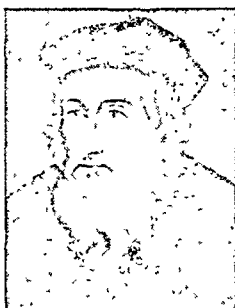
Again, English had borrowed, that is, taken into the language a huge number of French words, and dropped many of its own. For example, *gold-hoard* disappeared and *treasure* took its place, *library* replaced *book-hoard*, *disciple* replaced *learning-knight*, *beauty* replaced *fair-hood*, and so on. Many of the new words which came in had to do with the occupations of rulers and of barons, and with learning: such words as *castle*, *tournament*, *parliament*, *baron*, *duke*, *Bible*, *sermon*, *prison*. But all the same, quite a number of common words came in, too. *Air*, *hour*, *minute*, *second*,

*uncle*, *aunt*, *nephew*, *niece*, *trousers*, *cauliflower*, *cabbage*, and *car* are all French. In some cases both English and French words for the same thing stayed in the language, such as *foe* and *enemy*, *bold* and *courageous*, *unlikely* and *improbable*. Sometimes these pairs of words shared a meaning between them. Thus the French words, *beef*, *mutton*, *pork*, and *venison* came to mean only the flesh of *oxen* or *cows*, *sheep*, *pigs*, and *deer*.

Now the French language is descended from the Latin, so the words that English borrowed from French during this time were really Latin words, or, at any rate,



Chaucer, the first great poet to write in English.



Wyclif, the first translator of the complete Bible into English.

the sons and daughters of Latin words. The next great addition to our language—it was more an addition than a change—was the result of a huge borrowing direct from Latin.

In the Middle Ages, that is, from A.D. 476 (the fall of the West Roman Empire) to about A.D. 1400, hardly anyone could read or write. Nearly everyone who could read joined the Church, and thus nearly all learning was kept in the monasteries where the monks lived, and consisted chiefly of studying books on religion. But from about 1400 onwards, or even earlier, a desire to know things and to learn began to spread through Europe, and in 1453 a great event happened which helped this desire enormously. The Turks captured Constantinople and from that city there fled to Italy and France and Germany learned men carrying with them the wonderful books written by the Greeks and Romans hundreds and hundreds of years before, books which had been almost forgotten in Europe for a thousand years. Everywhere men began to learn Latin and Greek, and to study these books. In England they began rather later than on the Continent, because the Renaissance, or Revival of Learning, spread from East to West across Europe.

England had had many troubles during the century or so before the arrival of the New

Learning, but strong kings were making England prosperous, and men took eagerly to the New Learning. A recent great invention helped them, the invention of printing. William Caxton set up the first printing press in England in 1476, and before many years had passed most people, except the very poorest, could have books of their own. Now that the country was at peace and prosperous, men began to write books again, and as everyone was learning, reading, and often speaking Latin, they frequently wrote their books in that language. They forgot the lesson which Chaucer and Wyclif had taught. When they wrote prose in English, it was a stiff Latin-English prose.

But they wrote poetry in English, and during the second half of the sixteenth century more poetry was written in England than ever before, and perhaps ever since. It became the fashion to write poetry, and every gentleman did so; and all the time they were learning what a wonderful language English really was, and how beautifully and expressively one could say things in it. In their eagerness to say all they wanted to they not only borrowed words right and left, chiefly from Latin, but also made up words, chopped them in two, and twisted their meanings.

Then came the greatest poet of all, William Shakespeare. It is difficult to tell you how tremendously Shakespeare's works have



Shakespeare has shown us what can be done with words and phrases, and has helped to make English the greatest literary language in the world. Here he is seen reciting one of his plays to Queen Elizabeth.



John Bunyan's "Pilgrim's Progress" was written in the same simple language as the Bible, the two most widely read of all books among English speaking people.

helped the English language by showing people how it can be used. There is only one book which has done more, and that is the Authorised Version of the Bible, first printed in 1611. That book has done more than all other books ever printed to make English what it is now, the grandest, most powerful, most expressive, most beautiful language in the world. It has done this very largely because it kept in the language so many of the simple, short, homely words that the Angles and the Saxons used.

Between about 1550 and 1650 the English language added enormously to its stock of words, dropped most of the inflections which had remained after 1400, including the —e, decided upon its alphabet by dropping the two Old English signs for *w* and *th*, settled more or less its spelling and its grammar, and made great changes in its pronunciation. At the same time its writers, Shakespeare, Spenser, Marlowe, Ben Jonson, Milton, and hundreds more made it the greatest literary language in the world. Since that time it has not altered much; it has added many words, but you can read any writer of 1650 almost without difficulty.

Multitudes of words came into our language in that time. A writer in 1619 complained of hearing these comparatively new words: *common, study, justice, pity, mercy, profit, colour, favour*. Many were "learned" words, such as you find in books but do not very often hear in ordinary conversation, words such as *audacious, destruction, ponderous, prodigious*—not to mention such monstrosities as *sufflamine, stultiloquy, ludibundness*, which we soon dropped. So fond of these long, learned words did the writers in the seventeenth century become that for many years it seemed possible that the short, homely Old English words would be driven out of written English at least. Fortunately they were not, and for two chief reasons.

The Authorised Version of the Bible was read by everyone during the seventeenth century, which was the century of fierce religious disputes. Thousands of men and women knew whole books of the Bible off by heart. Then in 1678 John Bunyan published "The Pilgrim's Progress," which, after the Bible, has been read by more English people than any other book. "The Pilgrim's Progress" was written in the same straightforward,

the town where your home is. Somebody has called your street Bedford Street, but it would have made no difference had it been named Weston Street or Paignton Street. You cannot call every street in the town Bedford Street, and it would be distinctly awkward if every boy in the school were called Robinson. Such nouns are called *proper nouns* (L. *proprius*), because they are the property only of the persons or places to which they have been given. They have no general meaning—at least, not as *cat* and *pipe* have meanings. When you are writing you show that you know proper nouns are different from common nouns by always beginning them with a capital letter.

Common nouns can be still further divided into classes. First, there is a useful little class which is easy to explain. When you

#### A VERBAL NOUN



Here *running* is a verbal noun because it is formed from the verb to run.

see a large number of people together you call them a crowd; a large number of soldiers you call an army, of battleships a navy, of sheep or birds a flock. For the sake of using one word instead of several, when you find a group of the same things collected together you give the whole group a name. These names we call *collective nouns*.

Again, there is a kind of noun which is hardly the name for a class of things, but for a kind of material. Such nouns are called simply nouns of *material*, and you will easily be able to think of examples. *Flesh, mutton, calico, sugar, wax* are nouns of material.

Now let us divide common nouns rather differently. Most things to which you give names you can see or hear or feel or taste or smell. The names of such things are called *concrete nouns*. But there are some things you can only think about, and even to think about them you have to draw away your

thoughts, or abstract them from other things. For example, try to think of *colour* without letting any idea of a red ribbon or a blue sky or a green sea come into your mind. Try to think of *colour* without thinking of any colours. You will find it difficult. Think of *happiness* without thinking of any particularly happy time you have spent, or of *roundness* without thinking of a ball or an orange or something round. Such names are called *abstract nouns*. The English language is very rich in abstract nouns. Here are a few: *Beauty, wealth, mischief, height, youth, laughter, whiteness*.

#### Showing the Number of a Noun

In your list you will notice that you put down *father, cloth, sideboard*, because there was only one of each in the room, but you wrote *chairs and books* because there was a number of each to be seen. You added an *s* to the names of the things of which you could see more than one, in obedience to the rule that you must show the *number* of a noun by the form of the word. If you are speaking or writing of *one person or thing*, you use a noun in the *singular number* (singular means "one"), if of more than one of the same thing, you generally add *s*, and the noun is in the *plural number* (plural meaning "more than one").

#### Forming the Plural

Nearly all English nouns add *s* to form their plural. Some nouns find it necessary to add *es*. Nouns that end in *x, ch, sh*, and *z* do, to make it easier to pronounce them. Nouns that already end in *s* in the singular also add *es*. If they did not, the singular and the plural would sound exactly alike. Some words that end in *y* change *y* into *ie* before adding *s*. You need never get confused over these words if you remember that English does not like three vowels together. Two are often found as in *ladies, flies, cities*, but rarely three. You cannot write *monkeies* or *daies* or *plaies*. So also with nouns ending in *o*, which are allowed to add *es*, provided that three vowels do not come together. Many words ending in *o*, however, like *piano* and *solo*, are content to add *s* alone. Words ending in *f* or *fe* frequently change *f* or *fe* into *ve* before adding *s*, as in words like *knives, leaves, or wolves*, because in Anglo-Saxon or Old English *f* between two vowels was sounded like *v*. So with *th*, as in *bath, baths*.

There are only ten nouns which do not

add *s* to form the plural, that is to say, if we take no notice of foreign words, such as *radius*, which still keep their foreign form in both singular and plural. These ten are *man*, *woman*, *foot*, *goose*, *tooth*, *louse*, *mouse*, *dormouse*, *ox*, and *child*. *Brother* and *cow* might almost be included although they now take *s*. You seldom hear *brethren* and *kine* except in church.

English has almost entirely given up two great rules of language which affect nouns. The first is that every noun shall have a *gender* (L. *genus*, kind)—that is, shall be able to be called *he*, *she*, or *it*. In French, for example, the name for a table is *feminine*, and a table has to be called "*she*"; so has a window or a chair; but the words for a wall, and a book are *masculine*, and are called "*he*." French has only kept two genders, but Greek and Latin had three. A book in Latin was "*he*," a window "*she*," and a song "*it*." Nouns that were "*it*" were called *neuter* nouns, and the rule was that every noun and pronoun and adjective should show by its endings its particular gender.

### *Masculine, Feminine, and Neuter*

English has given up all this. In English names of male persons and some male animals are masculine, and names of females feminine. Names of things that are not alive have no gender in English. You may call them *neuter* (which means "*neither*") if you like, and you may call those names, such as *friend*, *cousin*, *baby*, *elephant*, *ant*, which may refer to either sex, *common gender*, but there is no need for you to learn rules about this.

For those nouns, such as *prince*, *giant*, *lion*, which still have a feminine form there is practically only one way of making the change, and that is by adding *ess*. Otherwise we use two distinct words, such as *brother* and *sister*, *father* and *mother*, *gentleman* and *lady*. Occasionally we show gender by adding a masculine or feminine word to the noun, and make a compound word, such as *he-goat*, *she-goat*, *billy-goat*, *nanny-goat*, *man-servant*, *maid-servant*.

### *Sense depends on Order*

The second great rule we have almost given up is that a noun shall show by its form its *case*. In English the sense of a sentence now depends upon the order in which the words stand, and so it is unnecessary for words to change to show *case*,

### THREE DIFFERENT KINDS OF NOUNS



*John, Mary, and Brighton are proper nouns.*



*Doll is a common noun.*



*Group is a collective noun.*

because case is intended to show the relations between words, and these are already quite clear. It is plain that the sentences, "The boy hit the ball," and "The ball hit the boy," have entirely different meanings, though the words used are the same. In the first sentence *boy* is the name of the *subject* who hits, and the ball is the *object* hit. In the second sentence it is the other way round: *ball* is subject, and *boy* is object.

We still say in English that a noun is in the *subjective* or *nominative* case when it is the subject of a sentence, and in the *objective* case when it is the object of a verb's action, or "governed" by a preposition as when we say "on the table." But no noun ever changes its form for either of these cases; in some European languages, however, it does.

English nouns have a *possessive* case, and to show this they do change. They add 's in the singular, and ' in the plural. The ' (apostrophe) is used instead of a letter which has been dropped, and in the possessive case this letter is *e*. We keep this case change because it shortens our sentences and is convenient. It is easier to say *John's birthday* than *the birthday of John*.

The 's must never be confused with the s of the plural, with which it has no connexion. Plain s is added to show plural number, 's or ' to show possessive case. Here is an example:—

The boys in the first eleven left school early.

The boys' team played exceedingly well.

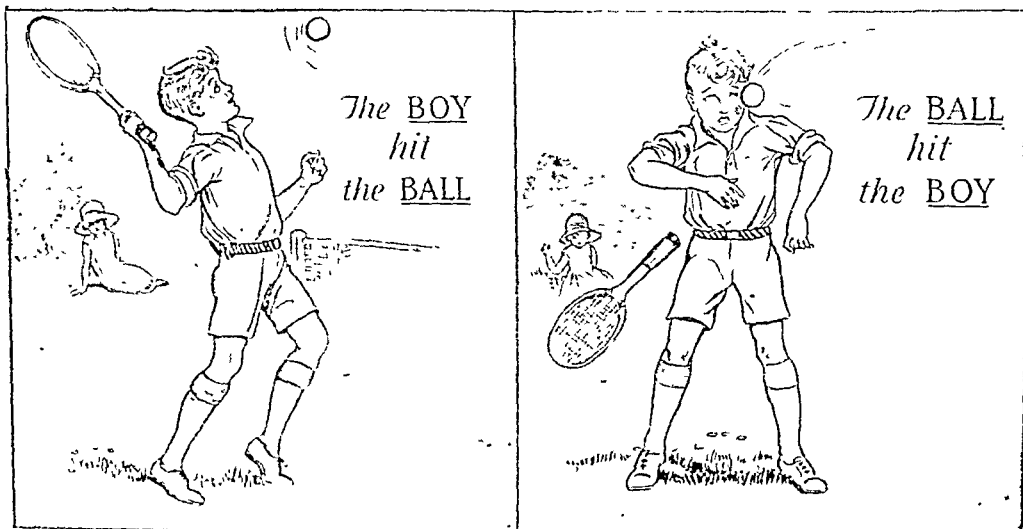
Nouns are very hard-worked words; there are so many things to be named. So it is not surprising to find that many nouns have two or more distinct meanings. *Ball* means a round object with which games are played, and also a meeting where people dance. *Bat* means a special kind of club to hit a ball with, and a winged animal which flies by night. *Club* means a piece of wood, and a society of people.

Even though we make nouns carry the weight of two or more meanings, there are still not enough to go round. So we borrow words to act as nouns from other parts of speech, and particularly from the verb. Those that we borrow from the verb are often called *verbal nouns*. They generally end in *ing*. In the sentence, "Running is good exercise," *running* is a noun. In the sentence, "He was running," it is a verb.

Even with all our borrowings, there are not enough nouns, and we frequently have to use several words to name one thing, as in the following sentences,

No one knew *how to get home*.  
No one knew *what he did*.

We have no single word for *how to get home*, so we use a *noun phrase*, and we have no single word for *what he did*, so we use a *noun clause*. These we can make up as we like. The difference between a clause and a phrase is that a clause is a sentence, but a phrase is not. *He did* is a complete sentence, but *how to get home* has no meaning by itself.



The case of a noun can be shown without changing its form. In the sentence "the boy hit the ball," boy is the subject and ball the object. In the sentence "the ball hit the boy," ball is the subject and boy the object.

## 2.—ADJECTIVES: THE WORDS THAT HELP NOUNS

*How they Add to the Meanings of the First Part of Speech*

SUPPOSE that it is the first day of the holidays. You and a friend have arranged that if the weather is fine you will go out all day on your bicycles, taking your lunch and tea with you. In the morning you wake up early, to find the sun shining gaily into your room, and you think at once, "Hooray! *Blue* sky! What a *grand* morning! We shall have a *lovely* time!"

It would hardly be the same thing to say, "Sky! What a morning! We shall have a time!" No; you feel you need *adjectives* to describe the *sky*, *morning*, and *time*. The adjectives *blue*, *grand*, and *lovely* add a great deal of meaning to the nouns you have used.

That is what *adjectives* are for, to add to the meaning of nouns, to give them more particular meanings. Most adjectives do this by adding a description to the nouns with which they are used, but some do it by pointing out their nouns as separate from all others.

If you want to describe your house to someone who has never seen it, you use adjectives. You say, "It is a *big* house with a *red* roof and *four* *tall* chimneys." Or supposing that on your birthday you are given a puppy as a present, and you are talking about it at school. Your talk is full of adjectives. You say, "I've had a *beautiful* little puppy given me. He's *black* and *white*, and he's got *soft*, *silky* ears and *long*, *curly* hair."

All adjectives which describe are called *descriptive* adjectives, or adjectives of *quality*, because each adds a special quality to the noun with which it is used. *Beautiful* adds the quality of *beauty*, *little* the quality of *littleness*, to puppy.

There are thousands of adjectives of quality in our language, and we are constantly adding more. When you think of all the

marvellous things in the world to be described you can hardly wonder that we are for ever searching for fresh adjectives.

Descriptive adjectives are used very simply in three ways. First, you may put one or more in front of the noun described.

- (1) The *big* boy led the *timid* old lady across the *crowded* street.

Second, you may put the adjective or adjectives after the noun. This is not very often done, and is much more common in poetry than in prose.

- (2) Ben Battle was a soldier *bold*.

The ships, *majestic* and *mighty*, steamed out of harbour.

Third, and this use is very common, you may separate the adjective from its noun and place it after the verb; this is called using the adjective *predicatively*—that is, as part of the predicate. This use is most common with the verb "to be."

- (3) The girls were *cheerful* and *gay*.

His father was very *clever*.

Our old horse has gone *lame*.

In addition to adding to the meanings of nouns, adjectives of quality enable you to compare one thing, or group of things, with another. Every descriptive adjective has three *degrees of comparison*, and for two of these degrees changes are made in the form of the adjective, or the word *more* or *most* is placed in front of it.

The first degree is the *positive*, the ordinary form of the adjective. No comparison is made; you simply state positively "A *fat* pig," or "An *expensive* football," or "The road is *wide*."

The second degree is the *comparative*. To change an adjective from the positive to the comparative degree you add *-er* to it, or use the word *more* in front of it. As a

### A DESCRIPTIVE ADJECTIVE



*New* is an adjective, because it adds to the meaning of the noun bicycle.

general rule, to an adjective of one or two syllables you add—*er*, with an adjective of more than two syllables you use *more*. The comparative degree enables you to compare one thing or class of things with another.

Farmer Brown's pigs are *fatter* than Farmer Reed's.

This football is *more expensive* than that one.

The road here is *wider* than ours at home.

The third degree is the *superlative*, to form which you add—*est* or put the word *most* in front of the adjective. The superlative enables you to compare one thing, or class of things, with all others of the same kind.

At the show I saw the *fattest* pigs I have ever seen.

This is the *most expensive* football you can buy.

The new road at Byeham is the *widest* in England

### *Dangers of the Superlative*

You should be very careful about using the superlative degree. People who exaggerate are always using superlatives carelessly, and so their word cannot be entirely relied upon. By using a superlative without thought you may make an unjust statement. Unless you are certain, it is better to use the word *very* with your adjective instead of the superlative form. For example:—

*Ellen is the stupidest girl in London*

This is a cruel and probably an unjust statement about Ellen, and very likely all that the person means who says it is

*Ellen is a very stupid girl*

Besides adding to the meaning of a noun, adjectives at the same time lessen the number of things to which it may apply. The word *boy* by itself may refer to any boy in the world, but *big boy* cuts out at once all small boys, and *big fat boy* cuts out all small boys and also all big boys who are not fat.

### *Adjectives of Quantity*

The adjectives of a second class add very little to the meaning of a noun, but they point out the number of things to which it may refer, or limit its application, much more clearly. These are the adjectives of *quantity*, which answer the question, *How much?* or *How many?* just as adjectives of quality answer the question *Of what kind?* Adjectives of quantity include all the numerals, both *cardinal* (one, two, three, etc.) and *ordinal* (first, second, third, etc.).

Jack made *twenty* runs.  
Bill took *third* place in the examination

Nothing is told us here of what kind of runs Jack made—whether they were misses through the slips or good, clean boundaries. But the exact number is told. Nor is anything told us about the kind of place Jill took. She may have been a bad third, a long way behind the second girl, or a good one, only a mark or two behind. These adjectives cannot be compared.

*Numeral* adjectives, as these are often called, are very exact in their limitation of the noun, but there are other adjectives of quantity which are not so precise. *All*, *whole*, *half* may seem to be very exact until you think of sentences like

*All* people that on earth do dwell,  
*Half* the proceeds will go to charity  
The *whole* story will never be told.

Notice, by the way, the curious habit *all* and *half* have of coming before *the*, and sometimes *a*, instead of after as adjectives usually do.

*Much*, *many*, *most*, *few*, *some*, *several*, clearly do not point out exact quantities. Of the first three all you can say is that they mean a great number, probably more than half; of the second three that they do not mean a great number. The obvious name for such adjectives is *indefinite* adjectives of quantity. So indefinite are they that *many* and *few* possess comparative and superlative forms like adjectives of quality.

### *Adjectives that Point Out*

Lastly, the adjectives of a third class have in themselves no meaning at all. They simply point out. For this reason they are called *distinctive* adjectives, because they distinguish one noun from another, or *pronominal* adjectives, because they are so closely connected with pronouns that in many cases the same word is used. *His*, *her*, *myself*, *yourself*, *itself*, *this*, *that*, *which*, *what*, *whose*, *each*, *either*, *neither*, *one*, *none*, all distinctive adjectives, are also used as pronouns. It is a question of whether the word is used with a noun or not.

*This* collar is dirty. (*This*—adjective.)  
*This* is the fellow I want. (*This*—pronoun.)  
*Which* apple did you take? (*Which*—adjective.)  
There are two apples. *Which* will you have? (*Which*—pronoun.)  
Give him *one* of *each*. (*One*—each—pronouns.)  
*Each* girl took *one* orange. (*Each one*—adjectives.)

This class of adjectives is often divided into a number of smaller classes according



to the way in which the adjectives are used. Thus *which*, *what*, *whose* are *interrogative* adjectives when they ask a question,

*Whose* book is this?

and *relative* adjectives when they show the relation between two parts of a sentence.

I do not know—*whose* book it is.

There is no need to go into all these classes, of which as many as seven have been drawn up, but a note about the words *a* and *the*, which are distinctive adjectives, and yet different in a way from all others, may help you. *A* is often called the *indefinite article*, and *the* the *definite article*. These words do the work of adjectives, but do it in such an insignificant way that they hardly seem worth the name of adjectives. Very often, when we use them, we could miss them out without changing the sense; but we should never dream of doing without them entirely.

### Using an Adjective Subjectively

There is one question that may be asked about adjectives. Can they be used with noun substitutes just in the same way as with nouns? No, they cannot. With pronouns, which are the most usual substitutes for nouns, it is only on very rare occasions that you find an adjective used in front, or *subjectively*, as it is called. This can be done, however. You can say

- (1) *Poor* me! What shall I do?
- (2) *Silly* you to do such a thing!

You can use adjectives predicatively with pronouns as much as you like.

- (1) You have been very *good*, so I will be *kind* to you this once.
- (2) It is *cold* to-day.

With adjectives used as nouns you can often use other adjectives. You can say on a flag day

Please will you spare a copper for the *poor* blind?

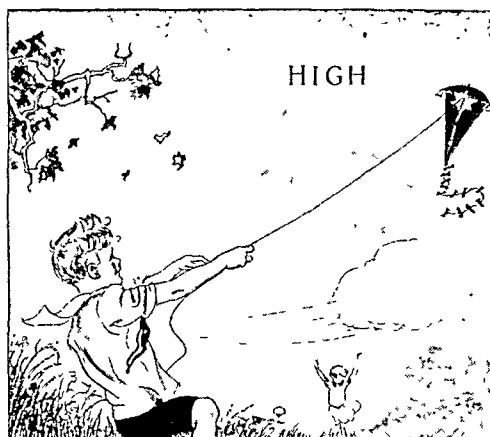
and people talk about the *idle* rich, the *deserving* poor, the *mighty* deep, the *early* 'twenties. It is not so usual to employ distinctive adjectives with adjectives used as nouns, but *a* and *the* can always be thus used.

It is very uncommon to find numeral adjectives with participles used as nouns, since these nouns are nearly always employed in the singular only. Adjectives of quantity are common:—

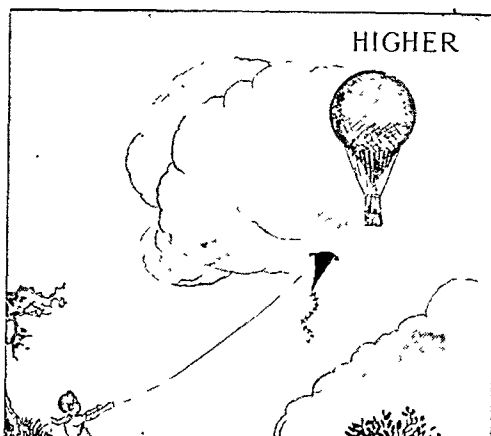
He doesn't like *much* walking.

With the infinitive used as a noun, with a

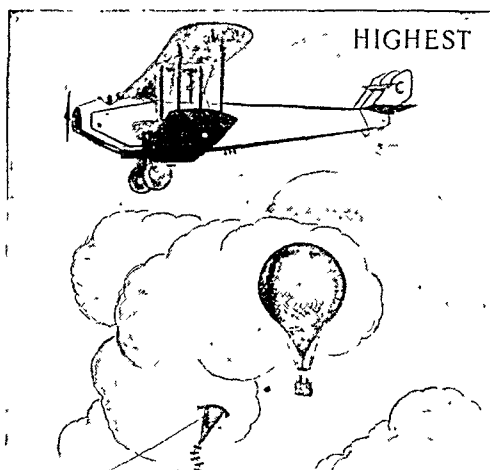
### COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES



The kite is *high*: *high* is the positive degree of comparison.



The balloon is *higher*: *higher* is the comparative degree of comparison.



The aeroplane is *highest*: *highest* is the superlative degree of comparison.

noun phrase or clause you can use an adjective of quality predicatively :—

- (1) To swear is *foolish*.
- (2) To find the right answer is *difficult*.
- (3) Whither he is going is *uncertain*.

No adjectives of quality in our language ever make any change of form to show number, or gender, or case, nor do adjectives of quantity; but some pronominal adjectives change both for gender and number. So we have *his*, *her*, and *its*, and a plural form *their*. Other pronominal adjectives change for number only; *this* becomes *these* and *that* becomes *those*. The word *self* changes to *selves*.

As with nouns, so with adjectives; there are not enough. We are constantly forced to use Phrases and Clauses as substitutes for adjectives :—

The man *with the black eye* appeared in court. (Adjective phrase.)

The gate, *which had been damaged by the bull*, would not open. (Adjective clause.)

Many nouns, as you were told in the chapter on them, are frequently used as adjectives. In winter you see bills announcing grand football matches, in summer *cricket* matches. At Christmas parties you wear *paper* hats. During your summer holidays you go in for sea bathing or *country* walks. At dinner you have *mutton* chops followed by a rice pudding or a *rhubarb* or *gooseberry* tart. At school you meet in the *assembly* hall, learn *history* lessons or *geography* lessons, and use *drawing* boards in the *art* room.

On the other hand, as adjectives are always used with nouns to add to their meanings, it is only to be expected that many adjectives come to be used as nouns. Particularly is this the case when an adjective is regularly

used with a certain noun. Because grass is nearly always green we talk about the village *green*. Because the sea is deep, we often refer to it as the *deep*. The noun *people* is often omitted, and so such adjectives as *poor*, *rich*, *proud*, *wealthy*, become nouns, and we say: *The poor* suffered dreadfully. In talking about time we make numbers into nouns when we say: "It is *eleven-thirty*," or "I will be there at *three*."

In fact, so easily nowadays can adjectives be used as nouns, and nouns as adjectives, that it is quite possible that some day these two parts of speech will become one, and instead of learning about Nouns and Adjectives, we shall learn about the Noun-Adjective. Even proper nouns are forced to act as adjectives, as when we say the *London* train or the *Yarmouth* sands.

Adjectives also borrow largely from the verb to increase their store. Both the Present Participle and the Past Participle of nearly every verb have to act also as adjectives :—

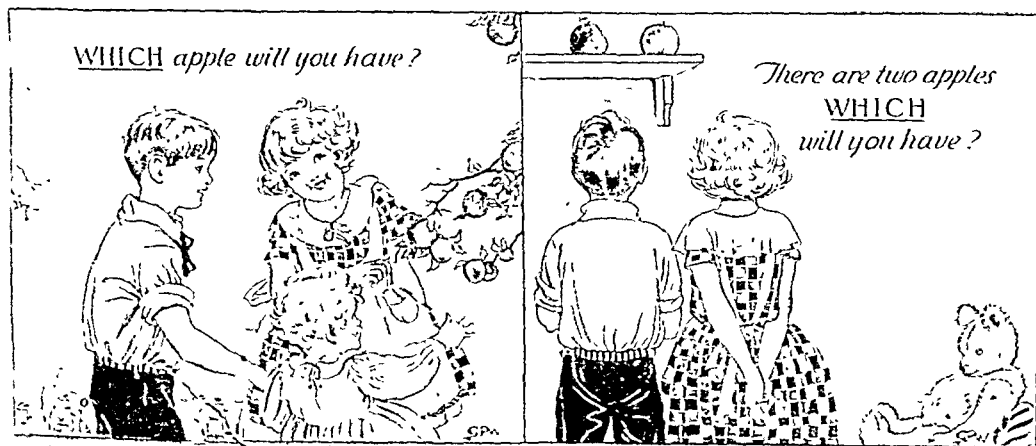
She had *broken* my best teapot. (*Broken*—past participle, verb.)

A *broken* vase can be mended. (*Broken*—adjective.)

He was *running* well when he stumbled (*Running*—present participle, verb.)

Here is a stream of *running* water (*Running*—adjective.)

Adjectives borrow also from other parts of speech. We talk about the *under* side; *under* is usually a preposition or an adverb. We say the *then* king; *then* is usually an adverb. This is one of the great advantages of English, that you can so readily employ a word as one part of speech, although originally it was another.



Here the inclusion of the word *apple* makes *which* an adjective.

In this sentence *which* is used in the form of a pronoun.

### 3.—THE HARD-WORKED PRONOUN

*Why Speaking and Writing would be Clumsy and Awkward Without It*

SOME of the inventions of to-day are truly wonderful. Think of the aeroplane. In 1909 there was tremendous excitement because a man had invented a flying machine which actually crossed the Strait of Dover, a distance of about twenty-two miles. In 1927 a young man got into his aeroplane in America and flew across the Atlantic to land in Paris. The brains of many clever men, known and unknown, have worked hard to make such extraordinary progress possible.

Ours is not the only age in which there have been marvellous inventions. Primitive man, thousands upon thousands of years ago, invented things just as wonderful, though to us they seem so simple that we can hardly think of them as inventions at all. But the man who first sawed two slices off a tree-trunk and made a pair of wheels was a genius. So was the man who discovered that to count in tens was the easiest method of all. So was the man who first thought of using pronouns instead of nouns.

It is not, of course, necessary to believe that one man invented a complete set of pronouns ready for use, but then, no one man invented the aeroplane. Pronouns no doubt came into use gradually, and were constantly improved and made more simple. However they arose, they remain the greatest invention in language. They are the labour-saving device of language, and our speaking and writing would be clumsy and awkward without them.

It is usual to say that pronouns stand instead of nouns, but that does not tell us half of their value. Pronouns are such ready and willing workers that they undertake much more than that. They have no meaning in themselves, but they are ready to take on any meaning that they are asked to take. They will stand instead, not simply of a noun, but

of a noun together with all the words that have been added to it to enlarge its meaning.

The pretty little white house in Ditching Lane, the one with the thatched roof and the lattice windows, was burnt down yesterday. In half an hour it was a complete ruin.

In the second sentence *it* stands instead of "The pretty little white house in Ditching Lane, the one with the thatched roof and the lattice windows." A goodly task for one small word! *It* is one of the busiest words in our language.

All our pronouns are hard-worked. Here is an imaginary conversation between a boy and his sister, the day after a party to which the girl could not go because she had a cold :—

John : We had a splendid time yesterday.

Bad luck you couldn't go.

Joan : What did you do?

John : We had competitions. We were blindfolded, and

we had to throw a ball into a bucket. We had three shots each, and I won the prize, because I was the only one who did it twice. Dick got in once, but he couldn't get anywhere near the other two times. You should have seen him when he got the first one in. He got ever so excited.

Joan : Oh, I would love to have seen him. Was Amy Philips there?

John : I don't know. She may have been, but I didn't see her. You see, there was such a crowd of us there.

In this conversation there are 116 words, and of these thirty are pronouns. Only twice are actual names of persons mentioned, but think of how many times names would have had to be mentioned if there were no pronouns!

It is very easy to divide pronouns into classes according to the ways in which they are used. First, we have a very complete set of personal pronouns. Here they are :—

Subject : I, we, you, he, she, it, they.

Object : Me, us, you, him, her, it, them.

Possessive : Mine, ours, yours, his, hers theirs.

#### A POSSESSIVE PRONOUN



*His* is a possessive pronoun, because it shows that the rabbits belong to the boy.

You will see why these are called personal pronouns. You will see, too, that they change in form to show number, gender, and case. You changes least of all, but we still have the old singular forms *thou, thee, thine, and ye*, though they are not now used in ordinary writing and speaking.

The personal pronouns are said to belong to one of *three persons*. The person who is speaking or writing of himself says *I* and *me* and *mine*. If he includes others with himself he says *we* and *us* and *ours*. These are pronouns of the *first person*. The person or persons spoken to come second, and so *you* and *yours* (and *thou, thee, thine, ye*) are pronouns of the *second person*. The rest of the personal pronouns are in the *third person*, and are used instead of the names of persons or things spoken about.

#### A DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUN



These is a demonstrative pronoun, because it points out something—the lanterns.

There is no need for pronouns of the first and second persons to change for gender, as it is usually quite clear whether the speaker and the person spoken to is male or female. Notice that in the possessive case *mine* does not end in *s*, and that there is no apostrophe before the *s* in *ours, yours, his, hers, theirs*. The possessive case form *its* (not to be confused with *it's*, a contraction of *it is*) has not been included in the list of personal pronouns, because it is nearly always used as an adjective. *His* is used as an adjective just as often as a pronoun.

Here are the books. Tell me which is *his* (*his*, pronoun).

Which is *his* book? (*his*, adjective).

By adding the word *self* to certain cases of a personal pronoun (*selves* in the plural) we get *reflexive* pronouns, so called because whenever they are used the subject and the object of the sentence both refer to the same person. The action is said to be reflected or

thrown back—you know how a looking-glass reflects your own likeness.

I hit myself (*I—myself*).

These reflexive pronouns are often used, too, as *emphatic* pronouns.

He told us not to go there, but *he* goes *himself*.

Notice that in the third person we add *self* and *selves* to the objective case form of the pronouns, but in the first and second persons we add them to *my, our, and your*, words which are adjectives.

The personal pronouns form the largest group of pronouns and, unlike most others, can never be used as adjectives. Our next group contains only four words, *this, these, that, those*, all of which are used just as frequently as adjectives. These words are always used to point out, and so are called *demonstrative* pronouns (L. *demonstrare*, to point out). If they are used instead of a noun, they are pronouns; if with a noun, they are adjectives.

Did you see *that*? (*that*, pronoun).

Did you see *that* girl? (*that*, adjective).

Where shall I put *these*? (*these*, pronoun).

Where shall I put *these* cakes? (*these*, adjective).

*That* is also used as a *relative* pronoun. We shall be talking about relative pronouns later.

A third class of pronouns is used for asking questions. This is the class of *interrogative* pronouns (L. *interrogare*, to ask questions). The interrogative pronouns are *who, whom, whose, which, and what*. Of these *whom* and *whose* are the objective and possessive cases of *who*.

*Who, whom, and whose* are used instead of names of persons. *Which* is used instead of names of persons or things, *what* instead of names of things only. *Whose, which, and what* can be used as adjectives, *who* and *whom* cannot.

There is one point to notice. These pronouns are used in both *direct* and *indirect* questions.

*Who* will stand on either hand,

And keep the bridge with me?

(direct question).

Tell us *who* it was (indirect question).

This is important, because all these words are used also as *relative* pronouns. The relative pronouns are *who, whom, whose, which, what, and that*, and they are probably the handiest words in the language.

They are somewhat difficult to understand. Their name does not fully explain what they

do. They are called relative pronouns because they are always connected with, that is, related to, some noun or pronoun. This noun or pronoun usually comes before the relative pronoun, and so is called the *antecedent* (L. *ante*, in front of, *cedere*, to go).

The MAN *who* saved the girl's life disappeared into the crowd.

Here are the FLOWERS *which* you asked me to buy.

But relative pronouns do more than relate to an antecedent. They also join sentences together, and so are *conjunctions* as well as pronouns. For this reason they are sometimes called *conjunctive* pronouns. If you had to write the sentences above without relative pronouns you would have to say

The man saved the girl's life (and) he disappeared into the crowd.

You asked me to buy the flowers (and) here they are.

A second difficulty about relative pronouns is this. In English to-day it is possible, both in speaking and in writing, to omit one. We consider that it is understood to be there.

I've lost the pencil (*that*) you gave me.  
The girl (*whom*) you mean has left the school.

We saw the tiger (*which*) the Prince of Wales killed.

The relative pronouns most often understood are *that* and *which*. *Who* and *whose*, though, are never omitted.

In the same way it is possible to omit the antecedent. Whenever you find *what* used as a relative pronoun you can be sure the antecedent is understood. The antecedents of *who* and *whom* can also be understood.

John is sure to have found out  
(the name of) *who* has the key.  
(the person)

I know exactly *what* you mean.

A third difficulty about relative pronouns is their position in the sentence. The sense in an English sentence depends upon the order of the words, and by putting the relative pronoun in the wrong place it is easy to turn sense into nonsense.

The engine in the railway station *which* was blowing off steam made a tremendous noise.

This sentence means that the railway station was blowing off steam, which is absurd. By moving *which* was blowing off steam in front of *in the railway station* you get a perfectly good sentence. As a general rule, keep the relative pronoun as close as you can to its antecedent.

The antecedent of a relative pronoun may sometimes come after the pronoun instead of

before it. This is more frequent in poetry than in prose, but it is quite common in prose, particularly when the word *ever* or *soever* is added to the relative pronoun. We often, for emphasis, say *whoever*, *whosoever*, *whatever*, *whatsoever*, *whichever*, and in familiar conversation *whichever*, and we use these words both as relative and as interrogative pronouns.

*Whoever* thinks he can do this alone (*he*) ought to be locked up.

*Whatever* you decide to do, it must be done at once.

You must not think that because so much has been said about the difficulty of relative pronouns they are difficult to use. They are not. In ninety-nine cases out of a hundred you will use them perfectly correctly. It is only when we begin to examine closely into exactly what they do that we find they

#### A PRONOUN DENOTING NUMBER



*Second* is a pronoun denoting number. It answers the question, Which in order of sequence.

are not so simple as they seem. There is, however, one very common mistake uneducated people do make very frequently, and that is to use *what* with an antecedent. It is wrong to say

The man *what* was going up the street told me; or, the cow *what* you saw was sold for £50.

This is never allowed in good English.

*Each*, *either*, and *neither* are called *distributive* pronouns, because when you use them you think of things as being separate one from another, or distributed. These words again can all be used as adjectives.

*Neither* is fit to be used (*neither*, pronoun).

*Neither* girl could tell why she had done it (*neither*, adjective).

Lastly, there is a class of pronouns whose business is to point out, but to do so without pointing out any special persons or things. *Anyone*, *someone*, *anybody*, *somebody*, *one* (when it means *any one*), *another*, *any*, *some*, belong to this class, and these words are known as *indefinite* pronouns.

# 4.—VERBS: THE GENERALS OF THE LANGUAGE ARMY

*Master Words which Control all the Others*

WHENEVER a number of people set out to do anything big together, it is necessary for them to have leaders. An army without generals to command it, or a navy without admirals, would be of very little use. Imagine an army in which there was no one to give orders, in which nobody knew what to do or what anybody else was doing! Imagine the fleet leaving Portsmouth with no one to give instructions where to go or what to do!

So in the great army of words generals are needed, and the *verbs* are the generals. A sentence without a verb is just a collection of words with no instructions what to do. Look at these words:—

The tall man . . . the frightened boy.  
The little girl . . . her doll.  
Father . . . in the garden.

You have here the names of six persons and things, but what are you told about them? Nothing. There is no word yet to give orders to these names, to turn them into sentences. But add a verb to each of these groups of words and see how they at once become sentences full of meaning:—

The tall man *hit* the frightened boy.  
The little girl *has lost* her doll.  
Father *is digging* in the garden.

Any other part of speech can be absent from a sentence, but a verb cannot be, for it is the master word which controls all the others and turns them into a sentence. How does it do it? Well, think of our army once again. Every army is divided into two parts. In the first part are the men who fight, the infantry, cavalry, gunners, and the men who assist them, who bring food up to them and look after them when they are wounded. The second part consists of the staff, which gives orders to the first part. At the head

of the staff is the general, who controls everyone.

Now this is something like what happens in the sentence. Every sentence is divided into two parts, the *subject* and the *predicate*, and every word in the sentence must belong to one of those two parts. The chief word in the subject is a noun or pronoun (or a substitute for a noun, such as a noun clause), but the chief word in the predicate, the verb, is also the chief word in the whole sentence. It gives the orders, and sets everything moving.

If we divide up the first sentence we gave above as an illustration we get

The tall man (subject)  
hit the frightened boy (predicate).

Without the verb *hit* we could only have guessed what passed between the man and the boy. *Hit* and the words with it (including the object, see next page) *predicate*—that is, say something about the subject.

The verb, then, has the most important work to do of all the parts of speech. So important is its work that the first writers of grammar books called it simply *the word* (L: *verbum*, meaning

word), ranking it even higher than *nomen*, the name or noun.

How does the most important word in the sentence go about its work? It says something about the subject. Now, if you take any subject, any noun, you can say that the thing of which it is the name is either (1) doing something or having something done to it, or (2) that it is something. That means that there are two kinds of verbs, those that predicate *actions* and those that predicate *states*. Of these two classes, the first is far the more numerous. We will examine then the verbs predicating actions first, and see how they work, and then turn to the verbs predicating states. In many

## AN AUXILIARY VERB



Auxiliary verbs help verbs. Here *should* helps the verb *love*.

ways their tasks are similar, but there are some very obvious differences.

Let us consider those sentences which we wrote down a short while ago. Here they are :—

The tall man *hit* the frightened boy.  
The little girl *has lost* her doll.  
Father *is digging* in the garden.

All the verbs here predicate actions, but the third, *is digging*, is an action which is expressed rather more simply than the other two. If someone were to say to you, "Father is digging," you have at once a picture of *father* (subject) and the action *is digging* (predicate). You have a complete sentence expressing a complete thought. But if someone were to say, "The tall man *hit*," you would immediately feel you had not a complete sentence, because you would want to know whom or what he hit. And if someone said "The little girl *has lost*," you would want to know whether it is her mother, or her hair-ribbon, or her doll, or what it is that she has lost.

The action expressed by the words *is digging* is complete when it has a subject; the actions expressed by *hit* and *has lost* are not complete until they have an *object* on which the action is performed as well as a subject which performs it. Verbs which need an object are called *transitive*, because

#### AN IRREGULAR VERB



An irregular verb is one that is either conjugated in an unusual way or not at all. *Must* is an example.

their action passes on to some person or thing (L.L. *transitivus*, from *transire*, to pass on). Verbs which do not need an object are called *intransitive*, that is, not transitive.

The object, like the subject, is a noun or pronoun, or a noun substitute, and to it

may be added other parts of speech to enlarge its meaning, just as other parts of speech may be added to the subject or the predicate to enlarge their meanings. Notice that a phrase like *in the garden* is not an object; it is only an enlargement of the predicate, telling you where father is digging. Here is one

#### A PASSIVE VERB



When the subject has something done to it the verb is said to be in the passive voice. Here cakes is the subject and *baked* the verb.

of our sentences enlarged and divided into subject and predicate, including object :—

The tall man, who was dressed in rags and carried a heavy stick in his hand (subject), hit brutally time after time, and each time more viciously (predicate), the poor little frightened boy, who did nothing to defend himself (object).

In English, as you know, we make words work hard, often giving them two or more separate meanings or making them act as more than one part of speech. So we make many verbs act both transitively and intransitively. For example :—

- (1) John *is burning* the weeds in the garden  
(weeds—object, transitive)
- (2) The weeds *are burning* merrily  
(no object, intransitive)
- (1) Joan *has hidden* my exercise book  
(my exercise book—object, transitive)
- (2) Many smugglers *have hidden* in this cave  
(no object, intransitive)

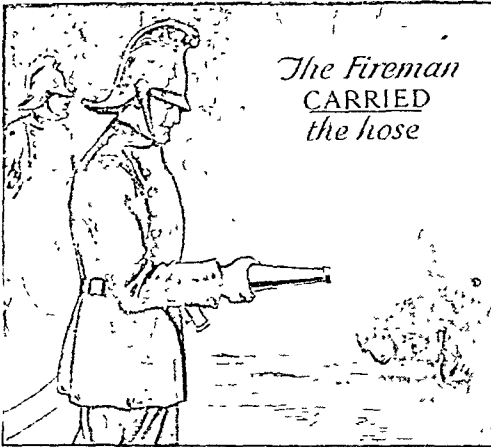
Whether a verb is transitive or intransitive depends entirely on how it is used.

Now, we said that the verb might say of the subject that it was having something done to it, as well as that it was doing something. Consider these sentences :—

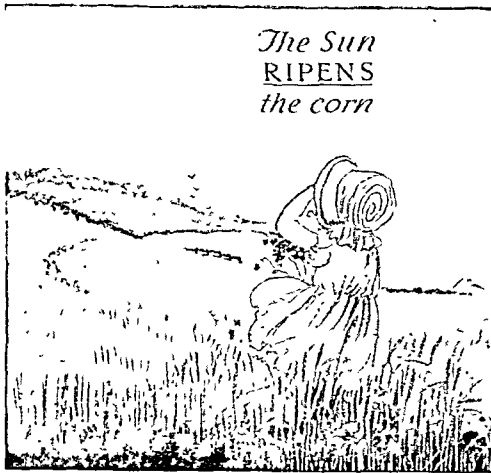
- (1) The boy *hit* the ball.
- (2) The boy *is hit* by the ball.

In both sentences *the boy* is the subject, but the sentences mean two very different

TRANSITIVE VERBS



Carried is a transitive verb because it requires an object—hose in this case.



In this sentence *ripens* is the transitive verb and corn the object.



Here rose is the object and *picked* is the transitive verb.

things, as you would know if you were the boy and the ball were a hard one. In both cases something is said about the boy, but in the first there is an object, *the ball*, which he *hits*, while in the second he is himself the object which is *hit*. In the second sentence the subject is also the object. The difference is shown by the form of the verb, and is called *voice*. When the subject is active and does something the verb is said to be in the *active voice*; when the subject is passive, not active, when it has something done to it, the verb is said to be in the *passive voice*. As in the passive there is an object of the action, you will see that only transitive verbs can have a passive voice.

Now let us consider the time at which an action can be said to happen, because this is shown by the form of the verb. We can say

- (1) The boy *is eating* the cake
- (2) The boy *ate* the cake
- (3) The boy *will eat* the cake

and the form of the verb shows us in (1) that the boy is doing it now, in the present, in (2) that he did it in the past, in (3) that he will do it in the future. These changes in the form of the verb are called *tense*, from L. *tempus*, which became in French *temps*, meaning time.

The English verb of action is rich in tenses. There are three principal tenses for each division of time—present, past, future. That makes nine principal tenses. Here they are:—

- |                                 |   |
|---------------------------------|---|
| (1) Simple present              | —The boy <i>eats</i> the cake.            |
| Continuous or imperfect present | —The boy <i>is eating</i> the cake.       |
| Perfect present                 | —The boy <i>has eaten</i> the cake.       |
| (2) Simple past                 | —The boy <i>ate</i> the cake.             |
| Continuous or imperfect past    | —The boy <i>was eating</i> the cake.      |
| Perfect past                    | —The boy <i>had eaten</i> the cake.       |
| (3) Simple future               | —The boy <i>will eat</i> the cake.        |
| Continuous or imperfect future  | —The boy <i>will be eating</i> the cake.  |
| Perfect future                  | —The boy <i>will have eaten</i> the cake. |

The simple tense, you see, says nothing more than that the action happens, happened, or will happen. The imperfect or continuous tense shows the action going on; it is a not perfected, that is, not finished action. The perfect tense shows a finished or completed action.

The names of the tenses are often given in the opposite order to that which we have



used ; for example, the perfect tense, future, is generally called the future perfect, and so on. The perfect tense, past, is usually called the pluperfect.

Transitive verbs, which have a passive voice, can of course have all these nine tenses in passive form.

- |                                 |  |
|---------------------------------|--|
| (1) Simple present              | —The cake <i>is</i> eaten by the girl.             |
| Continuous or imperfect present | —The cake <i>is being</i> eaten by the girl.       |
| Perfect present                 | —The cake <i>has been</i> eaten by the girl.       |
| (2) Simple past                 | —The cake <i>was</i> eaten by the girl.            |
| Continuous or imperfect past    | —The cake <i>was being</i> eaten by the girl.      |
| Perfect past                    | —The cake <i>had been</i> eaten by the girl.       |
| (3) Simple future               | —The cake <i>will be</i> eaten by the girl.        |
| Continuous or imperfect future  | —The cake <i>will be being</i> eaten by the girl.  |
| Perfect future                  | —The cake <i>will have been</i> eaten by the girl. |

We have also one or two other occasional tenses for use when we wish to give a more or less exact idea of time, as when John says "I *am about to eat* this cake." English possesses the great gift of being able to make up forms of speech when it wants them. We have also what is called a *conditional tense*. Strictly speaking, this is not a tense at all, but is used to show that there is a condition, that is, an "if," about what we say. We use *should*, and sometimes *would*, to form this tense. For example :—

"I should like to go (if you will let me)."

Now let us consider the manner in which a statement may be made about a subject, or, as it is called in grammar, the *mood* of the verb (*L. modus* manner). All the sentences which have been used as illustrations so far have had verbs in the *indicative mood*. The verb in the indicative mood indicates, that is, points out, facts or tries to get them pointed out by asking a direct question.

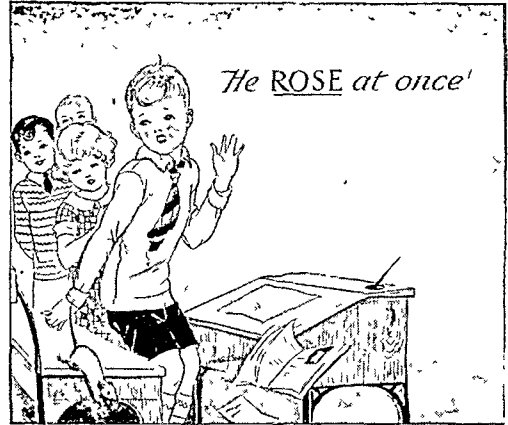
The boy next door *fell* and *broke* his arm.  
Has the boy next door *broken* his arm?

The *indicative* is the most used of all the moods, for we spend a great deal of our time stating facts and asking questions. But we also spend much time in giving commands or making requests.

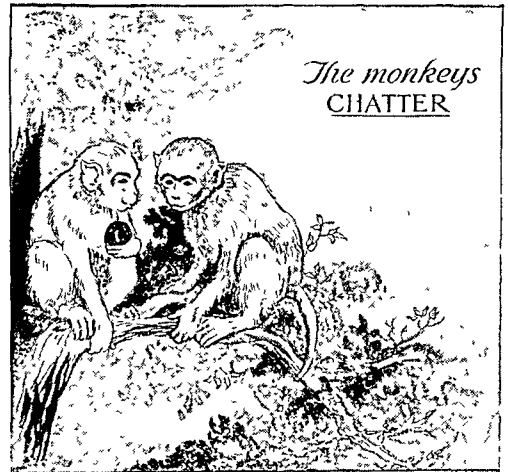
Get out of the way!  
Fetch my racket, please.

Here plainly the mood is different. This is the *imperative mood* (*L. imperare*, to command). There is only one tense here,

# INTRANSITIVE VERBS



Intransitive verbs require no object. Here *rose* is an intransitive verb.



Chatter can be used as a noun. Here it is an intransitive verb.



In the sentence "the hat falls" the intransitive verb is *falls*.

the present, and only one person, the second, to whom a command may be given or a request made. The subject of a verb in the imperative mood is almost always omitted; it is always *you*, except in those cases in which we include our hearers with ourselves and issue a collective command, such as

*Let's play another game now.*

When a subject is omitted, it is said to be *understood*.

The *subjunctive* mood is not much used in English to-day. It is very much used in French, though even in that language not so much as formerly. The word subjunctive means joined under, and a verb in the subjunctive mood is joined to and under the control of another verb, even though that *principal* verb, as it is called, may be understood, that is, not spoken or written.

When you say

God save the King!

you do not state a fact, ask a question, or give a command. You express a wish; you mean (I hope that) God (may) save the King. Similarly, when you say

I wish John *were* doing this job,

*were doing* is under the control of, or dependent upon, the principal verb I *wish*. Again, if you said

If your father *saw* you doing that, he would *forbid* you,

*saw* is dependent upon *forbid*.

But it is often very difficult to say whether a verb ought to be in the subjunctive or the indicative mood. Those cases in which the verb changes its form are certain, and that is about all one can say.

(1) By dropping *s*      God *save* the King!  
I am afraid lest he *make* it wrong.

(2) By using *be* instead of *is* and *are*. and *were* instead of *was*.

If that *be* true, then you are right.

If that *were* the case, you ought to have come home.

And of the changes in form we are rapidly dropping in speech at least the last two.

There are only two tenses in the subjunctive—present and past.

In these three moods the verb has bounds or limits set to it by the number and person of its subject and by tense. But there is a fourth mood which has no such limits, which expresses really nothing much more than the name of the action or state which the verb denotes. This is the *infinitive* mood. The word infinite, you know, means without limits, and the only limits which the various forms of the infinitive mood have are those of tense. In this mood there are three tenses—present simple, present imperfect, and present perfect. Here are examples:—

(1) I learned *to write* when I was five years old.

(2) I should like *to be writing*, now.

(3) That letter ought *to have been written* to Uncle James.

#### AN AUXILIARY VERB



In asking the question "Are you better?" the little girl uses *are* as an auxiliary verb, with full meaning.

The infinitive is almost always used after another verb, and the word *to* is considered part of it. But it can be used by itself, and *to* is often omitted after another verb, as these sentences will show:—

(1) *To write* neatly is a tidy habit.

(2) I can *write* better than you

The infinitive is practically a noun. It is the name of an action or a state. What is a tidy habit?

Answer, *to write neatly*. Notice that

although these infinitives are as good as nouns, they are also most distinctly verbs, and can, if transitive, take an object, as in the following sentence:—

He would like *to give* a shilling (*shilling*, object of give.)

*Writing* and *written* are called *participles*, because they "share some part" of the properties of a verb and noun adjective. *Writing* is a *present participle*, and *written* a *past participle*. All present participles end in *ing*, and all can be used (1) as pure verbs, (2) as nouns, (3) as adjectives.

(1) The bird was *flying* home to its nest (*flying*, verb).

(2) *Flying* is becoming very popular (*flying*, noun).

(3) John took a *flying* leap across the stream (*flying*, adjective)

Most past participles end in *ed*, but some

end in *t*, and some, as you will see from the sentence above, end in *en*. A few end in *n*, such as *shown* and *grown*. The past participle can be used (1) as a pure verb, (2) as an adjective.

- (1) All the mice have *escaped* from the cage (*escaped*, verb).
- (2) The *escaped* prisoner was recaptured (*escaped*, adjective).

That is all for the present about verbs of action. There are many other small points that might be mentioned about them, but it is better to know first all the important ones. Remember, then, that verbs of action may be transitive or intransitive, that they have four moods, indicative, imperative, subjunctive, and infinitive, that in the indicative mood they have nine principal tenses, and that in those tenses the verb may be either singular or plural, and used in the first, second, or third person, according to the number and person of its subject.

Remember, too, that transitive verbs have two voices, an active and a passive, and that for every form that is found in the active voice there is, with one exception, a corresponding one in the passive. The exception is: present participles are always active, past participles of transitive verbs are always passive.

Now for the verbs which denote states. These are few in number, but they are immensely important, because we are always using them. When you are told that the commonest of them are the verbs *to be*, *to become*, *to seem*, *to look*, you will understand how important they are.

- (1) John *is* a big boy for his age.
- (2) He *will become* a fine cricketer.
- (3) He *seems* to know exactly what to do.
- (4) He *looks* very brown after his holiday

Now, the first and chief point you will notice about these verbs is that they are by themselves incomplete. They do not tell us anything about the subject until more words are added to them. *John is*, by itself, has no meaning; it is not until you add a *big boy for his age* that you know anything about

him. So these verbs are called verbs of *incomplete predication*, and the word or words added to them to complete what is said about the subject is the *complement*.

|      |            |              |
|------|------------|--------------|
| John | subject.   |              |
| is   | verb       | } predicate. |
| tall | complement |              |

These verbs cannot have an object, and the complement always refers to the subject. *Tall* refers to *John*. If you say

He *became* suddenly ill  
That boy *is* an American

*ill* refers to *he*, and *American* refers to *that boy*.

Far and away the most important of these verbs of incomplete predication is the verb *to be*, which we are always using. The verb *to be* is one of the verbs whose conjugation, by which we mean all the forms it can take, is irregular. Here is its present tense:—

|         |          |
|---------|----------|
| I am    | we are   |
| you are | you are  |
| he is   | they are |

Of course, you know all the forms of this verb perfectly, so there is no need to write any more. But there seems to be very little connexion between *am*, *are*, and *is*, does there? The verb *to be*, the commonest in every language, is always irregularly conjugated.

This verb is important in English beyond all others because, besides being by far the most used verb of



*Tell* expresses a command, and is therefore a verb used in the imperative mood.

incomplete predication, it is also used to help form the tenses of all other verbs. The verbs, *to have* and *to do*, and the verb forms, *shall*, *will*, *may*, *might*, *should*, *would* are also used to help form the tenses of other verbs. These helping verbs are called *auxiliary* verbs (L. *auxilium* help), and a verb is no more than an auxiliary if it (1) helps another verb to form a tense and (2) gives up its own meaning in order to do so. The verb *to be* helps to form every tense of a *principal* verb (that is, a verb which is not an auxiliary) except the simple tenses. Other auxiliaries help special tenses. *Shall* and *will* are used with future tenses, *do* is used in questions, *have* is used in perfect tenses, *may*, *might*, *should*, and *would* are used to give the verb a subjunctive mood meaning.

- (1) I *am* working.

- (2) He *was* not trying.
- (3) You *will be* brought back at seven o'clock.
- (4) Do you like toffee? *Did* Joan enjoy herself?
- (5) If I *may* come to-morrow I *should* like to.
- (6) He *has been* seen here to-night.

You will see from sentences 3 and 6 that auxiliary verbs can help one another to form a tense for a principal verb. In sentence 3 *will* and *be* are both used, in sentence 6 *has* (part of the verb *to have*) and *been* (part of the verb *to be*).

There is nothing to prevent auxiliary verbs from being used as principal verbs also, and they are so used. The verb *to have* is very often a principal verb:—

Terry *has* over a thousand foreign stamps.

Here *has* is a principal verb, and means possesses, and takes an object like any transitive verb of action.

You all know the use of *to do* as a principal verb; this verb, like *to have*, takes an object:—

Jack *is doing* his home-work.  
Joan *is doing* her hair.

There are quite a few other common verbs which we use almost as auxiliaries, such as *can*, *must*, *get*, but they are not true auxiliaries, even in such slang phrases as "Once I *get* going I am all right," because they do not entirely give up their own meaning. *Once I get going* means almost the same as *Once I am going*, but not quite. *Can* always keeps its own meaning of *to be able*, and *must* always gives the idea of being compelled. In such a familiar phrase as:—

You *must* be a silly to think so,

there is always the idea, not simply that the person spoken to is silly, but that if he thinks so there is no hope for him, he is bound to be silly.

We have not thought it necessary to say much about the fact that many verbs, chiefly auxiliary verbs and verbs expressing a state, have not got all the tenses they should have, in order to be conjugated completely. We have taken it for granted that you know this.

The history of some of these verbs is very interesting. *Ought*, for example, used to be the past simple tense of *owe*, while some of the forms of the verb *to be* are Old English, and some are Danish. That is why you get *are* and *be*, two words quite unlike, as parts of the same verb.

We are always adding new verbs to our already numerous collection. Whenever we want one for an invention or for a discovery,

we make one up, sometimes from Greek or Latin, such as *to motor*, sometimes from our own old language, such as *to broadcast*. Frequently we find the name or noun first, and then turn it into a verb, such as *to engineer* from *engine*, or *to picnic* from *picnic*.

In addition to these special new verbs, we have a habit in English of adding a word—any other part of speech except a conjunction or an interjection—to a verb, and making another verb with a different or a more particular meaning. Many of these compound verbs are now so commonly used that no one thinks of them as compounds. Particularly is this the case when the other word comes in front and is joined to the verb.

Tell father all about it. He will quite understand.

When the word comes after we do not usually join it to the original verb. But the added word is used so regularly with the verb that the whole phrase must be considered as one verb. Thus we say *to make friends*, *to look round*, *to stare about*, *to get ready*, *to pick up*, *to lie down*, *to laugh at*. Hundreds of examples might be given. Sometimes an added word makes an intransitive verb transitive.

(1) Jill *was laughing* loudly (no object—intransitive).

(2) Jill *was laughing at* the poor old mother hen (the poor old mother hen—object).

Sometimes the result is the other way round.

(1) The ice-cream man *makes* good ice-cream (good ice-cream—object).

(2) The Greeks *made* war frequently (no object—intransitive).

This adding of words is a very useful habit, for it enables us to say very clearly and exactly what we mean. It gives us a sense of being free to pick and choose our words, and to make our language do what we want it to do, express our thoughts. We do not feel always bound to use the same word. It allows us to express what are called shades of meaning. You know that there are only three primary colours, but that there is an uncountable number of shades. So it is with language. There are shades of meaning so slightly different from others that only the most careful choice of words will make it possible to express them. And in a language which is not flexible, that is, easily made to bend to the speaker's or writer's touch, these shades of meaning cannot be expressed. English is probably the most flexible language now used, and of all its parts of speech probably the verb can be most easily bent for your particular purposes.

## 5.—ADVERBS: THE VERB'S CHIEFS OF THE STAFF

*The Important Ways in which they Assist Verbs and other Parts of Speech*

THE general in command of an army, the admiral in command of a fleet, the manager of a large business, the headmaster or headmistress of a large school, are all people with very important work to do. Their work is to plan, to control, and to supervise. They have people under them who obey their orders, and who carry out their plans. Very often these subordinates seem to do more of the actual work than the commander does. But it is the man at the top who directs everything, and sees that all is going well.

A general decides that his army shall attack an enemy position; he decides the day and the hour of the attack, and how many men and guns will be needed. He gives his orders, and his staff sets about arranging how the men, and the guns, and the ammunition, and the food for the men are to be got to the right spot at the right time.

A headmaster or headmistress decides what lessons and what games shall take place at school, how many classes there shall be, who shall be in charge of each class, and draws up the time-table. But the actual work and games are carried on by the teachers and the girls and boys, and the way in which they perform their parts has a great influence on the school.

A manager of a business decides to arrange a big advertising campaign to make his goods widely known. He settles how much money shall be spent, and in what towns or villages, and works out a rough idea of the kind of advertisement he wants. Then he calls in the advertisement writers and the publicity agents (men whose business it is to make people and goods known to the public), and they perfect his idea and arrange the details of the campaign.

You see, the commander gives the general plans and sees that they are carried out, and

his staff arranges and works out details, and modifies or changes the plans where necessary. Now, that is something like what happens in the sentence. The verb, you were told, is the general, the commander; you may, if you like, call the *adverb* its chief of the staff. A verb predicates a general idea:—

- (1) Joan *will* come.
- (2) Father *is* working.
- (3) John *was* bowling.

and the adverb fills in the details by telling us *how*, or *when*, or *where* the action is performed. Let us add adverbs to these sentences.

- (1) Joan will come *to-morrow* (time).
- (2) Father is working *downstairs* (place).
- (3) John was bowling *badly* (manner).

These are the three chief ways in which an adverb can assist a verb, by telling the *time*, or the *place*, or the *manner* or *quality* (how it is done) of an action. An adverb of *manner* or *quality* answers the question *how*? An adverb of *time* answers one of the questions *when*? *how long*? *how often*?

- (1) The county cricket season *began* yesterday.

- (2) These flowers are *always* in bloom.
- (3) A flower show is held *yearly* in our village.

An adverb of *place* answers one of the four questions *where*, from which place, *whence*; to which place, *whither*; in what order?

- (1) The strawberry bed *is here*.
- (2) *Whence* cometh all evil.
- (3) "Come *hither*," he said, } Adverbs not often used
- "my pretty maid." } to-day.
- (4) Roy came *third* in the examination

But these are not the only kinds of work it is possible for an adverb to do. It can tell you the *number*, exact or indefinite, of times an action is performed.

- (1) George *once* found a sparrow-hawk's nest here.
- (2) Jill *seldom* makes that mistake

Or it may tell you *how much*, in what *quantity*, or to what *degree*.

- (1) You are *quite* wrong.
- (2) Robert *scarcely* knew where he was going

FORMED FROM AN ADJECTIVE



The adverb *badly* is formed from the adjective *bad*.

Or it may tell you of the *certainty* or uncertainty of an action. One adverb in this class, the word *not*, you will notice, is very certain, so certain that it completely contradicts the statement the verb makes!

- (1) *Perhaps* your mother will let you come.
- (2) I shall *not* go, whatever you say.

AN INTERROGATIVE ADVERB



When is an adverb which asks the question: "At what time?"

The words *Yes* and *No* are generally included in this class of adverbs of certainty, though they are short substitutes for whole sentences.

Did you buy that ball at Wilson's?  
Yes. (=I did buy that ball at Wilson's.)

You will see that the adverb *does* for the verb very much what the adjective *does* for the noun. It makes more exact the idea of the particular action or state predicated by the verb, just as an adjective makes the idea of a particular thing more exact. By so doing it cuts down the number of varieties of action the verb can apply to, just as an adjective cuts down the number of kinds of things a noun can apply to. When we say

John bowled or John was bowling,  
we can imagine any kind of bowling, but when we say

John was bowling *swiftly* and *badly*,  
we immediately cut out slow, medium, and good bowling, and think only of swift and bad bowling.

Adverbs are very much like adjectives, but in many ways they have a bigger job. They do not become nouns, whereas adjectives often become nouns, but on the other hand they are not content with helping verbs, but are ready to help other adverbs, adjectives, prepositions, and conjunctions.

- (1) Mary plays the violin *extremely well* (*extremely helping well, another adverb*)
- (2) I am sure you will be *very brave* (*very helping brave, adjective*)

(3) When we got home we found Toby, our fox terrier, sitting *just outside* the front gate (*just helping outside, preposition*).

(4) Now tell me *exactly* how it happened (*exactly helping how, conjunction*).

Note:—It depends on how this is said as to whether *exactly* helps *tell* or *how*.

Adverbs will even go so far as to help, or qualify or modify a whole sentence:—

*Unfortunately* I haven't got any money! but they draw the line at qualifying nouns or pronouns. That they leave entirely to the adjective.

Adverbs can, of course, be used in questions. Then they are sometimes called *interrogative* adverbs.

- (1) *When* does the next bus leave here?
- (2) *How* do you know that?

The chief interrogative adverbs are *when?* *where?* *how?* *why?* When these adverbs are used in indirect questions or at the beginning of a clause you will see that they have a job to do which is very similar to that of a relative pronoun or a conjunction. They are as much conjunctions as adverbs.

- (1) Can you tell me *where* I shall find John?
- (2) Let me tell you *how* it happened.
- (3) This is the time *when* the leaves die.

For this reason these adverbs are often called *relative* or *connective* adverbs, but they are exactly the same words as the interrogative adverbs. All other adverbs are called *simple* adverbs. Relative adverbs, like relative

A DESCRIPTIVE ADVERB



Here the adverb *hard* tells how it was freezing.

pronouns, have an antecedent—which has the same annoying habit of often leaving itself out, as you will see from sentences (1) and (2) above—and *when* can sometimes, generally in conversation, be understood:—

Tell us the day (when) you are coming.



In the first of these pictures *fast* is used as an adverb, and tells how the tide was coming in. In the second picture *fast* is an adjective.

Adverbs are very like adjectives, as we said, and so it is not surprising to find that by far the largest class of adverbs is formed directly from adjectives. From every adjective of quality (with just a few exceptions such as *little* and other words which would sound too ugly) we can form an adverb by adding *-ly*. *Strong* becomes *strongly*, *beautiful* becomes *beautifully*, and so on. If the adjective already ends in *-y*, we change the letter into *-i*, and then add *-ly*. So *healthy* becomes *healthily*, *pretty*, *prettily*. If the adjective already ends in *-l*, we add *-ly* just the same. (This will help you in your spelling.) All those adjectives which end in *-ful*, such as *graceful*, *awful*, have one *l* only, but the adverbs formed from them, *gracefully*, *awfully*, have two. The same rule applies to all those adjectives ending in *-al*, such as *local*, *continual*, which give the adverbs *locally*, *continually*. If an adjective ends in *-ll*, we either add *-y* only, as in *full*, *fully*, or avoid making an adverb from it, as with *small*.

It is clear that the numeral adverbs, *once*, *twice*, *thrice*, are formed from the numeral adjectives, *one*, *two*, *three*, and *firstly*, *secondly*, *thirdly*, etc., from *first*, *second*, *third*, etc.

Quite a number of common adverbs of quality do not add *-ly*, but use exactly the same form as the corresponding adjectives. Such words as *fast*, *hard* (*hardly* has now quite a different meaning from *hard*), *half*, *near*, are examples.

- (1) John jumped on his bicycle and rode *hard* to the town (adverb).  
That was *hard* luck! (adjective).
- (2) The tide was coming in *fast* (adverb).  
If you can catch the *fast* train you will do it (adjective).

- (3) The village is quite *near* (adverb).  
The *near* side of the road (adjective).

Like adjectives again, adverbs of quality or manner have three degrees of comparison. These are exactly the same, positive, comparative, and superlative, and they are formed in exactly the same ways, by adding *er*, to form the comparative and *est* to form the superlative of short adverbs, and by using the words *more* and *most* with longer ones. Some of the commonest adverbs, like some of the commonest adjectives (they are the corresponding words often), are compared irregularly, that is, they have taken over the comparatives and superlatives of other words. You know them quite well. Such words as

- Positive: Much. Comparative: More.  
Superlative: Most.  
Positive: Ill. Comparative: Worse.  
Superlative: Worst.

One adverb, *rather*, is not compared. It is itself an old comparative form.

As with other parts of speech, we are not content in English to leave adverbs in peace to do adverbs' work, but often compel them to do also the jobs of other words. We noticed above that relative adverbs were working like relative pronouns or conjunctions. Those words we have just mentioned, *fast*, *near*, *half*, we may consider either as adjectives or as adverbs. We also make many adverbs do duty as prepositions. That word *near*, in particular, is quite a maid of all work.

- (1) I like the *nearer* of the two better (noun).
- (2) The aeroplane *neared* the landing place (verb).
- (3) The *near* neighbourhood is charming (adjective).
- (4) The house is somewhere *near* (adverb).

- (5) The school in the Middle Ages was always *near* the church (preposition).

Noun, verb, adjective, adverb, preposition—poor hard-worked word! It is chiefly adverbs of place, such as *near*, *under*, *below*, *above*, *in*, *out*, *inside*, *outside*, which

AN ADVERB DENOTING NUMBER



In the sentence "the postman knocked twice," twice is an adverb denoting number.

we make work as prepositions. In fact, you can call these words either adverbs or prepositions, just as you like, in the same way as you can call *which* or *what* either an adjective or a pronoun. It all depends, as usual, on how the word is used. If *below*, for example, is used to show that one thing is below another, it is a preposition :—

- (1) The sugar is *below* the shelf.

But if it is used to show where an action is performed, it is an adverb :—

- (2) The captain sent the middy *below*.

Now, the verb, our trusty general, needs a very great deal of assistance, and there are not nearly enough adverbs in our language for all its wants. So we are constantly forced to make use of *adverbial phrases* and *adverbial clauses*. These do exactly the same work as an adverb, but they consist of two or more words, and in a clause, as you know, there is always a verb. There are also noun phrases and clauses, and adjectival phrases and clauses, but we probably use more adverbial phrases and clauses than of these two kinds together. You see, we so often want to know or to explain *how*, or *when*, or *where*.

An adverbial phrase very frequently consists of a preposition and a noun.

- (1) The children are playing *under the bridge*. (Where?)  
 (2) Mother is coming *in the evening*. (When?)  
 (3) William can swim *like a fish*. (How?)

This is particularly so with adverbial phrases of place. We are always wanting to say *in the cupboard*, *on the shelf*, *behind the door*, *at home*, *at school*, *round the corner*, *in the play-ground*, and such phrases. And as the work of a preposition is to show the relation to each other in which things stand, it is only to be expected that they should be largely used in making adverbial phrases of place.

An adverbial clause is a complete sentence which does the work of an adverb. It is, like all other clauses, *subordinate*, that is, under the command of the principal verb.

- (1) He will get on *when he learns to work hard* (time).  
 (2) You will succeed *wherever you go* (place).  
 (3) Boys should work as hard as they *play* (manner).

Adverbial clauses are used to express many other things besides time, place, and manner. They can, for instance, show cause :—

- (1) John worked hard *because he wanted the prize*.

or effect :—

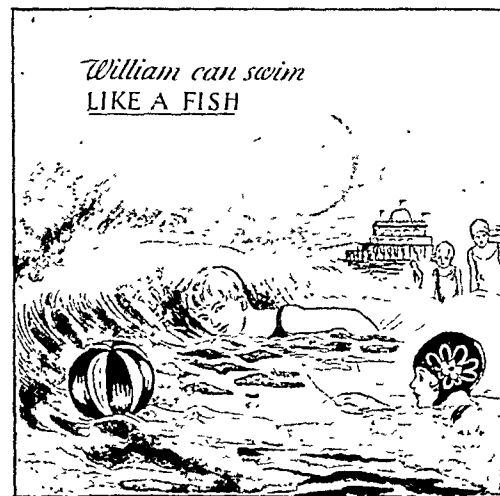
- (2) Joan had run so long *that she was tired*.

or condition :—

- (3) Do come with us *if you are allowed*.

But you will see that when you get to clauses you are really getting something more than you could expect from a single word. We have to call these adverbial clauses, because it is perfectly true that they do the work of an

AN ADVERBIAL PHRASE



Adverbial phrases often consist of a preposition and a noun, as, for example, *like a fish*.

adverb, but they are rather like giant adverbs than ordinary ones. A giant may lift half a ton from the ground, but the ordinary man has to be content if he can manage a hundred-weight. It is the same work, lifting, only—a good deal more of it.



## 6. CONJUNCTIONS 7. PREPOSITIONS 8. INTERJECTIONS

*Words that Join and Govern, and the Lonely Interjections*

**Y**OU can hardly travel many miles on any railway to-day without coming to a junction, and when you are on a journey, and have to change trains, it is almost always at a junction that you do so. That is because at a junction one or more lines meet.

Now, are the lines you find meeting at a junction of equal importance? Not usually.

Generally you will find that at a junction one, two, or even more branch lines meet the main line on which the principal trains travel. Those branch lines are often quite short, and pass through quite unimportant small towns and villages. They would never have been built had not the main line been near at hand, and they are dependent upon it. Their business is to bring passengers and goods to it. Yet they are very necessary to it. No main line would be so important without the branch lines which run to meet it.

Sometimes it happens that two or more great main lines meet at a junction, as they do at Crewe or Trent Junction in England, or at Edinburgh in Scotland. But whichever happens, whether main lines join or branch lines join the main line, there is always a station at the junction.

Now, this is exactly what happens in every sentence which is not a *simple* sentence. A simple sentence is one which has only one predicate. Most of our sentences are not simple. They are either *compound* or *complex*. A compound sentence is one in which two main lines, that is, two *principal* sentences, are joined into one. Suppose we take two simple sentences:—

- (1) Jack went home at five o'clock.
- (2) Jack ate a huge tea.

Now, if you run those two sentences together into one, using a junction word, or *conjunction*, as it is called, to connect them, you get:—

Jack went home at five o'clock *and* ate a huge tea.

This, you will see, is a *compound* sentence, one in which two main lines are joined, for each of the two statements is of equal value, in grammar, that is to say. No doubt Jack thought eating the huge tea of much greater importance than going home! But in grammar we are dealing simply with words and sentences, and not with the value of the

thoughts those words and sentences express. These two sentences, for example:—

- (1) War broke out yesterday.
- (2) Jack fell down yesterday,

are equal in grammar. Both are simple sentences, though between the importance of their meanings there can be no possible comparison.

Conjunctions which join together two sentences of equal value are called *co-ordinating* conjunctions. The word *co-ordinating* means "placing in rows side by side." The com-

monest of the *co-ordinating* conjunctions are *and*, *but*, *still*, *yet*, *for*, *or*, *nor*. *Or* and *nor* are often used with *either* and *neither*, as

*Neither* you *nor* George is quite right.

Most grammar books tell you that *co-ordinating* conjunctions join together words as well as sentences. So they do, but if you look closely into the matter you will see that actually they are joining sentences all the time, only their use makes it possible to omit nearly all of one of the two sentences.

Jack and Jill went up the hill.

*And* here seems simply to be joining the words *Jack*, *Jill*, but if you pick the sentence to pieces you will find it to be really two.

- (1) Jack went up the hill.
- (2) Jill went up the hill.

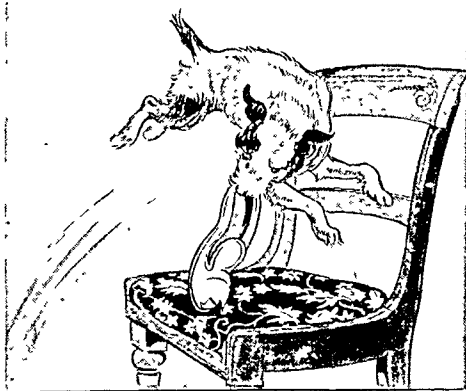
The use of *and* makes it unnecessary to say *went up the hill* twice.

*Co-ordinating* conjunctions are very simple to understand. They join one sentence to another, and they show us (1) that one statement is simply added to the other:—

- (1) Jack fell down *and* broke his crown,

### A CO-ORDINATING CONJUNCTION

*Spot is small. BUT he can jump high*



*But* is a co-ordinating or sentence-joining conjunction which contrasts one statement with another.

or (2) that one statement is contrasted with the other :—

- (2) Henry is small *but* he bowls well.  
There are no clouds, *yet* I am afraid it will rain.

or (3) that there is a choice to be made between the two statements :—

- (3) Run home now *or* you will be late for dinner.

or (4) that one statement is the natural result of the other :—

- (4) Lucy will win the prize, *for* she wins every time she competes.

#### A COMPARATIVE CONJUNCTION



*Than*, in this sentence, makes a comparison between the needle-work of Joyce and Mary.

But when we come to *subordinating* conjunctions we come to a rather more difficult matter. Subordinating means placing one row under (the command of) another. When we use a subordinating conjunction it is to enable a branch line to meet a main line, that is, a clause to meet a principal sentence, or, if not a principal sentence, at any rate a clause of superior importance. If we say

Lucy will win the prize *because* she has worked so hard,  
we make rather a different kind of sentence from that which we made a moment ago. The sentence

Lucy will win the prize, *for* she wins every time she competes,  
contains two sentences of equal value.

- (1) Lucy will win the prize.  
(2) She wins every time she competes.

But the sentence

Lucy will win the prize *because* she has worked so hard

is made up of one principal sentence

(1) Lucy will win the prize,  
to which is added the reason or the cause

(2) She has worked so hard,  
which supports the principal sentence. This clause, *she has worked so hard*, is dependent upon, or *subordinate* to, the principal sentence.

It has not a complete meaning apart from the principal sentence.

Conjunctions which make their clauses show cause or reason are called *causal*. The chief ones are *because*, *since*, *as*, and *for*. Both *since* and *as*, as well as *for*, can be used to show other meanings. In the sentence :

He is as cute *as* they make them,

*as* does not show cause, but *comparison*. Another *comparative* conjunction is *than*.

Margaret plays hockey better *than* Jane (does).

With *than*, you will notice, the verb in the clause can often be omitted.

In the sentence :

I have not played tennis *since* I was at home last,

*since* shows *time*. Other conjunctions of time are *while*, *when*, *before*.

*Before* the bell had finished ringing, he jumped out of bed.

*Where*, *whence*, *wherever*, show *place*.

Margery would not tell us *where* she had been.

The chief conjunction to show *effect* or *result* is *that*.

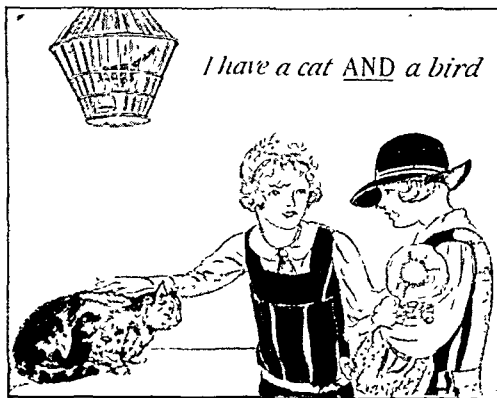
Jack ran so well *that* he won the race easily.

But the same word may also be used to show *purpose*.

Jack ran hard *that* he might be certain of winning.

To show purpose *that* is often enlarged into *so that* or *in order that*.

#### A CONJUNCTION WHICH ADDS



*And* is a co-ordinating conjunction which adds one statement to another.

- (1) We will go very early, *so that* we may spend all day there.  
(2) Mary was walking quickly, *in order that* she might not be late.

The conjunctions *if* and *unless* show that there is a *condition* attached to the principal sentence.

- (1) I will come *if* it does not rain.  
(2) *Unless* you play fair, I shall go home.

You will notice that it is not always necessary for the principal sentence to come first. In many sentences, and with all kinds of conjunctions, it comes after the subordinate clause. Sometimes it does not much matter which you place first.

Another important class of conjunctions, of which the commonest is *although*, shows that when we have made our principal statement we must draw back a little from all it means, or subtract something from its meaning. This is called making a concession, and such conjunctions are called *concessive* :—

- (1) This is a good exercise of yours, *although* it is badly written.
- (2) *However* much you praise him, Colin is never satisfied.

So you see that in addition to joining together a principal sentence and a subordinate clause, a subordinating conjunction also gives one of at least eight separate meanings to the clause which follows it. And the meaning of the clause depends almost entirely upon the meaning of the conjunction. Notice the contrast between these two sentences, which, except for the conjunction, consist of exactly the same words :—

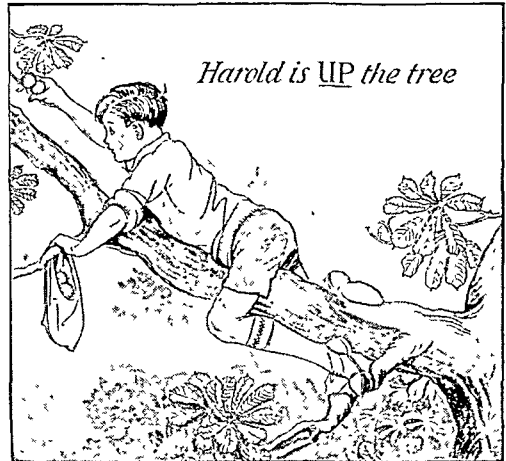
- (1) *Although* he had found his way out of the wood, John was still afraid.
- (2) *When* he had found his way out of the wood, John was still afraid.

The first sentence suggests that John was still afraid because of the fright the wood had given him, but the second suggests that there was something else still to be afraid of.

Boys and girls often declare that they do not know conjunctions from prepositions, probably because when they are learning about words a very great deal of time is spent over verbs, nouns and pronouns, adjectives and adverbs, and then the remaining parts of speech are all lumped together, and thought of as "the other words." Probably, too, it is because they are considered the "little" words and "the words that don't matter much." They do matter, though, and the job of a preposition is quite different from that of a conjunction. This is shown clearly by the fact that scarcely ever are conjunctions used as prepositions or prepositions as conjunctions. Such a change does occur occasionally, of course (almost anything can happen to a word in our language, as we saw from the example of the word *near*), but only very rarely.

It is really much easier to confuse prepositions with adverbs, and there is a great deal more excuse for doing so, because nearly all prepositions can be used as adverbs.

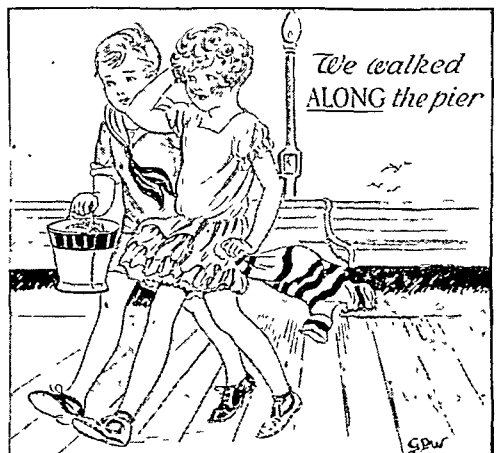
# SOME PREPOSITIONS



Prepositions are always used with nouns. Here up is the preposition, and tree the noun.



In this sentence into is the preposition and boat the noun.



Along is one of the commonest of prepositions. It is here used with the noun pier.

(This does not mean that nearly all adverbs can be used as prepositions. They cannot; those ending in *ly* are never used as prepositions.) But if ever you find yourself confused, the great point to remember is that an adverb is never used with a noun or pronoun, but a preposition always is. In fact, every preposition is said to *govern* the noun or pronoun with which it is used, and in a very real sense it does govern it. In the sentences :

- (1) The cat is *under* the table.
- (2) Jack is sitting *on* Gilbert.
- (3) The cattle are *in* the field,

the words *under*, *on*, and *in* certainly put *table*, *Gilbert*, and *field* in their right places. And they certainly make you understand the relation between *cat* and *table*, *Jack* and

#### AN INTERJECTION



*Hush* may be used as a verb but here it is an interjection.

*Gilbert*, *cattle* and *field*. *Table*, *Gilbert*, and *field* are said to be the *objects* of the prepositions *under*, *on*, and *in*. In languages in which nouns change their endings to show case, the noun governed by the preposition has to show by its ending that it is governed. This still happens in English with pronouns.

- (1) Give the best apple *to* her.
- (2) That's the fellow *from* whom I got the book.

Putting things in their right place, then, or, as we say in grammar, showing the relation between them, is the job of a preposition; and as prepositions are always dealing with things, it follows that they can only be used with nouns or substitutes for nouns. That

is nearly all that need be said concerning them. There is no need to try to divide them up into classes according to the way in which they do their work, for they all do it in the same way. Nor is it any use to try to divide them according to their meanings, for each of them has its own meaning, and keeps to it quite faithfully.

We can, if we like, divide them according to their form, and call *in*, *on*, *at*, *by*, *to*, *through*, *from*, and the like *simple* prepositions, and *into*, *upon*, *inside*, *outside*, *within*, *compound* prepositions, because they happen each to consist of two words, but such a division is really only useless labour, for *into* and the rest have been written as single words so long that no one thinks of them as two. It is useful, however, to remember that we make a number of present participles act as prepositions :—

- (1) *Considering* the circumstances, Helen was lucky to get off so lightly.
- (2) *During* the cricket match rain fell heavily.

*During* is the present participle of the verb *to dure*, meaning to last, which we do not use to-day, though we often use the adjective *durable* and the noun *duration*.

There is one part of speech which no one is ever likely to confuse with any other, and that is the *interjection*. Some people say that the interjection is not really a part of speech at all, but only a cry. Yet there seems to be no very good reason for refusing it a place among our parts of speech.

The word interjection means something thrown between or among, and interjections are really exclamations or cries which some sharp feeling causes you to make. When you are thoroughly happy and pleased over something you cry *Hurrah!* When you are surprised, or hurt, or sorry you exclaim *Oh!* or *Ah!* When you are disgusted you exclaim *Pooh!* or *Pah!* or *Bah!*

We have not many interjections which are recognized as words, though, of course, there are many sounds, such as *Ee!* *ooh!* *ow!* which are classed as interjections when they are written down or printed.

Some of our interjections are really short forms of whole sentences, though many people do not know it. *Good-bye* is a shortened form of *God be with you*, *Good-morning* is *God give you good morning*.

No interjection helps or has any effect upon any other part of speech, and an interjection is not considered as a part of a sentence.

## PARSING AND ANALYSIS: A SIMPLE METHOD

### *How we Find the Relationship that Exists among Words*

IT is our task here to try to show that parsing and analysis are not such dull, horrid exercises as many boys and girls imagine, that it is not very difficult to learn to parse and analyse, and—most important of all—that a knowledge of how to parse and analyse is absolutely necessary for anyone who wants to understand his own or any other language.

Let us start right from the beginning. We parse words, and we analyse sentences. We ask questions about them. The word *parse* itself comes from a Latin question consisting of three words, *quæ pars orationis?* meaning, what part of speech? That is the first question we ask about a word when we parse it. But we ask two other questions also. (i) Has it any special endings (inflexions), and if so, why? (ii) In what way is it connected with, or, how does it work with, the other words in the sentence? And we ask these questions so that we can find out the special duty of each word.

In the chapters on the parts of speech you have read about inflexions and conjugations, of number and gender, of mood and tense, and so on. We use this knowledge in parsing. Let us parse one or two words :

- (i) The boy fell down.
- (ii) He was not hurt.

Take the word *boy*, and think of our three questions. We can easily answer them. (i) It is a noun. (ii) It has no inflexions. (iii) It is the subject of the sentence, *fell* is its predicate, and *the* is its adjective. Let us put that knowledge in order and add one or two other points. We get :

Boy : Noun, Common, Singular, Masculine, Nominative (Subjective) Case, Subject of *fell*.

Now consider *fell* and *was*, and answer the three questions again. (i) They are verbs. (ii) They are inflected to show time (and number in *was*). (iii) *Fell* is the predicate of its sentence, *was* is part of the predicate. Now, using our knowledge of verbs, let us parse them fully.

FELL : Verb, Intransitive, Active, Indicative, Simple Past Tense, Singular, Third Person, Predicate to *boy*.

That's simple, but what about *was*? No more difficult, though there are two ways of tackling it. You may parse the two words *was hurt* together as part of the verb *to hurt*,

or you may take *was* by itself as an auxiliary verb.

WAS HURT : Verb, Transitive, Passive, Indicative, Simple Past Tense, Singular, Third Person, Predicate to *he*.

or :

WAS : Verb, Auxiliary, Indicative, Past Tense, Singular, Third Person ; assisting *hurt* to form Predicate of *he*.

Deal with other parts of speech in the same way, but according to their special work ; say the noun an adjective qualifies, the verb an adverb modifies, and so on.

In parsing these nouns and verbs we have used the words *subject* and *predicate*. That means we have analysed the sentences in which they occur. We have to ; we must analyse in order to parse, and parse in order to analyse, because words make sentences, and sentences are only words working together like a team. You can't go to a dictionary, pick out a stray word, and parse it ; you must take that word from a sentence.

Now, the very word *analysis* suggests to many boys and girls something quite horrible and impossible to understand. But actually all of us are analysing practically every moment of our lives—except when we are asleep. The word *analysis* comes from two Greek words, *ana* and *lysis*, meaning a breaking up (not *smashing up* ! We are not suggesting that everybody goes about all the time breaking things !). Let us explain.

If we see a motor-bus, we see one motor-bus, but our eyes and minds immediately break up that motor-bus into its various parts ; we see tonneau, body, wheels, windows, driver, conductor, passengers, the colour of the bus, and a host of other things. The second we look at that bus, we make an incredibly swift and thorough analysis of it. Suppose the bus had a broken window, how quickly we should notice it ! We are so accustomed to motor-buses that we analyse them almost automatically, without effort.

We use sentences much more often than we use motor-buses, so we ought to be able to analyse them at least as easily and as thoroughly and accurately. So we can, if we look at them with equal care. Every sentence consists of two parts, *subject* and *predicate*, just as every motor-car consists of chassis and body. There may be any number of accessories or additional fittings on your motor-car ; so there may be in your sentence.

But there is no reason why you should not recognise the *subject* and the *predicate*, and the *noun phrases* and *clauses*, the *adjective phrases* and *clauses* and the *adverb phrases* and *clauses* which are so often built into the *subject* and *predicate*, just as easily as you recognize the padded cushions, the lamps, the mudguards, etc., on a motor-car.

Let us build up a sentence, and pick it to pieces again as we build.

Boys eat.

Two words ; a subject and a predicate. As simple a sentence as we can get. You can analyse that sentence almost without thought. Let us add some accessories or additional words.

Greedy little boys eat quickly.

The adjectives *greedy* and *little* qualify *boys* ; the adverb *quickly* modifies *eat*. We have now a subject consisting of three words, a

predicate of two ; *boys* and *eat* being the foundations. We can arrange our analysis as in Example 1.

Some more accessories :

Greedy little boys who have no manners eat their food quickly.

Here we have added another enlargement to the subject and an object to the predicate. We have also introduced another verb. So the sentence is now *complex*, as the new clause is a subordinate one. Example 2 shows our analysis.

If a sentence is *compound* it consists of two clauses of equal grammatical value. The analysis of a compound sentence presents very little difficulty. But many sentences are both *compound* and *complex*. They are analysed as in Example 3.

Greedy little boys who have no manners eat their food quickly and do not digest it properly.

| Sentence.                     | Kind of Sentence. | SUBJECT.     |                  | PREDICATE. |             |
|-------------------------------|-------------------|--------------|------------------|------------|-------------|
|                               |                   | Substantive. | Enlargements.    | Verb.      | Extensions. |
| Greedy . . .<br>. . . quickly | Simple            | boys         | greedy<br>little | eat        | quickly.    |

Example 1.—Analysis of a simple sentence.

| Sentence.                     | Kind of Sentence.      | SUBJECT.     |  | PREDICATE. |             |         |                         |
|-------------------------------|------------------------|--------------|--|------------|-------------|---------|-------------------------|
|                               |                        | Substantive. | Enlargements.                              | Verb.      | Extensions. | Object. | Enlargements of Object. |
| Greedy . . .<br>. . . quickly | Principal Complex      | boys         | greedy<br>little<br>who have no<br>manners | eat        | quickly     | food    | their                   |
| who . . .<br>. . . manners    | Subordinate Adjectival | who          | —  | have       | —           | manners | no                      |

Example 2.—Analysis of a compound sentence.

| Sentence.                     | Kind of Sentence.                              | SUBJECT.             |  | PREDICATE.   |                 |         |                         |
|-------------------------------|--|----------------------|--|--------------|-----------------|---------|-------------------------|
|                               |  | Substantive.         | Enlargements.                              | Verb.        | Extensions.     | Object. | Enlargements of Object. |
| Greedy . . .<br>. . . quickly | Principal Complex                              | boys                 | greedy<br>little<br>who have no<br>manners | eat          | quickly         | food    | their                   |
| who . . .<br>. . . manners    | Subordinate Adjectival                         | who                  | —  | have         | —               | manners | no                      |
| do . . . . .<br>properly      | Principal,<br>Simple,<br>Co-ordinate<br>with 1 | they<br>(understood) | —  | do<br>digest | not<br>properly | it      | —                       |

Example 3.—Analysis of a compound and complex sentence.

## THE ART OF PROPER PUNCTUATION

*Making a Sentence Express Exactly what you Want it to Mean*

SUPPOSE that one day you were to receive a letter, and when you opened it you found that it was written like this :

DEARJACKANDJILLWEAREHAVING  
AGRANDOUODOORPARTYNEXTWE  
DNESDAYCANYOUCOMEFATHERIS  
GOINGTOTAKEUSALLTOCLACTON  
INTHECARWEAREGOINGTOSTART  
ATHALFPASTTHREEPLEASEDONO  
TBEATEFROMYOURSINCEREFRIE  
NDGEORGEROBINSON.

It would be a bit of a shock. Yet, as you will see when you have found out that it is not written in a sort of secret code, this letter is really quite well put together.

Here it is as you would expect to see it.

Dear Jack and Jill,

We are having a grand outdoor party next Wednesday. Can you come? Father is going to take us all to Clacton in the car.

We are going to start at half-past three. Please do not be late.

From your sincere friend,

George Robinson.

That is a little bit easier to read, is it not? It makes you feel rather glad that you are living in the twentieth century, and not in the days when letters and books were written in capitals close together like the first example above. For hundreds and hundreds of years men were content to spell out the contents of a book or letter word by word.

At length they must have begun to object, and to demand that what they had to read should be made easier to understand. Long before the birth of Christ various plans had been tried for breaking the endless succession of letters. One of these was to put a dot, or point, after each word, like this :

JACK.AND.JILL.WENT.UP.THE.  
HILL.TO.FETCH.A.PAIL.OF.WATER.

Sometimes two dots, one above the other, were used, while in other cases a straight line was employed to separate the words, thus :

HEY | DIDDLE | DIDDLE | THE |  
CAT | AND | THE | FIDDLE | THE |  
COW | JUMPED | OVER | THE |  
MOON |

In the end it was discovered that the easiest and clearest way to separate words was to leave a space between them, and this is the plan now always followed.

But even before it was widely felt that words must be separated, a step had been

made towards *punctuation* by cutting up the reading matter into *paragraphs*. You will, of course, notice how this chapter is arranged in this manner. Each part of the subject is given a paragraph. In books and writing to-day we show the beginning of a new paragraph by starting on a new line a little to the right of the beginning of the line above.

When paragraphing was first introduced the beginning of a fresh paragraph was shown sometimes by leaving a whole blank line above, sometimes by ending the previous paragraph with a stroke or a wedge, or two or more dots. Later it became the custom to write the first letter of the new paragraph in the margin, and still later to make this first letter a big and often decorated capital, such as you still see as a rule at the beginning of a chapter in a book.

Then the points or dots began to be used to mark off sentences and even parts of sentences. This was done probably to help the reader to pause at the right places, or to give the correct tone to a sentence. At first the position of the dot showed the pause to be made; if it were placed high it equalled our full stop, if placed in the middle our comma, if placed low our semicolon.

As writing grew smaller and smaller, it was very easy to make mistakes with any system like this, and so different kinds of points began to be used. The comma was introduced, and the semicolon. A question mark appeared, something like the one we use to-day. The first question mark is said to have been made by putting the first and last letters of the Latin word *quaestio*, a question, one above the other, like this :

Q  
o.

Although stops of various kinds were used hundreds of years before Christ, no fixed rules were laid down for them until after the invention of printing in the fifteenth century, A.D., nor was any one system of punctuation employed. Caxton, our first English printer, used three stops—the comma, the colon, and the full stop—but he evidently had no very definite rules to follow, and in some of the books he printed he put no stops at all.

Even when Aldus Manutius, a member of a very famous Venetian family of printers, wrote in 1566 a book on punctuation, he did not attempt to make his rules much

more than instructions. Even now it is impossible to give exact rules about any stop.

The difficulty is this. We cannot use very many stops, or our pages would become nothing more than a hotch-potch of dots and dashes, twirls and loops. Yet there are two distinct purposes that we want our stops to serve. We want them first of all to help the reader to make the correct length of pause, and we want them also to assist the writer to make his meaning perfectly clear. Notice the difference, for example, between these two sentences :

1. He gave the shilling to the boy who had had his hair cut.
2. He gave the shilling to the boy, who had had his hair cut.

The first sentence shows that there were a number of boys and that the one who had had his hair cut received the shilling. The second sentence implies that there was only one boy, and the fact that he had been to the barber's is simply noticed as being interesting. In the following two sentences, however, the insertion or omission of the comma makes no difference whatever; the fact that it would almost always be found as in the first sentence is simply because the reader would pause slightly at that point.

1. The car dashed recklessly down the narrow, crowded street.
2. The car dashed recklessly down the narrow crowded street.

A very safe instruction to begin with is : Use as few stops as you possibly can.

We have in English only four true stops. These are the *full stop* or *period* (.), the *colon* (:), the *semicolon* (;), and the *comma* (,). A fifth stop is becoming very popular, the *dash* (—), but on the other hand the colon is being less and less used. It is generally reckoned that the comma marks a pause equal to 1, the semicolon a pause equal to 2, the colon a pause of 3, and the full-stop or period a pause of 4. The length of pause the dash indicates is not so definite, but it is longer than that for the comma.

We use also a *point of interrogation* or *question mark* (?), and a *point of exclamation* or *exclamation mark* (!). These two are not stops in themselves, but are enlargements of the full stop. They show the tone of the sentence :

1. You are really ready at last ?
2. You are really ready at last !

The first sentence asks a question, the second shows the speaker's surprise or joy.

The difference in speaking would be shown by the tone of the voice.

For the sake of the reader, whenever a person's actual words are quoted, those words are placed within *quotation marks* or, as they are usually called, *inverted commas*. These quotation marks may be double (" ") or single (' '). Generally the double ones are used for ordinary quotations, and the single ones when they come within a sentence that is already marked by double ones. Only the actual words of the speaker are usually enclosed.

"To-morrow," said John, "is a whole holiday. When Frank heard this he cried, 'Hooray !'"

*Parentheses* ( ) are used to enclose a phrase or a clause which is put into a sentence to explain something in that sentence more fully, but which has no effect on the whole sentence.

All the boys and girls in the school (and there are over 400 of them) contributed to the collection made on November 11th.

Here the clause within the parentheses is put in to explain more fully the meaning of "All the boys and girls in the school." Nowadays it is quite common to find dashes used instead of parentheses.

*Brackets* [ ] are used to enclose a correction, comment, or exclamation made by someone other than the writer of the original words.

"I saw him [the Prince of Wales] at the Mansion House."

In this sentence, which is separated from its context or words that precede and follow it, "him" by itself would indicate no one in particular, so the name of the person referred to is shown in brackets. When it happens that words which should appear within parentheses come within other words that are already enclosed by parentheses the first set of parentheses is replaced by brackets; thus :

"John Brown holds the view [but I do not agree (see remarks on page 4)] that no one is exempt."

The *apostrophe* (') and the *hyphen* (—) are also reckoned as parts of our system of punctuation. Both are used inside or attached to words, the apostrophe to show that one or more letters are omitted, and the hyphen to indicate a compound word.

The man's hat blew off. (Originally the possessive case contained an e. *Man's*, therefore, equals *man-es*.)

I wouldn't do that if I were you.  
(Wouldn't—would not.)  
'Tis only a very little one. ('Tis—it is.)  
'E ses ter me, 'e ses. ('E—he.)



The hyphen should be avoided whenever possible; there is really no good reason for using it. Most of our common compound words, such as *together*, *understand*, *armchair*, *teapot*, can get on quite well without it, and even words like to-day, to-morrow, to-night, in which it is still regularly used, would look just as well if they were written today, tomorrow, tonight. Quite a good rule for the hyphen would be, "When in doubt, leave out." At least one great writer of English, George Bernard Shaw, has not only given up using hyphens but the apostrophe as well.

The real difficulties in punctuation come in the use of the five (for we will include the dash) true stops. How and when are the full stop, the colon, the semicolon, the comma, and the dash to be used? If it is impossible to give exact rules for their use, how is one to learn how to employ them correctly?

Well, no better first instruction can be given than this: Read a few books by writers of good English simply to notice how they punctuate their sentences. Have a look at books written by J. M. Barrie, Joseph Conrad, R. L. Stevenson, Eden Phillpotts, Conan Doyle, and Rudyard Kipling.

These authors are mentioned simply as writers of good modern English; it is not necessary to choose them above all others. Charles Dickens, Sir Walter Scott, Henty, and Ballantyne are not recommended for the purpose, because they wrote a good many years ago, and as a rule used stops more freely than does the writer of to-day. There are fashions in punctuation just as there are in clothes, and the fashion at present is to use as few stops as possible. It is a very sound fashion, too.

Then, remembering your authors, try your hand at making up sentences yourself and punctuating them. Most boys and girls, when they begin to write, are extremely fond of the comma, which they put in very frequently—say, once or twice in every line—and often where other stops would be more correct. They put in a full stop every now and then, but scarcely ever use a semicolon. The colon and the dash they seldom or never employ. But the writer of good English finds it necessary to use all these stops, so let us try to work out a few general rules for them.

Here is a passage from an imaginary letter written by a boy who is describing his

holiday at Brighton. It is not punctuated in any way, except for apostrophes.

I had a splendid holiday at Brighton I bathed in the sea every day and one day when it was very hot I went in three times we went to Eastbourne in a steamer called the Devonian and we had several splendid rides in a charabanc we went to Lewes Newhaven Worthing Littlehampton and Arundel there are two piers at Brighton the West Pier and the Palace Pier and on each there is a theatre and a concert hall I went to see Rose Marie on the West Pier and Dr. Syn on the Palace Pier the air at Brighton makes you feel awfully sleepy at first the morning after I got there I slept till past nine o'clock and I shouldn't have waked up then if Dad hadn't come in and said come on Jack are you going to sleep all day when I said is it time to get up Dad he roared with laughing and shouted time to get up I should think it is it's nearly ten o'clock and if you don't hurry you'll get no breakfast so look sharp my lad.

Now let us split up that letter into its sentences. You know, of course, that you are supposed in the ordinary way to put a full stop at the end of each sentence. We will see how far that rule holds good, and what other punctuation marks are needed.

1. I had a splendid holiday at Brighton.
2. I bathed in the sea every day (and)
3. One day when it was very hot I went in three times.
4. We went to Eastbourne in a steamer called the Devonian (and)
5. We had several splendid rides in a charabanc.
6. We went to Lewes Newhaven Worthing Littlehampton and Arundel.
7. There are two piers at Brighton the West Pier and the Palace Pier (and)
8. On each there is a theatre and a concert hall.
9. I went to see Rose Marie on the West Pier and Dr. Syn on the Palace Pier.
10. The air at Brighton makes you awfully sleepy at first.
11. The morning after I got there I slept till past nine o'clock (and)
12. I shouldn't have waked up then if Dad hadn't come in and said come on Jack are you going to sleep all day.
13. When I said is it time to get up Dad he roared with laughing and shouted time to get up.
14. I should think it is.
15. It's nearly ten o'clock (and)
16. If you don't hurry you'll get no breakfast.
17. So look sharp my lad.

If we were making a strict grammatical analysis we could divide this passage into yet more sentences, but we are at present aiming at punctuating it, so as to make it perfectly clear and very easily readable.

Now, before coming to the actual stops you will notice that this letter can be divided into three parts. Part 1 is a general account

of the boy's doings at Brighton. This ends at sentence 6 and with sentence 7 begins part 2, a description of the piers and the plays seen on them. Sentence 10 begins part 3, in which is described amusingly the effect of the strong sea air. So in our punctuated version there will be three paragraphs.

As we have divided the passage into seventeen sentences we could have seventeen full stops, one at the end of each sentence. But this would make the reading rather choppy; it would be something like playing staccato on the piano all the time. Besides, sentences 2 and 3 are very closely connected in thought, so are sentences 7 and 8, 11 and 12, 15 and 16. In these cases, then, it will be better to keep the *and* which the boy wrote *and separate* the two parts of the compound sentence by a comma only. So we can get two rules to begin with.

1. Put a full stop at the end of each sentence unless the next is closely connected in thought with it.

2. Sentences closely connected in thought can be separated by a comma if a conjunction is used to link them.

Rule 1 can always be broken if you want to give a short, sharp effect. Suppose you were talking to your dog. You could say:

Be quiet! Lie down! Go to sleep!

Or suppose you were describing an exciting game in which events happened quickly. Here plenty of full stops would be excellent.

First our side scored. Then the other side got a goal. That made one all. Then Reed raced down the wing. We all held our breath.

That gives exactly the ding-dong, backward and forward effect of the game.

Now to return to our letter. We have decided that we must have three paragraphs and that we will use thirteen full stops. Now examine the thirteen sentences to see where commas are needed in addition to those we have already decided to use. The first obvious case is sentence 6, where we have a list of towns. You would naturally pause after each name. So we get Rule 3.

3. Mark off names in a list by commas.

This rule applies also to adjectives and verbs in a list.

I love our long, low, creeper-covered cottage.

He sang, laughed, and shouted as he ran.

In sentence 7 another case for commas occurs. The phrase *the West Pier and the Palace Pier* is offered as a fuller explanation of the words *two piers*, and is said to be in *apposition*. (This word means placed side by side with.) It could therefore be put

within parentheses. But in such cases commas are used as a shorter and easier means. As they are substituted for parentheses, two commas must, of course, be used. We will attempt another rule.

4. All words, phrases, and clauses which are used to explain or describe more fully objects or actions mentioned in the sentence, and which could be put within parentheses, can be marked off by commas.

Here are two examples of such clauses:

1. The clown, whose cheeks were painted bright red, was received with roars of applause.

2. When you get to the village, which is only half a mile away, inquire at the post office.

It is not absolutely necessary in all such cases to use commas, but you must insert either two or none.

In sentence 12 Dad's words are quoted, introduced by *and said*, and in 13 Jack's words are introduced in the same way. It is usual to put commas before and after such explanatory clauses as *he said*, *she answered*, etc. This can give us Rule 5.

5. When quoted words are broken by words indicating the speaker, the latter are enclosed by commas.

We will now rewrite our passage, with punctuation. In addition to the stops we have decided to use, we will put quotation marks (inverted commas) round the spoken words, question marks after the questions, and exclamation marks after sentences 13 and 14. We will also place quotation marks round the names of the steamer and the two plays, as is usually done in the case of titles of plays, books, poems, and articles from newspapers; and the names of ships and hotels. The title is considered a quotation.

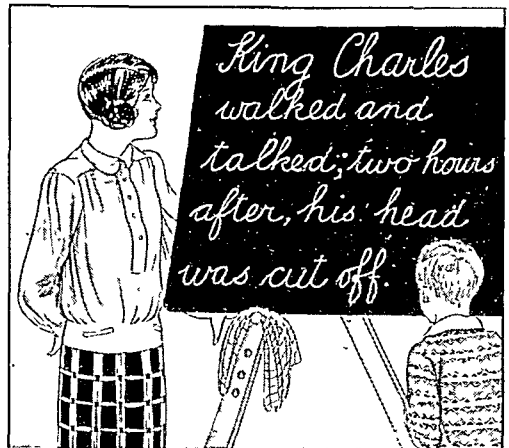
I had a splendid holiday at Brighton. I bathed in the sea every day, and one day when it was very hot I went in three times. We went to Eastbourne in a steamer called the "*Devonia*." We had several splendid rides in a charabanc. We went to Lewes, Newhaven, Worthing, Littlehampton, and Arundel.

There are two piers at Brighton, the West Pier and the Palace Pier, and on each there is a theatre and a concert hall. I went to see "*Rose Marie*" on the West Pier and "*Dr. Syn*" on the Palace Pier.

The air at Brighton makes you awfully sleepy at first. The morning after I got there I slept till past nine o'clock, and I shouldn't have waked up then if Dad hadn't come in and said, "Come on, Jack, are you going to sleep all day?" When I said, "Is it time to get up, Dad?" he roared with laughing and shouted, "Time to get up! I should think it is! It's nearly ten o'clock, and if you don't hurry you'll get no breakfast. So look sharp, my lad."



The omission of punctuation makes this sentence read as if King Charles walked after his head had been cut off.



The addition of a semicolon and a comma gives an entirely different, and the correct, meaning to the words.

As the whole passage is supposed to be an extract from a letter, and so the actual words of the writer, inverted commas could be put at the beginning and end in addition to those used to indicate the speakers in conversation. In that case all the double quotation marks now appearing in the passage would be replaced by single quotation marks.

Now, can we improve on the punctuation of the passage? Can we, by using either of the other two stops, the semicolon or the colon, make it a better piece of writing? Is there any place where a dash would be more effective than a comma? We can rule out the colon straight away, because there is no place where this little-used stop could be inserted. But we might find one or two places where a semicolon would improve matters.

The semicolon is a stop indicating a pause shorter than that of the full stop and longer than that of the comma. So, as the rules for stops are frequently not very definite or certain, it can often take the place either of a full stop or of a comma—to shorten the pause in the first case, to lengthen it in the second. It cannot be used instead of the full stop at the end of a paragraph. It cannot be used instead of the comma separating names or adjectives in a list, nor can it be used in place of commas surrounding words, phrases, or clauses in apposition. Otherwise, except between quotations and in the special cases we shall mention later, there are practically no limits to its powers of taking over the job of a full stop or of a comma.

You will notice that in the punctuated version of the letter we omitted the *and* between sentences 4 and 5, and separated

them by a full stop. Instead we might use a semicolon for the full stop and keep the *and*, as the idea of a journey runs through both sentences.

We went to Eastbourne in a steamer called the "Devonia"; and we had several splendid rides in a charabanc.

Still better, perhaps, we might end sentence 4 with a full stop after "*Devonia*," and make sentences 5 and 6 into one sentence divided into two parts by a semicolon.

We had several splendid rides in a charabanc; we went to Lewes, Newhaven, Worthing, Littlehampton, and Arundel.

The last part of the passage, from where the father speaks for the second time to the end, might be made into one sentence by using two semicolons, one after *is* and another after *breakfast*.

"Time to get up! I should think it is; it's nearly ten o'clock, and if you don't hurry you'll get no breakfast; so look sharp, my lad."

In each case here we have used the semicolon to make a pause shorter, that is, we have used it instead of a full stop. This is the more frequent use of the semicolon, but it is also used to make a longer pause than the comma. We might have punctuated sentences 4 and 5 as follows:

We went to Eastbourne in a steamer called the "Devonia," and we had several splendid rides in a charabanc.

Often it is difficult to know whether a comma or semicolon would be better to mark off one clause in a sentence from another, but there is one case in which you can be sure that you are right in using semicolons. That is when you put down two or more closely connected statements with

different subjects, and do not use conjunctions to link them.

You mustn't do that; it's wrong; you know it is.

Salisbury is a lovely city; its cathedral is the most beautiful in England, and the town contains many picturesque old houses.

If we had omitted the *and* in the second sentence, another semicolon after England would have been necessary. As you will see, it would be possible to use full stops instead of semicolons in all the cases above, but though to-day we like our sentences short, we do not care for them to be too short.

No definite rule can be laid down regarding the colon. If you think that the pause indicated by a semicolon is not sufficient, and yet you still wish to keep your two statements in one sentence, use it. Sometimes when you wish to contrast two statements very sharply, you may find it useful.

He said that I deliberately broke my word: it is not true.

Or again, if you wish to sum up in a very short clause something you have said in more words before, you may separate the last clause from the rest by a colon.

Deceive no one, cheat no one, steal from no one, lie to no one: be honest.

But you need never go out of your way to put in a colon. The full stop, semicolon, and comma will supply all your ordinary needs. If ever you find it necessary to put in rather a long quotation it is usual to introduce it with a colon, so:—

As Mr. Robinson told us the other day:

"Whenever you go to, etc."

Notice, the same stop, plus a dash, is used to introduce an example in a chapter like this when it begins a new paragraph.

The dash is a handy stop—almost too handy. Its first use is to show a sudden break in the sense; the speaker or writer begins one sentence, and then breaks off and starts another, or he finishes in a different way from the one you would expect.

I'm sure Jack is in the garden with—no, there he is!

Be sure and come to-morrow—that is, if you want to.

Then it can be used instead of parentheses, and most writers to-day prefer it to them.

No play was possible before lunch—and even after there were several interruptions—in the match at the Oval.

As there are no rules to decide exactly when it is necessary to use parentheses rather than commas to enclose a phrase or clause in apposition, so the dash is often used to show no more than a comma would.

Some girls—I don't know why—always look neat.

There are two piers at Brighton—the West Pier and the Palace Pier.

This is a slack habit which you should not allow yourself to get into. Keep the dash for occasions when there is a real break in the sentence. Readers do not like to feel that they are for ever being pulled up short for no reason. It is like riding in a car with a man who is always changing gears—and doing it badly.

The dash is also used when you are putting down an imitation of a hesitating or stammering speaker:

I—er, that is, do—er, you think—er, we c—could go?

To punctuate successfully, you must examine carefully whatever you write, and decide exactly what length and what kind of pause you wish at each place where you think a stop is needed. Vary your punctuation according to what you are writing. If you wish to give a smooth, flowing impression, use as few stops and as light (that is, commas in preference to semicolons and semicolons in preference to full stops) as possible; if you wish to give a short, sharp, hurried impression, punctuate freely and heavily.

Whenever a word is contracted a full stop is placed at the end.

Nos. 1 and 2 (Nos. for Numbers).  
Messrs. Carter & Co. (Messrs. for Messieurs and Co. for Company).

Do not put a full stop after Roman numerals.

No. IV and No. V; Henry VII, King of England.

When writing a date in figures, separate day, month, and year by full stops.

17.6.27.

If a sentence is left unfinished, place three full stops at the end, with spaces between.

If only he could . . .

If the sentence is finished and the writer wishes to leave something to the reader's imagination four full stops should be used, the first close up to the last word. If you are quoting and omit some words, show that there is an omission, or ellipsis, as it is called, by putting in three full stops. It does not matter how many words are omitted.

"There are only . . . four places in the world . . . where they exist."

If you find it necessary to break a word at the end of a line, use a hyphen after the first part. Break the word at the end of a syllable.

John said that he would return before five o'clock if nothing delayed him.

## THE LITTLE BUILDERS OF OUR LANGUAGE

*The Valuable Work Performed by Prefixes and Suffixes*

EVERY plant, from the tiniest daisy to the mightiest oak, must possess roots and stems.

Words also have roots and stems, but with words the stem includes the root. The root of a word is that part from which a whole group of words sprout; the stem is the root plus a letter or letters showing what kind of word it is. Take the very ordinary word *love*; the root is *lov* and the stem is *love*. Roots are never used by themselves as words, but stems are.

If our language consisted entirely of stems it would contain very many fewer words than it actually does. We multiply the number of our words enormously by using *affixes*. An affix placed in front of a stem is called a *prefix*, one placed after is a *suffix*.

You would be surprised at the number of prefixes and suffixes in common use in English to-day. There are hundreds of them, and they are used over and over again. Among the words we can build up from *love*, for instance, are the following:

|          |            |            |
|----------|------------|------------|
| loves    | lovely     | unloved    |
| loved    | loveliness | unlovely   |
| loving   | lovelier   | unloving   |
| lovingly | loveliest  | unlovingly |

Then there is a Latin root *vert* (meaning turn), from which we get *convert*, *subvert*, *divert*, *pervert*, *revert*, *advertisement*, *vertical*, and many other words.

We get our prefixes and suffixes from (1) Old English and Danish, (2) Latin and French, (3) Greek. The first group we call *Teutonic* affixes, and the second *Romanic*. As a general rule we use Teutonic prefixes and suffixes with words that have come to us from Old English, Romanic with words from Latin and French, and Greek with Greek words. The reason, of course, is that we generally got the stem and the prefix (not so often the suffix) together.

Both prefixes and suffixes alter the meanings of words, but a prefix does this much more completely than a suffix. We may say that a prefix alters the *colour*, but a suffix only alters the *shade*. For example:

*Unlovely* is the opposite of *lovely*, but *loving* and *lovely* express the same idea, though from two different points of view.

Suffixes are very largely used to make different parts of speech. *Love* is a noun or verb, *lovely* is an adjective, *lovingly* is an

adverb. Prefixes are never used for this purpose; their task is to make different sets of words. A prefix turns *satisfy* into *dissatisfy*, a change of prefix turns *comprise* into *surprise* and *thoroughfare* into *welfare*. When this has been done the suffix can proceed with providing the parts of speech.

The easiest way to create a new set of words is to use a prefix which contradicts or negatives the idea of the stem. We have several very common *negative* prefixes:

|                      |             |
|----------------------|-------------|
| likely—unlikely      | } Teutonic. |
| behave—misbehave     |             |
| frequent—infrequent  | } Romanic.  |
| please—displease     |             |
| chromatic—achromatic | Greek.      |

Secondly, we can alter a meaning by *strengthening* or *intensifying* it.

|                        |            |
|------------------------|------------|
| flow—overflow          | Teutonic.  |
| close—enclose          | } Romanic. |
| face—surface           |            |
| critical—hypercritical | Greek.     |

Most prefixes were originally (and many still are) prepositions, so they simply add their prepositional meaning to the meaning of the stem. A very good way to set about mastering English prefixes is to learn all the Latin and Greek prepositions and their meanings. Here are a few of the commonest:

|        |   |
|--------|---|
| LATIN. | <i>ad</i> , meaning to, towards, into, at (admit, addition, advice, accuse).                                |
|        | <i>sub</i> , meaning under, below ( <i>subway</i> , subtraction, <i>submarine</i> , sufficient).            |
|        | <i>cum</i> , meaning with, along with ( <i>committee</i> , compare, conference).                            |
| GREEK. | <i>en</i> , meaning in ( <i>encyclopaedia</i> , energy, enthusiasm, emphasis).                              |
|        | <i>para</i> , meaning beside, beyond ( <i>paragraph</i> , <i>paralysis</i> , <i>paraphrase</i> , parallel). |
|        | <i>pro</i> , meaning before ( <i>problem</i> , programme, prologue, prophet).                               |
|        | <i>syn</i> , meaning with ( <i>synagogue</i> , synonym, sympathy, syllable, system).                        |

Suffixes are chiefly noun-forming, adjective-forming, and verb-forming. Most of them can be very easily recognized. *-dom*, *-ship*, *-ling*, which give us words like *kingdom*, *freedom*, *friendship*, *hardship*, *duckling*, *darling*, are three Teutonic noun-forming suffixes, *-age* is a much used Romanic noun-forming suffix (*surage*, *language*, *cottage*), and *-ble*, *-able*, *-ible*, are forms of an adjective suffix which gives us thousands of words. *-ize*, or *-ise*, is a Greek verb-forming suffix, *izein*, which has come to us through the French, and, unlike most suffixes, can be used with stems from any source whatsoever.

# A KEY TO CORRECT PRONUNCIATION

*Below you will find the various signs used in this work to show correct pronunciation :*

|   |   |
|---|---|
| a as in bar (bar), rather (ra' ther), finale (fi na' li).           | oo as in do (doo), mood (mood), prove (proov), true (troo).   |
| ä as in bat (bät), matter (mät' ér), pansy (pän' zi).               | u as in pull (pul), could (cud), wood (wud).  |
| ā as in bate (bāt), gait (gāt), reign (rān).                        | ū as in bun (būn), dove (dūv), rough (rūf).   |
| a as in bare (bār), stair (stār), there (thār).                     | û as in fuse (fûz), pew (pû), pure (pûr).   |
| aw as in ball (bawl), water (waw' tér), fraud (frawd).              | oi as in boy (boi), coil (koil), quoit (koit).  |
| e as in cell (sel), bury (ber' i), impel (im pel').                 | ou as in bout (bout), now (nou), bower (bou' ér).   |
| ě as in fern (fěrn), lurch (lěrch), gird (gěrd), word (wěrd).       | kh as in loch (lokh), coronach (kor' ô nakh).   |
| ē as in deed (dēd), chief (chēf), idea (i dē' ā), piano (pē ān' ō). | n as in aileron (āl' ron), chiffon (shif' on).  |
| i as in sit (sit), kindle (kin' dl), guild (gild), lymph (limf).    | th as in thick (thik), wreath (rēth).   |
| ī as in site (sīt), might (mīt), analyse (ān' ā liz).               | th as in then (then), wreath (rēth).  |
| o as in dot (dot), watt (wot), lorry (lor' i).                      | Hard g is shown as in gong (gong), goal (göl) ; soft g as in gem (jem), gender (jen' der).  |
| ō as in no (nō), dote (dōt), glow (glō).                            | When a dot is placed over a e o u (ā é ô ù) it denotes that the vowel has a slurred or obscure sound, as in the following examples :                      |
| ö as in nor (nör), formal (för' mal).                               | abet (ä bet'), recent (rē' sènt), conform (côn förm'), nation (nā' shùn), durable (dūr' äbl), between (bē twēn'), tailor (tā' lör), measure (mez' h' ür). |

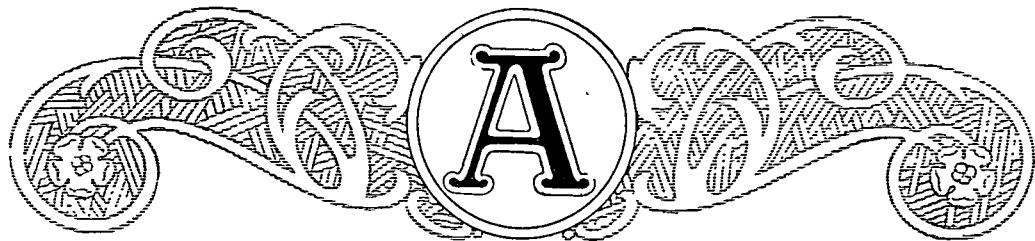
## A LITTLE LIST OF ABBREVIATIONS

*Only a few abbreviations have been found necessary. They are as follows :*

|       |              |        |                     |          |                           |
|-------|--------------|--------|---------------------|----------|---------------------------|
| acc.  | accusative.  | inter. | interjection.       | pres. p. | present participle        |
| adj.  | adjective.   | Ital.  | Italian.            | priv.    | privative.                |
| adv.  | adverb.      | L.     | Latin.              | pron.    | pronoun.                  |
| ant.  | antonym.     | L.L.   | Late Latin.         | Prov.    | Provençal.                |
| Aram. | Aramaic.     | masc.  | masculine.          | p.t.     | past tense.               |
| art.  | article.     | M.E.   | Middle English.     | Rus.     | Russian.                  |
| A.-S. | Anglo-Saxon. | M.F.   | Middle French.      | Sansk.   | Sanskrit.                 |
| conj. | conjunction. | M.G.   | Middle German.      | Sc.      | Scottish.                 |
| cp.   | compare      | M.H.G. | Middle High German. | Scand.   | Scandinavian.             |
| Dan.  | Danish.      | n.     | noun.               | Sem.     | Semitic.                  |
| dim.  | diminutive.  | Norw.  | Norwegian.          | sing.    | singular.                 |
| E.    | English.     | o.     | old.                | Slav.    | Slavonic.                 |
| F.    | French.      | O.H.G. | Old High German     | Span.    | Spanish.                  |
| fem.  | feminine.    | part.  | participle.         | Swed.    | Swedish.                  |
| Flem. | Flemish.     |        | participial.        | syn.     | synonym.                  |
| G.    | German.      | Pers.  | Persian.            | Syr.     | Syriac.                   |
| gen.  | genitive.    | pl.    | plural.             | Teut.    | Teutonic.                 |
| Goth. | Gothic.      | Port.  | Portuguese.         | U.S.A.   | United States of America. |
| Gr.   | Greek.       | p.p.   | past participle.    | v.i.     | verb intransitive.        |
| Heb.  | Hebrew.      | prep.  | preposition.        | v.t.     | verb transitive.          |
| Icel. | Icelandic.   |        |                     |          |                           |

## CONTRIBUTORS TO THIS WORK

|   |   |
|---|---|
| HAROLD WHEELER, <i>Editor</i>           | A. BOLLAERT ATKINS, <i>Assistant Editor</i>             |
| R. WOOD SMITH, <i>Art Editor</i>        | A. B. GOUGH, <i>Assistant Editor</i>                    |
| ERNEST G. OGAN, <i>Assistant Editor</i> | RICHARD HUSON, <i>Assistant Editor</i>                  |
| J. S. BAINBRIDGE, B.Sc.                 | P. H. JOHNSON, B.A., B.Sc., F.H.SHOOSMITH, B.Sc., Ph.D. |
| H. CHELLEW, D.Sc., Ph.D.                | L.C.P., F.R.G.S., F.Z.S.                                |
| FRANK E. COLLINS                        | E. JONES, B.A.  |
| J. W. COULTER                           | A. J. LIVERSEDGE, A.M.I.C.E., M. W. THOMAS, B.A.,       |
| L. H. DAWSON                            | F.R.S.A.  |
| H. C. DENT, B.A.                        | J. L. PRITCHARD, B.A.                                   |
| J. H. FRIESE, M.A., formerly            | F. J. RANDALL   |
| <i>Fellow of St. John's College,</i>    | ELIZABETH RYLEY   |
| <i>Cambridge</i>                        | W. M. SEABER, B.Sc., F.I.C.,                            |
| Cecil HANN                              | F.C.S.  |
|   | J. PEAT YOUNG   |



**A, a** (ā). The first letter and vowel in the English and most other alphabets.

The letter *a* has various sounds, and they are shown in this book by different signs or accents.

Its position as the first letter in so many alphabets is probably due to the ease with which it can be pronounced, a simple breathing enabling any of its sounds to be uttered. The interesting history of this letter, which came to us from Egypt, is told on page x.

As a part of speech *a* is an adjective expressing a number or an amount. It is called the indefinite article to distinguish it from *the*, which is known as the definite article. The value and purpose of *a* as a part of speech is fully described on page xxxv.

Besides helping to form words, the letter *a* serves many other purposes. It is frequently in demand as a symbol or sign standing for a thing, a process or an idea, and it also plays an important part in abbreviations. It is the first of the dominical letters, which indicate on what day of the year the first Sunday falls; thus if the first Sunday falls on January 1st the dominical letter is A, if on January 2nd B, and so on. As a motor-car index-mark it stands for London.

In music A is an important note, as orchestras tune from it. It is the sixth note in the scale of C major and minor, the fifth in D major and minor, and the third in F major. In scale A the notes run alphabetically: A B C D E F G, to the next A above.

As an abbreviation it represents many words of which it is the first letter, including *artium*, in *artium magister*—Master of Arts; Academy, or Academician, in Royal Academy, or Royal Academician (R.A.); *anno*, meaning in the year, in *anno Domini* (A.D.); and *ante*, meaning before, in *ante meridiem* (a.m.).

As a prefix—a letter or syllable placed before a word—*a* also serves a very important purpose. It represents in or on in words like *abed*, *afoot*; *away* or *out*, as in *arise*, *awake*; *of or from*, as in *akin*, *afresh*; *to*, as in *ado*; *out*, as in *amend*; *from*, as in *avert*; *against*, as in *along*; and *not*, as in *achromatic*.

**A 1** (ā wun). A symbol denoting ships of the highest class.

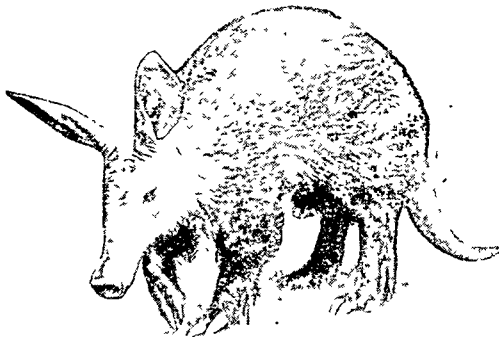
Nowadays anything that is first-class is said to be A 1, but originally the term was applied only to ships that were thoroughly seaworthy or of the highest class. In "Lloyd's Register of British and Foreign Shipping" this sign is put at the side of the names of the ships entitled to be described as first-class.

**aardvark** (ard' vark), *n.* The African ant-bear.

With a snout rather like that of a pig, very long ears, and a tail almost equal in length to its arched body, the African ant-bear is certainly not one of the beauties of the animal world. It is found from the Cape of Good Hope as far north as Somaliland.

The early Dutch colonists of South Africa gave it an ugly name, for *aarde* means earth,

and *varken* pig. The ant-bear is provided with a specially long worm-like tongue which is covered with a sticky saliva, so that, when it is darted out to its full length, it can seize on ants and termites without giving them a chance to escape. It belongs to a group of animals called *Edentates*, meaning toothless. This is not quite true of the aardvark, however, because, though it has



**Aardvark.**—The name of this African animal is borrowed from the Dutch and means earth pig.

no front teeth, it has just a few "cheek-teeth," but with no enamel on them. Its scientific name is *Orycteropus afer*.

**aardwolf** (ard' wulf), *n.* The "earth-wolf" of South Africa.

Although this animal looks very much like a small hyena, with its front legs rather longer than the back ones, its bristling crest of hair something like a horse's mane, and its habit of walking on its toes, yet it has certain peculiarities of its own. One of these is its shortage of teeth, and another is the rounded pupils to its eyes like the wolf. It is therefore something like a hyena and something like a wolf. Its scientific name is *Proteles cristatus*.

**Aaron's beard** (ār' ōnz bērd), *n.* A popular name for various plants.

Boys, girls, and grown-ups christened the flowers of the field long before learned men invented scientific names for them. When

they found that certain plants had hairy clumps of leaves or tufted flowers they called them Aaron's beard, because they remembered reading in the Bible that Aaron, the brother of Moses and the first high priest of the children of Israel, had a flowing beard. This simple method has really led to difficulties for several plants came to be called by the same name.

*Saxifraga sarmentosa*, a well-known Chinese rock-plant, often grown in hanging pots, from which long stems bearing big clusters of hairy leaves droop down, is one of the most popular, and is also known as Mother of Thousands. Another Aaron's beard is *Hypericum calycinum*, with its pretty yellow flowers and beard-like stamens. This is sometimes called the Rose of Sharon.

**Aaron's rod** (ar' ónz rod), *n.* A term used in architecture and botany.

We sometimes see a rod with a serpent twined round it cut out in stone on the front of a building. This illustrates what



Aaron's rod.—The Wild Arum, which is often called Aaron's rod.

happened when Aaron, the high priest of Israel, threw down his rod in front of Pharaoh and it immediately turned into a serpent. Sometimes the rod has leaves round it, in memory of Aaron's rod that budded in token of the priesthood being vested in the house of Levi. Unfortunately when and why these symbols were first used is forgotten. The name Aaron's rod is also used for certain plants which flower on long straight stems that stand up stiffly. One of the best known of these is also called Golden Rod.

**Ab** (áb), *n.* The fifth ecclesiastical month, and the eleventh civil month, of the Jewish year.

For everyday purposes most people consider a year as the period of 365 days which includes spring, summer, autumn, and winter, but each religion has its own Church year with special festivals, fasts, and so on. The Jewish month of Ab is our July.

**aback** (à bák'), *adv.* By surprise; backward; aft. (F. *déconcerté, sur le mât.*)

When we use the phrase "taken aback," meaning "taken by surprise," we are really using a sailor's expression, for aback or back in nautical language means "with the sails pressed backward against the mast." This is often due to a sudden change of the wind. On one memorable occasion, when Nelson was being pursued by two Spanish ships, a man fell overboard. Lieutenant Masterman Hardy was at once placed in

charge of a jolly-boat and hastened to the rescue.

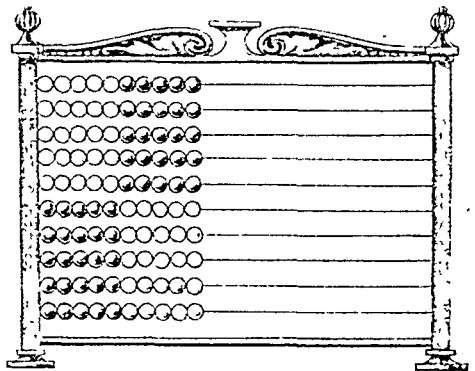
The current was strong, the poor fellow disappeared, and the little craft began drifting towards the oncoming enemy. "I'll not lose Hardy; back the mizzen top-sail," shouted Nelson, thus causing the vessel to slow down, and the brave lieutenant and his sailors were rescued. This gallant deed also had an effect, which Nelson had not anticipated, for when the Spaniards saw that the British ship was not forging ahead they imagined that the commander had sighted vessels coming to his assistance, and gave up the chase.

E. *a-* = on, and back, A. S. *onbaec*.

**abacus** (áb' à kús) *n.* A counting-frame. The plural is *abaci* (áb'-à sî). (F. *abaque*.) Quite young children find it very difficult to learn arithmetic. The words one, two, three, and so on, have no meaning for them. But if they see one, two, or three objects put together or taken away, they soon begin to understand something about addition and subtraction. To make the learning of the rules easy and interesting, boys and girls are often taught by means of an abacus, which is a wooden frame with beads that slide up and down on wires. By adding and subtracting beads of one colour, or beads on a particular wire, a child soon learns the relative values of numbers.

The Chinese still use a frame very much like this for their business calculations. Architects use the word for a flat tablet of stone which is put at the top of stone columns to support that part of the design called the entablature. A small abacus is an *abaculus* (à bák' ū lús, *n.*), plural *abaculi* (à bák' ū lî).

L. *abacus*; Gr. *abax*, -*akos*, tablet.

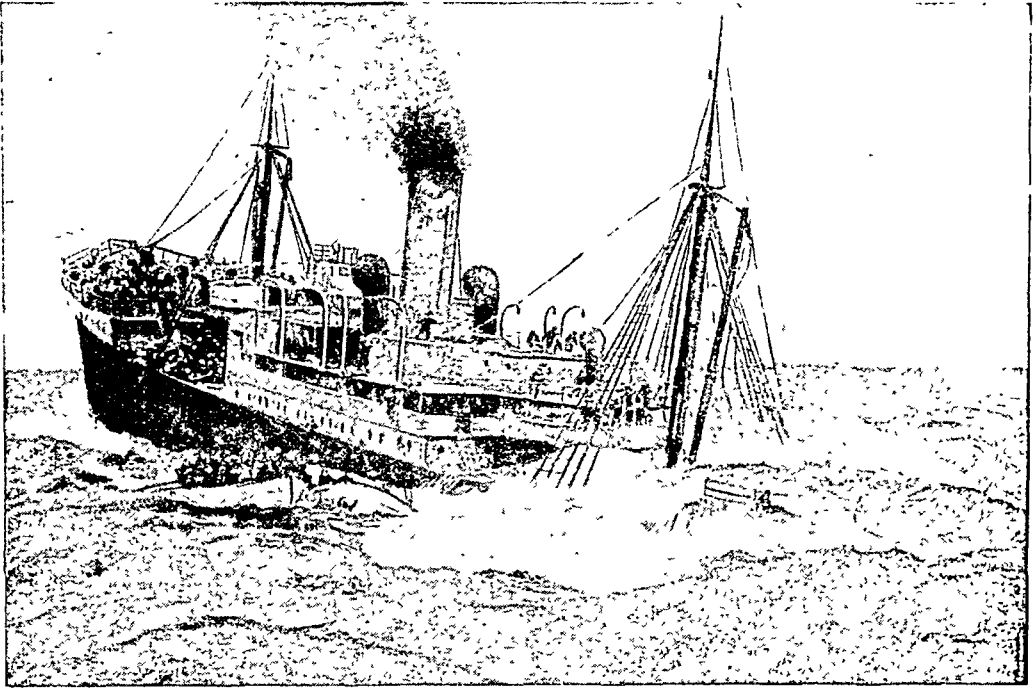


Abacus.—The wooden frame with beads of different colours sliding on wires used for counting.

**Abaddon** (à bād' ón), *n.* The angel or guardian of the Bottomless Pit.

John Milton, one of our greatest poets, in telling the story of the Fallen Angels in "Paradise Lost" and "Paradise Regained," divides the universe in what seems to us nowadays a very strange way. He imagined it to be a sphere of an unknown size divided





Abandonment.—When a vessel is sinking the captain may give the order to "abandon ship," as on this occasion. A boat-load of passengers is just leaving the doomed steamer.

into two hemispheres, or half globes. The upper one was Heaven, or the Empyrean, a region of light and happiness; the lower one was Chaos, without light or order of any kind. At the extreme bottom of Chaos was a Bottomless Pit called Hell, a region of fire, mountains, and sulphurous lakes. See Apollyon.

Heb. word meaning *destruction*.

**abaft** (à baft'), *adv.* and *prep.* Towards the hind part of a ship. (F. *arrière*.)

The hind or back part of a ship is called the stern. Sailors pronounce it starn. The curved piece of timber at the prow (or front), to which the two sides of the ship are joined, is called the stem. So if we want to describe the whole length of a ship we use the expression "from stem to stern."

On small vessels the captain, standing on the bridge, calls down to the crew, "Abaft there!" or "Below there!" according to where the sailors are or where they are wanted. On big ships there are mechanical arrangements for carrying orders from the captain to the crew.

E. *a-* = on, *b-* = by, aft, that is, on by the aft or hind part. SYN.: Aft, astern, behind. ANT.: Ahead, before.

**abandon** (à bân' dôn), *v.t.* To give up; to desert. *n.* Freedom from restraint. (F. *abandonner*; *abandon*.)

When we say we abandon something that exists in the mind only, such as hope or fear, we mean that we give it up. For example, in "The Inferno," the famous Italian poet

Dante tells of his journey, with Virgil as his guide, through the underworld to Paradise. At one point they pass through a wood and reach a gate above which Dante reads the dreadful words, "All hope abandon, ye who enter here."

We also speak of abandoning things that we can see. When a vessel is sinking the captain may give the order to the crew to "abandon ship." They then take to the boats. The act of leaving is called abandonment (à bân' dôn mēt, *n.*). This word may also be used in the sense of self-surrender, as the abandonment of good for evil, and anyone who has so surrendered himself is an abandoned person. When the word abandon is used as a noun it is pronounced like the French word—a ban dong.

O.F. *abandoner*, from L.L. *abandonare*, from *a-* = ad, *bandum*, *bannum*, order, decree, à *bandon*, in the power. SYN.: Desert, forsake, leave, renounce, surrender. ANT.: Adopt, hold, keep, retain.

**abandonee** (à bân dôn ē'), *n.* One to whom anything is abandoned.

In legal agreements, the two parties always have a legal name. For instance, if something is being sold, the person who sells it is called the vendor, and the person who buys it the vendee. A person to whom goods are sent is called the consignee, and the sender the consignor, and so on. If a cargo ship which is insured is wrecked the owner goes to the man who insured it and abandons or gives up the cargo—now called

salvage—to the insurer, who is termed an underwriter. The latter then becomes the abandoner, that is, the person to whom the salvage has been given up.

L.L. *abandonare*, p.p. *abandonatus* (ce = atus).

**abase** (à bās'), *v.t.* To lower; to degrade. (F. *abaissér*.)

At the time of the French Revolution, when the people wished to show their hatred of the aristocrats, they shouted "*à bas!*" whenever people of noble birth appeared. An English crowd would have shouted, "Down with them!" and a glance will show the likeness between the French "*à bas*" and the English word "abase." To sink to the knees is either a sign of abasement (à bās' ment, *n.*) or of respectful worship.

O.F. *abaissier*, to lower, from L.L. *abassare*, from *a* = *ad*, *bassus*, low. SYN.: Cast down, disgrace, humble. ANT.: Advance, elevate, honour.

**abash** (à bāsh'), *v.t.* To put to shame, to confuse. (F. *ebahir*.)

When people are easily confused by the presence of other people we call them bashful or shy. We use the word abashed either in connexion with a certain cause or a certain occasion. When we talk of being abashed in connexion with a particular cause, we add the preposition *by*. For example, we say that "So and so was abashed by the presence of the man he had injured." But we should say, "So and so was abashed at the thought of the crowded court." This condition would be called abashment (à bāsh' ment, *n.*)

O.F. *esbahir*, astonish, from *ex* (E. *a*) out, *bahir*, to make one cry "Bah!" in surprise. SYN.: Awe, confound, confuse, disconcert. ANT.: Animate, embolden, encourage, inspirit.

**abate** (à bāt'), *v.t.* To make less. *v.i.* To become less. (F. *diminuer*.)

In everyday language, we do not often use this particular word in the sense given above. But there is one special occasion when we employ it, and that is in connexion with floods. We talk about floods abating when we mean that they are going down.

In the ordinary course of nature, floods which result from an unusually heavy rainfall gradually recede of their own accord, but sometimes engineers are called in to make an artificial outlet for the flood water so that it will do less damage. This course was adopted when the River Mississippi overflowed its banks in 1927 and threatened to destroy New Orleans. Openings were made with explosives in a great embankment near the busy city, and thus the waters

found new outlets and were carried in another direction. This led to the abatement (à bāt' ment, *n.*) of the menace, and the floods were abatable (à bāt' ábl, *adj.*) because they could be lessened.

In legal matters we use the word abate when we mean to stop or put an end to. For example, if we do something which is an annoyance to our neighbours, it is called in



**Abatement.**—The explosion of a dynamite charge to blow up an embankment in order to abate the swollen waters of the Mississippi.

legal language a nuisance, and if a lawyer is employed to tell us to stop doing this particular thing he asks us to abate the nuisance. Marks of dishonour on a coat of arms are known as abatement.

O.F. *abatre*, to beat down; L. *ad* to, *battere*, *battere*, beat. SYN.: Decrease, diminish; lessen; subside. ANT.: Augment, enhance, increase; intensify.

**abatis** (a' ba tē; à bāt' is), *n.* A defence of trees which have been felled and laid side by side with the branches towards the enemy. Another spelling is abattis. (F. *abatis*, *abattis*.)

A rampart made in this way enables advancing troops to hide from the enemy and at the same time to watch them through the spaces between the leaves.

In the World War a kind of abatis or screen of green boughs was often used as camouflage to hide a big gun.

In Shakespeare's play "Macbeth," the troops who were advancing against Macbeth adopted a plan that was even cleverer than the making of an abatis. They cut down the branches of trees as they passed through Birnam Wood, and carried them in their hands as they marched on. A messenger came to Macbeth and said:

As I did stand my watch upon the hill,  
I look'd toward Birnam, and anon, methought,  
The wood began to move.

At first Macbeth would not believe this, but when he saw the strange sight for himself he lost all his courage, for he

remembered the prophecy that a witch had told him some time before :

Macbeth shall never vanquish'd be until  
Great Birnam wood to high Dunsinane hill  
Shall come against him.

*F. abatis*, from *O.F. abatre*, to beat down,  
*L. ad to, batere, batuere*, to beat.

**abattoir** (a ba twar'), *n.* A public slaughter-house. (*F. abattoir*.)

In olden days animals were killed as required by any unskilled person who would undertake the task. As a result, a great deal of unnecessary suffering was inflicted upon them, and there was great danger to the public health. The first European abattoir was built in Paris in 1818. Everything is done to ensure painless death and cleanliness in an abattoir.

*O.F. abatere*, to beat down; *L. ad to, batere, batuere*, to beat.

**abb** (äb), *n.* Yarn used by a weaver. (*F. chaîne de tisserand*.)

In a loom for the weaving of cloth the threads which are stretched out lengthwise are called the warp, and those which cross them are called the weft or woof. The yarn for the warp was formerly termed the abb.

Up to the time of Queen Victoria's reign the looms were worked by hand, and when machinery was introduced it made one of the most important changes in British industry that have ever taken place. Hand-loomers are still used by a few people, but the cost of the materials woven in this way is so much greater that hand-weaving is only made possible by people who have

sufficient love of hand-made things to keep the craft going. The hand-loom workers lived for the most part in the north of England, where giant weaving mills house the costly machinery that is now used. The wool most suitable for a weaver's warp is **abb-wool** (äb wul, *n.*).

*A.-S. āb=aweb*, from *a up, wefan*, to weave.

**Abba** (äb' ä), *n.* Father.

When the translators of the Bible came to put the New Testament into the Greek language, they still left in the word **Abba** and added the word **Father**, which is the same word in another language (Mark xiv, 36; Romans viii, 15; Galatians iv, 6). So God the Father is sometime, referred to as **Abba**, Father. In the Syriac and Coptic churches a bishop is known as an **abba**.

*Aram. abbā*, O Father.

**abbé** (äb' ä), *n.* A general term on the European continent for a Roman Catholic clergyman.

It is used especially for a priest who is not connected with a particular church, such as one who is engaged in teaching or who is attached to a private household.

*F. abbé*, abbot, *L. abbas*, *abm.*

**abbess** (äb' es), *n.* The female superior of an abbey. *See* abbot.

**abbey** (äb' i), *n.* A building or collection of buildings housing a community of monks or nuns under the control of an abbot or abbess; the church belonging to such a community. (*F. abbaye*.)

Many of the finest churches in Britain, such as Westminster Abbey and Canterbury Cathedral, have been abbeys, or are built on



Abbey.—Some of the ruins of Fountains Abbey, once a part of the richest monastery in Yorkshire. It probably got its name because of the many springs nearby. The church was begun by Abbot John in 1203.

ground on or near which an abbey once stood. Newstead Abbey, in Nottinghamshire, was turned into a dwelling house, and the poet Byron lived there for some time.

The abbeys were enclosed by strong walls, and were little worlds in themselves. A well-appointed abbey would have a bake-house, a brew-house, farm buildings, various kinds of workshops, a scriptorium or writing-room, and a large garden. As fish was a very important item in the menu, no abbey was complete without its fish-pond. So carefully was this constructed that often the fish-pond remains after all traces of the abbey buildings themselves have disappeared.

Apart from the church itself, one of the most important features was the cloister. Here the older members of the community studied, and the younger members received instruction. Close to the kitchen was the refectory, where the monks had their meals. Strangers were entertained in guest-houses or guest-halls, and in the almonry alms were bestowed upon the poor. Attached to the almonry there was often a free school for village children.

When an abbey became very large and powerful it would sometimes throw out offshoots, just as a tree throws out branches. Such a branch house was called a priory, and was ruled by a prior, who at first looked to the abbot of the parent house for his orders. When the priors themselves grew in power they often shook off this control, and gradually there came to be little difference between an abbey and a priory.

O.F. *abere*, *abare*, L.L. *abbātia*. SYN.: Cloister, convent, monastery.

**abbot** (ăb' ōt), *n.* The head of a community of monks; a title of respect originally applied to any monk, and especially to one who was very old. (F. *abbé*.)

The title was first used in the monasteries of Syria. There were many kinds of abbots, including the mitred abbot, who wore a mitre on his head like a bishop, and the crosiered abbot, who bore a crosier or pastoral staff in his right hand. Under the feudal system abbeys came to be awarded to men not in holy orders for military and other services, and these lay abbots grew numerous and powerful. Germany had her prince-abbots.

In the Middle Ages the leader of the Christmas revels was called the Abbot or Lord of Misrule. In Scotland he was known as the Abbot of Unreason.

**Abbacy** (ăb' ā sì, *n.*) and **abbotship** (ăb' ōt ship, *n.*) are used for the state, offices, rank, and privileges of an abbot and also for the time during which an abbot is in office. **Abbess** (ăb' ěs, *n.*) is used for the female superior of an abbey, and anything to do with an abbey or abbacy or an abbot or abbess is **abbatial** (ăbā' shi āl, *adj.*).

A.-S. *abbod*, L. *abbas*, Gr. *abbas*, -atos, Syr. *abba*, Father.

**abbreviate** (ă brē' vi āt), *v.t.* To make shorter, especially to shorten a word or expression in such a way that the result represents the original; in mathematics, to reduce to lower terms. (F. *abrégér*.)

The act or the result of shortening is **abbreviation** (ă brē vi ā' shùn, *n.*), thus A.B. is the abbreviation for able-bodied seaman, M.A. for Master of Arts, and Herts. for Hertfordshire. An **abbreviator** (ă brē' vi ā tōr, *n.*) is one who shortens. The popes used to employ a body of officials known as abbreviators to shorten the wording of their official letters and decrees. They would write in an **abbreviatory** (ă brē' vi ā tō ri, *adj.*) way, and their work would be an **abbreviature** (ă brē' vi ā tūr, *n.*).

L. *abbreviatus*; p.p. of *abbreviare*, to shorten (*ab=ad*, *brevis*, short). SYN.: Abridge, condense, contract, reduce, shorten. ANT.:

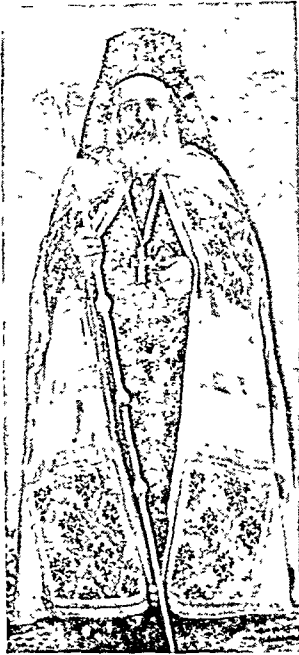
Amplify, enlarge, expand, extend, lengthen.

**Abderian** (ăb dēr' i ān), *adj.* Belonging to the ancient Greek city of Abdera on the south coast of Thrace; fond of laughing. (F. *abderien*.)

Abdera was the birthplace of the Greek philosopher, Democritus. He looked on life in a cheerful, hopeful way and was therefore called the laughing philosopher, and that is how the word Abderian got its second meaning. Democritus visited many lands and lived from 460 to 370 B.C.

**Abderite** (ăb' dēr it), *n.* A person who lived at Abdera in Thrace; a simpleton. (F. *abderite*.)

Although the philosopher Democritus, who was a citizen of Abdera, was famous enough for his wisdom to be referred to simply as the Abderite, the townspeople of Abdera generally had the name of being very foolish. Something in the air of the place was supposed to make them stupid and easily taken in. In ancient times the people of Bœotia in Greece had a similar reputation, and in England the villagers of Gotham in Nottinghamshire became known far and wide for their rustic simplicity.



Abbot.—The abbot of a monastery in Papho, Cyprus.

**abdicate** (ăb' di kât), *v.t.* To give up; abandon. *v.i.* To give up something, such as a dignity, privilege, or office, especially the throne. (F. *abdiquer*.)

An abdication (ăb di kâ' shùn, *n.*) may be voluntary or compulsory. The emperors Diocletian in 305 and Charles V in 1555 abdicated because they were weary of the work of governing their immense dominions. The many sovereigns who abdicated during the World War (1914-18) were forced to do so by public opinion.

A British king can only legally abdicate with the consent of Parliament. It was thus that Richard II abdicated in 1399. When

**abduct** (ăb dukt'), *v.t.* To lead or draw away. (F. *enlever*.)

To abduct anybody is to take or lead him away unlawfully. The misdeed is abduction (ăb dŭk' shùn, *n.*), a term also applied to the action by which certain muscles pull back the parts of the body to which they are attached, or to the drawing apart of the sides of a wound or of a bone after it has been broken. It is also used in logic, to denote a certain kind of argument. The person who carries away another wrongfully is an abductor (ăb dŭk' tŏr, *n.*), a term also used for a muscle which draws away from the middle line or pulls back a part or parts of



Abdication.—The impressive scene at the Palace of Fontainebleau, near Paris, on the 11th April, 1814, when Napoleon I, Emperor of the French, signed his abdication and surrendered his throne.

James II threw the great seal into the Thames and fled to France in 1688, he was declared by the Lords and Commons to have abdicated the government, though he never formally resigned the crown.

On the 9th November, 1918, just before the close of the World War, the German Emperor, realizing that his army was defeated, signed his abdication at Spa, in Belgium. By that act he surrendered his throne, and became an abdicator (ăb di kâ' tŏr, *n.*).

*L.* *ab* from, *dicare*, proclaim. *SYN.* : Abandon, renounce, surrender. *ANT.* : Adopt, claim, keep, usurp.

**abdomen** (ăb dŏ' men), *n.* A part of the body which in human beings contains most of the organs that have to do with digestion, and in insects the whole of the body below the "waist." (F. *abdomen*.)

Anything relating to the abdomen is termed abdominal (ăb dŏm' in ăl, *adj.*), thus we speak of an abdominal operation. A stout person is abdominally (ăb dŏm' in ăl li, *adv.*) inclined, or abdominous (ăb dŏm' in ūs, *adj.*).

*L.* *abdomen*, possibly for *adipomen*, from *adeps*, fat.

the body. Such a muscle is abducent (ăb dŭ' sĕnt, *adj.*).

*L.* *abducere*, *ab*, from, *ducere*, to lead or draw. *SYN.* : Carry off, kidnap, take away. *ANT.* : Adduct, reinstate, restore.

**abeam** (a bĕm'), *adj.* On the beam. (F. *par le travers, sur le côté*.)

Sailors often use the word beam for the side of a ship, and when they catch sight of some object on either side of the ship, they say that there is something abeam.

*E.* *a-* = on, and beam.

**abecedarian** (ă be sĕ dar ' ăn), *n.* Someone or something that has to do with the alphabet. *adj.* Relating to the alphabet. **Abecedary** (ă bĕ sĕ' dă ri) is another spelling. (F. *abécédaire*.)

When learning the A B C a child is an abecedarian; so is the teacher who teaches him. One who knows very little—who is in need of learning the alphabet—is an abecedarian. In the sixteenth century there was a little group of people in Germany who thought that to understand the Scriptures was the only important thing, therefore there was no need to learn the alphabet. They were nicknamed abecedarians.

Things arranged in the order of the letters of the alphabet are abecedarian. Hymns and psalms used often to be written in this way, perhaps to make it easier for people to remember them. That very long Psalm, number CXIX, is abecedarian. You will see that each of its 22 parts has a strange-looking word—Aleph, Beth, Gimel, etc.—at the top. These words are the letters of the Hebrew alphabet arranged in their proper order. In the Hebrew language, in which they were first written, the first word of each of the verses headed Aleph began with the letter aleph and so on right through the alphabet.

L.L. *abecedarus*, alphabetical.

**aberrant** (äb er' änt), *adj.* Wandering from the right way; varying from type. (F. *aberrant*.)

One who does not keep strictly to the truth is aberrant, the action being aberrance (äb er' äns, *n.*) or, as it is less usually called, aberrancy (äb er' äñ si, *n.*). An animal which differs from the natural type is said to be aberrant.

The makers of the early telescope were greatly worried by difficulties caused by the wandering of light rays from their right path. This aberration (äb er ä' shün, *n.*), as it is called, has two forms, spherical and chromatic, or colour, aberration. The one causes the images formed to appear misshapen, and the other fringes them with the colours that are formed by pure light passing through a prism. These defects were at last overcome by using two lenses for the objective, the inner one concave or hollowed out, and the other convex or arched, the rays of light



Aberration.—Bradley, discoverer of the aberration of light.

thus being more exactly focused.

James Bradley, who became astronomer-royal, made an important discovery in 1728 which he called the "aberration of light." He found that the apparent movement of fixed stars was due to the effect of the motion of light and the movement (as the earth revolves about the sun) of the observer. What actually happens is that the observer, who moves with the earth, sees only the light of the star, not where the star actually is but where it was some time before, that is, as long ago as it takes for light to travel the distance between the star and the earth.

When it is raining, walk briskly along, and you will think the rain is falling towards you, but walk quickly backwards and it will appear that the rain is falling slantingly towards your back. Now stand still, and

you will see how it is falling—in a straight line from the sky, or almost so. This is very much like what happens to aberrant light-rays.

L. *ab* from, *errare* to wander, go astray. SYN.: Deviating, divergent, exceptional, irregular, unusual. ANT.: Consistent, natural, regular, uniform.

**abet** (ä bet'), *v.t.* To aid or encourage by act or advice; to uphold. (F. *soutenir*, *encourager*.)

Originally abet meant "to bite" and later "to bait," as to set dogs to bait or worry a rat, but now it is generally used in the bad sense, as "to aid and abet a crime." One who does so is an abetter (ä bet' er, *n.*) and his act an abetment (ä bet' ment, *n.*). In law, abettor (ä bet' ör) is the correct spelling.

O.F. *abeter*, to incite; from *à* to, *beter* to bait. SYN.: Aid, help, incite, promote, sanction. ANT.: Baffle, deter, frustrate, hinder, obstruct.

**abeyance** (ä bā' äns), *n.* A state of being held back; suspension for a time. (F. *suspension*, *vacance*.)

The real meaning of abeyance is a thing gaped after, in reference to people standing open-mouthed in expectation of seeing something about to make its appearance, but the word is seldom if ever used in this sense.

The word frequently occurs in law relating to a property or inheritance that awaits the appointment of someone entitled to possession. Thus a property not at present owned by anyone is said to be in abeyance. Sometimes a title of honour may fall into abeyance, in which case the Sovereign may appoint a person to succeed to it.

O.F. *abeyance*; from *à* to, *béer*; F. *bayer*; late L. *badare*, to gape. SYN.: Expectancy, suspension, waiting. ANT.: Action, possession, renewal, revival.

**abhor** (äb hör'), *v.t.* To detest or loathe. (F. *abhorrer*.)

We abhor anything that is evil, because it is abhorrent (äb hor' ent, *adj.*) or hateful, and we may show our abhorrence (äb hor' ens, *n.*) or abhorrence (äb hor' en si, *n.*) by expressing dislike of it. Abhorrently (äb hor' ent li, *adv.*) means in a hateful manner. A person who detests or loathes is an abhorrer (äb hör' er).

Nowadays there is always a Government, for even during a general election the ministers carry on the business of the country until the new Parliament meets. At an earlier period a monarch often ruled without such help, and many people considered that it was the king's right to summon Parliament only when he wished.

In 1679 those who did not agree with this petitioned Charles II for a new Parliament and were called Petitioners, while those who favoured the king sent addresses expressing abhorrence of the former and were named Abhorrrers. The rival parties

were afterwards known as Whigs and Tories or, as we should call them, Liberals and Conservatives.

L. *abhorre*, from *ab* from, *horre* to shrink. SYN.: Despise, detest, hate, recoil from, shrink from. ANT.: Admire, esteem, like, love, relish.

**Abib** (ä' bib), *n.* The old Hebrew name for the first month of the Jewish year, meaning "ears of grain." It was in the spring.

Abib, like all the other Hebrew names of months, was replaced by a Babylonian name, Nisan (see Nisan). On the 14th day of this month the feast of the Passover is held.

**abide** (ä bid'), *v.i.* To dwell, stay, or wait; to continue. *v.t.* To wait for; to endure. (F. *demeurer*, *souffrir*.)

This word appears in the title line of Henry Francis Lyte's well-known hymn "Abide with me: fast falls the eventide," which was written on the day on which he preached his last sermon. Love can be abiding (ä bid' ing, *adj.*) or lasting, and a thing may be abidingly (ä bid' ing li, *adv.*) or for ever lovely. A dweller in a town or house is an abider (ä bid' er, *n.*) therein.

A.-S. *abidan*, to abide, from *a-* intensive, *bidan* to bide. SYN.: Await, dwell, expect, inhabit, reside, tarry. ANT.: Abandon, depart, migrate, proceed.

**abigail** (äb' i gäl), *n.* a waiting-maid. (F. *femme de chambre*, *soubrette*.)

Several authors and playwrights give the name Abigail to characters who are employed in household duties. Beaumont and Fletcher in "The Scornful Lady" call the "waiting gentlewoman" Abigail, and Swift and Fielding also adopt the name for characters in a similar walk of life. Their choice is not mere chance, but is inspired by Abigail, the wife of Nabal, and afterwards of David, whose handmaid (1 Samuel xxv, 24) she styled herself.

Abigail is a Heb. word probably meaning "Father is Joy," that is, "whose father rejoices," or "father of joy," who brings joy.

**ability** (ä bil' i ti), *n.* Physical, mental or moral power; skill; *pl.*, intellectual gifts. (F. *habileté*, *talents*.)

From 1842 to 1847 engineers in the British Navy had the opportunity to secure a medal for "ability and good conduct"; only six of these medals were awarded, the distribution being discontinued when naval engineers were given the rank of warrant officer.

F. *habilité*, from L. *habilitas*, from *habilis* clever, apt. See able. SYN.: Aptitude, cleverness, ingenuity, skilfulness, talent. ANT.: Inaptitude, inability, maladroitness, stupidity.

**abiogenesis** (äb i ö jen' è sis), *n.* The production of living matter from non-living matter. (F. *abiogénèse*.)

Belief in abiogenesis was quite common until Thomas Huxley, • Louis Pasteur,

John Tyndall, and other famous scientists were able to disprove it. Another form of the word is abiogeny (äb i oj' èn i, *n.*). One who so believes is an abiogenist (äb i oj' èn ist, *n.*). Anything relating to abiogenesis is abiogenetic (äb i ö jèn et' ik, *adj.*) and anything formed in such a way is produced abiogenetically (äb i ö jèn et' ik äi li, *adv.*) and is abiogenous (äb i oj' èn üs, *adj.*).

Gr. *a-*, priv., *bios* life, and *genesis* generation.

**abject** (äb' jekt), *adj.* Sunk to a low condition; mean, worthless. (F. *abject*, *bas*.)

One who is mean or base is an abject person and acts abjectly (äb jekt' li, *adv.*); his condition is abjection (äb jekt' shun, *n.*) or abjectness (äb jekt' nés, *n.*).

Abject was at one time in general use as a noun for a base or mean-spirited person, in which sense it occurs in Psalm xxxv, 15: "The abjects gathered themselves together against me." It was also used as a verb, and meant to cast or throw down.

L. *abjectus*, p.p. of *abjicio*; *ab* from, *jacere* throw. SYN.: Base, contemptible, despicable, pitiful, servile. ANT.: August, exalted, lofty, noble, superb

**abjure** (äb joor), *v.t.* To deny or take back on oath (what one has said) to; give up. (F. *abjurer*.)

On one of the doors of the Church of the Holy Trinity at Stratford-on-Avon,



Abjure.- Sanctuary knocker at Durham Cathedral.

where Shakespeare is buried, there is a massive sanctuary knocker. Here, as in many other religious buildings down to the reign of James I, a man fleeing from justice who knocked could find sanctuary, and escape with his life if he took an oath to "abjure the realm." This meant that he gave up all

his rights as a citizen and a subject of the king, and left the country within a certain time.

After William III had become King of England all members of Parliament, clergymen, lawyers, teachers, and others who held public office had to swear that they would give up allegiance to "the late King James" and not give support to any of his descendants who might claim the throne of England. This was called the Oath of Abjuration (äb joor ä' shün, *n.*). A person who renounces or takes such an oath is an abjurer (äb joor' er, *n.*), and his action is abjuratory (äb joor' ä tö ri, *adj.*).

L. *ab* from, *jurare* to swear (away, renounce). SYN.: Forego, foreswear, reject, renounce. ANT.: Advocate, avow, claim, retain.



**Ablaze.** A great fire at a paint works which did damage to the extent of over £1,000,000 before the firemen succeeded in their efforts to get the outbreak under control. Our picture shows the building well ablaze.

**ablation** (āb' lā' shūn), *n.* The process of carrying away. (F., in some senses, *ablation*.)

This word is used chiefly by scientific men, such as doctors, surgeons, and geologists. A geologist would tell you that the melting of the surface of a glacier and the wearing away of a rock by water constantly flowing over it are examples of ablation.

Late L. *ablatus*, from *ablatus*, p.p. of *auferre* to carry away.

**ablative absolute** (āb' lā tiv āb' s' jōot), *n.* A Latin form of writing answering to the English nominative absolute, that is, a noun (or pronoun) and a participle independent of the rest of a sentence. Examples: "*Lessons finished* we leave school." "*This done* he hurried off." These would be expressed in Latin by a noun and participle in the ablative case.

**ablaut** (āb' lout), *n.* Change of the root vowel in a word, through shifting of the accent in the parent language; gradation. (F. *changement de la voyelle radicale*, *apophonie*.)

By such change the meaning is altered in the same way as other words are altered by adding letters to them. Examples of ablaut are *fight*, *fought*; *sit*, *sat*.

G. *ab* from, *laut* sound.

**ablaze** (ā blāz'), *adv.* and *adj.* Well alight; gleaming; greatly excited. (F. *en flamme*.)

On the 2nd September, 1666, at about two o'clock in the morning, a fire broke out in a shop belonging to the King's baker in Pudding Lane, near London Bridge. In those far off days there was no Fire

Brigade as we now have, and thus the fire, fanned by a north-east wind, spread very quickly to adjoining buildings. Soon whole streets were atacked, and most of the large and important buildings in the city were ablaze.

No fewer than eighty-five churches, including St. Paul's Cathedral, were burnt down, and the Royal Exchange, Guildhall, and some 13,000 houses were also laid in ruins. It was not until the 6th September that the fire died out, so that London was actually ablaze for four days.

A garden full of coloured flowers is said to be ablaze with colour, and a very angry person ablaze with anger.

A=on (in), A.-S. *blaese* flame, torch.

**able** (āb' l), *adj.* Having the power and knowledge needed to do a given task. (F. *habile*.)

Boys or girls are able who can do their lessons. The word is also used in describing greater powers and knowledge, such as those of a very able man, or in describing anyone who has the resources or ability needed for doing anything.

A task performed capably or with ability is *ably* (āb' li, *adv.*) done. A strong and healthy person is said to be *able-bodied* (āb' l bod id, *adj.*). Those who have to do with ships commonly speak of an A.B., an *able-bodied* or *able seaman*, meaning a sailor who thoroughly knows his work, although having no rank.

O.F. *habile*, from L. *habilis*, handy, from *habere*, to have. SYN.: Clever, gifted, ingenious, proficient, skillful. ANT.: Incompetent, inefficient, stupid, unskilful.



**ablen** (ăb' lèn), *n.* A name for the bleak. (F. *able*, *ablette*.)

A small silvery fish, also called **ablet** (ăb' lèt, *n.*), it is about four inches long and is found in the rivers in Britain and throughout Europe. Ausonius, a Latin poet and schoolmaster who lived in the fourth century A.D., mentions that he had watched boys catching bleaks.

Late L. *abula* = *albula*, dim. from *albus* white.

**ablution** (ă bloo' shùn), *n.* The act of washing or cleansing. (F. *ablution*, *nettoie-ment*.)

Many a boy has been asked if he has "performed his ablutions," which is another way of saying "Have you washed yourself?" Some small boys appear to find washing rather a nuisance, but it was quite otherwise with the Romans, who considered bathing so delightful that they built magnificent palaces of marble for the purpose. The Greeks never displayed the luxury of the Romans in this respect; in fact in early times they considered it unmanly to take too many baths.

In countries like India bathing is looked upon as a religious duty, while to wash in the sacred waters of the great river Ganges is a crowning act of piety. To perform this ablution (ăb' lu ènt, *adj.*) or ablutionary (ă bloo' shùn ăr ı, *adj.*) rite, millions of Hindus have made long pilgrimages, often walking hundreds of miles.

L. *abluto*, from *ab* from, off, *luere* to wash. SYN.: Bathing, cleansing, purification, washing. ANT.: Contamination, defilement, impurity, stain.

**abnegate** (ăb' nè găt), *v.t.* To deny; to renounce; to refuse. (F. *nier*, *renoncer* à.)

Centuries ago many a man decided to abnegate the pleasures of life by becoming a hermit. In a tiny cell, sometimes carved out of a sandstone rock, with infinite patience, he would live alone, making his devotions and looking forward to the time when death would relieve him of all temptation. Such abnegation (ăb nè găt' shùn, *n.*) is not often practised nowadays.

L. *abnegare*, from *ab* from, *negare* to say no, reject. SYN.: Abjure, deny, disallow, reject. ANT.: Affirm, allege, declare, proffer, vindicate.

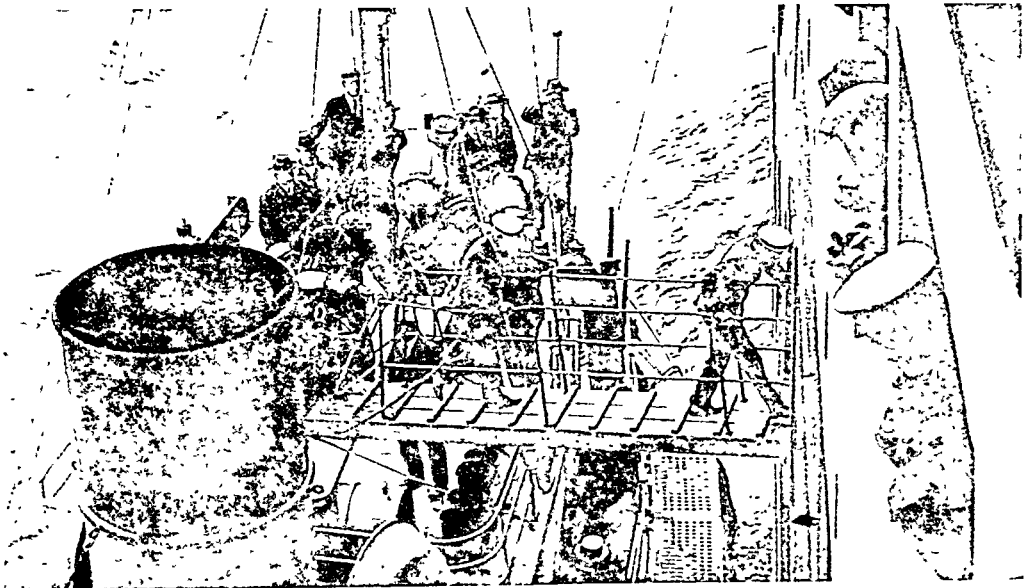
**abnormal** (ăb nŏrm' ăl), *adj.* Out of the ordinary. (F. *anormal*, *irrégulier*.)

A giant is abnormal, though his abnormality (ăb nŏrm ăl' ı ti, *n.*) may help him to earn a good living in a circus. His appearance may draw an abnormally (ăb nŏrm' ăl li, *adv.*) large crowd, for abnormality (ăb nŏr' mi ti, *n.*), being a departure from the usual, always excites curiosity.

L. *ab* away from, *normalis* *adj.* from *norma* rule. SYN.: Erratic, irregular, peculiar, unusual. ANT.: Common, normal, ordinary, usual.

**aboard** (ă bŏrd'), *adv.* On board. (F. à *bord*.)

Once the passengers are on a ship or a train, they are said to be aboard. The cry of "All aboard!" has a very familiar sound to railway travellers in Canada. The distances are so great that stoppages are made at certain stations for food. At such places many passengers get off the train and rush to the refreshment room. After, perhaps, ten or fifteen minutes, a bell rings, and the guard or conductor calls out loudly "All aboard! All aboard!"



Aboard.—The pilot stepping aboard a Cunard liner, for the safe navigation of which he will be held responsible until the huge vessel reaches port.

Then the train continues its journey across the prairies.

**A=on** A.-S. *bord* plank, ship's side. **SYN.**: Afloat, on board, with'in. **ANT.**: Aground, ashore.

**abode** (ä böd'), *n.* The house or place where one lives. (F. *demeure*.) The Mansion House, for instance, is the abode of the Lord Mayor of London.

*See* abide. **SYN.**: Domicile, habitation, home, house, residence.

**abolish** (ä bol' ish), *v.t.* To do away with. (F. *abolir*.)

This word is applied to things as well as to customs. Thus we read in the Bible of idols being abolished, the idols themselves not the worshipping of idols.

Savages often have horrible customs. When civilized nations occupy countries inhabited by such people they do their best to abolish these bad customs, or those that are abolishable (ä bol' ish äbl, *adj.*), and usually the natives come to be grateful to the abolishers (ä bol' ish erz, *n.*) for persevering with the work of abolishment (ä bol' ish ment, *n.*), or abolition.

**L. abolere**, to stop the growth, from *ab* from (expressing diminution), *olere* to grow. **SYN.**: Destroy, overthrow, prohibit, suppress. **ANT.**: Confirm, continue, establish, restore.

**abolition** (äb ö lish' ün), *n.* The act of putting an end to something. (F. *abolition*.)

When this word is used by itself the abolition of slavery is meant, and **abolitionism** (äb ö lish' ün izm, *n.*) means the views and principles of people who are in favour of this.

One who is active in seeking to put an end to something he considers wrong is called an **abolitionist** (äb ö lish' ün ist, *n.*). The term is most commonly used to describe those who worked to abolish slavery.

Long before "Uncle Tom's Cabin" was written, and at an earlier date than the birth of Abraham Lincoln, who gave freedom to the American slaves, there lived in England fearless and noble men who gloried in being called abolitionists, although their hatred of slavery made them many enemies. The most famous were Thomas Clarkson and William Wilberforce, both of whom devoted their lives to end the slave trade. This, so far as Great Britain was concerned began in 1807, and in 1833 an Act came into force for abolishing slavery in British colonies.

**SYN.**: Destruction, overthrow, prohibition, suppression. **ANT.**: Confirmation, continuation, establishment, restoration.

**abomasus** (äb ö mä' süs), *n.* The name of the "fourth stomach" of a cow, or

similar animal belonging to the group known as Ruminants. (F. *caillette*.)

The cow has really only one stomach, but it is divided into four compartments, each having its use in the work of digestion. The largest is the paunch, into which the animal at once swallows its food. If you watch a cow at rest you will see that its jaws are working, although there may be no food before it. The animal is "chewing the cud."

What happens is that the cow, by muscular motion, brings from the reticulum mouthfuls of the rough food it has previously swallowed, and patiently and regularly chews it up. The food is then swallowed again into another part of the stomach, where the further actions of digestion are continued, and finally into the abomasus or abomasum (äb ö mä' süm, *n.*).

**L. from** *ab* from, *omasum* paunch.

**abominable** (ä bom' in äbl), *adj.* Detestable; extremely disagreeable. (F. *abominable*, *immonde*.)

The proper use of this word is to describe anything that arouses intense horror and loathing, anything which we abominate (ä bom' in ät, *v.t.*). The abominableness (ä bom' in äbl nēs, *n.*) of some of the punishments that used to be inflicted in countries that were considered civilized is almost past belief.

Nowadays we often use abominable for something merely unpleasant, and **abominably** (ä bom' in äb li, *adv.*) in the sense of extremely, simply to give emphasis. We can call a road that is full of ruts abominable or an abomination (ä bom' in ä shün, *n.*), and it may become abominably wet in the winter months.

In the Bible abominable and abomination are often used of things that are unclean from a religious point of view, and of anything that has to do with the evil practices and doctrines of the heathen. The golden calf set up by Aaron was an abomination.

The abomination of desolation (Matthew xxiv, 15; cp. Daniel xi, 31) is thought to be a heathen symbol, such as an altar or a Roman eagle, set up in the temple at Jerusalem by a victorious enemy.

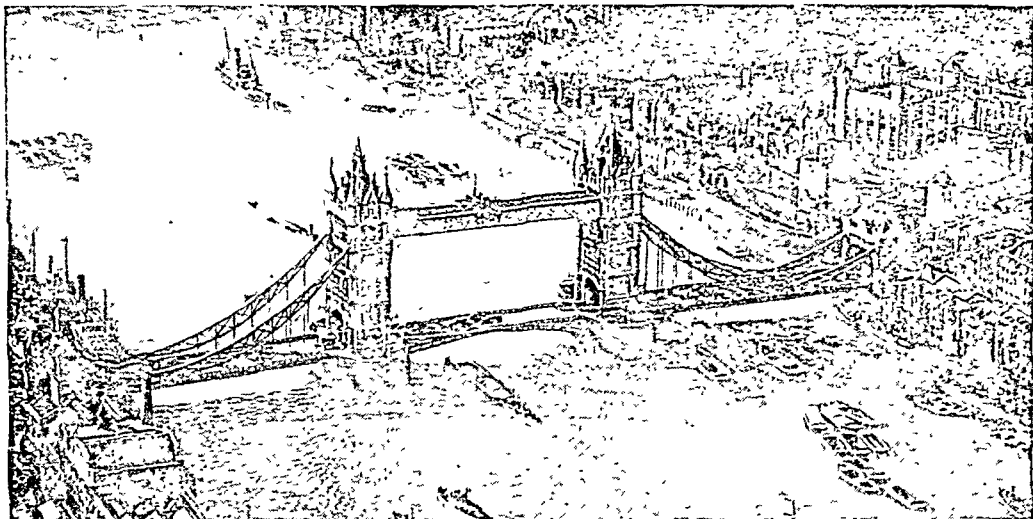
**L. abominabilis**, from *abominari* to turn from anything ill-omened (*ab*, *omen*). **SYN.**: Hateful, horrible, loathsome, odious. **ANT.**: Desirable, pleasing, pure.

**aborigines** (äb ör ij' i nēz), *n. pl.* The first, or those supposed to be the first, natives of a country. (F. *aborigènes*.)

Before the dawn of history every continent and nearly every country was inhabited by rough, simple folk. For the



Aboriginal.—An Australian black-fellow.



Above.—The Tower of London and the bridge named after it as they appear from an aeroplane many feet above. The fortress was begun in the eleventh century and the bridge opened in 1894.

most part they disappeared long ago. The cave dwellers and Stone Age men of Britain and other lands left behind them no written records, but much is known about them, because their stone tools and weapons have been dug up in the caves where they lived, and in the open country where they hunted wild animals.

Collections of the implements, weapons, and ornaments of aboriginal (*ăb ōr ij' in ăl, adj.*) races are to be seen in the British Museum and similar treasure-houses. Even in Egypt, India, and China, where there were civilized people thousands of years before there was any art or culture in Europe, similar objects have been found. Some aboriginals (*n.pl.*) have survived until our own day, especially in Australia, where they number about 62,000. The *adv.* is *aboriginally* (*ăb ōr ij' in ăl h*).

*L. Aborigines*, from *ab* from, *origine* (abl. of *origo*, beginning).

**abortive** (*ă bōrt' iv*), *adj.* Ending in failure. (*F. abortif.*)

The Gallipoli peninsula expedition of 1915 was abortive. It ended abortively (*ă bōrt iv li, adv.*), and its abortiveness (*ă bōrt iv nēs, n.*) was a great disappointment because it was hoped that the army and fleet would reach Constantinople, and thus cause the Turks to ask for peace.

*L. abortivus*, from *ab* (= *E. mis-*), *oviri* to arise, be born (miscarry, fail). *SYN.*: Fruitless, futile, profitless, unavailing. *ANT.*: Advantageous, beneficial, helpful, suitable.

**abound** (*ă bound'*), *v.i.* To have much of a thing; to be frequent. (*F. abonder.*) A millionaire is a man abounding (*ă bound' ing, adj.*) in wealth.

*See abundance.* *SYN.*: Flourish, increase, swarm, teem. *ANT.*: Decrease, lessen, vanish, wane.

**about** (*ă bout'*), *prep.* and *adv.* This word is used in several different senses, as in the following examples:—Around: The bees buzzed about my head; he opened his eyes, and looked about him. Near in time, distance, etc.: About four o'clock; I left it about here; about two pounds will do; it is about the same colour. Concerning: We talked about many things. Concerned with: "Wist ye not that I must be about my Father's business?" (Luke ii, 49). Hither and thither along: Walking about the streets. The other way: Right about turn. To bring about: To get done: I hope to bring it about; his carelessness is likely to bring about an accident. To come about, to happen: After a time it is sure to come about. To go about: Sailors cause their ship to go about when they tack, and alter the vessel's course or direction.

*A.-S. abūtan*, made up of *a* = on, *be* = by, *ūtan* outside. *SYN.*: Almost, around, concerning, nearly, ready. *ANT.*: Accurately, afar, exactly, precisely.

**above** (*ă būv*), *prep.* and *adv.* Higher; more than. (*F. au dessus de, plus de; en haut.*)

This word is used in many slightly varying senses, always with an underlying idea of superiority, that is, of being higher. For example, an amount of money above another is a greater amount; to be above the average is to have reached a higher point than the average.

When we say that a thing is never sold at a price above a certain amount, we mean that it is never sold at a price in excess of that amount. A person who is above another in rank, or brain-power, or social position, is superior to or more important than that other in those respects. The word is sometimes used as a noun. For

example, we may say "Referring to the above," when we mean referring to something that has been mentioned above. Sometimes, too, we call Heaven "above."

Above all means principally, before everything else. Above-board means openly, quite honestly, without any trickery. Above-ground means unburied or alive. Above par is a term borrowed from those who deal in stocks and shares and money generally; it means above the nominal or issue price, as a pound share that has become worth twenty-one shillings. Over and above or above and beyond means in addition to, in excess of, or besides.

A.-S. *abufan* = *an* on, *be* = *by*. near to, *uþan* upwards (from *uf* - up). SYN.: Aloft, beyond exceeding, over. ANT.: Below, beneath, under.

**abracadabra** (ăb ră ka dăb' ră), *n.* A word used as a charm; a nonsense word. (F. *abracadabra*.)

In olden times this word was looked upon as a magic formula. If it was written on a piece of paper or parchment, especially in the form of a triangle, like this:

ABRACADABRA  
BRACADABR  
RACADAB  
ACADA  
CAD  
A

and the paper worn round the neck for nine days and then thrown over the wearer's shoulder into a stream flowing eastward, it was supposed to ward off or cure certain diseases.

Nowadays the word is sometimes used to describe a way of solving a difficult problem that looks simple but is really ridiculous. Conjurers sometimes say "Abracadabra" when they are doing a trick.

Abracadabra is a meaningless term used by the sect of the Gnostics.

**abbranchial** (ă brăng' kī āl), *adj.* Without gills. *n.* An animal without gills.

A crayfish breathes through its *branchiae*, or gills, but a leech has no gills, and takes in oxygen through its skin. The latter is therefore an *abbranchial* or an *abbranchiate* (ă brăng kī āt, *adj.*) animal or an *abbranchial*.

Gr. *a-* not, without, *branchia*, L. *branchiae* gills.

**abrasion** (ă bră' zhūn), *n.* The act or result of rubbing away or wearing down. (F. *abrasion*, *user par le rottement*.)

When we bark our shins we *abrade* (ă brăd', *v.t.*) them, and the result is an *abrasion*. Continual dropping, as we know from the saying, will wear away a stone, and this wearing is *abrasion*. Some parts of machinery are very liable to *abrasion*. Anything that causes *abrasion* is *abrasive* (ă bră' sīv, *adj.*). Grinding, scouring, and polishing substances like emery and corundum are *abrasives* (*n.pl.*).

L. *abradere* (p.p. *abrasus*), from *ab* from, off, *radere* to scrape. SYN.: Attrition, disintegration, friction. ANT.: Accretion, increment, reinforcement.

**abreast** (ă brest'), *adv.* Side by side. (F. *de front*.)

When a number of people are standing in such a strictly straight line that not only their shoulders but their chests also are in line we say they are *abreast*. To keep *abreast* of others—as, for example, in a class—is to keep up to their standard. To keep *abreast* of the times or the events of the day is to keep oneself informed as to what is happening in a general way in the world.

E. *a-* = on, and *breast*. SYN.: Alined, alongside, beside. ANT.: Ahead, astern, behind



Abreast.—Finishing abreast in a race.

**abridge** (ă brij'), *v.t.* To shorten. (F. *abrégér*.)

We can *abridge* a book and thus make an *abridgment* (ă brij' mēnt, *n.*) of it, and we can also make an *abridgment* or summary of a legal document, leaving in only the chief points, though omitting nothing that is necessary to give a just rendering of the document. In a club or other society we can have *abridged* rules, that is, a shortened form of the rules, so that members will not find it difficult to read and remember them. A person who makes an *abridgment* is an *abridger* (ă brij' ér, *n.*).

F. *abrégér*, from L. *abbreviare*, from *ad* to, *brevis* short. SYN.: Abbreviate, condense, curtail, epitomize. ANT.: Amplify, expand, extend, lengthen.

**abroad** (ă brawd'), *adv.* Far and wide; at large; in different directions; in foreign countries; broadcast. (F. *au loin*, *à l'étranger*.)

We say we publish a thing abroad when we tell everybody everything we know about it, or publish the news we have as widely as possible. But we go on our holidays abroad (*n.*) when we leave England for a foreign country. A person who is "all abroad" has gone astray in his ideas.

E. *a-* - on, and *broad*. SYN.: Apart, distant, distracted, far away. ANT.: Close, composed within.

**abrogate** (ăb' rô gât'), *v.t.* To repeal or cancel; to annul. (F. *abroger*.)

In 1849 it was decided to abrogate the Corn Laws, which imposed a duty on imported corn, and had existed since 1463. The act of annulling or repealing a law is abrogation (ăb rô gât' shûn, *n.*), and any thing tending to the repeal of an act, as the agitation carried on for many years by Bright and Cobden against the Corn Laws, is abrogative (ăb rô gât' tiv, *adj.*).

L. *abrogare*, from *ab* from, away, *rogare* to ask propose. SYN.: Abolish, annul, cancel, nullify, repeal. ANT.: Confirm, enact, enforce, establish.

**abrupt** (ă brŭpt'), *adj.* Sudden, hasty, steep; precipitous; in botany, cut off suddenly. (F. *brusque*, *escarpé*.)

A person is abrupt in his speech when he loses his temper or speaks hastily; he interrupts another person abruptly (ă brŭpt' h, *adv.*), and his abruptness (ă brŭpt' nēs, *n.*) of speech makes others think him rude. The cliffs of Dover are abrupt or steep, falling away abruptly to the beach, and their abruptness makes them very dangerous to climb. Parts of the cliffs sometimes break away suddenly, and this is called an abruption (ă brŭpt' shûn, *n.*).

L. *abruptus* (p.p. *abruptus*), from *ab* from, off, *rumpere* to break. SYN.: Curt, hasty, steep, sudden, unexpected, violent. ANT.: Calm, courteous, easy, polished, slow.

**abscess** (ăb' ses), *n.* A swelling on the body, containing pus or matter. (F. *abcès*.)

In 1349 a dreadful plague swept over England. It was called the Black Death because the first sign was a black abscess, usually in the arm-pit. A few hours after its appearance the victim died. Hundreds of people died daily and at night the dismal cry "Bring out your dead!" rang through the streets, and the bodies were taken away in carts for burial.

L. *abscessus*, from *ab* from, away, *cedere* to go, from the animistic opinion that the formation of an abscess was a means by which a disease departed.

**abscind** (ăb smd'), *v.t.* To cut off. (F. *trancher*.)

This word is not ordinarily used. We might properly say "to abscind a syllable or vowel from a word," meaning to cut off or elide the syllable or vowel, but we should

not say "to abscind a piece of string" or "to abscind a slice of cake."

From this word comes the term used in geometry **abscissa** (ăb sis' ā, *n.*); *pl.* **abscissæ** (ăb sis' ē). A straight line running length-wise through the centre of an egg-shaped body, for instance, is called the transverse axis. Imagine a second line at right angles to this one and cutting the outer curve at a point (P). The portion of the transverse axis cut off by this second line and extending to the top or vertex of the egg-shaped body is an **abscissa** of the point (P).

The act of cutting off a portion—as the syllable, or the abscissa—is called **abscission** (ăb sizh' ūn, *n.*) and the portion thus cut



**Abrupt**—A steep cliff which falls away abruptly to the beach below.

off is an **abscission**. There is a surgical operation on the eye similarly called, and the name is also that of the sudden cutting off of the course of a disease by death.

Again, an orator sometimes finds it effective to cut short a sentence, leaving the rest to be understood. For example: "He was a good man—he was kind—he was gentle, he was honest, he was—but need I name all the virtues?" That is the rhetorical device of **abscission**.

L. *abscindere* (p.p. *abscissus*), from *ab* from, off, *scindere* to cut. SYN.: Curtail, excise, shorten. ANT.: Add, embody, join, make whole.

**abscond** (ăb skond'), *v.i.* To go away secretly; to hide. (F. *se cacher, s'enfuir*.)

A person who hides from those to whom he owes money or in order to avoid legal proceedings is said to abscond. Going away and hiding in this sense is called abscondence (ăb skond' ens, *n.*), and the person who does it is an absconder (ăb skond' er, *n.*).

L. *abscondere*, from *abs=ab* from, away, *condere* to conceal. SYN.: Escape, flee, fly the country, make off. ANT.: Appear, emerge, issue, present oneself.

**absent** (ăb' sent, *adj.*; ăb sent', *v.*). *adj.* Not present; not paying attention. *v. reflexive.* To keep oneself away. (F. *absent, distrait; s'absenter, se distraire*.)

A person who is away in some other place is absent bodily; if he is day-dreaming, paying no heed to what is happening under his nose, he is absent mentally. A boy who plays truant from school absents himself, but in the roll-book is marked the fact that he is not present—the fact of his absence (ăb' sens, *n.*). Had he simply forgotten to go to school, that would be due to absence of mind.

One who is habitually absent is called an absentee (ăb sen tē', *n.*). A landlord habitually away from his estate is an absentee (*adj.*) landlord. The habit of being away is known as absenteeism (ăb sen tē' ism, *n.*). To do a thing inattentively is to do it absently (ăb' sent li, *adv.*) or absent-mindedly (*adv.*); and anyone guilty of this kind of carelessness is an absent-minded (*adj.*) person—a person given to forgetfulness of the business in hand, or absent-mindedness (*n.*).

Shakespeare uses the word as a verb when he makes Hamlet (V, ii) say to Horatio, "Absent thee from felicity awhile."

L. *absens* (gen. *absent-is*), from *abs=ab* from, away, *ens* (late part. of *esse* to be), or from *ab, sens=es-ens*. SYN.: Away, gone, heedless, missing, wanting. ANT.: Alert, attentive, present, wide-awake.

**absinthe** (ăb' sinth), *n.* Wormwood; a liqueur flavoured with wormwood. (F. *absinthe*.)

The French soldiers in Algiers used to be fond of a green, aromatic, bitter drink—so fond of it that it had to be forbidden throughout the French armies. It was made by steeping bitter herbs in strong spirit, and thus obtaining an essence which was added drop by drop to water. The result was the strongly alcoholic beverage called absinthe. It was said to have tonic qualities and to be good for the stomach. It is still drunk in French and other continental cafés.

That which has qualities like those of absinthe is called absinthic (ăb sin' thik, *adj.*), and to impart these qualities to anything is to absinthiate (ăb sinth' i ât, *v.t.*) that thing. The bitterness in the herb,

wormwood—botanists call it by its Latin name, *Artemisia absinthium*—is known as absinthin (ăb sinth' in, *n.*).

Gr. *apsinthion*, L. *absinthium*.

**absolute** (ăb' sô loot), *adj.* Not limited; without any conditions or modifications; unqualified; independent. (F. *absolu, parfait*.)

You would say of a king who can do whatever he will, without any limit or condition, that he is an absolute monarch. The word is used in the sense of "complete" when John Stuart Mill says that "Absolute fiends are as rare as angels, perhaps rarer," and it is used in the sense of "perfect" when in "Hamlet" (V, ii) Shakespeare speaks of "an absolute gentleman."

A chemist would describe a substance free from mixture as absolute; for instance, absolute alcohol. Again, thinkers, when they speak of the Absolute refer to that which exists of itself, independently of any other cause, as God or the First Cause exists. In this sense the word is opposed to relative.

A boy who has completely finished his lessons has finished absolutely (ăb' sô loot li, *adv.*). Things complete, unlimited, have the quality of absoluteness (ab' sô loot nēs, *n.*).

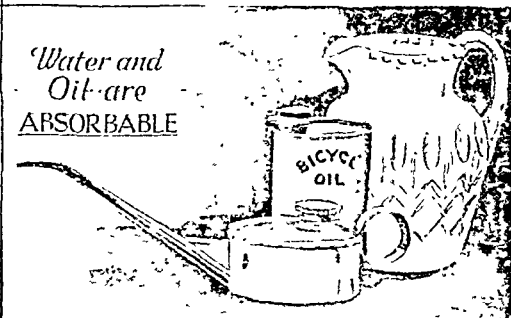
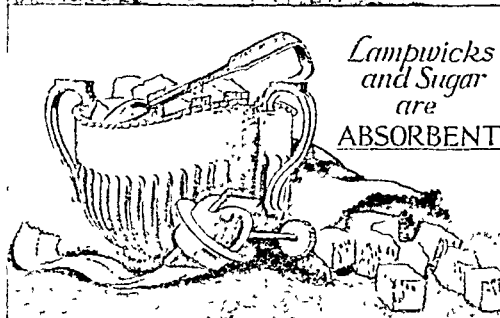
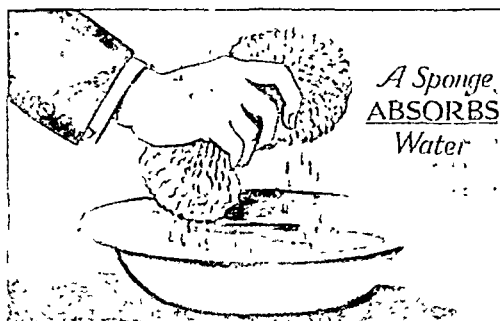
L. *absolvere* (p.p. *absolutus*, free from restraint), from *ab* from, *solvere* to loosen. SYN.: Autocratic, complete, perfect, self-existent, unlimited. ANT.: Accountable, conditional, partial, yielding.

**absolution** (ăb sô loo' shūn), *n.* The freeing of a person from certain obligations, sins, or penalties; the form of words in which this is pronounced. (F. *absolution, absoute*.)

A king may absolve one of his subjects from his oath of allegiance, and a master may absolve one of his servants from his duties or obligations. In the Roman Catholic Church the word is generally used for the act performed by the priest of the removal of sin and its penalty from the penitent after his confession, and also for the words then used by the priest. Whether the priest has power to absolve the sinner from his sins, and release him from the penalties of his transgressions, is one of the questions that have divided the Christian Church.

It is claimed by the Roman Catholic Church that, as the ministers of Jesus Christ, their priests have this power. The Protestants deny this, and instead of the form "I absolve thee"—used by the Roman Catholic priests—prefer the words "Christ absolve thee."

There are other uses of the word absolution in the Roman Catholic Church. Baptism is so described because it is regarded as a cleansing from sin. There is also absolution for the dead, performed at the end of a requiem mass, when prayers are



*Absorb.*—Four picture definitions of the numerous family of which this word is the father.

offered for the deliverance of the soul of the deceased from purgatory. See *absolve*.

L. *absolutio* (-nem, acc.), from *ab* from, *solvere* to free (p.p. *absolutus*). SYN.: Acquittal, deliverance, indulgence, pardon. ANT.: Accusation, censure, condemnation, penance.

**absolutism** (ăb' sô lû tizm), *n.* The rule of a person whose word is law in everything; despotism; autocracy. (F. *absolutisme*.)

A person who likes and works for this kind of government is called an **absolutist** (ăb' sô lû tist, *n.*).

**absolve** (ăb solv'), *v.t.* To free; to pardon. (F. *absoudre*.)

To pardon a person for his sins is to *absolve* him. One released from a debt or acquitted of a charge is *absolved*, and the person granting the release or acquittal is the *absolver* (ăb solv' ěr, *n.*).

L. *absolvere*, from *ab* from, *solvere* to loosen, set free. SYN.: Acquit, exonerate, free, liberate. ANT.: Accuse, charge, convict, oblige.

**absonant** (ăb' sôn ant), *adj.* Contrary to; discordant; inharmonious. (F. *contraire à*.) A tune that is displeasing to the ear is *absonant*.

L. *absonus*, from *ab* away from, contrary to, *sonare* to sound, pres. p. *sonans* (gen. *sonant-is*).

**absorb** (ăb sôrb'), *v.t.* To swallow up; to drink in; to take in. (F. *absorber*.)

A sponge absorbs water; a black coat absorbs heat, and a white coat reflects it away; a big business sometimes absorbs a smaller firm. Things easy to suck in or

swallow up are *absorbable* (ăb sôrb' abl, *adj.*) and possess *absorbability* (ăb sôrb' a bil' i ti, *n.*).

A boy intensely interested in a book is said to be *absorbed* in it and is reading *absorbedly* (ăb sôrb' ed li, *adv.*). His book or anything else intensely interesting, is *absorbing* (ăb sôrb' ing, *adj.*) and could be described as *absorbingly* (ăb sôrb' ing li, *adv.*) interesting.

Things which by their nature tend to suck in or absorb, such as a sponge or sugar, are said to be *absorbent* (ăb sôrb' ěnt, *adj.*) and are sometimes called *absorbents* (*n.pl.*). They are also termed *absorptive* (ăb sôrp' tiv, *adj.*) and this property which they have is *absorptiveness* (ăb sôrp' tiv nes, *n.*) The disappearance through becoming a part of something else, such as the melting of sugar in water, is called *absorption* (ăb sôrp' shûn, *n.*).

L. *absorbere* to gulp down, from *ab* from, *sorbere* to sip, suck up. SYN.: Consume, engross, imbibe, immerse. ANT.: Disperse, dissipate, distract, eject.

**abstain** (ăb stân'), *v.i.* To keep oneself away; to use a thing in moderation; especially to refrain willingly from intoxicating liquors. (F. *s'abstenir*.)

In olden days it was quite a usual thing for men to drink too much, and even those who claimed to be gentlemen considered it no disgrace to finish a meal by tumbling under the table in a state of intoxication. Ale or beer was drunk at every meal by people of all ages, and an *abstainer* (ăb stân' ěr, *n.*), who preferred water, was

looked upon as a very peculiar person indeed.

To-day it is those who drink to excess who are regarded as peculiar, and by no means as gentlemen. Attempts have been made to compel whole nations, such as the United States and Norway, to give up alcohol.

*L. abstineere*, from *abs* from, *tenere* to hold. SYN.: Cease, desist, refrain, withhold. ANT.: Gratify, indulge, revel.

**abstemious** (äb stë' mi ùs), *adj.* Sparing or moderate, especially with regard to drink and food. (*F. abstème.*)

The use of tea and coffee, the increase of sports, the efforts made to inform people of the dangers of alcohol, and the heavy cost of alcoholic drinks have all helped to make Great Britain abstemious. We now drink abstemiously (äb stë' mi ùs li, *adv.*), that is to say with moderation, and it seems likely that our abstemiousness (äb stë' mi ùs nes, *n.*) will increase. A curiosity of the word abstemious is that it contains all the five vowels in their proper alphabetical order.

*L. abs* from, *tēmētum* strong drink. SYN.: Abstinent, frugal, sober, temperate. ANT.: Extreme, immoderate, intemperate.

**abstention** (äb sten' shùn), *n.* The act of abstaining; refusal to do something, especially refusal to give one's vote. (*F. abstention.*)

The great increase in the number of persons entitled to vote for the election of members of Parliament and other public bodies has had a strange result. It has led to a great increase in the number of those who prefer abstinence (äb' sti nens, *n.*) or abstinency (äb' sti nen si, *n.*) to exercising this important right. In ancient Greece the abstinent (äb' sti nent, *adj.*) citizen who did not attend the Assembly and exercise his privileges was liable to a penalty. The *adv.* is abstinently (äb' sti nent li).

In the Roman Catholic Church there are certain days on which meat is not eaten; these are called days of abstinence.

**absterge** (äb stërj'), *v.t.* To wipe away; to wipe clean. (*F. absterger.*)

When a doctor cleans a wound he uses an abstersive (äb stër' siv, *adj.*) lotion called an abstergent (äb stër' jent, *n.*). His act of cleaning the wound is an abstersion (äb stër' shùn, *n.*).

*L. abstergere*, from *abs* from, *off*, *tergere* to wipe. SYN.: Cleanse, purify, scour. ANT.: Contaminate, pollute, soil.

**abstinence** (äb' sti nens), *n.* The act of abstaining; self-denial. See abstention.

**abstract** (äb sträkt', *v.*; äb' sträkt, *n., adj.*), *v.t.* To draw or take away. *n.* Summary. *adj.* Existing in the mind only; separate. (*F. abstraire*; *abrégé*; *abstrait.*)

'Abstract means to draw or take away, but not by the simple act of removing. It either has the sense of doing so secretly, as

when a pickpocket abstracts a purse, or it is employed in a scientific sense. Thus the chemist abstracts substances from liquids by distilling or boiling them. The lawyer selects the main points from the deeds or legal documents referring to a house or land, and is said to prepare an abstract of title.

The word is used most often to describe the process by which we think of the qualities of things apart from the things themselves. The ideas which result from such thought are called abstract, and their names are abstract nouns. For example, iron is the name of a very well-known thing. Now think of hardness, heaviness, usefulness, coldness, cheapness, strength, and you will see that all these are qualities of iron which can be thought of apart from the iron, but which cannot exist apart from it or from other things of which they are qualities. The quality of being abstract is abstractness (äb' sträkt nēs, *n.*).

Too much thinking of this kind is apt to make a man dreamy or absent-minded, and so abstracted (äb sträkt' éd, *adj.*) comes to have that meaning. He acts abstractedly (äb sträkt' éd li, *adv.*), and his abstractedness (äb sträkt' éd nēs, *n.*) may lead to the abstraction (äb sträkt shùn, *n.*) of his purse from his pocket.

A man who has this power of making pictures in his mind of the qualities of an object is **abstractive** (äb sträkt' tiv, *adj.*) and is said to have the faculty of abstraction or of dealing with abstractions. While he is in the act of using this faculty of thinking abstractly (äb' sträkt li, *adv.*) he is in a state of abstraction.

*L. abs* from, *tractus*, p.p. of *trahere*, to draw. SYN.: *n.* Abridgment, digest, epitome; *v.* Appropriate, detach, remove. ANT.: *n.* Amplification, expansion, exposition; *v.* add, combine, increase.

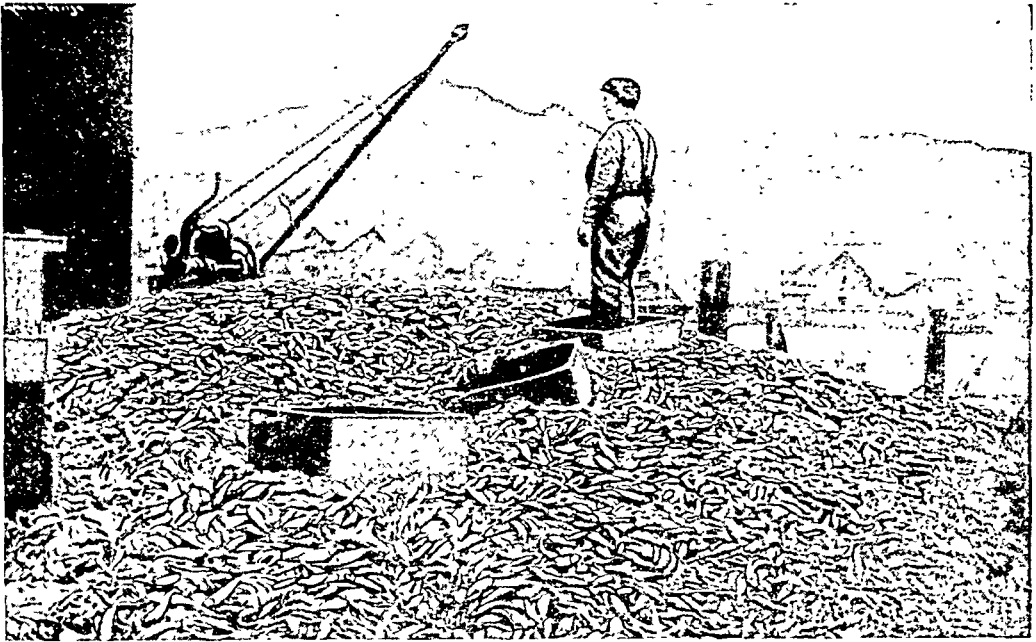
**abstruse** (äb stroos'), *adj.* Hidden from ordinary knowledge; difficult to understand. (*F. abstrus.*)

All knowledge that is much in advance of our own seems abstruse, but as we progress we discover that what we at first thought so involved is really quite simple. Chemistry, astronomy, mathematics, and other sciences of which almost everyone now knows something were formerly regarded as abstruse. Those who followed such inquiries ran serious risks in the Middle Ages. They were often regarded as wizards, and might even be arrested and tried for their lives.

Nowadays it is difficult to decide what subjects really are abstruse, so eager is the pursuit of every branch of knowledge. We shall have to turn to the most out-of-the-way studies before we come across any that deserve the name. Such are the higher branches of mathematics, which deal with infinitely large or small numbers; researches on the origin of life or on the connexion between life and matter, and the deeper problems of philosophy and theology.

We must not be afraid of a subject because it at first appears abstruse. The human mind





Abundance.—Part of the abundant herring harvest on the quay of one of the fishing stations in the Lofoten Islands, off the north-west coast of Norway.

is capable of extraordinary exertions, and the desire to discover an answer to difficult questions will often clear away much of their abstruseness (*åb stroos' nēs, n.*).

*L. abs* away, *trudere* to push, thrust (away, conceal). *SYN.*: Complicated, intricate, involved, obscure. *ANT.*: Clear, obvious, plain, simple.

**absurd** (*åb sērd'*), *adj.* Unreasonable; ridiculous; impossible. (*F. absurde.*)

What "deaf" (*L. surdus*, from which this word is derived) has to do with "absurd" is at first sight puzzling, but the following explanation of the term, based on its derivation, will help to make the connexion clearer.

Suppose a man who was quite deaf entered a room where people were singing, and without any idea of the music they were rendering joined in the performance. You can imagine the discord that would arise, even though the newcomer had a splendid voice and chose a beautiful song. He would, in fact, be making himself absurd.

So it is with most cases of absurdity. Things are not absurd in themselves but only in relation to their surroundings. Evening dress for a football match or football shorts at a Court ball are both absurd. Anything may become absurd if used in the wrong place.

We often speak of absurd fashions, but when such dress is in fashion it has no absurdity (*åb sērd' i ti, n.*). Crinolines were not absurd to our grandmothers, and huge nose ornaments are considered beautiful by African natives. Comic actors and entertainers rely upon absurdity for much of their humour. An absurdly (*åb sērd li, adv.*) huge

hat on a little man, or a tiny cap on a very tall man will often raise a laugh, while many of the best jokes depend upon some unexpected remark.

We should guard against the habit of regarding everything new as absurd. Let us remember that in their time steamships, railways, bicycles, motor-cars, and aircraft have all been regarded by some people as absurd ideas, quite impossible to realize. It is the mark of a small mind to regard everything unusual as absurd.

In mathematics the word absurd is sometimes used to denote impossible, especially in proofs of geometrical propositions. Euclid often used it in this way. For example, we want to prove two angles equal. We begin by supposing they are not equal and follow up the results. This may lead up to a conclusion that is impossible; its absurdness (*åb sērd' nēs, n.*) is evident. Then the supposition must have been wrong and its opposite correct, so that the angles are equal. This is called an indirect proof, or a *reductio ad absurdum*.

*Ab* (possibly here intensive, to give emphasis) *surdus* deaf, unreasonable. *SYN.*: Anomalous, foolish, ludicrous, senseless, stupid. *ANT.*: Consistent, rational, reasonable, sensible, sound.

**abundance** (*å būn' dāns*), *n.* A supply so large as to be overflowing. (*F. abondance.*)

Abundance is far commoner than scarcity in the world, and an abundant (*å būn' dānt, adj.*) harvest is more usual than a famine. This gives us hope for the future, and points to a time when the streams of plenty will be directed with greater certainty into channels

that will supply more abundantly (â būn' dânt li, *adv.*) the needs of all.

Abundance in the card game of solo whist is the call by which a player undertakes to win nine tricks or more out of the possible thirteen.

An abundant number is one that is less than the sum of its factors. Thus 12 is abundant, for its factors, 1, 2, 3, 4, and 6 add up to 16.

*L. abundantia*, from *abundare* to overflow, from *unda* wave. SYN.: Affluence, overflow, plenty, profusion. ANT.: Dearth, deficiency, poverty.

**abuse** (â būz', *v.*, â būs', *n.*), *v.t.* To use in the wrong way; to use harsh language to, *n.* Ill use; improper treatment. (F. *abuser*; *abus*.)

Everything that can be used can be abused. The more delicate a thing is the more easily is it abusable (â būz' âbl, *adj.*). A watch is more readily harmed than a garden roller. Privileges are too often abused. As King George V pointed out, one of the worst abuses to-day is that of littering open spaces with paper that mars their natural beauty.

To use commons and public parks in this way is a serious abuse of the privilege of enjoying them. It may lead to abusive (â bū' siv, *adj.*) language on the part of a keeper, which means that the person most concerned will be treated abusively (â bū' siv li, *adv.*) and may resent the abusiveness (â bū' siv nes, *n.*).

*L. ab* away from, wrongly, *uti* to use. SYN.: *n.* Insult, misuse, reproach; *v.* Defame, malign, slander. ANT.: *n.* Deference, honour, praise; *v.* Extol, respect, vindicate.

**abut** (â bût), *v.i.* To join end to end; to lean (upon); to border. (F. *aboutir*.)

When two gardens adjoin they are said to abut on each other. The pier or wall, or part of a pier or wall on which an arch is supported is an abutment (â bût mēt, *n.*).

Great care has to be taken in building an abutment because there are two forces to be resisted. First, the downward pressure of the bridge or arch, and, secondly, the tendency of the arch to spread and thrust the abutment out of the straight. The end of a piece of land which adjoins another is an **abutal** (â bût' l, *n.*), and the owner of such land is called an **abutter** (â bût' ēr, *n.*).

*F. abouter*, from *à* to, *bout* end. SYN.: Adjoin, border, impinge. ANT.: Diverge, recede, retreat.

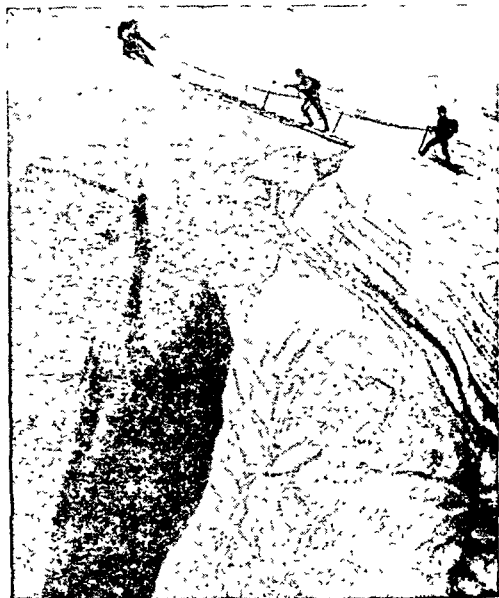
**abutilon** (â bū' ti lōn), *n.* A flowering shrub belonging to the mallow order. (F. *abutilon*.)

Abutilons, those lovely plants with flowers that look like white, yellow, or orange bells, sometimes richly veined with red, come mostly from the tropics. There are about 80

different kinds. They do well out of doors in Britain during the summer, and will sometimes grow as tall as twelve feet, but as soon as the weather begins to get cold it is safer to put them in the greenhouse, for the slightest touch of frost will kill them. The name is Arabic.

**abyss** (â bis'), *n.* A chasm or cavity of enormous depth; anything so deep as to be difficult to measure. (F. *abîme*.)

Most people have a horror of great depths.



Abyss.—These Alpine mountaineers are crossing an abyss by means of a portable bridge.

We look up with awe and admiration to lofty heights, but abysses are generally regarded with dread. This is partly to be accounted for by the fact that there is no fear of our falling up, but grave risk of falling down. Moreover, an abyss is usually a place of darkness and mystery. In olden times the word was used for the great deep which was supposed to lie beneath the earth, and also for the bottomless pit of hell.

The greatest of all abysses are the "Deep" of the Pacific and Atlantic Oceans, which have a depth of more than 3,000 fathoms (18,000 ft.). The deepest sounding yet taken is 5,348 fathoms, near the island of Mindanao.

Abysses are often associated with volcanic disturbances and earthquakes, but running water can also carve out tremendous abysses. Some of the canyons of Colorado, in the United States, are over a mile deep, and in the limestone mountains of the Pennine Range there are cavities known as potholes, hollowed out by water to depths of many hundreds of feet.

The dread and mystery which surround such abysmal (â bis' māl, *adj.*) places make them fitting types of equally or more dreadful

things in our own minds, and so we speak of an abyss of ignorance or of sin. **Abyssal** (â bis' âl, *adj.*), which means belonging to the abyss, is used especially of creatures dwelling in the deep sea. **Abysm** (â biz' m) is a poetical form of abyss.

Gr. *a'* not, *byssos* bottom; bottomless (pit). **SYN.**: Chasm, deep, gorge, gulf. **ANT.**: Height, summit, surface.

**Abyssinian** (â bi sin' yân), *adj.* Belonging to Abyssinia. *n.* An inhabitant of Abyssinia. (F. *Abyssinien*.)

Abyssinia, an inland mountainous region of Africa, lying to the south of Egypt, is a very romantic country. It was often referred to in ancient histories as Ethiopia, though it was seldom visited and little known. One of its chief points of interest is that it may claim to be one of the oldest Christian countries, Christianity having been introduced about A.D. 330. The country is an independent monarchy with a population of about 10,000,000. Its name has been given to a special type of pump and well.

Abyssinia, from Arabic *habash*, mixture or mingling, on account of the many races inhabiting the country.

**acacia** (â kâ' shi â; â kâ' shâ), *n.* A genus of plants belonging to the great pod-bearing family of *Leguminosæ*. (F. *acacia*.)

Acacias are chiefly tropical. They have feather-like leaves and small flowers in balls or spikes. The *Acacia arabica* produces gum arabic, so much used in preparing gum and paste. The yellow wattle, the well-known national badge of Australia, is an acacia.

The acacia of our gardens does not belong to the same group, and is sometimes called the false acacia. It is a *Robinia* and was introduced from North America, where it is called the locust tree.

Gr. *akakia*, possibly from *akhē*, point, spike.

**academic** (âk â dem' ik), *adj.* Scholarly; formal; unpractical. (F. *académique*.)

This word also relates to an academy: college, or university, hence the term academic costume, which means the cap and gown or academical (âk â dem' ik âl, *adj.*) dress worn by members of a university, who are then academically (âk â dem' ik âl li, *adv.*) clad.

A member of an academy is an academician (â kâd em ish' ân, *n.*), but this term is usually understood to mean one of the forty-two members of the Royal Academy of Arts, that is, an R.A. Academicism (âk â dem' i sizm, *n.*) is the system of teaching in such an institution, or it may refer to some peculiar manner associated with a professor. The teaching of Plato is sometimes called academism (â kâd' em ism, *n.*), and an academician an academist (â kâd' em ist n.).

L. *academicus*, from Gr. *akadēmikos*. **SYN.**: Learned, literary, scholastic. **ANT.**: Ignorant, illiterate, practical.

**academy** (â kâd' em i), *n.* A place devoted to the study or encouragement of arts of all kinds. (F. *académie*.)

Plato, the great Athenian philosopher, taught his pupils in a grove near Athens, which was called Academeia from the name of its supposed owner, the mythical hero Academus. The name has been borrowed for many places of higher education, notably for the Royal Academy of Arts, the Royal Military Academy, the Royal Academy of Music, the British Academy, and the many academies of France, which deal with all questions of art, science, and literature.

F. *académie*, from L. *acadēmia*, Gr. *akadēmeia* **SYN.**: College, institute, seminary, school.



Abyssinian.—The umbrella shows that this Abyssinian official is the holder of an important post.

**Acadian** (â kâ' dî ân), *adj.* Connected with Nova Scotia. *n.* A French-speaking native of Nova Scotia. (F. *Acadien*.)

The Vikings, those bold sea-rovers of the North, were the first to explore the New World and to plant colonies there. About 985 an Iclander named Erik the Red founded the earliest settlement in Greenland, and in the year 1000 his son, Leif, was sent there from Norway to proclaim the Christian faith. Contrary winds drove his ship out of her course on to a shore where vines and wheat grew wild.

Two years later another Iclander, Thorfinn Karlsefne, tried to plant a colony in this "Vineland," which was probably Nova

Scotia but he was killed by the natives, and the colony was soon abandoned.

In 1604 a French noble, Pierre de Guast, sieur de Monts, and the great explorer, Samuel de Champlain, sailed from Havre with authority from the French King to establish a colony in that part of North America to which the French had given the name of Acadie (Acadia). How much land Acadie included was uncertain, but its centre was what is now known as Nova Scotia.

The first camp was on the island of St. Croix, but owing to sickness a move was soon made to a new site chosen by Champlain and named Port Royal (now Annapolis, Nova Scotia). This was the first European colony in Canada. It made progress until it was destroyed in 1614 by a party of armed men from Virginia.

In 1621 Acadie was granted by James VI of Scotland to Sir William Alexander, who changed the name to Nova Scotia, or New Scotland. Owing to the wars between France and England the country changed hands several times. The story of one of the unhappy results of these changes is told by Longfellow in "Evangeline."

The French possessions of Acadie and Newfoundland passed to Great Britain in 1713, although French rule in eastern Canada did not actually come to an end until after the capture of Quebec by General Wolfe in 1759.

**acajou** (āk' à zhu), *n.* The name of several tropical trees. (F. *acajou*.)

The red wood of the *cèdre acajou* of Barbados is used for making cigar boxes. Another red wood tree, the caoba of Mexico, is called *bois d'acajou à meubles*.

The *sumaruba*, a tree with white wood found in Brazil, the West Indies, and British Guiana, is called the white acajou.

The cashew-nut or acajou tree is quite a different kind of tree. It flourishes in the West Indies, and from it comes a resin bearing the same name.

**acalcine** (à kâl' i sin), *adj.* Without a calyx. (F. *acalculé*.)

If we look at a primrose, we see that the petals of the flower spring from an outer green trumpet-shaped calyx, or sheath, quite half an inch long. But not all flowers have such a large calyx. In some flowers, such as the cow parsnip, this sheath is nothing more than a mere base, and in extreme cases, like the shallow, there is no calyx at all. In other words, the shallow is acalcine.

Gr. *a-* not, without, *calyx* cup of a flower, from *kalyptein* to cover.

**acanthaceous** (à kân thâ' shé ùs), *adj.* Having sharp prickles; resembling the acanthus plant or belonging to the acanthus family. (F. *acanthacé*.)

A plant which is like the acanthus is called **acanthine** (à kân' Nîn, *adj.*), and a

plant or other thing which is prickly or spinous is said to be **acanthoid** (à kân' thoid *adj.*) or **acanthous** (à kân' thús, *adj.*). See acanthus.

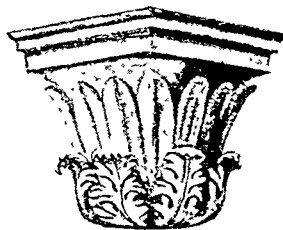
**Acanthopterygii** (à kân thop tēr ij' i i), *n.pl.* The order to which the spiny-finned fishes belong. (F. *acanthoptérigiens*.)

There are a great many different kinds of fishes, some living in fresh and some in salt water, that carry spears and lances. Fortunately for their neighbours the spines are not often placed so that they can be used for fighting.

One of the best-known is the perch, which is so common in British inland waters. This fish has 14 or 15 spines on the first dorsal or back fin alone, besides four or five spines on other fins. The ruffe, or pope, has 13 to 15 spines on the dorsal fin, while the bass, or sea perch, has eight or nine spines on the first dorsal.

A fish belonging to this order is an **acanthopterygian** (à kân thop tēr ij' i àn, *n.*), and is thus an **acanthopterygious** (à kân thop tēr ij' i ùs, *adj.*) dweller in water.

Gr. *akantha* prickly, *pterygion* fin.



Acanthus.—One of the group of plants that bear this name, and the architectural ornament that man copied from it.

**acanthus** (à kân' thús), *n.* A group of plants; an ornament used to decorate a building. (F. *acanthé*.)

Numbering hundreds of species, the acanthus is mostly native of the Near and Far East. Some are now grown in British gardens, one of the finest being the prickly bear's breech. The acanthus was well known to the ancients. The plant grows from one to five feet high, and in many varieties the leaves are prickly.

It is thought that a chance happening first gave the Greek builders the idea of ornamenting the capitals of their pillars with a grouping of acanthus leaves, which ever since has been one of the features by which we can distinguish the Corinthian order of architecture from the Doric and Ionic.

Perhaps Greek masons were building a temple in ancient Corinth. A plain Doric capital, intended to crown the top of one of the pillars, had been lying on the ground for many days. At last the builder came to remove it, and he found that an acanthus

plant had sprung up and partly hidden the stone with its handsome leaves. The builder was struck by the graceful form of the foliage outlined against the stone, and resolved to decorate his capitals in future with similar leaves, carved by the mason's chisel.

Gr. *akanthos*, from *akantha* prickle, thorn, from *akē* point.

**acardiac** (ă kar' di äk), *adj.* Having no heart. (F. *acarde*.)

Gr. *a-* not, without, *kardia* heart.

**Acarida** (ă kär' i dā), *n. pl.* The order to which the mites and ticks belong. (F. *acarides*.)

Members of this order are called **acaridan** (ă kär' i dān, *adj.*), or **acaridean** (äk ä rid' i ān, *adj.*), insects. See *acarus*.

**acarpous** (ă kar' pūs), *adj.* Without fruit. (F. *acarbe*.) A tree that does not bear fruit is said to be acarpous.

Gr. *a-* not, without, *karpos* fruit.

**acarus** (äk ä rūs), *n.* The family of tiny spider-like creatures that includes the mites and ticks. (F. *acare*, *acarus*.)

Probably you have looked with wonder through a microscope at the mites that live so actively in old cheese. It is more interesting and less painful than being attacked by harvest mites.

Mites are of many kinds, and are found in every country. Ugly and horrible they appear to our eyes when magnified, but how marvellous their forms, how curious their busy lives! Some bite, some pierce, some suck. Many are born with six legs, which increase later to eight. Some are blind others have four eyes. Some roam at large others attach themselves to larger animals.

Gr. *akari* a tiny mite; from *a-* not, *keirein* to cut, something too small to cut.

**acatalectic** (ă kăt ä lek' tik), *adj.* Having its full number of syllables; complete. (F. *acatalectique*.)

The ancient Greeks and Romans had no rhyme-makers. The lines of their classical poetry did not rhyme; it was the regular arrangement of syllables and cadence that held them together as poetry. To obtain rhythm in poetry, a certain uniform rise and fall of sound are necessary. Uniformity, in turn, requires a measure, and the unit of measure in rhythm is called a foot.

The Greeks and Romans divided the rhythm into feet of two, three, or four syllables. Take a line of three metrical feet, with the syllables arranged as follows:

Short, long, short/ short, long, short/ short, long, short.

Such a line is acatalectic, or complete. But if you write the line with the syllables:

Short, long, short/ short, long, short/ short, long

that is with the third syllable of the third foot left out, then the line is catalectic. Modern poets often depend on rhyme and fancy, rather than on strict measure, for their effects.

Late L. *acatalecticus*, from Gr. *a-* not, *kata-* *legō* to stop short.

**acatalepsy** (ă kăt ä lep' sē), *n.* The quality of being beyond our understanding. (F. *acatalepsie*.)

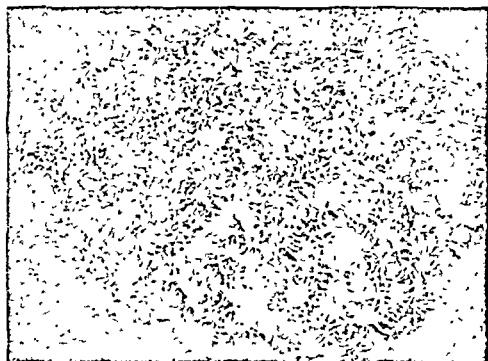
Anything that cannot be known is **acataleptic** (ă kăt ä lep' tik, *adj.*), and one who believes we know nothing certainly, that all our knowledge is open to doubt, is an **acataleptic** (*n.*).

Gr. *a-* not, *katalepsia* holding fast, comprehending.

**acauline** (ă kawl' in), *adj.* Seeming to be without a stem. (F. *acaule*.) **Acaulescent** (ă kawl es' ēnt), **acaulose** (ă kawl ōz'), **acaulous** (ă kawl' ūs) have the same meaning.

Many plants have their leaves so close to their roots that scarcely any stem is shown, as in the case of lichens. All plants, however, have a stem of some kind, as distinct from root and leaf, even if it is so flattened as to be only a thin, but important, junction between the two.

Gr. *a-* not, without, *kaulos*, L. *caulis* stalk



Acauline.—Lichens, of which scarcely any stem is shown, are acauline plants.

**Accadian** (äk käd' i ān), *n.* A member of an ancient people that lived in Babylonia before the Babylonian kingdom arose; their language, also called Sumerian *adj.* Belonging to that early race.

Pages of dictionaries explaining the language of the Accadian or Akkadian race, inscribed on brick tablets, have been found by men while digging out the sand mounds which cover some of the once mighty cities of Babylonia. In Genesis x, 10, we read of Babel and Accad, in the land of Shinar. Although the Accadians lived about 5,000 years ago, they had a wonderful civilization. They invented the wedge-shaped, or cuneiform writing, which, clearly impressed on the sun-dried tiles they used as the pages of their books of laws and history, still enabled learned men to piece together the story of Babylonia and Assyria.

This people, together with their conquerors, the Babylonians and Assyrians, have long since perished, but their brick-writings have endured for thousands of years, and will probably last far longer than our modern books of paper.

**accede** (âk sêd'), *v.i.* To agree; to come into office, especially of a king to the throne. (I. *accéder.*) See accession.

L. *accedere*; *ac-* (=ad) to, *cedere* to come, yield, agree.

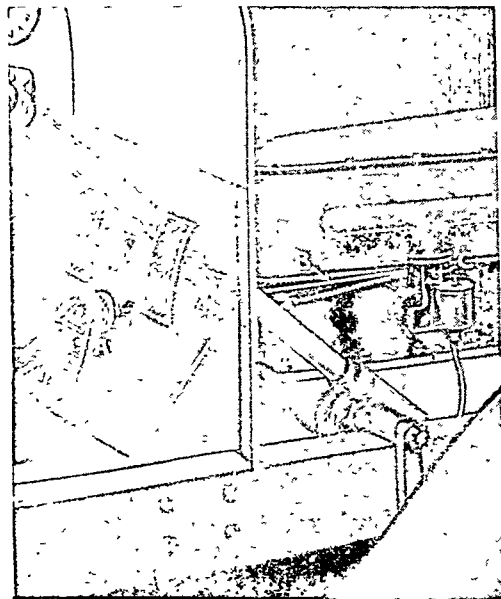
**accelerando** (a chel er ân' dô), *adv.* Gradual quickening of tune.

This word is frequently used as a direction in musical compositions, and shows that the time of the music is to be increased, not at once, but gradually. This direction is nearly always shortened to *Accel.*, but when the quickening is spread over several bars it is written in full.

Ital. (pres. p.) from L. *accelerare*, from *ac-* =ad to, *celerare* to quicken (*celer* quick).

**accelerate** (âk sel' ér ât), *v.t.* To cause to go faster. (F. *accélérer.*)

In making a motor-car run faster you



Accelerator.—A is the accelerator pedal, B the connecting rod, and C the throttle lever which allows gas to pass into the cylinders through the induction pipe, D.

accelerate its rate of progress, the increased pace being caused by an *accelerative* (âk sel' ér â tiv, *adj.*) force. When a rate of progress is continually increasing it is caused by an *accelerating* (âk sel' ér ât ing, *adj.*) force.

If you watch very closely an athlete who is running in a hundred yards' race you may notice that he increases his speed in the second half of the contest. It is not possible for him to run very fast from the beginning of a race, and top speed is only reached gradually. All the time that he is striving to reach his greatest speed he is increasing his rate of progress, which is *acceleration* (âk sel' ér â shùn, *n.*).

Again, supposing you were to drop a ball from the roof of a high building it would fall at the increasing rate of 32 feet every second. In the first second it would fall

16 feet, in the next 48 feet, in the third 80 feet, so that at the end of three seconds it would have dropped 144 feet.

Although acceleration generally indicates quickening, in mechanics it may also mean a slowing down. A quickening speed is known as positive acceleration, a decreasing speed negative acceleration, or, as it is more often called, retardation.

L. *accelerare*, from *ac-* (=ad) to (emphatic), *celer* swift. SYN.: Advance, expedite, hasten, hurry, quicken. ANT.: Delay, hinder, impede, retard.

**accelerator** (âk sel' ér ât ôr), *n.* Someone or something that causes an increase of speed; a muscle or nerve that makes an organ work more quickly. (F. *accélérateur.*)

When a motor-car driver wishes to pass another vehicle going in the same direction and at about the same pace he has to increase the speed of his vehicle. In some cases there is a foot-lever, in others a hand-lever, a touch of which causes the car to go forward at a higher speed by reason of its allowing more gas from the carburettor to reach the engine. This lever, because of its action on the engine, is called the accelerator.

**accent** (âk' sent), *n.* Emphasis given to one syllable of a word by laying stress upon it or by a different pitch or tone of the voice; also a mark written over a vowel, to show how it is pronounced, as in French. *v.t.* To lay stress upon; to emphasize. (F. *accent*; *accentuer.*)

In this word, for instance, we may emphasize the first syllable, *ac' cent*, when the word becomes a noun, or by shifting the stress to the second syllable, *accent'*, it becomes a verb. The mark ' is used to denote the accent on a word, and also to show that a syllable not usually pronounced is to be treated on this occasion as a separate syllable. Take, for example, Shelley's beautiful lines from "The Cloud":

"That orbéd maiden with white fire laden  
Whom mortals call the moon."

Orbed is generally pronounced as one syllable, but this would spoil the rhythm of the lines, so the accent is placed over its second syllable. But in the sense of "emphasis" or "stress" the accents in this line are on *orb*, *maid*, *white*, *lad*, and in the next line on *mor*, *call*, *moon*.

There are many other ways in which the accent may fall, and by which poetry may be varied, as in these lines:

"Like the leaves of the forest when Summer is  
green,  
That host with their banners at sunset were  
seen."

Accent gives life and liveliness to language; without it language becomes wearisome. Each language has its own peculiar rules for accent. This is why we can generally recognize when a person is not talking in his native tongue. He speaks with a foreign accent.

In English there is a tendency to move the accent as far forward as possible, as in a

word like comfortable, borrowed from the French, who accent the *a*, while we accent the *com*.

There are many words pronounced with different accents to express different ideas, such as tor' ment, con' test, con' trast, in' sult, all of which are nouns, while torment', contest', contrast', insult' are verbs. August, the month, is quite distinct from august' meaning grand, and this difference shows how the common use of a word leads to the shifting of the accent towards the beginning of the word.

The sign' and its double'' are used to represent minutes and seconds, as 6 hrs 4' 15'', and feet and inches, as 3 yards 2' 10''.

To lay stress upon a syllable is to accent (āk sen' tū, *v.t.*) or accentuate (āk sen' tū āt, *v.t.*) it, such stress being accentuation (āk sen tū ā' shūn, *n.*). Anything relating to accent is *accidental* (āk sen' tū āl, *adj.*).

*L. ac. = ad to, cantus singing, from canere (unused supine form cantum).* SYN.: Beat, cadence, emphasis, rhythm, stress. ANT.: Equableness, flow, smoothness.

**accensor** (āk sen' sōr), *n.* The person who lights and puts out the candles in the Roman Catholic Church.

*L.L. accensor, from accendere to make to glow, from ad to, candere to glow.*

**accentor** (āk sen' ōr), *n.* A group of small birds related to the warblers. The best known is the hedge-sparrow. (*F. accenteur.*)

**accept** (āk sept'), *v.t.* To receive: to agree to (what is offered); to approve; to admit the truth of. (*F. acceptor.*)

In business the word has a special meaning. When a merchant owes money to another and does not wish to pay immediately, it is usual for the creditor to send him what is known as a bill of exchange, or draft, that is, a printed form stamped by the government and claiming payment of the debt by a certain time. The merchant who receives this form signs it, or accepts it, and returns it to the sender.

As the government stamp makes it a legal document this bill can now be discounted with a banker or bill-broker, who will pay for it a sum less than its face value according to the date when it is due. The trade of the world is carried on chiefly by the exchange of these bills between one country and another.

Food offered to a starving man is *acceptable* (āk sept' ābl, *adj.*), and is offered *acceptably* (āk sept' ā bli, *adv.*), the act of taking it is *acceptance* (āk sept' āns, *n.*), or *acceptation* (āk sep tā' shūn, *n.*), and the fact that the acceptor (āk sept' ēr, *n.*) eats it shows its *acceptability* (āk sept ā bil' i ti, *n.*) or *acceptableness* (āk sept' ābl nēs, *n.*).

Acceptation also means the sense in which a word or sentence is received. In business, a bill that is accepted is called an *acceptance* and the person who accepts it is the *acceptor* (āk sept' ōr, *n.*).

*L. acceptare to receive often, frequentative of accipere, from ac. = ad to, capere to take.* SYN.: Admit, approve, avow, receive, take. ANT.: Decline, disown, refuse, reject.

**access** (āk' ses), *n.* Admittance; the means, permission, or opportunity to enter or approach; increase or addition; an attack of illness or of anger or other passion. (*F. accès.*)

Should you wish to see a private collection of paintings or sculptures and you receive the owner's permission, they become *accessible* (āk ses' ibl, *adj.*) to you, and when you enter the room you gain access to them. The fact that they were to be seen gave them *accessibility* (āk ses i bil' iti, *n.*).

An outhouse placed in such a position as to be easily approached is situated *accessibly* (āk ses' i bli, *adv.*).

When a person inherits a sum of money



Accentor.—The hedge-sparrow, a member of this group of small birds.

he has an access of wealth; when he becomes suddenly ill he has an access of illness.

*L. accessus coming to, from ac. (=ad) to, cedere to come, yield, agree.* SYN.: Addition, admission, attack, entrance, increase. ANT. Abbreviation, departure, egress, exit, loss.

**accession** (āk sesh' un), *n.* The act of agreeing to; coming into office, ascending the throne; increase in number or value. (*F. accession, avènement.*)

In the early hours of the morning of June 21st, 1837, two messengers set out on horseback from Windsor Castle on a mission of great importance. They were the Archbishop of Canterbury and the Lord Chamberlain, and they were journeying to Kensington Palace to see the Princess Victoria. Reaching the palace they requested an audience, and although they were told that the princess was in "so sweet a sleep" that it would be unkind to awaken her, their answer was that their mission was urgent and could not be delayed.

Presently the young girl made her appearance. She was informed that her uncle William IV was dead, and that she was Queen of England. The messengers had come to announce her accession to the throne.

The beginning of a new reign is always announced by heralds. On the accession of King George V the first proclamation was read in the Friary Court of St. James's Palace by Garter King of Arms on May 9th, 1910. The ceremony was afterwards repeated at the Royal Exchange and elsewhere.

Syn.: Addition, arrival, extension, increase, installation. ANT.: Abandonment, decrease, departure, resignation.



Accession. - A herald on the steps of the Royal Exchange announcing to the citizens of London the accession of King George V.

**accessory** (äk ses' ör i), *adj.* Helping. *n.* One who helps a wrongdoer; a helpful or useful thing added. Another spelling is **accessary** (äk ses' är i). (F. *accessoire*; *complée*.) See *accomplice*.

**acciaccatura** (äch a kä too' rä), *n.* A single small note, sometimes twō, directly in front of a large, or principal, note, and joined to it by a slur.

These small notes are played so quickly that they are of no value from the point of time, the time-beats falling regularly on the large, or principal, note.

Ital. *acciaccare* to crush, doubtfully connected with L. *ascia* axe.

**accidence** (äk' si dens), *n.* The branch of grammar which deals with the inflections of words, that is, with the changes that they undergo according to their use. (F. *inflections*.)

English as we now speak and write it is a language of few inflections, such as boy, boy's, boys; look, looks, looking, looked. Old English, or Anglo-Saxon as it is sometimes called, had quite a number of them. Our ancestors expressed many changes in the meaning or use of a word by altering its beginning or end.

Thus to the adjective *gōd* (=good) no fewer than ten different endings might be added, a, an, e, en, es, ne, ra, re, u, and um, according to the gender, number, or case of the noun with which it was used. All these endings are now lost and we use the word *good* on all occasions.

The only adjectives now inflected are *this* and *that*, with their plural forms *these* and *those*. We still have a number of inflections of verbs, but far fewer than in Old English. In learning a new language it is usual first to study its inflections, and so accidence comes to mean elementary grammar.

L. *accidentia* casual occurrences, neuter pl. of *accidens* (gen. *accident-is*), pres. p. of *accidere* from *ac-* = *ad* to, *cadere* to (be) fall.

**accident** (äk' si dent), *n.* An event that proceeds from an unknown or unexpected cause. (F. *accident*.)

Since the people of Great Britain have become mainly a population of town-dwellers using motor-cars and buses, accident has come to suggest chiefly the idea of a street accident. In London alone more than 7,000 persons are injured every year from such causes, and the fatal accidents average more than two a day, chiefly young children.

Public bodies are working hard to reduce such happenings by traffic control, by marking the streets with white lines to show drivers which part of the road they are to use, by making wider and better roads, by altering dangerous corners, and by building subways. Here are four simple rules that will help to prevent accidents:

Never step off the pavement without making sure that the road is clear.

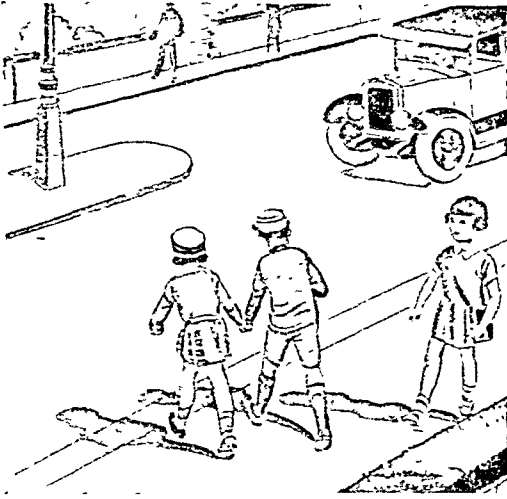
In crossing the road look to your right for the first half and to your left for the second half of the crossing. You will thus be looking towards advancing traffic. When one-way traffic is in force, look only in the direction from which vehicles are advancing.

Whenever possible cross busy streets at points where refuges are provided in the road.

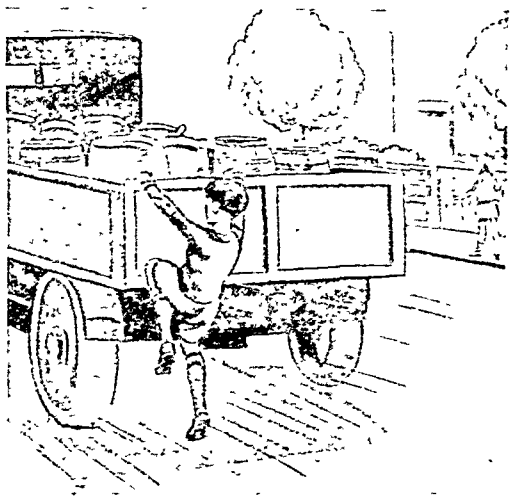
When getting off trams or omnibuses go to the nearest pavement, that is, to the one



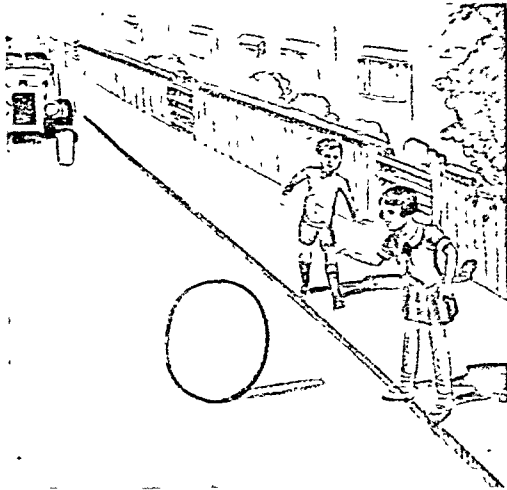
# SIX SIMPLE RULES THAT WILL HELP TO PREVENT STREET ACCIDENTS



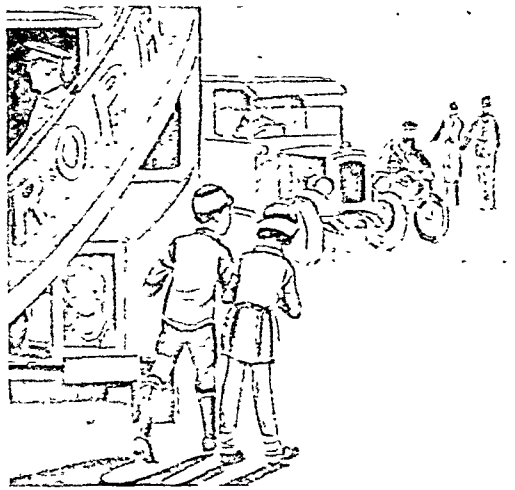
1. Always cross the road at a refuge if there is one.



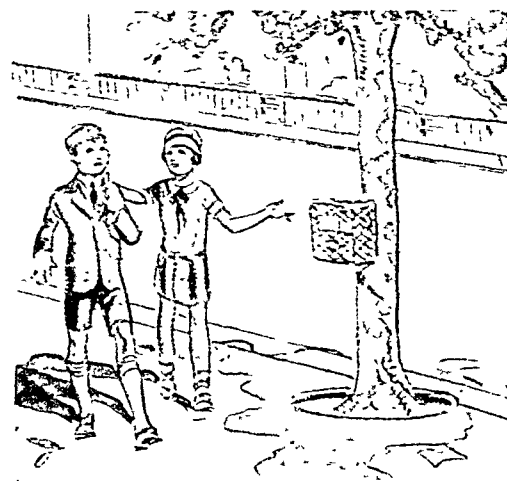
4. Do not steal rides on any kind of vehicle.



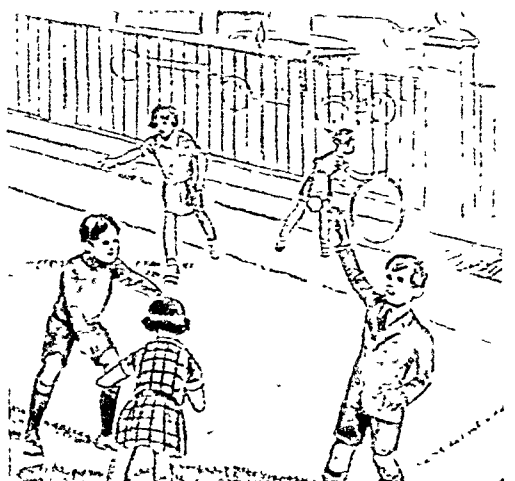
2. Never run after your hoop into the roadway.



5. Always look both ways before you cross a road.



3. Never throw fruit skins on the pavement.



6. Always play in a park rather than in a road.

on the left of the vehicle. If you must go to the other side peep carefully round the back of tram or bus before setting out to reach it.

SYN.: Calamity, casualty, disaster, mishap, misfortune. ANT.: Appointment, certainty, intention.

**accidental** (āk si den' tal), *adj.* Occurring by chance or unexpectedly. (F. *accidentel*.)

If you gaze steadily for half a minute or so at a highly coloured object, especially one on a light background, and then quickly look away to a stretch of white, such as the ceiling, you will see there a patch of colour of the same shape as the object that you first looked at, but of quite a different tint. Supposing that the original colour was blue or red, then the patch on the ceiling will be yellow or green respectively, and vice versa.

These latter colours—yellow and green—are known as the accidental or complementary colours to blue and red. They are due to the fact that by continued gazing at one colour the eyes become tired of that colour. White light is a mixture of many colours blended together.

The eye, which has tired of blue light therefore sees only the rest of the colours that make up the white of the object to which it turns. These remaining colours make a yellow patch on the ceiling and yellow is therefore the accidental or complementary colour to blue. Anything happening accidentally (āk si dent' āl li, *adv.*) occurs by chance

**accipiter** (āk sip' it ér), *n.* A group of small birds of prey, the best known of which is the sparrow-hawk. (F. *accipitres*.)

Most of those birds of prey that hunt in the daytime are accipitres (*n.pl.*). Their



Accipiter. — The sparrow-hawk, a member of this group

keen sight, combined with their power of flight and of swooping on their prey, which they seize with their strong curved beak and claws, makes them formidable enemies to other birds and to small mammals. Birds belonging to or resembling members of this group are accipitral (āk sip' i trāl, *adj.*) or accipitrine (āk sip' i trin, *adj.*).

L. *accipere* (frequentative), from *ac-* = *ad* to, *capere* to seize. Others explain the word as swiftwinged. (Gr. *ōkys*, swift, *pteron* wing.)

**acclaim** (ā klām'), *v.t.* To applaud loudly; to announce with joy. *v.i.* To shout applause *n.* A shout of applause. (F. *acclamer*; *acclamation*.)

It is fairly certain that our ancestors made even more noise in their assemblies than we do, and they have handed down to us many curious customs by which we show our approval of public performances.

Strictly speaking, **acclamation** (āk klā mā' shūn, *n.*) should be confined to shouting and applause to hand clapping, but the two expressions now mean much the same thing. In olden times many a vote was taken simply by the shouts of the voters. In the House of Commons the members still shout "Aye" or "No" when the Speaker puts a question to them "I think the Ayes have it," he modestly suggests. "The Noes have it," some opponent cries, and then the more reliable method of voting by going into different lobbies is pursued.

Questions of peace and of war were settled thus, but the

noise was increased by the clashing of spears and swords against the shields of the warriors.

The clapping of hands and banging of the floor with feet and sticks with which we greet a successful performer in an acclamatory (ā klām' ā tō ri, *adj.*) manner is undoubtedly a survival of more warlike customs

L. *ac-* = *ad* to, *clamare* to shout. SYN.: Applaud, cheer, praise. ANT.: Denounce, deride, hiss.



Acclaim.—A crowd acclaiming the King and Queen with shouts and the waving of flags.

SYN.: Casual, chance, incidental, occasional. ANT.: Appointed, certain, intended.

**accidentals** (āk si den' tāls), *n.pl.* Certain notes in music. (F. *signes accidentels*.)

Accidentals are due to a change of key from that in which a piece started. They are shown by the sign for sharp ♯, flat ♭, or natural ♮ placed in front of the note in question.

# ACCLIMATIZING MAN AND BEAST

*Why the former is more Successful in making himself, at Home in Strange Climates*

**acclimatize** (à klī' mā tīz), *v.t.* To accustom to a new climate, especially to one which differs considerably from the native climate of man, animals, and plants. (*F. acclimater.*)

All animals and plants in their wild state are wonderfully adapted for living in the climate of their native land. Arctic animals and plants have very warm coverings, tropical ones are skilful in taking shelter from the sun's scorching rays. Those of damp climates are provided with means of throwing off the too abundant rain. Is it possible for them to be enabled to live in a climate different from their native one?

Remains of elephants, rhinoceroses, tigers, hyenas and other animals now confined to tropical countries have been found in Great

Britain. The fact that the elephants and rhinoceroses were clothed in thick, woolly hair shows that they had to bear a colder climate, and if, as naturalists believe, they made their way from colder to warmer regions, they must have been able to acclimatize themselves. The process was very slow. Can man accomplish it more speedily?

At first glance the answer seems to be, Yes. Wherever man has strayed on the earth he has taken his domestic animals with him. They bear astonishing changes in climate, but we must remember that man keeps a careful watch over them, provides them with food and shelter and tends them when sick or ailing. In most cases they would soon perish if left to themselves. They cannot be said to be really acclimatized.

The old seafarers used to carry livestock with them on their long voyages. When they called at far-distant, uninhabited islands they would set a few of these animals ashore in the hope that they might multiply and so provide a store of meat for future occasions. These marooned animals often thrive exceedingly, and many islands of the Pacific are now well supplied with wild horses, asses, goats, and pigs.

These would seem to be good examples of acclimatization (à klī mā tī zā' shūn, *n.*),

but again we have to admit that the climate of these islands differs but little from that of the lands from which the animals first came. Such animals are rather naturalized than acclimatized.

What we want is an instance of really wild animals being introduced to a climate quite different from that of their native land. Such experiments are now being tried by the zoological societies of various countries. Instead of confining tropical animals in stuffy cages and stalls with artificial heating, they are allowing them to enjoy the freedom of large open-air spaces with shelters to which they may retire at will.

Progress in this direction may reveal many cases of true acclimatization. At present the best examples are offered by rabbits and rats,

which during the last hundred years or so have spread into almost all quarters of the globe. The wild rabbit was only introduced into Australia some 70 years ago. It has now increased to such an extent as to be a dangerous pest.

Birds that swim or wade are found to be easily acclimatized. Flamingos and pelicans from the tropics, Mongolian geese and Greenland ducks may all be seen living in almost a natural state in the ponds of the London parks. Their habit of flying from one country to another according to the season largely accounts for the ease with which they adapt themselves. When not helped by



Acclimatization.—Flamingos from the tropics wading in the pond of a London park.

man the process is called acclimation (à klī mā' shūn, *n.*) or acclimation (à klī mā tā' shūn, *n.*).

So far as acclimatization involves ability to live in widely varying climates it is safe to say that man is more successful than any other animal. He inhabits the frozen arctic regions and flourishes in the burning tropics; the arid desert, and the rain-soaked forest, the swampy delta and the lofty plateau are alike his home and he can wander from one to the other. But "home" is just the word that explains man's success. He does not live in a wild state. The poorest savage has learned to provide himself with some shelter against the attacks of climate, and

without that ability he would soon disappear. Increased civilization means increased power of acclimatization in this sense. The West Coast of Africa and the jungles of Panama, in Central America, once regarded as "the white man's grave," have been made safe for civilized men by the discovery of means to fight and cure malaria. In Panama the death rate is lower than that of many a European city.

Sudden change of climate must always cause discomfort. It may endanger health and even lead to death, but greater knowledge lessens these risks. Attention to the laws of health will enable most men to acclimatize themselves to almost any climate.

It is interesting to discover that the negro races seem even more successful in doing so than the white races.

*L. ac-* (=ad) to, *F. climat*, *Gr. klima* (gen. *klimat-os*) climate.

**acclivity** (â kliv' i ti), *n.* A slope upwards, especially a steep one. (*F. montée.*)

*L. acclivitas*, from *ac-* =ad to, *clivus* slope. *SYN.*: Ascent, incline, rise *ANT.*: Decline, declivity, descent.

**accolade** (âk kô lâd'), *n.* The chivalric act in the ceremony of conferring knighthood; a decorative moulding over a window or a door; a brace joining two or more staves in music. (*F. accolade.*)

In different periods and countries the accolade of knighthood has taken varying forms. The Norman kings conferred it by a blow, and not always a gentle one, on the cheek or neck; the early monarchs of France kissed the new knight on the cheek. The latter developed into a hearty embrace, while the Norman method became a gentle touch on the shoulder with a sword.

To-day the claimant for knighthood kneels before the King or Queen, who lays the flat of a drawn sword upon his shoulder and says, "Arise, Sir William," or whatever his Christian name may be. He is then said to have been "dubbed" knight. See knight.

*Ital. accollare* (p.p. *accollata* f.), *L. ac-* =ad to, round, *collum* neck.

**accommodate** (â kom' mô dât), *v.t.* To fit, to make suitable; to bring in harmony; to provide lodging for. (*F. accommoder.*)

Seaside apartments are accommodation (â kom ô dâ shûn, *n.*). The owner is accommodative (â kom' ô dâ tiv, *adj.*) if he can accept or accommodate us, and if he is obliging in manner he is accommodating (â kom' ô dât ing, *adj.*) and therefore acts towards us accommodately (â kom' ô dât ing li, *adv.*).

Accommodation bills are those which are drawn to supply a want of money. A person in need of money may find an accommodating friend who is willing to accept a bill drawn upon him, in the hope that its value will later be paid back by the borrower. An accommodation bill differs from an ordinary bill of exchange in that it is not a return for value received.

An accommodation ladder is a small ladder or flight of steps let down over the side of a ship to enable passengers or seamen from small boats to reach the deck of the vessel.

*L. accommodare*, from *ac-* =ad to, *commodus* fit, suitable. *SYN.*: Adapt, arrange, conform, oblige, serve. *ANT.*: Disoblige, incommode, inconvenience.

**accompaniment** (â kûm' pân i mên), *n.* Something added to another thing to give greater completeness; instrumental music played to accompany a song. (*F. accompagnement.*)



Accolade.—King George V giving the accolade to a naval officer for distinguished service.

The drum, tom-tom, and tambourine all started in a strange way. They had their origin in the desire of the earliest singers to beat time upon an object that would make a noise. It is quite possible that the first accompaniment was nothing more musical than the banging together of two pieces of wood. Later it was found that the twanging of a tightened string gave a note that helped the singer, and that different degrees of tightness caused the strings to emit different notes.

These simple discoveries led to the making of instruments such as lyres, harps, and violins, and finally to the piano. The earliest lyre seems to have been formed by stretching strings over an empty tortoise shell. This survives in the mandolin. Orpheus, the wonderful mythical singer of the Greeks, used a lyre of this kind, and is said to have achieved miraculous effects by it.

**accompany** (à kŭm' pà ni), *v.t.* To go with; to attend as a companion; to play the piano or other instrument to the singing of (another person). (F. *accompagner*.)

One who accompanies a singer is an **accompanist** (à kŭm' pân ist, *n.*), and the music he plays is the **accompaniment** (à kŭm' pà ni mĕnt, *n.*) See **accompaniment**.

F. à to, *compagnon* companion, O.F. *compainon*, *compaignon*. SYN.: Attend, convoy, escort, follow. ANT.: Abandon, avoid, desert, leave.

**accomplice** (à kom' plis), *n.* A companion in crime, one who shares the guilt. (F. *complice*.)

In carrying out any crime, such as murder, theft, or a plot against the State, there is always a leader known in law as the principal. Those who share the guilt with him are called abettors, accessories, or accomplices, and they are regarded as less guilty than the principal, with the one exception of high treason, in which case the law knows nothing of different degrees of guilt.

In other crimes the abettor is he who urges, encourages, or assists in the preparations for the crime but takes no direct part in it. There are two forms of accessory. The accessory *before* the fact is he who takes no direct part in the crime, but is aware that a crime is to be committed and takes no action to prevent it.

The accessory *after* the fact knows that a crime has been committed, associates with the criminal, and either assists his escape or takes no steps for his capture. Accomplices are those who actually share in the commission of the crime, but act under the direction of the principal.

L. *com-* = *con-*, *cum* with, *plicare* to fold, twine (cp. complex). -*ic-* may represent the indefinite article *a*, or L. *ad*. SYN.: Accessory, ally, coadjutor, confederate. ANT.: Adversary, enemy, foe, rival.

**accomplish** (à kom' plish), *v.t.* To complete; to carry out. (F. *accomplir*.)

At the end of the nineteenth century the highest praise that could be given to a young lady was to say that she was highly accomplished. By this was meant that she had been to a "finishing" school, where she had "completed" her education by learning such accomplishments (à kom' plish mĕnts, *n.pl.*) as music, singing, some foreign languages, and how to conduct herself in Society.

To-day one's education is never regarded as finished. In other words, to complete one's education is a thing that is not **accomplishable** (à kom' plish àbl, *adj.*).

O.F. *acomplir* (pres. p. *acomplissant*), from L. *ac-* = *ad* to, *complere* to fill up. SYN.: Achieve, finish, fulfil, perform, realize. ANT.: Defeat, destroy, frustrate, mar, spoil.

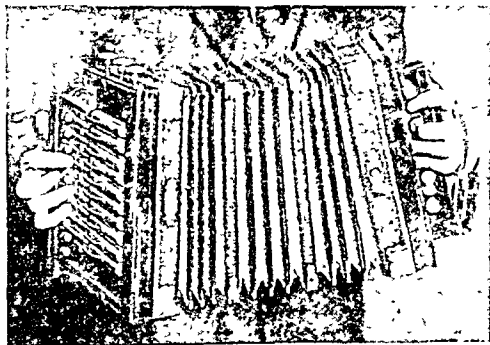
**accord** (à kôrd'), *v.t.* To bring to agreement; to grant; to consent. *n.* Agreement; harmony. (F. *accorder*; *accord*.)

From very ancient times the heart has been regarded as the seat of love and affection, an idea which we frequently adopt. Thus we speak of those holding the same opinions as being in hearty agreement, and we accord a hearty vote of thanks.

It is interesting to see from the derivation that exactly the same idea is expressed by "in accord," "in accordance (à kôrd' âns, *n.*) with." To act accordingly (à kôrd' ing li, *adv.*) is to do something in agreement with what has gone before. An accorder (à kôrd' èr, *n.*) is one who agrees or consents.

Musical instruments and human feelings that harmonize are **accordant** (à kôrd' ânt, *adv.*) and sound or act **accordantly** (à kôrd' ânt li, *adv.*). In literature this word recalls the time when all books were written by hand; the Gospel according (à kôrd' ing, *adj.*) to St. John once meant a faithful copy in agreement with the original words of St. John.

L.L. *accordare* to make agree, from *ac-* = *ad* to, *cor* (gen. *cord-is*) heart. SYN.: Agree, concede, harmonize, yield. ANT.: Deny, differ, disagree, withhold.



Accordion.—A popular musical instrument that was introduced in our country from Austria about a century ago.

**accordion** (à kôr' di òn), *n.* A portable musical instrument worked by bellows action and supplied with a small keyboard. (F. *accordéon*.)

The accordion, introduced from Austria about 100 years ago, is an instrument beloved of sailors and trippers. To play it well requires considerable skill.

The sound is produced by opening out the bellows to take in air and then compressing them to force the air out. The air is then driven through small openings across which stretch little tongues of metal. These vibrate at different rates according to their length and thus produce different notes. The keys

are worked by the right hand, each one giving two notes.

L.L. and Ital. *accordare* to tune or harmonize.

**accost** (à kost'), *v.t.* To greet; to speak to. (F. *accoster*.)

This word is used much less frequently than in olden times, when it had the meaning of approach or contact of all kinds. There is now some idea of forwardness and rudeness associated with the term.

It is not right to accost strangers, and it is not always safe for strangers to reply to those who accost them. In the case of beggars the law regards it as a punishable offence to accost passers-by for the sake of obtaining alms.

L.L. *accostare*, *ac* = *ad* to, *costa* rib, side. SYN. Address, approach confront salute. ANT. Check, depart, elude, rebuff.

**account** (a kount'), *v.t.* To reckon, to consider. *v.i.* To render an account, to furnish a reason. *n.* Reckoning, description, explanation. (F. *compter*, *regarder comme*.)

When few people could read or write, accounts were kept by making marks with chalk, or by cutting notches on sticks. Now the system is that of book-keeping. The account books are ruled with money columns, and entries are made on one side for money spent and on the other for that received. By adding up the two sides and finding the difference it is possible to account for the state of one's money affairs.

Merchants and tradesmen send to their customers copies of such accounts when seeking for payment. If the full amount due is not paid at once, but only a portion is sent, the customer is said to pay something "on account." Business depends to such an extent on these forms that the expression "in account with" now means simply doing business with.

In law those who owe money are said to be **accountable** (à kount' àbl, *adj.*); they have an **accountability** (à kount' à bil i ti, *n.*) or **accountableness** (à kount' àbl nès, *n.*) for a certain sum of money. But these words are more often used without any idea of money or accounts, as when we say a madman is not accountable for his actions, and therefore has no accountability for them.

Another use which shows no connexion with numbers is that in which a writer or speaker is said to give an excellent account of some event. Do not worry yourself "on my account" simply means "for me," and "on no account" is only another way of saying "by no means."

L. *ac* = *ad* to, *computare*, from *com* = *cum* with, *putare* to clear up, reckon; O.F. *aconter*. SYN.: *n.* Bill, record, recital, statement. *v.* Deem, explain, reckon. ANT.: *n.* Misstatement, silence *v.* Mystify, perplex, undervalue.

**accountant** (à kount' ànt), *n.* One who deals with accounts. (F. *comptable*.)

Owing to world-wide trade, the credit system, and the custom of banking money and paying by cheques or bills, the accountant

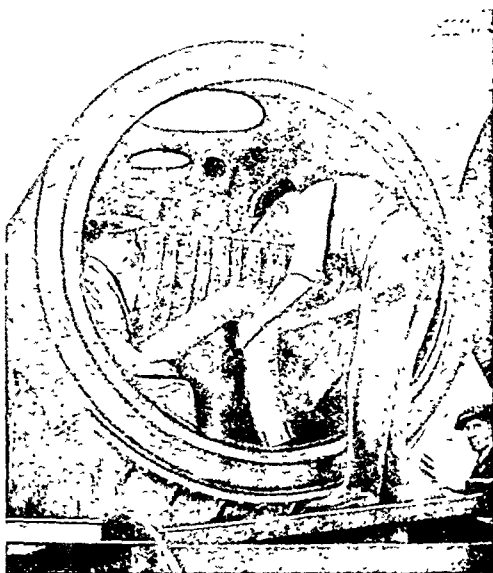
needs to be a very well-trained person. His profession is known as **accountancy** (à kount' àn si, *n.*) or **accountantship** (à kount' ànt ship, *n.*).

The formation of companies, in which people become partners without controlling them, has led to the custom of calling in outside accountants to examine the books. These are known as chartered or incorporated accountants. All public companies are bound by law to obtain from such persons a certificate that their accounts are correct.

**accouplement** (à kùp' l mèn), *n.* The act of joining two things together; the tie that joins two things together: a brace. (F. *accouplement*.)

This term is used chiefly by joiners and engineers, who have to fix together the parts of the furniture, building, or engine which they are constructing. The electrician also employs the word to describe the joining of like poles in batteries or dynamos.

O.F. *cople*, from L. *copula* band, from *co* = *cum* with, (obsolete) *apere* to unite.

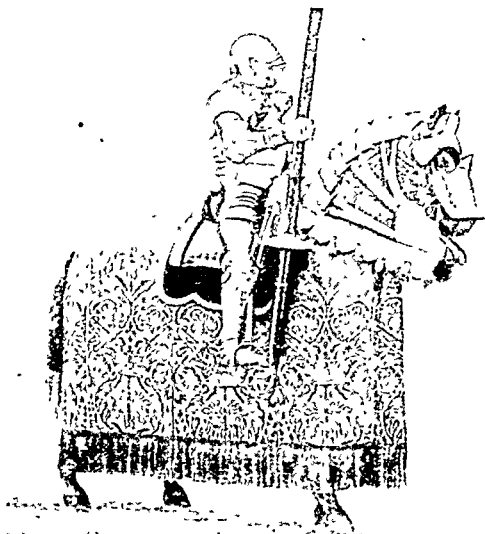


Accouplement.—Engineers accoupling or joining together tubes in building a locomotive.

**accoutre** (à koo' tèr), *v.t.* To dress to equip. (F. *accouter*.)

Used especially of military outfits or accoutrements (à koo' tèr mèn, *n.*) When soldiers fought chiefly with bows and arrows or swords and spears, it was possible to protect the body by steel armour. Accoutrements were then very heavy, and it was quite impossible for cavalry to mount their horses without help.

For modern soldiers the chief aim is to produce a light but strong means of carrying their kit, their ammunition, and their gas masks. The shrapnel helmet is, however, a return to an old style. Strong canvas



Accoutrements.—The accoutrements of a mounted soldier and his horse as used in the sixteenth century contrasted with that of cavalry at the present time. The armour of the old-time warrior is engraved and gilded.

webbing is the material now chiefly used in making accoutrements.

The word may possibly be derived ultimately from L.L. *custor* keeper, through O.F. *a. = ad, cousteur, coustre* the sexton who looked after the robes, G. *Küster*. SYN.: Array, fit out, furnish. ANT.: Bare, denude, strip.

**accredit** (à kred' it, *v.t.* To vouch for; to send with official documents giving authority. (F. *accréditer*.)

When an ambassador, a consul, or other State messenger is sent from one country to another he must bear letter or documents which show that he has been duly appointed for the purpose. Such a man is the *accredited* (à kred' it éd, *adj.*) agent of his country. Extending this use we speak of the best accredited story or statement, by which we mean the one supported by the greatest evidence in the form of documents.

F. *accréditer*, from L. *accrédere*, from *ac- = ad to, credere* to trust, to give authority to. SYN.: Authorize, credit, empower, trust. ANT.: Distrust, recall, supersede, suspect.

**accrete** (à krēt'), *v.i.* To grow together; to combine round a central body. F. *s'accroître*.)

The laws of growth are all very mysterious, but in minerals they are a little simpler than in living creatures. Hang a crystal of alum in a saturated solution of the same substance and it will steadily increase in size. This is growth by accretion (à krē' shùn, *n.*). The added particles, also known as accretions, arrange themselves in very definite positions to form crystals, or definite mathematical forms.

Accretion in natural history is the growth together of parts that are usually separate, as the petals of a flower, and the separate

toes that horses once had, but which are now accreted. In botany such parts are said to be accrete (*adj.*).

L. *accrescere* (p.p. *accretus*), from *ac- = ad to, together, crescere* to grow.

**accrue** (à kroo'), *v.i.* To grow or increase naturally, or unavoidably. (F. *accroître*.)

Used especially with regard to money. For example, a sum of money and the accruing interest, means the interest which must be added to it.

F. *accroître* (p.p. *accru*), from L. *accrescere*, from *ac- = ad to, on, crescere* to grow. SYN.: Arise, ensue, increase. ANT.: Abate, reduce, weaken.

**accumulate** (à kū' mū lāt), *v.t.* To heap up; to gather in abundance. *v.i.* To increase. (F. *accumuler*.)

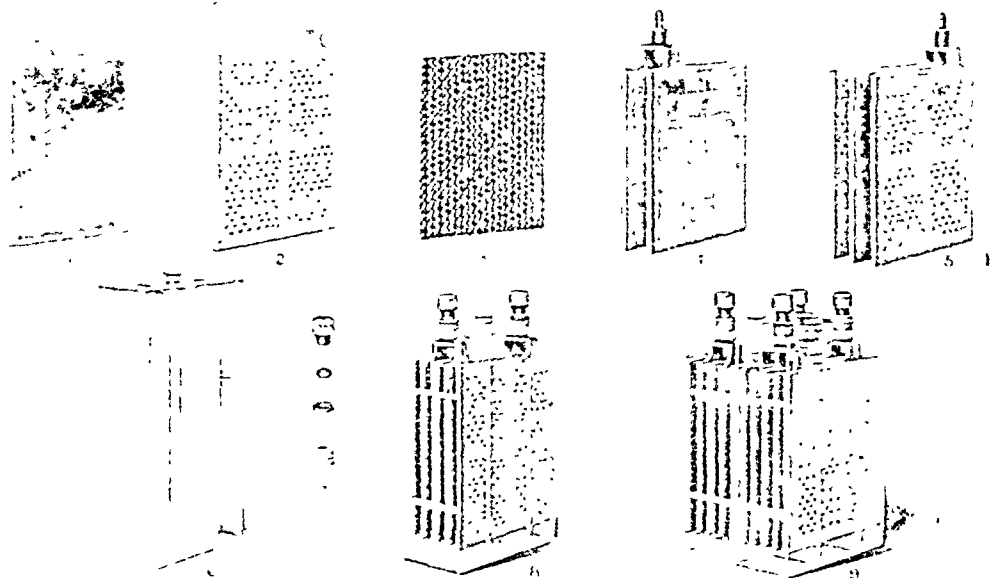
Generally used in the sense of gathering more than sufficient, and so producing an *accumulation* (à kū mū lā' shùn, *n.*) of unnecessary things, as an accumulation of rubbish, of odds and ends, and so on. The accumulation of wealth must also be regarded as harmful if pursued for its own sake merely.

Effects which follow one another in regular succession are called *accumulative* (à kū' mū lā tiv, *adj.*) and the causes which produce them act *accumulatively* (à kū' mū la tiv li, *adv.*).

L. *accumulare* (p.p. *accumulatus*), from *ac- = ad to, cumulus* heap. SYN.: Aggregate, collect, hoard, store. ANT.: Disperse, expend, scatter, waste.

**accumulator** (à kū' mū lāt ör), *n.* One who accumulates; a storage battery for electricity. (F. *accumulateur*.)

With the great increase in motoring and in the use of wireless apparatus, the accumulator, or secondary battery, has become



Accumulator. -1. Positive plate or anode. 2. Negative plate or cathode. 3. Celluloid separator. 4. Two positive plates joined by a bridge. 5. Three negative plates joined by a bridge. 6. Celluloid cell case. 7. Terminal parts. 8 and 9. Arrangement of a two-volt and a four-volt accumulator.

almost a household article. It consists usually of a series of leaden plates arranged in pairs and placed in water to which a little sulphuric acid has been added.

Unlike a primary battery it produces no current of electricity, but if one is passed through it for some hours a chemical change occurs. One set of plates is partly dissolved and the surface of the other set is coated with lead oxide. The battery is then said to be charged. If the plates are now connected by wires a reverse chemical process is set up, and a current passes in the opposite direction to that of the charging current.

We see then that the battery does not actually store electricity, but is a means of changing electrical into chemical energy and vice versa.

**accurate** (āk' kū rāt), *adj.* Careful; without mistake; exact. (F. *exact*.)

Used chiefly of measurement and of calculations. We live in an age of machinery. Machines will not work properly unless their parts fit with accuracy (āk' kū rāt, *n.*) and are accurately (āk' kū rāt h, *adv.*) adjusted.

Many modern workshops are provided with measuring machines which will show variations of one millionth of an inch. Chemists use balances of such accurateness (āk' kū rāt nes, *n.*) that they can weigh to within one thousandth of a gram or one seven-millionth of a pound.

Other examples of accurate measurement are provided by the work of astronomers, who measure angles to one hundredth of a second, or one millionth of a right angle, and calculate an eclipse to the nearest second.

*Be accurate (pp. accurate), from a-s. adj. to, to attend carefully.* SYN.: Correct,

faithful, precise, truthful. ANT.: Careless, defective, imperfect, mexact.

**accursed** (ä kër' sèd), *adj.* Ill-fated; detestable; lying under a curse; involving misery. Another spelling is *accurst* (ä kër'st). (F. *maudit*, *détestable*.)

A thing is said to be accursed when everything connected with it goes wrong, no matter how hard one tries to achieve success.

A-S. *a-* intensive, *cursian* to curse, M.E. *accursien* (part. *accursed*). SYN.: Disastrous, ill-fated, unlucky. ANT.: Favourable, lucky, propitious.

**accusative** (ä kū' zä tiv), *adj.* In inflected languages, belonging to the form or case used for the direct object of a verb. *n.* The accusative case.

In English the objective case includes both the accusative and dative of inflected languages. See *accidence*.

Anything relating to the accusative case is **accusatorial** (ä kū' zä tī' vāl, *adj.*) and anything used like the accusative case is used **accusatively** (ä kū' zä tiv h, *adv.*).

F. *accusatif*; L. *accusativus* the accusing case, a defendant being regarded as the object of a charge.

**accuse** (ä kū' zä), *v.t.* To bring a charge against; to complain of; to find fault with. (F. *accuser*.)

Used especially in law cases, where the **accuser** (ä kū' zä' er, *n.*), prosecutor, plaintiff, or petitioner is he who brings the charge, the **accused** (ä kū' zä' d, *n.*), defendant or respondent is the person charged, and the **accusation** (ä kū' zä' shün, *n.*) or indictment is the charge brought. When a definite accusation is before the court the case is **accusatorial**.



à kû zà tór' i ál, *adj.*), 'in contrast with a case of inquiry, which is inquisitorial.

Documents brought forward as evidence are accusatory (à kû' zà tór i, *adj.*); actions or persons liable to be accused are accusable (à kû' zà bl, *adj.*). Things done in an accusing manner are done accusingly (à kû' zing li, *adv.*).

*L. accusare*, from *ac-* = *ad* to, *causa* lawsuit, charge. *SYN.*: Arraign, charge, impeach, reproach. *ANT.*: Absolve, condone, defend, vindicate.

**accustom** (à kûs' tòm), *v.t.* To make familiar; to inure. (*F. accoutumer.*)

By constant repetition we may become accustomed (à kûs' tòm, *adj.*) to almost any act, however difficult it at first appeared. Reading, writing, walking, playing the piano, cycling, and flying are examples of such actions. The whole process of learning depends upon the fact that actions be done easier each time they are repeated, and they are not really learnt until we become so accustomed to them as to do them without conscious effort.

*O.F. a-* to, *custume*, explained as contracted from *L. consuetudinem*, accusative of *consuetudo* custom. *SYN.*: Addict, familiarize, habituate, use. *ANT.*: Alienate, estrange, wean.

**ace** (às), *n.* A very small amount; an atom; a hair's breadth; the single pip or point on dice or cards; the die, card, or domino with a single spot, which in most card games counts highest but in dice always lowest. (*F. as, iota, à deux pas de.*)



Ace.—Captain Nungesser, a French ace.

In racquets, lawn-tennis, badminton, and other games one point in scoring is also called an ace. In lawn tennis, for example, a ball that is "killed" outright, or is not returned to the server's side of the net is an ace, and counts a single point in scoring. A service that is not returned is called a service ace.

In the French and German air services during the World War (1914-18) fighting pilots were called aces when they had brought down five enemy aeroplanes. Captain Nungesser, the French airman who attempted to fly the Atlantic in 1927, was an ace. The word came to be used in this sense because so much of the fighting in the air was carried on by single combat, that is, one man against one.

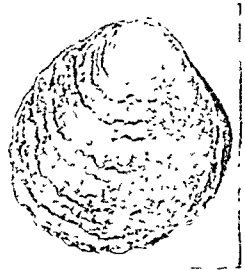
*L. as*, a unit, copper coin.

**Aceldama** (à kel' dà mà; à sel' dà mà), *n.* The name of a field near Jerusalem. (*F. Aceldama.*)

This was the field which was bought with the thirty pieces of silver that Judas Iscariot received from the chief priests for betraying Jesus. The priests turned it into a cemetery for strangers. For nearly a thousand years it was used as a cemetery for Christian pilgrims, and many of the Crusaders were buried there. The word means "field of blood," and is now applied in a general sense to any place of slaughter.

**acephalous** (à sef' à lûs), *adj.* Without a head. (*F. acéphale.*)

Certain animals that have practically no head are called acephalous or acephalan (à sef' à lán, *adj.*). Oysters, for instance, are acephalous. Another example of the acephalans (*n.pl.*) is the large greyish mussel often found in ponds and slow-flowing rivers—the swan or pond mussel. It has a mouth, which is in front of its foot, and it has flaps on each side of its mouth which might be called lips, but it has no jaws and no real head.



Acephalous. — Animals with practically no head, like the oyster, are so called.

Things that have no proper beginning, such as an imperfect manuscript or a verse starting with a short foot, can be called acephalous. In Herodotus (iv, 191) and other ancient writers there are wonderful stories of men who had no heads, whose eyes and mouths grew in their chests. These strange races were called acephali (à sef' à li, *n.pl.*). The name has also been applied at different times to various religious and political parties who have disowned their leaders.

*Gr. a-* not, without, *kephalē* head.

**acerb** (à sərb), *adj.* Sour, sharp to the taste. (*F. acerbe.*)

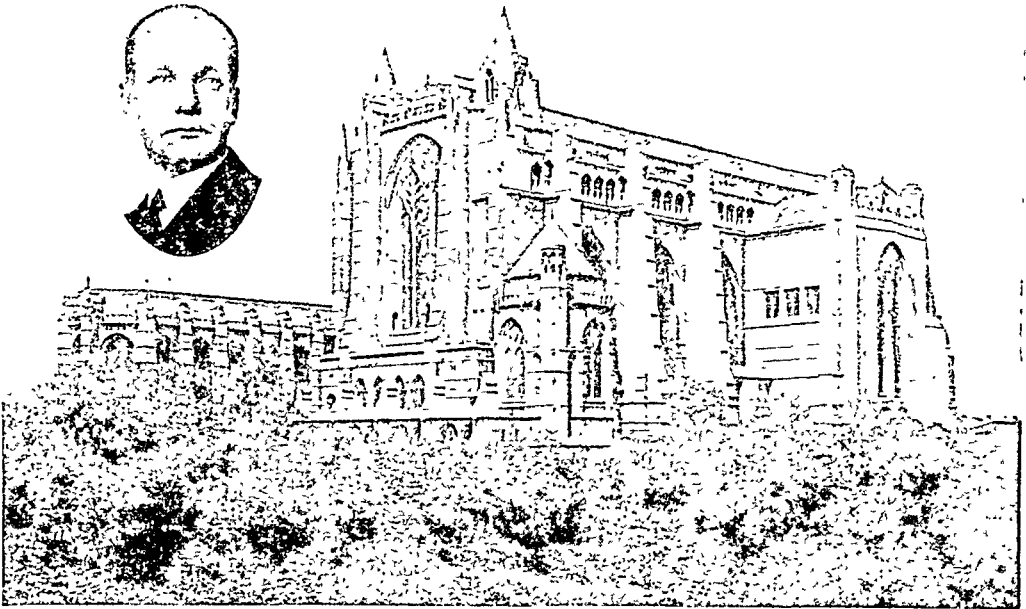
All who have tasted an unripe apple will recall the sharpness experienced by the roof of the mouth when the fruit came into contact with it. That was because the apple was acerb. The sourness or sharpness is called acerbity (à sərb i ti, *n.*). When we say harsh things about any thing or person, or show bitterness, that also is acerbity.

*L. acerbus* sour to the taste, from *acer* sharp, harsh.

**acervate** (às' ér vât), *adj.* Heaped up; growing in heaps or clusters. (*F. ramassé, agrégé.*)

Some small fungi are acervate, growing in dense clusters on the bark and leaves of trees. The long-continued heaping up or acervation (às' ér vâ' shùn, *n.*) of wind-blown sand on our shores results in sand-dunes.

*L. accervare* to heap up, from *acervus* heap.



Achievement.—The magnificent cathedral at Liverpool and Sir Giles Gilbert Scott, its architect. When completed the cathedral will be the largest in Great Britain and an outstanding architectural achievement.

borage, and the four so-called naked seeds of the dead-nettle and other lipped flowers. It is also sometimes given to other small dry fruits, such as those formed from two carpels in the dandelion and some other members of the Composite family. A double achene, such as is found in members of the parsley family, is called an *achenodium* (ă kē nō' dū m, n.). The *achenial* (ă kēn' i āl, *adj.*) plumes of the wild clematis help to disperse the seeds.

Gr. *akhanēs*, from *a-* not, *khanem* to gape, open.

**Acheron** (ăk' ē rōn), *n.* A fabled stream of the lower world; the infernal regions. (F. *Achéron*.)

In the old Greek stories Acheron offended the chief of the gods, Zeus, who turned him into a river of Hades, over which the souls of the dead were ferried. And so the name Acheron came to be used for the lower world generally. Several rivers in ancient geography were named Acheron.

Besides meaning relating to the river Acheron, the word *Acherontic* (ăk ē rōn' tik, *adj.*) is sometimes used in the sense of gloomy or hovering on the brink of the grave.

According to popular ancient etymology, Acheron was "the river of woe" (Gr. *akhos*) although it is probably from the same root as *L. aqua* water.

**Acheulian** (ă shoo' lī ān), *adj.* Belonging to a division of what is called the Lower Palaeolithic Age or Old Stone Age in Europe. (F. *Acheuléen*.)

The word is derived from a place in France called St. Acheul, near Amiens, where flint

axes of a special type were discovered with other remains that showed clearly the stage of progress reached by the men who made them. Such traces of early man are said to be Acheulian or to belong to the Acheulian Age. The Acheulian Age is placed between the Chellean and the Mousterian Ages.

**achieve** (ă chēv'), *v.t.* To accomplish; to attain. (F. *accomplir, atteindre*.)

This word is used in the sense of carrying out some enterprise or gaining some end by exerting great skill, courage, or endurance. A thing that can be so accomplished is said to be *ach'evable* (ă chēv' ābl, *adj.*), the doer is the *achiever* (ă chēv' ēr, *n.*), and the deed itself and the doing of it is an *achievement* (ă chēv' ment, *n.*).

The word *achievement* is also used in heraldry for the complete representation of a coat of arms. (F. *armoiries*.)

F. *achever*, from *à chef* (*venir*), L.L. *ad caput venire* to come to a head, accomplish. SYN.: Acquire, complete, finish, perform, realize. ANT.: Lose, mar, neglect, omit.

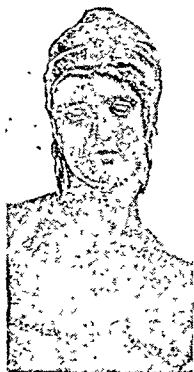
**Achilleian** (ă kī lē' ān), *adj.* Like or relating to Achilles; not able to be wounded; unconquerable. (F. *Achilléen*.)

Achilles was one of the greatest heroes of the old Greek legends, and many of his wonderful deeds are told by Homer in the "Iliad." He was king of the Myrmidons, a tribe of Thessaly, at whose head he assisted the Greeks in their war against the Trojans and slew the Trojan hero Hector, whose body he dragged three times round the walls of Troy.

Being of immortal origin herself, his mother Thetis wished to make him immortal too, so when he was a child she took him to the River Styx and, grasping him by the heel, plunged him into its mystic waters. This made every part of his body secure from

wounds except the part by which she held him, and it was there that the arrow which caused his death struck him—shot by the bow of Paris, the second son of Priam, the king of Troy

From this story comes the expression "heel of Achilles" denoting any weak spot, any spot specially open to attack, as well as the name tendon of Achilles (à kil' èz) for the tendon connecting the muscles of the calf to the bone of the heel.



Achilles.—The legendary Greek hero.

The common English flower known as yarrow or milfoil is called *Achillea* (à kil' è' à, *n.*) because Achilles healed his wounded men with it at the siege of Troy.

**achilous** (à ki' lùs), *adj.* Without a lip. (*F. sans lèvres.*)

One of the three petals of orchids is called the lip or labellum. In some species this lip is lacking, and the flower is, therefore, said to be achilous, or **acheilary** (à ki' là ri, *adj.*).

Gr. *a-* not, without, *kheilos* lip.

**achlamydeous** (äk là mid' è ùs), *adj.* Lacking both corolla and calyx. (*F. achlamyde.*)

The flowers of the willow and the birch are achlamydeous. In them, as in a number of others, there are no petals or sepals, but only pistil and stamens.

Gr. *a-* not, without, *khlamys* (gen. *-ydos*) cloak, mantle.

**achromatic** (äk rô mät' ik), *adj.* Not splitting light into colours. (*F. achromatique.*)

Take a strong cheap lens, and examine a small object with it. Usually there is a small fringe of "rainbow" colour round the edges of the object. This is due to the breaking up of the white light into the colours that compose it, and a great defect when the lens is used for a microscope, telescope, or camera. The best lenses, therefore, are made to magnify without this fringe, and are said to be achromatic. So is anything which will pass a beam of light without splitting it up. When a lens has this property it is said to act achromatically (äk rô mät' ik àl li, *adv.*). The state of being achromatic is **achromatism** (à krò' mà tizm, *n.*) or **achromaticity** (à kro ma tis' i ti, *n.*).

Gr. *akhlomatos*, from *a-* not, without, *khlroma* colour.

**acicular** (à silk' ū lâr), *adj.* Needle-shaped. (*F. aciculaire.*)

A slender needle-like body, such as the sharp spines and bristles of plants and animals, is called an *acicula* (à silk' ū là, *n.*). The leaves of the gorse and the pine are acicular, the plants themselves being *aciculate* (à silk' ū lât, *adj.*). Crystals belonging to the same mineral species frequently present a wide difference in form or habit. They may be pyramid-shaped, hair-like or capillary, or needle-shaped. Crystals of the last named form are called acicular. One of the compounds of bismuth is known as needle ore. A surface marked with fine, needle-like scratches is said to be *aciculate*.



Acicular.—The acicular leaves of the gorse.

*L. acicula* small needle, dim. of *acus*.

**acid** (äs' id), *adj.* Sour. *n.* A compound which contains always hydrogen and usually oxygen, is sour or tart to the taste, neutralizes alkalies, changes vegetable blues and purples to red, and combines with other substances to form salts. (*F. acide.*)

There are mineral and vegetable acids. Spirits of salts (hydrochloric acid) is mineral, vinegar is vegetable. A substance that is strongly sour or tart is acid; one moderately so is sub-acid; one slightly so is acidulous (à sid' ū lùs, *adj.*) or acidulated (à sid' ū lâtéd, *part. adj.*). Such a substance possesses acidity (à sid' i ti, *n.*) or acidness (äs' id nès, *n.*). When we make something strongly sharp or sour to the taste we acidify (à sid' i fi, *v.t.*) it, if slightly sharp we acidulate (à sid' ū lât, *v.t.*) it, as in an acid drop. A person embittered in temper is acidulated or has an acid temper.

Substances that can be made acid are acidifiable (à sid' i fi àbl, *part. adj.*), and the process of making them so is acidification (à sid' i fi kâ' shùn, *n.*). The art of determining the strength of acids is acidimetry (äs' i dim' èt ri, *n.*), and the chief instrument used in this is an acidimeter (äs' i dim' èt èr, *n.*).

The term "the acid test" was first used in a popular sense by Woodrow Wilson, President of the United States, in an important speech during the World War.

*L. acidus*, from *acere* to be sour, from *acer*.

**acierage** (äs' i èr àj), *n.* The process of electro-plating a metal with steel; steeling. (*F. aciérage.*)

A copper copy made from an original engraving plate is, in many cases, given a very thin coat of steely iron by this process to reduce wear in printing.

*L.L. aciarium* (ferrum) hard and sharp (iron), steel. Suffix *-age* is from *L. -aticum*.

**acieral** (äs' i ér ál), *n.* A light, tough alloy consisting chiefly of aluminium. A great many of the "tin hats" that the soldiers wore in the World War (1914-18) were made of acieral. (F. *fer aciéreux*.)

L.L. *aciarium* (ferrum) hard and sharp (iron), steel, from L. *acies* edge, sharpness.

**acinus** (äs' in üs), *n.* A drupel or fruit formed round a number of strong seeds; the stone or seed of a drupel, or of a berry; the small subdivision of a racemose gland. (F. *acine*.)

The name acinus was first given to a cluster of grapes or berries, but now means the small, fleshy drupels of such compound fruits as the blackberry and the raspberry. The acini (äs' i nī, *n.pl.*) of such glands as those which secrete the saliva are the tiny sacs clustered round the blind ends of the ducts or cells, and such glands are said to be **acinous** (äs' in üs, *adj.*), **acinose** (äs' in ös, *adj.*), or **racemose**. **Aciniform** (äs in' i förm, *adj.*) means clustered together.

L. *acinus* a berry or its stone.



**Acinus.**—The acinus of the blackberry, a fruit which is formed round a number of strong seeds.

**acknowledge** (äk nol' ej), *v.t.* To admit; to confess. (F. *reconnaître*, *avouer*.)

We acknowledge the truth of a statement, the receipt of money or goods, a gift or a service. When we raise our hats as the King passes by we acknowledge him. We also acknowledge our mistakes and confess or acknowledge our sins. The act of acknowledging is **acknowledgment** (äk nol' ej ment, *n.*).

E *a-* = on, M.E. *knowlechen*, Modern E. *knowledge*. SYN.: *Avow*, *concede*, *profess*, *recognize*. ANT.: *Deny*, *disavow*, *ignore*, *repudiate*.

**acclinic** (ä klin' ik), *adj.* Having no dip, or inclination downwards. (F. *aclinique*, *sans inclination*.)

The earth behaves as an enormous magnet, and causes magnetic needles, freely suspended, to point in a certain direction. If such a needle is so suspended as to swing on its pivot vertically, pointing upwards or downwards, in most parts of the earth it will do so, making an angle with the earth's surface. This angle is called the angle of dip, which in England is about 67° with the horizontal.

At the earth's two magnetic poles the dipping needle stands vertical, making an angle of 90° with the horizontal; but midway between these poles there are places where the needle does not dip at all, but balances horizontally. A line joining all such places is called the acclinic line or magnetic equator. It is an irregular line running round the earth near the geographic equator.

Gr. *aklinēs*, from *a-* not, *klinein* to bend, dip.

**acme** (äk' mē, *n.* The highest point. (F. *comble*, *sommet*.)

People with things to sell like to call them the acme of perfection, that is, the most perfect things of their kind. The ripest time of life is the acme of life, and the climax or turning-point of an illness may be referred to as its acme.

Gr. *akmē* top, highest point. SYN.: *Apex*, *summit*, *zenith*. ANT.: *Base*, *depth*, *nadir*.

**acne** (äk' nē), *n.* A medical name for pimples or blackheads. (F. *acné*.)

The word is possibly a corruption of Gr. *akmē* point.

**acock** (ä kok'), *adv.* Defiantly; cocked up. (F. *retroussé*.)

A hat or cap worn jauntily on the head is said to be cocked. Admiral Beatty generally wore his in this fashion.

E. *a-* = on, in, and cock, perhaps in reference to the attitude of a cock when crowing.

**acolyte** (äk' ö lit), *n.* A member of the fourth minor order in the Roman Catholic Church; an attendant; a novice. (F. *acolyte*.)

Originally the acolyte was a young man under thirty who was a bishop's personal assistant, and was trusted to carry his letters. In the Middle Ages his duties were extended to include the care of the altar lights and the sacramental wine. These duties are now usually performed by laymen. The word is also used for a menial assistant and for anyone or anything that attends upon another in a minor position.

Gr. *akolouthos* follower, L.L. *acolythus*, from Gr. *akolouthēin* to follow, attend.

**aconite** (äk' ö nit), *n.* The name of a group of poisonous plants belonging to the Buttercup or Ranunculus family. (F. *aconit*.)

The best known species is the monk's-hood. This was formerly called wolf's-bane because it was used for poisoning the bait in wolf-traps. From an even more poisonous species,

*Aconitum ferox*, is obtained the deadly *bikh* of India, used for poisoning arrows and other weapons. - The Greeks used aconite for a similar purpose.

According to the old myth, the aconite sprang from the poisonous foam which dripped from the jaws of the dog Cerberus when Hercules went down into Hades and



Acoustic.—The sounding-board and microphone at Lloyd's, where marine insurance is effected, which help to overcome acoustic defects.

dragged the three-headed monster up into the light of day.

The drug aconite prepared from the plant is given by doctors in very small doses, especially in cases where the action of the heart needs to be slowed down. Anything relating to aconite is *aconitic* (ăk ô nit' ik, *adj.*). From aconite is obtained *aconitine* (ă kon' i tin, *n.*), a very deadly poison.

Gr. *akoniton*, *L. aconitum*. There is no satisfactory etymology.

**acorn** (ă' kôrn), *n.* The fruit of the oak tree. (*F. gland.*)

The acorn, which is a nut set into a woody cup, is sometimes used in tanning. No wise child will ever be tempted to eat it. An oak tree furnished with acorns is said in heraldry to be *acorned* (ă' kôrnd, *adj.*).

A.-S. *acern*, from *aecer* field (field produce). Erroneously supposed to = oak, corn (oak-kernel).

**acorn-barnacle** (ă kôrn bar' nakl), *n.* A marine crustacean, or sea-animal, with an outer shell covering. (*F. balane.*)

Acorn-barnacles, also known as *acorn-shells* (ă' kôrn shelz, *n.pl.*), spend their lives fastened to rocks and the bottoms of boats, and sometimes even to the larger sea animals. The scientific name is *Balanus*, from the Gr. *balanos* acorn.

**acotyledon** (ă kot i lē' dôn), *n.* A plant without cotyledons. (*F. acotylédone.*)

Cotyledons are seed lobes or primary seed leaves, and plants without cotyledons are *acotyledonous* (ă kot i lē' dôn ūs, *adj.*).

Gr. *a-* not, without, *kotylédōn* cup.

**acoustic** (ă kou' stik; â koo' stik), *adj.* Relating to hearing. *n.* A remedy or appliance for deafness. (*F. acoustique.*)

Next to the eye, the ear is the most wonderful instrument of the five senses. The waves of sound reach the diaphragm, which is a kind of small drum placed near the skull at the back of the ear, and from this a nerve conveys to the brain the sensation we call sound, which informs us of the vibrations which arise in the outer world. All human beings have varying powers of hearing as well as of seeing, and, as some people are colour-blind, so there are people who can only hear certain definite sounds.

The word *acoustics* (*n.*), though plural in form, is usually treated as singular. It means not only the science of sound, but is also used for the qualities that a building has with regard to sounds being heard well or badly in it. Anything to do with acoustics is *acoustical* (ă kou' stik âl; â koo' stik âl, *adj.*) or *acoustic*, and one who is skilled in acoustics is an *acoustician* (ăk ous tish' ân, âk oos tish' ân, *n.*).

A building may possess bad or defective acoustics, and then all sorts of things are done in order to make the sounds of the orchestra or the speaker sound well in it, or to prevent echoes from being heard almost at the same time as the original sound. Hence we sometimes see many wires stretched across a building from gallery to gallery, or the sound is kept down and subdued by means of huge canvas curtains. In some churches a board is placed above the pulpit to throw forward the sound of the preacher's voice and prevent it from going aloft to be lost amid the rafters.

Gr. *akoustikos*, connected with hearing, from *akoucin* to hear.



Acoustics.—A dance band playing in the London studio of the British Broadcasting Corporation, where the acoustic arrangements are, as nearly as possible, perfect.

**acquaint** (ă kwănt'), *v.t.* To inform; to tell; to make familiar. (F. *faire savoir à*.)

A man may acquaint a neighbour with the fact that his chimney is on fire. When one person becomes known to another he makes his acquaintance (ă kwănt' âns, *n.*), the state of knowing each other being acquaintance-ship (ă kwănt' âns ship, *n.*).

O.F. *accointer*, from L.L. *accognitare*, from *ac-* = *ad* to, *cognitus* (p.p. of *cognoscere*) known. SYN.: Apprise, enlighten, inform, instruct. ANT.: Deceive, hoodwink, misinform.

**acquiesce** (ăk kwi es'), *v.i.* To submit; to agree. (F. *se résigner à, acquiescer à*.)

When a dispute is placed in the hands of an umpire and the parties concerned accept his ruling they acquiesce in his decision. They are acquiescent (ăk kwi es' ent, *adj.*), and in agreeing to accept his judgment show their acquiescence (ăk kwi es' ens, *n.*).

L. *acquiescere* to take a thing quietly, from *ac-* = *ad* to, *quiescere* to rest. SYN.: Assent, comply, concur, consent. ANT.: Demur, disagree, dissent, object.

**acquire** (ă kwir'), *v.t.* To get for one's own; to gain; to learn. (F. *acquérir*.)

A man acquires wealth by hard work or good fortune, a title in reward for good and noble deeds, a language by speaking it. A bird cannot rightly be said to acquire feathers, as they come to it naturally.

A thing or quality that may be gained is *acquirable* (ă kwir' äbl, *adj.*), and when gained it is said to have been *acquired* (ă kwir', *p.p.*), such as with some people a taste for asparagus. **Acquirement** (ă kwir' mēt, *n.*) is the act of acquiring, or some

quality of body or mind which has had to be worked for. Skill in playing the piano by a person having no natural gift for music is an acquirement. Helen Keller, an American, though deaf, dumb, and blind from infancy, taught herself to read, write, and speak. She wrote several books, spoke in public, and became known the world over for her acquirements.

**Acquisition** (ăk kwi zish' ün, *n.*) is the act of acquiring, or a thing gained. A good schoolmaster is an acquisition to a village. A jackdaw is an *acquisitive* (ă kwiz' i tiv, *adj.*) bird, because it picks up or acquires all sorts of odds and ends that attract it. The desire to become possessed of anything is *acquisitiveness* (ă kwiz' it iv nes, *n.*).

L. *acquiere*, from *ac-* = *ad* to, *quaerere* to seek. SYN.: Attain, master, obtain, win. ANT.: Forgo, forfeit, lose, surrender.

**acquit** (ă kwit'), *v.t.* To declare not guilty; to set free from; to pay. (F. *acquitter*.)

A judge acquits a prisoner brought up for trial if he is found not to have done that with which he is charged. A man who has performed a brave deed is said to have acquitted himself bravely. Release from a duty or a charge brought against one in a court of law or the payment of a debt is an *acquittal* (ă kwit' äl, *n.*).

The setting free of a person from a debt or duty or a receipt for the full payment of a debt is an *acquittance* (ă kwit' âns, *n.*).

O.F. *acquiter*, from L.L. *acquiescere*, from *ac-* = *ad*, *quietus* at rest, discharged (*quies*, gen. *quiet-is*, rest). SYN.: Absolve, discharge, pardon, release. ANT.: Charge, compel, condemn, sentence.

**acre** (ă' kër), *n.* A British and American measure of land. (F. *acre*.)

An acre contains 4,840 square yards, and 640 acres equal a square mile. An owner of much land is sometimes called "a man of many acres" or "a man of broad acres." Long Acre, where John Dryden and Oliver Cromwell once lived, is a well-known street in London. It is part of "the meadow-ground known as 'The Long Acre'" which was given by Edward VI to the Earl of Bedford. A burial-ground is referred to as God's acre.

We speak of the acreage (ă' kër ăj, *n.*) of a farm when we mean the number of acres of which its area consists. By the cultivable acreage of our country we mean the area (in acres) that may be cultivated or tilled.

A-S. *acer* field: compare Gr. *agros*, L. *ager*, G. *Acker*. The suffix *-age* (collective) has reached English through F., where it represents L.L. *-aticum*, *-agium*.

**acid** (ăk' rid), *adj.* Bitter to the taste; irritating; corrosive; stinging. (F. *acide*.)

Anything is acid which is sour and harsh, such as unripe fruit; an acid poison irritates or eats away that with which it comes in contact. Many persons are of an acid, or irritating, temper, while speakers are often acid (caustic or cutting) in their remarks. Anything which is acid possesses acridness (ăk' rid nes, *n.*) or acridity (ă krid' i ti, *n.*).

L. *acer* (early *acris*) sharp; but imitating acid. SYN.: Bitter, corrosive, harsh, irritating, sour. ANT.: Luscious, mellow, pleasant, soothing, sweet.

**acrimony** (ăk' ri mô ni), *n.* Bitterness or severity of language, manner, or temper. (F. *acrimonie*.)

A worker who has been waiting for promotion and is disappointed, may refer with acrimony to the reasons why a fellow-worker was given the position which he himself so earnestly desired. In acrimonious (ăk ri mô' ni ūs, *adj.*) language he tells us all about it, and his conceit may be acrimoniously (ăk ri mô' ni ūs li, *adv.*), or bitterly, attacked by one of us who does not agree with him.

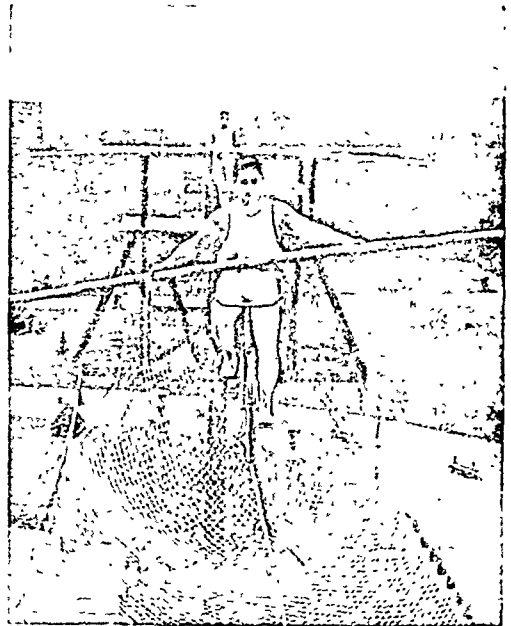
L. *acrimonia*, from *acer* (early *acris*) sharp, and suffix *-monia* (state or condition). SYN.: Animosity, hostility, sharpness, sourness. ANT.: Amiability, courtesy, mildness, pleasantness.

**acrobat** (ăk' rô băt), *n.* One who performs daring feats such as rope-dancing, high vaulting, tumbling, throwing somersaults. (F. *acrobate*.)

Most variety theatre programmes to-day include a performance by an acrobat or acrobats. Among the ancient Greeks and Romans the performances of acrobats were very popular. An acrobatic (ăk rô băt' ik, *adj.*) feat, or a performance by an acrobat, may be so daring as to attract world-wide attention. Such was that of Charles Blondin, a famous French acrobat, who crossed Niagara Falls on a tight-rope in 1859.

To do anything after the manner of an acrobat is to do it acrobatically (ăk' rô băt' ik ăl li, *adv.*). The performance or profession of an acrobat is known as acrobatism (ăk' rô băt izm, *n.*).

Gr. *akrobatos*, walking on tiptoe, from *akros* (*adj.*) at or to the top, *-batos* going, from *bainein* to go.



Acrobat.—A performer crossing a tight rope on a bicycle. The pole is used for balancing purposes.

**acrogen** (ăk' rô jen), *n.* One of a group of plants in which growth occurs at the tips or ends only. (F. *acrogène*.)

The acrogen bears no flowers, and instead of true seeds it produces tiny bodies called spores which are often invisible. Ferns and mosses are acrogenous (ă kroj' en ūs, *adj.*) plants.

Gr. *akros* (*adj.*) on the top, *gen-* (*esthai*) to be born.

**acrolith** (ăk' rô lith), *n.* An early Greek statue having a wooden body, with head, arms, and feet of marble. (F. *acrolithe*.)

The first statues were of carved wood and other easily worked materials. The flesh parts were painted white, and the clothing was usually gilded. Then, to give a more natural effect, marble was used for the head and limbs, and sometimes real cloth was draped round the wooden trunk.

Later, when the famous chryselephantine, or ivory and gold statues were made by Phidias (died 432 B.C.) some sculptors found it much cheaper, and nearly as effective, to use stone jointed to wood, in the old way, especially for very large statues. Unfortunately, wood perishes in the course of time, and only fragments of acrolithic (ăk rô lith' ik, *adj.*) statues have survived.

Gr. *akros* at the extremities, *lithos* stone.

**acropolis** (ă 'krop' ō lis), *n.* The high part, or citadel, of a Greek town, especially that of Athens. (F. *acropole*.)

In olden times, a hill that stood apart on a plain was often chosen as the site of a town, and there are many such hills in Greece. First, it would be simply a fort, in which people who farmed on the plains around could take refuge when attacked. When the people increased in number and houses were built round the foot of the hill, the ruler had his palace at the top, surrounded by strong walls.

Greek history begins, for us, at the third stage, when these towns are well established, and the people have covered their hill-tops with temples and statues, because they felt it was the fittest place from which to worship their gods; but they still thought and spoke of it as the acropolis, or "high town," and they were careful, too, to keep it fortified, in case of war. At Athens is the most famous of these acropoles (ă 'krop' ō lēz, *n.pl.*), containing, among other celebrated buildings, the Parthenon, or temple of the goddess Athene, the finest example of Greek architecture.

Although ravaged by time and invasion, stripped of its treasures by the Romans, and bombarded by Venetian artillery in 1687, during which a powder magazine exploded inside the Parthenon, the Acropolis of Athens remains a wonder and delight to travellers.

The word is also used in a figurative sense.

One writer speaks of the "Acropolis of man's body, the head."

Gr. *akros* on the top or height, *polis* city.

**across** (ă 'kros'), *adv.* and *prep.* Crosswise; from one side to the other; opposite to. (F. *en croix*.)

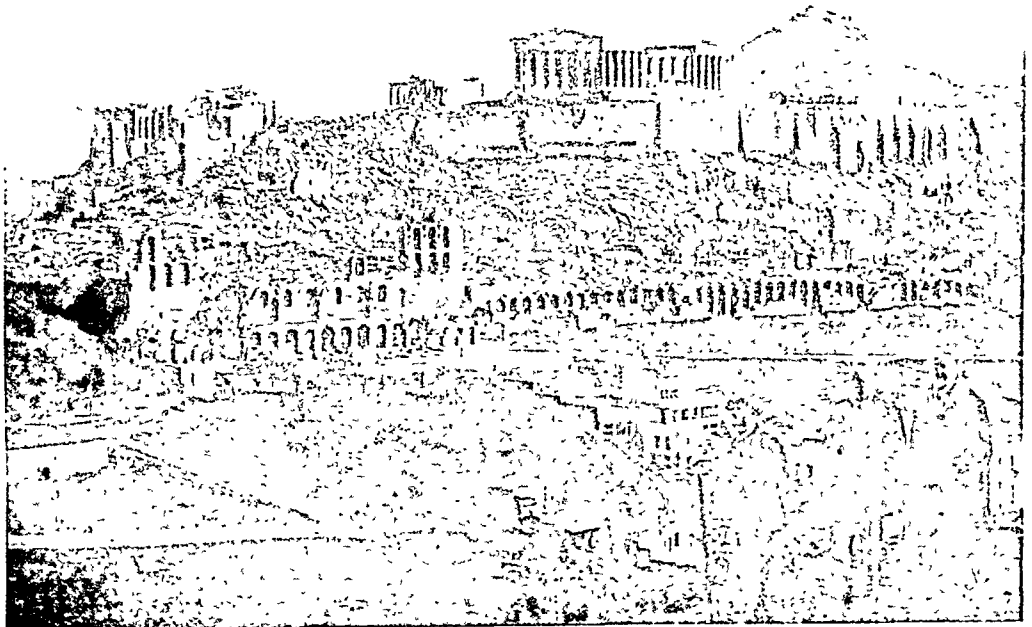
We use this word when describing anything which "makes a cross" with another object. Thus, when we go across the road, we move in a direction which "makes a cross" with the line of the road. After meeting anyone accidentally, we say we came across him. In travelling from England to France we go across the English Channel.

E. *a-* = on, and *cross*.

**acrostic** (ă 'kros' tik), *n.* A literary composition in which the first, last, or some central agreed letters, when read successively in the order of the lines, make a word or sentence. (F. *acrostiche*.)

Some of the Psalms in the Bible are a sort of acrostic, and in A.D. 326 a poet called Publilius Porphyrius wrote an acrostical (ă 'kros' tik əl, *adj.*) poem in praise of the Emperor Constantine the Great.

Acrostics were also fashionable in French literature from the time of Francis I to Louis XIV, and in the Elizabethan period in England they became so much the fashion that people began to despise them, and very soon afterwards they were excluded from serious literature. Nowadays the solving of puzzles acrostically (ă 'kros' tik əl li, *adv.*) arranged is a favourite pastime.



Acropolis.—The ruins of the famous acropolis at Athens. The large building almost in the centre of the citadel is the Parthenon, the finest example of Greek architecture.



Here is an example of a double acrostic :

BORN FOES.

1. A Spanish warrior brave and bold.
2. An Italian river calm and cold.
3. A Saxon chief in days of old.

The answer is :

1. C i D.
2. A r n O.
3. T o s t i G.

Gr. *akros* at the extremities, *stichos* line, row.

**acroterium** (ăk ro tēr' i ūm), *n.* A pedestal on a pediment. **Akroterion** (ăk ro tēr' i ōn) is another spelling. (F. *acrotère*.)

The triangular or circular ornament crowning the front of a building, often over the portico, is called a pediment, and the pedestal at the top on which a figure of some sort stands is an acroterium or akroterion. When there are several slender turrets or spires there were once called acroteria (ăk ro tēr' i ā, *n.pl.*). Anything having this slender spire-like shape is described as acroterial (ăk ro tēr' i āl, *adj.*).

Gr. *akroterion*, L. *acroteria* (*n.pl.*), the top end.

**act** (akt), *v.i.* To exert force ; to do anything ; to behave. *v.t.* To perform *n.* A thing done. (F. *agir* ; *jouer* ; *acte*.)

When we behave ourselves in a certain manner, we are said to act in that manner. When we pretend to have certain feelings or ideas or emotions, we act as though we felt in that way. When we take a certain part in a play, we act in that play.



Acting.—Children acting in a performance of "Alice in Wonderland."

Anything we do is an act of ours. A law made by Parliament is called an Act of Parliament. That part of a play divided into scenes or performed straight on without a fall of the curtain is called an act.

The profession of an actor or actress is acting (akt'ing *n.*). A corporal in the army who is carrying out the duties of a sergeant is acting (*part. adj.*) as sergeant. Anything which happens through the forces of nature and which cannot be prevented by any human means is called an Act of God. A pardon granted by a ruling sovereign is termed an Act of Grace.

When we take advice that is given us we are said to act upon that advice. When we

behave in accordance with some standard of right we are said to act up to that standard.

L. *agere* (p.p. *actus*) to act, do. SYN. : *n.* Deed ; exploit, performance. *v.* Mimic, perform, personate. ANT. : *n.* Cessation, inaction, rest. *v.* Cease, endure, neglect, suffer.

**actinic** (ăk tin' ik), *adj.* To do with certain rays of the sun, at and beyond the violet end of the spectrum, which act chemically. (F. *actinique*.)

The study of these rays and their effects is called actino-chemistry. The instrument which records the variations of chemical influence in the rays of the sun is called an actinograph (ăk tin' ô grăf, *n.*), and the instrument for finding the power of the sun's rays is called an actinometer (ăk ti nom' ô tēr, *n.*). The chemical force of the sun's rays, as distinct from light and heat, is called actinism (ăk' tin izm, *n.*).

Gr. *aktis* (gen. *aktinos*) ray.

**actinozoa** (ăk tin ô zō' a), *n.pl.* The group of animals which includes the sea-anemones and corals.

These animals consist of a central cylinder with mouth at the top around which are a number of hollow tentacles used for grasping food and dragging it into their mouths. Anemones are simple, that is, each forms a single animal, and they have no skeleton ; the corals are compound, many polypes uniting and sharing a common skeleton. Of these skeletons coral islands are built.

Gr. *aktis* (gen. *aktinos*) ray, *zoa* animals.

**action** (ăk' shŭn), *n.* The state or condition of acting or doing ; anything done or performed. (F. *action*.)

We say that a soldier goes into action when he takes part in the fighting. The movement of events in a play or a novel is called the action. The trained motion of a horse or dog is called its action. Any intentional bodily movement, as of a racer, is action.

Every sport in which we indulge has its peculiar action, and we classify our games as strenuous and non-strenuous according to the amount of energy necessary to perform these actions. Thus Rugby football and cricket we class as strenuous sports, for they involve great energetic action, while bowls and croquet are not so strenuous as less energetic action is called for. The effect of one physical body on another is called its action upon it. The action of a piano or other piece of mechanism is its movement or its working parts.

A law-suit is called a legal action, and Shakespeare, in his play "King Lear" (II, ii), uses the compound word action-taking (*adj.*) to describe a person who resents an injury by immediately starting a law-suit instead of fighting the matter out like a man of honour (Oswald, steward to one of King Lear's daughters, speaks of the Earl of Kent as "a rascal . . . a lily-livered, action-taking knave").



Action.—(1) Expressed in the flight of the gull, (2) in the arrow-like launch of the diver, (3 and 4) in the tense summoning of every ounce of spring in horse and man, (5 and 6) in tennis and football, and (7) in the united effort of rowers.

Any act which supplies cause or ground for a legal action is called **actionable** (āk' shùn äbl, *adj.*) and anyone acting in a manner to cause this state of things is said to behave **actionably** (āk' shùn äb li, *adv.*).

*L. actio* (acc. *action-em*) from *agere* to act, do. *SYN.*: Agency, exercise, gesture, movement, proceedings. *ANT.*: Harmony, languor, peace, rest, truce.

**active** (āk' tiv), *adj.* Energetic; quick in movement; causing action. (*F. actif.*)

A person who moves quickly and is nimble and agile is called active, and one whose mind can quickly grasp the details of any subject is called active-minded.

In grammar, when the subject of a verb is the person or thing that does what the verb expresses, as "The sun shines," "Do you suffer?", "He never spoke a word," then the verb is said to be active, or in the active voice; but it is in the passive voice when the subject is that to which something is done, as "Mice are eaten by cats," "He was forgotten."

Anyone who takes a practical share in a matter is said to behave **actively** (āk' tiv li, *adv.*), and where there are two partners in a business and one transacts the business while the other only supplies some of the necessary money, the former is called the active partner and the other the passive (or sleeping) partner. The process of exerting energy is called **activity** (āk' tiv' i ti, *n.*).

*L. actvus* inclined towards acting, from *agere* (p.p. *act-us*) to act, do. *SYN.*: Agile, energetic, industrious, nimble, quick. *ANT.*: Dull, indolent, lazy, passive, slow, stupid.

**actor** (āk' tōr), *n.* One who performs or plays a part. (*F. acteur.*) The feminine is **actress** (āk' trēs, *n.*)

In ancient Greece the actors wore large masks, which of course prevented them from making any attempt at facial expression. When the drama made its way to Rome the masks were given up, and the players painted their faces and wore wigs. In England acting was first associated with the work of the Church, and it is on record that early in the twelfth century the scholars of a monastery school acted a play at Dunstable, in Bedfordshire.

Actors, or mummers as they were then called, travelled from place to place

performing plays in which scriptural events, the legends of the saints, and moral truths were introduced. Historical scenes were not presented until 1548, and the sixteenth century also witnessed the beginning of English comedy. In Shakespeare's time actors performed in the afternoon, no scenery was used, and as the circular buildings were only partly roofed there were occasions when both actors and audience were exceedingly uncomfortable.



Actress.—One of the early appearances of an actress on the English stage was in Shakespeare's "Othello," produced in December 1660. Previously women's parts had been taken by boys or men.

No artificial light of any kind was used, and many of the audience had to stand.

Until 1656, all acting, even of female characters, was done by men and boys. In that year Mrs. Colman took part in the play "The Siege of Rhodes," and she was the first English public actress.

*L. actor* doer, from *agere* (p.p. *act-us*), -or expressing the agent.

**actual** (āk' tū äl), *adj.* Existing in reality; present. (*F. effectif, actuel.*)

When a person puts all his energies into something he wishes to achieve, and after many years accomplishes his desire, we say of him: "At last he has made the dream of years an actuality (āk' tū äl' i ti, *n.*). That person has been able to actualize (āk' tū äl' ize, *v.t.*) or make real that which hitherto had only been imaginary. He has brought about the actualization (āk' tū äl' i za' shūn, *n.*) of his dreams and made them actually (āk' tū äl li, *adv.*) true and concrete.

*L.L. actualis* belonging to reality, from *agere* (p.p. *act-us*) to act, do. *SYN.*: Certain, demonstrable, perceptible, real, true. *ANT.*: Conjectural, fictitious, possible, virtual.

**actuary** (ăk' tū ā ri), *n.* A person specially skilled in the knowledge of matters connected with insurance work. (*F. greffier.*)

In a very general sense, an actuary is a clerk, but especially an actuary is one who has passed the necessary examinations of the Institute of Actuaries, that is, he has proved by examination that he understands the special statistical and other work connected with the business of insurance. His work is called *actuarial* (ăk tū ār' i āl, *adj.*) work.

*L. actuarius* clerk, from *agere* (p.p. *act-us*) to act, do, suffix *-ary* engaged in (book-kee, ing).

**actuate** (ăk' tū āt), *v.t.* To move to action; to influence. (*F. mettre en action, animer.*)

When a person performs an action, there is always some driving force or motive which has caused that action, and we say that he or she was actuated by this particular driving power. One may be actuated by fear, by kindness, or by any other emotion. The state which directly results is *actuation* (ăk tū ā' shūn, *n.*).

*L.L. actuare* (p.p. *actuatus*) to put into action. *SYN.*: Dispose, drive, induce, move, urge. *ANT.*: Deter, dissuade, hinder, prevent, restrain.

**acuity** (ă kū' i ti), *n.* Sharpness or acuteness. We may speak of the acuity of a needle point, of wit, or of pain. (*F. acuité.*)

*L.L. acutis*, *L. acuere* to make sharp, from *acus* needle, suffix *-ty* expressing condition.

**aculeus** (ă kū' lē ūs), *n.* In natural history this word means the sting of an insect or the prickle of a plant. (*F. aiguillon.*)

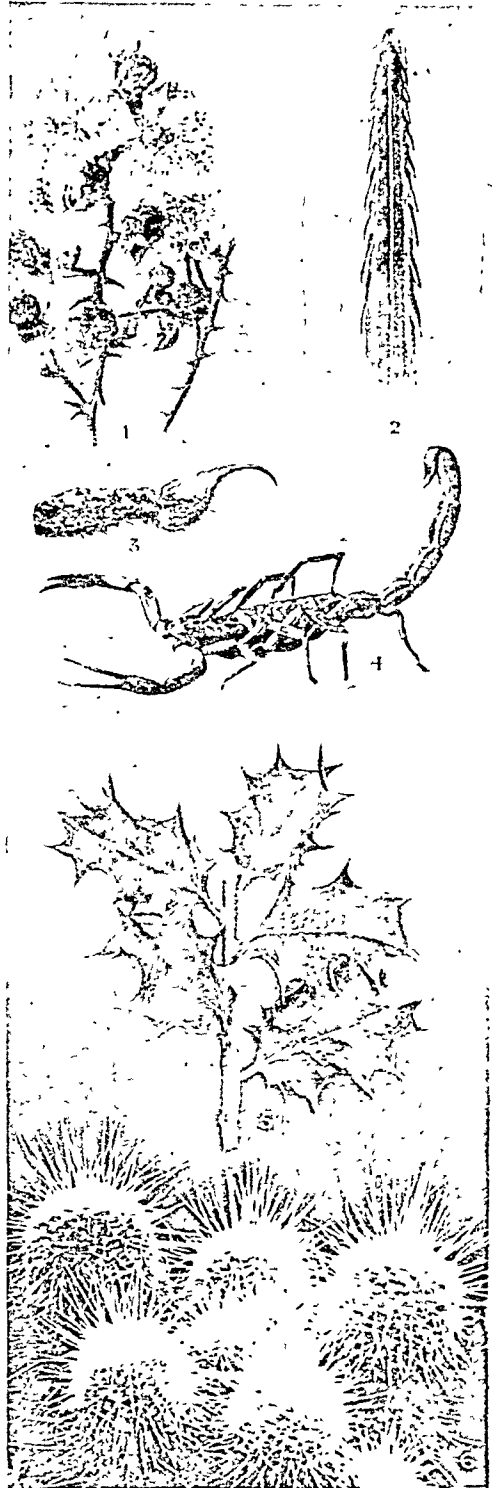
Certain creatures, such as wasps and scorpions, are provided by nature with the power to sting as a means of defence, and certain plants, including roses and thistles, with prickles for the same reason. Creatures or plants so provided are *aculeate* (ă kū' le āt, *adj.*) or *aculeated* (ă kū' lē āt ēd, *adj.*).

*L. aculeus* sting, dim. of *acus* needle.

**acumen** (ă kū' mēn), *n.* Shrewdness of mind. (*F. pénétration, finesse.*)

Anyone with sharp wits is said to be possessed of acumen. In natural history, that part of some creatures and plants which tapers to a point is described as *acuminate* (ă kū' min āt, *adj.*). The act of making anything sharp is called *acumination* (ă kū min ā' shūn, *n.*). In botany any detail of plant life which gradually tapers to a flat, narrow end, but is not quite sharp enough to be named acuminate, is termed *acuminose* (ă kū' min ōz, *adj.*).

*L. acumen*, from *acuere* to sharpen, *-men* expressing state or condition. *SYN.*: Discernment, penetration, sagacity, sharpness. *ANT.*: Bluntness, dulness, obtuseness, stupidity.



**Aculeus.**—The prickles of (1) blackberry, (5) holly, (6) cactus. (2) Sting of bee. (4) A scorpion and (3) its sting.

**acute** (à küt), *adj.* Sharp; penetrating. (F. *aigu*.)

In illness we talk of having acute pain, meaning very sharp and piercing pain. An acute illness is one which comes swiftly to a crisis, one which does not linger.

Pain, pleasure, or any other sensation felt very keenly is felt **acutely** (à küt li, *adv.*). The state of being acute is **acuteness** (à küt' nēs, *n.*). People who grasp things very quickly and who respond to impressions very

always a short saying, and always a wise saying, and it always deals with matters that anybody might come across. It is its homely wisdom that has made it easily understood down the ages. Macbeth, longing to be king but shrinking from murdering Duncan, is taunted by his wife for

Letting "I dare not" wait upon "I would,"  
Like the poor cat i' th' adage.

The adage here meant is: "The cat loves fish, but dares not wet her feet."

L. *adagium*, from *ad* to, *agio* (formerly *agio*), say. SYN.: Maxim, proverb, saying.

**adagio** (à da' ji ò), *adv.* In a leisurely manner. *adj.* Slow. *n.* A slow graceful movement. (F. *adagio*.)

In music it means that the playing should be slow and deliberate, with much taste and expression. In classical music, such as sonatas and symphonies, a slow movement called "the adagio" is generally written first, and is usually followed by a quick and lively movement, as a contrast.

Ital. *ad* to, at, *agio* ease, leisure. F. *aise*.

**Adam** (äd' àm), *n.* The name of the first man. (F. *Adam*.)

According to the Bible, Adam was the first man created. In scientific language the Adam's apple (*n.*) is the protuberance in front of the neck formed by the thyroid cartilage of the larynx. It shows more plainly in men than in women. The name arose from a popular belief that this lump was caused by a piece of apple (the forbidden fruit) which Adam ate in the Garden of Eden sticking in his throat.

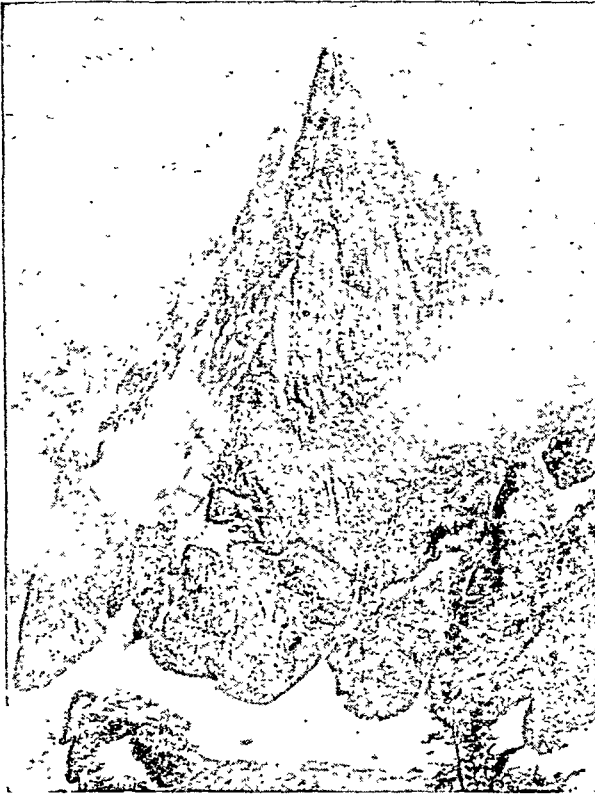
The traditional "apple" in the story of the Fall was probably not the same fruit as that which we now know as the apple, and so the name Adam's apple has been

given to various fruits, including the lime, the orange, and the grapefruit or shaddock.

Adam is a Hebrew word, meaning either (1) man, or (2) (formed from) the earth.

**adamant** (äd' à mânt), *n.* A very hard stone. *adj.* Very hard; unassailable; immovable. (F. *diamant*, *aimant*; *adamantin*.)

In ancient times this word was used for various very hard stones or metals, and so for anything very hard. When the diamond, the hardest mineral, became known in the West it was applied to that. In the Middle Ages it was used for the loadstone or magnet, an ore of iron which has the power of attracting other bodies. The word is used in this sense by Shakespeare in "A Midsummer Night's Dream" (ii, 1), where Helena, who is in love with Demetrius, says to him: "You draw me, you hard-hearted adamant."



Acute.—The acute peak of the Aiguille du Dru, in Switzerland, which reaches a height of 12,320 feet.

readily are acute. The word is often shortened to cute when applied to persons who are very quick-witted and shrewd, especially in business.

There is an accent ( ' ) applied to vowels, especially in French, which sometimes shows that the vowel so marked must be uttered sharply. This is called an acute accent. In geometry, an angle which is sharper (that is, smaller) than a right angle is called an acute angle.

L. *acutus*, p p. of *acuere* to sharpen. SYN.: Keen, poignant, pointed, sagacious, shrewd. ANT.: Blunt, dull, obtuse, stolid.

**adage** (äd' àj), *n.* A wise old saying. (F. *adage*.)

There is very little difference in meaning, if any, between a proverb and an adage. An adage is always an old saying,

Nowadays the word is used chiefly in poetry or poetical language for a person or thing that has the qualities of a very hard and unbreakable stone or metal. When a person, for instance, has a very strong will, so strong that he is hard and sometimes cruel, we say he has an adamantine (*äd ä män' tin, adj.*) will.

Gr. *adamas*, L. *adamas* (gen. *adamant-is*), from Gr. *a-* not, *damaein* to tame.

**adapt** (*ä däpt'*), *v.t.* To make suitable. (*F. adapter.*)

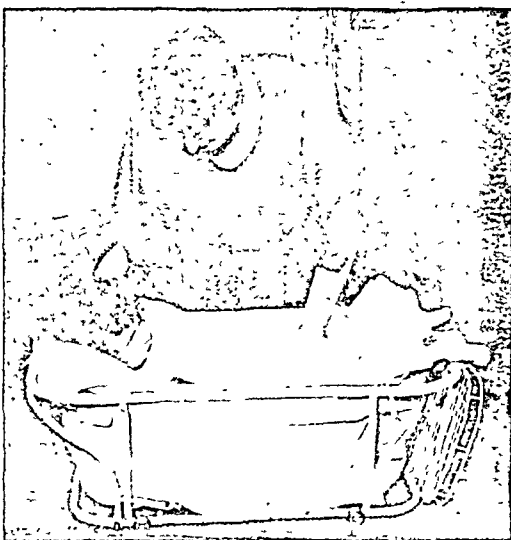
Everything that has life has to adapt itself to its surroundings, no matter how these may change, and this process is called adaptation (*äd äp tä'shùn, n.*). A person who can suit himself to his company and surroundings is adaptable (*ä däpt' äbl, adj.*), and this gift of adaptability (*ä däpt ä bil' iti, n.*) is a most useful one. A person who changes a

All religions have their own calendar, and in most cases the year is divided in two ways—one, according to the revolution of the earth in its orbit, and the other according to the various festivals connected with the particular religion. The latter is called the ecclesiastical year.

Adar is the twelfth month of the Jewish ecclesiastical year and the sixth month of the civil year. It corresponds to our February and March.

**add** (*äd*), *v.t.* To sum up; to join; to state further. (*F. additioner, ajouter.*)

Things must be of a like nature to be added, and such things are described as being addible (*äd' ibl, adj.*). The item that is added may be said to have addibility (*äd i bil' i ti, n.*), and is sometimes called an additament (*äd' dit ä ment, n.*). The act of adding is called addition (*ä dish' ün, n.*).



Adaptable.—A baby's bath which can be made into a cosy cot when bed-time comes. To adapt it is the work of a few seconds.

thing in such a way as to fit it for a new purpose, for example, who alters a story from the form of a novel to that of a play, is an adapter (*ä däpt' ér, n.*), and the play that he founds on the story is an adaptation. In scientific apparatus certain connecting parts and certain fittings that increase the usefulness of the instruments are called adapters.

Anything which has the power of or a tendency to adaptation is called adaptive (*ä däpt' iv, adj.*) and behaves adaptively (*ä däpt' iv li, adv.*), and anything that has special suitability for something possesses adaptedness (*ä däpt' ed nés, n.*).

L. *adaptare*, from *ad* to, *aptare* to fit (part. *aptus* fit). SYN.: Accommodate, adjust, fit, harmonize, reconcile. ANT.: Confuse, disarrange, misapply.

**Adar** (*ä' dār*), *n.* One of the months of the Jewish year.

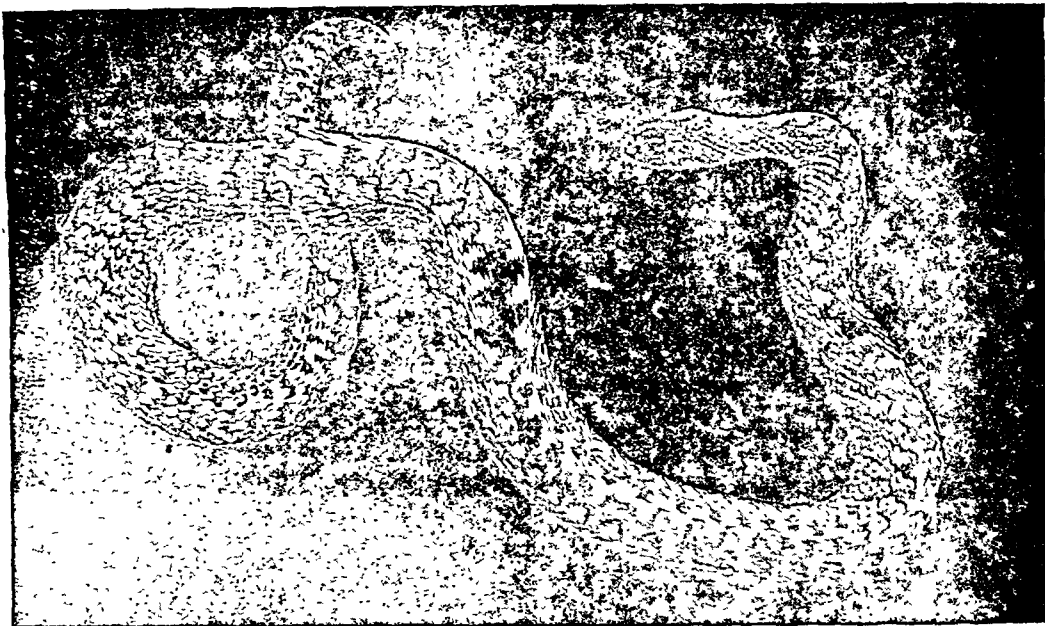
and often this word is applied to the thing added.

We also use the phrase "in addition to," meaning as well as, or over and above. We talk about an additional (*ä dish' ün äli, adj.*) item when we mean something supplementary or in addition to all the rest, and such an item is provided additionally (*ä dish' ün äli li, adv.*).

L. *ad* to, *-dere*=dare to put. SYN.: Affix, annex, join, unite. ANT.: Deduct, diminish, remove, subtract.

**addax** (*äd' äks*), *n.* A kind of antelope. This animal is found in northern Africa. It is a fleet-footed creature with long ringed and twisted horns and a tuft of hair on its forehead, and in winter it grows a mane. In colour it is like the sand of its desert home.

Its scientific name is *Addax nasomaculatus* (spotted-nosed), from a white spot on the face.



Adder.—The only poisonous British snake. It feeds chiefly upon mice, sometimes grows to a length of over two feet, and has a black zigzag line down its back.

**addendum** (ă den' dŭm), *n.* A thing added or to be added. (F. *addenda*.)

When we use this word, we mean that what is added or has to be added is not absolutely an essential part of the main thing. It adds something to it, of course, but even without it the thing itself would be complete. For example, something explanatory at the end of a volume may be an addendum, *pl.* *addenda* (ă den' dă), for, though it adds to the mass of information contained in the volume itself, that volume is really complete without it.

*L. addendum*, neuter gerundive of *addere* to add.

**adder** (ăd' ěr), *n.* The common viper; a name given to various other snakes. (F. *vipère*.)

The adder is the only poisonous British snake. It is found in many parts of Europe and Asia. Its head is flat and triangular, and it has a dark zig-zag stripe running down its back. It is usually found in dry places, such as sandy heaths. The scientific name is *Vipera berus*. A puff adder is a thick-bodied and very poisonous African snake which puffs out its body when angry, and a death adder is a small and very poisonous Australian snake.

*A.-S. nædre* serpent, *G. natter*. A *nadder* was afterwards changed into an *adder* (cp. *an ewt* = a newt, *an apron* = a napron.)

**adder's-tongue** (ăd' ěr z tŭng), *n.* A small fern.

This is a popular name for *Ophioglossum vulgatum*, a fern whose spores grow in a spike shaped something like a snake's mouth and tongue.

**addict** (ă dikt'), *v.t.* To give (oneself) up (to). (F. *s'adonner à*.)

We generally use this word in a bad sense, meaning to give oneself up to a vice of some sort. For example, we say that a person is addicted to drink, that he has become a slave to the habit.

The state of being addicted to anything, is called either addictedness (ă dik' tĕd nĕs, *n.*) or addiction (ă dik' shŭn, *n.*). Shakespeare uses the latter word, not in connexion with any bad habit, but merely meaning "inclination." In the play "*Othello*" (ii, 2), a herald announces:

"It is Othello's pleasure that . . . every man put himself into triumph; some to dance, some to make bonfires, each man to what sport and revels his addiction leads him."

*L. addictus*, *p.p.* from *addicere*, from *ad* to, *dicere* to say.

**addition** (ă dish' ũn), *n.* The act or result of adding. See *add*.

**addle** (ăd' l), *adj.* Spoiled; worthless. *v.t.* To make worthless. *v.i.* To become worthless. (F. *couvi*, *pourri*; *pourrir*; *se pourrir*.)

This word is chiefly used of an egg that has become unfit to eat and of brains that have become confused. As a term of derision, we sometimes join the word *addle* to other words, as in *addle-headed* (*adj.*), *addle-brained* (*adj.*), *addle-pated* (*adj.*), meaning empty-headed, or having brains that are of no use.

The word *addled* has crept into English history in connexion with the second parliament of James I, which was known as the

Addled Parliament because it met and was dissolved without having passed a single Bill. This happened in the year 1614, and its members declined to grant any supplies to the King until he redressed certain grievances. He refused to do this, and as neither side would give way, that particular session was addled or empty of all results.

A.-S. *adela* mud, filth.

**address** (à dres'), *v.t.* To direct; to speak to; to apply (oneself to). *n.* A speech; the direction of a letter; skill. (F. *adresser*, *s'adresser à*; *discours*, *adresse*.)

When we put the necessary particulars on a letter or other document, which shall ensure that it shall reach the right person, we are said to address the document. We address a person when we speak to him. When a suitor pays his addresses to a lady, he courts her, or makes love to her. A man who has an easy manner in conversation is a man of good address. A brave man who



Address.—A speaker addressing a crowd. Hyde Park, London, is often used for such a purpose.

has a difficult task to perform addresses himself to it with high hopes. Some men get out of difficult positions with great address.

A public speech is called an address. The Address is the reply which the House of Lords or Commons makes to the sovereign's speech when a new Parliament or session of Parliament opens. The place where we live is called our address. The person who writes the address on a communication to be sent to another is called the addresser (à dres' er, *n.*), and the person receiving the communication is the addressee (äd dres sē', *n.*).

Addressing the ball is a sport term meaning preparing to strike a ball. When a golfer is about to play a tee shot or any other stroke he always takes up a position close to the ball and makes careful preparation to hit it. This action is called addressing the ball. The term is also used in lawn-tennis.

F. *adresser*, from *a* to, O.F. *dresser* to make straight, ultimately from L.L. *direct(are)*, L. *dirigere* (p.p. *directus*). SYN.: *v.* Accost, approach, greet. *n.* Ability, manners, superscription. ANT.: *v.* Avoid, ignore, pass. *n.* Clumsiness, rudeness, unmannerliness.

**addressograph** (à dres' ó gräf), *n.* A machine for printing the same names and addresses or other matter over and over again.

The names and addresses to be printed are on small plates, which are pressed one after the other against an inked ribbon, on the other side of which is the paper. After having done its work, the plate is pushed aside into a filing drawer, where all the plates are filed in their original order, ready for use again. As each plate comes into its printing position, a fresh envelope, or other thing to be stamped, comes under the ribbon.

A person writing with a pen can do from 75 to 150 addresses in an hour. In the same time an addressograph will print from 5,400 to 7,500. It is therefore very useful to firms which make a business of addressing circulars and envelopes, and to other people who have to send out a large number of letters, etc., at intervals to the same persons.

E. *address*, and *graph*, from Gr. *graphein* to write.

**adduce** (à dūs'), *v.t.* To bring forward for consideration. (F. *alléguer*, *avancer*.)

In nearly every question arguments may be adduced on both sides. Anything which may be brought forward in this way is called adducible (à dūs' ibl, *adj.*) and the act of bringing it forward is adduct on (à dük' shùn, *n.*).

This word is also used for the property some muscles have of drawing one part of the body

towards another or towards a middle line. Such muscles are called adductant (à dūs' ent, *adj.*) muscles, or adducers (à dūs' erz, *n pl.*) or adductors (à dük' tōrz, *n pl.*), and the powers they possess are adductive (à dük' tiv, *adj.*).

L. *adducere*, from *ad* to, *ducere* to lead, bring. SYN.: Advance, allege, cite, produce. ANT.: Avoid, ignore, overlook, shun.

**adelphous** (à del' fūs), *adj.* Having the stamens grouped together. (F. *adelphé*.)

The stamens of some flowers are joined together in bundles or in what we might, in accordance with the derivation of the word, call brotherhoods. These are adelphous flowers. It is usual, though, when speaking of adelphous flowers to state how many of these brotherhoods there are. Thus we do not say simply that flowers are adelphous, but that they are monadelphous if the stamens are grouped in a single brotherhood,



## ADENOID

diadelphous if they are in two brotherhoods, and so on.  
Gr. *adelphos* brother.

**adenoid** (ăd' ēn' oīd), *adj.* Formed like a gland. (F. *adénoïde*.)

When we use the word adenoids we mean a soft, spongy tissue which grows between the back of the nose and the throat and interferes with the breathing and sometimes the hearing, and with the development of the chest.

A child suffering from adenoids breathes with open mouth, snores, and has swollen tonsils and frequent colds in the head. He often acquires a peculiar expression, sometimes mistaken for a sign of natural stupidity.

Unless the growth of the tissue is stopped, as it sometimes can be, by plain wholesome diet and an open-air life, it is best to have it removed by surgical means. Otherwise it may affect the whole future of a child by making him listless and dull.

Gr. *adēnoeidēs* like a gland, from *adēn* gland, *eidos*, form, resemblance.

**adept** (ăd' ēpt, *n.*; ā dept', *adj.*), (F. *adapte*). *adj.* Completely skilled. An expert.

In its early stages chemistry was called alchemy, and those who studied it were known as alchemists. The chief aims of the alchemists were to change all other metals into gold and to discover the elixir of life, by means of which they hoped to lengthen human existence. Anyone who was supposed to have attained these great secrets was known as an adept. The word is now used to describe a person who is fully skilled in any art, craft, or profession, not only in chemistry.

L. *adepius*, one who has attained great skill, p.p. of *adipisci*, from *ad* to, *apisci* to attain. *Syn.*: *n.* Artist, master, veteran. *adj.* Accomplished, adroit, skilful. *Ant.*: *n.* Beginner, learner, tyro. *adj.* Inexpert, unskilled, untrained.

**adequate** (ăd' ē kwăt), *adj.* Suitable; sufficient. (F. *suffisant*.)

We talk of a man having adequate means when we want to say that he has sufficient to supply his wants. If we go out in a shower of rain dressed in waterproof garments we are adequately (ăd' ē kwăt li, *adv.*) equipped for the weather and are in a state of adequateness (ăd' ē kwăt nes, *n.*) or adequacy (ăd' ē kwăt si, *n.*).

L. *adacquatus*, p.p. of *adacquare*, from *ad* to, *acquare* to make equal. *Syn.*: Commensurate, competent, equal, qualified. *Ant.*: Inadequate, unfit, unsuitable.

## ADANTUM

**adhere** (ăd hēr'), *v.i.* To stick (to); to remain firmly attached. (F. *adhérer* ā.)

In an argument a person, having expressed an opinion and finding that someone else differs from him, is said to adhere to his statement when he "sticks to" what he has already said, in spite of all efforts to make him alter his opinion. Glue or gum is an adhesive (ăd hē' siv, *adj.*) substance or an adhesive (n.) because it has the power of making things stick together, or bringing about a state of adhesiveness (ăd hē' siv nes, *n.*)

Anyone who is a follower or believer in a certain principle, person, or party, is said to be an adherent (ăd hēr' ēnt, *n.*) of that principle, person, or party. The act of standing by, or being firmly attached to, a person is called adherence (ăd hēr' ēns, *n.*), and the process of being attached to a substance, or in pathology, the vital union between two surfaces of a living body which have before been separated is called adhesion (ăd hē' zhūn, *n.*).

L. *adhaerere*, from *ad* to, *haerere*, to cling, cohere.,

*Syn.*: Belong, cling, cohere., hold, stick. *Ant.*: Part, separate, sever.

**adiabatic** (ăd i ā băt' ik), *adj.* Not allowing heat to pass. (F. *adiabatique*.)

Adiabatic is used always in reference to pressure, especially that of steam in engines. An expanding gas always cools, cool gas gives less pressure than hot, the result being that an engine is less powerful than it would be if the temperature of the steam could be kept the same throughout its action. When the temperature changes, the pressure is called adiabatic, when kept the same, it is isothermal.

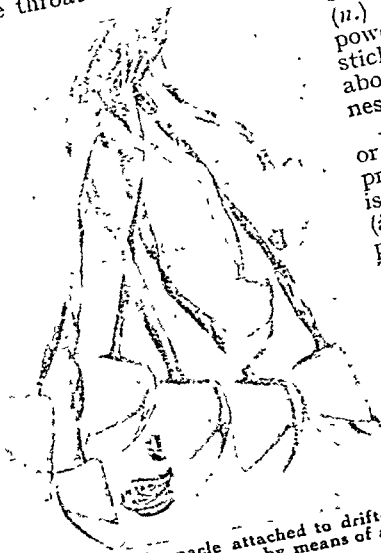
No engine is perfectly isothermal, but by the combined action of boiler and condenser engineers have constructed engines in which the loss due to steam expanding adiabatically (ăd i ā băt' ik āl li, *adv.*) has been very much reduced.

Gr. *a-* not, *dia* through, *balos* passable, verbal *adj.* from *bainein* to go.

**adiantum** (ăd i ān' tūm), *n.* A group of ferns. (F. *adiante*.)

The best known fern belonging to this group is *Adiantum capillus-veneris*, or maidenhair fern. Its leaves keep dry in water, whence the name. It is a native of Britain, but is becoming rare. *A. pedatum*, a species found in the United States, is another member of the group.

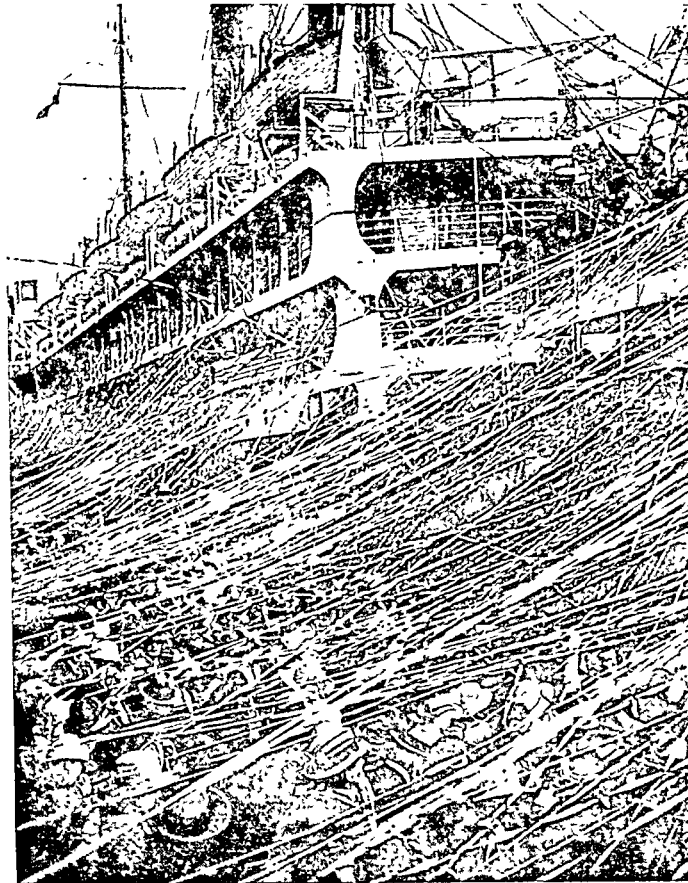
Gr. *a-* not, *diantos* wettable, from *diainein* to wet.



Adhere.—A barnacle attached to drift-wood, to which it adheres by means of a natural cement.

**adieu** (ă dū'), *n.* and *int.* Farewell; good-bye. *pl.* adieus or adieux (ă dūz'). (F. *adieu*.)

This word is a combination or joining together of the French words *à*, meaning "to," and *Dieu*, meaning "God," and is an elliptical form of "I commend you to God," "elliptical" meaning that some word or words have been left out.



Adieu.—A farewell scene on the departure of a liner from Sydney harbour. On this occasion thousands of paper streamers were flung from the quay to the steamer by Australians bidding their friends adieu.

**adipose** (ăd' i pōs), *adj.* Full of fat; fatty. *n.* Animal fat. (F. *adipeux*.)

One who is extremely fat is said to be adipose, and his fatness is adiposity (ăd i pos' i ti, *n.*) or adiposeness (ăd' i pōs nēs, *n.*). Fishes belonging to the salmon family, including the salmon, bull-trout, salmon trout, common trout, char, and grayling, have an adipose fin (*n.*), a small soft fin, without rays, on the back near the tail. Adipose tissue (*n.*) is the anatomical name for the masses of cells in which globules of fat are stored up in the body.

L.L. *adiposus*, from *adeps* (gen. *adip-is*) fat. SYN.: Corpulent, fat, obese, stout. ANT.: Bony, gaunt, lean, thin.

**adit** (ăd' it), *n.* An underground passage. (F. *galerie, entrée*.)

When miners go to their work they frequently enter the mine by passing through an adit, which is a tunnel or horizontal opening in the side of a hill or mountain. Adit also means admission, in which sense Tennyson wrote: "Yourself and yours shall have free adit."

L. *aditus* (*n.*) approach, from *ad* to, *ire* to go.

**adjacent** (ăd jā' sēnt), *adj.* Near by; close to. (F. *adjacent contigu*.)

Something near at hand is situated *adjacently* (ăd jā' sēnt li, *adv.*), and 'such adjacency (ăd jā' sēn si, *n.*) may be very convenient.

L. *adjacens*, pres. p. (gen. *adjacent-is*), from *ad* to, near, *jacere* to lie. SYN.: Adjoining, close, contiguous, near, neighbouring. ANT.: Detached, distant, remote, separate.

**adjective** (ăd' jek tiv), *n.* A word which is commonly used with a noun to give it various shades of meaning. (F. *adjectif*.)

If we speak of a rainy day, a sunny day, or a dull day, the words rainy, sunny, and dull are used in an adjectival (ăd jek tiv' à, *adj.*) sense, or adjectively (ăd jek tiv li, *adv.*). See page xxxiii.

L. *adjectivus* added to, from *ad* to, *jacere* to throw, put (p.p. *adjectus*).

**adjoin** (ăd join'), *v.t.* To join. *v.i.* To be next to or in contact with. (O F. *adjoindre*; F. *joindre*: *être con igu à*.)

Houses that are next to one another adjoin each other, and are adjoining (ăd join' ing, *adj.*) houses.

L. *adjungere*, from *ad* to, *jungere* to join. SYN.: Add, dis sever, sever.

affix, attach, join on. ANT.: Abstract, deduct,

**adjourn** (ăd jern'), *v.t.* To stop for awhile; to postpone. *v.i.* To suspend or close business for a time. (F. *ajourner*; *s'ajourner*.)

When the British Parliament meets it sits from day to day for what is called a session, at the end of which it adjourns or suspends its daily meetings for a certain time. This act of adjourning, and the period between two sessions are each called an adjournment (ăd jern' ment, *n.*).

L.L. *adjournare* to fix for, put off until another day, from *ad* to, L.L. *jurnus* (cp. L. *diurnus, dies*) day (F. *jour*). SYN.: Defer, delay, postpone, put off. ANT.: Complete, conclude, dispatch, terminate.

the men's discipline, and the handing out of ammunition and other things required from time to time.

Usually the adjutant is an officer with the rank of captain, but sometimes a lieutenant is appointed. The office or rank of adjutant is an **adjutancy** (ăd' ju tăn si, n.).

L. *adjutare*, from *ad* to, *jutare* (frequentative of *jware*) to help.

**adjutant-bird** (ăd' ju tăt bĕrd), n. A large stork. (F. *adjutant*.)

A scavenger, and proud of its occupation—such may be said with truth of the adjutant-bird of India (*Leptoptilus argala*). The self-importance of this large stork is apparent from the dignity of its walk and carriage, which first suggested the name by which it is popularly known, the bird's proud bearing reminding those who nicknamed it of an army officer on parade. Still, one can forgive the adjutant-bird for being proud, seeing it is so useful in a hot country. In a land like India, disease would soon spread if dead animals and refuse were allowed to lie in the hot sun to rot.

The adjutant-bird does not mind what it eats, and so active is it in disposing of decaying animal matter that no one in India would think of doing it any harm. Standing about five feet high, the adjutant-bird is a good flier, and can detect carrion as quickly as the vultures, in whose company it is often seen. These storks are common in the Malay Archipelago and Eastern India, especially in Bengal. There is a smaller variety in Africa. One peculiar thing about the adjutant-bird is the large pouch hanging from its throat. It is shaped like a sausage, about sixteen inches long, and is believed to help the bird to breathe. The head and neck are nearly bare.

**administer** (ăd min' is ter), v.t. To manage, conduct. v.i. To minister. (F. *administrer*.)

A tradesman conducts or administers his business, a lawyer administers the property of a dead person, a doctor administers an anaesthetic. After death a person's estate becomes **administrable** (ăd min' is tră bl, *adj.*) and its **administration** (ăd min is tră' shùn, n.) may be undertaken by a lawyer or other appointed person.

The lawyer acts **administratively** (ăd min' is tră tiv' li, *adv.*) when he becomes the

**administrator** (ăd min' is tră tór, n.) or **administrant** (ăd min' is trânt, n.), and his services are of an **administrative** (ăd min' is tră tiv, *adj.*) character. The office of an administrator, or an **administratrix** (ăd min' is tră trix, *fem. n.*) is an **administratorship** (ăd min' is tră tór ship, n.).

L. *administrare*, from *ad* to, *ministrare* (minister) to serve (one who serves). SYN.: Control, direct, dispense, superintend. ANT.: Betray, mismanage, refuse, withhold.

**administration** (ăd min is tră' shùn), n. The act of one who administers; the ministers who carry on the government of a country. (F. *administration*, *gouvernement*.)

When a Prime Minister of Great Britain and his Government resign, the King sends for the leader of another political party and asks him to form a new Ministry to carry on the government of the country. If he is willing to accept office, he usually becomes Prime Minister himself, and selects, according to his own judgment, ministers to fill the high positions. This body of men is called the Administration, and they remain in office so long as their Government remains in power. The king, however, may dismiss a minister if he wishes to do so.

**admirable** (ăd' mir äbl), *adj.* Worthy of admiration; excellent; wonderful. (F. *admirable*.)

That a lad who lived over 350 years ago should still be famous in literature as the Admirable Crichton is very remarkable. This lad was James Crichton. He was born about 1560 and educated at St. Andrews, Scotland. He is said to have mastered 12 languages before he was 17 years old, and been familiar with all the sciences by the age of 20. He was also, according to report, an accomplished musician, poet, athlete, and actor.

On leaving the University, he travelled in Europe, and gained the admiration of all he met by his extraordinary learning, which he often put to the test in public debates with the most famous men of his day. Admirable in all he did, his death was nevertheless a sorry one, for he was killed in a street quarrel when about 25 years of age by his pupil, the young prince of Mantua. See *admire*.

L. *admirabilis*, deserving admiration, from *admirari*, from *ad* to, at, *mirari* to wonder. SYN.: Choice, first-rate, good, precious, splendid. ANT.: Bad, defective, imperfect, poor, worthless.



Adjutant-bird. — The feathered scavenger of the East.

# ADMIRALS OF ENGLAND WHO BRAVED THE BATTLE AND THE BREEZE



1. Robert Blake (1599-1657). 2. Viscount Torrington (1663-1733). 3. Richard Kempenfelt (1718-82). 4. Baron Anson (1697-1762). 5. Baron Collingwood (1750-1810). 6. Viscount Nelson (1758-1805). 7. John Benbow (1653-1702). 8. Baron Rodney (1719-92). 9. Earl Howe (1726-99). 10. Viscount Bridport (1727-1814). 11. Viscount Hood (1724-1816). 12. Baron de Saumarez (1757-1836). 13. Viscount Exmouth (1757-1833). 14. Baron Hawke (1705-81). 15. Earl of St. Vincent (1735-1823).

# ADMIRALS OF MANY CENTURIES

*From the stalwart Days of gallant Sir William Leybourne to the present Time*

**admiral** (ăd' mir' al), *n.* The commander of a fleet or of a squadron. (*F. amiral.*)

With the sails of his vessel in ribbons, after having been in action for nearly two hours with the largest French battleship he had ever seen, Nelson wrote to his wife, "I wish to be an Admiral, and in the command of the English fleet." Less than two years later he hoisted his flag as a rear-admiral,

Cinque is the old French word for five, and it was used to denote the ports of Hastings, Sandwich, Dover, Romney, and Hythe. The "ancient towns" of Winchelsea and Rye were afterwards included, with Lydd, Faversham, Folkestone, Deal, Tenterden, Margate, Ramsgate, and other places as "limbs."

These cradles of the British Navy still bear their titles, courts continue to be held, and there is a Lord Warden, a position filled at various times by the Duke

of Wellington, Lord Curzon, the Earl of Ypres, and Lord Allenby. The ports have fallen from their high estate through no fault of their own. The sea has played tricks with some of them, battleships have grown too big for all with the exception of Dover, and Great Britain no longer depends on outside assistance for the supply of vessels and sailors.

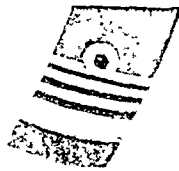
England's first admiral was Sir William Leybourne, who had served as a soldier and was called by the title so long ago as 1297. He was closely followed by Gervase Alard, a brave soldier whom Edward I put in charge of the ships of the Cinque Ports and elsewhere. The marble tomb of Alard may be seen in the old church at Winchelsea, which was once the proud possessor of a harbour and is now stranded high and dry on a hill.

Sir John Beauchamp was appointed "admiral of all the seas" for a year in 1360. The more important office of Lord High Admiral seems to have been created at the beginning of the fifteenth century, but has now given place to the Board of Admiralty. The rank of Admiral and General-at-Sea, granted by Cromwell to Robert Blake and two other colonels of the army three weeks after the execution of Charles I, has also disappeared.

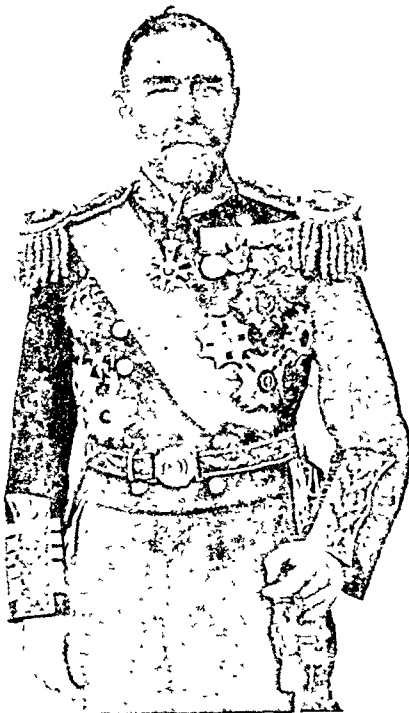
The word **admiralship** (ăd' mir' al ship, *n.*) and **admiralty** (ăd' mir' al ti, *n.*) both mean the office of an admiral. The latter term is also the name of the department which deals with naval matters.



Gold lace on a Rear-admiral's sleeve.



Gold lace on an Admiral's sleeve.



Admiral of the Fleet Sir Charles Madden, who became First Sea Lord in 1927.



Sleeve of a Vice-admiral.



Sleeve of an Admiral of the Fleet.

cost was borne by the king.

Under the brave Hubert de Burgh the men of the Cinque Ports helped to win a big battle off the South Foreland in 1217, fighting with crossbows, axes, swords, scythes on poles, and quicklime, and they also shared in many another tussle with the French.

The first regular Navy Board, whose duty was to look after the business of building supplies, and other matters which officers at sea could not attend to themselves, came into being during the reign of Henry VIII, and continued the work of the Keeper of the King's Ships. In 1832 it was merged into the Admiralty, which has many departments under a civilian First Lord, who is assisted by three Sea Lords in all matters relating to the manning of the navy and its organisation as a fighting force. Legal cases in connexion with shipping are decided in the Admiralty Court.

In natural history the proud title of admiral is shared by two butterflies, the red admiral (*Pyraus atalanta*) and the white admiral (*Limenitus camilla*), both of which are to be found in Great Britain. The former is a particularly beautiful insect, and when the wings are open the scarlet bands and edges quickly catch the eye. The colouring of the under side of the wings is mottled black and brown.

O.F. and M.E. *amiral*, from Arabic *amcer* ruler, *al-bahr* of the sea, L.L. *amiraldus*, *admiraldus*, the *d* being due to a supposed connexion with L. *admirari* to wonder at.

**admire** (ād mīr'), *v.t.* To regard with pleasure; to think highly of. (F. *admirer*.)

An admirer (ād mīr' er, *n.*) looks admiringly (ād mīr' ing lī, *adv.*) at an object that is lovely, or admirable (ād' mīr ābl, *adj.*). To have qualities that deserve to be admired is admirability (ād' mīr āb il i tī, *n.*), or admirableness (ād' mīr ābl nēs, *n.*). The wonder, love, or pleasure that is aroused by a beautiful object is called admiration (ād mī rā' shūn, *n.*). A thing undertaken in a way

to excite wonder or esteem is admirably (ād' mīr āb lī, *adv.*) done.

See admirable. SYN.: Approve, esteem, honour, respect, venerate. ANT.: Abhor, dislike, hate, scorn.

**admissible** (ād mis' ibl), *adj.* Capable of being admitted or allowed. (F. *admissible*.)

When a prisoner is being tried, or a witness is giving evidence, it often happens that a question arises as to whether a counsel should be allowed to cross-examine on certain points, or whether certain facts should be disclosed to the court. In these circumstances, if the judge considers that such matters have nothing to do with the case, or might tend to prevent a fair trial, he may

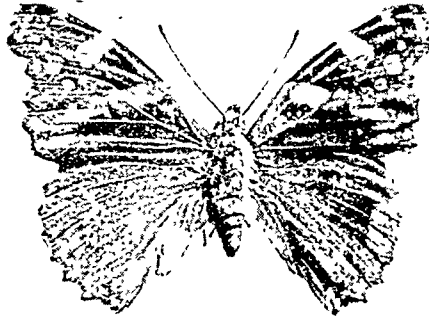
decide that they are not admissible. On the other hand, the judge may regard them admissibly (ād mis' ib lī, *adv.*) and concede their admissibility (ād mis i bil' i tī, *n.*).

L.L. *admissibilis*, from L. *admittere*, from *ad* to, *mittere* to send, permit (p.p. *admissus*). SYN.: Allowable, permissible, possible. ANT.: Absurd, improper, wrong.

**admit** (ād mit'), *v.t.* To allow to enter; to agree that a thing is true; to permit. (F. *admettre*.)

We admit a visitor, or grant him admission (ād mish' ūn, *n.*) or admittance (ād mit' āns, *n.*). A point of view agreed upon is admitted (ād mit' ēd, *part. adj.*) and is admittedly (ād mit' ēd lī, *adv.*) correct. A prisoner may be admissible (ād mit' ābl, *adj.*) to bail. Admissive (ād mis' iv, *adj.*) means tending to admit.

See admissible. SYN.: Accept, acknowledge, allow, receive, suffer. ANT.: Debar, deny, exclude, reject.



Admiral.—In the butterfly world there are both a red and white admiral. The former is shown above.



Admiration.—Admirers of the beautiful in nature enjoying the grandeur of Pike's Peak, in Colorado, U.S.A. Although its height is 14,109 ft., motor-cars frequently make the ascent.

**admix** (ăd miks'), *v.t.* To mix one thing with another. (F. *mêler*.)

The ingredients of a Christmas pudding when admixed (ăd mikst', *p.p.*) make a delicious admixture (ăd miks' tūr, *n.*).

L. *admiscere*, from *ad* to, *miscere* to mix (*p.p. admixtus*).



Admix.—A bonnie Scottish lassie admixing the ingredients of a pudding.

**admonish** (ăd mon' ish), *v.t.* To speak in a serious, gentle, and friendly way to one who has done wrong. (F. *admonester*, *reprendre*.)

One who speaks in this way is an **admonisher** (ăd mon' ish er, *n.*) and the warning and counsel thus given is **admonishment** (ăd mon' ish mēt, *n.*).

L.L. *admonestare*, from *ad* to, *monestare* (= *monere*) to warn, advise. *SYN.*: Advise, caution, dissuade, instruct, warn. *ANT.*: Abet, applaud, encourage, instigate.

**admonition** (ăd mōn ish' ūn), *n.* Friendly warning and advice. (F. *admonition*.)

There was a time when children who had done wrong were punished in a merciless manner, being sent to prison for small offences. Nowadays, a wiser policy is followed, and many first offenders are saved from drifting into further crime by being dismissed with an admonition and given another chance. An **admonitive** (ăd mon' i tiv, *adj.*) or **admonitory** (ăd mon' i tō ri, *adj.*) warning, or counsel delivered admonitively (ăd mon' i tiv li, *adv.*) by a wise and kindly **admonitor** (ăd mon' i tōr, *n.*) often has good results.

*See* admonish. *SYN.*: Advice, caution, hint, reproof, warning. *ANT.*: Applause, encouragement, incitement, instigation.

**adnate** (ăd' nāt), *adj.* Growing attached. (F. *adné*.)

This word is used mainly by scientific botanists chiefly to describe a peculiarity,

called **adnascence** (ăd nās' ens, *n.*), in the anthers of flowers, the little pads holding the pollen. When the whole length of the pollen pads is attached to the tiny stalks supporting them, they are said to be **adnate**. Herb Paris is an example of this **adnation** (ăd nā' shūn, *n.*) and is thus an **adnascent** (ăd nās' ent, *adj.*) plant.

L. *adnatus* (*p.p.*), from *ad* to, *nasci* to be born.

**ado** (ă doo'), *n.* Trouble; fuss. (F. *peine*, *bruit*.)

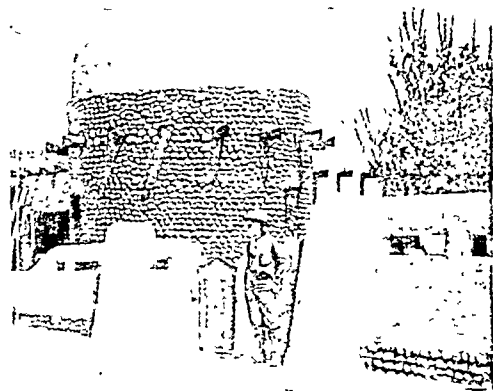
Shakespeare uses this word in the title of one of his comedies, "Much Ado About Nothing."

*Scand.* *at to*, E. *do*; *cp.* E. *to-do* (*n.* in same sense as *ado*). *SYN.*: Bustle, labour, noise, pains. *ANT.*: Calm, composure, quiet.

**adobe** (ă dō' be), *n.* A brick dried in the sun. (F. *adobe*.)

In hot countries like Mexico and North Africa, bricks are dried in the sun, but in damp countries like our own, they are dried and hardened by burning.

*Span.*, perhaps of Arabic origin from *at-tub* (*at*=*al* the, *tub* brick).



Adobe.—An adobe house built of brick dried in the sun, and not hardened by burning.

**adolescence** (ăd ō les' ens), *n.* The period between childhood and manhood or womanhood. (F. *adolescence*.)

Any boy or girl who has passed the child stage of life is an **adolescent** (ăd ō les' ent, *n.*) and has entered on the period of adolescence or **adolescence** (ăd ō les' en si, *n.*). The **adolescent** (*adj.*) period of females is from about 12 to 21, and of males from about 14 to 25.

L. *adolescencia*, from *adolescere*, from *ad* to, up, *ollescere* to grow (inceptive form).

**Adonis** (ă dō' nis), *n.* A beautiful youth; a dandy. (F. *Adonis*.)

In a general sense we use this word for a handsome young man and for a fop or dandy, just as we may call a strong man a Samson. We get the word from the Greek story of Adonis, the beautiful youth who was beloved by the goddess Aphrodite, or Venus, as she was called by the Romans. The story of the love of Venus and the death of Adonis,

who was slain by a boar, is told by Shakespeare in his poem "Venus and Adonis." To *adonize* (ăd ō' nīz, *v.t.* and *v.i.*) is to adorn or play the part of an Adonis.

There is a plant called *Adonis autumnalis*, better known as Pheasant's Eye. Growing in corn fields, and sometimes sown in gardens, it is a bushy plant about 10 inches high, with a red buttercup-shaped flower.

In classical poetry there is a metre named after Adonis. It is called *adonic* (ă don' ik, *adj.*) and consists of a dactyl, one long and two short syllables (˘ ˘ ˘), and a spondee, two long syllables (˘ ˘).

The name of Adonis, really an Oriental deity of vegetation or corn-spirit, is of Phoenician or Syrian origin (from *adon*, Lord).



Adornment.—An Indian Maharajah adorned with jewels worth a king's ransom.

**adopt** (ă dopt'), *v.t.* To accept or choose as one's own. (F. *adopter*.)

We may adopt a child, a policy, a view, or a cause. A person who adopts a child is an *adopter* (ă dopt' ěr, *n.*), his act is *adoption* (ă dop' shŭn, *n.*). The child adopted (ă dopt' ěd, *part. adj.*) is the subject of an *adoptional* (ă dop' shŭn ăl, *adj.*) act, and the *adopter*, who has acted *adoptively* (ă dop' tiv li, *adv.*) becomes an *adoptive* (ă dop' tiv, *adj.*) parent.

By the Adoption of Children Act, 1926, adoption is now legalized in Great Britain. When a judge makes an adoption order, the *adopter* becomes in law the *parent* of the adopted child just as if the child was his or her own from birth. The duties of the

adopted child become the same as those of other children, including the liability to support its parents, if need be.

*L. adoptare*, from *ad* to, *optare* to wish, choose. *SYN.*: Accept, approve, assume, maintain, support. *ANT.*: Abandon, disown, renounce, reject.

**adore** (ă dŏr'), *v.t.* To love exceedingly or worship. *v.i.* To offer worship. (F. *adorer*.)

An *adorer* (ă dŏr' ěr, *n.*) may look *adoringly* (ă dŏr' ing li, *adv.*) at the object of his affection, whom he regards as *adorable* (ă dŏr' ăbl, *adj.*). A gifted vocalist may sing *adorably* (ă dŏr' ăb li, *adv.*). One who is beautiful and good has the quality of *adorableness* (ă dŏr' ăbl nĕs, *n.*) or *adorability* (ă dŏr' ă bil' i ti, *n.*). Supreme love or divine worship is *adoration* (ăd ōr ă' shŭn, *n.*).

*L. adorare*, from *ad* to, *orare* to pray, speak (use the mouth, *os*, gen. *oris*). *SYN.*: Admire, idolize, praise, revere, venerate. *ANT.*: Abhor, despise, detest, execrate, hate.

**adorn** (ă dŏrn'), *v.t.* To make beautiful; to decorate. (F. *orner*.)

Jewels adorn a bride, who is adorned (ă dornd', *part. adj.*) with such *adornment* (ă dorn' mĕnt, *n.*) or *adorning* (ă dŏrn' ing, *n.*). If she adds *adorning* (*adj.*) flowers to her wedding dress she treats it *adorningly* (ă dŏrn' ing li, *adv.*) and becomes an *adorner* (ă dŏrn' ěr, *n.*).

*L. adornare*, from *ad* to, *ornare*, to ornament. *SYN.*: Beautify, bedeck, decorate, embellish, ornament. *ANT.*: Deface, deform, disfigure, mar, spoil.

**adrift** (ă drift'), *adv.* and *adj.* Drifting helplessly, as a ship without a rudder. (F. *à l'abandon*, *à la dérive*.)

This word is mostly used in connexion with the sea or a swift current, although a poor person without home or friends may be said to be cast *adrift* in the world.

*E. a-* = on, *A.-S. drifan* to drive, with suffix *-t* (= on drift). See drift.

**adroit** (ă droit'), *adj.* Nimble and clever, bodily or mentally. (F. *adroit*.)

A clever juggler does his tricks *adroitly* (ă droit' li, *adv.*) or with *adroitness* (ă droit' nĕs, *n.*).

*L. ad* to, *directus* well-directed (p.p. of *dirigere* to direct); *F. à droit* to the right. *SYN.*: Cunning, dexterous, expert, ingenious, skilful. *ANT.*: Awkward, bungling, clumsy, unskilful.

**adscript** (ăd' skript), *adj.* Written after; attached to the soil, as a serf. *n.* One held to service; a serf. (F. *serf*.)

At the time of the Roman occupation, and onwards until feudalism was abolished, the lower classes of the peasantry in England and in Europe were attached to the soil (*L. ascriptus glebae*) of their lord's estate as serfs, and were in an almost complete sense the personal property of their master. In the "Memoir" of Robert Chambers, the Edinburgh publisher, his brother William



tells how, about 1819, he often spoke to old salt-makers in Midlothian, who, before 1799, had been serfs. These people and their forefathers had been legally sold with the estate on which they dwelt, and could not leave the place to which they belonged. They were adscripts, or, as the writer put it: "They and their children had been heritable fixtures to the spot."

Adscript also means written after, as distinguished from written beneath, which is subscript.

*L. ascribere*, from *as=ad* to, *scribere* to write, enter in a list (p.p. *ascriptus*).

**adulate** (ăd' ū lāt), *v.t.* To flatter extremely; to fawn upon. (*F. flatter, caresser.*)

Extreme flattery is **adulation** (ăd ū lā' shūn, *n.*). One who flatters another very much is called an **adulator** (ăd' ū lāt ōr, *n.*), and such flattery is **adulatory** (ăd' ū lā tō ri, *adj.*).

*L. adulari* to flatter, p.p. *adulatus*. Some suggest that the word originally meant "to wag the tail like a dog." *SYN.*: Fawn, flatter, unduly praise. *ANT.*: Asperse, defame, libel, ridicule.

**Adullamite** (ă dūl' am īt), *n.* A villager belonging to Adullam.

When David, some time after killing Goliath, fled from King Saul, he took refuge in the Cave of Adullam, where he gathered 400 discontented men around him (1 Samuel xxii, 1, 2). Adullamites was a nickname given by John Bright to a section of discontented Liberal Members of Parliament who, in 1866, withdrew from their party because of their opposition to Gladstone's Reform Bill. The act of withdrawing from a party or association of any kind is called **adullamy** (ă dūl' am ī, *n.*).

**adult** (ă dūlt), *adj.* Grown up. *n.* A full-grown person. (*F. adulte.*)

At the age of twenty-one a boy or girl becomes an adult. A man is then entitled to vote at Parliamentary elections, provided he complies with certain requirements, as the State considers him to have an adult mind. This condition of manhood is called **adulthood** (ă dūlt' nes, *n.*).

*L. adolescere* (p.p. *adultus*), from *ad* to, *olescere* to (begin to) grow (*olēre*).

**adulterate** (ă dūl' tēr āt), *v.t.* To lower the quality or value of anything by mixing something inferior with it. (*F. adulterer.*)

This word is used chiefly in connexion with food, the **adulteration** (ă dūl tēr ā' shūn, *n.*) of which has been a source of profit to unscrupulous persons from very early times. In ancient Greece and Rome fraud of this kind was not unknown, wine being the chief article adulterated, and steps were taken to remedy the evil practice.

In England, from the thirteenth century onwards, a number of laws have been made with a view to preventing manufacturers and sellers from adulterating articles of food and drink. The law takes every care to ensure

that such articles offered for sale are what they are intended to be. Where any article is adulterated for some particular reason the maker has to say so.

A thing which adulterates is an **adulterant** (ă dūl' tēr ānt, *n.*), and the person who uses an adulterant is an **adulterator** (ă dūl' tēr ā tōr, *n.*). Milk that has had water mixed into it has been treated **adulterately** (ă dūl' tēr āt li, *adv.*).

*L. adulterare*, probably from *ad* to, *alter* other, different from what it should be. *SYN.*: Corrupt, debase, falsify.

**adumbrate** (ăd' ūm brāt), *v.t.* To foreshadow; to shadow forth; to overshadow. (*F. figurer à l'avance; ébaucher.*)

The well-known saying, "Coming events cast their shadows before," gives an idea of the most usual meaning of this word. Before we go away for our holidays we pack the things we want to take with us. The packing is the "shadow" of the coming event, a sign that we are going away, an **adumbration** (ăd ūm brā' shūn, *n.*) of our holiday, and **adumbrative** (ă dūm' brā tiv, *adj.*) of the happy times we shall have.

*L. adumbrare* (p.p. *-bratus*), from *ad* to, *umbra* shade. *SYN.*: Hint, indicate, outline, shadow, typify. *ANT.*: Fulfil, misrepresent, realize.



Advance.—Troops advancing along a road before going into action.

**advance** (ăd vans'), *v.t.* To bring or move forward. *v.i.* To go forward. *n.* The act of moving forward; an approach towards a better understanding or a closer acquaintance; a loan. *adj.* Beforehand. (*F. avancer; avance, avant.*)

A body of soldiers advances into action or takes up an **advanced** (ăd vanst', *adj.*) position.

An advance offer in business is one that is made beforehand. To put forward a statement or argument is to advance it. A government makes advances or overtures to another in the hope of settling differences.

A sum of money lent is an advance, and the lender of the money is the *advancer* (ăd vāns' ěr, *n.*). A person advances in his profession who is promoted, such promotion being *advancement* (ăd vāns' mēnt, *n.*).

F. *avancer*, L.L. *abanteare*, from *ab* (=av) from, *ante* before; the *d* being due to the idea that *ab*=*ad*. SYN.: *n.* Overture, progress, rise. *v.* Augment, proceed, promote. ANT.: *n.* Depreciation, diminution, return. *v.* Diminish, retreat, suppress.

**advantage** (ăd vān' tăj), *n.* Gain; superiority. *v.t.* To profit. (F. *avantage*; *avantager*.)

One who gets the better of an enemy is said to have gained an advantage. A certain course of action may be more *advantageous* (ăd vān tă' jüs, *adj.*) than another, and in following that course one would act *advantageously* (ăd vān tă' jüs li, *adv.*). The result thus obtained would show the *advantageousness* (ăd vān tă' jüs nēs, *n.*) of the action taken.

Advantage is a term used in certain sports to denote the state of the game. In lawn tennis, for example, when each player has scored three points, the state of play is called *deuce*, and the next point scored changes it to what is known as *advantage*, or '*vantage*. Should the server score the first point after *deuce*, then "*advantage in*" is called by the umpire, but if his opponent, the non-server wins the point "*advantage out*" is called. When a game is won after each player has won five games the score is *advantage game*.

F. *avantage*, from *avant*, from L. *ab* (=av) from, *ante* before (for the *d* see the word *advance*). SYN.: Benefit, help, privilege. ANT.: hindrance, loss.

**advent** (ăd' vĕnt), *n.* A period in the Christian Church calendar; an arrival, especially of some important person or event. (F. *Avent*, *arrivée*.)

We speak of the advent of spring or of some great social reform, but the best-known use of the word is for the holy season in which Christians prepare for the celebration of Christmas.

In Advent, Christians are reminded specially of Christ's first coming (or Advent) into the world as the Saviour, and they also look forward to His second coming as the Judge. Except in the Eastern Church, where it begins on St. Martin's Day (November 11),

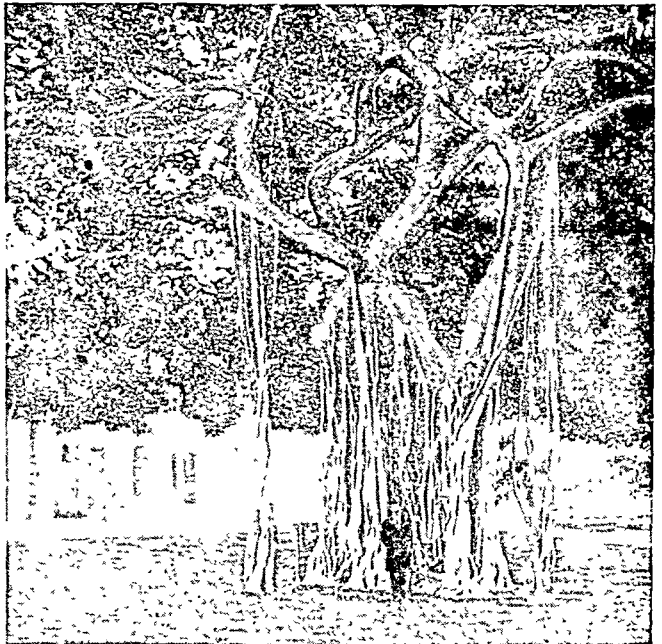
Advent starts on the Sunday nearest to St. Andrew's Day (November 30).

**Adventist** (ăd' vĕn tist, *n.*) is the name of various sects. The Second Adventists believe in the early second coming of Christ. Seventh Day Adventists also believe in this, and they keep the seventh day of the week, Saturday (the old Sabbath) as the Sabbath, not Sunday.

L. *adventus* arrival, from *ad* to, *venire* to come. SYN.: Approach, arrival, coming. ANT.: Departure, exit, retirement.

**adventitious** (ăd vĕn tish' ūs), *adj.* Added from outside; not belonging naturally; not in the ordinary course of things. (F. *accidentel*.)

Powder and paint, if indeed they are aids to beauty, are *adventitious* aids. A man may make a perfectly ordinary speech at the



**Adventitious.**—The adventitious roots of the banyan tree. When they reach the ground they turn into parent trees.

Difficulty,

opening of a bazaar, and then find that his political opponents have misrepresented what he said by *adventitiously* (ăd vĕn tish' ūs li, *adv.*) giving a political flavour to his words.

Examples of *adventitiousness* (ăd vĕn tish' ūs nēs, *n.*) are common in the vegetable kingdom. Roots, buds and other parts of plants often appear in unusual places. Leaves sometimes grow *adventitious* buds, and the banyan tree of India throws out from its branches *adventitious* roots, which eventually reach the ground and turn into parent trees.

L. *adventicius* (later spelt *-tilius*) foreign, from *ad* to, *venire* to come. SYN.: Accidental, casual, extrinsic. ANT.: Appropriate, intrinsic, regular.

# ADVENTURE AND ADVENTURERS

*Doers of Daring Deeds that Helped to Make the British Empire*

**adventure** (ăd ven' chûr), *n.* Risk; an uncertain undertaking. *v.t.* To risk; to place in danger. *v.i.* To dare. (F. *aventure*; *risquer*; *oser*.)

The adventurer (ăd ven' chûr ər, *n.*), whether a man who blazes a way through a jungle or the stay-at-home individual who puts money in a trading enterprise, gave us the British Empire. Some of those who went overseas wore swords, others carried no more deadly weapons than a brave heart and a good courage. Adventurer is also used in a far less romantic sense, for it means a man who tries to gain social position by pretence. The feminine form is *adventuress* (ăd ven' chûr əs, *n.*).

When John Cabot and his adventuresome (ăd ven' chûr sŭm, *adj.*) crew set sail from Bristol in 1497 in a little ship laden with goods, he journeyed westward hoping to reach China. He discovered Newfoundland, and was presented by Henry VII with £10 for his trouble. To-day that sum would be worth about £125, but it can scarcely be regarded as a generous reward. The island itself was held to be of such little value that it was not until 1583 that Sir Humphrey Gilbert took formal possession of it.

James Brooke, in return for helping the Sultan of Brunei, became Rajah of Sarawak, now a British protectorate with an area of some 42,000 miles. "It is a grand experiment," he wrote to his fond mother. "If it fails, what is it but personal inconvenience, the sacrifice of style and luxury? But I shall not sleep the worse for my bed being harder, nor shall I be less happy in a cottage than in a mansion."

India came to us through a body of traders called the East India Company, though the original title was much longer. In this the adventurous (ăd ven' chûr ũs, *adj.*) Drake played a part, for it was his capture of a richly laden Portuguese trading vessel returning from the East that aroused the interest of merchants, who sent out a cargo which was exchanged for spices and other products.

Queen Elizabeth granted the Company the sole right to trade in that part of the world, where it built trading-stations and forts, obtained land from the Great Mogul, ruled vast territories, lent huge sums of money to Britain, and finally in 1858 handed over the magnificent Indian Empire to the Crown.

Although merchant adventurers were established on the continent in 1296 it was not until the sixteenth century that the term came to be generally used by various groups of traders. There was the "Mysterie and

Companie of the Merchants Adventurers for the Discoverie of Regions, Dominions, Islands, and places unknown," started with the object of finding a north-eastern passage to the East by which it could carry goods.

Three small vessels, the largest of 160 tons, were fitted out, with Sir Hugh Willoughby in command and Richard Chancellor as Pilot General. The ships parted company in a storm, and while Chancellor landed near the site of Archangel and sledged nearly 1,500 miles to see Ivan the Terrible, the frozen bodies of Willoughby and his crew were found in Lapland. As a result of the expedition trade was opened up with Russia.

A company which still continues on its triumphant way, although it started as a very modest affair in 1670, is the Hudson's Bay Company, whose full title is the Governor and Company of Adventurers of England Trading into Hudson's Bay. It must be for ever associated with the gallant navigator, Henry Hudson, who gave his name to the river, strait, and bay which he discovered, and who was afterwards set adrift with his young son by a mutinous crew, and never heard of again. He died as adventurously (ăd ven' chûr ũs lī, *adv.*) as he had lived, having made three expeditions to find the elusive North-west Passage to Asia that had attracted the imagination of so many men before him, and was long to do so.

M.E., F. *aventure*, L. (res) *adventura* (a thing, about to happen, future part. fem. of *adventire*, from *ad* to, *venire* to come.



Adventurer.—James Brooke, who became Rajah of Sarawak, having an audience of the Sultan of Brunei.

The office of counsellor is advisership (ăd vîz' ěr ship, *n.*), and to be able to give advice is to be in an advisory (ăd vîz' ô ri, *adj.*) position.

M.E., F. *avis* (= *a vis* according to what seems good) from L. *ad* to, *visum*, p.p. of *videri* to seem. SYN.: Caution, counsel, instruction, recommendation, warning. ANT.: Deception, expostulation, prohibition, remonstrance.

**advocate** (ăd' vò kât), *n.* One who defends or upholds a cause; one who pleads a cause in a court of law. *v.t.* To act or speak in favour of; to recommend. (F. *avocat*; *soutenir*.)



Advocate.—An advocate ready to plead in Court.

In Scotland the chief Crown lawyer is called the Lord Advocate and the bar is termed the Faculty of Advocates. A Judge Advocate in the Army is the prosecuting officer who appears before a court-martial. Another use of the word is found in Devil's

advocate, the person so called in the Roman Catholic Church who has the duty of opposing the claim when it is intended to add someone to the list of saints.

To support an argument in a discussion, or to champion someone or some cause, is to advocate the same, and thus support is advocacy (ăd' vò kâ si, *n.*), while advocateship (ăd' vò kât ship, *n.*) is the office of one who thus pleads and who is acting in an advocacy (ăd vò kâ' tó ri, *adj.*) manner.

L. *advocatus*, p.p. of *advocare*, from *ad* to, *vocare* to call, to help. SYN.: Defend, justify, maintain, support, uphold. ANT.: Counter, oppose, resist, withstand.

**advowson** (ăd vou' zón), *n.* The right to nominate or name a priest to a benefice or church living. (F. *patronage*.)

From very early times the founders or maintainers of a church have had the right to name fit persons to direct the work of God in the district where the church is established. The lords of the manors were in their day the patrons of churches, and as such had this right of nomination, which is known as advowson. To-day most of the advowsons belong to private persons, the rest belonging to the Crown, universities, and those who hold high offices in the Church. He who possesses an advowson is known as an **advowee** (ăd vou' ě, *n.*).

O.F. *advouson*, L.L. *advocatio*, from *advocatus* (p.p. of *advocare*) patron, one called to help, from *ad* to, *vocare* to call.

**adytum** (ăd' i tùm), *n.* The innermost chamber of a temple, often a shrine, or a room which contains the secret mysteries of religion. (F. *adyte*, *adytum*.)

In the Temples of Solomon and of Herod the adytum was generally known as the

"Holy of Holies," which only the High Priest was permitted to enter. After the conquest of Jerusalem in 63 B.C. the Roman general Pompey, to the consternation of the Jews, boldly entered the holy place, and was disappointed to find it empty. Unlike the pagan temples, which preserved in the adytum idols or relics of the gods, the Jerusalem temples had no image or likeness of the Unseen God of Israel.

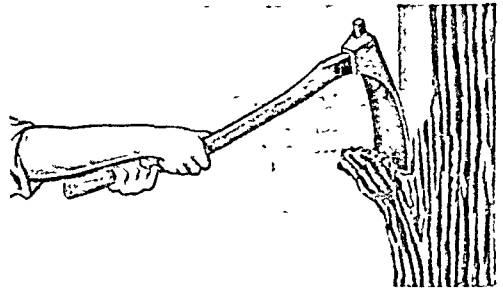
Things that are hidden or profound, such as the truths of religion or philosophy, are sometimes described as the adytum of knowledge. The word is also used for any room or assembly which it is a great privilege to enter. The plural is **adyta** (ăd' i tã).

Gr. *adyton* place not to be entered, from *a-* not, *dyein* to enter.

**adze** (ădz), *n.* A cutting tool of the axe kind which has a thin arched blade set at right angles to the handle. *v.t.* To use such a tool on. (F. *herminette*.)

Carpenters find the adze most useful for paring away irregular surfaces, while coopers use it for cutting the hollow sides of the pieces of timber that go to make barrels, tubs, and other articles.

A.-S. *adesa* axe.



Adze.—A cutting tool used chiefly by shipbuilders and wheelwrights.

**aedile** (ě' dil), *n.* A magistrate of ancient Rome. (F. *édile*.)

In Roman city life the aedile was an important figure. He had charge of public buildings, controlled all popular entertainments, and also exercised certain police powers. The doors of his official residence were open day and night in order that he might always be ready, in theory at least, to serve the needs of the people. Occasionally our municipal representatives are called aediles. Aedileship (ě' dil ship, *n.*) is the office of an aedile.

L. *aedilis*, from *aces* house, suffix *-ilis* (connected with).

**aegis** (ě' jis), *n.* A shield or breastplate; anything which shields or protects. (F. *égide*.)

Zeus, the chief god of the Greeks, or Jupiter, as he was known to the Romans, is said to have had a shield which one day he

covered with the skin of Amalthaea, the goat which had been his foster-mother. This shield, known as aegis, he afterwards presented to Pallas Athena (or Minerva), the goddess of war and peace, and the patroness of every branch of science and art. On the aegis she nailed the head of the Gorgon Medusa, which turned into stone all who looked upon it.

The original meaning of aegis may have been "goat skin"; then it was used to denote a shield and even a breastplate; to-day it means anything which acts as a shield or protection, so that to be under the aegis of anyone is to be under his or her protection.

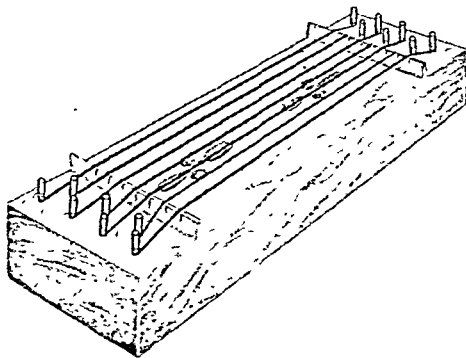
Gr. *L. aegis* goat-skin, or Gr. *aissein* to rush, with reference to the storm-cloud.

**Aeneid** (ē' nē id), *n.* The great Latin epic poem by Virgil. (F. *énéide*.)

Virgil the greatest of Roman poets, was determined to trace the descent of the Emperor Augustus (31 B.C.—A.D. 14) from the ancient heroes. Accordingly, in the "Aeneid" he relates how Aeneas, when Troy had been captured by the Greeks, fled from the burning town. After many adventures he landed in Italy at the mouth of the Tiber, where he married the king's daughter. It was his descendants, Romulus and Remus, who founded Rome, and who were the first of the mighty rulers, of whom, says the poet, Augustus was the greatest.

**Aeolian** (ē ō' h ān), *adj.* Of or belonging to Aeolia or Aeolis, an ancient district of Asia Minor. (F. *éolien*.)

In music the word indicates an old-fashioned form of Church music called a "mode" or "key." There are twelve modes, the Aeolian mode being the most melancholy in tone. Aeolus was god of the



Aeolian harp.—An instrument which produces musical sounds when the wind passes over the strings.

winds, whose home was supposed to be one of the Lipari islands called Aeolia, off the north coast of Sicily. The wind singing through telegraph wires makes what is styled Aeolian music, and an Aeolian harp

is an instrument which produces musical sounds when the wind passes over the strings.

*L. Aeolius*, from (1) Aeolia or Aeolis, and (2) Aeolus.

**aeolic** (ē ol' ik), *adj.* Of or belonging to Aeolia or Aeolis. (F. *éolique*.)

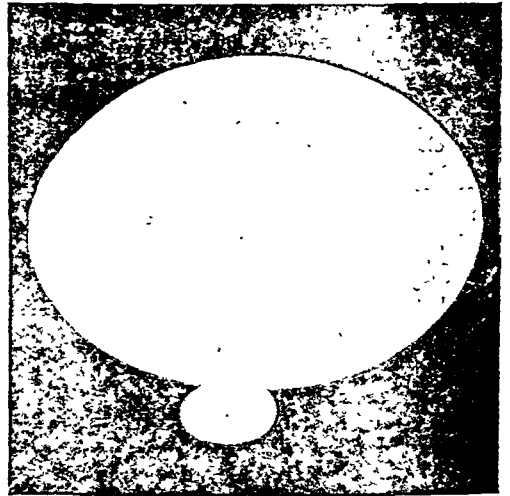
Although we can speak of the Aeolic race, and of an Aeolic colony, the name is specially applied to one of the three chief dialects of the Greek language (Aeolic, Doric, Ionic).

**aeon** (ē' ōn), *n.* An age or era; an immeasurable period of time; eternity; a being issuing from the Supreme Being. (F. *période, éternité, éon*.)

Aeon (*aïon*) is a Greek word meaning an age or an indefinitely long period of time; it is also used in the sense of eternity. A sect of people in early Christian days called Gnostics used the term aeons for eternal beings which they maintained issued from the Supreme Being (God) and had a share in creating and governing the universe.

Tennyson, in "In Memoriam," refers to hills as aeonian (ē ō' nī ān, *adj.*), meaning everlasting or eternal.

Gr. *aïon*, *L. aevum*.



Aepyornis.—The huge egg of this great bird which once lived in Madagascar, compared with that of a hen.

**aepyornis** (ē pi ōr' nis), *n.* A huge bird, now extinct, which lived in Madagascar. (F. *aepyornis*.)

The largest eggs ever seen were laid by this gigantic ostrich-like bird; they were about 12 inches long and 9 inches across. Fossil remains of the bird show that it was about 14 feet high, or twice the height of an ostrich.

Gr. *aipys* tall, *ornis* bird.

**aerate** (ā' ér āt), *v.t.* To charge with air or carbonic acid gas. (F. *aérer*.)

The commonest example of aeration (ā ér ā' shūn, *n.*) is the production of soda water, often called aerated (ā ér ā' tēd, *part. adj.*)

water. Carbonic acid gas is pumped into water under pressure by an aerator (ā ēr' ā tōr, n.) and dissolved. The fizziness is due to the escape of this imprisoned gas.

Gr. *L. aēr* air, and *-ate* (from p.p. *L. -atus*).

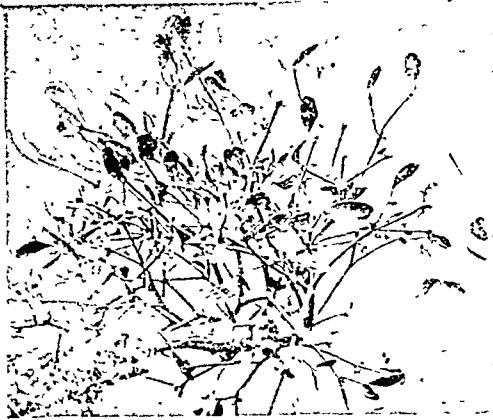
**aerenchyma** (ā ēr eng' ki mā), *n.* Plant tissue containing numerous air spaces.

The stems of many marsh and water plants, such as the arrowhead and the water lily, contain many air spaces, which not only supply the thin-walled cells with air, but render the plants very light and buoyant. Such a mass of cells and air-spaces is called aerenchyma, or aerated tissue.

Gr. *aēr* air, *en* in, *hyma* something poured (from *khein* to pour).

**aerial** [ī] (ā ēr' i āl), *adj.* Belonging to the air; living, growing, or happening in the air; rising aloft in the air; light as air. (*F. aérien.*)

Winds are aerial currents; mistletoe is an aerial plant, since its roots are high in the air in the branches of trees; a balloon makes aerial voyages; a swallow lives an aerial life. The method of making objects in the background of a picture appear more distant than those in the foreground by giving them softer colours and less distinct outlines is called aerial perspective (ā ēr' i āl per spek' tiv, n.).



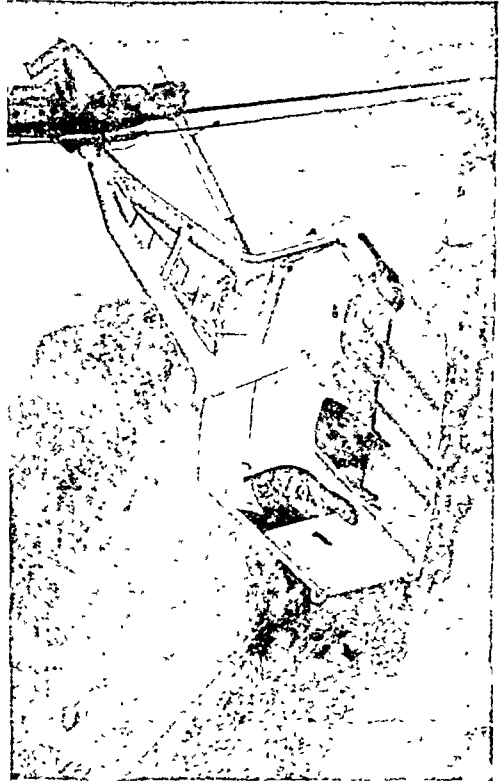
**Aerial.**—The mistletoe is one of the plants for which this term is used, because its roots are in the branches of trees and therefore aerial.

An aerial railway (*n.*) is a rail supported at a distance from the ground, so that carriages running on it may hang in the air. There is an aerial railway between Elberfeld and Vohwinkel, in Germany. It has two tracks, is eight and a quarter miles long, and for part of its length runs over a river.

An aerial ropeway (*n.*) or aerial cableway (*n.*) is a strong steel cable supported at its ends only, or at points in between also, to carry loads across valleys, rivers, and rough country. The loads may be moved by the carrying rope itself, or may run along the rope, in which case a separate hauling rope is used.

The longest ropeway in the world is in Argentina. During its course of 21½ miles it rises 12,500 feet. Some of the towers carrying it are over 140 feet high, and some of the spans over half a mile long.

The Zugspitze aerial ropeway, which climbs to the summit of the mountain in the



**Aerial ropeway.** The passenger car which takes tourists to and from the summit of the Zugspitze, the highest point of the Bavarian Alps.

Bavarian Alps after which it is named, travels to a height of 9,720 feet. Previous to its opening in 1926 those who wished to make the ascent took ten or eleven hours to do so and the journey was by no means easy. There are various stations along the route.

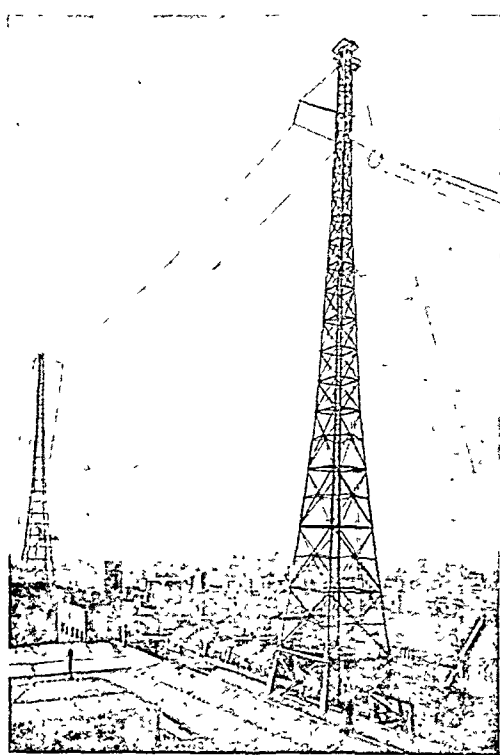
Cableways are very useful in bridge building. Before work could be begun on the bridge spanning the Zambezi gorge near the Victoria Falls, a cableway had to be put up to carry materials. A cord was shot across with a rocket, and this drew over a small steel rope. The engineer in charge then made the first journey, swinging 400 feet above the boiling torrent below.

At last a cable able to bear a strain of 275 tons was stretched between high towers on either side of the gorge, and over this passed more than 100,000 tons of steel and other materials.

*L. aërius* aerial, from Gr. *L. aēr* air.

**aerial** [2] (ā ēr' i āl), *n.* A wire or wires for sending out or catching the waves used in wireless telegraphy and telephony. (F. *fil aérien*.)

An ordinary aerial has one end high in the air and the other connected with the sending or receiving apparatus. A frame aerial is a



**Aerial.**—The aerial and steel masts of one of the stations of the British Broadcasting Corporation.

large, flat coil of wire wound on a frame which can be turned to point in any direction. Both ends of the coil are joined to the instrument. A frame aerial sends and receives signals most strongly edgewise.

L. *aërius*, from Gr. L. *aēr* air.

**aerie** (ar' i), *n.* The nest of a bird of prey, especially of an eagle; its young. Other spellings are **aery**, (ār' i), **eyrie**, (i' ri), and **eyry** (i' ri). (F. *aïre*.)

Formerly it was often stated in books that such birds of prey as golden eagles and peregrine falcons built their aeries on a ledge of some inaccessible cliff. Modern naturalists, however, have often taken photographs of such aeries. The usual spelling nowadays is **aerie**, although Shakespeare spelt it **aiery**. The word is also used to describe a house built high up on a hill or rock.

L. *area* open space, the spelling perhaps being influenced by a fancied connexion with L. *aërius* aerial.

**aeriform** (ā ēr i fōrm), *adj.* Having the nature of air or other gas or being gaseous. (F. *aéiforme*.)

Gr. L. *aēr* air, L. *forma* form.

**aero-** (ā ēr ō). A prefix meaning having to do with the air; it is used particularly of man's flying. It occurs in such words as **aerodrome**, **aeronaut**, and **aeroplane**.

Gr. L. *aēr* air.

**aerobatics** (ā ēr ō bat' iks), *n.* Acrobatics in the air. (F. *aérobatique*.)

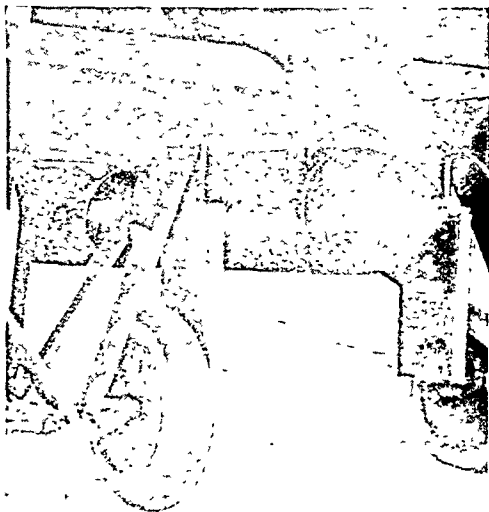
Certain feats with an aeroplane which are part of the training of every military airman, such as looping the loop, the "falling leaf," and the half-roll, are known as aerobatics. The first man to carry out aerobatics was M. Pégoud, a French airman, who used to go up in an aeroplane, jump off with a parachute, and leave the machine to look after itself.

The story goes that one day M. Blériot, the man who first flew the English Channel, noticed that the aeroplane turned head over heels several times and landed right way up, undamaged. "If the aeroplane can do that by itself," he said to Pégoud, "it ought to do it better still if you are in it." Pégoud took the hint and was soon giving the first show of aerobatics by looping the loop.

Gr. *aēr* air, *batein* to walk, tread, ultimately from *bainein* to go.

**aerobomb** (ā ēr ō bom), *n.* A bomb for dropping from aircraft. (F. *lance-bombe*.)

An aerobomb is shaped like a torpedo, and has vanes at the tail end. These enable it to remain nose downwards as it falls. They also make it spin and set free a safety-pin, which, when the bomb strikes, allows another pin to move and explode the bomb. The



**Aerobomb.**—It is shown in position beneath the aeroplane. The vanes at the tail end keep it upright when released.

bomb has inside it a charge of explosive, or of some fire-making material, or of poisonous gas. The largest bombs yet made weigh about two tons. One of them would wreck a battleship if it hit it.

E. *aero-* and *bōmb*.

**aero-camera** (ā'ēr ō kām'ēr ā), *n.* A special kind of camera carried on aircraft for taking photographs from the air of country, scenes, or buildings. (F. *chambre aérienne*.)

During the World War aero-cameras were very useful for mapping country held by the enemy. In peace they are used for making surveys. They are fitted with devices which expose films at equal spaces of time and number them so that the prints made from them may be joined together in their proper order.

E. *aero-* and *camera*.

**aerodart** (ā'ēr ō dart), *n.* A small steel arrow dropped from aircraft on the enemy in war.

The use of these darts was soon given up, as they could not be aimed, and very seldom hit an enemy.

E. *aero-* and *dart*.

**aerodrome** (ā'ēr ō drōm), *n.* A large, level, open space of prepared ground where aircraft start and land. (F. *aérodrome*.)

A large aerodrome has round it, besides many sheds for housing aeroplanes, workshops in which repairs can be done, waiting-rooms, offices, and a wireless station for signalling to pilots of aircraft. At night the landing-places are marked out by electric lights placed under sheets of thick glass, sunk level with the ground; and a lighthouse sends out a strong beam to guide the airmen. At Croydon, Le Bourget (near Paris), Brussels, Dubendorf (near Cologne), Basel (Switzerland), and at other aerodromes where aircraft from other countries land, there is a custom-house where duties on goods brought in have to be paid. Such aerodromes are called airports.

See hippodrome. Gr. *aēr* air, *dromos* running, course.

**aerodynamics** (ā'ēr ō dī nām'iks), *n.* The science which treats of the behaviour of air and other gases when pressed upon or pressing on something else. (F. *aérodynamique*.)

A study of aerodynamics helps people to answer questions such as these: What is the best form of sail for a windmill? What is the best curve for an aeroplane's wing? Does a two-bladed airscrew push as hard as a four-bladed? How should an airship be shaped to pass through the air with the greatest ease?

E. *aero-* and *dynamics*.

**aerodyne** (ā'ēr ō dīn), *n.* A heavier-than-air flying machine. See aeroplane.

E. *aero-* and *dyne*, from Gr. *dyn-*amis power.

**aero-engine** (ā'ēr ō en jīn), *n.* An engine used to drive an airship or aeroplane. (F. *machine aérienne*.)

It is very lightly, but strongly, built, and gives one horse-power for every 1½ to 3 lb. of its weight. The largest engine yet made weighs not much more than a ton, but has as

much power as a large railway engine. The cylinders of an engine may be in line, like those of a motor-car, and be cooled by water; or they may stick out from the centre part, like spokes of a wheel, and be kept cool by the air. Aero-engines run on petrol.

To find out how long an engine could work without having any part changed, one was sealed up and fitted to an aeroplane, which it



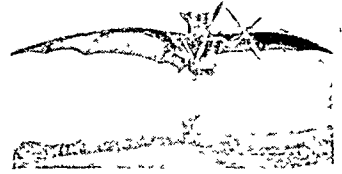
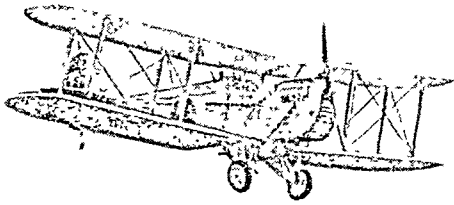
Aero-engine.—Commander R. E. Byrd, attending to one of the three aero-engines of the monoplane in which he flew to the North Pole in 1926.

drove for 25,000 miles—a distance equal to that of a slight right round the earth. It was then taken to pieces and found to be in very good order.

E. *aero-* and *engine*.

**aerofoil** (ā'ēr ō foil), *n.* A curved surface, such as the wing of a bird, or the planes and tail of an aeroplane, which holds





Aeronautics.—The progress made in the science and art of handling aircraft as shown by a modern Blackburne Napier torpedo-carrying aeroplane, and (inset) the steam driven flying machine made by Clement Ader, a Frenchman, in 1890.

something up in the air when forced through the air edgeways. (F. *aile*.)

The second element of the word means "leaf" (F. *feuille*, L. *folium*).

**aerogram** (ā'ēr ō grām), *n.* A message sent by wireless telegraphy; a marconigram. (F. *dépêche par la télégraphie sans fil*.)

E. *aero-* and Gr. *gramma* literally, something written.

**aerolite** (ā'ēr ō lit), *n.* A stone which apparently falls from the air, but which really passes through the air from space beyond. (F. *aérolithe*.)

The term aerolite is often used with the same meaning as meteorite, but it is best applied to that variety of meteorite which consists of stony or other material containing no iron. Another form of the word is aerolith (ā'ēr ō lith). Some aerolithic (ā'ēr ō lith' ik, *adj.*) stones which have reached the earth have been objects of worship.

E. *aero-* and Gr. *lithos* stone.

**aerometer** (ā'ēr om' è tēr), *n.* A device for finding the weight of air and other gases. (F. *aréomètre*.)

E. *aero-* and Gr. *metron* measure.

**aero-motor** (ā'ēr ō mō tōr), *n.* A motor used on aircraft. (F. *moteur pour l'aviation*.) See aero-engine.

E. *aero-* and *motor*.

**aeronaut** (ā'ēr ō nawt), *n.* One who pilots or goes up in a balloon, airship, or aeroplane; an aviator. (F. *aéronaute*.)

The first aeronaut was a Frenchman, François Pilâtre des Roziers, who went up from Paris in a big fire-balloon in the year 1783, taking one passenger with him. When he was starting for his second ascent four men jumped into the car of the balloon, drew their swords, and, after daring anyone

to try to pull them out, cut the ropes holding the balloon. Their aeronautical (ā'ēr ō naw' tīk āl, *adj.*) voyage made them the heroes of the hour, and the Paris crowds cheered them as loudly as, a hundred and forty-four years later, they cheered Colonel Lindbergh after his flight from New York to Paris.

The science and art of handling balloons and other aircraft is aeronautics (ā'ēr ō naw' tīks, *n.*). In the early days of aeronautics the people of Paris scarcely talked about anything else, for they believed that balloons could carry them anywhere, even to the moon. Some folk who had never seen a balloon go up would not believe that one could rise, and among them was a nobleman, eighty-three years of age. When he saw the first gas-balloon sailing through the air, he fell on his knees and, with tears running down his face, cried: "Yes! It is a fact! Men will find out even how to conquer death; but alas, not till I myself am dead!"

When this balloon landed out in the country, the peasants, thinking it some awful monster from the skies, fell upon it with pitchforks, stones and scythes, and tore it to pieces. See aviator.

E. *aero-* and Gr. *nautēs*, L. *nauta* sailor.

**aerophyte** (ā'ēr ō fīt), *n.* An air-plant. (F. *aérophYTE*.)

In the shady forests of Africa, Asia, and America, where it is very hot and moist, there are plants whose roots never touch the soil. These are air-plants or aerophytes. They hang from the branches of the trees, drawing their life from the decaying parts of the bark, and from the air. Many wonderful orchids and some lichens are air-plants.

E. *aero-* and Gr. *phylon* plant.

# AEROPLANES RIVAL THE BIRDS

*The Amazing Success of Flying-machines that are Heavier than Air*

**aeroplane** (ä' èr ò plān), *n.* A heavier-than-air flying-machine with fixed wings. (*F. aéroplane, avion.*)

There are various kinds of aeroplanes. A machine with wheels under it which make it able to start from and alight on land is called a land aeroplane. A seaplane has a body like that of a land aeroplane, but has floats instead of wheels, so that it may rise from water. A flying-boat has a boat-shaped body which rests on the water. An amphibian is an aeroplane which can rise from or alight on either water or land. An aeroplane which has its airscrew in front of the wings is called a tractor aeroplane; in a pusher aeroplane the air-screw is behind the planes. A monoplane has one tier of wings; a biplane, two tiers; a triplane, three tiers. Some monoplanes are built almost entirely of metal.

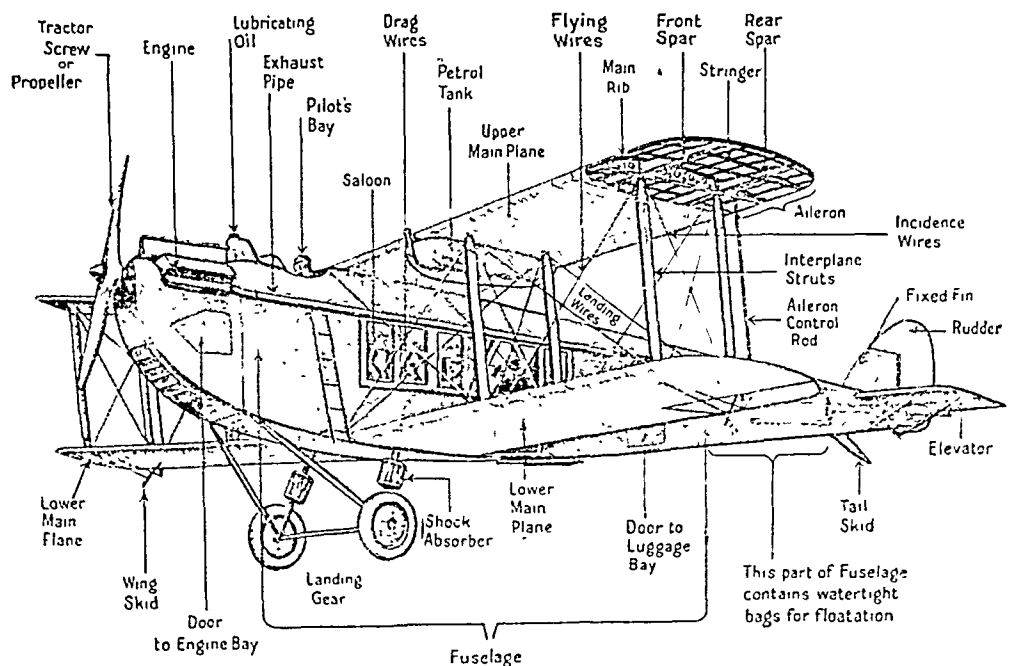
The first flight made with an aeroplane is held to be that of Clément Ader, a Frenchman, on October 11th, 1890, when he flew 150 feet in a machine driven by a steam-engine and having wings like those of a bird. The first flights with a straight-winged aeroplane using a petrol motor took place in December, 1903, at Kitty Hawk, in North Carolina. They were made by the brothers Orville and Wilbur Wright in a machine that had to be started by being drawn along a rail by a falling

weight, as it had no wheels. For a long time people in Europe would not believe that the Wrights had flown, though their flights had been seen by many persons in America. In 1907 the Wrights went to France and showed what they could do by flying 97 miles without landing.

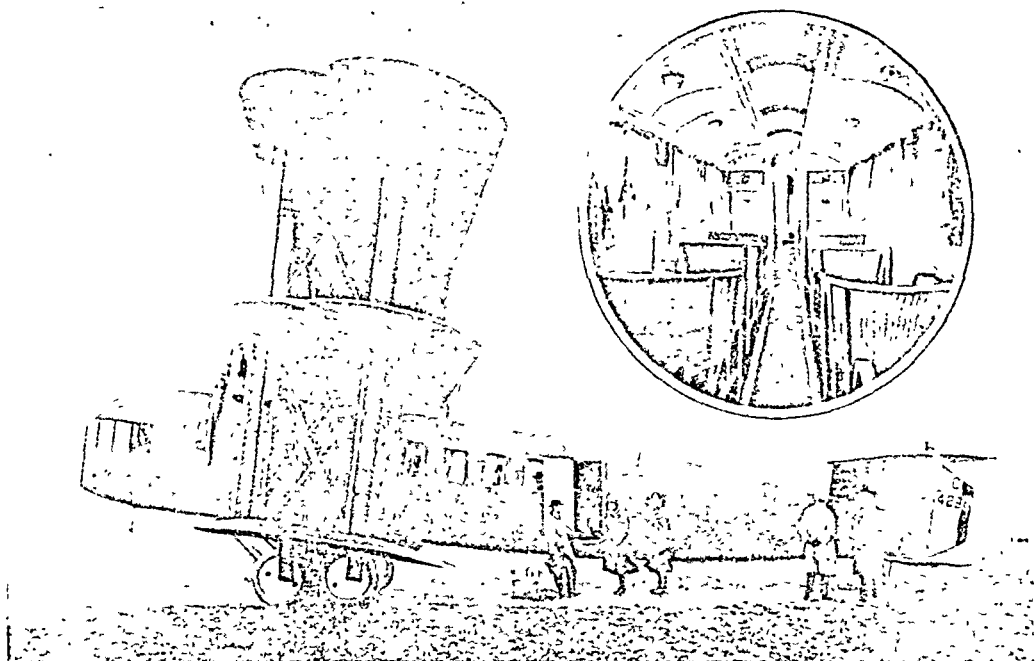
Rivals of the Wrights mounted their aeroplanes on wheels, to make starting and landing possible on any flat open space. Later on the aeroplane's body was covered over, except for the pilot's cockpit, so that it should move with greater ease through the air.

The World War led to a rapid increase in the power and speed of aeroplanes, as each side did its utmost to bring out faster machines than the other. At the beginning of the War Britain had only a dozen or two very slow aeroplanes, hardly fit for fighting. When peace was declared she had over 3,000 in the field, besides many thousands in reserve. They ranged from the small one-man "scout," able to fly at 160 miles an hour, to the huge bomber with its load of two tons of bombs, and to the yet larger flying-boat, 130 feet across, carrying a small aeroplane on its back.

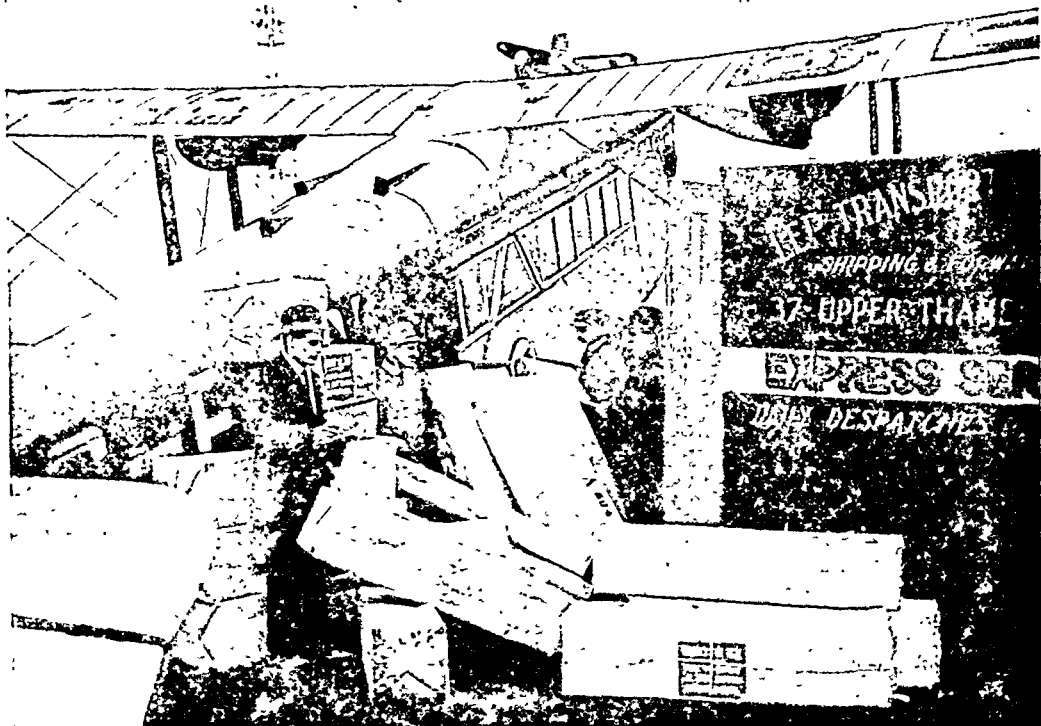
Since the World War most attention has been given to the aeroplane for taking mails



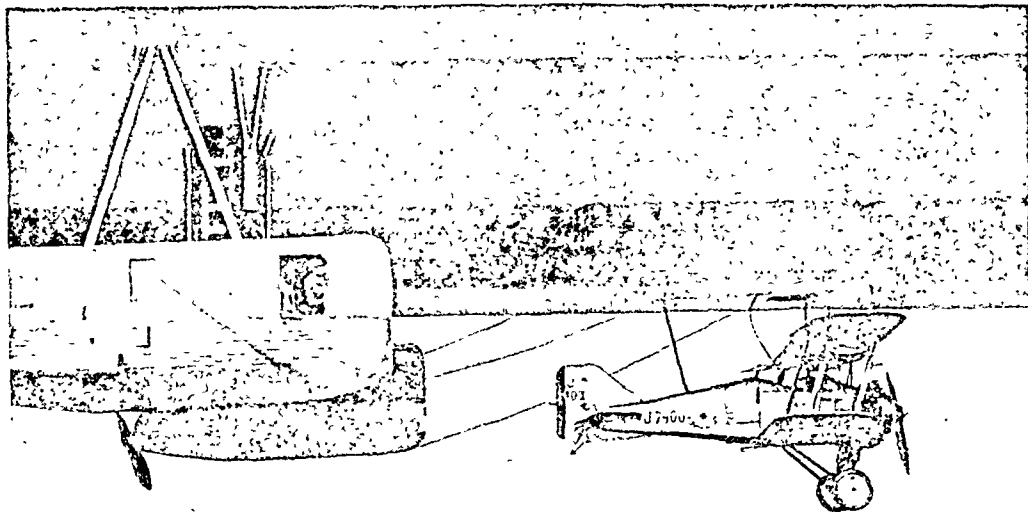
Aeroplane.—A picture diagram of the principal parts of a modern aeroplane. The first commercial passenger-plane flew from Hounslow to Paris on August 25th, 1919.



Aeroplane.—A Bristol triplane Pullman about to start on its journey "up above the world so high." The small picture shows the comfortable saloon for passengers.



Aeroplane.—Loading a cross-Channel aeroplane.—Before 1924 there were several British air-lines, in March of that year they were merged into Imperial Airways, Ltd., which operates daily over 1,200 miles of routes between London and the Continent, and has a weekly service between Cairo and Basra.



**Aeroplane.**—A fighting biplane attached to an airship before being launched in mid-air. The pilot gets into his machine by means of the little trap-door immediately above the upper main plane.

and passengers, such as is used on airways. A big "liner," driven by two, three, or four engines, has a cosy covered-in cabin with large windows through which the dozen or more passengers, seated in their armchairs, can watch the scene below. Behind the cabin is the baggage-room; in front of it is the pilot's cockpit, which contains a wireless set, with which the pilot can speak to stations on the ground, and many control instruments.

It may be thought than an aeroplane is always trying to upset, and must be difficult to balance. But this is by no means the case. During the World War a British aeroplane, whose pilot had been killed, flew by itself more than 100 miles and then landed undamaged.

The aeroplane has conquered the air. It has climbed skyward 40,000 feet, moved at speeds up to 300 miles an hour, and kept aloft for as many as fifty hours.

*E. aéro- and plane, from L. planum level surface.*



**Aeroplane.**—Immediately after the launch. The biplane dropping away from the airship.

**aerostat** (ā' er ô stăt), *n.* A machine that supports itself in the air, a balloon, or an airship, as distinct from a heavier-than-air flying-machine, as an aeroplane. (*F. aérostat.*)

The first man-carrying aerostat was the fire-balloon which ascended at Paris on November 21st, 1783. **Aerostatics** (ā er ô stăt' icks, *n.*) is the science which deals with the reasons for bodies being supported in gases. The word is used most often when speaking of balloons. **Aerostation** (ā er ô stā' shūn, *n.*) means the art of handling balloons in the air.

*E. aéro- and Gr. statos placed, made to stand.*

**aery** (ā' er i), *adj.* Visionary, ethereal; not substantial. (*F. visionnaire, imaginative.*) Milton, in "Comus," talks of "aery tongues"—not real but visionary.

*L. aëreus in the air. SYN.: Ethereal, incorporeal, spiritual, unreal, visionary. ANT.: Bodily, corporeal, fleshly, physical, substantial.*

**aery** (ā' er i). Another spelling of aerie. See aerie.

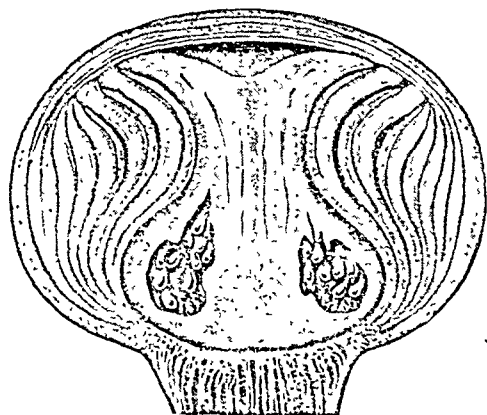
**Aesculapius** (ēs kū lā' pi ūs), *n.* The Roman name for the Greek god of medicine, Asclepius; a doctor. (F. *Esculape*.)

So skilful was Aesculapius in the art of healing that Zeus, the chief of the gods, fearing that he might make mankind immortal, killed him with a thunderbolt. After his death marvellous cures were effected at his most famous shrine, at Epidaurus, on the Saronic Gulf. His symbol was a staff with a snake (the emblem of renewing) twined round it. Anything to do with Aesculapius or with the art of healing may be described as Aesculapian (ēs kū lā' pi ān, *adj.*).

**aesthete** (ēs' thēt), *n.* An appreciator of the beautiful in art or nature; a lover of beauty. (F. *esthéticien*.)

The aesthete has a keen eye for the beautiful in nature or art, and would have only beautiful things everywhere. Sometimes such a person lays so much emphasis on the value of beauty that he appears ridiculous to others. When we regard something from the standpoint of the beautiful, our point of view is said to be **aesthetic** (ēs thet' ik, *adj.*). **Aesthetical** (ēs thet' ik āl, *adj.*) or **aesthetic studies** relate to the science of beautiful things—a science known as **aesthetics** (ēs thet' iks, *n.*), while anything performed in a way which has regard for the beautiful is **aesthetically** (ēs thet' ik āl li, *adv.*) done. Devotion to the study of aesthetics is known as **aestheticism** (ēs thet' is izm, *n.*). John Ruskin spent his life trying to bring home to people the love of beauty in buildings, paintings, manners, and conduct.

Gr. *aisthētikos* keenly perceptive, from *aisthesthai* to perceive.



**Aestivation.**—A section of the bud of the yellow water lily, showing how the interior is arranged.

**aestivate** (ēs' ti vāt; ēs' ti vāt), *v.i.* To spend the summer. (F. *passer l'été*.)

The word is also used to describe the habit of certain animals spending the summer, or dry season, in slumber. While the alligators of North America bury themselves in the mud

in winter, those of Brazil display a similar habit in the hottest and driest part of the year. This is called **aestivation** (ēs ti vā' shūn, *n.*). In botany, aestivation describes the way the interior of a bud is folded or arranged before the petals open in summer.

*L. aestivus* summerlike, from *aestas* summer.

**aether** (ē'thēr). This is another spelling of ether. See ether.

**aetiology** (ē ti ol' ō ji), *n.* The science or philosophy of causes, especially of the origins of diseases. (F. *étiologie*.)

There can be no effect without a cause, although the effect may be material and visible, the cause spiritual and invisible. For example, the spinning earth on which we live is only an effect; the cause was the great Mind which planned and created it, whom we call God. The World War (1914-18) was a terrible effect arising from an apparently small and remote cause—the assassination of a man at Sarajevo.

What causes the dreadful scourge of consumption? A tiny microbe or germ, so small that it cannot be seen without the help of a powerful microscope and then sometimes escapes the lens. Thus we see that great effects sometimes arise from small causes, or the exact opposite may be the case. Men of science, when they note some strange or unusual effect, at once deal with its aetiology, and seek to find out the cause.

Anything to do with the science of causes is called **aetiological** (ēt i ō loj' ik āl, *adj.*); and we say that a man studies a subject **aetiotogically** (ēt i ō loj' ik āl li, *adv.*), meaning that he tries to discover the cause or causes from which the effect arises.

Gr. *aitiologia*, from *aitia* cause, *logos* discourse, science (*legen* to speak).

**afar** (ā far'), *adv.* A long way off. (F. *de loin*.)

The word not only means in a distant place, but also expresses distance to or from a place. If you go to Australia you travel afar, and your friends at home are afar off.

E. *a-* = on, A.-S. *feor*, M.E. *fer*. See far.

**affable** (āf' ābl), *adj.* Courteous, pleasant. (F. *affable*.)

The Sixth Form boy who encourages the new boy to step up and talk with him is affable. The King, when he visits a big factory, talks **affably** (āf' ā bli, *adv.*) with the foreman, who goes home and tells his wife of his Sovereign's **affability** (āf ā bil' i ti, *n.*) or **affableness** (āf' ābl nēs, *n.*)

*L. affabilis* easy to talk to, from *ad* to, *fari* to speak. SYN.: Accessible, condescending, familiar, gracious, unreserved. ANT.: Distant, forbidding, haughty, inaccessible, unapproachable.

**affair** (ā far'), *n.* A thing to be done; a concern; a matter. (F. *affaire*.)

This word is used of many things. Among special senses, a duel is an affair of honour.

and a military engagement, however important to those who took part in it, may go down in history as merely an affair of outposts. In the plural, the word means business, either public or private. The statesman and the merchant are both men of affairs, and the affairs of the man who neglects his work are apt to fall into disorder.

O.F. *à faire* anything to do, be done; L. *ad* to, *facere* to do. SYN.: Business, event, incident, matter, skirmish. ANT.: Detail, item.

**affect** (à fekt'), *v.t.* To assume or tend to assume; to pretend; to have a liking for; to act upon; to impress. (F. *affecter*.)

The criminal flying from justice may affect a disguise. A man may affect to know something of which he is ignorant. A ghost in a story may affect or take the form of a horse. A man of learning may affect a peculiar costume. An appearance or manner adopted as a pretence is called an **affection** (äf fēk tā' shūn, *n.*), while anyone acting in this unnatural way in order to impress someone else is said to be **affected** (äf fēkt' ēd, *adj.*) or to be acting **affectedly** (äf fēkt' ēd lī, *adv.*) or with **affectedness** (äf fēkt' ēd nēs, *n.*).

In an altogether different sense the word **affect** may mean to attack; to touch or move; to have an effect on, to act upon. A cold may affect your throat and consequently your voice. The sight of a child or an animal in pain affects the mind. A memory or a scene that brings tears to our eyes is **affecting** (äf fēkt' ing, *adj.*) and acts **affectingly** (äf fēkt' ing lī, *adv.*) on your emotions.

L. *affectare* to have an effect upon, frequentative of *affectere*, from *af-* = *ad* to, *facere* to do (p.p. *affectus*). SYN.: Assume, crave, influence, pretend, touch. ANT.: Dislike, repel, shun, spurn.

**affection** (ä fēk' shūn), *n.* Attachment; love; an illness. (F. *affection*, *maladie*.)

The affection a man has for his country will inspire him to perform brave deeds. A patient may suffer from an affection of the spine. Anything relating to the affections, or having affections, is said to be **affectional** (ä fēk' shūn āl, *adj.*), or, if it is emotional, **affective** (ä fēkt' iv, *adj.*). Because they are

fond of home and love their owners, cats are said to be **affectionate** (ä fēk' shūn āt, *adj.*). Relatives and close friends write and talk to one another **affectionately** (ä fēk' shūn āt lī, *adv.*), and show **affectionateness** (ä fēk' shūn āt nēs, *n.*).

See **affect**. SYN.: Ailment, devotion, fondness, passion, quality. ANT.: Disaffection, hate, indifference, repulsion.

**afferent** (äf' fer ēnt), *adj.* Conducting inwards or towards. (F. *afferent*.)

The brain receives and gives out messages through the nerves. Those nerves that carry messages to the brain are called **afferent** nerves.

L. *afferre*, to carry to, from *af-* = *ad* to, *ferre* to carry.

**affettuoso** (a fet tū ō' sō), *adv.* With feeling. (F. *affectueux-ment*.)

A musical term indicating that the passage is to be played tenderly or softly.

Ital. from L. *affectare*.

**affiance** (a fi' āns), *n.* Faith, trust, a promise to marry. *v.t.* To promise in marriage. (F. *fiançailles*.)

The pledging of one's word of faith in marriage is **affiance**. Couples who are engaged may be described as **affianced** (ä fi' ānsd, *part. adj.*).

In the British Isles an engagement is announced with little ceremony. Sometimes a notice will appear in the newspapers, but more often than not the only sign given

to the outside world is the wearing of a ring on the third finger of the left hand of the bride-to-be. Gifts are usually exchanged, and formerly a coin was often broken in two, each party taking half. The couple also pledged each other in a cup of wine, as the Jews and Russians do still. On the Continent the pair usually plight their troth before witnesses, and in many countries the affianced woman is distinguished by some peculiarity of dress. Some countries have other customs. One of the most curious occurs in Czecho-Slovakia, where a young man who comes from a good family is expected to walk about in a wonderfully embroidered apron, presented to him by the lady he has promised to marry.

O.F. *afiance*, L.L. *fidare* to trust, pledge, L. *fidere* from *fides* faith, troth. SYN.: Betrothal, confidence, faith, homage, trust. ANT.: Disloyalty, distrust, suspicion.



Affection.—Mother love was never more beautifully depicted than in this portrait by Madame Vigée-Lebrun of herself and daughter.

**affiche** (ăf fēsh'), *n.* A poster or placard. (F. *affiche*.)

A paper of any kind that is posted up for people to read is an affiche.

F. à to, *ficher* to nail, fasten; Ital. *afficare*, ultimately from L. *affigere* to affix.

**affidavit** (ăf fi dā' vit), *n.* A statement in writing, declared on oath to be true. (F. *déclaration sous serment*.)

It may happen that a firm which has adopted a well-known name or trade-mark for its goods, applies to a High Court judge to make an order preventing a rival firm from selling the same kind of article under a similar name. In such a case the judge would not always require the persons giving evidence to attend the court but would take their statements in the form of an affidavit.

It might also happen that a witness was unable to attend owing to illness or absence abroad and his evidence would be laid before the judge in a similar way.

L.L. *affidavit*, he has declared on oath. See *affiance*.

**affiliate** (ă fil' i āt), *v.t.* To adopt (as a son); to connect (with); to attach (to). (F. *adopter*, *affilier*.)

A society affiliates persons as members; it may also affiliate smaller societies as branches. A lawn tennis club which can be attached to the Lawn Tennis Association is *affiliable* (ă fil' i ābl, *adj.*), and the act of its adoption as a member of the Association is *affiliation* (ă fil' i ā shūn, *n.*).

L.L. p.p. of *affiliare*, from *af* = *ad* to, *filius* son. SYN.: Adopt, associate, connect. ANT.: Disjoin, separate, sever.

**affined** (ă find'), *adj.* Connected; related. (F. *allié*.)

Persons who are related to one another by marriage and people bound together by some common tie are *affined*. Brothers and sisters are related (by blood) but a wife is *affined* to her husband and his relations.

**affinity** (ă fin' i ti), *n.* Relationship through marriage; kinship; liking. (F. *affinité*.)

This word describes the kind of relationship existing between husband and wife, that is, secured through marriage. We may also speak of someone having a natural affinity, or liking, for painting or carpentry. Two cricketers may be joined in affinity through their love of the game. In chemistry, the property of attraction by which elements unite to form a new compound is called affinity.

L. *affinitas*, from *affinis* bordering on, from *af* = *ad* to, *fins* end, border. SYN.: Attraction, kin, likeness, relationship, resemblance, sympathy. ANT.: Antagonism, antipathy; repugnance.

**affirm** (ă fērm'), *v.t.* To assert; to confirm. *v.i.* To make a solemn declaration. (F. *affirmer*.)

Something more than to make a statement is meant by *affirm*. The headmaster says that school will start a week earlier than

usual, but the Prime Minister affirms that whatever happens Great Britain will keep her word. A statement agreeing with another one is said to be *affirmative* (ă fērm' ā tiv, *adj.*), and to say "Yes" is to answer in the affirmative or *affirmatively* (ă fērm' ā tiv li, *adv.*).

In law *affirm* means to make a solemn declaration. Some people think it wrong to take an oath. They therefore make what is known as an *affirmation* (ă fēr mā' shūn, *n.*) and their statement is said to be *affirmable* (ă fērm' ābl, *adj.*). The confirmation of a decision given by a judge is called an *affirmance* (ă fērm' āns, *n.*).

L. *affirmare*, from *af* = *ad* to, *firmare* to make strong (*firmus*). SYN.: Allege, assert, confirm, declare. ANT.: Contradict, deny, dispute, negative.



**Affix.**—The last item in the dressing of a diver is the affixing of the helmet.

**affix** (ă fiks', *v.*; āf' fiks, *n.*), *v.t.* To fasten; to attach; to add to. *n.* An addition. (F. *apposer*, *attacher*, *ajouter*; *affixe*.)

You may affix a lock to the lid of your desk, or affix a postage stamp to an envelope. You may be requested to affix your signature to your season-ticket. Anything that is added or appended may be referred to as an affix, but the term is specially applied to a word or syllable added to the beginning (a prefix) or end (a suffix), of another word such as *re*-address, *helpful*. The act of fastening a lock on a door may be called an *affixture* (ă fiks' tūr, *n.*).

L. *affigere*, from *af* = *ad* to, on, *figere* to fix (p.p. *affixus*). SYN.: Append, attach, fasten, join. ANT.: Detach, remove, separate, unfasten.

**afflatus** (ä flā' tūs), *n.* Inspiration; poetic impulse. (F. *inspiration*.)

Inspiration, or poetic impulse, is the feeling or state of mind which causes a poet or an orator to pour out an eloquent stream of written or spoken words. For example, Shelley was in a state of afflatus when he wrote his beautiful "Ode to a Skylark"; he could not have written it otherwise. This figurative Latin term, like "inspiration," literally means that the person to whom it is applied is breathed upon by a god or other supernatural being.

L. *afflatus*, p.p. of *afflare*, from *af-* = *ad* to, on, *flare* to blow.

**afflict** (ä flikt'), *v.t.* To trouble; to impose pain on. (F. *affliger*.)

A plague afflicts a country because of the suffering and misery it causes. The misery endured by the inhabitants of the country is an affliction (ä flik' shün, *n.*) and the inhabitants can be described as afflicted (ä flikt' ed, *adj.*) people. Anything causing distress or bringing about a calamity is referred to as afflictive (ä flik' tiv, *adj.*) or afflicting (ä flikt' ing, *adj.*), and may be said to act afflictively (ä flik' tiv li, *adv.*) or afflictingly (ä flikt' ing li, *adv.*).

L. *affligere*, from *af-* = *ad*, *stige* to strike, dash down (p.p. *afflictus*). SYN.: Distress, harrow, pain, plague, trouble. ANT.: Bless, console, gladden, please.

**affluent** (äf' flü ent), *adj.* Flowing freely; wealthy. *n.* Tributary. (F. *affluent*; *riche*.)

Water pouring through a sluice-gate on a river is affluent. Money, too, sometimes flows freely, and thus a man who is very rich can be described as affluent. Water runs affluently (äf' flü ent li, *adv.*) when you turn the tap full on. A millionaire is said to live in affluence (äf' flü ens, *n.*).

The river Colne is an affluent or a tributary of the Thames.

L. *affluere*, from *af-* = *ad* to, *fluere* to flow. SYN.: Plentiful, rich, wealthy. ANT.: Impoverished, poor, scarce.

**afflux** (äf' flüks), *n.* A flowing towards. (F. *afflux*, *affluence*.)

Being suspended in the air with your head downwards, would cause an afflux of blood to your head. Before a storm we may notice an afflux of clouds on the horizon. When Colonel Lindbergh flew across the Atlantic there was an afflux of people in Paris to greet him.

L. *affluere*, p.p. *afflurus*, from *af-* = *ad* to, *fluere* to flow.

**afford** (ä förd'), *v.t.* To be able to buy; to provide. (F. *avoir le moyen de, offrir*.)

You want a new pair of boots, but unless you can spare the money you cannot afford them. A hill affords a good view of the plains around.



Affliction.—As pictured by Walter Langley in his famous painting. "Men must work and women must weep."

A.-S. *geforthian*, M.E. *aforthen* to further, furnish. SYN.: Bestow, contribute, offer, supply. ANT.: Deny, grudge, stint, withhold.

**afforest** (ä for' est), *v.t.* To turn waste or other ground into forest. (F. *convertir en forêt*.)

Large tracts of ground were converted into forests by the early Norman kings in order to provide game preserves and grounds. Science, nowadays, devotes more time to preserving forests than to planting them, but if you should chance to visit the New Forest,



Hampshire, or, more specially, the Black Forest, Germany, in spring-time, you would see nurseries where the seeds of a forest to be tended by another generation are being planted. So, in other parts of the globe, where you will find tree-felling in progress, you will often find tree-planting.

The forest has proved one of man's most useful servants. Apart from providing him with the timber and fuel he so constantly needs, it preserves Mother Earth's moisture, keeps the temperature moderate by avoiding extremes of heat and cold, and affects the humidity of the air.

The work of converting waste land into forest is described as *afforestation* (à for ès tā' shùn, *n.*).

L.L. *afforestare*, from *af-* = *ad* to, *foresta* forest. (F. *forêt*.)

**affranchise** (à frān' chiz), *v.t.* To set at liberty. (F. *affranchir*.)

For thousands of years previous to the nineteenth century it had been the custom to make slaves of men, women, and children of conquered lands, and even of unfortunate people who could not pay their debts, and the world looked upon the slave trade as a necessary part of its commerce. In 1833 Great Britain took the important step of passing a bill to set free all slaves in British colonies.

The act of freeing men from bondage is referred to as *affranchisement* (à frān' chiz mént, *n.*).

O.F. *affranchir*, from *à* to, *franchir* to set free, from L.L. *francus* free.

**affray** (à frā'), *n.* A noisy quarrel; commotion. *v.t.* To frighten. (F. *tumulte; échauffourée*.)

An affray is something more than an ordinary quarrel or fight. Two boys might fight, but that would not be an affray. A fight or noisy squabbling in a public place between the rival supporters of two football clubs would be an affray.

Big battles have often been preceded by a skirmish between advance parties of the rival armies and an unimportant engagement of this sort would be called an affray. The word also means to scare or make afraid.

O.F. *effraier*, to frighten, from L.L. *exfridare* (ex out, L.L. *fridus*, A.-S. *frith* peace, G. *Friede*), lit. to "out-peace," break the peace. SYN.: Disturbance, feud, fight, quarrel, tumult. ANT.: Amity, friendship, peace.

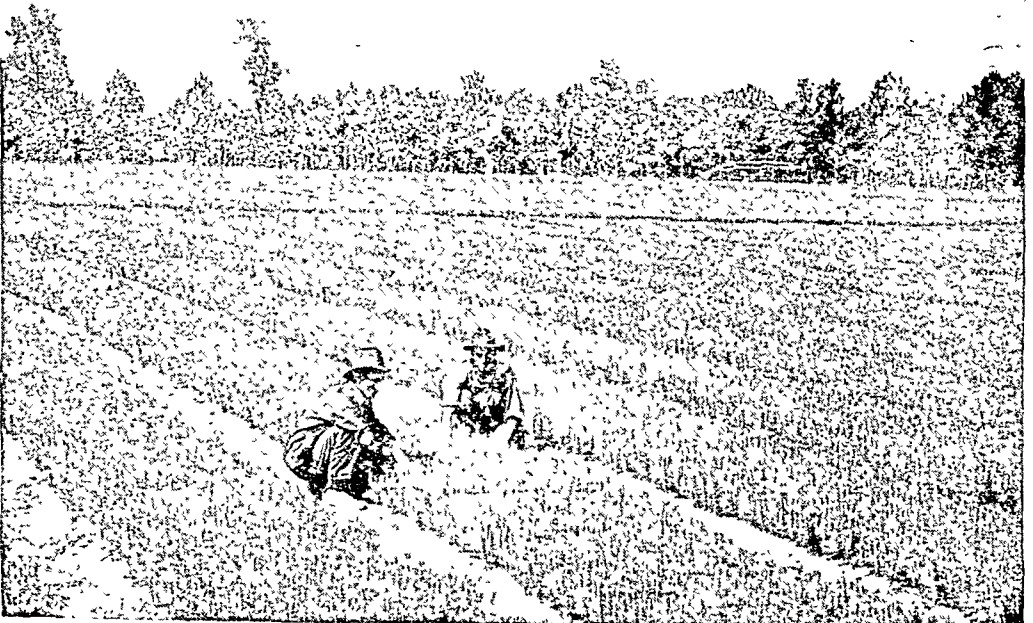
**affright** (à frit'), *n.* Terror; alarm. *v.t.* To frighten. (F. *effroi*.)

The alarm we feel in seeing, for example, a child fall from a chair is affright; so is the cause of our alarm. Anyone who was terrified would probably act *affrightedly* (à frit' éd li, *adv.*).

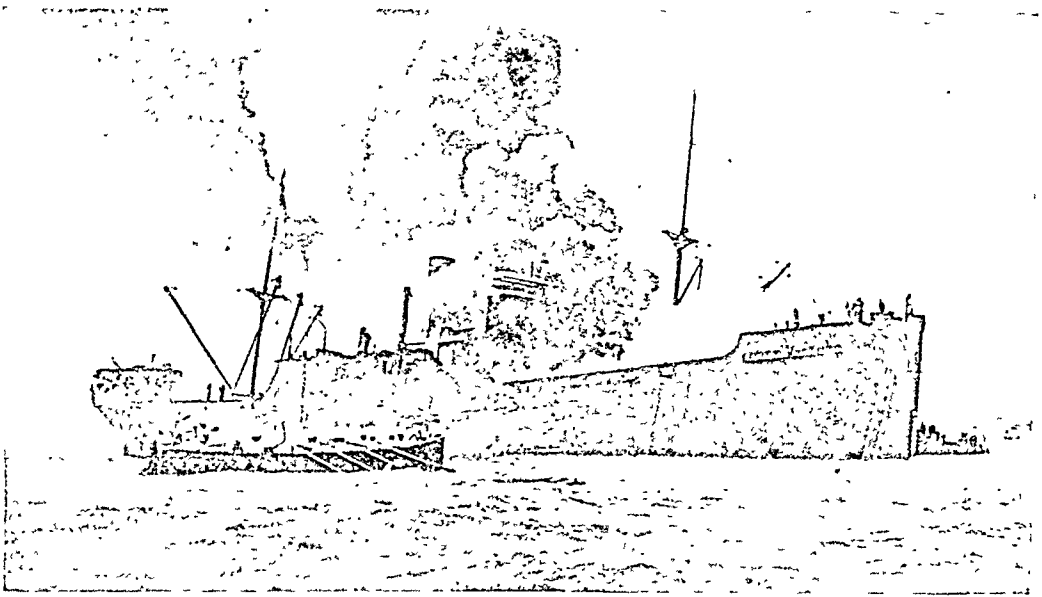
A.-S. *afyrht*, p.p. of *afyrhtan* to frighten, from *a-* (emphatic), *fyrhtan*, M.E. *afright*. SYN.: *n.* Dismay, horror, panic. *v.* Appal, daunt, terrify. ANT.: *n.* Assurance, encouragement, reassurance. *v.* Embolden, inspirit, reassure.

**affront** (à frünt'), *v.t.* To offend deliberately; to insult. *n.* An insult. (F. *insulter*.)

To affront a person one faces him in a hostile and unfriendly manner. If, for instance, a man had his face slapped, he would



**Afforestation.**—Converting waste land into forest in Louisiana, United States, by afforestation. In this field of a little over three acres 7,000,000 pine seedlings have been planted.



**Afire, Aflame, Afloat.**—A cargo ship *afire* off Barbados, in the West Indies. Although *aflame* from stern to stern, the vessel remained *afloat* until she was completely destroyed.

probably feel affronted and might declare that he had been offered a gross affront, or been grossly affronted. If we walked away while someone was talking to us it might be taken as a personal affront, and it might afterwards be said that we had acted affrontingly (*à frünt'ing li, adv.*).

L.L. *affrontare* to confront, from *af* = *ad* to, *frons* (acc. *front-em*) forehead, front SYN.: *v.* Annoy, irritate, molest. *n.* Injury, insult, offence. ANT.: *v.* Conciliate, content, please. *n.* Compliment, homage, respect.

**affusion** (*à fū' zhùn*), *n.* A pouring on. (F. *action de verser, affusion.*)

Affusion occurs when water is poured on a person's head during baptism. It is distinguished from immersion, an old manner of administering that sacrament. The word is also used as a medical term for the treatment sometimes practised in cases of fever, consisting of pouring water (usually lukewarm) on the body of the patient.

L. *affundere*, from *af* = *ad* to, on, *fundere* to pour, p.p. *jusus*.

**afield** (*à fēld'*), *adv.* To, on, or in the field; away from home. (F. *au champ.*)

A football team goes *afield* to meet its opponents. If we take our holidays in, say, Italy we go far *afield*.

E. *a* = on, and *field*.

**afire** (*à fīr'*), *adv.* and *adj.* On fire. (F. *en feu.*)

This word is freely used in a figurative as well as in its literal sense. A house that is burning is said to be *afire*. The sight of the best batsman on your side scoring many runs sets you *afire* with enthusiasm.

E. *a* = on, and *fire*. SYN.: Ablaze, aflame, burning. ANT.: Extinguished, quenched.

**aflame** (*à flām'*), *adj.* and *adv.* In flame. (F. *en flamme.*)

This word has a similar meaning to *afire*. You can refer to a bonfire as being *aflame* when the flames burst through, and anyone who is in a great rage may be said to be *aflame* with passion.

E. *a* = on, and *flame*. SYN.: Ablaze, *afire*, burning. ANT.: Extinguished, quenched.

**afloat** (*à flōt'*), *adj.* and *adv.* Floating. (F. *à flot; en circulation.*)

This word has several shades of meaning. A ship at sea or anything that is floating or in a floating condition is *afloat*. A seaman is *afloat* when he is on the seas. When a storm causes waves to break over a ship, the decks are *afloat*. A man keeps himself *afloat* while he is free from debt. When you hear of some tragic event before it is announced in the newspapers, rumours are *afloat*.

E. *a* = on, and *float*.

**afoot** (*à fut'*), *adv.* On foot; on the move. (F. *à pied, en train.*)

Walking to the spot chosen for a picnic, you travel *afoot*. When you hear a policeman blow his whistle you know that something out of the ordinary is happening or, in other words, that something is *afoot*.

E. *a* = on, and *foot*.

**afore** (*à fōr'*), *adv.* Before. (F. *en avant.*)

This word is not used alone now, but always in combination with other words, such as: **aforementioned** (*à fōr' men shünd, adj.*), mentioned before. Persons or things already mentioned once in, say, a letter or speech, may afterwards be referred to as the *aforementioned*. **Aforenamed** (*à fōr' nāmd, adj.*), meaning named before, and *aforesaid*

(*ā* for' sed, *adj.*), meaning stated previously, are used in the same way as aforementioned. **Aforethought** (*ā* for' thawt, *adj.*) means thought out beforehand. A judge's view of a crime often depends on whether he is of opinion that it was committed with malice aforethought, *i.e.*—whether it was planned beforehand. **Aforetime** (*ā* for' tim, *adv.*) means previously. As a noun it means time past.

E. *a-* = on, A.-S. *fore* first, before; A.-S. *onforan*.



African.—An African girl having her hair dressed by her mother.

**a fortiori** (*ā* for' shi ōr' ī), *adv.* With stronger reason. (F. *à plus forte raison*.)

This is a term used to introduce a statement which must very obviously be true if one previously made is accepted as being true. A man could not save £50 in a certain time; *a fortiori* he could not save £200.

L. *a* from, *fortiori* (ratione, stronger (reason)).

**afraid** (*a* frād'), *adj.* Frightened. (F. *effrayé*.)

Nelson was a very frail lad when he first went to sea. Before he had been aloft a week the Captain called him on deck and, pointing to the mast, ordered him aloft. Nelson hesitated and, noticing this, the Captain asked him if he was afraid. "Yes, sir," Nelson replied, "I am afraid, but I'm going to the top of the mast," and, his teeth chattering, he did as he was told.

He remembered this incident in later years, and when he was given command of a ship he ordered all the boys who had just joined to fall in on deck and then raced them to the top of the mast.

The original form of the word was *agraved*. *See* *afraid*. *Syn.*: Anxious, fearful, frightened, timid. *Ant.*: Audacious, bold, fearless, venturesome.

**afreet** (āf' frēt), *n.* A demon or evil monster. (A. *afrit*.)

In the old tales of Mohammedan superstition, an afreet was looked upon as something hideous or terrible. Readers of the "Arabian Nights" will remember it. What shape it had we are not told, but we know that it was supposed to be very powerful because Solomon was said to be the only man who had ever succeeded in taming the monster. Other spellings are *Afril* and *Afrile*.

The word is Arabic (*'afrit*).

**afresh** (ā fresh'), *adv.* Again; freshly. (F. *de nouveau*.)

If you are doing a difficult sum and cannot get it right you may decide to begin it all over again, or start afresh. A boxer comes up afresh for the fight after receiving the attentions of his seconds at the end of the round.

E. *a-* = on, and *fresh*.

**African** (āf' rī kân), *adj.* Belonging to or relating to Africa. *n.* A native of Africa or anyone belonging to one of the African races. (F. *africain*.)

Practically everything connected with Africa may be referred to as African. Thus we speak of African natives, African oranges, African climate, African millet, and so on. **African oak** (*n.*) is a wood very much like oak or mahogany exported from Sierra Leone and used for ship-building purposes.

**African lily** (āf' rī kân lī' ū), *n.* A genus of plants belonging to the lily family. (F. *agapanthe*.)

This genus of lilies, natives of South Africa, was called *Agapanthus*, because of the cluster of lovely blue or white flowers. Its members are half-hardy plants useful for green-houses and sheltered places in mild seasons.

The scientific name is from Gr. *agapē* love, *anthos* flower.

**African marigold** (āf' rī kân mār' ū göld), *n.* A well known garden flower.

The so-called African marigold is a Mexican plant, *Tagetes erecta*, belonging to the Composite family. The whole genus bears showy, yellow flowers, and is said to have been named after a young and beautiful Etruscan deity, *Tages*.



African marigold.—It came from Mexico.

**Afridi** (āf' rē' dē), *a* *tribe*. Belonging to a tribe living in the mountains on the frontier of India and Afghanistan. *n.* A member of this tribe.

It was a gang of lawless Afridis who, in 1923, carried off Mollie Ellis, daughter of a British army officer. She was later rescued unharmed chiefly owing to the heroism of Mrs. Lohan Starr, who found the English girl

and stayed with her in the heart of the hill-men's domain until help came.



Afridis.—Tribesmen at an outpost in the mountains forming a natural boundary between North-West India and Afghanistan.

**Afrikanter** (äf ri kän' der), *adj.* Born in South Africa of white parents. *n.* One so born.

Towards the end of the nineteenth century the British began to show an increasing interest in the states of South Africa. The Boers resented this, and to protect themselves they formed about 1880 an association called the Afrikaner Bond, which set itself out to oppose any attempt the British might make to extend their empire in that region. It aimed eventually at securing the independence of South Africa.

The word Afrikanter is Dutch.

**aft** (aft), *adj.* and *adv.* At the stern (rear) of a ship. (F. *arrière*.)

This is a word used by sailors, meaning at, or near, or towards the stern of a vessel. When you go aft you go in the direction of the back part of the ship as distinct from the stem or bow (the front part). Fore and aft means from stem to stern, or, in other words, the whole length of the ship.

A.-S. *aeft* behind; *aester* is a comparative form. Both go back to A.-S. of (emphatic *off*) away from.

**after** (af' tēr), *adv.*, *prep.*, and *conj.* Behind; according to; in pursuit of; following; at a time subsequent to. *adj.* Later; hinder. (F. *après*; *suyvant*.)

This word has many meanings. Jill tumbled after Jack down the hill. A tailor cuts a coat after a certain pattern. One hurries after his dog when he runs away. A doctor looks after his patients. We welcome a friend who returns after several months' absence. After the concert we go home. After years are

years that follow, and an after cabin is a cabin in the hind part of a ship.

The word is often found in combination with other words. **After-crop** (af' tēr krop, *n.*) is a second crop (of hay, etc.) cut in the same year. **After-damp** (af' tēr dämp, *n.*) is a poisonous gas—carbonic acid—often found in coal-mines following an explosion. Instruments have been invented which detect the presence of this deadly gas. **After-glow** (af' tēr glō, *n.*) is the term applied to the light in the sky after sunset. **After-math** (af' tēr māth, *n.*) is after-grass, that is another crop appearing after the first has been cut. The word, which means "after-mowing," is used also to describe the after effects of some event. An aftermath of the World War was an increase in taxation.

**Aftermost** (af' tēr mōst, *adj.*) is a term used by sailors meaning most aft or nearest the stern of a ship. **Afternoon** (af tēr noon', *n.*, af' tēr noon, *adv.*) is or relates to the time between noon and evening. **After-piece** (af' tēr pēs, *n.*) is a short play, usually a farce, presented after a more important play. **Afterthought** (af' tēr thawt, *n.*) may mean a thought occurring after something has been done, or an explanation offered late. **Afterward** (af' tēr wārd, *adv.*) or **afterwards** (af' tēr wārdz, *adv.*) means later or subsequently. We say something to annoy a friend and afterwards are sorry.

For the etymology of after see aft. In the compound *afterward(s)* the suffix *ward(s)* is derived from A.-S. *weordhan*, M.E. *worthen*, (G. *werden*) to become, so that the word really means "that which becomes, is made after." SYN.: Behind, later, subsequent. ANT.: Before, facing, preceding.

**aga** (a' gā; āg' ā; ā ga'), *n.* A Turkish officer of high rank. Another spelling is *agha*. (F. *aga*.)

This title is not only bestowed on men holding the chief posts in the Turkish army, but may be given to someone holding an important civil position, and is also used as a term of respect in addressing civilians of high station and wealth. The title was applied to the chief of the janizaries, or janissaries, who were a bodyguard of the Sultan of Turkey, formed in 1328 from prisoners of war. They were suppressed in 1826 by Sultan Mahmud II.



Aga.—A Turkish officer of high rank.

Turkish *agha* master (of servants).

**again** (ä gān'), *adv.* Once more; besides. (F. *encore*.)

Again is used in many different ways. If at first you don't succeed, you try again. When you are at the seaside you may bathe now and again (*i.e.*—occasionally). An airman may try to beat the speed record; again, he may loop the loop. Your next door neighbour may be back again from his holidays. A man who does something repeatedly is said to do it "again and again."

A.-S. *on*=in, *gegn* against, opposite, G. *gegen*, that is, in an opposite direction. SYN.: Anew, besides, further, moreover. ANT.: Once.

**against** (a gānst'), *prep.* Opposite to; in contact with. (F. *vis-à-vis*, *contre*.)

Two teams play against one another at football. We may lean against a post. Light things show up well against a dark background. We provide against misfortune by putting money away. Anything we do unwillingly is said to go against the grain. We may do a thing against our better judgment.

M.E. *agam-es-t*, where *-es* is a gen. ending, *t* being added as if the word was a superlative. See *agam*. SYN.: Facing, opposite. ANT.: For, with.

**agami** (äg' ä mi), *n.* The native name in Guiana for a bird also called the golden-breasted trumpeter. (F. *agami*.)

The agami is often shy of strangers. Try to make friends with him and he will at once show you how fast he can run. You may try to catch him, but most likely you will be unsuccessful, for, although he is a poor flier, he is a splendid runner.

When tame, the agami may be seen strutting about close to his master's heels, with all the faithfulness of a dog. The agami is related to the crane and is found in the tropical regions of South America. The scientific name is *Psophia crepitans*.

**agape** (a gāp'), *adj.* and *adv.* With open mouth. (F. *bouche béante*.)

Usually a person does not stand agape unless something astonishes him or he is in an attitude of expectation. The tricks of a conjurer may cause one to stand agape; so may the sight of someone about to perform a daring feat.

E. *a-* = on, *gape* (= on the gape).

**agape** (äg ä pē), *n.* A kind of feast. (*pl.* *agapae* or *agapai*.) (F. *agape*.)

In the days when it called for great courage to own that one was a Christian, the brave little band who pinned their faith to Christianity were very often ill-used. In spite of their sufferings they remained true to their beliefs, being comforted by the thought that they were united by a feeling of brotherhood and love. The feast they held before or after the Lord's Supper came in this way to be called the agape or "love-feast."

Gr. *ἀγάπῃ* love.

**agar-agar** (ä' gār ä' gār), *n.* A jelly-like substance obtained from sea-weeds. (F. *agar-agar*.)

In the world of science agar-agar is used in the cultivation of bacteria. In the East it is chiefly used in making soups and jellies. Agar-agar is also called Ceylon moss. The word is of Malay origin.

**agaric** (äg' ä rik; ä gār' ik), *n.* A name given to various kinds of fungus, including the mushroom. (F. *agaric*.)

Whenever we walk across a field and see a "fairy ring" we at once think of fungi and probably start searching for them. Unless one knows which are the eatable varieties it is wise not to pick any, because some kinds are highly poisonous.

Gr. *agarikon*, L. *agaricum*.



Agaric.—A name given to various kinds of fungus, such as the toad-stools in this picture.

**agate** (äg' ät), *n.* Name of various kinds of precious stone. (F. *agate*.)

This name is given to any semi-transparent variety of precious stone of the quartz kind, used chiefly for making brooches, etc. It is also the name of an instrument used by gold wire drawers, so called because it has an agate in the centre. Again, it is the American name for a certain type used in printing known in England as "ruby."

Legend has made agate the birthday stone for the month of June, and it is supposed to signify health and long life.

Gr. L. *achātus*, said to be so called because it was found near a river of this name in Sicily.

**agave** (ä gā' vē), *n.* A plant family to which the American aloe (or century plant) belongs. (F. *agavé*.)

These plants grow to a great height, often more than 30 feet. In parts of southern Europe advantage is taken of their thick, spiky foliage to use them as fences. The sap of its buds is fermented and distilled to form pulque.

Gr. *αἰανός* noble, fem. *αἰανή* L. *Aiana*, a proper name in mythology.

# AGE IS EARTH'S GREAT SECRET

*The Romance of a tiny Word of three Letters which may mean Millions of Years or a Second*

**age** (āj), *n.* Length of life; a great period. *v.i.* To grow old. *v.t.* To cause to grow or appear old. (F. *âge, siècle*.)

We speak of a man who is 70 years old as having reached a good age. England won many battles on the sea during the Elizabethan age, when good Queen Bess reigned. In law we are infants until we "come of age" on our twenty-first birthday.

Perhaps in the course of a country ramble we reach an old-world village and we find, resting on a rustic seat by the village green,

a hale old man—the oldest inhabitant. We talk to him and he interests us with tales of events that happened over 80 years ago. To us they are pages from a history book; to him they are boyhood memories. He points out to us the old church across the green, looking the same now as when he first saw it, and dating back perhaps 500 years. We honour the old man for his years and the old church for its old-time associations. We are impressed because time means something to us when measured in tens or hundreds of years.

As we walk on, still thinking of the talk we have had, we try to imagine what life was like thousands of years ago, a long, long time before the old church was built, before man had even learnt how to make bricks. And this may lead us to ask ourselves two questions that scientists have been trying to answer for years. How old is man? How old is the earth?

Mother Earth, so far, has managed to keep her exact age a carefully guarded secret. Maybe it will remain a mystery for all time, but so much progress towards a solution has been made recently that we may believe that science has not yet reached the end of her discoveries. The sea, the moon, the ocean-bed and the heat of the earth have all been called in to help man form his theories.

Professor John Joly thought that the oceans must once have been fresh water, and he estimated the time it has taken them

to obtain their present degree of saltiness. Sir George Darwin worked out the age of the earth from the age of the moon. A famous geologist measured the depth of the rocks and mud on the ocean floor, while Lord Kelvin calculated the length of time it has taken the earth to cool. These wonderful experiments made out Mother Earth to be at least one hundred million years old—far beyond the point when time has any real meaning.

History goes back roughly to 1000 B.C., but man must have existed long before he learnt

to write. Probably he made his first appearance on earth not much less than a million years ago. While he battled with the mammoth for supremacy, there occurred the Ice Age, when the best part of Britain was covered in a sea of ice. Successively there came the Stone Age, the Bronze Age, and the Iron Age—periods denoted by the material man used for his weapons. History had its Dark and Middle Ages, roughly between the sixth and fifteenth centuries.

The ages of birds, beasts, and fishes vary very considerably and not always in relation to their size. While the elephant may live for 200 years and the mayfly but one day, the eagle may expect to live to 60—half



Age.—A striking contrast in the age of animals. An elephant may live for 200 years, while the mayfly (inset) usually exists for about a day.

as long again as a horse.

A flower withers as it ages, and trouble ages us. People who have lived a long time may be said to be aged (ā' jed, *adj.*) or to be aged (āj, *adj.*), say, 72 years. They are sometimes referred to as the aged, and any infirmities they suffer may be due to agedness (ā' jed nes, *n.*). In 1921 the death occurred of a South African who was believed to have reached the age of 124, and at about the same time a Bushman living in a village on the Orange river, in South Africa, claimed that he was a baby when the British captured Cape Town in 1795.

The summer term at school seems as if it will never come to an end, and appears to be ageless (*adj.*).

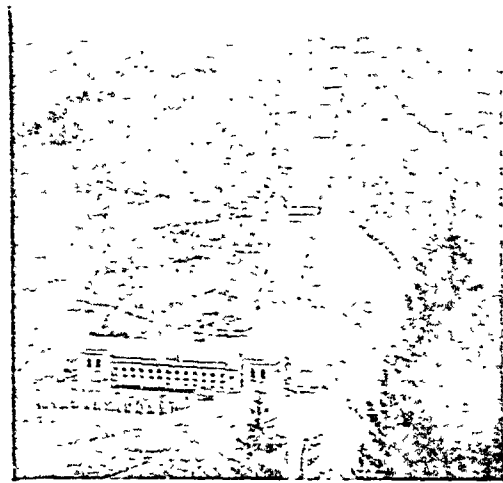
L.L. *actatium*, O.F. *agee*, *edage*, *eage*, F. *âge*.

**agency** (ā' jén sī), *n.* The means by which a result is produced; the profession, business, or occupation of one who acts as agent for another; the place where such an agent works. (F. *agence*.) See *agent*.

**Syn.**: Action, instrumentality, means, medium.

**agenda** (ā jén' dā), *n.* The list of matters to be considered at a company, committee, club, or other meeting. (F. *agenda*.)

*L.* neuter pl. of gerundive of *agere*=things to be done.



**Agent.**—Water as an agent in the making of electric power. At Rjukan, Norway, the water for driving the machinery is brought to the power-station by a series of pipe-lines.

**agent** ā jent *n.* A person or thing that produces a certain result or exercises a certain power, especially a person authorized to act for and to transact business for another. (F. *agent*.)

A big business concern will employ agents all over the world to look after its interests. States too have agents in foreign countries. In India some groups of native states, administered by agents, are called agencies. The men who represent the states of the Australian Commonwealth and the provinces of the Dominion of Canada in London are known as agents-general. An important side of their work is to watch the business interests of their states and to draw people's attention to their natural riches. In the windows of their offices you can see samples of splendid wool and fruit, great lumps of ore, and other examples of what Australia and Canada can produce. In Scotland certain classes of lawyers are called law agents.

In the world of nature any force that exerts an influence on matter is called an agent. Thus we speak of a physical agent or a chemical agent or a medical agent.

Then there are what are called agents of production. These are certain forces of nature and of man which together produce any article. They are land, capital, that is,

money saved, labour, and organization (which is the arrangement of the other three).

*L. agent* (-em) acc. sing. of pres. p. active of *agere*=one who or that which does. **Syn.**: Cause, factor, instrument, means, operator. **Ant.**: Chief, inventor, principal.

**Ageratum** (ā jer' ā tūm; āj ēr ā' tūm), *n.* A genus of asters. (F. *agerate*.)

The name was probably given by the Greeks and Romans to some kind of "everlasting flower." Certain American species of aster are now known by this name, and several are cultivated for their flowers, especially the Mexican *Ageratum*, with its clusters of lavender-blue flowers, which keep their colour for a considerable time. The *Ageratum* belongs to the Composite order.

*Gr. agetates* that never grows old, from *a-* not, *geras* old age

**agger** (āj' ēr), *n.* A mound; the rampart of a Roman camp. (F. *rempart*.)

When the Romans invaded Britain they sought various spots in which to establish their camps. They were wise soldiers, for they usually chose a place which had the advantage of commanding the surrounding country.

The Roman soldiers, having traced the square or oblong outline of their camp, dug a trench or fosse round it, and threw up the earth on the inner side to form a rampart or agger, on which they built a stockade, or sometimes a wall, called the vallum. Then, if an enemy approached, they could hide behind the rampart and mow down the attackers, who would be in full view.

Earlier still, the Britons had made their camps also with agger and fosse, on the tops of hills such as the Downs, and they are called "Rings," for the circular shape of each camp is still plain. Rudyard Kipling describes them in his beautiful poem called "Sussex."

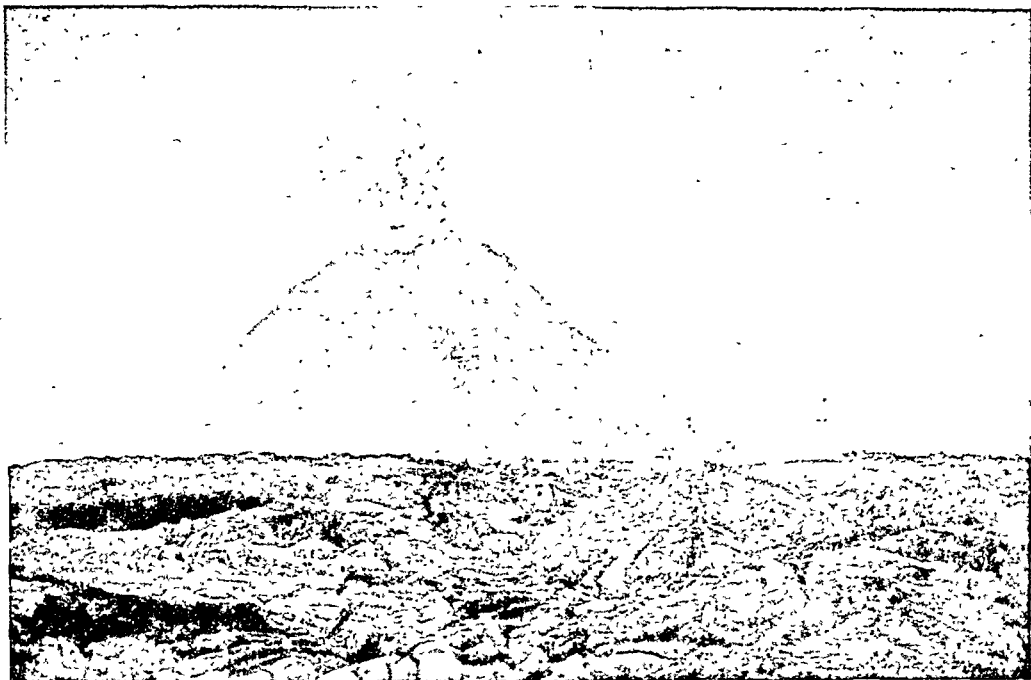
*L. ag-*=ad to, *gerere* to bring (to a place), leap up.

**agglomerate** (ā glom' ēr āt), *n.* and *adj.* To gather into a ball or mass. *n.* Rock formed of volcanic fragments. *adj.* Collected into a mass. (F. *aggloméré*; *s'assembler*.)

To students of geology, that is, the history of the earth's crust, the action of volcanoes is particularly interesting, for by this means all sorts of fragments of materials and molten rock are flung up to the surface. After these have rolled together down the side of the volcano and become united by their terrific heat, they have formed what is called an agglomerate.

When this mass has cooled, geologists break it up and examine and test the different materials that compose it. In this way they find out much about the various minerals that help to form the earth.

A thick cluster of flowers in one head is called agglomerate, and we might use the word *agglomeration* (ā glom' ēr ā' shūn, *n.*) in describing a badly designed group of buildings, a mere heap of bricks and mortar.



Agglomerate.—The dense mass of molten rock which has been flung up by the volcano of Vesuvius, in Italy. The central cone may be seen in the distance, far away from the agglomerate.

Things that have a tendency to gather into a mass are agglomerative (à glom' er à tiv, *adj.*).

L. *agglomerare*, from *ag-* = *ad* to, *glomerare* to collect in a body, *glomus* (gen. *glomeris*) ball of yarn, cotton. SYN.: Accumulate, amalgamate, cluster, mass. ANT.: Disperse, divide, separate.

**agglutinate** (à gloo' tin āt), *v.t.* To glue or stick together. (F. *agglutiner*.)

We all know what happens when we join things together with glue. They become attached to each other, although they are really separate bodies. In ordinary speech we say they have been glued together, or stuck together.

Learned men who study languages use the word agglutinate or agglutinative (à gloo' tin à tiv, *adj.*) to describe certain languages in which the parts making up the words, that is, the roots, suffixes, and prefixes, are very rarely changed, no matter how they are placed together. The opposite of agglutinative in this sense is inflexional. They would call Turkish an agglutinative language because of this agglutination (à gloo' tin ā' shùn, *n.*).

L. *agglutinare*, from *ag-* = *ad* to, *glutinare* to glue, from *gluten* (gen. *glutinis*) glue.

**aggrandize** (āg' grān diz), *v.t.* To make greater in wealth, power, rank, honour, or influence. (F. *aggrandir*.)

In ordinary conversation or writing this verb is rarely used, but we fairly often speak of aggrandization (ā grān di zā' shùn, *n.*) and aggrandizement (ā grān' diz ment, *n.*). For example, when Cardinal Wolsey built

himself the huge palace at Hampton Court he did so for his own aggrandizement, or, in homely words, to "show off." But Henry VIII soon punished him for this parade of his wealth and importance.

L. *ag-* = *ad* to, *grandire* to make great, from *grandis* great, large. SYN.: Dignify, elevate, enlarge, enrich. ANT.: Debase, degrade, humiliate, impoverish.

**aggravate** (āg' grā vāt), *v.t.* To make worse; to provoke; to irritate. (F. *provoquer*, *irriter*, *aggraver*.)

In colloquial, or everyday language, this word is used in the sense of annoying a person until you make him bad tempered if he was not already so, or in a worse frame of mind if he was already angry. In such a case you would have been acting aggravatingly (āg' grā vāt ing li, *adv.*). Otherwise the word means making bad worse. Except in its everyday sense it is always used of things, never of persons. The ordinary inconveniences caused by poverty are difficult enough to bear; illness is an aggravation (āg grā vā' shùn, *n.*) of them.

L. *aggravare* to make heavier, from *ag-* = *ad* to, *gravare* to load, from *gravis* heavy. SYN.: Enrage, heighten, increase, intensify. ANT.: Allay, alleviate, lessen, palliate.

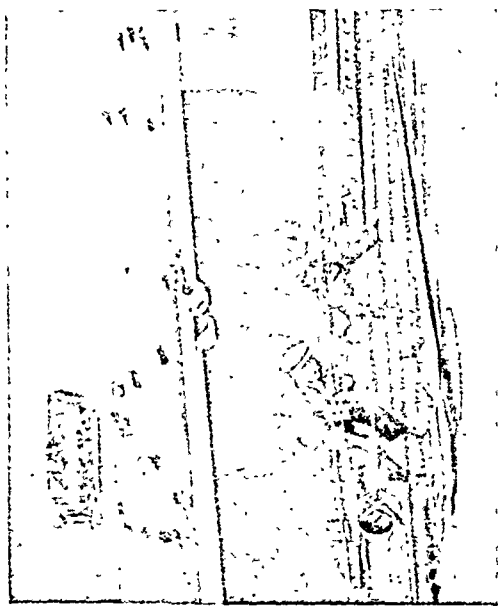
**aggregate** (āg' gre gāt), *v.t.* To collect together. *v.i.* To be so collected. *adj.* Gathered together. *n.* The whole number or sum. (F. *réunir*, *se réunir*; *agrégé*.)

The most usual expression in which we use this word is when we say "in the aggregate,"



which means "taken as a whole," or collectively, not separately. Many men do not care for the society of their fellow creatures, but man in the aggregate is a "social animal." We speak of population being aggregated in cities and also of the population of a city aggregating so many million souls. The act of gathering parts into a whole and the state of being so collected is aggregation (*äg grë gā' shùn, n.*), and the whole as formed by such parts is the aggregate or an aggregate quantity or amount.

This word is used by geologists and botanists and others who study nature. Granite, which consists of different minerals formed into one rock, is aggregate. So are such plants as the scabious and the teasel, for each flower-head is made up of a number of separate florets or little flowers. (See agglomerate.) The material that builders mix with lime to



Agile.—Agile workers about to spring-clean Big Ben, the famous clock of the House of Parliament.

make concrete is called aggregate, and the mixing is an aggregative (*äg grë gā' tiv, adj.*) process.

*L. aggregare* to bring to a flock, from *ag-* = *ad* to, *gregare*, from *grex* (gen. *gregis*) flock. *Syn.*: *n.* Mass, sum, whole. *v.* Accumulate, amass, heap up. *Ant.*: *n.* Individual, item, unit. *v.* Disperse, divide, scatter.

**aggress** (*ä gres'*), *v.t.* To attack, especially to begin a quarrel. (F. *attaquer*.)

If a little state, which has long enjoyed undisturbed peace and prosperity, is suddenly and for no reason attacked by a powerful nation this would be an act of aggression (*ä gresh' ün, n.*), and it might possibly lead some other state to take up arms on behalf of its injured neighbour against the aggressor (*ä gres' sör, n.*).

Besides meaning inclined to show such aggressiveness (*ä gres' siv nës, n.*) the word aggressive (*ä gres' siv, adj.*) is also used to denote persons and things that force our attention on them, and it can be applied to things that are in bad taste and offensive. Thus we speak of a shareholder adopting an aggressive attitude at a company meeting, of a coat being aggressive in colour or cut, and of a building that is aggressively (*ä gres' siv li, adv.*) ugly.

*L. aggressus*, *p.p.* of *aggredi* to attack, from *ag-* = *ad* to, against, *gredi* (*gradi*) to walk, advance. *Syn.*: Assault, attack, encroach, invade. *Ant.*: Defend, repel, repulse, resist.

**aggrieve** (*ä grëv'*), *v.t.* To grieve; to oppress; to arouse a sense of injury or injustice in. (F. *peiner, blesser*.)

The word was formerly used of anything that weighed heavily upon anyone, and was used in the active voice as well as in the passive. Now it is nearly always used in the passive voice and with the sense of a grievance implied. An old-fashioned historian would say that a king aggrieved his subjects with taxes, meaning simply that he bore heavily on them with his demands for money, with nothing implied about their feelings. Nowadays, if a man is wrongfully accused of a crime, we do not say that the accusation aggrieves him, but that he feels himself aggrieved by the accusation, and we mean that it is a grievance, that it fills him with a sense of injury and injustice.

*O.F. aggraver*, *L. aggravare*, from *ag-* = *ad* to, *gravare* to make heavy (*gravis*).

**aghast** (*ä gast'*), *adj.* Terrified. (F. *pouvanté*.)

The Anglo-Saxon term from which some think we have got this word meant to fix or stick, and when we wish in writing or speaking to express terror which paralyses anyone and makes him unable to move, we sometimes say, "He stood rooted to the spot." This description is true to nature, for in moments of great terror our power of movement often deserts us and makes us stand perfectly still, transfixed to the spot.

A more satisfactory etymology of the word appears to be *a-* (intensive prefix) and *gast* *p.p.* of *M.E. gasten* to fill with terror. The *h* is wrongly inserted, possibly from a supposed connexion with ghost. *Syn.*: Afraid, amazed, frightened, stupefied. *Ant.*: Cool, indifferent, unexcited.

**agile** (*äj' il*), *adj.* Nimble. (F. *agile*.)

Besides denoting physical activity, such as that of a mountain climber, a quick dancer, an acrobat, or such a light-footed animal as a cat, this word is also used in describing the human mind. For example, when a student is able to pass on quickly from one subject to another and apply his mind so steadily to each one that he quickly masters it, we say that he has an agile mind or that he has agility (*ä jil' i ti, n.*) of mind.

*L. agilis* quick to act, from *agere* to do. *Syn.*: Alert, lithe, ready, swift. *Ant.*: Awkward, clumsy, heavy, slow.



Agistment.—The taking in of animals to feed at so much per head is known as agistment. In the great open spaces of big cities sheep may often be seen grazing.

**agio** (ă'j'io; ă'j'io), *n.* A charge made for exchanging money; a difference in money values; a premium; a discount; money-changing. (*F. agio.*)

In the Middle Ages the comage of the various European countries was so uncertain in value that special banks were set up in important trade centres to remedy this. These banks made it their business to supply what was called "bank money," that is, money that merchants would accept without their having to weigh it or otherwise test its value.

A merchant would go, say, to the Bank of Hamburg, pay in a sum of money made up of a medley of coins of different weights, values, and degrees of purity, and receive in exchange an amount of exactly the same value in bank money. For this service the merchant would pay the bank a small charge, and thus was the agio.

The word is now used in various senses in connexion with exchanging money. For instance, it means the premium or discount (the fee you may have to pay or may be entitled to receive) when you are exchanging the money of one country for the money of another, or when you exchange say, silver for gold or coin for paper money. Sometimes coins get very worn in passing from hand to hand, and the value they are supposed to represent is less than their real value. If you want to exchange such coins you may have to pay an agio, that is, a sum representing the difference between their actual value and the value marked on them.

Agio is also sometimes used to denote speculation in stocks (*see Speculation*), and so

is the word **agiotage** (ă'j'io taj, *n.*), which also means money-changing.

*Ital. agio*, literally ease (*cp. adagio*), *F. aise* (convenience) which some connect with *L. adjacere* to lie near or conveniently.

**agist** (ă jist'), *v.t.* To provide pasture for (animals) for hire; to levy a rate on (land or land-owners). (*O.F. agister.*)

In some of the open spaces around London and other big cities you often see sheep or other live-stock grazing, for farmers have not always enough grass-land of their own to give proper food to their animals. Even in Hyde Park and Kensington Gardens, which border on the very busiest parts of the more fashionable end of London, you will sometimes see sheep browsing. Strangers always remark upon the sight, for it seems like a piece of the country in the heart of the metropolis. The practice of taking in live-stock to feed, as well as the charge made, is known as **agistment** (ă jist' ment, *n.*).

The word **agistment** is also used for a rate levied on land that is not pasture. Land by the coast may be charged with agistment for keeping the sea back, and a dike made for this purpose is sometimes called an agistment. In the palmy days of the forest laws in England the **agister** (ă jist' er, *n.*) was very important person. He was the official who looked after the pasturage of the forests. The herbage of the forests and the right to it and the payment for it were all called agistment.

*O.F. agister* to give a place to lie in, from *a- = ad*, *giste* something to lie on, *F. gîte* (*L. jacere* to lie).

**agitate** (āj' i tāt), *v.t.* To shake; to excite, to bring forward for discussion. *v.i.* To endeavour to arouse public interest. (F. *agiter*.)

An earthquake agitates the ground—it makes it rock to and fro. It also agitates the people who are shaken by it—it disturbs them and fills them with terror. Before any important social or political reform can be carried out the question has to be agitated in order to get the general public interested in it. Feeling often runs high while the agitation (āj i tā' shùn, *n.*) is going on, and so an agitator (āj' i tā tōr, *n.*) must needs be a man of ability and courage. The term agitator is also used for a machine for shaking and mixing.

L. *agitar* to drive often, frequentative of *agere* to drive. SYN Debate, discuss, stir. ANT Calm pacify, soothe.

**agitato** (āj i tā' tō), *adj.* Agitated, disturbed. *ad.* With agitation. (F. *agitato*.)

In dramatic and descriptive compositions, when it becomes necessary to express great emotion such as fear or anger, the direction *agitato* is printed on the music. During exciting scenes in a film play, a fight, a fire or other intense situation, the orchestra works up the music to a high pitch of enthusiasm.

Ital. *a dato* (p.p. of *agitare*), L. *agitare*, frequentative of *agere* to drive.

aglets were the ends of silken laces, which were fastened to the breeches beneath. The aiguillettes or ornamental shoulder-tags worn with some naval and military uniforms are a survival of these old aglets.

What Shakespeare, in "The Taming of the Shrew" (I, 2), meant by an aglet-baby is uncertain—perhaps somebody decked out with aglets or an aglet in the shape of a human being. The hanging spikes or catkins of some plants, such as the willow, are sometimes called aglets. The word is also spelt **aiglet** (āg' lēt).

Fr. *aiguillette* small needle (*aiguille*), L.L. *acucula* dim. of *acus* (needle).

**aglow** (ā glō'), *adv.* In a glow; very warm. (F. *très chaud, rougissant*.)

On a very cold day, when we want to set the blood coursing through our bodies in order to get warm, we go for a brisk walk, or do some physical work, which makes us all aglow. When we are warmed by exercise, most of us have a heightened colour, and so aglow is used to express warm colouring, as of a sunset or a field of poppies. The word is also applied to effects due to the feelings. The face of a girl at her first dance is aglow with delight.

E. *a-* = on, in, and *glow*.

**agnail** (āg' nāl), *n.* An inflamed patch round a toe-nail or a finger-nail. (F. *envie*.)

You seldom hear people using the word agnail for a sore place round the nail. If it is seriously inflamed and eventually becomes septic—or poisonous—they call it a whitlow. The word agnail has developed through a mistaken popular etymology into another word, hang-nail, and the Scottish form is anger-nail. When people use any of these words they generally mean a little piece of torn skin at the root of the nail. Actually the "nail" part of the word does not mean a finger-nail or toe-nail at all, but a nail of iron or other metal, and so a swelling under the skin or by the side of the finger-nail shaped like a nail.

O.E. *angnaegl*, from *ang-* painful, *naegl* nail (in the sense of a corn or outgrowth).

**agnate** (āg' nāt), *n.* A relative on the father's side. *adj.* Related on the father's side. (F. *agnat*.)

The meaning of this word has altered from what it was under the old Roman law. Then persons related to one another through males only were called agnates, and persons who, though tracing descent from the father, were related through both males and females, were called cognates. Thus a brother's son would be his uncle's agnate and his sister's son his cognate. The relationship of the former was **agnatic** (āg nāt' ik, *adj.*) or by **agnation** (āg nāt' shùn, *n.*). Nowadays agnate simply denotes relationship through the father and cognate relationship through the mother.

L. *agnatus* (p.p. of *agnasci*), from *ag-* = ad to, (g) *nasci* to be born.



Aglet. The cords of gold lace called aiguillettes, which hang from the left shoulder of certain naval officers, are survivals of the seventeenth century aglet.

**aglet** (āg' lēt), *n.* The metal tag of a lace or ribbon, a hanging dress ornament; a catkin. (F. *aiguillette*.)

In the seventeenth century men of fashion wore very elaborate dress and were great dandies. Their highly finished coats, decorated with large lace-edged collars and cuffs, fitted loosely to the figure and were braided and tagged round the waist. These tags or

**agnomen** (äg nō' men), *n.* An additional name. (*F. surnom.*)

In the days of the Romans people had a family name or surname, just as we have, which was called their cognomen and on to this was sometimes added another name, often to keep in memory something very important they had done. This extra name was the agnomen. The name of Africanus, which was given to the great Roman general Scipio after he had destroyed the power of Carthage at the battle of Zama in 202 B.C., was an agnomen.

What could almost be called agnomens are very common in Wales. In "the Little Land Behind the Hills" the surnames are so often the same in a village or town, that the better-known people in the district are distinguished from each other by the addition of the name of the place where they work or live to the name of Jones or Price or whatever it may be.

Thus the manager of the local gas-works will be called Mr. Jones (or whatever his surname is) the Gas-works, or Mr. Jones the Gas for short, the head of the chief bank in the village or town will be called Mr. Jones the Bank, and so on.

*L. ag- = ad to, in addition, (g)nomen name.*

**agnostic** (äg nos' tik), *n.* One who holds that nothing can be known except by the evidence of the senses. *adj.* Relating to this belief. (*F. agnostique.*)

Professor T. H. Huxley (1823-95) believed that no one knows more than his own senses tell him, and so he coined the word **agnosticism** (äg nos' ti sizm, *n.*) for the teachings of those who hold that we cannot prove the existence of an Absolute Being controlling the universe. Anyone who holds such views is **agnostically** (äg nos' tik əl li, *adv.*) minded.

*Gr. a- not, gnōstikos capable of knowing.*

**Agnus Dei** (äg' nūs dā' ē), *n.* Latin for Lamb of God, a name for Christ; a figure of a lamb as an emblem of Christ; a tablet bearing this emblem; a part of the Mass; the music to this.

The title Lamb of God was given to Christ by St. John the Baptist. When the lamb is used as an emblem of Christ it has a staff, or a banner or flag, with a cross on it. At certain times little wax or silver tablets with this emblem stamped on them are blessed by the Pope and given to people. The Agnus Dei of the Mass is so called because it begins with these two words. It comes between the consecration and the communion. There are many very beautiful musical settings of this prayer.

**ago** (ä gō'), *adv.* In time gone by; since. (*l. il y a.*)

This word was once spelt **agone**. It is a shortened past participle of the old verb **ago**, **agan**, which we do not use now, although we still use **agone** in poetry and poetical prose. **Agone** is sometimes used as a noun,

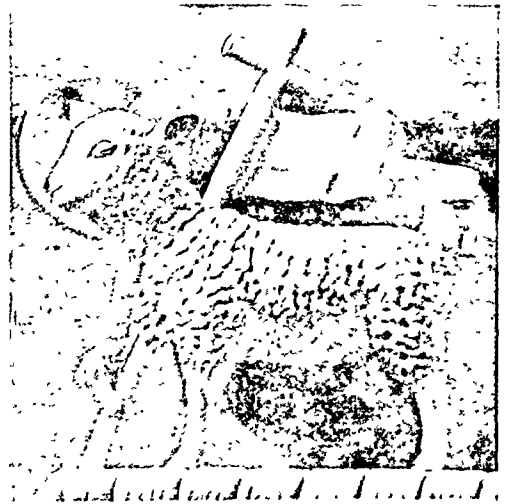
as when we speak of memories of the long ago.

*A.-S. agān, from a away, gān to go. SYN.: Gone, past. ANT.: Coming, hence, hereafter.*

**agog** (ä gog'), *adj. and adv.* In a state of eager expectation or great excitement. (*F. en train.*)

Suppose a bazaar was going to be opened by royalty in a little out-of-the-way country place. Imagine the preparations made for the illustrious visitor! How would she look? What would she say? The whole village would be **agog**.

*E. a- = on; gog perhaps connected with O.F. gogue, found in F. goguenarder to joke. SYN.: Astir, eager. ANT.: Cold, lukewarm*



**Agnus Dei.**—The beautiful emblem of Christ which marks the Middle Temple, London, the site of which was once owned by the Knights Templars.

**agogic** (ä goj' ik), *adj.* Having reference to the varying emphasis which can be obtained when speaking by lengthening the syllable, or in music by lengthening the note. (*F. agogé.*)

An interesting though doubtful story, probably invented by a commentator, is told of the Greek orator Demosthenes. He was accusing one of his enemies, and he asked his hearers, "Which, O Athenians, do you think this man to be, a friend of our enemy, or his hireling?" When he said the Greek word for "hireling" he purposely placed the accent on the wrong syllable. The audience immediately shouted "Hireling, hireling!" correcting his wrong pronunciation. "Ah," he replied. "You think as I do, that he is a hireling." His trick had worked. This is one of the best examples of agogics in speech that we know.

*Gr. agōgē* succession of ascending and descending tones, rhythmical movement, from *agēin* to conduct.

**agony** (äg' ó ni), *n.* Extreme suffering, anxiety or effort. (F. *agonie*.)

This word is used to express great bodily pain and also great torture of mind, and always with the idea of struggling implied. In this second sense it is used especially of the anguish suffered by Christ in the Garden of Gethsemane the night before His Crucifixion—the Agony in the Garden.

In most morning newspapers a column is given up to advertisements of a purely personal nature, which people put in when, for instance, they are searching for missing friends or relations. In many cases an advertisement in this column is the very last resource of the sender at a time of great anxiety, and so the column is called the agony column.

To **agonize** (äg' ó niz, *v.t.* and *i.*) means to cause or suffer agony, or to strive desperately, and anything done with painful struggles is done **agonizingly** (äg' ó niz ing li, *adv.*).

Gr. *l. agōnia*, properly contest, struggle (in games, Gr. *agōnus*). SYN.: Anguish, pain, suffering, torture. ANT.: Comfort, ease, rapture, relief.

**agora** (äg' ór ä), *n.* An assembly, a place of assembly. (F. *agora*.)

This word was used originally for the assembly of a Greek city and then for the place where the people met, and especially for a market-place. Although the word is not in use now, it remains in the name of a curious disease. This illness is called **agoraphobia** (äg ór ä fö' biä *n.*) and means the dread of open spaces, such as market places.

Gr. *a-gorä*, L. *L. -phobia* (in compounds), Gr. *phobos* fear.

**agouti** (ä goo' ti), *n.* A small South American animal something like a guinea-pig. Agouty is another spelling. (F. *agouti*.)

These little brown creatures hide during the day in hollow trees or burrows, and come out at night. They are quite satisfied with the roots and leaves and fruits and nuts that they find in their forest homes, but if they come across a plantation of sugar-cane or bananas they do a great deal of damage. Travelling in flocks, they move at a trot or by quick leaps and bounds. They are about the same size as hares. The scientific name is *Dasyprocta aguti*.

The name is derived through the French, Spanish, or Portuguese from a native Indian word.

**agraffe** (ä gräf'), *n.* A hook. (F. *agrafe*.)

This word is applied to a kind of hook fastening to a ring used as a clasp for clothing, and also to one used by builders when they wish to strengthen walls or to fix objects to them.

O.F. *a to, grafer* to grip (cp. G. *Krampe*, E. *cramp*).

**agrarian** (ä grär' i än), *adj.* Relating to the land: growing wild. *n.* One who is in favour of a different way of dividing up landed property. (F. *agrarie*.)

The Romans were very good legislators, and when they conquered other countries they prepared laws which arranged what should happen to these conquered lands. These laws were called agrarian laws.

In various countries certain people have become possessed of land which originally had been given to one of their ancestors. Some people think that this is not just, as land is one of the chief producers of what is called economic wealth. They believe either that the State should be the owner of all landed property, or that the land should be portioned out afresh. A person in favour of schemes like this is sometimes called an agrarian, and so is a member of a political party that upholds the interests of landholders and farmers.

**Agrarianism** (ä grär' i än izm, *n.*) is the name sometimes used for such schemes for the redistribution of land, and also for troubles caused by discontent with the way in which the land is held. To **agrarianize** (ä grär' i än iz, *v.t.*) is to re-arrange the ownership of land in some such way as described above.

L. *agrarius*, from *ager* field, land.

**agree** (ä grē'), *v.i.* To be of one mind; to suit. *v.t.* To bring into harmony. (F. *s'accorder*, *agréer*, *convenir*.)

When we use this word in reference to

people we mean that they get on well together, or suit each other, or have the same views about a particular thing. We use the word agree in a grammatical sense for words that take the same gender, number, case, or person. In legal matters, an **agreement** (ä grē' ment, *n.*) is a contract to which there must be two parties, each of which is bound to fulfil the various conditions. We sometimes use the word agree in the sense of suiting or having a good effect. For instance, we say: "A hot climate does not agree with



Agouti. A destructive little South American animal which lives on sugar-cane and bananas.

me." Accounts are agreed when the balance and the various items are brought into harmony.

Agreeable (à grē' àbl, *adj.*) may be used in describing a person as when we say: "She has a very agreeable manner," meaning that she is pleasant to talk to, easy to get on with. Such qualities of manner taken together make agreeableness (à grē' àbl nēs, *n.*), and if we find them in somebody who has a name for being grumpy we are agreeably (à grē' à bli, *adv.*) surprised. Then we say: "I will send so-and-so to you to-morrow, if that is agreeable to you," meaning "if that is convenient to you," or "if that will please you."

O.F. *a=ad to, grē* pleasure, from L.L. *aggratave*, from L. *gratus* pleasant. SYN.: Accord, harmonize, suit, tally. ANT.: Contend, disagree, dispute, dissent.

**agriculture** (äg' rī küł chër), *n.* The science and practice of cultivating the soil. (F. *agriculture*.)

Agriculture, or farming, as it is often called, is one of the earliest of man's occupations. The soil or land may be made to yield in various ways. For instance, if it is grassland affording food for cattle, it is called pasture, and the owner may either let it to someone else for pasturage or use it himself. Then it can be ploughed and used for the cultivation of cereals, vegetables, or flowers. A person engaged in agricultural (äg rī küł' chër àl, *adj.*) pursuits is an agriculturist (äg rī küł' chër ist, *n.*) or agriculturalist (äg rī küł' chër àl ist).

There is a government department in Great Britain which is concerned with agricultural matters, and this is called the Board of Agriculture and Fisheries. It was formed in 1889, and in 1903 the control of fisheries was placed in its care.

L. *agri* (gen. of *ager* field), *cultura* tillage.

**agrimony** (äg' rī mōn ī), *n.* A plant belonging to the rose order. (F. *agremone*.)

This slender plant with its long spikes of little yellow flowers is common in British hedgerows. The fruit is covered with hooks, which cling to sheep and other animals, and in this way the seeds are carried far and wide. A yellow dye is got from the root, which is very bitter.

The name agrimony is also applied to several quite different plants not of the rose order, such as hemp agrimony and water agrimony.

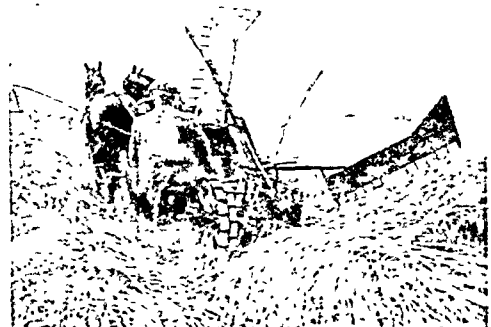
L. *agrimonia*, probably a misspelling for *argemone* (Gr. *argemōnē*).

**agrimotor** (äg' rī mō tōr), *n.* A power-driven machine used in tilling the fields.

It either draws a plough or other machine, or does the work itself. It is driven by a petrol engine or by an electric motor getting current through a cable.

L. *ager* (gen. *agri*), and *motor*.

**aground** (à ground'), *adj.* and *adv.* Stuck on the bed of the sea or other water. (F. *à terre, échoué*.)



Agriculture.—At the top is a modern plough hauled by a tractor, in the centre girls are tending plants grown under glass cloches, and at the bottom is a mechanical reaper.

When a boat becomes stranded in such shallow water that she cannot float away again without help, we say she is aground. Such a mishap occurred to H.M.S. *Howe* at the entrance to Ferrol, Spain, in 1892. She was afterwards floated by a salvage company.

E. *a-* = on ground. SYN.: Stranded. ANT.: Afloat.

**ague** (ā' gū), *n.* A kind of fever. (F. *fièvre ague*.)

This fever comes on from time to time, and the patient becomes first hot and then cold. While he is cold he cannot stop shivering so sometimes the word is used to describe any violent fit of shivering or a similar state of mind. A fever like this is called aguish (ā' gū ish, *adj.*), and so is anything that shivers and shakes or that happens by fits and starts.

L. *acuta* (fem.) sharp, acute (*tribis* understood).

**ah** (ā), *inter.* An exclamation which varies in meaning according to the manner and circumstances in which it is said. (F. *ah*.)

We use the word when we wish to express surprise, joy, pity, interest and various other emotions.

**aha** (ā ha'), *inter.* An exclamation used to express various feelings, such as triumph, mockery, and surprise.

**ahead** (ā hed'), *adv.* At the head, farther on; in advance. (F. *en avant*, *avant*.)

A student who is very much more advanced than his fellows is far ahead of the others. One who goes ahead goes forward without stopping and so a "go-ahead" person means one who is determined to get on.

E. *a-* = on and *head* (onward, forward). SYN.: Before, forward, onward. ANT.: Backward, behind, lagging.

**ahem** (ā hem'), *inter.* An exclamation to attract attention or to gain time. A person who hesitates in speaking is sometimes said to "hem and haw." (F. *hem*.)

Ahem is a longer form of hem (perhaps connected with hum).

**ahoy** (ā hor'), *inter.* A word used by sailors when hailing a ship. (F. *ho*.)

In whaling-boats there is a shelter, like a tiny cabin, at the top of the fore-mast. Here is stationed a look-out man, who scans the horizon and when he sights a whale shouts out "Whale ahoy" and describes its position.

As in *a-hem*, *ho*, of Dutch origin.

**Ahriman** (ā' ri măn), *n.* The embodiment of evil in the religion of ancient Persia. (F. *Ahriman*.)

This old religion, founded by a sage named Zoroaster perhaps eight centuries before the birth of Christ, is set forth in some ancient writings called the Zend-Avesta. It is called Zoroastrianism, and is still believed in by the Parsees in India. The good deity is known as Ormuzd.

**ahull** (ā hūl'), *adv.* A term sometimes used to describe a ship's method of progress. With sails furled, helm lashed (fastened with ropes) to the sheltered or lee side, and driving before the wind with stern foremost. (F. *à sec*.)

E. *a-* = on, in (state or condition), and hull.

**ai** (ā' ē), *n.* A three-toed sloth of South America. (F. *ai*.)

The name ai was given to the three-toed member of the sloth family because it was the nearest that the natives could get to the sound of the creature's cry. The ai feeds upon the leaves, shoots, and fruits of the trees among which it lives, and hangs upside down from the boughs by its long curved claws.

Like all its family, it is naturally "slothful," that is, slow in its movements. Its strong and easily-moved neck enables it to reach a large number of leaves without changing the position of its body. It has a long tongue, and teeth that are nearly all of the same height.



**Ai.**—The three-toed sloth of South America hanging upside down on the branch of a tree. It is a strict vegetarian.

**aid** (ād), *v.t.* To help. *n.* Help; assistance. (F. *aider*; *aide*.)

In the Middle Ages, when a feudal lord's eldest son was made a knight, or his eldest daughter was about to be married and had to be supplied with a dowry, the vassal had to make a contribution, which was called aid. Since then we have changed the use of the word to mean a grant of money by Parliament to the King.

For ordinary purposes we use the term in the general sense of help, not only in money but in other ways, such as first aid to a person taken ill or injured.

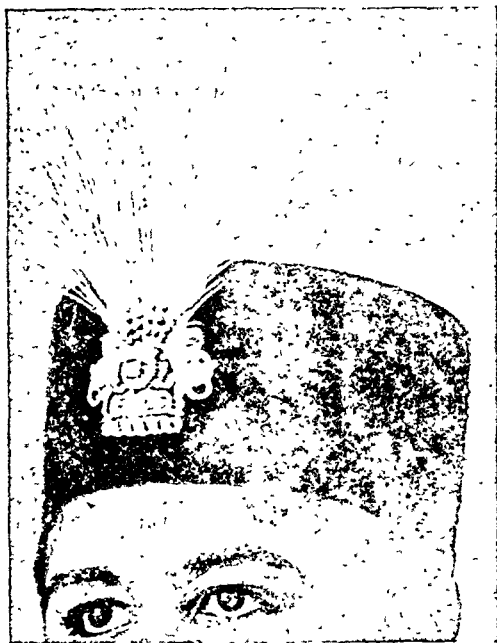
L. *adjutus*, frequentative of *adjuvare*, from *ad* to, *juvare* to help. SYN.: Abet, assist, benefit, help, relieve, succour, sustain. ANT.: Battle, deter, discourage, oppose, thwart.

**aide** (ād), *n.* An assistant. (F. *aide*.) This is really a French word, and we only use it in one connexion in English, that is, in *aide-de-camp* (ād' de kōn, *n.*), *pl.* *aides-de-camp*, meaning a military officer who receives

and passes on the orders of a general on the field.

*F. camp* comes from *L. campus* field, open space where an army encamps.

**aigrette** (ā' grèt), *n.* A plume composed of feathers. A spray of gems worn on the head; a small white heron.



Aigrette.—The magnificent jewelled aigrette worn by a former shah of Persia.

The name is given to a tuft of light feathers used to ornament a woman's hat, from the fact that the egret has a crest or tuft of feathers on its head.

Jewellers, copying the daintiness of the spray-like effect, sometimes use the word aigrette to describe a jewelled ornament of the same shape worn on the head.

The bird is a member of the heron family and is more often called the little egret. It sometimes pays Great Britain a fleeting visit, but much prefers the warmer weather of sunnier lands such as southern Europe, Africa, Persia, India, China, and Japan. Its graceful plumage is snow-white, with long feathers that droop backwards on the head, breast, and back; though it sheds some of its finery during the winter. The egret, as befits a wader, builds its uncomfortable-looking nest of sticks and reeds in swamps and marshes. In some parts of India the bird is kept as a pet in much the same way as parrots and canaries, and often accompanies

its owner on a fishing expedition. Its scientific name is *Herodias garzetta*.

*F. aigrette*, dim. of *aigron*, a dialectal form of *héron* heron, O.H.G. *heigir*, modern G. *Reiher*.

**aiguille** (ā' gwil), *n.* A sharp, needle-shaped piece of rock; a slender boring-drill. (*F. aiguille*.)

Many of the lesser peaks close to Mont Blanc are so sharp-pointed and slender that the suggestion of a needle naturally came to those who named them. Such are the Aiguille du Midi and Aiguille du Dru.

When piercing a hole in a rock in which to place a charge of gunpowder, a sharp narrow tool called an *aiguille* is used.

*L.L. acucula*, dim. of *acus* needle.

**aiguillette** (ā gwī let'), *n.* An ornamental tag, sometimes seen hanging from the shoulders of military and naval uniforms. See *aglet*.

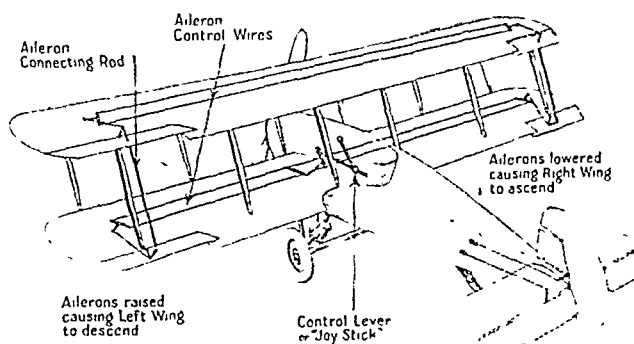
**ail** (āl), *v.t.* To cause trouble or pain. *r.t.* To be unwell. (*F. faire souffrir; souffrir*.)

*Ail* is a good old English word that is going out of use. "What aileth thee?" occurs frequently in the Bible and is much clearer than the present day form: "What is the matter with you?"

We may, however, still describe our sick friends as *ailing* (āl' ing, *part. adj.*), but the commonest use of the word now is in its compound ailment (āl' ment, *n.*), used chiefly in the expression "minor ailments," which include all illnesses that are not of a serious nature.

*A.-S. eglan, M.E. eilen*, to pain.

**aileron** (āl' ron), *n.* A movable flap



Aileron.—The ailerons of an aeroplane are the means by which the pilot is able to maintain the lateral, or sideways, balance of the machine.

hinged at the front tip of the wings or planes of an aeroplane. (*F. aileron*.)

Ailerons are attached by wire cables, or controls, to the control lever, commonly known as the "joy-stick." Their purpose is to enable the pilot to control the lateral, or sideways, balance of the machine.

*F. aile* (from *L. ala*) wing, and *-eron* dim. suffix.



**aim** (ām), *v.t.* To direct (a weapon, a missile, or a blow) in such a way as to hit, or with the intention of hitting, some object *v.t.* To take aim; to direct one's actions to the attainment of a definite object; to form designs. *n.* The object at which a weapon is directed, the act of aiming; the end one seeks to attain. (*F. viser; visée, but.*)

When every man was a hunter for his daily food one of the first lessons he had to learn was

the law attained their aim also, that of obtaining a trained body of archers.

An aim in life follows as a very natural figure from aim in shooting. The loftier the aim the better in some respects, but practical aims or those we have a good chance of reaching are also necessary. Anything is better than to be aimless (ām' les, *adj.*) or to wander aimlessly (ām' les li, *adv.*) through life. The aimful (ām' fūl, *adj.*) man, he who manfully pursues a fixed object, is he who obtains and gives the greatest pleasure in life. Aimlessness (ām' les nes, *n.*) is only another name for boredom and unhappiness.

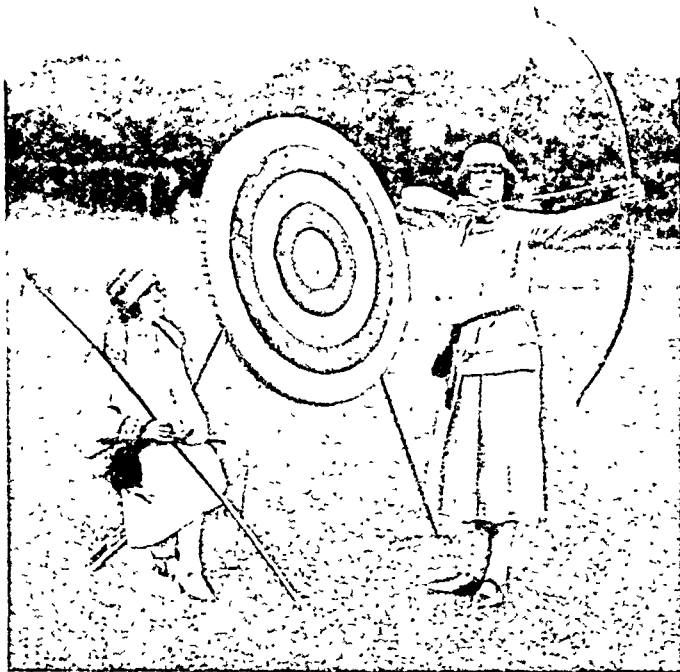
O.F. *esmer* to aim at, reckon, M.E. *amen*, *amen* (= *ae. aestiman*) to value, from L. *aestimare*. SYN.: Course, design, direction, endeavour, purpose. ANT.: Aimlessness, avoidance, negligence, oversight, venture.

**Aino** (i' no), *n.* A member of an uncivilized race living in and around N. Japan. (*F. Ainos.*)

The Ainos (or Amos) once occupied many of the islands now under Japanese rule. Nowadays they are to be found in Yezo and the islands to the north of Japan. More like Europeans than Mongolians, the Amos are short and sturdy with long hair. They speak in a tongue quite their own and are primitive in their customs.

It is thought by learned men who have studied the subject that the Amos originally came from the north of Asia, and they may belong to the race that inhabited North Europe in the late Stone Age. Some centuries before the Christian era the Japanese, coming from the south and west, began to drive the Amos north, though they fought stubbornly against them. In due course warfare gave place to peace, and missionaries sought to interest the natives in the teachings of Buddha.

To-day the Amos number about 17,000. The men continue to hunt and fish in the way their ancestors did in the long ago. Like the aboriginals of Australia, they have not grown up but are still the primitive children of nature. Unlike the Japanese, they are dirty in their habits, and are inclined to drunkenness, but are gentle and friendly. The chief object of their worship is the bear. They are so proud of their hair that women have make-believe moustaches tattooed on their upper lips.



**Aim.** A woman competitor in an archery competition taking aim. In the days of Edward II every Englishman who was not a priest or a lawyer was fined if he did not practise shooting with a bow and arrow every Sunday.

to take aim correctly, and his very life depended on his success in learning to do so. Later in history it was warfare with human enemies that urged him to the same end.

In modern times most sports demand similar ability. But whatever the cause may be that urges us, there is no doubt that the training entered upon before we can aim successfully at any target is most useful. Eye, hand, and judgment all have their share in the attainment of success, and whether the object aimed at be food, enemy, wicket, or goal there is tremendous satisfaction to every healthy person in being able to shoot straight and accomplish the end desired.

In the days of Edward II the laws demanded that every Englishman, unless a priest or lawyer, should possess a bow of his own height, and that he should practise with it every Sunday and holiday or be fined one halfpenny. Football was forbidden because it interfered with archery. English bowmen became the finest soldiers of their time and a terror to their enemies. Thus the makers of

# AIR: THE GAS WE ALL BREATHE

*Air is one of the Common Things of Life but one of the most Valuable*

air (är), *n.* The gas which surrounds our earth; the atmosphere; open space; manner; appearance; concert. *v.t.* To expose to the air; to display. (*F. air; aërer, faire parade de.*)

Air is a mixture of gases formed chiefly of oxygen (just over one-fifth of the whole) and nitrogen (nearly four-fifths). These two gases form about 99 per cent of the air. Until the year 1894 they were thought to be the only gases present in pure air, but a new gas was then found by Lord Rayleigh and Sir William Ramsay and named argon. It forms about one-hundredth of the air. Other gases were later found to be always present, though in very minute quantities. They were named helium, krypton, neon, and xenon.

Besides these gases which form pure air certain impurities are always present. Water vapour arising from evaporation is always present, but is hardly an impurity. Perfectly dry air would be very trying to our lungs, which have to be kept moist. Carbonic acid gas is an impurity which results from the breathing of animals and plants; it is also produced whenever anything is burned. Decaying substances produce ammonia and other gases which float in the air.

Rays of sunshine breaking into a dark room reveal to us that the air is filled with tiny particles of dust. If these be caught on a glass plate coated with gelatine many of them will spread into patches of mould, while the microscope will reveal that others are the spores or minute germs of various tiny animals and plants. Among them are the microbes or bacteria which cause diseases. Fortunately the sun's rays will kill most of these, hence the importance of sunshine in our houses and cities, and of airing clothes in the sunshine.

Pure air is the chief necessity of our life, and it is impossible to pay too much attention to the means of obtaining it. Every time we fill our lungs by breathing we set up wonderful chemical exchanges between our blood and the air. If the latter is pure these

exchanges are healthful and invigorating; if it is impure they are harmful and depressing, perhaps even deadly.

Out-door exercise is the best of all methods of obtaining pure air, but indoor life need not be unhealthy if ventilation is properly carried out.

Rooms in which the windows are kept open whenever possible are airy (är' i, *adj.*). Houses should be built for airiness (är' i nes, *n.*). This can be done by the liberal employment of air-bricks (*n.pl.*) or bricks perforated by numerous holes, these not only supply

fresh air but also get rid of damp, which cannot exist where there is a free passage of air forming what builders call an air-drain (*n.*)

Besides maintaining life, air is the means by which sounds are carried to our ears. These are sensitive to the air-waves (*n.pl.*) set up by rapidly vibrating objects, and nerves from them convey sensations to our brains. Hence we speak of the air of a song or other music, meaning the succession of notes, which form its melody, and by which we recognize it.

Air in movement produces winds, breezes, gales, and hurricanes in all the forms so well known to the sailor, who considers calm days as

airless (är' les, *adj.*). Winds have been employed by man to drive his sailing ships over the water and to turn the sails of his windmills on land. Heated air and compressed air have also been used for driving air-engines (*n.pl.*) and the latter for working air-guns (*n.pl.*) and air-pistols (*n.pl.*).

The elastic nature of air has led to its use for filling rubber air-beds (*n.pl.*) and air-cushions (*n.pl.*) which are a boon to invalids. The air-jacket (*n.*) is a useful garment which can be worn by voyagers, and in case of need can be blown out with air sufficient to support the wearer in the water. This is an imitation of certain fishes which float by means of an internal air-bladder (*n.*). The air-ball (*n.*) is a toy popular with children and many of their elders



Air.—This young bather evidently finds the seaside air very bracing.

The fact that air could be felt but not seen led our forefathers to strange beliefs about it. They thought everything was composed of four elements—earth, air, fire, and water—in varied proportions. Lightness and spirit they thought resulted from plenty of air, and all mental and spiritual qualities were attributed to it. Hence arose such terms as an "air of majesty," "an impudent air."

Perhaps because haughtiness was the easiest air to assume it was described by "to give oneself airs." "Castles in the air" mean impossible dreams and projects. *Airy* (ar' i, adj.) often has this idea of fancifulness. *Airily* (ar' i li, adv.) means lightly or gaily.

Gr. L. *aër*. Syn.: Atmosphere, gas, wind aspect, demeanour, style.

**air-base** (ar' bās), *n.* A place used as a centre from which fighting aircraft are sent out in war.

An air-base is fitted out with everything needed for keeping aircraft in good order and repairing any damage.

E. *air* and *base*.

**air-brake** (ar' brāk), *n.* An automatic brake used on railway engines and vehicles worked by compressed air, or by the pressure of the atmosphere. (F. *frein pneumatique*.)

Until about 1870 railway brakes were worked by hand and it was impossible to pull up a train quickly. Then two different kinds of brakes appeared, either of which could be applied in a moment to every wheel of a train and would come into action of themselves if the train should happen to break in two.

The compressed-air brake, invented by George Westinghouse (1816-1911) and named

after him, uses a chamber under each carriage for storing air pumped from the engine through a pipe running the length of the train. If the driver lets air out of the pipe, every chamber lets air into a cylinder close to it, which applies the brakes.

The vacuum brake also has a brake cylinder for each carriage and a continuous train pipe. Air is sucked out of the cylinders to keep the brakes off. If air is admitted to the pipe, it presses on the under side of the piston in each cylinder but cannot get at the upper side, where there is little air. The piston is thus forced up, and the brakes go on.

E. *air* and *brake*.

**air-chamber** (ar' chām ber), *n.* A metal chamber containing air, connected with the delivery pipe of a force pump. (F. *chopinelle, réservoir à air*.)

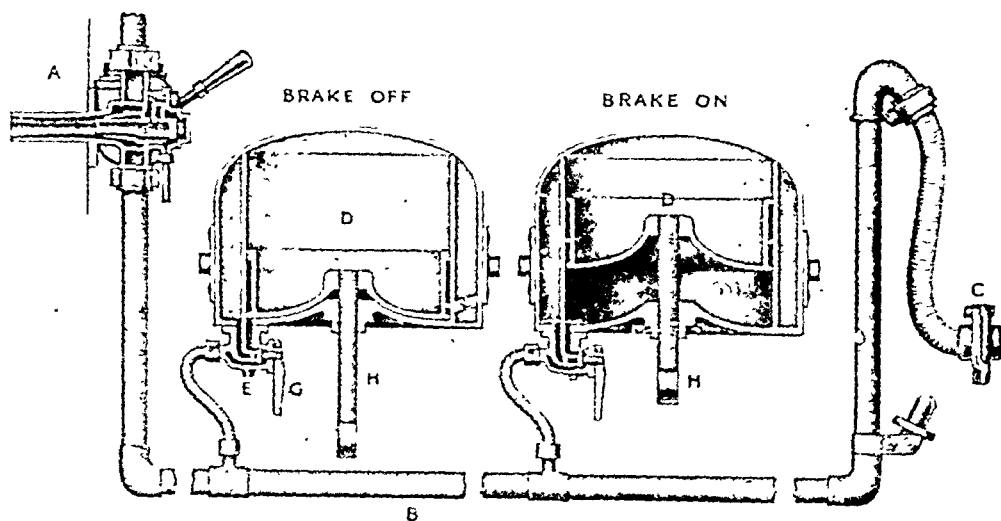
When water is driven out of a force pump, some of it enters the air-chamber and compresses the air in it. The air acts as a cushion and at the end of the stroke forces some of the water back into the pipe, so that the flow is kept steadier than would otherwise be the case, and the pipe is protected against severe shocks.

E. *air* and *chamber*.

**aircraft** (ar' kraft), *n.* Balloons, aeroplanes, and airships, taken together as a class, just as the word shipping covers ships of all kinds. (F. *appareils d'aviation*.)

A dart dropped from aircraft is called an **aircraft-arrow** (*n.*) or an **aerodart**.

E. *air* and *craft*.



**Air-brake.**—The care with which a train is braked is due to this invention. A is the ejector in the driver's cab that exhausts the air from the pipe B and the cylinders D throughout the train, thus taking off the brakes. When the driver lets air into the pipe, or if an accident occurs, air enters the cylinders as at D 1, moving the piston rod H which puts on the brakes. C is a release handle to take off the brakes when no engine is attached. The ball valve E acts so as to maintain the vacuum behind the piston when air is entering as at D 1, and C is the coupling which connects the train pipe from carriage to carriage.

**air-eddy** (är' ed i), *n.* A place in space where air currents meet and spin round, like a whirlpool in water. (F. *remous*.)

E. *air* and *eddy*.

**air-line** (är' līn), *n.* A straight line; a bee-line; the shortest distance between two points. (F. *ligne à vol d'abeille*.)

A service of aeroplanes, or airships, flying regularly between the air-ports of certain towns with passengers, mails, and goods is called an air-line. In America this word is used of railways which run perfectly straight.

E. *air* and *line*.

**air-lock** (är' lok), *n.* A chamber which prevents the escape of air from a place where work is being carried on in air at high pressure, but allows men and materials to pass in and out; an obstruction in a water-pipe caused by imprisoned air. (F. *écluse à air*.)

Air-locks are needed as entrances to tunnels and under-water spaces where compressed air must be used to keep water out. An air-lock has two doors, one at each end, and both opening in the high-pressure direction. They are never both open at the same time, and neither can be opened until the pressure has been made equal on both sides of it, by letting air into or out of the lock through valves.

E. *air* and *lock*.

**airman** (är' män), *n.* A pilot of an aeroplane; an aviator; an observer or a gunner in a war aeroplane. (F. *aviateur*.)

E. *air* and *man*.

**air-marshal** (är' mär shäl), *n.* An officer in the Royal Air Force.

An air-marshal corresponds in rank to a vice-admiral in the Navy and a lieutenant-general in the Army. The next highest rank is air-chief-marshal (är' chēf mär shäl, *n.*), equal to admiral in the navy and general in the army. The highest rank of all is marshal-of-the-air corresponding to admiral-of-the-fleet in the navy and field-marshal in the army.

E. *air* and *marshal*.

**air-mechanic** (är' mè kăn ik), *n.* A man who looks after the engines of aircraft and keeps them in good running order.

E. *air* and *mechanic*.

**air-pocket** (är' pok et), *n.* A downward current in the air, which makes an aeroplane drop very suddenly when it comes into it. (F. *remous*.)

E. *air* and *pocket*.

**air-pump** (är' pump), *n.* A pump for forcing air into, or sucking it from, an enclosed chamber. (F. *pompe à air*.)

The picture on this page shows a motor-car tire being filled with air. The operator with his foot in the stirrup (D) pulls the piston-rod (A) up to its limit, thus filling the barrel (B) with air. By pushing the piston-rod home,

the air in the barrel is forced by the plunger (F) through the check valve (H) and along the rubber tube (E) into the tire. When the piston-rod is pulled up again the little ball is drawn into the valve (H) thus preventing the return of the air to the barrel. The pressure of air in the tire is registered on the gauge (C).

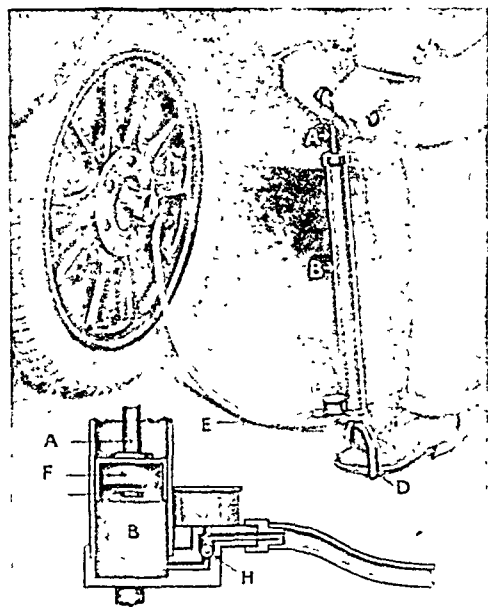
E. *air* and *pump*.

**air-raid** (är' rād), *n.* A bomb-dropping attack by aircraft on towns, camps, harbours, or other places of value to the enemy.

E. *air* and *raid*.

**air-scout** (är' skout), *n.* An airman who flies about in wartime to watch or find out what the enemy is doing by land or sea.

Air-scouts are also used for more peaceful ends. In Canada and the United States they fly over the great forests and keep a



Air-pump.—Pumping air into a motor-car tire.  
See article on this page.

look-out for forest fires. If an air-scout sees a fire he sends news by wireless to the men whose duty it is to fight it.

Air-scouts sometimes go with fishing and sealing fleets to find out where the shoals of fish or herds of seals are, as these can be seen more easily from a machine high up in the air than from the deck or mast of a ship. In the Austrian Alps air-scouts fly over the mountains to help climbers who may have lost their way and need help.

E. *air* and *scout*.

**air-shaft** (är' shaft), *n.* A shaft through which foul air is drawn from, or fresh air admitted to, a building, mine, or underground working. (F. *puits d'aérage*.)

E. *air* and *shaft*.

## AIRSHIP

airship (ar' ship), *n.* A lighter-than-air flying machine; a steerable balloon. (*F. ballon dirigeable.*)

The earliest attempts at navigating the air, as opposed merely to floating in it, were carried out with pear-shaped balloons, propelled by oars. The shape of the balloon was wrong and the power far too small. The first air-ship flight worthy of the name was made in 1852 by a Frenchman named Henri

"non-rigid" type, having a collapsible bag and a car hung from it. The same year Count von Zeppelin (1838-1917), a German, built the first "rigid" airship.

This type has a large number of separate air-bags inside a stiff aluminium framework, enclosed in an outside envelope. The French and Italians have given their attention to a third type, the "semi-rigid," in which a collapsible bag is stiffened underneath by a long girder carrying the car.

An airship is driven by a propeller or propellers and steered by flat and upright rudders, like those of an aeroplane. It is trimmed, or balanced fore and aft, by movable weights, or by pumping water from one tank to another, or by releasing ballast.

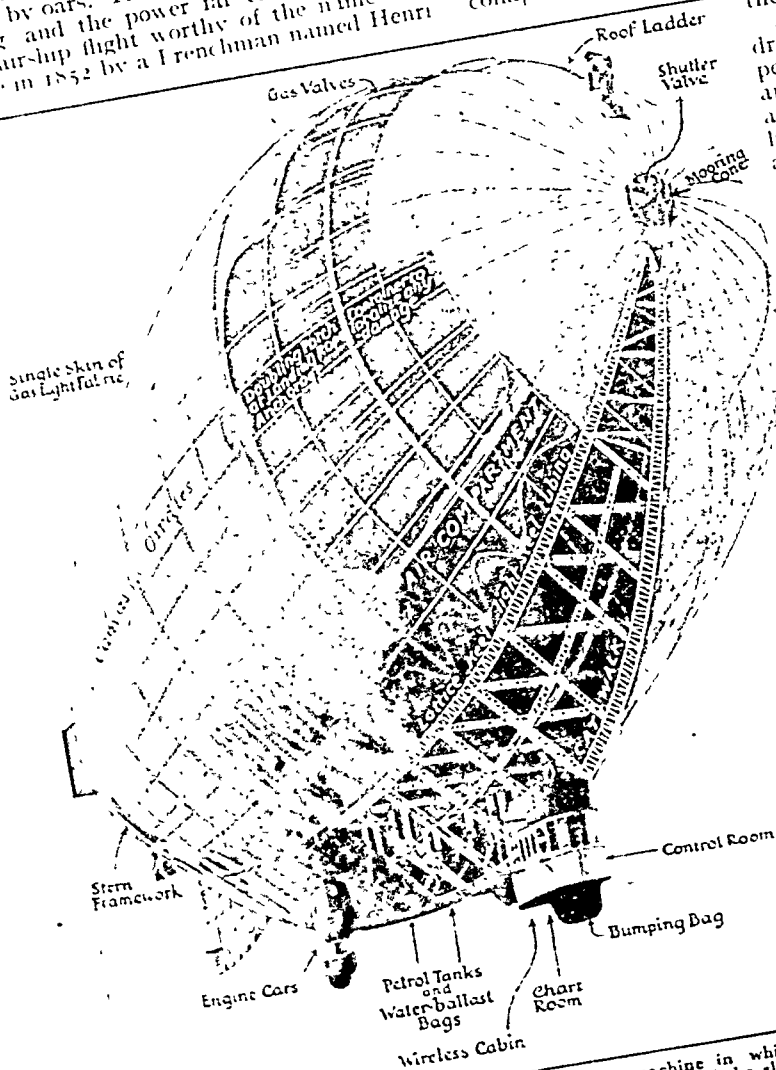
An airship, though not so fast as an aeroplane, has the advantage of being able to keep aloft if its engines break down, and to cruise at very low speeds. It is possible that the air-liners of the future will be rigid airships, moored when not in flight, from the tops of tall masts.

The longest non-stop flight yet made by an airship is 5,500 miles, from Bulgaria to Central Africa and back in 1917. In 1919 the British "R 34" flew to New York and back, the return voyage taking three days, three hours and three minutes. On May 11th, 1926, the Norwegian explorer, Captain Roald Amundsen, left

Spitz-bergen in the airship "Norge," passed right over the North Pole the following day and landed in Alaska. *E. ar and ship.*

**airt** (art), *n.* Direction, or a point of compass, as north or south. The term is used in Scotland. (*F. point cardinal, direction.*)

Gaelic, and point of the compass, Irish and top.



Airship - The "Norge," the lighter-than-air flying machine in which Captain Roald Amundsen flew over the North Pole in 1926. Part of the skin has been removed to show the skeleton of this visitor to the icy wastes.

Gottard in an air-ship with a long spindle-shaped bag driven endways through the air by a small steam engine. The shape was now correct but the power was still insufficient. The petrol motor presently provided the light and powerful engine needed. Since 1868 three types of air-ships have been developed. In 1900 a young Brazilian, Santos Dumont, scored the first real success with the

**air-thermometer** (är' thér mom è tər), *n.* A thermometer in which the expansion and contraction of air is used to show changes in temperature. (F. *thermomètre atmosphérique*.)

The thermometer is a glass tube bent into U form, and having one leg much larger across than the other. The "fat" leg is filled with air; the bend and part of the thin leg with sulphuric acid. As the air expands or contracts the acid rises and falls in the smaller tube, which is graduated or marked off in degrees.

E. *air and thermometer*.

**air-tight** (är' tīt), *adj.* Having no openings through which air can pass inwards or outwards. (F. *imperméable à l'air*.)

E. *air and tight*.

**air-trap** (är' trap), *n.* A chamber containing water which prevents foul air passing from a drain into a house.

The trap usually is a U-shaped bend in the pipe. The top of the bend is below the bottom of the line of the pipe, so that the bend is always full of water and blocks the way to air or gas.

E. *air and trap*.

**air-vessel** (är' ves l), *n.* A tube or vessel containing air. See *air-chamber*.

**airway** (är' wā), *n.* A path or route in the air along which aircraft fly at fixed times from one place to another, with mails and passengers; a passage for ventilation in a mine. (F. *voie d'aérage*.)

An airway differs from a roadway or railway in that it has no track that we can see. But when we speak of an airway we do not think only of the line or route. We have in mind also the landing and starting grounds at each end and at points between, and everything done to help aircraft flying along the airway. In effect, therefore, an airway is made by what is done on the ground along the route.

At present most airways are used by day only, but some of them have been, and are being, marked out by beacons, so that an airman may find his way along them easily in the dusk or at night.

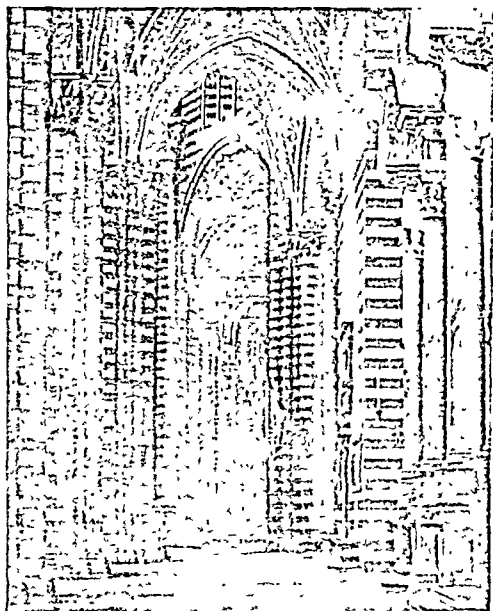
In the United States of America there is a great airway from New York to San Francisco along which mails are carried. So that aircraft shall not be delayed at night, the middle part of the airway has lighthouses set 200 miles apart, each sending out a beam of light equal to that of 450,000,000 candles. Between these are smaller lighthouses, 25 to 30 miles apart; and between them again small beacons at every third mile.

There are now airways between many of the great cities of Europe and of America. Very likely we shall live to see one reaching from England to Egypt, India, Australia, and New Zealand, and perhaps from England to America.

E. *air and way*.

**aisle** (il), *n.* The side portions of any part of a church, whether nave, transept or choir. The word has come to be applied in error to a passage between the seats or pews of a church, and the central passage is often wrongly called the "middle aisle." (F. *allée*.)

O.F. *aisle*, from L. *ala* (from *avilla*) a wing. Originally spelt *ile*, *aile*, *s* is due to a confusion with *isle* (island).



Aisle.—One of the aisles of the eleventh century cathedral of Siena, Italy.

**ait** (āt), *n.* A small island, especially one in a river or lake. "Chiswick ait" in the Thames is well-known as an important point in the course of the Oxford and Cambridge boat race. Eyot is another form of spelling. (F. *îlot*.)

A.-S. *iggath*, perhaps dim. of *ig*, *ieg*, island

**aitchbone** (äch' bōn), *n.* A joint of beef cut from below the rump. (F. *cimier*, *tranche au petit os*.)

Formerly and more correctly it was called a *natchbone* as *adder* was *nadder*. This is a cheap joint on account of the large bone it contains, but is nevertheless a good joint either for roasting or boiling. By a further corruption of its name it is sometimes known as the *edge bone*.

O.F. *nache*, from L.L. *naticae*, from L. *nates* buttocks, and *bone*.

**ajar** (ä jar'), *adv.* Partly opened (used of doors); in disagreement, disturbed (of nerves). (F. *entr'ouvert*, *en désaccord*.)

There is a well-known conundrum in which this word appears: "When is a door not a door?" The answer is "When it is ajar (a jar)."

(1) A.-S. *a* = on, *cierr*, M.E. *cher* turn (of work; cp. *charwoman*); (2) probably from *a* = on, in, and *jar* discordant sound (imitative).

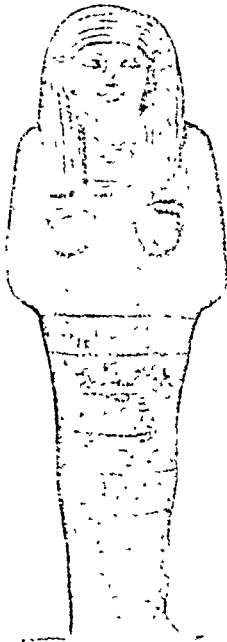
**akimbo** (ä kim' bō), *adv.* In an attitude with knuckles resting on hips and elbows thrust outwards, usually expressive of independence and defiance. (F. *sur la hanche*.)

M.E. in *kenbouc*, in a sharp (*kene*) bend like that of a bow, or perhaps from *cam* (Gaelic Irish, Welsh) crooked.

**akin** (ä kin'), *adj.* Related by blood, hence of things closely related in other ways. Thus we say pity is akin to love. (F. *parent de, allié*.)

E. *a-* = of, and *kin*.

**alabaster** (äl a bas' tēr), *n.* A valuable soft stone out of which small statues and ornaments are carved. *adj.* Made or of the colour of alabaster. (F. *albâtre, d'albâtre*.)



Alabaster.—An Egyptian figure of alabaster made about 500 B.C. It is in the British Museum.

The alabaster box, or vial, of ointment mentioned in Matthew xxvi, 7, was probably of this material. True alabaster is very soft, can be scratched with the finger nail, and has a pearly-white lustre.

O.F. and M.E. *alabastre*, from Gr. *alabastron* L. *alabaster, alabastrum*.

**alack** (ä lak'), *inter.* An exclamation of sorrow generally expressing a loss of something or someone dear. (F. *hélas*.)

The longer form *alackaday* (ä lak' ä dä) has the same meaning but was regarded as too sentimental, whence arose the word *lackaday*.

L. *ah*, and *lack* = want.

**alacrity** (ä lak' ri ti), *n.* Quickness; briskness. (F. *alacrité, allégresse*.)

Used chiefly of persons. To do a thing with alacrity means to do it with cheerful eagerness. The word is akin to the *allegro* and *allegretto* which mark quick, cheerful passages in music.

L. *alacritatem* (acc. of *alacritas*), from *alacer* (earlier also *alacris*), keen, lively.

**alamode** (a la mōd'), *adj.* and *adv.* Fashionable; up-to-date; fashionably. *n.* A variety of black silk. (F. *à la mode*.)

This is a French word, or rather three words—*à la mode*, in the fashion. It is used chiefly of dress, and was the name given to a glossy, black silk material imported from Lyons. In cookery it describes a special method of stewing meat and serving it up with thick, rich gravy.

**alarm** (ä larm'), *n.* A call to arms; a call to quick action in any danger; a means of calling anyone; excitement. *v.t.* To call to action; to cause excitement or fear. (F. *alarme; alarmer, réveiller*.)



Alarm.—A soldier sounding an alarm in the Franco-German war of 1870-71.

Before electricity had provided means of rapid communication with distant places it was no easy task to arouse a body of men to a sense of danger. Church bells or alarm-bells (*n.pl.*) were rung loudly and quickly to warn people of fires or of the approach of enemies. In Macaulay's poem on the Armada we have a graphic description of how the news of its coming was spread by beacon fires on hill-tops and towers. Messengers on horseback scoured the country. In Scotland

swift runners bore a fiery cross from hamlet to hamlet.

Modern methods are less exciting, but far more effective. The postman generally brings the call to arms, or mobilization papers as they are now termed. In pressing cases it may be the telegraph boy, while in future the call will be emphasized by wireless broadcasting. Guns and maroons are means of arousing the hearers to the need for help and are chiefly employed by vessels in danger off our coasts.

Fire alarm is usually given by means of bells placed in special boxes on pillars in the street, but a run to the nearest telephone and a call of "Fire-brigade" is equally effective. No number need be asked for, but the address of the place on fire should be given as soon as there is a reply. These events all cause excitement, and hence alarm sometimes has that meaning, as in "needless alarm," "cause for alarm," "don't be alarmed." One who arouses excitement needlessly is called an alarmist (à larm' ist, *n.*).

An even milder use of the word is provided by the harmless but useful alarm-clock (à larm' klok, *n.*) and the smaller alarm-watch (à larm' wotsh, *n.*), which ring loudly at the hour for which they are set to go off. Such a warning is known as an *alarum* (à lâr' ùm, *n.*) a word also used by poets and play-writers to express any confused or alarming (à larm' ing, *part. adj.*) noises.

Ital. *all' arme* = *alle arme*, L. *ad (illa) arma* to (those) arms! In early E. also written *all arm* as if it were a command to all to arm.

**alas** (à las'), *inter.* An exclamation of sorrow, dismay, or regret, as "Alas, poor Yorick!" (F. *hélas*.)

F. *a inter., las*, L. *lassus*, tired.

**Alastor** (à lās' tōr), *n.* An avenging god; an evil destiny. (F. *alastor*.)

The Greeks long ago discovered the truth of the saying, "Be sure your sins will find you out." Instead, however, of seeing that harm done to a man's own character is the worst punishment of sin, they considered that one of their many gods was the means by which this was effected, and to that god they gave the name Alastor, which means "he who does not forget."

Gr. *a not, lathesthai* to forget (= Alasthor); or perhaps, "one who drives men astray," from *alasthai* to wander.

**alb** (ālb), *n.* A long white robe worn by priests. (F. *aube*.)

Formerly the alb was the garment worn by those about to be baptized into the Christian church and was regarded as a symbol of the purification obtained by baptism. It is distinguished from the open sleeved surplice by having sleeves with closely fitting wristbands.

L. *albus*, *alba* white (with *tunica* understood).

**albacore** (āl' bā kōr), *n.* A large oceanic fish allied to the mackerel and the tunny. (F. *albacore*.)

Though seldom seen near land this fish is well known to seamen. It follows sailing vessels in large shoals, and often furnishes the sailors with excellent sport and a welcome change of diet. It grows to some 50 lbs. in weight, and has a fine set of teeth. Its magnificent swimming, by which it can leap five or six feet out of the water, provides a fine spectacle to the ocean traveller. Its scientific name is *Thunnus albacora*.

Span., Port., of Arabic origin, from *al* the, *bukr* young cow, from its size and appearance.

**albata** (āl bā' tà), *n.* An alloy, or metallic mixture of nickel, copper, and zinc. (F. *argentan*.)

This is commonly known as German silver and is used chiefly for making cheap spoons and forks.

L. *albatius* whitened, *p.p.* of *albare* to whiten

**albatros** (āl' bā tros), *n.* One of the chief types of German aeroplane used during the World War. (F. *albatros*.)

The original albatros was a biplane with a tractor screw and rounded tail. Later types have included seaplanes and monoplanes, some of great size.

G. *albatros*, so named after the bird.



Albatross.—Found chiefly in southern seas, this hardy bird will follow a ship for days.

**albatross** (āl' bā tros), *n.* A large sea-bird of the petrel family. (F. *albatros*.)

The wandering albatross, *Diomedea exulans*, the largest and best known of this group of birds, is found chiefly in southern seas, often at great distances from land. Its enormous wings, sometimes stretching to more than 15 feet from tip to tip, give it wonderful powers of flight and it will follow the swiftest vessels for hours, and sometimes days, at a time.

Its large strong beak, with sharply hooked tip, enables it to grasp firmly the fish on which it feeds. Its one or two eggs are laid on the bare earth in quiet spots ashore. Sailors believe that the killing of an albatross will bring them ill-fortune, and on this tradition Coleridge founded his well-known poem, "The Ancient Mariner."

Port. *alcatraz* pelican, ultimately from Arab. *al-gadus* bucket, from carrying water in its pouch (*b* for *g* from supposed connexion with L. *albus* white).

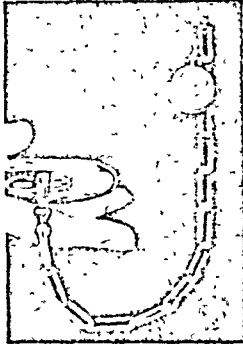


**albeit** (awl bē' it), *conj.* Though it be; notwithstanding; although. Used chiefly in poetry, and only twice throughout the Bible. (F. *néanmoins, quoique*.)

**Albert**==all (adv. even), though (omitted) it be.

**albert** (āl' bert), *n.* A kind of watch-chain. (F. *albert*.)

Before the introduction of wrist watches alberts were very fashionable. The single



Albert.—A watch-chain named after Prince Albert.

and original type is a chain of gold or silver attached to the watch ring at one end and fastened by a short bar to a buttonhole of the waistcoat at the other. The double albert has the bar in the centre, and stretches across the waistcoat from pocket to pocket.

This style of watch chain was named after Prince Albert, the husband of Queen Victoria, who

is commemorated by the Albert Hall and Albert Memorial, London. His title was changed to Prince Consort in 1857.

**albescent** (āl bes' ent), *adj.* Whitish or becoming white. The term is used by botanists.

*L. albescentis* (gen. *-entis*), pres. p. of *albescere*, to grow white.

**Albigenses** (āl bi jen' sez), *n.* A sect of religious reformers of the twelfth and thirteenth centuries. (F. *Albigens*.)

The Albigenses took their name from the town of Albi or Albige, in the south of France. Their doctrines came from the east by way of Italy. Their spread was so rapid and their opposition to the Roman Church so successful that in 1209 Pope Innocent III proclaimed a crusade, or holy war, against them.

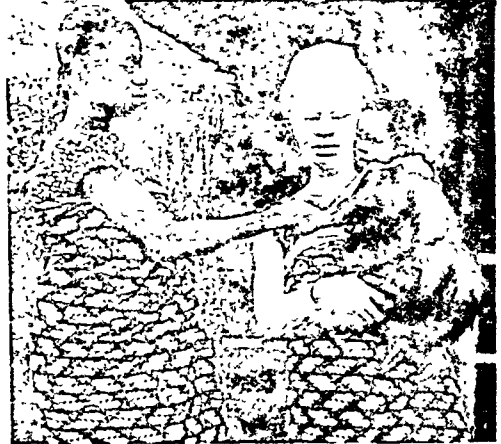
The crusaders were led by Simon de Montfort, father of the Simon so well known in English history. The terrible sufferings experienced by the Albigenses in the course of this crusade, which lasted twenty years, has caused their memory to survive.

**albino** (āl bē' nō), *n.* A human being or lower animal of much paler colour than is usual. (F. *albinos*.)

Cases of this kind are found among all animals, the best known examples being rabbits and mice. For some reason they have lost all the colouring matter found in other animals of the same species. Even their eyes are colourless, but appear pink from the fact that the blood vessels at the back of them show through. The loss of the protection provided by the dark iris causes the eyes of albinos to be easily affected by strong light.

A female with these characters is sometimes called an albiness (āl' bi nes, *n.*), and the

condition is known as albinism (āl' bi nizm, *n.*). It occurs occasionally among human beings and is especially striking in negroes and dark races. Numerous examples have been reported from Central America. An interesting example of albinism is that of the white elephants, which are regarded by the inhabitants of Siam as of divine origin. Span., Port., Ital., from *L. albus* white.



Albino.—A negress of a much paler colour than is usual, with a friend who is not an albiness.

**Albion** (āl' bi ōn), *n.* Another name for England, used formerly by the Greeks and Romans, and now in poetry. (F. *Albion*.)

In ancient times the usual approach to England was across the Strait of Dover, or some near part of the English Channel. Anyone who has made this crossing must have noticed how the white chalk cliffs of Kent and Sussex rise up to meet the approaching visitor, and hence it can easily be understood how our island in ancient times gained the name of Albion, or "The White Land." The name is by some supposed to be of Celtic origin.

**albite** (āl' bit), *n.* A mineral of the felspar group, usually white in colour. It is found in many granite rocks. The gems known as moonstones are often composed of albite. (F. *albite*.)

*L. albus* white.

**album** (āl' būm), *n.* A book of plain paper for the insertion of verses, autographs, stamps, photographs, etc. (F. *album*.)

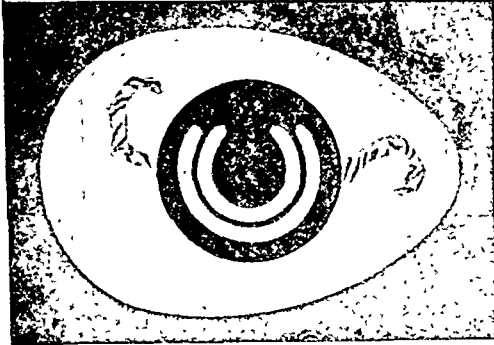
In photograph albums the leaves are often composed of several layers, the outermost of which are provided with cut-out ovals, circles, and squares, and with slits, so that the photographs may be slid between the layers and exposed to view through the cut-out spaces. At the end of the nineteenth century such albums were very fashionable and formed one of the chief ornaments of every drawing room. Portraits of the family and of friends were their main contents.

In ancient Rome the chief priest, or *Pontifex Maximus*, had the task of recording

the chief events of his times. These he wrote down on white tablets, which first gave rise to the name album. Later it was applied to other records, such as the list of judges, of senators, and other officers. In the Middle Ages the term was used for the list of saints and saints' days observed in the Roman Catholic Church. Now it is used only in the sense given in the definition above.

*L. album*, *n.*, a white tablet.

**albumen** (äl bū' mèn). White of egg, a similar substance found in vegetable and animal bodies. (*F. albumine.*)



**Albumen.**—The white portion of this section of an egg is the substance called albumen.

When we use the word albumen we generally mean white of egg. Albumin (äl bū' min) is the chemical name for this class of substances, one of which forms the most important ingredient of white of egg.

Albumin is an organic substance, that is, it occurs only in living, or organized, things; but all living things contain it in some form. It consists of oxygen, nitrogen, hydrogen, carbon, and sulphur in varying proportions. The last is the cause of the blackening of silver spoons if used for eating eggs. A peculiarity of fluid albumin is that it becomes solid and opaque when heated, as is seen in boiled eggs.

In plants albumin occurs especially in the seeds, between the embryo, or plant germ, and the seed coat. The eatable part of the coconut consists chiefly of albumin. Such materials are called albuminous (äl bū' min ūs, *adj.*) or albuminose (äl bū' min ōs, *adj.*). Substances resembling them or of like nature are albuminoid (äl bū' min oid, *adj.* and *n.*) or albuminoidal (äl bū' min oid' āl, *adj.*). Albumen has been used in photography for the coating of sensitized plates and paper, which are then said to be albumenized (äl bū' mèn izd, *p.p.*). To albuminize (äl bū' min iz, *v.t.*) is to turn into albumin.

*L. albumen* white of egg, from *albus* white.

**albumnum** (äl bēr' nūm), *n.* The outer and younger layer of wood in the trunk or branch of a tree. (*F. aubrier.*)

The growth of trees in thickness takes place in most cases just under the bark. Here there is a layer of cells forming what is

called the cambium, and these are constantly dividing. On their inner side they give rise to the cells which form the wood. The oldest wood cells are therefore in the centre and form the heart-wood, while outside there are younger cells which have not yet attained their full hardness or colour. These form the alburnum, and their cells are called alburnous (äl bēr' nūs, *adj.*). The word albumnum is sometimes spelt alburn (äl' bērn).

*L. albus* white.

**alkahest** (äl' kà hest), *n.* The universal solvent of the alchemists. See alkahest.

**alcaic** (äl kà' ik), *adj.* Relating to Alcaeus or to the kinds of verse said to have been first used by him. (*F. alcaïque.*)

Alcaeus of Mytilene in Lesbos was a Greek lyric poet who lived about 600 B.C. The famous Roman poet Horace wrote many of his odes in alcaics (äl kà' iks, *n.pl.*).

**alcayde** (äl käd'), *n.* The title given to the governor of a castle or prison in Spain, Portugal, and the parts of northern Africa near to them. (*F. alcade.*)

This word is of Arabic origin, and reminds us of the times when the Arabs, or Moors, ruled all northern Africa and had also crossed the Strait of Gibraltar into Europe.

Arab, from *al* the, *qād* commander.



**Alchemist.**—An alchemist of the Middle Ages seeking to turn common metals into gold.

**alchemy** (äl' ke mī), *n.* The art of chemistry as practised from remote times in the East to the close of the Middle Ages in Europe. (*F. alchimie.*)

The followers of alchemy aimed at finding the "philosopher's stone," which, it was thought, would turn common metals into silver or gold, and, dissolved in alcohol, would make the "elixir of life," a means of enabling people to live a very long time. They also tried to find the alkahest, or universal solvent, and the panacea, or universal remedy.

The word alchemy was once used for an alloy looking like gold and for any article, such as a trumpet, made of it; and for any

process which makes a change that seems miraculous. Thus we speak of the alchemy of Art or of Nature. To alchemize (äl' kē mīz, *v.t.*) is to change a thing as if by magic.

In 1783 there died a man named James Price who is sometimes called the last of the alchemists (äl' kē mists, *n.pl.*). He was a rich and able chemist who claimed to have made silver and gold. When he failed to make good his claim he killed himself in the presence of three members of the Royal Society.

A process to attain the ends of alchemy would be alchemic (äl kem' ik, *adj.*), alchemical (äl kem' ik äl, *adj.*), alchemistic (äl ke mis' tik, *adj.*), or alchemical (äl kē mis' tik äl, *adj.*), and something done after the manner of alchemy would be done alchemically (äl kem' i käl li, *adv.*).

Arab. *al-khīmīa*, from *al* the, and either Egyptian *kham* Egypt, hence "the Egyptian art," or Gr. *khymia* mixing, decoction (from *kheim* to pour).

**alcohol** (äl' kō hol), *n.* A liquid obtained by distilling wine and other liquids of vegetable origin, spirits of wine; any intoxicating drink. (F. *alcool*.)

A liquid containing sugar acted upon by yeast at a temperature of 60° F. has its sugar converted into alcohol. This is how all intoxicating drinks are made. If the liquid be gently heated the alcohol will be distilled, or given off as vapour, which may be collected. There are many kinds of alcohol, but ethyl alcohol is that to which the name is most often applied.

Spirits consist of nearly one half alcohol; heavy wines, such as port, of about one fourth, light wines and beer about one tenth or less. All these are called alcoholic (äl kō hol' ik, *adj.*) drinks. Great harm is done by over-indulgence in such liquids. Their action upon the human system, the habit of taking them to excess, and the condition caused by this habit are all known as alcoholism (äl' kō hōl izm, *n.*). To alcoholize (äl' kō hōl iz, *v.t.*) means to turn into or to mix with alcohol, to intoxicate, and to purify spirits, and the act itself is called alcoholization (äl kō hol i zä' shūn, *n.*). Alcoholometry (äl kō hol om' ēt ri, *n.*) is the process of finding the strength of pure alcohol, and the instrument used for this purpose is an alcoholometer (äl kō hol om' ēt r, *n.*).

Arab. *al-kohl*, from *al* the, *kohl* antimony powder, originally used to blacken the eyebrows; hence, any finely powdered substance, later, any product of distillation.

**alcove** (äl' kōv), *n.* An arched recess; a summer house. (F. *alcôve*.)

Arab. *al-gubbah*, from *al* the, *gubbah* vault, tent, Span. *alcoba*, O.F. *amube*.

**aldehyde** (äl' de hid), *n.* A fluid obtained from an alcohol by adding oxygen to it, but not in sufficient quantity to form an acid; a class of compounds of this type. (L. *aldehyd*, *n.*)

Some of the aldehydes are of importance in industry, such as formaldehyde, which is a

valuable disinfectant and preserving fluid. Aldehydic (äl de hid' ik, *adj.*) means relating to the aldehydes.

The word is a contraction of *alcohol dehydrogenatum*, alcohol deprived of hydrogen.

**alder** (awl' dēr), *n.* A common English tree which thrives in moist situations. (F. *aune*.)

The alder is allied to the beech, having similar oval, but pointed leaves, with saw-like edges. Its flowers are catkins appearing before the leaves in March and April. The female catkins have brilliant red stigmas. The tree grows from 40 to 60 feet in height. Its timber is soft, but resists water so well that it is much used for piles. Venice and Amsterdam are largely built on alder piles. The scientific name of the common alder is *Alnus glutinosa*.

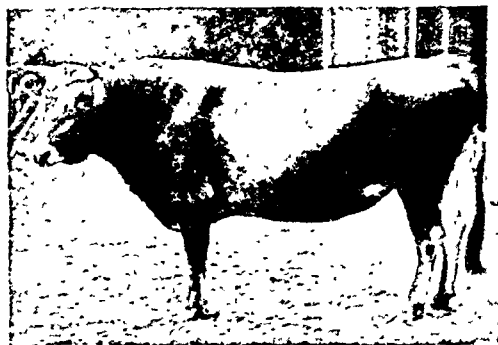
A.-S. *aler*, *alor*, M.E. *aller*, *alder*; cp. G. *Erl*, L. *alnus*.

**alderman** (awl' dēr mán), *n.* An officer in local government ranking next below the mayor. (F. *alderman*.)

In Anglo-Saxon times alderman meant a prince or chief. Thus King Cedric of Wessex (died 534) was known as alderman. The counties were ruled by aldermen, but the title became changed into "earl." Now only cities and boroughs have aldermen, who are chosen by the councillors and from whom the mayor is selected each year.

Collectively they are known as the aldermanate (awl' dēr mán ät, *n.*), their office is the aldermanship (awl' dēr mán ship, *n.*), and the part of the borough with which each is associated is an aldermanry (awl' dēr mán ri, *n.*). Their robes are aldermanic (awl' dēr mán' ik, *adj.*) and their behaviour should be aldermanly (awl' dēr mán li, *adj.*) or aldermanlike (awl' dēr mán lik, *adj.*).

A.-S. *ealdorman* elder or chief man. A connexion with L. *altor* nourisher (from *alere* to bring up) has been suggested.



Alderney.—One of the famous breed of cattle that is the pride of the Channel island of the same name.

**Alderney** (awl' dēr ni), *n.* The third in size of the Channel Islands; breed of cattle. (F. *Awigny*.)

Alderneys are small but beautiful cattle, soft brown in colour and splendid milkers.



Alert.—Starting on their race the instant they heard the crack of the pistol, these athletes have proved themselves to be alert in body and mind.

Their milk contains far more cream than is usual with other cows.

**Aldine** (awl' din), *adj.* Of or relating to or printed by the firm of Aldus Manutius, the name of a kind of printing type. *n.* A book from the Aldine Press; one of a series of finely produced modern books.

Aldus Manutius (1450-1515) was the founder of the famous Aldine Press at Venice. To him we owe the earliest editions in print of the great classical writers of Greece and Rome.

**ale** (āl), *n.* A kind of light-coloured beer. (F. *ale*.)

Ale is an intoxicating drink made from pale malt, which gives it its light colour. The malt is fermented and flavoured with hops. A drink made from barley, which was probably a kind of ale, is mentioned in the writings of the Greek historian Herodotus, who lived about four centuries before Christ.

An **ale-bench** (āl' bench, *n.*) is a bench outside or inside a public-house, intended for people to sit on while drinking ale or other liquors. An **ale-conner** (āl' kon' er, *n.*) is an examiner or inspector of ale. There is a plant called **alecost** (āl' kost, *n.*), also known as costmary, which at one time was used to flavour ale. An **ale-house** (āl' hous, *n.*) is a house where ale is sold. An **ale-taster** (āl' tās't er, *n.*) is the same as an ale-conner. An **alewife** (āl' wif, *n.*) is the landlady of an ale-house or place where ale is sold. See alewife.

A.-S. *calu*, cp. Scand. *öl*.

**alee** (ā lē), *adv.* On or in the direction of the lee or sheltered side of a ship. (F. *sous le vent*.)

This is a term used especially on sailing ships. When these change their course they either tack or wear. In the latter case the ship turns till the wind is right ahead, and then the sails are swung over to the opposite

side and the ship goes off on her new course. The time to swing the sails is usually given by the steersman's call of "Helm's alee!" This means that the rudder is against the sheltered side of the ship.

Small boats approach a large vessel alee, and are moored there when not hauled up out of the water.

E. *a-* = on, and *lee*.

**alembic** (ā lem' bik), *n.* A glass or copper vessel formerly used in distilling. (F. *alambique*.)

This word is little used now, except in a poetical or figurative sense, such as the alembic of happiness or the alembic of imagination. In pictures of alchemists, the chemists of the Middle Ages, there is usually an alembic among the litter of strange apparatus.

L.L. *alambicus*, from Arab. *al-aubig*, Gr. *ambix* cup.

**alert** (ā lērt'), *adj.* Wide-awake, keenly watching and listening, quick to observe and act; brisk. *n.* A warning against a surprise attack; such an attack. (F. *alerte*.)

A good house-dog is alert, ready to give warning at the slightest sound. In school a class is alert during an interesting lesson, it may be drowsy and inattentive when the subject is dull. Alert young people sometimes fidget during a long sermon, but they attend alertly (ā lērt' lī, *adv.*) when a Sunday School treat is announced. Alertness (ā lērt' nēs, *n.*) in Boy Scouts means that they are living up to their motto, "Be Prepared," and "alert!" is their drill word for "attention!" Red Indians on the warpath or soldiers on sentry-go are said to be on the alert for danger.

The word alert was acquired by French soldiers during their invasions of Italy in the sixteenth century, and is thus a war word, like the many foreign expressions that the

British soldiers brought into our language during the World War of 1914-18.

Ital. *all'erta* on guard (*erta*, watch tower), ultimately from L. *erecta*, p.p. of *erigere* to erect. SYN.: Active, lively, prepared, ready, vigilant. ANT.: Dull, heavy, stupid, unwary, unwatchful.

**aleurone** (âl lûr' ôn), *n.* An albuminoid substance made up of very tiny, solid particles found in the ripening seeds of wheat and other cereals. (F. *aleurone*.)

Gr. *aleuron* ground meal.

**alewife** (âl' wîf), *n.* A North American fish of the same family as the herring. (F. *gasparet gaspareau*.)

The alewife is found in abundance on the Atlantic coast of North America. It is from about eight to ten inches long, and is used as food. The name is possibly a corruption of the French *alose*, a shad.

**alexandrine** (âl eg zân' drin), *n.* A line of verse of twelve syllables with stress on the even syllables, verse of this kind. *adj.* Relating to such verse. (F. *alexandrin*.)

This is the favourite metre of the French classical poets. It is not much used by English poets, except for the last line of a stanza as in Byron's "Childe Harold"

But hark! that heavy sound breaks in once more,

As if the clouds its echo would repeat,

And nearer, clearer, deadlier than before!  
Arm! Arm! It is—it is—the cannon's opening roar!

The name is probably derived from an old French poem on Alexander the Great

**alfalfa** (âl fâl' fa), *n.* Another name for lucerne. (L. *lucerna*.)

This plant is related to the vetch. It has oval leaves and a pretty purple flower, and is very valuable for pasture and hay. Its very long roots enable it to withstand droughts which would kill ordinary grasses. In hot climates it will yield from six to eight crops a year, if supplied with enough water.

Alfalfa may often be seen growing on the sides of railway cuttings, where its long roots help to prevent the earth from slipping down. It is a very important fodder crop in the United States and the Argentine.

Arab. *alfafsa* a valuable fodder plant.

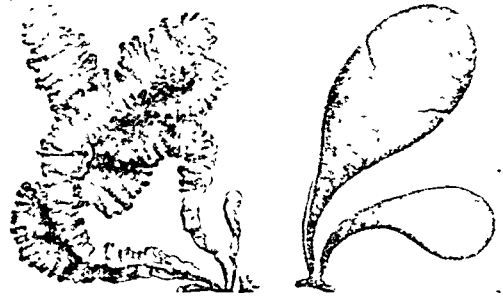


Alfresco.—This word means "in the open air," and a picnic such as this is an alfresco pleasure party.

**alfresco** (al fres' kô), *adv.* and *adj.* In the open air, especially of a meal taken out of doors. (F. *en plein air*.)

In fine weather we can lunch alfresco in the garden, or have an alfresco tea. A true picnic is always alfresco, but sometimes the word picnic is used carelessly to describe any informal meal.

Ital. *al fresco* in the open air; cp. Eng. *fresh*.



Algae.—Two seaweeds which are sometimes eaten, dulce (left) and sea lettuce.

**alga** (âl' gâ), *n.* A seaweed; a plant belonging to the division which includes seaweeds and certain freshwater plants. (F. *algue*.)

Living in the seas and rivers there are certain plants of a green, brown or red colour in which we find the green colouring matter called chlorophyll. These are algae (âl' gē; âl' jē, *n.pl.*). Any kind of seaweed may be spoken of as an algous (âl' gûs, *adj.*) or algal (âl' gâl, *adj.*) plant, and any plant of a similar nature is algoid (âl' goid, *adj.*)

That part of botany that tells us about these plants is algology (âl gol' ô ji, *n.*), and one who studies it is called an algologist (âl gol' ô jist, *n.*) or an algist (âl' jist, *n.*)

L. *alga* seaweed.

**algebra** (âl' je brâ), *n.* Universal arithmetic. (F. *algèbre*.)

A branch of mathematics in which letters are used as symbols instead of numbers, and algebraic (âl je brâ' ik, *adj.*) or algebraical (âl je brâ' ik âl) signs for processes. Thus

+ means add, − subtract, = equals,  $ab$  means  $a$  multiplied by

$b$ ,  $\frac{x}{y}$  means  $x$  divided by  $y$ ,  $a^2$

is the square of  $a$ ,  $a^3$  the cube of  $a$ ,  $a^4$  is  $a$  raised to the fourth power, and so on.  $\sqrt{a}$  is the square root of  $a$ . By algebra calculations can be made which can be applied quite generally. Thus if the sides of a rectangle are  $a$  and  $b$  units of length, its area is always  $ab$  units of area.

Algebra can also be used for solving problems by forming equations or statements of

equality. Let us algebraize (äl' jè brä iz, *v.t.*), that is, solve by algebra, the following simple problem :

*What is the number of which a half, a quarter, and a third make 39?*

Let  $x$  stand for the unknown number. Algebraically (äl' jè brä' ik ä'l li, *adv.*) stated :

$$\frac{x}{2} + \frac{x}{4} + \frac{x}{3} = 39$$

Multiply both sides by 12, to get rid of the fractions, and it will still be true :

$$6x + 3x + 4x = 468$$

$$\text{or } 13x = 468$$

Therefore  $x = 36$ , which solves the problem.

There is some doubt as to the origin of the science, but there were skilled algebraists (äl' jè brä' ists, *n.pl.*) or algebrists (äl' jè brists, *n.pl.*) in India and Arabia before the ninth century A.D.

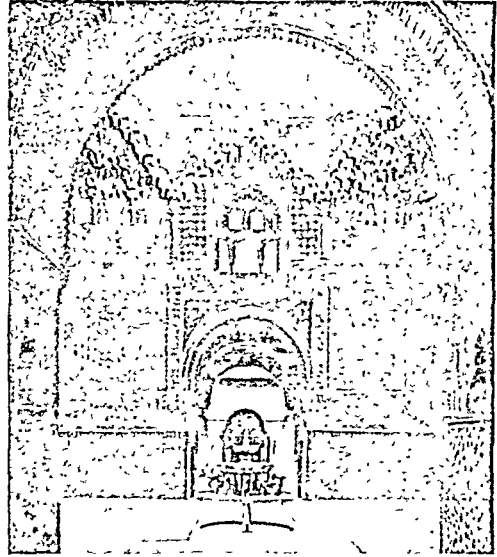
Arab. *al* the, *jabr* reuniting.

**Algerine** (äl' jèr èn), *adj.* Of or belonging to or relating to Algiers or Algeria, in North Africa. *n.* A native of Algiers or Algeria; a pirate. (F. *algérien*.)

For some hundreds of years the Algerine pirates were a terror to the peoples living on the shores of the Mediterranean Sea. So much was this the case that Algerine came to be another word for pirate. The most famous of these pirates were the two brothers

**algum** (äl' gum), *n.* A tree referred to in the Bible (II Chronicles ii, 8). (F. *algunmin*.)

The algum tree is apparently the same as the almug (I Kings, x, 11-12), which is probably a wrong spelling. It was brought from Ophir and was used for making pillars for the temple at Jerusalem and the king's house. It is probably the red sandal-wood of India.



Alhambra.—Looking towards the Court of Lions in the great Moorish palace of Granada in Spain.

**Alhambra** (äl' häm' brä), *n.* The Moorish palace and fort at Granada in Spain. (F. *alhambra*.)

Hundreds of years ago Spain was ruled by the Mohammedan Moors, one of whose cities was Granada. Here, in the year 1261, they began the splendid building the Arabic name of which was *al-hamra*, or the red house, so called from the colour of the bricks used.

Any building which is built to resemble the Alhambra is said to be *alhambresque* (äl' häm bresk', *adj.*).

**alias** (ä' h äs), *adv.* Otherwise named. *n.* A name used instead of one's own. (F. *faux nom*, *pseudonyme*.)

This word is generally used for a name adopted for an unworthy purpose. Criminals sometimes hide their real name under an alias or more than one alias, in their attempts to keep out of the clutches of the law. Writers and actors often use a different name. Henry Irving's real name was Henry Brodribb, and Lewis Carroll, the author of "Alice in Wonderland," was in private life the Rev. C. L. Dodgson. Names like this are actually aliases, but when they are not used with any bad motive they are usually called pseudonyms.

*L. alias*, *adv.*, in another way, from *alius* other.



Algerine.—A warrior of the great French colony of Algeria, in North Africa.

named Barbarossa (Red Beard), who again and again defeated fleets sent against them. The elder, Arrouj, was killed in 1518; the younger, Khair-ed-Din, died in 1546.

**alibi** (āl' i bī), *n.* A form of defence in which a person accused of a crime sets out to prove that he was in some other place when the offence was committed. (F. *alibi*.)

*L. alibi* in another place, from *alius* other, with suffix -bi.

**alidād** (āl' i dād), *n.* A pointer or index showing degrees on certain instruments, such as the theodolite used by surveyors for measuring. (F. *alidade*.)

The word is also spelt **alidade** (āl' i dād) and in various other ways.

Arab. *al'idada* revolving radius (from *'adad* upper arm).

**alien** (ā' li ēn), *adj.* Foreign, strange, not natural; not appropriate. *n.* A foreigner. (F. *change*; *étranger*.)

Many words in the English language come from Italy, they are of alien origin. Deception is alien to an honest man. Funeral marches are alien to wedding festivals. A foreigner living in this country is an alien, unless he is naturalized, and so is an Englishman in any country outside the British Empire. Private possessions, such as lands, which we have the right to hand over to a stranger, possess the quality of alienability (ā' li ēn a bil' i ti *n.*), and so property that can change ownership is alienable (ā' li ēn a bl, *adj.*).

By behaving badly we may alienate (ā' li ēn āt, *v.*) the affections of a friend, and cause him to turn away from us, his feelings becoming alienate (ā' li ēn āt, *adj.*). Both the act and the resulting relationship would be alienation (ā' li ēn ā' shūn, *n.*). Lawyers describe the formal transfer of an estate from one person to another as alienation, it is the reverse of inheritance. Alienation also means madness, suggesting alienation of mind.

A person who alienates a friend is the alienator (ā' li ēn ā tōr, *n.*). In fun we say that a thief is an alienator of property. The legal name for a person to whom the ownership of property is transferred is alienee (ā' li ēn ē, *n.*). Unnaturalized foreigners live here in alienism (ā' li ēn izm, *n.*). The practice of introducing foreign words and places into a speech or a piece of writing is known as alienism, and by alienism we also mean the treatment and study of madness.

Anyone skilled or engaged in this work is an alienist (ā' li ēn ist, *n.*), or "mad-doctor."

An amusing alien question arose when England and Scotland were united in the reign of James I. Were the Scotch aliens? The decision, after a long and solemn trial, was that those born before the union of 1603 were aliens while those born after were British subjects.

O.F. *alien*, from *L. alienus* foreign, belonging to another. *SYN.*: Distant, opposed, remote, unconnected, unlike. *ANT.*: Akin, appropriate, germane, pertinent, relevant.

**aliform** (ā' li fōrm), *adj.* Shaped like a bird's wing. This word is used especially by scientists to describe the shape of parts of the human body, of plants, etc. (F. *aliforme*.)

*L. ala* wing, *forma* form, shape.

**alight** [1] (ā' lit'), *v.i.* To get down; to reach the ground; to come to rest; to fall or strike (upon anything); to come unexpectedly (on). (F. *descendre*; *tomber sur*.)

At the end of a journey, we say, "This is where we alight." We then alight from the train, and so alight upon the platform. We peer into the luggage van until our eyes alight on our trunks. A bird alights upon a bough. A blow alighted on Don Quixote's head. It is exciting to alight upon a rare picture in a curiosity shop.

A-S. *alhttan*, from a-intensive *lihtan* alight (and so make a horse's burden light).

**alight** [2] (ā' lit'), *adj.* On fire; lighted; illuminated. (F. *allumé*.)

A burning fire is alight. At night the street lamps are alight. When we see a Christmas tree alight with candles our faces should be alight with pleasure. If the gas is alight, or lighted, then the room is alight, or filled with light.

Strictly, "alight" is a past participle

meaning "shone upon with light," and is used predicatively.

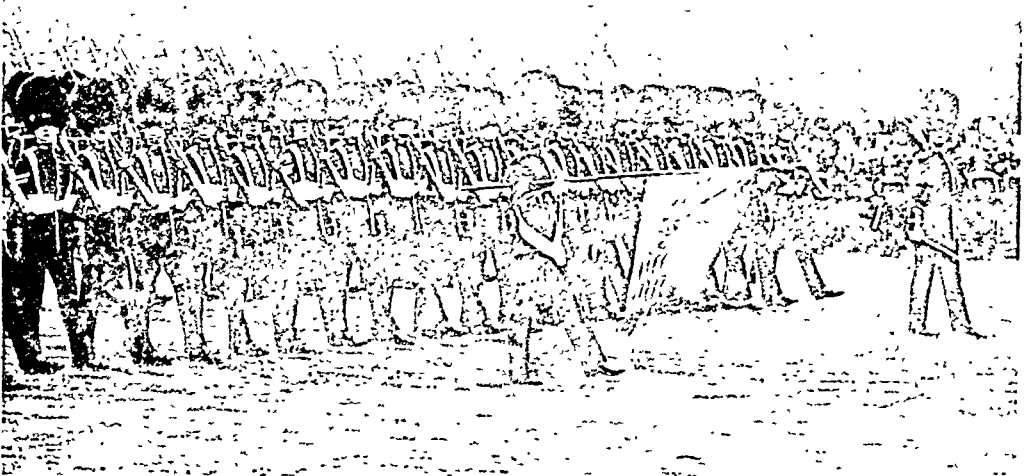
**align** (ā' lin'). This is another spelling of aline. See aline.

**alike** (ā' lik'), *adj.* Similar. *adv.* In the same way; equally. (F. *semblable*; *également*.)

Newly minted pennies are all alike, and so are the houses in some streets. To many of us the stars are alike, but not to sailors or astronomers. Wood and rags are alike in



Alight.—A friendly gull alighting on the finger of a visitor to Kensington Gardens.



Alinement.—Dipping the Colour as the Guards march past the King, on Horse Guards Parade, Whitehall.  
An example of perfect military alinement.

one respect; both can be made into paper. People who are fond of music and painting have tastes alike.

There are degrees of likeness, for which modifying words are added to "alike." The Italian and Spanish languages are *somewhat* alike. All the full stops in this paragraph are *exactly* alike. Emphatic statements like the last, though, are seldom strictly true. Although the stops are printed alike (*adv.*) a microscope would probably show that each has its peculiarities.

O. Norse, *álík-r*, from *ā* on, *līk* like. SYN.: Akin, equal, homogeneous, identical, same. ANT.: Different, dissimilar, distinct heretogeneous, unlike.

**aliment** (āl' i mēnt), *n.* Food. (F. *aliment*.)

Nourishing food is *alimental* (āl i men' tál, *adj.*) food, or *alimentary* (āl i men' tã ri) food, and it is taken *alimentally* (āl i men' tál li, *adv.*), by means of the alimentary canal, which is one of the most important parts of the human body. It includes the mouth, the throat, the stomach and the small and large intestines. Through the mouth and throat the food is carried to the stomach, where it is partly digested by the bile. In the intestines digestion is continued, the valuable part of the food is absorbed, and the waste part is carried away.

The act of being nourished or of affording nourishment or support is known as *alimentation* (āl i mēn tã' shūn, *n.*), and *alimentative* (āl i men' tã tiv, *adj.*) is anything connected with feeding or nourishing.

L. *alimentum* from *alere* to nourish.

**alimony** (āl' i mūn i), *n.* A money allowance which a man may be ordered to pay his wife for her support; provision for maintenance.

L. *alimonia* nourishment, from *alere* to nourish.

**aline** (ā lin'), *v.t.* To place in or bring into line. *v.i.* To fall or form into line. **Align** (ā līn') is another but less correct form of spelling. (F. *aligner*; *s'aligner*.)

A colonel will *aline* his regiment for a review or an advance, and a gardener will *aline* his potatoes or an architect his windows. The result of *alining* is *alinement* (ā līn' mēnt, *n.*).

A familiar example of *alinement* is that by which so many of the English country roads have been made into arterial roads by removing awkward bends and *alining* long stretches between given points. Prehistoric stone monuments standing in rows are known as *alinements*. Stars are easily found by *alinement*, that is, by drawing imaginary lines in the heavens from one known star to another and using this as a pointer or base to find a third.

L.L. *allineare*, from *ad* to, *lineare* to form in a straight line.

**aliquot** (āl' i kwot), *adj.* Contained in another number an exact number of times. *n.* Such a number. (F. *aliquote*.)

2s. 6d. is an aliquot part of £1, because it "goes into" it exactly without leaving a remainder; but 3s. 6d. is not. All our lesser coins are aliquots of £1.

L. *aliquot* some, from *alius* other, *quot* how many?

**alive** (ā liv'), *adj.* Living; lively, awake to; in operation; in a state of commotion. (F. *en vie*, *vif*, *animé*.)

The figurative uses of *alive* are many—"we must look alive or the work will not be done in time" (*be really active*); "the Home Secretary is alive to the necessity of combating smallpox" (*well aware of*); "keep



alive in your breast that little spark of celestial fire called Conscience" (*cheerish*); "the roads to Epsom are alive with cars on Derby Day" (*swarming*). The word is also used to add force: "No man alive would dare—"; "Why, bless your heart alive, my dear, how late you are!" said Mrs. Cratchit, in Dickens' "Christmas Carol," when her daughter came in to dinner.

A.-S. *on*=on, in, and *life* (dative of *lif*).

**alizarin** (ā liz' ā rin), *n.* A red dye formerly extracted from madder but now prepared from anthracene, a coal-tar product. (F. *alizarine*.)

A salt of alizarine is an **alizarate** (ā liz' ā rāt, *n.*) and its acid **alizaric** (āl i zār' ik, *adj.*) acid.

F. *alizon* madder, probably of Arabic origin, from *al-asarah* something pressed out, the juice.

**alkahest** (āl' kă hest), *n.* The universal solvent of the alchemists. (F. *alcahest*.)

We know that water dissolves many things but not everything—not metals, for instance. Indeed, no element which dissolves everything is known. Once, however, it was believed that such an element, called **alkahest**, existed. This was the belief of the alchemists, the chemists of an earlier civilization.

The word was probably coined by Paracelsus, *al* representing the Arabic article *the*.

**alkali** (āl' kă h), *n.* A class of chemical compounds. (F. *alcali*.)

This word was originally applied to the ashes of plants, which indeed are very rich in **alkalis** (āl' kă liz, *n.pl.*). Now it is used to denote a well-defined group of chemical compounds. We may have very strong alkalis like caustic soda, or milder alkalis like carbonate of soda. Ammonia is also classed as an alkali. Alkalis all turn red litmus blue, and destroy acids. Any substance of this nature is said to be **alkaline** (āl' kă lin *adj.*). Alkaline metals are those that give alkalis when they act upon water. One of these—a soft metal called potassium—

catches fire when dropped on to water. A substance that is becoming or is inclined to become alkaline or that is slightly alkaline is **alkalescent** (āl kă les' ent, *adj.*) and possesses the property of **alkalescence** (āl kă les' ens, *n.*) or **alkalescency** (āl kă les' en si, *n.*).

To **alkalize** (āl' kă liz, *v.t.*) is to make alkaline, and the act is **alkalization** (āl kă li zā' shūn, *n.*). An **alkaloid** (āl' kă loid, *n.*) is an alkaline organic substance of a special kind, often very poisonous, such as strychnine. Anything relating to an alkaloid or having the properties of one is **alkaloidal** (āl kă loid' āl, *adj.*).

If we turn a substance into an alkali we **alkalify** (āl' kă l i fi, *v.t.*) it, and a substance that can be so changed is **alkalifiable** (āl kă l i fi' ābl, *adj.*). Measuring the strengths of alkalis is **alkalimetry** (āl kă lim' et ri, *n.*), and anything to do with this is **alkalimetric** (āl kă li met' ri kă l, *adj.*).

Arab. *al the*, *qali* ashes, especially of saltwort

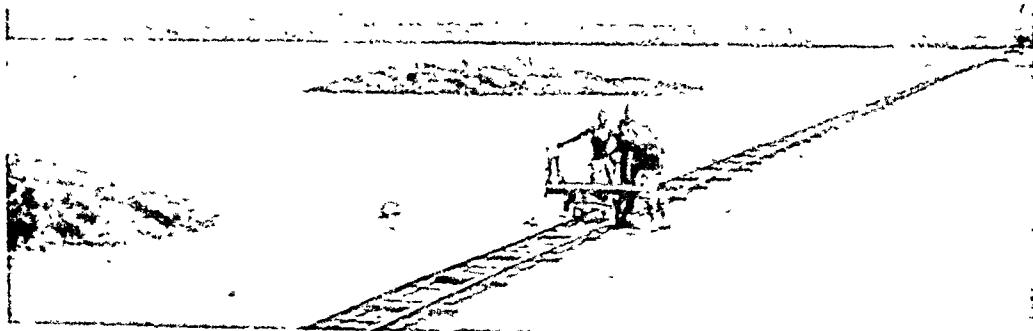
**alkanet** (āl' kă net), *n.* A plant; a dye made from this plant. (F. *orcanète*.)

Botanists call the plant *Alkanna* or *Anchusa tinctoria*, and it is also known as *orcanet*, *dyer's bugloss* and *Spanish bugloss*. It is grown in the south of France and on the shores of the Levant. A fine red colouring matter is obtained from it, and thus is used to tint wines, oil varnish, etc.

The word comes from Arabic *al-hannā* henna.

**alkyl** (āl' kıl), *n.* A general name for a certain class of radicals (families of atom-) which cannot exist by themselves, but take part in the composition of what are called "the paraffins" or the "paraffin hydrocarbons." (F. *alkyl*.)

The smallest alkyl is CH<sub>3</sub>, that is, one carbon atom and three hydrogen atoms (methyl). The next is C<sub>2</sub>H<sub>5</sub> (ethyl), then C<sub>3</sub>H<sub>7</sub> (propyl), and so on, with an increase of CH<sub>2</sub> each time. In each case if one atom of hydrogen is added we get a paraffin. For example, methyl gives CH<sub>4</sub> (marsh gas).



Alkali.—The alkali beds of Magadi Lake, in Kenya. This East African lake is twenty-five miles long and four miles wide. The carbonate of soda is brought ashore by a light railway

Instead of hydrogen OH may be added; for instance, ethyl gives  $C_2H_5OH$  (ethyl alcohol). **Alkylation** (āl ki lā' shūn, *n.*) is the putting of these radicals into compounds.

**Alkyl**=*alk* (short for alkali) and *-yl*, suffix forming chemical radicals.

**all** (awl), *adj.* The whole of. *n.* The whole. *adv.* Wholly. (F. *tout*.)

This word, as an adjective, tells you how much of a thing (the whole of it), how long (the whole length), to what extent (the whole extent), etc. As a noun it refers to the whole thing in itself, as when we say "All is lost." The universe is sometimes called "the all." Again, the word when used instead of wholly or completely is an adverb. It is occasionally used, in the way of an adverb, to increase the force of a word by being joined to that word by a hyphen, as in all-destroying; and sometimes, dropping an *l*, it is quite joined to the word, as in almost, alone.

As a noun all is also used in lawn tennis, badminton, and other games. In lawn tennis, instead of calling the score fifteen-fifteen, fifteen to each player, or fifteen to both sides, it is the custom to call fifteen-all, or thirty-all, as the case may be. When an equal number of games has been won by each player or pair of players the score is called games-all.

All on side is a term in Rugby football. When a player has kicked the ball up the field and is following up his kick he gives the warning cry of "all on," a shortened form of "all on side," as soon as he has placed the other players of his team "on side." It may be that the player calls "all on" when one or other of the team is "off side," in which event a free kick is awarded to the other side.

**A.-S. *eal*, M.E. *al*, SYN.:** *adj.* Complete, each, total. *n.* Sum, totality, whole. *adv.* Completely, quite. **ANR.:** *adj.* Fractional, some. *n.* Fraction, piece, portion. *adv.* Incompletely, partly.

**Allah** (āl' ā), *n.* The name of God in the Mohammedan religion. (F. *Allah*.)

The first article of the Moslem faith is that "there is no God but Allah, and Mohammed is his Prophet."

Arab. contracted from *al-ilāh* (*al* the, *ilāh* God).

**allanite** (āl' ā nit), *n.* A glassy mineral containing silica, iron, and cerium. (F. *allanite*.)

This brownish black mineral was named after Thomas Allan (1777-1833) of Edinburgh, who discovered it.

**allargando** (āl lar gān' dō), *adv.* In music, slower and louder. (F. *allargando*.)

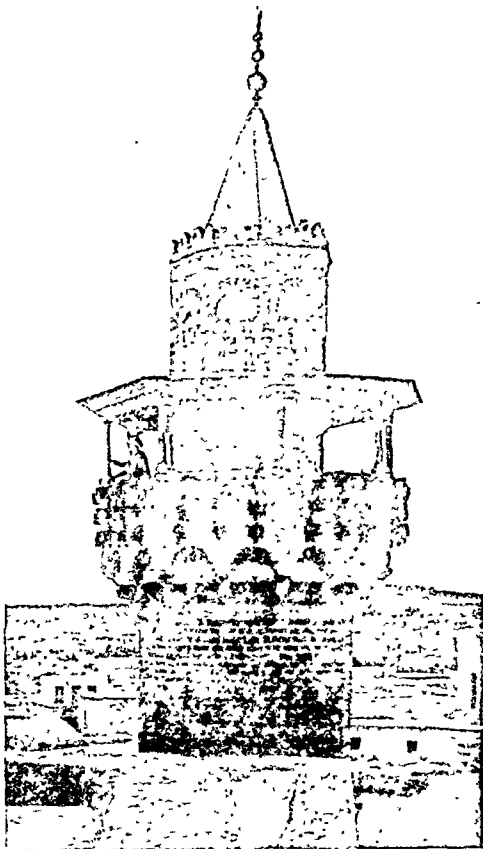
This term is employed to show that the passage of music so marked must be taken in a much slower, broader, and louder style, with greatly marked emphasis. This direction generally occurs towards the end of a section or phrase, or when the music is drawing to an imposing close.

**Ital.** becoming, or making broader, from L.L. *allargare*, from *al-* = *ad* intensive, *largus* abundant broad.

**allay** (ā lā'), *v.t.* To quiet; to soothe. (F. *alléger, apaiser*.)

A drug is said to allay pain, or a mother to allay her child's fear of the dark. The lessening of pain is called allaying (ā lā' ing, *n.*).

**A.-S. *alecgan*** to lay down, remove, confused with M.E. *aleggen*, meaning also to alleviate, from L.L. *alleviare* to make light (*levis*). **SYN.:** Alleviate, moderate, pacify, relieve. **ANR.:** Aggravate, exasperate, excite, infuriate.



Allah.—"There is no God but Allah, and Mohammed is his Prophet." Calling 'he faithful to prayer.

**allegation** (āl lē gā' shūn), *n.* An assertion; a definite charge. (F. *allégation*.)

If we say that a man is not honest we make an allegation against him. The assertion may be a wrong one, or it may be quite true: it does not matter which it is, it is an allegation. When we make such an assertion we allege (ā lej', *v.t.*) or state positively that the man is dishonest.

The legal meaning of allegation is a statement as yet unproved, but believed to be true by the one by whom it was made. In the case of criminal charges the editors of newspapers are always careful to refer to the person prosecuted as an alleged (ā lej'd', *part. adj.*) forger, burglar, or whatever he is said to

be, until the allegation or charge against him has been proved, otherwise they lay themselves open to an action for libel should he be declared innocent.

O F. *eshier*, L. L. *e*(*litigare* to put beyond dispute, which became confused with L. *allegare* to depute; bring forward, from *ad* to, *legare* to send. SYN.: Affirmation, assertion, declaration, profession. ANT.: Contradiction, denial, refutation.

**allegiance** (à lē' jāns; à lē' jū āns) *n.* The duty a subject owes to the ruler or government of his country; respect, devotion. (F. *allégeance*.)

In feudal days the hege-man or vassal owed allegiance to his hege-lord and gave military service, etc., in return for the use



(Photo Hollger.)

**Allegory.**—"Hope," the beautiful allegorical painting by G. F. Watts that would suggest despair if it were not for the remaining string on the lyre.

and possession of land. Our allegiance to the King is a finer feeling of devotion, known as loyalty.

There is also the allegiance that honour demands from us, as well as the allegiance of a doctor to his profession. Members of Parliament take the Oath of Allegiance—that is, they swear fidelity to the King—when they enter Parliament. This oath is also taken by the clergy, judges, and other officials, and by aliens when naturalized.

M E *al·li·ance*, from F. *al·* to, *ligare* to, loyalty to a king. O F. *lige*. SYN.: Devotion, faithfulness, homage, loyalty, obedience. ANT.: Disaffection, disloyalty, rebellion, sedition, treason.

**allegory** (āl' lē gō ri), *n.* The describing of a subject under the guise of another which resembles and suggests it; a story or other example of this. (F. *allégorie*.)

If you began to read a story with an opening sentence like this "One fine day Truthfulness, when walking down the street, met Honesty and Courage, and the three friends went on together into the marketplace . . ." you would know you were reading an allegory. An allegory may also be a picture or a piece of sculpture, telling a story in the same way, as in many paintings by G. F. Watts and Sir Edward Burne-Jones.

An **allegoric** (āl lē gō' rīk) or **allegorical** (āl lē gō' rīk āl, *adj.*) story or picture is one of this kind, and to tell the story or paint the picture in this way is to treat it **allegorically** (āl lē gō' rīk āl lī, *adv.*). The person who does this is an **allegorist** (āl' lē gō rīst, *n.*), and when he is putting his story into this shape he is said to **allegorize** (āl' lē gō rīz, *v.t.*).

Well-known examples of allegories are Our Lord's Parables, Bunyan's "The Pilgrim's Progress," and Watts' painting called "Hope."

Gt L. *allégoria*, from *allos* other, *agoreuon* to speak. SYN.: Fable, metaphor, myth, parable, simile.

**allegretto** (āl lē gret' tō), *adj.* and *adv.* Rather brisk or briskly. (F. *alléretto*.)

When a musical movement or composition is to be taken in a moderately brisk and lively style, the word **allegretto** is used as a guide to the *tempo* (time) at which it is to be performed. An **allegretto** movement must proceed at a rather slower speed than an **allegro** movement but still with plenty of spirit in it.

Ital. dim. of *allegro*.

**allegro** (āl lā' grō), *adj.* Quick, cheerful. *adv.* Quickly; cheerfully. *n.* A movement in allegro time. (F. *allégo*.)

Besides meaning that the music should be taken in a quick and cheerful manner, **allegro** for such is used a movement in a sonata, overture, or other musical work. It is often qualified by such terms as "molto allegro" (very quick), "allegro vivace" (quick and lively).

Ital. *allegro*, from L. *alacer* quick.

**alleluia** (āl lē loo' yā), *n.* A song of praise to God. See hallelujah.

**alleviate** (ā lē' vi āt), *v.t.* To ease. (F. *alléger*, *soulager*.)

The exact sense of the word is that of making lighter—lightening the pain or the gloom, for instance. A dentist before pulling out a tooth may inject a drug into the gum to alleviate the pain. Such easing of pain is **alleviation** (ā lē vi ā' shūn, *n.*) and the means

by which the relief is brought about—the dentist's drug—is an **alleviative** (à lē' vi ā tiv, *n.*). The person who eases pain or lightens a burden is an **alleviator** (à lē' vi ā tōr, *n.*). A thing is **alleviatory** (à lē' vi ā tō ri, *adj.*) when it can be used for easing or lightening.

L.L. *alleviare*, L. *allevare*, from *ad* to, *levare* to lighten (*levis* light). SYN.: Abate, allay mitigate, relieve, soothe. ANT.: Aggravate augment, embitter, intensify

**alley** (āl' li), *n.* A lane or passage; a narrow street, or bordered walk; a place for playing such games as skittles, bowls and handball. (F. *ruelle*, *allée*.)

Long before the London Stock Exchange was built stocks and shares used to be bought and sold in Change Alley, or the Alley as it was generally called.

Alley is also a term in lawn tennis and other games. In lawn tennis it is the space between the side-lines of the singles and doubles courts.

O.F. *alce*, M.E. *aley*, from O.F. *aler*, F. *aller* to go Etymology uncertain. L. *adivare* to swim up to, approach, or *aditare*, frequentative of *adire* go to, have been suggested.

**All-Father** (awl' fa thēr), *n.* The Divine Father of all.

This was the name given to the pagan gods, Odin and Jupiter. Now we use it of the First Person in the Blessed Trinity—God the Father

**All Fools' Day** (awl' foolz dā), *n.* The first of April. (F. *le premier avril*.)

The great fun on this day is, of course, to surprise a friend by some trick or prank into doing something silly, so that he earns the title of April Fool. The origin of the custom is unknown.

**all fours** (awl' torz), *n.* A card game, the arms and legs, the four legs of an animal (F. *impériale*, *quatre pattes*.)

The name comes from the four cards by which the points in this game are counted. Americans call the game also Seven Up, Old Sledge, and High-Low-Jack. The term is used for a game of dominoes in which points are scored only when the pips add up to a multiple of four.

When we get down on the floor and play about on our hands and knees, or toes, like a monkey, we are said to go on all fours, and if Tom and his brother stayed away from school through illness Tom's reason for absence would be on all fours with his brother's.

**all-hail** (awl' hāl), *inter.* An exclamation of respectful welcome. *n.* Such a welcome. *v.t.* To give such a welcome. (F. *salut*.)

Except in the language of religion this expression is now hardly ever used. As

a verb it is used by Shakespeare in "Macbeth" (i, 5). In his letter to his wife Macbeth mentions messages from the king, "who all-hailed me, Thane of Cawdor," meaning "who saluted me by this name."

**All-Hallows' Eve** (awl' hal' ōz ēv), *n.* The last evening of October. Allhallowtide is another name for the season of All Saints. See Halloween. (F. *la veille de la Toussaint*.)

A.-S. *hālig*, cp. G. *heilig* M.E. *halowe* holy man, saint.

**alliaceouse** (āl li ā' shūs), *adj.* Belonging to a plant family which includes the onion, leek, and garlic; having the taste or smell of these. (F. *alliace*.)

L. *allium* garlic, suffix *-aceus* of the nature of

**alliance** (à li' āns), *n.* The state of being combined or allied; union by marriage or other relationship or by common interests, union by treaty or league between nations such a treaty or league; the parties or objects allied in some of these ways. (F. *alliance*.)

History is full of alliances made between countries for purposes of mutual protection or conquest. There is, for instance, the Holy Alliance, made in 1815, chiefly with

the view of keeping peace between the governments of Europe. In some ways it resembled the League of Nations, but it failed sadly. Then, before the World War of 1914-18, Germany, Austria and Italy were grouped together in a Triple Alliance, while on the other side was a similar partnership, the Triple Entente, formed by Great Britain, France, and Russia.

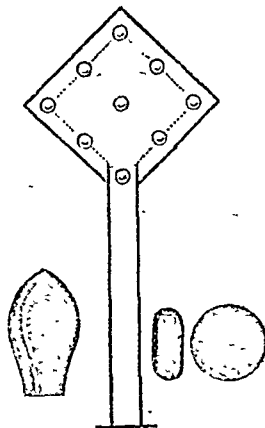
A marriage brings about an alliance between families. Various branches of Christianity agreed to work together in an Evangelical Alliance. Businesses and professions form alliances for co-operating to each other's advantage, in America there is a Farmer's Alliance.

O.F. *alliance*, from *aler*, from L. *alligare* (*al-* = *ad* to, *ligare* to bind) SYN.: Coalition, compact, confederation, league, union. ANT.: Antagonism divorce hostility secession separation

**alligation** (āl li gā' shūn), *n.* The act of joining together or the state of being joined; a rule in arithmetic. (F. *règle d'alliage*.)

Alligation is the rule in arithmetic by which we find the value of a number of things mixed together, but each of different price or quality. It is sometimes called the rule of mixtures.

L. *alligare* (*al-* = *ad* to, *ligare* to bind.)



Alley.—Skittle-alley, skittle, and views of cheese.

**alligator** (äl' li gā tōr), *n.* A huge lizard-like reptile. (F. *alligator*.)

Alligators belong to the crocodile family, but an alligator is not a crocodile. A crocodile's hind legs have a jagged fringe behind them; an alligator's hind legs are smooth, and have no fringe. A crocodile's toes are webbed; an alligator's are like fingers in comparison. The fourth lower tooth on each side of a crocodile's mouth is visible, when the mouth is shut; the same teeth in an alligator are closed inside the mouth.

Alligators lay eggs, and about one hundred is considered an ordinary clutch for the Mississippi alligator. These strange creatures all live in swamps and rivers. There are several varieties, some much larger than others. The alligator of Florida (*Alligator lucius*) is often 14 feet long, while the Amazon variety (*Alligator sclerops*) is sometimes 20. Alligators are found in Florida, Central and South America, the West Indies, and also in China. Alligator skin is largely used in the manufacture of leather goods, and the numbers of wild alligators are now so reduced by hunters in Florida that "alligator farms" have been established, where the reptiles are kept in paddocks and their eggs hatched in incubators.

Span *el lagarto* the lizard, from *L. lacerta lucitus*.



Alligator.—Unlike its cousin the crocodile, the alligator's toes are only slightly webbed.

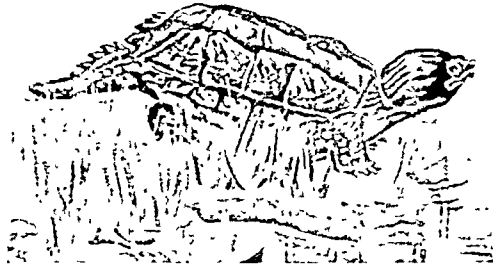
**alligator apple** (äl' li gā tōr äp' l), *n.* A variety of custard apple. (F. *cachiman des marais*.)

This fruit, which grows wild in the swamps of Jamaica, is an inferior variety of the custard apple. It cannot compare with the better varieties known as sour-sop and sweet-sop, which are plentiful in the West Indies. The scientific name is *Anona palustris*.

**alligator pear** (äl' li gā tōr par), *n.* A juicy fruit grown in the West Indies. *Sacavo* ado.

**alligator tortoise** (äl' li gā tōr tōr' tūs), *n.* A North American reptile. (F. *tortue serpentine*.)

This animal is sometimes called the "snapping turtle," but more correctly the Alligator Terrapin (*Chelydra serpentina*). It is very large, has a longish tail, and like the alligator stretches itself out while basking on the warm sand. It lives mostly in water.



Alligator tortoise.—So called because it basks in the sun like its namesake.

**alliteration** (ä lit' er ä shün), *n.* The use together, or close together, of words beginning with the same letter. (F. *allitération*.)

To speak of a "fine fresh fish" or a "merry May morning" is alliteration. To use a phrase of that kind is to alliterate (ä lit' er ät, *v.t.*) and the phrase itself is said to be alliterative (ä lit' er ä tiv, *adj.*) or one in which words are used alliteratively (ä lit' er ä tiv li, *adv.*).

*L. al-* =ad to, *litera* letter.

**allium** (äl' li ūm), *n.* A group of plants belonging to the order which botanists call *Liliaceae*. (F. *ail*.)

The allium group includes, among wild flowers, the garlics; among garden flowers, the sweet-scented allium and *Allium neapolitanum*, while the alliums grown as vegetables include the onion, the shallot, the leek, garlic, and chives.

*L. allium* garlic.

**allocate** (äl' lö kät), *v.t.* To put aside for a special purpose, to portion out; to fix the position of. (F. *allouer*.)

A group of helpers may be allocated to certain duties. A sum of money is divided or ear-marked for various purposes by the one who makes the allocation (äl lö kät' shün, *n.*). Shares in a company, or plots of land, can be allocated to applicants or purchasers.

*L. L. allocare*, from *al-* =ad to, *locus* place.

**allocation** (äl lö kü' shün), *n.* An address, either spoken or written, given by one in authority to his followers. (F. *allocation*.)

This word is used especially for the harangue of a Roman general to his troops, for a formal address of the Pope on some important matter, and for the address read

before the French Academy by a new member.

*L. allocutio* (acc. *-onem*), from *allocutus* (p.p. of *alloqui*), from *al-* = *ad* to, *loqui* to speak.

**allograph** (äl' lö gräf), *n.* A signature or other writing made on behalf of another.

A letter penned by the secretary of the Prime Minister at the latter's request would be an allograph.

Gr. *allos*, another, *graphein* to write.

**allonge** (äl lonzh'), *n.* A thrust in fencing at full arm's length; a slip attached to a bill of exchange in order to make room for more signatures. (F. *bolte*, *allonge*.)

F. from *L. al-* = *ad* to, *L.L. longare* to lengthen, from *longus* long.

**allopathy** (ä lop' ä thi), *n.* The system followed ordinarily by doctors in the treatment of illness—namely, that of seeking to reverse the conditions that cause the illness. (F. *allopathie*.)

As a simple illustration, if the trouble arises from a chill, by keeping the patient warm in bed effects different from those which caused the illness will be obtained. The word is used chiefly to distinguish between ordinary medical practice and what is called homoeopathy. An **allopath** (äl' ö päth) or **allopathist** (ä lop' ä thist, *n.*) is one who uses **allopathic** (äl lö päth' ik, *adj.*) methods, who treats his patients **allopathically** (äl ö päth' ik äi li, *adv.*).

Gr. *allo(s)* other, *pathein* to suffer.

**allot** (ä lot'), *v.t.* To apportion, to mark out for a special purpose, to appoint. (F. *allotir*, assigner.)

The old meaning of this word was to divide by drawing lots, to divide as the land of Israel was appointed to be divided in the days of Moses: "According to the lot shall the possession thereof be divided between many and few" (Numbers xxvi. 56). Nowadays the word does not imply distribution by drawing lots; but distribution in lots. The parcelling out of land, goods, shares or stock in a company, etc., is **allotment** (ä lot' ment, *n.*), and so is that which is allotted. The person who is given an allotment is the **allottee** (äl lot tö', *n.*). One can also allot certain duties to different helpers or workers, or certain positions to players in a game.

A special use of the word allotment is for a plot of garden ground, not usually attached to a house, but in a field divided into sections, each cultivated by an allotment-holder.

"A garden is half the battle" is a saying that is almost a proverb in rural Britain. In the eighteenth century millions of acres were enclosed in England, including many commons and wastes. This was no doubt good for farmers, but in course of time the poorer classes in many country places lost any chance of keeping a cow or geese or even of obtaining a plot of land to cultivate in their spare time.

By the beginning of the nineteenth century there was great poverty in the villages, and

in order to ease the burden of parish relief a movement was started to provide allotments for country labourers. Certain Acts of Parliament, all consolidated in the Small Holdings and Allotments Act of 1908, gave



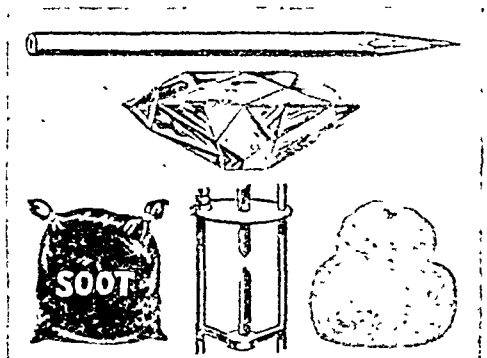
Allotment.—A busy allotment-holder at work in a section of a field allotted to him.

local authorities power to secure land, by compulsion if necessary, wherever there was a local demand for allotments and wherever suitable land was obtainable. Nowadays the outskirts of almost every city, town, and village in the country have their fields of allotments, well cultivated and prosperous.

O.F. *aloter*, from *a-* = *ad* to, and a Teut. word = E. *lot*. SYN. Assign, destine, distribute. ANT. : Confiscate, retain, withhold.

**allotropy** (ä lot' rô pi), *n.* A property possessed by some chemical elements or their compounds of appearing in two or more different forms (F. *allotropie*.)

One of the most striking examples of this **allotropic** (äl lö trop' ik, *adj.*) quality—also



Allotropy.—Carbon, an example of allotropy, occurs in a lead pencil, a diamond, soot, an arc-lamp, and bread.

called **allotropism** (ä lot' rô pizm, *n.*)—is carbon, which can exist in such varied forms as a diamond, the black soot which coats the inside of our chimneys, and the so-called lead, more correctly called graphite, in our pencils.

Gr. *allo(s)* other, different, *tropos* form, from *trepein* to turn.

**allow** (á lou'), *v.t.* To permit; to admit; to grant. (*F. permettre, reconnaître.*)

A parent may allow a child to do something; a master may allow a servant certain expenses; a firm may allow a workman his wages during an illness; a cashier may allow a bill to pass for payment. One may allow a statement or claim as being true or reasonable. A boy going to catch a train is wise to allow for his watch being slow. If permission is given, then the act is **allowable** (á lou' ábl, *adj.*) and no one can **allowably** (á lou' áb li, *adv.*) question its **allowableness** (á lou' ábl nes, *n.*).

A boy's **allowance** (á lou' áns, *n.*) may mean his pocket money, that is, the sum of money his parents **allowance** (*v.t.*) him, or the liberal helping of pudding he gets at dinner. After scoring a duck in his first cricket match, allowance or excuse is made for his lack of experience.

(1) *L.L. allocare* to assign a place to, from *al* -ad to, *locus* place, (2) *L.L. alloware* to approve, from *al* -ad to, *laudare* to praise, from *laus* (gen *laudis*) praise. *SYN.* Approve, authorize, let. *ANT.* Disallow, forbid, refuse.

**alloy** (a loi'). *n.* A mixture of two or more metals or the state of being so mixed; the inferior metal in such a mixture, a thing that by being added mars the excellence of something else. *v.t.* To mix with an inferior metal, to debase, to modify. (*L. alligare*; *allier*.)

Commercial alloys are of great importance and in many branches of industry quite indispensable, because for certain purposes some metals are greatly improved if mixed with another or others to form an alloy. Nickel silver or German silver as it is also called, is largely used as a basis for electroplating and for making spoons, forks, etc. It consists of copper, zinc, and nickel in proportions varied according to the quality of the alloy desired. Brass is another useful alloy, made from two parts of copper and one part of zinc. Our copper coinage contains an alloy of zinc, and our silver coins, too, contain some alloy.

Besides using the word in connexion with metals we can speak, for instance, of a good man having no base alloy in his composition.

*O.F. alay, alloy, M.E. alav*, from *L. alligare* to bind. *O.F. aler, alor* was confused with *á lor* (according to law) - *L. al legem*. *SYN.*: Admixture, adulteration, debasement. *ANT.*: Genuineness, integrity, purity.

**all-round** (awl' round) *adj.* Good in every way. (*F. en tous sens.*) A boy good at games as well as at his lessons is a good all-round boy.

*E. all* in every direction, and *round*.

**All Saints' Day** (awl sántz dā), *n.* The first day of November. (*F. jour de la Toussaint.*)

This day, formerly called All Hallows, is the Church festival for the whole of the saints. The Emperor Charlemagne observed the festival, but it was not formally instituted until the year 835 by Pope Gregory IV.

**allseed** (awl' sēd), *n.* A small English wild flower. (*F. polycarpe.*)

This tiny plant with greenish flowers grows only four inches high, and is rather uncommon, being found mostly on the south coast of England. It is usually called four-leaved allseed, and its scientific name is *Polycarpon tetraphyllum*. The name allseed is also applied to various other plants that have a great many seeds.

*E. all* and *seed*.

**All Souls' Day** (awl sōlz dā), *n.* The second day of November. (*F. jour des morts.*)

On this day the Roman Catholic Church commemorates the souls of all good people who have died.



All Souls' Day.—Peasant women of Belgrade, the capital of Yugoslavia, decorating a grave on All Souls' Day.

**allspice** (awl' spīs), *n.* The dried berries of the pimenta tree. (*F. piment.*)

Gingerbread made in the old-fashioned way is almost certain to contain allspice. Sold wholesale as pimento and retail as allspice, it looks like cocoa in its ground state, and has a pleasant smell like cinnamon, with a suggestion of other spices. This spice is made from the berries of a tree of the myrtle order, known as *Pimenta officinalis*, which grows in the West Indies, particularly Jamaica. Its strength is shown by the fact that the pleasant flavour of allspice berries is noticeable even when used with pickled onions.

*E. all* and *spice*.

**allude** (á lūd'), *v.t.* To refer indirectly. (*F. faire allusion á.*)

This word implies a sly or at any rate an indirect hint. If a schoolmaster mentioned that a certain boy's name was not on the prize list, his hearers might say that he had made an **allusive** (á lūs' iv, *adj.*) remark, meaning that he had as much as said that the boy was a poor scholar. The word is often used in a wider sense now, without any suggestion of doubt or indirectness, but this is not considered strictly correct.

In heraldry, allusive arms mean devices suggesting the name of the bearer, such as

the castles and lions on the arms of the Kingdom of Castile and Leon. Any piece of writing that abounds in indirect references or allusions (à lū' zhūnz, *n.pl.*) has allusiveness (à lūs' iv nēs, *n.*).

*L. alludere*, from *al-* = *ad* to, *ludere* to jest, refer to mockingly. *SYN.*: Hint, insinuate, intimate, suggest. *ANT.*: Declare, proclaim specify.

**allure** (à lūr'), *v.t.* To tempt; to entice. (*F. séduire, attirer.*)

A foolish person can be allured into debt by vanity, while there is no doubt that the bait on a fisherman's hook proves an allurement (à lūr' mēnt, *n.*) to fish that see its alluring (à lūr' ing, *adj.*) appearance. Many of us have made a cat or a dog sit up and beg by holding a piece of meat alluringly (à lūr' ing li, *adv.*) above its nose.

*O.F. aleurer* from *a* to, and *leure* bait, c.p. *G. ludeo* and *E. lure*. *SYN.* Attract, coax, decoy, inveigle. *ANT.*: Deter, dissuade, repel.

**alluvion** (à lū' vi ōn), *n.* The very gradual formation of new land by the action of water. (*F. alluvion.*)

The destruction caused by the sea through washing away the land is often deplored. On the other hand, there are many parts of the British Isles where the sea is steadily adding to the land area by alluvion. Any new land thus formed becomes the property of the owner of the foreshore.

The silt or soil deposited by running water is called alluvium (à lū' vi ūm, *n.*); *pl. alluvia* (à lū' vi ā). The deltas of the Nile and Ganges, which cover hundreds of square miles, indicate the vast quantities of soil washed down to the sea by great rivers during the course of centuries. At the mouth of the Thames and in other estuaries considerable areas of low-lying land, consisting of alluvial (à lū' vi āl, *adj.*) soil carried there by water, have been reclaimed for agricultural purposes.

*L. alluvies*, *alluvio*, from *alluere*, from *al-* = *ad* to, *luere* = *lavare* to wash.

**ally** [1] (à li'). *v.t.* To join together; to connect. *n.* A partner. (*F. allier; allié.*)

When a prince of one country marries a princess of another country, the two reigning families are allied by marriage. A close friend is an ally, but the word is most commonly used where two or more countries join together in peace or war for a common purpose. In the World War of 1914-18 the nations fighting against Germany, Austria, Turkey, and Bulgaria were commonly described as the Allies (al liz', *n.pl.*).

*O.F. alier*, from *L. alligere*, from *al-* = *ad* to, *ligare* to bind. *SYN.*: *r.* Connect, unite. *n.* Associate, colleague, helper. *ANT.*: *r.* Divide, sever. *n.* Adversary, enemy, opponent

**ally** [2] (āl' li), *n.* A large and choice marble used in the game of marbles. The word is also spelt alley. (*F. bille de marbre.*)

The ally is the marble with which, in the variety of the game called ring-taw, the player shoots at the others in the ring. It is made of alabaster or of real marble. A blood ally is one which has red streaks or spots in it.

It is supposed to be a diminutive of *alabaster*



Ally.—Soldiers who were allies or partners in the World War of 1914-18 carrying a model of the Greek Victory of Samothrace.

**almacantar** (āl mī kān' tar), *n.* A circle or parallel of altitude. An instrument for determining time and latitude. (*F. almu-cantar, cercle de hauteur.*)

A line drawn through all stars at the same height above the horizon would be a circle parallel to the horizon, and called an almacantar. The instrument called by this name consists of a floating telescope, fitted with horizontal wires. By its use the exact times of the rising and setting of a given star can be found; and from the known position of the star the necessary correction of a timepiece



and the latitude can be determined. The word occurs in Chaucer's "Astrolabe" in the form *almykantera*.

Arab. *al muqantarāt* circles parallel to the horizon.

**Almagest** (āl' mā jest), *n.* Ptolemy's masterpiece on astronomy; a mediaeval text-book on astrology or alchemy. (F. *almageste*.)

Ptolemy, who believed that the sun passed round the earth, lived in Alexandria, Egypt, in the second century A.D., and his great work called the Almagest, written about the year 150, contains everything that the Greeks knew about astronomy at that period of history. Considering the times in which its author lived, the Almagest, though containing many errors, was a remarkable achievement, and it remained the standard work on astronomy until the time of Copernicus (1473-1543).

Arab. *al the*, Gr. *megistē* (tem. adj.) greatest composition Gr. *synthesis*.

**almanac** (awl' mán āk), *n.* A calendar of the days of the year, showing changes of the moon and other useful facts. (F. *almanach*, *calendrier*.)

Before newspapers were generally read, almanacs were almost the only means people had of ascertaining dates, such as those of Easter and other important Church festivals, making calculations ahead of time, knowing when the moon rose, and so on. In country places especially almanacs were greatly valued. The Romans had their almanacs, called *fasti*, which gave the dates of forthcoming events, in the same way as the Oxford and Cambridge boat race and similar occasions are noted in modern almanacs.

Examples of mediaeval almanacs written on parchment are still preserved, but it was not until printing was invented that almanacs were distributed widely in England. So popular were they that fierce legal battles arose over the attempt to preserve the sole right of printing almanacs, and as much as a hilling stamp duty was at one time placed on every sheet. Benjamin Franklin made a wonderful success of his "Poor Richard's Almanac" which was brightened by wise sayings of a humorous and witty nature. It enjoyed a wide sale in America for many years.

"The Nautical Almanac," as the name indicates, is for the use of sailors. First published in 1707, and still issued by the Admiralty, it contains more information than any other in the world. Its astronomical tables, based on observations made at Greenwich Observatory, are the most complete of their kind. This almanac has a Government department to itself: H.M. Nautical Almanac Office, Royal Naval College, London.

L.L. and F. *almanach*. In spite of the Arabic prefix of the, it is not supposed to be of Arabic origin. Possibly *manach* may be from

**almandine** (āl' mán din), *n.* The precious or noble garnet. (F. *alabandine*.)

This beautiful garnet is of a rich red colour, varying in shade, and sometimes lined with yellow or blue. The finest crystals come from Ceylon; but the name is a corruption of *alabandine* (L. *alabandina*), given to these garnets because they were cut and polished at Alabanda, in Asia Minor.

**almighty** (awl mī' ti), *adj.* All powerful. *n.* God. (F. *tout-puissant*.)

This word is often used in the Bible to describe God and almightiness (awl mī' ti nēs, *n.*) to describe His infinite power. Occasionally it is used as an adjective to indicate great power, as the almighty dollar. On the silver dollars of the United States of America there is the motto: "In God we trust," which perhaps suggested the word almighty as a description of the coin.

A.-S. *aelmihlig*. Syn.: All-powerful, omnipotent. ANT.: Feeble, impotent, powerless, weak.

**almond** (a' mōnd), *n.* The kernel of the seed of the almond tree. (F. *amande*.)



Almond.—The beautiful blossom of the almond tree.

Almonds were among the gifts which Jacob told Benjamin and his other sons to take to Joseph in Egypt (Genesis xliii, 11). In every country where they are obtainable almonds are still considered a luxury, especially at Christmas time. The woolly-looking seed or fruit of the almond tree, which is about the size of a plum, does not suggest good eating, neither does the stone inside it; but when the

stone is cracked, the delightful brown kernel, or almond, is revealed.

Most of the almonds eaten in Britain come from Spain, Italy, and Morocco. The botanical name of the almond tree is *Amygdalus communis*. The almond willow (*n.*) is one of the many varieties of willow that grow beside water in Britain. Its scientific name is *Salix amygdalina*.

O.F. *almandre*, M.E. *amaund*, L. *amygdala*, Gr. *amygdale*.

**almond-furnace** (a' mōnd fēr' nās), *n.* A furnace for separating metals from cinders. It is also used for reducing the slag of litharge to lead. (F. *fournaise*.)

Almond is supposed to mean German (F. *Allemand*).

**almond-tumbler** (a' mōnd tūm' bler), *n.* A variety of pigeon. It is a plump, short-faced tumbler pigeon with very glossy feathers of an almond colour. (F. *pigeon culbutant*.)

**almoner** (äl' môn ér; a' môn ér), *n.* One who is appointed to distribute alms. (F. *aumônier*.)

In olden times the monasteries and religious houses had their almoners, whose duty it was to give doles, or alms, to the poor who came to beg the charity of the monks daily. Nowadays many hospitals have their almoner, often a lady, who interviews patients entering the institution. The King's household includes an hereditary grand almoner, a lord high almoner, and a sub-almoner, who distribute the alms of the sovereign.

O.F. *almosnier*, L.L. *almosynarius*. See alms.

**almonry** (äl' môn ri), *n.* The place where the almoner distributed alms. (F. *aumônerie*.)

It was in the almonry of Westminster Abbey, in 1477, that space was found by the abbot for William Caxton to erect and work the first printing press ever seen in England.

O.F. *almosnerie*, the suffix indicating place.

**almost** (awl' möst), *adj.* and *adv.* Nearly. (F. *presque*; à *peu près*.)

We say that a man is almost dead, that we were almost persuaded to do something, and that something happened almost immediately after. In literary language we may use such an expression as a person's almost insolence.

A.-S. *aelmaest* quite the most, nearly all. SYN.: Approximately, well nigh. ANT.: Entirely, quite.

**alms** (amz), *n.* Anything given freely to relieve the poor; work of mercy; charity. (F. *aumône*.)

A person who gives alms gives money, food, or clothing to the poor. The term also means work done out of charity to the poor, and the Great Teacher taught that "when thou doest alms, let not thy left hand know what thy right hand doeth." An act of charity is known as an alms-deed (*n.*), while the practice of giving alms is termed alms-giving (*n.*).

From time to time charitable people have founded houses where the poor are received and provided for; these are called alms-houses (*n.pl.*). Originally an alms-house was the house where the monks shared out the alms of the monastery. A man who receives and is supported by alms is called an almsman (*n.*).

A.-S. *aelmysse*, M.E. *almesse* (*almes*), L.L. *eleemosyna*, Gr. *eleēmosyne*, from *eleēn* to pity.

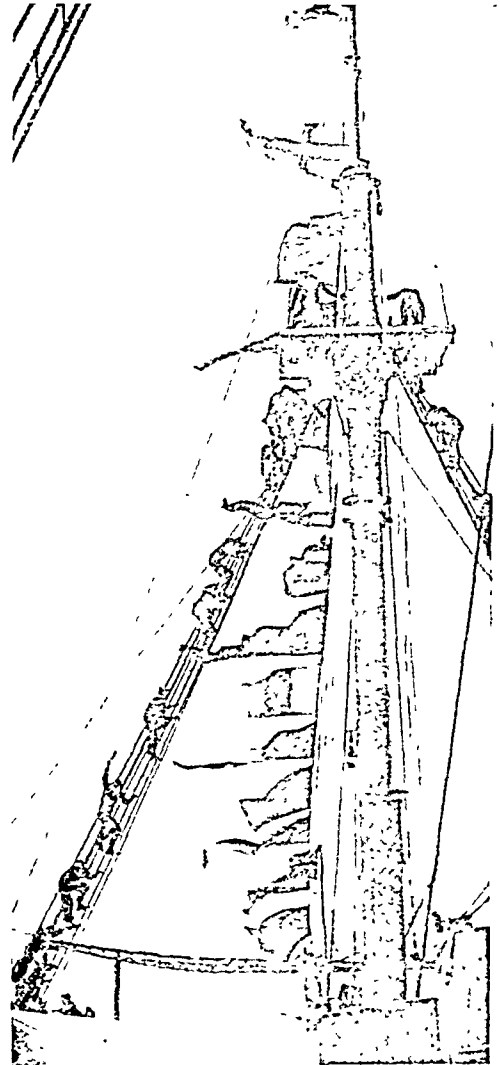
**almug** (äl' müg), *n.* A tree referred to in the Bible. See alnum.

**aloe** (äl' ô), *n.* A plant belonging to the same order as the lily. (F. *aloë*.)

The aloe plant is chiefly famous for the bitter medicine called aloes (äl' ôz, *n.pl.*) which is obtained from its thick, fleshy leaves, and is spoken of as aloetic (äl' ô et' ik, *adj.*) or an aloetic (*n.*), because it is obtained from aloes. The bitter principal is called aloin (äl' ô in, *n.*).

Aloes grow mostly in hot climates, sometimes to a height of forty feet. When the ancient Egyptians embalmed their dead they occasionally soaked the mummy wrappings in aloes to keep away destructive insects and reptiles. The American aloe or agave is quite a different plant. It grows in England but is seldom seen in flower.

A.-S. *aluwean*, pl. of *aluwe* (not in use), Gr. L. *aloë*.

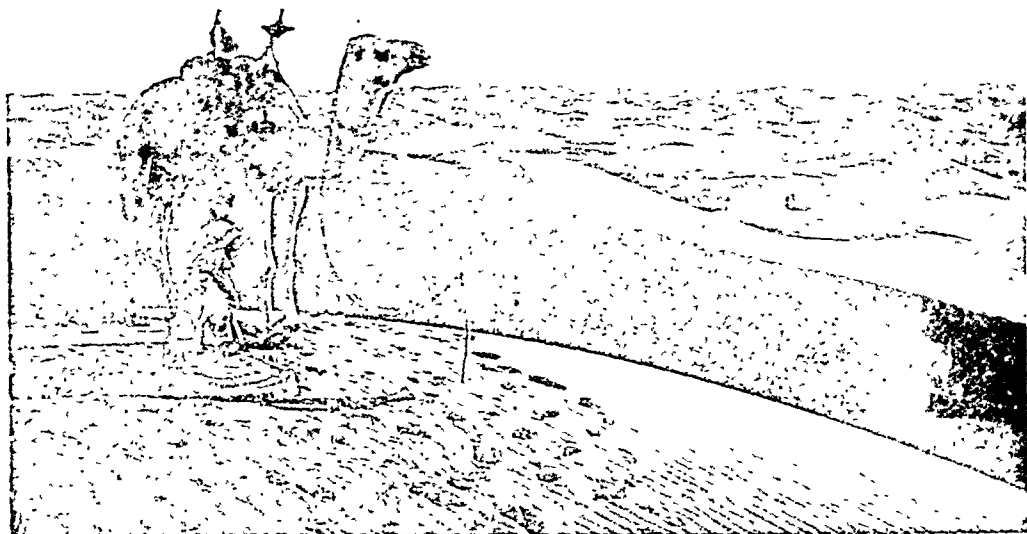


Aloft.—Boys of the "Arethusa" training ship going aloft.

**aloft** (ä' loft'), *adv.* High above the ground, in the sky; at the mast-head or up the rigging. (F. *en haut*, *en l'air*.)

An aviator steers his aeroplane aloft; a sailor is aloft when he is up the rigging—such is its meaning in the old English song:

While the raging seas did roar,  
And the stormy wind did blow,



Alone.—A tribesman of the Sahara and his camel alone in the sandy, windswept desert. The man is facing towards Mecca, the sacred city of the Mohammedans, and is about to pray.

And we jolly sailor boys were up, were up,  
aloft.

And the land lubbers lying down below,  
below, below, etc.

O Norse *â loft* (pronounced loft) in the air  
See loft SYN.: Above deck, on high, overhead.  
ANT.: Below, on deck.

**alone** (a lôn'), *adj.* By oneself; apart from others *adv.* Only. (F. *seul*; *seulement*.)

Few people like to be alone (*adj.*). In the story of Alexander Selkirk we have a picture of the misery which absence from the company of his fellow-men caused to a sailor who was put ashore on the island of Juan Fernandez where he lived for more than four years alone. Wilham Hazlitt said that when out walking in the country he was "never less alone than when alone"; he never felt lonely when alone with nature.

Of a child who wants a particular toy, we may say "that alone (*adv.*) will satisfy him," meaning that toy only.

M.E. *al onc* = all (quite), and *onc* (by oneself). SYN.: Lone, lone-ome, merely, single, solely. ANT.: Accompanied, attended, combined, escorted, together.

**along** (â long'), *adv.* Lengthwise; forward; in association. *prep.* By the side of; through. (F. *le long*; *le long de*.)

We lay something along (or lengthwise) and we pass along (or forward). Along with (or in association with) others some idlers work well. We talk of boats being tied along the shore (by the side of), and we walk along the street (through it lengthwise and not across it). We say that an invalid is getting along very well, meaning that he is going forward, improving in health. Things he alongside (â long' sid, *adv.*), or side by side, and a boat may be brought alongside of another. A man may be employed

alongshore (â long' shôr, *adv.*), by or near the shore. To know a thing all along is to know it all the time.

A.-S. *andlang*, from *and-* against, *lang* long. G. *entlang*. SYN.: *adv.* Onward. *prep.* Beside, through. ANT.: *adv.* Crosswise, sideways. *prep.* Across.

**aloof** (â loof'), *adv.* At a distance; apart (F. *au loin*, *loigné*.)

To stand aloof from other people means "to stand apart from," "cut oneself away from," "remain unsympathetic." A person who adopts this attitude is generally considered to imagine himself superior to the rest of the company present. In a nautical sense, to stand aloof means to remain to windward. A person holding himself aloof is said, to remain in a state of aloofness (â loof' nês, *n.*).

E. *a-* = on, Dutch *loef* lust, weather side of a ship. SYN.: Apart, away, distant, off. ANT.: Associated, close, near, together.

**aloud** (â loud'), *adv.* Loudly; audibly. (F. *à haute voix*.)

There are three ways in which most of us may read—silently, quietly, and loudly. We may read aloud or audibly in either of the last two ways, for we may speak in a quiet voice or in a loud voice. But in reading silently we do not use our voice at all.

A.-S. *a-* on, *lud* loud. SYN.: Audibly, distinctly, loudly, plainly, vociferously. ANT.: Inaudibly, noiselessly, softly.

**alow** (â lô'), *adv.* In a low, or lower, place. (F. *en bas*.)

We do not use this word in ordinary conversation, but it is used by sailors to denote the placing of something in the lower part of a vessel. For example, a ship's cargo is generally placed alow in what is called the hold.

E. *a-* = on, in, and *low*.

# ALPS: THE WORLD'S PLAYGROUND

*The Heights of South-west Europe and what they Do for Health and Happiness*

**alp** (älp), *n.* A lofty mountain; a mountain pasture. (*F. haute montagne.*)

Though a comparatively small range, the Alps of South-west Europe are yet the most famous mountains in the world. This is due partly to their beauty, but still more to their historical importance. They were the boundary between the civilization of Rome and the barbarism of northern Europe. The chief passes through them have been the scene of mighty conflicts between the nations on either side.

Among the mountains there has dwelt a race of hardy mountaineers, poor but of a sturdy independence, and marked out by patriots such as Arnold von Winkelried, who is said to have given his life for his country at the battle of Sempach, 1386.

In recent years the Alps have become the "playground of the world," and in summer they are the resort of the keen alpinist (*äl' pîn ist, n.*), armed with rope and alpenstock (*äl' pên stök, n.*), or iron-shod stick, for scaling the ice-capped peaks. In winter there are almost as many visitors who take part in tobogganing, skating, ski-ing, and other winter sports.

The wonderful rosy colour of the rising or setting sun reflected on the snow-capped summits, which sometimes reappears when

the original colour has faded, is called the alpen-glow (*äl' pên glô, n.*). There is no more glorious scenery in the world than the glistening Alps.

The mountain pastures, which in German Switzerland are always known as alps, are grazed by numerous cattle, and from their milk the cheese and condensed milk for which Switzerland is noted are prepared. Sometimes the cows are summoned home by a long wooden alpenhorn (*äl' pên hörn, n.*) which looks like an enormous tobacco pipe and gives a musical note that awakens the echoes of the surrounding mountains. First used by the warriors of Switzerland to call their men to arms, the alpenhorn now survives as an instrument devoted to the most peaceful of pursuits.

The Alpine (*äl' pîn, adj.*) race are a round-headed, broad-faced people, inhabiting the mountain backbone of central Europe and western Asia, who entered Europe in the middle Stone Age. Another name is the Armenoid race. They are a sub-division of the Caucasian race, coming between the blond Nordic and the dark Iberian types, both of which have long skulls. Many scientists now consider that the round-heads are merely a physical variety of the two main classes.

*L. Alpes*, a Celtic word, possibly related to *L. albus*, white.



Alp.—The snow-capped peak of the alp known as the Mönch, 14,105 ft. high, one of the many lofty peaks of the beautiful range of mountains in South-west Europe called the Alps.

**alpaca** (āl pāk' ā), *n.* A South American animal of the camel family; its wool; a fabric made from this or similar wool. *adj.* Made of this fabric. (F. *alpaca*, *alpaga*.)

This relative of the camel is one of the most valuable of the wool-bearing animals of South America. It has very long hair and no hump, and is a cousin of the llamas, some of whom draw the little carriages at the London Zoo. In olden times the Indians of Peru, noting the splendid fleeces of the guanacos, as the alpacas are called in their wild state, tamed them to their uses, and now large flocks of alpacas graze on the highlands of Peru and Bolivia.

For centuries the Indians had made cloth of alpaca wool, but when Europeans tried to copy them they found it very difficult to work up the wool into a satisfactory fabric. In 1836, however, a Bradford manufacturer, Sir Titus Salt, invented machinery which could deal with it and ever since the manufacture of alpacas has centred in Bradford.

Span from Arab *al* the, *paco* (the Peruvian name)

**alpha** (āl' fā), *n.* The first letter of the Greek alphabet. (F. *alpha*.)

Alpha (α) is sometimes used to mark the first of a series, or the beginning, as the last letter *omega* is used for the last or the end, hence the Scriptural phrase, "I am Alpha and Omega" (Revelation I. 8). In astronomy the Greek letters indicate the order of brightness of members of a constellation, or group of fixed stars. Thus the brightest star in Orion is Alpha Orionis (α Orionis), also called Betelgeuse while Rigel is Beta (β) and Bellatrix is Gamma (γ).

Alpha is the Graecized form of Aleph (=ox), the first letter of the Phoenician alphabet.

**alphabet** (āl' fā bet), *n.* The letters or characters of a language arranged in order. (F. *alphabet*.)

The interesting story of the English alphabet and that of each of its letters is told on pp. vi-xx.

We **alphabetize** (āl' fā bet iz, i.t.) the words of a dictionary and the entries in an index, or arrange them in **alphabetic** (āl' fā bet' ik *adj.*) or **alphabetical** (āl' fā bet' ik āl, *adj.*) order. Any word or entry can be easily found when thus alphabetically (āl' fā bet' ik āl li, *adv.*) arranged.

Gr. *alphabetos*, L. *alphabetum*, from *alpha* and *beta*, from Phoenician *aleph* and *beth* (=house), the two first letters of the alphabet.

**alpha rays** (āl' fā rāz), *n.pl.* Particles given off by radio-active substances. (F. *rayons alpha*.)

The atoms of certain substances, such as radium explode and give off particles of different kinds called rays. Of these rays the alpha rays are the most important, and consist of atoms of helium carrying a double charge of positive electricity. This means that the atom of helium has lost two of its electrons in the explosion of the radium atom which sent it forth.

**Alpini** (āl pē' nē), *n.* A special division of the Italian army. (F. *Alpini*.)

The Alpini are soldiers trained for service in Alpine (see alp) or mountainous regions.

**already** (awl red' i), *adv.* Before or by some specified time. (F. *déjà*.)

Sometimes in legal actions the jury, having already made up their minds, record their verdict without retiring to consider it.

E. *al*=all, and *ready*.

**Alsacia** (āl sā' shi ā), *n.* The old name of Alsace; a sanctuary for debtors and criminals. (F. *Alsace*.)

Lying on the frontier of two powerful nations, France and Germany, Alsace became a coveted land in very early times. Hence, like the men of the Welsh marshes and of the



Alsatian.—A fair daughter of Alsace wearing the big bow which is part of the national costume.

English and Scottish border, the Alsatians developed a spirit of sturdy independence.

The district of Whitefriars in London was at one time a sanctuary for debtors and criminals, and was nicknamed Alsacia because it was the resort of men who showed their independence by taking the law into their own hands. Thus the word came to be used for any place of refuge for law-breakers, and Alsatian (āl sā' shi ān, *n.*) for a person who lived a law-defying life.

The country has given the name Alsatian to a well-known breed of handsome dogs that look very much like wolves.

**alsike** (āl' sik), *n.* A kind of clover. (F. *trèfle bittard*.)

In the south of Sweden, where the soil is cold and moist, there grows the alsike clover, which gets its name from a town close to

Upsala. It has flowers of pink or white and is a valuable cattle food. It sometimes grows to a height of three feet.

**alsirat** (āl sē' rāt), *n.* The bridge which spans the gulf between earth and paradise according to the Mohammedan scriptures. It is finer than a hair or a razor's edge, and only those who pass over it enter into blessedness.

*Arab. el sirat*, literally meaning "the road."

**also** (awl' sō), *adv. and prep.* Likewise; in like manner; in addition. (*F. aussi; égalemeut.*)

To a certain extent, the word *also* and the word *and* are alike, but the former gives a little more emphasis. For example, when we say: "He brought coats and mackintoshes, also rubber shoes," we wish to make a little more emphatic the fact that in addition to the first two items, the third was brought.

If we had merely said: "... and rubber shoes," there would not have been any suggestion that the last item was one which many people might have forgotten.

*A.-S. eallswa*, all (entirely) so. *SYN.*: Besides, likewise, too. *ANT.*: But, nevertheless, yet.

**alt** (ält), *n.* The higher part; high tone (*F. haut.*)

In music the word is short for alto (high), and is used in compound words like alt-horn and alt-clarinet. Notes are said to be *in alt* when they are in the first octave above the treble staff; for example, G in alt. A person who is *in alt* is "high up in himself," either very dignified, or very excited, or very extravagant in his views.

*Ital. alto*, from *L. altus* high.

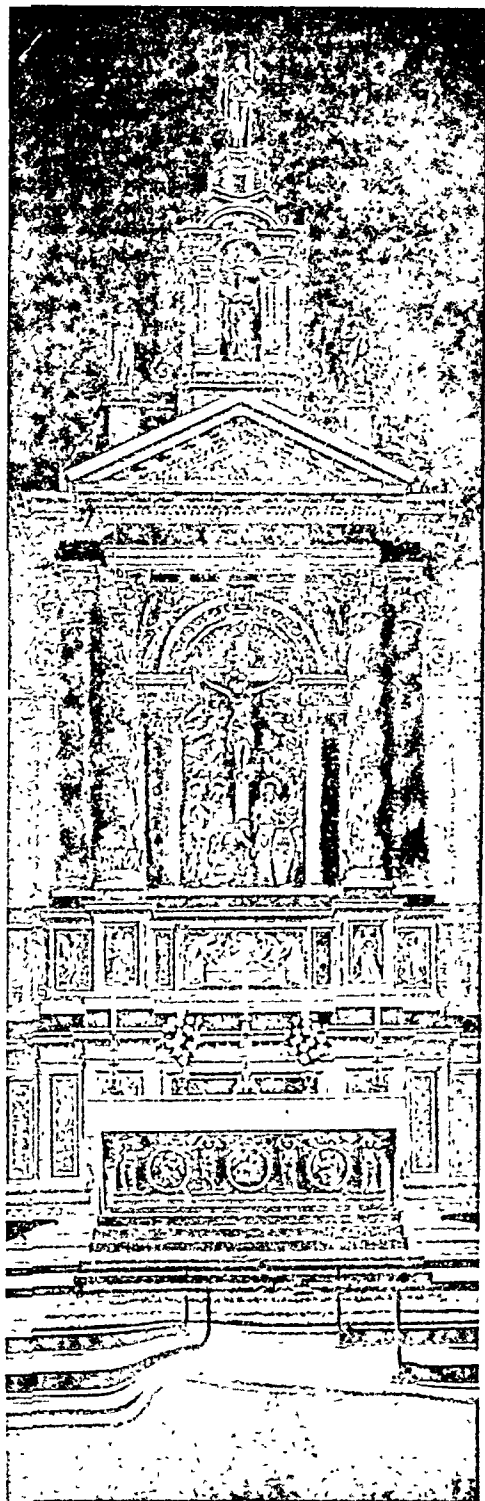
**Altaic** (āl tā' ik), *adj.* Of or belonging to certain peoples and their languages. (*F. altaïque.*)

The term Altaic is somewhat loosely applied, and it does not necessarily mean of or belonging to people living in the Altai mountains, the richest valleys of which are inhabited by Russians. Under the name Altaians are included certain tribes of the Altai region and north-west Mongolia the Ostiaks and the Samoyeds of western Siberia, who are related to the eastern Finns.

The whole group has intermixed with peoples of Mongolian or Turkish stock. They have lost their own language, and some of the tribes appear to be dying out. By the Russians they are called Tatars.

**altar** (awl' tār), *n.* A table or slab on which sacrifice is offered; a communion table. (*F. autel.*)

The altar is usually the most striking object in a church. It is covered with a linen cloth, called the altar-cloth (*n.*), and is decorated in front with an altar-frontal (*n.*). Behind it is often a piece of sculpture called the altar-piece (*n.*) or altar-screen (*n.*). If the top of the altar is made of stone it is called the altar-slab (*n.*) or altar-stone (*n.*), names also given to the stone part of an altar on which the chalice and other vessels stand.



Altar.—The altar of St. Paul's Cathedral, London, showing the altar-frontal and the altar-screen.

In the year 1170 King Henry II had a quarrel with the Archbishop of Canterbury, Thomas Becket. One day in a moment of rage he cried out: "Will none of the knights who eat bread at my table rid me of this troublesome priest?" Four knights made their way quickly to Canterbury Cathedral. When Becket heard of their coming he guessed their purpose, and took his place before the altar, on which was laid out the precious altar-plate (*n.*) used in the Mass. The knights who had been lurking behind a pillar, rushed out and killed him.

There was a great outcry against the King and Becket was buried in a splendid altar-tomb (*n.*) where many pilgrims came to pray. The pilgrims of whom Chaucer tells in the "Canterbury Tales" were on their way to the tomb of Becket.

M.E. *alter*, A.-S. *alten*, *altan*, c.p. O.F. *alter*, *auter*, L. *altäre* high place, from *altus* high.

**altazimuth** ('äl tiz' i müth), *n.* An instrument for finding the exact position of a star in the sky. (F. *altazimut*.)

Just as the exact position of any place on the earth's surface is given by its latitude and longitude so that of any star in the heaven is given by its altitude and azimuth, that is, by its height above the horizon, and its distance east or west of a point due south of the observer.

An altazimuth consists of a telescope so mounted that it can be pointed to any part of the sky being movable horizontally as well as vertically to any point of the compass.

Altazimuth is a contraction of altitude-azimuth, the second element being from Arab *az-zimut* the ways, parts of the horizon.

**alter** (awl' ter) *v.t.* To change; to vary. *v.i.* To undergo change or variation. (F. *changer* *varier* see *changer* *varier*.)

So many British merchant ships were being sunk by enemy submarines during the first year of the World War (1914-18) that it was decided to alter their appearance by painting their sides in broad, zig-zag lines of different colours. This process, called camouflage, ensured greater safety, for the alteration (awl' ter ä' shün, *n.*) broke up their sharp outline and made them less easy to spot by the enemy. It was the suggestion of Mr. Norman Wilkinson.

Some animals have the power of changing their outward appearance or colouring. The chameleon is one which has this quality of alterability (awl' ter ä' bil' i ti, *n.*), its colour being alterable (awl' ter äb l, *adj.*) on account of the cells beneath its skin containing yellow, red, and black colouring matter.

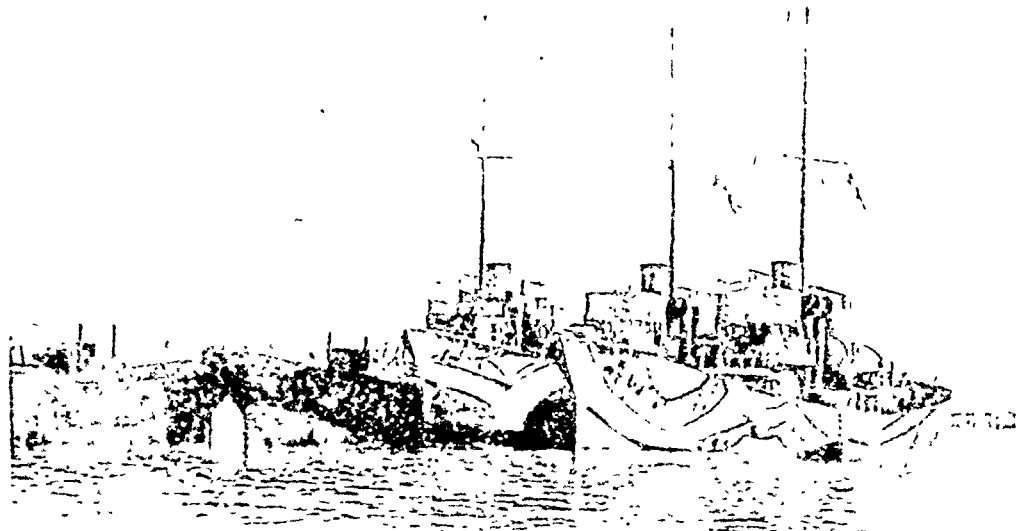
A medicine which cures a disease gradually is called an **alterative** (*n.*), or an **alterative** (awl' ter ä' tiv *adj.*) drug. Any medicines, even powerful ones, may have this effect, which is dependent on the manner in which they are taken.

L.L. *alterare* (from *alter* other) to make different. *SYN.*: Change, convert, modify, substitute, transform. *ANT.*: Arrest, conserve, perpetuate, preserve, retain.

**altercation** (awl' ter kää' shün), *n.* Debate; wordy dispute. (F. *altercation*.)

People who **altercate** (awl' ter kät, *v.t.*), or engage in a hot dispute, in the street, lay themselves open to arrest on a charge of being disorderly. In giving evidence against prisoners charged with such an offence a police constable may say, among other things, that they were having an **altercation**.

L. *altercatio*, from *altercari* (p.p. *altercatus*) to argue with another (*alter*). *SYN.*: Contention, controversy, dispute, quarrel, wrangle. *ANT.*: Agreement, compromise, concord, harmony, unanimity.



Altercation. During the World War ships in the British merchant service were altered in appearance by painting their sides in the manner shown. This change made them a difficult target at which to aim.

**alternate** (awl' tēr nāt, *v.*; awl tēr' nāt, *adj.*), *v.t.* To arrange or perform by turns; to cause to succeed (come after one another) by turns. *v.i.* To happen by turns. *adj.* Done or happening by turns; first one and then the other. (F. *alterner*; *alternatif*.)

Alternate can only properly be used of two things, not of three or more. Night and day alternate, but the seven days of the week succeed each other in order; they cannot be said to alternate. Red and blue stripes may alternate on a piece of stuff. In botany a plant is said to have alternate leaves when they are placed first one on one side of the stem and then another lower down on the opposite side of the stem. A happy life may be said to be made up of the alternation (awl tēr nā' shūn, *n.*) of work and leisure.

A person may have the alternatives (awl tēr' nā tivz, *n.pl.*) of saying yes or no. An alternating (awl' tēr nāt ing, *adj.*) current in electricity is one which changes its direction of flow, first backwards and then forwards. The word alternant (awl tēr' nānt, *adj.*) means alternating, and is used especially in describing minerals that consist of alternate layers. We say we may go out or alternatively (awl tēr' nā tiv li, *adv.*) we may stay at home.

*L. alternare* (p.p. *alternatus*) to do by turns, from *alter* other of two. *SYN.*: Every other one, interchangeable, in turn. *ANT.*: Continuous, sequent, successive.

**alternator** (awl' tēr nā tōr), *n.* A machine by which an oscillating electric current is produced. (F. *alternateur*.)

An alternator produces alternating current, or in other words, current which flows backwards and forwards. It is also known as an alternating electric dynamo. Most houses in England which have electric lighting are lighted by means of an alternating current, and most electric machines are driven by an alternating current. The same kind of current is used for wireless telegraphy.

*L. alternare* to do by turns, from *alter* other of two.

**although** (awl thō'), *conj.* Though; admitting that; notwithstanding. (F. *quoique, bien que*.)

We may say "although he passed close by, he saw nothing," meaning "in spite of the fact that he passed by, he saw nothing." This is always the effect produced by the word although, which at one time was spelt *all though*, and was more forcible than though. *E. all quite, and though* (even if).

**altimeter** (āl tim' ē tēr), *n.* A device for measuring the angle between a level line and a line running to the sun, moon, a star, or some high point, such as the top of a mountain. (F. *altimètre*.)

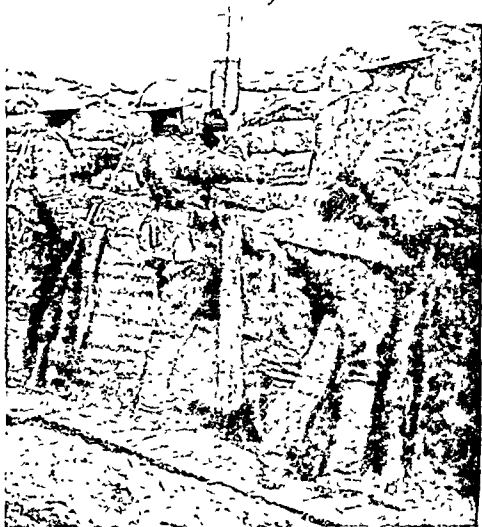
A sextant is one form of altimeter. Another is the instrument carried on an aeroplane, airship, or balloon to show, by a hand moving on the dial, height above sea-level.

*L. altus* high, *metrum* measure (Gr. *metron*).

**altiscope** (āl' ti skōp), *n.* A device having lenses and mirrors so placed in an upright tube that a person looking in at the bottom sees what he would if his eye were level with the top of it. (F. *altiscope*.)

Altiscopes were used a great deal by soldiers in the war for looking over the tops of trenches without being seen themselves. Instruments of this kind which can be turned any way to give an all-round view are called periscopes. They are fitted to all submarines.

*L. altus* high, Gr. *skopos* looker, from *skopein* to look.



Altiscope.—A soldier using an altiscope to discover enemy movements.

**altissimo** (āl tis' i mō), *adv.* Higher than the fourth ledger line above the treble clef or stave. (F. *altissimo*.)

Music for the violin is frequently written in altissimo to show off the brilliant tone of the instrument. Music for other instruments is also written thus.

*Ital.* superlative *adv.* of *alto*.

**altitude** (āl' ti tūd), *n.* Vertical height. elevation. (F. *altitude*.)

We never use this word in connexion with the height of a person, but we speak of the altitude or height of a mountain. In the case of anything moving upwards, such as an aeroplane, we may say that it rose to an altitude of so many feet or miles.

We say that a place is a certain altitude above sea-level, meaning that it stands that height above the sea. In astronomy we speak of the altitude or elevation of a heavenly body above the horizon.

*L. altitudo* height, from *altus* high. *SYN.*: Elevation, eminence, height, loftiness. *ANT.*: Abasement, depression, depth, lowness.



**alto** (al' tō), *n.* A male singer whose voice is like a woman's. (F. *alto*.)

Sometimes an alto voice is natural, the man's voice never having changed since boyhood. In other cases, the man sings in falsetto—an assumed voice. Some people call an alto a counter-tenor. The part sung by an alto is also known as alto.

Ital. *alto*, from L. *altus* high.

**altogether** (awl tō geth' er), *adv.* Completely, wholly. (F. *tout à fait*.)

When we say "That is not altogether true," we mean it is not "entirely" or "quite" or "completely" true. In the phrase "taking it altogether," we mean taking everything into consideration, "in view of all things," or "on the whole."

E. *all* quite, and *together*. SYN.: Collectively, conjointly, fully, totally, utterly. ANT.: Individually, incompletely, partially, partly.

**alto-relievo** (āl' tō re lē' vō), *n.* Carving the figures of which stand out boldly from the surface. (F. *haut relief*.)

Some of the most wonderful carving in the world is to be found on the Parthenon, the great temple which the ancient Greeks built at Athens. The carvings which decorate the inner part of the temple stand out very slightly from the background, because of the deep shadows which are cast there, but the figures which are on the outside, in the strong sunlight stand out much more boldly. The latter are said to be in high relief or alto relievo.

Ital. *alto-relievo*, from *alto* high, *relievare*, L. *religare* to lift up.

**altruism** (āl' tru izm), *n.* Devotion to the cause of others. (F. *altruisme*.)

Altruism is directly opposed to egoism. Altruistic (āl' tru is' tik, *adj.*) conduct is that which finds its motive in the pleasure or well-being or good of others, while egoistic conduct is inspired by consideration of one's own good. An altruist (āl' tru ist, *n.*) is a person who acts altruistically (āl' tru is' tik al li, *adv.*).

Ital. *altru* others (F. *autrui*), contracted from L. *alteri* him, *altruic*, *altru* to this other. SYN.: Generosity, philanthropy, unselfishness. ANT.: Egoism, selfishness, worldliness.

**alum** (āl' ūm), *n.* The double sulphate of aluminium and potassium. (F. *alum*.)

This nasty-tasting crystalline substance is but one of the members of the great group of alums. Properly speaking it should be called "potassium alum," for we may have sodium alum, ammonium alum, and so on. Aluminium is usually present in members of this group (as may be judged by the name), though certain other elements may take its place. All the alums give splendid crystals, and they are all of the same shape.

O F. *alum*, L. *alūm*, from L. *alumen*.

**alumina** (āl ū' min a), *n.* The oxide of aluminium. (F. *alumine*.)

When made artificially alumina is usually a white powder, but in its natural state it is

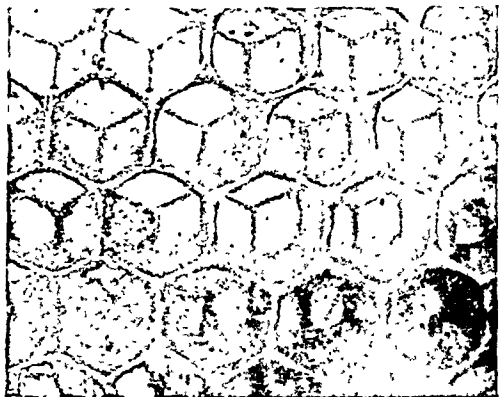
frequently crystalline. A ruby is merely coloured alumina. United with water it is found as "bauxite," from which by electrical treatment we get aluminium (āl ū' min' i ūm, *n.*), that light silvery metal which is used in making saucepans and many other things, and is blended with other metals for use in aeroplanes. Aluminium-bronze is a blend of copper and aluminium. A substance is **aluminous** (āl ū' min ūs, *adj.*) when chiefly made up of alumina or alum.

L. *alumen* (gen. *al-umin-is*) alum.

**alumnus** (ā lūm' nūs), *n.* A pupil or student of a school or college. (F. *élève*.)

Alumnus is derived from a Latin word meaning to nourish. The idea is that a university or college supplies mental nourishment, and thus the college or university is "as a mother to her child" with regard to her students. Following up this idea, the alumni (a lūm' nī, *n. pl.*), after finishing their studies, refer to their former college or university as their Alma Mater, that is "Benign Mother."

L. *alumnus* nursing, from *alere* to nourish, early p p. *alum(e)nos*, Gr. *-omenos*.



Alveoli.—The alveoli or cells in a honeycomb.

**alveolus** (āl vē' ō lūs), *n.* A small cavity. (F. *alvéole*.)

A honeycomb is full of alveoli (āl vē' ō lī, *n. pl.*), little cavities or cells, a condition described as alveolate (āl' vē ō lāt, *adj.*). That part of the jaws into which the teeth are set is alveolar (āl' vē ō lār, *adj.*), that is, contains many sockets or cavities.

L. *alveola*, dim. of *alvus* cavity, hollow.

**always** (awl' wāz), *adv.* All the while, every time; during life. (F. *toujours*, *en tout temps*.)

A train which never arrives to time is always late, a book which is constantly out of a library is always in demand. This word is often misused. For example, we say that it is always raining, when we really mean frequently raining. **Alway** (awl' wā, *adv.*) is now only found in poetry.

A-S. *alwe* *æw* every way, E. *all* and *any*. SYN.: Ever, forever, invariably, perpetually. ANT.: Never, occasionally, sometimes.

**alyssum** (à lis' ùm), *n.* A large group of plants belonging to the mustard family. (F. *alysson*.)

The alyssum bears clusters of small flowers each with four petals arranged in the form of a cross, and so they belong to the order Cruciferae. Rock alyssum, sometimes called gold dust, grows in bright yellow patches on rockeries, but the flowers of the sweet alyssum are white and very fragrant.

Gr. *L. alysson* madwort, from Gr. *a* not, *lyssa* madness, it being supposed to cure a dog's bite.

**am** (àm), part of verb "to be" used in the first person singular of the present tense.

A.-S. *com*, cp. Gr. *emi* (= *esmi*), *L. sum* (= *esum*).

**amadou** (àm' à doo), *n.* A German tinder. (F. *amadour*.)

Certain fungi growing on birch, cherry, oak, and other trees in Germany are collected for the making of amadou. They will often smoulder without being treated in any way, but usually they are boiled in water, crushed and dried, a small quantity of saltpetre then being added. Besides its use as a lighting agent, amadou is beneficial in stopping bleeding.

The Fr. word *amadouer* to allure (by bait), to coax (as a fire), is perhaps of Scand. origin, Dan. *mad*, Swed. *mat* food (E. *meat*); or from Provençal *amador*, *L. amator* lover.

**amain** (à mán'), *adv.* With full force, strength, or speed. (F. *vigoureusement*.)

Anything which is done amain is done very energetically or violently. To strike amain means to lower or let fall at once.

E. *a-* = *on*, and *main*.

**amalgamate** (à mál' gà mât), *v.t.* To combine. *v.i.* To blend; to mix into an amalgam. (F. *amalgâmer*; *s'amalgâmer*.)

If two societies, two sports clubs, or two trading companies join forces or unite they amalgamate, the result of such a union being an amalgamation (à mál' gà mât' shùn, *n.*). Substances capable of being mixed together are amalgamative (à mál' gà mât' tiv, *adj.*), and the person who is responsible for their admixture is an amalgamator (à mál' gà mât' tór, *n.*).

An alloy or mixture of mercury with another metal is an amalgam (à mál' gà m, *n.*), an example being the silvering placed on the back of glass to make a mirror, which is formed of about three parts of mercury and one of tin. Mercury is used for obtaining gold and silver from crushed ore, and the process is known as amalgamation.

L.L. *amalgama* soft mixture, possibly from Gr. *malagma*, from *malassein* to soften. SYN.: Blend, combine, incorporate, join, unite. ANT.: Analyze, decompose, disintegrate, separate.

**amanuensis** (à mán' ù en' sis), *n.* A person employed to write what another dictates; a secretary. The plural is amanuenses (à mán' ù en' sêz). (F. *secrétaire*.)

L. *amanuensis*, from *a* from, *manu* (ablative of *manus*) hand, and suffix *-ensis*. SYN.: Secretary, shorthand-typist.

**amaracus** (à mār' á kùs), *n.* A bulbous plant; marjoram. (F. *amaraque*.)

The Greek amaracus was a species of bulbous plant. In Tennyson's "Oenone" the word has the same meaning:

And at their feet the crocus brake like fire,  
Violet, amaracus, and asphodel,  
Lotos and lilies.

The name is also given to marjoram, an aromatic sweet-smelling plant belonging to the same order as thyme and mint, that is, the Labiatae.

Gr. *amarak-on*, *-os*, *L. amārac-um*, *-us*.

**amaranth** (àm' à rānth), *n.* A genus of ornamental plants, of which love-lies-bleeding, prince's feathers, and cock's comb are species. (F. *amarante*.)

The word *amaranthus* (àm à rānth' ùs, *adj.*) is a corruption of *amarantus* (àm à rānt' ùs, *adj.*) meaning unfading, everlasting, or incorruptible. Thus the "crown of glory that fadeth not away" is the "amarantine (àm à rānt' in, *adj.*) crown"; and Milton speaks of "amaranthine (àm à rānth' in, *adj.*) bowers" ("Paradise Lost," xi, 78). The amaranth of the poets is an imaginary fadeless flower, but in the actual amaranths a number of coloured scales or bracts remain fresh-looking for quite a long time.

Gr. *amarantos*, from *a-* = not, *marainem* to fade, *L. amaranthus*. This is due to a supposed connexion with Gr. *anthos* flower.



Amaryllis.—A genus of plants that includes the beautiful belladonna lily.

**amaryllis** (àm à ril' lis), *n.* A genus of bulbous plants bearing beautiful lily-like flowers; a country girl. (F. *amaryllis*.)

The narcissus, snowdrop, and jonquil belong to the same natural order, and among foreign species are the so-called belladonna lily and the Guernsey lily. All these flowers differ from true lilies in having the ovary or seed-vessel below the flower.

Amaryllis was a beautiful country girl, beloved of the shepherd Tityrus, about whom

we read in Virgil. In Milton's "Lycidas" we have the line "To sport with Amaryllis in the shade."

The name perhaps means "with glancing eyes" from Gr. *amaryssein* to twinkle, sparkle.

**amass** (ám mäs'), *v.t.* To heap together pile up, collect. (F. *amasser*.)

A boy may amass a large number of stamps, a man may amass wealth or information. In old books one sometimes reads of the amassing of people, the word being then used in the sense of assembling or gathering together, but in modern English it is not used in this way.

L. *ad to, massa* dough-like lump, *mass* (= Gr. *māsa*, barley-cake). SYN. Accumulate, collect, gather, get together, muster. ANS. Disperse, distribute, scatter, spread, waste.



AMASS.—Sorting a huge collection of Christmas parcels amassed at the General Post Office, London.

**amateur** (ám a tūr, ám a tēr'), *n.* One who practises an art, a pastime or an occupation for the love of it or without receiving payment. *adj.* Not professional. (F. *amateur*.)

When we indulge in any hobby or pastime we generally do so because we are interested in that hobby or pastime. If we practise it because we like it, we may not be very successful but we still derive pleasure from the indulgence. We do not need to enter into competition with others, for we are not seeking to obtain profit of any kind.

Thus it often happens that an amateur's work is inferior to professional work of the same kind so there has grown into use the employment of the word amateur as an adjective, signifying not professional or not so well done. For instance, we talk of a person's amateur efforts, though more usually when we wish to imply that they are not up to the professional standard we use *amateurish* (ám a tūr' ish, *adj.*). *Amateurishness* (ám a tūr' ish nes, *n.*) is the quality of being below the professional standard. *Amateurism* (ám a tūr' izm, *n.*) is the state or

practice of being an amateur, or, in other words, of being able to do things only *amateurishly* (ám a tūr' ish li, *adv.*).

The meaning of amateur varies in different branches of sport and the rules of the governing body of each sport should be read to understand the exact status or standing of an amateur in any particular branch. In cricket, amateurs and professionals, or players who receive payment, are permitted to play together in one team, but in football certain exceptions are made. Amateurs may play for professional clubs in Association football, but professionals may not play for amateur clubs without obtaining the permission of the Football Association.

In Rugby football amateurs may not play for professional clubs, nor may professionals take part in amateur matches. If an amateur takes money for his services, and the fact is made known to the governing body of the sport in which he takes part, the latter refuse to allow him to play again as an amateur.

In most sports there is no rule to prevent amateurs and professionals playing with or against one another as long as the amateurs do not receive more than their out-of-pocket expenses. Some of the most important cricket, football—not Rugby football—and golf matches are played between paid and unpaid players, and in cricket one of the highest honours is to be chosen to play in the annual Gentlemen *versus* Players, that is, amateurs *versus* professionals, matches.

L. *amator* lover, one who is fond of anything for itself. SYN. Devotee, dilettante, novice, tyro, votary.

**amative** (ám' a tiv), *adj.* Disposed to loving. (F. *amoureux*.)

Some people claim that they can tell the character of a person from the shape of his head. If he is supposed to be amative they feel the base of his skull for indications of *amateness* (ám' a tiv nes, *n.*).

Amative is formed as if from a (non-existent) L. *adj.* *amativus* (from *amatus* (p.p. of *amare*)).

**amatory** (ám' a tó ri), *adj.* Relating to a lover or love. (F. *amoureux*.)

A poem on love is an amatory poem. Certain muscles of the eye are called *amatorial* (ám a tór' i ál, *adj.*) muscles because they come into use in casting side-long amatory glances.

L. *amatorius*, from *amator* lover and *sulx* -us belonging to

**amaurosis** (ám aw rō' sis), *n.* Loss of sight. (F. *goutte serena*, *amaurose*.)

Decay of the optic or eye nerve is now known to cause amaurosis, but the name used to be that of blindness without visible defect to account for it. An old name for amaurosis was *gutta serena* (see the French name above), or "drop serene."

Milton, in his great epic poem, "Paradise Lost" (in. 25-26), remembering his own blindness which he thought due to a cataract,

or film or suffusion, laments for eyes that cannot see the light :

So thick a drop serene hath quenched these orbs,  
Or dim suffusion veil'd.

Eyes which are affected with this kind of blindness are said to be amaurotic (*ām aw rot' ik, adj.*).

Gr. *amaurosis*, from *a-* intensive prefix, *mau* os dark.

**amaze** (*ā mās'*), *v.t.* To cause wonder to ; to surprise greatly. (F. *étonner*.)

Strictly this word means to cause wonder together with a feeling akin to fear, or dismay, or loss of presence of mind. The sight of snow amazes the natives of the tropics ; it astonishes and puzzles them. The ships of Columbus filled the natives of America with amazement (*ā mās' ment, n.*) ; they were quite bewildered. The question : " Why stands Macbeth (*iv, 1*) thus amazedly ? " (*ā mās' éd li, adv.*) suggests a state of stupor or dismay.

We often use the words amazing (*ā mās' ing, adj.*) and amazingly (*ā mās' ing li, adv.*) to describe something extraordinary, as when we say that someone is amazingly clever, or is making amazing progress.

A.-S. *ā* intensive prefix, and *maze*. SYN. : Awe, bewilder, confuse, perplex, surprise. ANT. : Calm, prepare.

**Amazon** (*ām' ā zōn*), *n.* One of a race of female warriors ; a horsewoman ; a masculine woman. (F. *amazone*.)

Though of fabled origin the Amazons represent a type of fighting woman which has existed since the dawn of history. In South America the Spanish conquerors met in combat many parties of armed women, and from that fact called the country Amazonia and its principal river the Amazon.

In the Indian Mutiny a Mahratta princess, mounted and armed, led troops against British forces. More recently in the World War (1914-18) regiments of women were raised in Russia and fought first under the Imperial flag, and later under the Soviet flag. Still later in the Chinese Revolution regiments of females took part in the fighting.

**Amazonian** (*ām ā zō' ni ān*) means strong, well built, like an Amazon. A tall masculine woman is so described, often playfully.

**ambassador** (*ām bās ā dōr*), *n.* A person sent by a ruler of a country to represent that country in another country. (F. *ambassadeur*.)

An ambassador is said to be accredited to another country, and when he is resident

there he is said to be an ambassador ordinary. When he is sent on a special mission, however, he is called an ambassador extraordinary, and when he is given special powers, as for signing treaties on behalf of his country, he is called an ambassador plenipotentiary.

Duties carried out by an ambassador are called ambassadorial (*ām bās ā dōr' i āl, adj.*), and the wife of an ambassador, or a female ambassador, is an ambassadress (*ām bās' ā drēs, n.*). Ambassador is sometimes used in the sense of an intermediary or messenger. If two people quarrel, a third person may act as an ambassador between the two, and try to settle their differences and bring about a reconciliation.

Ambassadors are highly important and privileged persons, ranking after royalty. An ambassador is not allowed to take part in the politics of the country to which he is accredited, and is not subject to the civil laws of the country in which he is resident, his house being supposed to be part of the country to which he belongs. The recall or dismissal of an ambassador is often the signal for an outbreak of war, and the British ambassador was recalled from Berlin in such circumstances in August, 1914, when the World War began.

The ambassador of the Pope is called a nuncio literally a messenger.

L.L. *ambasciator, ambactiator*, from *ambactus* vassal, a word of Celtic origin, perhaps connected with *ambi-* round, about, *actus* driven, sent. SYN. : Envoy, legate, minister, plenipotentiary.

L.L. *ambasciator, ambactiator*, from *ambactus* vassal, a word of Celtic origin, perhaps connected with *ambi-* round, about, *actus* driven, sent. SYN. : Envoy, legate, minister, plenipotentiary.

**amber** (*ām' ber*), *n.* A yellowish fossil resin. *adj.* Made of amber ; of amber colour. (F. *ambre, ambré*.)

Amber is the resin from fir and similar trees which lived hundreds of thousands of years ago. Usually we can see through it, but not nearly so clearly as through ordinary glass. It often puzzles people who find amber to see buried in it an insect or part of a plant. The insect settled on the resin when the latter was soft and sticky and oozing from the tree, was caught, and finally embalmed, as it were, when the amber became hard.

Amber is found chiefly on the southern shores of the Baltic, but it may often be seen on the east coast of England. Sicilian amber is red, with green and blue lights in it.

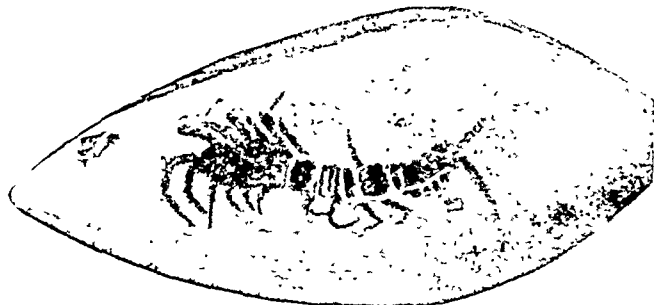
The Greek philosophers were very interested in amber. One of them, Theophrastus, a pupil of Aristotle, found that some unknown force must be at work when amber was rubbed, and Pliny pointed out the same



Ambassador.—An ambassador in ambassadorial dress.

thing. We now know that this unknown force was electricity, and amber may be said to be the first substance in which was found the force that has given us broadcasting, telegraphy, and electric light. The Greek word for amber, indeed, is *elektron*, from which we get our word electricity.

L.L. *ambar*, F. *ambre*, from Arab. 'anbar (pronounced 'ambar).



Amber.—The scorpion embedded in this piece of amber was caught when the resin was oozing from the tree.

**ambergris** (ām' ber grēs), *n.* A grey fatty substance with red marble-like veins running through it, found floating in tropical seas or thrown up on the shore. (F. *ambre gris*.)

When we enjoy certain scents we are probably smelling what was once inside a whale, for ambergris is a substance which is obtained from the bile of the sperm whale, and is used in the making of scents. It is worth several pounds an ounce, and once a native of the Bahamas, from which island much ambergris comes, found a mass weighing over 8,000 ounces, all from one whale.

F. *ambre gris* grey amber.

**ambidexter** (ām bi dek' stēr), *adj.* Using both hands equally well; double-dealing. *n.* One who can use both hands equally well. (F. *ambidextre*.)

Most children are taught from an early age to use their right hand, and that is why they are not able to use their left hand so well when they grow up. If only parents would teach their children to use both hands and so become ambidexter or ambidextrous (ām bi dek' strūs, *adj.*) they would be able to act ambidextrously (ām bi dek' strūs li, *adv.*) when they grew up, and profit by their ambidexterity (ām bi dek ster' i ti, *n.*) or ambidextrousness (ām bi dek' strūs nēs, *n.*).

Many surgeons and painters are ambidextrous, but their ability to use both hands equally well takes a different form to that of certain double-dealing lawyers of early days who were said to be ambidextrous because they accepted bribes from both parties to a lawsuit.

L. *ambi* on both sides, *dexter* (*adj.*) on the right hand.

**ambient** (ām' biēnt), *adj.* That which surrounds completely. (F. *ambiant*.)

When we go bathing and dive into the river or sea, we plunge out of the ambient

air into the ambient water; that is, out of air which completely surrounds our bodies into water which does the same.

L. *ambiens* (gen. *-entis*), pres. p. of *ambire* to go round, from *ambi* round, *ire* to go. SYN.: Circumfusing, enclosing, encompassing, investing, surrounding. ANT.: Infiltrating, intervening, penetrative, permeating.

**ambiguous** (ām big' ū ūs), *adj.* Of doubtful meaning. (F. *ambigu*, *douteux*, *équivoque*.)

If we ask a question and get an answer which might mean one thing and yet might mean another, that is an ambiguous answer. Yellowy-green and bluey-yellow are examples of ambiguous colours, for they are not quite clearly one thing or the other. To answer a question in an uncertain way is to answer ambiguously (ām big' ū ūs li, *adv.*). To have the quality of uncertain meaning is to have ambiguity (ām bi gū' i ti, *n.*) or ambiguousness (ām big' ū ūs nēs, *n.*).

L. *ambiguus* uncertain, from *ambi* about both ways, *agere* to drive. SYN.: Doubtful, equivocal, obscure, uncertain, vague. ANT.: Clear, lucid, obvious, plain, unmistakable.

**ambit** (ām' bit), *n.* Extent, bounds or precincts. (F. *contour*.)

We say that the ambit of the Metropolitan Police (London) is roughly a circle of fifteen miles radius from Charing Cross, meaning that the Metropolitan Police patrol and guard an area covered by this radius.

L. *ambitus* going round, from *ambi* round, *ire* to go.

**ambition** (ām bish' ūn), *n.* Desire for power, honour, credit, or advantage; the object so desired. (F. *ambition*.)

Although one may strive to attain some ambition in an honest way, ambitiousness (ām bish' ūs nēs, *n.*) often leads to dishonest and unjust methods being employed. Such was the case with the ambitious (ām bish' ūs, *adj.*) Cardinal Wolsey, the Chancellor of Henry VIII, who was ambitiously (ām bish' ūs li, *adv.*) inclined from an early age.

L. *ambitio* (gen. *-ionis*), from *ambire* to go round (canvassing for votes). SYN.: Aspiration, competition, emulation, rivalry. ANT.: Carelessness, contentment, indifference.

**amble** (ām' bl), *v.i.* To walk slowly; to idle along; (of animals) to walk by lifting two feet on one side one after the other; to ride slowly. (F. *aller l'amble*.)

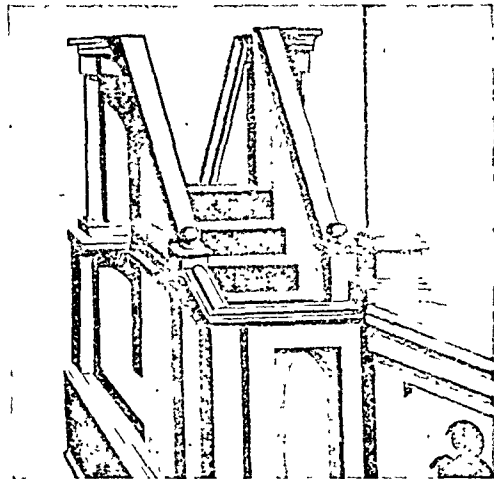
Parents sometimes say to their children, "Hurry up, don't amble along like that!" when they are dawdling or walking idly along. A slow walking pace is an amble (*n.*), and a person who takes things easily on a walk, or walks lazily along, is called an ambler (ām bler, *n.*).

O.F. *ambler*, L. *ambulare* to walk, go round (perhaps connected with Gr. *bainein* to go) SYN.: Dawdle, stroll. ANT.: Hasten, hurry.

**amblyopia** (ām bli ō' pi ā), *adj.* Dim sight. (F. *amblyopie*.)

The partial blindness called amblyopia is due to decay of the optic or eye nerve (*see amaurosis*). Eyesight affected in this way is called amblyopic (ām bli op' ik, *adj.*).

Gr. *amblyopia*, from *amblys* blunt, dull, *ōps* (gen. *ōpos*) eye.



Ambo.—The reading-desk or ambo used in early Christian churches which was the forerunner of the pulpit and lectern used to-day.

**ambo** (ām' bō), *n.* A kind of pulpit or reading-desk used in early churches. (F. *ambon*.)

In churches where there was only one ambo it was three-decked. From the top story the Gospel was sung, sermons were preached, and announcements given out. The epistle was read from the middle story, and other parts of the Scriptures from the lowest story. If there were two ambos, one was used for the Gospel and the other for the epistle. The ambo was the forerunner of the pulpit and lectern. For the plural we use both the English form ambos (ām' bōz) and the Latin form ambones (ām bōn' ēz.)

Gr. *ambōn* crest of a hill, high place, from *anabainem* to go up, ascend, L.L. *ambo*.

**Amboyna-wood** (ām boi' nā wud,) *n.* The wood of a tree which grows in Amboyna, an island in the Dutch East Indies. (F. *bois d'Amboine*.)

It has a beautiful grain, and is largely used in the making of high-class furniture.

**ambrine** (ām' brēn), *n.* A mixture of amber resin and melted paraffin wax used to relieve burns and scalds. (F. *ambrine*.)

The melted ambrine is generally applied by means of an ambrine candle, which is lighted and the ambrine allowed to drip on the burn. Ambrine was first made use of in Europe by a French doctor in 1904, though it had been used by the Chinese in the Boxer rebellion of 1900. During the World War (1914-18) it was used as a temporary and soothing dressing for wounds.

L.L. *ambra*, and chemical suffix *-ine*.

**ambrosia** (ām brō' zi ā), *n.* A genus of plants; the fabled food or drink of the gods; bee-bread. (F. *ambrosie*.)

The ambrosia genus of coarse annual weeds includes the ragweed and the Roman wormwood of America. There is no British species.

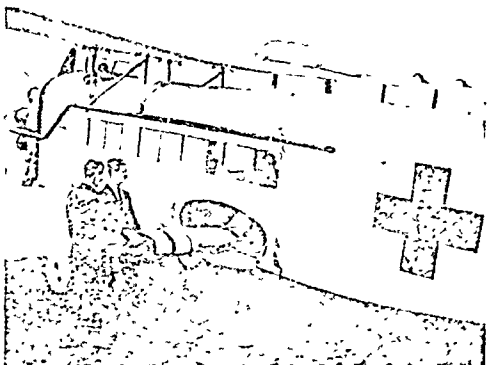
Ambrosia was the fabled food of the gods, or their equally fabulous drink, and sweet-smelling oil, each of which could make the gods immortal. Hence anything regarded as divinely beautiful, exquisite or delightful, was said to be ambrosial (ām brō' zi āl, *adj.*), and the dew of heaven was said by the poets to smell ambrosially (ām brō' zi āl li, *adv.*). The Greeks called a certain herb ambrosia because they thought its constant use rendered men long-lived. According to some this was the wild parsley, to others the wild sage, or one of the goosefoot family.

Bee-bread is a mixture of honey and pollen with which bees feed their grubs.

Gr. *ambrosia*, from *ambrotos* immortal, cp. L. *immortalis*.

**ambulance** (ām' bū lāns), *n.* A stretcher on wheels, cart, motor-wagon, or aeroplane for carrying wounded or very sick people. (F. *ambulance*.)

In a wider sense the word means a moving hospital which follows an army in the field. In this sense it covers not only the vehicles already named, but the tents, beds, drugs, instruments, and other things needed for a hospital, and the officers and men who gather and look after the wounded.



Ambulance.—A stretcher about to be placed in an air-ambulance ready for instant service.

Air-ambulances are now used for taking dangerously ill people a long way to hospital. In British Guiana an air-ambulance flies between the low coast lands and a hospital high up in the mountains, which could otherwise be reached only with difficulty.

F. (*hôpital*) *ambulant*, L. *ambulans*, pres. p. of *ambulare* to walk about.

**ambulate** (ām' bū lāt), *v.i.* To walk about. (F. *se promener*.)

The act of walking is ambulation (ām bū lā' shūn, *n.*) and an ambulant (ām' bū lānt,

*adj.*) person is one who is walking or moving about.

**ambulatory** (ām bū lā' tō ri, *adj.*) implies moving, or not fixed, and refers also to walking or one who walks. As a noun the term refers to any kind of corridor, including the cloisters of a cathedral or monastery and the aisles of a church.

L. *ambulare* (*ambi-bulare*), perhaps connected with Gr. *bainō* to go. SYN.: Ramble, saunter, stroll, walk. ANT.: Halt, pause, stand still.

**ambuscade** (ām būs kād'), *n.* A hiding force to surprise an enemy; a trap to catch an enemy; the place where forces are hidden for surprise. *v.t.* To place in ambush; to lie in wait for. *v.i.* To lie in wait. (F. *embuscade*, *embûche*; *embusquer*; *s'embusquer*.)

Ambuscades are always being tried in war, so that an enemy can be surprised and defeated before he can defend himself properly. To guard against them, an army on the march is protected from surprise as far as possible by scouts, cavalry, and aeroplanes that go on ahead and keep a sharp look out for any signs of a hidden enemy.

When the early settlers in America first began to fight with the Red Indians, the latter were very clever at hiding in ambush (ām' bush, *n.*), to use a word with the same meanings as ambuscade. They used to ambush (*v.t.*) themselves behind trees.

During the South African War the Boers were skilful at forming ambuscades. The most famous of these ambuscades was that laid by De Wet, the Boer leader, at Sanna's Post, near Bloemfontein, in March, 1900, when several hundred British soldiers were trapped.

L. L. *imboscare* to set a trap, from *im-* = in, *boscus* bush, wood.



Ambuscade.—Troops equipped with a machine-gun waiting in ambush to surprise the enemy.

**ameer** (ā mēr'), *n.* A Mohammedan title of honour. Amir is another spelling. (F. *émir*.)

In those countries where the Mohammedan religion is practised certain tribal rulers assume the title of ameer (amir or emir). It is an interesting fact that the English word admiral is derived from the Arabic word *amir*, meaning a lord or chief.

There is an Ameer of Afghanistan, and in 1839-42 and 1878-80, Great Britain was engaged in what were called the Afghan Wars for the purpose of restoring the rightful ruler to the throne there, and also to prevent Russia and Persia from obtaining too great an influence in the country. During the second war, General Sir F. (later Lord) Roberts made his famous march from Kabul to Kandahar.

Arab. *amir* ruler, from *amara* to command.

**ameliorate** (ā mē' li ōr āt), *v.t.* To make better. *v.i.* To grow better. (F. *améliorer*; *s'améliorer*.)

This word is used in the exact sense of making better, as opposed to curing entirely. For example, in the case of a doctor and a patient, we might say: "The doctor gave the man something to ameliorate his condition," meaning to improve his condition.

We should describe this doctor's act as **amelioration** (ā mē li ō rā' shūn, *n.*) of the man's condition, the measures taken as **ameliorative** (ā mē' li ōr ā tiv, *adj.*) and the doctor himself as the **ameliorator** (ā mē' li ōr ā tōr, *n.*) of the man's pain.

L. L. *ameliorare*, from *a-* = ad to, besides, *meliorare* to make better (*melior*). SYN.: Amend, better, improve, relieve. ANT.: Degenerate, deteriorate, injure.

**amen** (ā men'; a men'), *inter.* So be it. (F. *amen*.)

In the Christian religion, we add this word at the end of a prayer or a hymn or a confession of our faith as a token that we mean all we have said, recited, sung, or confessed. In Egyptian mythology there is a god called Amen, or Ammon, and the name in this connexion means "the hidden one."

L. Gr. Hebr. *āmēn* verily. The Hebrew noun means "truth."

**amenable** (ā mēn' ābl), *adj.* Liable to be called to account; submissive. (F. *responsable*; *soumis*.)

A criminal is amenable to the law, or liable to be dealt with by the law, and a person who listens to sound advice is amenable to reason or amenably (ā mē' nā bl, *adv.*) disposed. The state of being amenable is **amenability** (ā mē nā bl' i ti, *n.*), or **amenableness** (ā mē' nā bl nes, *n.*).

F. *amener*, from *a-* to, *mener* to conduct, from L. L. *a-* = ad to, *manari* to lead from one place to another. SYN.: Accountable, answerable, liable, tractable. ANT.: Autocratic, independent, obstinate.

**amend** (ā mend'), *v.t.* To alter (a person or a thing) for the better. *v.i.* To become better. (F. *amender*; *s'amender*.)

Among things that we may correct or amend are errors in writing or printed matter. A Bill before Parliament may also be amended, and such a thing is **amendable** (ā mend' ābl, *adj.*), and the change for the better is called an **amendment** (ā mend' ment, *n.*).

A Member of Parliament who believes that there is something in a Bill which can be improved upon, and which he wishes to have inserted, proposes an amendment. It sometimes happens that by the time a Bill has passed through Parliament and received the royal assent, and has thus become law, it has almost entirely lost its original form.

We use the word *amends* (à mēdz', *n.pl.*) in the singular, not the plural, sense, meaning to compensate, or make up for, a loss or injury.

*L. emendare* to remove a fault, from *e* out of, *mendum* fault. *SYN.*: Correct, improve, reform, rectify. *ANT.*: Aggravate, corrupt, harm.

**amenity** (à mē' ni ti), *n.* Pleasantness; (*n.pl.*) pleasant ways, attractions. (*F. aménité.*)

This word may be used with reference to the pleasantness of a place in connexion either with its climate, its position, or the manners and customs of its inhabitants. Before the days of civilization, human beings did not give much attention to the pleasant side, or the amenities of life. Life was a hard struggle, and they thought chiefly of their practical needs.

As time passed on, man found out the meaning of comfort by making things for his own and his neighbour's use, and with more comfort he became less anxious to spend his time in fighting. Neighbours became friends instead of enemies; homes were made for comfort as well as merely for shelter and protection. So the amenities of life gradually grew up, and life itself as a consequence became a more pleasant thing.

*L. amoenitas*, from *amoenus* pleasant. *SYN.*: Amiability, gentleness, mildness, softness.

**ament** (à ment'), *n.* The botanical name for a catkin. (*F. chaton.*)

The Latin word *amentum* (à ment' ūm), *pl. amenta* (à ment' à), really means a thong or spike, and it is easy to see why this name was given to the catkin, which is a crowded spike of small flowers which hangs from such trees as the willow. There are many varieties of the willow, and the twigs of one of them, the osier, are used for basket-making. Trees that bear catkins are called *amentaceous* (ām en tā' shūs, *adj.*) trees.

**amerce** (à mērs'), *v.t.* To punish by a fine; deprive. (*F. punir d'une amende.*)

A magistrate may *amerce*, or inflict a fine upon, a law breaker. The latter is an *amerciable* (à mērs' si àbl, *adj.*) party, and

the fine inflicted is an *amercement* (à mērs' mēt, *n.*).

Anglo-F. *amercier* to fine, *F. à merci* at the mercy of (from *merci* grace, favour).

**American** (à mer' i kán), *adj.* Pertaining to the continent or people of America, but more especially to the United States. *n.* An inhabitant of the continent of America; a citizen of the United States of America. (*F. américain.*)

Originally only a native of America—named after Amerigo Vespucci, a merchant of Florence, who sailed to that continent in



Amenity.—Enjoying some of the amenities of life—a comfortable room, a warm fire, pleasing pictures, and wireless.

1497—was an American, but now any inhabitant, especially of the United States, is an American subject. To cause a person to become American in character is to *Americanize* (à mer' i kán iz, *v.t.*) him and anything peculiar to America, especially words and phrases, such as "yep" for "yes," and "let that stay put" for "let that remain as it is," is an *Americanism* (à mer' i kán izm, *n.*).

In lawn tennis a special method of serving has been given the name of *American service* (*n.*) from its having originated in America.



It is a twist or return twist service, which causes the ball to swerve or change its course while in the air and, as it touches the ground, instead of going straight on, turn sharply to one side, or break away as it is called.



American.—An American Indian dancer in full war paint.

**amethyst** (ām' e thist), *n.* A bluish-violet variety of crystalline quartz. (F. *amethyste*.)

Nowadays we use the amethyst for jewelled ornaments such as rings and brooches. In olden days they also used this semi-precious quartz for the making of drinking cups, because there was a curious belief that it acted as a charm against drunkenness.

In certain lights and at certain times in fine weather, a slight haze or mist will cause natural objects to be partly veiled in a delicate cloud of a bluish-violet colour resembling that of amethyst, and this colour is described as **amethystine** (ām e thist' in, *adj.*) for that reason.

Gr. *amethystos*, from *a-* = not, *nuthystos* drunk.

**amiable** (ā' mi ābl), *adj.* (Of a sweet disposition, lovable. (F. *aimable*.)

Although this word has more or less the same meaning as friendly, it suggests just a little more, for a person may be kindly disposed to another, but that other may not feel attracted. The amiable woman is one who is lovable as well as friendly. The power of her attraction, together with her friendly disposition, make up her **amiability** (ā mi ā bil' i ti, *n.*), and she talks and acts amiably (ā' mi ā bli, *adv.*).

L. *amicabilis*, from *amicus* friend. SYN.: Agreeable, attractive, charming, kind. ANT.: Crabbed, crusty, disagreeable, surly.

**amic** (ām' ik), *adj.* Pertaining to ammonia.

Ammonia is a very powerful gas, and any compound of which it is the base, or chief part, is called an **amide** (ām' id, *n.*). The particular compounds in which the hydrogen

of the ammonia is replaced by another ingredient are called **amines** (ām' inz, *n. pl.*) *Am* = ammonia, and *-ic* (chemical suffix).

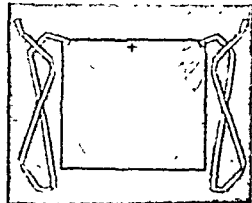
**amicable** (ām' ik ābl), *adj.* Friendly (F. *amical*.)

We use this word chiefly in connexion with arrangements between two parties, each of whom acts with perfect goodwill towards the other. We say, for instance, that a law-suit was ended on amicable terms, meaning that there was no ill will shown. When a law-suit is entered into by two or more parties in order to settle in a friendly spirit a particular point about which there are differences of opinion, we call it an amicable suit. We can say that the law-suit ended amicably (ām' ik ābl, *adv.*), and that the whole affair was conducted with amicability (ām ik ā bil' i ti, *n.*) or amicableness (ām' ik ābl nēs).

L.L. *amicabilis*, from *amicus* friend. SYN.: Cordial, harmonious, peaceable. ANT.: Adverse, hostile, unfriendly.

**amice** [1] (ām' is), *n.* A vestment worn at Mass. (F. *amict*.)

The amice is an oblong strip of fine linen with a tiny cross sewn or embroidered near one edge of it and with strings at two corners. It is first laid lightly on the head and then dropped over the shoulders and tied round the chest.



Amice.—A vestment worn at Mass.

At one time this strip of linen was worn like a hood.

O.F. *amis*, *amit*, L. *amictus* mantle, p.p. of *amictre*, from *am* round, *jacere* to throw.

**amice** [2] (ām' is), *n.* A kind of cloak with long ends in front made of grey fur. Also **almuce** (āl' mūs). (F. *aumusse*.)

At first it seems to have been a cap or covering for the head, and then a hood or a cape with a hood. In the fifteenth century the hood part grew smaller and the cape part larger and more important. The amice came to be worn as a choir vestment by canons, who often carried it over their left arms. It is still used by some canons in France and Italy.

O.F. *aumuce*, L.L. *almucia*, possibly connected with G. *mutze* cap.

**amid** (ā mid'), *prep.* Among; surrounded by. (F. *au milieu* *de*.)

We can say that a speaker's last remarks were heard indistinctly amid cries of disapproval, and that a maiden stood amid the corn. **Amidst** (ā midst') means much the same as amid, although it is perhaps commoner to use amidst for scattered things or else for something moving among other things.

In talking of objects or people in the middle part of a ship, we say they are **amidships** (ā mid' ships, *adv.*).

A.-S. *a = in, on, middle* middle(—on *midddan*). SYN.: Between, betwixt. ANT.: Beyond, outside.



Amidst.—The aeroplane in which Colonel Charles August Lindbergh flew from New York to Paris in 1927. amidst a vast throng of people. The aviator was only twenty-five years old.

**amide** (ām' id), *n.* A chemical compound made from ammonia. (F. *amide*.)

It is obtained by putting acid radicals, that is, special families of atoms, in place of one or more of the hydrogen atoms found in its composition.

**Amidol** (ām' i dōl, *n.*) is a well-known photographic developer. It is a crystalline compound soluble in water; and just as acid radicals replacing the hydrogen of ammonia give amides, so phenol (carbolic acid) radicals give amidol. As phenol is got from coal tar we may regard amidol as a coal-tar product.

E. *am* (*monia*), and *ide* (chemical compound suffix).

**amidin** (ām' i din), *n.* The part of starch that can be dissolved; starch in solution. (F. *amidine*.)

When we talk of anything being in solution "we mean that it is dissolved in water. When starch is in solution it yields a translucent (or not quite transparent) jelly.

F. *amidon*, L. *amylum* starch, with chemical suffix *-ine*.

**amidst** (ā midst'), *prep.* This is used very much like *amid*. See *amid*.

M.E. *amiddle-s* (adverbial suffix *s*).

**amine** (ām' in), *n.* A compound produced from ammonia. See *amic*.

The word is a contraction of *ammonia*, and the chemical suffix *-ine*.

**amir** (ā mēr'), *n.* A Mohammedan title of honour. Another spelling is *ameer*. See *ameer*.

**amiss** (ā mis'), *adj.* and *adv.* Out of order; wrong. (F. *mal*; *mauvais*.)

When we say that no food comes amiss to a starving man we mean that any kind of food is welcome. If a man wishes to do a favour to another he trusts his action will not be taken amiss, that is, will not give offence. In certain circumstances it would not be amiss, or out of order, to do such and such a thing.

Shakespeare uses the word as a noun in the play of *Hamlet* (iv, 5), when the Queen of Denmark, Hamlet's mother, says:

Let her come in.

To my sick soul, as sin's true nature is,  
Each toy seems prologue to some great amiss;  
So full of artless jealousy is guilt,  
It spills itself in fearing to be spilt.

E. *a-* = *on*, and *miss*, M.E. *on misse* in mistake. SYN.: Inappropriate, inexpedient, untimely. ANT.: Appropriate, expedient, opportune.

**amissibility** (ā mis i bil' i ti), *n.* Likelihood of losing or of being lost. (F. *amissibilité*.)

Our faith in people is amissible (ā mis' ibl, *adj.*) should they prove unworthy, much as we may grieve over the amission (ā mish' ūn, *n.*). Those in authority should bear in mind the amissibility of their power and therefore not abuse it. All these words are very seldom used.

L.L. *amissibilis* capable of being lost, from *amissus* p.p. of *amittere* to lose.

**amity** (ām' i ti), *n.* Friendship, goodwill. (F. *amitié*.)

This word denotes good feeling on both sides. It is used especially when speaking of the relations of governments, political parties, and the like.

O.F. *amisté*, L.L. *amicitas*, from *amicus* friend. SYN.: Concord, harmony. ANT.: Discord, hostility.

**ammeter** (ām' me tēr), *n.* An instrument for measuring the strength of an electric current. (F. *ammètre*, *ampèremètre*.)

We measure length in inches, feet, yards, etc., weight in ounces and pounds; and in the same way electric current is measured in what are called ampères. The name of this machine comes from the famous French physicist, André Marie Ampère, who lived from 1775 to 1836.

A shortened form of *ampere-meter* (Amp. re, Gr. *metron* measure).

**ammonal** (ām' ō nāl), *n.* An explosive compound. (F. *ammonal*.)

Ammonal is a curious mixture of harmless ingredients that makes a very powerful explosive. It was largely used during the World War of 1914-18, in hand grenades and bombs. The ingredients are (1) ammonium nitrate, which is a combination of ammonia and nitric acid, and is a colourless crystalline substance; (2) aluminium; (3) charcoal. When these substances are mixed in the proper proportions ammonal results.

This kind of explosive cannot explode by itself but has to be set off by means of what is called a detonator, such as fulminate of mercury, which is much more sensitive. Only very small quantities of the detonator are needed to set off large amounts of ammonal. The word is a contraction of ammon(ia) and al(uminium).

**ammonia** (ā mō' nī ā), *n.* A very strong-smelling gas; a class of chemical compounds with similar properties. (F. *ammoniaque*.)

Most of us, in speaking of ammonia, mean what is really liquid ammonia—that is, ammonia gas dissolved in water. Solid carbonate of ammonia is put into bottles, with perfume, and sold by chemists, who call it smelling salts. In cases of faintness a sniff at this solution will often revive a patient.

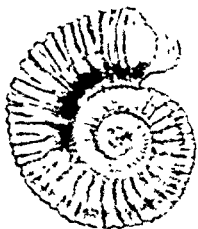
An old-fashioned remedy for reviving a fainting or nearly fainting person was to burn feathers under her nose. The reason for this was that during the process just the same thing happens as if the patient sniffed smelling salts, for feathers when burning give off this gas which we know as ammonia.

Any chemical compound which possesses the properties of ammonia is called **ammoniac** (ā mō' mī āk, *adj.*) or **ammoniacal** (ā mō nī' āk āl, *adj.*), and when we combine anything with ammonia, we say it is **ammoniated** (ā mō' mī ā ted, *adj.*). For instance, a remedy for colds is called ammoniated quinine.

**Ammonium** (ā mō' nī ūm, *n.*) is a radical or a group of atoms containing one more hydrogen atom than ammonia does.

Gr. *ammoniakon*, L. *sal ammoniacum* rock salt, said to have been discovered near the temple of Zeus (or Jupiter) Ammon in Libya.

**ammonite** (ām' mō nīt), *n.* An extinct mollusc, allied to the nautilus; its fossil shell. (F. *ammonite*.)

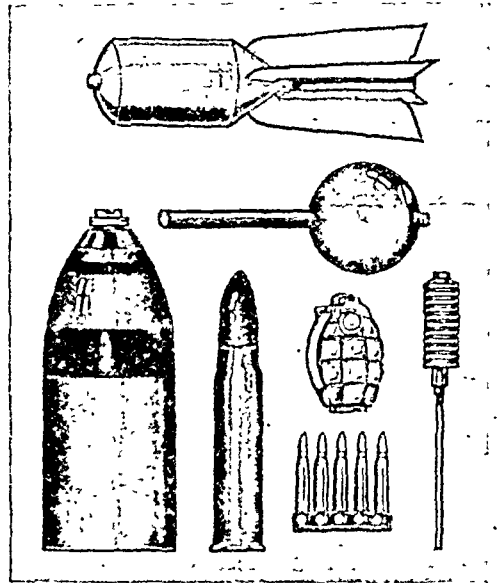


Ammonite.—An animal that died out long ago.

which is shaped very much like a ram's horn.

It is a strange fact that the name of this shell is connected with one of the old Egyptian gods. This god was Ammon or Amen and was often represented with curved ram's horns. And so the name came to be given to the ammonite shell,

**ammunition** (ām mū nish' ūn), *n.* Powder, shot, shell, cartridges, and other articles, substances and devices for charging guns and ordnance; warlike missiles. *adj.* Relating to military equipment. (F. *munitions de guerre*.)



Ammunition.—Trench mortars (1, 2), heavy shell (3), light shell (4), hand grenade (5), cartridges (6), rifle grenade (7).

Formerly this word was used to mean any and every detail of military supplies. When we use ammunition as an adjective, it keeps its old meaning and refers to any kind of military item. For example, we talk of an ammunition-wagon, by which we mean a wagon that is carrying any kind of military stores, not just shot and shell. When we talk of a body of soldiers having been ammunitioned (ām mū nish' ūnd, *adj.*), we mean that they have been supplied with the necessary shot, shells, bombs, etc.

O.F. *amuntion*, L. *ad munitionem* for defensive purposes, from *munire* to defend, fortify. The prefix *a* is probably due to a confusion of F. *la munition* and *l'ammunition*.

**amnesia** (ām nē' si ā), *n.* Loss of memory. (F. *amnésie*.)

This is a very distressing state of mind, and is generally the result of mental strain, overwork, or a shock of some kind. A person suffering from amnesia may wander away from his home and all his familiar haunts and his mental condition may cause him to meet with an accident. Nowadays, with the help of the daily papers and broadcasting, a person in this state is more likely to be found by his friends than formerly. A great deal of amnesia was caused by the World War of 1914-18 and by the strain due to the industrial troubles and general unrest that followed it.

Gr. *amnesia*, from *a-* not, *mnā:thai* to remember.

**amnesty** (ām' nēs ti), *n.* A general pardon; a deliberate overlooking of a fault or offence. *v.t.* To grant an amnesty. (F. *amnistie*.)

An amnesty differs from an ordinary act of pardoning in that no record is kept of the offender's crime and also that it includes a pledge of forgetfulness. An amnesty is sometimes granted after a very exciting political period. In that case all political offenders are pardoned and, if in prison, are released without any further inquiry into the details of individual cases.

Gr. *amnēstos* not remembered (from *mnāsthai* to remember).



Amoeba.—The simplest and lowest form of animal life (much magnified).

**amoeba** (ā mē' bā), *n.* An organism representing the very simplest and lowest form of animal life. The plural is *amoebae* (ā mē' bē). (F. *amibe*.)

A favourite home of the amoeba is among the mud and weeds at the bottom of ponds. If it can be seen at all it looks like a tiny speck of jelly, but usually it is so small that it can be seen only through a microscope. It consists of a single cell, and has no limbs and no mouth. It eats by wrapping itself round its food. It moves by pushing out parts of itself, and so is constantly changing its shape.

Anything like an amoeba is *amoeboid* (ā mē' boid, *adj.*) or *amoebiform* (ā mē' bī fōrm, *adj.*), and the latter word is also used for anything that takes various shapes. The word *amoebaeal* (ām mē bē' ān, *adj.*) is used to describe either poetry or singing in which the various verses or sections are said or sung alternately. This kind of poetry was first sung by shepherds at competitions for prizes. The competitors sang a song each in turn, and from these singing matches there grew up what we now call pastoral poems.

Gr. *amoibē* change, *amoiaios* alternating, from *amēbein* to change.

**amok** (ā mok'), This is another form of amuck. See amuck.

**among** (ā mūng'), *prep.* In the midst of. (F. *parmi*, *au milieu* *de*.)

When we say we go among the crowd we mean that we mingle with the crowd. A

bequest may be divided among the poor of a parish. Among the blind, according to the proverb, the one-eyed man is king.

**Amongst** (ā mūngst', *prep.*) means the same as among, but when it is used to denote position it usually conveys the idea of shifting. Amongst this strange assembly he walked about unconcernedly.

A.-S. *on in*, (ge)mang mixture, crowd. *SYN.*: Amid, between. *ANT.*: Beyond, outside.

**amontillado** (ā mōn til ya' dō), *n.* A Spanish wine. (F. *amontillado*.)

Most wines receive their general names from the places where they are produced. For instance, port comes from the Portuguese town of Oporto, champagne comes from the Champagne district of France, and sherry comes from Jerez or Xeres de La Frontera, in the Spanish province of Cadiz. In the same way *amontillado*, a particular kind of sherry, gets its name from the town of Montilla, near Cordova, which produces a pale light wine of a peculiar flavour.

**amorist** (ām' ōr ist), *n.* A lover; one devoted to love. (F. *amouriste*.)

This word is usually applied to a man who falls in love with every pretty woman he meets—to one who is in love with love.

L. *amor* love, from *ama-re* to love, and suffix *-ist* denoting the agent.

**amorous** (ām' ōr ūs), *adj.* Inclined to love; relating to love; in love. (F. *amoureux*.)

When we talk of anyone being of an *amorous* (ām' ōr ūs, *adj.*) disposition, we mean that he or she is by nature inclined to be loving to a greater degree than the average person. Lovers generally talk and look at each other *amorously* (ām' ōr ūs lī, *adv.*), which means with loving words and glances. The state of being ruled by love is called *amorousness* (ām' ōr ūs nes, *n.*).

L.L. *amorousus* full of love (*amor* love). *SYN.*: Ardent, fond, passionate, tender. *ANT.*: Cold, cool, forbidding, indifferent.

**amoroso** (ām ō rō' zō), *adv.* In a tender, feeling manner.

This term is especially employed in dreamy vocal or string music, the performer putting a great deal of pathetic feeling into the musical portions of compositions so marked.

Ital. *amoroso*, L.L. *amorousus* full of love (*amor* love).

**amorphous** (ā mōr' fūs), *adj.* Without definite shape. (F. *amorphe*.)

Those who study various branches of science use this word in different senses. A biologist, for instance, will describe a very low form of life as *amorphous*, by which he means that it does not conform in shape to any known standard. In chemistry a body which is not made up of crystals may be described by the same word. A body or mass of matter which has no regular form or crystallization is characterized by *amorphism* (ā mōr' fizm, *n.*) and has *amorphousness* (ā mōr' fūs nes, *n.*).

In everyday language amorphous can be used for things that are shapeless, or unstable, or put together haphazard, or badly organized. The principles of a man who is confused about what is right and what is wrong are amorphous.

Gr. *a* = not, without, *morphê* form.

**amortization** (â môr ti zâ' shûn), *n.* The gradual paying off of a debt; the transfer for all time of land to a corporation. (F. *amortissement*.)

This word is generally used in the financial sense. It is possible to **amortize** (â môr' tiz, *t.t.*) a debt in various ways, and particularly by forming what is called a sinking fund.



Amour.—The Roman god of love was called Amor or Cupid. This statue of him by Antoine Chaudet is in the Louvre, Paris.

from which payments may be made from time to time until the whole debt is paid off.

The literal meaning of amortization is "bringing to death," and it was applied to the transfer of lands to any public body, charity, or corporation, because the possession of real property by any such body or society was known as mortmain. In 1279 a law was passed, called the Statute of Mortmain, which forbade anyone to give grants of land to the Church because many people had been quick-witted enough to find out that by doing so and then receiving it back as tenants, they

were able to avoid their feudal obligations to the king.

The statute was so-called because the Church was a "dead hand" (F. *mainmorte*) in so far that its property could not be taken from it. In 1391 a further clause was added to the Statute of Mortmain forbidding the handing over of property to any corporation or public body, not only the Church.

L.L. **amortizare** to extinguish (a liability), from *a* = *ad*, *mors* (gen. *mortis*) death.

**amount** (â mount'), *v.i.* To add up; to be equal in value. *n.* A total; a quantity or number. (F. *se monter*; *montant*, *somme*.)

When we say that certain items or details amount to so much, we mean that by adding them together they make a certain total. We can use the word for other things besides figures. For instance, we can speak of a remark amounting almost to an insult, and, in ordinary conversation, of some affair not amounting to much.

O.F. **amonter**, from *a* to, *mont* mountain, heap, L. *ad montem* (*mons*, *montis*).

**amour** (â moor'), *n.* A love affair. (F. *amours*.)

The Roman god of love was called Amor or Cupid, and he is generally represented as a chubby little boy carrying a bow and arrows ready to discharge a dart into the hearts of mortals, and thus bring about an amour or an amourette (âm oor et', *n.*), a small love affair, between them.

L. *amor* love.

**ampère** (âm par'), *n.* The unit of electric current. (F. *ampère*.)

The ampère was named after the great French mathematician and physicist André Marie Ampère (1775-1830), who made many remarkable discoveries about electricity. An ampère-hour (*n.*) is a current of one ampère flowing for one hour, and the **ampérage** (âm per'âj, *n.*) of an electrical apparatus is the number of ampères which it will produce in a given time.

**ampersand** (âm per sând'), *n.* The sign & meaning "and." (F. *etc.*)

In old spelling-books the alphabet was followed by "& per se, and," that is "& by itself = and." *Per se* is Latin.

**amphi-** (âm' fi). A prefix meaning both, of both kinds, around. It occurs in such words as amphibian, amphiarpic, and amphitheatre. (F. *amphi*.)

Gr. *amphi-*, L. *ambi-* round, both.

# AMPHIBIA AND THEIR WAYS

*Land and Water Animals that form a connecting Link between Fish and Reptiles*

**amphibia** (ām fib' i ā), *n.pl.* A class of vertebrate or backboned animals that form a connecting link between fish and reptiles. (*F. amphibians.*)

Included in this class are frogs, newts, salamanders, and a group of tropical animals known as caecilians. The last are snake-like and often provided with scales, while all the others have naked skin well supplied with glands that keep it moist and clammy. The distinguishing character of an amphibian (ām fib' i ān, *adj.*) is that its eggs are laid in rivers, lakes, or ponds and there hatch into little creatures that look not unlike a fish and are generally known as tadpoles. They breathe by gills and swim by movements of their tails, which are fringed with fins. As growth takes place there is a gradual change both inwardly and outwardly. The gills give place to lungs, the tail often disappears—as in frogs—and limbs suited for progress on land replace it. When this change, or metamorphosis as it is called, is complete, the animals may take to a life on land, like the toads and salamanders. Even if they keep to the water, as in the case of newts, they no longer breathe the water but become air-breathing animals. They thus well deserve the name of amphibious (ām fib' i ūs, *adj.*) animals, for the term means life of both kinds, that is, both on land and in water. The study of these animals is known as **amphibiology** (ām fib i ol' ō jī, *n.*). Other creatures, such as the hippopotamus, which are at home on land or in water are often spoken of as amphibious, and amphibian is also applied to an aeroplane which can rise from or alight on either water or land.

Frogs and toads live in many parts of the world, and there are over a thousand kinds.

The edible frog, which is found in England, and is believed to have been brought from the continent by monks, is regarded as a valuable article of food in France. It is quite small compared with the Goliath frog of Cameroon, the body of which measures ten inches in length. The flying frogs of Malaya and Madagascar are so called because the webbing on their feet gives them the appearance of flying when they jump from

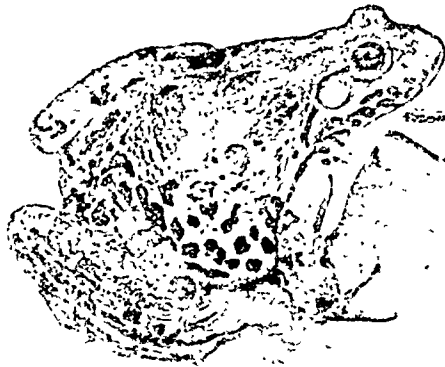
the trees on which they lay their eggs. The variable tree-frog of tropical America is treasured by the Indians because they obtain from its skin a powerful poison in which they dip their arrows.

The great salamanders, like other amphibians, go back to remote ages. When the first fossil skeleton of one was found by a German scientist early in the eighteenth century he supposed it to be that of a human being. Nearly 100 years later the first living specimens were found in Japan. Dr. Siebold, the discoverer, brought two of these animals to Europe, and one lived for over fifty years.

Caecilians burrow in mud and look like big worms. Some of them have scales and all are blind. Their chief interest for many scientists, however, is not in their membership of the animal kingdom, but in the light it is thought they shed on a difficult problem that has

puzzled those who study the formation of the earth. Many learned men hold that the vast distances between South America and Africa, as well as between Africa and India, were once bridged by land, and they base their belief on the idea that if it were otherwise members of the genus of caecilians known as *Herpele* would not have found their way to these places.

Gr. *amphibios*; *amphi* on both sides, *bios* life-



Amphibia.—At the top is the common toad, and beneath the great water newt and the edible frog.

swelling on the skull called the torcular of Herophilus, after a Greek physician who practised in Alexandria about 300 B.C.; and veins in the skull are known as the veins of Galen, after a Greek physician who practised in Rome in the latter part of the first century A.D.

Gr. *anatomē*, from *ana* up, *temnein* to cut, L. *anatomia*.

**anatta** (ā năt' tā), *n.* An orange dye obtained from a Central American plant. **Annatto** (ān năt' tō) and **arnotto** (ar not' tō) are other spellings. (F. *roucou*.)

The scientific name of this plant is *Bixa orellana*, and the dye from it is used for colouring butter and cheese. Certain brands of butter and cheese are brightly coloured, while others are practically colourless. As many people prefer the former the makers of the pale kinds find it necessary to colour their products, in order to obtain a sale for them, and they do this with anatta. The dye is quite harmless.

**anbury** (ān' bër i), *n.* A soft tumour on horses and cattle, formed on the neck. (F. *furoncle*.)

In turnips and allied plants the disease more usually called fingers and toes is also known as anbury. The word is also spelt ambury (ām' bër i).

A.-S. *ange*=*enge* tight, painful, and perhaps *berry* from the idea of the resemblance of the latter to a tumour.



Ancestor.—A pilgrim in the Far East worshipping the spirits of his ancestors.

**ancestor** (ān' ses tōr), *n.* A forefather. (F. *ancêtre*.)

A female ancestor is called an **ancestress** (ān' sēs trēs, *n.*). An **ancestral** (ān ses' trāl, *adj.*) hall or mansion is one in which one's forefathers lived or which they owned. **Ancestry** (ān' sēs tri, *n.*) is a line of ancestors or descent through such a line. A man is said to be of good ancestry if he can trace his descent back a long way or from people of high birth.

Ancestor worship is very widespread in China, and is one of the oldest forms of religion. Among the ancient Romans images were made of their ancestors and kept in their houses. The Romans used to offer gifts to these images and pray to them. In modern Chinese houses ancestral tablets are kept which are thought by the Chinese to contain the spirits of the family ancestors, and on solemn occasions incense and candles are burned in front of the tablets.

In the Solomon Islands the skulls of a man's ancestors are placed in specially built tiny huts and are considered holy.

O.F. *ancestre*, L. *antecessor*, from *ante* before, *cedere* (perfect tense *cessi*) to go.

**anchithere** (äng' ki thēr), *n.* An extinct horse-like animal. (F. *anchitherium*.)

Fossil remains of this creature have been found in what are called Miocene rocks in both Europe and North America. It was about the size of a donkey and had three toes. It is considered to be one of the very early ancestors of the horse. Its scientific name is *Anchitherium*.

Gr. *angki* resembling, near to, *thērion* wild animal.

**anchor** (äng' kōr), *n.* A heavy iron hook, attached to a cable or chain, and carried on board ship. *v.t.* To fix with or as with an anchor. *v.i.* To be so secured. (F. *ancrer*; *ancrer*, *s'ancrer*.)

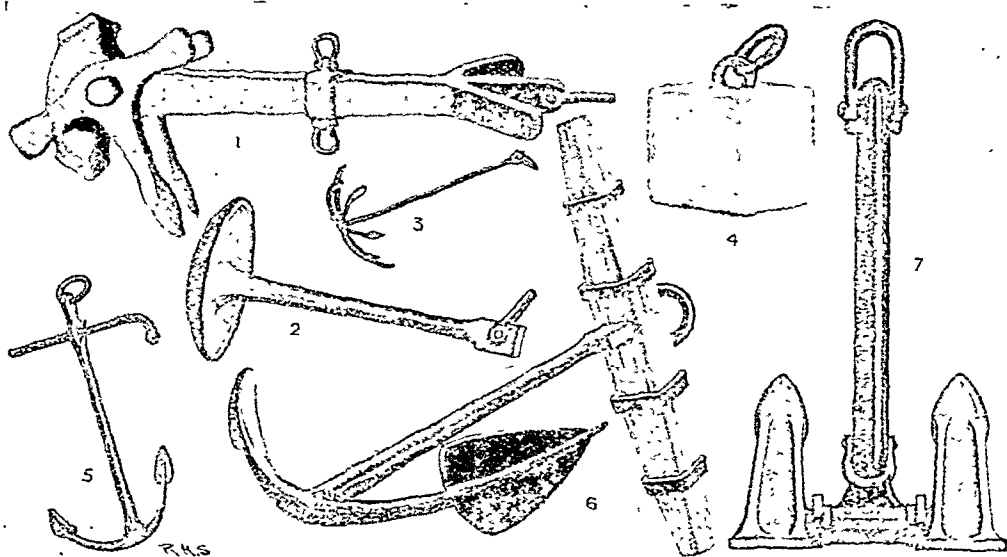
When a ship is to stop for a time in one place the anchor is thrown overboard. The ship is then said to cast anchor or simply to anchor, and she then lies or rides at anchor, or is anchored. When the voyage is to be resumed the anchor is weighed, or drawn in.

An anchor consists usually of a long shank with two curved arms at one end, furnished with flukes or flattened points. The stock is a heavy bar at the other end at right angles to the arms, which prevents the anchor from falling flat, and so helps to drive one of the flukes into the mud or sand at the bottom. Most anchors nowadays, however, have no stock. Large ships carry several anchors; the largest is the sheet anchor, smaller ones are called bowers and the smallest are kedges.

Care has to be exercised in choosing **anchorage** (äng' kōr āj, *n.*) or anchor-ground. The water must not be too deep for the length of cable, and the bottom must afford good anchor-hold. If too rocky it may foul or fix the anchor, so that it cannot be weighed. When a ship is being driven on to a dangerous coast the only hope of safety may lie in casting anchor, and so the anchor has become the symbol of hope, and the sheet anchor of one's chief hope. An **anchorless** (äng' kōr lēs, *adj.*) ship is in a hopeless condition, and an **anchor-watch** (*n.*) is always appointed while a ship lies at anchor.

What is known as **anchor-ice** (*n.*) is produced in fast-running streams. The upper waters run too fast to freeze, while the lower waters become frozen around rushes or weeds.

A.-S. *ancor*, L. *ancora*, Gr. *anghyra* bent hook.



Anchor.—1. Close stowing anchor, made so that it can lie flat on deck. 2. Mushroom anchor, used by lightships. 3. Grapnel, for use when the bottom of the sea is likely to be rocky. 4. Stone sinker used for buoys. 5. Old-fashioned "Admiralty" pattern anchor. 6. The anchor of Nelson's ship the "Victory." 7. Stockless anchor, used by battleships and liners.

**anchoret** (äng' kô ret), *n.* A hermit; one who abandons the world and retires to some secluded place to devote his life in solitude to God. Anchorite (äng' kô rit) is another spelling. (*F. anachorète.*)

The most famous of the anchorites was St. Anthony, who gave his large fortune to the poor, and for twenty years lived as a hermit in the wilderness of Egypt, where he founded a monastery and had a following of 15,000 disciples.

A woman who follows this manner of life is called an anchoress (äng' kô rès, *n.*) or ancess (äng' kres, *n.*). Whatever has the characteristics of this austere and solitary life, or resembles these severe habits of devotion, is said to be **anchoretic** (äng kô ret' ik, *adj.*) or **anchoretical** (äng kô ret' ik àl, *adj.*).

Gr. *anakhōrēlēs*, L.L. *anachorēta*, from *anakhōrein* to withdraw, from *ana* up, back, *khōrein* to go.

**anchovy** (än chō' vi), *n.* A small fish, related to the herring. (*F. anchois.*)

This fish is very abundant in the Mediterranean, where the anchovy fisheries form an important industry. Anchovies are chiefly pickled and are also used for sauces. They are about six inches long. At certain seasons they go about in great shoals, and then are often attracted near the fishermen's boats at night by lighted flares and are easily caught in nets. The scientific name is *Engraulis encrasicolus*.

Sp. *anchova*, perhaps derived from the Basque *anchuva*=*antzu* dry.

**anchovy pear** (än chō' vi pār), *n.* A West Indian fruit. (*F. poire d'anchois.*)

The tree which produces this fruit belongs

to the same order as the myrtle, and, with its tall stem and crown of leaves, looks something like an umbrella. The fruit is eaten when pickled. The scientific name is *Grias cauliflora*.

**ankylose** (äng' ki lōz). This is another spelling of ankylose. See ankylose.

**ancient** [1] (än' shént), *adj.* Very old. (*F. ancien, vieux.*)

The period before the so-called Middle Ages, which began about 476, is referred to as ancient times, and people who lived in those days are sometimes called the ancients (*n.pl.*). The ancientness (än' shént nés, *n.*) of a building means its old age, and its style of architecture would be one that was **anciently** (än' shént li, *adv.*) used.

We often see the notice "Ancient Lights" affixed to certain buildings. This means that the direct flow of daylight to a window or windows of that building may not be interrupted should another building be erected near it. A window or light may claim to be ancient after being free from interruption for twenty years.

L.L. *antianus*, from *ante* before, and *adj. suffix -anus* belonging to. SYN.: Antiquated, antique, old. ANT.: Modern, new, young.

**ancient** [2] (än' shént), *n.* An ensign or standard; a standard-bearer. (*F. enseigne: porte-drapeau.*)

In the sixteenth century it became the custom to call an ensign or standard, as well as the man who carried it, an ancient. So when Shakespeare speaks of Ancient Pistol he does not mean that Pistol was a very old man but that he was an ensign or standard-bearer.

The word is a corruption of *ensign*, due to the French.



**ancillary** (än sil' är i), *adj.* Helping, subordinate to; relating to female servants. (F. *ancillaire*.)

This word is chiefly used to describe something that helps another thing without being positively essential to it. Thus anatomy, botany, and the study of parasites and microbes are all ancillary to the study of medicine, for they assist the doctor in his war against disease.

L. *ancillaris*, from *ancilla* handmaid, and suffix *-aris* belonging to.

**ancipital** (än sip' it ä), *adj.* With two sharp edges. (F. *ancipité*.)

This term is used in Natural History to describe such forms as that of the iris stem with its flat shape and sharp edges.

L. *an-*=*ambi* on both sides, *caput* head.

**ancl** (äng' kl). This is another spelling of ankle. See ankle.

**ancon** (äng' kón), *n.* The elbow; the support of a cornice. *pl.* *ancones* (äng kō' nēz). (F. *anconé*.)

According to old legend the Titans, a race of mighty giants, led by Atlas, tried to storm the Heavens and drive out the gods. They failed, and as a punishment Zeus, the father of the gods, ordered that Atlas should bear the vault of Heaven on his shoulders.

It was probably his bent elbows that gave the builders of Greece an idea. When they wanted to support a cornice, such as is often seen over doors, they used a piece of stone shaped like a bent elbow, to which they gave the name ancon.

Gr. *angkon* bend of the arm, elbow.

**Ancona fowl** (än kō' nâ foul), *n.* A variety of poultry.

The Ancona fowl was introduced into England from Ancona, Italy, about 1885. It is a small, active bird, producing large white eggs, but is not in much demand for food.

**ancess** (äng' kres). This is another form of anchoress. See anchoress.

**and** (änd), *conj.* A word chiefly used to join words, clauses, and sentences. (F. *et*.)

The words that *and* joins together are usually of the same part of speech. It joins a noun to a noun, a verb to a verb, an adjective to an adjective, a pronoun to a noun or a pronoun, an adverb to an adverb, and a preposition to a preposition.

There are other uses of *and*. In the sentence, "there are men *and* men," it illustrates a difference, for the meaning is "there are men of different types." In the following sentence it expresses surprise: "And you really mean that?" Familiarly we often say "try *and* see him," when we should say "try to see him." See page li.

A.-S. *and*, *and*; perhaps connected with Gr. *anti*, L. *ante* in front, over against.

**Andalusian fowl** (än dâ lû' si än foul), *n.* A variety of poultry.

This bird was brought from Spain about 1851. A good laying bird, its eggs being

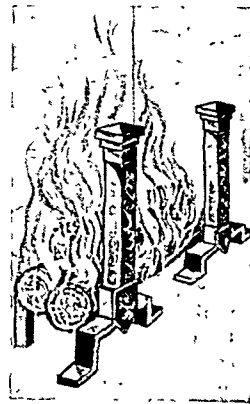
large and white, it resembles the Minorca in appearance.

**andante** (an dan' tē), *adv.* Rather slowly and gracefully. (F. *andante*.)

This term indicates a somewhat slow movement in a musical work or composition. It is sometimes used with some other word, an expression such as "andante religioso" meaning in slow, religious style. **Andantino** (an dan tē' nō) means that the music is taker, a little faster than *andante*.

Ital. *andante* moving slowly, pres. p. of *andare* to go, move.

**andiron** (änd' i ern), *n.* A bar usually of iron, supported on short legs for raising the ends of logs burning on the hearth; a fire dog. (F. *andier*, *chenet*.)



Andiron. — For raising burning logs.

Before coal came into general use as fuel, our ancestors burned wood on open hearths. The logs burned better if lifted above the hearth, and this was done by a pair of andirons. Sometimes these were very ornamental, and it was usual to extend one leg of each to a height of two or three feet and to provide the lengthened parts with brackets on

which to rest the spit for roasting joints of meat.

M.E. *andiren*, O.F. *andier*, F. *landier* (= *andier*), L.L. *anderius*, *andedus*. Etymology unknown, but the word has nothing to do with *hand* or *iron*.

**Andromed** (än' drō mēd), *n.* One of the swarm of meteors called Andromedids (än drom' ē didz, *n. pl.*) because they appear to be moving in radiating lines from a point in the group of stars called the constellation Andromeda. (F. *andromède*.)

These meteors appear from the 23rd to the 27th of November. They have also been called Bielids because their orbit is closely related to that of Biela's comet, which has disappeared.

**Andromeda** (än drom' ē dâ), *n.* A constellation in the northern sky; a genus of heath-like plants. (F. *Andromède*.)

According to Greek legend, Andromeda was the daughter of Cepheus, King of Ethiopia, who exposed her chained on the rocky shore as a sacrifice to be devoured by a sea-monster. She was rescued by Perseus, who married her. At their deaths they were translated to the heavens, where two groups of stars are named after them.

The name was also given to a genus of the heath order by Linnaeus, who compared the plant "fixed on some turf hillock in the

midst of the swamp" to Andromeda "chained to a rock in the sea, which bathed her feet, as the fresh water bathes the root of the plant." According to Sir W. J. Hooker the marsh andromeda was so named because "this beautiful tribe of plants grow in dreary . . . wastes feigned to be the abode of . . . monsters."



Andromeda.—The brilliant spiral nebula in the group of stars named after the heroine of Greek legend whom Perseus rescued.

**andropetalous** (än drō pet' à lūs), *adj.* Having petals in place of stamens, as in some double flowers. (F. *andropétale*.)

Such doubling readily takes place in cultivated anemones, in roses, pinks, stocks, daffodils, and many other flowers. The white water lily has flower-parts in all stages from pure stamens to pure petals.

Gr. *anēr* (gen. *andros*), male, *petalon*, leaf.

**anecdote** (än' èk dōt), *n.* A story of some interesting incident in a person's life. (F. *anecdote*.)

This word was at first applied either to history which for state reasons it was wiser not to publish, or to the works of old writers which had long remained unpublished.

An **anecdotalist** (än' èk dō tist, *n.*) is one who is fond of telling anecdotes, whose talk is **anecdotal** (än' èk dō täl, *adj.*). He could be described as **anecdotic** (än' èk dōt' ik, *adj.*) or **anecdotal** (än' èk dōt' ik àl, *adj.*) and so could his conversation. Old folk often like to tell stories about people they knew when they were young, and when they do this a great deal we say that they are in their **anecdotalage** (än' èk dō tāj, *n.*), a phrase containing a humorous reference to **dotage**.

Gr. *anekdota*, L.L. *anecdota* (both neuter pl.), from *an-* = *a-* not, *ek* out, *dotos* given (*didonai* to give). The collective suffix *-age* in **anecdotalage** is derived from L.L. *-aticum*, M.L. *-agium*, F. *-age*.

**anele** (à nēl'), *v.t.* To anoint with oil. (F. *enhuiler*.)

This word is used chiefly for anointing considered as a religious rite. For instance, the sacrament of the dying in the Roman Catholic Church, extreme unction, is **aneling** (à nēl' ing, *n.*). See **extreme unction**.

A.-S. *an=on* on, *ele* oil, L. *oleum*.

**anelectric** (än' è lek' trik), *adj.* Parting easily with electricity. *n.* A good conductor of electricity. All metals are **anelectric**. (F. *anélectrique*.)

Gr. *an-* = *a-* not, and *electric*.

**anemochord** (à nem' ó kōrd), *n.* A musical instrument. (F. *anémocorde*.)

The **anemochord**, invented in 1784 by Johann Schnell, a German, was a stringed instrument, the strings being vibrated, or played, by jets of air forced upon them.

Gr. *anemos* wind, *chordē* chord, string.

**anemograph** (à nem' ó gräf), *n.* An instrument which records automatically on paper the direction and force of the wind. (F. *anémographe*.)

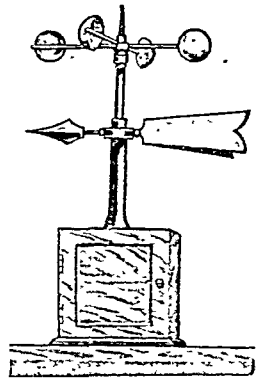
Anything connected with an **anemograph** is said to be **anemographic** (än' è mō gräf' ik, *adj.*).

Gr. *anemos* wind, *graphein* to write.

**anemometer** (än' è mom' è tēr), *n.* An instrument for measuring the force or the speed of the wind. (F. *anémomètre*.)

The most common

form has four metal cups fixed on cross arms like a weathercock. These cups are driven round by the wind. A similar instrument is used by organ builders and the word is also used by airmen for an instrument also called an **air speed indicator**. **Anemometry** (än' emom' è tri, *n.*) is the study of the force of the wind. An **anemometric** (än' è mō met' rik, *adj.*) instrument is one that measures wind forces.



Anemometer.—An instrument that measures the speed of the wind.

Gr. *anemos* wind, *metron* measure.

**anemone** (à nem' ó nī), *n.* A genus of plants belonging to the buttercup family. (F. *anémone*.)

Of the three British species the windflower or wood anemone (*Anemone nemorosa*) is the most familiar. The others are the purple pasque flower and the blue Apennine anemone.

According to the classic myth Anemone was a beautiful nymph beloved of Zephyrus, the god of the soft west wind, whose attention so aroused the jealousy of the goddess Flora that she changed Anemone into the flower that bears her name.

Gr. *anemōnē* flower or daughter of the wind.

**anemophilous** (än é mof' i lús), *adj.* Fertilized by the wind.

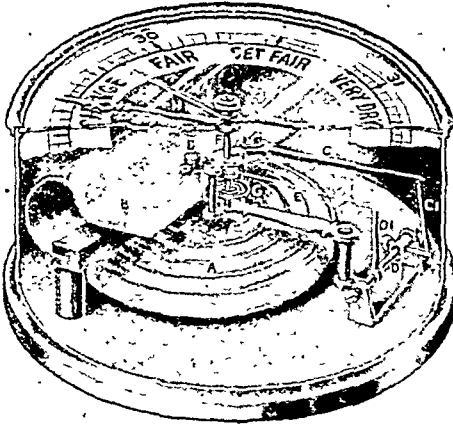
This term is applied to flowers the pollen of which is carried from one to another by the wind. Usually such flowers are small and unattractive; they include such perfect flowers as grasses, and such imperfect flowers as those of the hazel and other catkins, sedges, nettles, and cone-bearers. A number of flowers, including those of the heather, employ both insects and the wind in the transport of pollen.

Gr. *anemos* wind, *philos* loving, friend of.

**anent** (ä nent'), *prep.* Concerning; with regard to. (F. *touchant*.)

Anent was formerly in common use, but is now chiefly Scottish. There are signs of its coming into favour again among good writers, and it might well take the place of the lawyers' favourite Latin word *re*, as in "I should like to see you anent your proposal."

A.-S. *anefn*, *onefn*, abreast, on an equality with, from *an*=on on, *efen* even. The *t* is merely euphonic and without etymological value.



**Aneroid.**—The metal box (A), partially exhausted of air, responds readily to the pressure of the atmosphere. High pressure forces the sides of the box together, drawing down the spring (B), to which is attached a lever (C), which through (C 1) rotates the rocking bar (D), causing lever (D 1) to pull on the chain (E), one end of which is wound round a drum on the spindle (F), causing the pointer (H) to move towards the right—towards fair weather. When the pressure of the atmosphere drops, the reverse actions take place and the chain is slackened, the slack being taken up by the hair spring (G), which moves the pointer towards the left or bad weather direction.

**aneroid** (än' ér oid), *adj.* Of a barometer which measures the pressure of the air by its action on the lid of a metal box from which most of the air has been withdrawn; *n.* An aneroid barometer. (F. *anéroïde*.)

The aneroid barometer is the one which is most commonly found in houses, the one we tap to see whether the pointer, which is attached to the lid of the metal box, is moving

on to fair or back to stormy. It is not so reliable as an ordinary barometer.

Gr. *a-* not, *nēros* wet, *eidos* form, shape.

**aneurism** (än' ūr izm), *n.* A swelling or bulging of the walls of an artery. Another spelling is *aneurysm*. (F. *anévrisme*.)

Most people who ride bicycles have seen the inner tube suddenly bulging out from a cut in the tire. This is almost exactly what happens to an artery when it has an aneurism. The walls of the artery have become too weak to withstand the blood pressure, just as the inner tube of the tire cannot by itself withstand the air pressure. A weak artery is said to be *anéurismal* (än ū riz' mäl, *adj.*).

Gr. *aneurysma*, from *an-*=ana up, *eurys* wide to widen (*eurys* wide).

**anew** (ä nū'), *adv.* Again; afresh; once more. (F. *de nouveau*.) In spring the trees all bud *anew*.

E. *a-*=of, and *new*.

**angary** (äng' gä ri), *n.* The destruction or seizing of neutral property by a country at war. Another spelling is *angaria* (äng gä r' i ä). (F. *angarie*.)

According to international law property seized under angary must be paid for. In 1918, during the World War, the Allies, by right of angary, seized and made use of Dutch and other neutral vessels lying in British and American harbours.

The word angary comes from an old Persian word meaning a mounted courier. These couriers were kept ready at regular points throughout Persia for carrying the royal dispatches. The furnishing of horses and messengers at these stages was compulsory on the local population, and so gradually the compulsory provision of goods, vessels, and so on for warlike purposes came to be the accepted modern meaning of the word.

Gr. *angareia*, from *anggaros* a Persian mounted courier, L.L. *angaria* postal service, then any forced labour.

**angel** [I] (än' jél), *n.* A messenger of God. (F. *ange*.)

This is the plain meaning of the word, but it is generally applied to those heavenly beings around the throne of God who speed to do His Will, particularly as the bearers of His message to men.

They are described in the Bible as "ministering spirits" (Heb. i, 14), and are regarded as of human appearance, though belonging to a higher order than man. In the book of Daniel (viii, 16, xii, 1), two angels are mentioned by name—Gabriel and Michael—but usually the Divine Messenger is unnamed and simply described as "the Angel of God."

To be like an angel, innocent, lovely, ministering, is to be *angelic* (än jel' ik, *adj.*) or *angelical* (än jel' ik ä l, *adj.*), or to act *angelically* (än jel' ik ä l i, *adv.*). *Angelolatry* (än jel ol' ä tri, *n.*) is the worship of angels, and *Angelology* (än jel ol' ö ji, *n.*) the study of angels. Death is sometimes called "The Destroying Angel." Satan is known as the chief of the fallen angels. Angel-visits is

an expression for surprise visits and unexpected joys. The poet Campbell uses the phrase, "Like angel visits, few and far between."

*L. angelus*, Gr. *angelos*, messenger.

**angel-fish** (än' jèl fish), *n.* A salt-water fish allied to the sharks and rays. (*F. ange de mer.*)

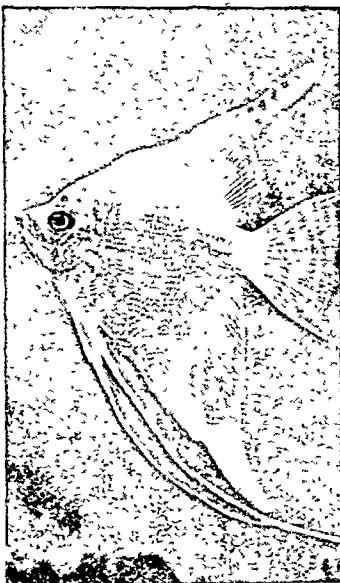
This fish owes its name not to its beauty but to the fact that its front or pectoral fins have somewhat the look of growing wings. Other names for it are monk-fish, fiddle-fish, and shark-ray. It occurs in British waters, lying close to the bottom, where it devours quantities of flat fish. Fortunately it is not very common. In length it sometimes reaches seven to eight feet, but is usually about five feet. Its scientific name is *Rhina squatina*.

**angelica** (än jèl' ik á), *n.* A genus of plants, the rays of which spread like the stays of an umbrella; a sweet-meat. (*F. angélique.*)

The wild angelica (*Angehca sylvestris*) and the cultivated angelica (*A. archangelica*) are familiar types. The name, meaning angel-like or angelic, was given partly because of the sweet scent of the root, but chiefly because of the medical and even magical virtues the plant was believed to possess, especially against poison, pestilence, and witchcraft.

The name is also given to a candied sweet-meat made from the tender stems of the cultivated plant, probably, in the first place, because of its supposed magic properties.

*L.L. angelica* with *herba* understood, angel-like herb.



Angel-fish.—So-called because its front fins look like growing wings.

image of the archangel Michael fighting the dragon. The angel, or angelot (än' jè lot, *n.*), as it was called in France, weighed between 87 and 97 grains, and was originally called **angel-noble** (*n.*), as it was really a new issue of the noble. A smaller coin of this name, weighing about 35 grains, was issued by Henry VI of England for use in his French possessions.

A figure of the archangel Michael was also stamped on one side of this coin. In cases of king's evil, or scrofula, sufferers were at one time given a noble to touch as a kind of talisman.

*O.F. angele*, cp. *L. angelus*.

**angel-shot** (än' jèl shot), *n.* A form of shot consisting of two cannon balls joined by a chain. (*F. anges, boulet ramé.*)

It was invented by the Dutch Admiral De Witt in 1666 and was employed in naval battles for bringing down the spars or rigging of enemy ships. It is said to get its name from the appearance of the "wings" or segments as it was hurled through the air.

**angelus** (än' jè lùs), *n.* A Roman Catholic prayer which begins with this word, and is in honour of the birth of Christ. (*F. angélus.*)

The angelus is repeated three times a day, at 6 a.m., noon, and 6 p.m., and the bell which calls the devout to these hours of prayer is called the angelus-bell, or more frequently, the angelus.

J. F. Millet (1814-75) made this devotion the subject of a painting, which is now universally known as "The Angelus." It shows two French peasants observing in the fields at sundown the angelus call to prayer.

**angel-water** (än' jèl waw' tēr), *n.* A Portuguese scent composed of a mixture of rose, orange blossom and myrtle water, with musk and ambergris. (*F. eau de Portugal.*)

Angel is an abbreviation of *angelica* (the plant).

**anger** (äng' gèr), *n.* A feeling aroused by wrongdoing, especially against oneself. *v.i.* To enrage. (*F. colère.*)

To feel anger is not always wrong; it is well that we should be angry (äng' gri, *adj.*) when, for example, we see harmless animals ill-treated; but righteous anger must not be allowed to become hasty revenge. To act angrily (äng' gri li, *adv.*) is always a mistake. Anger is applied by analogy to inflamed wounds.

*O. Norse angr* trouble; cp. *A.-S. ange, enge, G. eng* straitened, *Dan. anger, regret, L. angor, from angere* to press tight. *SYN.*: Choler, fury, ire. *ANT.*: Love, mildness, patience.



Angel.—Back (reverse) and front (obverse) of one of these coins struck for Henry VI.

**angel** [2] (än' jèl), *n.* A gold coin worth from 6s. 8d. to 10s. (*F. ange.*)

Angels were first struck in France in 1340, in England in 1465. Their last coinage was in the reign of Charles I. One side bore an

**Angevins** (än' jè vinz), *n. pl.* A line of English kings, sometimes called Plantagenets. (F. *Angevins*.)

There were eight kings of this line, namely Henry II (1154-89), Richard I (1189-99), John (1199-1216), Henry III (1216-72), Edward I (1272-1307), Edward II (1307-27), Edward III (1327-77), and Richard II (1377-99). The name comes from Anjou, in France, Henry II's father having been Geoffrey V, Count of Anjou.

L.L. *Andecavensis*, *Andegavensis*, belonging to *Andecavensis ager* (the modern Anjou).

**angina** (än' jì nà; än jì' nà), *n.* Any disease which has choking or suffocating symptoms. (F. *angine*.)

Angina is now nearly always used as a short way of saying *angina pectoris* (än' jì nà pèk' tò ris), which is a disease due to over-exertion when the heart is weak.

Gr. *angkhonè* strangling, from *angkein* to press tight, L. *angina*, from *angere* to throttle.

**angiocarpous** (än jì ò kar' pùs), *adj.* Possessing an enclosing envelope not derived from a flower. (F. *angiocarpe*.)

The fruits of the beech, chestnut, and hazel are said to be angiocarpous because they are enclosed in a sheath

or cupule developed from scales which formed no part of the flower. In some grasses such as barley and oats, one of the scaly glumes is so closely and lightly wrapped round the true fruit or grain as to be overlooked.

**Angiocarpous fungi** are those which, like the puffball and ergot, produce their spores in some kind of receptacle.

Some minute species of such fungi are found associated with green algae to form lichens, which are therefore said to be angiocarpous.

Gr. *anggeion* vessel, *karpos* fruit.

**angiosperm** (än' jì ò spèrm), *n.* A plant which encloses its ovules in an ovary or vessel. (F. *angiosperme*.)

Such plants are popularly called flowering plants, in which the pollen has to be deposited on the special portion of the pistil called the stigma, before it can reach the ovules or young seeds by sending out to them a fine tube. This is the angiospermal (än jì ò spèrm' àl, *adj.*) or angiospermous (än jì ò spèrm' ùs, *adj.*) method of fertilizing the ovules. The apple, rose, and horse-chestnut are angiospermous.

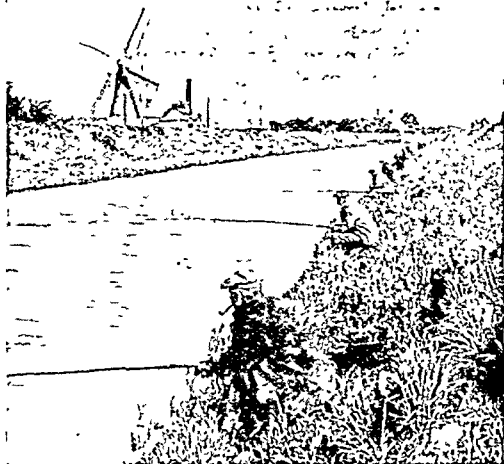
Gr. *anggeion* vessel, receptacle, *sperma* seed.

**angle** [1] (äng' gl), *v. i.* To fish with rod and line. (F. *pêcher à la ligne*.)

When we go fishing with a rod and line, we do not expect the fish to be caught unless

we tempt or entice them with bait. We call this angling (äng' gling, *n.*) for them.

There is a more or less jocular use of this verb to angle in the sense of to fish for; or to try to get by some artful means; when we



Angling.—A party of anglers in friendly rivalry on the banks of the River Glen, in Lincolnshire.

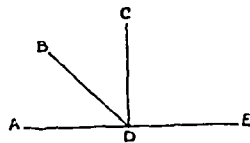
say; "He angled for an invitation." We mean that, feeling almost certain that he would not get an invitation in the ordinary way, he tried by some form of flattery or coaxing or artifice to obtain one. An angler (äng' glër, *n.*) is a fisherman, one who fishes with a rod, line, and hook. All fishermen are not anglers. An angler is the most skillful fisherman of any, the gentle art being a different matter from catching fish with nets, trawls, or fishing lines. The angler uses many lures or baits, according to the kind of fish he desires to capture, the highest skill being required in angling with an artificial fly. The finest fish caught by anglers in Britain is the salmon. Of recent years, angling with rod and line in salt water has greatly increased in popularity.

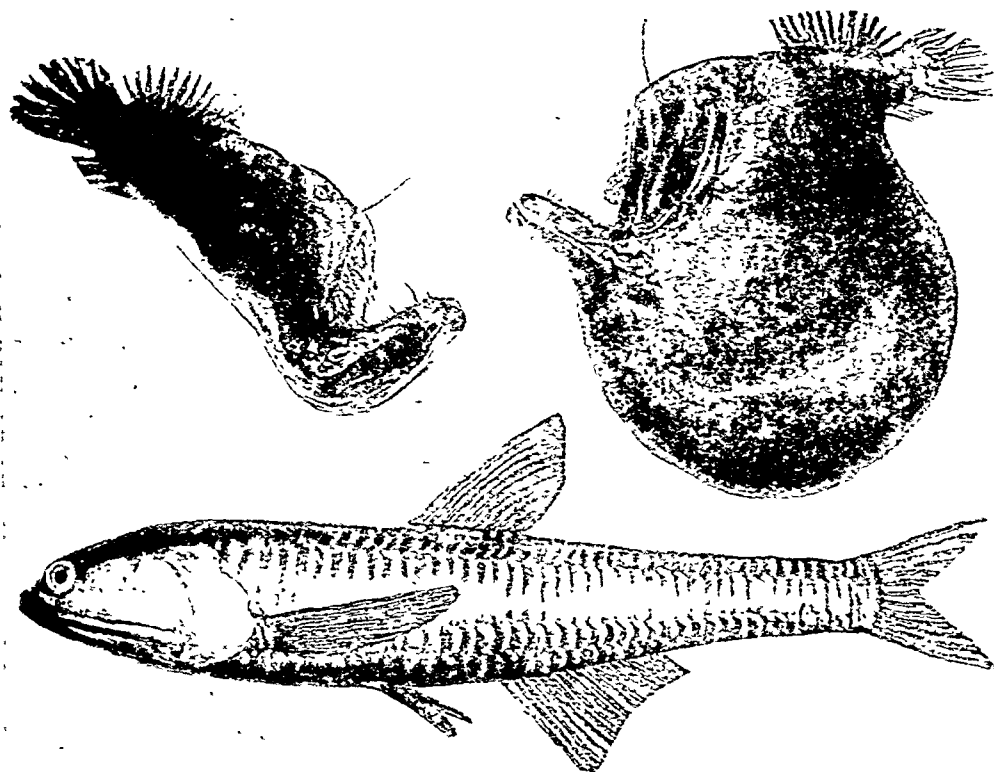
The biggest fish caught by anglers are probably the sharks and sword fish off the coast of New Zealand, the following being the weights of fish actually caught there on rod and line: Mako shark, 558 lbs.; sword fish, 528 lbs.; thresher shark, 520 lbs.

A.-S. *angel*, hook (cp. Gr. *angkylos* bent, hooked, L. *uncus*).

**angle** [2] (äng' gl), *n.* A corner; a space between two lines or planes that meet each other; a sharp projection. (F. *angle*, *coin*.)

An angle is said to be acute or obtuse according to whether it is smaller or greater than a right angle (90°). In the accompanying illustration ADC is a right angle; ADB is an acute angle; BDE an obtuse angle; ADE a straight





Angler-fish.—From three to six feet long, it angles with the tendrils on its first head-tentacle. The photographs show the angler-fish before and after a meal, and a fish three times the length of the diner, which can be swallowed by one of these strange creatures.

angle. Builders use the word *angle-bead* (*n.*) to describe a wooden strip or beading which is fixed on a sharp corner as an ornament or to prevent a corner from hurting anyone.

Anything which has one or more angles is sometimes said to be *angled* (*äng' gld, adj.*). An *angle-iron* (*n.*) is an L-shaped iron bar used for strengthening frameworks. An instrument used for measuring angles is called an *anglemeter* (*n.*) or *clinometer*.

When you put a stick into water it appears to be bent, and the apparent angle is called the angle of refraction. Rays of light are always bent in this way when passing through one substance to another, such as from air through water or glass. If you pile up sand or sugar or earth in a heap, the slope at which the heap comes to rest is called the angle of repose.

Artists and architects talk about the angle of vision, the angle at which objects are seen and which gives them their apparent size. Builders use the word *angle-tie* (*n.*) for a piece of timber placed across an angle in the roofs of houses. Anything placed at an angle is said to be placed *angle-wise* (*adv.*).

Angle is a term in lawn tennis, and means to drive the ball across the net at an angle,

as from the server's right-hand court to the opponent's right-hand court. The term is also applied to the angle given to such a stroke.

F. from L. *angulus* (cp. Gr. *angkylos* bent).

**Angle** [3] (*äng' gl, n.*) One of the tribe of settlers who came from North Germany to Britain in the fifth and sixth centuries A.D. (F. *Angle*.)

To the Angles we owe the name England (Angleland). They settled chiefly in the northern, central, and eastern counties of England, and in southern Scotland. A native of Norfolk or Suffolk is still called an East Anglian (*äng' gh än, n.*).

A.-S. *Engel, Angel, L. Angli*, from *Angeln*, a district in Schleswig.

**angler-fish** (*äng' glér fish, n.*) A fish which angles for its food. (F. *baudrois, diable de mer*.)

Itself a fisher, the angler-fish—sometimes called frog-fish, fishing-frog. A c. devil- or wide gab—is an enemy of *sn* as *animadver-* for food itself, it destroys *n.* food fishes. *animus* mind, *ad to*.

It angles only in *Blame*, censure, criticize lying among seaw<sup>r</sup>.: Approve, encourage tendrils, which flo<sup>e</sup>.

like a bait. It is found in the North Sea. Its scientific name is *Lophius piscatorius*.

A.-S. *angel* hook (cp. Gr. *anghylos* bent, crooked, L. *uncus*).

**Anglican** (äng' gli kán), *adj.* Belonging to the English, or possessing English characteristics. *n.* A member of the Church of England. (F. *Anglican*.)

The word is applied particularly to the Church of England. Anglicanism (äng' gli kán izm, *n.*) is the doctrines, principles, and practices of the Church of England.

L.L. *Anglicanus* belonging to the Angli or English.

**Anglice** (äng' gli sē), *adv.* In English. (F. *en anglais*.)

The Germans call their cathedral town on the Rhine, Cöln. We know it as Cologne. This may be expressed "Cöln, Anglice Cologne." The word may also mean in the English manner or form.

Adverb from L.L. *Anglicus* English.

**Anglicism** (äng' gli sizm), *n.* An English idiom or mode of expression; an English characteristic or peculiarity; English political principles. (F. *anglicisme*.)

We may speak of the practice of ending a sentence with a preposition, or of a particular English fashion as an Anglicism, and a politician may refer to a certain method of managing public affairs as a typical anglicism. To Anglicize (äng' gli siz, *v.t.*), say, a Latin word is to give it an English form.

L.L. *Anglicus* English, and suffix *-ism* (L. *-ismus*) forming abstract nouns.

**Anglo-American** (äng glō á mer' i kán), *n.* A person born in England who has settled in America; a descendant of such a person. *adj.* Relating to England and America or to the relations between their peoples; relating to Anglo-Americans. (F. *anglo-américain*.)

An Anglo-American treaty is one made between the Governments of England and the United States.

**Anglo-Catholic** (äng glō káth' ó lik), *n.* A member of the High Church party of the Church of England, which claims that the Anglican Church is part of the Catholic Church. (F. *anglo-catholique*.)

The Anglo-Catholic party claims that its orders can be traced in direct succession from the apostles; that its doctrines are those of the apostles and of the Catholic Church. Anglo-Catholicism (äng glō ká thol' i sizm, *n.*) is the teaching of the Anglo-Catholics.

**Anglo-French** (äng glō frensh'), *n.* The dialect of the French language used in England after the Norman Conquest. *adj.* Relating to this dialect; relating to the English and French peoples. (F. *anglo-anglais*.)

Gr. *angeion* vessel, reports were written in **angle** [1] (äng' gl), about the year 1600. The line. (F. *pêche à la h.* *alliance* of England When we go fishing *W* War (1914-18). we do not expect the fish

**Anglo-Indian** (äng glō in' di án), *n.* An English person born in India or who has spent much of his life there; the offspring and any descendant of English and Indian parents. *adj.* Relating to such persons. (F. *anglo-indien*.)

**Anglomaniac** (äng glō mā' ni á), *n.* Excessive admiration and imitation of English customs by foreigners. (F. *anglomanie*.)

An **Anglomaniac** (äng glō mā' ni äk, *n.*) is a person belonging to another country who is over fond of everything English.

E. *Anglo-*, and suffix *mania*, implying madness.

**Anglophobe** (äng' glō fōb), *n.* A person who hates England and English affairs. (F. *anglophobe*.)

People who do this are said to suffer from **Anglophobia** (äng glō fō' bi á, *n.*). There was an outburst of anglophobia in France after the Fashoda incident in 1898, for example, and during the World War (1914-18) Anglophobia in Germany was expressed in the phrase "Gott strafe England" (God punish England).

E. *Anglo-* and Gr. *phobos* fear, here used in an adjectival sense, fearing.

**Anglo-Saxon** (äng glō sāk' sōn), *n.* and *adj.* An English Saxon as distinct from the Old Saxons of Europe; relating to such people; an Englishman or his language before the Norman Conquest; relating to these Old English people, their customs, possessions, language, and literature; people to-day of English race. (F. *Anglo-saxon*.)

L.L. *Anglo-Saxones*.

**angora** (äng gōr' á), *n.* A material made of goat wool. Also *angola*. (F. *angora*.)

Angora is the wool of the Angora goat, which is bred in the Angora region of Asia Minor. It is of a silky texture, and is known as mohair. Shawls and cloth are made of it. The Angora goat is probably the goat of the Old Testament, and its hair the goat's hair often mentioned in the Book of Exodus.

The Angora cat has long silky hair like the Persian cat, which has replaced it as a pet.

Gr. *Angkyra*, L. *Ancyra*.

**angostura** (äng gōs tū' rá), *n.* A liquid prepared from the bark of a tree first found round the city once known as Angostura, now Ciudad Bolivar, in Venezuela. Another spelling is **angustura** (äng gūs tū' rá). (F. *angusture*.)

Angostura is used in preparing bitters for helping the appetite, and also as a medicine.

**angry** (äng' gri), *adj.* Wrathful, enraged. See *anger*.



Angora-goat.—Its silky wool provides mohair.

**anguish** (äng' gwish), *n.* Extreme pain or distress of body or mind. *v.t.* To afflict with great pain or grief. (F. *douleur, angoisse; affliger.*)

Matthew Arnold, in his well-known poem, "Sohrab and Rustum," tells the story of a combat between two champions, Rustum, a Persian hero and the foremost warrior of his age, and Sohrab, young, beautiful, and courageous, who belongs to the Tatar camp. The two champions are also father and son, but this they do not know till Rustum in the final onslaught has dealt his son a fatal blow.

Though "the anguish of the deep-fixed spear grew fierce," Sohrab succeeds in convincing his father that he is Rustum's son. Imagine the father's anguish then!

O.F. *anguisse*, L. *angustia* narrowness, tightness, from *angere* to squeeze, torment. **SYN.**: Agony, excruciation, grief, torment, torture. **ANT.**: Ease, ecstasy, pleasure, rapture, relief.

**angular** (äng' gū lār), *adj.* Having angles; bony; stiff. (F. *angulaire.*)

A figure may be angular, some people's writing is angular, while a projecting part of a building may be angular. We speak of angular co-efficient, of angular profile, and of a person being angular or stiff in manner or crotchety. In physics, angular velocity means the rate of motion of a body or a point moving circularly and measured by an angle, such as that of a pendulum. To be angular in any sense is to possess angularity (äng gū lār' i ti *n.*). To do a thing in an angular manner is to do it angularly (äng' gū lār li, *adv.*). Leaves may be *angulate* (äng' gū lāt, *adj.*) or angular, while to make anything angular is to *angulate* (äng' gū lāt, *v.t.*) it.

The process of making angles is known as *angulation* (äng gū lā' shùn, *n.*), so also is an angular shape or structure. *Angulose* (äng' gū lōs, *adj.*) and *angulous* (äng' gū lūs, *adj.*) mean full of angles or corners.

L. *angularis*, from *angulus* angle, and suffix *-aris* belonging to. **SYN.**: Formal, pointed, unbending. **ANT.**: Curved, easy, rounded.

**angustifoliate** (äng gūs ti fō' li āt), *adj.* Having narrow leaves. (F. *angustifolié.*)

There are many such plants, and sometimes their botanical name refers to this fact and helps to distinguish it from its near relatives. The rose-bay willow-herb, for example, is also called the narrow-leaved epilobium (*Epilobium angustifolium*) and the flax with pale blue flowers is *Linum angustifolium*.

L. *angustus* narrow, *folium* leaf.

**anharmonic** (än har mon' ik), *adj.* Not following an harmonic rule. (F. *anharmonique.*)

In mathematics terms like 2, 3, 4 . . . are said to be in arithmetical progression, and  $\frac{1}{2}, \frac{1}{3}, \frac{1}{4}$  . . . in harmonical progression. If terms do not follow the latter law, or the same kind of rule, they are anharmonic.

Gr. *an-* = a- not, *harmonikos*, from *harmonia* harmony.

**anhydrous** (än hī' drūs), *adj.* Free from water. (F. *anhydre.*)

If some washing soda is put into an old saucepan lid and heated over a flame, it melts, then bubbles and steams, and finally leaves a white crusty residue. It has lost the water that helped to make the crystals, and it is now said to be anhydrous. Many other anhydrous substances can be got in that way. An anhydride (än hī' drīd, *n.*) is a substance that combines with water to make an acid. Anhydrite (än hī' drīt, *n.*) is anhydrous gypsum.

Gr. *an-* = a- not, without, *hydor* water, suffix *ous* (L. *ösus*).

**anil** (än' il), *n.* A name of the indigo plant and dye. (F. *anil.*)

Arab *an* (= *al*) the, *nil*, Persian name for the plant.

**aniline** (än i līn), *n.* A colourless oily liquid first obtained from indigo. *adj.* Made from or relating to this. (F. *aniline.*)

It occurs in the heavy oils obtained from coal tar, from which it is now mainly prepared, and yields valuable dye-stuffs. The first aniline dye, mauve, was discovered and prepared by an English chemist, Sir W. H. Perkin (1838-1907). Of such aniline colours there are now hundreds.

E. *anil* and *-ine* (common chemical suffix).

**animadvert** (än im ād vert'), *v.i.* To direct attention; to remark (upon) critically or by way of censure. (F. *diriger l'attention; critiquer.*)

A headmaster animadverts upon the conduct of his pupils when he passes unfavourable criticisms on the matter. A Member of Parliament animadverts on the negligence shown by a Cabinet Minister in reporting something important to the House of Commons, that is, he remarks on the delay by way of censuring or reproving. A criticism or censure of this kind is known as *animadversion* (än im ād vēr' shùn, *n.*).

L. *animadvertere*, from *animus* mind, *ad* to, *vertere* to turn. **SYN.**: Blame, censure, criticize rebuke, reprove. **ANT.**: Approve, encourage eulogize, extol, praise.



Angustifoliate.—The rose-bay willow-herb, an angustifoliate or narrow-leaved plant.



# SOME OF THE HALF-A-MILLION DIFFERENT KINDS OF ANIMALS



Animal.—The animals shown above are : 1. Owl. 2. Bird-eating spider. 3. Cobra. 4. Bat. 5. Peacock Butterfly. 6. Otter. 7. Lion. 8. Seal. 9. Turtle. 10. Starfish. 11. Crocodile and alligator. 12. Pike. 13. Beetle. 14. Edible crab.

# ANIMAL DWARFS AND GIANTS

*How Nature provides Against the World being Overrun by Them*

**animal** (ăn' i mál), *n.* A living creature as distinct from a plant; in popular usage one of the lower animals as opposed to a human being. *adj.* Of or relating to an animal or animals. (F. *animal*.)

A boy feeding his pet rabbit with dandelion leaves can easily tell which is animal and which is plant. Yet a learned scientist, looking at tiny living forms that move in water under his microscope, may sometimes be uncertain whether they belong to the animal or to the vegetable kingdom.

While there are exceptions and uncertainties among the lowest forms of life, it is generally true that most animals can move about at will, while plants are usually rooted. Animals feed on plant or animal food, while plants as a rule absorb their food by simple contact with sunshine, air, moisture, and soil.

Fossils found in the rocks tell us that animals have lived on this earth for countless ages. Some of the biggest and most powerful animals of prehistoric times, such as the mammoth and the mastodon, have long been extinct, while countless feeble species survive every danger.

Some animals multiply with such rapidity that it would almost appear as though they would overrun the world. But Nature has provided the necessary check in the form of other animals, which prey upon prolific species. Thus the lady-bird preys on the aphid, or green fly. Without some check mice would soon increase to such an extent that even the food necessary for man would be endangered, but their numbers are kept down by owls and other natural enemies.

How wonderfully Nature has balanced one animal against another is shown by the disastrous results which often follow any drastic interference on the part of man. Soon after rabbits were introduced into Australia they became a destructive and costly pest.

The mysterious force called life, so cherished and valued by man, pulsates in every animal. Thus there is a connecting link between all living creatures, from the lowest microscopic one-cell animals to the highest

apes and man himself, the most intelligent and inventive of all animals.

Beginning with the lowliest forms of animal life, one can observe how, step by step, the various groups and families of animals ascend in development. Protozoa, tiny creatures that live in water, do not produce young, but multiply by the animal dividing itself into two. Next come sponges which have various methods of reproduction, including that of ova or eggs. Sea-anemones, or hollow-bodied creatures, make a distinct advance in those qualities which we associate with animals, possessing as they do tentacles with which they catch living prey.

Above these come the starfishes, sea-urchins, and sea-cucumbers; and higher still worms, shell-fish, spiders, and insects, each a very numerous kindred, especially the insects, which include more species than all the other forms of animal life put together.

The higher forms of animals are those with backbones, called the Vertebrates, which include fishes, amphibians (frogs, etc.), reptiles, birds, and mammals. The last mentioned are the highest among all the animals. They include man, and animals that

differ very widely in their habits, such as whales, dolphins, and all four-footed animals, except reptiles and amphibians.

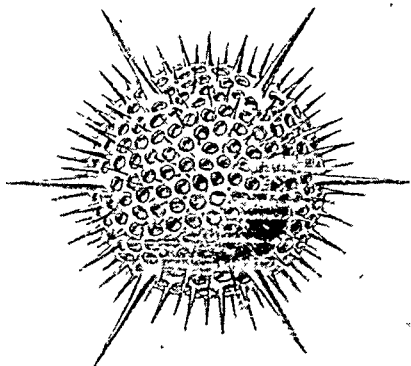
The word is used as an adjective for things relating to animals, and also for habits, instincts, and so on, which have to do with the fleshly side of man as distinct from his mental, moral, or spiritual sides. The activity and alertness of a boy of good physique are often called animal spirits.

On the other hand, a brutal, degraded person may be spoken of with contempt as an animal. He is in a state of *animalism* (ăn' i mál izm, *n.*) or *animality* (ăn i mál' i ti, *n.*), and acts *animally* (ăn' i mál h, *adv.*), that is, physically rather than intelligently. Brutal treatment and degrading conditions may *animalize* (ăn' i mál iz, *v.t.*) a person, may cause his *animalization* (ăn i mál iz á' shún, *n.*).

*L. animal*, from *anima* breath, life, and suffix *-alis* belonging to.



Animal.—Among birds that war with other animals are the eagles. Some of them prey on monkeys, stags, and wolves.



**Animalcule.**—A Radiolarian, a tiny animalcule which is classed among the lowest animals.

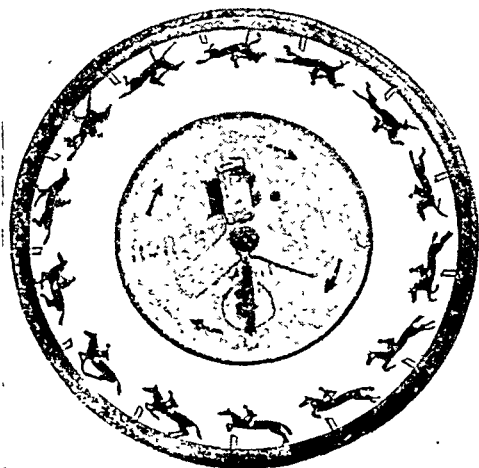
**animalcule** (ăn i māl' kŭl), *n.* A tiny living creature that can best be seen through a microscope. (*F. animalcule.*)

A drop of clear water, fresh or salt, is often found, under the microscope, to be teeming with animal life or animalcules, known to science as Protozoa. Such creatures are animalcular (ăn i māl' kŭlăr, *adj.*). Animalculism (ăn i māl' kŭl izm, *n.*) is the theory that disease is caused by these tiny creatures, and an animalculist (ăn i māl' kŭl ist, *n.*) is one who either holds this theory or who makes a special study of animalcules. Scientists sometimes use the Latin form animalcula (ăn i māl' kŭlă) for the plural.

The word comes from an imaginary *L. dim. (animalculum)* of animal.

**animate** (ăn' i măt), *v.t.* To give life to; to inspire; to enliven. *adj.* Possessing life; lively. (*F. animer.*)

Men cannot animate skeletons, but the soul animates the body. A general animates his discouraged troops. A bust may be life-like or animated (ăn' i măt êd, *adj.*), and so



**Animate.**—Animated pictures were the forerunners of the kinematograph film. A disk with pictures of a horse that showed animation when spun round.

may pictures. A speaker interested in his subject becomes animated, and is said to speak with animation (ăn i măt' shŭn, *n.*). Doctors speak of suspended animation when a patient faints.

To do a thing in a spirited way is to do it animatedly (ăn' i măt êd li, *adv.*). Anything which animates is said to be animating (ăn' i măt ing, *adj.*), and what is done animatingly (ăn' i măt ing li, *adv.*) is done so as to inspire. One who has power to enliven or inspire is animative (ăn' i măt iv, *adj.*) and is an animator (ăn' i mătôr, *n.*).

*L. animare*, *p.p. animat-us* possessed of life. *SYN.*: Incite, invigorate, stir. *ANT.*: Deaden, depress, discourage.

**animism** (ăn' im izm), *n.* The teaching that animals, trees, plants and inanimate objects, as well as human beings, have souls. An animist (ăn' i mist, *n.*) is a person who believes in animism, and anything pertaining to animism is called animistic (ăn im is' tik, *adj.*). (*F. animisme.*)

*L. anima* life, and suffix *-ism* (*L. -ismus*) forming abstract nouns.

**animosity** (ăn i mos' i ti), *n.* An unfriendly attitude of mind liable to turn into active hatred. (*F. animositê.*)

After years of peaceful relations two nations quarrel and go to war. Having fought and made up their quarrel, they are friends once more. Then some regrettable incident occurs. This revives their old animosities, with the result that they go to war again.

*L. animositas* (gen. *animositatis*), from *animosus* full of spirit, with suffix *-itas* (*-ity*) of state. *SYN.*: Acrimony, bitterness, enmity, malignity. *ANT.*: Agreement, concord, friendship, kindness.

**animus** (ăn' i mŭs), *n.* A strong feeling, especially one of unfriendliness. (*F. hostilitê, rancune.*)

Suppose a man has good reasons for disliking someone intensely. If he has occasion to mention this person in conversation, unless he is a man of a very sweet disposition, it is more than probable that his remarks will reveal animus.

*L. animus* mind, feeling against anyone.

**anise** (ăn' is), *n.* A plant grown for its seed; an evergreen tree. (*F. anis.*)

The seeds of anise, which belong to the same family as parsley, contain an aromatic oil, pleasant and warm to the taste, which is used in the preparation of a cordial. The seeds, the aniseed (ăn' i sêd, *n.*) of commerce, are also used as a flavouring for confectionery. Anisic (ăn is' ik, *adj.*) acid and anisic alcohol are also obtained from the seed. The true anise (*Pimpinella anisum*) is quite distinct from the anise of Scripture, which is believed to be the dill (*Anethum graveolens*), a member of the same family.

The star anise (*Illicium anisatum*) of China is an evergreen tree belonging to the

magnolia family. The leaves and seed-vessels have a strong smell of anise. From the aromatic carpels or seed-vessels, which are arranged in a circle, star-like, an oil is obtained, and used in place of true oil of aniseed, for medical and flavouring purposes.

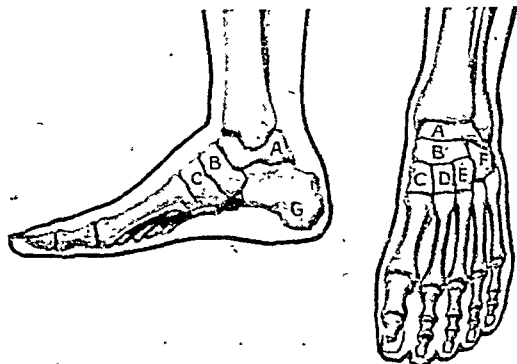
*L. anisum* dill, *Gr. anison* (earlier *anēthon*).

**anisette** (än i zet'), *n.* A liqueur made in France from brandy and aniseed. Its full name is *anisette de Bordeaux*.

**anker** (äng' kër), *n.* An old Dutch liquid measure containing about ten imperial gallons. (*F. anker*.)

It was used in England, when it contained about 8½ imperial gallons. During the siege of Londonderry in 1689 by troops of James II there was a terrible famine in the town. Out of pity for the heroic defenders, people in England sent over two ships loaded with food stuffs. Steering straight for the boom, these ships, under the command of gallant Micaiah Browning, crashed through and brought relief. Amongst the items of provisions it is recorded that ankers of brandy were distributed.

*Cp. L.L. anchoria, ancera* small vat or barrel.



Ankle.—The seven ankle-bones are (A) astragalus, (B) scaphoid, (C) internal cuneiform, (D) middle cuneiform, (E) external cuneiform, (F) cuboid, (G) calciscis.

**ankle** (äng' kl), *n.* The joint between the foot and the leg; the part of the leg between the foot and the calf. (*F. cheville*.)

When a person steps into water or mud or other substances so that they come over the ankles he is said to be ankle-deep (*adj.* and *adv.*) and the water or mud is said to be ankle-high (*adj.* and *adv.*). Ankle-jacks (*n.pl.*) are boots which reach above the ankles, and an anklet (äng' klèt, *n.*) is an ornament or support for the ankle and also a fetter. The word is sometimes spelt ancle, but ankle is the generally recognized spelling.

*A.-S. ancleow*, *cp. Dan., Swed. ankel, G. enkel*, perhaps connected with *L. angulus* and *Gr. angkylos* bent.

**ankylose** (äng' ki löz), *v.t.* To stiffen a joint. *v.i.* To become stiff (of a joint). Another spelling is *anchylose*. (*F. ankyloser; s'ankyloser*.)

**Ankylosis** (äng ki lö' sis, *n.*) is the formation of a stiff joint, and is generally caused by the growing together of the bones of a joint. It can always be traced to injury to or disease of a joint.

*Gr. angkyloun* to bend (*angkylosis*, *n.*), from *angkylos* bent, crooked. *K* and *ch* are substituted for *c* to prevent the pronunciation *ansilos*.

**anna** (än' ä), *n.* An Indian nickel coin, the sixteenth part of a rupee. (*F. anna*.)

It is about one penny in value, and is the size of a farthing. It is not round, but has a wavy edge.

Hindustani *ana* a sixteenth part.

**annals** (än' älz), *n.pl.* History recorded year by year; events arranged in this way. (*F. annales*.)

The annalistic (än ä lis' tik, *adj.*) recording of Roman history was carried out by priests from very early times, but their records, the *annales maximi*, were destroyed at the burning of Rome by the Gauls in 390 B.C. In later times private persons kept their own records in this way, and thus became annalists (än' ä lists, *n.pl.*), and the name came to be given to any historical work arranged in order of date.

*L. (libri) annales*, *adj.* (books, chronicles) of the year, from *annus* year.

**annates** (än' äts), *n.pl.* The first year's revenue of a see or living given to the Pope. (*F. annates*.)

When a bishop or other ecclesiastic of the Roman Catholic Church was appointed to a new see or living he was required to pay to the Pope a certain portion of his income. This was called the annates or first-fruits of his office. From 1534 these dues in England have gone to the Crown, and have been used for the good of the Church of England. The fund, known as Queen Anne's Bounty, is now administered by the Ecclesiastical Commissioners.

In Scotland annates are the half-year's stipend to which the relatives of a deceased minister are entitled under an act of 1672.

*L.L. annatae*, *fem. pl.*, first year's income from an ecclesiastical appointment, from *annus* year.

**annatto** (än nä't tö), *n.* This is another spelling of anatta. See anatta.

**anneal** (ä nêl'), *v.t.* To temper or toughen metals and other substances by first heating and then cooling slowly; to enamel by burning. (*F. tempérer*.)

This process is called annealing (ä nêl' ing, *n.*) and it plays a very important part in the making of many everyday things. If the glass tumblers from which we drink were not annealed they would crack when we put them in hot water to wash them. If the blades of the penknives we use were not annealed they would become blunt as soon as we began cutting anything, little pieces of steel

breaking away from their edges. Tools used for cutting, like chisels and planes, should never be made red-hot, as this makes the cutting edges brittle. Annealing makes metals and glass and other substances lose this brittleness and toughens them.

M.E. *anelen*, A.-S. *onaelan* to set on fire, to burn; the sense influenced by O.F. *neeler*, L.L. *nigellare* to enamel (originally in black), from L. *nigellus* rather black (dim. of *niger*).

**Annélida** (à nel' i dà), *n.pl.* A class of worms. (F. *annélides*.)

The group includes those worms whose bodies are made up of a succession of rings or segments, one behind another. Earth-worms and leeches are classed as annelidan (à nel' i dàn, *adj.*) animals. A single animal of this kind is an annelid (àn' è lid, *n.*).

L. *annellus* little ring, dim. of *anulus*, and -*id* a common zoological suffix.

**annex** (à neks', *v.*; àn' èks, *n.*), *v.t.* To add on to; to acquire. *n.* An addition; an extra building. (F. *annexer*; *annexe*.)

Very often, as a result of war and against the wishes of the population, a small state or province is annexed to a larger one. Alsace-Lorraine, which is such an annexable (à neks' àbl, *adj.*) district owing to its situation and resources, was subjected to annexation (àn ek sà' shùn, *n.*) by Germany after the Franco-Prussian War (1870-71.)

As a noun the word is also spelt *annexe* (àn eks'), as in French. In a large camp there is usually a main hut or marquee. Any smaller building close by, used for games or other recreation, is called an annex.

L. *annectere*, from *an-* = *ad* to, *nectere* to bind (p.p. *nexus*). SYN.: Affix, append, attach. ANT.: Detach, separate, withdraw.

**annihilate** (à nī' hil àt), *v.t.* To reduce to nothing; to destroy. (F. *anéantir*.)

There is a hill in Zululand called Isandhlwana, meaning the little hand. On January 22nd, 1879, it was the scene of a terrible battle, which ended in the annihilation (à nī hil à' shùn, *n.*) of a force of British soldiers. The British, in attempting to overthrow the power of the troublesome Zulus, had underestimated the strength of the native army and neglected to protect their camp. The massacre was so appalling that the general in command of the troops, returning later, thought it best to pass through Isandhlwana in the dark.

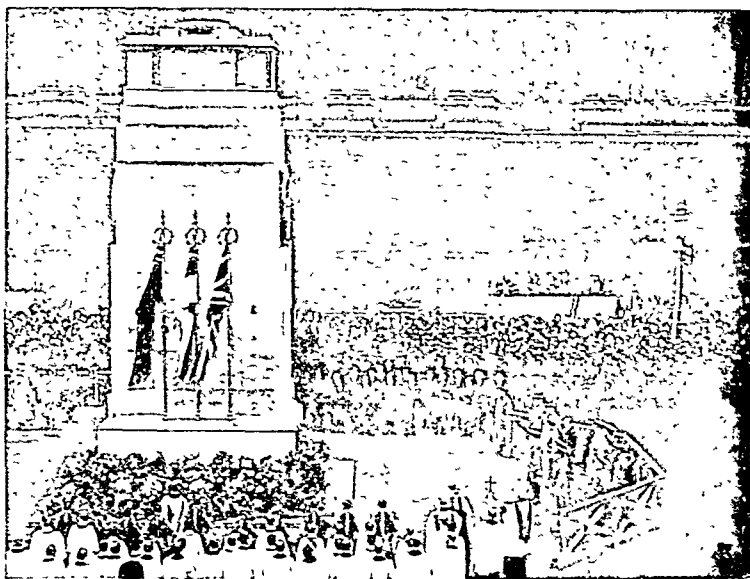
The annihilators (à nī' hil à tōrz, *n.pl.*) were finally defeated at Ulundi.

An annihilationist (à nī hil à' shùn ist, *n.*) is a person who believes that the wicked are annihilated after death. His belief is called annihilationism (à nī hil à' shùn izm, *n.*).

L. *annihilare*, from *an-* = *ad* to, *nihil* nothing (p.p. *annihilatus*). SYN.: Destroy, exterminate.

**anniversary** (àn i vēr' sà ri), *adj.* Coming round every year on the same day. *n.* The return of a specially important date every year; the celebration of such a day. (F. *anniversaire*.)

The 30th of January is the anniversary of the death of King Charles I of England, and this anniversary is still observed.



Anniversary.—The anniversary of the signing of the armistice that put an end to fighting in the World War on November 11th, 1918, is celebrated every year by the placing of wreaths on the Cenotaph in Whitehall, London, in memory of those who gave their lives for their country.

L. *anniversarius*, from *annus* year, *vertere* (p.p. *versus*) to turn, suffix -*arius* connected with.

**anno Domini** (àn' ò dom' in ī), In the year of the Christian era. (F. *l'an du Seigneur*.)

Christian countries reckon their time from the year in which it is believed that Christ was born, and the phrase *anno Domini*, or A.D. as it is generally written, attached to a date means that it is reckoned from the year of our Lord, thus A.D. 1066.

**annotate** (àn' ò tāt), *v.t.* and *i.* To make notes (on). (F. *annoter*.)

When a boy is reading a book for an examination he may find it useful to make pencil notes in the margin. This making of notes is annotation (àn ò tã' shùn, *n.*) and the notes themselves are annotations, and the boy becomes an annotator (àn' ò tã tōr, *n.*).

L. *annotare* (p.p. *annotatus*), from *an-* = *ad* to, *nota* mark.

**announce** (ā nouns'), *v.t.* To make known. (F. *annoncer*.)

The crowing of cocks announces the coming of day. Important events are sometimes announced in London from the steps of the Royal Exchange. On the front page of *The Times* newspaper are announcements (ā nouns' mēntz, *n.pl.*) of births, deaths, and marriages.

L. *annuntiare*, from *an-* = *ad* to, *nuntiare* to bring news. SYN.: Declare, proclaim, publish. ANT.: Conceal, dissemble, hide.

**annoy** (ā noi'), *v.t.* To worry. (F. *ennuyer, agacer*.)

It is annoying (ā noi' ing, *adj.*) to be interrupted at our work, and if the annoyance (ā noi' ans, *n.*) goes on we feel we would do almost anything to put a stop to the things that happen so annoyingly (ā noi' ing li, *adv.*).

O.F. *anoier*, contraction of L. (*esse, habere*) in *odio* (to be) in hatred = to be hated, (to hold) in hatred = to hate. SYN.: Disturb, molest, vex. ANT.: Calm, quiet, soothe.

**annual** (ān' ū āl), *adj.* Yearly; occurring or returning every year. *n.* A book issued once a year; a plant that lives a year. (F. *annuel; annuaire*.)

An annual event is one which happens once each year or annually (ān' ū āl li, *adv.*). The year's growth in a woody stem forms an annual ring, while the leaves shed each year by such trees as the oak, beech, and lime are annual leaves. An annual plant is one which runs its complete course within a year; its life does not exceed that length of time, and may be very considerably less.

L. *annualis* (more classical *annalis*), from *annus* year, and L. suffix *-alis* connected with.

**annuity** (ā nū' i ti), *n.* A yearly payment; the investment producing this. (F. *annuité*.)

When a person wishes a certain amount of money to be paid every year to himself or to somebody else, he deposits a lump sum with one of the firms who do this kind of business, and the firm pays it back in small amounts year by year. The lump sum is called an annuity, and so is the small annual repayment. The person who receives it is called an annuitant (ā nū' i tānt, *n.*).

L.L. *annuitas* (gen. *annuitat-is*), from *annus* year.

**annul** (ā nūl'), *v.t.* To bring to nothing; to do away with. (F. *annuler*.)

If a king, or a parliament, or a headmaster were to decree something—that next Monday

shall be a general holiday, for example—and were then for some reason to go back upon this resolution and decide that, after all, the holiday shall not be granted—that would be to annul the decree. The act of thus setting it aside is called annulment (ā nūl' mēnt, *n.*).

L. *annulare* (post-classical), from *an-* = *ad* to, *nullum* nothing. SYN.: Abolish, cancel, revoke. ANT.: Confirm, establish, uphold.



Annular.—The path of the annular eclipse of the sun in 1921. This was the first event of the kind visible in the British Isles for sixty-three years.

**annular** (ān' ū lār), *adj.* Shaped like a ring; ringed; relating to a ring. (F. *annulaire*.)

The space between two circles having a common centre is annular, and the annular finger is the ring-finger. An annular duct or vessel is strengthened annularly (ān' ū lār li, *adv.*). An annular eclipse of the sun occurs when the complete shadow cast by the moon is too small entirely to cover the disk, so that when the eclipse is full a bright ring is left round the edge of the sun.

L. *annulus* ring, L. suffix *-aris* connective with.

**annulate** (än' ū lāt), *adj.* Wearing rings; made up of rings. (F. *annelé*.)

To say, "She had rings on her fingers," is simpler than to say, "Her fingers were annulate or annulated (än' ū lā tēd, *adj.*)," but both statements mean the same thing. When a tree is hewn down, on looking at the section cut across the trunk will be seen peculiar ring-like markings, one ring for each year in the age of the tree. This kind of marking is called **annulation** (än ū lā' shùn, *n.*). An **annulet** (än' ū lēt, *n.*) is a small ring, and in architecture it is a little fillet or ring round

**annunciate** (ä nün' si āt; ä nün' shi āt), *v.t.* To bring or proclaim (news). (F. *annoncer*.)

In the Christian Church the word **annunciation** (ä nün si ä' shùn, *n.*) is applied to the angel Gabriel's declaration to the Virgin Mary that she would be the Mother of Jesus. In honour of this event the Church keeps the 25th of March as the Feast of the Annunciation.

A person who makes an announcement is an **annunciator** (ä nün' si ā tōr, *n.*). In the Greek Church this is the title of the officer who proclaims the holy days.

L. *annuntiare*, from *an-* = *ad* to, *nuntiare* to bring news.

**anode** (än' ōd), *n.* The pole or place where electric current enters; the positive pole. (F. *anode*.)

The point where the current leaves is called the cathode or negative pole.

Gr. *anodos* going up, entry, from *ana* up, *hodos* way, road.

**anodyne** (än' ō dīn), *adj.* Relieving pain; soothing. *n.* A medicine which eases pain. (F. *anodin*.)

Sometimes sleep or some other condition or event which gives relief from mental pain or unhappiness is referred to as an **anodyne**. Time, for example, is an **anodyne** of grief.

Gr. *anōdynos* free from pain, allaying pain, from Gr. *an-* = *a-* not, *odynē* pain.

**anoint** (ä noint'), *v.t.* To put on or pour oil or other soft substance; to consecrate. (F. *oindre*.)

Anointing is a ceremony used in many religions and is of great antiquity. Sometimes it shows that a person has been consecrated or set apart for some special service or appointment. Kings and priests and prophets on their appointment received this particular mark of authority. Sometimes it was claimed that the oil gave the individual special ability as well as authority to fulfil the duties of his office.

In the Christian Faith Christ is The Anointed. As the Messiah He combines in His Person the office of King, Priest, and Prophet, but according to Scripture the anointing of Jesus was spiritual. He was anointed with the Holy Ghost (John 1, 32-33).

In the early Church the sick were anointed or rubbed with oil and prayers were made for their recovery, for it was believed that healing virtue in this way passed to the sufferer.

The phrase to anoint the shield (Isaiah xxi, 5) was used when preparation was made for



Anoint.—The anointing or pouring on of oil is one of the ceremonies of a British coronation. Charles I, who succeeded to the throne in 1625, is here about to be anointed.

a column. Anything ring-shaped is said to be **annuloid** (än' ū loid, *adj.*).

Certain ring-shaped living things, like tape-worms, are classed by zoologists as **Annuloida** (än ū loi' dā, *n.pl.*) a single one being an **Annuloid** (än' ū loid, *n.*). Another group of animals, whose bodies are enclosed in a kind of outer ringed skeleton, are called **Annulosa** (än ū lō' sā, *n.pl.*), and an **annulose** (än' ū lōs, *adj.*) creature is ringed in this way.

L. *annulatus*, *p.p.* of a verb *annulare* (not in use) to furnish with rings.

war. It had reference to the custom of rubbing oil into the hide that was stretched upon a frame and formed the shield, so that it might be kept supple.

O.F. *enoindre*, p.p. *enoint*, L. *inungere*, from *in* in, on, *ungere* to anoint.

**anomaly** (à nom' à li), *n.* Irregularity; unevenness; deviation from rule. (F. *anomalie*.)

A wingless bird is an anomaly. Such a fish as the climbing perch, which leaves the water, is **anomalous** (à nom' à lùs, *adj.*); it behaves **anomalously** (à nom' à lùs li, *adv.*), and its **anomalousness** (à nom' à lùs nés, *n.*) is obvious.

In astronomy anomaly means the distance of a planet from its last perihelion (the point in its orbit or path nearest the sun) or from its last perigee (the point in its orbit nearest the earth). It was so called because the first irregularity in the motion of the planets was discovered in the difference between the actual and the calculated distances.

Anything relating to this kind of anomaly is **anomalistic** (à nom' à lis tik, *adj.*). What is called the **anomalistic month** is the time taken by the moon in travelling round the earth from perigee to perigee, that is, from the point in its path nearest the earth. It is slightly longer than the true month. The period occupied by the earth in making one circuit of the sun from perihelion to perihelion is known as an **anomalistic year**, and is some minutes longer than the true year.

Gr. *anomalía* irregularity, from *an-* = *a-* not, *homalos* even.

**anon** (à non'), *adv.* At once; in a little while. (F. *aussitôt*; *tantôt*.)

Though this word is still sometimes used in writing, it is now seldom heard in conversation. For example, instead of saying: "Anon came a man," we should now say, "Soon a man came." And instead of ever and anon we now say every now and then.

A.-S. *on-æn* in one (minute), from *on* in, *æn* one. SYN.: Forthwith, instantly, soon.

**anonymous** (à non' i mùs), *adj.* Nameless; having no name attached to it. (F. *anonyme*.)

If an author does not sign his name to an article or a book, or does not use any pen-name, the article or book is said to be **anonymous** and to have been written or published **anonymously** (à non' i mùs li, *adv.*). The state of being anonymous or having no name is **anonymousness** (à non' i mùs nés, *n.*) or **anonymity** (àn ò nim' i ti, *n.*), and a person whose name is not known is an **anonym** (àn' ò nim, *n.*). The pen-name chosen by an author or a name assumed by anyone is sometimes called an **anonym**, but more often a **pseudonym**. We often see the abbreviation "Anon.", that is anonymous, at the end of a poem the author of which is unknown.

Gr. *anonymos* without a name, from *an-* = *a-* not, without, *onoma* name.



**Anomaly.**—An ostrich is an anomaly because it is a departure from the general rule, its wings being totally useless for flight.

**anopheles** (à nof' è lès), *n.* A genus of mosquitoes, or gnats. (F. *anophèle*.)

The mosquito, which carries the germs of the fever called malaria on its sucker from one person to another, is a terrible plague in swampy places. For a long time malaria was thought to be caused by night mists rising from the ground, and people in malarial districts were careful to go indoors before the mists rose.

No way of preventing the disease was found and in some parts of the world malaria killed a large portion of the population. It is held by some historians that the fall of the old Roman Empire was due to the ravages of malaria in Italy.

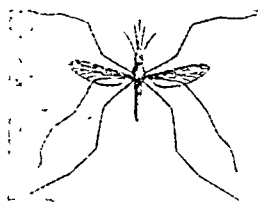
In 1895 Major Ronald Ross, of the Indian Medical Service, proved that the disease was spread by the **anopheles** mosquito. To make quite sure, experiments were carried out in the mosquito-ridden Campagna, the flat country near Rome. It was found that, if mosquitoes were kept out of a house, and people went into protected houses before dark, no cases of malaria occurred; whereas most of the persons living in unprotected houses got the disease. The mosquito was thus shown without doubt to be guilty; and it became clear that by killing off mosquitoes the disease could be checked.

The **anopheles** breeds in still water, so it is now the practice to drain swamps in malarial districts, and cover with petroleum any water that cannot be drained away.



Besides this, long grass and bushes in which the insects lay their eggs are cut down.

When the French made the first attempt to dig a canal through the Isthmus of Panama they were defeated in a large degree by malaria and by yellow fever, which also is



**Anopheles.**—A mosquito, which belongs to this genus of insect.

carried by a mosquito. When the Americans decided to finish the canal the first thing they did was to kill off the mosquitoes for several miles on each side of the line of the canal, and to provide the workers with mosquito-proof houses. The fevers were soon stamped out.

Gr. *anophelēs* useless, hurtful, from *an-* = *a-* not, *phelos* use.

**anosmia** (ā noz' mi ā), *n.* Loss of the sense of smell. (F. *anosmie*.)

Gr. *an-* = *a-* not, without, *osmē* smell.

**another** (ā nūth' ēr), *pron.* and *adj.* An additional one; a different one; one of the same kind; any other person or thing. (F. *un autre*.)

We say there is another to come, meaning one more person to arrive, or at dinner we are asked if we will have another helping of meat, meaning a second helping. When we say that is another matter, we mean it is a different matter. Taking one thing with another is a phrase often used to indicate that a person has taken everything into consideration before making up his mind.

In the House of Commons, the House of Lords is never directly mentioned, but is always spoken of as "another place," and members of the House of Lords speak of the House of Commons in the same way.

A.-S. *ān* one, and E. other.

**ansa** (ān' sâ), *n.* A handle on a vase or other vessel. (F. *anse*.)

The planet Saturn is surrounded by a number of broad flat rings, and when these rings are partly turned towards the earth they look, through a telescope, as though they were handles attached to the planet, and for that reason they are called the *ansae* (*n.pl.*) of Saturn.

L. *ansa* handle, *pl. ansae*.

**Ansars** (ān' sarz), *n.pl.* An Arab people. (F. *Ansars*.)

The Ansars of Iranian origin, and numbering more than 100,000, dwell in the hilly

country to the north of the Lebanon. They must not be confused with the Ansars who assisted Mohammed in his flight from Mecca to Medina. The latter were Moslem natives of Medina, whom Mohammed called Ansars, meaning helpers.

**anserine** (ān' sēr in), *adj.* Of the same nature as a goose; goose-like; stupid. (F. *d'oie*, *stupide*.)

L. *anserinus*, *adj.*, from *anser* goose. SYN.: Foolish, idiotic, silly. ANT.: Sensible, wise.

**answer** (an' sēr), *n.* A reply. *v.t.* To reply to. *v.i.* To reply. (F. *réponse*; *répondre*; *faire réponse*.)

An answer to a problem or a sum in arithmetic is a solution; an answer to a charge, objection, appeal, or question is a reply. This reply may be verbal, or on occasion concrete or practical. For instance, in answer to a charge, we may bring a counter-charge, or counter-statement; in answer to an objection we may bring proof that it is ill-founded.

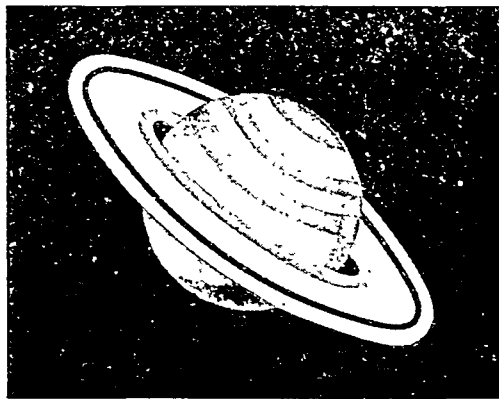
To answer anything is to reply to it or respond to it. When we say that a thing answers the purpose we mean that it is sufficient for, or suitable to, that purpose. When we answer the problem put to us, we solve it. We sometimes say that a particular thing answered very well, meaning that it did very well, or fulfilled the desired need. Sometimes we say that a custom in one country answers to a similar custom in another country, meaning that it corresponds to it, is the equivalent of it.

Human beings are answerable (an'sér ābl, *adj.*) for their own actions, that is, they are responsible for them, liable to be called to account for them. Anything which is answerable is capable of being answered. An answerer (an' sēr ēr, *n.*) is one who answers to a question or supplies a solution; one who answers back.

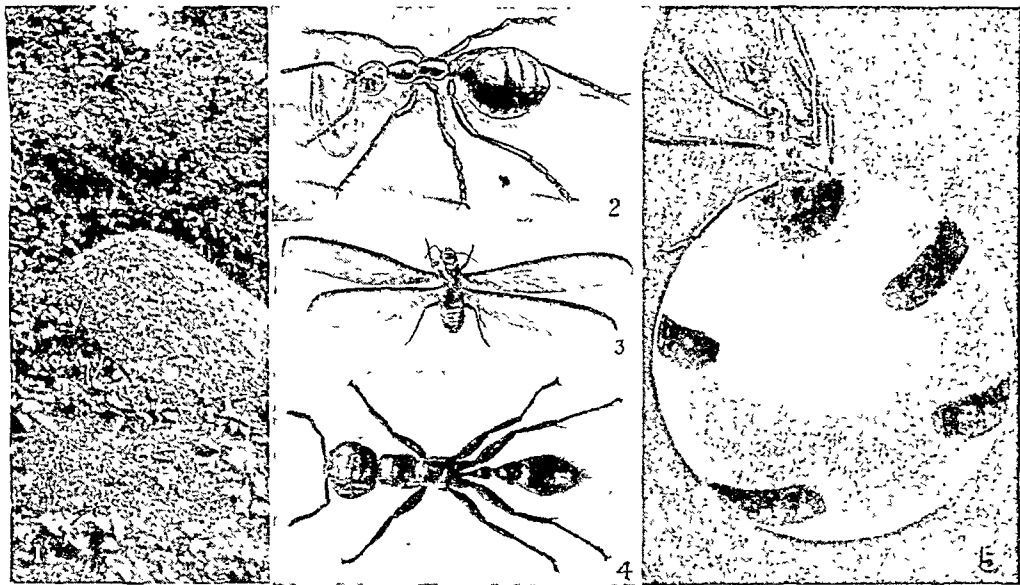
A.-S. *andswaru*, from *and-* (=Gr. *anti*) against, *swerian*, to swear, speak. SYN.: *n.* Acknowledgment, repartee, reply. *v.* Confute, fulfil, reply, respond, solve.

**ant** (ānt), *n.* A small insect of the order Hymenoptera. (F. *fourmi*.)

Perhaps no insects have been the subject of so much study by naturalists, or have been found to possess greater intelligence than ants. They live in communities like bees and wasps; they make use of aphides or plant-lice, for the honey-dew they provide; they keep slaves; and they make war like a well-drilled army. There are numerous varieties in every country, more than 2,000 in all.



**Ansae.**—When seen through a telescope the rings of the planet Saturn resemble ansae or handles, hence the name.



Ant.—1. Nest of wood ant, the largest ant in Britain. It is usually found in fir plantations. 2. Wood ant carrying its young in pupa case. 3. The so-called white ant, which is not a true ant, but a termite. 4. *Pseudomyrma bicolor* of Nicaragua. 5. Honeypot ant.

Ants belong to the order Hymenoptera, and the family name is *Formicidae*. The red ant, the garden ant, and the wood ant are among the commonest found in Britain.

Ant-eggs (*n.pl.*) are the pupae, or cocoons, of ants. The ant-fly (*n.*) is an ant with wings, with which both males and queens are provided. Some ants throw up a mound or ant-hill (*n.*) under which they live.

The word ant is a contraction of A.-S. *aemete*, which appears again in E. *emmet*.

**antae** (än' tē), *n.pl.* Square pilasters. (F. *antes*, *pilastres d'encoignure*.)

Temples were often built with an imposing entrance consisting of two or more columns with square pilasters on each side of the door. These pilasters are known as antae. They are also found sometimes at the angles of a building, and jutting out from the side walls.

L. *ante* before, in front.

**antagonist** (än tæg' ó níst), *n.* An enemy, adversary, or opponent; a muscle which acts in the opposite direction of another muscle. (F. *antagoniste*.)

People may be friendly or unfriendly antagonists. Two boys taking part in a boxing match at school are friendly antagonists, but the British and Germans during the World War (1914-18) were unfriendly antagonists. The opposition of one person or one thing to another is called **antagonism** (än tæg' ó nizm, *n.*) and people who are opposed to one another are **antagonistic** (än tæg' ó níst ik, *adj.*). They act **antagonistically** (än tæg' ó níst ik ál' li, *adv.*), and are said to **antagonize** (än tæg' ó níz, *v.t.*) one another.

Gr. *antagonistēs*, from *anti* against, *agonizesthai* to contend. SYN.: Adversary, enemy, opponent, rival. ANT.: Ally, associate, colleague, friend.

**antalkali** (änt äl' ká li), *n.* Something which takes away the power of an alkali, or "neutralizes" it; usually an acid. (F. *antacali*.)

If an alkali and an acid are mixed in the proper proportions there is a very energetic action. The mixture gets warm, and it is found that the alkali and acid have "killed" each other, and the substance formed is neither caustic nor sour, but usually of a salty nature.

Gr. E. *anti* against, and *alkali*.

**Antarctic** (änt ark' tik), *adj.* Opposite to the Arctic; relating to the South Pole or circle. *n.* The South Polar regions. (F. *antarctique*.)

There are many men to whom the exploration of unknown lands is the most fascinating occupation in life. Privations and dangers do not daunt them, and their discoveries are of great value in increasing the sum of human knowledge.

The first man to reach the South Pole, which was in the unknown region of the Antarctic zone, was Captain Roald Amundsen, a Norwegian explorer. He set out upon a South Polar quest in August, 1910, and having wintered on the Great Ice Barrier, he reached his goal on December 14th, 1911.

One of our bravest English explorers, Captain Robert Falcon Scott (1868-1912), had made an attempt to reach the South Pole in 1901, when in command of the National Antarctic Expedition. The party remained away until 1904, but unfortunately they did not succeed in the task they had set themselves. Captain Scott set out again on June 1st, 1910, to try once more. His ship was called the "Terra Nova."

In January of the next year the party established winter quarters at Cape Evans, and in November Captain Scott, with a selected few of his party, left Hut Point for the South Pole. They reached their objective on January 17th, 1912, only to find there the records left by the Amundsen party, which proved beyond doubt that the Norwegian explorer had been the first to succeed. Like the true sportsman he was, Captain Scott hid his disappointment, and the party started homewards. But every one of that brave little party perished on the way back.

Seaman Edgar Evans died from concussion of the brain on February 17th; Captain L. E. G. Oates from exposure on March 17th; and on March 29th the rest of the party (Captain Scott, Dr. E. A. Wilson, and Lieut. H. R. Bowers) died from starvation and exposure. A blizzard overtook them when only eleven miles from One Ton Depot.

Sir Ernest Shackleton (1874-1922) set out on his Farthest South expedition in 1907. His ship was the "Nimrod," and in 1909 the gallant explorer reached a spot 97 miles from the South Pole. In 1914 he led another expedition into the Antarctic, and in 1921 he made yet another attempt. This time he commanded the "Quest," and he intended to make a great many scientific investigations about the South Pole. Unfortunately, on January 5th, 1922, he died on board the "Quest," which had reached South Georgia.

The Antarctic continent is still only partly explored, but the little that is known of it reveals it as a vast plateau covered with ice and snow and entirely uninhabited. It has no land animals, but seals and penguins abound along its coast. There is practically no vegetation.

Gr. *E. ant-* = *anti* against, and *arctic*.

**antares** (än tä' rēz), *n.* A star. (F. *antarès*.)

A red star of the first magnitude, the brightest in the constellation Scorpio, Antares is also known as Alpha Scorpii. Its satellite, or companion star, is of greenish hue, and belongs to the seventh magnitude group.

Gr. *anti* against, resembling, the planet Ares (Mars).

**ant-bear** (änt' bār), *n.* A mammal which feeds on ants; the great ant-eater. (F. *fourmilier*.)

An animal about 4 ft. long, with a tail of some 18 inches, the ant-bear or great ant-eater has no teeth. It is, however, well adapted to obtain its special food, namely, ants, being furnished with a very long pencil-like tongue coated with a sticky gum-like saliva. Having scraped open an ants' nest with its strong paws, the great ant-eater licks up the insects by thousands.

Its tail is well covered with hair, and it has a curious habit of standing still when it rains, and holding its tail over its body like an umbrella. The scientific name of the great ant-eater, which is a native of South America, is *Myrmecophaga jubata*. See ant-eater.

*E. ant* and *bear*.

**ante-** (än' të), *prefix.* Before; in front of; previous to. (F. *ante*, *avant*.)

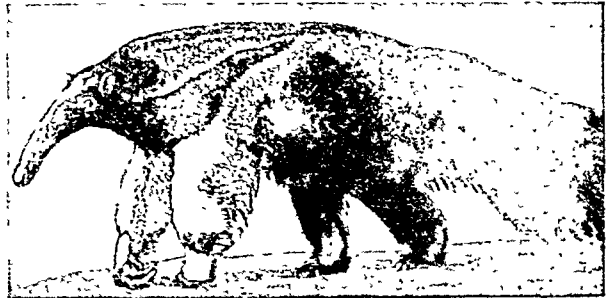
It occurs in such words as antechamber, antedate, and antediluvian.

*L. ante* before.

**ant-eater** (änt' èt èr), *n.* A mammal which feeds on ants. (F. *fourmilier*.)

Besides the great ant-eater, or ant-bear, there are several smaller animals with the same habit of eating ants. Two South American kinds, the Tamandua ant-eater (*Tamandua tetradactylus*), and the little ant-eater (*Cyclothūrus didactylus*), live in trees like squirrels. The spiny ant-eater (*Echidna*) is found in Australia and Tasmania, and the Cape ant-eater or aardvark (*Orycteropus afra*) in South Africa. See ant-bear.

*E. ant* and *eater*.



Ant-eater.—The great ant-eater of South and Central America. From the snout to the tip of the tail it may measure nearly seven feet.

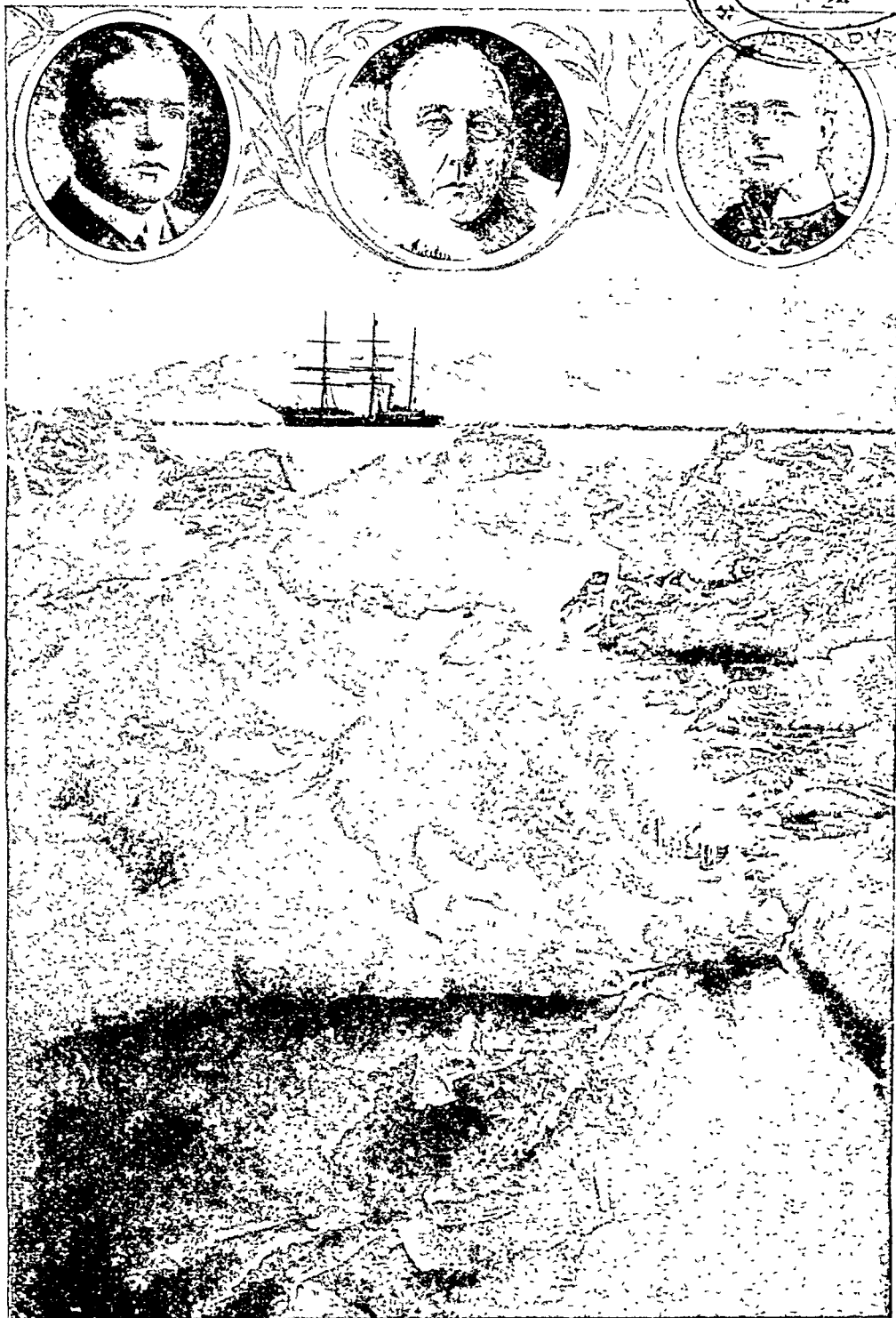
**antecedent** (än të sē' dēnt), *adj.* Going before in time or order; accepted on general grounds without proof. *n.* A thing that goes or has gone before. (F. *antécédent*.)

A thing which is antecedent to another is one which happened or was in existence before that other. Miracles are among the happenings that might be called antecedently (än të sē' dēntli, *adv.*) probable, if we assume that they took place without having been there to see for ourselves. The word to which a relative pronoun refers is the antecedent.

Antecedents (*n. pl.*) are the various circumstances which together make up the past history of a person or thing. A man of shady antecedents is one whose past does not bear looking into. In astronomy antecedence (än të sē' dēns, *n.*) is a seeming movement of a star in a direction opposite to its actual course. An antecessor (än të ses' ör, *n.*) means a predecessor; one who goes or has gone before; in law, antecessor is used for a previous possessor of property.

*L. antecedere*, pres. p. *antecedens* (gen. -ntis), from *ante* before, *cedere* to go. SYN.: Anterior, preceding, prior. ANT.: Following, subsequent.

# THE ICY LONELINESS OF THE GREAT ANTARCTIC CONTINENT.



Antarctic.—In recent years part of the Antarctic has been explored by Sir Ernest Shackleton (left), who died in South Georgia in 1922. Roald Amundsen (centre), who discovered the South Pole in 1911, and Captain R. F. Scott (right), who reached the same spot a little over a month later, and died of cold and starvation on the way back. The picture shows Captain Scott's ship, the "Terra Nova."

**antechamber** (ăn' tè chām bér), *n.* A room adjoining or leading to the principal apartment. (F. *antichambre*.)

Before being ushered into the presence of an important personage—into the audience-chamber of a king or queen, for instance—it is sometimes necessary to wait a few moments, and the waiting is done in the smaller room, the antechamber.

When David Rizzio, the secretary to Mary Queen of Scots, was murdered at Holyrood Palace in 1566, he was seized in the Queen's dining-room, dragged out into the antechamber, and there stabbed to death, receiving, it was said, fifty-six wounds.

E. *ante* before, and *chamber*. SYN.: Ante-room, entrance-hall, lobby, vestibule.

**antechapel** (ăn' tè chăp èl), *n.* That part of a chapel on the west side of the choir-screen. (F. *avant-corps de chapelle*.)

E. *ante* before, and *chapel*.

**antedate** (ăn' tè dāt), *v.t.* To give a date earlier than the true date; to come before in time. *n.* A date that comes before any actual date. (F. *antidate*; *antidater*.)

A letter which bears a date earlier than that on which it was written is said to be antedated. On May 25th the fifteenth day of May would be an antedate. When a soldier is given a higher rank his promotion may be antedated, so that it may count as having been made earlier. The reign of Alfred the Great antedated that of Edward VII by over a thousand years.

E. *ante* before, in advance, and *date*.

**antediluvian** (ăn te dī lū' vi ăn), *adj.* Relating to the world before the Flood; very antiquated. *n.* A person who lived

before the Flood; a very old person; a very old-fashioned person. (F. *antediluvien*.)

When we talk of the Flood, we mean the great deluge in the time of Noah. Naturally we have no detailed knowledge of what went on in those far-away ages: The only thing we know about them is that what is usual now was probably never heard or seen in the days of the Flood. And so, when we wish to say that someone is very old-fashioned indeed, that he has not kept up with the times and is only interested in things that happened ever so many years ago, we say that he is antediluvian.

L. *ante* before, *diluvium* deluge, from *diluiere* to wash away.

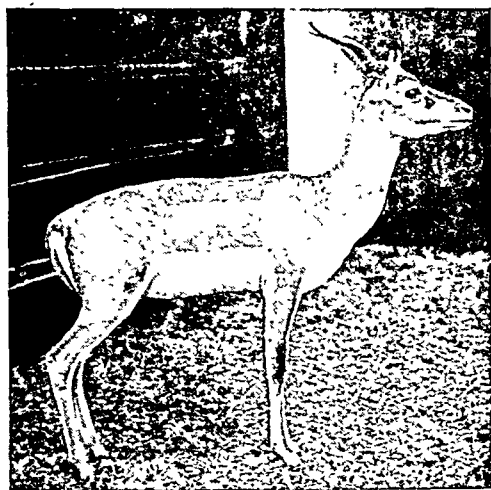
**antelope** (ăn' tè lōp); *n.* A large and varied group of grazing animals. (F. *antilope*.)

The African eland, which is as big as a dairy cow, and the klipspringer, which is about the size of a whippet dog, are both antelopes. There are members of this group of ruminants, like the sable antelope of South Africa, that are plainly named antelopes. On the other hand, many true antelopes furnish no such clue in their names—for example, the springbok, gazelle, saiga, dibatag, black-buck, chiru, gnu, hartebeest, etc. The word antelope may, therefore, be said to be a general term, like the word deer. Within this term are included many and varied grazing animals, which, being neither deer, goats, sheep, nor cattle, are conveniently described as antelopes. Nearly all antelopes are African species. They belong to the order of hoofed animals, the scientific name of which is *Ungulata*.

Gr. *anthalops*, L.L. *antalopus*. The origin of the word appears to be quite unknown.



Antechamber.—Court jesters in the antechamber or waiting-room of a king, ready to be summoned to amuse the monarch. Charles I was the last king of England to employ a professional mirth-maker.



Antelope.—The blackbuck or Indian antelope, one of the fastest runners and highest leapers among animals.

**antemundane** (ăn tè mŭn' dăn), *adj.* Relating to the time before the world was created. (F. *d'avant la création du monde.*)

L. *ante* before, *mundus* world, suffix *-ane* (L. *-anus*) belonging to.

**antenna** (ăn ten' à), *n.* An organ of sense in pairs on the heads of insects and shell-fish; a paired process in some orchids; a wire or wires for sending out or catching the waves used in wireless telegraphy and telephony; an aerial. (F. *antenne.*)

Charles Darwin borrowed this term from zoology, and used it for the long, slender processes or rods found in the flowers of certain orchids. These processes are sensitive and when touched they respond by jerking the pollen-mass out of the flower. The **antennal** (ăn ten' àl, *adj.*) or **antennary** (ăn ten' àr i, *adj.*) nerve is that which supplies the **antennae** (ăn ten' ē, *n.pl.*). The head of a butterfly is **antenniferous** (ăn tèn if' èr ùs, *adj.*), while the fruits of certain plants are said to be **antenniform** (ăn ten' i fôrm, *adj.*) because the two styles resemble antennae in shape. It was from the idea of an antenna being a "feeler," that is, something put forth to catch or gather information, that the word came to be used for the wireless aerial.

L. *antenna* sail-yard, perhaps connected with *anateinein* to stretch forth.

**antenuptial** (ăn tè nup' shi àl), *adj.* Taking place before marriage. (F. *anténuptial, d'avant le mariage.*)

In connexion with the marriage of persons of very high rank a great many antenuptial arrangements have to be made.

L. *ante* before, *nuptiae* marriage, suffix *-al* (L. *-alis*) connected with.

**antependium** (ăn tè pen' di ùm), *n.* A veil for covering the front of an altar. Also an ornamental panel, though this is usually called a frontal. (F. *antependium.*)

L. *ante* in front, *pendere* to hang.

**antepenultimate** (ăn tè pèn ùl' ti mât), *adj.* Occurring two before the last. *n.* That which occurs in this order. (F. *antépénultième.*)

In a word of three or more syllables the last syllable but one is the penultimate and the last but two the antepenultimate. For example, the antepenultimate syllable of "substantiate" is "stan." The word is used chiefly of syllables, but sometimes of other things and of people. Another form of the word, also used both as adjective and noun, is **antepenult** (ăn tè pèn ùlt').

L. *antepaenultimus*, from *ante* before, *paene* almost, *ultimus* last.

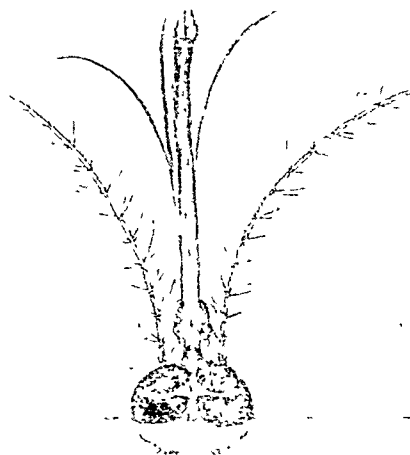
**anteprandial** (ăn tè prăn' di àl), *adj.* Happening before dinner. (F. *du matin, d'avant dîner.*)

This is rather an affected word, chiefly used humorously. A pipe smoked just before dinner might be said to be an anteprandial pipe.

L. *ante* before, *prandium* luncheon, dinner, suffix *-al* (L. *-alis*) connected with.

**anterior** (ăn tēr' i ôr), *adj.* More to the front; before. (F. *antérieur.*)

A horse is anterior to a cart; to-day is anterior to to-morrow. We might say of an opinion we used to hold that we thought that



Antennae.—The antennae of a gnat, greatly enlarged. They are probably organs of smell and touch.

**anteriorly** (ăn tēr' i ôr lî, *adv.*), or we might speak of the **anteriority** (ăn tēr i ôr' i tî, *n.*) of one thing which happened before another. But these two derivatives are seldom used.

L.L. *anterior* more in front, comparative of an assumed *adj. anterus*, from *ante*. SYN.: Fore, leading, preceding, prior. ANT.: After, following, posterior, subsequent, succeeding.

**anteroom** (ăn' tè rum), *n.* A room forming the entrance to another. (F. *antichambre.*)

At a king's court in former days there was an anteroom from which a door led into the king's presence. In the anteroom courtiers and those who had business with the king waited until he was ready to see them.

E. *ante-* and *room*. SYN.: Antechamber, entrance-hall, lobby, vestibule.

**anthelion** (ăn thê' li ón), *n.* A bright, ring formed on a cloud or fog-bank, opposite the sun. (F. *anthélie*.)

In Alpine and Polar regions one or more faintly luminous rings are sometimes seen around the head of a person's shadow thrown on a cloud, fog-bank, or a dew-covered grassy slope when the sun is near the horizon. These are caused by diffraction of light. As many as four concentric rings or anthelia (ăn thê' li à, *n.pl.*) have been seen, like haloes, decreasing in brightness from the centre outwards.

Gr. *antelios* (later *anthelios*, neuter -on), from *anth-* = *anti* opposite, *hēlios* sun.

**anthem** (ăn' thəm), *n.* A hymn of praise or prayer arranged particularly for the choir. (F. *antienne*.)

Anthems were first written to be sung in alternate parts. Orlando Gibbons (1583-1625) introduced solos into them, and Henry Purcell (about 1658-95) brought into use duets, trios, etc., in connexion with them. The words of an anthem are usually taken from Scripture or the Liturgy.

A.-S. *antefn*, *antem*, L.L. *anti-phōna*, neuter pl. of adj. *anti-phōnos*, from *anti* in answer, *phōnē* voice.

**Anthemis** (ăn' thê' mis), *n.* A genus of composite plants. (F. *anthémis*.)

The name was probably given because of the abundance of flowers borne by the plants. The best known are the sweet camomile (*Anthemis nobilis*) and the stinking camomile (*A. cotula*), the so-called wild camomile (*Matricaria chamomilla*) not being a true Anthemis. All the Anthemis plants contain a bitter tonic oil which makes the flower-heads useful for poultices and a medicinal beverage.

Gr. *anthemis* a herb resembling camomile, from *anthos* flower.

**anthemium** (ăn thê' mi ùm), *n.* A kind of leafy or floral decoration. (F. *anthémium*.)

From the East the Greeks borrowed and adapted this kind of ornamental design, which is based on foliage and flowers, especially of the palm and the honeysuckle. They made skilful use of it, especially in architecture, pottery, jewellery, and dress fabrics.

Gr. *anthemion*, from *anthos* flower.

**anther** (ăn' thēr), *n.* The part of a stamen which produces pollen. (F. *anthère*.)

Flowers that possess stamens are *antheriferous* (ăn thēr' i' èr ùs, *adj.*) or *anther-bearing*. When objects resembling anthers are produced on flower-bracts or elsewhere they are said to be *antheroid* (ăn' thēr' oid, *adj.*). That which belongs to or pertains to anthers is *antheral* (ăn' thēr' àl, *adj.*).

L. *anthēra* medicine made from flowers, from Gr. *anthēros* flowery, from *anthos* young shoot.

**anther-dust** (ăn' thēr' dūst), *n.* The fertilizing pollen produced by the anthers of a flower. (F. *poussière fécondante*.)

Gr. E. *anther* and *dust*.

**antheridium** (ăn thēr' id' i ùm), *n.* An organ in flowerless plants, such as ferns, mosses, algae, and fungi that produces a fertilizing element corresponding to pollen. (F. *anthéridie*.)

In ferns the *antheridia* (ăn thēr' id' i à, *n.pl.*) are produced on the flat green leafy object which develops from the spore; in such mosses as the hair moss on the growing point with its rosette of leaves; and in bladder-wrack in pear-shaped, hollow vessels.

L. *anthēra*, E. *anther*, and dim. suffix -idium.

**anther-valve** (ăn' thēr' vālv), *n.* The opening in the mature anther through which the pollen is discharged or exposed. (F. *valve d'anthère*.)

This opening may take the form of a slit or a pore; and when the slit is semi-circular a valve or trap-door is formed, as in barberry and bay laurel. The term anther-valve is by some confined to such trap-doors, but since other openings often open

in dry weather and close in damp weather, the term may be more widely applied.

Gr. E. *anther* and *valve*.

**anthology** (ăn thol' ó ji), *n.* A collection of pieces of poetry or prose of flower-like beauty, or of short exquisite poems. (F. *anthologie*.)

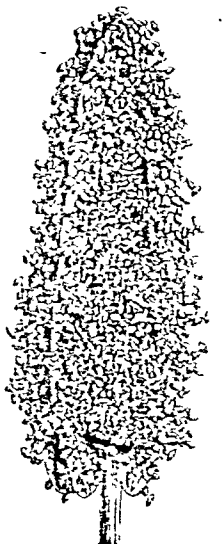
The finest anthology is the one known as the Greek Anthology, which consists of poems and parts of poems by over 300 Greek poets. One of the best-known English anthological (ăn thó loj' i kál, *adj.*) collections is "The Golden Treasury" by F. T. Palgrave. Edward Arber ("British Anthologies") and Sir A. Quiller-Couch ("Oxford Book of English Verse") are also well-known English anthologists (ăn thol' ó jists, *n.pl.*).

Gr. *anthologia*, from *anthos* flower, -logia collection, from *legein* to collect.

**Anthony** (ăn' tó ni), *n.* The smallest pig in a litter. (F. *antoine*.)

St. Anthony was the patron saint of swineherds, and a common custom in the Middle Ages was to dedicate one, usually the smallest, of each litter of pigs to him. The smallest boy of a family is occasionally termed an Anthony.

The disease erysipelas is sometimes called St. Anthony's Fire. This name had its origin in a belief, widely held in olden times, that those who prayed for the mediation of St. Anthony recovered from the great outbreak of erysipelas (then called the sacred fire) which occurred in 1089.



Anther. — Ripe pollen oozing from the anther of a Bermuda lily.



**Anthozoa.**—The sea-anemones were once believed to be plants, and that is why the class of marine animals to which they belong was called Anthozoa, which means flower animals.

**Anthozoa** (ăn thō zō' á), *n.pl.* A class of lowly marine animals which includes the sea-anemones and corals. (F. *anthozoa*.)

They were long regarded as plants, whence the name, which means flower animals. They are tubular in form, with the mouth at one end surrounded by numerous tentacles. The corals form for themselves a skeleton of chalky material, the well-known coral of commerce. The class is also known as the Actinozoa.

Gr. *anthos* flower, *zōon* animal.

**anthracite** (ăn' thrā sīt), *n.* A very hard coal, which gives out great heat and little smoke. (F. *anthracite*.)

Anthracite is jet-black, shiny, and smooth to look at, and it does not blacken the fingers when picked up, as ordinary coal does. Because it burns with a much hotter flame than ordinary coal, anthracite is used on board warships and steamships to get steam up quickly. Wales is famous for its anthracite. A coal or any substance resembling anthracite is called an **anthracitic** (ăn thrā sīt' ik, *adj.*) substance. When miners dig up the ground and find anthracite they say the ground is **anthracituous** (ăn' thrā si tūs, *adj.*).

Gr. *anthrakitēs* a kind of coal, from *anthrax* (gen. *anthrakos*), with suffix *-ite* (= *-itēs*), belonging to.

**anthrax** (ăn' thrāks), *n.* A disease which attacks cows, horses, sheep, pigs, goats, and human beings. (F. *anthrax*.)

Anthrax affects the skin and the inner organs of the body. The disease sometimes attacks human beings who are constantly handling the hair of animals, especially

wool. Hence it is sometimes called wool-sorter's disease.

Gr. *anthrax* coal, tumour presenting a blackish surface.

**anthropocentric** (ăn thrō pō sen' trik), *adj.* Centring in man; regarding man as the hub or central fact of the universe. (F. *anthropocentrique*.)

Gr. *anthropos* man, *kentron* centre, suffix *-ic* belonging to (Gr. *-ikos*).

**anthropogeny** (ăn thrō poj' en i), *n.* The science and study of the origin and development of man. (F. *anthropogénie*.)

Anthropogeny may be regarded as a branch of the still wider science called anthropology.

Gr. *anthropogenēs* born of man, from *anthropos* man, *genos* birth.

**anthropography** (ăn thrō pog' rá fi), *n.* That branch of the study of mankind which deals with the way in which the different races are spread over the world and with the points in which they vary in different regions. (F. *anthropographie*.)

Gr. *anthropos* man, *graphein* to write, describe.

**anthropoid** (ăn' thrō poid), *adj.* Like man in shape; relating to a kind of ape. *n.* A kind of ape. (F. *anthropoïde*.)

The word is used specially of the gibbon, orang-utan, chimpanzee, and gorilla.

Gr. *anthropos* man, *eidos* shape, form.

**anthropolite** (ăn throp' ó līt), *n.* A fossil man or part of a man. (F. *anthropolithe*.)

In a hole dug at Piltown, in Sussex, for the purpose of obtaining gravel for repairing roads, parts of a human skull were found in 1912. It belonged to the most ancient known



inhabitant of England, to whom the name of the dawn man has been given. Remains of rhinoceros and hippopotamus were found nearby. The word is also spelt *anthropolith* (än thröp' ò lith).

Gr. *anthropos* man, *lithos* stone.

**anthropology** (än thrō pol' ò ji), *n.* The study of the history of mankind, physically, mentally, and spiritually. (F. *anthropologie*.)

Anthropology is the widest of all the sciences, dealing as it does with the evolution or development of man from the earliest times in every possible way. Anything concerning the study of mankind, or bearing on that study, is *anthropological* (än thrō pò loj' ik ál, *adj.*). One who studies anthropology is an *anthropologist* (än thrō pol' ò jst, *n.*), and he studies his subject or anything relating to it *anthropologically* (än thrō pò loj' i kállì, *adv.*).

Gr. *anthropos* man, *logos* study or science.

**anthropometry** (än thrō pom' e tri), *n.* The scientific measuring of the human body. (F. *anthropométrie*.)

This branch of science deals not only with the body as a whole, but with the limbs, head, hands, and feet, and also is occupied with comparing the measurements of different races and of people of different ages. A Frenchman, Alphonse Bertillon (1853-1914) brought out in 1880 a system of anthropometry to help the tracing of criminals. By this system every convict was carefully measured and all details were put down in an orderly way on cards. The measurements were taken on the left side, which is less likely

to alter than the right; and height was always taken at the same hour of the day, since a man may be half an inch taller just after a night's sleep than he was before it. This system has now generally been replaced by that of taking finger-prints of criminals.

Gr. *anthropos* man, *metron* measure.

**anthropomorphism** (än thrō pō mör' fizm), *n.* The ascribing of human form or human qualities to God or other deities and spiritual beings, or to animals, inanimate things, or abstract ideas. (F. *anthropomorphisme*.)

When we think of God as having a form and qualities like our own, though on an infinitely grander scale, we *anthropomorphize* (än thrō pō mör' fiz, *v.t.*) Him. The ancient Greeks not only endowed their gods with human qualities, but made beautiful statues of them in human form. Lewis Carroll was an *anthropomorphist* (än thrō pō mör' fist, *n.*) when he made the white rabbit in "Alice in Wonderland" act and talk like a human being. *Anthropomorphous* (än thrō pō mör' fús, *adj.*) means having the form of a man, or it can be used with the same sense as *anthropomorphic* (än thrō pō mör' fik, *adj.*), namely, relating to anthropomorphism.

Gr. *anthropos* man, *morphē* form, with abstract noun suffix -ism.

**anthropophagous** (än thrō pof' à gús), *adj.* Feeding on human flesh. (F. *anthropophage*.)

This is another name for cannibal, and *anthropophagy* (än thrō pof' à ji, *n.*) for cannibalism.

Gr. *anthropophagos*, from *anthropos* man, *phagein* to eat.



Anthropology.—By his study of the development of man the anthropologist is able to form an idea of what the most ancient known inhabitant of England or any other country may have looked like. This drawing is based on a few remains found at Piltdown, in Sussex.

**anti-** (an' ti), *prefix*. Opposite; against; instead of; the reverse of; contrary; opposed to. (F. *anti*, *contre*.)

This prefix has many different meanings and some of them are best explained by an example. Its most common meaning is opposed to or an opponent of. A man who is opposed to the government of his country is anti-constitutional, and a man who is opposed to compulsory vaccination is an anti-vaccinationist. The Anti-Vivisection Society, founded in London in 1878, is a society opposed to experiments on living animals. A pope who is elected in opposition to the regular pope is called an anti-pope. Hatred of or hostility towards the Jewish race is called anti-Semitism, while an anti-Trinitarian is a person who is opposed to the Christian doctrine of the Trinity. Winds which blow in the opposite direction to the trade-winds are called anti-trade winds.

Before an unaspirated vowel the *i* is dropped, and before an aspirated vowel the form *anth-* is used. Thus we write Antarctic and not anti-Arctic. Sometimes a shining bright ring is seen on a cloud opposite to where the sun is shining. This is called an anhelion, and not an anti-helion.

Gr. *anti* against, opposite to, instead of.

**anti-aircraft** (än ti är' kraft), *adj.* Used to drive away or destroy any kind of aircraft sent by an enemy.

Guns mounted in such a way that they can fire straight up into the air; searchlights; nets and wires hung from balloons to entangle aircraft; troops which man the guns and searchlights—all these are anti-aircraft devices.

E. *anti-* and *aircraft*.

**antiar** (än' ti är), *n.* The upas tree; the poison obtained from it. (F. *antiaris*, *antiar*.)

The milky juice of this tree contains a powerful poison called **antiarin** (än' ti är in, *n.*), which, if swallowed or introduced into a wound by a weapon smeared with it, causes death. A poison containing strychnine is prepared from **antiar resin** (*n.*), a gum which comes from cuts made in the bark.

The name is of Javanese origin.

**antic** (än' tik), *n.* A queer trick or movement; a fanciful decoration. (F. *bouffonneries*, *figures grotesques*.)

If a man were to walk down the road waving his arms about and wagging his head from side to side he would be performing antics. Sometimes we see very odd figures or groups of figures sculptured on an old building

or appearing in some other ancient work of art—people and animals, and plants and flowers all jumbled up together. These, too, are called antics, because this kind of decoration is so often found in ancient art, antic being simply another form of the word antique, which until the seventeenth century had the same meaning.

F. *antique*, L. *antiquus* old, antique.



From the painting by Ronald Gray

Crown Copyright.

**Anti-aircraft**.—Defending London at night with an anti-aircraft gun during the air raids of the World War of 1914-18.

**Antichrist** (än' ti krist), *n.* The great enemy of Christ and Christianity. (F. *antéchrist*.)

In the New Testament he is a great figure of Satanic character and power. Successive ages of the Church have seen in the different persecutors of the Faith and in the heretics who have challenged its doctrines the Man of Sin, as the Antichrist is also named, whose overthrow will lead to the establishing of the Kingdom of God. Anything relating to Antichrist can be called **antichristian** (än ti kris' chän, *adj.*). This word also describes anything opposed to Christ or Christianity and is written **antichristian** or **anti-christian**.

Gr. *Antikhristos*, from *anti* against, *Khristes* Christ.

**anticipate** (än tis' i päť), *v.t.* To be in advance of; to look forward to; to deal with beforehand. (F. *anticiper*, *d'avancer*.)

When we anticipate an event, we act as though that event had already happened.

For instance, when a person anticipates a legacy of money, he may act as though the money was already in his possession, and even spend a sum of money equivalent to the legacy before the money really comes to him. Such a person may be described as *anticipant* (ăn tis' i pânt, *adj.*) and his action as *anticipative* (ăn tis' i pā tiv, *adj.*) or *anticipatory* (ăn tis' i pā tò ri, *adj.*), or he may be called an *anticipant* (*n.*) or *anticipator* (ăn tis' i pā tòr, *n.*).

When we say we anticipate an event, we usually mean that we look forward to it with pleasure, not with dread. Children especially are inclined to live on such pleasurable anticipation (ăn tis i pā' shùn, *n.*).

In music, when a tune is being harmonized, the term anticipation is used to indicate that one or more of the parts produce a note or notes properly belonging to the next following chord.

*L. anticipare* (p.p. *anticipatus*), from *ante* before, *capere* to take. *SYN.*: Expect, forecast, forestall. *ANT.*: Distrust, doubt, follow.

**anticlimax** (ăn ti klí' maks), *n.* A sudden change from good to bad or from dignified to absurd, either in speaking or writing, or in events. (*F. anticlimax, gradation descendante.*)

In 1811 the great Napoleon had conquered a great part of Europe in many campaigns. Italy, Austria, Prussia, Belgium, and Holland were at his feet. His armies were in Spain, and Russia, after a severe defeat, had become his ally. Napoleon's power had grown step by step until it seemed to have no bounds. But in that year Russia broke away, and in 1812 Napoleon invaded her with an army of 500,000 men.

After much hard fighting he reached Moscow, just as winter was coming on, only to find the city deserted and on fire. As no food could be got for his army, Napoleon had to retreat across many hundreds of miles of

snow-bound and desolate country, and during the terrible journey most of his great army was destroyed by cold, starvation, and wounds. This disaster was an awful anticlimax to the many victories of earlier wars.

*Gr. anti* against, opposed to, *klimax* ladder.

**anticline** (ăn' ti klīn), *n.* A rock fold with the convex side upward, like an arch. (*F. anticlinale.*)

The rocks of the earth's crust are of two series, aqueous or formed in water, and igneous or produced by fire. The former consist of a series of layers, called strata, one below the other. Sometimes these layers are found to be almost level, at others, as a result of pressure on the earth's crust, they have taken a shape like a switchback railway. Geologists call this "folding." That part of the "switchback" pointing upwards is an anticline or anticlinal (ăn' ti klī nāl, *adj.*); the downward-pointing section is a syncline.

*Gr. anti* against, *klinein* to lean, dip.

**anticyclone** (ăn ti sī' klōn), *n.* An area of high air-pressure. (*F. anticyclone.*)

The air at the centre of an anticyclone is calm, cold in winter, and warm in summer. Winds blow siantingly outwards from the centre. In the northern half of the world they move in the direction of the hands of a clock, and in the southern half they blow the opposite way. The coming of an anticyclone is foretold by the weather-glass rising. While an anticyclone lasts the weather is usually fine, or anticyclonic (ăn ti sī klon' ik, *adj.*).

*Gr. E. anti* against, opposite to, and *cyclone*.

**antidote** (ăn' ti dôt), *n.* A remedy against poison or disease or evil. (*F. antidote.*)

Nature provides poisons, and yet if we search we can usually find substances that hinder or stop the action of these poisons upon us. Such substances are antidotes. For



**Anticlimax.**—The greatest anticlimax of modern history was Napoleon's invasion of Russia in 1812. The Emperor began the campaign with 500,000 men, of whom some 400,000 were killed, wounded, or missing. Hitherto his name had meant victory, but this appalling defeat heartened his enemies, and he was finally defeated three years later at Waterloo.

example, the natives of the Mexican tropics have special herbs that are antidotes to the poison of snake-bites. A good influence is antidotal (ăn ti dō' tál, *adj.*) to evil.

Gr. *antidoton*, from *anti* against, *dotos* (neuter *doton*) given, from *didonai* to give, L. *antidotum*.

**antimacassar** (ăn ti mắ kắs' sắr), *n.* A loose cover for the back of a chair or other seat. (F. *antimacassar*.)

In the early years of the reign of Queen Victoria it became the fashion for people to put on their hair an oil called macassar. When they leant back in their chairs the oil would make a mark, and so someone invented a separate cover to keep the chairs clean.

Gr. *Ē. anti* against, and *macassar*.

**antimony** (ăn' tim ó ni), *n.* A bluish white metal. (F. *antimoine*.)

This metal comes chiefly from France and Italy. Unlike other metals, it expands as it cools, and this quality makes it valuable for mixing with lead and other metals used in making printing type, which needs the edges to be fine and sharp. It is also employed in medicine, as in antimonial (ăn ti mō' ni ăl, *adj.*) wine, which has a compound of antimony dissolved in it. An antimoniate (ăn ti mō' ni ăt, *n.*) is a salt or compound of antimony (ăn ti mon' ik, *adj.*) acid. Such a substance is antimonious (ăn ti mō' ni ُس, *adj.*) for it contains antimony.

L.L. *antimonium*. The word is perhaps a corruption of the Arabic name *itmid*, *itimid*, perhaps itself from Gr. L. *stimon*, L. *stibium*. The F. form has been absurdly explained as anti-monk, monk's bane.

**Antinomian** (ăn ti nō' mi ăt), *adj.* Opposed to the observing of the moral law. *n.* One who holds that Christians are not bound by the moral law. (F. *antinomien*.)

In what is known as the Antinomian controversy the point at issue is, whether or not it is necessary for a Christian to keep the moral law, particularly that of Moses. The Antinomians hold that faith frees a man from this obligation. The question was brought to its height by Johann Agricola, who disputed with Melancthon and Luther (1527-1540). As an answer to the teaching of Antinomianism (ăn ti nō' mi ăt izm, *n.*) the Lutherans quoted St. Paul: "Do we then make void the law through faith? God forbid: Yea, we establish the law." (Romans iii, 31.)

Gr. *anti* against, *nomos* law.

**antinomy** (ăn tin' ó mi), *n.* An apparent contradiction between laws or conclusions. (F. *antinomie*.)

For example, the doctrines of Free Will and of Necessity appear to be contradictory. Each seems to be true, yet it is difficult to see how they can both be true. When two equally matched authorities disagree the same situation arises.

Gr. *anti* against, *nomos* law.

**antipathy** (ăn tip' ăt thi), *n.* Dislike; aversion; an object of aversion. (F. *antipathie*.)

In Nature there are certain creatures which from inherited instinct are enemies. In much the same way, there are certain human beings, who, on meeting, feel a dislike each of the other. In such a case we say there is a natural

antipathy between them, or that they are antipathetic (ăn ti păt' ik, *adj.*) or antipathetical (ăn ti păt' thet' ik ăl, *adj.*) to each other.

The word antipathic (ăn ti păt' ik, *adj.*), relating to antipathy, is seldom used. In medicine it has the same meaning as allopathic, a word which is generally used to describe the ordinary system of medical practice as opposed to what is called homoeopathy.

Gr. *antipatheia*, from *anti* against, *pathos* feeling (of dislike). SYN.: Contrariety, hostility repugnance, repulsion. ANT.: Affinity, attraction, congeniality, sympathy.

**antiphlogistic** (ăn ti flō jis' tĭk), *adj.* Reducing inflammation; opposed to the phlogistic theory. (F. *antiphlogistique*.)

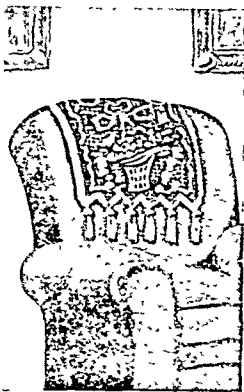
Phlogiston was the name given to a substance which was supposed to reside in everything that could be burnt. The phlogistic theory was put forward by the German scientist, G. E. Stahl (1660-1734) in the early eighteenth century, but was proved by later scientific men to be incorrect. Doctors still call a remedy which relieves inflammation an antiphlogistic remedy, and when this is in the form of a paste to be laid on the skin it is called antiphlogistine (ăn ti flō jis' tin, *n.*).

Gr. *anti* against, *phlogiston* connected with the principle of fire (*phlogiston*), from *phlox* (gen. *phlogos*) flame. SYN.: Cooling, soothing. ANT.: Heating, inflaming.

**antiphon** (ăn' ti ion), *n.* A sentence said or sung by one part of the choir and then by the other; one of those sentences said or sung before the Psalms to emphasize the reference to the festival or day in the service of the Roman Catholic Church. (F. *antiphone*.)

In the Church of England the practice of singing or saying antiphons was not continued after the Reformation, but antiphonal (ăn tif' ó năl, *adj.*) singing, that is, the chanting of alternate or responsive sentences, remains. Such singing is called antiphony (ăn tif' ó ni, *n.*). A book containing a collection of antiphons is an antiphonary (ăn tif' ó n ăr i, *n.*). The present antiphonary was compiled by Pope Gregory the Great about 590. The antiphon is the earliest form of our modern anthem.

Gr. L.L. *antiphōna*, from *anti* against, answering, *phōnē* voice.



Antimacassar.—A loose cover for the back of a chair.

**antiphrasis** (ăn tif' rā sis), *n.* The use of a word in a sense opposite to its proper meaning. (F. *antiphrase*.)

It was an antiphrasis to give the name "Greenland" to a territory where only during the short summer is there any appearance of vegetation, and that consisting merely of lichens and mosses. It would be antiphrastic (ăn ti frās' tik, *adj.*) to address a negress as a "fair lady."

Gr. *anti* against, *phrasis* speaking, from *phrāzein* to speak.

**antipodes** (ăn tip' ô dêz), *n. pl.* Places on the other side of the earth from where we are; the people who live in such places (F. *antipodes*.)

The Antipodes Islands, near New Zealand, are so named because they form the land which is most nearly opposite to England in the Southern Hemisphere. The regions round the North Pole are the antipodes of those round the South Pole. A person who lives on the other side of the world from where we are is called an antipode (ăn' ti pōd, *n.*), and so is a person or thing that is an exact opposite of somebody or something else. Places on the other side of the earth from us are antipodal (ăn tip' ô dāl, *adj.*) places. A person who lives at the other side of the world is an antipodean (ăn ti pō dê' ăn, *n.*) and anything concerning the antipodes or any person or thing that is exactly opposite to somebody or something else is also called antipodean (*adj.*).

Gr. *anti* against, opposite to, *pous* (gen. *podos*) foot.

**antipole** (ăn' ti pōl), *n.* The opposite pole; the exact opposite. (F. *antipôle*.)

When two things or two people are as different from each other as they can be,

as different as the North and South Poles, they are said to be antipoles.

Gr. E. *anti* against, opposite, and *pole*.

**antipope** (ăn' ti pōp), *n.* A pope elected in opposition to another pope. (F. *antipape*.)

The word antipope is usually applied to that one of two popes who was irregularly elected.

Prefix *anti*- opposite to, in rivalry with, and *pope*.

**antipyrine** (ăn ti pīr' in), *n.* A crystalline compound used to reduce fever, and to relieve pain. (F. *fébrifuge*.)

Besides being used to lower the temperature in certain kinds of fever, it is also much employed as a cure for headache and neuralgia, but if it is given in too large a dose it is poisonous. Any medicine for allaying fever is an antipyretic (ăn ti pīr' et ik, *n.*) and its properties are antipyretic (*adj.*).

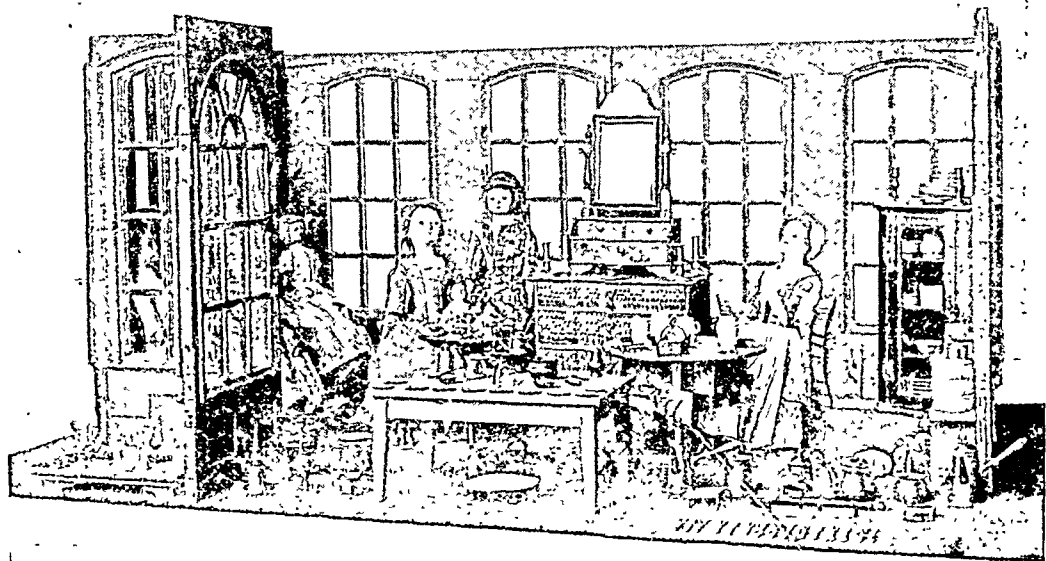
Gr. *anti* against, *pyr* fire, fever, and common chemical suffix *-ine*.

**antiquarian** (ăn ti kwār' i ăn), *n.* One who makes a study of the relics of ancient times. *adj.* Relating to this study; a sheet of drawing paper 53 by 31 inches. (F. *antiquaire*.)

A man who collects coins or medals or other relics of olden days, or who makes a study of such things, is called an antiquary (ăn' ti kwār' i, *n.*) as well as an antiquarian. Such a person is engaged in antiquarianism (ăn ti kwār' i ăn iz m, *n.*), a term that is also used to describe the character or tastes of those who antiquarianize (ăn ti kwār' i ăn iz, *v. i.*).

L. *antiquarius*, from *antiquus* old, and the adjectival suffix *-arian* (L. *-arius*).

**antique** (ăn tēk'), *adj.* Ancient; old-fashioned; relating to the ancient Greeks and Romans, or to other peoples of ancient



Antique.—An antique dolls' house that was the plaything of a child of the early eighteenth century, when George III was king. It is in the Victoria and Albert Museum at Kensington, London.

times. *n.* A relic of olden times; art of the ancient Greeks and Romans; art in this style; a style of printing type. (*F. ancien; antique.*)

This word may be used generally of anything that is very old, but it has various special meanings. In art, for instance, by the antique is usually meant the art of the ancient Greeks and Romans. Before drawing from life became common in art schools students used to draw from the antique, that is, from plaster casts or the reproductions of ancient Greek and Roman masterpieces. Many people collect old glass or china or furniture or other antiques. The printing type called antique or Egyptian has all the lines of the same thickness. A man still young may by some peculiarity in his appearance have an antique air or an air of antiqueness (*ăn tēk' nēs, n.*). To antique (*ăn' ti kvāt, v.t.*) a thing is to make it old-fashioned or out-of-date, and anything that is old-fashioned can be called antiquated (*ăn' ti kwāt' ed, adj.*).

The word antiquity (*ăn tik' wi ti, n.*) has various meanings besides that of the state of being very old. For example, by antiquity we may mean olden times, the time of the ancient Greeks and Romans, or the ancient Greeks and Romans themselves and other peoples, and by antiquities (*ăn tik' wi tiz, n.pl.*) the events and records of the times before the ancient Greeks and Romans, and the relics and other monuments of ancient times generally.

*L. antiquus* old, ancient, from *ante* before, and suffix *-cus* belonging to. *SYN.*: Archaic, bygone, obsolete. *ANT.*: Modern, new, recent.

**antirrhinum** (*ăn ti rī' nūm, n.*) A genus of plants belonging to the figwort family,



Antirrhinum.—An old-fashioned glory of the garden often called snapdragon.

popularly known as snapdragon or dragon's mouth. (*F. antirrhinum.*)

The name, which means nose-like, was given because of the resemblance of the

flower to an animal's muzzle, which includes both nose and mouth. The lesser snapdragon (*Antirrhinum orontium*) is wild and the great snapdragon (*A. majus*) is naturalized in Britain. The flowers differ from those of the related toadflax in having a pouch-like swelling instead of a spur.

*Gr. anti* in place of, *rhis* (gen. *rhinos*) nose.

**antiseptic** (*ăn ti sep' tik, adj.*) Preventing putrefaction; preventing the corruption of flesh or other matter by harmful germs. *n.* Something that has these properties. (*F. antiseptique.*)

In the 'seventies of last century a large part of the people who had to be operated upon in hospitals died from poisoning of the blood. Though surgeons took every care to prevent this, by keeping the air of the wards as pure as possible, by using many clean towels, and by washing their hands and instruments very carefully before an operation, so many of their patients died that they almost began to despair of their own skill.

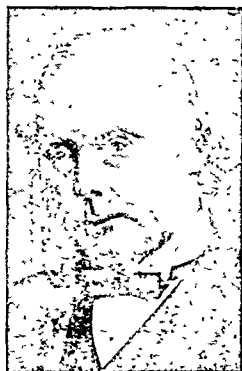
In 1856 a great French chemist, Louis Pasteur (1822-95), began to try to find out why milk went sour and why beer and wine fermented. He found that the changes were caused by tiny germs, or bacteria, carried in the air. If the air could be kept away the change did not take place, or took place much more slowly; and it could in some cases be prevented by heating or cooling, or by adding something.

His discoveries set an English surgeon, Joseph Lister (1827-1912), thinking hard. Might not the poisoning of wounds be caused by something in the air attacking the flesh? He tried spraying wounds with carbolic acid. The surgeon washed his hands and his instruments with a mixture of the acid and water to disinfect them. To his great joy, the wounds now healed up much more readily, and fewer patients died.

A new period in surgery—antiseptic surgery—now began. Lister found out that the most important thing was to kill all bacteria in anything that came near a wound—the hands, instruments, dressings, even the clothes of the surgeons and nurses—by treating them with an antiseptic. For his great services Lister was made a peer in 1897.

Great heat and great cold are antiseptics. So, too, are many chemicals.

*Gr. anti* against, *sēptikos* putrefying, from *sēpein* to putrefy.



Antiseptic.—Lord Lister, the pioneer of antiseptic surgery.

**antistrophe** (ăn tis' trô fê), *n.* The return movement from west to east performed by the Greek choruses before the altar and answering to a previous strophe, a movement from east to west; the stanza sung during this movement; any choral response. (F. *antistrophe*.)

In the Greek chorus the singers as they turned from the altar to the right sang a stanza. They then returned to the altar singing an answering stanza, or a response. The first movement and the stanza sung were known as the strophe; the second movement and the response were called the antistrophe.

Gr. *antistrophê*, from *antistrophein* to turn to the opposite side (*strophê* turning).

**anti-submarine** (ăn ti sũb' mã rên), *adj.* Used to find, keep away, or destroy an enemy's submarine vessels.

During the World War (1914-18) the damage done to British warships and merchant vessels by German submarines became so serious that every possible way of checking and sinking these under-water ships was tried. Merchant vessels were furnished with anti-submarine guns; harbours and narrow channels were protected by nets; specially fast motor-boats were built to chase submarines and drop bombs which burst below water at a certain depth.

Aeroplanes and airships, armed also with bombs, went out to find submarines and attack them. These anti-submarine measures in the end had a great effect, and British ships were able to move with much less risk of being sunk.

Gr. E. *anti*, and *submarine*.

**antitetanic** (ăn ti te tãn' ik), *adj.* Having the power to cure or prevent that deadly disease known as tetanus (of which lockjaw is one sign). (F. *antitétanique*.)

There are several anti-tetanic substances,

including a special substance known as antitetanin (ăn ti têt' à nin, *n.*), which belongs to the class of antitoxins, but they should not be used except under medical instructions.

Gr. *anti* against, *tétanos* rigid, from *teinein* to stretch.

**antithesis** (ăn tith' é sis), *n.* A contrast or opposition of ideas; words, clauses or sentences set in contrast. (F. *antithèse*.)

Antithesis is a device used by good and bad writers alike. In the hands of a clever writer, such as George Bernard Shaw, it is very effective. Here is an example of one of Shaw's antitheses (ăn tith' é sêz, *n.pl.*):

Your friends are not beautiful: they are only decorated. They are not clean: they are only shaved and starched.

The following are further examples of antithesis:

Better dwell in the midst of alarms than reign in this horrible place.

We live in deeds, not years.

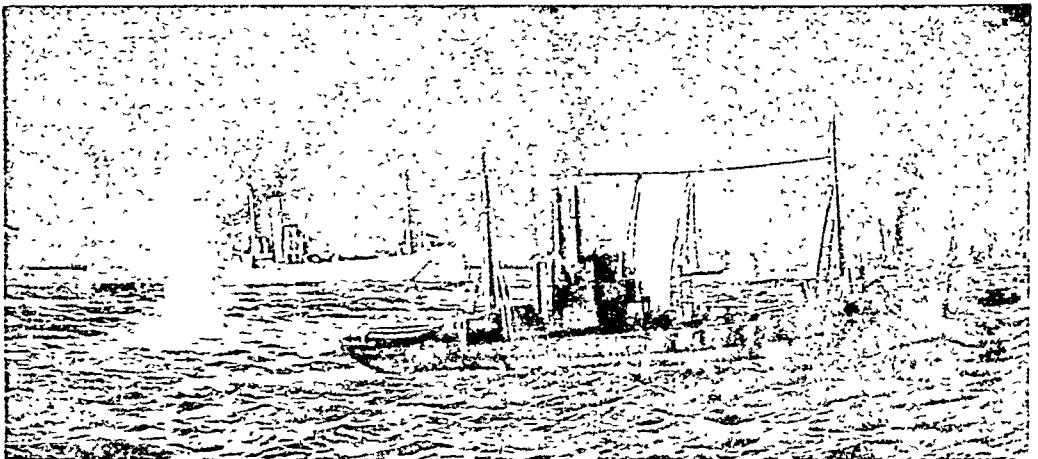
We may speak of a Pharisee as the antithesis (or opposite) of a Christian, and of the dispositions of two people as being antithetic (ăn ti thet' ik, *adj.*) or antithetical (ăn ti thet' ik àl, *adj.*). Words are antithetically (ăn ti thet' ik àl li, *adv.*) placed in a sentence when they are so placed as to form a contrast.

Gr. E. *anti* against, *thesis* placing, from *tithenai* to place. SYN.: Contrast, counter-proposition, counter-statement, opposition. ANT.: Comparison, similitude.

**antitoxin** (ăn ti toks' in), *n.* Matter which prevents poisons from forming in the body, or destroys them if already there. (F. *antitoxique*.)

Toxins are poisons formed in the body by certain diseases. An antitoxin injected into a vein protects the body against these diseases, such as smallpox, cholera, and typhoid fever.

Gr. E. *anti* against, *toxikon*, poison for arrows (from *toxon* bow).



Anti-submarine.—During the World War many anti submarine devices were used to destroy enemy underwater craft. Not the least effective were depth-bombs, which were dropped by destroyers and trawlers and exploded beneath the waves.

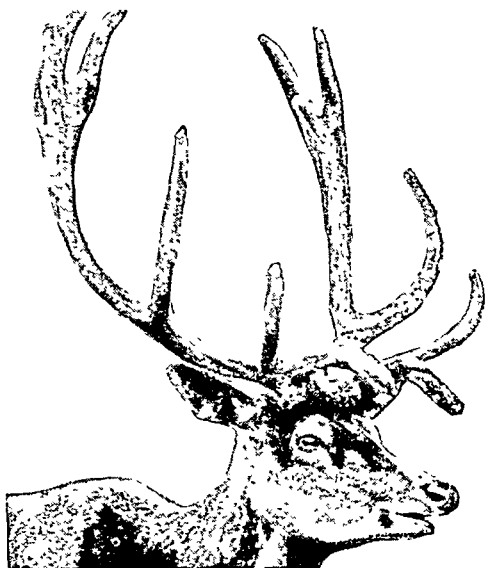
**anti-trade winds** (än'ti träd windz), *n. pl.* A name of oceanic winds. (F. *vent contre-alizé*.)

These winds blow in a direction contrary to that of the trade winds, hence their name. In the northern hemisphere their direction is generally south-west, and in the southern hemisphere they blow from the north-west.

Gr. E. *anti* against, and *trade winds*.

**antler** (änt' lër), *n.* The branched horn of deer. (F. *andouiller*.)

We speak of the horns of a stag, but really animals of this kind have antlers of bone,



Antler.—The entire bony structure on one side of the head of a deer, and also each branch, is called an antler.

a very different material from the horns of a cow. A red deer casts or throws them off every spring, and grows another pair every summer, bigger than the previous ones. At first the new antlers are covered with what is called velvet, a soft skin which is rubbed off by the animal against a tree or the ground. In most species of deer only the males are antlered (änt' lërd, *part. adj.*). The word antler describes, strictly, the lowest branch, but is also used for each other branch or point, or for the whole of one side of a pair of antlers. Sportsmen who hunt or stalk stags prize their trophies according to the number of points on the antlers. A red deer with twenty-four points has been shot in New Zealand; and Germany claims a record with one having forty-four points.

O.F. *antoillier*, from L.L. *anteocularis* (*adj.*), from *ante* in front, *oculus* eye, the branch of the horn in front of the eye.

**ant-lion** (änt' li ön), *n.* The larva of an insect resembling the dragon-fly; the insect itself. (F. *fourni-lion*.)

The larvae of dragon-flies are very like beasts of prey in their habits. The ant-lion,

too, has a larva which pounces on its prey with lion-like cunning and savagery. It makes a little pit in sand, lies at the bottom almost completely buried, and waits for a passing ant to tumble in. It kills its victim, and, having sucked the body, throws it out. The scientific name is *Myrmeleon formicarius*.

E. *ant* and *lion*.

**antonym** (än' tō nim), *n.* A word which is opposite in meaning to another. (F. *antonyme*.)

Antonym is the opposite or the antonym of synonym, which is a word that has the same meaning as another. The following words are antonyms for "good," "deep," and "separately" respectively: "bad," "shallow," and "together."

Gr. *anti* opposed to, *onoma* name.

**Anu** (ä'nū), *n.* A Babylonian god. (F. *Anou*.)

The supreme god of Heaven, Anu was one of the earliest deities of the Babylonians. His name is said to mean dweller on high or the high one.

**Anubis** (ä nū' bis), *n.* An Egyptian god. (F. *Anubis*.)

The Egyptian sculptures represent Anubis, the supposed son of Osiris and Isis, or, according to the Greek writers, of Osiris and Nephthys, as a man with the head of a dog or jackal. His duty was to guard the tombs of the dead, whose souls he conducted into the next world, where he assisted Osiris in weighing them. The Greeks identified him with Hermes. The Egyptian form is Anup.



Anvil.—A smith hammering and shaping ironwork on an anvil.

**anvil** (än' vil), *n.* A block of iron or steel on which a smith hammers and shapes metal; a tiny bone in the ear. (F. *enclume*.)

To do its work well an anvil must be much heavier than the hammer. The anvil of a



steam hammer may weigh as much as 500 tons.

The anvil of the ear is so called because it is struck by another bone called the hammer. It passes on the movement of the ear-drum from another little bone to the inner part of the ear.

A matter is said to be on the anvil when it is being talked over or planned out from every point of view. A person is said to be between the hammer and the anvil when he is in a difficulty from which there seems to be no escape.

A.-S. *anfil(e)*. The Old High German *anafalz* comes from *ana* and *valzen* (falzen) to put together (root *falt* to strike, hammer). Others connect with *an-* and *fealdan* to fold (on the anvil before striking).

**anxious** (änk' shüs), *adj.* Troubled in mind; distressing; very desirous. (F. *inquiet, désireux*.)

When we say that we are anxious about someone, we mean that we are worried about them, doubtful as to their safety or well-being. We pass an anxious night when we are filled with disturbing thoughts during the hours of darkness. When we say that we are anxious for a certain time to come, we mean that we are filled with a more or less troubled desire for that time to come, we are anxiously (änk' shüs li, *adv.*) awaiting it, or, in other words, that we are filled with anxiety (äng zi'é ti, *n.*).

L. *anxius*, from *angere* to choke. SYN.: Apprehensive, perplexed, solicitous. ANT.: Calm, composed, unconcerned.

**any** (en' i), *adj.* and *pron.* One or some indefinitely; whoever; whichever. *adv.* At all. (F. *quelque; qui que ce soit*.)

We use this word when talking either of things or of people, though sometimes we join a word to show which it is we are talking about. When we wish to speak of any person, for instance, we may use the word anybody (ën'i bod'i, *pron.*), and in connexion with inanimate objects, we may use the word anything (en' i thing, *pron.*). Anyhow (en' i hou, *adv.*) means at any rate, or whatever the conditions may be, or we may use the word in a haphazard and slipshod way.

Anyway (en' i wä, *adv.*) is used in much the same way as anyhow. For instance, we say: "Anyway (or anyhow) I shall go." In reference to places, we use the word anywhere (en' i liwär, *adv.*) meaning in any place, and occasionally anywhither (en' i hwith'er, *adv.*) for to or towards any place. Some writers, H. G. Wells among them, use anywhen (en' i hwen', *adv.*) for ever or at any time. Anywise (en' i wiz, *adv.*) means anyhow.

A.-S. *aenig*, from *æn* one, -ig *adj.* suffix. G. *einig*.

**Anzac** (än' zäk), *adj.* Of or relating to the military forces from Australia or New Zealand, employed during the World War of 1914-18. *n.* A member of these.

This name is formed from the first letters of the words Australian (and) New Zealand Army

Corps. Long names and titles in common use are often shortened for convenience.

Sometimes syllables are left out. For example, during the World War the British soldiers called the German *Minenwerfer* (trench mortar) a Minnie. Often the initials are used in everyday speech, for instance, V.C. for Victoria Cross. The Defence of the Realm Act, 1914, became Dora, from four of its initial letters, and the soldier from the antipodes with his long official name could hardly avoid being called an Anzac. Sometimes these words are forgotten as soon as the need for them ends, but Anzac has stayed and is likely to remain because of the superb daring and fighting qualities of the men to whom the name was given.

**Aonian** (ä ö' ni än), *adj.* Relating to Aonia or to the Muses. (F. *aonien*.)

Aonia was a district of Boeotia, in ancient Greece. Within its boundaries was Mount Helicon, which was the favourite haunt of the Muses and the chief seat of their worship.

**aorist** (ä ö' rist), *n.* The indefinite past tense in the Greek language. (F. *aoriste*.)

It corresponds to the simple past tense of the English verb. The word aoristic (ä ö' ris' tik, *adj.*) means relating to the aorist, and is also sometimes used to denote undefined.

Gr. *aoristos* undefined, from *a-* not, *horizein* to bound, define, from *horos* boundary, limit.

**aorta** (ä ör' tä), *n.* The great artery which carries the blood from the heart to all the other arteries except those going to the lungs. (F. *aorte*.)

**Aortic** (ä ör' tik, *adj.*) means of or relating to the aorta.

Gr. *aortē*, from *airein* to raise, L.L. *aorta*.

**apace** (ä :päs'), *adv.* At a quick rate. (F. *à grands pas*.)

This word is generally used in connexion with the flight of time. When we talk of anything coming on apace, we mean that it is either approaching or improving very rapidly.

E. *a-* = on, and *pace*. SYN.: Fast, quickly, rapidly, swiftly. ANT.: Leisurely, slowly, sluggishly, tardily.

**apache** (a pash'), *n.* A city rough. (F. *apache*.)

This word is the name of a tribe of North American Indians. The Apaches were very fierce and warlike, and so the name came to be applied to street ruffians who rob and otherwise illtreat inoffensive people in Paris and other cities.



Aorta.—The heart, showing the aorta (A, B).

**apanage** (ăp'ă năj), *n.* A dependency ; a perquisite. Another spelling is appanage. (F. *apanage*.)

This word is chiefly used nowadays for a thing which naturally "goes with" something else. For nearly 600 years the princes of Wales have also been dukes of Cornwall, the duchy, with certain money grants, being their apanage. The original meaning of the word was provision made for younger sons.

L.L. *appanare* to provide with bread or maintenance, from *ap-* = *ad* to, *panis* bread. The suffix -age comes from L. *-aticum* through F.

**apart** (ă part'), *adv.* To one side ; separate. (F. *à part*, *séparé*.)

When a person is set apart from others, he is separated from them. The phrase is used in this sense in the Book of Psalms (iv, 3) : "The Lord hath set apart him that is godly." When the parts of a thing fall away from each other, they come apart.

L. *ad* to, *pars* (gen. *partis*) part, side. SYN. : Aloof, asunder, privately, secretly, separate. ANT. : Joined, openly, together.

**apartment** (ă part' mēnt), *n.* A single room in a house. (F. *pièce*, *appartement*.)

The plural apartments is more generally used, though in recent years we have adopted the American term apartment house when speaking of a house which is let off in single rooms or in suites of rooms.

L. *ad* to, *pars* (gen. *partis*) part, side, suffix -mentum expressing result of an act (set aside).

**apathy** (ăp'ă thi), *n.* Lack of feeling ; indifference. (F. *apathie*.)

Apathy is a state of mind which may be due to any one of several causes. Some people are apathetic (ăp'ă thet'ik, *adj.*) because they are simply dull-minded ; others through ill-treatment ; others because they are tired.

In the early days of the World War (1914-18), when the British forces had to retreat from Mons, the men got no rest for days on end. At last many of them lay down in the market square of a small town.

A brave British officer, hearing of this, and realizing that they were in great danger of being captured, made up his mind to save them if he could. Finding that the men were too apathetic to be roused by words, he bought in a shop a toy drum and a tin whistle. Beating the drum, and followed by his sergeant playing "The British Grenadiers" on the whistle, he marched round and round the square.

The music did what his words had failed to do. The men began to laugh. Then one staggered to his feet ; then another ; then a third. At last they had all fallen-in, rid of their apathy ; and so they marched away.

Gr. *apatheia*, from *a-* not, *pathos* feeling. SYN. : Indifference, insensibility, sluggishness, unconcern. ANT. : Alertness, interest.

**ape** (ăp), *n.* A tailless or short-tailed monkey. *v.t.* To imitate. (F. *singe* ; *singer*.)

All monkeys are not apes. This word was formerly used rather loosely, but modern



Ape.—At the top is a white-handed gibbon of the Malay Peninsula, in the centre a chimpanzee of western and central Africa, and at the bottom an orang-utan of Sumatra and Borneo.

zoologists now use it only as a general term to describe *Anthropoid* apes, or animals that most resemble man. The apes, therefore, include the gorilla, the chimpanzee, the gibbons, and the orang-utan.

To imitate someone, as a monkey does, is to ape or act apishly (*āp' ish li, adv.*). Such apish (*āp' ish, adj.*) conduct is apery (*āp' ēr i, n.*) or apishness (*āp' ish nēs, n.*).

A.-S. *apa*; cognate forms in the other Teut. languages. SYN.: Affect, copy, mimic, personate, represent. ANT.: Change, modify, vary.

**apeak** (*ā pēk'*), *adj.* Upright or almost upright. (F. *à pic.*)

An anchor is said to be apeak when its chain has been hauled in until it is upright, and the ship is over the anchor.

F. *à* - to, *pic* summit, peak.

**aperient** (*ā pēr' ient*), *n.* A medicine which assists food from which the goodness has been extracted to pass from the body. *adj.* Laxative. **Aperitive** (*ā per' i tiv, n.* and *adj.*) has similar meanings. (F. *apéritif, purgatif.*)

L. *aperire*, pres. p. *aperiens* (gen. -*entis*) to open.

**aperture** (*āp' ēr tūr*), *n.* An opening or gap. (F. *ouverture.*)

A crack or hole in a fence through which we may peep into the next garden is an aperture.

L. *apertura*, from *aperire* to open. SYN.: Chasm, gap, hole, opening, rift.

**apery** (*āp' ēr i*), *n.* The act of aping or mimicking. See ape.

**apetalous** (*ā pet' ā lūs*), *adj.* Without petals. (F. *apétale.*)

A number of flowers, including those of the willow, oak, and grasses have neither petals nor sepals. Others, such as those of the elm and nettle, have sepals but no petals. In both cases the flowers are apetalous. Some flowers, such as the wood anemone, are really apetalous, but have sepals that look like petals.

Gr. *a* - not, without, *pétalon* leaf.

**apex** (*ā' peks*), *n.* The topmost point. (F. *sommet.*)

This word was formerly used to describe the peak of a cap worn by certain priests, called *flamens*, in ancient Rome. Nowadays apex means the topmost point, as of a mountain, or of a triangle, but we sometimes use it in a figurative sense in referring to the highest pitch of anything, such as the fame of a person. There are two plural forms of the word, *apexes* (*ā' peks ēs*) and *apices* (*āp' i sēz*; *ā' pi sēz*).

A thing placed at the topmost point of any object is said to be apical (*ā' pi kāl, adj.*) and to be placed apically (*ā pi kāl li, adv.*). In botany, apiculate (*ā pik' ū lāt, adj.*) or apiculated (*ā pik' ū lāt ēd, adj.*) describes a fruit which ends abruptly in a little point.

L. *apex*, perhaps from *ap-ere* (p.p. *aptus*) to fasten, fit. SYN.: Acme, pinnacle, summit, vertex. ANT.: Base, foot, root.

**aphasia** (*ā fā' zi ā*), *n.* Paralysis causing loss of the power of speech. **Aphasy** (*āf' ā zi*) is another spelling. (F. *aphasie.*)

Aphasia usually comes on suddenly. The patient may be able to understand what is said to him, but a severe attack may affect his mind, and take away his understanding. In some cases he is able to speak, but his speech is only a stringing together of words which have no meaning. Both conditions are aphasic (*ā fā' zik, adj.*).

Gr. *aphasia*, from *a* - not, *phasis* speech (*phanai* to speak).

**aphelion** (*ā fē' li ōn*), *n.* The point in the orbit or path of a planet or comet most distant from the sun. **Aphelia** (*ā fē' li ā*) is the plural. (F. *aphélie.*)

The word means away from the sun, and by the addition of a word meaning turning we get **apheliotropic** (*ā fē li ō trop' ik, adj.*), used of plants or

parts of plants which turn or bend away from the sun or a strong light. They are shade-lovers which behave **apheliotropically** (*ā fē li ō trop' ik āl li, adv.*) or exhibit **apheliotropism** (*ā fē li ōt' rōp izm, n.*).

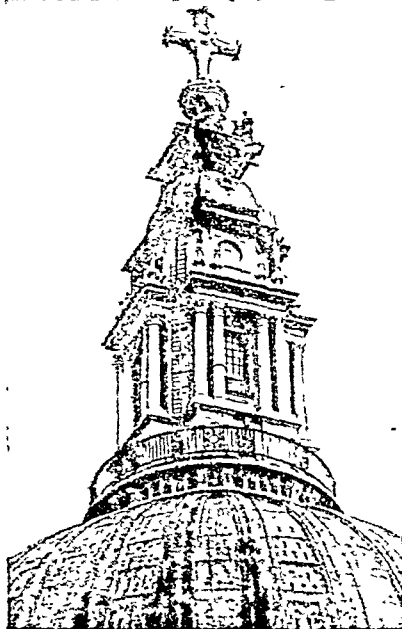
Gr. *aph-* = *apo* from, *helios* sun.

**aphis** (*āf' is*), *n.* A small soft insect, sometimes called the plant-louse. **Aphides** (*āf' i dēz*) is the plural. (F. *aphis.*)

Twelve or more successive generations born during one summer—such is the prolific way in which some kinds of aphides multiply. Every gardener knows what a pest aphides often are. There are many species, perhaps the commonest being the rose aphis (*Aphis rosea*), which infests rose bushes; the leaf-curling aphis (*A. pomi*), abundant on apple trees; and the bean aphis (*A. rumicis*), which haunts broad beans.

Aphides suck the juices of the plant, and they give out a liquid called honey-dew, which attracts ants, thus giving rise to the curious name of ant-cows, applied to insects of an aphidian (*ā fid' i ān, adj.*) nature.

Perhaps from Gr. *apheidēis* unsparing, greedy, from *a* - not, *pheidesthai* to spare,



Apex.—The cross is the apex or highest point of St. Paul's Cathedral, London.

**aphorism** (ăf' ô rizm), *n.* A pithy saying containing an important truth. (F. *aphorisme*.)

Hippocrates, who lived at the time of Socrates and Plato and was called the Father of Medicine, coined many aphorisms, one of which was: "Art is long, life is short." In other words this means that during the longest life only a little may be learned of any art or science.

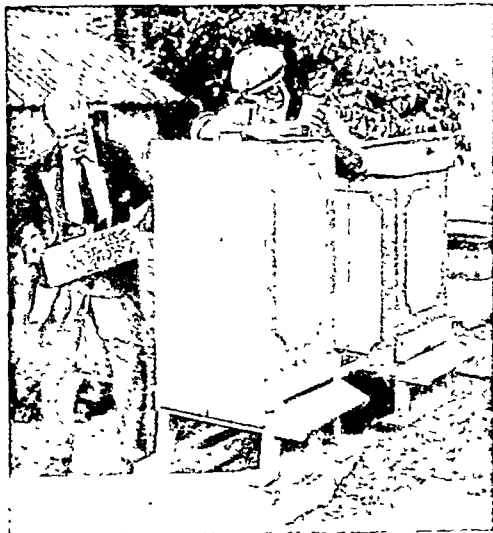
To utter or write aphorisms is to aphorize (ăf' ô riz, *v.i.*). We speak of aphoristic (ăf' ô ris' tik, *adj.*) or aphorismic (ăf' ô riz' mik, *adj.*) utterings or sayings, and of something as aphoristically (ăf' ô ris' tik âl li, *adv.*) expressed. An aphorist (ăf' ô rist, *n.*) is one who utters or writes aphorisms, such as Hippocrates.

Gr. *aphorismos*, from *aphorizein* to mark off, define, from *aph-* = *apo* from, off, *horos* boundary. SYN.: Adage, apophthegm, maxim, proverb, saw.

**aphyllous** (â fil' ūs), *adj.* Leafless. (F. *aphylle*.)

Many trees shed their leaves each year, and for a season are aphyllous. The term, however, is properly applied to plants which are naturally leafless, such as many species of cactus, and some parasites such as the dodder. Fungi and algae, including seaweeds, in which there is no clear distinction between stem and leaves, are clearly aphyllous.

Gr. *aphyllos*, from *a-* not, without, *phyllon* leaf.



Apiarian.—An apiarian, or apiarist as he is often called, attending to his apiary.

**apiarian** (â pi âr' i ân), *adj.* Connected with bees or bee-keeping. *n.* A bee-keeper. (F. *apicole*.)

A bee-keeper may be called an apiarian because he has apiarian interests, but the word commonly used is apiarist (â' pi âr ist, *n.*). His bee-hives as a whole are called his apiary (â' pi âr i, *n.*), whether he has only a

few, or two or three thousand, like some apiarists in California.

L. *apiarius*, from *apis* bee.

**apical** (â' pi kâl), *adj.* To do with an apex, or the top. See apex.

**apiculture** (â' pi kül tūr), *n.* The art of bee-keeping. (F. *apiculture*.)

The Greeks and the Romans kept bees, and country people in Britain have also done so probably ever since Roman times. Nevertheless, the art of apiculture is a comparatively modern development, and it is only during the past hundred years that commercial apiculture has been made possible by the use of comb foundations, movable frames to hold the honeycomb, and box hives.

With improved apparatus has also come greater and more exact knowledge of the honey bee's habits, and the prevention of the diseases to which it is subject. Some colleges and universities now have professors of apiculture.

L. *apis* bee, and *cultura* cultivation.

**apiece** (â pēs'), *adv.* For or to each individually. (F. *chacun, par tête*.)

When we mean that each person among a number receives a certain thing, we say that they "received one apiece." If we say things cost a shilling apiece we mean they cost that sum each. At one time the word apieces was used, meaning "in pieces," and people might say "it fell all apieces," inferring that it fell apart in pieces. This word is not now used in ordinary English.

E. *a-* on, and *piece*. SYN.: Distributively, each, individually, separately, severally. ANT.: Collectively, together.

**Apis** (â' pis), *n.* A sacred bull worshipped by the Egyptians at Memphis. (F. *Apis*.)

Regarded as the representative of Osiris,

Apis had a black hide, with a triangular marking of white on the forehead, a crescent-like spot of white on the right side, and below the tongue a curious knot like a beetle. At death he became an Osiris, or an Osiris-Hapi, the Egyptian hieroglyphic for Apis being *hapi*, meaning "the hidden." The birthday of Apis, at the period of the rise of the River Nile, was celebrated each year as a national festival.



Apis.—The sacred bull worshipped in ancient Egypt.

**apish** (âp' ish), *adj.* Like an ape, or in the manner of an ape. See ape.

**aplomb** (a plon'), *n.* Self-possession; coolness; the perpendicular. (F. *aplomb*.)

When scientists wish to ascertain the direction of the earth's attraction, or when nautical men require to sound the ocean's depth, they use what is called a plummet or plumb-line, which is a weight attached to a

line. This line hangs perpendicular or aplomb, because of its weight.

The scientific use of the word has been dropped, but the general use remains. When we refer to anyone who can act and speak with perfect self-possession, and is never influenced by any disturbing cause, we may say that he acts with aplomb.

F. *aplomb*, from *à* by, according to, *plomb* lead, plummet.

**Apocalypse** (à pok' à lips), *n.* The name of the last book of the New Testament, called the Revelation of St. John; a revelation. (F. *apocalypse*.)

"The Apocalypse" is so called because it is akin to prophecy, and belongs to a peculiar form of Jewish literature, which originated at the time of Israel's oppression and brought consolation and hope to the distressed nation



Apocalypse.—An illustration from a fourteenth century French version of "The Revelation," in the British Museum.

by forecasting promises of future glory. Such visions were usually veiled in symbolism.

The Book of Daniel is the earliest example. According to most scholars, it appeared at the time of the Maccabaeen struggle. The prophetic writer, while reflecting the times in which he lives, interprets them so as to reveal the Divine forces at work, and predicts in the form of symbol and allegory the ultimate issue of the conflict.

In Israel, from the time of the Book of Daniel to the end of the first century A.D., this manner of writing was very popular. The Apocalypse of Baruch, the Book of Enoch, the Ascension of Isaiah are other notable examples in this stream of Jewish literature.

The word Apocalypse is often used in conversation for any revelation or disclosure. We say a subject is apocalyptic (à pok à lip' tik, *adj.*) or apocalyptical (à pok à lip' tik àl, *adj.*), or that it is treated apocalyptically (à pok à lip' tik àl li, *adv.*), when it possesses or exhibits the characteristics of this particular form of Jewish writing.

Gr. *apokalypsis*, from *apokalyptein* to reveal, from *apo* off, un-, *kalyptein* to cover.

**apocarpous** (äp ò kar' pùs) *adj.* Having the carpels or sections of the ovary distinct. (F. *apocarpe*.)

The ovary of a flower consists of one or

more parts called carpels. When these remain separate and distinct, as in some plants of the buttercup family, and in the blackberry and various other plants of the rose family, the ovary is said to be apocarpous.

Gr. *apo* from, *karpós* fruit.

**Apocrypha** (à pok' ri fà), *n.* Those books which are not in the authorized version of the Old Testament, but which are included in the Greek and Latin versions. (F. *livres apocryphes*.)

These books are excluded from the English version because the Hebrew version excluded them on the ground that they do not form part of the sacred Scripture. There are fourteen such books, some of which bear the name of Solomon, Daniel, Jeremiah, and Ezra as their authors. Protestant scholars, while admitting that the books are interesting and valuable, maintain that they are not genuine or authentic, and ought not to be included in the Bible.

The Roman Catholic Church left the question open until, in 1546, the Council of Trent pronounced that, excepting the Prayer of Manasses and Esdras iii and iv, they are canonical or authoritative.

There are also apocryphal (à pok' ri fàl, *adj.*) books of the New Testament—gospels, acts, epistles, etc.—which the Christian Church has rejected as not being genuine or authoritative, and which do not appear in versions of the New Testament.

Gr. *apokrypha* (neuter pl. of *apokryphos*) things hidden, from *apo* away, *kryptein* to hide.

**apod** (äp' òd), *n.* A fish without ventral fins; a footless animal. (F. *apode*.)

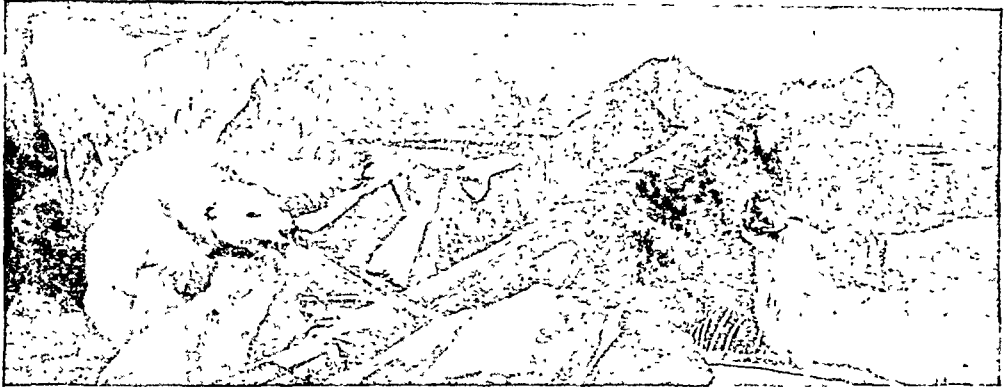
A human being has fore limbs and hind limbs—arms and legs. A bird's fore limbs have been developed into wings. A fish, which is a vertebrate, that is, has a backbone, usually has pectoral fins, which are altered fore limbs, and ventral fins, which are hind limbs, but only partly developed, because they are not needed as are our legs. There is a group of fishes with no ventral fins, like the eel, which scientists have classified as apodes (äp' òd èz, *n.pl.*), on account of their apodal (äp' òd àl, *adj.*) character.

Gr. *apous* (gen. *apodos*) footless, from *a-* not, without, *pous* (*podos*) foot.

**apogee** (äp' ò jè), *n.* The point in the path of the moon, or any of the planets, most distant from the earth. (F. *apogée*.)



Apod.—The silver eel, one of the apodes.



**Apophthegm.**—"Man proposes, but God disposes." Sir Edwin Landseer's vivid illustration of an apophthegm, a pithy saying containing, in few words, an important truth.

When the sun is at its greatest distance from the earth it is said to be in apogee, a reminder that at one time the earth was believed to be the centre of the universe. It is not that the sun is in apogee, but that the earth is in aphelion, that is, at its farthest point from the sun.

The word may be used figuratively as when John Lothrop Motley says: "The trade of the Netherlands had by no means reached its apogee"—its highest point. Such a position would be apogean (*āp ō jē' ān, adj.*).

Gr. *apogaion* (neuter of *apogaios*, *adj.*), from *apo* from, *gē* earth.

**Apollyon** (*ā pol' i ōn*), *n.* A bad angel; a name applied to Satan. (F. *Apollyon*.)

This word is the Greek term for the Hebrew Abaddon. The "foul fiend" in "The Pilgrim's Progress," whom Christian encounters on his pilgrimage through the Valley of Humiliation, is called Apollyon.

Gr. *Apollyon*, from *apo* utterly, *olymai* to destroy.

**apologue** (*āp' ō log*), *n.* A short fable with a moral. (F. *apologue*.)

The characters that take part in an apologue are usually animals or trees.

L. *apologus*, Gr. *apologos*, from *apo* from, off, *logos* speech.

**apology** (*ā pol' ō ji*), *n.* Something written or said in defence of what appears to other people to be wrong; an expression of regret for an offence. (F. *apologie*.)

The first is the older, but less often used, meaning of the word. In 1845 John Henry Newman, author of the famous hymn, "Lead, Kindly Light," left the English Church and entered the Church of Rome, in which he rose to the dignity of cardinal. Newman was attacked for his change of creed, so he published, in 1864, his "Apologia," a book which defended and gave the reason for his action.

An apology of the other kind usually not only expresses regret, but admits that a fault has been committed. It can be used in a less serious sense, as when a person sends an apology for not being able to accept an in-

itation. Such a letter or speech is apologetic (*ā pol ō jet' ik, adj.*), or apologetical (*ā pol ō jet' ik āl, adj.*), and expresses regret apologetically (*ā pol ō jet' ik āl li, adv.*).

Cardinal Newman, when writing his book, was an apologist (*ā pol' ō jist, n.*) or a defender of the course he had taken. A person who defends himself in this manner makes use of arguments called apologetics (*ā pol ō jet' iks, n.pl.*) and one who makes an apology is said to apologize (*ā pol' ō jiz*) for his offence.

Gr. L. *apologia*, from *apo* from, off, *logos* speech. SYN.: Defence, excuse, explanation, justification, vindication. ANT.: Censure, charge, insult, offence, wrong.

**apophthegm** (*āp' ō them*), *n.* A terse, pithy saying, containing an important truth (F. *apophthegme*.)

"Man proposes, but God disposes" is an apophthegm, or an apophthegmatic (*āp ō theg māt' ik, adj.*) statement. A truth may be apophthegmatically (*āp ō theg māt' ik āl li, adv.*) expressed.

Gr. *apophthegma* something uttered, from *apo* from, out, *phthengesthai* to speak plainly. SYN.: Adage, aphorism, axiom, maxim, proverb. ANT.: Discourse, harangue, sermon.

**apoplexy** (*āp' ō plek sī*), *n.* A brain trouble, caused by the bursting of a blood-vessel or pressure on the brain. (F. *apoplexie*.)

A person attacked by apoplexy loses his senses and may fall down. An apoplectic (*āp ō plek' tik, adj.*) fit may cause death at once, or the patient may recover with partial loss of powers.

Gr. *apoplēxia*, from *apo* utterly, *plēssein* to strike (*plēxis* stroke).

**a-port** (*ā pōrt'*), *adv.* On or toward the left-hand side of a ship. (F. *à bâbord*.)

A = on, and *port*. ANT.: A-starboard.

**aposiopesis** (*āp ō sī ō pē' sis*), *n.* A sudden breaking-off of a sentence, made for the sake of effect. Here is an example: "His conduct was remarkable and—but you all know what sort of a man he is." (F. *aposiopèse*.)

Gr. *aposiōpēsis* becoming silent, from *apo* completely, *siopān* to be silent.

**apostasy** (â pos' tâ si), *n.* The forsaking of religious faith; the renunciation of religious vows; the denial of moral or religious truths; the departure from moral or religious standards of Society to which one has promised loyalty. (F. *apostasie*.)

It was the common belief of the early Church that there would be a great falling away from the faith, of a great apostasy, on the eve of Christ's return to establish His kingdom.

Gr. *apostasia* defection, revolt, from *apo* away from, *stasis* standing (*stēnai* to stand).

**apostate** (â pos' tât), *n.* One who is guilty of renouncing his faith. *adj.* Unfaithful. (F. *apostat*.)

Originally the word referred to a soldier's desertion at the time of war. Later it came to be applied to a person who from unworthy motives departed from his creed or principles, especially to those who abandoned the Christian religion.

To apostatize (â pos' tâ tiz, *v.i.*) is to give up the faith which one has professed, or to leave the party to which one has vowed allegiance. An apostatical (âp ô stât' ik âl, *adj.*) person is one who is false or traitorous.

Gr. *apostatēs* rebel, renegade, from *apo* away from, *statos* standing, *adj.* (*stēnai* to stand). SYN.: Deserter, pervert, renegade, traitor. ANT.: Adherent, supporter, zealot.

**a posteriori** (â pôs ter i ô' ri), *adj.* and *adv.* Reasoning from results, or things observed, to causes; from a number of cases to a general rule or law. (F. *à posteriori*.)

Twenty cows on a farm die suddenly from some unknown cause. They are found to have eaten a certain kind of berry, not known before to hurt cattle. There is now sufficient proof for reasoning *a posteriori* that any cow which swallows such berries will die.

L. from what follows, from effect to cause.

**apostle** (â pos' l), *n.* A messenger; one sent to preach a doctrine. (F. *apôtre*.)

The name was given by Jesus to those whom He called and commissioned to preach the Gospel. An apostle is a delegate or a representative of the person who sends him forth, and speaks with his authority. Later the name came to be given to a wider circle than that of the chosen Twelve. Paul and Barnabas, Andronicus and Junia (Romans xvi, 7) were called apostles.

Eventually the term was applied to one who acted apostolically (âp ôs tol' ik âl li, *adv.*), or after the manner of the Apostles, as any minister of the Gospel, or missionary, whose work was outstanding and fruitful, like Augustine, who was called the apostle of the English, or Boniface, the apostle of Germany. The office of an apostle is an apostolate (â pos' tô lâ, *n.*) or an apostleship (â pos' l ship, *n.*). The matters connected with such an office are said to be apostolic (âp ôs tol' ik, *adj.*) or apostolical (âp ôs tol' ik âl, *adj.*).

The Apostles' Creed (*n.*) is the confession of faith which tradition says was handed down by the Apostles. In its present form it can be traced back to the eighth century. The substance of it is found in the writings of the Apostolic Fathers (*n.*), which is the name given to those Christian writers of the first century, who immediately followed the Apostles—for example, Clement of Rome, Hermas, Barnabas, Ignatius, and Polycarp.

Apostolic Succession is the doctrine that only persons who have been ordained can ordain others, and that from the time of the Apostles unto the present day such an unbroken chain of succession can be traced. According to the doctrine of the Church of Rome and the High Anglicans, those who are ordained by bishops receive through this



From the painting by Eugene Burnand in the Luxembourg.

Apostle.—The apostles John and Peter on their way to the sepulchre on the first Easter morning.

succession, apostolic powers and privileges in the Church. The papacy is sometimes referred to as the Apostolic See, and the Apostolic Vicar is the cardinal who represents the Pope in extraordinary missions.

**Apostle-spoons** (*n.pl.*) are silver spoons decorated with figures of the Apostles on the handle, frequently given as a present at baptism.

Gr. *apostolos* one sent away, from *apo* off, away, *stellein* to send.

**apostrophe** (à pos' trô fê), *n.* A form of exclamation in which the speaker or writer addresses the absent or dead as if present, and the inanimate, or lifeless things, as if capable of replying; the sign (') used to show the omission of a letter or letters and the English possessive case. (F. *apostrophe*.)

In Shakespeare's "Julius Caesar" (iii, 1), Mark Antony on beholding the body of the great dictator after his assassination, exclaims:

O mighty Caesar! dost thou lie so low?  
Are all thy conquests, glories, triumphs,  
spoils,

Shrunk to this little measure?

Things without life are addressed in the following examples of apostrophe:  
Hail! smiling morn.

Frailty, thy name is woman.

Examples of the use of the sign (') are:

"Don't" for "do not."

The boy's books (possessive case).

For goodness' sake (possessive case).

To insert the apostrophe in this way, or to address a person or thing as described above, is to apostrophize (à pos' trô fiz, *v.t.*). From apostrophe we have the adjective *apostrophic* (ăp ô strof' ik.)

Gr. *apostrophe* turning away (to address in speech or writing), from *apo* off, away, *strephein* to turn.

**apothecary** (ă poth' ê kâr i), *n.* A pharmaceutical chemist or dealer in drugs. (F. *pharmacien*.)

The word, not very often used now, takes us back to the days of the old alchemists, when all kinds of queer medicines were made. In the early apothecaries' shops almost all the medicines were produced from vegetable substances, but to-day a great proportion of drugs consists of artificially made remedies.

We have gained a tremendous amount of knowledge, of course, but it is probable that we have lost some of the secrets of the herbs. Most schoolboys and schoolgirls are familiar with the apothecaries' weight (*n.*), with its scruples and drachms and curious signs.

M.E. *apotecarie*, O.F. *apotecaire*, L.L. *apothēcarius*, from *apothica* Gr. *apothēkē* storehouse, from *apo* away, *thēkē* case (from *tithenai* to put).

**apothecium** (ăp ô thē' shi ūm), *n.* The spore-case or spore-shield of a lichen or a seaweed. (F. *apothèque*.)

Some of the lichens produce their spores in a cup-shaped, or dish-shaped body, called the apothecium. In the common British species *Peziza*, which grows on rotting leaves or other decaying vegetation, the cups or apothecia (ăp ô thē' shi ā, *n.pl.*) are as much as two to three inches in diameter. The spore-cases of sea-weeds are also called apothecia.

Gr. *apothēkē* storehouse, from *apo* away, *thēkē* case (from *tithenai* to put).

**apothegm** (ăp' ô them). This is another spelling of apophthegm. See apophthegm.



From the painting by Zurbarán in Seville

Apotheosis.—The apotheosis of St. Thomas Aquinas.

**apotheosis** (ăp ô thē' ô sis; â poth' e ô' sis), *n.* The raising of a human being to the rank of a god. (F. *apothéose*.)

In the Roman Empire, statues of Julius Caesar and Augustus were placed in the temples and worship was paid to them. They were ranked with the heathen deities, and so apotheosized. The practice is supposed to have been a development of ancestor worship. To apotheosize (â poth' e ô' siz; â poth' e ô' siz, *v.t.*) is to raise to divine rank; and, less correctly, to enrol a man or woman among the saints, and occasionally the word is applied to the ascent of a saint to heaven and the glorified life after death.

Gr. *apotheosis*, from *apothēoun* to make a god (*theos*) of, and suffix *-osis* putting into a certain state.

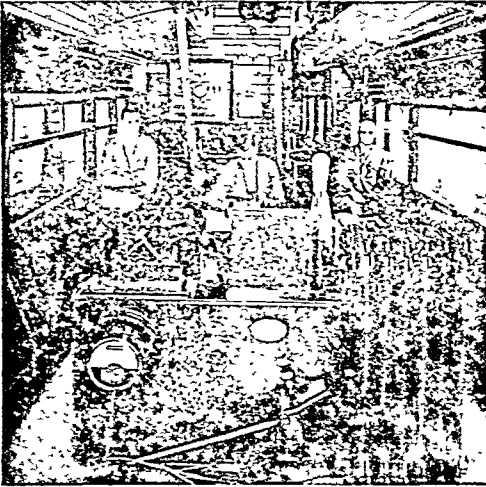


**appal** (ă pawl'), *v.t.* To terrify; to dismay. (F. *épouvanter*.)

The word **appal** is really descriptive of a state of horror or dismay or fear. We speak of an **appalling** (ă pawl' ing, *adj.*) sight, meaning a sight that would make an on-looker go pale with horror or dismay or fear. With reference to excessively poor people, we may say that they are **appallingly** (ă pawl' ing li, *adv.*) poor.

M.E. **appellen** to grow or make pale, O.F. *a(p)pal(l)ir*, from L. *ap-* = *ad* to, *pallidus* pale. *SYN.*: Alarm, daunt, discourage, dismay, frighten. *ANT.*: Embolden, encourage, reassure.

**appanage** (ăp' â năj). This is another spelling of **apanage**. See **apanage**.



**Apparatus.**—The apparatus in a dynamometer car, used to find the coal and water consumption of a locomotive, and the power developed at varying speeds.

**apparatus** (ăp â rā' tûs), *n.* Devices, instruments, machines, and tools (taken all together) needed for carrying out some form of work. (F. *appareil*.)

The word applies specially to the devices used by scientific men. The test-tubes, retorts, stills, measuring-glasses, and very delicate balances of a chemist are his apparatus.

L. **apparare** (p.p. *apparatus*) to make ready for, from *ap-* = *ad* to, *parare* to prepare.

**apparel** (ă pâr' ěl), *n.* Dress; attire; clothes; the process of preparing anything. *v.t.* To make ready; to furnish; to equip; to deck out, adorn or embellish. (F. *habiller*, *vêtement*; *habiller*, *vêtir*.)

In its most popular sense **apparel** is applied to clothing generally. Thus a boy on a rainy morning goes off to school in waterproof apparel; a crowd on the death of a monarch appears in mourning apparel; a gathering at a flower-show is seen in light summer apparel.

In another and less frequent use of the word a ship is said to be in proper apparel when she is made ready for sea. An example of the employment of the word in its restricted sense as an adornment is to be found

in descriptions of church vestments, the ornamental embroidery on which, is referred to as **apparel**.

O.F. **apaveiller** to put like things together, match, dress from *a-* to, *pareil* like, L.L. *paric(u)lus*, from *par* (gen. *paris*) equal, similar. *SYN.*: Costume, garments, raiment, robes, trappings. *ANT.*: Bareness, disarray, exposure, undress.

**apparent** (ă pâr' ěnt; â pâr' ěnt), *adj.* That may be seen; obvious; seeming. (F. *apparent*, *évident*.)

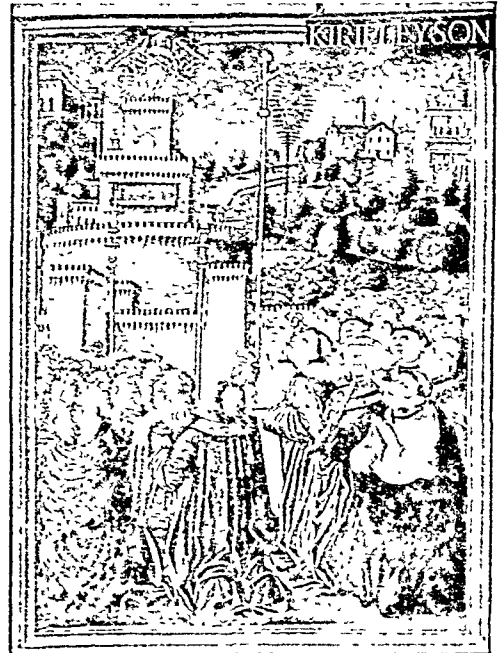
We speak of things being **apparent** to the naked eye, meaning that they are plainly to be seen without artificial aid; and we also speak of facts being **apparent** to the meanest intelligence, meaning that they are so obviously true that it does not need a clever person to understand them. We often use the word **apparently** (ă pâr' ěnt li; â pâr' ěnt li, *adv.*) when we mean seemingly, or to judge by appearances.

The heir-apparent to a throne is the person who, according to the laws of succession, will undoubtedly succeed to that throne.

L. **apparens** (gen. *apparentis*), pres. p. of *apparere*, from *ap-* = *ad* to, *parere* to appear. *SYN.*: Clear, distinct, evident, manifest, visible. *ANT.*: Doubtful, dubious, improbable, unimaginable.

**apparition** (ăp â rish' ũn), *n.* Act of appearing, of coming into sight, or becoming visible. (F. *apparition*.)

Commonly the word is used to mean a ghost, a spirit, or a spectre, but anything which suddenly becomes visible is an apparition; and anything strange in appearance



**Apparition.**—The apparition at Castello Sant' Angelo. From the Sforza Book of Hours in the British Museum.

may be said to be apparitional (ăp á rish' ūn āl, *adj.*).

The apparition of a star or of a planet is its appearance above the horizon, or after being hidden by some dark object passing between it and the observer. The circle of apparition is that part of the heavens within which the stars are visible all the year round.

*L. apparitio* (gen. *apparitionis*), from *ap-* = *ad* to, *parēre* to appear.

**apparitor** (ă pär' i tör), *n.* Any public servant of the ancient Roman magistrates; one who summons witnesses and jurors in a court; a beadle, mace-bearer, or an usher of a university or similar institution. (*F. appariteur.*)

Really, an apparitor is simply a person who appears, and in old Rome he might have been a secretary, a writer, or a messenger of some great man. The heralds of a hostile country would be the apparitors of war. The church courts of mediaeval England interfered with all sorts of every-day affairs, and although the archdeacon was the responsible officer, it often happened that his servant, the summoner or apparitor, had a free hand and paid off private grudges and took bribes as he went about collecting evidence and calling people to the court.

Chaucer, in "The Canterbury Tales," gives an amusing picture of an apparitor who possesses not one good point. He is ugly, dishonest, and drinks too much, and we can easily imagine what a bogey-man the apparitor seemed to simple-minded townspeople.

*L. apparitor*, from *ap-* = *ad* to, *parēre* to appear, suffix *-tor* expressing agent.

**appeal** (ă pēl'), *v.i.* To call; to refer; make supplication. *n.* An entreaty or earnest request. (*F. appeler, faire appel à; appel.*)

When we call upon a person for help we appeal for his assistance. In legal matters, we may appeal to a higher court to re-try our case. When an adverse vote is passed in Parliament there may follow a general election, or an appeal to the country.

In certain conditions, a person condemned by one court of justice may carry his case to a court of appeal, which may order a new trial. A verdict which can be thus appealed against is said to be appealable (ă pēl' ābl, *adj.*). A cry which indicates a desire for help is called an appealing (ă pēl' ing, *adj.*) cry, just as a facial expression which induces pity is called an appealing look. A person whose features express this desire for pity is said to look appealingly (ă pēl' ing li, *adv.*) or with appealingness (ă pēl' ing nēs, *n.*).

In certain sports it is necessary at times to request a ruling or decision from the referee, umpire, or judge on a point arising during the game. This is called an appeal. In association football, for example, a player may think an opponent is off-side and appeal to the referee for his verdict, although that official can and should adjudge the player to be off-side without an appeal being made.

In cricket the bowler, wicket-keeper, or other player makes an appeal to the umpire when he believes the batsman is out leg-before-wicket, or in some other way that may be open to doubt. In boxing, a contestant may appeal to the referee if he believes a foul blow has been struck at him.

*M.E. apelen, O.F. apeler, L. appellare* to accost, from *ap-* = *ad* to, *pellare* (not in use) connected with *pellere* to drive. *SYN.*: *v.* Entreat, invoke, request. *n.* Entreaty, petition, supplication. *ANT.*: *v.* Defy, disdain, deprecate. *n.* Deprecation, protestation, repudiation.

**appear** (ă pār'), *v.i.* To become or be visible; to seem; to come before the public. (*F. paraître, se présenter.*)

When anything comes into view, it is said to appear. When we say that a person appeared to turn to the right, we mean that it seemed to us that he did so. A man who presents himself before a body of people is said to appear before them, and a public singer or actor or other entertainer



Appear.—The Pons-Winnecke comet, first observed by Pons of Marseilles in 1818, which appears about every five and three-quarter years.

appears before the public when he performs upon a public platform or stage.

**Appearance** (ă pār' āns, *n.*) is the act or state of appearing and also sometimes that which appears. A man who has the appearance of a gentleman is a man who gives us the impression that he is a gentleman. We speak of a spirit form or phantom as an appearance. A book's first appearance is the occasion of its being first published. To all appearances means so far as anyone can

judge. To put in an appearance means to show oneself in person. A man's personal appearance is the look of a man, and the look of things we call appearances, as when we say that appearances are deceptive.

M.E. *aperen*, O.F. *aparoir*, L. *apparere*, from *ap-* = *ad* to, *parere* to become visible.

**appease** (ă pēz'), *v.t.* To pacify; to allay. (F. *apaiser*.)

When we eat we appease our hunger. When someone is very angry with us, and we are able to soothe or allay his anger, we appease his wrath. The act is appeasement (ă pēz' mēnt, *n.*), and the person's wrath is said to have been appeasable (ă pēz' ābl, *adj.*).

O.F. *a pais*, L. *ad pacem* (to bring a peace: *pax*), pacify. SYN.: Allay, calm, quiet, reconcile, soothe. ANT.: Aggravate, exasperate, incense, inflame, provoke.

**appellant** (ă pel' ānt), *adj.* Relating to appeals; invoking; accusing. *n.* One who appeals, especially to a higher court of law. (F. *appellant*.)

Sometimes, when a verdict has been given in one court of law, the party against whom the verdict has been declared is allowed to appeal to a higher court to hear the case again. Such a person is called an appellant, and the court to which the case is carried is an appellate (ă pel' āt, *adj.*) court.

Appellation (ăp ēl ā' shūn, *n.*) means the act of naming and also the name by which any thing or person is known, as well as a general name given to a class of persons or things as opposed to what is known as a proper name, that is, one belonging to an individual. The word appellative (ă pel' ā tiv, *adj.* and *n.*) is also applied to a proper name and a class-name.

M.E. *apeln*, O.F. *apeler*, L. *appellare* to call upon, from *ap-* = *ad* to, and an assumed *pellare* to speak (from *pellere* to drive, bring to).

**append** (ă pend'), *v.t.* To add; to hang on. (F. *appendre*, *ajouter*.)

Anything attached by way of supplement, such as notes at the end of a book, is appended and—though this is an unusual word—can be described as appendant (ă pend' ānt, *adj.* and *n.*).

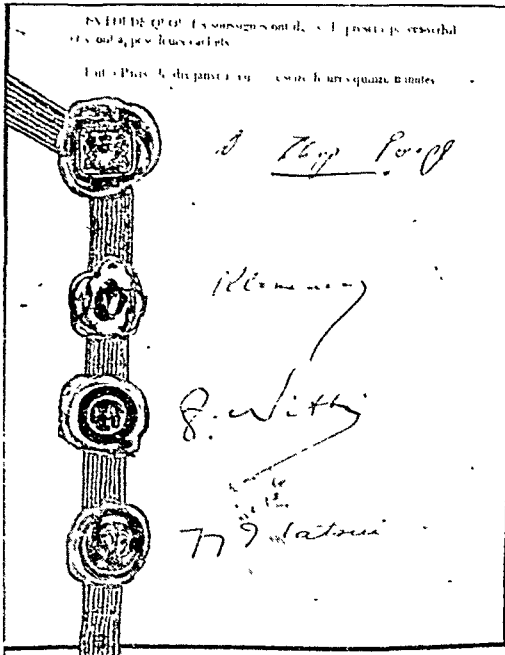
In the study of natural history, it is discovered that certain creatures or plants have organs or processes added to their general form which in many cases do not seem to be of any particular use. These are called appendages (ă pend' ā gēz, *n.pl.*). A small appendage is called in natural history an appendicle (ă pend' īkl, *n.*). Anything of the nature of an appendicle is said to be appendicular (ăp ēn dik' ū lār, *adj.*), and anything that has appendices is appendiculate (ăp ēn dik' ū lāt, *adj.*).

L. *appendere*, from *ap-* = *ad* to, *pendere* to hang. SYN.: Adjoin, affix, attach. ANT.: Deduct, disserve, remove.

**appendix** (ă pen' dīks), *n.* Something hung on or added; a supplement to a book; a lengthening of an organ of the body. (F. *appendice*.)

In physiology this word is particularly applied to that part of the large intestine which is called in full the vermiform (worm-shaped) appendix. This is thought by some to be the remnant of an earlier form of intestine. Inflammation of the appendix is called appendicitis (ă pend i sī' tis, *n.*). The plural of appendix is either appendices (ă pend' i sēz) or appendixes (ă pend' īk sēz).

L. *appendix*, from *ap-* = *ad* to, *pendere* to hang. SYN.: Codicil, postscript, rider, sequel, supplement.



Append.—The seals appended to the document which confirmed the Treaty of Versailles. It was signed on January 10th, 1920.

**apperception** (ăp ēr sep' shūn), *n.* The perceiving of a thing where the mind is aware of the act of perceiving; the perceiving of a thing in such a way that the object perceived is classed with other objects which are recognized as bearing upon it. (F. *aperception*.)

Perception is a very different thing from apperception. A monkey from his tree-top catches sight of a large yellowish stone lying by the side of a stream. The stone conveys nothing to the creature; the eye merely perceives the stone. A savage, passing by, sees the same stone, and it at once appeals to him as a good kind of stone for throwing at an enemy or a wild beast. In other words, he apperceives (ăp ēr sēvz', *v.t.*) it, that is, he connects the idea of the newly found stone with old ideas he has of hunting and war. A European mining engineer comes across the yellowish stone. He apperceives it in good earnest, for at once it conjures up visions of a rich deposit of gold and a prosperous future for himself. He has connected the idea of the nugget—for a nugget he knows it to



Apple.—The blossom and fruit of the apple-tree. Grown from very early times, the apple was probably introduced into England by the Romans. The wild apple is called the crab-apple.

be—with all his gathered engineering experience.

The testing of the apperceptive (ăp ér sep' tiv, *adj.*) faculty is a most important feature of education to-day. Indeed, the life of every intelligent man may be looked upon as one long course of apperception.

New L. *apperceptio* (gen. -ous), from *ap-* = *ad* to, *percipere* to perceive (p.p. *perceptus*).

**appertain** (ăp ér tăn'), *v.i.* To belong to, by nature or by right or by custom; to form part of; to be appropriate to. (F. *appartenir à, faire partie de*.)

We may say that cold appertains to the polar regions, which are colder than any other parts of the earth's surface. A porch too, appertains to a house, for it is built on to it and is part of it.

O.F. *apartenir*, L.L. *appertinere*, from L. *ap-* = *ad* to, *pertinere* to belong. SYN: Belong, concern, relate.

**appetite** (ăp' è tît), *n.* Desire; natural inclination; power of enjoying food. (F. *appétit*.)

We speak of having a good appetite for dinner and sometimes of having a great appetite for pleasure. It might be said that walking has an appetitive (ă pet' i tiv; ăp' èt i tiv, *adj.*) effect, though this word is little used. To make one feel hungry is to appetize (ăp' è tiz, *v.t.*), while an appetizer (ăp' è tizér, *n.*) may be a food or drink. In a more fanciful sense it is said that hunger or exercise are good appetizers.

L. *appetitus* craving after, from *ap-* = *ad* to, *petere* to seek. SYN.: Craving, hunger, relish, zest. ANT.: Antipathy, disgust, loathing.

**applaud** (ă plawd'), *v.t.* and *v.i.* To show approval. (F. *applaudir*.)

This term is used especially of approval displayed by making a noise, such as clapping the hands, stamping, or cheering. A good speaker, singer, or actor is rewarded by his audience with their applause (ă plaws', *n.*). They express their approval in an applausive (ă plaw' siv, *adj.*) way.

L. *applaudere*, from *ap-* = *ad*, *plaudere* to clap hands in approval. SYN.: Acclaim, command, extol, praise. ANT.: Decry, denounce, disparage, hiss.

**apple** (ăp 'l), *n.* The fruit of the apple-tree; the tree itself; the fruit of various other trees. (F. *pomme*.)

Sometimes called the king of fruits, the apple has been cultivated from very early times. It was probably introduced into England by the Romans. The wild apple is called the crab-apple. It belongs to the rose family, and if the seed-pods and blossom of the rose and the apple are compared they will be found to be very much alike. The apple is grown practically all over the globe, and has many varieties. The name is applied to many fleshy fruits, some like apples, others quite unlike them.

The pupil of the eye used to be called the apple of the eye because it was supposed to be shaped like an apple. That is why we call anything very precious the apple of the eye.

According to Greek legend, when the wedding feast of Peleus and Thetis was in progress, Eris, the goddess of discord, who had not been invited, threw an apple marked "for the fairest" among the guests. Juno, Minerva, and Venus were bitter rivals for this prize, which was finally awarded to Venus by Paris, the son of Priam, King of Troy. This gave rise to so much hatred and jealousy that it led to the Trojan War. At the present day the expression apple of discord is applied to anything likely to cause a quarrel between people or nations.

The word apple frequently occurs in combination with other words. Apple-brandy (*n.*) is a spirit made from the juice of apples. Apple-butter (*n.*) is a sauce made of apples stewed in cider. Apple-cheese (*n.*) is made by pressing the pulp of apples. Apple-jack (*n.*) is a term used in the eastern counties of England for apple-turnover. Apple-john (*n.*) is a kind of apple which is said to be at its best after it has been kept for some time and has become shrivelled. Apple-pomace (*n.*) is the pulp left after apples have been pressed in cider-making. Apple-cheeked (*adj.*) or apple-faced (*adj.*) is used of someone with plump cheeks. An apple-pie bed is one in which the sheets are folded in such

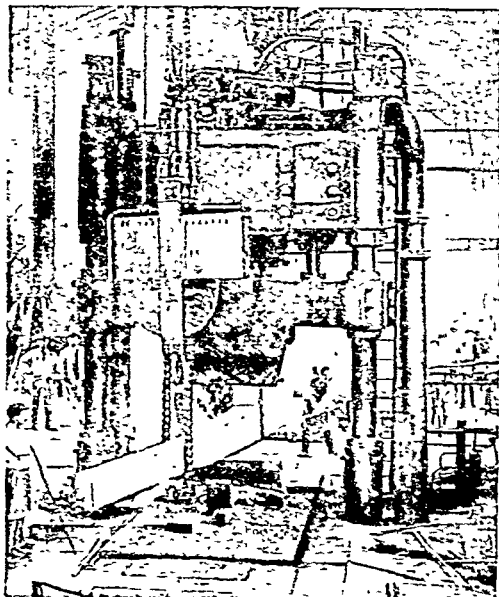
a way that it is impossible to lie at full length in it. Apple-pie order means perfect order.

A.-S. *æppel*, G. *apfel*, common to the Teutonic languages.

**appliance** (ă plī' āns), *n.* The action of applying; a device, instrument, or machine needed or used as a means of doing work of a certain kind. (F. *instrument*, *appareil*.)

When we speak of heating appliances we mean stoves, ovens, furnaces, boilers, hot-water pipes, and other things used for or in making things hot. A list of household appliances would include such things as carpet-sweepers and kitchen utensils.

O.F. *aplier*, L. *applicare* to put to a certain use, from *ap-* = *ad* to, *plicare* to fold, attach.



Appliance.—A steam hammer, one of the many useful appliances in a large engineering works.

**applicability** (ă plik ā bil' i ti), *n.* The property or the state of being able or suitable to be applied. (F. *applicabilité*.)

Such and such a remedy is applicable (ăp' hĭk ābl, *adj.*) in or to a certain case when it can be applied to the case, when it fits the case or is suitable to it. An applicant (ăp' li kănt, *n.*) is one who makes a request or petition. Application (ăp li kă' shŭn, *n.*) is the act of applying. Application to study means concentration or diligence. A thing which is put to practical use may be said to be applicative (ăp' hĭk ā tiv, *adj.*).

L. *applicabilis*, from *applicare*, from *ap-* = *ad*, *plicare* to fold, attach, with suffix *-abilis* = capable of being. SYN.: Appropriateness, aptness, fitness.

**applied science** (ă plīd sī' ēns), *n.* Knowledge turned to account in some way, as opposed to pure science, which seeks knowledge for its own sake. (F. *science appliquée*.)

Many years ago the great French mathematician, J. L. Lagrange (1736-1830), found

that a thin string, loaded with beads set at equal distances apart, vibrated in the same way as a thicker string weighing just the same as the thin string but with the beads put together. This discovery merely added another fact to purely scientific knowledge. It seemed to lead nowhere and to be of no use.

In 1902 another scientist, Michael I. Pupin, an American, thought that a telephone wire might behave electrically in the same way as the loaded string acted physically. He made experiments and found that a thin wire, connected with coils placed long distances apart, was as good as a much thicker and dearer wire. Thus the pure fact of Lagrange was applied in a way which has been of very great use in telephony.

**appliqué** (ăp plē kă'), *n.* Ornamental work applied to or put upon the surface of another material. *v.t.* To work like this. (F. *appliqué*.)

This is the French word for applied. It is used in describing certain features in needlework, architecture, metal work, and other arts.

F. *appliqué*, p.p. of *appliquer* to apply, from L. *applicare*, from *ap-* = *ad* to, *plicare* to attach.

**apply** (ă plī'), *v.t.* To bring, put or lay on, or close to; to give; to bring to bear on; to devote; to employ; to use in reference to; to adapt. *v.i.* To have reference; to have recourse. (F. *appliquer*.)

We use this word in a great many ways. We may apply a poultice to an inflamed spot. In emergencies we may apply all sorts of remedies. In some circumstances they do not apply. When we fix our minds on a subject, we apply ourselves to it. We may apply for a situation and to a person for help.

O.F. *aplier*, L. *applicare* to put to a certain use, from *ap-* = *ad* to, *plicare* to attach, fold. SYN.: Appropriate, employ, execute, request, use. ANT.: Discard, divert, misuse.

**appoggiatura** (ă poj ā tŭ' rā), *n.* A small note in music joined by a slur to a larger one coming after it. (F. *appoggiature*.)

It takes to itself the accent and half the time value of the principal note, and is usually written a tone or semitone below or above it, or sometimes at greater intervals.

Ital. *appoggiatura*, from *appoggiare* to lean on.

**appoint** (ă point'), *v.t.* To decree; to nominate; to fix; to equip. *v.i.* To ordain. (F. *ordonner*, *nommer*, *désigner*, *équiper*.)

The king appoints a prime minister. An army is well appointed if it has good uniforms, good weapons, and a good system of supplies. A person who receives an appointment (ă point' mēnt, *n.*) or post, may be called the appointee (ă poin tē', *n.*). We often have to make appointments with one another, that is, to fix a date or place for a meeting. The appointments of a ship mean her fittings.

O.F. *apointer*, L.L. *appunctare* to mark by a point, from *ap-* = *ad* to, *punctum* point. SYN.: Command, designate, prescribe.

**apportion** (ă pŏr' shŭn), *v.t.* To parcel out in suitable proportions. (F. *répartir*.)

When anything is divided into parts, and these portions are allotted to certain persons or in certain directions, then we say they have been apportioned. The act of so dividing them out is called apportionment (ă pŏr' shŭn mĕnt, *n.*).

L.L. *apportionere*, L. *ap-* = *ad* to, and *portio* (gen. *portion-is*). SYN.: Allot, assign, divide, share.



Apportion.—A keeper apportioning food in one of the aviaries at the Zoological Gardens, London.

**apposite** (ăp' ō zit), *adj.* Suitable; fit; well adapted. (F. *approprié, convenable*.)

An apposite quotation is one which fits in neatly with the subject being discussed. A good example of such appositeness (ăp' ō zit nĕs, *n.*) occurs in a story told of King Richard I. The warlike Philip, Bishop of Beauvais, rebelled against him, and was taken in arms and imprisoned in 1196. The Pope complained of this treatment of his servant the bishop, whereupon the king sent to him the coat of mail worn by the bishop when taken prisoner with the apposite quotation from Genesis, xxxvii, 32: "This have we found: know now whether it be thy son's coat or no."

In grammar apposition (ăp ō zish' ūn, *n.*) is the placing together of two nouns (or a pronoun and noun) of which one explains the other, as in the following example: "Richard, King of England, joined the Third Crusade. I, John, heard this." Such words are said to be in apposition or to be appositional (ăp ō zish' ūn ăl, *adj.*).

L. *appositus*, p.p. of *appondere*, from *ap-* = *ad* to, near, *ponere* to place. SYN.: Apt, suitable.

**appraise** (ă prăz'), *v.t.* To estimate the value of; to decide on a price for. (F. *priser, évaluer*.)

When a person dies, death duties have to be paid on property that he owned. Before the amount of the duties can be fixed the furniture, plate, pictures, buildings and other property must be valued by an appraiser (ă prăz' ěr, *n.*), a person licensed for

this kind of work, and bound to price things at what he thinks to be their true value. He makes a list of everything appraisable (ă prăz' ăbl, *adj.*), or able to be valued, and puts the price against each thing on the list. Doing this is called making an appraisal (ă prăz' ăl, *n.*) or appraisement (ă prăz' mĕnt, *n.*). Both of these words also stand for the total value arrived at by the appraiser.

O.F. *apreiser*, L. *appretiare*, from *ad* to, for, *pretium* price. SYN.: Assess, estimate, rate, value.

**appreciable** (ă prĕ' shi ăbl), *adj.* Able to be estimated or noticed. (F. *appréciable*.)

The loss of a hundred pounds makes an appreciable difference to a poor man's income. A long illness generally makes a person's weight appreciably (ă prĕ' shi ă bli, *adv.*) less.

L. *appretiare*, from *ap-* = *ad* to, *pretium* price, suffix *-abilis* capable of being. SYN.: Noticeable, perceptible.

**appreciate** (ă prĕ' shi ăt), *v.t.* To put a correct value on; to feel grateful for; to increase the value of. *v.i.* To rise in value. (F. *apprécier, monter*.)

An artist can appreciate a fine picture better than can a person who knows nothing about the art of painting, since his training makes him able to judge the skill of the painter. One appreciates a gift, the good points in a person's character, the delicate scent of a flower. Land near a growing town appreciates as time goes on, because more and more people wish to buy it; and the owner naturally appreciates the value of his property because he knows he can get more money for it.

The receiver of a gift shows appreciation (ă prĕ shi ă' shŭn, *n.*) of the kindness of the giver in appreciative (ă prĕ' shi ăt tiv, *adj.*) or appreciatory (ă prĕ' shi ăt tŏr i, *adj.*) words. The appreciation of shares or other property means their rise in value. Many large fortunes have been made in new countries, such as Canada and Australia, by the great appreciation of land bought at a very low price. An audience at a theatre behaves appreciatively (ă prĕ' shi ăt tiv i, *adv.*) when it applauds the actors and actresses, and the latter are grateful to their appreciators (ă prĕ' shi ăt tŏrz, *n.pl.*).

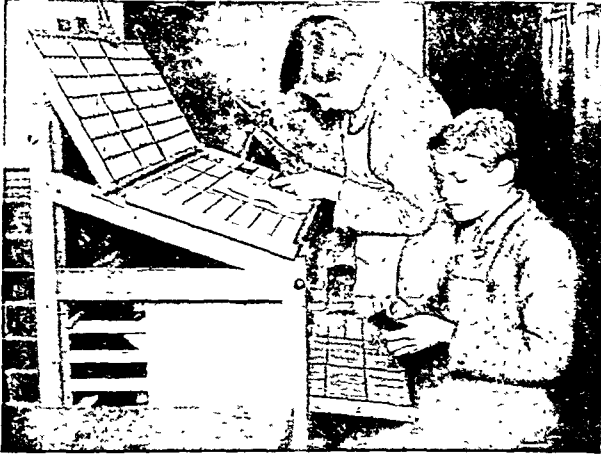
L. *appretiare*, from *ap-* = *ad* to, *pretium* price (p.p. *appretiatius*). SYN.: Distinguish, esteem, prize, value. ANT.: Decry, depreciate, disparage, underrate.

**apprehend** (ăp rĕ hend'), *v.t.* To lay hold of; to anticipate with dread; to arrest; to understand. (F. *arrêter, appréhender, comprendre*.)

A police constable may arrest or apprehend a burglar, who will understand or apprehend why he is arrested. If he were previously

aware that the constable intended to arrest him he would have acted apprehensively (*ăp rē hens' iv li, adv.*) and been apprehensive (*ăp rē hens' iv, adj.*) of the fact, and his apprehensiveness (*ăp rē hens' iv nēs, n.*) would have ended only with his apprehension (*ăp rē hen' shūn, n.*). To many people legal documents are not apprehensible (*ăp rē hens' ibl, adj.*) because they are not written in a simple manner. To simplify them would lead to apprehensibility (*ăp rē hens i bil' i ti, n.*).

*L. apprehendere* to seize, from *ap- = ad* to, *prehendere* to grasp. *SYN.*: Catch, capture, fear, imagine, perceive. *ANT.*: Ignore, lose, miss, misunderstand.



Apprentice.—Two apprentices learning to set up type. In Queen Elizabeth's reign, no one could become a master of a trade without serving an apprenticeship.

**apprentice** (*ă pren' tis*), *n.* A person who is bound by an agreement to serve an employer for a certain number of years in order to learn a trade or craft; a learner; a beginner. *adj.* Unpractised. *v.t.* To bind as an apprentice. (*F. apprenti, novice; mettre en apprentissage.*)

In the Middle Ages, when the rights and secrets of trades, etc., were jealously guarded, it was necessary to become an apprentice, usually for seven years, in order to qualify as a master. In Queen Elizabeth's reign this was made compulsory. A learner, not yet skilled, who attempts to show his ability, is said to be trying his apprentice hand. In this sense the word is often shortened to prentice.

Nowadays arrangements are often made with employers for young people to learn a trade. Perhaps a premium or payment of money is required, or the learner agrees to work for a low wage. In this way a father may apprentice his son to a business. When the learner has completed his training, he is said to have served his apprenticeship (*ă pren' tis ship, n.*). The period of apprenticeship varies from about four to seven years according to the trade.

*O.F. aprentis, L.L. apprenditus, p.p. of apprehendere = apprehendere* to learn, understand, from *ap- = ad* to, *prehendere* to grasp.

**apprise** (*ă prīz'*), *v.t.* To inform. (*F. apprendre, informer.*)

This word is used less in speaking than in writing, where it is quite common. For instance, in "Manfred" (iii, 3), Byron writes:—

Herman! I command thee,

Knock, and apprise the Count of my approach. *O.F. apprendre, p.p. a(p)pris, from L. apprehendere = apprehendere*, to instruct, inform. *SYN.*: Acquaint, advise, inform, tell.

**apprize** (*ă prīz'*), *v.t.* To estimate the value of. (*F. priser, évaluer.*)

This word is seldom used now, except as a Scottish law term. Appraise usually takes its place.

*O.F. apreiser, L. appretiare, from ad* to, for, *pretium* price.

**approach** (*ă prōch'*), *v.i.* To come or go near or nearer; to draw near. *v.t.* To come near or nearer to; to go near to with a view to conversation or for other purposes. *n.* The act of coming nearer; the state of being near; the opportunity of access; a means of access; a first step towards friendship or other relations; a stroke in golf. (*F. approcher; approche.*)

A person may approach another in order to induce him to listen to some particular proposal. We say that the time approaches when a specified hour is drawing nearer. When a thing comes near to a certain weight or standard we say that it approaches that weight or standard.

We speak of a certain thing being the nearest approach we can manage to another when we mean that it bears the greatest



Approach.—The Avenue des Champs-Élysées, the famous approach to the Arc de Triomphe, Paris, the largest triumphal arch in the world.

possible resemblance to it. The entrenchments which soldiers make to get near a fortified place are approaches. An approach to a house or mansion may be a very ordinary means of access, or it may be a noble drive

or avenue. In golf approach is the stroke following the tee-shot which lands the ball on the putting green. Some exalted personages are noted for their approachability (à prôch' à bil' i ti, *n.*). Their high position does not prevent them from being approachable (à prôch' àbl, *adj.*) by those of the humblest stations in life.

O.F. *aprochier*, L.L. *appropriare* to come near, from *ap-* = *ad* to, *prope* near. *SYN.*: Advance, broach, resemble. *ANT.*: Diverge, retreat, withdraw.

**approbation** (ăp rô bâ' shùn), *n.* Approval. (F. *approbation*.)

When a proposal is put forward at a meeting and agreed to by the assembled company, it is said to meet with their approbation. The company may show their approval by approbatory (ăp' rô bâ tôr i, *adj.*) gestures or speech.

The word approbate (ăp' rô bât, *v.t.*), meaning approve, is not now used in ordinary English, though still in use as a legal term, but is common in the U.S.A.

L. *approbatio* (gen. -*ōnis*), p.p. of *approbare*, from *ap-* = *ad* to, *probare* to prove, consider good (*probus*). *SYN.*: Commendation, endorsement, sanction. *ANT.*: Censure, disapproval, dissatisfaction.

**appropriate** (à prô' pri ât, *v.*; à prô' pri ât, *adj.*), *v.t.* To take possession of; to set aside for a particular purpose; to annex to a religious corporation. *adj.* Suitable. (F. *appropriier*; *convenable*.)

When a person takes possession of the belongings of another, he appropriates them. His act might be described as an appropriative (à prô' pri â tiv, *adj.*) act, and he himself as an appropriator (à prô' pri â tôr, *n.*).

The term appropriation (à prô pri â' shùn, *n.*) is applied to the act of taking, setting apart, or assigning anything, especially money, for a particular purpose. It is also used for the thing which is so taken or assigned. An Appropriation Bill allots the revenue of the country to the various purposes for which it is to be used.

When a woman dresses in good taste, and in such a manner that her clothes are suitable for every occasion upon which they are worn, we may describe her clothes as being always appropriate. She dresses appropriately (à prô' pri ât li, *adv.*) or with appropriateness (à prô' pri ât nês, *n.*).

L.L. *appropriare* (p.p. *appropriatus*) to take to oneself, from *ap-* = *ad* to, *proprius* one's own. *SYN.*: Allot, assign, plagiarize, take, usurp.

**approve** (à proov'), *v.t.* To be in favour of; to judge favourably; to prove; to test; to sanction; to confirm. *v.i.* To look with favour. (F. *approuver*.)

When this word is used in the sense of to regard favourably it is often followed by of. We can say either that we *approve* another person's conduct or that we *approve of* it. If a man approves of another's behaviour he

will no doubt express his approval (à proov' àl, *n.*). In so doing he becomes an approver (à proov' ér, *n.*), and before he speaks he may nod his head in an approving (à proov' ing, *adj.*) manner or approvingly (à proov' ing li, *adv.*). Approver is also used in law to denote one who, having confessed a felony, gives evidence against his accomplices. A man may have many noble qualities and others less approvable (à proov' àbl, *adj.*).



Appropriate.—The Taulipang Indian of South America, and the Eskimo of the far north, are both appropriately clad.

The improvement of common lands by enclosure for purposes of husbandry is known in law as approvement (à proov' ment, *n.*).

L. *approbare*, from *ap-* = *ad*, *probare* to prove, consider good (*probus*). *SYN.*: Authorize, commend, ratify. *ANT.*: Condemn, dislike, disparage.

**approximate** (à proks' i mât, *v.*; à proks' i mât, *adj.*), *v.t.* and *v.i.* To come, or cause to come, near to. *adj.* Nearly but not quite accurate; very near in position, time or character. (F. *approximer*; *approximatif*.)

In trying to solve some very difficult problems all we can hope for is to approximate to the solution. A man who knows that his earnings were a few pounds more or less than £1,000 could say that they were approximately (à proks' i mât li, *adv.*) that sum. Such a total is an approximation (à proks i mât' shùn, *n.*). Estimates that are made from approximate, not exact, figures are approximative (à proks' i mât tiv, *adj.*) estimates.

L.L. *approximare* (p.p. *approximatus*), from *ap-* = *ad* to, *proximus* very near.

**appui** (à pwe'), *n.* Support; prop. *v.t.* To support; to prop; to place (troops) near a point of support. (F. *appuyer*.)

This is the French word for prop or support. In English it used to be common with this



general meaning, but now it is only used in two special senses, one in horsemanship, the other and only really important one as a military term. In horsemanship it means the bearing on the bridle-rein of either the horse's mouth or the bridle-hand, or vice versa. When soldiers speak of a point d'appui (F. *point d'appui*) they mean any particular point upon which troops are formed.

F. *appuyer*, L.L. *appodiare*, from *ap-* = *ad* to, *podium* support.

**appulse** (à pŭls'), *n.* The action of striking against; the action of driving toward or upon. (F. *appulse*.)

The great philosopher, Francis Bacon, (1561-1626), speaks of the "appulse of the water to the shores," and there is the appulse or appulsion (à pŭl' shŭn, *n.*) of one tooth upon another. We may therefore speak of an appulsive (à pŭl' siv, *adj.*) action.

The coming into conjunction, or apparent contact, of two heavenly bodies, such as a star and the sun or a planet and the moon, is called their appulse, although, far from striking against each other, they are millions of miles apart.

L. *appulsus* drawing near, from *appellere* (p.p. *appulsus*), from *ap-* = *ad* to, near, *pellere* to drive.

**appurtenance** (à pĕr' tĕn àns), *n.* A thing that belongs to or goes with something else. (F. *appartenance*.)

This word is more often used in the plural than the singular. When we speak of a house and all its appurtenances we mean the house together with all the usual appliances and accessories which belong to practically every house. Such accessories are appurtenant (à pĕr tĕn ànt, *adj.*) to the house.

M.E. *appertenance*, O.F. *apurtenance*, L.L. *appertinentia* (neuter pl.) things belonging, from *ap-* = *ad* to, *pertinere* to belong. SYN.: Accessory, adjunct, appendage.



Apricot.—The fruit of the apricot, a tree which originally came from China.

**apricot** (ā' pri kot), *n.* A stone-fruit of the plum family; the tree which produces it. (F. *abricot*.)

This tree was introduced into Europe from China some 2,000 years ago. It ripens its fruit against a wall in many parts of England, but is most successfully grown under glass. Some time before its cousins, the plum and the peach, are in bloom, the shell-pink blossom of the apricot tree may be seen and the fruit is ready to be picked by the end of July. The scientific name is *Prunus armeniaca*.

F. *abricot*, Port. *albricoque*, Arab. *al-barqū* the early-ripe, L. *praecoqua* (neuter pl. of *praecoquus* for *praecoquus*), from *prae* early, soon, *coquere* to cook.

**April** (ā' pril), *n.* The fourth month of the year. (F. *Avril*.)

April is the month when the buds are opening, and it was for this reason that the Romans gave it the name Aprilis, the month of opening. On the first day of April young people and old play good-natured tricks upon others to make them April-fools (*n.pl.*). Our excuse is that it is April-fool day (*n.*), when it is a time-honoured custom to send people on foolish errands.

The word April-esque (ā pril esk', *adj.*) is sometimes used to describe a resemblance to April.

L. *Aprilis*, contracted from *aperilis*, from *aperire* to open.

**a priori** (ā pri ōr' i), *adj.* and *adv.* Relating to or by way of reasoning from causes to effects or from the general to the particular; from reason rather than from proof presumptive. (F. *à priori*.)

As we know that arsenic is a deadly poison, we reason a priori that anyone who swallows arsenic will die. A detective, knowing what criminals in general do after committing a crime, reasons out a priori what a particular criminal whom he is looking for is likely to do. This is called deductive reasoning, and is the opposite of inductive or a posteriori reasoning.

The expression is also used in cases where a fact seems self-evident without any proof. Thus, that the universe must have had a Creator is to most people an a priori fact. It cannot be proved, but it is believed more easily than that the universe made itself. This quality of not being derived from experience is called a priority (ā pri ōr' i ti, *n.*).

L. *a priori* from what is before, from cause to effect.

**apron** (ā' prŏn), *n.* An article of dress, worn in front of the body as an ornament, or more often, to protect the clothes from being soiled; anything resembling an apron in appearance or use. (F. *tablier*.)

Freemasons wear aprons that are at once symbols, decorations, and indications of rank. The bishop's apron is all that survives of the cassock, or loose gown, which he was once obliged to wear. The leather flap, drawn over the legs to protect them from mud-splashes in an open carriage, is an apron. The cap or

lid protecting the touch-hole of a cannon from damp, etc.; and the strip of lead which leads waste-water and rain into a gutter are both termed aprons.

The word has many other technical meanings. In docks and sluices, an apron of planks is fitted at the entrance to prevent the bottom being washed away by the fall of water, etc.; the dock gates are shut against it. Then there is the apron of curved wood fitted to the fore-end of ships, just above the keel, and the apron which holds the cutting tool of a planing machine.



Apron.—The special kind of apron worn by a master mason.

A house-wife wearing an apron is said to be aproned (*ā' prōnd, adj.*), and when she comes back from the kitchen garden, bearing in her apron as many vegetables as it will hold, she has an apronful (*ā' prōn fūl, n.*). A small piece of wood jutting from the wall at the top of a stair-case, and supporting the joists under the landing, is an apron-piece (*n.*).

Some theatres have an apron-stage (*n.*), which is an extension above the orchestra in front of the ordinary stage that enables the actors to come much nearer to the audience to make speeches of an intimate kind, such as Hamlet's soliloquies.

Béau Nash, the famous dandy, took a violent dislike to the 'long, plain aprons' that were worn by fashionable ladies as a part of their ordinary dress. He made a practice during the ceremonies at Bath of snatching away from the wearer any white apron he saw and hurling it among the servants in attendance. He once treated a duchess in this way.

M.E. and O.F. *naperon* large cloth, from *nape*, L. *mappa* cloth, (table) napkin. The word was formerly spelt *napron*, a napron becoming an apron.

**apropos** (*āp rô pō'*), *adj.* Suitable to the occasion. *adv.* Opportunely; as bearing on. (F. *à propos*.)



Apron.—A bishop of the Church of England wearing his apron.

A remark that has a direct bearing on a subject in discussion is *apropos*. A person who is just in time to perform a service arrives *apropos*. When writing a letter we sometimes begin "*Apropos of your—*" meaning "*With regard to your—*" or "*In respect of your—*".

L. *a-* = *ad* in regard to, *propositum* (neuter p.p. of *proponere*) that which is proposed. SYN.: Apt, suitable, timely. ANT.: Inapt, irrelevant, unsuitable.

**apse** (*āps*), *n.* An arched recess; a bishop's throne; a place for keeping relics. (F. *apside*.)

Apse is the name given especially to the recess often found at the east end of the choir of a church. It has an arched or half-domed roof and may be many-sided or semicircular. The bishop's seat usually adjoined the apse, and thus the word came to be used for the bishop's throne. In the same way it came also to mean a vessel or place where relics are kept, because in old churches they were nearly always put in the apse. Anything relating to or shaped like an apse is *apsidal* (*āp' si dāl, adj.*).



Aps.—The apse or arched recess at the east end of a church.

Gr. *hapsis* fastening, circle, arch, from *haptein* to fasten, bind, L. *absis* or *apsis* (pl. *ab-, ap-sides*).

**apsis** (*āp' sis*), *n.* The point at which a planet is at its greatest or least distance from the sun. (F. *apside*.)

The movement of the earth round the sun, or that of the moon round the earth, is not completely circular, and there are points at which the planet or satellite is at its greatest or its least distance from the body around which it revolves. Each of these points is known as the *apsis*, and together they are referred to as the *apsides* (*āp' si dēz; āp si' dēz*). The line connecting the two points is called the line of the *apsides*. Things relating to the *apsis* or *apsides* may be spoken of as *apsidal* (*āp' si dāl, adj.*).

Gr. *hapsis* fastening, circle, arch, from *haptein* to fasten, bind, L. *absis* or *apsis* (pl. *ab-, ap-sides*).

**apt** (*āpt*), *adj.* Fit; neat; inclined; quick-witted. (F. *apte, disposé, d'un esprit vif*.)

A remark is *apt* if it bears closely on a subject being talked about. A dog on a chain is *apt* to fly at a stranger who comes near it. Petrol has an *aptitude* (*āp' ti tūd, n.*) or tendency to catch fire easily. A clever scholar shows much *aptitude*, *aptness* (*āpt' nēs, n.*) or quickness in his work. A good

speaker chooses his words aptly (äpt' li, *adv.*) or suitably.

*L. aptus*, p.p. of an unused *apere* to fit. *SYN.* : Appropriate, disposed, liable, prompt, suitable. *ANT.* : Dull, inapt, slow, unfit, unsuitable.

**apteral** (äp' tër äll), *adj.* Wingless ; without columns at the sides. (*F. aptère.*)

This word, though it may be applied to insects and other animals that do not possess wings, is more commonly used to describe a building that has columns in front or at the back but none along the sides.

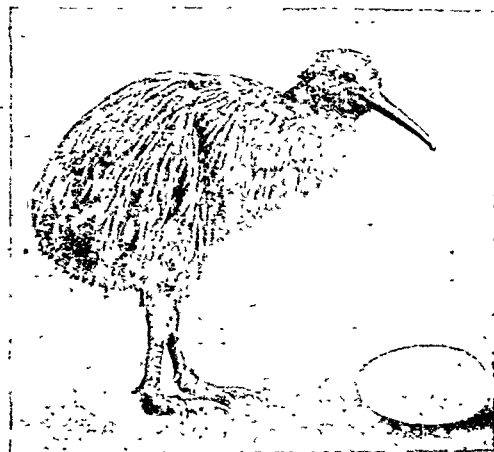
To describe wingless creatures the word **apterous** (äp' tër ùs, *adj.*) is more often used. Many insects, including fleas and springtails, are apterous at all stages of their life, while others, such as butterflies, are apterous only during part of their life. A few birds, such as the kiwi, are apterous ; while a few others, such as the emu, are apteroid (äp' tër oid, *adj.*), their wings being so small as to be useless.

Wing-like outgrowths are quite common on leaf-stalks, and when these are absent the leaf is said to be apterous.

*Gr. a-* =not, without, *pteron* wing.

which is only about the size of a domestic fowl.

*Gr. a-* =not, without, *pteryx* wing.



**Apteryx.**—The apteryx or kiwi of New Zealand. It is about the size of a domestic fowl.

**aptote** (äp' töt), *n.* A noun which has no inflexions, such as sheep. (*F. nom indéclinable.*) Words which cannot be declined, or to which no endings can be added, are called aptotic (äp töt' ik, *adj.*). There are many such in English, which has few inflexions. Conjunctions, interjections, and most adjectives and adverbs are aptotic.

*Gr. aptōtos*, from *a-* =not, without, *ptōtos*, verbal adj. from *ptiptein* to fall.

**apus** [1] (ä' pūs), *n.* A crustacean. (*F. apus.*)

The apus, a freshwater animal, related to the brine shrimps, is about an inch long. Its carapace, or shell, covers the head and part of the thorax or breast.

*Gr. a-* =not, without, *pous* foot.

**apus** [2] (ä' pūs), *n.* A cluster of fixed stars. (*F. apus.*)

Apus, or the bird of Paradise, is one of the newer constellations or groups of stars of the southern hemisphere. It was named by Johann Bayer in 1603. The Papuans used to remove the feet of birds of Paradise before selling them, which gave rise to the belief that they had no feet.

*Gr. a-* =not, without, *pous* foot.

**aqua** (äk' wä), *n.* Water. (*F. eau, aqua.*)

Doctors often use this Latin word in their prescriptions. Many other words are derived from it or contain it. Thus the old name for nitric acid was aqua fortis (äk' wä för' tis, *n.*) or "strong water," so called because it attacks metals very strongly.

**Aqua regia** (äk' wä rēj' i ä, *n.*) or "royal water," is a mixture of hydrochloric acid and nitric acid, so named because it is able to dissolve the "royal" metal, gold. Brandy and other strong spirits which "put life" into a faint or tired person are given the name aqua vitae (äk' wä vi tē, *n.*), "water of life."

Aqua is related to a Sanskrit root *ap* =water. *F. eau* is a contraction of *aqua*.



**Apteroid.**—The emu is apteroid because its wings are so small as to be useless.

**apteryx** (äp' tër iks), *n.* A New Zealand bird ; also called kiwi. (*F. aptéryx.*)

The apteryx is of great scientific interest. It has no tail, and small undeveloped wings that do not enable it to fly. Stripped of their feathers, its wings are tiny knobs about one and a half inches long, with a claw at the end. The bird's beak is from four to six inches in length, and has the nostrils at the tip, instead of at the base, as is usual. The eggs of the apteryx measure about five inches in length, and are unusually large for a bird



**Aquarium.**—A group of fishes in the aquarium at the Zoological Gardens in London, which is one of the finest in the world.

**aquamarine** (äk wà mà rën'), *n.* A transparent bluish-green gem-stone. *adj.* Bluish-green. (*F. aigue-marine.*)

This pretty, delicately-coloured stone is found chiefly in the Ural Mountains in Russia, and in Brazil. The name was suggested by its colour, which reminds us of the sea.

*L. aqua* water, *marinus* marine, like the sea.

**aquarelle** (äk wà rel'), *n.* A kind of water-colour painting. (*F. aquarelle.*)

Water-colour paintings are those in which the paint is mixed with water and painted on paper, as distinguished from oil-colour paintings in which the paint is mixed with oil and painted on canvas. Aquarelle is the kind of water-colour in which thin washes of paint with Indian ink are used. An aquarelle is of this sort, and an aquarellist (äk wà rel' ist, *n.*) is one who paints in this way.

*Ital. acquarella*, dim. of *acqua* water.

**aquarium** (à kwär' i ùm), *n.* A tank or vessel used for keeping aquatic animals alive in water. (*F. aquarium.*)

A boy's aquarium may consist of a few gold-fish or tadpoles in a glass jar, but the wonderful possibilities of aquaria (à kwär' i à, *n.pl.*) or aquariums can nowhere be studied to better advantage than at the Zoological Gardens in London, where the aquarium is one of the finest in the world.

*L. aquarium*, neuter sing. of *adj. aquarius* connected with water.

**Aquarius** (à kwär' i ùs), *n.* A constellation or group of fixed stars. (*F. le Verseau.*)

Aquarius is the twelfth constellation and the eleventh sign of the Zodiac, and is usually represented by a man pouring water from a vase or urn. By the ancient Egyptians this group of stars was believed to influence

the rising of the Nile, and in Italy and other Mediterranean lands it was thought to cause the rainy season. Hence the name Aquarius, the water-carrier.

*L. Aquarius* water-bearer, from *aqua* water.

**aquatic** (à kwät' ik), *adj.* Living in or on the water; happening on the water. (*F. aquatique.*)

Plants, insects, and birds that live in or on the water are aquatic creatures, and sports such as swimming or water polo are aquatic sports. Anything that holds or carries water is aquiferous (à kwif' ér ùs, *adj.*), and a substance having the look or form of water is aquiform (ä' kwí fórm, *adj.*). Aquosity (à kwos' i ti, *n.*) is another name for wateriness.

*L. aquaticus* related to, connected with water (*aqua*).

**aquatint** (äk' wà tint), *n.* A method of engraving on copper; a picture produced by this process. (*F. aquatinte.*)

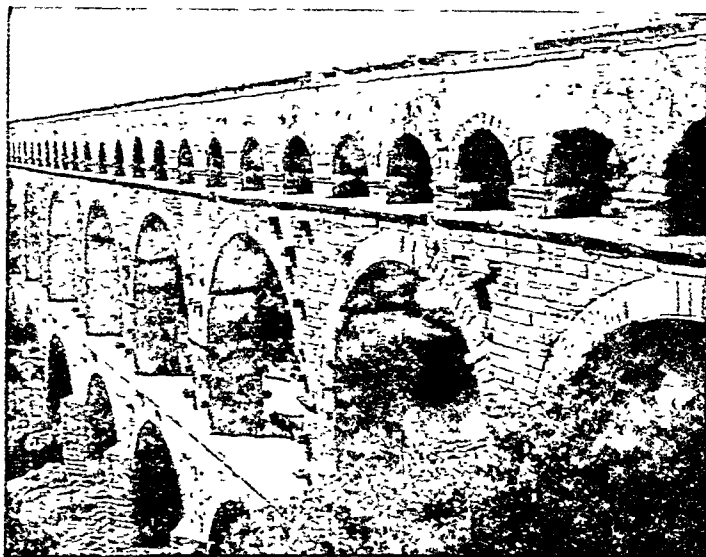
To make an aquatint a copper sheet is covered with resin, and a design scratched on. Acid is then applied, which eats into the metal where the resin has been removed, and so forms a design. The plate is then used as a block from which the pictures are taken. The process is now seldom used.

*Ital. acqua tinta* coloured water, from *L. aqua* water, *tincta* (p.p. fem. of *tingere*) to colour, dye.

**aqueduct** (äk' we dükt), *n.* An artificial channel for conveying water from one place to another. (*F. aqueduc.*)

The early aqueducts were artificial rivers, and had to fall gradually from one end to the other. So wherever an aqueduct crossed a valley it was kept at the proper level by a series of arches. The word aqueduct is

sometimes applied to the raised part of the channel, as opposed to the part dug in the surface of the earth; and when we speak of the Roman aqueducts we think mainly of the great arched structures that the Romans built to lead water across low ground between higher ground on each side.



Aqueduct.—The Roman aqueduct known as the Pont du Gard, at Nîmes, in France. It was built nearly two thousand years ago.

A wonderful example is the Pont du Gard, at Nîmes, in France, which has three tiers of arches and is 160 feet high. Though no mortar was used to hold the stones together, the arches are in perfect condition after standing for nearly 2,000 years.

Modern aqueducts carry water across valleys in pipes buried in the ground. Some of them are pipes from end to end. The longest aqueduct in the world is that running from Perth, in Western Australia, to Kalgoorlie, 350 miles away. It differs from all other aqueducts in that the water has to be forced through it by pumps, Kalgoorlie being 1,000 feet higher than the reservoir from which the water comes.

The largest of all aqueducts brings water to New York from mountains 125 miles distant, at the rate of 500,000,000 gallons a day. It is all underground. At one point it has to dive under the Hudson River, and it does this by means of two shafts 1,200 feet deep, joined at the bottom by a tunnel. Before the aqueduct was opened, a party of men walked through it from end to end.

L. *aquaeductus* conduit, conductor of water, from *aquae* (gen. of *aqua*), *ductus* conducting, duct.

**aqueous** (ā kwe ūs), *adj.* Containing water; watery. (F. *aqueux*.)

The eye is very largely made up of water, some of which is called aqueous humour. This is a clear fluid occupying a place between the cornea and the iris and pupil, which, with

the vitreous humour, helps to keep the eyeball in its proper shape.

Much of the earth's crust is formed of rocks whose existence is the outcome of the action of water, including icebergs and glaciers. They are called aqueous rocks.

L. from an unused *adj.* *aqueus* watery, from *aqua* water.

**Aquila** (āk' wi lâ), *n.* A group of fixed stars. (F. *aigle*.)

*Aquila* is one of the ancient constellations of the northern hemisphere. It is in the line of the milky way, south-east of *Lyra*, and *Altair* is its chief star. It is so called from a fancied resemblance to an eagle carrying off Hadrian's constant companion *Antinous*, after whom an old constellation, now included in *Aquila*, was named.

L. *aquila* eagle.

**Aquilegia** (āk wi lē' ji à), *n.* A genus of herbs. (F. *aquilégie*.)

Members of this class or group of plants are perennial, that is, they live for more than two years. They are found in the north temperate regions. The

common columbine is one of them. The spurs of the petals bear a fancied resemblance to an eagle's claws.

L.L. *aquilegia*, *aquileia*, from *aquila* eagle.

**aquiline** (āk' wi lin), *adj.* Eagle-like. (F. *aquilin*.)

The Duke of Wellington (1769-1852), the victor of Waterloo, had decidedly aquiline features. A Roman nose is aquiline.

L. *aquilinus* belonging to an eagle (*aquila*).



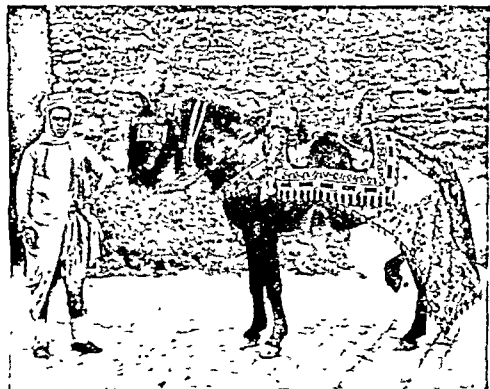
Arab.—Three inhabitants of Arabia.

**Arab** (ār' āb), *n.* A native of Arabia: an Arabian horse. (F. *Arabe*.)

Perhaps in allusion to the wandering Arabs, children who stray about the streets and have no settled home are called street arabs.

A kind of fanciful interlaced pattern of line or foliage, such as we see on Persian rugs and carpets, is called an arabesque (är ä besk', *n.*), and, because invented in Arabia, is arabesque (*adj.*) or Arabian (ä rä' bi än, *adj.*) in design. A native of Arabia is an Arabian (*n.*). There is a famous collection of stories called "The Arabian Nights' Entertainments."

The language of the Arabs is called Arabic (är' ä bik, *n.*), and Arabic (*adj.*) words are those used in it. The figures 1, 2, 3, etc., are Arabic numerals. A student of Arabic is an Arabist (är' ä bist, *n.*).



Arab.—A native chief of Tunis, in North Africa, with his gaily decorated Arab.

**arabin** (är' ä bin), *n.* Arabic acid. (*F. arabine.*)

This is one of the substances found in gum-arabic, the sap of a kind of acacia tree, which is used for coating the backs of postage stamps and labels.

Contracted from (*gum*) *arab(-ic)*, and chemical suffix *in(e)*.

**Arabis** (är' ä bis), *n.* A genus of plants belonging to the crucifer family; rock-cress. (*F. arabette.*)

Of the five British species of rock-cress or *Arabis*, the most common is the hairy rock-cress (*Arabis hirsuta*). It is probable that the *Arabis* got its name from growing in sandy and stony places like the Arabian desert. The cultivated species are chiefly used as border and rock-work plants.

*Gr. arabis* (*adj.*) Arabian.

**arable** (är' äbl), *adj.* Capable of being ploughed or cultivated. *n.* Land fit for cultivation. (*F. arable.*)

This word is applied generally to land which is not only capable of being ploughed or cultivated, but which can be profitably worked in this way. Some land which is arable is allowed to remain under grass, as it yields a greater return as pasturage than it would if tilled.

*L. arabilis* fit to be ploughed, from *arare* to plough, suffix *-bilis* capable of being.

**Araceae** (ä rä' sè è), *n.* An order of plants; the arum family. (*F. aracées.*)

Belonging chiefly to tropical regions, this order of herbs and shrubs includes the British cuckoo-pint or wake-robin. The plants possess poisonous juices, and the stems produce starch.

*Gr. aron, L. arum* wake-robin, suffix *-aceus* (specially botanical).

**Arachis** (är' ä kis), *n.* A genus of leguminous or pod-bearing plants. (*F. arachide.*)

The pea-nut or monkey-nut is the pod of a species of arachis, whose proper name, *Arachis hypogea*, the underground arachis or ground-nut, refers to the curious habit of the plant in thrusting the pods into the earth, where they ripen. This might be called the arachic (är' ä kik, *adj.*) method of ripening the seed. The nuts are rich in oil—*Arachis* oil—which is almost as good as olive oil, and is used largely in soap-making.

*Gr. arakos, arakis* a kind of pulse.

**arachnid** (ä räk' nid), *n.* Any animal in the class Arachnida, which includes the spiders, scorpions, and mites. (*F. arachnide.*)

A spider is often wrongly called an insect. There are important differences between an arachnid and an insect. The former has eight legs, but is without wings and antennae, as the delicate feelers on the head of an insect are called. Insects have only six legs, and generally have four wings, and two antennae.

Animals belonging to the Arachnida class are referred to as arachnidan (ä räk' ni dän, *adj.*) or arachnidean (ä räk nid' è än, *adj.*), and those bearing a resemblance to them are described as arachnoid (ä räk' noid, *adj.*). Arachnology (ä räk nol' ö ji, *n.*) is the scientific study of the Arachnida, and one who pursues the study is an arachnologist (ä räk nol' ö jist, *n.*).

The cobweb-like skin which covers loosely the brain and spinal cord of a human being or other animal is called the arachnoid membrane.

*Gr. arakhnē* spider, *-ida* (zoological suffix).

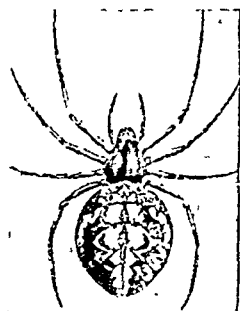
**araeometer** (är è om' èt èr). This is another spelling of areometer. See areometer.

**aragonite** (är' ä gön it), *n.* Carbonate of lime, made up of long, narrow crystals. It gets its name from having been first found in Aragon, Spain. (*F. aragonite.*)

*Aragon*, and *-ite* (mineral species suffix).

**Araliaceae** (ä rä li ä' cé è), *n.* An order of plants. (*F. araliacées.*)

Included among the plants in this order are the common ivy and the aralia, or



Arachnid.—A spider is an arachnid.

rice-paper plant, from which it received its name.

*Aralia*, and *-aceae* (plant family suffix).

**Aramaeen** (är ä mē' än), *adj.* Of Aram, or ancient Syria; or of the speech of the people there. (F. *araméen*.)

Aram is the old native name for north Syria and Mesopotamia (Iraq), and its people are called Aramaeans (*n.pl.*). The dialects spoken in early times in this region were Aramaic (är ä mē' ik, *adj.*), a branch of the Semitic language.

**Araneida** (är ä nē' i dá), *n.pl.* The natural order of the spiders. (F. *aranéides*.)

This order is one of those into which the class Arachnida, embracing spiders, scorpions, and mites, is divided. Members of this order are described as araneidan (är ä nē' i dän, *adj.*), and creatures or objects resembling a spider in shape are araneiform (är ä nē' i förm, *adj.*).

L. *arana* spider, *-ida* zoological suffix.

**Araucanians** (är ö kã' ni änz), *n.pl.* An Indian people of South America. (F. *Araucan*, *Araucanien*.)

Although now under the rule of the Chilean government, this historical race of Indians has in time past fought with amazing courage against the Incas and the Spaniards to retain its independence. They call themselves Mapuche, meaning men of war, and they have justified their name whenever war has been necessary to preserve their freedom.

Their deeds in battle formed the theme of Ercilla's poem "La Araucana." An attempt, made by a French adventurer named Antoine de Tounens in 1861 and onwards, to found a kingdom led to the Araucanians becoming subjects of Chile.

Rather small in size, averaging about five feet four inches, they now lead an industrious existence farming and raising cattle. Their numbers probably exceed 100,000.

**araucaria** (är aw kãr' i ä), *n.* A genus of cone-bearing trees with stiff, pointed leaves. (F. *araucarie*.)

The araucarias of Australia and South America represent the pines of the Northern Hemisphere. They bear very stiff, sharply pointed, overlapping leaves, which render it difficult if not impossible for any animal to climb them. One of the most familiar is the monkey puzzle (*Araucaria imbricata*), a native of the Andes in Chile.

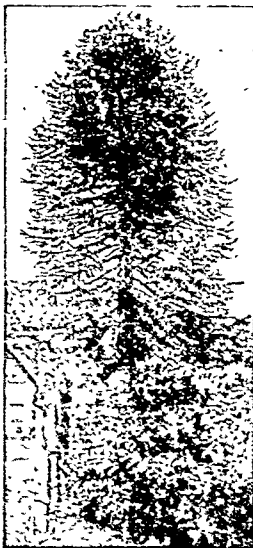
In the coal measures of our country are found many remains of araucarian (är aw kãr' i än, *adj.*) trees.

Araucaria is a contraction of *Arauc(an)*, suffix *-aria* belonging to.

**Arawaks** (ar' ä waks), *n.pl.*

An Indian people of South America. (F. *Aravaks*.)

The Arawaks are found chiefly in British and Dutch Guiana, and less numerous in Brazil and Venezuela. They were once a powerful race, but their numbers have been



Araucaria.—A cone-bearing araucaria.



Araucanians.—The daughters of an Araucanian nobleman of the territory of Magallanes, in the extreme south of the republic of Chile. The Araucanians number about one hundred thousand.

greatly reduced in the past fifty years. They are a peace-loving people.

The name is said to mean eaters of meal, cassava bread being their chief article of food.

**arbiter** (ar' bi tēr), *n.* A judge; an umpire; one whose opinion is decisive. (F. *arbitre*.)

The special and original meaning of arbiter—an independent person who is chosen by all parties concerned in a disagreement to decide between them—is now taken by the legal term arbitrator (see *arbitrate*), and arbiter remains only as a literary word. It is used in a high or sacred sense, as God is the only arbiter.

An arbiter once meant a judge who had to follow the customs of law (exactly the reverse of its present meaning), while an arbitrator had freedom to consult his own opinions.

L. *arbiter*, from *ar-* = *ad* to, old *bitere* to go (to act as umpire). SYN.: Adjudicator, arbitrator, judge, referee. ANT.: Appellant, claimant, disputant, litigant.

**arbitrage** (ar' bi trāj), *n.* A system of buying in one market and selling immediately at a higher rate in another. (F. *arbitrage*.)

By arbitrage, merchants, bankers, etc., are able to make a profit out of the different prices demanded for a thing on the same day in different markets. This traffic now goes on mostly in stocks and shares, foreign exchange, and bullion. The speed at which business can be done by telephone and cable, enables operators to take advantage of the smallest rise or fall of prices in London, New York, and the continental capitals. Arbitrage has the valuable effect, especially in banking, of levelling up prices everywhere, and protecting a country against the leakage of its gold.

L. *arbitrari* to decide, judge, from *ar-* = *ad* to, old *bitere* to go, and suffix *-aticum*, becoming in F. *-age*.

**arbitrary** (ar' bit rār i), *adj.* Decided by the will, or fancy, and without sufficient reason; capricious; despotic. (F. *arbitraire*.)

Arbitrary actions are those in which a person has taken no guide other than his own will or pleasure. We say that he behaves arbitrarily (ar' bit rār i li, *adv.*), and is guilty of arbitrariness (ar' bit rār i nēs, *n.*), the quality of being arbitrary. The legal meaning of arbitrary is relating to or depending upon the opinion of an arbitrator; not fixed by rule, or depending upon a judge's decision.

L. *arbitrarius*, depending on a person's will, from *arbitrari* to act as umpire, from *ar-* = *ad* to,

old *bitere* to go. SYN.: Dictatorial, domineering, imperious, overbearing, peremptory. ANT.: Equitable, lenient, mild, obliging, restrained.

**arbitrate** (ar' bi trāt), *v.i.* To hear and judge in a dispute between others; to decide. *v.i.* To act as an umpire or arbitrator; to resort to arbitration. (F. *arbitrer*.)

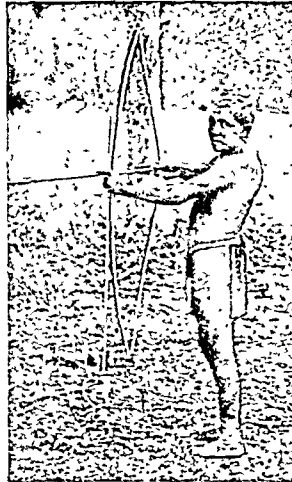
A lawsuit is an expensive and frequently lengthy way of settling disagreements. So the parties in a dispute often agree to ask a third person to judge, or arbitrate, their differences. Both they and the chosen person agree to arbitrate, that is, the one agrees to judge, and the others to be judged. The matter becomes an arbitral (ar' bi trāl, *adj.*) one or a case in arbitration (ar bi trā' shùn, *n.*) as we term the state of being arbitrated, and the disputants are bound to follow the arbitrament (ar bit' rā mēt, *n.*) or judgment of their arbitrator (ar' bi trā tōr, *n.*) or person chosen to hear the dispute. This person exercises or holds an arbitratorship (ar bi trā' tōr ship, *n.*), the power or office of an arbitrator.

A woman who arbitrates is called an arbitratix (ar bi trā' triks, *n.*) or arbitress (ar' bi trēs, *n.*). The last word is applied also to a woman who has absolute control over her home, workpeople, etc., and exercises that control.

L. *arbitrari* (p.p. *arbitratus*) to decide as an umpire, from *ar-* = *ad* to, old *bitere* to go (to examine a case). SYN.: Decide, intercede, interpose, judge, mediate. ANT.: Appeal, contend, dispute, dissent, litigate.

**arbor** (ar' bōr), *n.* A tree; an axle or spindle; the main support or beam of a machine. (F. *arbre*.)

The Latin word arbor is seldom used alone in botany, but there are several foreign evergreen trees, belonging to the genus *Thuja*, called arbor vitae (ar' bōr vi tē, *n.*), tree of life. A section of that part of the brain known as the cerebellum is called arbor vitae because of its arborescent (ar bō res' ēnt, *adj.*) or tree-like appearance, and many small vessels of the body branch arborescently (ar bō res' ēnt li, *adv.*). Owing to their arborization (ar bōr i zā' shùn, *n.*) or arborescence (ar bō res' ēns, *n.*), that is, their tree-like characteristics, some animals are called zoophytes or plant-animals. England was formerly more arborescent (ar bōr' ēūs, *adj.*), arboraceous (ar bō rā' shūs, *adj.*), or wooded, than it is now, and since some districts are only fitted for arboriculture (ar' bōr i kul chēr, *n.*), arboricultural (ar bōr i kul' chēr āl, *adj.*) work should be encouraged. The arboriculturist (ar bōr i kul' chēr ist, *n.*) may specialize in the care of an arboretum



Arawaks.—An Arawak Indian of South America, armed with bow and arrows.



(ar bô rē' tûm, *n.*), a collection of trees for exhibition. Under very unfavourable conditions trees may possess very little arboreal (ar' bôr âl, *adj.*) character.

Arboreal is not to be confused with arboreal (ar bôr' è al, *adj.*), which is applied to creatures living in trees, as well as to trees themselves, as where it is said that pines are the sole arboreal vegetation of a certain region. In hot weather we enjoy the shade of arborous (ar' bôr ûs, *adj.*) places.

L. *arbor* tree.

**arbour** (ar' bôr), *n.* A leafy bower; a shady retreat under trees. (F. *berceau*.)

This word has changed in meaning several times. From being applied in turn to a plot of turf, a flower-bed, an orchard, and climbing plants trained over a trellis, it is now given to a leafy canopy or covering. We can also speak of cottages arbour'd (ar' bôrd, *adj.*) in the shade of trees.

M.E. *herber*, *erber*, O.F. *herbier*, L. *herbarium* herb or grass garden, from *herbarius* connected with grass (*herba*).

**Arbutus** (ar' bû tûs), *n.* A genus of evergreen shrubs. (F. *arbutusier*.)

Britain has only one variety of *Arbutus*, the strawberry-tree (*Arbutus unedo*), so called because its berries resemble strawberries in appearance. It is about 20 feet high.

**arc** (ark), *n.* Part of the outline of a circle or other curve; the part of a circle which the sun, moon, a planet, or a star seems to sweep through from the time it rises to the time it sets; an intensely bright discharge of electricity between two bars of carbon, caused by a very strong current. (F. *arc*.)

An arc-lamp (*n.*) is a variety of lamp in which an electric arc is the source of light. When carbons A B burn away so that the distance between them is too great for the spark to bridge, the current is cut off, causing bar E to fall, thus releasing A from collar C and allowing A to slide down tube T until it touches B. Contact thus being renewed, solenoid S raises E until C grips A again and raises it to the proper position. The piston P on rod R moving in dash-pot D prevents E from moving too quickly. The first lamp of this kind was invented by Thomas Wright in 1845.

L. *arcus* arch, bow.

**arcade** (ar kâd'), *n.* A continuous arch; a roofed-in street. (F. *arcade*.)

Arcades were first built in the cities of Asia and of Southern Europe. There the heat of the day is so great that the midday sun is unbearable.

Western cities find arcades a benefit for shelter from the rain rather than from the sun, and now there are few large cities or towns which have not one or more arcaded (ar kâd' èd, *adj.*) streets, roofed over with glass or by other buildings, and lined with shops on either side, where people can do their shopping in perfect shelter.

Ital. and L.L. *arcata* arched place, from *arcus* arch, bow.

**Arcadian** (ar kâ' di àn), *adj.* Relating to Arcadia or to romantically simple country life. *n.* An inhabitant of Arcadia; one who lives an ideally simple life in the country. (F. *arcadien*.)

In the heart of Peloponnesus, in Greece of old, lay Arcadia, a land of plateaux and well-watered valleys. Hemmed in on every side by mountains, the Arcadians lived the care-free life of shepherds and huntsmen, undisturbed by association with the world outside. And so the Arcadian shepherd piping to his

flock has become a symbol of all that is quiet and happy and beautiful in country life. The busy dweller in the city often longs for arcadianism (ar kâ' di àn izm, *n.*), for the simple joys of the country.

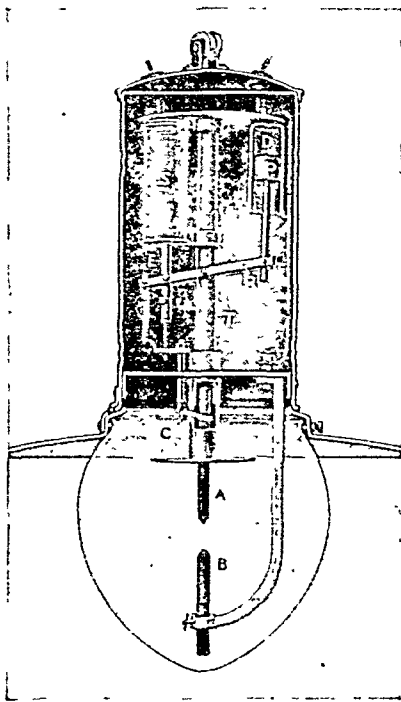
**arch** [I] (arch), *n.* A concave structure in a vertical plane, spanning an opening. *v.t.* To span with an arch; to make into an arch. *v.i.* To form an arch. (F. *arche*; *arquer*, *voûter*, *se voûter*.)

The Romans employed the curved structure seen over some doors and windows and between the piers of bridges, and which is called the arch. It is very strong, because the greater the weight it supports the more firmly wedged become the stones or bricks of which it is composed. A thing shaped like this structure is sometimes spoken of as an arch. Iris (the rainbow) in "The Tempest" (iv, 71), speaks of:—

... the queen o' the sky,

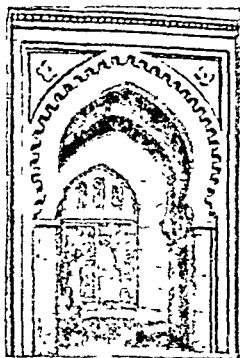
Whose watery arch and messenger am I.

Part of the stern of a ship on which the name of the vessel and its port of origin is usually painted is called the arch-board (*n.*). An arch-brick (*n.*) is one of the wedge-shaped kind used in building arches. There is a kind

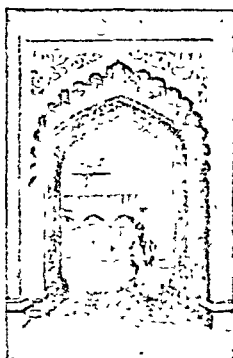


Arc-lamp.—The interior of an arc-lamp. See article on this page.

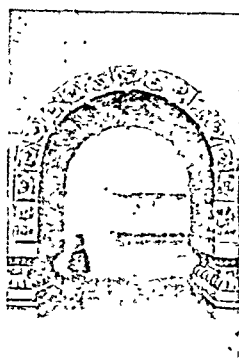
# THE GRACE AND STRENGTH OF THE ARCH IN MANY STYLES



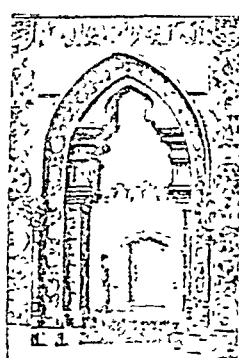
Moorish



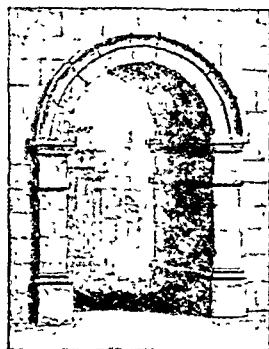
Indian



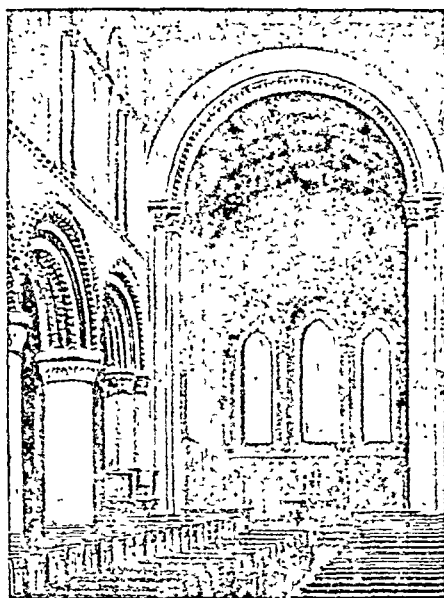
Chinese



Persian



Roman



Norman



Saxon



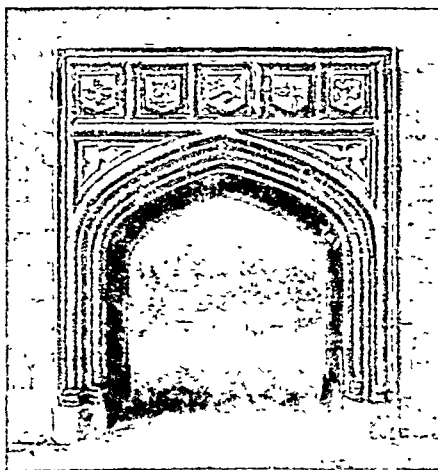
Early English



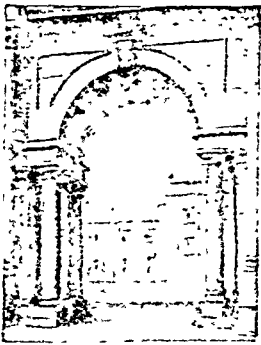
Decorated



Perpendicular



Tudor



Renaissance

Arch.—The arch has come down to us from remote ages. Probably beginning as a piece of wood supported by upright posts, it has become a structure that combines strength with beauty.

of buttress-masonry supporting a wall called an arch-buttress (*n.*). The Church court of appeal, held in the Church House, Westminster, is called the Arches Court (*n.*) or Court of Arches (*n.*). The wedge-shaped keystone at the top of an arch is sometimes called an archstone (*n.*). A passage under arches is an archway (*n.*). To build in the shape of an arch is to build arch-wise (*adv.*). One might stand under the arching (*adj.*) boughs of a tree, admiring the graceful green arching (*n.*).

O.F. *arche* arch, vault, really from L. *arca* coffer, box (see ark), confused with L. *arcus*, bow, arch.

**arch** [2] (arch). *adj.* Roguish; saucy; chief; superior. (F. *de premier ordre*, *espègle*.)

When we describe a girl as being arch we mean that she is mischievous and that she contrives to be fascinating at the same time. Such a girl will glance archly (arch' li, *adv.*) and behave with archness (arch' nès, *n.*).

In the sense of chief or superior, the word is generally used as a prefix as in archbishop. L. *archi-*, Gr. *arkhi-* chief, A.-S. *arce-*. The transition in meaning to "roguish" is due to its use with wag, knave, rogue.

**arch-** (arch; ark) or **archi-** (ar' ki-), *prefix*. Chief; superior; of highest rank; extreme. It occurs in such words as *archangel*, *archbishop*, *arch-knave*, *archidiaconal*, *architect*. (F. *archi-*.)

L. *archi-* Gr. *arkhi-*, chief, from *arkhein* to be the first, lead.

**archaean** (ar kē' ān), *adj.* Of the earliest geological periods. (F. *archéen*.)

Geologists have divided time into a number of eras, some of which they have again divided into periods. The archaean period corresponds with the azoic, or lifeless, age. The different ages of rocks can be determined by the fossil remains of animals found embedded in them. No remains have been discovered in archaean, or azoic, rocks, which have therefore been classed as the earliest in geological history.

Gr. *arkhaios* old, ancient, from *arkhē* beginning.

**archaeography** (ar kē og' rā fi), *n.* The descriptive side of archaeology; a description of antiquities. (F. *archéographie*.)

Gr. *arkhaios* ancient, *graphein* to write.

**archaeology** (ar kē ol' ō ji), *n.* The study of man in the early periods of his existence, and of the remains that he left behind. (F. *archéologie*.)

Archaeology deals chiefly with times of which there is no written history, and it uses relics, such as Stonehenge, cave sculptures and paintings, axe-heads, and bone implements, in its attempts to build up the story of the people to whom they belonged. Matters pertaining to archaeology are called archaeological (ar kē ō loj' ik āl, *adj.*), and a person who gives his time to archaeology is an archaeologist (ar kē ol' ō jist, *n.*).

Gr. *arkhaiologia*, from *arkhaios* old, ancient, *logos* science or study.

**archaeopteryx** (ar kē op' tēr iks), *n.* An extinct bird. (F. *archéoptéryx*.)

Found as a fossil in oolitic slate in southern Germany, this prehistoric bird is famous in science because its structure illustrates the earliest known type in the evolution of birds. Its body was about the size of a partridge with longer legs. It had teeth. Its wings had each three claws, and it had a bony tail like a lizard, but well-feathered.

Gr. *arkhaios* old ancient, *pteryx* wing.

**archaeozoic** (ar kē ō zō' ik), *adj.* Of or relating to or like the earliest forms of life. (F. *archéozoïque*.)

This word is used to describe that very early period in the world's history when animals and plants first appeared.

Gr. *arkhaios* old, ancient, *zōē* life.

**archaic** (ar kâ' ik), *adj.* Belonging to or resembling an earlier period; antiquated; obsolete. (F. *archaïque*.)

This word is chiefly used in connexion with things which have become so old-fashioned that they have dropped out of usage. An archaism (ar' kâ izm, *n.*) is an old-fashioned habit, custom, word, or expression, or the imitation of these. Anyone who imitates ancient manners, language, or style is said to archaize (ar' kâ iz, *v.i.*) and could be described as an archaist (ar' kâ ist, *n.*). Art that copies old styles is archaistic (ar kâ is' tik, *adj.*).

Gr. *arkhaios*, ancient, primitive, from *arkhaios* old.

**archangel** (ar' kâ ān jël), *n.* An angel of the highest rank. (F. *archange*.)



Archangel.—The archangel Gabriel.

The Jews count seven archangels, of whom four are recognized by Christians. The most important of Gabriel's archangelic (ark ān jël' ik, *adj.*) missions was the announcing of the birth of Christ to the Virgin Mary. In the Book of Revelation (xii, 7), the archangel Michael leads the good angels to victory against the devil and his angels. Raphael is an archangel mentioned in the Book of Tobit, where he vanquishes the demon Asmodeus. The archangel Uriel, with other angels, buried Moses' body.

There is a fancy pigeon which is known as an archangel, and two of the dead-nettles (*Lamium galeobdolon* and *Lamium purpureum*) that grow on rough ground or in hedges are called archangel.

Gr. prefix *arkhi-* chief, *angellos* angel.

**archbishop** (arch bish' óp), *n.* A chief bishop; a spiritual overseer of a certain ecclesiastical area. (F. *archevêque*.)

An archbishop is the spiritual head of a province, and superintends the work of the bishops and clergy under his care. England is divided into two archbishoprics (arch bish' óp riks, *n.pl.*), Canterbury and York. The province of the archbishop of Canterbury covers the whole of England, except North-



Archbishop.—An archbishop of the Church of England in his robes.

umberland, Cumberland, Westmorland, Durham, Lancashire, Yorkshire, and Cheshire, which form the province of the archbishop of York. The archbishop of Canterbury is the Primate, or highest officer of the Church. After the princes he is the first peer of England. At a coronation he places the crown on the head of the king, and the archbishop of York has the right to crown the queen. Ireland has two Anglican archbishops—those of Armagh and Dublin. There are three Roman Catholic archbishops in England—those of Westminster, Bir-

mingham, and Liverpool; one in Wales—of Cardiff; two in Scotland—of St. Andrews and Edinburgh, and Glasgow; and four in Ireland—of Armagh, Dublin, Cashel, and Tuam. The United States of America has no Protestant archbishops, but fourteen Roman Catholic archbishops.

L. *archiepiscopus*, Gr. prefix *arkhi-* chief, *episkopos* bishop.

**archdeacon** (arch dě' kón), *n.* A chief deacon. (F. *archidiacon*.)

In the Church of England an archdeacon ranks next to a bishop. He is the bishop's right-hand assistant. Since 1836 each bishop has had from two to four archdeacons. The word for relating to an archdeacon is archidiaconal (ar ki dě' ak' ón ál, *adj.*). Archidiaconal duties include the preservation of the church buildings, the management of church charities, the examination of candidates who wish to become clergymen, etc. They frequently deputise, or act for, the bishop in his absence. The rank or office of an archdeacon and the portion of a diocese over which he has charge is called an archdeaconry (arch dě' kón ri, *n.*), and often this word is also applied to the residence of an archdeacon. The office of archdeacon is also called archdeaconship (arch dě' kón ship, *n.*).

L. *archidiaconus*, Gr. prefix *arkhi-* chief, *diakonos* deacon.

**archdiocese** (arch dí' ó sēs, *n.*). The province of an archbishop. (F. *archidiocèse*.) Gr. prefix *arkhi-* chief, *diokhesis* province, diocese.

**archduke** (arch dūk'), *n.* A chief duke. (F. *archiduc*.)

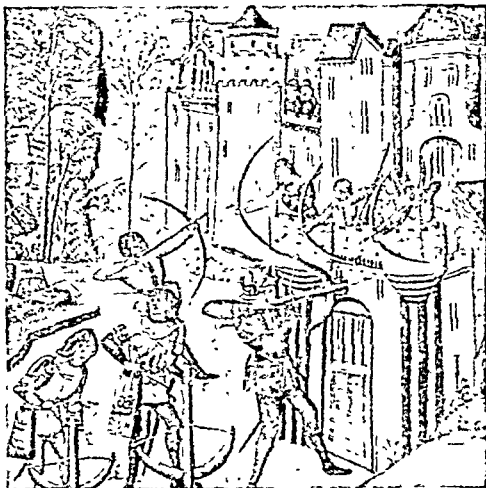
During the Middle Ages this title was taken now and again, though not very often, by various princes and rulers in Europe. In 1453 the title of Archduke of Austria was vested in the house of Hapsburg by the Emperor Frederick III, who bestowed it on his son Maximilian and his heirs. From that time until the fall of the dynasty in 1918 all male members of the ruling house of Austria have been called archdukes.

Anything relating to an archduke is archducal (arch dū' kál, *adj.*) and the wife of an archduke is an archduchess (arch dūch' es, *n.*). A daughter of the Emperor of Austria also bore the title of archduchess. The territory ruled over by an archduke is known as an archduchy (arch dūch' i, *n.*).

L.L. *archidux*, from L. prefix *archi-* chief, *dux* leader.

**archer** (ar' chér), *n.* One who shoots with a bow and arrow. (F. *archer*.)

In old times the English counties and towns used to supply companies of archers to the royal armies. These archers were armed with steel caps, hauberks, short swords, and bows and arrows.



Archer.—Archers attacking a fortress. From a fifteenth century drawing in the British Museum.

There is a group of stars called the Archer, or Sagittarius. A woman archer is an archeress (ar' chér es, *n.*). The use of bows and arrows is called archery (ar' chér i, *n.*).

O.F. *archier*, L.L. *arcarius*, from *arcus* bow.

**archer-fish** (ar' chér fish), *n.* An East Indian fish. (F. *archer*.)

This remarkable fish, a kind of perch, has sporting instincts like those of the fisherman who casts a fly. It can squirt a drop of water so accurately at any insect that it is

usually successful in disabling and securing it. The scientific name is *Toxotes jaculator*.

E. *archer* and *fish*.

**archetype** (ar' kè tip), *n.* The original model or pattern on which a thing has been or may have been made. (F. *archétype*.)

Lord Macaulay calls the House of Commons "the archetype of all the representative assemblies which now meet, either in the Old or in the New World." Anything relating to or resembling an original type may be described as archetypal (ar kè tip' àl, *adj.*).

Gr. *arkhetypon*, L. *archetypum* original type, from Gr. prefix *arkhe-* for *arkhi-* chief.

**archidiaconal** (ar ki dī āk' ōn àl), *adj.* Of or relating to an archdeacon. (F. *d'archidiacre*.)

L.L. *archidiaconus*, Gr. prefix *arkhi-* chief, *diakonos* deacon, with suffix *-alis* connected with.

**archiepiscopal** (ar ki è pis' kò pàl), *adj.* Of or relating to an archbishop or an archbishopric. (F. *archiépiscopal*.)

Canterbury is an archiepiscopal see. The office or the term of office or the province of an archbishop is called his archiepiscopate (ar ki è pis' kò pāt, *n.*).

L.L. *archiepiscopus*, Gr. prefix *arkhi-* chief, *episcopus* bishop, with suffix *-alis* connected with.

**archil** (ar' chul; ar' kil), *n.* Lichens belonging to the genus *Roccella*; a dye made from these. (F. *archile*, *orseille*.)

The more correct name is orchil, and these lichens are sometimes called orchilla weeds. From them, especially from *Roccella tinctoria*, a fine violet dye is made. Archil is rarely used alone, partly because it is too costly, and partly because it is too perishable. Litmus, used by chemists as a test for acids and alkalis, is made from archil.

O.F. *orchel*, Ital. *orcello*, perhaps merely a corruption of *roccella* little rock.

**Archilochian** (ar ki lō' ki àn), *adj.* Of or relating to the poet Archilochus or to the

metre invented by him; severe; sarcastic. (F. *archiloquien*.)

Archilochus was a famous Greek poet who lived in the seventh century B.C. He was the inventor of iambic verse. He wrote very bitterly, as may be judged from the story that, his love having been rejected by a certain lady, he forthwith attacked her and her sisters in so fierce a manner that they hanged themselves through shame.

**archimandrite** (ar ki mǎn' drīt), *n.* The head of a very important monastery or of more than one monastery in the Greek Church. (F. *archimandrite*.)

L.L. *archimandrita*, Eccles. Gr. *arkhimandritēs*, from Gr. prefix *arkhi-* chief, *mandra* stable, fold, monastery.

**Archimedeal** (ar ki mē' dē àn; ar ki mē dē' àn), *adj.* Of or relating to or invented by or named after Archimedes, a Greek mathematician who lived in the third century B.C. (F. *d'Archimède*.)

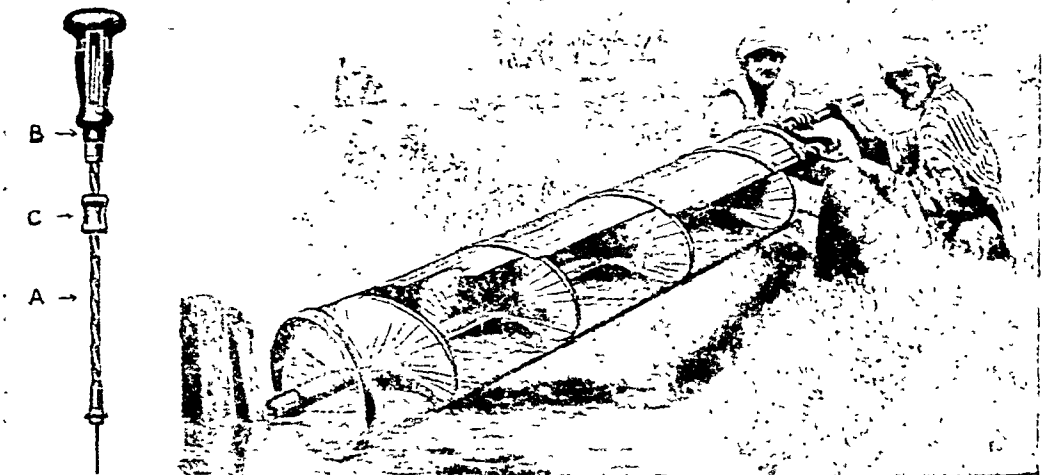
An Archimedeal drill (*n.*) is turned by working a knob up and down its shaft, which has a screw-thread cut in it. The Archimedeal screw (*n.*) is a device for raising water. It may be described as a tube, wound corkscrew-wise round a slanting shaft, with its bottom end under water. When the shaft is turned, the water picked up by the lower end of the tube works its way upwards through the tube and pours out at the top.

**archipelago** (ar ki pel' à gō), *n.* A sea abounding with islands; a group of islands. (F. *archipel*.)

The name was first given to that part of the Mediterranean Sea between Greece and Asia Minor which is called the Aegean Sea or the Greek Archipelago. A dweller in these islands is archipelagian (ar ki pel' ā' ji àn, *adj.*).

Gr. prefix *arkhi-* chief, *pelagos* sea.

**architect** (ar' ki tekt), *n.* A person who makes the plans and draws the designs of



Archimedeal.—The small picture shows an Archimedeal screw. The screw (A) runs loose in the collar (B), and rotates when the knob (C) is pushed up and down. The larger sketch shows the interior of an Archimedeal screw for raising water.

buildings and superintends their construction; a designer of some complicated work. (F. *architecte*.)

Freemasons speak of God as the Great Architect. Anyone who plans out his course of action or his future is said to be the architect of his own fortunes. Architecture (ar' ki tek chér, *n.*) is the art of building or construction of any kind. It is sometimes divided into ecclesiastical (churches), civil (public, domestic, and other buildings), military (castles and fortresses), and naval (ships) architecture. In this sense it may be regarded as a branch of applied science, or a technical operation.

In a narrower sense architecture is one of the fine arts, ranking with sculpture and painting, and in this sense only such buildings as are designed on sound artistic principles, or aim at beauty as well as use, are worthy to be regarded as examples of architecture. Every great civilization has had its school or style of architecture. Thus we speak, for example, of Egyptian, Greek, Roman, Saracenic, and Gothic (mediaeval west European) architecture. Anything pertaining to architecture is said to be architectural (ar ki tek' chér ál, *adj.*) or architectiv (ar' ki tek tiv, *adj.*).

Architectonic (ar ki tek ton' ik, *adj.*) or architectonical (ar ki tek ton' ik ál, *adj.*) things are those things belonging to or associated with architecture or an architect, or having to do with the organization of knowledge. Thus architectonic methods are methods which lead step by step to some definite end, each step being dependent upon the last, as each brick or stone in a building depends upon the other bricks or stones. Architectonics (ar ki tek ton' iks, *n.*) means the science of architecture and also the systematic design or construction of literary or other works or the systematization or logical grouping of knowledge.

L. *architectus*, Gr. *arkhitektôn*, from Gr. prefix *arkhi-* chief, *tektôn* craftsman, builder.

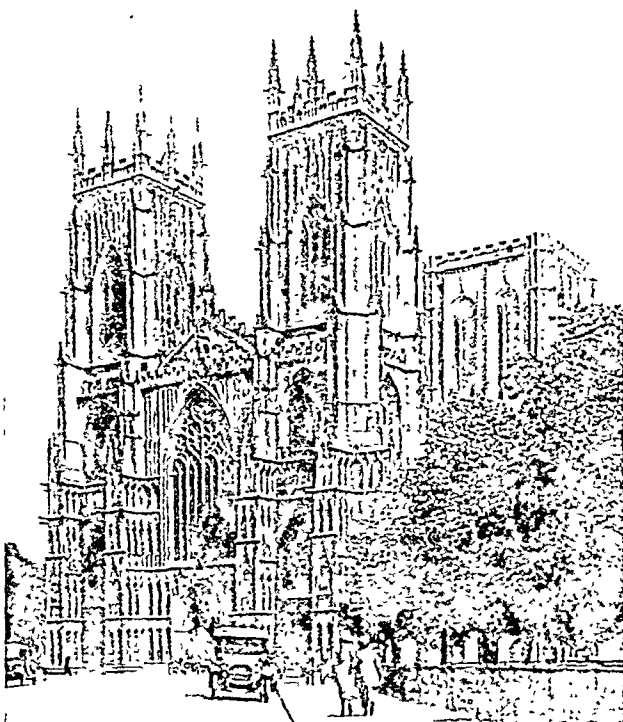
**architrave** (ar' ki tráv), *n.* The principal beam that supports the superstructure; the moulded frame of a door. (F. *architrave*.)

The earliest building structure was simply a beam laid horizontally on top of two or more uprights. This beam, in Greek buildings, became the entablature, that is, the horizontal stone structure resting on top of the columns. It was divided into three parts: the upper part, called the cornice; below this, the frieze; between the frieze and

the columns, the architrave. If there is no frieze but only cornice and architrave, the entablature is an architrave-cornice (*n.*).

Gr. prefix *arkhi-* chief, L. *trabs* (gen. *trabis*) beam (b has become v).

**archives** (ar' kivs), *n.pl.* Historical records; the place in which they are kept. (F. *archives*.)



Architecture.—The west front of York Minster, one of the most beautiful examples of Perpendicular architecture. The cathedral is built on the site of a seventh century church.

The word is now only used in the plural. In the archives of Somerset House and of the Record Office, London, important documents are preserved. The people who look after these documents are archivists (ar' ki vists, *n.pl.*).

L.L. *archivum*, *architum*, from Gr. *arkheion* public building, pl. *arkheia* public records kept there.

**archivolt** (ar' ki vólt), *n.* An architrave carried round an arch; the moulding or ornamentation on the wall-face of the wedge-shaped stones which are used in building an arch or vault. (F. *archivolte*.)

L. *arcus* bow, arch, L.L. *volta* vault, arch.

**archon** (ar' kón), *n.* A ruler. (F. *archonte*.)

This was the name of the chief magistrate of Athens, and of his eight colleagues; his archonship (ar' kón ship, *n.*) was his office, or the period of office.

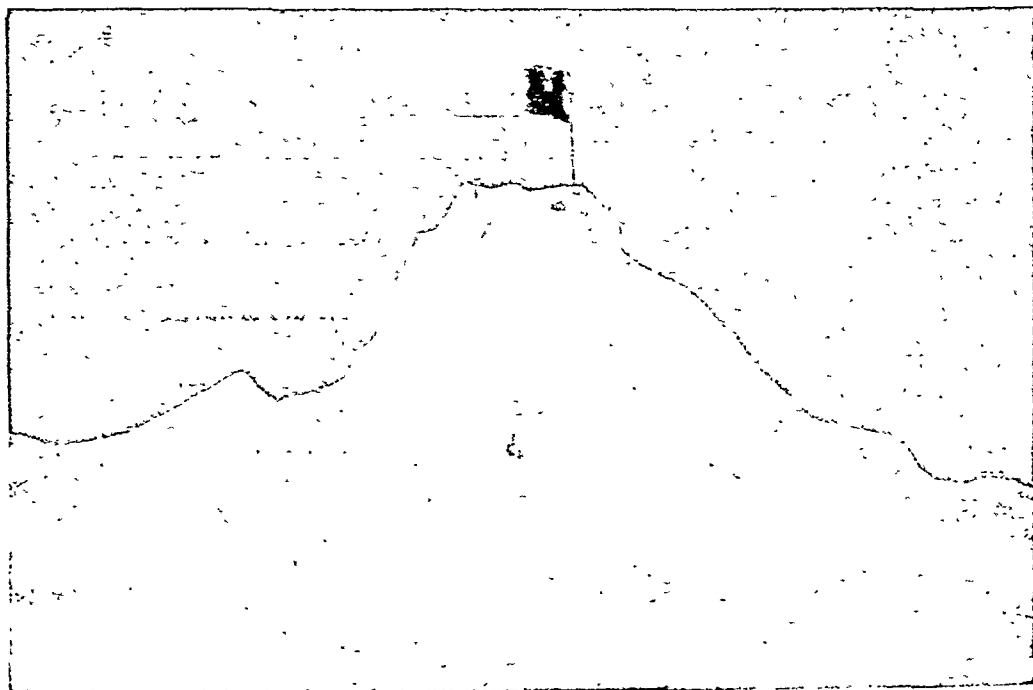
Gr. *archôn*, pres. p. of *arkhein* to rule.

**archway** (arch' wä), *n.* An arched entrance. See arch.

## THE LONELY GOAL OF ARCTIC EXPLORERS THAT PEARY REACHED



Arctic.—Commander Robert E. Peary, the American explorer, searching the horizon for land on his eighth expedition to the Arctic regions, during which he discovered the North Pole on the 6th April, 1909.



Arctic.—The national ensign of the United States of America, marking the North Polar axis of the earth. The photographs on this page are reproduced from "The North Pole," by Robert E. Peary, by courtesy of Messrs. Hodder & Stoughton.

# ARCTIC TRIALS AND TRIUMPHS

*The many Expeditions that have been Made since the Days of Alfred the Great*

**Arctic** (ark' tik), *adj.* Northern; relating to the North Polar regions. *n.* The North Polar regions. (*F. arctique.*)

For more than a thousand years the call of the Arctic, the region north of latitude 66° 30', that is, within the Arctic Circle (*n.*), has been felt and answered by brave and venturesome men of many countries. In the time of Alfred the Great the earliest recorded attempt to conquer the icy north was made by the Norwegian, Ottar, or Ohthere, who discovered the White Sea. About a century after, a countryman of his, Eric the Red, crossed the North Atlantic Ocean on a daring westward voyage from Iceland, which enabled him to discover Greenland.

Nearly five centuries after these early attempts John Cabot set out in 1497 to discover a north-west passage to the Indies, and in the following year his son Sebastian made a similar voyage. Neither was successful. Later came Sir Hugh Willoughby; Richard Chancellor; Sir Martin Frobisher, whose name is commemorated by Frobisher Bay; John Davis, who reached Davis Strait in 1587; and the Dutchman, William Barents, who discovered Spitsbergen, but died on the way home in an open boat, after having been compelled to spend many dreary months in the bleakness of an Arctic winter.

Others who have written their name on the roll of Arctic exploration are Henry Hudson, who with his son was turned adrift in an open boat by his mutinous crew; William Baffin; Vitus Bering, the Dane; James Cook; James Clark Ross, who found the North Magnetic Pole; and the ill-fated Sir John Franklin, whose voyage in the "Erebus," accompanied by the "Terror" ended in the loss of the entire expedition.

Of the many efforts to discover the North Pole in the nineteenth century, one of the earliest was made by Admiral Sir William Parry in 1827. He reached 82° 45' N., a "farthest north" which was not beaten until the voyage of Captain George Strong Nares enabled a sledge journey to be made as far north as 82° 48'.

Of those other intrepid voyagers who attempted yet failed to reach the North Pole mention may be made of Fridtjof Nansen, who made a dash over the ice to 86° 14' N.; Otto Sverdrup, who made his effort in Nansen's ship, the "Fram"; the Duke of the Abruzzi; Umberto Cagni, who eclipsed the record set up by Nansen; and Salomon Andrée, who set out in a balloon and was never heard of again.

One of the most daring and persistent of all the later explorers was the American, Robert E. Peary. After making several expeditions he had the satisfaction of realizing his great ambition, when, on April 6th, 1909, he reached the North Pole, the goal that had been striven for gallantly but unsuccessfully by so many adventurous spirits before him.

No one has since reached the Pole "across the ice," but in 1926 Roald Amundsen, who on December 14th, 1911, had reached the South Pole for the first time, flew there and back in the airship "Norge," after a previous effort made by aeroplane had failed.

The Arctic fox (*n.*) is a native of the North Polar regions of both the Old World and the New. In summer the coat of this species of fox is coloured white and brown, but in winter it changes to a pure white, and the fur grows to a great length. There is another kind of Arctic fox, however, whose coat remains the same slaty colour throughout



Arctic.—An Arctic hare and two Arctic foxes. In the winter the coat of the fox changes from brown and white to a pure white, but that of the hare is always white.



the seasons—the blue fox—and the fur of this animal is greatly sought by traders. The scientific name is *Vulpes lagopus*.

*L. arcticus*, Gr. *arktikos*, from Gr. *arktos* bear (the constellation).

**Arcturus** (ark tūr' ūs), *n.* The brightest star in the group called Boötes. (*F. Arcturus, Arcture.*)

Arcturus is the fourth brightest star in the heavens. The name means bear-keeper, and was given because of the position of the star at the tail of the Great Bear (*Ursa Major*). In the question addressed to Job (xxxviii, 32): "Canst thou guide Arcturus with his sons?" it is not certain whether this star or the Great Bear is meant.

*L. Arcturus*, Gr. *Arktouros*, from Gr. *arktos* bear, *ouros* watcher.

**arcuate** (ar' kū āt), *adj.* Curved; arched. (*F. arqué.*)

This word is used chiefly by scientists to describe something that is arch-shaped. Arcuated (ar' kū āt ēd, *adj.*) is used in the same way and also to describe architecture in which arches are a prominent feature.

The act or result of bending anything into the shape of an arch is arcuation (ar' kū ā' shūn, *n.*). This term is used for arched work in building; for the method of making new trees by bending down twigs and pegging them into the ground, where in time they strike root; and also for certain unusual formations of bones.

*L. arcuatus*, p.p. of *arcuare* to bend like a bow (*arcus*).

**ardent** (ar' dēnt), *adj.* Burning; passionate. (*F. ardent, brûlant.*)

We do not now use this word in the literal sense of inflammable or combustible, though we speak of ardent spirits, meaning alcoholic liquors that are burning to the taste. It is chiefly used in connexion with the emotions. For example, we say that a person is of an ardent nature, or that he

expresses his feelings with great ardency (ar' dēn si, *n.*) or ardour (ar' dor, *n.*).

M.E. *ardaunt*, O.F. *ardant*, L. *ardens* (gen. *ardentis*), pres. p. of *ardēre* to burn. SYN.: Fervent, hot, sanguine, vehement, zealous. ANT.: Cold, dispassionate, indifferent, lukewarm, phlegmatic.

**arduous** (ar' dū ūs), *adj.* Difficult; needing much effort. (*F. ardu, difficile.*)

This word suggests the idea of difficulties to be overcome, such difficulties as are encountered by a man who attempts to climb a lofty mountain. A person who undertakes an arduous task has to work arduously (ar' dū ūs li, *adv.*), that is, in the way that is needed to surmount obstacles. The difficult nature of the task is its arduousness (ar' dū ūs nēs, *n.*).

*L. arduus* steep, difficult of access, probably of Celtic origin (cp. Irish *ard* high) and possibly connected with Gr. *orthos* upright, steep. SYN.: Exhausting, laborious, onerous, trying. ANT.: Easy, simple, slight, trivial.

**are** [1] (ar), *n.* A French unit of measure. (*F. are.*)

This is a unit of square measure used in the French metric system. It represents the area of a square of which each side is ten metres in length, that is, 100 square metres, which is equal to 119.6 square yards.

*L. area* surface.

**are** [2] (ar), *v.* Plural present indicative of the verb *to be*. (*F. sont.*)

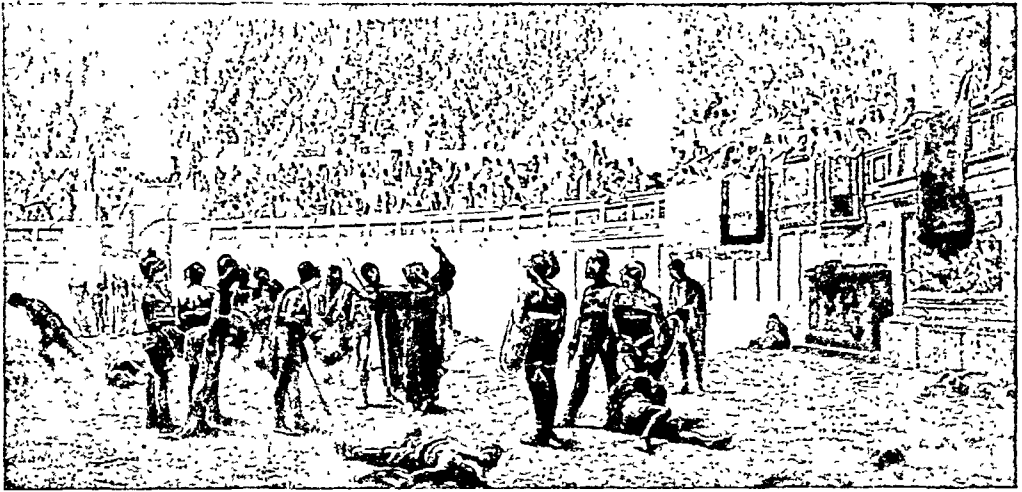
We say that the elephant is a sagacious animal, but that elephants *are* found in India and Africa.

M.E. *are*, *aren*, O. Northumbrian *aron*=O. Norse *eru* for *esu*, cp. A.-S. *sind*, *sint*, Gr. *eisī*, L. *sunt*, G. *sind*, all from a root *es* to be.

**area** (ār' ē à), *n.* An open space. (*F. aire.*) The space, usually enclosed by railings, through which entrance is obtained to the basement of a building is an area. The surface measurement of a piece of land, a territory or



Arduous.—The arduous work of a coal miner below a coal seam. He is using a hand pick, but in some mines electric cutters are employed.



**Arena.**—The heroic monk Almachis attempting to stop a combat between gladiators in the arena of the great amphitheatre at Rome in the year 404. Although he was put to death, the Emperor forbade such combats from that day.

a country, is called the area; England, for example, has an area of 50,874 square miles.

Any site on which a building stands is an area. In geometry the space covered by a circle or a triangle is called the area, and the word in biology denotes a limited portion of the surface of an organism.

*L. area* a site or piece of ground. The word is connected by some with *L. arere* to be dry, in the sense of dry land.

**areca** (ār' ē kā), *n.* A genus of palm trees. (*F. arec.*)

The best known species of areca are the betel palm (*Areca catechu*) of Asia and the cabbage palm (*A. oleracea*) of the West Indies. The former bears nuts, which contain an intoxicating drug. The natives chew these nuts, sliced and rolled up in the leaves of the betel vine, with a little lime added.

This habit renders the mouth and saliva red, and blackens the teeth; but it also sweetens the breath, and is believed to preserve the teeth and help digestion.

Span. Port. from Tamil *ādaikāy*, from *ada* close-clustered, *kay* nut.

**arefy** (ār' ē fi), *v.t.* To make dry. (*F. dessécher.*)

The heat of the sun may be said to arefy the earth. In every tannery there is a room where the skins or hides after being tanned are hung up to dry; there they undergo arefaction (ār ē fāk' shūn, *n.*), the last process before they are sold as leather.

*L. arefacere* to make dry, from *arere* to be dry, and *facere* to make, contracted into *E. -fy*. SYN.: Drain, parch, wither. ANT.: Moisten, saturate, soak, wet.

**arena** (ā rē' nā), *n.* An amphitheatre; the scene of a contest. (*F. arène.*)

This word really refers to the central part of an amphitheatre where combats between gladiators and other great spectacles took place in the days of ancient Rome. It is, now, however, often used to refer to the

amphitheatre itself. The floor was covered with sand and this gave rise to its name. It is also commonly used to describe any place of public contest or activity, such as a boxing arena, an arena of learning, or an arena of debate.

The heroic sacrifice of a monk led to the banning of gladiatorial combats in A.D. 404, after they had entertained Rome for more than 600 years. A great combat had been staged for the Emperor Honorius, and just as the victor was about to deliver the fatal blow to his beaten opponent, an aged monk, Almachis, leaped into the arena and called upon him to stop. The angry crowd in the Colosseum stoned the monk to death, but his bravery so impressed the Emperor that he forbade such combats from that day.

Things that are sandy or made of sand are described as arenaceous (ār ē nā' shūs, *adj.*). Rocks formed of sandstone are known as arenaceous rocks. Anything full of grit or sand is said to be arenose (ār' ē nōs, *adj.*).

*L. arena* (earlier *harena*) sand. SYN.: Space, enclosure, theatre.

**arenaria** (ār ē nār' i ā), *n.* The sandwort. (*F. arénaire.*)

This is a large genus of tiny plants related to the more beautiful pinks. See sandwort.

*L. arenaria*, fem. sing. of *arenarius* (*harenarius*) relating to sand (*arena*).

**areocentric** (ār ē ō sen' trik), *adj.* Centring in the planet Mars.

Ares was the Greek god of war corresponding to the Roman Mars. When an astronomer speaks of "motion in areocentric longitude," he is regarding Mars as the centre of the system referred to.

Gr. *Arēs* the planet Mars, *lenton* centre.

**areography** (āre og' rā h), *n.* Description of the physical features of the planet, Mars or Ares.

Gr. *Arēs* the planet Mars, *graphem* to write.

**areola** (à rê' ô là), *n.* A very small area or space. (F. *aréole*.)

The wings of many insects are divided into small areas or areolae (à rê' ô lê, *n.pl.*) by dark lines or by strengthening ribs or nervures. The skin of leaves is areolate (à rê' ô lâ, *adj.*), this areolation (à rê' ô lâ' shùn, *n.*) being due to the wavy outlines of the cells. The fibrous tissue which underlies our skin, and supports and binds together the organs and other parts of the body, is called areolar (à rê' ô lâ, *adj.*) tissue, because of the many small spaces between the fibres.

A tiny dimple in a surface is called an areola, as is the red ring round a pustule on the skin of anyone suffering from an eruptive disease. If we watch the heavens we may see one or other of the bright stars surrounded by a blue or violet areole (âr' è ôl, *n.*).

*L. areola* a small open space, dim. of *L. area*.

**areology** (âr' è ol' o ji), *n.* The science which deals with the substance and structure of the planet Mars or Ares. It corresponds with geology, which is the science dealing with the substance and structure of the earth.

*Gr. Arēs* the planet Mars, *logos* discourse, science.

**areometer** (âr' è om' èt' èr), *n.* A device for measuring the specific gravity of a liquid. (F. *aréomètre*.)

The measurement of specific gravity is called areometry (âr' è om' èt' ri, *n.*). See hydrometer.

*Gr. araios* thin, *metron* measure.

**Areopagus** (âr' è op' à gûs), *n.* The highest court of ancient Athens. (F. *Areopage*.)

Several hundred years before the Christian era there stood a temple to Ares, the Greek god of war, on a hill in the State of Athens, and near by there met a court of justice composed of members of the class of nobles. It met in the open, at night, and heard cases of murder, arson, robbery, and other crimes, and occasionally the disputes of other Greek states were entrusted to the court for settlement. This assembly was known as the Areopagus, and it became famous for the soundness, purity, and justice of its dealings.

Some writers say that Solon (638-558 B.C.), the great Athenian statesman and one of the seven sages of Greece, was its founder, others that it was established by Cecrops, the mythical founder of Athens and the first King of Attica, and it is probable that it was of very ancient origin. There was no appeal from the decision of the court, which retained its power and high reputation until the time of Pericles (499-429 B.C.), who made himself an Areopagite (âr' è op' à gît, *n.*), after having been refused membership. Its decline dated from then.

*Gr. Areiopagos*, from *Areios* belonging to Ares, *pagos* hill, *L. Areopagus*.

**arête** (a rât'), *n.* A sharp upward ridge of a mountain. (F. *arête*.)

This is a French word derived from Latin. It is the term regularly used in Switzerland by mountain climbers.

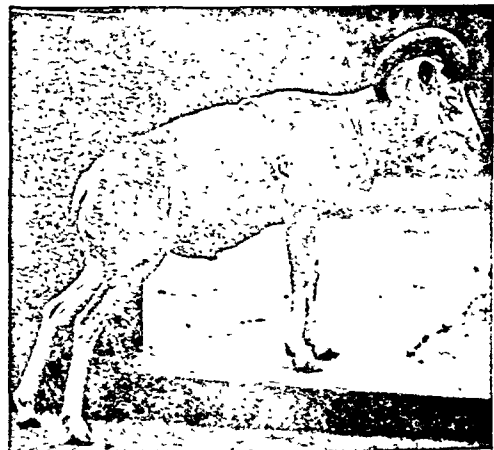
*O.F. areste, L. arista* an ear of corn, fish-bone.

**Aretinian syllables** (ar' à tin' i' àn sil' àblz), *n.pl.* Notes of the musical scale. (F. *syllabes arétines*.)

A Benedictine monk named Guido Aretino, or Guido d'Arezzo, first made use of these syllables, which are named after him, in the eleventh century. They are *ut, re, mi, fa, sol, la*, and are taken from a Latin hymn of the eighth century. The seventh syllable of the scale, *si*, was added later and *ut* was changed to *do*.

**argala** (ar' gà là), *n.* A large species of stork found in India. (F. *argale*.) It is better known by its other name of adjutant-bird. See adjutant-bird.

*Hind. hargilā.*



Argali.—The wild sheep of the mountains of Central Asia and the steppes of Siberia.

**argali** (ar' gà li), *n.* The wild sheep which inhabits the mountains of Central Asia and the steppes of Siberia; the mountain sheep of the Rockies in North America. (F. *argali*.)

The argali of Asia is supposed by some to be the original stock of the domestic sheep. One of its chief features is its large horns, which are about four feet long, and over a foot round at the base. During a fight with an enemy—and the male argali is a good fighter—the animal's horns are often knocked off, and in the decaying cavities of these many a young fox has found a night's shelter.

The name is of Mongolian origin.

**argand lamp** (ar' gänd lāmp), *n.* A lamp with a circular wick and circular glass chimney which allow air to pass both inside and outside the flame, and close to it. (F. *lampe d'Argand, quinquet*.)

When Aimé Argand, the Swiss physician, invented the lamp in 1784 it was hailed as a great invention, for it gave a flame vastly

brighter than that of any of the earlier smoky oil lamps. Large argand lamps were used in lighthouses for nearly a hundred years. The argand burner (*n.*) for gas light was similar to the lamp burner.

**argent** (ar' jënt), *n.* The white colour which in heraldry stands for silver. *adj.* Like silver. (*F. argent; argente.*)

An object of argent colour is silver-white. An argentiferous (är jën tif' ér üs, *adj.*) ore is an ore containing silver. An argentine (är' jën tîn, *adj.*) object is made of silver or has silver in it. Argentine (*n.*) is also the name given to silver-plated white metal and a small silvery fish.

*L. argentum* silver.

**argil** (ar' jil), *n.* Potter's clay. (*F. argile.*)

Argil is the white clay used for making earthenware. Anything which is of the nature of clay, or contains a large amount of clay is described as argillaceous (ar jil lä' shüs, *adj.*), and anything which produces or yields clay is argilliferous (ar jil lif' ér üs, *adj.*).

*L. argilla*, Gr. *argilos* white clay, from *argos* white.

**Argive** (ar' jiv), *n.* One who belongs to Argos. *adj.* Of Argos. (*F. argien.*)

Argos is said to be the most ancient city of Greece, and its inhabitants are called Argives. Anything belonging to this city is described as Argive, for example, an Argive merchant. The name was applied to all Greeks by Homer.

*L. Argivus*, Gr. *Argaios*.

**argol** (ar' göl), *n.* Crude cream of tartar deposited from wines. (*F. tartre brut.*)

When wine is allowed to stand in casks a reddish crust gradually forms. This is called argol. If this is purified we get cream of tartar, which is used in baking powders, and from which tartaric acid can be obtained.

The origin of the word is unknown; a connexion with Gr. *argos* white, has been suggested.

**argon** (ar' gön), *n.* One of the gases that make up the atmosphere. (*F. argon.*)

Until 1894 it was generally thought that the air we breathe consisted of two gases only, oxygen and nitrogen. But some chemists had noticed that there seemed to be present a gas which was neither of these. In 1894 Lord Rayleigh and Professor William Ramsay were able to announce that they had

found in the air a third gas, which they named argon, or lazy gas, because it seemed to combine with no other element. Rather less than one part out of a hundred parts of air is argon.

Gr. *argos* idle, inert, from *a-* = not, *ergon* work, doing no work.

**Argonaut** (ar' gö nawt), *n.* One of the band of heroes who went in search of the Golden Fleece; the paper nautilus. (*F. argonaute.*)

The Argonauts took their name from their ship the "Argo," which was built by Argos, a member of their band. They succeeded in their dangerous quest, and had many exciting adventures. Once they had to row between two cliffs which crushed everything that tried to pass between them. But they

sent a pigeon through first, and when the cliffs had closed on the bird and were opening again they managed to get through.

Poems about the Argonautic (ar gö nawt' ik, *adj.*) expedition are called Argonautics, and so sometimes are the Argonauts themselves. The paper nautilus, a curious kind of cuttlefish, was called the Argonaut after the ship of the Argonauts because it was supposed to use some of its arms as oars and the others as sails.

*L. Argonauta*, Gr. *Argonautës*, from *Argo*, *nautës* sailor.

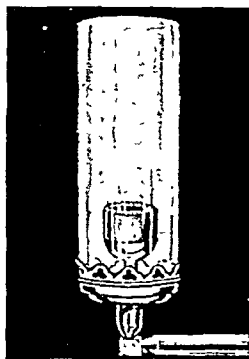
**argosy** (ar' gö si), *n.* A large merchant ship, especially one carrying a freight of great value. (*F. galleon, caraque.*)

The word was first used of a ship of Ragusa, a seaport in Dalmatia, on the Adriatic Sea. For over 300 years Ragusa did so large a trade by sea that its ships were famous in all countries on the Mediterranean Sea. The

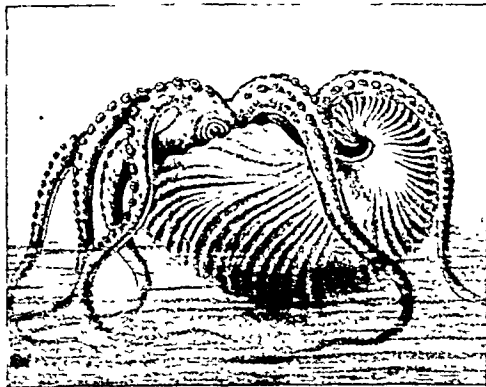
Italian words for a Ragusan ship (*una Ragusea*) may have been corrupted into our word argosy. Earlier English spellings are *ragusy* and *aragouse*. The word has no connexion with *Argo*, the ship of the Argonauts.

**argue** (ar' gū), *v.i.* To try to prove; to discuss. *v.i.* To advance reasons; to dispute. (*F. prouver, discuter; disputer.*)

To discuss or dispute a question is to argue it. Counsel debate a question in law with a view of proving by argumentation (ar gū men tä' shün, *n.*) a case to the satisfaction of a judge and jury. The fact that such



Argand burner.—The invention of Aimé Argand.

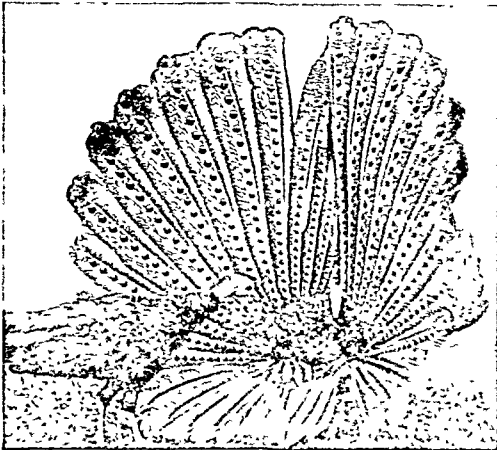


Argonaut.—A Mediterranean mollusc that was believed to use its arms as oars and sails.

argument (ar' gū mēnt, *n.*) is necessary shows that the question was arguable (ar' gū ābl, *adj.*).

People who are disposed to argue continually are argumentative (ar gū men' tā tiv, *adj.*), and their argumentativeness (ar gū men' tā tiv nēs, *n.*) becomes an annoyance to those who are not argumentatively (ar gū men' tā tiv li, *adv.*) inclined.

L.L. *argutare*, frequentative of *arguere* to make clear (cognate with Gr. *argos* clear), to prove. SYN.: Debate, discuss, dispute, question, reason. ANT.: Allow, assert, assume, concede, grant.



Argus pheasant.—The male bird is showing off its wings by throwing them forward in front of its head.

Argus (ar' gūs), *n.* A very watchful guardian. (F. *Argus*.)

In the old Greek story, Argus was a strange being who had 100 eyes, all over his body. When Hera, the queen of the gods, wanted someone to keep watch over Io, whose love her husband Zeus had won, she thought she could not choose anyone better fitted to guard her.

While Argus was watching with all his eyes he heard a lovely sound. It was the god Hermes playing on his lyre. Hermes had been sent by Zeus to carry Io away. So sweet was the music that Argus fell fast asleep, and Hermes slew him. Hera then put his 100 eyes in the tail of the peacock. Anyone who is so watchful that he seems to have eyes all over him we call argus-eyed (*adj.*)

There is a beautiful pheasant with eye-like spots on its feathers called the Argus pheasant (*n.*) and some butterflies with eyelike spots on their wings are called Argus. The Argus shell is a cowry that is marked in this way.

aria (a' ri ā), *n.* An air or song written for a single voice or instrument, with an accompaniment for either orchestra or piano. (F. *aria*.)

An aria differs from an arietta in that it is on a much more imposing scale, and is more difficult in character, requiring considerable

technical skill and ability on the part of the performer.

Ital. *aria*, probably from L. *aēr* air, breath.

Arian (ār' i ān), *adj.* Of or to do with Arius. *n.* A believer in Arianism. (F. *arien*.)

The word comes from Arius, who was a prominent figure in the Church at Alexandria in the fourth century. The Arian heresy denied the deity of Jesus Christ. It affirmed that He was not God, but a creature made by God, higher than man, and higher than the angels, but not of the same nature as God; the Father alone is God.

The Son of God, according to this doctrine, is merely a super-angelic being, not eternal, in that He had a beginning, and with limited knowledge and power. This heresy was condemned by the Council of Nicaea, A.D. 325. Arianism (ār' i ān izm, *n.*) is the name given to this teaching, and to Arianize (ār' i ān īze, *v.i.*) is to spread the knowledge of Arianism.

arid (ār' id), *adj.* Dried up; parched; lacking moisture; dull; fruitless. (F. *aride*.)

Without moisture plants and trees cannot grow, so the most noticeable thing about the arid regions of the world is the scarcity of vegetable life. In the great deserts of North Africa, Arabia, and Asia one may travel many miles without seeing a sign of any living tree or plant.

Such aridity (ā rid' i ti, *n.*) or aridness (ār' id nēs, *n.*) has in many places been caused by the felling of forests, which not only keep the



Arid.—The arid wastes of Ahmar-Kreddou, in the Algerian Sahara.

air moist but store up rain in the ground on which they stand, and prevent it from running away quickly and being wasted.

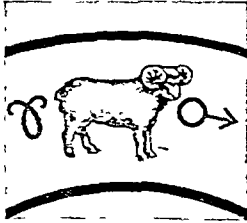
An arid country is by no means always a naturally barren country, for many hundreds of thousands of square miles where nothing now grows only need water to yield heavy crops. In India, Australia, the United States, and elsewhere huge areas of what was once desert have been supplied with water by irrigation, and now produce crops.

In the Sahara, French engineers have sunk hundreds of wells which have won back part of the desert from aridity to fertility.

*L. aridus*, from *arêre* to be dry. SYN.: Barren, dry, dull, parched, sterile. ANT.: Fertile, luxurious, moist, productive, verdant.

**Aries** (är' i ēz), *n.* A constellation or group of fixed stars; a battering ram. (F. *le Bélier*, *bélier*.)

Aries or the Ram is the second constellation and the first sign of the Zodiac. At the time the constellations were named the spring equinox, March 21st, occurred when the sun was said to be in the Ram; but owing to what is called the precession of the equinoxes, this now occurs when the sun is in the constellation Pisces (the Fishes). This makes Pisces the first constellation of the Zodiac, but Aries is still called the first sign of the Zodiac.



Aries.—The first sign of the Zodiac.

*L. aries* ram, battering ram.

**arietta** (a ri et' tā), *n.* A short song, movement, or melody. (F. *ariette*.)

Such melodies are very often found in oratorios, operas, and other musical works, and are usually written in an exceedingly dainty and effective way. They differ from the aria, which is much longer and fuller.

Ital. dim. of *aria*.

**aright** (ä rit'), *adv.* Properly; without a mistake. (F. *droitement*.)

Aright is only rarely preferred to rightly or correctly. Sometimes, however, it occurs with words like act, think, and hear. A remark which surprises us often sets us wondering whether we have heard aright.

From *a-* = on, *right*, in the right manner.

**aril** (är' il), *n.* An extra covering to a seed. (F. *arille*.)

An aril is a special growth from the base of the seed of a plant, which gradually envelops it like a mantle. The aril takes many different forms; such as the juicy, scarlet cup of the yew, the mace of the nutmeg, and the silky hairs of the willow and poplar. The seeds of all these plants are arilled (är' ild, *adj.*) or arillate (ä ril' ät, *adj.*).

A true aril is an outgrowth from the base of the seed, or from the cord or *funicle*, which binds it to the wall of the ovary. An aril-like outgrowth from the wall itself is called an arillode (ä ril' öd, *n.*).

Modern *L. arillus* wrapper, covering; L.L. dried grapes or grape-seed, from *L. aridus* dry, as if a contraction of *aridulus*.

**arise** (ä riz'), *v.i.* To get up; to take place; to originate. (F. *se lever*, *provenir*.)

This word is used in several ways. You arise when you get up from a sitting or

lying position, for example, when you get out of bed in the morning. High taxation and the shortage of houses arose (ä röz', *p.t.*) out of the World War (1914-18), that is, occurred as a result of the conflict. Now and then a new figure appears, or arises, in the field of politics or sport. When you see two people engaged in a quarrel you may wonder what caused it or how it arose. Difficulties have often arisen (ä riz' en, *p.p.*) between the best of friends.

A.-S. *ā-* intensive, and *rise*. SYN.: Appear, ascend, begin, happen, mount. ANT.: Conclude, descend, hide, lurk.

**arista** (ä ris' tā), *n.* An awn; the beard of grain and grasses. (F. *barbe*, *arête*.)

The scales or glumes of the flowering spikes of many grasses, including grain crops, end in a fine, bristly point called an awn or an arista. Such glumes are said to be aristate (ä ris' tät, *adj.*). Some flies have short feelers or antennae, ending in slender, hair-like aristae (ä ris' të, *n.pl.*), and some fish have aristate gills, the edges being fringed with fine bristly outgrowths.

*L. arista*, perhaps for *acrista* sharp point, from *acer* sharp.

**Aristarch** (är' is tark), *n.* One who is very critical. (F. *aristarque*.)

The word comes from a very learned Greek, Aristarchus of Samothrace, who died about 145 B.C. In those early days, long before printing was invented, the works of the great writers were copied by scribes, and in Alexandria there was a famous library of these writings. Aristarchus would take several copies of a single poem, compare them, see where the scribes had made mistakes, and finally make the poem as like the original as he possibly could. So particular was he that anyone who is a severe critic is called after him Aristarchian (är is tark' i än, *adj.*).

**aristocracy** (är is tok' rä si), *n.* Government by the noble and highly placed; the nobility. (F. *aristocratie*.)

In ancient Greece and Rome the aristocratic (är is to krät' ik, *adj.*) form of government existed for many years. In Rome, about 500 B.C., a stern struggle between the aristocrats (är' is to kratz, *n.pl.*) and the "plebeians," or common citizens, began for governmental reforms, and the right of members of the lower citizen class to take part in the government of the republic. This struggle ended by the plebeians being granted many rights that were formerly denied to them.

During the period of the French Revolution known as the Reign of Terror hundreds of the aristocracy, or nobles, of France and those who were aristocratically (är is to krat' ik ä l h, *adv.*) disposed were sent to the guillotine.

Gr. *aristokratia*, from *aristos* best, *kratos* power, rule. SYN.: Gentry, nobility, peerage. ANT.: Democracy, masses, people.

**Aristophanic** (ār is tō fān' ik), *adj.* Relating to Aristophanes; broadly comic. Aristophanes was the great comic dramatist of Athens, who died about 385 B.C. (F. *aristophanique*.)

**Aristotelian** (ār is tō tē' li ān), *adj.* Of or relating to Aristotle. *n.* An adherent of Aristotle. Aristotelean is another spelling. (F. *aristotélécien*.)

An Aristotelian is one who is learned in, or believes in, the teachings of Aristotle, the Greek philosopher (384-322 B.C.). Following those teachings is called **Aristotelianism** (ār is tō tē' li ān izm, *n.*).

**arithmetic** (ā rith' mē tik), *n.* The science which deals with numbers; calculation by numbers. (F. *arithmétique*.)

A good test of the intelligence of a race of people is to discover what skill they have in dealing with numbers. There are tribes in Africa, America, and Australia who cannot reckon beyond five; any larger number they call many. Others get as far as twenty by counting all their fingers and toes. These have always been a great aid to man in his reckoning, and some quite civilized people still find them useful.

It is because of his ten fingers that man uses a decimal system of numbers, that is, one which depends for its arrangement upon the number ten. So skilled have we become in using this system that there is no limit, either in greatness or smallness, to the numbers we can express.

Arithmetic deals with the methods by which such numbers may be added, subtracted, multiplied, and otherwise dealt with. It differs from algebra in that it deals with definite numbers and not with symbols, though the dividing line between the two branches can never be fixed absolutely. Thus in algebra we meet with arithmetical progressions (*n.pl.*), a series of numbers or quantities that increase or decrease by a constant quantity, such as: 7, 10, 13, 16, 19, etc.; or 15, 11, 7, 3.

The student of arithmetic is an arithmetician (ā rith mē tish' ān, *n.*), and he deals with calculations arithmetically (ā rith met' ik āl li, *adv.*).

Gr. *arithmētikē* (*tekhnē*) (the art of) number (*arithmos*).

**ark** (ark), *n.* A chest or vessel used to preserve, or keep safely, things that are sacred or precious. (F. *arche*.)

Among the Jews, the Ark was either the vessel which Noah built at the command of God to preserve those who were to be saved from the Flood, or the chest of acacia wood, which was known as the Ark of the Covenant.

An inmate of the Ark was an Arkite (ar' kit, *n.*), and this word is used as an adjective in referring to anything associated with the Ark. In the United States of America the name "ark" is given to the large flat-bottomed boats which are used for transporting produce down the rivers.

The Ark of the Covenant was an oblong chest nearly 4 ft. long and 2½ ft. broad and deep. It was covered with gold, and at each end of the lid was the figure of a cherub with outstretched wings to symbolize the presence of God. This lid was known as "the mercy seat."

Inside the chest were the two tablets of stone inscribed with the Ten Commandments, a pot of manna, and Aaron's rod. At each corner rings were fitted, through which passed the staves by which the Ark was carried by the priests during the wanderings of the children of Israel.

When the Temple was built the Ark was placed in the most holy place of the sanctuary, which was hidden by a veil.



Ark.—The Ark coming to rest on land after the deluge. as pictured by Brion. The original painting is in the Louvre, Paris.

A.-S. *arc*, L. *arca* chest, coffer, from *arcere* to keep off, preserve.

**arles** (arlz), *n.pl.* Scottish term for money paid to bind a bargain. (F. *arrhes*.)

It is now the custom to have the terms of a contract put in writing, but formerly a bargain was frequently settled by the payment of a sum of money called arles, or earnest-money. Arles refers particularly to money paid to a servant on being hired. Although plural in form the word is sometimes used as singular. Arles-penny (*n.*) has the same meaning.

Assumed L.L. *arrhula*, dim. of L. *arrha* earnest-money, Gr. *arrabōn*.

**arm** [1] (arm), *n.* The upper limb of a human being from the shoulder to the hand. (*F. bras.*)

The word is also used of the forelimbs of backboned animals other than man and of flexible tentacles or limbs of various animals such as the cuttle-fish; of the part of a garment which covers an arm; and of various things like arms, such as a branch or projecting part of a tree, river, sea, machine, etc. Again, half of a spar for carrying a square sail is called an arm. Arm is also used to mean power, as in such expressions as the arm of the law and the secular arm—the civil authority as opposed to that of a religious tribunal.

An **armhole** (*n.*) is a hole in a garment for the arm to pass through. The **armpit** (*n.*) is the hollow under an arm where it joins the body. An **armful** (*arm'ful n.*) is as much as can be held in one arm or both arms used together. A person without arms is **armless** (*arm'less, adj.*). To keep a person at arm's length is to prevent him from becoming familiar.

*A.-S. earm*, from root *ar* to fit; *cp. Gr. harmos* joint, *L. armus* shoulder, arm.

**arm** [2] (arm), *n.* A weapon; any branch of an army; navy, or air force. *v.t.* and *v.i.* To provide with arms, to prepare for war; to provide with tools or anything else useful; to provide a magnet with an armature. (*F. arme; armer, s'armer.*)

Arms in the plural means weapons generally, especially of war; armour; war and the business of war; and heraldic bearings. Many people have the right to wear a coat of arms. Those used by the King are called the royal arms.

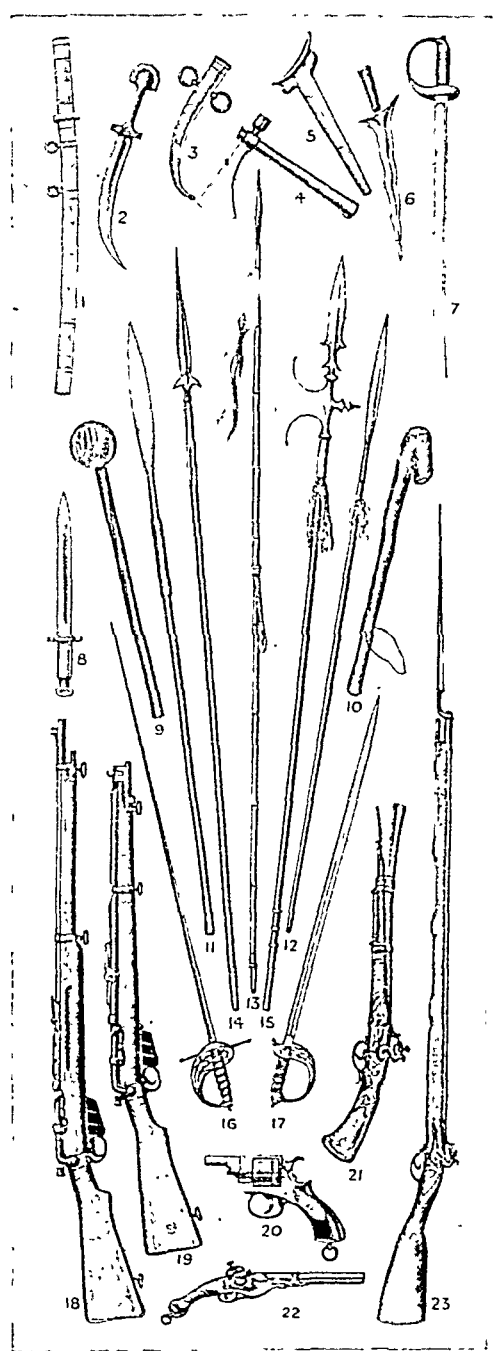
Pistols, rifles, guns, and other weapons using gunpowder or some similar explosive are called **fire-arms** (*n.pl.*), and any weapons which are carried by soldiers are called **small arms** (*n.pl.*). A set of arms for a soldier is called a stand of arms, and a soldier or an army is said to be under arms when bearing arms ready for fighting.

Anyone who is equipped with weapons or armour is said to be armed, and if he is armed very fully he is said to be armed to the teeth. A cat is armed with claws, a rose-bush with thorns, a porcupine with quills, and so on. A person is armed against the weather when he wears special clothing against rain or cold.

The act of preparing for war or providing with weapons, or furnishing with heraldic bearings is arming. A person is said to be arming for the fray when he is preparing to defend himself or to attack. If he is without any means of defence or attack he is **armless** (*arm'less, adj.*).

*F. arme, L. arma; cp. Gr. arma* fittings, tools (*neuter pl.*) *p.p. of arariskein* to fit, like [1] ultimately from root *ar-* to fit.

**armada** (*ar mā'dā; ar ma'da*), *n.* A fleet of ships of war. (*F. armada.*)



Arms.—1. Samurai (Japanese) ivory. 2 and 3. Afghan knife and sheath. 4. Tomahawk. 5 and 6. Malay breave and sheath. 7. Cutlass. 8. Bayonet. 9. Knoberry. 10. Shillelagh. 11. Assegai. 12. Spear. 13. Lance. 14. Pike. 15. Halberd. 16. Rapier. 17. Sword. 18. Rifle. 19. Carbine. 20. Revolver. 21. Blunderbuss. 22. Pistol. 23. Musket.

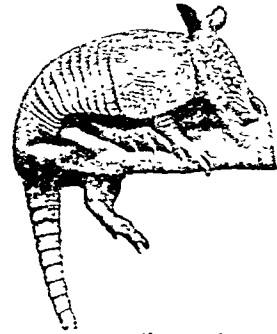


This word originally meant an armed force whether on land or sea. It then came to be used for an armed sea force, and especially for the great fleet that King Philip II of Spain sent to invade England in 1588. With the defeat of the Spanish Armada, or the Great Armada, or the Invincible Armada as it was variously called, England attained her proud position of mistress of the seas.

Span. *armada*, fem. p.p. of *armar* to arm, L. *armata*, p.p. of *armare*, any armed force.

**armadillo** (ar mà dil' ô), *n.* A South American animal with a hard bony covering over the back. (F. *armadille*, *tatou*.)

The armadillo is, generally speaking, a timid animal. Although it has strong claws, which it can put to good use when occasion arises, it wisely rolls itself into a ball when danger is near. **Armadillos** (*n.pl.*) belong to the family Dasypodidae.



Armadillo.—When in danger this South American animal rolls itself into a ball.

The name is Spanish, dim. of *armado* armed, so called from its bony shell.

**Armageddon** (ar mà ged' on), *n.* The last great battle of the nations; any great final conflict; any battle or war marked by tremendous slaughter and destruction. (F. *Armageddon*.)

The World War was an armageddon. When the writer of Revelation (xvi. 16) sought to name a suitable place for his vision of a battle on the Day of Judgment, he remembered the mountain district (*har*) of Megiddo, where many battles of Israel had been fought.

**armament** (ar' mà mënt), *n.* Munitions of war, especially the guns of a ship; a force equipped for war; the act of equipping for war; equipment generally for war or other purposes. (F. *armement*.)

L. *armamenta* (neuter pl.) things for equipment, from *armare* to arm, suffix *-mentum*, means or instrument.

**armature** (ar' mà tür), *n.* Armour; a protection; a device in electricity and magnetism. (F. *armure*; *armature*.)

The armature of a permanent magnet is the soft iron "keeper" placed across its poles to prevent loss of magnetism when the magnet is not in use. Then it comes to mean something attracted by a magnet, such as the part of an electric bell to which the hammer is fastened. Finally, it is the name given to the drum-shaped part of an electric dynamo or motor which revolves between the poles of the machine.

L. *armatura*, from *armare* to arm, fem. supine suffix *-tura*.

**armchair** (arm chär'), *n.* A chair with arms. (F. *fauteuil*.)

An armchair is much more restful than an ordinary chair because it has sides or arms to support the elbows or forearms of the person sitting in it.

E. *arm* and *chair*.

**Armenian** (ar mē' ni än), *adj.* Relating to Armenia. *n.* A native of Armenia; the language of Armenia. (F. *arménien*; *arménien*.)

This country of high tablelands, whose inhabitants have suffered so much from massacres, has given its name to two products of the earth. One, a soft red clay, is known as Armenian bole (*n.*), and the other, which is called Armenian stone (*n.*), is a blue coppery substance once used as a medicine.

**armet** (ar' mèt), *n.* A kind of helmet first used in the fifteenth century. (F. *armet*.)

The armet was a steel helmet which not only completely covered the head, but usually had a part in front which could be lowered to protect the face, and an added piece at the back to protect the neck.

O.F. *armette*, dim. of *arme*, from L. *armare* to furnish (with protective armour).

**armiger** (ar' mi jër), *n.* An esquire. (F. *armigère*.)

Originally armigers were armour-bearers, that is, men retained by the knights of old to carry their armour. This was a post of honour, and so armiger came to mean one whose station in life was next below that of a knight, or someone entitled, as a special mark of distinction or honour, to a coat of arms. A person, family, company, etc., entitled to display a coat of arms or armorial bearings may be described as armigerous (ar mij' èr ùs, *adj.*).

L. *arma* arms, *gerere* to bear.

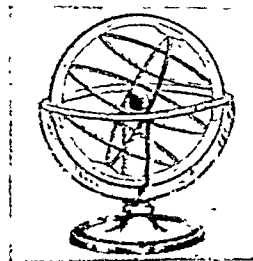
**armilla** (ar mil' à), *n.* A bracelet; an armlet; an obsolete astronomical instrument once used for calculating the times of the solstices and equinoxes; the round ligament of the wrist. (F. *armille*.)

The astronomical instrument has now been replaced by the celestial sphere. **Armillary** (ar' mil är i; ar mil' à ri, *adj.*) objects are things relating to bracelets or consisting of parts resembling bracelets.

L. *armilla* armlet, ring, dim. of *armus* shoulder, arm.

**armillary sphere** (ar' mil är i; ar mil' à ri sfër), *n.* A bygone astronomical instrument. (F. *sphère armillaire*.)

Scientists of the Middle Ages were very fond of making models of the earth and of the solar system to illustrate their studies in geography and astronomy. The armillary sphere was such a model. It got its



Armillary sphere.—An astronomical instrument of the Middle Ages.

name from the fact that it was built up of a number of metal rings, like bracelets. These represented the equator, the sun's apparent path, and circles through the poles. By altering their positions it was possible to show the effects of the earth's movement in space. The celestial sphere now takes its place.

*L. armilla* armet, ring, suffix *-arius* belonging to; *L. sphaera*, *Gr. sphaira*, ball.

**arming-press** (arm' ing pres), *n.* A stamping press used in bookbinding. (*F. presse de carton.*)

This press is small and is worked by hand. It is so called because it was used originally for stamping "coats of arms" on the sides of books.

**Arminian** (ar' min i an), *adj.* Of or relating to Arminius or his religious doctrine. *n.* A follower of Arminius. (*F. arminien.*)

Jacobus Arminius, called in Dutch Jakob Harmensen, was born in Holland in 1560. He denied the teaching of John Calvin that God had singled out some people to eternal life and others to eternal death, and declared (1) that from the beginning God purposed the salvation of all men who believe on Jesus Christ and persevere in their faith; (2) that Christ died for all men, though only those who accept His salvation will be saved; (3) that man has not the saving grace within himself, but it is needful for him to be born anew by the grace of the Holy Spirit; (4) that it is possible to resist this grace; (5) that it is possible to fall away from a state of grace.

John Wesley was a follower of Arminius, and the doctrine of the Wesleyan Methodists is largely that of Arminianism (ar min' i an izm, *n.*).

**armistice** (ar' mis tis), *n.* The stopping of fighting for an agreed time during war; the agreement by which such stopping takes place; a truce. (*F. armistice.*)

When two armies agree to stop fighting for a short period, for example, to enable them to bury their dead, such stopping is called a truce or a suspension of arms. An armistice is an agreement to stop fighting for a longer period, usually with a view to talking over peace terms. It was this kind of agreement which the Germans asked for in 1918, when the armistice bringing the World War to an end was signed on November 11th.

Modern *L. armistitium*, from *arma* arms, and *-stitium* stoppage, coined from *statum*, supine of *sistere* to make to stop, stop.

**armlet** (arm' lèt), *n.* A band or bracelet or piece of armour worn on the arm; a river creek; a small inlet of a lake or sea. (*F. brassard, petit bras.*)

During the first year of the World War of 1914-18, a method of obtaining recruits for the army called the Derby scheme was tried. The scheme was named after Lord Derby, who was director-general in charge of recruiting, and it consisted of inviting all men between 18 and 41 years of age to join the

army at once, and then return home and await their turn to be called for service. This was called "attesting," and every one who attested was given an armlet, to wear on his right arm, which showed that he was ready to fight for his country as soon as required. It was made of khaki, on which a red crown was woven.

Some people wear an armlet of red tape when they have been vaccinated, to warn people not to touch or knock against the arm. Police constables wear armlets when on duty, as also do Post Office telegraph messengers, railway porters without uniforms, and certain street traders.

*E. arm*, and dim. suffix *-let*; cp. *O.F. armillet* small ornament for the arm.

**Armorican** (ar mor' ik an), *adj.* Relating to Armorica or Brittany. *n.* The language of Armorica; a native of Armorica. (*F. Armoricaîn.*)

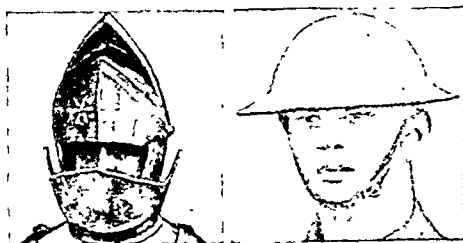
Armorica in Gaul was the land of the Armorici, a tribe which lived in what we now call Brittany. In the fifth century many Celts fled thither from Britain, and from these fugitives probably came that Celtic language, sometimes called Armorican, which the Bretons still speak. The word *Armoric* (ar mor' ik) is also used in the same sense as the adjective *Armorican* and for the language as well.

The name is of Celtic origin, from *ar* on, *mor* sea.

**armory** (ar' mò ri), *n.* Heraldry. (*F. blason.*)

What used to be known as armory is now usually called heraldry, which is the science that has to do with coats of arms or armorial (ar mòr' i al, *adj.*) bearings. A book which contains coats of arms is called an armorial (*n.*), and a man who is learned in the science of heraldry and in describing coats of arms is an armorer (ar' mòr ist, *n.*).

*O.F. armorie* coat of arms, *armoier* to blazon, from *L. arma* arms.



Armour.—The helmet, with visor, of an old-time warrior, and the shrapnel helmet of a soldier of to-day.

**armour** (ar' mòr), *n.* A defensive covering. *v.t.* To provide with a defensive covering. (*F. cuirasse, armure; armer d'une cuirasse.*)

The use of armour dates back to very ancient times. It is mentioned often in the Bible, and the soldiers of Troy, who lived twelve hundred years before Christ was

born, are stated by the poet Homer to have worn armour.

In early times the chief forms of armour were shield, and breastplates, and helmets, but gradually the rest of the body was covered until, in the age of chivalry, knights in complete armour were clothed from head to foot in mailed armour, chain armour, or scale armour; and were so well protected that they were not often mortally wounded. Mail armour consisted of little plates of metal sewn on leather, chain armour of interlocking rings of steel, and scale armour of small circular plates like the scales of a fish.

Armour became so heavy at last that only the very strongest knights could wear it, and even they were not able to fight properly, because they could not move quickly. When gunpowder was invented the use of such

An armour bearer (*n.*) is one who carries his master's armour. A warship is covered with steel plates to protect it from shell fire and is then said to be *armour-clad* (*adj.*) or *armour-plated* (*adj.*), and the steel coverings are called *armour-plate* (*n.*) or *armour-plating* (*n.*). A ship so protected is said to be *armoured* (*adj.*). *Armoured concrete* (*n.*) is another name for *ferro-concrete*, concrete which has iron or steel rods, bars, or wire mesh in it to give it added strength. A man who makes armour is an *armourer* (*ar' mōr ēr, n.*), and so is a non-commissioned officer on board ship, or of a regiment, who has charge of the arms. The place where arms or armour are kept is called an *armoury* (*ar' mōr i, n.*), and the workshop of an armourer and his occupation are called *armoury*.

O.F. and M.E. *armure*, from L. *armatura*, from *armare*, fem. supine suffix *-tura*.

**armozeen** (*ar mō zēn'*), *n.* A thick, plain silk, usually black. (F. *armoisin*.)

This material is chiefly used for making the robes of clergymen and also mourning bands.

Early modern E. *armesine*, O.F. *armesin*, L.L. *ermesinus*.

**Armstrong gun** (*arm' strong gūn*), *n.* A gun invented by the first Baron Armstrong (1810-1900) after whom it is named. (F. *canon armstrong*.)

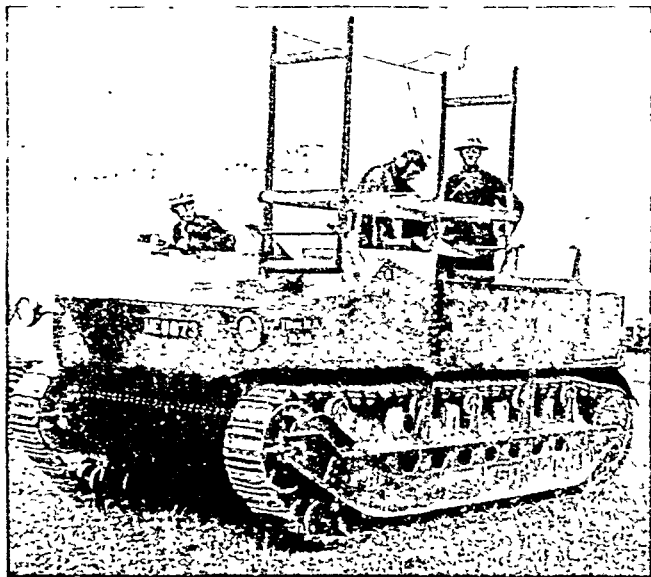
The barrel of the Armstrong gun was built up of coil after coil of wrought iron. The gun was first used by the British army in 1859. Afterwards its use spread to many foreign armies.

**army** (*ar' mi*), *n.* A body of men armed and trained for land warfare; an organized body of men or women; a multitude of people. (F. *armée*.)

Few people realize what armies of old were like, for the modern army with its aeroplanes, tanks, long-range guns, machine guns and the like has become more an army of fighting machines than fighting men. Mediaeval armies were not much better than huge armed crowds with little real discipline, pillaging and living on the land they marched through, and not relying upon their own country for food and other supplies.

In many of the 'early armies, like the Persian and Egyptian, horsemen formed the bulk of the fighting forces. Undoubtedly the finest army of the past was the Roman army, which was so efficient that it ruled the known world for over a thousand years. The Romans had conscription, and every man between seventeen and forty-six was compelled to serve when called upon.

For all practical purposes the first standing army, or permanent army, formed in England



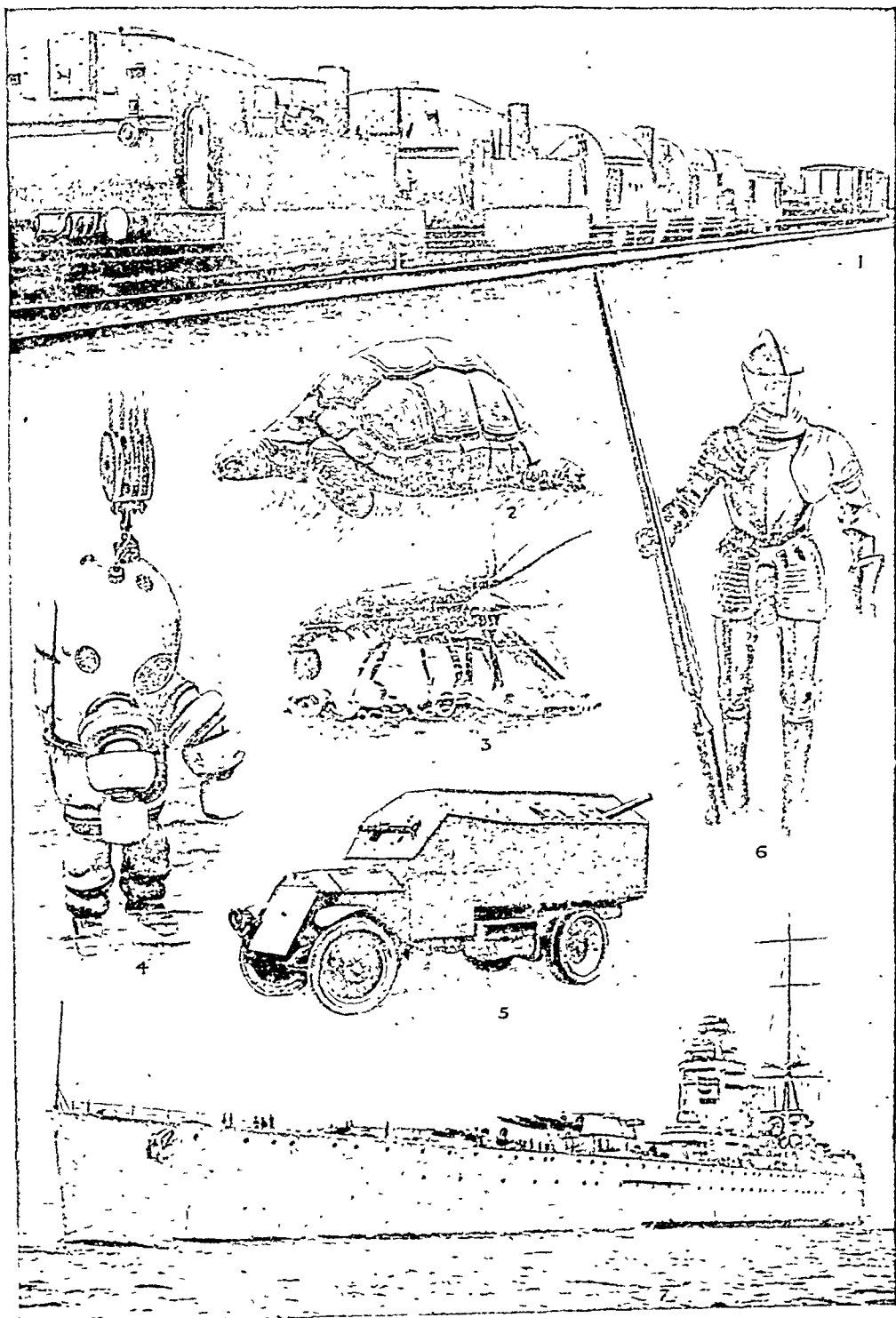
Armour.—An armoured tank used by the British Army for wireless purposes. Aeroplane scouts are thus enabled to keep in touch with the ground forces.

armour soon declined, as it was of very little protection against bullets.

Until the reign of King James I there used to be laws called the Statutes of Armour. Under this law, people of certain position and income were compelled to supply arms and armour for themselves and their servants, so that when called upon by the King to fight, they would come fully armed.

The steel helmets and breast-plates used in the Middle Ages are armour. During the World War (1914-18) soldiers of all the nations were supplied with steel helmets to protect the head from shell splinters and bullets. The protective shells of shell-fish and the bony plates covering the bodies of certain animals, such as the armadillo, are called armour. The dress of a diver is called his armour, and certain forms of heraldic bearings are also known as armour.

# ARMOUR IN MANY FORMS AS PROTECTION FOR MAN AND BEAST



Armour.—1. Armoured train. 2. Elephantine tortoise. 3. Lobster. 4. A modern diving suit. 5. Armoured car. 6. Suit of armour, worn at the end of the sixteenth century. 7. H.M.S. "Nelson," an armoured battleship carrying nine 16-inch guns.



Army.—Some of the more important changes in the equipment of the Army since 1558, when Elizabeth began her long reign, are shown in this picture.

was Cromwell's, and since then England has always had a regular army which, though small, is one of the most efficient armies in the world.

We speak of the Salvation Army, which is a religious organization of men and women who help the poor, and starving, and homeless; the Church Army, a similar organization; an army of caterpillars, meaning a large number, and so on.

An army-broker (*n.*) is a man whose business is connected with army matters. An army agent (*n.*) is a private banker who keeps the banking accounts of army officers. The most famous army agents are Cox's, now amalgamated with Lloyd's Bank, where most army officers have an account. The main division of an army is called an army corps (*n.*), and the official list of army officers is known as the army-list (*n.*).

*F. armée, L.L. armata* an armed force, fem. p.p. of *armare* to arm. *SYN.*: Forces, host, legion, phalanx, troops. *ANT.*: Citizens, civilians, individual.

**arnica** (ar' ni kà), *n.* A group of flowering plants, including mountain tobacco; a tincture prepared from the roots of mountain tobacco. (*F. arnique, arnica.*)

This is a large family of plants with disk-shaped heads, found in northern Europe and the western part of the United States of America. The roots of the mountain tobacco plant (*Arnica montana*) are used in the preparation of a remedy, also called arnica, for bruises, sprains, etc.

**arnotto** (ar not' ô). This is another spelling of anatta. See anatta.

**aroma** (à rō' mà), *n.* A fragrant scent, such as is given off by spices, fruit, flowers, and some plants; a delicate flavour; a subtle charm. (*F. arôme.*)

The senses of smell and taste are closely bound together, and so aroma is used both of scents and of delicate fragrance, for example, those of good coffee, wines, or cigars. Things that give off an aroma are aromatic (ār ô māt' ik, *adj.* and *n.*). To aromatize (à rō' mātiz, *v.t.*) the air is to scent it by spraying or sprinkling, the act of doing which is aromatization (à rō māt i zā' shùn, *n.*).

*L.L.* and *Gr. arōma*, sweet smell or smelling plant, also a cultivated plant, such as barley. Some connect the word with the root *ar* to plough.

**arose** (à rōz'). The past tense of arise. See arise.

**around** (à round'), *prep.* and *adv.* On all sides of; in every direction. (*F. autour de, tout autour.*)

This word is gradually being displaced by round. It is still, however, used in some of the senses of round. A wall may be built around a field or city. When we climb the top of a hill we admire the scenery around. At a party, the guests may usually be found seated around a table.

*M.E. aronde, a round, E. a- =on, and round.*

**arouse** (à rouz'), *v.t.* To awaken; to stir up. (F. *réveiller, exciter*.)

This word is still used in the literal sense of rouse, but more often in the sense of exciting the feelings, etc. An alarm clock arouses us from our slumbers. A red rag arouses the anger of a bull. Movements in the house at night may arouse our suspicions.

A.-S. *a-* intensive, and *rouse*. SYN.: Excite, provoke, summon. ANT.: Allay, quell, quiet.

**arow** (à rô'), *adv.* In line. (F. *en rang, l'un après l'autre*.)

From the sense of in a straight line or row this word has come to mean one after the other. Vegetables and flowers are often planted arow.

M.E. *arewe*, *arowe*, A.-S. *a-* = on, and *row*.

**arpeggio** (ar pej' jō), *n.* A method of playing the notes of a chord; a chord thus played. (F. *arpège*.)

A chord is composed of several notes written one above the other. These are struck all together. Arpeggio means that the notes of a chord, instead of being played simultaneously, are rippled upwards as on the harp, one after the other. The notes are then usually written separately, not as a chord.

Ital. *arpeggiare* to play on a harp (*arpa*).

**arquebus** (ar' kwè būs). This is another spelling of *harquebus*. See *harquebus*.

**arrah** (ār' à), *inter.* A mild exclamation.

This word, which expresses surprise or impatience, is of Irish origin. It is met with in the works of the Anglo-Irish Victorian novelists. One of Dion Boucicault's plays was *Arrah-na-Pogue* (1865), "pogue" being Irish for a kiss.

**arraign** (à rān'), *v.t.* To call into court to answer a criminal charge; to accuse formally. (F. *traduire; accuser*.)

When the grand jury have found a true bill against a prisoner the indictment is read to him and he is asked to say whether he pleads guilty or not guilty. The calling of the prisoner into court, the reading of the indictment, and the questioning whether the prisoner pleads guilty or not guilty—all these make up the arraignment (à rān' ment, *n.*). We also speak, for instance, of arraigning a statesman before the bar of public opinion.

M.E. *aresonen*, O.F. *araisnier*, from L.L. *arrationare* to reason with, call to account, from *ar-* = *ad* to, *rationare* to plead, reason. SYN.: Accuse, charge, indict, prosecute.

**arrange** (à rānj'), *v.t.* To put in order. *v.i.* To assume order. (F. *arranger; s'arranger*.)

A librarian arranges his books in such order that he can easily find any one without having to search for it. When soldiers who are standing about in groups are commanded to fall into line they arrange themselves into rank or ranks. The act of putting books in order or of soldiers falling into line is arrangement (à rānj' mēt, *n.*). A composer can arrange or adapt a piece of music to suit

other instruments or the voice, and the music as altered is called an arrangement.

O.F. *arengier* to put into a rank or series, from *a-* = L. *ad* to, *rengier* (from *rang, reng*, rank, series). SYN.: Adjust, contrive, devise, group, marshal. ANT.: Confuse, derange, disturb.



Arrange.—A child arranging a basket of glorious Emma Wright roses.

**arrant** (ār' ānt), *adj.* Thorough; downright. (F. *franc, vrai*.)

Arrant is another form of *errant*, which means roving. People who roamed about were often vagrants or rogues, and in imitation of arrant thief, arrant rogue, etc., we have for example, arrant coward, arrant hypocrite. A person with no sense of shame often behaves arrantly (ār' ānt li, *adv.*).

L. *errare* to wander, roam (pres. p. *errans*, gen. *errant-is*).

**arras** (ār' ās), *n.* A kind of tapestry. (F. *tapisserie, draps d'Arras*.)

To-day the name Arras, that battle centre of the World War of 1914-18 in northern France, makes us think of fighting and bloodshed. To the people of the Middle Ages the name suggested one of the most delightful of the arts of peace.

In the fourteenth and fifteenth centuries the city of Arras was famed far and wide for its exquisite richly-coloured tapestry. For this reason a fine kind of tapestry came to be called arras. It was the fashion to hang the arras some distance from the wall, and so it was quite easy to hide behind an arrased (ār' āst, *adj.*) wall. It was while listening behind the arras that Ophelia's father, Polonius, was stabbed by Hamlet.

Arrasene (ār' ā sēn, *n.*) is a material made of silk and wool used in embroidery.

The word Arras is a corruption of *Atrebates*, a tribe of Gallia Belgica in Roman times.

**array** (à rā'), *v.t.* To set in readiness; to dress up; to marshal. *n.* An imposing series; dress; martial order. (F. *ranger, revêtir; série, atour, ordre de bataille.*)

Troops are arrayed against the enemy; an actress arrays herself for a part. In poetical writing people are said to be in brave or fine array when they are splendidly dressed. A well-spread table is said to show a great array of dainties.

O.F. *arater*, *v.t.*, *arai*, *n.*; from *a* to, *rei* order, probably from old G. *rēde* ready, modern G. *be-reiten*, A.-S. *raede*, modern E. *ready*. SYN.: Arrange, dispose, exhibit, parade. ANT.: Confuse, derange, dispense.

**arrear** (à rēr'), *n.* Something behind-hand or unpaid. (F. *arérages.*)

Arrear may refer to that which is undone or put off, or to money remaining unpaid although due. The plural form (arrears) is more common. Neglect to write letters means an arrear of correspondence. A man may have arrears of salary due to him or he may have arrears of rent to pay.

**Arrearage** (à rēr' aj, *n.*) has a similar meaning; to arrears. If a man owes a sum of money and pays a part, the remainder is the arrearage. In the plural it means debts.

M.E. and O.F. *arere*, from L. *a(d)* to, *retro* back; M.E. *arere* and suffix *-age* (F. from L. *-aticum*, collective suffix).

**arrect** (à rekt'), *adj.* Erect; pricked up; attentive; on the alert. (F. *dressé, vigilant.*)

This is an old-fashioned word, seldom used nowadays. We might speak of an animal's ears being arrect when it is watchful.

L. *arrigere* (p.p. *arrectus*), from *ar-* = *ad* to, *regere* to make straight.

**arrest** (à rest'), *v.t.* To stop; to take into custody; to attract. *n.* The act of arresting. (F. *arrêter; arrêts.*)

Anything that attracts our attention may be called arresting. To arrest the flow of a person's words means to stop his easy fluency. To stay or stop legal proceedings is to arrest them, and to arrest a person is to seize upon him by legal authority. The seizure or detention of a person is his arrest.

In the study of plants, animals, and human beings, there are sometimes found cases of arrested development, cases in which development has ceased in certain directions at some particular stage of progress.

An arrest of judgment is a legal expression meaning the non-carrying out or stoppage of a judgment after a verdict has been given. We say that a person is under arrest when he has been arrested and is in the custody of the authorities. The word *arrestor* (à rest'ér, *n.*) is sometimes used for a contrivance for cutting off a natural force, such as lightning.

In grammar there are certain words which tend to arrest the sequence of a thought that is being expressed or to show a restriction or qualification. The word "but" is an example. Such words are called *arrestive* (à rest'iv, *adj.*).

In Scots law the word *arrestment* (à rest'mènt, *n.*) is used to denote the process by which a person to whom money is owing detains the effects belonging to the person who owes the money in the hands of a third party, until the debt is paid. The person who does this is the *arrestor* (à rest'ór, *n.*).

O.F. *arester*, from L. *a-* = *ad* to, *restare* to stay, stop. SYN.: Capture, detain, seize, stop. ANT.: Dismiss, expedite, free, release.

**arris** (är'is), *n.* The sharp edge in which two flat or curved surfaces meet; an edge of a dressed stone or planed board. (F. *arête.*)

A V-shaped gutter, made by fastening two boards together is called an *arris-gutter* (*n.*). Tiles or slates laid *arris-wise* (*adv.*) are laid cornerwise instead of straight, to give a more ornamental effect.

L.L. *arista* awn, beard of corn or grass, fish-bone.

**arrive** (à riv), *v.i.* To come; to reach; to attain; to happen; to succeed. (F. *arriver.*)

When we come to a place we arrive at it. Making up one's mind is arriving at a decision about something. A man who has made his name is said to

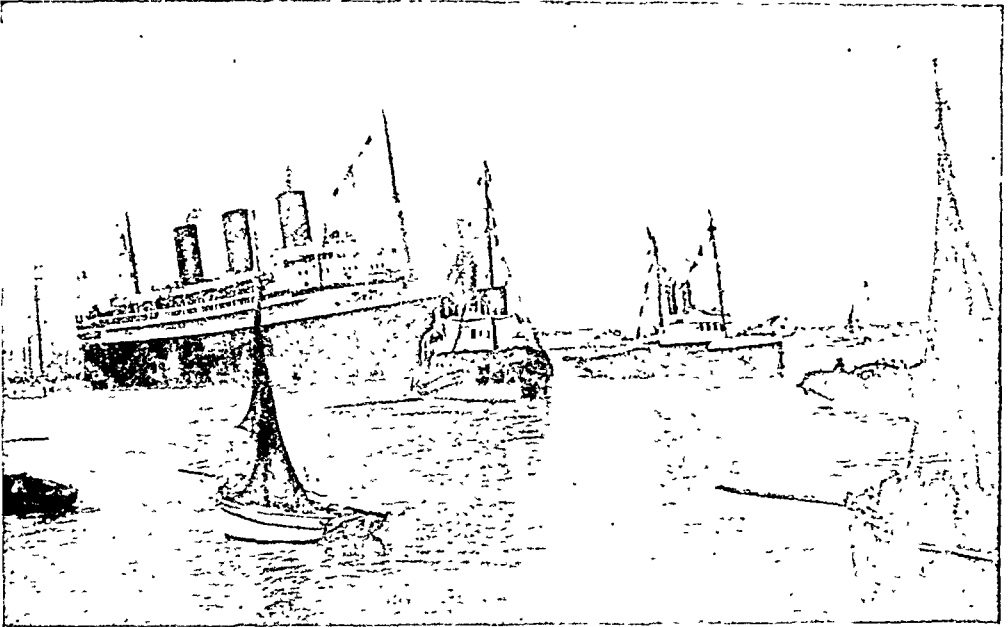
have arrived, that is, succeeded.

The time at which a train reaches a place is its time of arrival (à riv'al, *n.*). A railway time-table gives a list of the times of the arrivals and departures of trains. A person who arrives at or comes to a place is also called an arrival. When we read that so-and-so are the latest arrivals at an hotel we know that they were the last people to reach it.

M.E. *ariven*, F. *arriver*, L.L. *adripare* to come to land, from *ad* to, *ripa* bank, shore. SYN.: Attain, come, happen, reach, touch. ANT.: Depart, disappear, set out, start.



Arrest.—An alleged law-breaker under arrest.



Arrive.—A great liner arriving at its destination. The first steamship to cross the Atlantic without any help whatever from sails was the "Sirius" in 1838, less than a century ago.

**arrogance** (är' ô gâns), *n.* Haughtiness; insolence. (*F. arrogance.*)

**Arrogance or arrogancy** (är' ô gân si, *n.*), as it is also spelt, is something more than pride. To show arrogance we must adopt a "high and mighty" attitude which offends the people around us. The newly-elected prefect who acts as if he were headmaster is guilty of arrogance, and may be said to be arrogant (är' ô gânt, *adj.*) or to behave arrogantly (är' ô gânt li, *adv.*).

**L. arrogantia**, from *arrogare* to claim, from *ar-* = *ad* to, *rogare* to ask (pres. p. *arrogans*, acc. *-antem*). **SYN.**: Disdainfulness, lordliness, pride. **ANT.**: Affability, courtesy, humility.

**arrogate** (är' ô gât), *v.t.* To make an exaggerated claim. (*F. s'arroger.*)

A person can arrogate a thing to himself or to someone else. If he tells a boy what church he ought to attend he arrogates to himself a duty that should be left to the boy's parents. If he claims that his brother has the best voice in England he probably arrogates to him an undeserved distinction. A man may do well in business but it would be an arrogation (är ô gâ' shùn, *n.*) on his part to claim that this proved he was a genius.

**L. arrogare** to claim (p.p. *arrogatus*), from *ar-* = *ad* to, *rogare* to ask. **SYN.**: Assume, bluster, usurp.

**arrow** (är' ô), *n.* A thin wooden shaft, tipped at one end with metal, bone, or stone, and notched and feathered at the other end, for discharging from a bow. (*F. flèche.*)

Until the invention of fire-arms the bow and arrow were the chief means of killing enemies or game from a distance. During the

Middle Ages English archers were famous for their straight shooting, which won many victories. It was then the law that every man should practise at the butts on Sunday mornings.

The traditions of the little village of Eling, in the New Forest, throw some light on the arrow with which William Rufus was killed. A worthy blacksmith of Eling, named Cobbe, held his land of the king. He paid no rent in money, but as often as the king came to the forest Cobbe had to fit him out with arrows. On August 2nd in the year 1100 William was having a day's hunting in the forest. Accordingly Cobbe gave his royal landlord six arrows. William kept only four, so Cobbe gave the others to Walter Tyrrell or Tirel—the man who has gone down in history as having shot the king. After William's death Cobbe recognized the arrow that had killed Rufus as one of the two he had given to Tyrrell. Cobbe's name survives in Coblands, the house on the estate at Eling.

The feathers on an arrow prevent it from turning end over end in the air, and give it a spin which makes it fly straight. For the same reason a rifle bullet is given a spin by grooves cut in the barrel. It is on record that an arrow has been shot a mile in three "flights," the bow being used crossbow fashion, supported by the feet and drawn by both hands.

The mark put on government stores and the clothing of convicts is called a broad arrow (*n.*). It was originally the crest of Henry Sidney, Earl of Romney, who held the post of master-general of the ordnance in the

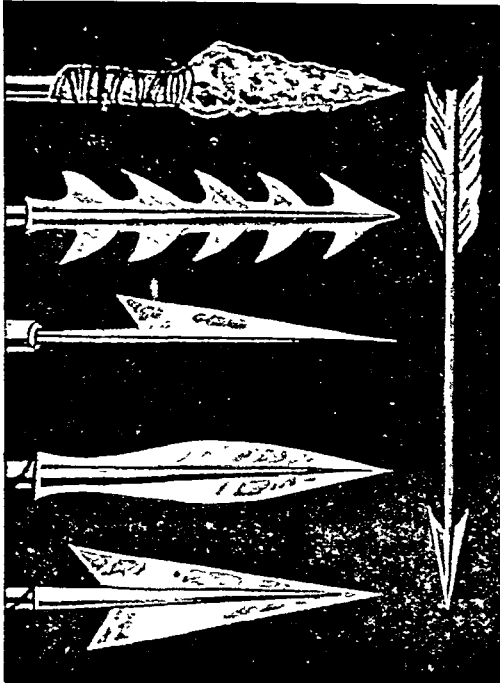


years 1693-1702 and used it to mark all the things under his care.

The feathery seed of a thistle, dandelion, groundsel, and some other plants is called an arrowlet (*är' õ lét, n.*), because it is shaped like a small arrow.

Arrowy (*är' õ i, adj.*) means either abounding in arrows or like an arrow in appearance or character. „We speak, for instance, of arrowy words, each hitting the mark.

[M.E. *ar(e)we*, A.-S. *earh*, perhaps connected with *L. arcus* bow.



Arrows.—From top: Flint arrow-head, bone arrow-head, and arrow of Central America. The others are Greek.

**arrow-head** (*är' õ hed*), *n.* The head of an arrow; a sign like the head of an arrow to point the way; a British plant with arrow-shaped leaves found in streams and ponds. (F. *pointe de flèche*; *fléchière*.)

Arrow-heads are either smooth, so that they may be pulled out easily from anything they strike; or barbed, in order to stick fast. The barbed form is meant when we describe anything as arrow-headed (*är' õ hed éd, adj.*), such as the leaves of the arrow-head, a British plant of the genus *Sagittaria*. The white arrow-heads marked on roads are put there to show in which direction the traffic is to go.

Every year many stone arrow-heads are dug up. These were made thousands of years ago, when the use of bronze and iron was still unknown to mankind. Iron arrow-heads have been found embedded deeply in very old trees; probably they had been used as marks for archery during the Middle Ages.

E. *arrow* and *head*.

**arrowroot** (*är' õ root*), *n.* A starchy food made from fleshy roots of various tropical plants. (F. *arrow-root*, *maranta*.)

Savage tribes in various parts of the world poison their arrows to make more certain of killing their enemies and the animals they hunt. In 1859 the British army lost many men by poisoned arrows when fighting the Dyaks of Borneo, and long before this the Spaniards, during their conquest of the West Indies, were often defeated by the poisoned arrows of the Caribs.

It is said that the Indians knew of a plant, of the reed kind, which would kill, the poison in an arrow wound, and that the substance called arrowroot came in the first place from that plant.

Arrowroot as we now know it is obtained from the roots of plants that grow in the West Indies, East Indies, Brazil, and other parts of the world, the finest coming from a tropical American plant called the *Maranta arundinacea*. The roots are washed, carefully peeled, and ground to pulp in a mill. The pulp is then dried in pans, after all stringy parts have been sifted out, and packed.

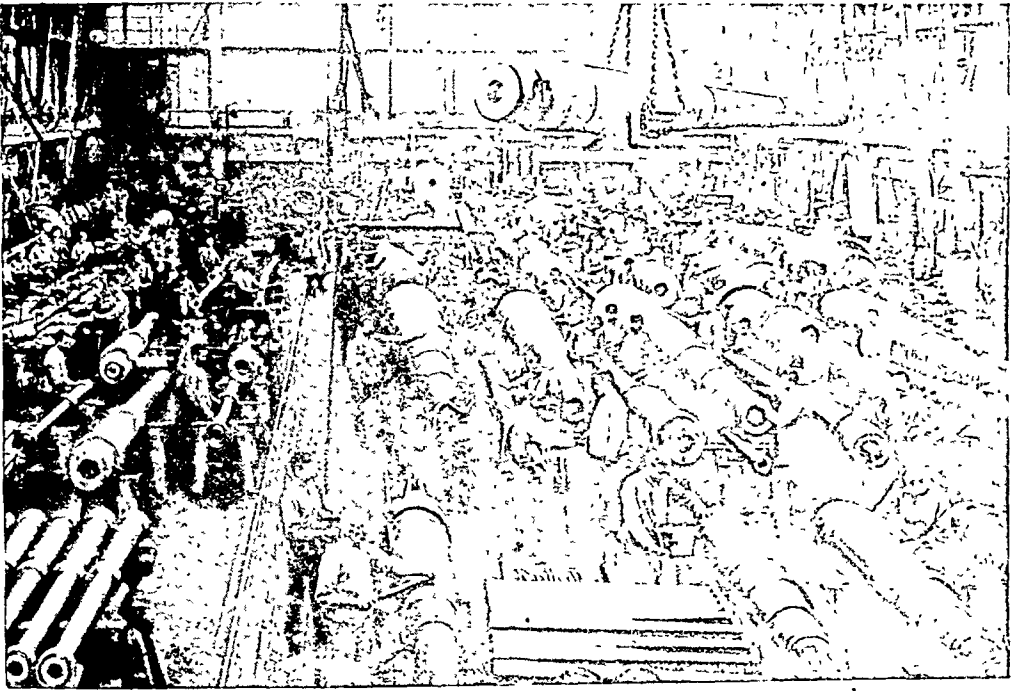
E. *arrow* and *root*.



Arrowroot.—The plant and (inset) root. It is from the latter that we get arrowroot, the food.

**arsenal** (*ar' sèn àl*), *n.* A place where naval and military weapons and ammunition are made; a place where they are stored ready for use. (F. *arsenal*.)

The word arsenal is also used in the figurative sense for any store or place of manufacture of literary, spiritual, and other weapons. The principal British arsenal is at Woolwich, and from there in peace time



Arsenal.—Part of the gun-finishing shop of a modern arsenal. The big guns are naval weapons.

most of the guns and ammunition are supplied for the British navy and army. Naval arsenals, dealing solely with the supply of weapons and ammunition for naval purposes, are usually called dockyards.

So great was the demand for munitions during the World War (1914-18) that temporary arsenals had to be built in many districts of Great Britain. One of the largest was that at Gretna Green, the Scottish district just over the English border made famous in the past by runaway marriages. Here an enormous arsenal was erected at a cost of more than £9,000,000, at which some 16,000 persons were employed, chiefly in the manufacture of cordite.

The word is a corruption of Arab. *dar as-senā* 'a house, or place, of industry; late Gr. *arsenātes*, L.L. *arsena*, Span. *atarazana* (a=Arab. *al*), *darsena*.

**arsenic** (ar' sè nik, *n.*; ar sen' ik, *adj.*), *n.* A metallic element of a steel-grey colour. *adj.* Of or belonging to arsenic. (F. *arsenic*; *arsenical*.)

Whether arsenic is or is not a metal is a disputed question. It is found in its pure state only in a few parts of the world, among them Saxony, Bohemia, and Siberia, but as a compound with other substances it occurs in many places. Arsenic is used chiefly for dyeing and colouring, and, in very small quantities, in medicine.

Salts and acids containing arsenic are fatal to animals and plants. People who handle arsenic much are liable to get arsenical (ar sen' i kál, *adj.*) poisoning. Chemicals containing arsenic are arsenious (ar sē' ni ūs, *adj.*).

L.L. *arsenicum*, Gr. *arsenikon* male, some metals being male and others female according to the alchemists, or the reference may be to its powerful effect. The Arabic name for orpiment, a compound of arsenic, is *az=al the*, *zernkh*.

**arsis** (ar' sis), *n.* An accented syllable in English poetry. (F. *arsis*.)

In the line from Byron's "Childe Harold," "Roll on, thou deep and dark blue ocean, roll!" on, deep, dark, o, roll are the accented syllables or arses (ar' sēz, *n.pl.*). The unaccented syllables are called theses. The term was formerly used for the unaccented syllable.

Gr. *arsis* lifting up, from *arēn* to raise.

**arson** (ar' sòn), *n.* Wilful setting on fire of a house or other building or property. (F. *crime d'incendie*.)

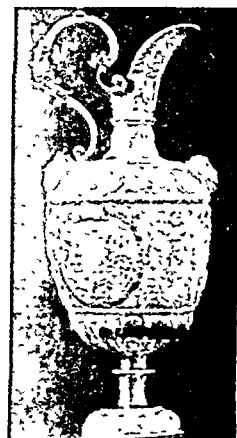
Formerly a person convicted of arson was put to death, but nowadays a term of imprisonment, sometimes for life, is the punishment. People have insured their property heavily, and then deliberately set it on fire to obtain the insurance money. Years ago there were persons who made a business of arson, setting fire to other people's property in return for payment of a sum of money by the owner. In Scotland arson is called fire raising.

O.F. *arson*, from an assumed L.L. *arsio* (gen. -onis), from *ardere* (p.p. *arsus*) to burn.

**art** [I] (art), *v.* Second person singular present indicative of the verb *to be*. (F. *es*.)

The second person singular is now used only in poetry and in prayers.

A.-S. *eart*, Gr. *ei* (epic *essi*), L. *es*, all from root *es-* to be, *t* being added in E. on the analogy of *shal-t*.



Art.—Statue of Colleoni by Andrea del Verrocchio (1435-88). Salisbury Cathedral, by John Constable (1776-1837). The Gleaners, by J. F. Millet (1814-75). Silver-gilt vessel by Benvenuto Cellini (1500-71). A Portrait known as the Spinstress by George Romney (1734-1802). Shoeing the Bay Mare, by Sir Edwin Landseer (1802-73).

# ART AS SHOWN IN MANY FORMS

*The Beautiful and Practical Things that We Owe to Human Skill*

**art** [2] (art), *n.* The human skill by which beautiful or perfect things are done or made. (*F. art.*)

The use of the natural abilities which we share with the lower animals—breathing, sleeping, seeing, etc. is not art, because the word art refers to the skilful use of human gifts, especially of an imaginative kind, such as the gift by which a painter paints a picture, or a poet composes a poem. The poet or the painter when exercising his skill is said to practise his art; it is, however, usual to say also of a person who skilfully exercises a craft or profession that he practises his art.

The history of the gradual growth of art in these two senses—the sense of skilful doing and making, and the sense of achieving expression of the beautiful—is also the history of the growth of civilization. In the earliest times men lived unclad and unprotected; later, they clothed themselves and built dwellings, and in doing so they began the practice of the useful or mechanical arts.

Later still they decorated their dwellings, their implements and utensils, and their own persons, seeking to express and satisfy that faculty called the aesthetic sense—the sense by which the beautiful is understood or created. In doing this they began the practice of the arts now called the fine arts.

From such beginnings have developed, in the field of the mechanical arts, all the elaborate mechanism of modern industrial civilization—our towns and cities, with their many organizations for supplying the wants of life; and in the domain of the fine arts, our literature, drama, music, painting, and sculpture and architecture.

In a well-known poem, W. S. Landor wrote: "Nature I loved and, next to Nature, Art." By "nature" is meant all the wonders of the universe of which our senses make us aware, such as the circling of the sun and stars; the coming and passing of the seasons; all sounds, colours, forms, motions; in short, everything that is not produced by man's activity of hand or brain.

To say, "I love Nature," is to say, with Shelley, that one loves:—

The fresh Earth in new leaves drest  
And the starry night;  
Autumn evening and the morn  
When the golden mists are born.  
I love snow and all the forms  
Of the radiant frost;  
I love waves, and winds, and storms  
Everything almost  
Which is Nature's, and may be  
Untainted by man's misery.

To say "I love Art," is to say one loves the works of man that appeal to our highest sense of beauty.

So much for the distinction between mechanical arts and fine arts, and between nature and art. There remains the distinction between art and science. It may be thus briefly stated: science is concerned with knowing, art with doing. Through science man seeks knowledge, and through knowledge power over the forces of nature; through the arts he seeks to do or make those things which he needs for satisfying his material or spiritual wants.

The subjects studied in an ordinary university course are called arts and the department of the

university concerned with these subjects is the faculty of arts. Those who attain a certain proficiency receive the degree of Bachelor of Arts, or Master of Arts.

The magic of witches is called the black art. The fine arts (*les beaux-arts*) are those practised by painters, musicians, sculptors, etc., and an association promoted for their encouragement is called an art union (*n.*). In the Middle Ages the subjects studied for a liberal education were the free or liberal arts. The mechanical arts and the useful arts are those followed not for the sake of beauty but for their everyday usefulness, as in designing and making a sewing-machine.

We call a skilful, or a crafty or cunning person, artful (*art' fūl, adj.*) and say that he does things artfully (*art' fūl li, adv.*). Such a person possesses artfulness (*art' fūl nēs, n.*), in distinction from a simple, or an unskilful



Art.—One of the most beautiful examples of the sculptor's art: "Thought," by Rodin (1840-1917).

clumsy person, who is said to be artless (art' lès, *adj.*), does things artlessly (art' lès li, *adv.*), and has the quality of artlessness (art' lès nès, *n.*).

*L. ars* (gen. *artis*), possibly from root *ar-* to join, fit with skill. *Syn.*: Craft, cunning, dexterity, ingenuity, skill. *Ant.*: Artlessness, candour, clumsiness, guilelessness, simplicity.

**Artemisia** (ar tè miz' i à), *n.* A genus of bitter plants belonging to the Composite family. (*F. armoise.*)

An old English fourteenth century writer, John de Trevisa, says that "Artemisia is called the mother of herbs and was sometimes hallowed . . . to the goddess called Artemis," or Diana. Just why, he does not say, but it is evident the plants were held in high esteem. They are aromatic plants, found in dry regions, and it is believed that the oil they contain protects them from the effects of drought.

The four British species are the field southernwood (*Artemisia campestris*), the common mugwort (*A. vulgaris*), the common wormwood (*A. absinthium*), and the sea wormwood (*A. maritima*).

**artery** (är' tēr i), *n.* A tube through which blood is driven from the heart through all parts of the body. (*F. artère.*)

The duty of an artery is opposed to that of a vein, which returns the blood to the heart. Arterial (ar tēr' i àl, *adj.*) blood is a bright red colour; vein blood is bluish. A road constructed to carry a main stream of traffic is called an arterial road. A good example of such a road is that opened in 1925 between Chiswick, a south-west suburb of London, and Staines, in Middlesex, and known as the Great West Road. Though only eleven miles long, it cost millions of pounds sterling to make.

The lungs arterialize (ar tēr' i à liz, *v.t.*) the blood by putting fresh oxygen into it and removing carbonic acid, which leaves the body in the breath. This process is called arterialization (ar tēr i à lī zā' shùn, *n.*). Arteritis (ar tēr i' tis, *n.*) is inflammation of the arteries, and arteriotomy (ar tēr i ot' ò mi, *n.*) is the opening of an artery, especially for the purpose of drawing blood.

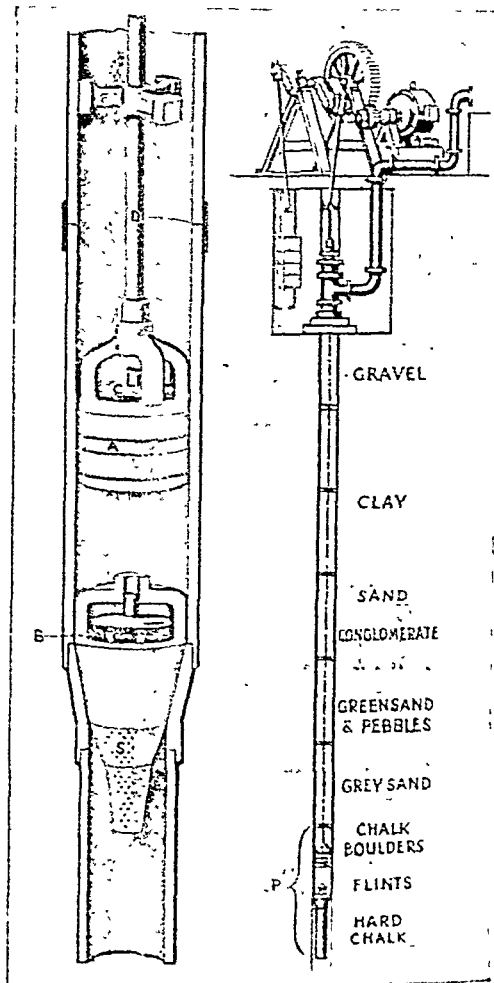
*L. Gr. arteria* wind-pipe, from *Gr. airein* to raise.

**Artesian** (är tē' zhàn), *adj.* Of or belonging to Artois, an old province of northern France; a native of Artois. (*F. artésien.*)

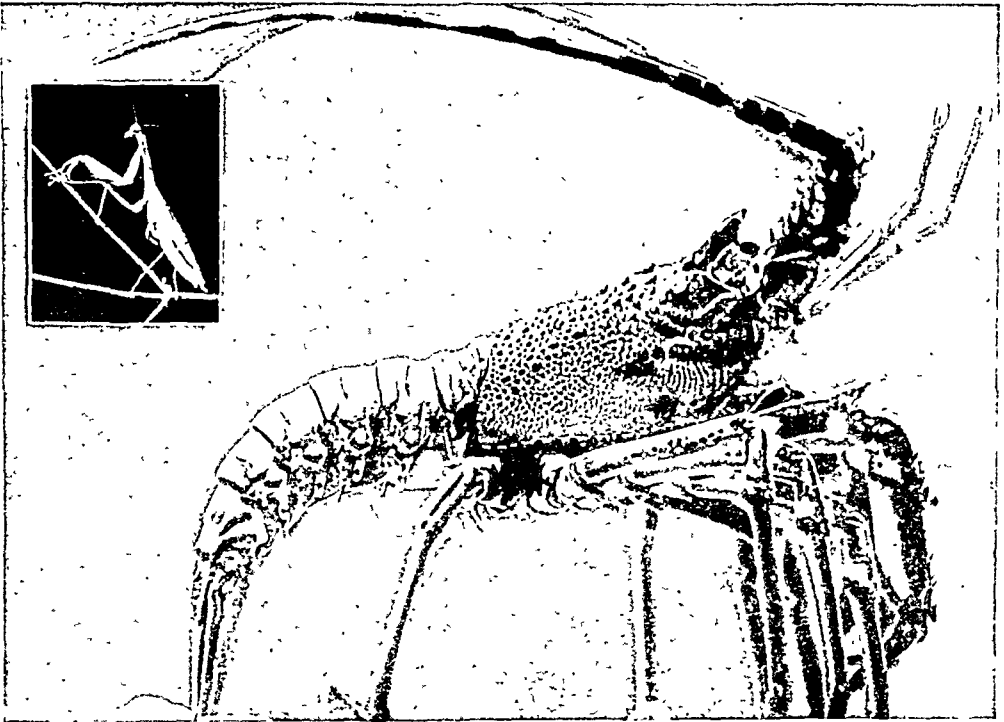
A large natural basin-shaped hollow in the earth's surface, the bottom of which consists of a porous layer of chalk, gravel, or sand, sandwiched between two layers of watertight clay is called an Artesian basin. Rain-water enters the middle layer at its edges, where it comes to the surface—in a range of mountains, perhaps—and works its way down towards the lower parts of the layer. Water thus collects in vast quantities underground, and if it be tapped by a well sunk into the porous layer at a low point in the basin, its own pressure will drive it up to the surface.

An Artesian well is usually but a few inches across, and is lined with steel pipes to prevent it becoming choked. Forty or fifty years ago some scientists visited those parts of Australia where long droughts killed hundreds of thousands of sheep. They believed that, though the land was parched, plenty of water lay beneath it. So they sank the first Artesian well drilled in Australia. Water was found at a depth of one hundred and forty feet.

Since then hundreds of other wells have been sunk in Queensland and New South Wales. Some of them give millions of



Artesian well.—On the right is an artesian well, with the various layers of earth through which it passes. On the left the pump barrel (P) is enlarged. The pump rod (D) is operated by means of a crank at the top of the well, and is driven by a motor or steam engine. When the piston (A) moves downwards the valve (C) opens and the foot-valve (B) closes, a column of water passing through and above the piston. On being raised the valve (C) closes, and the suction causes the foot-valve (B) to open and admit more water to fill the space below the piston ready for the next stroke. (D) is part of one of the pump rods, and (E) one of the many guides for the rod control. The strainer (S) prevents grit being drawn into the valves.



**Arthropoda.**—This important sub-kingdom of animals with jointed limbs but no backbones includes insects, spiders, and lobsters. Both the crawfish and the mantis (inset) pictured above are arthropods.

gallons a day, and form streams and even small lakes, from which vast flocks of sheep drink. The deepest well goes down 5,045 feet, or nearly a mile. At another well the pressure is so great that if the water were allowed to do so, it would spout more than three hundred feet into the air. The first artesian well was bored in Artois, in France, hence the name. There are many Artesian wells in London; the fountains in Trafalgar Square are supplied by this means.

**artful** (art' fül), *adj.* Cunning; skilful. See art [2].

**arthritis** (ar thri' tis), *n.* A painful disease of the joints. Gout is the most common arthritic (ar thrit' ik, *adj.*) complaint. (*F. arthrite.*) Many people suffer from arthritic pains, that is, joint-pains.

Gr. *arthritís*, from *arthron* joint, suffix *-itis* denoting disease or inflammation.

**Arthropoda** (ar throp' ô dà), *n. pl.* Backboneless animals with jointed limbs. Also arthropods (ar' thro podz). (*F. arthropodes.*)

This scientific word is used to group together a very varied class of animals, including lobsters, spiders, and insects whose only resemblance is their jointed limbs. Any such animal is an arthropod (ar' thro pôd, *n.*), and is described as arthropodal (ar throp' ô däl, *adj.*) or arthropodous (ar throp' ô dús, *adj.*).

Gr. *arthron* joint, *pous* (gen. *podos*) foot.

**artichoke** (ar' ti chök), *n.* The name of two composite plants, part of which is edible. (*F. artichaut.*)

There are two different plants, both belonging to the order Compositae. One, the globe artichoke (*Cynara scolymus*) is largely grown in southern Europe for the fleshy bases of the flower heads, which are eaten. The other, the Jerusalem artichoke (*Helianthus tuberosus*), is a kind of sun-flower (*Ital. girasole* turning to the sun). It is a native of America, but is largely cultivated in England. Part of the underground stem of this plant, like a potato in appearance, is cooked as a vegetable.

Arab. *al kharshuf*, variously corrupted, *F. artichaut*, *Ital. articiocco*, *Span. alcachofa*.

**article** (ar' tikl), *n.* A part of speech; a clause in a document; a piece; a thing. *v.t.* To bind by articles; to draw up in articles. (*F. article; mettre en apprentissage.*)

These are just a few of the many meanings of the word. *A*, *an*, and *the* are the parts of speech called articles (see page xxxv). Anything provided for in an agreement or Act is an article, and things we buy in a shop, such as collars, shoes, books, and groceries may be called articles. Rules and regulations can be articles, as, for example, the Articles of Association of a business called a limited liability company, which are the regulations for the management of the concern and can only be altered by special arrangement.

Formerly when war broke out, a code of discipline for the naval and military forces had to be drawn up, and this was called the Articles of War.

When a person is apprenticed to a trade or profession, especially as an accountant's or a solicitor's clerk, he is bound under articles of apprenticeship, and is said to be article'd to the accountant or solicitor.

Certain complete prose compositions or literary work in a newspaper, magazine, or other publication are articles, and the chief article on the editorial page of a newspaper is called the leading article.

Statements of religious doctrine drawn up as a guide to belief or practice are known as "the articles of the Christian Faith." In the Church of England this standard of doctrine and discipline goes under the name of "the Thirty-nine Articles," and is contained in the Prayer Book.

*L. articulus* little joint, dim. of *artus*, joint, limb. **SYN.**: Commodity, essay, paper, part, substance. **ANT.**: Cipher, entirety, nothing, totality.

**articulata** (ar tik ū lā' tā), *n.pl.* A class of animals, according to Cuvier's system, which includes crustaceans (crabs, lobsters, etc.), and insects with jointed limbs. (*F. articulés.*) This word is not now used, Arthropoda having taken its place.

*L. articulare* to furnish with joints (*p.p. articulatus*).

**articulate** (ar tik' ū lāt), *v.i.* To join together in proper order; to provide with joints; to divide sounds into syllables and words. *v.i.* To speak plainly or distinctly; to connect by joints. *adj.* Jointed. (*F. articuler; articulé.*)

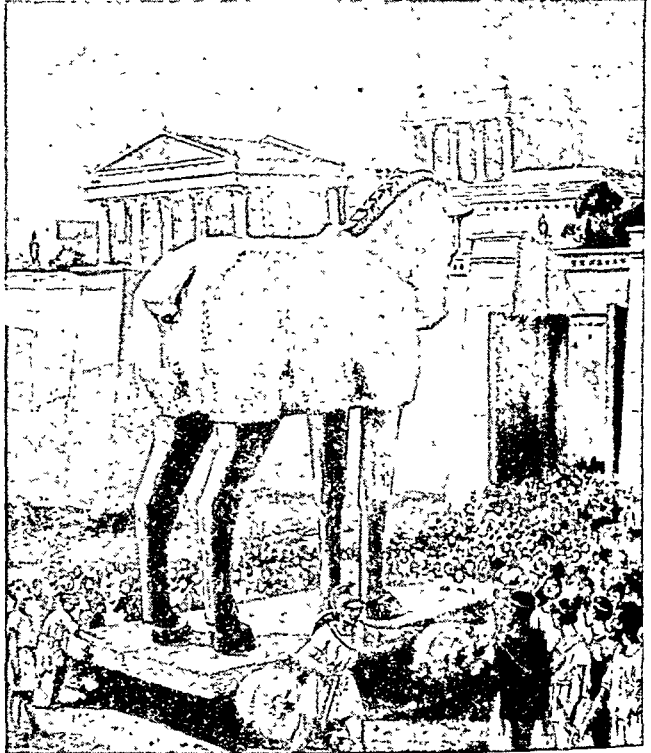
When the bones of an animal are all joined together with wire they form an articulate or articulated (ar tik' ū lā' tēd, *adj.*) skeleton. An articulated locomotive has half of its wheels mounted on a pivoted frame, so that it may travel round curves more easily. A person speaks articulately (ar tik' ū lāt li, *adv.*) if what he says can be understood, and so has articulateness (ar tik' ū lāt nēs, *n.*).

The process of jointing, or of speaking, is called articulation (ar tik ū lā' shūn, *n.*), which also means a joint, or a part between two joints. An articulator (ar tik' ū lā' tōr, *n.*) is a person who joins bones together, or pronounces words, and articulatory (ar tik' ū lā' tōr i, *adj.*) means having to do with articulating with the voice. Articlar (ar tik' ū lār, *adj.*) means relating to the joints.

*L. articulare* to joint (*p.p. articulatus*). **SYN.**: Enunciate, join, pronounce, unite. **ANT.**: Disperse, dissect, separate.

**artifice** (ar' ti fis), *n.* Anything which needs art or skill in the making; workmanship; a crafty device; an artful or clever trick. (*F. artifice.*)

The most famous example of an artifice is the Wooden Horse of Troy. The story is told briefly in the "Odyssey" of Homer, but more fully in the "Aeneid" of Virgil, who drew upon later legends. Troy was being besieged by the Greeks, who for years had vainly tried to break their way in and were now in despair. One of the chiefs, Ulysses, thought of a very clever artifice for taking the city. By his advice a huge wooden horse was built, large enough to hold



Artifice.—The wooden horse of Troy, the famous artifice which helped the Greeks to take the city which had defied them for ten years.

many warriors. The horse was left on the plain near Troy, and the Greeks returned to their ships and sailed out of sight.

The Trojans, thinking that they had gone for good, poured out of the city to see the horse. A Greek spy, who had been left behind for the purpose, told the Trojans that the Greeks had built the horse to appease the goddess Athena, who was angry with them, and that it had been made very large so that the Trojans should be unable to drag it within their walls. The Trojans at once broke a hole in the wall and drew the horse into the city.

During the night the warriors hidden within it came out, killed the guards, and opened the gates to their countrymen, who had sailed back under cover of darkness.

Thus the city, which had defied the Greeks for ten years, was taken by a very clever artifice.

An **artificer** (ar tif' i sēr, *n.*) is a mechanic whose work needs skill and special knowledge. In the army he makes and repairs army stores, while a naval artificer is skilled in smith's work, engine-fitting, and boiler-making.

**F. artifice**, *L. artificium* craft, from *ars* (gen. *artis*) art, *facere* to make. **SYN.**: Craft, cunning, guile, stratagem, wile. **ANT.**: Artlessness, candour, frankness, simplicity.

**artificial** (ar ti fish' āl), *adj.* Made by art; not natural; mechanical; pretended; assumed; affected in manner. (*F. artificiel.*)

Modern chemistry has put into our hands many things with which nature does not supply us, and enables us to replace natural substances by cheaper man-made substitutes.

Until the middle of the nineteenth century the colouring materials used for dyeing were obtained almost entirely from plants and trees. In 1856 the English chemist, Sir William Henry Perkin (1838-1907), discovered that a purple dye which he called "mauve" could be made from aniline, a coal-tar product. On his discovery has been built up the huge industry of making aniline or coal-tar artificial dyes of almost every imaginable colour, which have largely taken the place of the natural dyes.

Our supply of food depends in a great degree on farmers being able to get a good supply of cheap compounds of nitrogen, called nitrates. The natural nitrates were being rapidly used up, and their price had risen greatly, when it was found that, by

produced by electricity, gas and oil, and artificial limbs.

We **artificialize** (ar ti fish' āl īz, *v.t.*) natural sounds by means of the gramophone. Thunder is created artificially (ar ti fish' āl ī, *adv.*) in a theatre, and compared with natural thunder its artificialness (ar ti fish' āl nēs, *n.*) is obvious.

The **artificiality** (ar ti fish i āl' i ti, *n.*) of a thing or of behaviour is its lack of naturalness.

*L. artificialis*, from *ars* (gen. *artis*) art, *facere* to make suffix *-al* (*L. -alis*). **SYN.**: Affected, cultivated, feigned, fictitious, spurious. **ANT.**: Artless, genuine, natural, real, spontaneous.



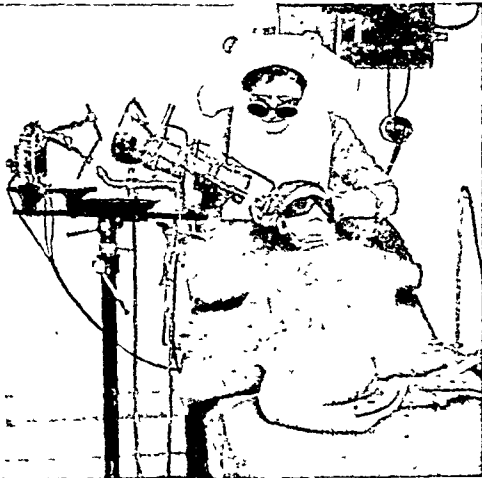
Artillery.—Heavy artillery in action. Big guns are drawn to the scene of operations by motor tractors.

**artillery** (ar til' ér i), *n.* The implements of war; guns; cannon and their equipment; that part or division of an army concerned with the use of guns; the science and practice of gunnery; thunder and lightning. (*F. artillerie.*)

This word is sometimes used in a figurative sense, as when we speak of Jove's artillery, meaning thunder and lightning, Jove, or Jupiter, having been worshipped as the god of rains, storms, and thunder. An artillery train (*n.*) is the name given to cannon mounted on carriages and equipped for going into action, and an artillery-man (*n.*) or artillerist (ar til' ér ist, *n.*) is a man who has been trained in the science or practice of gunnery, or a private or officer in the artillery branch of an army.

It was not until 1716 that the British army had its first company of artillery. The greatest artilleryman who ever lived was Napoleon, who laid down the principles of the modern system of artillery fighting and owed many of his brilliant victories to his knowledge of gunnery. Originally even bows and arrows were called artillery.

*O.F. artillerie* from *artiller* to arm, *L.L. artillator* maker of engines of war, *artillare* to make, *artillaria* engines, probably from *ars* art.



Artificial.—A hospital patient undergoing treatment by artificial sunlight.

using the great heat of the electric arc, nitrogen could be taken out of the air and combined with other elements to make a cheap artificial manure. Other examples of artificial things are the artificial protection of the body called armour; the artificial light



-**artiodactyla** (ar ti ô dāk' til à), *n.pl.* Animals having an even number of toes. (F. *artiodactyles*.)

This name is used by scientists to distinguish or group together those hoofed four-footed animals that have two toes, like the giraffe, or four, like the hippopotamus, and so separate them from other hoofed animals that have one toe, like the horse, or three, like the rhinoceros. The latter group is called *Perissodactyla*.

Gr. *artios* even, *daktylos* finger, toe.

**artisan** (ar ti zăn'), *n.* One skilled in an art or trade. (F. *artisan*.)

Before a workman is entitled to be called an artisan he must be trained in his particular work until he has attained a certain degree of skill. The term, however, is applied loosely to mechanics and handicraftsmen, that is, those who make or use machinery and those employed in a skilled trade or art.

F. *artisan*, L.L. *artihianus*, assumed longer form of L.L. *artitus* skilful, from *ars* (gen. *artis*) art; cp. Ital. *artigiano*.

**artist** (ar' tist), *n.* One who is expert in any fine art, particularly painting; a skilled craftsman. (F. *artiste*.)



Artist.—Sir Edward Poynter, P.R.A., a famous artist, painting one of his many beautiful pictures.

We often admire the beauty of stained glass windows, and marvel at the artistry (ar' tis tri, *n.*) of the men who achieved such artistic (ar' tis' tik, *adj.*) or artistical (ar' tis' tik àl, *adv.*) effects. One of the most artistic (ar' tis' tik àl li, *adv.*) designed of such windows is the great rose window in York Minster, where the ruby-coloured glass is used.

The story of how this beautifully tinted glass was discovered is interesting. An

Italian artist had long been trying to obtain this rare shade in vain. One day a careless assistant stirred some molten glass with a copper ladle. The artist was very angry when he knew. He looked into the furnace, however, and was amazed to find that the great secret had at last been discovered. The copper had turned the glass into a glorious red.

The word *artiste* (ar tēst', *n.*) means a public performer or one expert in one of the minor arts. The word is applied to both sexes, but in England it is not—as in France—used of painters, sculptors, etc. Besides performers, almost anyone who makes a fine art of his work—a cook or a manicurist, for instance—may be termed an *artiste*.

L.L. *artista*, from *ars* (gen. *artis*) art, suffix *-ist(e)* denoting the agent. Syn.: Artificer, artisan, mechanic, painter.

**artless** (art' lēs), *adj.* Natural; simple. See art [2].

**arum** (är' ūm), *n.* A genus of poisonous plants, of which the cuckoo-pint is a species. (F. *arum*, *gouet*.)

The arums or arads, of which the cuckoo-pint (*Arum maculatum*), or lords and ladies, is the only British species, have a curious leafy spathe enclosing a fleshy spike or spadix on which grow the tiny, imperfect flowers. The arum lily is a foreign species, with a pure white spathe and bright yellow spadix.

Gr. *aron*, L. *arum*.

**arundinaceous** (ä rün di nā' shūs), *adj.* Reedy; resembling a reed or cane. (F. *arundinacé*.)

Any plant with a hollow stem or culm, like tall grasses, is said to be arundinaceous. Such tall reedy grasses are very widespread. From the stems of one species, *Arundo donax*, fishing rods are made. A number of other plants grow best in arundineous (är ūn din' é ūs, *adj.*) places, that is, damp and watery places where reeds abound.

L. *arundo* (gen. *arundinis*) reed, suffix *-aceous* (L. *-aceus*) having the quality of.

**Arunta** (ä rün' tā), *n.* A member of a native Australian tribe.

The Aruntas are the most powerful tribe in the centre of Australia, and surrounding peoples are grouped with them as the Arunta nation. Their habits help us to understand the life of prehistoric man and the origin of our own customs and institutions. The Aruntas have elaborate codes of behaviour, strange beliefs (for instance, that souls inhabit slabs of wood, which are carefully preserved), and still stranger ceremonies.

**aruspex** (ä rūs' peks). This is another spelling of *haruspex*. See *haruspex*.

**arval** (ar' vāl), *n.* An old English funeral feast. (F. *repas funèbre anglais*.)

The Norsemen used to celebrate the inheritance of property by much drinking, the feast being called *arval* or *heir-ale*. A similar festival formerly took place in England.

M.E. *arvell*, from O. Norse *erfi* inheritance, and *öl* ale, ale-drinking.

**Aryan** (är' i än), *adj.* Of or belonging to the great group of languages which includes most European, the Armenian, Persian, and many Indian tongues; of or belonging to the Aryan family. *n.* A language branch of the white group of races, sometimes called the Indo-European or Indo-Germanic family; the original mother-language spoken late in the New Stone Age, from which these languages have developed; a member of the Aryan family. (F. *aryen*.)

In the nineteenth century an attempt was made to identify peoples by the language they spoke. Accordingly we also meet with the term Aryan applied not only to the so-called parent nation, the Aryans, or ancient people speaking the Aryan tongue, but also to widely differing races who were all supposed to be related in a vast Aryan family, regardless of physical differences.

The seat of the old Aryan race is uncertain; it may have been in southern Russia or the Baltic region. No history, monument, or tradition of these people has survived, but we must assume their existence in order to explain the similarities in the Indo-European languages. It is interesting to know that words describing peaceful occupations are common to all Aryan tongues, but words of action and warfare differ in each language. This suggests that the original Aryans lived together in settled times, and that their descendants, or the peoples who adopted their language, had each to invent words for new activities as they invaded or spread over fresh countries. Just as English is now widely used by foreign peoples for reasons of commerce, etc., even to the exclusion of their own language, so the Aryan language influenced the ancient world. Aryan invaders or traders would Aryanize (är' i än iz, *v.t.*) other languages, etc., by implanting Aryan characteristics. The alternative spelling Arian should be avoided, as that word is also used to describe an early Christian sect.

Sansk. *arya* noble, good, probably connected with Gr. *aristos* best; others refer it to the root *ar-* to plough.

**aryl** (är' il), *n.* A general name for a certain class of radicals (families of atoms) which take part in the making of a whole series of interesting organic substances called "aromatics," because a great proportion of them (though not by any means all) have an aromatic odour. (F. *aryl*.)

The special character of these radicals is that their carbon atoms are usually arranged in rings of six or combinations of rings of six, so that they make a hexagon or hexagons. Arylation (är i lä' shün, *n.*) is the putting of an aryl radical into a compound.

The name is a contraction of ar(omatic) and suffix -yl, indicating a basic radical.

as [ɪ] (äz), *adv.* In the same manner. *conj.* While, since. *relative pron.* Who, that, or which. (F. *comme, pendant que.*)

This is a little word with a big history. In Anglo-Saxon times we find the form *cäl swa* meaning all so, or quite so. This became *alswa*, *also*, *als* and finally *as*. Example of its uses are:

*adv.* As it is written in the Book of Isaiah. *conj.* The bullet whistled as it flew.

*rel. pron.* He taught such as desired knowledge.

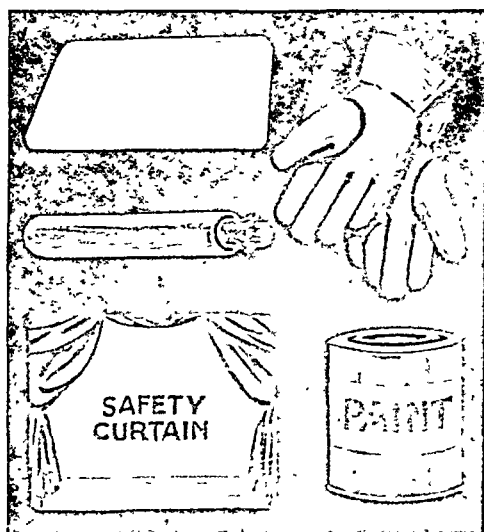
**as** [2] (äs), *n.* A Roman unit of weight and measure; a Roman copper coin. (F. *as*.)

At first the coin was oblong and had the figure of a sheep, or an ox, or a pig stamped on it. Later it was made round, with a representation of the head of the double-faced Janus on one side and on the other that of a ship's prow. Janus was the protector of trade; the prow reminded the Romans of their sea-power. Originally the as weighed about one pound, but the Punic Wars cost the Romans so much that it fell first to two ounces and then to one, and later weighed no more than five-twenty-fourths of an ounce.

**asafoetida** (äs ä fet' i dä), *n.* An evil-smelling, umbel-bearing plant; a drug obtained from it. (F. *assafoetida*.)

The asafoetida plant (*Narthex asafoetida*) grows wild in the dry plains of Persia and Afghanistan. From it and some related plants is obtained a kind of gum with a strong smell of garlic or onions, which is useful in medicine and as a flavouring in cooking.

Pers. *aza* kind of resin, mastich, L. *foetidus* ill-smelling.



Asbestos.—The many articles made of asbestos, usually mixed with other material, include mats, gloves, cable-coverings, fireproof curtains for theatres, and paint.

**asbestos** (äz bes' tös), *n.* A whitish mineral, the fibres of which can be teased out like cotton or wool. (F. *asbeste*.)

As it can stand great heat without injury, and does not allow heat to pass through it

easily, asbestos is very useful as a protection against fire. The fibres may be woven into cloth, from which are made gloves and clothes worn by men working in front of furnaces. It is used also for fireproofing safes and for covering boilers. The greater part of the world's asbestos supply comes from Canada. The ancient Romans knew the value of asbestos, and wrapped their dead in it before burning them, so as not to lose their ashes.

Any substance having the nature of asbestos is said to be asbestic (*āz bes' tik, aadj.*) or asbestine (*āz bes' tin, adj.*). Asbestoid (*āz bes' toid, adj. and n.*) means resembling asbestos and is also another name for the green or blue fibrous mineral byssolite.

Gr. *asbestos* inextinguishable, from *a-* not, *sbennynai* to quench (verbal adj. *sbestos* quenchable). The original meaning was quick lime.

**ascend** (*ā send*), *v.i.* To move from a lower to a higher place; to pass from trivial matters to those of greater value; to go back in time from the present to the past. *v.t.* To climb. (*F. monter.*)

Anything with an upward movement or

tion in the sky exactly above the observer. In music to ascend is to pass from a lower to a higher note or to rise in pitch. The tune of "Rule Britannia" goes up with a leap and a run at the words, "When Britain first—" This is an ascending phrase.

When a man becomes famous, he is admitted to the society of rich and notable people, and we say that he has ascended the social ladder. Men and women have done this many times, so we know that the social ladder *can* be climbed; it is therefore ascendable (*ā send' ābl, adj.*). When a politician rises to power he gains ascendancy (*ā send' ān si, n.*) or ascendancy (*ā send' ēn si, n.*), that is, controlling influence, over lesser people; he reaches an ascendant (*ā send' ānt, adj.*) or ascendent (*ā send' ēnt, adj.*) or ruling position. We also call anything that is in the act of moving upwards an ascendant thing. An ascendant star, for instance, is one that is rising towards the zenith, even though it has not yet appeared above the horizon. Our ancestors or forefathers, who come before us in time, are sometimes spoken of as ascendants (*n.pl.*), just as those who follow us are descendants. Nowadays the word ascendant expresses some kind of superiority. A powerful leader, for example, has the ascendant over weaker rivals. We can also say that his powers are in the ascendant, that is, supreme or dominant. This phrase is often wrongly used to suggest a state of rising or ascending.

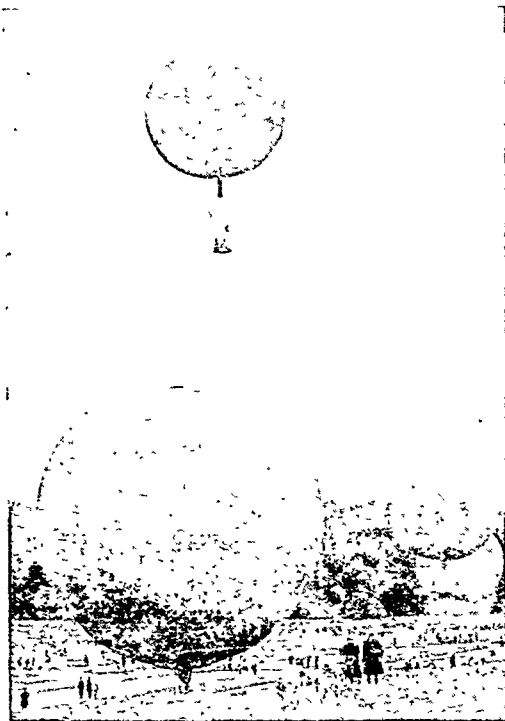
The astrologers used the word ascendant for the sign of the Zodiac which was rising above the eastern horizon at the moment when somebody was born. They divided up the sky into twelve "houses." The house of the ascendant comprised five degrees of the Zodiac above the ascendant and twenty-five below, and the lord of the ascendant was any planet which was in the house of the ascendant.

**Ascent** (*ā sent', n.*) means the act or process of ascending; rise to power, etc.; advancement; a way by which one may ascend, such as a hill path. We speak of the ascent of Mount Everest or of a balloon ascent. An ascent into the past is a going back up the stream of time. Motorists like hill roads that are gentle ascents.

L. *ascendere*, from *a-* = *ad* to, *scandere* to climb (p.p. *ascensus*, used as *n.* = ascent). **SYN.**: Arise, mount, rise, soar. **ANT.**: Descend, drop, fall, sink.

**ascension** (*ā sen' shūn*), *n.* The act of rising; the ascent of Christ from earth to Heaven; Ascension Day; the rising of a star or constellation. (*F. ascension.*)

**Ascension Day** (*n.*) is a yearly festival of the Church, held forty days after Easter, in memory of the Ascension of Jesus Christ. It is also called Holy Thursday as it always falls on the second Thursday before Whitsuntide. It is one of the oldest Christian festivals. Many quaint customs and superstitions are bound up with its observance, for instance, beating the bounds, well-dressing, and the



Ascend.—A balloon ascending and another about to make an ascent.

tendency, such as a rising lark, a lift travelling to the top of a building, or the staircase of a house, is said to ascend. A mountaineer, in climbing to the top of a mountain, ascends the mountain. A boat rowed up a river from the mouth towards the source ascends the river. A planet ascends when it comes above the sky-line or horizon, or when it moves towards the zenith, the posi-

old country belief that an egg laid on this day will keep away fire and lightning from any roof on which it is placed.

Anything tending upwards or relating to the act of ascension, especially the rising of bodies and gases in some of the sciences or of stars, etc., in astronomy, is said to be ascensional (*â sen' shûn' âl, adj.*). Ascensional ventilation has an upward draught.

*L. ascensio* (gen. *ascensionis*) from *ascensus*, p.p. of *ascendere*, from *a-* = *ad* to, *scandere* to climb.

**ascensive** (*â sen' siv*), *adj.* Causing or having an upward movement; advancing; progressive. (*F. ascendant, augmentatif.*)

The gradual improvement of the human brain from savagery to civilization is an ascensive development. In grammar the word is used of a word or expression that increases the force of a statement. In the phrase, "Even I was afraid," the speaker uses an ascensive "even."

*L. ascendere*, from *a-* = *ad* to, *scandere* to climb, p.p. *ascensus*, with suffix *-ive* (*L. iuvus* adapted for).

**ascertain** (*âs er tân'*), *v.t.* To find out; to make oneself sure of. (*F. s'assurer de.*)

A boy ascertains how to bowl leg breaks at cricket by watching other bowlers or by asking them to show him how to hold the ball. He ascertains the time by looking at his watch. Anything which he can find out by inquiring or examining is ascertainable (*âs er tân' âbl, adj.*) or an ascertainment (*âs er tân' mēt, n.*).

*M.E. ascertainen* (later *ascertain*, *assertaine*, wrongly), *O.F. ascertainer*, from *a-* = *L. ad* to, and *certain* sure, certain, suffix *-am* from *L. -anus*. *SYN.*: Determine, discover, settle, verify. *ANT.*: Guess, presume, suppose.

**ascetic** (*â set' ik*), *adj.* Practising very strict self-denial. *n.* One who does this. (*F. ascétique.*)

Originally this word referred to the exercises which an athlete practised to complete his training. Marked by severe self-discipline to attain perfection is its root meaning. The word came to be used in religion, and was applied to that manner of life which, to gain virtue or perfection, rigorously practised self-denial. This is what is meant by an ascetic life, and a person who so lives is called an ascetic. Such exercises are the ascetical (*â set' ik âl, adj.*) counsels of perfection. To practise them is to live ascetically (*â set' ik âl li, adv.*). Asceticism (*â set' i sizm, n.*) is the name given to describe the practice and principles of ascetics. Nowadays the word ascetic can be used of anyone who, apart from religious motives, lives a very strict life.

*Gr. askēthos* one who practises, from *askem* to practise athletic and other, especially religious, exercises.

**Ascidium** (*â sid' i ūm*), *n.* The chief genus of tunicates, ascidians, or sea squirts. (*F. ascidie.*)

Common animals on the sea-shore, they send out jets of sea water when touched. They were formerly considered to be

molluscs, but modern research has shown that when young they have a backbone, which is later discarded. A member of this genus is described as being ascidian (*â sid' i ân, adj.*) or an ascidian (*n.*).

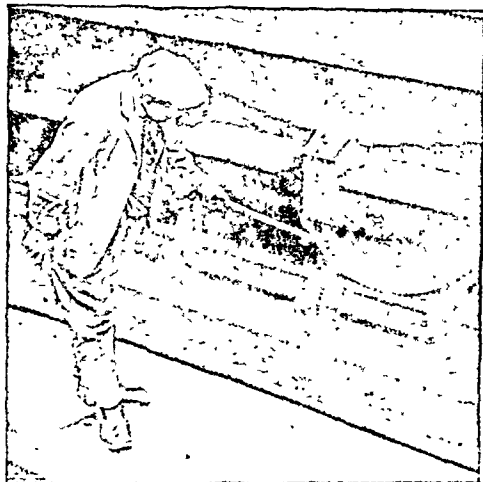
*Gr. askidion*, dim. of *askos* wine-skin, leather bag.

**Asclepiad** (*âs klē' pi âd*), *n.* A form of classical verse said to have been invented about the second century B.C. by the Greek poet Asclepiades of Samos. The famous Latin poet Horace wrote some Asclepiadean (*âs klē pi â dē' ân, adj.*) odes. (*F. asclépiade.*)

**Asclepias** (*âs klē' pi âz*), *n.* A genus of plants containing the milkweeds. (*F. asclépiade.*)

The Asclepias are all foreign plants closely related to the periwinkle. They are found chiefly on the eastern borders of North America, and include the swallow-worts and the milkweeds, so called from their milk-white sap or latex.

The name is derived from *Gr. Asklepios* (*L. Aesculapius*) the god of medicine.



**Ascertain.**—Testing a wheel of a railway-carriage to ascertain whether it is sound and fit for service.

**Ascomycetes** (*âs kō mī sē' tēz*), *n.pl.* A group of fungi including truffles, mildews, molds, and yeasts. The singular is ascomycete (*âs kō mī sēt'*). (*F. ascomycètes.*)

*Gr. askos* bag, sack; *mykēs* (pl. *mykētes*) fungus.

**ascribe** (*â skrib'*), *v.t.* To impute; charge with; attribute. (*F. attribuer.*)

We ascribe mean motives to a boy who cheats in an examination. The works of Shakespeare are ascribed by some people to Francis Bacon. When a scientist is in doubt as to the origin of certain properties of a substance he might say that they are ascribable (*â skrib' âbl, adj.*) to such and such a cause or causes. The action of attributing anything to anyone is called ascription (*â skrip' shûn, n.*).

*L. ascribere*, from *a-* = *ad* to, *scribere* to write, put down to. *SYN.*: Assign, refer.

**aseismatic** (ā sīz māt' ik), *adj.* Able to resist earthquake shocks. (F. *à l'épreuve des tremblements de terre.*)

In parts of the world where earthquakes often happen, many houses are built of concrete and steel in one piece, without any joints whatever. Even if they are moved a little, they are moved as a whole and not shaken to pieces. Such buildings are aseismatic.

Gr. *aseismatikos*, from *a-* not, *seismos* earthquake, suffix *-atikos* relating to.

**asepsis** (ā sep' sis), *n.* Freedom from blood-poisoning and its results; the process of ensuring this state. (F. *aseptie.*)

Surgeons have two methods of preventing blood-poisoning as a result of an operation. The older way is to disinfect the wound with antiseptic chemicals, which counteract the ill effects of the tiny organisms that cause blood-poisoning. The modern method is to sterilize the flesh beforehand, as well as all instruments, hands, clothes, etc., that are to come in contact with the wound, thus avoiding as far as possible the introduction of such organisms. This treatment is known as asepticism (ā sep' tī sizm, *n.*), and to asepticize (ā sep' tī sīz, *v.t.*) is to treat in this way or to render aseptic (ā sep tik, *adj.*).

Gr. *asepsis*, from *a-* not, *sepsis* putrefaction, from *sêpein* to rot.

**ash** [1] (āsh), *n.* What remains of anything that has been burnt. (F. *cendre(s).*)

This word is more often used in the plural. From the old custom of burning the dead, ashes came to mean the remains of a body that has either been burnt or has decayed.

Ashes are thrown out in huge quantities from volcanoes. In the year A.D. 79 an eruption of Mount Vesuvius buried the Roman towns of Pompeii and Herculaneum under ashes, and thousands of people lost their lives. When the volcano in Krakatoa, an island near Java, erupted in 1883, the ashes were flung so high into the air that the finest of them travelled all round the world, causing most wonderful sunset effects.

Ashes from a house fire are thrown into an ash-bin (*n.*). Sometimes hot ashes are used to bake an ash-cake (*n.*). Chemists employ for some purposes a very dull fire called an ash-fire (*n.*), and the makers of glass an ash-furnace (*n.*). The space beneath a furnace into which the ashes fall is an ash-hole (*n.*) or ash-pit (*n.*), and the tray which catches ashes from a furnace or fire is an ash-pan (*n.*). A place where potash is made is an ashery (ash' ēr i, *n.*).

Ashen (āsh' ēn, *adj.*) and ashy (āsh' i, *adj.*) apply to things made of ashes or things which have a whitish-grey colour like that of ashes. The face of a sick person or of one who suddenly turns faint may have an ashen or ashy, or ashy-pale hue.

M.E. *asche* (pl. *aschen*), A.-S. *asce* (pl. *ascan*); cp. G. *asche*, occurring in different forms in other Teut. languages.

**ash** [2] (āsh), *n.* A forest tree; the wood of this. *adj.* Made of this wood. (F. *frêne, de frêne.*)

This tree is tall, often reaching a height of over 120 feet. It has pale grey bark, very tough and close-grained wood and broad leaves. The scientific name is *Fraxinus excelsior*. The wood is used in making ladders, tool-handles, carriage shafts and wheels, etc. An article made from the wood of the ash may be referred to simply as ash or as ashen (ash' ēn, *adj.*). The winged seed of the ash is known as an ash-key (*n.*).

The mountain ash, well-known for its handsome orange-red berries, although it looks very much like an ash, belongs to a different family. In Scotland it is known as the rowan tree.

A.-S. *aesc*, G. *esche*, occurring in different forms in other Teut. languages.



Ash.—The ash, which has been called "the Venus of the Forest," at its fruiting stage.

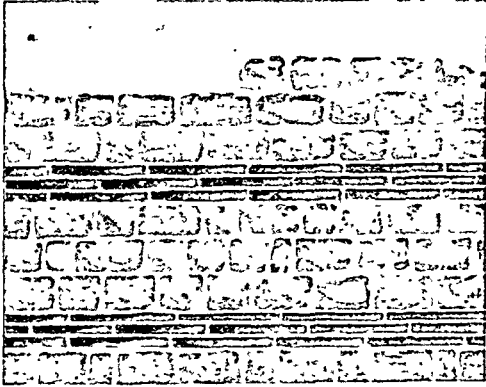
**ashamed** (ā shāmd'), *adj.* Surprised by sudden knowledge or revelation of guilt or error; having had one's modesty or dignity offended; prevented by fear of disgrace. (F. *honteux.*)

A mother says to her little boy, "I am ashamed of you," when he has done something wrong which ought to make the child ashamed. A boy feels ashamed when his father finds him out telling a lie, or he might be ashamed to come to dinner with dirty hands and face.

A.-S. *āscamod*, p.p. of *āscamian* to make ashamed, from *ā-* intensive prefix, *scamian* to put to shame. SYN.: Abashed, dumbfounded, humbled. ANT.: Brazen, unashamed, unblushing.

**ashlar** (āsh' lār), *n.* Squared hewn stone; masonry of such stone, as opposed to rubble-work; such stone for facing a wall. *adj.* Made of any of these. (F. *libage, moellon; de libage.*)

**Ashlar-work** (*n.*) is masonry made with squared hewn stones. The great dams built across valleys to hold up water and form great reservoirs for supplying towns and irrigated land usually have a core of rubble-work faced on both sides with ashlar-work, the straight joints in which can be made quite watertight. Such a dam is said to be



Ashlar-work.—In Roman ashlar-work, layers of large flat tiles were often placed at intervals between the squared or shaped stones.

**ashlared** (*āsh' lārd, adj.*). In attics and garrets the angles between floor and ceiling are shut off by plaster on laths nailed to wooden uprights called **ashlaring** (*āsh' lār ing, n.*).

M.E. *asheler*, O.F. *aisellier*, extended from *ais(s)elle* (dim. of *ais* small board), L. *assis* plank, dim. *assula* splinter, chip, L.L. *assella*. *Assis* is the same word as *axis*, dim. *axilla*.

**ashore** (*ā shōr'*), *adv.* On land ; to land. (F. *à terre*.)

A man may swim ashore from a boat or raft. Passengers go ashore at the end of a sea voyage. Sailors enjoy life ashore.

*A. = on and shore.*

**Ash Wednesday** (*āsh wens' di*), *n.* The first day of Lent. It gets its name from a very old custom of sprinkling ashes on that day on the heads of people who confessed their sins. (F. *mercredi des cendres*.)

**Asiatic** (*ā shi āt' ik*), *adj.* Relating to Asia. *n.* A native of Asia. (F. *asiatique*.)

**aside** (*ā sīd'*), *adv.* On one side ; to one side ; away. *n.* Something supposed to be heard only by a certain person or persons. (F. *de côté, à l'écart ; aparté*.)

When we draw a person aside to speak to him, we draw him away from the rest of those who are present. Aside from, in the sense of apart from, is not good English.

A stage aside is something said by one of the actors and intended to be heard only by the person or persons to whom it is addressed, either the audience or one of the actors.

*A. = on and side.*

**asinine** (*ās' in in*), *adj.* Of or relating to or like an ass ; stupid ; obstinate. (F. *d'âne, stupide, obstiné*.)

A boy who says something silly, without thinking, makes an asinine remark, or if he obstinately and without reason refuses to play the games all his companions are playing he acts in an asinine way. Silly, obstinate behaviour is called **asininity** (*ās in in' i ti, n.*).

L. *asininus*, belonging to an ass, from *asinus*. SYN.: Foolish, silly, stubborn, unwise. ANT.: Astute, intelligent, reasonable, sagacious, wise.

**ask** (*ask*), *v.t.* To request ; to inquire (of). *v.i.* To make inquiry. (F. *demandeur*.)

We may ask a postman to direct us to a certain address, or we may ask the time. We often see people asking (*ask' ing, part. adj.*) information of policemen, who are ever ready to help the asker (*ask' er, n.*). To beg or solicit is to ask, and the begging or solicitation is asking (*n.*).

M.E. *ask-*, *acs-*, *ax-ten*, A.-S. *asc-*, *acs-*, *ax-tan* ; it occurs in Teutonic and other European languages. SYN.: Beg, inquire, request, solicit. ANT.: Command, insist.

**askance** (*ā skāns*), *adv.* Sideways, distrustfully. (F. *de côté, de travers*.)

To regard a thing with doubt is to look upon it askance. To give a side glance, or look squintingly, is to look askance. Askant (*ā skānt'*) is another form of spelling.

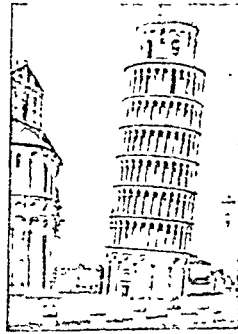
Perhaps from Ital. *scansare* (*s=ex*), L. *camp-sare* to bend round, or Ital. *a schiancio* aslope.

**askew** (*ā skū'*), *adj.* and *adv.* Askance ; askant ; awry ; crooked ; with suspicion ; with disdain. (F. *de biais, de travers*.)

When visiting the scene of a fire we notice that the girders are twisted and bent. They are askew. Botanists say the leaves of the elm and begonia are askew because they are unequal-sided.

*A. = on and shew.*

**aslant** (*ā slant'*), *adv.* and *prep.* In a sloping direction ; obliquely ; athwart. (F. *obliquement, de côté*.)



Aslant.—The tower of Pisa, which is aslant.

Anything that slopes with regard to something else, like a ladder leaning against a house, is aslant, and rain falls aslant when driven by a strong wind. The jazz cult runs aslant all recognized musical conventions.

*A. = on, and slant.* SYN.: Awry, sloping, tilted. ANT.: Parallel, straight, upright.

**asleep** (*ā slēp'*), *adj.* and *adv.* Sleep-

ing ; into a state of sleep ; at rest ; idle ; benumbed. (F. *endormi*.)

Many tombstones state that so-and-so fell asleep, that is, died, on a given date. When a boy is not attending we say he is asleep. Sometimes we find a foot or hand asleep, because it has been in an uncomfortable position.

*A. = on, and sleep.* SYN.: Dead, dozing, slumbering, unconscious. ANT.: Awake, sleepless.

**aslope** (à slöp'), *adj.* and *adv.* Slanting; oblique; with a slope; obliquely. (F. *en pente*.)

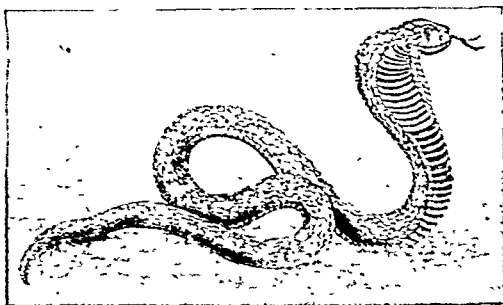
When we describe anything as being put on crosswise, it may be that it is put straight across, that is, from side to side in a straight line. Anything aslope is never horizontal, but always between horizontal and vertical.

*A* = *on*, and *slope*.

**asp** [1] (äsp), *n.* A small poisonous snake. (F. *aspic*.)

Cleopatra, the story says, chose to die by allowing herself to be bitten by an asp, perhaps the horned viper of northern Africa, *Cerastes cornutus*. There is a European asp (*Vipera aspis*), but the name is most commonly applied to a North African snake, (*Naia haie*), the kind used by Egyptian jugglers for snake-charming. The word asp is used in poetry for various kinds of poisonous snakes.

*L.*, Gr. *aspis*.



Asp.—Sometimes called the Egyptian cobra, this species of asp is used by Egyptian jugglers for snake-charming.

**asp** [2] (äsp). This is another form of the word aspen. See aspen.

**asparagus** (ä spär' á güs), *n.* A plant, the tender shoots of which are cooked as a vegetable. (F. *asperge*.)

In this country it is regarded as a table delicacy, but in certain parts of Russia, the wild plant is so plentiful that the cattle eat it like grass. Its scientific name is *Asparagus officinalis*.

*L. asparagus*, Gr. *asparagos*. According to some, the word is of Pers. origin.

**aspect** (äs' pekt), *n.* Position with regard to outlook; appearance; view; relative position of heavenly bodies. (F. *aspect*.)

A house that has a dreary aspect is one that looks desolate, bleak, and forbidding. A house with a south aspect is one that faces south. A speaker may deal with certain aspects or phases of his subject now, and leave other aspects for later consideration. In astrology the aspect of one heavenly body is its situation with respect to another.

*L. aspicere* (p.p. *aspectus*), from *a* = *ad* to, *spicere* (*specere*) to look. SYN.: Air, attitude, complexion, mien, phase, posture, situation.

**aspen** (äs' pën), *n.* A kind of poplar noted for the continuous trembling of its leaves. (F. *tremble*.)

A quaint old legend accounted for the trembling of the leaves of the aspen by the story that the cross on which our Saviour died was made of its wood. According to another legend the aspen was the only tree that failed to do reverence to Christ when He walked the earth, and upon being rebuked was seized with a fit of trembling, from which its descendants have always suffered.

The true explanation is less romantic but equally interesting. If its leaf stalks are examined they will be found to be very long and much flattened. Moisture on the leaves of trees tends to block the tiny mouths by which the tree breathes in the gases of the air; it has therefore to be got rid of by some means. In the quivering aspen this water is shaken by the constant motion towards the pointed tips, whence it runs off in drops. The scientific name of the tree is *Populus tremula*. Asp (äsp) is an earlier form of the word.

Originally an *adj.*, from A.-S. *aespe*; cp. G. *espe*, and kindred forms in other Teut. languages.

**asper** (äs' pēr), *n.* A small Turkish silver coin. It is not coined now, but is used as money of account, 120 aspers making a piastre. (F. *aspre*.)

Modern Gr. *aspros* white, silvery.

**asperge** (ä spērj'), *v.t.* To sprinkle, especially with holy water. *n.* A sprinkler for holy water. (F. *asperger*; *aspersoir*.)

In the Roman Catholic Church before High Mass a passage is sung from the 51st Psalm, "Purge me with hyssop, and I shall be clean; wash me, and I shall be whiter than snow," which, in the Latin of the service, begins with the words, "Asperges me, Domine." While this is being chanted the priest sprinkles the congregation with holy water by means of a rod or brush called usually aspergillum (äs pēr jil' üm, *n.*), and also aspergill (äs' pēr jil, *n.*), *aspersoir* (äs pär swar', *n.*), and *asperge*. This brief introduction to the Mass is known from its opening word as the *Asperges* (ä spēr jēz), the Latin for "Thou wilt sprinkle."

**Aspergillus** (äs pēr jil' üs), *n.* A genus of moulds or small fungi. (F. *aspergille*.)

Some of the small moulds produce their spores on a kind of brush, similar in shape to the aspergillum used for sprinkling holy water, and for this reason the name *Aspergillus* was given to them. The tufted or brush-shaped stigma of some grasses is said to be aspergilliform (äs pēr jil' i förm, *adj.*).

*L. aspergillum*, from *aspergere* to sprinkle, from *a* = *ad* to, *spargere* to sprinkle, dim. *L.* suffix *-illum*.



Aspen.—The shaking of the leaves is due to the motion of water towards the tips.

**asperity** (äs per' i ti), *n.* Harshness. (F. *aspérité*.)

The most usual sense in which this word is used is to denote harshness of temper or disposition, especially when this is expressed in manner or speech. It may also be used for roughness of surface, severity of climate, etc.

*L. asperitas* (acc. -*tātem*), from *asper* rough, O.F. *asperiteit*, *asprelé*. *SYN.*: Acerbity, acrimony, crabbedness, roughness, severity, sourness. *ANT.*: Gentleness, mildness, pleasantness, sweetness.

**aspermous** (ä spër' mūs), *adj.* Seedless. (F. *asperme*, *aspermé*.)

The banana is a seedless or aspermous fruit, as are also some cultivated varieties of grape, orange, and pineapple.

*Gr. a-* not, without, *sperma* seed.

**asperse** (ä spërs'), *v.t.* To slander; to bespatter with injurious charges; to sprinkle. (F. *diffamer*; *asperger*.)

From the idea of actual sprinkling this word got its usual present-day meaning of sprinkling or putting about false reports of a person. The act of making such accusations, as well as the accusation itself, is aspersion (ä spër' shün, *n.*). Baptism by sprinkling is called aspersion.

*L. aspergere* to sprinkle, from *a-* = *ad* to, *spargere* to sprinkle (p.p. *aspersus*). *SYN.*: Besmirch, calumniate, defame, slander, traduce. *ANT.*: Clear, defend, eulogize, extol, vindicate.

**aspersorium** (äs pë'r sör' i ūm), *n.* A vessel used in Roman Catholic churches for holding holy water, which is sprinkled over those present. (F. *bénitier*, *goupillon*.)

*L. aspersorium*, from *aspergere*, from *a-* = *ad* to, *spargere* to sprinkle.

**asphalt** (äs' fält), *n.* A mineral pitch; limestone rock having its pores filled with bitumen; a mixture of the first with sand, powdered stone, or other material. *adj.* Of

or relating to or made of or containing any of these substances. *v.t.* To cover or treat with asphalt. Another spelling is *asphalte*. (F. *asphalte*; *d'asphalte*; *couvrir d'asphalte*.)

Mineral pitch comes chiefly from the island of Trinidad, in the British West Indies, where there is a lake of it. Rock (limestone) asphalt is found in France, Germany, Sicily, Switzerland, and other countries. Asphalt is used for surfacing footpaths, courtyards, and city streets, and for making roofs and underground walls and floors waterproof. An asphaltic (äs fäl' tik, *adj.*) covering is one that has asphalt in it.

*L. asphaltus*, *Gr. asphaltos* (the word, however, is not of *Gr.* origin). The etymology is unknown.

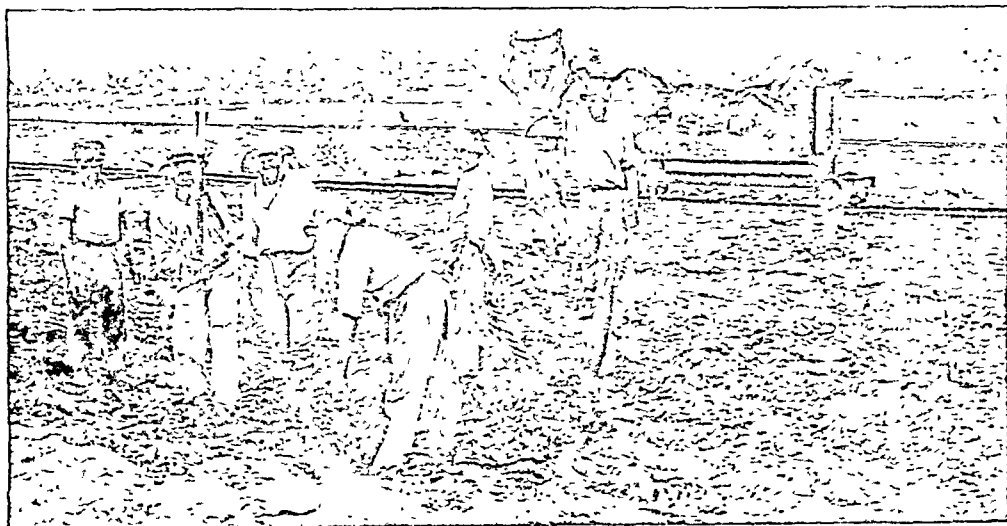
**asphodel** (äs' fö del), *n.* A genus of the lily order of plants; a flower said to bloom eternally in the Elysian fields, the fabled home of the blessed after death. (F. *asphodèle*.)

It is the English name given to any plant belonging to the genus *Asphodelus*. The best known varieties are the yellow asphodel (or king's spear) and the white asphodel. The plants are grown chiefly in Mediterranean regions, and often flower throughout the winter. The bog asphodel (*n.*) (*Narthecium ossifragum*), also known as the mountain asphodel, has small golden star-like flowers and thrives on moorland or on boggy mountain sides.

*L. asphodelus*, *Gr. asphodelos*. A learned word; the popular M.E. form *affodille* gives us another flower name, daffodil.

**asphyxia** (äs fiks' i ä), *n.* The condition due to oxygen not being able to enter the lungs; suffocation. (F. *asphyxie*.)

Drowning, strangling, being overcome by smoke, gas, or fumes are common examples of asphyxia. The sufferer loses his senses and



Asphalt.—Digging crude asphalt from the pitch lake on the island of Trinidad, in the British West Indies. Asphalt is used for paving and in the making of varnish.



his heart stops beating, but, if saved in time and treated in the proper way, he may recover.

An **asphyxial** (äs fiks' i äł, *adj.*) gas is one able to suffocate or asphyxiate (äs fiks' i ät, *v.i.*) a living creature. The act or process of being suffocated is **asphyxiation** (äs fiks i ä' shün, *n.*). Fires are sometimes put out by a device called an **asphyxiator** (äs fiks' i ä tōr, *n.*), which gives out a gas that smothers flames.

Gr. *asphyxia*, from *a-* not, without, *sphyxis* pulsation, from *sphyzein* to beat, throb.

**aspic** [1] (äs' pik), *n.* A poisonous snake; a savoury jelly. *adj.* Of or made of this jelly. (F. *aspic*; *d'aspic*.)

Poets often use the word **aspic** for **asp**, and both for any poisonous snake. Perhaps the jelly got its name from being cold like a snake, according to the French proverb, cold as an **aspic**. It is a highly-flavoured dish of game, meat, or the like embedded in jelly.

F. from Provençal *aspic*. See **asp** [1].

**aspic** [2] (äs' pik), *n.* A kind of lavender. (F. *aspic*.)

From this plant is distilled an essential oil called oil of spike, which is used in painting on porcelain and for making varnishes. **Aspic** is also known as spike-lavender and French lavender. The scientific name is *Lavandula spica*.

F. *aspic*, O.F. *espice*, L. *spic-us*, a form of *spica* spike.

**aspirate** (äs' pi rät, *v.*; äs' pi rät, *n.*), *v.i.* To pronounce as if the letter *h* came before a vowel or after a consonant; to draw out air, gas, or liquid. *v.i.* To use or have the sound of the letter *h*. *n.* The letter *h* or its sound. (F. *aspirer*; *s'aspirer*; *aspirée*.)

The breath is forced when pronouncing a vowel so as to produce the sound represented by the letter *h*, and therefore *h* is called the **aspirate**. An *h* which is not sounded is said to be unspirated, as in *hour*, *heir*, *honour*. The act of pronouncing the sound *h* is called **aspiration** (äs pi rät' shün, *n.*), but this word also has the meaning of lofty hope or ambition. This arises from the fact that, when we strive eagerly for something, we often find ourselves panting, or breathing more forcibly than usual. An **aspirator** (äs' pi rät tōr, *n.*) is an instrument which can withdraw air, or gases or liquids from any cavity by suction.

L. *aspirare* (p.p. *aspiratus*), from *a-* = *ad* to (intensive), *spirare* to breathe.

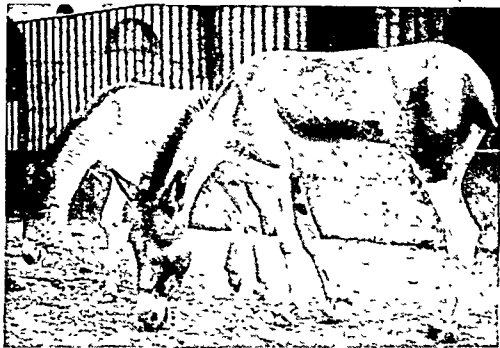
**aspire** (ä spir'), *v.i.* To long earnestly; to reach upward; to seek to rise. (F. *aspirer* ä, *s'élève*.)

The ambitious apprentice aspires to a business of his own and is therefore an **aspirant** (ä spir' änt, *n.*) for ownership. His efforts to learn his business are **aspirant** (*adj.*). He is a boy who is endowed with the quality of **aspiringness** (ä spir' ing nēs, *n.*).

L. *aspirare* to desire to attain, from *a-* = *ad* to, in the direction of, *spirare* to breathe, design. SYN.: Crave, desire, yearn.

**ass** (äs), *n.* A four-footed animal, akin to the horse and zebra, but smaller. (F. *âne*.)

Wild asses (äs' sez, *n.pl.*) are natives of northern Africa and Asia, and the domesticated donkey is a descendant, probably of the Abyssinian variety. The scientific name of the ass is *Equus asinus*.



Ass.—An Asiatic wild ass with its foal. Donkeys are probably descendants of the Abyssinian variety.

A senseless or stupid person is sometimes called an **ass**. He often makes an **ass** of himself, and by his very folly he may make an **ass** of somebody else. None of these expressions is very polite.

The fifth proposition of the first book of Euclid is called the **asses' bridge** (in Latin, *pons asinorum*) because it is supposed to be difficult for beginners to understand.

A.-S. *assa*, L. *asinus*, G. *esel*; the word appears in more or less similar forms in many Celtic and Teutonic languages. It is said to be of Semitic origin, the ass being a common beast of burden in the East.

**assagai** (äs' ä gi), *n.* A spear used by the Zulus and other African tribes. (F. *Zagaie*.)

There are two kinds of **assagai**, a long kind for throwing, and a short kind for stabbing at close quarters. The one occasion on which the **assagai** won a victory over the rifle was the battle of Isandhlwana, in Zululand, January 22nd, 1879. The 24th Regiment was surprised by a great force of Zulus and killed almost to a man. The word is also spelt **assegai**. Port. *azagaia*, from Arabic *az=al* the Berber *zaghāya* javelin.

**assai** (as sa' ē), *adv.* Very. (F. *assai*.)

This is a musical term which is frequently met with. It is never employed by itself, but is used in



Assagai.—A Zulu warrior with his assagai.



Assault.—The assault on Jerusalem in 1099 during the First Crusade. Godfrey of Bouillon, Duke of Lower Lorraine, who took an active part in the attack, became the first king of Jerusalem.

conjunction with another. For example, *adagio assai* means that the music is to be taken very slowly; *allegro assai* indicates that the music must proceed very quickly.

Ital. from L.L. *ad satis* up to what is enough. F. *assez* is of the same origin.

**assail** (à sāl'), *v.t.* To attack. (F. *assaillir*, *attaquer*.)

To assail in war is to assault or approach with intent to overcome by using physical effort. In a figurative sense we can assail a person, that is, approach him with the desire to overcome some scruple or belief of his. We can assail anyone in this way without any physical effort. A person who is thus open to attack is said to be assailable (à sāl' äbl, *adj.*), and the person so attacking is his assailant (à sāl' änt, *n.*). A force used for purposes of attack is an assailant (*adj.*) force.

M.E. *asailen*, O.F. *assaillir*, L.L. *assailire*, L. *assilire*, from *as-* = *ad* to upon, *salire* to leap. SYN.: Assault, invade, waylay.

**assassin** (à säs' in), *n.* A person who takes life by surprise. (F. *assassin*.)

Towards the close of the eleventh century a member of the Mohammedan sect of Ismailites, founded a secret society in Persia. He was Hassan-ibn-Sabbah, and from his taking up residence in the mountainous stronghold of Alamut he came to be known as the "Old Man of the Mountains." His followers were sent forth from this fortress retreat to assassinate (à säs' i nät, *v.t.*) and rob travellers who passed through the district, and they and their successors carried out such outrages for more than two hundred years, at first in Persia and later in Syria, where they founded a branch about the middle of the twelfth century. Before sending them upon their murderous errands Hassan would

intoxicate his warriors with hashish, and the name assassin comes from the word *hashashin*, meaning hashish-eaters.

The assassination (à säs i nā' shùn, *n.*) of kings, presidents, and other prominent people, such as Julius Caesar, Alexander II of Russia, Abraham Lincoln, and President Carnot, has had an important bearing on the history of the countries over which they ruled. The assassinator (à säs' i nā tór, *n.*) of Francis Ferdinand, the heir to the Austro-Hungarian throne, in 1914 brought about the greatest war the world has ever known.

Arab. *hashashin* eaters of *hashish*, a drug prepared from hemp.

**assault** (à sawlt'), *n.* A violent attack. *v.t.* To make a violent attack. (F. *assaute*; *assaillir*.)

In the legal sense, it is possible to make an assault on a person not only bodily, but also by threats. When physical force is applied, the law describes the crime as assault and battery. In the military sense, an assault is the charge of an attacking body on a fortified post. An assault-at-arms is a display of attack and defence in fencing, or a display of military exercises. When a person makes a violent attack upon another, we say that he assaults him. To assault a fortified post is to attack it by a sudden rush, to storm it. Anything which is capable of being assaulted is said to be assailable (a sawlt' äbl, *adj.*), although the more usual word to employ is assailable.

O.F. *as(s)alt*, from L. *as-* = *ad* to, on, *saltus* leap. SYN.: Aggression, invasion, onset, onslaught. ANT.: Defence, repulse, resistance.

**assay** (à sã'), *n.* A trial; an attempt; an examination; a test of a metal, or coin, made to find out what metals, and how much

of each, the substance contains. *v.t.* To test; to attempt. (F. *essai*; *essayer*.)

In the spring of the year 1859 two men were digging for gold in Nevada. They were much hindered by a black rock, which they threw out all round the pit as mere rubbish. A passer-by pocketed some pieces of this rock and handed them to an assayer (*à sã'èr, n.*), a man who makes an assay by melting and weighing, and uses for his assaying (*à sã'ing, n.*) a very delicate balance called an assay balance (*n.*). The assay showed the black rock to be very rich in silver. On hearing this, men flocked to the place where it had been found, and huge fortunes were made in what became famous all over the world as the greatest of silver mines, those of the Comstock Lode.

The assaying of the metals used for making coins in a mint is looked after by an official called an assay master (*n.*). An assay ton (*n.*) is a special weight of 29.166 grams.

O.F. *assai, n., assaier, v.*, from L. *exagium*, weighing, from *exagere, exigere*, to test by a standard of weight or measure; cp. L. *agīna* the beam of a balance. See *essay*.

**assegai** (*às'e gī*). This is another spelling of assagai. See *assagai*.

**assemble** (*à sem'bl*), *v.t.* To call together; to bring together. *v.i.* To meet together. (F. *assembler*; *s'assembler*.)

When people assemble in some building or space they meet together of their own accord, but when someone assembles others he calls them together. A craftsman, having made the various separate parts of something, assembles them to make up the whole fabric of the thing he has created. He is then said to assemble the parts. The putting together of these parts is called the *assemblage* (*à sem'*

*blāj, n.*) of them, and a gathering together of a number of people is also called an *assemblage*. The *assemblance* (*à sem'blāns, n.*) of anything is its appearance, though a more usual word to use in this case is *semblance*. The state of being gathered into a group, or the act of so gathering is an *assembly* (*à sem'bli, n.*), as is the group brought together. A member of a legislative assembly in the U.S.A. is called an *Assemblyman* (*n.*). An *assembly-room* (*n.*) is a room for public meetings, balls, etc. The term *assembly* is also used in the army for a drum call to soldiers. The annual meeting of the body which represents the Church of Scotland is called the *General Assembly* (*n.*), and what is known as the *Westminster Assembly* (*n.*) was an assembly of divines called together by the Long Parliament of 1643.

L.L. *assimulare*, from *as-* = *ad* to, *simul* together, to bring together. SYN.: Collect, congregate, gather, convoke, summon.

**assent** (*à sent'*), *v.i.* To agree; to approve; to sanction. *n.* The act of assenting; the document recording this; approval; sanction. (F. *assentir, convenir de; assentiment*.)

Assenting is a process of the mind, consenting an act of the will. One assents to the truth of a statement, one consents to believe it. One who assents is an *assentient* (*à sen'shent, n.*), and a proposal may have *assentient* (*adj.*) hearers. *Assentor* (*à sen'tôr, n.*) is one who assents, but this word is now used almost solely of a supporter of the proposer and seconder of a candidate.

A bill when it has passed both Houses of Parliament must receive the *royal assent* (*n.*) before it becomes an act and can take legal effect. The act of assenting is *assentation*



Assembly.—An assembly of Boy Scouts enjoying a sing-song round a blazing log-fire.

(*ās sen tā' shùn, n.*), especially when the assent is expressed in a slavish way.

*L. assentire*, from *as- = ad* to, in agreement with, *sentire* to feel. **SYN.**: Acquiesce, concur, ratify. **ANT.**: Deny, disavow, dissent, protest, repudiate.

**assert** (*ā ser't*), *v.t.* To affirm positively; to insist on or vindicate a right. (F. *affirmer, revendiquer*.)

In Milton's prayer that he "may assert Eternal Providence, and justify the ways of God to men" ("Paradise Lost," 1, 25), this word is used in its sense of vindicating. The phrase, to assert oneself, is an extension of this sense, for it contains a strong suggestion that one means to take steps to secure one's rights. If one asserts (rather than merely says) that such is the case one should be sure of being able to prove it. A very positive person who "lays down the law" is assertive (*ā ser'tiv, adj.*). He is characterized by assertiveness (*ā ser'tiv nēs, n.*) and acts assertively (*ā ser'tiv li, adv.*) and his claims are—presumably—assertable (*ā ser'tābl, adj.*). He is not, however, an assertor (*ā ser'tōr, n.*), this word being almost entirely confined to special or technical uses. Assertion (*ā ser'shùn, n.*) means the act or result of asserting.

*L. asserere* (p.p. *assertus*), from *as- = ad* to, *serere* to join. **SYN.**: Affirm, aver, declare, maintain, state. **ANT.**: Contradict, controvert, dispute, gainsay, retract.

**assess** (*ā ses'*), *v.t.* To fix the amount, as of a tax or fine; to tax; to estimate the value of, for taxation. (F. *imposer; taxer; imposition*.)

Taxes, legal damages, etc., are assessed, that is, fixed. Persons, corporations, etc., are also assessed—if they are assessable (*ā ses'ābl, adj.*), that is, they are laid under contribution at a definite rate. Property is assessed, that is, its value is estimated so that its fair share of taxation may be imposed.

Assessment (*ā ses'mēnt, n.*) is the act of assessing, or a valuation for taxation purposes, or the tax itself. Assessments are made by an assessor (*ā ses'ōr, n.*), but this word is more often used to denote an expert called in by a judge to advise on technical matters. Judges and K.C.'s are by reason of their office assessors to the House of Lords; the chancellor of a diocese is assessor to the bishop; and under the municipal corporation act assessors are elected annually by the burgesses to revise the Burgess list. The office of an assessor is an assessorship (*ā ses'ōr ship, n.*). Assessment-work (*n.*) is work

done each year on a mining claim in order to maintain possession of the property.

O.F. *assesser*, L.L. *assessare*, from *assidere* to sit near as assessor, from *as- = ad* by, *sedere* to sit. **SYN.**: Appraise, determine, estimate, exact.

**assets** (*ās'ets*), *n.pl.* Property or effects liable to be applied to satisfy debts or legacies; possessions. (F. *actif*.)

If a man is insolvent or goes bankrupt such of his property or effects as can go



Assiduous.—Sir Walter Scott was one of the most assiduous of authors. Before the last sheet of one novel was sent to his publishers, we are told by Lockhart, his son-in-law and biographer, "he had crowded his brain with the imagination of another fiction."

toward the payment of his debts are assets. In an account assets appear on the debit side. The word also means an advantage.

O.F. *assez* (pronounced *assets*), from L. *ad satis* up to what is sufficient. The word is not really a plural noun, but an adverb.

**asseverate** (*ā sev'er āt*), *v.t.* To declare positively or solemnly. (F. *affirmer solennellement*.)

If we know a statement to be true and if much depends on its being true we asseverate that it is true. The act of so doing is asseveration (*ā sev'er ā'shùn, n.*), and so is the statement asseverated.

*L. asseverare*, from *as- = ad* to, *severus* earnest, serious.

**assiduous** (*ā sid' ū ūs*), *adj.* Working steadily at anything. (F. *assidu*.)

The boy who sits down to his task and does not get up until it is finished will feel the benefit in later years of his early assiduity (ās si dū' i ti, *n.*). This assiduousness (ā sid' ū ūs nēs, *n.*) will become a habit. Any piece of work, however difficult, can be mastered if only it is tackled assiduously (ā sid' ū ūs lī, *adv.*). If a man plies his ladylove with attentions in season and out of season she may weary of his assiduities (ās si dū' i tiz, *n.pl.*).

*L. assiduus* applying oneself to, from *as- = ad* to, *sedere* to sit. *SYN.*: Diligent, persevering, unremitting. *ANT.*: Fitful, intermittent, lazy.

**assiento** (ā syen' tō; ās i en' tō), *n.* A contract or agreement with the King of Spain to supply the Spanish colonies in America with negro slaves, undertaken by Genoa, Portugal, and France, successively. Another spelling is *asiento*. (*F. asiento.*)

In the Treaty of Utrecht, 1713, England demanded and was given the sole rights in this traffic, the South Sea Company and others shipping 4,800 slaves across to the Spanish-Americans every year (with some breaks) until 1750, when the remaining two years of the contract were annulled for £100,000. No person of that time seems to have realized the disgrace of the business.

The word is Spanish, meaning seat, contract or agreement, from *L. as- = ad* to, *sedere* to sit, (*pres. p. sedens*, acc. *entem*).

**assign** (ā sin'), *v.t.* To set aside for a specific purpose; to fix; to ascribe. *n.* A person to whom a property or right is transferred. (*F. assigner*; *ayant droit*, *cessionnaire*.)

If a certain task is allotted to a particular person it is assigned to him. When we say that a particular remark is assigned to a certain person we mean that it is generally believed to have been originated by him. In law, when property is transferred or surrendered to a person it is assigned to him, and the person himself in such a case is called an assign (*n.*). Anything which is capable of being assigned is assignable (ā sin' ābl, *adj.*). An assignation (ās ig nā' shūn, *n.*) is the appointment of a particular time or place for a meeting. An assignee (ās i nē', *n.*) is an agent or representative, and, in law, the person to whom a property or legal right is transferred. Assignment (ā sin' mēt, *n.*) is the act of allotting or attributing, and, in law, the transference of property or legal right. The property or right is itself also called an assignment. The person who transfers a property or legal right is an assignor (ās i nōr, *n.*).

*L. assignare* to mark to or for, from *as- = ad* to, *signare* to mark (*signum* mark, sign). *SYN.*: Adjudge, allege, appoint, apportion, give, grant, state.

**assignat** (ās' ig nāt; a sin ya'), *n.* A promissory note issued by the revolutionary government of France and secured by state lands. (*F. assignat.*)

These notes were so called because they represented land assigned to the holders. They were nominally worth 100 francs or £4 each, but they were issued in such excessive numbers that their real value went down very rapidly. In the end their actual purchasing value was about threepence.

**assimilate** (ā sim' i lāt), *v.t.* To alter into a like form; to absorb. (*F. assimiler.*)

Our food would be of no use to us if we did not possess organs able to turn at least part of it into blood, tissues, and bone. The process of absorbing an assimilable (ā sim' il ābl, *adj.*) substance is called digestion or assimilation (ā sim i lā' shūn, *n.*). The stomach has assimilative (ā sim' i lā tiv, *adj.*) or assimilatory (ā sim' i lā tō ri, *adj.*) powers over anything that has assimilability (ā sim i lā bil' i ti, *n.*), or the capability of being digested. The stomach is an assimilator (ā sim' i lā tōr, *n.*) of food.

*L. assimilare*, from *ad* to, *similis* like.

**assise** (ā sīz'), *n.* A formation of layers of rock, in parallel beds, all of which contain fossils, etc., of the same type. (*F. assise.*)

An assise belongs to a definite stage in the development of life on the earth, its different layers being deposited one above the other at intervals spread over all the period. This enables us to estimate the length of time



Assist.—An orang-utan at the London Zoological Gardens, taking a stroll with the assistance of two young visitors. In its natural state the orang-utan prefers climbing to walking.

during which certain kinds of animals, etc., existed in the world.

*F. asseoir*, fem. *p.p.* *assise*, from *L. ad* to, *sedere* to sit (*supine sessum*).

**assist** (ā sist'), *v.t.* To help. *v.i.* To take part; to be present. (*F. assister, aider.*)

One assists in an undertaking, with money, and at a wedding. The aid one gives to a

needy relative is assistance (à sis' tans, *n.*). A person who helps in a shop is an assistant (à sist' ant, *n.*). This word is sometimes used as an adjective, and then is usually joined to another word by a hyphen, for example, assistant-secretary. In law assistor (à sist' or, *n.*) means one who assists, generally in a crime, an accessory.

L. *assistere* to step up to, held, from *as-* = *ad* to, *sistere* to stop, stand by. SYN.: Aid, oblige, succour, sustain. ANT.: Embarrass, hamper, impede, obstruct, thwart.

**assize** (à siz'), *n.* One of the periodical visits of judges to certain English provincial towns. (F. *assises*.)

In olden times this word had many different meanings. At first it was applied to the method of trial by a jury of sixteen persons. Later it was used to denote a sitting of a court, a decision of a court, and a jury.

Among examples of its use as an enactment of a court was the assize of Clarendon, which was an ordinance issued by Henry II in 1166 abolishing trial by ordeal and providing for trial of criminal cases in shire courts. It was the origin of our system of trial by jury, and was confirmed and strengthened in 1176 by the Assize of Northampton.

The Assize of Arms, instituted by Henry II in 1181, was a universal military levy by which every freeman was compelled to arm himself for the defence of the country. The Assize of Bread was an ordinance passed in the reign of Henry III in 1266 regulating the price of bread in accordance with the changes in the price of corn.

What we know to-day as the assizes (à si' zès, *n.pl.*) are the sessions held periodically by the judges in the various counties of England for the administration of civil and criminal justice. At first the judges of the Supreme Court did not attend at these assizes, but since 1815 they have done so.

The Black Assizes were those held at Oxford in 1577, when an epidemic carried off many hundreds of people, including several attending the court. The Bloody Assizes were the special commission held in the West of England by Judge Jeffreys in 1685, when over 300 persons were executed and thousands were whipped, imprisoned, and deported for having taken part in Monmouth's Rebellion.

An assizer (à siz' èr, *n.*) is, in Scottish law, a jurymen.

M.E. and O.F. *assise*, fem. of *assis*, p.p. of *asseoir*, from L. *as-* = *ad* to, near, *sedere* to sit.

**associate** (à sô' shi àt), *v.t.* To join in company; to connect in thought, combine. *v.i.* To be in company; *adj.* Allied; connected. *n.* A partner; a confederate; one belonging to an association. (F. *associer*; s'*associer*; *associé*, *confédéré*.)

Many commercial companies have associate companies with which they are connected. Members of a gang of burglars associate with one another and are associates in crime. Associable (à sô' shi àbl, *adj.*) is used almost solely of ideas or theories that

may be mentally associated, such ideas being sometimes said to have associability (à sô' shi à bil' i ti, *n.*).

The position of being an associate, as an associate of the Royal Academy, is an associateship (à sô' shi àt ship, *n.*), as is the state of being connected or associated with another person or party.

A limited liability company—which is itself an association (à sô si à' shùn, *n.*)—is formed under a deed of association and is bound by articles of association. The "deed" is the document containing particulars of the company, and the "articles" are the rules and conditions which govern it. An associationist (à sô si à' shùn ist, *n.*) is a member of an association; and an associator (à sô' shi à tor, *n.*) a person who joins or is connected with others. Both are said to be associative (à sô' shi à tiv, *adj.*), and to have associational (à sô si à' shùn àl, *adj.*) tendencies.

L. *associare* (p.p. *associatus*), from *as-* = *ad* to, *sociare* to join together (*socius* companion, partner). SYN.: *v.* Combine, conjoin, unite. *n.* Accomplice, companion, friend. ANT.: *v.* Disconnect, divide, separate. *n.* Antagonist, enemy, opponent.

**Association Cup** (à sô si à' shùn kùp), *n.* A football trophy competed for every year.



Association Cup.

The greatest honour which an Association football club can achieve is the winning of the cup presented for competition by the Football Association. Popularly referred to as the "English Cup," although certain Welsh clubs in addition to the hundreds of English clubs are allowed to enter the competition, it was first put up for competition in 1871.

Both amateur and professional clubs may take part, and they are paired together in rounds, the winners of each pair having the right to enter the next round and so on until only two clubs remain. These contest the last round or "final," as it is called, the winning club receiving the cup, which is held for about a year. The members of both the winning and losing clubs in the final receive a gold medal each, the winners' medals being of greater value.

**Association football** (à sô si à' shùn fut' bawl), *n.* A popular winter sport.

There are two styles of football played in the British Isles, one in which the players may use their hands, the other in which it is against the laws to do so. The latter is Association football, so called because it is

governed by a body of men called the Football Association.

Eleven players form a team : five forwards, three half-backs, two backs, and a goalkeeper. The object of the game is to propel a ball, by kicking or heading, into a goal eight yards

siv, *adj.*) or soothing words. The act of relieving or allaying is: an assuagement (à swāj' mēnt, *n.*).

O.F. *assouagier*, from an assumed L. *assuaviare* to sweeten, appease, from *as-* = *ad* to, *suavis* sweet. SYN.: Calm, relieve, satisfy, soothe. ANT.: Aggravate, exasperate, increase, inflame, stir up.

**assume** (à sūm'), *v.t.* To take upon oneself; to take possession of; to take for granted. *v.i.* To be presumptuous. (F. *se charger de, prendre pour dit; prétendre.*)

A prime minister is said to assume office when he takes upon himself the duties of that office. Assuming a throne implies taking possession of kingly rights and duties. A person who assumes a disguise changes his appearance to mislead people.

Sympathy that is not real, but pretended is feigned or assumed (à sūmd', *adj.*). An assuming (à sūm' ing, *adj.*) person takes too much upon himself, or takes liberties. To take something for granted is to act assumptively (à sūmp' tiv li, *adv.*) or assumedly (à sūm' ed li, *adv.*) and to make an assumption (à sūmp' shūn, *n.*). A thing that can be taken for granted is assumable (à sūm' ābl, *adj.*), and when speaking of such a thing, we can say that assumably (à sūm' ā bli) it is true. The Roman Catholic feast of the Assumption, observed on August 15th, is in honour of the taking up of the Virgin into heaven.

L. *assumere*, from *as-* = *ad* to, *sumere* to take. SYN.: Arrogate, appropriate, claim, pretend, suppose. ANT.: Allow, concede, demonstrate, grant, resign.



Association football.—A back intercepts the ball.

long and eight feet high, the team scoring the greater number of goals being the winners.

**assonant** (ās' ó nānt), *adj.* Similar in vowel sound, but not rhyming as to consonants. (F. *assonant.*)

In the poetry of some languages assonance (ās' ó nāns, *n.*) is allowed as a substitute for rhyme, but in English it is regarded as a blemish. Here is an example of assonance :

"Oranges and lemons  
Say the Bells of St. Clements."

The following taken from the same song :

"I'm sure I don't know  
Says the Great Bell of Bow."

is an example of a perfect rhyme.

L. *assonans* (acc. -*antem*), pres. p. of *assonare*, from *as-* = *ad* to, in return, *sonare* to sound.

**assort** (à sōrt'), *v.t.* To arrange in lots or classes. *v.i.* To be in harmony. (F. *assortir . s'assortir.*)

To separate good apples from bad is to assort them. Things which suit each other are said to assort well together. Arranging objects in classes is the act of assortment (à sōrt' mēnt, *n.*), and the collection thus arranged is an assortment.

O.F. *assortier*, as if from a L. verb *assortire* to arrange in lots, from L. *as-* = *ad* to, *sors* (acc. *sortem*) lot. SYN.: Arrange, classify, dispose, distribute, group. ANT.: Derange, displace, misplace, mix.

**assuage** (à swāj'), *v.t.* To soothe; to allay. (F. *adoucir, apaiser.*)

If anyone burns his hand, dressings are put on the wound to assuage or reduce the pain. The violence of an angry man can sometimes be lessened or appeased by assuasive (à swā'



Assortment.—Girls at work on a separator, getting apples ready for the grading machine that assort them.

**assumpsit** (à sūmp' sit), *n.* An action-at-law to enforce a promise made by word of mouth or in a written, but not sealed, contract. This kind of action has now been done away with. (F. *promesse verbale.*)

L. *assumpsit* (*assumere*), he has undertaken.

**assure** (ă shūr'), *v.t.* To make certain; to convince; to tell confidently; to secure against loss. (F. *assurer*.)

"I assure you" is a phrase often used when we mean that what we are about to say is an absolute fact and that we ourselves know it to be true. We assure our lives and property against loss, assure being used especially of life assurance and insure for protecting ourselves against loss by fire. An assurance (ă shūr' āns, *n.*) is a contract to pay a given sum on a person's death. An assured (ă shūr'd', *adj.*) position is a safe position, one that cannot be assailed or interfered with. An assured manner is a very confident manner. Assuredly (ă shūr' ēd li, *adv.*) means without a doubt. Assuredness (ă shūr' ēd nēs, *n.*) is the state of being assured or appearing assured. An assurer (ă shūr' er, *n.*) or assurator (ă shūr' ōr, *n.*) is one who insures a person's life or property, an underwriter. To speak assuringly (ă shūr' ing li, *adv.*) or in an assuring (ă shūr' ing, *adj.*) way is to speak in such a manner as to inspire confidence.

O.F. *aseürer*, from an assumed L. verb *asscurare*, from *as-* = *ad* to, *securus* sure, safe. SYN.: Affirm, declare, promise, protest, secure.

**assurgent** (ă sērj' ent), *adj.* Rising; aggressive. (F. *assurgent*.)

Parts of plants which first curve downwards and then upwards are said to be assurgent.

In the sense of aggressive the word is rare. We might say that people who try to rise in life or improve their positions are assurgent and that their assurgency (ă sērj' ēn si, *n.*) may take the form of attempting to rule over others.

L. *assurgens* (acc. -*entem*), pres. p. of *assurgere*, from *as-* = *ad* to, *surgere* to rise.

**Assyrian** (ă si' ri ān), *adj.* Relating to Assyria. *n.* A native of Assyria; the language of Assyria. (F. *assyrien*.)

Of the two mighty peoples that arose on the banks of the Tigris and Euphrates, the Assyrians were men of war and the Babylonians men of peace. About 1400 B.C., Assyria, after being long subject to Babylon, became independent. Soon she began a long series of wars that ended, in the year 607 B.C., in her defeat by the Medes and Babylonians.

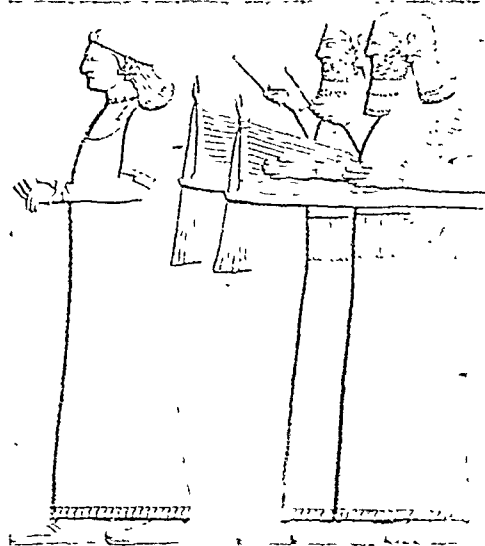
Gr., from the city Assur.

**Assyriology** (ă si ri ol' ō ji), *n.* The study of Assyria and its remains. (F. *Assyriologie*.)

Early in the nineteenth century, more than 2,000 years after the fall of the capital, Nineveh, some learned men interested in the history of Assyria discovered the remains of that once famous city. Among other treasures these Assyriologists (ă si ri ol' ō jists, *n.pl.*) found a wonderful library that had been started by the great Assyrian King Ashurbanipal. The books of the Assyrians were very different from ours. They were not written on paper but impressed on bricks,

which were then dried. Many of the books from this library can be seen in the British Museum, which has many other Assyriological (ă si ri ō loj' ik āl, *adj.*) exhibits.

Gr. *Assyria*, and -*logy* suffix denoting the science of (Gr. *logos* discourse).



Assyrian.—A sculpture of Assyrian musicians celebrating the return of the king from hunting.

**Astacus** (ăs' tā kūs), *n.* A genus of shellfish, including the African, American, and European lobster. The fresh-water crayfish has been wrongly included in the family by some people. (F. *homard*.)

L. *astacus*, Gr. *astakos*.

**a-starboard** (ă star' bōrd), *adv.* On or towards the right-hand side of a ship when looking towards the bows, that is, in the direction in which the ship is travelling. (F. *tribord*.)

A- = *on*, and *starboard*. ANT.: A-port.

**Astarte** (ăs tar' tē), *n.* A Phoenician goddess; a marine bivalve mollusc. (F. *Astarté*.)

Astarte corresponds to the Ashtoreth of the Hebrews, the Assyrian Ishtar, and the Aphrodite of the Greeks. She is supposed to have had an ancient temple at Hierapolis in Syria.

The marine bivalve mollusc, an animal with a soft body and no interior skeleton, and having two valves or half-shells like an oyster, is found in British waters.

The name was apparently given to the mollusc because they belong to the *Cyprinidae* family, Cypris (Aphrodite, Venus) being identified with the Phoenician goddess Astarte.

**astatic** (ă stăt' ik), *adj.* Not affected by the earth's magnetism. (F. *astatique*.)

The needle of a galvanometer is magnetized and moves when a current passes near it. To prevent the earth's magnetism having any



effect on it a second, and equally strong, magnet is fixed in line with it on the same spindle, but with its north pole pointing the opposite way. The two needles then balance each other as regards the earth's magnetism, and as one only is acted upon by the current to be measured, the results will be correct. Such a galvanometer is said to be astatic.

Gr. *astatos*, from *a-* not, *statos* remaining fixed (root *sta* to stand).



Aster.—The single aster and the comet aster, two varieties of this favourite flower.

**aster** (äs' tēr), *n.* A group of plants with star-like flowers. (F. *aster*.)

These plants grow in most parts of the globe. In English gardens one kind is familiar as the Michaelmas daisy, so called because it flowers in autumn. The China aster, a native of the country whose name it bears, is a similar flower with much larger blossoms and a variety of colours. The asters are composites, of the order Asteraceae.

Gr. *astēr* star.

**asteria** (ä stēr' i ä), *n.* A name applied to certain ornamental stones. (F. *astérie*.)

When some gem-stones are cut in a certain way they look like stars with six rays, and are called star-stones or asterias. The best-known asterias are star-sapphires and star-rubies.

Gr. *asterios* starry, from *astēr* star.

**Asterias** (ä stēr' i äs), *n.* The genus which contains the starfish. (F. *astérie*, *étoile de mer*.)

This is the scientific name given to the group of common starfishes. These creatures feed on shellfish and not only do great damage to oysters but greatly annoy deep-sea line-fishermen by their habit of removing the bait from the hooks. A member of the starfish family is called an asterid (äs' tēr id, *n.*) and the plural of asterias is asteriae (ä stēr' i ä).

Gr. *asterias*, from *astēr* star.

**asterisk** (äs' tēr isk), *n.* A star-like mark (\*) used in printing. *v.i.* To mark with such a sign. (F. *astérisque*; *astériser*.)

An asterisk is usually put on a page of a book to draw attention to a footnote or a note in the margin, or to show that something has been left out. In a guide-book certain

places or buildings are asterisked (äs' tēr iskt, *p.p.*). This means that they are interesting and well worth going to see.

In the Greek Church a little frame is sometimes put over the sacred bread to prevent anything from touching it. This is called an asterisk, because it is shaped like a star.

Gr. *asteriskos* little star, dim. of *astēr*.

**asterism** (äs' tēr izm), *n.* A small constellation; a small group of stars; three asterisks; a bright figure in a crystal. (F. *astérisme*.)

It has been said that "poetry has filled the sky with asterisms and histories belonging to them"; and from the history of astronomy we learn how the larger original constellations have been robbed of stars to form small asterisms.

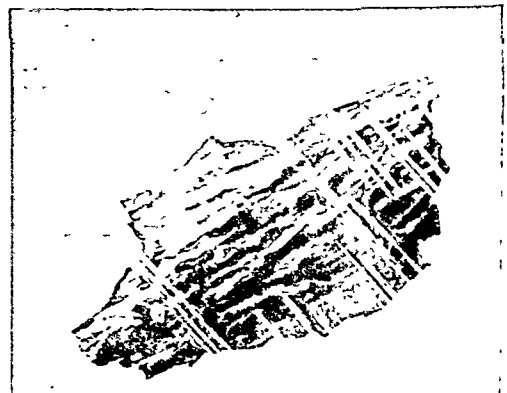
Three asterisks placed thus \*\* or thus \*\*\* before a paragraph to call attention to it are called an asterism, as is also the bright, star-shaped figure seen in some crystals, such as in one variety of the sapphire. Such a crystal is said to be asteriated (äs tēr' i ä tēd, *adj.*).

Gr. *asterismos*, from *astēr* star, suffix *-ismos* (of abstract ideas).

**a-stern** (ä stēr'n'; ä starn'), *adv.* In the after or hinder part of a ship; behind; in the direction of the hinder part. To go astern is to move backwards. (F. *de l'arrière*.)

*A-* = *on* and *stern*. ANT.: Ahead, forward.

**asteroid** (äs' tēr oid), *adj.* Star-like; star-shaped. *n.* One of the small planets



Asteroid.—Eros, one of the hundreds of little asteroids that revolve round the sun. Its shape is very irregular.

which revolve round the sun between the orbits of Jupiter and Mars. (F. *astéroïde*.)

These small planets were only discovered recently. An Italian astronomer, Giuseppe Piazzi, found the first, Ceres, on January 1st, 1801. During the following century over

200 others were discovered, and the number now known is more than 700, though their total bulk is very small. It has been suggested that these asteroidal (äs tēr oid' ä'l, *adj.*) bodies are the result either of the explosion of a planet, or of its being splintered in collision with some other heavenly body.

Gr. *asteroëidēs* star-like, from *astēr* star, *eidos* form, shape.

**Asterolepis** (äs tēr ol' è pis), *n.* A genus of extinct fishes.

Hugh Miller, the stonemason-geologist, describes these fishes, whose fossil remains he studied in the Old Red Sandstone.

Gr. *astēr* star, *lepis* scale.

**asthenia** (äs thè nī' à), *n.* Lack of strength; bodily weakness or loss of power. (F. *asthénie*.) A person suffering from asthenia is asthenic (äs thèn' ik, *adj.*).

Gr. *astheneia*, from *a-* not, without, *sthenos* strength.

**asthma** (äs' mà), *n.* A disease that causes attacks of breathlessness. (F. *asthme*.)

This distressing complaint is due to nervous trouble in the air-tubes between the lungs and the mouth. During an attack the patient struggles for breath, and may turn blue about the lips and seem to be suffocating. A person subject to asthma is asthmatic (äs mät' ik, *adj.*) or asthmatical (äs mät' ik ä'l, *adj.*), and breathes asthmatically (äs mät' ik ä'l li, *adv.*) or wheezily.

Gr. *asthma* puffing, panting, *asthmainein* to pant, from *aein* (not used), *aënai* to pant.

**astigmatism** (ä stig' mà tizm), *n.* A defect of the eyesight caused by the lens of the eye having lost its proper shape. (F. *astigmatisme*.)

A person who has astigmatism cannot see level lines and upright lines equally well at the same time, because the lens of the eye, instead of having spherical curves, has become flattened in one direction. Such a person should wear a pair of spectacles fitted with astigmatic (äs tig mät' ik, *adj.*) lenses, shaped to correct astigmatism.

Gr. *a-* not, without, *stigma* (gen. *stigmatos*), suffix *-ismos* (state, condition).

**astir** (ä stēr'), *adj.* and *adv.* Moving about; out of bed. (F. *en mouvement*; *levé*.)

We can speak of an early riser as being astir betimes.

*A-* = on, and *stir*. SYN.: About, afoot, busy. ANT.: Abed, idle, quiescent.

**astomatous** (ä stom' ä tüs), *adj.* Mouthless. (F. *astome*.)

A newly hatched tadpole is astomatous; it has no mouth for several days. Many of the tiny creatures called Infusoria are astomatous, never having anything in the nature of a true mouth; hence they are called Astomata (ä stom' ä tä, *n.pl.*). Certain mosses, such as *Phascum*, are said to be astomatous (äs' tòm üs, *adj.*) or astomatous, because the capsule in which the spores are produced has no aperture or operculum, but bursts irregularly.

Gr. *a-* not, *stoma* (gen. *stomat-os*) mouth.

**astonish** (ä ston' ish), *v.t.* To surprise; to amaze. (F. *étonner*.)

A friend living in America would astonish you by making a surprise or astonishing (ä ston' ish ing, *adj.*) call on you at your English home. In acting so astonishingly (ä ston' ish ing li, *adv.*) he would naturally cause you astonishment (ä ston' ish mēt, *n.*).

M.E. *astonie*(n), O.F. *estonner*, from (assumed) L.L. *extonare* to thunder out, suffix *-ish* on analogy of other verbs. SYN.: Astound, stagger, startle, surprise.



Astonishment.—The astonishment of the natives when Captain Cook landed in Tasmania in 1776.

**astound** (ä stound'), *v.t.* To strike with wonder or amazement. (F. *abasourdir*, *frapper d'étonnement*.)

An earthquake would astound us. Any shock which occasions alarm or surprise is astounding (ä stound' ing, *adj.*) and gives rise to astoundment (ä stound' mēt, *n.*). Trapeze artists are often astoundingly (ä stound' ing li, *adv.*) daring.

The etymology is the same as that of *astonish*, of which it is a doublet; the final d is superfluous. SYN.: Amaze, astonish, startle, surprise.

**astraddle** (ä strädl'), *adv.* Astride. (F. *à califourchon*.)

For women there are two ways of sitting a horse. One is side saddle, that is, with both legs at the same side. The other is astraddle, or astride, as a man rides, with the legs parted by the girth of the horse, and thus hanging one on each side. To stand astraddle is to stand with legs wide apart.

*A-* = on, and *straddle*.

**astragal** (äs' trā gäl), *n.* In architecture a beading round the top or bottom of a column, and in engineering a ring round a pipe or the mouth of a gun. (F. *astragale*.)

L. *astragalus*, Gr. *astragalos* literally knuckle-or ankle-bone.

**astragalus** (à străg' à lûs), *n.* The ball of the ankle-joint; one of the largest genera of seed plants, having more than 1,000 different species, of which perhaps the milk-vetch is best known. (F. *astragale*.)

*L. astragalus*, Gr. *astragalos*, literally knuckle-or ankle-bone.

**astrakhan** (äs trā kăn'), *n.* A curly wool used for clothing or as a trimming; an imitation of this. *adj.* Made of or trimmed with this. (F. *astrakan*; *d'astrakan*.)

The name of this so-called "fur" is derived from Astrakhan, a port on an island in the River Volga. The wool comes from very young lambs of a special breed. Large flocks of these sheep are kept in the deserts of Western Turkestan.

**astral** (äs' träl), *adj.* Belonging to the stars; star-shaped. (F. *astral*.)

The belief in earlier times in a connexion between man's soul and the starry heavens led to a belief also in astral spirits that inhabited the stars. These were supposed to be either fallen angels—the souls of dead men, especially of kings and emperors—or spirits hovering between heaven, earth, and hell, but belonging to none of them.

In modern times a religious body known as the Theosophists has reintroduced the term astral body to denote a kind of spiritual body, which they claim to be able to send to places far away from the physical body, and around which the bodily form is built up. It is not the soul or spirit, but its permanent vehicle or habitation.

*L. astrum* star, suffix *-al* pertaining to (*L. -alis*).

**astray** (à strā'), *adj.* and *adv.* Out of the right path. (F. *égavé*.)

A child might easily go astray in a forest or in a fog. Sometimes one speaks of a

person who has done wrong as having gone astray from the path of virtue.

*A- = on, and stray.*

**astrict** (à strikt'), *v.t.* To compress; to bind; to restrict. (F. *astreindre*.)

This word is seldom used. The term **astriction** (à strik' shùn, *n.*) is applied to the act of using astringent or binding medicine and to the result produced. A drug that has this effect is an **astrictive** (à strik' tiv, *adj.*) drug or an **astrictive** (*n.*). In Scots law lands are said to be **astricted** when they are held on condition that the tenant has to take any grain grown on them to be ground at a particular mill. This obligation is called **astriction**.

*L. astringere* (p.p. *astrictus*), from *a- = ad* to, *stringere* to bind.

**astride** (à strid'), *adj.* and *adv.* With a leg on either side. Men, and many women also, ride a horse astride. An army is said to be **astride** of a river when part of it is on each bank. (F. *à califourchon*.)

*A- = on, and stride.*

**astringent** (à strinj' ènt), *adj.* Binding; stern. *n.* A binding medicine. (F. *astringent*.)

This word is chiefly used by doctors, for anything that causes contraction or compression of muscular fibre. It is occasionally applied to people who are severe or harsh, whose characters are marked by **astringency** (à strinj' èn si, *n.*). The word **astringency** is generally used for the binding quality possessed by certain drugs and other substances, which are said to act **astringently** (à strinj' ènt li, *adv.*). **Astringe** (à strinj', *v.t.* and *i.*) is rarely used, and then only in the medical sense.

*L. astringere* (pres. p. *astringens*, gen. *entis*), from *a- = ad* to, *stringere* to bind.



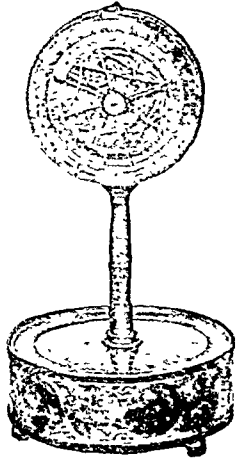
Astride.—Years ago only men rode a horse with a leg on either side, and women used a side-saddle. But now it is usual for both sexes to sit astride.

**astroite** (äs' trō it), *n.* A kind of gem. (F. *astroïte*.)

The ancients knew what the astroite was, but the knowledge died with them. Perhaps it was the star sapphire. The word is used for various star-shaped minerals and fossils, including a kind of madrepor or fossil coral, and also for star-stones or asterias.

Gr. *astro(n)* star, suffix *-ite* resembling (Gr. *itēs*).

**astrolabe** (äs' trō lāb), *n.* An instrument formerly used for taking the altitude of the stars or other heavenly bodies. (F. *astrolabe*.)



Astrolabe.—An astronomical clock with astrolabe, in the British Museum.

It sometimes resembled an armillary sphere. Much used in the Middle Ages, especially for astrological purposes, in Europe and Oriental countries, it was often a beautiful work of art. About 1391 the English poet Chaucer wrote a little book on the astrolabe for his young son Lewis. In modern times it has been replaced by the much superior quadrant and sextant.

Gr. *astro(n)* star, *lambansēn* to take (aorist *labein*).

**astrolatry** (ā stol' ā tri), *n.* The worship of the stars. (F. *astrolâtrie*.)

The Babylonians identified the sun, moon, and planets with their chief gods. The ancient Greeks and Romans believed that when a great man died his soul went to dwell among the stars. Modern astronomers still use classical names for any new stars they discover.

Gr. *astro(n)* star, *latreia* worship.

**astrology** (ā stol' ō ji), *n.* The art of foretelling the future of human beings by the positions of the stars. (F. *astrologie*.)

We still call a jolly man jovial and a gloomy one saturnine. Now, Jove (or Jupiter) and Saturn are names of planets, and these words remind us of the time when the stars were supposed to have great influence on the lives and fortunes of men. According to the position of certain stars at the hour when a man was born he would be lucky or unlucky. Jupiter was considered the most favourable planet to be born under, Saturn the least favourable.

From the very earliest times wise men of all countries—Babylonians, Egyptians, Greeks, Arabians, and others—patiently watched the heavens. These astrologers (ā stol' ō jēr, *n.pl.*) of old thought that the earth was the centre of the universe, and that the course of human affairs was

influenced by the stars that whirled in circles round it.

One of the most famous English astrologers was Dr. John Dee, who entered the service of Queen Elizabeth after having run perilous risks by correctly "reading" the future of Queen Mary. Although a mathematician and a chemist, he was popularly regarded as a wizard. "The children," we are told, "dreaded him because he was accounted a conjurer." On one occasion a mob broke into his house at Mortlake when its owner was away, smashed the furniture and apparatus, scattered the books of the library, and stole a magnet which had cost Dee a large sum of money.

On his return from abroad Dee was able to get back many of his volumes, but although the Queen made many promises few if any of them were fulfilled. At long last Dee was made warden of Manchester College.

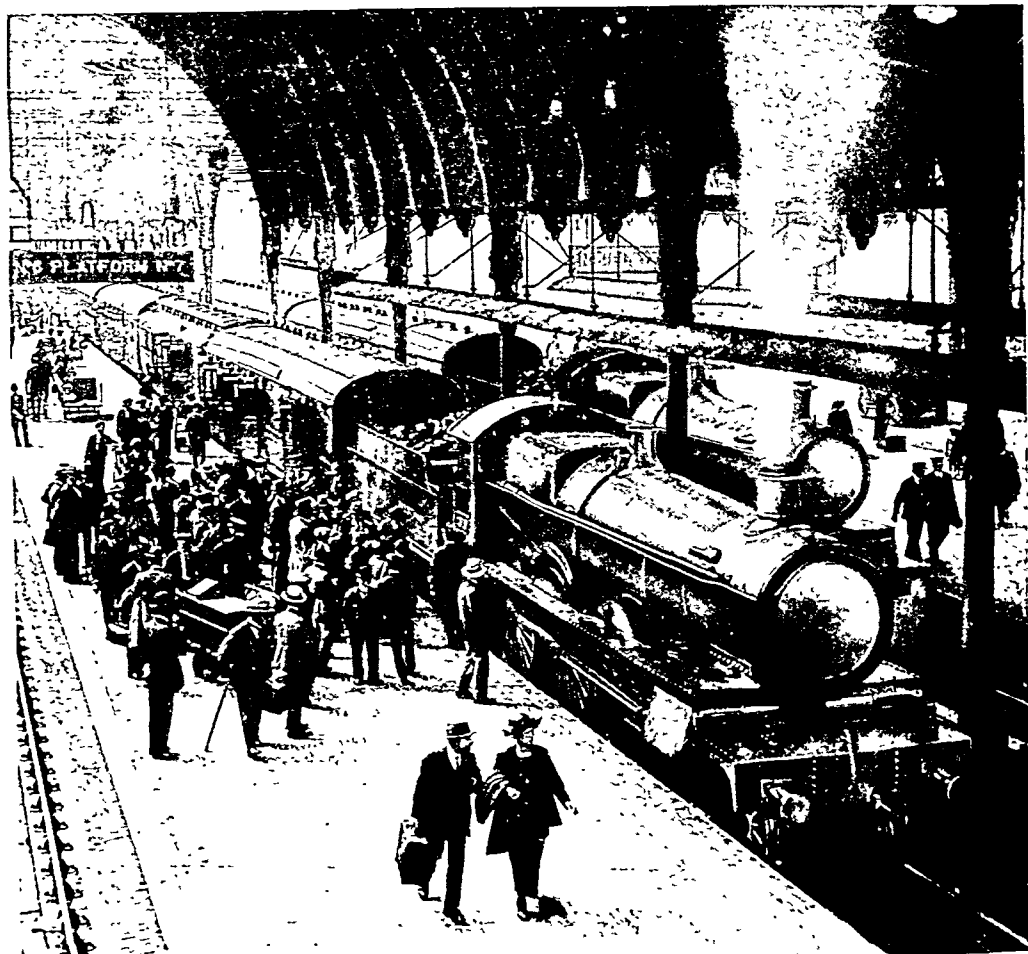
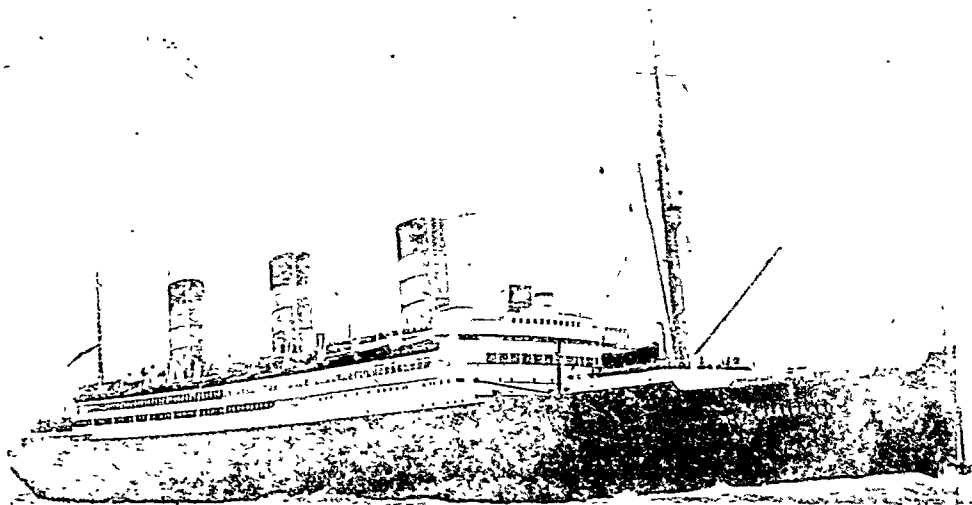


Astrology.—In olden times people believed that the stars had great influence on the fortunes of men. This quaint picture shows an astrologer at work.

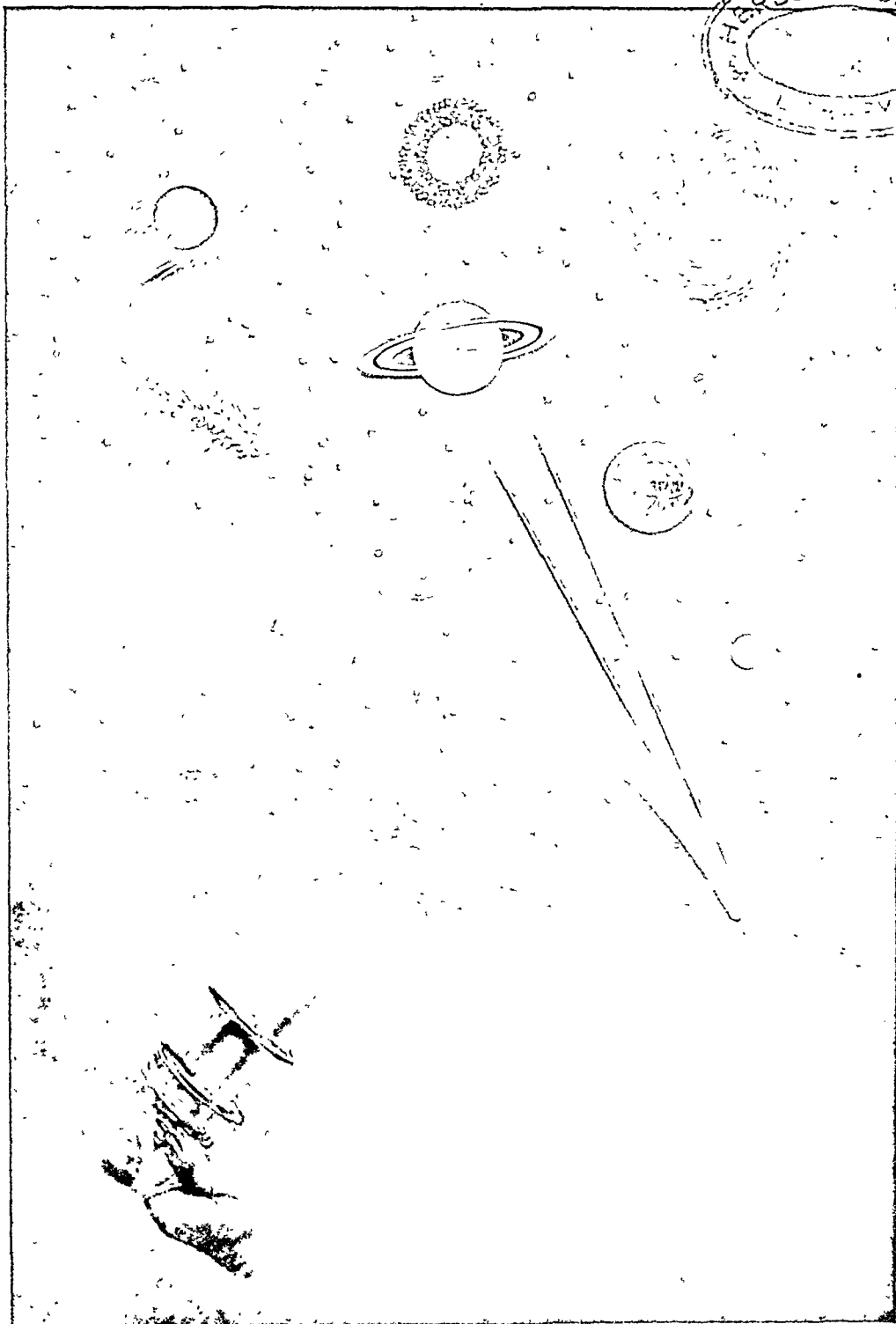
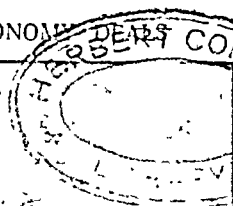
In the sixteenth century the great astronomer Copernicus declared that not the earth but the sun was the centre of the universe, and when Sir Isaac Newton proved this by his law of gravitation, astrology fell from its high place. Many people though went on believing that their lives were influenced astrologically (ās trō loj' i kāl h, *adv.*), and still pried into the future by astrologic (ās trō loj' ik, *adj.*) or astrological (ās trō loj' ik āl, *adj.*) means. The great Napoleon believed in his star.

L., Gr. *astrologia*, from Gr. *astro(n)* star, *-logy* suffix denoting science of, from *logos* discourse.

## TWO OF THE GREATEST USES OF ASTRONOMY IN DAILY LIFE



Astronomy.—Without the help of astronomy civilization would be impossible. A knowledge of the motions of the heavenly bodies enables sea captains to steer a true course, and the observance of the transit of certain stars provides us with accurate time, so necessary in arranging our train and other public and private services.



Astronomy. Reading from left to right, beginning at top.—Corona of the Sun during the eclipse of 1878. Nebula in Lyra; Spiral nebula in Canes Venatici; Crab nebula in Taurus; Saturn; Mars; Cornea's comet in 1874; Donati's comet in 1858; Jupiter; Solar prominences or flames of burning gas; Part of the Moon.

# ASTRONOMY AND ITS WONDERS

*The Science which Tells us about the Stars and other Heavenly Bodies*

**astronomy** (à stron' ó mi), *n.* The science which deals with the stars and other heavenly bodies. (F. *astronomie*.)

The earliest historical records show us that man was interested in the stars. The ancient Chaldeans and Egyptians certainly knew much of their positions and movements. Early men probably were better acquainted with these than are most of us to-day. The brilliant lighting of our towns and cities, and the habit of spending the hours of darkness indoors interfere with our chances of observing.

To the ancients the stars served as guides in unknown countries and as reliable time-keepers. So they learned to know the face of the heavens and gave names to stars and groups of stars, or constellations, which have come down to us to-day, and which are still used by the astronomer (à stron' ó mèr, *n.*), or student of the stars.

Although they knew the names and positions of the stars so well, our far-distant ancestors were very much mistaken as to their nature. They regarded them as mere specks of light set in crystal spheres encircling the earth. Now we know that they are huge bodies, some of them much larger than our sun, the diameter of which is about 108 times that of the earth.

We have learnt that the earth is not the centre of the universe, but that it moves round the sun in company with the planets, or wandering stars. These form the solar system, while the fixed stars are probably the suns of similar and independent systems. The apparent daily movement of the stars is due to the fact that our earth turns daily on its axis, as we call the line joining the poles.

These discoveries were due to a great astronomer named Copernicus, who lived about A.D. 1500, and are hence known as the Copernican system.

On this foundation **astronomic** (às tró nom' ik, *adj.*) science has been built up, and so wonderful are modern instruments and **astronomical** (às tró nom' ik àl, *adj.*) methods that it is now possible to tell **astronomically** (às tró nom' ik àl li, *adv.*) the size, distance, weight, movements, and even the materials

of many of the stars visible on a clear night.

The chief instrument of the astronomer is the telescope, and this may be arranged either to follow the movements of a star, as in equatorial telescopes, or it may be fixed so as to observe exactly when a star crosses the meridian line, that is, the line passing through the position of the sun at midday and running due north and south. Such telescopes are known as transit instruments.

The spectroscope is used to discover the composition of stars and also to discover the direction in which they are moving, whether towards the earth or away from it. By the help of this instrument modern astronomy has revealed many startling facts. One of the most surprising is that the whole solar system is moving at about twelve miles per second towards the constellation Lyra, in which is the bright star Vega.

A remarkable variety has also been discovered in the nature of the fixed stars, which look to us so similar. Some which appear single are found to be double, triple, or multiple stars, star clusters and nebulae have been discovered in large numbers, variable stars have been classified into several groups.

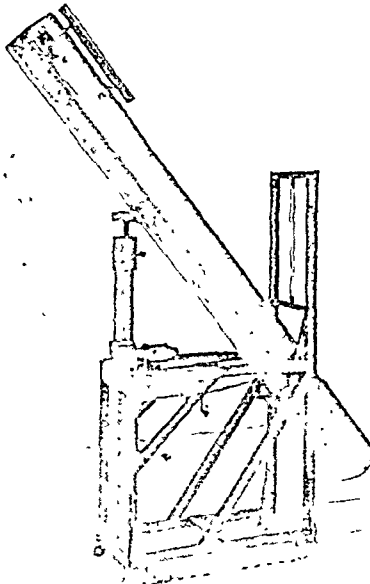
These last are stars whose brightness varies, in some the change takes

place in a few days, in others it occupies two or three years. The alteration in their light is thought to be due to the passing of a dark star between them and us.

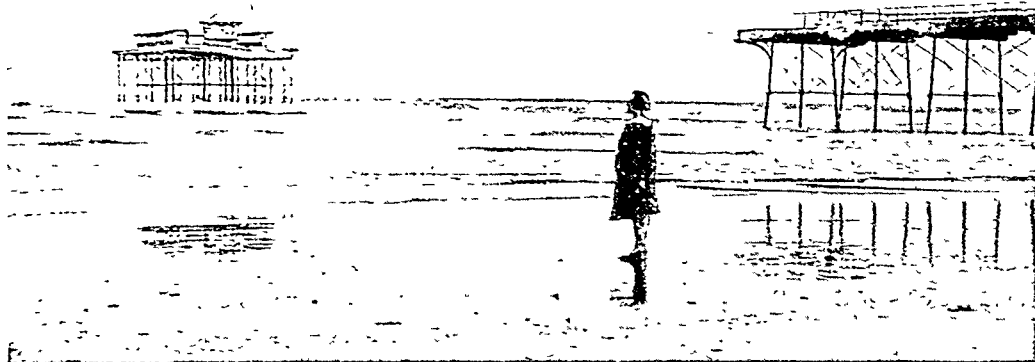
The fixing of time is in the hands of our astronomers. Daily messages are sent out from the astronomical observatory at Greenwich, which is controlled by the astronomer royal (*n.*). These messages are especially useful to sailors, who are able from them to calculate their longitude, or distance east or west of Greenwich.

Before the days of broadcasting this was done by carrying Greenwich time on board ship in the form of chronometers, or very accurate watches. Now the messages can be received by wireless.

L., Gr. *astronomia*, from *astron* star, *nomos* law.



Astronomy.—The seven-foot telescope used by Sir William Herschel (1738-1816) in his astronomical work.



Asunder.—This pier was cut asunder by a schooner crashing into it. Wind and weather widened the breach.

**astrophotometer** (ās trō fō tom' è tēr), *n.* An instrument for measuring the light reaching us from the stars. (F. *astrophotomètre*.)

The images of two stars or of a lamp and a star are brought together by mirrors and compared through a telescope. This comparison is now accomplished more accurately by photographic methods.

Gr. *astro(n)* star, *phōs* (gen. *phōlos*) light, *metron* measure.

**astrut** (ā strūt'), *adv.* Walking in a way that is intended to be impressive. (F. *en se pavanant*.)

When we speak of anyone being astrut we mean that he or she is walking with an air of affected dignity. A cock astrut in a farmyard gives the impression that it imagines itself superior to all the other farmyard creatures.

*A* = on, and *strut*.

**astute** (ā stūt'), *adj.* Shrewd; sagacious; wily. (F. *fin, rusé*.)

An astute man is the kind of man who is able to outwit his opponents by his astuteness (ā stūt' nēs, *n.*). He sees exactly where his advantage lies and never fails to act at the right moment. What is often called the game of politics is one which may be played astutely (ā stūt' li, *adv.*).

L. *astutus*, from *astus* cunning, craft. *SYN.*: Cunning, knowing, wise. *ANT.*: Short-sighted, stupid, unintelligent.

**asunder** (ā sūn' dēr), *adv.* In, into, or towards different places; in or into pieces; apart. (F. *éloigné, en deux*.)

When a solid substance is struck violently, so that it is broken into pieces, it is struck asunder, and the pieces fly asunder. In the Marriage Service of the Church of England, the priest pronounces these words: "Those whom God hath joined together let no man put asunder."

*A* = on = *sundran*, *a* = on and *sunder*.

**asylum** (ā sī' lūm), *n.* A building in which orphans or blind or insane people are cared for; a place of refuge for people who

have broken the law; a sanctuary; a shelter. (F. *asile, refuge*.)

In old times the Jews set apart six cities, three on each side of the river Jordan, as cities of refuge for persons who had killed anyone by accident. It was the duty of the nearest relative of the slain to avenge his death; and so the slayer fled to the nearest city of refuge, for, once within its walls, he would be safe from the avenger and sure of a fair trial. For many centuries temples and churches were used as sanctuaries, to which criminals and hunted people might flee for safety, and in that sense were asylums.

L. *asylum*, Gr. *asylon*, neuter of *asylos* inviolable, *a* = not, *sylon* right of seizure.

**asymmetry** (ā sim' èt ri), *n.* Want of proper proportion between related parts; unevenness. (F. *asymétrie*.)

Much of the beauty of both living and of manufactured objects depends on the proper relation between their parts. The two sides of a human face should appear alike. If one side be swollen by toothache or damaged in a fight the face becomes asymmetrical (ās i met' ri kāl, *adj.*) and loses all claim to beauty. Objects not arranged in a definite pattern are disposed **asymmetrically** (ās i met' ri kāl li, *adv.*)

Gr. *asymmetria*, from *a* = not, *symmetros* of the same proportion (*sym* = *syn* with, *metron* measure).

**asymptote** (ās' im tōt), *n.* A line which always approaches a curve but never meets it. (F. *asymptote*.)

Such lines occur in the study of conic sections in connexion with the curve known as a hyperbola. It is difficult to think of such a line, but it may help if a person ponders on the fact that if he bites off half a stick of chocolate and keeps on biting off one half of the remainder he will, in theory, never finish it. Actually the remaining piece will soon get so small as to be indivisible, but by thinking of the eating as a curve and the finishing as a line it will be seen that they are asymptotic



(*ās im tot' ik, adj.*) or asymptotical (*ās im tot' i kāl, adj.*), that is, that they never truly meet.

Gr. *asymptotos* not falling together, from *a-* not, *sym-* = *syn* together, *ptōios* likely to fall, from *piptōin* to fall.

**asynchronous** (ā sin' krō nūs), *adj.* Not in time with; not in step with. (F. *asynchrone*.)

Electric motors driven by current which is continually changing its direction are planned to run either in step with or out of step with the machine which creates the current. Those of the first class are called synchronous, those of the second class asynchronous. The state of being out of time or step with another connected machine is **asynchronism** (ā sin' krō nizm, *n.*).

Gr. *a-* not, *synkhronos* coincident in time, from *syn* with, *khronos* time, *E.* suffix *-ous*.

**asyndeton** (ā sin' dē tōn), *n.* The omission of conjunctions from a sentence or verse. (F. *asyndeton, asyndète*.)

The result of asyndeton is that the statements appear more vivid or emphatic. Browning employs this figure in his "Pied Piper of Hamelin":—

Grave old plodders, gay young friskers,  
Fathers, mothers, uncles, cousins,  
Cocking tails and pricking whiskers,  
Families by tens and dozens,  
Brothers, sisters, husbands, wives—  
Followed the Piper for their lives.

Gr. *asyndetos* (neuter *-on*), from *a-* not, *syndetos* bound together (*syn* with, *dein* to bind).

**asyntactic** (ās in tāk' tik), *adj.* Not arranged according to the rules of syntax; ungrammatical. (F. *asyntactique*.)

Gr. *a-* not, *syntaktos* pertaining to syntax, from *syn* with, together, *tahtos* arrange, from *tassein* to order, arrange.

**at** (āt), *prep.* In; on; by; about; near. (F. *à, chez, en, dans*.)

Besides many other senses, this little word especially denotes closeness of time, place, or condition, as in the phrases at noon, at home, at rest. At home has other meanings besides in the home. It implies satisfaction or ease, readiness to receive visitors, and is also employed as a name for a formal party.

He is hard at it means he is working hard. Do it at once means do it immediately. People who agree are said to be at one. "They sat at meat" was the old way of saying, "They took a meal."

M.E. *at*, A.-S. *æt*; cp. L. *ad*. There are similar forms in other Teutonic languages.

**atabal** (āt' ā bāl), *n.* A kind of kettle-drum used by the Moors. (F. *atabal, attaballe*.)

Arabic *at* = *al*, definite article, *tabl* drum.

**ataraxia** (āt ā rāk' si ā), *n.* Calm indifference. (F. *ataraxie*.)

This was the attitude of mind counselled by the Greek philosopher Pyrrho of Elis, who died about 275 B.C. He held that, since we cannot know things as they really are, the only course for a wise man is to suspend

his judgment and preserve a philosophic calm. Pyrrho was the founder of the school of thought known as Pyrrhonism. The word is also spelt **ataraxy** (āt' ā rāk si).

Gr. *ataraxia*, from *a-* not, *tarassein* (aorist *etaraxa*) to disturb.

**atavism** (āt' ā vizm), *n.* The inheritance from an ancestor of a quality or peculiarity of body or mind which has skipped some generations. (F. *atavisme*.)

For instance, a man has one eye brown and the other eye blue. His parents, grandparents, and great-grandparents all had both eyes coloured alike. But his great-great-grandfather had a brown eye and a blue eye. The peculiarity is plainly due to atavism, or is atavistic (āt ā vis' tik, *adj.*).

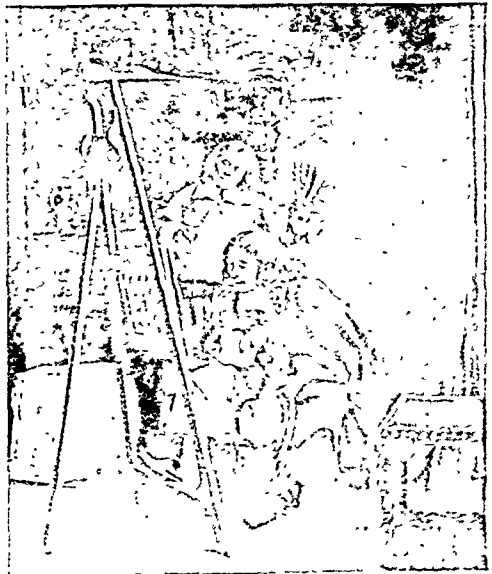
L. *atavus* father of a great-great-grandfather, ancestor, *-ism* suffix of state or condition (L. *ismus*).

**ataxy** (ā taks' i; āt' āks i), *n.* Any irregularity of the functions of the body, especially of muscular movements. (F. *ataxie*.)

Locomotor ataxy is an organic disease of the nervous system. One of the commonest symptoms of the disease is the great difficulty experienced by those who have it of controlling the movements of the legs when walking. They move jerkily. Such symptoms are **ataxic** (ā taks' ik, *adj.*). The word is also spelt **ataxia** (ā taks' i ā).

Gr. *alaxia*, from *a-* not, *taxis* arrangement, regularity, from *tassein* (aorist *etaxa*).

**ate** (et; āt). The past tense of eat. See eat.



Atelier.—The atelier or studio of the Dutch painters Adrian and William van de Velde, as pictured by Meissonier.

**atelier** (at ē lyā'; ā tel' yā), *n.* A workshop or studio. (F. *atelier*.)

This is a French word, which we have borrowed. It is chiefly applied to a painter's

or sculptor's studio. Although not often used in speech, the term may be met with in books.

O.F. *astelier*, from an assumed L. *astularium* a carpenter's workshop, from L. *assula*, *astula* splinter, piece of wood; cp. Ital. *stelletta*, Span. *astilla*, perhaps ultimately from L. *hasta*, Ital. *asta* spear, shaft.

**athalamous** (ă thăl' à mûs), *adj.* Having no spore-shields. (F. *athalame*.)

Certain lichens, such as *Peziza*, produce their spores in a curved hollow called the spore-shield or apothecium. The lichens that produce no such spore-shield are said to be *athalamous*.

Gr. *a-* not, *thalamos* bed; receptacle of a flower.

**Athanasian** (ăth à nă' shi àn), *adj.* Relating to Athanasius, who became Bishop of Alexandria A.D. 320, or to the creed which bears his name; one who believes in or follows the teaching of Athanasius. (F. *athanasien*.)

When Arius stated that Christ was inferior to God, and his heresy was supported by the Roman emperors, Athanasius strenuously opposed him. "Athanasius against the world" became a proverb. "If the Arians had won," said Carlyle, "Christianity would have dwindled away to a legend."

The **Athanasian Creed** is so called because it expresses the doctrine of the Godhead held by Athanasius, and not because it originated in him or was drawn up by him. Not until the ninth century did this statement of belief take the form in which it appears in the prayer book of the Church of England. It sums up three centuries of religious controversy.

**atheism** (ă' thē izm), *n.* A disbelief in the existence of God; the denial of God's existence. (F. *athéisme*.)

Anyone who holds the view that there is no God is an **atheist** (ă' thē ist, *n.*). Teaching that is godless, or conduct that is ungodly, is said to be **atheistic** (ă thē is' tik, *adj.*) or **atheistical** (ă thē is' tik àl, *adj.*), because God has no place in it. To speak or act **atheistically** (ă thē is' tik àl li, *adv.*) is to speak or act in an impious manner, or as if there were no God.

Gr. *a-* not, *theos* god, suffix *-ism* (of abstract ideas).

**Athenaeum** (ăth è nē' ūm), *n.* A building in ancient Greece dedicated to the goddess Athena; an academy of learning in classical times. (F. *Athénée*.)

Athena was the goddess of wisdom, and so her name was appropriately given to her

temple in ancient Athens where poets and learned men met together to read their work aloud and teach students. Among other famous Athenaea (ăth è nē' à, *n.pl.*), was the great school built in Rome by the Emperor Hadrian. Here a staff of professors gave

courses in grammar, speech-making, philosophy, and law. Nowadays some academies in France and high schools in Holland are called **Athenaeums**, the modern form of the plural. The word is now often used as the title of clubs for writers or men of science, and of reading-rooms and libraries.

One of London's most famous clubs is the **Athenaeum**. Founded in 1824, for over a century it has numbered many of Britain's most eminent men among its members.

Gr. *Athenaion* temple of Athena, L. *Athenaeum*.

**atherine** (ăth' ěr in), *n.* A small salt-water fish. (F. *athérine*.)

Popularly known as the sand smelt, this little, silvery fish is about five and a half inches long. Its scientific name is *Atherina presbyter*.

Gr. *atherinē* of unknown origin.

**athirst** (ă thĕrst'), *adj.* Thirsty; longing. (F. *altéré*, *qui a soif*, *altéré de*.)

A girl who is vain is **athirst** for admiration. A rising young politician is **athirst** for fame. A gossiping woman is **athirst** for stories about her neighbours. A dweller in the slums is **athirst** for green fields. Except in poetry, this word is not often used now in the sense of actually wanting something to drink, although we speak of fields or gardens being **athirst** for rain.

E. *a-* (=A.-S. *of*) intensive prefix, and *thirst*. SYN.: Eager, parched.

**athlete** (ăth' lĕt), *n.* One who takes part in physical games or exercises. (F. *athlète*.)

The original meaning of **athlete** was a combatant in the ancient games of Greece. The victors in these athletic (ăth let' ik, *adj.*) contests were rewarded with crowns and statues, and their achievements in athletics (ăth let' iks, *n.*) were written in the public records. **Athleticism** (ăth let' i sizm, *n.*), or the practice of athletics, is engaged in by thousands of men and women nowadays, who are **athletically** (ăth let' ik àl li, *adv.*) inclined.

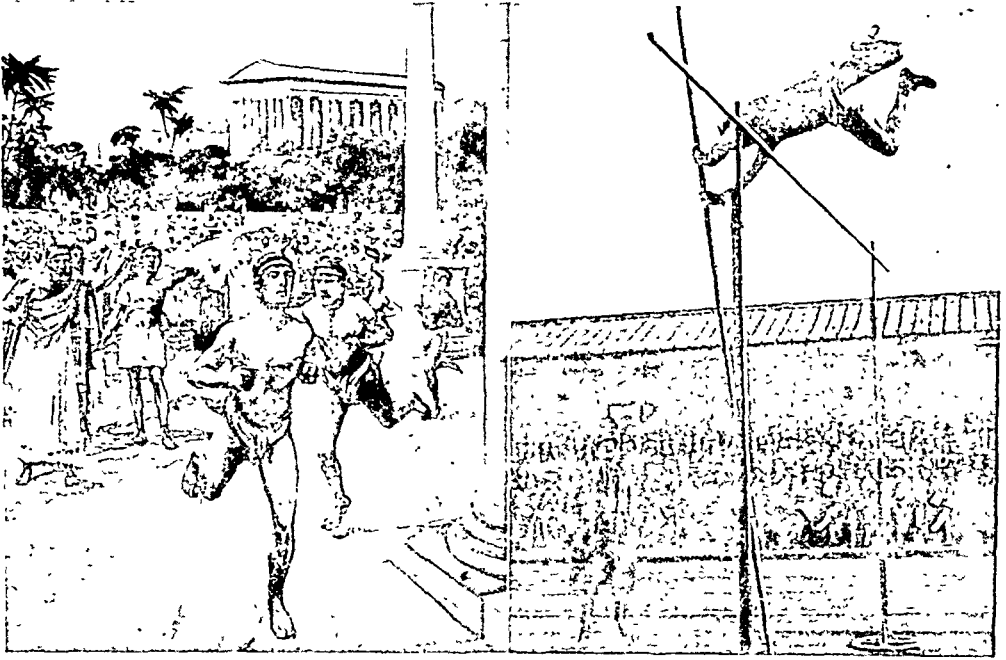
L. *athlĕta*, Gr. *athlĕtēs*, from *athlein* to strive for a prize (*athlon*).



Athenaeum.—Athena, to whom the Greek Athenaeum was dedicated.



Athanasian.—Athanasius, from whose name the word is derived.



Athlete.—This word goes back to the time of ancient Greece, when the Olympic Games were held every fourth year. Here we see the winner of a foot race in those far off days and a modern athlete pole jumping.

**athwart** (ă' thwört'), *adv.* and *prep.* Against; from side to side; across the course (of). (F. *à travers, en travers; de travers.*)

In ordinary language this word usually means in opposition to. In the nautical sense anything athwart is anything which is across the ship or from side to side of it. **Athwart-hawse** (ă thwört' hawz, *adv.*) is an expression used by sailors to denote the position of a ship which is lying across the stem of another ship at anchor. **Athwart-ships** (ă thwört' ships, *adv.*) is a sailor's expression for from side to side of the ship, crosswise of the ship.

E. *a-* =on, and *thwart*.

**a-tilt** (ă tilt'), *adv.* In a slanting or sloping position; as if thrusting with a lance; in vigorous opposition. (F. *en pente; en joutant.*)

If a person leans back in a chair so that the front legs are in the air the chair is a-tilt. The other sense of the word comes from the days of chivalry. Don Quixote ran a-tilt at the windmills, thinking that they were wicked giants. And so when anybody is very actively opposed to certain opinions we say that he runs a-tilt at them.

E. *a-* =on, and *tilt*.

**Atlantean** (ăt lăn tē' ăn), *adj.* Of or resembling the Titan Atlas; of or relating to the fabled island of Atlantis. (F. *d'Atlas, de l'Atlantide.*)

According to Greek legend, Atlas, the rebel Titan, was condemned to bear the heavens on his shoulders. Anything, therefore, of great

strength and able to hold up great weights came to be called Atlantean.

L. *Atlantēus* resembling Atlas (gen. *Atlantos*).

**atlantes** (ăt lăn' tēz), *n. pl.* Columns or brackets in the form of figures or half-figures of men, supporting the tier above them. See under *Atlas*.

**Atlantic** (ăt lăn' tik), *adj.* Relating to the second largest of the oceans, to the giant Atlas of Greek legend, to the Atlas Mountains in north Africa, or to the legendary island of Atlantis. *n.* The second largest of the oceans (F. *Atlantique.*)

The Atlas Mountains skirt the coast of north-west Africa, and so the sea near that coast was named Atlantic. We now use Atlantic to denote a much larger stretch of water—the great ocean that reaches from Europe and Africa on the east right across to America on the west. The states of the United States which are on the Atlantic or eastern side of the American continent are called the Atlantic states.

The Atlas Mountains were named after the Titan Atlas, who was believed to have his home among them. Many people thought that Atlas owned the garden of the Hesperides, and that this garden bloomed on the mysterious island of Atlantis. This country, which was supposed to lie out in the Atlantic, was according to myths related by Plato and others the seat of a mighty empire in very ancient days, but was swallowed up by the sea in a single day and night, owing to the wickedness of the inhabitants.

Gr. *Atlas* (gen. *Atlantos*), -ikos relating to.

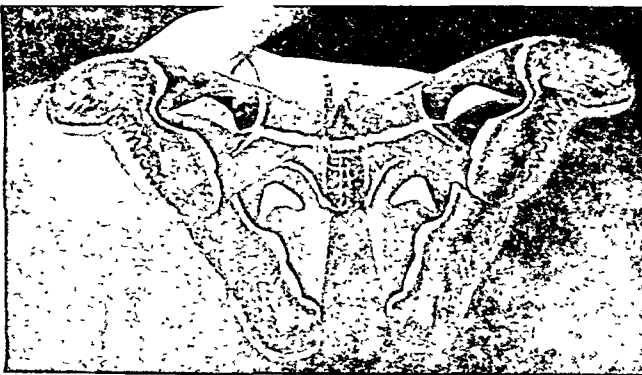
**atlas** (ăt' lăs), *n.* A volume of maps, engravings, or the like; a large size of drawing paper; a bone in the neck that supports the skull; a person or thing that holds up or supports a very heavy load. (F. *atlas*.)

The ancients believed that the Titan Atlas held up the pillars of the universe, and so the word atlas came to be used for various things that act as supports. The atlas bone is a bone that supports the skull, and those figures or half-figures of powerful men with bowed heads sometimes seen on buildings doing the work of columns or brackets are called atlantes (ăt län' tēz, *n.pl.*). Atlas is sometimes a figurative term for a mainstay or chief support.

In early books of maps it was the fashion to have as a frontispiece a figure of Atlas holding up the globe, and that is how the word came to be used for books of maps, engravings, etc. Atlases (ăt' lăs ēs) is the plural of this kind of atlas.

Gr. *Atlas*, from *a-* (superfluous euphonic prefix) and *tlān* to bear, support.

**atlas beetle** (ăt' lăs bē' tl), *n.* An Indian insect. This is a gigantic and very brilliant green beetle, as big as a common wren. Its scientific name is *Chalcosoma atlas*.



Atlas moth.—This, the largest known moth, measures about twelve inches when its wings are spread. It is found in India and the Far East.

**atlas moth** (ăt' lăs moth), *n.* A large Indian silk-producing moth.

This magnificent moth, which is common in India and the Far East, measures about a foot across when its wings are spread out. It is the largest known moth. Its scientific name is *Attacus atlas*.

Perhaps from Arabic *atlas* satin.

**atmology** (ăt mol' ō ji), *n.* The branch of physics which treats of the laws and appearances of aqueous or watery vapour. (F. *atmologie*.)

Gr. *atmos* steam, vapour, *logos*, account.

**atmolyis** (ăt mol' i sis), *n.* A way of separating mixtures of gases. If two different gases or liquids are separated by a porous substance, such as parchment, they will mix with one another. (F. *atmolyse*.)

Gr. *atmos* steam, vapour, *lysis* loosing, separating.

**atmometer** (ăt mom' è tēr), *n.* An instrument for measuring the moisture drawn out in a given time from any moist surface. (F. *atmomètre*.)

Gr. *atmos* steam, vapour, *metron* measure.

**atmosphere** (ăt' mò sfēr), *n.* The layer or shell of gas enclosing the earth and other heavenly bodies; the air in a room, building, or other place as affected by heat or other condition; the circumstances by which one is surrounded. (F. *atmosphère*.)

Besides using this word in its scientific sense we can speak of the stuffy atmosphere of a room. We can also say, for instance, that a man who likes quiet is uncomfortable in an atmosphere of bustle.

The earth's atmosphere, called air, is made up of 78 parts of nitrogen mixed with 21 parts of oxygen and one part of argon, besides some tiny traces of neon, krypton, and other gases. It is thought to be about 200 miles thick. At sea-level it presses upon everything with a force of about 15 pounds to the square inch, but the pressure grows less and less the higher one gets above the sea. At 18,000 feet it is only half that at sea-level. Without the oxygen in the air we could not live, and it is the lack of oxygen that makes climbing lofty

peaks very difficult, for without plenty of oxygen the muscles will not work well. Near the top of Mount Everest, which climbers just failed to reach in 1922, the air was so thin that a rest had to be taken after every two or three steps. When airmen fly to great heights they carry a supply of oxygen with them, to be used as soon as the air becomes too thin for the lungs.

**Atmospheric** (ăt mò sfer' ik, *adj.*) pressure is pressure due to the weight of the atmosphere. **Atmospherical** (ăt mò sfer' ik əl, *adj.*), relating to the atmosphere, is seldom used, but a day may be atmospherically (ăt mò sfer' ik əl li, *adv.*) dull.

**Atmospherics** (ăt mò sfer' iks, *n.pl.*) are natural electric discharges in the air which interfere with the reception of signals and speech sent by wireless. They are also called statics and "X's." In most cases they are caused by thunderstorms, which may be thousands of miles away; but occasionally they are very bad in clear, frosty weather, when the air is highly charged with electricity.

Gr. *atmo(s)* vapour, *sphaira* sphere.

**atmospheric engine** (ăt mò sfēr' ik en' jin), *n.* An engine the piston of which is moved in one direction by the pressure of the atmosphere and in the other by some other force. (F. *machine atmosphérique*.)

The earliest really useful steam-engines, made by Thomas Newcomen early in the eighteenth century, were of this kind. They were used for pumping water from mines.



Atoll.—The coral atoll known as Coconut Island in Hilo Bay, Hawaii. The vegetation is due to seeds carried by the wind and sea or dropped by passing birds.

The piston of an upright cylinder was attached to one end of a long rocking beam and the pump-rod to the other. Steam was let into the cylinder when the piston was in its highest position, and turned into water by cooling it. This left the piston with air on the upper side of it and no air below it. The pressure of the atmosphere drove the piston down and so lifted the pump-rod, bringing water to the surface. When the piston reached the bottom of the cylinder steam was again let in to fill it, while the weight of the falling pump-rod lifted the piston. The same two operations were gone through over and over again as long as the engine was working. Some of these old engines were in use for over a hundred years.

• E. *atmospheric and engine.*

**atmospheric railway** (ăt mō sfer' ik rāl' wā), *n.* A railway worked by the pressure of the atmosphere. (F. *chemin de fer atmosphérique*.)

The most important railway of this kind was part of what is now the Great Western Railway. It ran from Exeter to Newton Abbot in Devonshire, and was opened in 1846. The great engineer, Isambard Kingdom Brunel, who built it, laid between the rails a big pipe, 18 inches across, inside which was a piston, joined to the train by an arm sticking up through a slot in the top of the pipe. A leather flap, attached to the slot, allowed the arm to move without letting air into the pipe. Pumps sucked air from the pipe in front of the piston, which was driven along by the pressure of the atmosphere at the back and drew the train with it. A speed of 70 miles an hour was reached, but the flap soon became leaky, so in 1848 Brunel took the pipe away and used steam locomotives.

E. *atmospheric and railway.*

**atoll** (ăt' ôl; â tol'), *n.* A low ring-shaped coral reef. (F. *atoll, atolle*.)

Atolls are never high above the water, because the little coral animals that build them die if the sea cannot wash over them. Sometimes the ring is perfect; sometimes a piece is missing, and then it looks like a horseshoe. The ring may be quite small, or it may be many miles across. The shallow water inside is the lagoon.

At first there is no life on the new island. Gradually seeds of coconut palms and other plants are brought by the sea, wind and passing birds, and insects and other creatures are washed ashore on tree-trunks, and before very long the atoll is filled with vegetable and animal life.

**atom** (ăt' ôm), *n.* The smallest possible part of any of the substances known to chemists as elements which can combine with any other elements; a very small part or quantity. (F. *atome*.)

The word means "indivisible," from its infinitely small size. Five million atoms would only stretch across an ordinary full stop. The idea of atoms was first put forward by the Greeks in their atomic (â tòm' ik, *adj.*) or atomical (â tòm' ik âl, *adj.*) philosophy; but they recognized only four elements: earth, air, fire, and water.

The *atomic theory* (*n.*), propounded by the chemist, John Dalton, in 1803, is the basis on which the whole science of modern chemistry has been built up. Dalton taught that different kinds of atoms will always group themselves in certain definite ways. For example, water is always made up of atoms of hydrogen and atoms of oxygen combined in the proportion of two of the first to one of the second.

His theory, which may be called the doctrine of fixed proportions, gives a very good explanation of matter as the chemist finds it.

But science has now progressed and has discovered that the atom is made up of still tinier particles, called protons and electrons. The former are believed to consist of positive electricity and the latter of negative. Each atom contains a definite number and arrangement of protons and electrons, so that if any of them is lost the atom becomes one of a different element. This has been shown to be the case with uranium, which gives off its electrons and becomes successively radium, polonium, and lead.

It is believed that hydrogen, the lightest element, has one proton and one electron in its atom, and that the number of electrons increases in successive elements until uranium, the heaviest, has ninety-two electrons. We already know of eighty-seven elements, and it seems likely that the missing five will be discovered to complete the series. The weight of any atom as compared with that of hydrogen is its atomic weight (*n.*). Thus if hydrogen is one, oxygen is sixteen, and uranium two hundred and thirty-eight.

Thus matter may be regarded as composed of bodies of the two kinds of electricity combined into atoms, which behave according to Dalton's theory.

The atomic volume (*n.*) means the space which a quantity of an element occupies in proportion to its atomic weight.

The atomicity (*ät ö mis' i ti, n.*), or valency, to use the more modern word, of an element is decided by the number of atoms of hydrogen that one of its own atoms will combine with. An atom of chlorine combines with one atom of hydrogen, thus the atomicity of chlorine is one.

The word atomism (*ät' ö mizm, n.*) means doctrines of atoms in general, whether of the atomic philosophy or the atomic theory or the electron theory. An atomist (*ät' ö mist, n.*) is either one who studies the atomic theory or one who upholds the doctrines of atomism, and his views are atomistic (*ät ö mis' tik, adj.*).

*L. atomus, Gr. atomos* indivisible, from *a-* not, *temnēin* to cut, divide.

**atomize** (*ät' ö miz*), *v.t.* To reduce a solid substance to fine powder or a liquid to a mist of tiny drops. (*F. réduire en atomes.*)

We use a device called an **atomizer** (*ät' ö miz' er, n.*) for spraying plants and trees to kill insect pests, or for discharging scent or disinfectants into the air or on to clothes and other things. The atomization (*ät öm i zä' shün, n.*) of the liquid is performed either by a blast of

air or by forcing the liquid through a tiny hole in very thin metal.

*E. atom, and -ize*, suffix from *Gr.* denoting to make like, reduce to condition of.



Atomizer.—A large atomizer used for spraying trees to kill insect pests.

**atone** (*ä tön*), *v.i.* To make reconciliation or satisfaction; to make amends. *v.t.* To make expiation for; to make amends for; to bring into harmony. (*F. expier; racheter.*)

According to the Christian religion Jesus Christ came to the earth and was crucified in order to atone for the sins of humanity, that is, to effect a reconciliation, or restore union with God. This was an act of atonement (*ä tön' mēnt, n.*) for our sins. Anything for which it is possible to offer atonement is said to be atonable (*ä tön' äbl. adj.*), and the act itself is described as being atoning (*ä ton' ing, adj.*) or performed atoningly (*ä tön' ing li, adv.*), that is, in a spirit of atonement.

*E. at* and *one*, to make at one, reconcile.

**atonic** (*ä ton' ik*), *adj.* Without tone; without accent. *n.* A remedy for allaying excitement; an unaccented word or syllable. (*F. atonique; affaibli.*)

When the body is in good health its muscles are braced up by the nerves to just the right extent. When they become flabby one suffers from atony (*ät' ö ni, n.*). When they are braced too tightly, or overstrung, a medicine called an atonic reduces the tension.

In grammar all unaccented words are atonic. These are usually the less important words in a sentence or verse, as in Ariel's song in Shakespeare's "Tempest" (*v. 1*):—

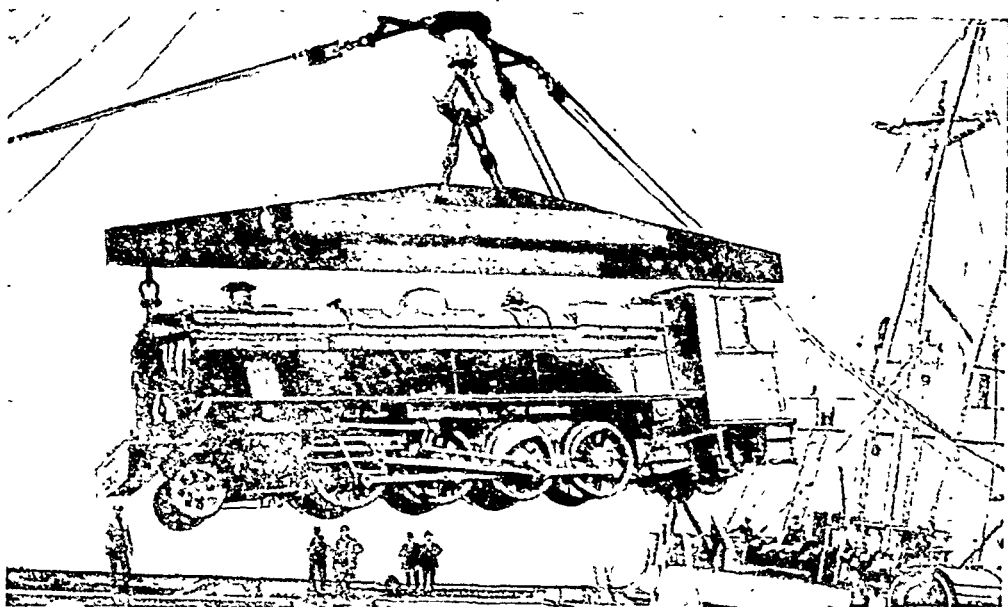
Merrily, merrily shall I live now

Under the blossom that hangs on the bough.

*Gr. atonos*, from *a-* not, *tonos* tone, accent.

**atop** (*ä top'*), *adv.* and *prep.* On or at the top. (*F. en haut, au sommet.*)

*E. a-* = on, and *top*.



Attach.—A locomotive is not easy to get on board ship, but here is one attached to a crane and about to be lowered into the hold of a steamer bound for India.

**a-trip** (ă trip'), *adv.* Just started from the bottom of the sea, of an anchor; hoisted as high as possible, of spars or yard-arms. (F. *dérapé*.)

"Anchor's a-trip" is an important signal for the sailing ship. It means that the ship is again under way, or ready to follow the guidance of her rudder, and that the pilot must see that she sets off on the right course.

E. *a-* = *on*, and *trip*.

**atrium** (ă' tri ūm), *n.* The chief room of an ancient Roman house; the part of the heart into which blood flows from the veins. (F. *atrium*.)

The atrium of the Romans had a hole in the roof and a cistern in the floor below to catch the rain.

The word is probably derived from L. *ater* black (from smoke), the *atrium* having originally been the kitchen; others connect it with Gr. *athrios* (neuter -*on*) a space open to the air.

**atrocious** (ă trō' shūs), *adj.* Wickedly cruel; very bad in character or quality. (F. *atroce*.)

The killing in cold blood of hundreds of thousands of defenceless men, women, and children is an atrocious crime. Armies that act in this way behave atrociously (ă trō' shūs li, *adv.*) and commit an atrocity (ă tros' i ti, *n.*). We can also speak of an atrocious pun, and can blame the maker for its atrociousness (ă trō' shūs nes, *n.*).

L. *atrox* (acc. *atrocem*) cruel, suffix -*ous* denoting excess of a quality. SYN.: Dastardly, diabolical, savage, shocking. ANT.: Chivalrous, gentle, humane, kindly.

**atrophy** (ăt' rô fi), *n.* A wasting away or withering of the body or part of the body or of the mind. *v.i.* To cause to waste.

*v.i.* To waste away. (F. *atrophie*; *atrophier*, *s'atrophier*.)

One of the forms of penance which Hindu religious beggars, called fakirs, sometimes undergo is to keep an arm held out until at last it becomes atrophied or withered by long disuse.

Gr. L. *atrophia* wasting away, from *atrophos* ill-fed, from *a-* not, *trophē* nourishment.

**atropine** (ăt' rô pin, *n.*) An alkaloid or vegetable substance, obtained from the leaves and roots of the belladonna, or deadly nightshade. **Atropin** (ăt' rô pin) is another spelling. (F. *atropine*.)

The scientific name of the plant is *Atropa belladonna*. Atropine is a drug used by oculists to dilate the pupil of the eye for the purpose of examination.

**Atropism** (ăt' rô pizm, *n.*) means poisoning by atropine. In Greek mythology Atropos, the eldest of the three Fates, was supposed to cut the thread of life.

Gr. *atropos* inflexible, from *a-* not, *trepein* to turn, chemical suffix -*ine*.

**attach** (ă tăch'), *v.t.* To fasten; to connect; to unite by affection; to seize; to attribute. *v.i.* To belong; to be appropriate. (F. *attacher*, *saisir*; *s'attacher a.*)

An engine driver attaches his locomotive to the train it has to pull. Importance attaches to what a great man says. Kindness attaches people to each other. A sheriff attaches or seizes the goods of a person to pay a debt. Anything that can be fastened or seized is attachable (ă tăch' abl, *adj.*). A person may be attached for contempt of court. An act of attaching one thing to another, or a thing attached, is an attachment (ă tăch' ment, *n.*). Affection or devotion is

also attachment, and the same word is used of a part by which a thing can be fastened to something else.

F. *attacher*, from *a*=L. *ad* to and *tache*, nail (E. *tack*) of Teut. origin. SYN.: Arrest, couple, fix, join, tie. ANT.: Detach, estrange, release, unfasten, untie.

**attache** (à tash' ā), *n.* One attached to another person or body as part of a suite or staff. (F. *attaché*.)

A military and a naval attaché form part of the suite of an important embassy, to keep in touch with matters relating to the army and navy of the country in which the embassy is situated. In time of war the military attachés of friendly nations are usually allowed to join the head-quarters staff of an army in the field.

An attaché-case (*n.*) is a small hand-bag used for carrying papers, etc.

French p.p. of *attacher*.

**attack** (à tak'), *v.i.* To assault. *v.i.* To make an onset or assault. *n.* The act of making an attack; the state of being attacked; a term in various sports having a meaning opposite to defence. (F. *attaquer*; *attaque*.)



Attack.—An Alsatian dog trained to attack a suspected criminal by seizing his right arm, because it is in the right hand that a weapon is usually held.

An army attacks the enemy, and a spirited fighter attacks vigorously. One may have an attack of illness. Anyone who commits an assault is an attacker (à tak' ēr, *n.*), and anyone or anything open to assault is attackable (à tak' ābl, *adj.*).

When the players of a football eleven, or fifteen, advance down the field they carry out an attack on the opponents' goal. The forwards of an Association football team are known as the attack, and the term is often applied to the bowlers of a cricket team.

A late borrowing from F. *attaquer*, from Ital. *attaccare* (battaglia) to join (battle); akin to attach. SYN.: Assault, censure, invade, storm. ANT.: Aid, defend, resist, uphold.

**attain** (à tăn'), *v.i.* and *t.* To reach; to grasp, to arrive at. (F. *atteindre*, *parvenir* à.)

Only if we have worked hard and earnestly for a high position can we be said to have attained it. Attainment (à tăn' mēt, *n.*) is

always the result of endeavour, and only by persistent striving are such positions attainable (à tăn' ābl, *adj.*). When we say that a man has great attainments (*n.pl.*) we mean that he has mastered various branches of knowledge. Sometimes old people are apt to damp the ardour of the young by throwing doubt on the attainableness (à tăn' ābl nēs, *n.*) or attainability (à tăn ā bil' i ti, *n.*) of their ambitions.

M.E. *atteigne*, O.F. *ateindre*, (pres. p. *ateignis*), from L. *attingere*, from *at*=*ad* to, *tangere* to touch. SYN.: Accomplish, achieve, gain. ANT.: Abandon, fail, lose, miss.

**attainder** (à tăn' dēr), *n.* The legal consequence of a sentence of death or outlawry for treason or felony; an accusation that brings dishonour upon a person. (F. *attainder*, *atteinte*.)

The estates of a person against whom an attainder was issued were forfeited, and he could neither inherit property nor transmit it. The legal process of attainder arose during the reign of Edward II, when the king's favourites the Despencers suffered under it. It was largely used during the Wars of the Roses, being a handy method of acquiring land and of getting rid of political opponents.

In 1459 the same results began to be obtained by Bills of Attainder, which were Acts of Parliament. These did away with the necessity for a judicial trial. Thomas Cromwell suffered by bill of attainder in 1540, Strafford in 1641, and Sir John Fenwick in 1697 for participation in the Assassination Plot.

From the idea of the corruption of blood, as it was called, that is, the inability to inherit or transmit lands, the word came to be used in the sense of a dishonouring accusation, and so a taint.

To attain (à tânt' *v.t.*) a person was to subject him to attainder, and in a general sense, from the idea of corruption of blood, to infect, taint, or stain. An attain (*n.*) meant the conviction of a jury for returning a false verdict, and also the process by which such a false verdict was reversed. The last bill of attainder was passed against Lord Edward Fitzgerald, the Irish conspirator, in 1798, and in 1870 attainder was abolished.

O.F. *atandre*, *ateindre* to touch, strike, convict, here used as a noun. In the *v.* *attaint*, the meaning "to sully a person's reputation" is due to a confusion with O.F. *taint*, *leint* tainted, from L. *tinctus*, p.p. of *linguere* to dye, stain.

**attar** (ât' ār), *n.* A fragrant oil obtained from flowers, especially roses. Another form is otto (ot' ô). (F. *essence de roses*.)

In the East Indies and other parts of Asia attar is a general name for perfume from flowers. In Europe it usually means



the perfume from oil of roses, of which not more than one ounce is obtained from 150 pounds of petals.

Arab. *'itr* perfume, from *'atara* to perfume.

**attempter** (à tem' pèr), *v.t.* To modify by or as if by mixing with something else; to regulate; to fit. (F. *tempérer*.)

We attempt wine by adding water to make it weaker. When we attempt the atmosphere of a room we make it either less cold or less hot, whichever condition we wish to modify. We attempt our voice to our moods. The act of attempting is *attemptment* (à tem' pèr mèn't, *n.*) or *attemperament* (à tem' pèr à mèn't, *n.*). The word attempter is seldom used now, temper being more usual.

O.F. *atemprier*, from L. *attemperare* to adjust, from *at-* = *ad* to, *temperare* to qualify, modify. SYN.: Temper, qualify, soften.

**attempt** (à tem't'), *v.t.* To try. *n.* An effort. (F. *tester, essayer; tentative, essai*.)

It is an act of great courage for a small detachment of determined men under a beloved leader to attempt to storm a powerful fortress. To the brave and the young few things are not attemptable (à tem't' àbl, *adj.*). The question of their attemptability (à tem't' à bil' i ti, *n.*) does not trouble them, for they are determined to succeed or perish in the attempt.

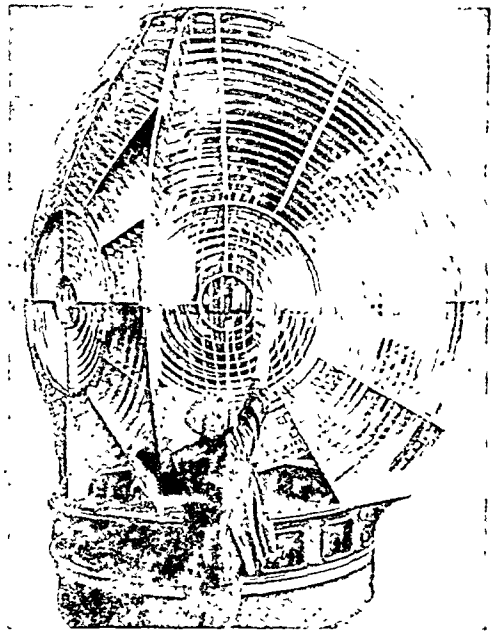
O.F. *atempter*, from L. *attentare*, from *at-* = *ad* to, *tentare* to feel, try. SYN.: Endeavour, essay, strive, undertake. ANT.: Abandon, dismiss, drop, shun.

**attend** (à tend'), *v.t.* To accompany; to wait upon; to escort; to go to. *v.i.* To be present; to give heed. (F. *accompagner, servir; assister, faire attention à*.)

An escort attends royalty. A doctor attends his patients. A boy attends school and has to attend to what his teacher says. The attendance (à ten' dāns, *n.*) of witnesses is needed at a trial. A good hotel gives good attendance or service. Ladies-in-waiting take turns in being in attendance on the Queen. To dance attendance means to be always at a person's beck and call. An attendance-officer (*n.*) sees that children attend school who ought to do so. An attendant (à ten' dānt, *n.*) goes with another person to help or look after him, and while doing so is attendant (*adj.*) on him.

Attention (à ten' shūn, *n.*) means the act of giving heed, alertness, or an act of politeness or kindness. A well-trained dog pays attention to his master's orders. A good sentry is all attention. Sick people need close attention. A soldier should spring smartly to attention at the order. A polite person is attentive (à ten' tiv, *adj.*) to those about him. To listen attentively (à ten' tiv li, *adv.*) needs attentiveness (à ten' tiv nēs, *n.*) on the part of the listener.

O.F. *atendre*, from L. *attendere* to pay attention to, stretch towards something, from *at-* = *ad* to, towards, *tendere* to stretch. SYN.: Listen, mind, notice, regard. ANT.: Disregard, neglect slight, scorn.



Attention.—A lighthouse-keeper giving attention to the lenses of the great lamp that guides and guards those at sea.

**attenuate** (à ten' ū āt, *v.*; à ten' ū āt, *adj.*), *v.t.* and *i.* To make or become thin or weak. *adj.* Thin; refined. (F. *atténuer; atténué*.)

A goldsmith attenuates gold by heating it; it then becomes attenuate. Starvation attenuates the human body. A film of soap is so much attenuated by being blown into a bubble that in places it may be not more than a three-millionth part of an inch thick. At great heights the attenuation (à ten ū ā' shūn, *n.*) of the air causes difficulty in breathing.

L. *attenuare* (p.p. *attenuatus*), from *at-* = *ad* to, *tenuare* to make thin or fine (*tenuus*). SYN.: Diminish, make slender, reduce, rarefy, thin. ANT.: Dilate, enlarge, increase, swell.

**attest** (à test'), *v.t.* To confirm; to certify; to bear witness to. *v.i.* To bear witness. (F. *attester; témoigner*.)

A will has to be attested by two witnesses, who sign their names to it in the presence of each other and of the person whose will it is. If a person is attested he is put upon his oath.

The act of attesting or the proof or evidence of it is attestation (āt tes tā' shūn, *n.*). An attester (à tes' tēr, *n.*) or attestor (à tes' tōr, *n.*) is one who vouches for the truth of anything.

L. *attestari*, from *at-* = *ad* to, *testari* to be a witness (*testis*). SYN.: Adjure, certify, corroborate, endorse, prove, support. ANT.: Contradict, controvert, deny, dispute, refute.

**Attic** [ī] (āt' ik), *adj.* Of or relating to Attica or its capital, Athens; characteristic of Athenian culture; classic; refined, witty; delicate. *n.* The dialect of ancient Athens. (F. *attique*.)

The high artistic excellence of ancient Athens in her prime has left its mark on many terms used in art. In architecture a base consisting of an upper and lower torus, or rounded, projecting moulding, separated by a scotia, or hollow moulding, and fillets, or flat narrow bands, was called an attic base. The Attic bird was a poetic term for the nightingale. The Attic dialect was the Greek spoken in ancient Athens and was regarded as the highest standard of literary Greek. Attic faith was faith that never failed. An Attic order is an architectural term for a square column or row of columns with their entablature in classical architecture. Salt was often used both in Latin and Greek with the fanciful meaning of witty seasoning, sparkling turns of thought, and as Athens was the most cultured centre in the ancient world, refined, delicate wit became known as Attic salt.

Atticism (ăt' i sizm, *n.*) means not only taking the side of Athens, but also phrasing and style such as was used in Attic Greek, and hence a well-turned phrase. To Atticize (ăt' i siz, *v.t.*) was to side with the Athenians and also to conform to the ways of thought that prevailed in Attica or Athens.

L. *Atticus*, Gr. *Attikos*.

attic [2] (ăt' ik), *n.* A room in the top story of a house; the top story of a building; masonry above the main cornice of a building. (F. *attique*, *mansarde*.)

What the ancients called an attic was a low wall placed on top of the main building for decorative purposes. It was usually an Attic order, and that is how we get our word. With the Renaissance architecture the attic

wall became a regular attic story with windows in it. The term is generally used now when a house consists of more than two stories. An attic properly has straight walls, a garret sloping walls.

attire (â tîr'), *v.t.* To dress. *n.* Clothes; a stag's horns. (F. *habiller*; *habits*, *habillement*, *ramure*.)

This word is gradually going out of general use. Hunting men call the antlers of a stag its attire. In heraldry too a stag's antlers are attire or attiring, and a coat-of-arms ornamented with them is said to be attired.

M.E. *atiren*, *v.t.*, *atir*, *n.*, O.F. *atir*(i)*er*, to put in rows, arrange, from a *to*, *ti(e)re* row (E. *tier*).

attitude (ăt' i tūd), *n.* Position; pose; way of thinking; conduct governed by this. (F. *attitude*; *pose*.)

The attitude of a figure in a painting or a piece of sculpture means the position in which the artist or sculptor has painted it. Our attitude of mind is the way in which we think and feel about things, and on this we model our attitude towards life generally. To strike an attitude is to adopt a self-conscious pose, and to attitudinize (ăt i tūd' in iz, *v.i.*) is to behave habitually in this way.

Ital. *attitudine*, L.L. *aptitudo* fitness, from *aptus* connected, p.p. of old L. *apere* to bind.

attorney (â tēr' ni), *n.* An agent. (F. *avoué*.)

This word is now used chiefly for an agent appointed under a written authority, called a power of attorney, to act during his principal's absence. A man who is going abroad, for instance, usually gives a friend power of attorney to look after his affairs while he is



Attitude.—In the Middle Ages a candidate for knighthood spent the hours of darkness immediately before the ceremony in silent prayer. This attitude of devotion is beautifully pictured in "The Vigil," by John Pettie, R.A.

away. This kind of attorney is a private attorney or an attorney in fact.

There is no such thing as an attorney at law or a public attorney now. Before the Judicature Act of 1873 qualified practitioners in the common law courts were called attorneys, while those who practised in a court of equity were known as solicitors. Nowadays they are all called solicitors.

The Attorney-General (*n.*) is a ministerial officer of the Crown and was formerly called the King's Attorney. He is appointed by letters patent and is the leader of the Bar. He conducts state prosecutions, advises heads of ministerial departments on legal affairs, and is, in fact, the Sovereign's legal adviser. The attorney-generalship (*n.*) is the office or dignity of the Attorney-General. Attorneyship (*ă tēr' ni ship, n.*) is the office or position of an attorney, or an agency. To *attorn* (*ă tēr'n, v.t. and i.*) in feudal law was to transfer homage and allegiance to a new lord. In modern law to *attorn* tenant means to acknowledge oneself the tenant of another. Such an act is *attornment* (*ă tēr'n mēt, n.*).

O.F. *atorné* (p.p. of *atorner*) appointed to act for another, from L. *a-* = *ad* to, *torrare* to turn over to another. See *turn*.

**attract** (*ă trăkt'*, *v.t.*) To draw to oneself or itself; to allure; to fix the attention of (anyone or anything). *v.i.* To be alluring. (F. *attirer*.)

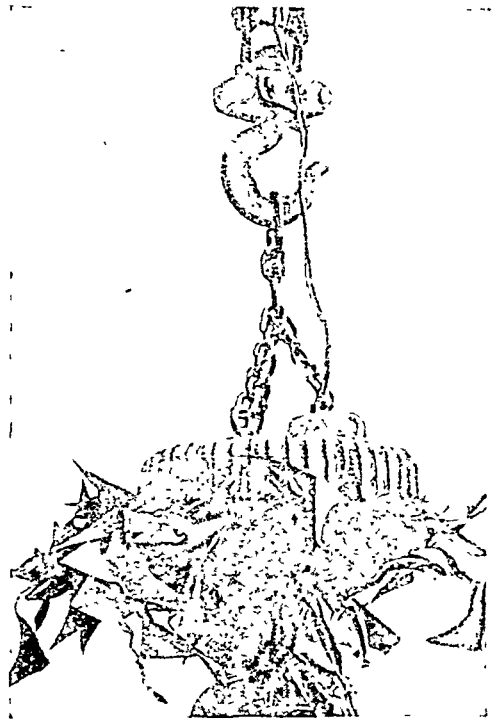
A person who is prepossessing in looks or manner is said to be attractive (*ă trăkt' iv, adj.*). He or she has the quality of attractiveness (*ă trăkt' iv nes, n.*), and may play or sing attractively (*ă trăkt' iv li, adv.*). An attractor (*ă trăk' tēr, n.*) is a thing which attracts; hills are attractors of rain.

Attraction (*ă trăk' shūn, n.*) is the action or power of attracting, physically or mentally. Thus a magnet has an attraction for a piece of iron; in other words, iron is *attractable* (*ă trăkt' ābl, adj.*) or possesses *attractability* (*ă trăkt a bil' i ti, n.*) to a magnet. Such attraction is generally known as magnetic attraction.

The mutual action between two bodies, such as the earth and the sun, is called the attraction of gravity. The story goes that Sir Isaac Newton was sitting in his garden one day when an apple fell from a tree on to his head. He began to wonder why an apple should fall towards the earth, why anything, in fact, should fall to the ground if it were not supported; and from thinking about the falling apple he discovered the attraction of gravity.

The tiny particles of all bodies are kept together by the attraction of cohesion, and the molecules of a body by molecular attraction. Liquid is drawn up a narrow tube by capillary attraction. It is capillary attraction that makes the sap rise in trees, thus drawing nourishment from the ground.

L. *attrahere* (p.p. *attractus*), from *at-* = *ad* to, *trahere* to draw. SYN.: Allure, charm, fascinate, lure. ANT.: Alienate, estrange, repel.



Attraction.—An electric magnet that picks up waste metal at an engineering works by magnetic attraction.

**attribute** (*ăt' tri bût, n.*; *ă trib' üt, v.*), *n.* A quality or character considered as belonging to, or inherent in, a person or thing; a symbol or token recognized as being characteristic of the person or thing it represents; a word or phrase describing a quality and so serving as an adjective; in logic, the opposite of a substance, which can exist alone, while the attribute or quality, etc., can only be associated with a substance and is dependent upon it; an essential or permanent quality or state of anything. *v.t.* To consider as belonging to, or appropriate to, or as a cause or consequence of. (F. *attribut, qualité; attribuer*.)

A lyre is the symbol or attribute of Apollo. A good knife is sharp, and so sharpness is the attribute of a good knife. Whiteness is the attribute of snow, and holiness of saints. By saying that these things possess certain qualities, we attribute sharpness to good knives, whiteness to snow, etc. If we consider that a certain line of poetry was written by Shakespeare, we attribute that line to Shakespeare. If we are led to believe that some person has stolen our umbrella, we attribute the theft to him, even though he may really be innocent. Some people attribute the World War (1914-18) to Prussian militarism. They would say that the war was attributable (*ă trib' üt ābl, adj.*) to militarism, meaning that it was caused by militarism.

The act of ascribing an effect to a cause, or of associating a quality with a person or thing, is called **attribution** (ăt tri bū' shûn, *n.*). Most people would agree with the attribution of intelligence to children. We also speak of the attribution of an unsigned picture to some particular painter, or the attribution of some ruin to a particular date in history. In other words, the painting is ascribed to its supposed creator and the ruin to its assumed date. The authority or function granted to a ruler, an official, a court, etc., is an attribution.

A painting ascribed to Titian is sometimes called an **attributive** (ă trib' ū tiv, *adj.*) Titian, and this word conveys, in general, the idea of expressing or assigning an attribute. In grammar it is specially applied to adjectives (and their equivalents) describing the quality of an object, when used as in the following example: "A *gold* watch." "Gold," here, is an **attributive** (*n.*), that is, a word denoting an attribute, and it is used attributively (ă trib' ū tiv li, *adv.*), or in an attributive manner.

*L. attribuere* (p.p. *attributus*), from *at-* = *ad* to, *tribuere* to assign. *SYN.*: *n.* Characteristic, property, quality. *v.* Ascribe, assign, impute.

**attrite** (ă trit'), *adj.* Rubbed or worn down by friction; penitent through fear of consequences. (*F. froissé, attrit.*)

A stone which has been worn smooth by water is said to be **attrite** or **attrited** (ă tri' téd, *adj.*) or to possess **attriteness** (ă trit' nés, *n.*). These words, however, have more or less gone out of use.

A person is in a state of **attrition** (ă trish' ūn, *n.*) who is sorry for a sin on account of the punishment due to it. Attrition falls short of contrition, which is sincere sorrow for sin arising from the love of God and hatred of sin for His sake. A war which comes to an end through both armies gradually becoming too exhausted to fight any more is said to be a war of attrition.

*L. atterere* (p.p. *attritus*), from *at-* = *ad* to, against, *terere* to rub.

**attune** (ă tūn'), *v.t.* To bring (a musical instrument) to the right pitch; to tune to; to bring into harmony. (*F. accorder.*)

One person's mind is said to be **attuned** to another's when they agree on most subjects, and a violin is **attuned** to a piano when it is brought to the same pitch as the piano.

*L. at-* = *ad* to, and *E. tune*.

**aubade** (ô bad'), *n.* Music performed or like that performed at dawn. (*F. aubade.*)

This was the dawn-song of the troubadours of Provence and later the day-song of the German minnesingers. In France to-day it is the custom for a band to play early in the morning in honour of a distinguished personage. The word is also used for a piece of instrumental music suggestive of day-break.

*F. aube* dawn, from *albus* white.

**aubergine** (ô bār zhēn'), *n.* The egg-plant; the fruit of the plant. (*F. aubergine.*)

The Aubergine (*Solanum esculentum*) owes its popular name to its fruit, which resembles a goose's egg in shape and size. This is used both as a vegetable and in soups and stews. The plant belongs to the same family as the potato and tomato.



Aubergine.—The flower and fruit of the aubergine.

The word is a dim. of *aubeige*, another form of *alberge* a kind of peach, probably ultimately from Arab. *al-beigūq* apricot.

**auburn** (aw' bērn), *adj.* Reddish brown. (*F. châtain clair.*)

We use this word chiefly to describe the colour of a person's hair. Formerly **auburn** meant light yellow, but perhaps from confusion with the word **brown** it came to be used to denote a much darker tint.

*O.F. alborne, auborne*, from *L.L. alburnus* whitish.

**auction** (awk' shûn), *n.* A public sale at which intending buyers bid against each other, and the one who bids the highest price gets the article put up for sale. *v.t.* To sell in this way. (*F. enchère, encan; vendre à l'enchère, à l'encan.*)

A bid may be made in words, by a nod, or even by a look. The Roman emperor Nero would sometimes enter the Senate on a hot day and offer some of his property for sale by auction. If he saw a senator nodding with sleepiness he would take his nods as bids, and the poor man might wake up to find some quite unwanted thing had been knocked down to him at a terribly high price.



Auction.—A scene at an auction, where articles are sold to the persons who offer the highest price for them.

At what is called a Dutch auction a start is made with a higher price than anyone is likely to give, and the price is lowered step by step. The first to bid gets the thing offered.

The person who does the selling at an auction is the **auctioneer** (awk' shûn ēr, *n.*), who must have a licence for the work. When he thinks that the bidding will go no higher,

he says: "Going! Going! Gone!" and at the last word strikes his desk with his little wooden hammer. This ends the bidding, and the person to whom the article is "knocked down" by the hammer has to pay for it. Selling of goods by auction may take place anywhere, but in many towns there is an auction-mart (*n.*) set aside specially for this manner of selling.

*L. auctio* (auctionis) from *augere* (p.p. *auctus*) to increase.

**auction-bridge** (awk' shùn brīj), *n.* A card game.

This game is a development of bridge, itself a variation of whist. It gets its name from the fact that the two sets of partners bid against each other. The dealer, who always bids first, may, for example, bid "one spade," which means that, with the help of his partner's hand of cards, he contracts to make seven of the thirteen tricks, spades being the trump suit. The player to his left, one of his opponents, may overbid by calling, say, two hearts, and then he and his partner must make eight tricks, hearts being trumps.

All the players are entitled to bid. If a player does not feel justified in making a bid he says "No bid." If the final "declarer," or bidder, who plays his partner's hand, fulfils his contract, he and his partner score certain points; but if he fails then his opponents score certain points, according to the number of tricks he is short of his contract.

**audacious** (aw dā' shūs), *adj.* Daring; impudent; shameless. (*F. audace.*)

This word is used in both a good and a bad sense. A private soldier may save his regiment by his audacity (aw dās' i ti, *n.*), and his commanding officer may have the audacity to take all the credit for himself. A girl who has no reverence for her elders will shock them with her audacities. An experienced mountain-climber avoids a precipice by a mighty leap, but his audaciousness (aw dā' shūs nēs, *n.*) is not a thing to be copied by a beginner, who should proceed cautiously, not audaciously (aw dā' shūs li, *adv.*).

*L. audax* (gen. *audacis*), as if from a *L. audacis* full of audacity. *SYN.*: Adventurous, bold, enterprising, forward. *ANT.*: Calculating, cautious, cowardly, timid.

**audible** (aw' dibl), *adj.* Able to be heard. (*F. audible, qui peut être entendu.*)

By the aid of a microphone the steps of a fly can be made audible. To speak audibly (aw' di bli, *adv.*) is to speak loud enough for people to hear. The audibility (aw di bil' i ti,

*n.*) of a sound depends on the distance which it has had to travel. The voice of a good speaker, helped by the clear pronunciation of his words, has the quality of audibleness (aw' dibl nēs, *n.*).

*L.L. audibilis*, from *audire* to hear, suffix *-ibilis* capable of being.

**audience** (aw' dyēns), *n.* The act of hearing; an assemblage of listeners; a formal reception; the people to whom a certain book appeals. (*F. audition, ouïe, auditoire, audience.*)



Audience.—King Tut-ankh-Amen, whose tomb was found in Egypt in 1923, giving an audience 3,200 years ago.

The everyday use of this word is in the sense of an assembly of people gathered together to hear something, for example, a concert. Again, when an author has written a book he has said in that book certain things which his readers follow, not with their ears, but with their eyes. He does not see them, nor do they see him, and so the readers of a book are sometimes described as the author's audience.

When the king grants an interview, the person to whom he grants this interview is said to have had an audience of the king. The room in which such an interview takes place would be an audience-chamber (*n.*). The audience-court (*n.*) was an English court

presided over by an archbishop or his representatives. These courts have long been abolished.

A person who listens to anything is **audient** (aw' dyènt, *adj.*). An **audient** (*n.*) is a hearer. In the early Christian Church the audients were those catechumens (persons qualifying for baptism) who were only in the early stages of instruction.

**L. audientia**, noun formed from *audiens* (acc. *audientem*), pres. p. of *audire* to hear.

**audiometer** (aw di om' è tēr, *n.*). A device in which a telephone is used to test how good a person's hearing is. (F. *audiomètre*.)

Hybrid formation from *L. audire* to hear, Gr. *metron* measure.

**audion** (awd' i òn, *n.*). The name given by Dr. Lee de Forest to the three-electrode wireless valve which he invented.

The audion was the first of the wireless valves which made broadcasting possible and enabled speech and music to be heard by wireless by the ordinary listener-in.

**L. audire** to hear.

**audiophone** (aw' di fōn, *n.*). A device for helping deaf persons to hear. (F. *audiophone*.)

It is a sheet of thin ebonite, fixed in a handle. An edge of the sheet is pressed against the front upper teeth, and sounds striking the sheet travel through the teeth and other bones of the head to the inner ear.

Hybrid formation from *L. audire* to hear, Gr. *phōnē* voice.

**audit** (aw' dit, *n.*). A final account; an official inspection of accounts. *v.t.* To examine (accounts) and testify to their accuracy. (F. *audition*; *apurer*.)

The original meaning of audit was an inquiry into complaints by a judge or judges. The payment of accounts or rent by a tenant to his landlord is an audit, but the word

especially means the official examination of the accounts of a public body, public or private company, or other similar undertaking. Public accounts are checked by commissioners of audit, but the accounts of public companies are examined auditorially (aw di tōr' i àl li, *adv.*) by an auditor (aw' di tōr, *n.*) or auditors appointed by the shareholders. If in his auditorial (aw di tōr' i àl, *adj.*) capacity he has given satisfaction the auditor is re-elected to the auditorship (aw' di tōr ship, *n.*) at the annual general meeting of the company. The house or room adjoining a cathedral in which business is carried on is called an audit-house (*n.*) or audit-room (*n.*), and the office in which public accounts are audited is called an audit-office (*n.*). **Auditale** (*n.*) is a special quality of ale at colleges in certain English universities originally brewed for audit day.

**L. auditus** hearing, noun formed from *audire* (p p. *auditus*) to hear.

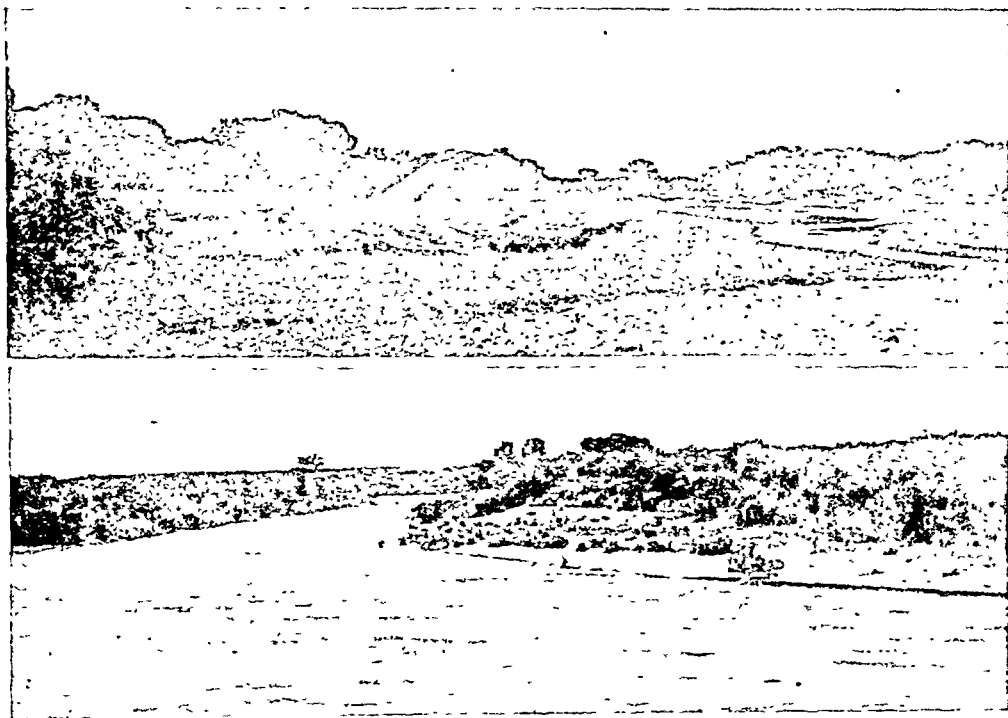
**audition** (aw dish' ùn, *n.*). A hearing; the action of hearing. (F. *audition*, *ouïe*.)

A vocalist who is given a private hearing with a view to securing an engagement receives an audition. The faculty or ability to hear is audition, and sounds perceived by, or that reach, the ear are auditory (aw' di tō ri, *adj.*) or auditive (aw' di tiv, *adj.*). The people assembled in an auditorium (aw di tōr' i ùm, *n.*), the place reserved in a theatre for the audience, the nave of a church, or the reception room of a monastery, are an auditory (*n.*), a word that is sometimes used for the auditorium itself. A male hearer is an auditor (aw' di tōr, *n.*) and a female hearer an auditress (aw' di trēs, *n.*).

**L. auditio** (acc. *auditionem*), from *audire* to hear.



**Audition.**—An audition at 2 L.O. the headquarters of the British Broadcasting Corporation. Although a singer may have an excellent voice it does not follow that it is suitable for transmission by wireless.



Augment.—The San Pedro river at Sonora Valley, Mexico, in the dry, summer season, when it is little more than a placid stream, and the waterway at the same place after it has been augmented by the rains of autumn and winter and become a broad expanse of swirling water.

**Augean** (aw jē' ān), *adj.* Relating to Augeas; very dirty; very corrupt. (F. *d'Augias*.)

In Greek legend Augeas was a king of Elis, who possessed 3,000 oxen. Now, his stables had not been cleaned for thirty years, and one of the Twelve Labours of Hercules was to cleanse them in a single day. Putting forth his mighty strength, the hero diverted the courses of the rivers Alpheus and Peneus, turned their waters through the stables, and washed them clean in a night. From this incident the word Augean has come to be applied to anything which through long neglect and mismanagement has become so corrupt that only a tremendous effort, like this of Hercules, can purify it.

**auger** (aw' gēr), *n.* A tool for boring holes. (F. *tarrière*.)

When boring holes in heavy timbers, such as railway sleepers, an auger with a screw-bit, worked by turning a handle with both hands, is often used. The hole made by such an instrument is an auger-hole (*n.*). Because of its shape, a certain long, round, tapering sea-shell, with the scientific name *Terebra*, has been called auger-shell (*n.*). The ship-worm (*Teredo navalis*) is known as the auger worm (*n.*), because of its habit of boring holes in the timbers of wooden ships.

M.E. *navegar*, A.-S. *nafogar*, from *nafu* nave of a wheel, *gar* spear, anything that pierces, cp. O.H.G. *nabugēr*. N is lost as in adder, apron.

**aught** (awt), *n.* Anything whatever. *adv.* At all. (F. *quoi que ce soit*; *de tout*.)

We seldom use this word now, either in speaking or writing. A mistake is sometimes made between aught and the figure o, or naught. For instance, the game of naughts and crosses is sometimes wrongly called aughts and crosses.

A.-S. *āwht*, *auht*, *aht*, from *ā* ever, *wiht* something, whit.

**augite** (aw' jīt), *n.* A common rock-forming mineral. (F. *augite*.)

Augite is usually black with dark brown and green shades and is most commonly found among volcanic rocks. The well-known greenstones are decomposed crystalline rocks in which augite is present. Rocks or minerals resembling augite are called augitic (aw jīt' ik, *adj.*).

L., Gr. *αυγίτης*, from Gr. *αυγέ* ray, lustre.

**augment** (awg ment', *v.*, awg' ment, *n.*), *v.t.* To make larger in degree, number, size, value, etc.; to add to (a coat of arms); to add the augment to. *v.i.* To become larger in any way. *n.* A prefix used in some Aryan languages. (F. *augmenter*; *augment*.)

Age augments the value of many books and pictures. Dignity augments the state of kingship. A river augments after heavy rain.

In Sanskrit and Greek the augment is a vowel prefixed to form the past tense. In

Greek, when the augment remains separate it is called the syllabic augment, because it adds a syllable; when it lengthens a vowel or turns it into a diphthong it is known as the temporal augment.

**Augmentation** (awg mèn tā' shùn, *n.*) means generally the act of increasing, the state of being increased, the thing or amount added, increase or addition. Copying or repeating a theme in music by doubling the value of the opening notes is augmentation, and so is an addition to a coat of arms as a token of honour.

An action by a Scottish parish clergyman in the Court of Teinds to obtain an increase of stipend is called a process of augmentation.

The court established by Henry VIII after the dissolution of the monasteries to deal with cases concerning the disposal of monasteries and abbey-lands was known as the Court of Augmentations, because it had the effect of augmenting the Crown revenues.

**Augmentative** (awg mèn' tā tiv, *adj.*) means having the quality or power of augmenting. A word expressing with greater force the idea of the word from which it comes is called an augmentative (*n.*). Thus dullard, meaning a very dull person, is an augmentative of dull, and balloon of ball.

*L. augmentare, augmentum*, from *augere* to increase, suffix *-ment* (*L. -mentum*) expressing result of action of the verb. *SYN.*: Enlarge, extend, intensify, magnify. *ANT.*: Abbreviate, abridge, decrease, diminish, reduce.

**augur** (aw' gūr), *n.* An official of ancient Rome who professed to foretell the future. *v.t.* To foretell; to give promise of. *v.i.* To bode. (*F. augure; augurer.*)

The work of the augurs was done by watching the flight, hearing the noises, and examining the insides of birds and other animals. Certain superstitions as to ravens, crows, and hares have come down from them even to modern times, and we still speak of signs of good or evil augury (aw' gū ri, *n.*). We also use such expressions as "his looks augur mischief" and "his success augurs well for the future."

Wise people attach little or no importance to augural (aw' gū rāl, *adj.*) signs, but the Romans would never start any new project unless the signs were favourable, so that the augurship (aw' gūr ship, *n.*) was an important office among them.

*L. augur = avigur*, from *avis* bird, and (perhaps) *garrere* to chatter, disclose. *SYN.*: Betoken, foretell, portend, presage. *ANT.*: Assure, establish, prove.

**august** (aw güst'), *adj.* Inspiring reverence and admiration. **August** (aw' güst), *n.* The eighth month of the year. (*F. auguste; Août.*)

The august beauty of the Alps awes the most talkative traveller into silence. Supreme majesty and stateliness characterize the august presence of a mighty king. Possessing these qualities, he behaves augustly

(aw güst' li, *adv.*), and at all times is revered for his augustness (aw güst' nēs, *n.*).

The month of August was so named by the Romans in honour of their first emperor, Augustus, whose lucky month it was. August had then only thirty days, and July, named after Julius Caesar, had thirty-one. The Romans felt that their great Augustus should not be less favoured, so a day was taken away from February and added to August.

The term Augustan (aw güst' àn, *adj.*) is applied to the golden age of Latin literature in the days of the Emperor Augustus, and when Horace, Ovid, and Virgil were alive. The term is also given to later periods



August.—Augustus, in whose honour August was named.

that show a similar combination of literary refinement and purity, and also is applied generally to denote a classical standard of taste. The reign of Queen Anne, when Swift, Pope, Addison, and Steele flourished, is often called the Augustan Age of English literature, and a writer who belongs to the clas-

sical or Augustan period of any country's literature is sometimes referred to as an Augustan (*n.*).

The confession of the Protestant faith drawn up by Luther and Melancthon at Augsburg, Bavaria, in 1530 is also termed Augustan, in the sense of belonging to that town, whose Latin name was Augusta Vindelicorum. Augustus founded a Roman colony there, but he must not be associated with this use of the word.

*L. augustus*, perhaps from *augere* to increase, sacred, venerable, honoured. *SYN.*: Dignified, exalted, grand, imposing, noble. *ANT.*: Base, commonplace, despicable, mean, paltry.

**Augustinian** (aw gūs tin' i àn), *adj.* Of or relating to St. Augustine, Bishop of Hippo. *n.* A member of one of the religious orders that follow the Rule of St. Augustine. (*F. Augustinien; Augustin.*)

This great father of the Church was born in 354 at Tagaste, in North Africa. Converted to Christianity in 386, he became nine years later Bishop of Hippo, in which North African city he died in 430. **Augustinianism** (aw gūs tin' i àn izm, *n.*) or **Augustinism** (aw gūs' tin izm) is the name applied to the doctrines developed by him.

St. Augustine did not actually draw up a rule of life, but from his writings on community life three rules were compiled towards the close of the eleventh century, of which the third is the one known as the Rule of St. Augustine. Of the various orders that based



themselves on this rule two of the best-known are the Augustinian or Austin Canons and the Augustinian or Austin Friars, whose name survives in the district in London called Austin Friars, which gets its name from an Augustinian friary founded in 1253.



Augustinian.—St. Augustine and his mother. A member of any of the religious orders that follow the rule of St. Augustine is an Augustinian.

**auk** (awk), *n.* A northern sea-bird. (F. *pingouin*.)

The little auk, which is smaller than a song thrush, breeds in the far north of Europe; it is seen occasionally in Britain in winter. Its scientific name is *Mergulus alle*. The great auk, about the size of a goose, is now extinct. The razorbill, a British marine bird, belongs to the auk family. Its scientific name is *Alca torda*.

The name is of Scandinavian origin.

**aularian** (aw lār' i an), *adj.* Relating to a hall. *n.* A member of a hall at a university.

Some of the older colleges at Oxford and Cambridge are called halls, and a member of these would be called an aularian (*n.*). There are only two of these halls now—St. Edmund's Hall at Oxford, and Trinity Hall at Cambridge.

*L. aula* hall, suffix *-arius* connected with.

**aulic** (aw' lik), *adj.* Relating to a court. *n.* The ceremony at the Sorbonne, in Paris, when a student was given the degree of doctor of divinity. (F. *aulique*.)

This word, though hardly used at all now, was applied to a once famous council. Under the Holy Roman Empire the Aulic Council was the private or personal court of the emperors. It was set up by the Emperor Maximilian I in 1497, and in one form or another it lasted until 1806, when the Holy Roman Empire came to an end. Later the same name was used for a council at Vienna which looked after the war department of the old Austrian Empire.

*L. aulicus*, Gr. *aulikos*, from Gr. *aulē*, hall, court, suffix *-icus* pertaining to.

**aunt** (ant), *n.* The sister of one's father or mother. (F. *tante*.)

It is usual also to call an uncle's wife an aunt, although actually she is no relation—only an aunt-in-law. Auntie or Auntie (an' i, *n.*)—the word can be spelt either way—is nearly always a great favourite with her nephews and nieces, for, when properly managed, auntship (ant' ship, *n.*) can be a very delightful relationship. Some bustling, kindly women are aunts not only to their nieces and nephews but seem to practise a kind of general aunthood (ant' hud, *n.*) to the whole countryside.

O.F. *ante*, *L. amita* paternal aunt; cp. *G. amme* foster-mother. The *t* in modern F. is possibly due to a form of address or description *ma-t-ante* on the analogy of *a-t-il*.

**Aunt Sally** (ant sāl' li), *n.* A game played at fairs and other places of amusement. (F. *jeu de massacre*.)

Most boys have succeeded in breaking Aunt Sally's pipe. On bank holidays she is a familiar object, with her pipe stuck in her mouth or some other part of her face. Sometimes instead of the old lady there will be a figure of some well-known character, and sometimes a man will go behind a piece of canvas and put his head through a hole to be thrown at.

**aura** (aw' rā), *n.* An air-current set up by an electrical discharge from a sharp point; a sensation felt before an attack of epilepsy; a subtle emanation from a substance, as the scent of a flower. (F. *exhalaison*; *aura*.)

If an insulated electrical conductor be charged to a very high pressure, the charge leaks slowly away from any sharp point in it as what is called a brush discharge. The electricity escapes by particles of dust, and electrifies the molecules of air near them. These move along the lines of force of the discharge and cause the air-current termed an electrical aura.

An epileptic aura may take the form of a sensation of prickly cold travelling up the body to the head. Sometimes it gives rise to strange noises in the head or to peculiar tastes and smells.



Auk.—The great auk, from a specimen in the British Museum (Natural History).

Some people hold that every one of us is surrounded by a personal aura—some subtle influence given out by one's mind or soul—which acts upon other persons. Perhaps what is known as personal magnetism may be aural (aw' râl, *adj.*), or connected with an aura of this kind.

L. *aura* current of air, exhalation.

**aural** [1] (aw' râl), *adj.* Of or relating to the ear; through the ear. (F. *auriculaire*, *qui a rapport à l'oreille*.) We speak of aural surgery or an aural disease. To learn a language aurally (aw' râl li, *adv.*) is to learn it by hearing it spoken.

L. *auris* ear, suffix *-alis* connected with.

**aural** [2] (au' râl), *adj.* of or relating to the air. See under *aura*.

**aureate** (aw' rê àt), *adj.* Golden; brilliant; Poets write about an aureate dawn, and anything that is splendid or dazzling can be called aureate. (F. *doré*.)

L.L. *aureatus*, for L. *auratus*, p.p. of *aurare* to gild, from *aurum* gold.

**Aurelia** (aw rê' li à), *n.* A genus of jelly-fish which give out light; a chrysalis. (F. *aurélie*, *chrysalide*.)

Lazaro Spallanzani (1729-99); the Italian naturalist, once placed one of the jelly-fish named *Aurelia phosphorica* in a glass vessel containing milk. As a result of the phosphorescence or light given out by the animal it was possible to read in the dark a foot or two away from the glass.

From the gold-coloured spangles on the chrysalis of some butterflies the word was formerly applied to a chrysalis, but the terms chrysalis and pupa are now used. Aurelian (aw rê' li àn, *adj.*) means gold-coloured, and used also to mean relating to or like a chrysalis. One who made a study of butterflies was once called an aurelian (*n.*).

Ital. *aurelia*, from L. *aurum*, synonymous with Gr. *khrysalis*, from *khrysos* gold.

In the earliest Christian pictures the aureole had the form of a golden mist surrounding the whole body and was used only in representing the Godhead. Later it was reduced in size and employed also for the Virgin Mary and for certain of the saints.



Aureole.—An aureole surrounding the head of Christ as pictured by Frederic Shields.

The word can be used literally and figuratively of any radiance, and is applied especially to the halo seen during eclipses. We can speak of a girl having an aureole of fair hair and also of the aureole that surrounds the throne of a great king. The word is also spelt aureola (aw rê' ô lâ).

L. fem. of *aureolus* golden, with *corona* (crown of glory) understood. SYN.: Glory, nimbus.

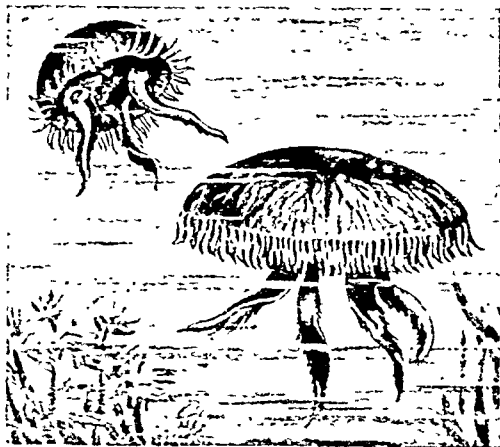
**auric** (aw' rik), *adj.* Of or relating to gold. In chemistry gold in an auric compound has combined with it more atoms than gold in an aurous compound. (F. *aurique*.)

L. *aurum* gold, suffix *-ic* related to.

**auricle** (aw' rikl), *n.* The outside part of the ear, which projects from the head; one of the two upper chambers of the heart. (F. *auricule*.)

The right auricle of the heart receives blood from the veins, and pumps it into the right ventricle below it. The right ventricle sends the blood through the lungs. The left auricle receives it from the lungs, purified, and delivers it to the left ventricle, which sends it into the veins again. Any creature having an auricle or auricles is auricled (aw' rikld, *adj.*).

An auricular (aw rik' ū lâ, *adj.*) murmur is a sound made by the auricles of the heart. Auricular confession is confession made



Aurelia.—Two jelly-fish which give out light.

**aureole** (aw' rê ôl), *n.* A golden disk surrounding the head, seen in most of the paintings of saints, virgins, etc., of the Middle Ages; a radiance. (F. *auréole*.)

auricularly (aw rik' ū lār li, *adv.*), by whispering into the ear. Anything having ears or projections like ears is said to be auriculate (aw rik' ū lāt, *adj.*).

*L. auricula*, dim. of *auris* ear.

**auricula** (aw rik' ū lā), *n.* A garden flower of the primrose kind; a kind of fungus; a genus of shellfish. (*F. auricule.*)



Auricula. — A garden flower which came from the Alps.

Sometimes called Bear's Ear on account of the shape of its leaves, the auricula may be found growing wild on the Alps, its native home. First made popular in our own country by flower-lovers in the north of England, this beautiful flower now has a number of cultivated varieties.

*L. auricula*, dim. of *auris* ear, the leaves being supposed to be like an animal's ears

**auriferous** (aw rif' er ūs), *adj.* Bearing or yielding gold. (*F. aurifère.*)

A gold ore is an auriferous mineral, as gold can be got from it. An aurific (aw rif' ik, *adj.*) substance is one that will actually make gold. This seems to be a substance we should all like to find. It was a term used by the old alchemists, who sought to turn base metals into gold.

*L. aurifer*, from *aurum* gold, *ferre* to produce.

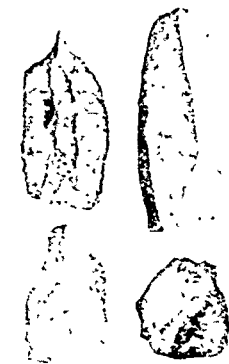
**auriform** (aw' ri form), *adj.* Shaped like an ear. (*F. auriforme.*)

*L. auris* ear, *forma* form, shape

**Aurignacian** (ō rē nyā' shū ān), *adj.* Belonging or relating to the beginning of the Later Palaeolithic period, the third and the last division of the Old Stone Age. (*F. aurignacien.*)

The Aurignacian period follows the Mousterian or Middle Palaeolithic period, and is so named because human remains and tools of bone and flint that are typical of the epoch were discovered in the cave of Aurignac Haute-Garonne, France. Similar discoveries elsewhere show that the Aurignac (ō rē nyāk', *adj.*) or Aurignacian culture (both terms are used) existed all over Europe. It began some 35,000 years ago and lasted for thousands of years.

The climate of Europe was then improving. Bears cave hons mammoths and many quite



Aurignacian. — Flints used by early man in the Aurignacian period (British Museum).

familiar birds and beasts abounded. The cave-dwelling men hunted the reindeer and fished for salmon, and they were a taller and more intelligent race than the brute-faced Mousterians whose lands they took. There were artists among them who made fine drawings on cave walls, and little statues of ivory. Their tools and weapons were shaped by skilled craftsmen. In the Cro-Magnon people, who flourished in Aurignacian times, we have the first glimpse of men like ourselves.

**auriphone** (aw' ri fōn), *n.* An ear-trumpet. (*F. cornet acoustique.*)

Under this heading may be included all kinds of apparatus used by deaf people for collecting and focussing or concentrating sound.

Hybrid formation; *L. auris* ear, *phônē* voice.

**auriscope** (aw' ri skōp), *n.* An instrument for examining the inner parts of the ear. (*F. otoscope.*)

Hybrid formation from *L. auris* ear, *skopem* to look at, examine.

**aurist** (aw' rist), *n.* A person who is highly skilled in finding out and treating diseases of the ear; an ear specialist. (*F. auriste.*)

*L. auris* ear, suffix *-ist* denoting one professionally connected with.

**auroids** (aw' roks), *n.* The wild ox of Europe. (*F. aurochs.*)

As late as the seventeenth century the auroids roamed wild in the forests of Lithuania. It was a huge black animal, sometimes standing as high as six feet at the shoulder and with horns measuring about a yard and a half from tip to tip.

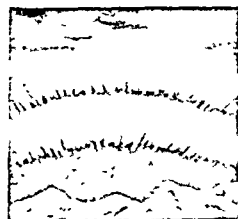
Although it is no longer found wild we can get a good idea of what the auroids looked like, for its descendants still survive in various parts of Europe. At Chillingham, in Northumberland, there is a splendid breed of park cattle, and there is another in the chase near Cadzow Castle, in Scotland. These noble creatures, white though they are, are generally thought to be descended from the auroids, and so are the powerful animals used for bull-fighting in Spain.

*G. aurochs*, from *aur*=ur wild ox, Gr. *ouros*, *L. urus*, A.-S. *ūr*, and *ochs* ox.

**aurora** (aw' rōr ā), *n.* The dawn; the glow of sunrise; the early period of anything, a display of light in the sky during the hours of darkness. (*F. aurore.*)

Aurora was the Roman goddess of the dawn. Every morning she rose from her couch in the east and in her chariot brought the light of day to gods and men.

The Aurora Borealis, or Northern Lights, is seen in the northern half of the world and the Aurora Australis in the southern



Aurora. — The Aurora Borealis in the Arctic.

half. The brilliancy of the aurora is greatest in the cold regions. At the close of day an indistinct light is seen low down in the sky. This changes slowly into a yellow arch, reaching across the sky. From this arch rays or streamers burst out downwards, changing from yellow to dark green, and then to a brilliant purple. The display may last for some hours. The brightness then dies away and the colours fade. The sky under the arch is darker than the rest, as happens also with a rainbow. The arch sometimes suggests in shape a huge folded curtain.

Auroras are seen most often in April and October. They are thought to be due to positive electricity carried from the warmer parts of the globe towards the poles by currents of air, which flow earthwards in the region of the display. It has been noticed that sun-spots and auroras occur at the same time.

Light coming from the east, or at dawn, or from an aurora is *auroral* (aw rōr' āl, *adj.*).

The name *Aurora* (earlier *Ausosa*) is akin to a Sanskrit root *ush* to burn, whence *ushas* dawn.

**aurum** (aw' rūm), *n.* The chemical name for gold. (F. *or.*)

The name reminds us of the alchemists, who were always trying to make gold. **Aurum fulminans** (fūl' min ānz, *n.*) is fulminate of gold, a curious explosive gold compound. **Aurum mosaicum** (mō za' ik ūm, *n.*) has nothing to do with gold, but is a gold-coloured compound of tin and sulphur. **Aurum potable** (pō tā' bi li, *n.*) is an old-time medicinal liquid containing extremely fine particles of gold.

**Aurous** (aw' rūs, *adj.*) means of or relating to gold. In chemistry gold in an aurous compound has combined with it fewer atoms than gold in an auric compound.

**auscultation** (aws kŭl tā' shŭn), *n.* Listening to the sounds given by the lungs and heart to find out what state the organs are in. (F. *auscultation.*)

A doctor *auscultates* (aws' kŭl tāts, *v.t.*) a patient, either by pressing one ear against the patient's body, or through an instrument called a stethoscope. The stethoscope or the man who uses it is an *auscultator* (aws kŭl tā' tōr, *n.*), and this method of listening is *auscultatory* (aws kŭl' tā tōr i, *adj.*).

L. *auscultatio* (acc. *auscultationem*), from *auscultare* to listen attentively.

**Ausonian** (aw sō' ni ān), *adj.* Italian; Latin; Roman. (F. *ausonien.*)

The *Ausones* (aw' sō nēz, *n.pl.*) or *Aurunci* were an old Italian tribe belonging to the Oscan or Opican stock. They dwelt in Campania and southern Latium, where they came under Greek influence. They were frequently at war with Rome, and an insurrection of the *Ausones* was put down with great severity in 314 B.C. After this date they disappear from history. Their name has survived in poetical language to denote certain parts of central Italy or even the whole peninsula.

**auspice** (aw' spis), *n.* A sign that something is going to happen; favourable influence. (F. *auspice.*)

This word is usually used in the plural. Before the ancient Romans began any undertaking they used to take the auspices. This meant that they looked for any sign which they thought would show them whether the gods would help them or not in what they were going to do. Signs shown by birds were considered very important. If birds

flew, or sang, or took their food in certain ways, or if certain kinds of birds were seen—these were looked upon as auspices, good or bad. If the auspices were favourable the undertaking would be proceeded with.

And so to-day when we say, for instance, that an expedition goes out under the auspices of some society we mean that it is helped and fostered by that society, that it enjoys its patronage. An *auspicious* (aw spish' ūs, *adj.*) event is a happy occasion, one which looks as if it will turn out well. If things go well or promise to go well they happen *auspiciously* (aw spish' ūs li, *adv.*), and we can congratulate ourselves on their *auspicious-*

*ness* (aw spish' ūs nēs, *n.*).

L. *auspicium*=*avispicium*, from *avis* bird, early L. *specere* to observe.

**Auster** (aw' stēr), *n.* The south wind. (F. *auster, autan.*)

In the days of the ancient Romans this was the name used for the south wind, and so it came also to be used for the south.

Like *Aurora* (*ausosa*), *Auster* is related to the Sanskrit root *ush* to burn, meaning the hot, drying wind.



**Auscultation.**—A doctor using the auscultatory method of finding a dog's condition by listening to the animal's heart-beats through a stethoscope.

**austere** (aw stēr'), *adj.* Stern; severely simple; forbidding. (F. *austère*.)

Mountains seem austere to those who dwell far from them on the smiling plains, but their very austerity (aw stēr' nēs, *n.*) becomes a charm when they are old neighbours. It is difficult to live austere (aw stēr' li, *adv.*) among pleasure-loving companions; austerity (aw stēr' i ti, *n.*) is apt to melt before gaiety.

O.F. and M.E. *austere*, Gr. *austēros*, L. *austērus* harsh, from Gr. *auos* dry. SYN.: Hard, harsh, rigid, severe, strict. ANT.: Affable, genial, mild, pliable, tender.

**Austin** (aw' stin). This is a shortened form of Augustine. See Augustinian.

**austral** (aw' strāl), *adj.* Southern. (F. *austral*.)

Auster (the drier) was the name given by the Romans to the south wind. We are most familiar with the word in its compounds, Australia, the southern continent, and Australasia, the lands south of Asia. It is chiefly used in astronomy to speak of the southern groups of stars. The austral signs are those groups through which the sun appears to move in winter time, that is, when it shines overhead south of the equator.

L. *australis*, from *auster* the south wind, suffix -al connected with (L. -alis).

**Australasian** (aws trā lā' shi ān), *adj.* Relating to Australasia. *n.* A native of Australasia. (F. *Australasien*.)

Sometimes this word means simply belonging to the Commonwealth of Australia, New Zealand, and their dependencies. Sometimes it is used in a much wider sense, and then it means belonging to all those many groups of islands that stretch in chains and clusters from the south-eastern end of Asia far across the Pacific Ocean.

E. *austral* and *Asian*.

**Australian** (aws trā' hān), *adj.* Relating to Australia. *n.* A native of Australia. (F. *Australien*.)

**Australioid** (aws trā' li oid), *adj.* Relating to or resembling the aboriginal natives of Australia. **Australoid** (aws' trā loid) is another spelling.

Learned men group mankind into various great divisions, according to the shape of the skull or the colour of the skin, and so forth. In certain of these points the primitive inhabitants of Australia are like certain tribes in countries, like S. India, far from Australia, and so the Australian aboriginals and the races that thus resemble them are all gathered into one group which is called Australioid.

The term is a compound of *Australia* and suffix -oid, resembling (Gr. *eidos* form).

**autarch** (aw' tark), *n.* A ruler having sole and unlimited power; an autocrat. (F. *autocrate*.)

A country in which all control of public affairs is held unconditionally by one person is an autarchy (aw' tar ki, *n.*). Absolute government of this kind is autarchic (aw tark' ik, *adj.*), but not necessarily tyrannical.

States possessing self-government are sometimes called autarchies (aw' tar kiz, *n.pl.*).

Gr. *autos* self, *arkhos* leader, ruler.



Australioid. Related to the earliest natives of Australia, these people and those who most closely resemble them are called Australioid.

**authentic** (aw then' tik), *adj.* Giving facts as they really were, trustworthy; worthy of belief; really what it pretends to be. (F. *authentique*.)

Some time ago experts were in doubt whether a picture thought to be the work of a famous old painter really was painted by him. X-rays sent through it showed that the parts of the frame on which the canvas was stretched were held together by modern wire nails. So the picture was not authentic.

A person who speaks or writes on a subject with authority, so that what he says will be treated with respect, takes good care to authenticate (aw then' ti kāt, *v.t.*), or prove the truth of, anything that he states. The process of proving the genuineness of a thing or fact is called its authentication (aw then ti kā' shūn, *n.*), the person who does it is an authenticator (aw then' ti kā tor, *n.*), and the fitness of a fact or things for being believed true or genuine is its authenticity (aw then tis' i ti, *n.*). Authentic (aw then' tik al) is an older form of authentic. Authentically (aw then' tik āl li, *adv.*) means really or actually, and also with evidence of truth.

M.E. *autentike*, O.F. *autentique*, L. *authentica*, Gr. *authentikos* genuine, from Gr. *authentes* one who does something of himself. SYN.: Credible, genuine, real, true, trustworthy. ANT.: Doubtful, false, sham, spurious.

# AUTHORS WHO HAVE GIVEN ENJOYMENT TO MILLIONS OF READERS



1. Daniel Defoe (1661-1731). 2. Jonathan Swift (1667-1745). 3. Edward Gibbon (1737-94). 4. John Milton (1608-74). 5. Charlotte Brontë (1816-55). 6. Thomas Carlyle (1795-1881). 7. Isaac Walton (1593-1683). 8. Robert Louis Stevenson (1850-94). 9. William Makepeace Thackeray (1811-63). 10. Rudyard Kipling (born 1856). 11. Sir James Barrie (born 1860). 12. Thomas Hardy (born 1840).

# AUTHORS AND HOW THEY WORK

*Some Famous Writers of Books that have added to Knowledge*

**author** (aw' thôr), *n.* The beginner, former, or creator of anything; the writer of a book or other literary work; the works of a writer. (*F. auteur.*)

Human reason cannot think easily of things as having come into existence without the will or work of something above and greater than they. Hence most people regard God as the author or creator of the whole universe. If a rumour is set on foot it must have started somewhere, and people often wonder who was the author of it.

The word author is most commonly used of a person who writes a book, poem, essay, or some other literary work. The earliest authors of this kind were the men who carved inscriptions, such as those on the buildings of ancient Egypt, Assyria, and Babylonia, to glorify the greatness of a king.

If it were not for authors life would be robbed of much of its happiness and usefulness. We should have to listen to stories as in olden times, when bards or minstrels travelled long distances and told stories of heroic deeds. This way of gaining and giving information is still used to-day, but with an important difference. Instead of speakers coming to us we go to listen to them at places set apart for the purpose, such as schools, universities, churches, and halls.

But the speaker's voice, unless the building is fitted with apparatus for broadcasting, carries no further than the four walls, and the hearers cannot store everything that is heard. That is why thousands of new volumes on almost every subject are written, published, and read every year. The pen of the writer must always have a more lasting influence than the spoken word, however beautifully conveyed. The one is a permanent record the other but a fleeting one. The printed word can be referred to again and again; the spoken word is forgotten all too quickly.

Some books take their authors a long while to produce. Darwin's "Origin of Species" occupied him many years of thought, experiment, and revision before the manuscript was ready for the printer. The first

volume of Gibbon's "History of the Decline and Fall of the Roman Empire" was issued in 1776, but it was not until 1787 that he completed the final volume. Having finished writing the first volume of his "French Revolution," Carlyle lent it to his friend John Stuart Mill to read. The manuscript was burnt, though not by Mill, and the author's grief on hearing of the occurrence was such that for months he despaired of rewriting it. With "mind weary, body very sick," he toiled manfully at his task, and when the work was published in 1837 it was acclaimed a masterpiece.

Some authors write with ease, others with difficulty. H. G. Wells is an example of the one, and Joseph Conrad of the other. Most writers of fiction work out their plot and briefly outline the story before they begin to write it in full, but others are satisfied with no more than a general idea, which they develop as they proceed. Captain Marryat, the famous writer of sea yarns once confessed that he would often finish a chapter without having the slightest idea of what was to follow.

Dumas, the author of "The Three Musketeers," and many other stirring romances, always used

a particular kind of nib, wrote on blue paper, and worked in his shirt sleeves.

An author may give all his time to authorship (aw' thôr ship, *n.*), the profession of writing. If the authorship—in this sense meaning the name of the writer—of a book is unknown, the book is authorless (aw' thôr less, *adj.*) or anonymous. An authoress (aw' thôr es, *n.*) is a female author, but the word author is now generally used for writers of either sex. Authorcraft (aw' thôr kraft, *n.*) means either skill in writing or simply writing.

The word authorism (aw' thôr izm, *n.*) is seldom used. It means either authorship or the character or position of an author. Authorial (aw' thôr' i âl, *adj.*), another word not often employed, means relating to or like an author.

O.F. *autor*, M.E. *auto(u)r*, L. *auctor* originator, from *augere* (p.p. *auctus*) to cause to grow, produce. SYN.: Creator, inventor, maker, originator.



Author.—Charles Dickens, one of the most famous authors of the nineteenth century, at work on one of many novels.

**authority** (aw thor' i ti), *n.* Power which commands obedience; delegated power; a body or persons exercising power; an expert on any subject. (F. *autorité*.)

Authority takes various forms. There is the Divine Authority revealed in the Bible. We have also the King's authority voiced in royal proclamations and speeches from the throne on the opening of Parliament, and delegated or handed over in various ways to the three estates of the realm, which are the Lords Spiritual, the Lords Temporal, and the Commons.

Those in authority is a phrase often used to designate the Government, or if applied locally, to describe the members of the corporation or other administrative body. Any governing institution or any official group, such as the Army Council or the Navy Board, in fact, may be described as an authority.



Authority.—Senator Marconi, the greatest authority on wireless telegraphy and telephony, in the wireless cabin of his yacht.

In a personal sense, an authority is one who has a special knowledge of a subject. It is to such that reference is made when, after a statement involving personal discredit has been delivered in the House of Commons, the question is put to the speaker: "Who is your authority for these charges?" A quotation from a book or document settling a disputed point, again, is an authority. In books of standard value references are usually given showing the authorities, or sources, from which the facts cited in the text are obtained.

An authoritative (aw thor' i tā tiv, *adj.*) statement is one that is made with the backing of authority, and such a statement would be made authoritatively (aw thor' i tā tiv li,

*adv.*). **Authoritativeness** (aw thor' i tā tiv nēs, *n.*) is that which is marked by authority. To **authorize** (aw' thō rīz, *v.t.*) is to give the sanction of authority to an act or statement, and an act or statement, which can be sanctioned is **authorizable** (aw thō rīz' ābl, *adj.*). The quality of **authorization** (aw thō ri zā' shūn, *n.*) is illustrated in the Authorized Versions of the Scriptures.

M.E. *autoritē*, *autoritē*, F. *autorité*, *autorité*, *autorité*, L. *autoritas* (acc. *-latem*) from *augēre* (p.p. *auctus*) to increase, make to grow, originate; cp. *author*. The suffix *-ly* denoting state comes from L. *-itāt-* through F. *ité*. **SYN.**: Ascendancy, control, dominion, force, influence, power. **ANT.**: Anarchy, misrule, usurpation.

**auto-** (aw' tō). A prefix meaning self, of or by oneself, of or by itself. It occurs in such words as *autograph*, *automatic*, and *automobile*. (F. *auto-*)

Gr. *auto(s)* self.

**autobiography** (aw tō bī og' rā fi), *n.* The story of a man's life written by himself. (F. *autobiographie*.)

This would seem to be the best and most reliable form of biography, but experience teaches us that very few writers have been successful autobiographically (aw tō bī ō grāf' ik āl li, *adv.*), that is, in the task of presenting to their readers a true picture of themselves. Some autobiographers (aw tō bī og' rā fērz, *n.pl.*) are too modest, others too conceited, and few have the skill to pick out just the details we want to know. One of the most successful autobiographical (aw tō bī ō grāf' ik āl, *adj.*) or autobiographic (aw tō bī ō grāf' ik *adj.*) writers was Edward Gibbon, the historian, whose "Memoirs of His Life and Writings, Composed by Himself" was first published in 1796.

Gr. *auto(s)* self, *bio(s)* life, *graphein* to write.

**autocar** (aw' tō kar), *n.* A road vehicle driven by an engine which forms part of it; a motor-car; an automobile. (F. *voiture automobile*.)

The first vehicle of this kind probably was that of Nicholas Joseph Cugnot (1769), designed for pulling guns of the French army. It had a boiler shaped somewhat like a kettle, and a single driving wheel in front. This queer-looking machine, which is still to be seen in the School of Arts and Crafts in Paris, seems to have worked pretty well but to have behaved rather dangerously. It charged and upset a wall, and after that was given no further trials.

E. *auto-* and *car*.

**autochthon** (aw tok' thōn; aw tok' thōn), *n.* A human being sprung from the soil; an original inhabitant of a country; one of the earliest known inhabitants of a country; an animal or plant native to a country. (F. *autochthone*.)

This word means one sprung from the earth itself, an actual son of the soil. The ancient Greeks liked to think of the great men of their race who had lived before them as



**autochthones** (aw tok' thôn ēz, *n.pl.*) or **autochthons** (aw tok' thônz, *n.pl.*), as having sprung from the very soil of Greece. Many legends lent colour to this idea, for instance, the story of the Sparti, who were fabled to be a crop of armed men that sprang out of the soil from the dragon's teeth sown by Cadmus. The word has come to be used



**Autochthon.**—The black bear is an animal native to North America, and is therefore autochthonic.

in a general sense to denote the earliest known inhabitants of a country. An aboriginal race, in so far as they can be regarded as the first or the first known dwellers in a country, might be called **autochthonic** (aw tok' thôn' ik, *adj.*) and might be put forward as an example of **autochthonism** (aw tok' thôn' izm, *n.*) or **autochthony** (aw tok' thôn' i, *n.*). Other forms of the word autochthonic are **autochthonous** (aw tok' thôn' ūs) and **autochthonal** (aw tok' thôn' āl).

Gr. *autochthōn*, from *auto(s)* self, *khthōn* (acc. *khthōna*) earth.

**auto-coupling** (aw' tō kūp ling), *n.* A term used in wireless for the linking together of two circuits of a receiving or a transmitting apparatus by means of a condenser or an induction coil.

In many wireless sets there are coils of wire and moving metal plates which form with the valves what are called oscillatory systems, that is, systems which vibrate very much in the same way as a tuning fork does when struck. An auto-coupling enables such systems to be tuned to one another, or to be in harmony with one another.

E. *auto-* and *coupling*.

**autocracy** (aw tok' rā si), *n.* Government by a single person not bound by any laws ;

government under no restraint, as opposed to government by a person or persons chosen or approved of by the governed. (F. *autocratie*.)

The rule of the Russian Tsars was called an autocracy. It was not so in fact, for the real power lay with high officials, many of whom had not been given their offices by the Tsar. The same has been the case with most, if not all, other so-called autocracies.

A sovereign under no control is known as an autocrat (aw' tō krāt, *n.*). The Tsar used to be officially described as "Autocrat of all the Russias." This word is used also of anyone who makes anybody under him do exactly what he wishes, and who will listen to no advice or suggestions. Such behaviour is **autocratic** (aw tō krāt' ik, *adj.*) or **autocratical** (aw tō krāt' ik āl, *adj.*). To insist on having one's way in everything is to act **autocratically** (aw tō krāt' ik āl h, *adv.*). **Autocratrix** (aw tok' rā triks, *n.*) means a female autocrat, such as was the ruling empress of Russia.

Gr. *autohataia*, from *auto(s)* self, *kratos* power.

**auto-da-fé** (aw tō da fā'), *n.* The ceremony at which the sentences of the Spanish Inquisition were announced ; the execution of such a sentence. The plural is strictly **autos-da-fé**, but **auto-da-fés** is often used. (F. *auto-da-fé*.)

The word is Portuguese (not Spanish, which is *auto-de-fe*) from L. *actus* act, *de* from, of, *fides* faith (cp. F *foi*).

**autodyne** (aw' tō dīn), *n.* A receiver in wireless on a special principle which has a valve or valves which perform two duties. (F. *autodyne*.)

The autodyne works on the principle that one valve receives or detects sounds from a broadcasting station, or amplifies, that is, strengthens the sounds, while at the same time creating special wireless waves of its own. By means of these locally created wireless waves, wireless signals can be heard which would not otherwise be detected in a receiving set. The autodyne is sometimes called the **autoheterodyne** (aw tō het' er ō dīn).

Gr. *auto(s)* self, *dyn(amis)* power

Your Lordships Most  
Humble Servant  
George Washington

**Autograph**—An autograph letter of George Washington written in 1793. It is in the British Museum.

**autograph** (aw' tō grāf), *n.* A person's own handwriting, especially his signature, an original manuscript, a mechanical reproduction of handwriting. *v.t.* To write or sign with one's own hand ; to reproduce

(hand-writing) by mechanical means. (F. *autographe*; *autographier*.)

The collecting of autographs is far from being a modern hobby, for it seems to have begun in Germany about the fourteenth century. During the sixteenth century French people carried about albums in which they asked famous persons to write. One of these albums, dated 1578, is preserved in the British Museum.

An autographic (aw tò gráf' ik, *adj.*) letter or document is one that actually comes from the pen of the person who signs it, and anything autographic has to do with autography (aw tog' rà fi, *n.*), the science of autographs, or things written autographically (aw tò gráf' i kál li, *adv.*). Autography is also the name for a method of copying pen-written matter by printing from a stone.

L. *autographus*, Gr. *autographos* written with one's own hand, from *auto(s)* self, *graphein* to write.

**autogravure** (aw tò grāv ūr'), *n.* A process of photo-engraving by which the resulting picture looks practically the same as the original. (F. *autogravure*.)

F. from Gr. *auto(s)* self, *graver* to engrave; cp. A.-S. *grafan* to dig, M.E. *graven*, G. *graben*.

**autoheterodyne** (aw tò het' ér ò dīn), *n.* This is another form of the word autodyne. See autodyne.

**automatic** (aw tò māt' ik), *adj.* Self-acting; able to make movements or perform actions without human aid; done unconsciously; mechanical. (F. *automatique*.)

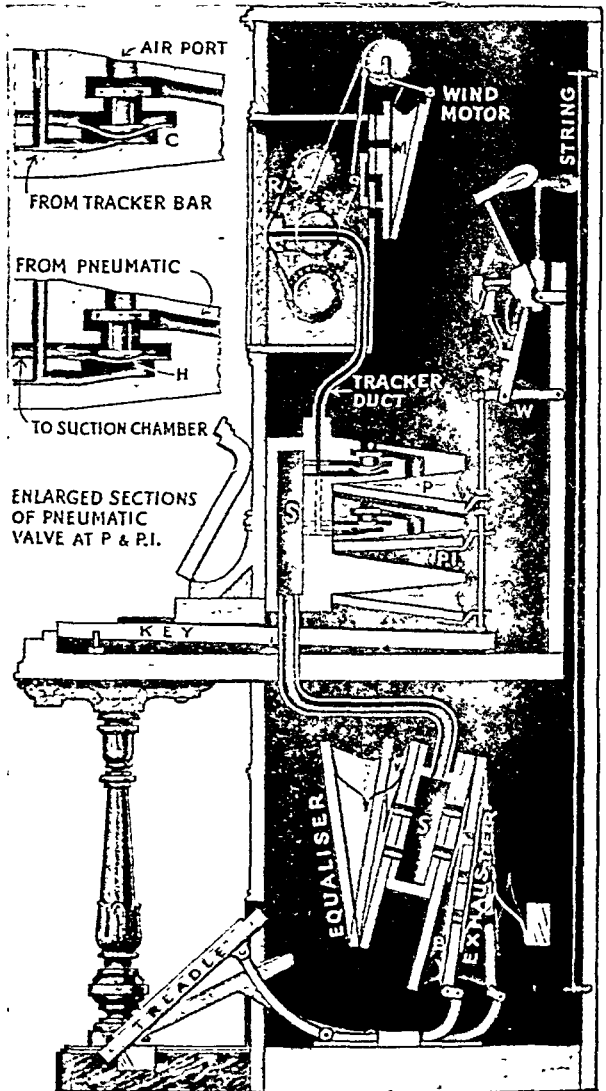
An automatic gun loads itself, fires the charge, and throws out the empty cartridge-cases at a rate of 600 to 1,000 times a minute, as long as the supply of cartridges lasts and the trigger is kept pressed. An automatic piano-player is made to strike the notes by air passing through holes in a roll of paper.

In human beings action is automatic when not guided by conscious thought. For example, the blinking of an eye threatened by a blow is automatic. A sleep-walker moves about automatically (aw tò māt' ik ál li, *adv.*), in a state of automaticity (aw tò mā tis' i ti, *n.*).

According to the doctrine of automatism (aw tom' à tizm, *n.*) all actions of living beings may be regarded as automatic, and not due to the mind, though thought may go with them. A person who believes this is an automatist (aw tom' à tist, *n.*).

To make a thing automatic is to automatize (aw tom' à tiz, *v.t.*) it. The earliest steam-engine needed a person to keep turning

cocks on and off as the piston moved. In 1713 a boy named Humphrey Potter, who had to perform this duty, fixed up some strings and catches which made the engine do the work for itself. Thus Potter first rendered the steam-engine auto-



Automatic.—In an automatic piano air is exhausted by the bellows (B). Air is admitted at the tracker bar (T), so that when a hole in the music roll (R) passes over it air rushes along the duct to valve chamber (C), pressing up the pouch (H) and causing the valve to rise and clear the air port, thus allowing a free passage for the air in the pneumatic (P) to be sucked out into the suction chamber (S), so causing the pneumatic to collapse, as shown at P1 and strike up the tracker (W). Gearing from the wind-motor (M) draws the roll over the tracker bar.

**matous** (aw tom' à tùs, *adj.*), or automatic. Gr. *automatos* (neuter -on) anything moving or moved by itself, and *suffix -ic* pertaining to.

**automaton** (aw tom' à tòn), *n.* A machine which copies the movements and actions of some living creature. (F. *automate*.)

We have records of automata (aw tom' à tà, *n.pl.*) made by the ancient Greeks and Romans. Archytas of Tarentum is said to have made, in the year 400 B.C., a mechanical pigeon that flew.

In the eighteenth century a father and son, Jaquet-Droz by name, made a great stir with three figures, of which one wrote sentences, another drew sketches, and the third played the piano. These are still in existence. An automaton that takes the form of a human being is sometimes called an android.

Probably the cleverest and most puzzling of all automata was Psycho, invented by John Nevil Maskelyne (1839-1917), and shown by him at the Egyptian Hall, London, in 1875. Psycho smoked a cigarette, played whist against all comers, and worked out difficult sums.

A person is called an automaton who does his work mechanically, without seemingly giving his mind to it at all.

*L. automaton (-um)*, *Gr. automatos* (neuter -on) anything moving or moved by itself, from *auto(s)* self, and *matos* possibly a participial form from the root *ma* to strive, work.

**automobile** (aw tò mò' bēl), *n.* A motor-car; an autocar; a self-moving road vehicle. *adj.* Self-moving. (*F. automobile.*)

What is believed to be the first petrol-driven automobile to be brought to England is now a treasure in one of London's museums. It was designed by Carl Benz in 1888, and was driven by a horizontal single cylinder engine.

Travelling in an automobile is automobilism (aw tò mò' bil izm, *n.*), and the person who drives it is an automobilist (aw tò mò' bil ist, *n.*).

*Gr. auto(s)* self, *L. mobilis* movable (= *movēbilis*), from *movēre* to move.

**autonomy** (aw ton' ò mi), *n.* The right of self-government; a self-governing community; liberty to act as one wishes; freedom of the will; independence of a part or organ. (*F. autonomie.*)

A state which makes its own laws, devises its own punishments and rewards, and looks to no outside body or person to help it in doing so, is an autonomy, or an autonomous (aw ton' ò mūs, *adj.*) or autonomic (aw tò nom' ik) community, and is governed autonomously (aw ton' ò mūs li, *adv.*). A person who believes that this is the best form of government is an autonomist (aw ton' ò mist, *n.*), and when a community is made self-governing it is said to have been autonomized (aw ton' ò mīzd, *p.p.*).

Those parts of man, or animals or plants which act for themselves organically are said to possess autonomy.

The autonomy of the will was a term used by the philosopher Immanuel Kant (1724-1804) for that property of the will by which it is a law to itself.

*Gr. autonómia* self-government, from *auto(s)* self, *nomos* law.

**autoplate** (aw' tò plāt), *n.* A machine for moulding stereo plates for printing.

Before the invention of the autoplate in 1900 the making of stereo plates was a slow business. With this machine they can now be turned out at the rate of three to four a minute.

*Gr. auto(s)* self, and *E. plate*.

**autopsy** (aw' tòp si), *n.* An examination of a dead body; a personal inspection; a critical examination. (*F. autopsie.*)

It is the law in most countries that if a person dies suddenly or from some unknown cause, or is killed, an autopsy or post-mortem is held. The body is carefully examined by doctors and others so that they can give evidence at the coroner's inquest or other inquiry as to the cause of death. Such an examination is said to be an autoptic (aw top' tik, *adj.*) or autoptical (aw top' tik āl) one.

It is an examination made personally by eyesight. Any such examination is said to be made autoptically (aw top' tik āl li, *adv.*).

*Gr. autopsia* seeing for oneself, from *auto(s)* self, *opsis* sight.

**autosuggestion** (aw tò sù jes' chón), *n.* Presenting an idea to oneself, making oneself believe. (*F. autosuggestion.*)

This is a new word due to modern study of the mind. Many cases of madness are autosuggestive (aw tò sù jes' tiv, *adj.*), but

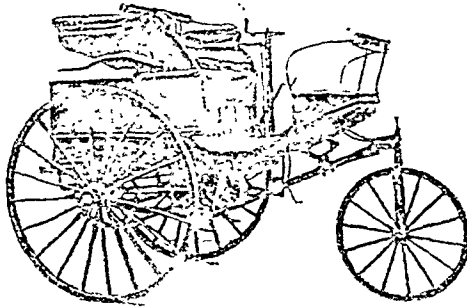
it has also been found that some of these cases and other diseases also may be cured by getting the patient to present to himself the idea of a cure. Emil Coué (1857-1929), a French doctor, claimed to have effected many remarkable cures by this method.

From *auto(s)* self, and *suggestion*.

**autotype** (aw' tò tip), *n.* An exact copy; a process of printing photographs in permanent colour; a print produced by this process. *v.t.* To reproduce by this process. (*F. autotype.*)

By the autotype process reproductions are made in monochrome, that is, in a single colour. The using of this process is called autotyping (aw' tò ti pi, *n.*).

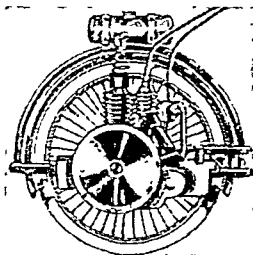
*Gr. auto(s)* self, *typos* stamp, figure.



Automobile.—Probably the first petrol-driven automobile brought into England was this horizontal single cylinder vehicle designed by Carl Benz in 1888. It is now in the Science Museum, South Kensington.

**autotypography** (aw tò tī pog' rà fi), *n.* A process by which drawings made on gelatine are transferred to plates from which impressions or copies are taken. (F. *autotypographie*.)

Gr. *auto(s)* self, *typos* stamp, *graphein* to write.



Auto-wheel. — A motor aid to modern bicycles.

**auto-wheel** (aw' tò hwèl), *n.* A wheel, carrying a small petrol motor, attached to a bicycle to supply motive power.

This small pneumatic tired wheel is driven by the petrol motor attached to it. It can be fitted to the side of the back wheel of a safety bicycle, with the controls, as in a motor-cycle, fixed on the handlebars, and supplies sufficient motive power to drive the cycle at a moderate speed.

**autumn** (aw' tūm), *n.* The third season of the year; a time of ripeness or of vigour that is beginning to fail. *adj.* Relating to these periods. (F. *automne*; *autumnal*.)

In Britain autumn lasts from the beginning of August to the end of October. In North America it begins and ends a month later. In the U.S.A. as formerly in England, it is called the "fall" because it is the decline of the year. When a man has reached his prime and is beginning to go down the hill of life we say he is in the autumn of life. The day in autumn (about September 21st) when the sun crosses the equator on its journey south is called the *autumnal* (aw tūm' nāl, *adj.*) equinox. That favourite flower of the bumble-bees, the marsh gentian, is sometimes called *autumn-bells* (*n.*)

M.E. *autumpne*, O.F. *autompne*, L. *autumnus*, *autumnus*, pres. passive participial form (Gr. *-omenos*) connected with L. *augēre* (p.p. *auctus*) to increase (the time of harvest).

**auxiliary** (awg zil' i à ri), *adj.* Helping. *n.* A person or thing which helps. (F. *auxiliaire*.)

The auxiliary verbs, "have," "be," "must," "shall," "will," help us to form the moods and tenses of other verbs. Sailing ships are unable to move if the wind drops, or a current is too strong for them, so many of them carry an auxiliary engine, which comes into use to help or take the place of the sails. On a steam ship the big engines which propel it need smaller engines to pump water into the boilers through the condensers and to force air through the furnaces. These, as well as the steering and lighting engines, are called the ship's auxiliaries. In the same way the territorial forces, yeomanry, and militia which can be called upon to help a regular army, are known as auxiliary forces.

L. *auxilian(us)*, from *auxilium* aid, suffix *-ary* (L. *-arius*) connected with. SYN.: Accessory, assistant, helper. ANT.: Antagonist, opponent.

**auxometer** (awk som' è tèr), *n.* An instrument for finding out the magnifying power of a telescope or other optical instrument. (F. *auxomètre*.)

Gr. *auxanein* (*auxein*) to increase, *metron* measure.

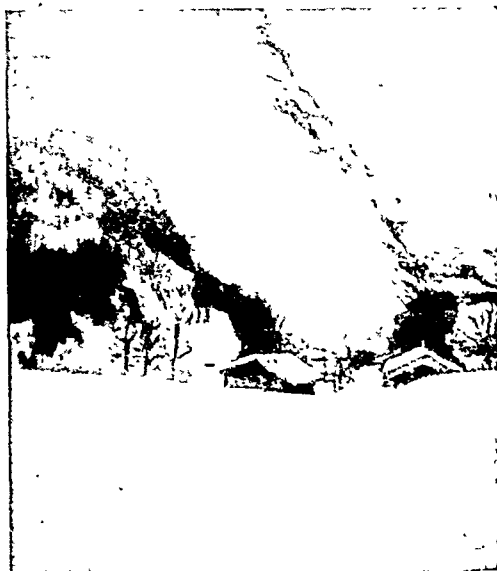
**avail** (à vāl'), *v.i.* To be of use. *v.t.* To be of use to. *n.* The quality of being capable of being used. (F. *servir à*; *utilité*.)

When a person tries by every means he can think of to obtain pity or help, and his efforts are completely unsuccessful, we say that they avail him nothing. When we avail ourselves of an opportunity, we take advantage of it. An effort is of no avail or without avail when it is quite useless. When we say that a man seized the first article that was available (à vāl' àbl, *adj.*), we mean that he seized the first thing that came to his hand. This article was useful at the moment by reason of its availability (à vāl' à bil' i ti, *n.*) or availableness (à vāl' àbl nēs, *n.*). It was availably (à vāl' à bli, *adv.*) near.

F. *à* and *valoir*, O.F. *vail* (= *vauz*, first sing. present, indicative), from L. *ad* to, *valēre* to be strong, serviceable.

**avalanche** (äv' à lānsh), *n.* A fall of snow, ice, rocks, or earth—singly or together—down a mountain slope. (F. *avalanche*.)

When we are climbing mountains in Switzerland the guide will sometimes tell us to keep quite quiet. This is because he



Avalanche.—An avalanche actually in progress. It is falling down the lower slopes of the Mettenberg, near Grindelwald, in Switzerland.

knows that we are in a dangerous part of the Alps, and that if we were to make a noise the great mass of snow above us might get loosened and roll right over us. Whole villages have been buried in this way.

F. *avalier* to descend, from L. *a-* = *ad* to, *vallis* valley, suffix *-ance*, dialect *-anche*, forming a noun of action or state (L. *-antia*, *-entia*).

**avant-courier** (a vân kur' i ér), *n.* A forerunner; one of the advance-guard of an army. (F. *avant-courier*, *avant-garde*.)

This word is occasionally used nowadays in the sense of a herald or anyone who goes before. In the seventeenth century especially the skirmishers, or advance-guard of an army were known as avant-couriers.

F. from L. *ab-ante* from before, *currere* to run.

**avarice** (äv' â ris), *n.* Greed. (F. *avarice*.)

The **avaricious** (äv â rish' üs, *adj.*) are those who think that money and wealth are the things most worth striving for. In living **avariciously** (äv â rish' üs li, *adv.*) they forget the needs of others.

L. *avaritia*, from *avārus* greedy, from *avēre* to long for, suffix *-ice* forming abstract nouns. SYN.: Meanness, miserliness, stinginess. ANT.: Generosity, lavishness, openhandedness.

**Avars** (ä' värz), *n. pl.* An Eastern people. (F. *Avares*.)

It is probable that the Avars were of Hunnish or Turkish origin. They passed into Europe and by the sixth century had become a powerful race. They entered the service of Justinian and helped him to conquer the Bulgarians, and often made raids into the Byzantine Empire. Nothing is heard of them after about 830.

**avast** (ä vast'), *inter.* Stop! Leave off! (F. *baste*!)

In the seventeenth and eighteenth centuries the Dutch were the leading nation in naval matters. Many of our nautical terms came from them and among them this word, which is from the Dutch *houd vast*, hold fast.

**avatar** (äv' ä tar; av ä tar'), *n.* The descent of a god to earth in earthly form; manifestation in human form; embodiment; phase. (F. *avatar*.)

This word is used especially for the various forms in which the Hindu god Vishnu visited the earth—as a fish, as a tortoise, etc. From this meaning grew the different senses in which we use the word to-day.

Sansk. *avatāra* descent, from *ava* down, *tar*, *tri* to cross over.

**avaunt** (a vawnt'), *inter.* Begone! Away! (F. *arrière*.) This word is not now in general use, but is often found in the works of Shakespeare and other poets.

F. *avant*, before, forward, L. *ab* from, *ante* before.

**ave** (a' vi), *inter.* Hail! Farewell! *n.* An expression of greeting or farewell; the Ave Maria; a small bead on a rosary. (F. *avé*.)

The Ave Maria (a' vi mã re' ä, *n.*) or Ave Mary (a' vi mãr' i) is a form of prayer in the Roman Catholic Church, which takes its name from the first two words, "Hail, Mary!" of the angel Gabriel's greeting to the Virgin Mary when announcing to her the birth of Christ (St. Luke i, 28). The bell which is sounded when the Ave Maria should be repeated is called the Ave-bell (a' vi bel, *n.*).

L. Imperative (second sing.) of *avēre* to say farewell, hail.

**avenaceous** (äv é nā' shüs) *adj.* Resembling or relating to oats. (F. *avénacé*.)

Some grasses are so avenaceous or oat-like that they are called oat grasses, the downy oat grass (*Avena pubescens*) being very pretty when in flower.

L. *avena* oats, suffix *-accus* having the character of.

**avenge** (ä venj'), *v.t.* To inflict injury in return for, on behalf of, or on account of. *v.i.* To exact satisfaction. (F. *venger*; *so venger*.)

This word is generally used where the retribution is just. When the retaliation is prompted by malice the word revenge is more often used.

In the island of Corsica and in certain parts of Italy it was a universal rule that a murder or other injury could only be avenged by carrying out a vendetta. This meant that as long as there was any member of the injured family alive that family must never be satisfied until the injury had been avenged upon the offender or his family.

The person who avenges another is an **avenger** (ä venj' ér, *n.*), his purpose is **avengeful** (ä venj' fül, *adj.*), and his act **avengement** (ä venj' mēnt, *n.*). According to the Mosaic law the Avenger of Blood was the person whose duty it was to punish murder by death.

O F. *avengier*, from *a=L. ad* to, L. *vindicare* to punish, *avenge*, to lay legal claim to. SYN.: Punish, retaliate, vindicate. ANT.: Condone, forgive, pardon.

**avens** (äv' enz), *n.* A plant belonging to the rose family. (F. *benoîte*.)

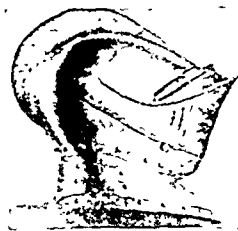
Two British species of *Geum* are popularly called avens, the wood avens or herb bennet (*Geum urbanum*), with yellow flowers, and the water avens (*G. rivale*), with large purple blossoms. The related white dryas (*Dryas octopetala*) is sometimes called the mountain avens.

M.E. *avence*, O.F. *avencia*, L.L. *avencia*. Nothing is known of the etymology.

**aventail** (äv' én täl), *n.* The movable part of a helmet which in battle was lowered to

protect the face, but at other times raised to allow of easier breathing. It is also spelt **aventayle**.

O F. *esventail* wind-hole, from *es=L. ex* from, L. *ventus* wind, Modern F. *eventail* means a fan.

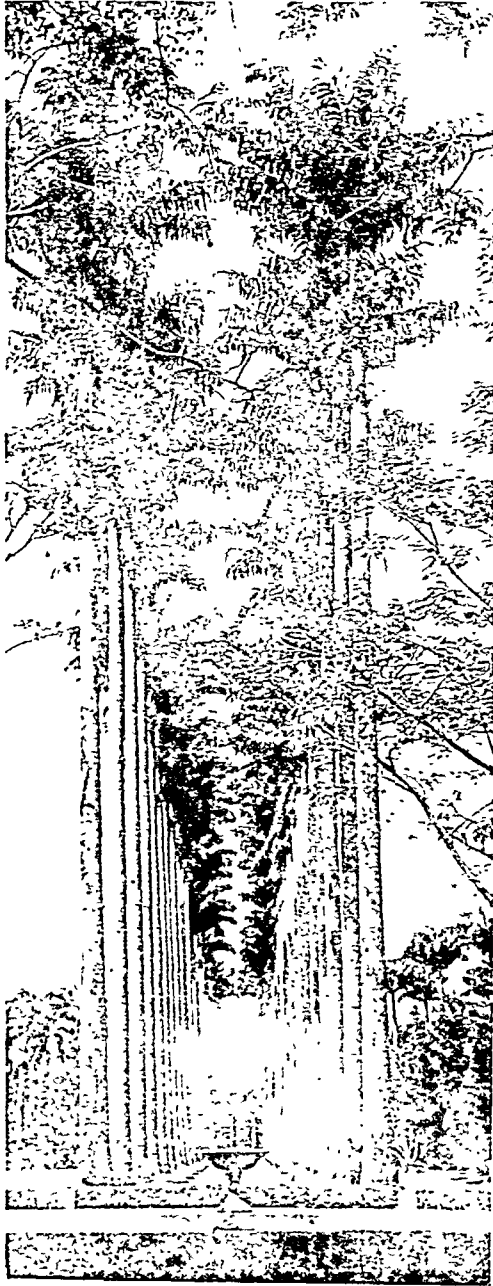


Aventail.—The movable part (X) of a helmet.

**aventurine** (ä ven' tür in), *n.* A kind of glass with gold-like spangles; an ornamental stone like this. Also spelt **aventurin**. (F. *aventurin*.)

About the year 1600 a workman in the famous glass works of Murano, in the Venetian lagoon, dropped by accident some copper filings into one of the crucibles where the glass was being made. When the glass

had finished heating he was afraid to look for fear that it might be spoilt. He might have spared himself his anxiety, for what he saw was a lovely reddish-brown glass shot through and through with spangles that glittered



Avenue. — The beautiful palm avenue in the Botanical Gardens of Rio de Janeiro, the capital of Brazil.

more brightly than gold. On that day the glass called *aventurine* was invented, and it became one of the best-known products of the Murano works. The Italian name

*avventurino* comes from *avventura* (chance) and from this accident of the Italian glass-maker this beautiful glass got its name.

In the Ural Mountains a kind of quartz is found which is spangled brilliantly with scales of mica or other mineral. This too is called *aventurine* because it looks so like the glass.

**avenue** (äv'e nū), *n.* A way by which to reach a place; the chief road leading up to a house at a distance from the public road; a wide street. (F. *avenue*.)

This word generally brings trees to the mind, but at first it meant only a road of some sort. Then owners of big houses took to planting trees along their approach roads and the tree idea was added.

In New York the streets are laid out four-square to the points of the compass. To make it easy for strangers, the north-to-south thoroughfares are called avenues and are numbered, and the others are called streets and are also numbered.

F. *avenue* (fem. pp. of *avenu*) approach to, from *n* = L. *ad* to, *venire* to come. SYN.: Access, approach, passage, walk.

**aver** (ä vër'), *v.t.* To assert confidently; to justify or offer to justify a plea. (F. *affirmer*, *avérer*.)

If we wish to make it particularly clear that we are perfectly sure of the truth of what we say, we aver the fact. In law, to *av r* is to prove or to offer to prove a plea. Anything which is *averrable* (ä vër' äbl, *adj.*) is capable of being averred. *Averment* (ä vër' ment, *n.*) is the act of averring, and in law a formal offer to prove a plea and the proof so offered.

L.L. *adverare* to declare or show to be true, from *ad* to, *verus* true. SYN.: Affirm, assert, declare, protest. ANT.: Contradict, deny, disavow.

**average** (äv'er äj), *n.* A mean amount; a mean estimate; ordinary degree; general type; a charge in addition to freight; the loss from damage to a ship or its cargo; a proportion of such loss. *adj.* Mean; medium; ordinary. *v.t.* To find the mean or average of. *v.i.* To amount to a mean. (F. *moyenne*, *avarie*, *moyen*; *prendre la moyenne*, *revenir terme moyen*.)

In regard to such things as numbers, measurements, quantities, or weights the average is arrived at by adding the numbers, quantities, etc., and dividing by the number of separate quantities added together. Thus the average of 6, 16, and 38 is 60 divided by 3, that is, 20. The average weight of three bullocks weighing 12, 14, and 16 hundredweights is 14 hundredweights, or, in other words, they weigh 14 hundredweights on an average. Batting and bowling averages at cricket are arrived at in the same way. *Averagely* (äv'er äj li, *adv.*) means up to the average, moderately, fairly. We might say that a man's behaviour is averagely good.

In connexion with the insurance of ships and their freights average has to do with

claims made upon the persons who insure a ship or cargo in the event of either being damaged or lost at sea. There are two main classes of average, general and particular.

Particular average relates to damage due to accident, such as the straining of a ship's hull by storms, the carrying away of a mast, damage to cargo by water or fire, and so on. Each person insured as owning the ship and cargo or a part of the cargo then puts in a claim for his particular loss, which may be great or small. General average is intentional damage done to a ship and all the cargo, or as much of it as necessary. For instance, a ship's mast may have to be cut away, or part of the cargo may have to be thrown overboard to save a leaking ship, or the holds may have to be flooded to put out a fire. In such a case it is only fair that the loss due to such damage should be shared by all the owners of the ship and cargo, since the act done was for the good of all. The fixing of the sums which have to be paid by the persons concerned is done by skilled people called average adjusters.

This much discussed word, originally meaning a duty on goods, probably goes back to Ital. *avere* and O.F. *aver* possessions, and ultimately to L. *habere* to have. -age is from L. *-aticum* (in form through F.) with same sense as in *carriage* expense of carting or carrying. SYN.: *adj.* Medium, moderate, ordinary ANT.: *adj.* Excessive, extreme, excellent

**Avernian** (à vēr' ni àn), *adj.* Of or relating to Lake Avernus, in Campania, Italy which the ancient Romans held to be the entrance to the lower world; infernal.

The name is somewhat fancifully derived from Gr. *aornos*, from *a-* not, *ornis* bird, it being supposed that any birds which flew across it died.

**averse** (à vēr's'), *adj.* Disliking; disinclined; unwilling. (F. *opposé à, qui a de l'aversion.*)

Either *to* or *from* may be used with this word. A miser is averse to parting with his money. When he has to spend any on food he does it aversely (à vēr's' li, *adv.*), with a feeling of averseness (à vēr's' nēs, *n.*). An aversion (à vēr' shùn, *n.*) is a strong dislike to a thing, person, or act, and also the object of such a dislike.

L. *avertere* (p.p. *aversus*), from *a-* = *ab* from, away, *vertere* to turn. SYN.: Disinclined, loath, reluctant, unwilling. ANT.: Desirous, disposed, inclined.

**avert** (à vēr't'), *v.t.* To turn away; to ward off (F. *détourner.*)

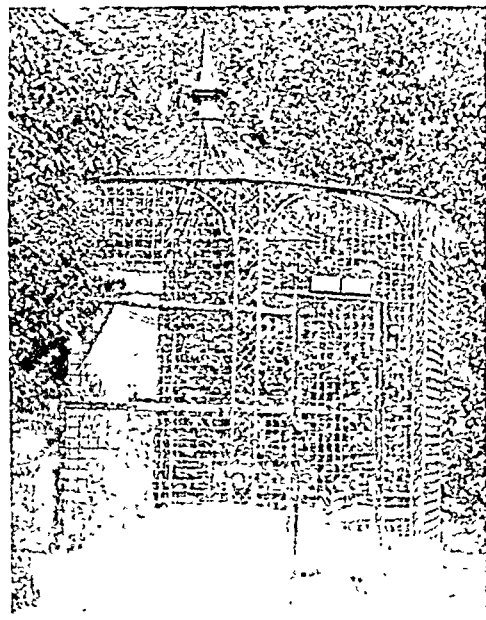
We avert our eyes from a horrible sight. A lightning-conductor is put up to avert the danger of the building being injured. A thing that can be turned aside or warded off is avertible (à vēr't' ibl, *adj.*).

L. *avertere*, from *a-* = *ab* from, away, *vertere* to turn. SYN.: Escape, evade, repel. ANT.: Court, seek, welcome.

**avian** (ā' vi àn), *adj.* Relating to birds. (F. *d'oiseaux.*)

This word is used mainly by scientists. If we study the avian life of our district we

would say that we study its bird life. A wire-netted enclosure containing birds, such as can be seen at the London Zoo, is called an aviary (ā' vi ā ri, *n.*). One who keeps an aviary is an aviarist (ā' vi ā rist, *n.*), and the



Aviary. — The ravens' aviary at the Zoological Gardens, London.

scientific rearing of birds is called aviculture (ā' vi kŭl chŭr, *n.*). The bird life of a country, district, or county as a whole is called the avifauna (ā' vi faw nā, *n.*).

L. *avis* bird, suffix *-an* pertaining to (L. *anus*).

**aviation** (ā vi ā' shŭn), *n.* The art of flying in machines heavier than air as opposed to ballooning; mechanical flight (F. *aviation.*)

The way was cleared for aviation by making models and by practice with gliding machines large enough to carry a man. The first model to fly under its own power was that of J. Stringfellow (1848). In 1896 the model of Professor S. P. Langley flew some distance on the Potomac River in America.

The Wrights built the first aeroplane in 1903, but the first man to make a machine able to lift itself and a crew was Sir Hiram Maxim. His machine ran on, and was held down by, rails. It weighed nearly four tons, and was driven by two steam-engines of 150 horse-power each. At its trial, on July 31st, 1894, the machine rose from the lower rails and travelled for some distance supporting itself in the air, while held down by the upper rails. Unluckily the machine was wrecked.

A person who aviates (ā' vi āts, *v.t.*) or pilots an aeroplane is an aviator (ā' vi ā tōr, *n.*) or airman.

L. *avis* bird, suffix *-ation* forming abstract nouns (L. *-atio, -onis*).

**avid** (äv' id), *adj.* Longing eagerly; ravenous. (F. *avide*.)

A starving person is avid for food. A miser is avid of money, and seizes avidly (äv' id i, *adv.*) any chance of adding to his hoard. People who have been long without food are apt to eat with such avidity (ä vid' i ti, *n.*) when food is found as to do themselves harm.

L. *avidus*, from *avere* to desire eagerly.

**avion** (äv you'), *n.* An aeroplane. (F. *avion*.)

This word was coined by a Frenchman named Clément Ader, who made an aeroplane like a large bird with leathers. It is seldom used now. See picture on page 70.

L. *avis* bird, suffix *-on* denoting large size.

**avocado** (äv ö ka' dö), *n.* The fruit of a tree belonging to the laurel family. (F. *avocat*.)

The tree is known scientifically as *Persea gratissima* and popularly as the alligator pear. The pear-shaped fruit has a firm marrow-like pulp and is chiefly used as a vegetable. The oil obtained from it is almost as valuable as palm oil in the manufacture of soap.

Spanish *abogado* (b pronounced almost as v) a corruption of Aztec *ahuacatl*.

**avocation** (äv ö ka' shün), *n.* One's regular work. (F. *occupation*.)

This word formerly meant something that called a person away from his ordinary occupation, a side interest or diversion. The meaning has been reversed, and the word is now used, generally in the plural, for a man's main business in life.

L. *avocatio* (gen. *-onis*), from *a* from, away *vocare* to call.

**avocet** (äv' ö set), *n.* A wading bird about the size of a common gull. Avocet is another spelling. (F. *avocette*.)

The avocet is related to the snipes. Its long bill is not straight but bends upwards being thus very serviceable in turning over the mud where it feeds. It is a European bird, but rare in Britain. Its scientific name is *Recurvirostra avocella*.

F. *avocette*, Ital. *avocetta*. The further derivation is unknown.



Avocet.—Once a frequent visitor to England, the avocet is now very rare.

**avoid** (ä void'), *v.t.* To try to escape from; to shun; to make void. (F. *éviter, annuler*.)

When we keep out of the way of a certain person we avoid him. In a legal sense, to avoid means to make void or invalid. The purchase of a house might be avoided in this sense by a flaw in the deeds. Many mistakes, if care is taken, are avoidable (ä void' äbl, *adj.*) The act of shunning a person or thing is avoidance, (ä void' äns, *n.*) which in law means either the act of making void or the act of becoming or the state of being vacant.

O.F. *esvier*, from *es*=L. *ex* out, F. *vider* to empty (possibly connected with L. *viduus* widower, bereft of). SYN.: Avert, dodge, elude, escape, eschew. ANT.: Approach, court, seek.

**avoirdupois** (äv' er dü poiz), *n.* The standard system of weights in Britain and the U.S.A. for all goods except gold and silver, gems and drugs; weight. (F. *avoir-du-poids*.)

The system is based on a pound consisting of 16 ounces, which is equal to 7,000 grains and is often called an avoirdupois pound to distinguish it from a pound troy, the weight used for gold, silver and drugs.

The word is sometimes used in speaking of someone who is above the usual weight.

M.E. *aver de peis*, O.F. *avoir de pois*, from L. *labere* to have, *dē* of, *pensum* anything weighed, from *pendere* to weigh, p.p. *pensus* (neuter *-um*)

**avoset** (äv' ö set). This is another spelling of avocet. See avocet.

**avouch** (ä vouch'), *v.t.* To affirm positively; to proclaim; to guarantee; to confess. *v.i.* To give assurance (F. *affirmer, avouer; donner l'assurance*.)

When we declare a thing to be true because we can prove it to be true we avouch it. We can avouch for somebody's reputation as a capable business man. Anything which can be vouched for is avouchable (ä vouch' äbl, *adj.*) Avouchment (ä vouch' mēt, *n.*) is the act of avouching or the thing avouched.

O.F. *avochier*, from *a*=L. *ad* to, L. *vocare* to summon, to call upon someone as a guarantor. SYN.: Assert, asseverate, avow, declare, profess. ANT.: Contradict, deny, gainsay.

**avow** (ä vou'), *v.t.* To declare openly. *v.i.* To acknowledge and maintain. (F. *avouer, déclarer*.)

When we avow a thing we either declare it with a view to justifying ourselves or else we simply confess it. A thing that can be avowed is avowable (ä vou' äbl, *adj.*) A lover may make an avowal (ä vou' äl, *n.*) of his love and a criminal of his crime.

When we say that a person is avowedly (ä vou' ed li, *adv.*) poor or rich or proud we mean that he is presumably to be considered so, as he has confessed to that particular condition. In law avowry (ä vou' ri, *n.*) is the acknowledgment and justification of an act.

O.F. *avoer*, from *a*=L. *ad* to, *vocare* to call upon someone as a guarantor. The word is a doublet of avouch. SYN.: Admit, allege, confess, declare, own. ANT.: Disavow, disclaim, repudiate.



**avulsion** (à vŭl' shŭn), *n.* Forcible separation; a part torn off or otherwise separated; the sudden wrenching away of land by the flooding or diversion of a river. (F. *avulsion*, *arrachement*.)

This word is seldom used now. After land has suffered avulsion there is no change of ownership—it still belongs to the original owner.

L. *avulsio* (acc. -*onem*), from *a* from, away, *vellere* (p.p. *vulsus*) to pull, tear.

**avuncular** (à vŭng' kŭ lâr), *adj.* Of, relating to, or like an uncle. (F. *avunculaire*.)

L. *avunculus* uncle, suffix -*ar* connected with (L. -*arius*). See uncle.

**await** (à wât'), *v.t.* To wait for; to be in store for. (F. *attendre*.)

We may await the result of an election, or the arrival of a person, or we may await certain news. In all such cases the word usually implies that we are also expecting them. We can also speak of honours awaiting a man who deserves them.

M.E. *awaite*, O.F. *awaitier*, *aguather* to watch for (modern F. *guetter*), from *a*=L. *ad* to, for, and a Teut. *v.* =E. *wait*.

**awake** (à wāk'), *v.t.* and *i.* To rouse from or come out of sleep; to change from dullness or indifference to alertness; to arouse (a feeling). *adj.* Not asleep; watchful, fully conscious. (F. *éveiller*, *s'éveiller*; *éveillé*, *vigilant*.)

A cruel act awakes anger in the beholder. When war breaks out the spirit of a nation awakes. When one ceases to sleep one is awake. A shrewd business man is awake to his opportunities; he keeps all his faculties awake. The detective that is in most men is easily awakable (à wāk' àbl, *adj.*).

To awaken (à wāk' en, *v.t.* and *i.*) means the same as to awake. The old song says: "Peel's 'View Halloo!' would awaken the dead." The act of coming out of sleep is an awakening (à wāk' en ing, *n.*). An awakening town is one in which people are beginning to stir, and an awakening speech one that rouses the people who hear it. Few people are so unimpressible as not to be awakenable (à wāk' en àbl, *adj.*) by a really eloquent speech.

M.E. *awecchen*, A.-S. *aweccan*, from A.-S. prefix *ā* (causal) or =*on* (as in asleep), and *wake*. SYN.: Excite, kindle, provoke. ANT.: Allay, lull, quiet.

**awanting** (à won' ting), *adj.* Missing. (F. *manquant*.) This word is another form of wanting. It is not used much in England, but is common in Scotland.

Prefix *a-* (intensive or =*on*) and *wanting*, pres. p. of *want*.

**award** (à wörd'), *v.t.* To assign; to grant; to bestow as a reward or honour. *n.* A thing awarded; a decision by a judge or umpire; the document embodying such a decision. (F. *décerner*, *donner*; *don*, *décision*.)

A judge awards damages in a civil action. A prize may be awarded for merit, or a medal

for good conduct, bravery, or a service to science. When a matter is referred to arbitration the findings of the arbitrator are called the award.

O.F. *awarder*, *esguarder*, from *es*=L. *ex* out, L.L. *wardare* to keep watch, make a decision, from a Teut. *v.* See guard, ward. SYN.: *v.* Adjudge, apportion, decree, determine, distribute. ANT.: *v.* Retain, withhold.



Award.—A Boy Scout awarded the Silver Cross for saving a girl from drowning.

**aware** (à wär'), *adj.* Conscious. (F. *instruit*.)

A good man who is aware of his strength does not abuse it. His very awareness (à wär' nés, *n.*) makes him gentle.

M.E. *war*, A.-S. *gewær*, *ge-* meaningless prefix, *war* wary; cp. G. *gewahr*. SYN.: Cognizant, informed, sensible, sure. ANT.: Ignorant, insensible, unaware, unconscious, uninformed.

**a-wash** (à wosh'), *adv.* On a level with the surface of the sea; washed by waves. (F. *à niveau de la mer*.)

When a ship, owing to a leaky hull or to the roughness of the sea, has taken in so much water that it has sunk until the deck is flush with the surface of the water it is a-wash.

E. *a-* =*on*, and *wash*.

**away** (à wā'), *adv.* From; off; at a distance; aside; out of sight or existence; continuously. (F. *de*, *loin*, *à part*, *absent*, *sans relâche*.)

When we say that a person is away we mean that he is absent. To work away at anything is to work continuously or constantly. Away with you! means Go away! or Be off! I cannot away with means I

cannot endure. To do away or make away with anything is to destroy it. When we say that a thing is far and away or out and away the best we mean it is very much better than the rest. Fire away! means begin without delay. Right away! is the expression used by a railway-guard when he signals to the engine-driver that everything is all right. Right away also means immediately.

A.-S. *onwaeg*, *on* and *way*.

**awe** [ɪ] (aw), *n.* Fear mixed with reverence; wonder tinged with fear. *v.t.* To inspire with such emotions; to influence by such emotions. (F. *crainte*, *respect*; *fiapper de crainte*.)

Awe is the feeling of dread combined with veneration that we experience, say, in church during a solemn ceremony or in the presence of the majesty of the law. It is also that feeling of wonder not unmixed with fear which is aroused when we behold the sublime in nature such as a terrific thunderstorm or a very rugged mountain scene.

When one person is kept in awe of another, he is restrained by fear from approaching too near. Such a person, so influenced, is awe-struck (aw' strūk, *adj.*), and anything which has the power of inspiring awe is awful (aw' fūl, *adj.*). This last word, together with the adverb awfully (aw' fūl l), is now often used very lightly and casually simply to add force to a statement. This is a modern misuse of a good old word, examples of such misuse being "awful pity or awfully" regrettable. The awfulness (aw' fūl nes, *n.*) of anything is really its appalling effect although this word, too, is nowadays used in the same casual way as awful and awfully. An awesome (aw' sōm, *adj.*) sight is a sight that inspires awe. The effect of such a sight may be described as being awesomely (aw' sōm l, *adv.*) impressive or as impressing the onlookers by its awesomeness (aw' sōm nes, *n.*). Aweless (aw' les, *adj.*) means without fear or without awe. A man who has no reverence in his composition is characterized by awelessness (aw' les nes, *n.*).

M.E. *aghe*, *eghe*, A.-S. *ege*, O. Norse *agi*, akin to Gr *akhos* pain, distress. *SYN.*: Dread, respect, veneration. *ANT.*: Contempt, disrespect, insolence, irreverence.

**awe** [2] (aw), *n.* A float-board of an undershot water-wheel. (F. *aube d'une roue*.)

An undershot water-wheel is one which receives the water at the bottom, and the boards on the rim on which the water acts and so makes the wheel go round are the awes.

The etymology is unknown. The French equivalent is said to be derived from L. *albus* (white) in reference to the colour of the wood with which such float-boards were made.

**awearry** (ā wēr' i), *adj.* Tired. This is a poetical form of the word weary. (F. *très fatigué*.)

E. *a-* intensive, and *weary*.

**a-weather** (ā weth' èr), *adv.* On the weather side, that is, on the side from which the wind is coming. This is a term used by sailors. (F. *au vent*.)

E. *a-* = *on*, and *weather*.

**a-weigh** (ā wā'), *adv.* With the flukes just having left the bottom of the sea. This is a word which is used by sailors to describe the position of the anchor.

Prefix *a-* = *on*, and *weigh*. *SYN.*: A-trip.

**awful** (aw' fūl), *adj.* Inspiring awe; filled with awe. See under awe.

**awhile** (ā whū'), *adv.* For a short time;

or a little. (F. *pendant quelque temps*; un peu.)

The correct use of this word is seen in Cardinal Newman's beautiful hymn, "Lead, Kindly Light," in the line:

Which I have loved long since, and lost awhile. It is not correct to write after awhile (one word).

A.-S. *ane* one, *hwile* while, time.

**awkward** (awk' wārd), *adj.* Clumsy; ill at ease; difficult to deal with; embarrassing. (F. *maladroit, gauche, embarrassant*.)

A boy who is constantly dropping and breaking things must be either very awkward or very careless. A piece of furniture which is difficult to handle may be described as awkward and a child who is wilful or obstinate may be called awkward. A man caught by the tide is in an awkward position. Shy people often behave awkwardly (awk' wārd l, *adv.*) in company, but, once they are put at their ease, their awkwardness (awk' wārd nes, *n.*) disappears. Awkwardish (awk' wārd ish, *adj.*) means rather awkward.

M.E. *auk*, *awk* left-handed, perverse, in the wrong manner, O. Norse *aflug*, from *a* off, and *-ward*, E. suffix implying direction. *SYN.*: Bungling, ungainly, unhandy. *ANT.*: Delt, dexterous, easy.



Away.—A railway-guard signalling "Right-away!" to the engine-driver.

**awl** (awl), *n.* A sharp pointed instrument, for piercing leather, wood, and other substances which do not need to be drilled. (F. *alène*.) Its habit of boring wood has given the green woodpecker the name of awlbird (awl' bērd, *n.*) in some districts.

M.E. *alle*, *awel*, *al*, A.-S. *ael*, *al*; cp. G. *ahle*.

**Awl.**—A marking awl and knife used in carpentry and other trades.

**awn** (awn), *n.* The beard of corn, barley, oats, and certain grasses; a bristle resembling this. (F. *barbe*.)

The bracts enclosing the florets of some kinds of corn and grass end in a sharp, bristle-like outgrowth. This is the awn or arista. Some species of wheat are awnless (awn' les, *adj.*), and some are awned (awnd *adj.*). Some diatoms are awned, having pointed outgrowths from their shells or tests; others are awnless.

M.E. *agune*, *awene*, *awne*, A.-S. *aegnan* (pl.) awns, sweepings, cognate with Goth. *ahana* chaff and Gr. *akhnē*.

**awning** (awn' ing), *n.* A covering of canvas or the like to protect against sun or rain; the part of the poop-deck forward of the cabin bulkhead. (F. *banne*, *auvent*.)

Awning is often used at social functions, such as garden-parties. At sea, instead of

**awoke** (ā wōk'), *v.* This is the past tense of awake. See awake.

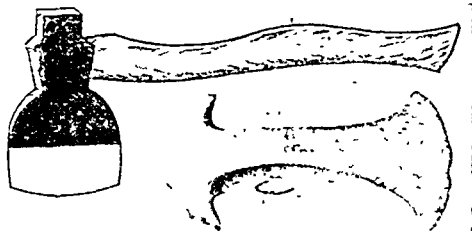
**awry** (ā rī'), *adv.* and *adj.* Crookedly; twisted; amiss. (F. *de travers*.)

A necktie out of its proper position is awry. A plan goes awry when it fails.

*A* = *on*, and *wry*. SYN.: Askew, slanting, ANT.: Direct, straight, true.

**axe** (äks), *n.* A tool for cutting and chopping, with a wedge-shaped head of steel, ground to a sharp edge, fitted on the end of a wooden handle, called the helve. *v.t.* To cut with an axe; to furnish with an axe. (F. *hache*; *hacher*.)

Axes with heads of stone were made many thousands of years ago, long before iron was known, during what is called the Later Stone Age. Many of the stone axe-heads (*n.pl.*) that have been dug up are beautifully formed.



**Axe.**—An axe of to-day and of the Stone Age, many thousands of years ago.

and the shaping and polishing of them, by rubbing on other stones, must have taken a very long time.

Iron and steel axes of various shapes and sizes were used as weapons by the ancient Greeks and Romans, and by European soldiers until the invention of gunpowder.

The lictors who walked in front of the Roman magistrates carried on their left shoulder a bundle of rods (*fascēs*), axed, that is, furnished with an axe, which was bound up in the middle.

Nowadays the axe is used chiefly for felling trees and cutting off branches. A woodman or a warrior armed with an axe is an axeman (*n.*)

A.-S. *aer*, G. *axt*, cp. Gr. *axinē*, L. *ascia* = *ascia*, possibly from the root *ac* in *acutus* sharp, *acus* needle.

**axil** (äks' il), *n.* The angle between a leaf-stalk and the stem, or between a branch and the trunk of a tree. (F. *aisselle*.)

The buds of trees grow in the axils of the leaves, and are therefore axillary (äks il' ā rī, *adj.*). The scientific name for the armpit is axilla (aks il' ā, *n.*).

L. *axilla* armpit, a dim. form.

**axiom** (äks' i ōm), *n.* A fact upon which all agree; a self-evident truth. (F. *axiome*.)

No progress is possible in science or mathematics unless we agree upon certain elementary truths, which are called axiomatic (äks i ō māt' ik, *adj.*) or axiomatical (äks i ō māt' ik āl, *adj.*). The axioms of Euclid, upon which geometry is founded, are perhaps



**Awning.**—The King and Queen of England standing under an awning.

canvas, tarpaulin is generally used. Anything which is fitted with an awning is said to be awned (awnd, *adj.*).

F. *auvent*, perhaps from L. *ante* before, *ventus* wind. Others connect with L. *ante* and *annus* fan.

the best-known examples. Any writer who puts forward his facts as self-evident is said to write axiomatically (äks i ò mät' ik äi li, *adv.*).

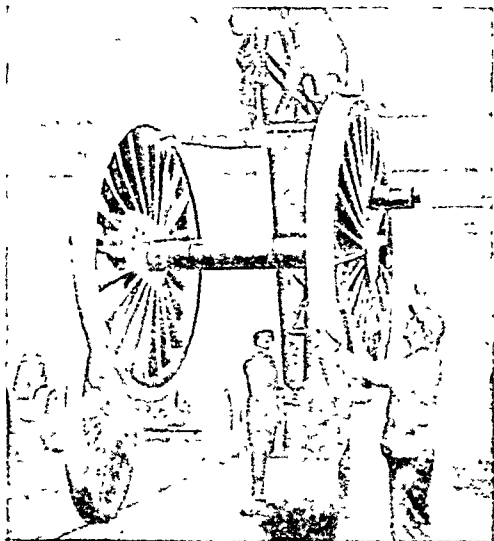
Gr. *axiōma* what is thought worthy (of belief), from *axiōon* to think worthy (*axios*). SYN.: Maxim, truism. ANT.: Absurdity, paradox, sophism.

**axis** (äks' is), *n.* A line about which a body revolves; a line dividing a regular figure into two equal parts; the central part round which a plant is arranged; the second bone of the neck; a ray of light passing through the centre of the eye or a lens, or falling perpendicularly upon it. The plural is axes (F. *axe*.)

This word often occurs in mathematics and geometry. Co-ordinate axes, or axes of reference, are lines at right angles to one another to which reference is made in the solution of certain geometrical and mathematical problems. In crystallography the axis is the line about which a crystal can be built up symmetrically.

Botanists use the terms ascending axis and descending axis for the stem and root of a plant respectively. A line forming an axis is called an axial (äks' i äi, *adj.*) line, and when anything is on an axis it is said to be axile (äks' il, *adj.*). Axially (äks' i äi li, *adv.*) means in the direction of the axis and axially (äks i äi' i ti, *n.*) is the quality of being axial. Axile (äks' il, *adj.*) bodies are the small bodies connected with the sense of touch at the ends of the nerves of feeling.

L. *axis*, cp. Gr. *axōn*, from root *agein* to drive.



Axle.—Fixing wheels on to the axle of a locomotive at the Great Western Railway works at Swindon.

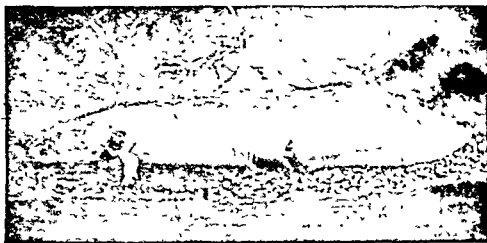
**axle** (äks' i), *n.* The pin or shaft on which a wheel turns, or which turns with the wheel and in sockets or bearings. (F. *essieu*.)

An axle may have wheels fixed on both ends, as in a railway carriage. The circular

parts on the end of an axle-tree are also called axles.

An axle-box (*n.*) is the steel tube in the hub of a wheel which turns on a fixed axle; or, as in the case of a railway carriage, it is the fixed part in which a revolving axle turns. All axle-boxes have a cover of some kind to hold the oil or grease which makes the one part move easily round or in the other. An axle-tree (*n.*) is the wooden or metal beam or bar on which the axles of a cart are mounted. An axle-tree with axles on it is axled (äks' id, *adj.*).

M.E. *axel(tre)* from O. Norse *öxul(trē)* axle-tree, cp. A.-S. *eaxl* shoulder, G. *achsel* shoulder-joint, armpit, L. *axilla*.



Axolotl.—A peculiar salamander, called the axolotl, found in Mexico and the United States.

**axolotl** (äks' ò lotl), *n.* The tadpole form of a salamander found in Mexico and the United States. (F. *axolotl*.)

Thus extraordinary animal usually remains all its life in the larval or tadpole stage, retains its gills, and breeds in the lakes where it lives, but occasionally develops lungs and lives on dry ground as a true salamander. Its scientific name is *Amblystoma Mexicana*.

The Aztec name means servant of water.

**ayah** (i' ä), *n.* The name given by English people in India to a native nurse. (F. *bonne*.)

Port. *aiá* nurse, perhaps connected with L. *avia* grandmother.

**aye** [i] (i), *inter.* Yes, *n.* An affirmative vote in the House of Commons; one of those who vote thus. Another spelling is ay. (F. *oui*.)

A sailor says, "Aye, aye, sir!" in reply to his captain's command, meaning that he understands the order and is on at once to carry it out. The word is also used in such phrases as "Once, aye twice," and "Aye, but not young men only have ventured."

When a question is put to the vote in the House of Commons, those who vote in favour of the motion, in other words, those who say "Yes" to the proposal, are called the ayes (iz, *n.pl.*).

The word is probably another form of *yea*.

**aye** [2] (ä), *adv.* Always. (F. *toujours*.)

This word is used in poetry, and, in conversation, in the northern parts of Britain. For ever and aye, meaning for ever, is used in poetry in England and in prose in Scotland.

M.E. *ay*, from O. Norse *ei* ever; cp. Gr. *a(i)ei*.

**aye-aye** (i' i), *n.* A lemur found in Madagascar. (F. *aye-aye*.)

This tree-climbing animal, which looks something like a monkey and some hing like a cat, is so named because its call sounds like "aye-aye." It has thick fur and a very long, bushy tail, and its fingers and toes are also unusually long. It has been kept at the Zoo, in London. Its scientific name is *Cheiromys madagascariensis*.



Aye-aye.—The name of this Madagascar lemur was taken from its call, which sounds like "aye-aye."

**Ayrshire** (är' shir), *n.* A breed of dairy cattle.

First developed in Ayrshire, this breed of heavy milkers is now kept in many other dairying counties. The Ayrshire is a red and white or brown and white cow, with horns that are different from those of other breeds—long, and pointing outwards, with the points curved backwards.

**Azalea** (ä zä' le ä), *n.* A genus of shrubby plants. (F. *azaléa*.)

Azaleas are very much like the rhododendron, to which they are related. The blossoms grow in clusters and are noted for their variety of brilliant colours. The scientific name of the British species is *Azalea procumbens*.



Azalea.—A relation of the rhododendron.

Gr. *azaleos* dry, with reference to the dry ground in which it thrives, from *azein* to dry up.

**Azarole** (äz' ä röl), *n.* The Neapolitan medlar tree; its fruit. (F. *azarole*.)

This tree is a species of hawthorn (*Crataegus azarolus*) which bears a pleasant apple-like fruit, resembling a medlar.

The name is of Arabic origin, from *az* (= *al* the), *zurūr*.

**Azilian** (ä zil' i än), *adj.* Belonging or relating to the prehistoric period that links the Old and New Stone Ages. (F. *azilien*.)

This period was named after a site in the Pyrenees—the cavern of Mas d'Azil, Ariège, France—where many relics of the period were excavated.

Until recently it was thought that the Later Cave Men, like many animals of their time, disappeared in some unknown disaster that left Europe desolate and uninhabited

until the arrival of the Neolithic folk with new industries and fuller resources. Now we are learning that in many places, including Britain, groups of people lingered on, making flint tools in the old way and also fashioning crude pottery and keeping domestic animals, thus partly forestalling the New Stone Age.

Some of the flints are of pigmy smallness, and of triangular shape, such as those found at Fère-en-Tardenois and elsewhere, to which the general name of Tardenoisian is given. Hence the period is sometimes called Azilio-Tardenoisian (ä zil' yō tard noi' zi än, *adj.*). It is now included by modern scientists in the Mesolithic or Middle Stone Age, which began some 20,000 years ago.

The Azilians (ä zil' i än, *n. pl.*) may possibly have been ancestors of the Iberian race, and they are distinguished by the round pebbles they have left behind them on which red lines and dots are painted. These relics may have been money, or toys, or writings, but this is an unsolved problem.

The Mas d'Azil cavern is remarkable for another reason. It is a tunnel a quarter of a mile long, through which a river flows. In the middle there are further caves, where an army is supposed to have hidden during the Albigensian Crusade in the thirteenth century.

**azimuth** (äz' i müth), *n.* The angular distance of a heavenly body from the north or south point of the horizon; the angle between the meridian and a vertical plane passing through the body. (F. *azimut*.)

The true azimuth of a star or planet is the angle between the north (in the northern hemisphere) and the south (in the southern hemisphere) point of the horizon and the point where the meridian passing through the body cuts the horizon. The magnetic azimuth is the angle between the true azimuth and the magnetic meridian. The magnetic azimuth is found by means of the azimuth-compass (*n.*). The azimuth-circle (*n.*) is a circle passing through the zenith, and cutting the horizon at right angles. An azimuth-dial (*n.*) is a dial which has its rod or gnomon at right angles to the plane of the horizon, showing the azimuth of the sun. Anything relating to the azimuth or in azimuth is said to be azimuthal (äz i mü' thäl, *adj.*), and the horizon is said to be azimuthally (äz i mü' thäl li, *adv.*) placed.

Arabic *as-samit*, *pl.* *as-samāt* telescope revolving in the plane of the ways, paths quarters (of the horizon).

**azoic** (ä zō' ik), *adj.* Bearing no trace of life. (F. *azoïque*.)

This term is applied to rocks, strata, etc., that contain no fossils or other sure indications that life existed at the time they were formed.

The first hard, heated crust, called the fundamental gneiss, that formed in past ages round the molten world could hardly have borne life. With the coming of water layers of dust were deposited and became the first

sedimentary rocks. These are also called the lifeless or azoic rocks, but present-day scientists say that these rocks contain chemicals that may have been left by tiny living things, although no certain sign of their existence can be found. The first traces of life—the remains of sea plants and mud tracks of worms—come later, in a layer formed, according to modern views, about six million years ago, which is perhaps less than half the age of the oldest rocks.

Gr. *azōos* not showing life, from *a-* not, *zōē* life, suffix *-ic* (Gr. *-ikos*).

**azotize** (ăz' ô tîz), *v.t.* To render nitrogenous; to remove oxygen from a substance. This word comes from *azote*, an old word for nitrogen, and is very rarely used now. (F. *azoter*.)

*Azote*, from Gr. *azōos*, from *a-* not, *zōē* life, and suffix *-ize* implying reduction to a certain state.

**Aztec** (ăz' tek), *adj.* Of or relating to a Mexican civilization founded by an invading Indian tribe about the twelfth century, and destroyed by the Spaniards in 1519; relating to relics of ancient Mexico generally. *n.* A member of the Aztec tribe or race; its language. (F. *aztèque*.)

The vast wealth of the Aztecs, their proud cities and temples, their cruel religion with its hundreds of human victims yearly, are a fit background to one of the most exciting tales of history. How Hernando Cortes, the Spanish general, burnt his ships and marched with a handful of men against this great empire; how the Spanish horsemen were thought to be men growing from the bodies of beasts, while Cortes was taken for a god; how they captured Montezuma, the Aztec ruler, and eventually subdued this strange race, thus gaining for Charles V of Spain "more provinces," as Cortes said, "than he had towns before," is a romantic story that must be read in full.

The name Aztec is said to mean the people of the heron or crane.

**azure** (ăzh' ěr; ăzh' ūr), *n.* Lapis lazuli; a term applied to various things of a blue colour. *adj.* Blue; cloudless. *v.t.* To make blue. (F. *pierre d'azur*, *lapis lazuli*; *azuré*; *azurer*.)

This word is another name for the beautiful blue stone lapis lazuli, and so is used also for the colour blue and for several blue things. When there are no clouds in the sky the blue colour seen and the whole cloudless vault of heaven and the sea in which it is reflected are all called the azure, and their colour azure.

In olden times azure meant the very deep blue that is seen in the skies of southern Europe, but now it is used for the lighter blue of English skies.

There is a bright blue dye called azure, and paper can be azured (ăzh' ěrd, *p.p.*) with aniline dyes. The ornamental stone lazulite is sometimes known as azure-spar (*n.*) or azure-stone (*n.*). The blue in a coat of arms is called azure. If a picture of a coat of arms is in black and white the azure or blue part of it can always be recognized because it is shown by horizontal lines.

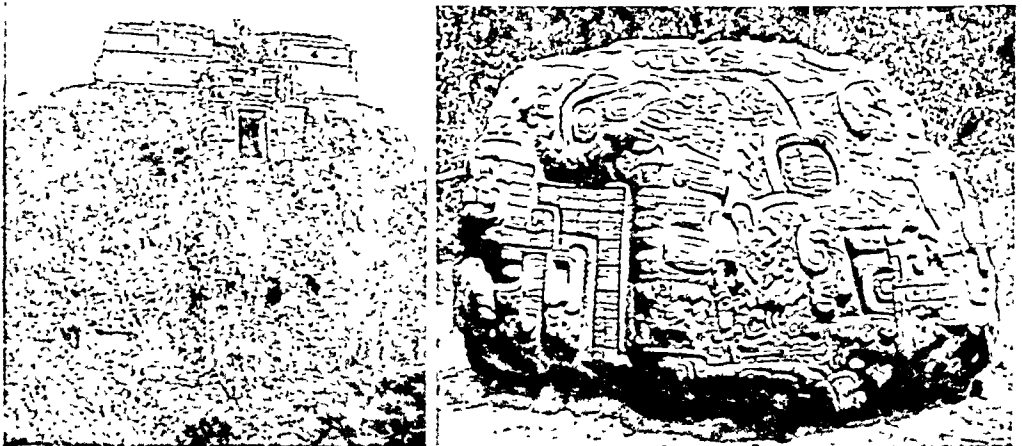
There is a kind of roach called from its slaty-blue back the azurine (ăzh' ūr in, *n.*). It is one of the fish found only in Lancashire. Its scientific name is *Leuciscus caeruleus*. **Azurite** (ăzh' ūr ĩt, *n.*) is the name of a bright blue-mineral found in copper mines.

M.E. *asūr*, O.F. *azur*, L.L. *lazura*, *azur* (l being dropped as if it represented the article), Pers. *lazzward*.

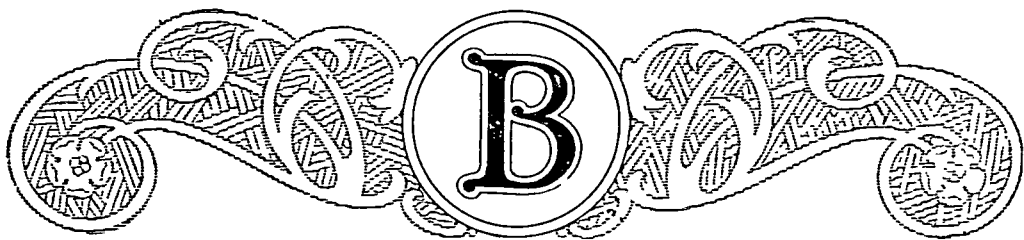
**azyme** (ăz' ĩm; ăz' ĩm), *n.* The cake of unleavened bread used by the Jews at the Passover meal. (F. *azyme*, *pain sans levain*.)

One who uses unleavened bread or wafers in the celebration of the Eucharist is termed an azymite (ăz' ĩ mĭt, *n.*). The word was originally applied by the Greek Church to Roman Catholics. The bread, which is unfermented or unleavened bread, is called **azymous** (ăz' ĩ mŭs, *adj.*) bread.

Gr. *azymos*, from *a-* not, *zymē* leaven.



Aztec.—Two relics of the wonderful Aztec civilization of ancient Mexico. The house of the magician of Uxmal, built on a lofty pyramid, and a sculptured boulder.

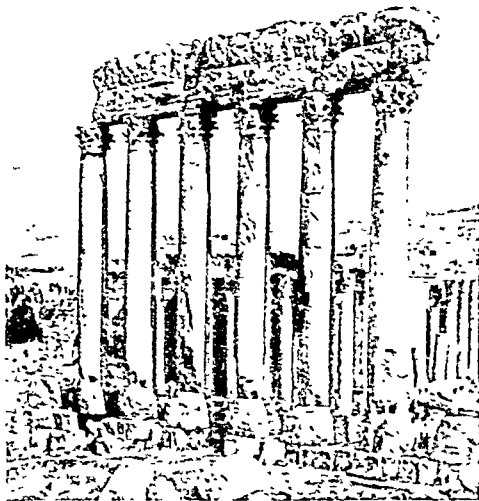


**B, b** (bē). The second letter and the first consonant of the English language.

Although in most European alphabets *b* is the second letter, in others, especially Eastern, it takes various positions. In Sanskrit it is the twenty-third of the consonants and in Armenian it is placed twenty-sixth in an alphabet of thirty-six letters. The interesting history of this letter is told on page x.

The letter *b* is one of the mutes and labials.

Mute means a sound produced by the complete closure of the organs of the mouth, or the interruption of the passage of the breath, and labial a sound, or letter representing a sound, formed with the lips. It is actually a voiced mute, which means that the voice vibrates the vocal cords when uttering it as is not the case with a voiceless mute, for example, the letter *p*. It is sounded by closing and opening the lips. The ease with which labials can be pronounced accounts for *b* being one of the first letters that children are able to utter.



**Baal.**—The huge columns of a temple at Baalbek, in Syria, one of the cities in which Baal was worshipped.

In some languages *b* has often a different value from that which it possesses in English, sometimes being sounded as *v* and at other times as *p*. In modern Greek *b* is always pronounced as *v*, and in Spanish it is so pronounced in certain words. In some languages *b* becomes *p* in certain circumstances, in Latin, for example, when it appears before *p*; thus *ob* becomes *op* in *opprimere* (= *ob-premere*). When it appears as the end letter of a syllable or word, the German people always pronounce it as *p*, a letter which is uttered in a very similar manner, being a voiceless instead of a voiced mute. One peculiarity of *b* in certain English words is that its absence would not affect their pronunciation; it is not sounded at all, and is therefore said to be silent. A few such words are bdellium, climb, debt, dumb, lamb, subtle.

With the Greeks and the Hebrews *B* was the symbol for 2, as it was occasionally in England. In Latin it represents 300, and with a dash over the top (*B̄*), it stands for 3,000; sometimes, also, a kind of accent is placed below it to signify 200. It is the second of the dominical letters, and in music it is the seventh note of the scales of *C* major and minor, and is the leading-note of these keys. As a motor-car index mark it denotes the county of Lancashire.

As an initial it is the recognized abbreviation for *Baccalaureus*, in *Artium Baccalaureus* = Bachelor of Arts (B.A.), for *Bachelor* in Bachelor of Medicine (M.B.), and various other degrees, in music for bass, for the element boron in chemistry, for which it is also the symbol, for *before* in before Christ (B.C.), etc.

**baa** (ba), *n.* The distinctive cry or bleat of a sheep. *v.i.* To make a sound like the cry or bleat of a sheep. (F. *bélement*, *bêler*.)

**Baal** (bā' āl), *n.* The chief god of the Phoenicians and Canaanites, a false god. (F. *Baal*.)

Under this name, which means owner or possessor (of the earth), the forces of nature were worshipped by the early inhabitants of Palestine. Baal was the god of the sun, which made the earth fruitful, and of the storms and earthquakes, which made the land tremble. Against this idolatry and the evil rites connected with it the children of Israel were repeatedly warned. It was against the prophets of this heathen deity that Elijah made his magnificent stand.

The worship of Baal or any deified natural force is Baalism (bā' āl izm, *n.*). One who commits such idolatry is a Baalist (bā' āl ist, *n.*) or a Baalite (bā' āl ite).

**babacoote** (ba' bā koot), *n.* A name for the indri, the largest of the lemurs, of Madagascar. (F. *indri*.) Babakoto (ba bā kō' tō) is the native name.

**babbitt metal** (băb' it met' ál), *n.* An alloy used for lining the bearings of engines and parts of machines subject to much friction. (F. *métal Babbitt*.)

The composition of the alloy varies according to the conditions under which it is used. One kind (for light work) is made up of 1 part copper, 5 parts antimony, 50 parts tin. Another kind, much richer in copper, is suitable for heavy work. It is named after its inventor, Isaac Babbitt (1799-1862).

**babble** (băb' l), *v.i.* To talk indistinctly, like a child; to talk too much or out of season; to flow on without ceasing; to bay at the wrong moment. *v.t.* To utter foolishly; to reveal by talking. *n.* A continuous stream of shallow, monotonously foolish talk; an indistinct murmur similar to that made by a tumbling brook. This sound often comes from a number of voices heard more or less indistinctly by an outsider. (F. *bégaver, babiller, babil*.)

When hounds give tongue or bay, as though they had picked up the scent of their quarry, when, as a matter of fact, they have not done so, but are merely barking from sheer excitement, they are said to babble. Foolish talk, which is also somewhat indiscreet, is babblement (băb' l mēnt, *n.*), and the same word is used to describe the murmuring sound of a constantly flowing stream, which ripples and leaps and splashes over tiny pebbles and other obstructions, making a babbling (băb' ling, *adj.*) sound in doing so. A babler (băb' ler, *n.*) is a person who persists in talking continuously, one who in so doing is apt to blurt out secrets. Babler is also the popular name for the long-legged thrushes.

The word is derived from the child's *baba*, the suffix *-le* being frequentative; akin to Dutch *babbelen*, G. *babbeln*. SYN.: *v.* Blab, cackle, chatter, gossip, prate, prattle. *n.* Garrulity, gossip, loquacity, talk, tittle-tattle, twaddle.

**babe** (băb), *n.* A baby; young child; a childish person; an inexperienced person. (F. *enfant, enfantin*.)

This word is chiefly used as a poetical term for a baby, although we can say that a man who is not acquainted with a certain subject is a babe in such matters.

The word is derived from *baba*, an imitation of a child's attempts to speak.

**Babel** (bă' bel), *n.* The tower which was not completed owing to the confused speech of the builders (Genesis xi). (F. *tour de Babel*.)

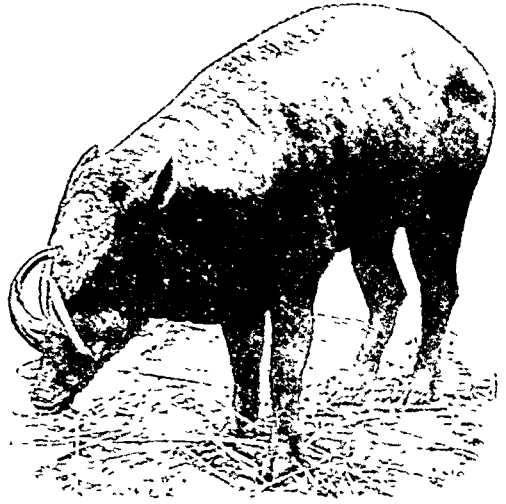
The word is used for any high tower, or figuratively for a vain project or a scene of confusion and disorder. Its meaning is gate of God.

**babiroussa** (ba bi roos' ā), *n.* The East Indian wild hog. Another spelling is *babirusa*. (F. *babiroussa*.)

This animal is sometimes called the horned hog because of its long tusks, especially the upper ones, which pierce the upper lip and curve backwards almost to the forehead.

From its long legs, and because it is less bristly than the common hog, it is also called the hog-deer.

Malay *bābi* hog, *rūsa* deer.



**Babiroussa.**—The babiroussa, or East Indian wild hog.

**baboo** (ba' boo), *n.* An Indian term of respect used mainly in eastern India; a native Indian gentleman; a Hindu clerk or official who writes English or who has a veneer of modern education. Another spelling is *babu*. (F. *babou*.)

This word was formerly used, much like the English "Mr." and "Sir," as an ordinary term of respect. It is now chiefly applied in a slighting sense to a native Indian clerk, especially a Bengali, who affects more education than he really has. Baboo English is the term applied to the quaint distorted form of English used by these imperfectly educated Indians. Baboodom (ba' boo dōm, *n.*) and babooism (ba' boo izm) mean this attitude of mind and also those who hold it.

**baboon** (bā boon'), *n.* A genus of dog-headed monkeys found chiefly in Africa. (F. *babouin*.)

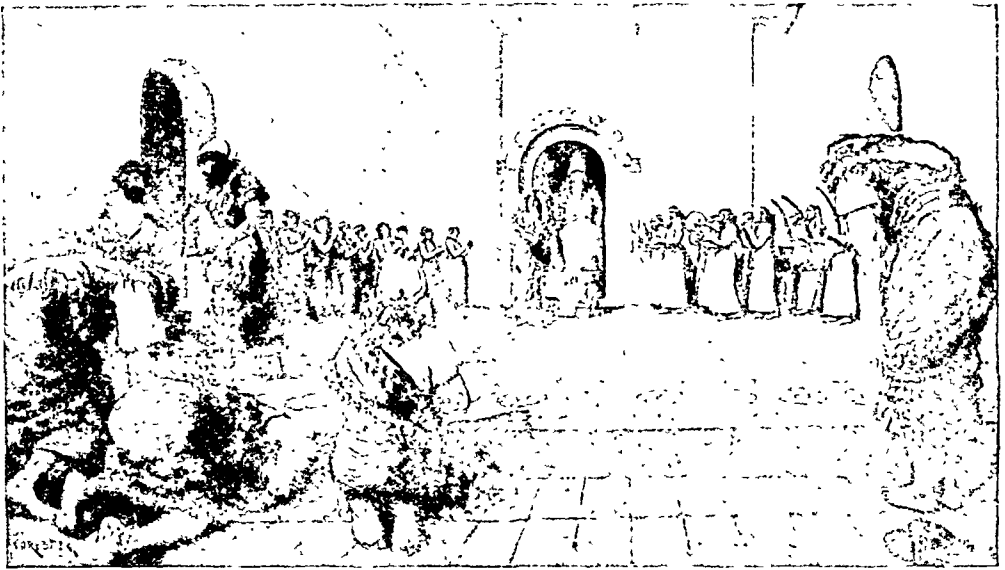


**Baboon.**—The baboon, the ugliest and least intelligent monkey.

The generic name *Cynocephalus*, meaning dog-headed, was given because of the animal's long, dog-like snout. Other striking features are the huge canine teeth and great cheek pouches. The baboons live together in large colonies, called babooneries (bā boon' ēr iz, *n.pl.*). The female is sometimes called a babuina

(băb ū ē' nā, *n.*). The baboons are the ugliest and least intelligent of the monkeys, and are sullen, fierce, and filthy





Babylonian.—The worship of the moon god by the Babylonians, four thousand years ago.

animals, so that to charge a human being with baboonery (*bā boon' ér i, n.*) or baboonish (*bā boon' ish, adj.*) conduct is to suggest that he is ugly, stupid, bad-tempered, generally repulsive.

M.E. *babuin*, *babewin*, O.F. *babuin*, L.L. *babervynus*. The ultimate etymology is unknown.

**baby** (*bā' bi*), *n.* An infant; the youngest of a certain number; a childish person; a pampered person; a thing that is small in comparison with another. *v.t.* To treat (a person) as though he or she needed as much attention as an infant. (F. *bébé*, *enfant*; *trailer en enfant*.)

When we say that anyone makes quite a baby of a big girl we mean that she does everything for her and attends to her as though her intelligence and capabilities had not developed beyond the state of infancy.

The period of our lives when we are infants is called **babyhood** (*bā' bi hud, n.*), and in a collective sense we can refer to the babyhood of a nation. **Babyish** (*bā' bi ish, adj.*) conduct is behaviour resembling that of a baby, and such behaviour is **babyishness** (*bā' bi ish nes, n.*) or **babyism** (*bā' bi izm, n.*). **Baby-worship** (*n.*) is the homage that every man and woman pays to a baby. **Baby-farming** (*n.*) is looking after infants for payment, and one who does this is a **baby-farmer** (*n.*).

The word is derived from *baba*, the imitation of a child's attempt to speak.

**Babylon** (*bāb' i lōn*), *n.* The chief city of the Chaldeans, situated on the river Euphrates, about fifty miles south of the modern Bagdad; any great and luxurious city; a city of exile or captivity. (F. *Babylone*.)

This famous city reached the height of its splendour in the reign of Nebuchadrezzar II.

Its palaces, temples, and walls were of such magnificence that the city became the symbol for earthly grandeur and glory. Its end was desolation.

In the New Testament Babylon is the name given to the city in the vision of St. John which is corrupted by luxury and the cause of iniquity and persecution, but which is doomed to be overthrown. Eventually Babylon became the symbol of any great city that boasts of its luxury, oppression, and iniquity.

Whatever relates to or resembles Babylon is **Babylonic** (*bāb i lōn' ik, adj.*) or **Babylonish** (*bāb i lō' nish, adj.*). A native or an inhabitant of Babylon is called a **Babylonian** (*bāb i lō' ni ān, n.*).

The word is said to mean gate of God or gods.

**baccalaureate** (*bāk a law' ri at*), *n.* The degree of bachelor conferred by universities. (F. *baccalauréat*.)

Up to quite modern times university degrees were conferred only on males, but now at nearly all British universities there are female students and the degree of bachelor can be acquired by women equally with men. Thus the bachelor girl has been given an academic standing in spite of the masculine character of the phrase.

L.L. *baccalaureatus* as if from *bacca* berry, *laureatus* laurel-crowned, itself a corrupt enlargement of L.L. *baccala(u)rius* one who has obtained a degree.

**baccarat** (*bāk' à ra*), *n.* A French card game. Another spelling is *baccara*. (F. *baccarat*, *baccara*.)

Amongst games of hazard which have had vogue in the last half century *baccarat* holds high place. It is started by the banker, who uses several packs of cards, dealing out

two cards to himself and two to each player. Each player covers his cards with the sum he wishes to stake and the banker stakes an equal sum. Afterwards the cards are examined and the points counted.

In some cases the player takes his own stake and that of the banker; in others the banker claims the whole, or a portion of the stakes according to the points scored. Play sometimes runs high and large stakes are lost and won.

There is a town of the name near Nancy, in France.

**baccate** (băk'ăt), *adj.* Bearing berries; berried; like berries. (F. *baccifère*.)

**Baccate** or **bacciferous** (băk sif'ér ūs, *adj.*) plants, like the gooseberry and tomato, bear juicy fruits with seeds embedded in the pulp. The fruits of the strawberry and the raspberry, despite their names, are not berries, and are not even bacciform (băk'si fōrm, *adj.*) or berry-shaped, but they are eagerly devoured by such baccivorous (băk siv'ô rūs, *adj.*) or berry-eating birds as the blackbird and the thrush. The seeds of the tropical *Cycas* are baccate or berry-like, being covered with a pulpy skin.

*L. bac(c)atus* set with berries or pearls, *adj.*, from *bac(c)a*, a berry.

**bacchanal** (băk'ânăl), *adj.* Of or relating to Bacchus, the Roman god of wine, and to festivities held in his honour; riotous. *n.* A worshipper of Bacchus; a reveller; a revel. (F. *bachique*, *Bacchant*; *Bacchanale*.)

The ancient Romans held yearly feasts on holidays in honour of many of their gods, and those of Bacchus (băk'ūs, *n.*) were called the *Bacchanalia* (băk'ână'liă, *n.pl.*). A man who took part in the revels was called a *Bacchant* (băk'ânt, *n.*) and a woman a *Bacchante* (băk'ânt; bă kânt'; bă kân ti, *n.*), this word being used also for a priestess of Bacchus. The *Bacchanalian* (băk'ână'liăn, *adj.*) feasts, at which a great deal of wine was drunk, got a bad name, and laws were passed to restrict *Bacchanalianism* (băk'ână'liăn izm, *n.*), or revelry, and the *Bacchantic* (bă kân'tik, *adj.*) dances which accompanied *Bacchic* (băk'ik, *adj.*) worship.

*L. Bacchanālis*, from Gr. *Bakkhos* (*L. Bacchus*) the god of wine, better known in Gr. as *Dionysus*.

**bacchius** (bă ki'ūs), *n.* A metrical foot in classical poetry consisting of one short and two long syllables (— — —). (F. *bacchius*, *bacchique*.)

*L. bacchius*, Gr. *bakkheios* (with *L. pes*, or Gr. *pous*, foot, understood), said to be so called from being used in hymns to the god Bacchus.

**bachelor** (băch'él ór), *n.* An unmarried man; a university degree. (F. *célibataire*, *garçon*.)

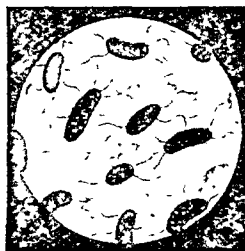
This term has been applied to various persons in comparatively unimportant positions. It was used of a knight in the lowest stage of knighthood, of an ecclesiastic of a low grade, and of a junior member of a guild.

When a man or woman has taken the first degree of a university he or she is called a bachelor of that university. A Bachelor of Arts uses the letters B.A. after his or her name, a Bachelor of Science uses the letters B.Sc., a Bachelor of Medicine, M.B. A knight bachelor (*n.*) is the title of one who has been knighted but not attached to any special order. Bachelor's buttons (*n.*) is the popular name for various button-shaped flowers.

The state of being an unmarried man is *bachelorhood* (băch'él ór hud, *n.*) or *bachelorship* (băch'él ór ship, *n.*). Any peculiarity or mannerism that is popularly supposed to be usual among bachelors is called a *bachelorism* (băch'él ór izm, *n.*).

M.E. *bachel(er)*, O.F. *bachelor*, L.L. *baccarius*, which originally meant a farm labourer, hence an inferior retainer, probably from L.L. *bacca*, *L. vacca*, a cow.

**bacillus** (bă sil'ūs), *n.* A rod-like microbe or disease germ. The plural is *bacilli* (bă sil'i). (F. *bacille*.)



**Bacillus.** — Typhoid bacilli, greatly magnified.

About the year 1780, a Danish scientist, O.F. Müller, found several kinds of disease germs to which he gave the name of *bacillus*, or "little rod," on account of their straight form. A *bacillus* is so tiny that it can be seen only under a strong microscope. A large *bacillus* measures only about one six-thousandth part of an inch in length. Anthrax is a *bacillary* (bă sil'ârî, *adj.*) disease, since its germs are *bacilliform* (bă sil'i fōrm, *adj.*) or rod-shaped.

*L. bacillus* a little stick, dim. of *baculum*.

**back** [1] (băk), *n.* The part of the body nearest the spine; the part of an object farthest from the front, or from the edge, or from the most important part. *adj.* Behind in position or time; returning; reversed; distant. *adv.* Behind; to a previous position or state; in return; again. *v.t.* To provide with a back; to support; to bet on; to mount; to endorse; to cause to go back; to reverse. *v.i.* To go back; to move in the reverse direction. (F. *dos*; *de derrière*; *en arrière*, *à reculons*; *soutenir*, *en dosser*, *parier*, *renverser*; *reculer*.)

This word has many meanings. In hockey and Association football, for instance, the two players whose positions are between the half-backs and the goalkeeper are the backs. They are more correctly called full backs. The backs in Rugby football are all the players (seven in number) who play behind the scrum, that is, all except the forwards.

In mining the back is the upper side of a seam. The back of the hand is the surface

away from the palm. The back of a hill is the rounded top, suggesting the back of an animal. To say things behind the back of a person is to say things about him out of his hearing. A task or load is said to break the back of a man when it puts too great a strain on his mind or body. To break the back of a task is to have got through the larger part of it. To turn one's back upon a person is to forsake him.

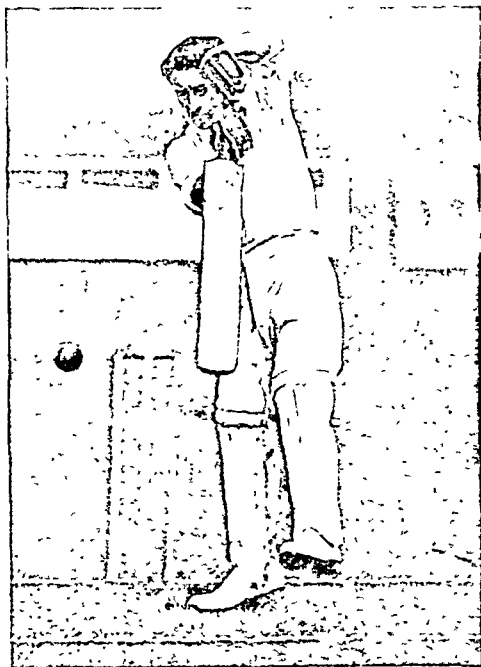
A man backs a cause by giving money or by working for it. A driver backs his engine when he makes it push the tender instead of pulling it. The person to whom a cheque is made payable must back it or endorse it, that is, he must write his name on the back of it before it can be cashed.

A horse is said to back when it moves or pushes backwards. The wind backs if it suddenly reverses its direction. To back up is to assist in any way. In cricket and football it is very necessary to back up, as it

sort of ring into which the ball is placed. They form up in three rows, usually of three, two, and three players on each side. The last three are called the back row. The centre player is the control, and the outside players are the flanks.



Back-hand stroke.—Jean Borotra, the famous lawn-tennis player, playing a back-hand stroke.



Back.—W. G. Quaife, the Warwickshire county cricketer, playing back to a short-pitch ball.

is called. In cricket this means either a player covering, or placing himself behind another about to field the ball, in case he should allow it to pass him; or when a player is throwing the ball in from a long distance, taking up a position to receive the ball should it fall short of reaching the wicket-keeper, or the bowler, to whom it is thrown. In both codes of football to assist a player or players in either an attacking or defensive movement is to back up.

In a scrum or scrummage in Rugby football the forwards of each side bend down in a

A backboard (*n.*) is a board strapped to the back to prevent or correct stooping. A backblock (*n.*) is a section of land in a thinly-peopled country, far away from towns or railways. Smoke is blown into a room by a back-draught (*n.*) caused by the wind down the chimney. A back-fire (*n.*) in a petrol, oil, or gas engine occurs if a charge explodes before the piston has reached the top of the cylinder and makes the engine kick back. Looseness at points where moving parts of a machine are connected is called back-lash (*n.*), for when motion is reversed one part has to strike the other to move it. The steering-gear of a motor-car soon develops more or less back-lash. Back-pressure is set up in the cylinder of an engine when the escape of exhaust steam or gas is hindered in any way and the piston meets resistance. Back-rent (*n.*) is rent over-due. Back-end (*n.*) means late autumn.

In lawn-tennis, when the ball comes to the left or "wrong" side of a right-handed player it is played by bringing the racket across the body and using the reverse side. This is called a back-hand stroke (*n.*). By giving a "chopping" action to a stroke, it is possible to make the ball spin backwards on touching the ground. This is called back-spin (*n.*). In golf back-spin is the same as undercut, which means hitting the ball below the centre so that it rises high and thus does not run so far on reaching the ground as it would in the usual way.

Back-stairs (*adj.*) or back-door (*adj.*) influence is such secret or underhand influence as might be obtained by way of the back stairs of a palace. A sloping steel rope or rod anchored to a firm support and attached to a mast to relieve it of strain is called a back-stay (*n.*). The blade of an

oar causes a swirl or back-wash (*n.*) in the water.

To back-water (*v.i.*) is to reverse the motion of an oar, paddlewheel, or propeller, to check a boat or ship, or make it go astern.

To backbite (*v.t.* and *i.*) is to speak ill of one behind his back, and a person who does this is a backbiter (*n.*).

The backbone (*n.*) of a body is its spine, a number of small bones, called vertebrae, jointed together. An animal with a backbone is backboned (*adj.*), and one without is backboneless (*adj.*). A backboneless person is one who has no strength of character.

The background (*n.*) of a scene is the ground in the distance, as opposed to the foreground, or ground in the front nearer the person who is looking at it. The back-sight (*n.*) of a rifle is the sight near the stock, and in surveying a back sight is a sight taken backwards. The flame which spurts from the breach of a big gun when it is opened after firing is called a back-flash (*n.*).

A backslider (*n.*) is one who slips or falls away into sin or unbelief. A back-stroke (*n.*) is a stroke made in a backward direction, such as that made by the piston of an engine when it is moving towards the inner end of the cylinder. A backway (*n.*) is a bypath or a roundabout way. A quiet stretch of a river, away from the main stream, such as a channel at the rear of a small island, is called a back-water (*n.*). In a thickly-forested country the remote parts, where little clearing has been done, are called the backwoods (*n.pl.*), and a settler living and working in them is known as a back-woodsman (*n.*).

A person who gives support to some cause or bets on a horse is a backer (*băk'ér, n.*). Backing (*băk'ing, n.*) is support given in money or services by one person or a number of people. It means also a stiffening or strengthening, such as the

layer of wood or cardboard put behind a framed picture.

A.S. *baec*; cp. O. Norse, modern Dutch *bak*. SVS.: *adj.* Hindmost, remote. *v.* Aid, assist, retire, support. ANT.: *adj.* Foremost, front. *v.* Advance, disappoint, fail.

**back** [2] (*băk*), *n.* A large vat or tub used by brewers, dyers, etc.; a wooden trough, a ferry-boat. (F. *cuve*, *baquet*.)

Dutch *bak*, from F. *bac*, trough, mash-tub, also ferry-boat, L.L. *bacus*, ferry-boat.

**backcourt** (*bak kôrt'*), *n.* The part of the lawn-tennis court behind the service line, including the part outside the court proper and directly at the rear of the baseline.

The backcourt game is the play that takes place in the back of the lawn-tennis court. Baseline game is another name for it. A player who plays mostly at the back of the court is called a backcourt player.

**backgammon** (*băk găm'ôn, n.*). A game played by two persons on a special board, the moves of the men being decided by throwing two dice. (F. *trictrac*.)

Backgammon is thought to have been invented more than a thousand years ago. The board used is divided into four tables, two at Black's end and two at White's end, each having six points, alternately black and white, on which the men are placed. Fifteen men are used by each player.

At the beginning of a game the men of each colour are arranged in four groups of 5, 3, 5, 2, on one point of each of the four tables. The players throw the dice alternately, and the number of points that a piece, or two pieces, may be moved is decided by the fall of the dice. Thus, if a 6 and a 3 turn up, one man may be moved 9 places, or one man 6 places and another 3 places. A man may move only on to a point not occupied by more than one enemy man. A single or unguarded enemy



Backwoods.—A settlement in the backwoods of Australia, showing the clearing made for their houses by the energetic backwoodsmen. Australia is immensely rich in its variety of hardwood trees, the felling of which is the chief occupation of the backwoodsman.

is captured and put on the bar between the tables, and must be got on again before any man of the same colour is moved.

The object of each player is to work his men round the board in a clockwise direction and bear off one after another until he has them all off. If he does this ahead of his opponent he wins the game.

A gammon, or double-game, is won if all his men are off before the first of his opponent, and a triple game, or backgammon, if his opponent has not borne off a man, and still has one on the bar or on one of the first six points.

E. *back* (adv.), and M.E. *gamen* game, because pieces are put back.

**backsheesh** (bāk' shēsh). This is another spelling of baksheesh. See baksheesh.

**backward** (bāk' wārd), *adv.* In the direction opposite to the usual direction; towards the rear; towards a worse condition. *adj.* Directed to the rear; unwilling; not well advanced; late. *n.* The part of time that has passed. (F. *en arrière*, *à reculons*; *arrière*; *le passé*.)

The adverb is also spelt backwards. A locomotive running tender first moves backwards. An army makes a backward movement when it retreats. A backward child does not know what he should know at his age. Perhaps illness accounts for his backwardness (bāk' wārd nēs, *n.*). In a backward spring the leaves or flowers are late in coming out. The word is not used now as a noun. In Shakespeare's play "The Tempest" (i, ii), Prospero, questioning his daughter Miranda as to what she can remember of her life before they came to the island, asks:

What see'st thou else

In the dark backward and abysm of time?

Backwardly (bāk' wārd li, *adv.*) means unwillingly.

E. *back*, and *wārd(s)*, suffix meaning direction. SYN.: Averse, dull, loath, tardy. ANT.: Eager, forward, previous, quick.

**backwardation** (bāk wār dā' shùn), *n.* The fee that a seller of stocks or shares has to pay for being allowed to delay the transfer of the stocks to the buyer. (F. *déport*.)

A person sells shares which in the ordinary way would be transferred to someone else on June 1st. If he wishes to put off the transfer till June 15th he must pay a backwardation.

The term is compounded of an obsolete *v.t.* *backward* and *-ation* (L. noun of action in *-atio*, gen. *-ationis*.)

**bacon** (bā' kōn), *n.* The back and sides of the flesh of a pig after it has been preserved by curing. (F. *lard*.)

Bacon is cured by salting it and then drying it either by smoking with wood-smoke or by some other means. Country-olk often kill their own pigs and do the curing themselves, but in towns it is usual to buy pig's flesh already cured and labelled as bacon. From the fact of bacon being a favourite dish among country people a rustic used sometimes to be called a bacon or a

chaw-bacon. The homely expression, to save one's bacon, means to come out of a dangerous or difficult situation without injury. To baconize (bā' kōn iz, *v.t.* and *i.*) is to turn into bacon, or to smoke like bacon. A thing which is fatty or otherwise like bacon is *bacony* (bā' kōn i, *adj.*).

O.F. *bacon*, L.L. *baco*, cp. O.H.G. *bacho*, M.H.G. *bach* side of bacon. The word probably means the back piece.

**Baconian** (bā kō' ni ān), *adj.* Of or relating to or like Francis Bacon, Baron Verulam, popularly known as Lord Bacon, or the system of inductive philosophy outlined by him, or the notion that Shakespeare's plays were largely, if not entirely, written by Bacon. *n.* A follower of the Baconian system of philosophy; an adherent of the Baconian view of Shakespeare. (F. *baconien*, *baconiste*.)



Bacteria.—A bacteriologist examining water for the purpose of finding bacteria.

**bacterium** (bāk tēr' i ūm), *n.* A germ which causes disease or is found in decaying animal or vegetable matter. (F. *bactérie*, *bactérium*.)

Like bacillus, bacterium means a rod. The word covers germs, bacilli, and many other tiny living growths. Bacteria (bāk tēr' i ā, *n.pl.*) were first noticed in animal matter by the Dutch naturalist, Anthony van Leeuwenhoek (1632-1723) in 1680. They multiply at an astonishing rate. Some kinds will spread all through the body in a few hours, after finding an entrance by being breathed in with the air, or swallowed with liquid or food, or through a wound.

Not all bacteria are harmful. Some are of great value to the farmer, for they convert the nitrogen in manures into a form useful for plants. All decay of substances that have once been alive is caused by bacteria, and so

they do a great service as scavengers and purifiers.

The study of bacteria is bacterial (bāk tēr' i āl, *adj.*), and is called bacteriology (bāk tēr' i ol' ō ji, *n.*). A bacteriologist (bāk tēr' i ol' ō jist, *n.*) is a man who devotes his time to bacteriological (bāk tēr' i ō loj' i kāl, *adj.*) research. Anything allied to or of the nature of bacteria is bacteroid (bāk' ter oid, *adj.*).

L.L. *bacterium*, Gr. *bakterion*, dim. of *baktron* stick. See *bacillus*.

**bad** (bād), *adj.* Not good; evil. *n.* A bad condition; that which is or those which are bad. (F. *mauvais*; *mal*.)

The comparative degree is worse and the superlative worst. When we speak of a person having a bad influence on another, we mean that as a result of his evil character he has a hurtful effect upon that person. We say that fruit, for instance, is bad when it is not fit to eat. A bad person is a worthless or evil-minded person.

Bad workmanship is workmanship that is faulty. In the legal sense anything is bad which is not sound according to law, which would not be accepted by a court of justice. A claim can be bad, and so can a defence.

When we say that a person is going to the bad we mean that he has allowed his character to deteriorate to such an extent that he is on the way to complete ruin. An item to the bad in an account is one on the wrong side of that account. To go bad, in reference to food-stuffs, means to decay. When we say there is bad blood between two people we mean that they nourish harsh and angry feelings towards one another. A debt which can never be recovered is called a bad debt. When we do a thing with a bad grace we do it reluctantly or unwillingly. The bad lands are tracts of treeless, desolate country in the western states of America.

A thing which is rather bad is baddish (bād' ish, *adj.*). To do a thing badly (bād' li, *adv.*) is to do it unskillfully. A second person, doing it more faultily still, does it worse, and a third, doing it the most unskillfully of the three, does it worst. A person is badly injured when he is severely hurt. If we want a thing badly we want it very much indeed. Badness (bād' nēs, *n.*) is the quality or state of being bad.

The etymology of bad is uncertain; perhaps from A. *bæddel* an effeminate person, I being lost (M.E. *badde*). SYN.: Abominable, corrupting, disagreeable, evil, faulty, ill, injurious, rotten, sinful, unfair, unjust, unlucky, unskillful, unethical, wrong. ANT.: Excellent, true, virtuous, worthy.

**badge** (bād; bād). This is the past tense of bid. See bid.

**badge** (bāj), *n.* A mark, sign, or token by which a person or an object is distinguished. *v.t.* To mark in this way. (F. *insigne*, *marque*, *plaque*; *marquer d'une plaque*.)

Badges have come down from the days of chivalry, when they were used to show who a certain knight or his followers were. They were also worn by the owner's retainers as a kind of livery. There are distinctive badges for officers of every rank in the Army, Navy and Air Force.

M.E. *bag*(s), whence L.L. *bagia* ring, sign. The origin is unknown.

**badger** [1] (bāj' er), *n.* A burrowing, nocturnal mammal, about the size of a fox; a brush; an artificial fly for angling. *v.t.* To worry; to persecute. (F. *blaireau*; *harceler*.)

The badger (*Meles vulgaris*) is a heavily-built, clumsy, short-legged animal, which walks on the soles of its feet as bears do, but is also related to the weasel family. It is generally grey in colour, with dark limbs and a black and white head, the white stripes, according to some, being the badge from which the animal gets its name. It defends its burrow fiercely, and this habit is taken advantage of by those who consider it sport



Badger.—According to some authorities, the white stripes on its head form the badge from which the badger gets its name.

to set dogs on to drag it from its burrow, or from a barrel in which it has been placed. The badger-dog (*n.*) used in badger-baiting (*n.*) or badger-drawing (*n.*), as this sport is called, is the dachshund, a German dog with a long body and short legs. It is from the sport that we get the verb to badger. The hair of the badger is used in making artists' and other brushes, and for flies for anglers.

The word was formerly spelt *bage* (= *badge*)-and, the suffix forming names of persons and animals, as Reynard.

**badger** [2] (bāj' er), *n.* A hawker of fish, butter, cheese, and other goods. The term is still used in the country parts of England. (F. *regattier*, *colporteur*.)

Probably from the old *v. badge* to buy up provisions in order to sell them.

**badging-hook** (bāj' ing huk). This is another spelling of bagging-hook. See *bag* [2].

**badinage** (ba dīn azh'; bād' in āj), *n.* A give-and-take of light-hearted talk or merry teasing. *v.t.* To tease playfully. (F. *badinage*; *badiner*.)

F. from *badiner* to jest, *badin* joking, talking nonsense, from L.L. *badare*, to gape.

**badminton** (bād' min tōn), *n.* A game played with rackets and shuttlecocks; a summer drink.

This game takes its name from the Duke of Beaufort's seat in Gloucestershire. It has long been played in India. In England it was first played about 1873. The game consists in hitting the shuttlecock to and fro over a high net.

The beverage known as badminton is made of claret, soda-water, and sugar.

**baff** (băf), *v.t.* To strike the ground in golf and send the ball into the air. *n.* A blow with anything soft or flat.

The word is of Scottish origin and imitative.

**baffle** (băf' l), *v.t.* To defeat by placing obstacles. *v.i.* To struggle or act to no purpose. *n.* Discomfiture. (F. *déjouer*; *échouer*; *défaite*.)

A criminal baffles the police when he gets the better of them and completely outwits them. Such a man could be called a baffler (băf' lēr, *n.*) and the condition of the police bafflement (băf' l mēt, *n.*). There is a mechanical contrivance called a baffler which can be adjusted near a vent-pipe of a geyser in order to check the down-rush of the wind. Anything which is very bewildering is said to be baffling (băf' ling, *adj.*). A sailor will describe a shifting, varying wind as baffling. A person who thwarts the plans of another behaves bafflingly (băf' ling l, *adv.*).

Two French words *bafouer* and *befler* (an old word), both meaning to flout, deceive, are apparently combined in baffle (of Scottish origin, *bauchle* to treat with contempt). Cp. Ital. *beffare*, from *beffa*, scoffing, slap in the face. Ultimately the word is probably imitative of the sound made; cp. Scottish *baff*, *beff*, E. *biff*, a blow, Dutch *paf* box on the ear. SYN.: Baulk, checkmate, foil, frustrate, perplex. ANT.: Assist, encourage, help, promote.

**baffy** (băf' i), *n.* A wooden golf club.

It has a short shaft or handle, and the face, that is, the part that strikes, is lofted or inclined so that the ball can be raised in striking. This club is also called a baffy-spoon (*n.*), and was at one time used for approach strokes—the stroke following the tee-shot.

This word is Scottish. See *baff*.

**baft** [1] (băft), *n.*

A coarse cotton fabric originally made in the East, but now very largely manufactured in Great Britain and shipped to other countries, chiefly Africa. (F. *bafetas*.)

From Pers. *baftan* to weave.

**baft** [2] (băft), *adv.* Behind, abaft, astern. Sailors use the word abaft more generally now. (F. *en arrière*.)

A.-S. *baefstan*; *by*, and *aft*.

**bag** [1] (băg), *n.* A small receptacle for various articles; a measure of quantity; the amount of game obtained on an expedition; a fold; a sac. *v.t.* To put into

a bag; to kill (game); to secure; to claim. *v.i.* To swell out; to hang loosely; to drop out of the course. (F. *sac*; *ensacher*; *gonfler comme un sac*.)

A lady carries a bag to hold small toilet articles, purchases, a purse, etc. A sportsman, too, sometimes takes a bag to put his game in. At the end of the day's sport, he counts his bag, that is, the animals he has accounted for. He calls it a bag, whether it is of pheasants or of elephants. Various commodities are sold at so much the bag.



Bag.—The Prince of Wales's bag of a tiger on a hunting expedition.

The receptacle for honey, poison, etc. in animals is called a bag or sac.

Sails bag and so do trousers. In this sense the word is often used of the skin beneath the eyes. When a ship bags she drops away from the direct course that was originally planned.

When we say that anybody left a place bag and baggage, we mean that he took all his belongings with him and that his departure was a complete and final one, and we imply that it was not a matter of regret. This phrase was formerly used in a good sense of a general who made an honourable retreat without losing any of his baggage. **Bag cap** (*n.*) is a name for brown paper in sheets which measure 24 × 10½ inches. **Bag-fox** (*n.*) is the name given to a fox which is brought alive to the starting-place of a hunt, and then turned out of a bag, the dogs immediately following in pursuit. A **bagful** (*n.*) is as much as will fill a bag. A **bag-wig** (*n.*) was a kind of wig that was worn in the eighteenth century in which the back hair was held in a bag. The cloth, canvas, or other material which is used to make **bagging** (băg' ing, *n.*). Any good which hangs loosely and bulges a person bag-like shape is called **baggy** of someone

This loose or baggy appearance is called **bagginess** (băg' i nēs, *n.*).

M.E. *bagge*, O.F. *bague*, cognate with L.L. *baga*, box, sack. The word is probably of Scandinavian origin. O. Norse *baggi*.

**bag** [2] (băg), *v.t.* To cut corn, beans, etc., with a hook. When corn is neither mown nor reaped it is bagged, the instrument used being called a **bagging-hook** (băg' ing huk, *n.*) or **badging-hook** (băj' ing huk, *n.*). (F. *couper à la taucille*.)

The origin of the word in this sense is unknown

**bagatelle** (băg à tel'), *n.* A mere trifle; a game resembling billiards. (F. *bagatelle*.)

A man might say if he had been robbed that he had lost a mere *bagatelle*, meaning that he was little the poorer. The game *bagatelle* is played on a board with nine numbered holes. The players try to shoot the balls into these holes with a cue, and score according to the numbers on them.

Ital. *bagatella*, perhaps dim. of dialect Ital. *bagata* little property, cp L.L. *baga* sack

**baggage** (băg' aj), *n.* Belongings that can be carried about, especially those of an army; a girl or woman. (F. *bagage*;  *coquine*.)

When soldiers go on a campaign they must have tents they can set up for sleep and shelter, bedding and simple furniture, cooking and other utensils, etc. All these are so made that they can be folded into the least possible space and then carried—either by the men themselves, or by motor, rail, or horse transit—to the desired spot. Such portable luggage is called **baggage**.

Americans use the word to denote any kind of luggage, and where we should speak of a luggage-porter they speak of a **baggage-man**.

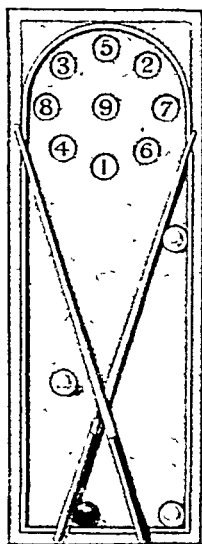
When applied to a woman the word is generally used with such adjectives as saucy or artful.

O.F. *bagage*, from *bague* bundle, L.L. *baga*, box, sack. See **bag**.

**Baggara** (bag' a ră), *n.* An Arab race living in the Nile valley in the Sudan. (F. *baggara*.)

The men of this race are physically very strong and active. During the several campaigns of the British-Egyptian forces in the years 1881-1899, the Baggara proved themselves the finest warriors in the opposing Arab armies. Mohammedans by religion, they showed reckless bravery.

Backward the energetic is Arabic, meaning cowmen.



**Bagatelle.**—A bagatelle board.

**Bagnall-Wilde** (băg' nawl wild), *n.* A system of drawing in a lawn-tennis tournament.

It was invented by the lawn-tennis player whose name it bears, and was designed to do away with byes—entrance to a round, without playing in the preceding one—after the preliminary and first rounds.

**bagpipe** (băg' pip), *n.* A musical instrument. (F. *cornemuse*.)

The notes are produced by air supplied by a leather bag. In one form this bag is inflated by the player blowing through a tube with a mouthpiece, in another by means of a small arm-bellows. Emerging from the bag are (1) a pipe with finger-holes, called a chanter, on which the melody is played, and (2) one or more pipes called drones, which give forth a continuous droning note as a bass accompaniment to the melody. The drones and the chanter are reed pipes, air being pressed into them by the player. The bagpipe is now chiefly used in the Highlands of Scotland and in Ireland and Brittany.



**Bagpipe.**—A pipe major playing the bagpipes.

E. *bag* and *pipe*.

**bah** (ba), *inter.* Pooh! Rubbish! An expression of scorn, contempt, or contemptuous disbelief. *v.t.* To pooh-pooh. (F. *bah*!; *faire fi de*, *traiter avec dédain*.)

**bail** [1] (bāl), *n.* A person who obtains the release of a prisoner awaiting trial by giving security for his appearance when the trial comes on; the money deposited as security. *v.t.* To secure the liberation of; to deliver (goods) in trust. (F. *caution*; *donner caution pour*.)

In cases where a magistrate cannot himself pass sentence on a prisoner, he has to commit the prisoner for trial by jury at a future time. If the offence be bailable (bāl' ābl, *adj.*), that is, one which allows of bail being given, the magistrate will admit the prisoner to bail. This means that the prisoner has to find securities, each named a **bailsmān** (bāl' mān, *n.*), to deposit money with the magistrate, enter into an agreement, called a **bail-bond** (*n.*), and so bail out the prisoner. He is then released, and if he appears at the trial, the bailsmen are discharged from their bail and get their money back.

**Bailment** (bāl' mēnt, *n.*) is the act of entrusting goods to another person for any



purpose, as when articles are pawned or left for safe keeping. The person who deposits is named the bailor (*bāl'ōr', n.*) and the person who receives is the bailee (*bāl'ē', n.*).

O.F. *bail* custody, charge, *baillier* to keep in custody, enclose, *L. baulare* to carry a burden, take charge of, from *baulus* porter, carrier

**bail** [2] (*bāl*), *n.* The hoop which supports the hood or cover of a wagon; the handle of a kettle, a hoop, a ring. (F. *cercle*.)

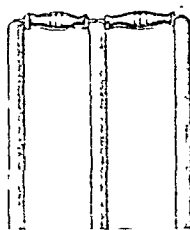
M.E. *beyl*, from O. Norse *beygla* hoop, *beygia* to bend.

**bail** [3] (*bāl*), *n.* One of the two cross-pieces laid on the top of cricket stumps, the division between the stalls of a stable, the framework holding the head of a cow while she is being milked. (F. *barre*, *traverse de bois*.)

In the early days of cricket it is said that the wicket consisted of a small hurdle used for the entrance to the sheep-pen, which was made up of a number of larger hurdles. The small hurdle was a pair of upright pieces with a movable bar, similar to the "slip-rail" used to bar gates of the present day, and was called a bail. From this primitive wicket the three stumps came to be used, but the name bail continued in use for the cross-piece.

According to the laws of cricket each bail must be four inches long, and must not exceed a height above the stumps of half an inch. A ball that just takes one or both bails off is called a bailer (*bāl'er, n.*)

In Australia men called bushrangers, like our highway-men of olden days, used to hold up the mail-coaches and travellers and rob them of their valuables. When travellers threw up their arms to show they surrendered, they were said to bail up, and so were the bushrangers who forced them to do this.



Bail.—Bails in place on cricket stumps.

O.F. *bail*, *baille* a stake, or piece of wood placed on two stakes, possibly a contraction of *L. baculum* stick.

**bail** [4] (*bāl*), *v.t.* To empty anything, particularly a boat, of water or other liquid. (F. *vider*.)

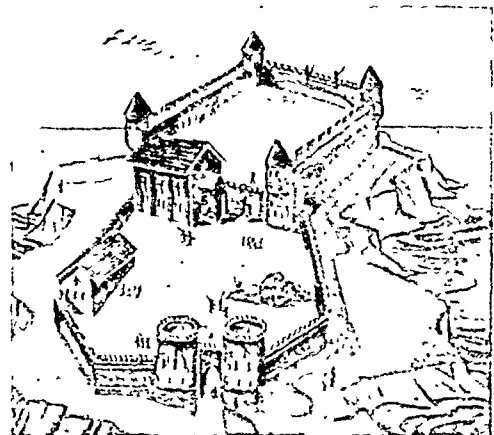
When a rowing-boat springs a leak those in it bail the water out to prevent the boat from sinking. The thing used to collect the water and throw it overboard is called a bailer (*bāl'er, n.*) and so is the person throwing the water. The spellings bale and baler are also used.

Obsolete E. *bail* bucket, F. *baille*, probably derived from *L.L. bacula*, dim. of *L.L. baca*, vat, bucket.

**bailey** (*bā'li*), *n.* The outer wall surrounding a mediæval castle; any encircling walls or fortifications, except the innermost

one which forms the keep; the whole space contained within the castle walls, except the keep. (F. *mur extérieur*.)

The bailey or courtyard of a castle of the Middle Ages was sometimes very large. It contained barracks for soldiers and workmen, a mill, wells, store-rooms, a chapel, and occasionally a monastery. There was room for drilling and exercise with weapons. When two or more courts were enclosed by the lines



Bailey.—The inner and outer bailey of a castle of the Middle Ages.

of defence, they were called the outer bailey, the middle bailey, the inner bailey, etc.

Castle walls have now crumbled to dust, but the baileys are remembered still in the names of streets and buildings that cover them. For instance, the Old Bailey, in London, was once a bailey formed by the city wall between Ludgate and Newgate. It is now the name of the Central Criminal Court and of the street in which it stands. Here Milton's pamphlet supporting the execution of Charles I was publicly burned by a hangman when the Commonwealth ended, and here was the grim old Newgate Prison.

*L.L. ballium* (cp *L. vallum*) O.F. *bail* stake tipped with iron (perhaps *L. baculum* stick), *baillier* to confine, enclose as a protection.

**baillie** (*bā'li*), *n.* A municipal officer in Scotland (F. *magistrat municipal en Écosse*, *alderman*.)

In England the civic dignitary next in importance to the mayor is called an alderman; in Scotland he is called a baillie.

Water-bailies (*n.pl.*) are certain officials in Scotland whose business it is to see that the Tweed Fisheries Acts are properly carried out.

O.F. *bailli*, later form of *baillif*.

**bailiff** (*bā'li*), *n.* A superintendent or magistrate of a district, an agent or steward to an estate; a sheriff's officer. (F. *bailli*, *intendant*, *huissier*.)

In olden times bailiff, or the corresponding word in other languages, was used a good deal with the general meaning of a person who supervised or had charge of someone

or something. It is still used in this sense when we speak of a farm or estate bailiff, meaning the man who supervises things for the farmer or owner of the estate. In most other cases bailiff means a magistrate of some kind, exercising authority in a bailiwick or district.

In a few ancient titles, such as High Bailiff of Westminster and Bailiff of Dover Castle, bailiff means a man in authority who represents the king and administers justice in his name. In the Channel Islands the chief magistrate is called the Bailly. A bailiff is also a sheriff's officer who deals with writs and arrests.

One of the most amusing incidents in connexion with this last kind of bailiff took place in London in the summer of 1927, when a tramcar was seized by bailiffs. The high bailiff of the Hackney Borough Council and one of his assistants suddenly entered the Camberwell Green depot of the London County Council's tramways, took possession of a tram, and posted up a notice to the effect that it had been seized for non-payment of rates. Matters were quickly arranged, but history had been made.

M.E. *bailif*, O.F. *bailif*, L.L. *baulivus*, L. *baulivus* porter, carrier, from *baulare* to keep in custody, take charge of.

**bailiwick** (bā' li wik), *n.* The district over which a bailie or bailiff can exercise his authority. (F. *bailiage*.)

M.E. *bailif* and *wik* district; cp. L. *vicus*.

**Bairam** (bi ram'), *n.* The name of two Mohammedan feasts, following the month of fasting known as Ramadan. The first lasts for three days, the second, falling seventy days later, lasts four days. (F. *bairam*.)

The word is Persian, meaning feast or festival.

**bairn** (barn), *n.* A child—either a boy or a girl. (F. *petit enfant*.)

English people do not as a rule use this word in ordinary conversation, but Scottish people do, and it has gradually crept into the English language. There is a suggestion of a caress in the word.

M.E. *barn*, A.-S. *bearn* that which is born, related to A.-S. *bearn* to bear.

**bait** (bāt), *v.t.* To set dogs on to an animal; to torment; to give food and drink to a horse while resting during a journey; to provide with a lure when attempting to capture an animal. *v.i.* To take refreshment on a journey. *n.* A lure put to attract some creature to aid in its capture; an allurement; a meal for man or beast during a journey; a halt for refreshment or rest during a journey. (F. *amorce*, *rafraichir*; se *rafraichir*; *amorce*, *appât*.)

A fisherman's bait may consist of worms, insects, small fish, or anything else that is a tasty morsel to the larger fish for which he is angling. There are gaudy and attractive-looking artificial flies made specially to fix on a fisherman's hook to attract the fish, which, biting at the fly, is impaled on the hook hidden beneath. From this fact

we call anything a bait which is cunningly contrived to form a temptation or allurement. Live bait means small fish, etc., used alive for bait, as opposed to creatures already dead or artificial bait.

Much the same idea is contained in the word bait as used of horses, only here we get the horse to bite or eat for its own refreshment, and not in order that we can capture it. The same idea still is seen in the names of the cruel old-time sports of badger-baiting, bear-baiting, bull-baiting, etc., in which dogs were set on to bite and worry the animals.

M.E. *baiten*, from O. Norse *baitan* to cause to bite, causal of *bita* to bite. Cp. O.F. *beter*=to worry, bait an animal.

**baize** (bāz), *n.* A coarse woollen cloth. (F. *bayette*.)

In England we do not use baize for clothing but chiefly for coverings or linings. A gardener often wears a baize apron to protect his clothes. A butler wears a similar apron when cleaning silver to protect the silver from scratches. The shelves of a butler's pantry, the insides of drawers where plate or cutlery are stored, the inside of a plate basket, and similar receptacles are often lined with baize because it will not scratch a polished surface. A furniture remover or furniture polisher often wears a baize apron, the reason again being that it does not scratch polished wood. Baize is hardly ever seen in England in any other colour than green and red.

O.F. *bai*, later *baye*, pl. *bayes* (whence the E. form), L.L. *badius* bay-coloured.



Bake.—Bakers removing mince-pies from the oven in a bakehouse.

**bake** (bāk), *v.t.* To cook or harden or heat by the warmth of the sun or of fire. *v.i.* To work as a baker; to cook by baking; to become dry and hard by exposure to heat. (F. *cuire*; *dessécher*.)

When food is cooked in an oven or on a heated surface, it is said to be baked. During the process the food becomes harder, and the sun produces the same effect when its rays are very powerful. A bakehouse (*n.*) is a building in which baking is carried on. A

**bakestone** (*n.*) is a flat stone or piece of iron on which cakes, muffins, etc., are baked. **Bake-meat** (*n.*) and **baked-meat** (*n.*) are names for pastry or pies. A **baker** (*bāk'ēr, n.*) often gives an extra tart or bun or pie for the purchase-price of twelve, and so we call thirteen a **baker's dozen** (*n.*).

A **baker's shop** may be called a **bakery** (*bāk'ēr i, n.*), and the same word is applied to his calling and to the actual building in which the baking is done. The process by which bread and cakes and pastries are made is called **baking** (*bāk'ing, n.*), and this word is also used to describe the quantity baked at one time. **Baking-powder** (*n.*) is a prepared powder used in place of yeast to make the pastry rise.

*M.E. baken, A.-S. bacan, cp. G. backen*, and forms in other Teut. languages

**baelite** (*bāk'élit, n.*) A form of artificial resin used for gear-wheels, buttons, jewellery, etc., and as an insulator in electrical apparatus.

**Bakelite**, also called **phenol-resin**, is named after its American inventor, L. H. Baekeland. It is very hard and strong, takes a high polish, and can stand heat that would injure vulcanite. It has been widely employed for knobs and panels in wireless apparatus. Mixed with emery powder, bakelite is formed into grndstones.

The suffix *-ite* is used in chemistry and trade.

**baksheesh** (*bāk' shēsh, n.*) A present of money; a tip; a bribe. *v.t.* To make a present of money to; to tip; to bribe. The word is also spelt **backsheesh** and **bakhshish**. (*F. pourboire; faire un cadeau.*)

In the East it is quite a common thing to see beggars sitting by the road-side holding out a wooden bowl and crying "baksheesh" to passers-by. Thus any present of money can be called **baksheesh**, especially when the money is in the nature of a corrupt exaction.

The word is Persian *bakhshish*, meaning a present in money.

**Balaklava helmet** (*bāl à kla' vā hel' met, n.*) A knitted woollen cap, covering the whole of the head, except the face, and the neck.

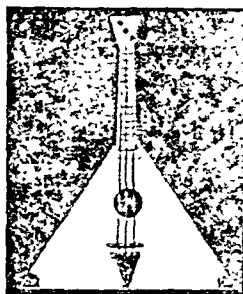
In the Crimean War (1854-56) our soldiers suffered dreadfully from cold. Among the comforts sent out to them were large numbers of this kind of cap, which can be worn by day in cold weather, and by night when sleeping out of doors. It gets its name from the fierce battle fought on



Balaklava helmet.

October 25th, 1854, famous for the heroic charge of the Light Brigade, celebrated by Tennyson. Balaklava or Balaklava is a village and harbour eight miles from Sevastopol in the Crimea.

**balalaika** (*bāl à la' kà, n.*) A kind of guitar used in eastern Europe, especially southern Russia. (*F. balalaika.*)

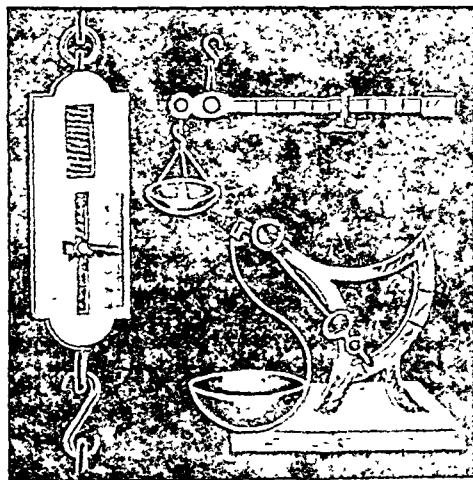


Balalaika.—A kind of guitar with two or more strings.

This instrument has two or more strings, and is popular for accompanying songs and dances. In all the Slavonic nations it is played by the peasants, and often by gipsies, at fairs and village festivals. During recent years balalaika orchestras have visited England and played at broadcasting stations.

The word is Russian.

**balance** (*bāl' āns, n.*) An instrument for weighing; a state of equal weight; the difference between the two sides of an account; steadiness; harmony or perfect proportion. *v.t.* To bring to a state of equal weight or power; to steady; to compare; to equal up the two sides of (an account). *v.i.* To have equal weight or force on both sides; to be steady. (*F. balance, solde; balancer, solder le compte; être en équilibre.*)



Balance.—Three types of balance: a spring balance, a Roman balance or steelyard, and a bent lever balance.

The ordinary weighing balance has a beam supported exactly in the middle and a pan hanging from each end of it. One pan carries the thing to be weighed, and the weights are put into the other. Hard steel knife-edges, pressing on hard steel bushes, are fitted at the hanging points, so that the balance may rock without friction or wear. The balances used by chemists in research work are so delicate that they will weigh a thousandth part of a grain, which is about the weight of a comma made with a pencil.

The Roman balance or steelyard has a short arm, from which the thing weighed is hung, and a long graduated arm, along which a weight is moved. A spring-balance shows weight by the amount to which a spring is pulled out by an object hung from it or is compressed by an object placed on a pan above it. Special forms of balances are used for dealing with heavy weights, running into hundreds of tons.

To hold the balance is to have the power of deciding, such as a judge has when he weighs up the evidence of both sides in a trial. The balance of power among nations is the state of equalized strength which makes for peace. The difference between the value of goods which a country sells abroad and the value of goods brought from other countries is called the balance of trade. To strike a balance is to find the difference between what is owed by and what is owed to a person or firm. A statement in which a balance is shown is a balance-sheet (*n.*).

A watch or small clock is made to keep time by a balance-wheel (*n.*). This is turned repeatedly in one direction by the pressure of the main-spring and in the other by a hair-spring attached to it, and serves the same purpose as a pendulum. A balancer (*bāl' anser, n.*) is one who balances something or balances himself, such as an acrobat or tight-rope walker. To the ordinary person, the advantage of this mode of earning a living is not balanceable (*bāl' āns ābl, adj.*) with the disadvantages. An engine that runs at very high speed needs careful balancing, so that the weights and forces shall be equal on all sides of the axis of the shaft. To ensure this a balance-weight (*n.*) is placed on every driving wheel of a railway locomotive.

*L. bilani* (acc. *bilanc-em*) with two scales, from *bis* twice, double, *lani* dish, scale of a balance. *Syn.* *n.* Equilibrium, equipoise, scales. *v.* Compensate, equalize, neutralize, weigh

**balata** (*bāl' ā tā, n.*) The gummy sap of a tree that grows in the Guianas, Brazil, and Honduras. (*F. balata.*)

The gum is drawn from the tree in just the same way as rubber, and hardens with

exposure to the air. It has much the same nature as gutta-percha, with which it is mixed to form a covering for the conductors of submarine cables, as it does not allow electricity to pass through it. The balata belting used to drive machinery is made of canvas, coated with balata, which provides it with a firm grip.

**Balbriggan** (*bāl brig' ān, n.*) The name given to various knitted cotton goods, so called from the Irish seaport Balbriggan, which made its reputation by these goods.

**balcony** (*bāl' kō m, n.*) A raised, unrooted platform with parapet, projecting from a house, seating accommodation in a theatre between the dress circle and the gallery. (*F. balcon.*)

Nearly all the large London houses built in the nineteenth century were provided with balconies on the first floor, so that the occupiers could sit out and watch the people go by or processions pass. On the occasion of a great procession, such as a coronation, seats in these balconies will fetch large sums of money. A house with a balcony is said to be balconied (*bāl' kōn id, adj.*).

*Ital balcone, O.H.G. balcho, modern G. balken* beam, balk

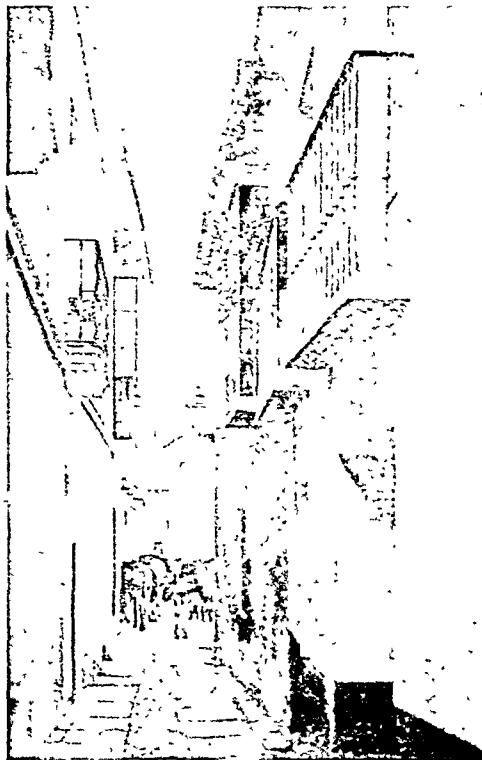
**bald** (*bawld, adj.*) Without the usual covering of hair or feathers; bare; meagre; unadorned; undisguised; marked with white. (*F. chauve; insipide, plat.*)

This word is applied generally to anything which is devoid of a covering to hide its bareness. A bald expanse of country is a

tract of country without any covering of trees or other vegetation. By the bald facts of a case we mean the clear, unadorned truth of the matter, without any softening or toning down. The bald details of a matter mean the most ordinary trivial facts only.

A bald-faced (*adj.*) animal is one which has the face marked with white. Similarly, the bald eagle, which is the national emblem of the U.S.A., is well provided with feathers, but has a white head, neck, and tail.

When a speaker announces a thing baldly (*bawld' li, adv.*), without any attempt at preparing his audience, his speech may either



Balcony.—The balconies of houses in a street in Seville, Spain. Balconies are very common in southern countries on account of the hot weather.

fall flat or else it may produce an effect by its very baldness (bawld' nēs, *n.*).

The word is of Celtic origin, meaning white, with a bald or white patch (cp. bald-faced stag, horse), and participial suffix *-(e)d*. SYN.: Bare, hairless, mere, literal, unsupported. ANT.: Adorned, ornate, polished.

**baldachin** (bāld' à kin), *n.* The canopy carried over the Host in processions; a canopy over an altar, throne, doorway, etc. The word is also spelt baldaquin (bāld' a kwin) and baldachino (bāld' à kē' nō). (*F. baldaquin.*)

The canopy used in the Roman Catholic Church for carrying over the Host in processions of the Blessed Sacrament consists of a frame covered with white silk or cloth of gold. The word comes from Ital. *baldachino*, from Baldacco, the Italian for Bagdad, where the rich materials for canopies was made. The stationary canopy over the altar is either supported by pillars or suspended from above. The baldachin in St. Peter's at Rome, the finest specimen in the world, is over 120 feet high.

**bald-coot** (bawld' koot), *n.* A wading bird. Another spelling is baldicoot (bawld' i koot). (*F. foulque chauve.*)

This bird resembles the moorhen, but is larger, being 18 inches in length, and is distinguished by a white, bald patch on the forehead. It haunts reedy lakes and streams, builds a nest of reeds, in which it lays 7 to 12 stone-coloured, brown-spotted eggs, and is said to be always engaged either in eating or fighting. The scientific name is *Fulica atra*. The name is sometimes applied to a bald-headed person.

*L. bald* in the sense of having a white patch, and *coot* water-fowl.

**Balder** (bawld' dēr), *n.* One of the gods of the old Scandinavians, son of Odin and Frigga. Another spelling is Baldur.

From the parents of Balder we get our Wednesday (Wodin's day) and Friday (Frigga's day). Balder was so good and beautiful that he aroused jealousy, and a dream warned him that he was in danger. His mother made every animal, vegetable, and mineral, swear not to injure her son. She unfortunately overlooked the mistletoe, and Loki, the "spirit of Evil," found this out. He made an arrow of mistletoe, and persuaded the blind god, Hoder, to shoot it at Balder in fun. Balder fell dead.

**balderdash** (bawld' dēr dāsh), *n.* A nonsensical jumble of words; nonsense. (*F. galimatias, fatras.*)

This word was formerly used for a beverage made of ill-assorted liquors, such as beer

mixed with wine or milk, and so it came to be applied to ill-chosen words jumbled together.

Apparently of Scandinavian origin. There is an old provincial E. *balder* to use bad language, and it is suggested that the word is compounded of this and *dash* (cp. Dan. *balder* noise and *dash* slap), curiously reminding us of slap-dash, used of doing things in a hurry or a careless, offhand way.

**bald-head** (bawld' hed), *n.* One who has little or no hair on his head; a breed of pigeon with unfeathered head, allied to the tumbler pigeons. (*F. tête chauve.*)

As *pate* is another word for head we speak of a *bald-pate* (*n.*) or a *bald-pated* (*adj.*) person. A curious phrase is that which describes an impetuous person as going at it *bald-headed* (*adj.*), that is, without first thinking about it. This probably takes us back to the times when all gentlemen wore wigs over their shaven heads, and meant that a man hurried to a job without even stopping to put on his wig.

**baldric** (bawld' drik), *n.* A belt or girdle, hanging downwards from one shoulder across the body and over the opposite hip. (*F. baudrier.*)

The baldric was worn either as an ornament, or to carry a dagger, sword bugle, etc. In a piece attributed to him, Chaucer tells how the monks of his time went dancing in gay clothes with baldrics slung over their shoulders to support tiny ornamental daggers. The yeoman, in coat and hood of green, wore his horn on a baldric, and so probably did Robin Hood's men. The gentleman carried his sword, and in later days the musketeer carried his powder-flask in this way, namely, baldric-wise (*adv.*).

In the reign of Henry IV the gallants wore absurd fancy baldrics reaching down to the knee, with a fringe of small bells that tinkled at every movement, like the lady of Banbury Cross.

Probably through an early form of O.F. *baldreir*, from M.H.G. *balderich*, extended from *L. balteus* belt.

**bale** [1] (bāl), *n.* Evil; an evil influence; an evil quality; woe. (*F. mal, calamité.*)



Bald-coot.—A wading bird with a bald patch on the forehead, whence bald-coot.



Baldric.—Hanging from one shoulder across the body, the baldric often supported a sword.

This word itself is seldom used except in books and especially in poetry, but the words *baleful* (bāl' fūl, *adj.*), *balefully* (bāl' fūl li, *adv.*), and *balefulness* (bāl' fūl nes, *n.*) are common enough. When one person gives another a baleful glance he looks at him with eyes that are full of venom, full of a desire to do harm or destroy. He is said to look at him balefully or with a glance filled with balefulness.

ME *bale*, *balu*, A.-S. *bealu*, *bealo* evil, cp. O.H.G. *balo* calamity, woe

**bale** [2] (bāl), *n.* A bundle or package, or roll of goods ready for transport. *v.t.* To make up into a bale or bales. (F. *ballot*, *emballer*.)

Just as some commodities are bought and sold in barrels or boxes, certain other commodities, such as paper for printing purposes, are bought and sold by the bale. A bale of printing paper is a very large roll wound firmly on a cylinder and secured for transport. Bale-goods (*n.pl.*) is the general name for commodities which are done up in bales.

The process of putting goods into bales is called *baling* (bāl' ing, *n.*), and the strong paper used for wrapping round bales is called *baling-paper* (*n.*). Goods packed into bales have to be very carefully compressed, and for this a *baling-press* (*n.*) is used.

ME, OF *bale* (F. *balle*), LI. *bala*, probably a form of *bail*.

**bale** [3] (bāl). This is another spelling for bail. See bail [1].



Bale.—A camel loaded with bales ready for transport across the Sahara.

**baleen** (bā lēn'), *n.* Whalebone. *adj.* Made of whalebone. (F. *baleine*; *baleiné*.)

Whales are divided into two great classes, the toothed whales and the whalebone whales. Those of the second class have very small throats, and so are driven to feed on tiny creatures that swarm in certain parts of the oceans. They possess huge jaws, closed in both sides by great curtains of baleen, in the form of upright plates set close together and fringed with countless hairs.

The whale takes in a mouthful of water through the open front of the mouth, which

it then blocks with its tongue. When the water is expelled, the baleen curtains act as strainers and hold back the creatures which are the whale's food.

L. *balaena*, Gr. *phal(h)aina*, whale.

**balefire** (bāl' fir), *n.* A great fire. (F. *feu de bûcher*, *feu de joie*.)

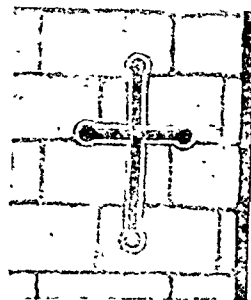
In olden times this word was used especially for a funeral pyre. It is applied to beacon-fires and to large bonfires. Sometimes it is used figuratively to imply some evil and injurious influence, as when we speak of the balefires of anarchy or licence.

O. Norse *bāl* funeral fire, and E *fire*; *bale* confused with *bale* [1].

**balistite** (bāl' is tīt). This is another spelling of ballistite. See ballistite.

**balistraria** (bāl is trar' i ā), *n.* A cross-shaped opening or loophole in the wall of a castle, through which the arbalesters, or cross-bowmen, shot their bolts; a room where arbalests were stored. The word is also spelt *ballistraria*. (F. *arbalétrière*.)

It was not until the thirteenth century that the balistraria came into general use in castles. It was shaped like a cross so that the arm of the cross-bow might not be interfered with. As a weapon in battle the latter eventually gave way to the long-bow. Lead balls and stones were sometimes used in place of the bolts.



Balistraria.—The loophole through which cross-bowmen shot their bolts.

Balistraria is a late Latin word.

**balk** (bawk), *n.* A ridge or piece of land left unploughed by mistake or through carelessness, a hindrance; a check, a particular part of a billiard-table; a piece of timber roughly trimmed and squared; a tie-beam; the rope or head-line of a fishing-net; stakes covered with netting for catching fish. *v.t.* To check, to hinder; to disappoint. *v.i.* To stop short; to swerve. Another spelling is *baulk* (F. *guéret*, *pouche*, *désappointement*; *arrêter*, *empêcher*; *s'arrêter*, *s'écarter*.)

We speak of a creature being balked of its prey when it is prevented from securing it. In the same way people may be balked in many of their desires. A balky (bawk' i, *adj.*) horse is one which has a habit of balking, that is, of shying or jibbing, refusing to do what its rider wishes. In billiards the line drawn across the table twenty-nine inches from the face of the bottom cushion and parallel to it is the balk-line (*n.*), and the part of the table behind this is called balk.

ME *balk*, A.-S. *balka* heap, ridge, beam, cp. G *balken*. The verb means to put a beam or obstacle so as to hinder anyone. SYN.: 1. Defeat, foil, frustrate. ANS.: Aid, help, promote.

# BALL GAMES DOWN THE AGES

*And how a Term used in Pastimes has become of Service to Engineers and Others*

**ball** [1] (bawl), *n.* A solid or hollow globe-shaped body; a game played with this; a quantity of material worked up into a more or less spherical shape; a single delivery of a cricket ball by a bowler. *v.t.* To form a ball of. *v.i.* To gather in a ball-like mass. (*F. boule; balle.*)

It is quite impossible to say which of the many ball games could be truly described as the parent of the others. Many of them can, in one form or another, be traced back hundreds of years—cricket, football, tennis, and hockey among them.

Tennis, originally played without rackets, the hand being used to hit the ball, was popular long before the seventeenth century, when we read that it began to decline in popularity. Cricket goes back farther, and a form of football, it is recorded, was played in the third century A.D. There is a Greek bas-relief of the fifth century B.C., which shows a "bully" being taken, evidence of the great antiquity of hockey, and it is stated that the Egyptians excelled at ninepins not less than 3,000 years before Christ.

Even this pastime of ancient origin may have had its predecessor, for in the Stone Age man probably had his ball game, even though the "ball" was a stone and the bat, club, or racket a rough piece of wood.

The ball used in cricket and other games has to conform to certain measurements stated in the laws of the various games. In cricket the ball may not weigh less than five ounces and a half nor more than five ounces and three-quarters, and shall measure not less than eight and thirteen-sixteenths nor more than nine inches in circumference, a change from a minimum of nine inches and a maximum of nine inches and one-quarter having been made in 1927.

The ball used in Association football may not be less than 27 inches nor more than 28 inches in circumference. In Rugby football the ball is an oval one, and must be as nearly as possible the following size and weight: 11 to 11½ inches long, with a length circumference of 30 to 31 inches and a width

circumference of 25½ to 26 inches. Its weight must be between 13 and 14 ounces.

The ball used in golf is made either solidly of gutta-percha, or of an outer casing of gutta-percha with a core or inner part of rubber. Its weight must not be greater than 1.62 ounce and its diameter not less than 1.62 inch.

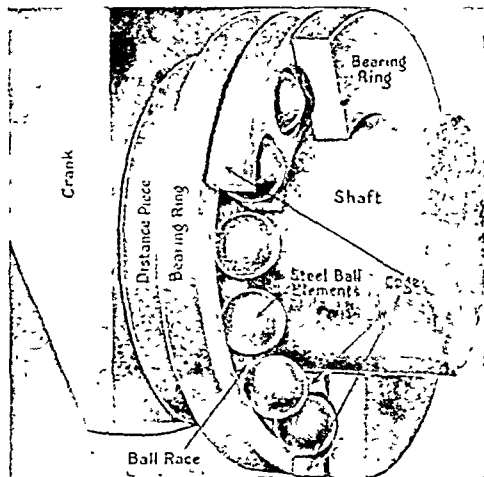
The lawn-tennis ball is made of rubber and has an outer cover of cloth. In diameter it may not be less than two and a half inches nor more than two and five-eighths inches.

In a ball and socket joint one part has a spherical end and the other a hollow end fitting the ball, to allow movement in all directions within limits. The joints of the hip and shoulder are of this form. The ball of the eye, or eyeball, is not a true ball, as the front of it projects rather sharply, being part of a smaller sphere. The ball of the thumb and the ball of the foot are the rounded projections at the bases of the thumb and big toe. The origin of the three balls used as the trade sign of pawnbrokers is doubtful. They are supposed to have been at first large gilt disks

representing coins, as the Lombards, the earliest pawnbrokers, were also bankers. The disks may have been altered into balls to attract attention better.

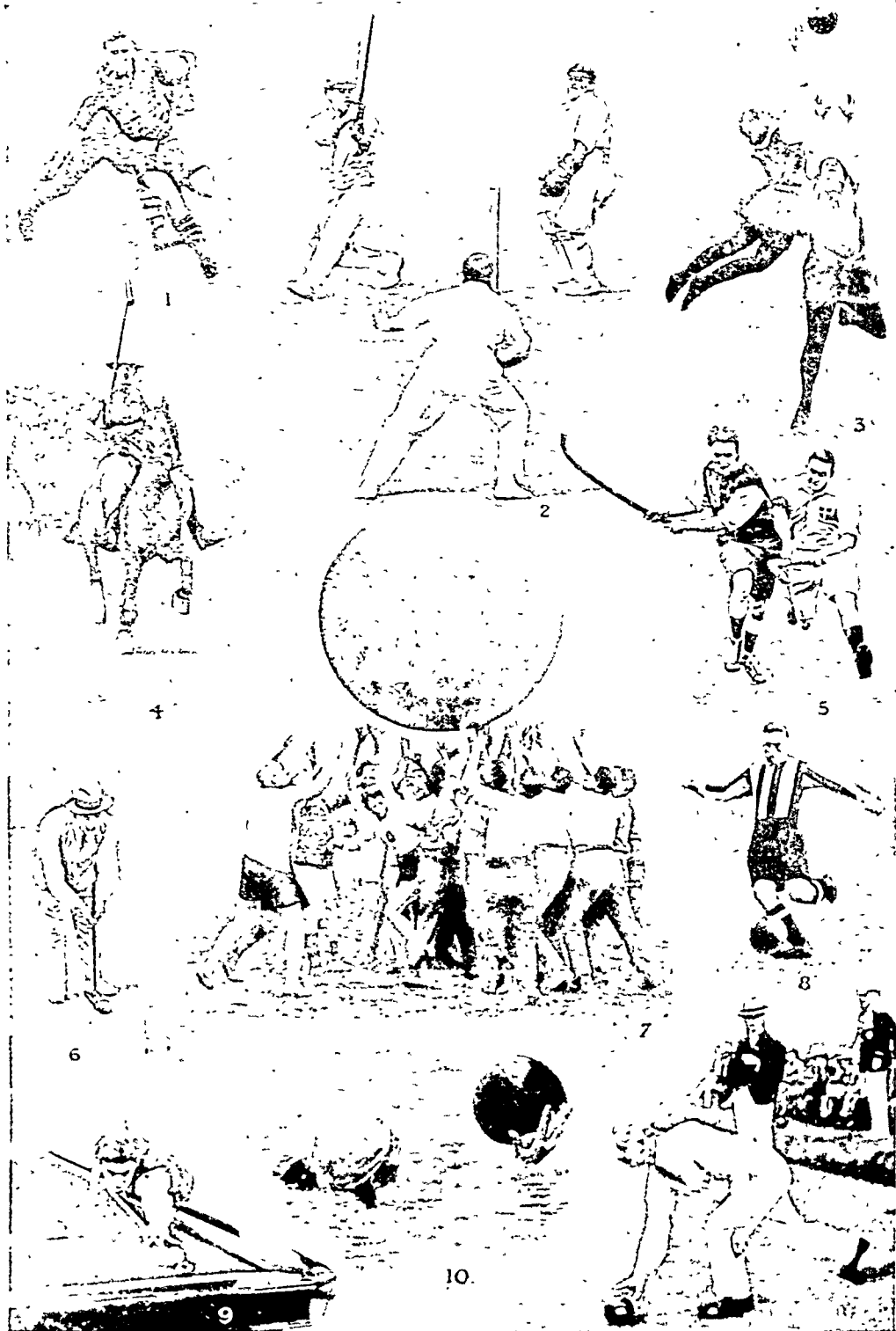
To keep the ball rolling is to keep things lively in games, discussions, or work. A **ball-bearing** (*n.*) is a bearing in which a number of small balls are used to lessen friction. Water is let into the service cistern of a house through a **ball-cock** (*n.*), the valve of which is opened and shut by a lever having a hollow spherical copper float on the end of it. As the water rises in the cistern the float rises too and shuts off the supply when a certain level is reached. In architecture a **ball-flower** (*n.*) is an ornament that looks like a ball wrapped round by the petals of a flower. A **ball-valve** (*n.*) is a ball of gun-metal, rubber, or rubber-covered metal, moving up and down on a seating and acting as valve in a pump.

*M.E. bal, balle*, either from O. Norse *báll-r* or *F. balle*, of Teut. origin, cp. *G. ball*.



Ball-bearing.—Part of one of the bearing rings of the crank-shaft of a motor-car has been removed to show the position of the ball-bearings used to lessen friction.

# THE BALL IN MANY SPHERES OF SPORT



Ball.—1. Rugby football, a tackle. 2. Cricket, a leg hit. 3. Net-ball, a good jump. 4. Polo, advancing towards goal. 5. Hockey, a forward about to pass. 6. Croquet, "running" a hoop. 7. Push-ball, lifting the ball. 8. Association football, dribbling. 9. Billiards, a losing hazard. 10. Water polo, taking a pass. 11. Bowls, a player at the mat.



**ball** [2] (bawl), *n.* A large social gathering to which people are invited for dancing. (*F. bal.*)

A **ball-room** (*n.*) is a room used for balls. In one built specially for dancing the floor is supported in such a way that it can bend a little and by its springiness make dancing on it easier and more pleasant. To open the ball is to lead off in the first dance. On the eve of the battle of Waterloo a great ball took place at Brussels. The officers present were suddenly called away to open the ball, that is, to begin operations, against the French in the great fight of June 18th, 1815.

*F. baller*, *L.L. ballāre*, *Gr. ballizein* to dance. There may perhaps be some connexion with a ball-game as originally part of the entertainment

**ballad** (bāl' ad), *n.* A simple story in verse; a popular song. (*F. ballade.*)

In the beginning a ballad was probably a song to which people danced. It then became a song which told some popular story in verse, such as that of "Barbara Allen." Later on ballads were written on any interesting event of the moment. A person who wrote ballads of a poor kind or a person who hawked ballads in the streets was known as a ballad-monger (*n.*).

The word is now used for almost any song set to music, except comic songs. At a ballad-concert (*n.*) such songs form the chief part of the programme. A person who sings ballads professionally at a concert or in the streets is a ballad-singer (*n.*). A balladist (bāl' a dist, *n.*) or ballad-writer (*n.*) is one who writes songs in the form of a ballad or ballad-wise (*adv.*). The word balladry (bāl' a dri, *n.*) covers both the method of rhyming used for a certain kind of poetry and ballads taken all together.

*O.F. balade*, from *L.L. ballare* to dance, originally meaning a song accompanied by dancing.

**ballade** (bā lad'), *n.* A poem consisting of three verses of eight lines each, together with an envoy of four lines which sums up what has been said before or points the moral. The last line of each verse and usually of the envoy is the same. The rhymes in each verse are arranged *ababbcc*. (*F. ballade.*)

The ballade was very popular in France in the fourteenth and fifteenth centuries. In England Chaucer wrote ballades, and in the nineteenth century the ballade was revived by Algernon Swinburne, Austin Dobson, and others. A ballade royal (bā lad' rō' āl, *n.*) is written in rhyme royal, so called because

James I of Scotland used it. Each verse contains seven ten-syllable lines, rhyming *ababbcc*.

*O.F. balade*, from *L.L. ballare* to dance, but afterwards restricted as a technical term to a particular kind of French poetry.

**ballast** (bāl' āst), *n.* Weight carried in a boat or ship to keep it steady; the broken stone, gravel, slag, burnt clay, etc., used under the sleepers of a railway or to surface a road; a steadying influence. *v.t.* To supply (a ship) with ballast; to spread ballast on: to steady. (*F. lest; lester.*)

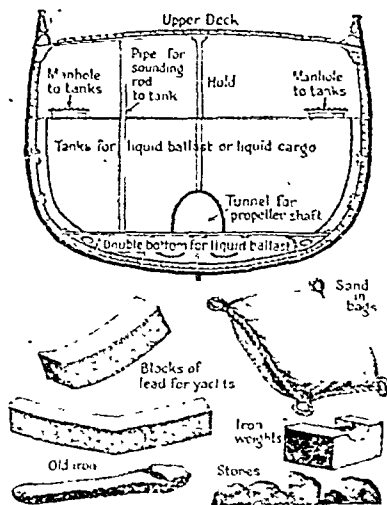
A racing yacht needs a heavy weight well below the water-line to balance the side pressure of the wind on her sails. The ballast may take the form of a hundred tons or more of lead worked into the keel. A cargo ship floats much higher when empty than when carrying cargo, and would roll very badly and be difficult to steer if taken to sea in this empty condition. She is therefore ballasted to make her sink lower in the water. This is done in many ships by admitting water into tanks in her bottom. Such a tank is a ballast-tank (*n.*). When ballasted the ship is said to be in ballast, which implies that she has no cargo in her. In some ports a charge, called ballastage (bāl' āst āj, *n.*), is made for any shingle or sand taken aboard for the ballasting (bāl' āst īng, *n.*) of a ship. A person who lacks strength of character is said to have no ballast.

The last part of the word evidently means load (*G. last burden*). *Swed. bar-last* means bare, mere load, *Dan. bag-last* back- or behind-load.

**ballet** (bāl' ā), *n.* A dramatic story expressed on the stage by means of dancing; the persons who perform it. (*F. ballet.*)

A ballet is a decorative dance in which several people take part, and in which one or more of the principal performers tell the story by pantomimic gestures and dances. The modern ballet arose during the Renaissance period. In 1489 a very magnificent ballet took place in Milan on the occasion of the wedding of the duke. France adopted the ballet in the sixteenth century and developed it greatly. The ballet has come into favour again in England and America, very largely through the influence of the Russian ballet, which itself is derived from the old French ballet.

A ballet-girl (*n.*) is a girl who takes one of the unimportant parts in a ballet. A person



**Ballast.**—Section of after end of cargo steamer fitted with tanks for liquid ballast or liquid cargo. Beneath are various kinds of ballast.

who trains dancers for the ballet is called a ballet-master (*n.*) or ballet-mistress (*n.*).

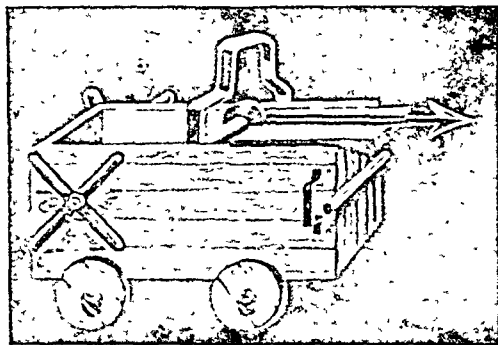
Ballet is a French word, the dim. of *bal* (ball).

**ballista** (bā līs' tā), *n.* An engine of war resembling a large bow, used in ancient times for hurling stones and other missiles; a cross-bow or arbalest. The plural is *ballistae* (bā līs' tē) or *ballistas*. (*F. baliste, arbalète.*)

Anything connected with *ballistae* is termed *ballistic* (bā līs' tīk, *adj.*), and, in a modern sense, anything dealing with the hurling of warlike projectiles, whether from a catapult or a field gun. A ballistic pendulum is a device for measuring the speed of projectiles. This instrument is used in what is called *ballistics* (bā līs' tīks, *n.*), the science of warlike projectiles. Exterior ballistics deals with the motion of missiles through the air, and interior ballistics with explosive forces, etc., inside the gun.

The ancient Greeks and Romans knew how to make special bow-strings for their *ballistae* from hair and gut, and it is said that some *ballistae* could throw stones weighing 300 pounds. This art is now lost. A *ballista* made recently after the Roman fashion, but with rope instead of gut, could hurl a stone ball weighing eight pounds a distance of well over a quarter of a mile.

*L. ballista, from Gr. ballēm to throw.*



**Ballista.**—An ancient engine of war, the *ballista* was used for hurling stones and other missiles.

**ballistite** (bāl' īs tīt), *n.* A smokeless powder, containing nitro-glycerine and gun-cotton in equal parts.

Black gunpowder creates a dense black smoke when exploded. The famous Swedish chemist Alfred Nobel, made many experiments in search of a smokeless powder before he discovered what he wanted in a mixture of nitro-glycerine and gun-cotton. This substance, which is very powerful, almost smokeless, and fit for use in fire-arms and big guns, he named *ballistite*. It was the first in a long list of smokeless explosives.

*L. with a machine for throwing missiles, and the chemical suffix -ite.*

**ballistraria** (bāl īs trar' i ā). This is another spelling of *balistraria*. See *balistraria*.

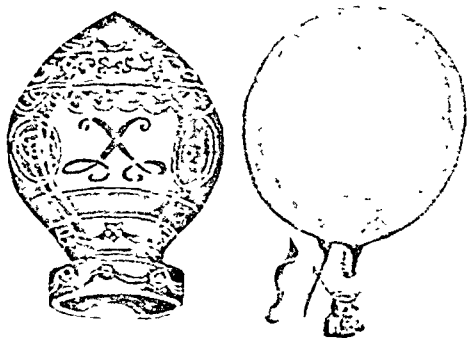
**ballonet** (bāl ō net'), *n.* An air-bag inside the gas envelope of an airship, used to maintain the shape of the envelope. Another spelling is *ballonnet*. (*F. ballonnet.*)

The *ballonet* is empty when the airship has been fully inflated with gas. During the first ascent some of the gas must be allowed to escape through the relief valve as it expands. The gas contracts again during a descent, and air is then driven into the *ballonet* with a blower to expand it and prevent the envelope from becoming flabby.

On the second ascent the expanding gas finds room for itself by pressing some of the air out of the *ballonet*, which is again blown out when the airship descends.

*A dim. of F. ballon balloon.*

**balloon** (bā loon'), *n.* A bag of silk, paper, or other light air-tight material, which, when filled with gas or hot air, floats in the air. *v.i.* To travel in a balloon; to swell up like



**Balloon.**—An early form of hot-air balloon and a gas balloon which succeeded it.

a balloon. (*F. ballon, monter en ballon, ballonner.*)

The first balloons were soap-bubbles filled with hydrogen gas, which Tiberius Cavallo, an Italian, sent into the air in 1782. Soon afterwards two French brothers, named Montgolfier, having noticed how smoke rose in a chimney, made some small paper balloons open at the bottom, and filled them with the smoke from burning rubbish. The balloons rose to the ceiling and stayed there for some time, till the air cooled.

The Montgolfiers thought that a fire balloon rose because of some peculiar quality in the smoke. They did not yet understand that the real cause was the fact that the weight of the hot air and the balloon was less than that of a body of cold air of the same size as the balloon. Several very large hot-air balloons, of paper lined with silk, were made and fitted with cars to carry a load. On September 12th, 1783, a balloon was inflated at Versailles, near Paris, and sent up with a cock, a duck, and a sheep as its living freight.

A couple of months later the first ascent by human beings was made (*see* aeronaut), and

before the year was out Professor Charles went up in a balloon filled with hydrogen gas, which lifted a much greater weight for its size, and was less dangerous than a fire-balloon carrying a large basket in which a fierce fire burned. The fire-balloon, therefore, soon ceased to be used except as a toy. In 1821 coal gas took the place of hydrogen for inflating balloons, as being very much cheaper.

The greatest height ever reached by the ordinary pear-shaped balloon carrying passengers is 37,000 feet (September 5th, 1862) and the greatest distance travelled in one is 1,895 miles, from Germany to Siberia, in 1914. A captive balloon is one held by a rope, so that it may be drawn down.

The kite-balloon is a sausage-shaped captive balloon, attached to its rope in such a way that the wind makes it rise like a kite. During the World War (1914-18) kite-balloons were much used in watching troops and directing the fire of artillery.

A pilot balloon is a small balloon sent up to find out which way the wind is blowing at great heights. A sounding balloon is a small balloon carrying scientific instruments which record pressure, heat, and moisture. Balloons of this kind have reached heights of over 60,000 feet.

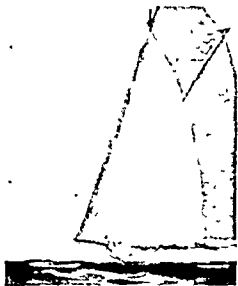
In balloon-jumping (*n*), a person strapped into a jacket below a gas-bag can leap to a great height if his weight is only slightly heavier than the lifting-power of the gas.

A person who follows ballooning or makes balloon ascents is called a **balloonist** (*bā loon' ist, n.*) or *aeronaut*. (For dirigible balloons see *airship*.)

Ital. *pallone*, earlier *ballone*, augmentative form of *balla* a (modern ital. *palla*) a ball (*p. l. ballon, balle*).

**balloon foresail** (*bā loon' fōr' səl, or fōr' sāl), n.* The largest headsail on a vessel.

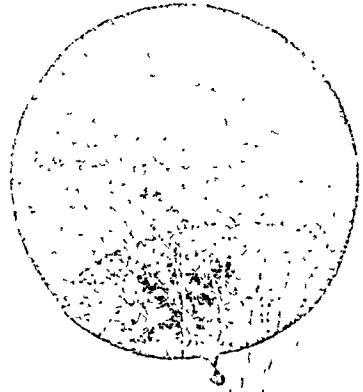
Sometimes called the balloon jib, this sail is only hoisted in very fair weather when the boat is running before the wind, or with the wind abeam, or on the quarter. It is hoisted from the trucks of the topmast head to the end of the jib-boom. As a rule it is only used on yachts and some fishing



Balloon foresail.

boats, though sometimes it may be seen on schooners.

**ballot** [*1*] (*bāl' ôt*), *n.* The ball, paper, etc., used for secret voting; the method of secret voting; the application of this method; the total number of votes thus arrived at; drawing lots. *v.l.* To choose by ballot or lot. *v.l.* To vote by ballot; to draw lots. (*F. boule; votation, scrutin, ballottage; voter pour, voter au scrutin.*)



Balloon.—In the sport called balloon-jumping, a man strapped into a jacket hung below a gas-bag is able by vigorous jumps to leap such obstacles as trees and hedges.

Small balls were formerly used in secret voting. Nowadays a voter at an election puts a cross against the name of the candidate for whom he wishes to vote, folds his ballot-paper (*n.*) and drops it into the ballot-box (*n.*), no one else knowing what he has written. The idea of secret voting is to prevent bribery or other corrupt practices. Before the days of secret voting candidates would put pressure upon persons to gain their votes.

The ancient Greeks and Romans practised voting by ballot but it was not until the nineteenth century that the ballot was introduced in England. After the passing of the Ballot Act in 1872 this method of voting was made compulsory at all Parliamentary and municipal elections.

The second ballot in a French election between the two candidates who have come nearest to but have not secured the legal majority is called *ballotage* (bāl' ôt â, *n.*).

Ital. *ballotta* little ball, dim. of *balla*.

**ballot** [21] (bāl' ôt), *n.* A little bale weighing between 70 and 120 lb. (*F. ballot.*)

The word is the *F.* dim. of *balle* bale

**ballyrag** (bāl' i rāg), *v.t.* To attack with violent language; to play a practical joke on. *v.t.* To use violent language to play pranks. The word is also spelt *bullyrag* (bul' i rāg). (*F. railler grossièrement, injurier.*)

The form *ballyrag* appears to be older than *bullyrag*. The *v. rag* to tease is probably a shortened form.

**balm** (bam), *n.* A fragrant substance that oozes from certain trees: a tree producing this: a fragrant garden herb, a fragrant ointment; fragrance; a soothing influence. *v.t.* To soothe. (*F. baume apaiser.*)

From the healing and soothing properties of balm come such expressions as balm to his wounds or to his wounded vanity. Of the various fragrant garden herbs called balm one of the best-known is *Melissa officinalis*, which has a scent like lemons and is used in flavouring.

Balm of Gilead, which is mentioned in the Bible (Jeremiah viii, 22) 'Is there no balm in Gilead?' and is also called balm of Mecca comes from a tree which grows in Arabia and Abyssinia. It used to be much valued for healing wounds. There is an American plant yielding a similar resin, which is known as American balm of Gilead.

A **balmy** (ba' mi *adj.*) breeze is a mild, soothing breeze with a soft, subtle fragrance. When a breeze blows **balmyly** (ba' mi li, *adv.*) we hope that the balminess (ba' mi nes *n.*) of the weather will continue.

M.E. *ba(s)me*, *baume*, O.F. *basme*, L. *balsamum* Gr. *balsamon* balsam

**balm-cricæet** (bam krik' ét), *n.* This is another name for the cicada. See cicada.

**balmoral** (bāl' mor' ál), *n.* A kind of Scotch cap; a kind of figured petticoat; an ankle-boot lacing in front.

Balmoral in Aberdeenshire is a private home of the reigning British monarch Queen

Victoria lived a great deal at Balmoral Castle, and Scottish people named certain articles of apparel after it.

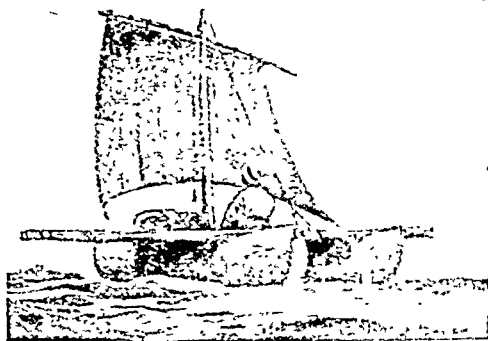
The name is compounded of Gaelic *baile* place, dwelling, and *more* great.

**Balolo** (ba lō' lō), *n.* A Bantu people of the equatorial provinces of the Congo.

The Balolo people are divided into a number of tribes, including the Boruki, Dulingo, Imballa, and Kimoma, their wide-spread settlements being scattered among the villages of the Batwa dwarfs. They are forest people, engaging in agriculture, but not in pastoral pursuits, and at one time were all given to cannibalism. The par. of the Congo basin, on the banks of the Chuapa, Lomami and Bussera, occupied by the Balolo is that which is best suited to Europeans.

**balsa** (bawl' sa), *n.* A raft or surf-boat used on the Pacific coast of S. America and in Brazil. (*F. balse.*)

The craft is named after the unusually buoyant wood from which it is partly made. This is obtained from a tree (*balsa*) which grows in Peru and Brazil. Inflated bullock skins are placed beneath the deck or platform.



**Balsa.**—This strange craft consists of bullock skins filled with air and lashed together which support a platform of balsa wood.

**balsam** (bawl' sām), *n.* A resinous, oily or gummy vegetable extract with a fragrant odour and agreeable, sharp taste; a soothing influence. *v.t.* To anoint with balsam; to heal; to soothe; to embalm. (*F. baume. apaiser, embaumer.*)

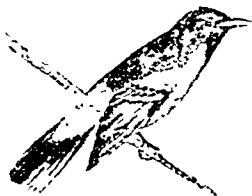
Trees that yield this extract are called balsams. From the balsam-fir of North America, *Abies balsamea*, sometimes called Balm of Gilead fir, is obtained Canada-balsam, a beautiful, clear, resinous gum used for fixing objects on the glass slides of microscopes. True Balm of Gilead, also called balsam of Mecca, comes from an Eastern shrub *Commiphora opobalsanum*. The English garden balsam, *Impatiens balsamea*, sometimes, but wrongly, called balsam-apple, is balsamine (bawl' sā mēn, *n.*).

Balsams are used in medicine, in perfumery, and soap. The perfume of burning incense is mostly due to its balsams. A substance containing balsam or having its soothing

or healing properties is balsamic (bawl sām' ik, *adj.*), balsamy (bawl' sām i), balsamous (bawl' sām ūs), or balsamiferous (bawl sām i f' ēr ūs), and if it acts like balsam it acts **balsamically** (bawl sām' i kāl li, *adv.*). If we add balsam to anything we **balsam** it. The Egyptians balsamed their dead with storax when embalming.

M.E. *ba(s)me*, *baume*, O F *basme*, L. *balsamum*, Gr. *balsamon* balsam.

**Baltimore** (bawl' ti mór), *n.* An American bird allied to the starlings. (F. *baltimore*.)



Baltimore.—The Baltimore, an American bird.

The orange and black colourings of this bird have gained it its name, for these were the colours of Lord Baltimore, the founder of Maryland. It is noted for its quaint hanging-nests, some forty or more of which

may sometimes be found on a single tree. It is also called the Baltimore bird, the Baltimore oriole, and the Baltimore hanging-nest. The scientific name is *Icterus galbula*.

**Baluba** (ba lū' ba), *n.pl.* A Bantu tribe living in the Congo basin.

The Baluba are a negroid race, living between the Kasai and the Lubilash rivers. Tall in stature, they are not as dark-skinned as the true negroes, and the heads are somewhat rounder.

**Baluch** (bal' ūch), *n.* One of the Indo-Afghan race of Baluchis. (F. *Balouches*.)

The Baluchis are a mixed race dwelling in Baluchistan and western India, and speaking a language akin to Persian. They are a dark-skinned people, quite distinct from the ruling tribes of their country. Most of them are herdsmen, but not a few of them, especially in the west, prefer robbery as a means of livelihood.

**baluster** (bāl' ūs ter), *n.* A short pillar helping to support a hand or other rail.

(F. *balustre*.)



Balustrade.—The pillars are balusters.

The baluster was an Italian invention and its usual shape was slender in the upper part of it and pear-shaped below. A row of balusters, supporting a rail, is called a **balustrade** (bāl ūs trād', *n.*). The balusters which support the hand-rail on a staircase, and often the hand-rail itself, are now

generally called **banisters**, which is a corruption of balusters.

Ital. *balaustro*, L.L. *balaustum*. It gets its name from a supposed resemblance to the flower of the wild pomegranate (Gr. *balauston*).

**Bamangwato** (bām āng wah' tō), *n.pl.* One of the Kaffir peoples of South Africa.

The Bamangwato form one of the numerous Kaffir tribes of South Africa. They took refuge in Bechuanaland and the Kalahari desert from the attacks of the warlike Matabele. They live in the north-east of Bechuanaland, east of the Macloutsie River, and across it to the junction of the Shashi and the Tuli.

**bambino** (bam bē' nō), *n.* An image of the Infant Saviour in swaddling clothes; a baby. In the church of Ara Coeli at Rome there is a very famous Bambino carved in wood and encrusted with gems. (F. *bambino*.)

Ital. *bambino* babe, infant, a dim. form.

**bamboo** (bām boo'), *n.* A kind of grass with a thick woody stem; the actual stem of these grasses. *v.t.* To beat with a bamboo. (F. *bambou*; *frapper à coups de bambou*.)

Bamboos often grow to a height of a hundred feet, that is, higher than most oak



Bamboo.—Giant bamboos in the beautiful Peradeniya Gardens, Kandy, Ceylon.

trees we see in England. In India the grains are used as food, while in the West Indies and elsewhere young bamboo shoots are eaten in the same way as we eat asparagus. Bamboo is put to countless uses besides that of making poles and sticks, its most common use in England.

The word is of Malay origin.

**bamboozle** (bām boo' zl), *v.t.* To impose upon by trickery; to mystify. *v.i.* To practise deception. (F. *dupes, tromper*.)

This word seems to have come into use about the year 1700. It was originally slang, but gradually became adopted into the language. The act of bamboozling is **bamboozlement** (bām boo' zl ment, *n.*), and a person who practises it is a **bamboozler** (bām boo' zler, *n.*).

The origin of the word, which also occurs in the shortened form **bam**, is unknown. SYN.: Cheat, hoax, hoodwink, perplex.

**ban** (1) (băn), *v.t.* To forbid; to curse; to denounce publicly. *v.i.* To utter curses. *n.* A public proclamation; excommunication; outlawry. (F. *maître*; *ban*.)

Most boys and girls have read the story of Robin Hood and his merry men, and many must have envied the life he led with his outlaw band. As a matter of fact, however, the life of the outlaw was far from pleasant. Anybody who fled from trial was in the olden days put under the ban, or declared a "wolf's head," and henceforth every man's hand was against him. All his property was forfeited to the king, the law no longer protected him, and at one time nobody would be punished for slaying him. Once it had been publicly announced that he was an outlaw he lived the life of a hunted animal.

In feudal times the word ban meant a proclamation, and this meaning survives in the word banns. See banns.

**ME** *bannen*, A.-S. *bannan* to proclaim, summon **ME** and **O.F.** *ban* (*n.*), L.L. *bannum* **SYN**: *v.* Anathematize, execrate, fulminate, proscribe *n.* Denunciation excommunication proscription

**ban** {2} (băn), *n.* The title of the ruler of a banat. (F. *ban*.)

Ban is a Persian word which the Hungarians long used for the governor of a banat (*băn'at* *n.*) or frontier district. Such a district was Temesvar, which formerly belonged to Hungary but was divided between Rumania and Jugo-Slavia after the World War (1914-18).

**banai** (bă năi; bă năl'), *n.* Commonplace. (F. *banal*.)

A banal remark is one in which the opinion expressed is so obvious that the remark itself was unnecessary. A banality (bă năl' i ti, *n.*) is such a remark, and anyone who is in the habit of making such remarks is addicted to banality.

The word is connected with *ban*, a proclamation calling on the king's vassals for military service, and as all were hable, it came to mean everyday, commonplace.

**banana** (bă na' nă), *n.* A tree which grows in many hot countries; the fruit of the tree. (F. *banane*.)

The banana is one of the most nourishing fruits we can eat, and it is actually the chief

food eaten by many millions of people in hot countries, where it is dried and made into bread and cakes. All the bananas which come over to England from Jamaica and other places are picked when they are hard and green, and they ripen and turn yellow on the voyage over. Banana-wine is a drink made by slicing bananas and allowing them to soak for a time in water.

The word is Spanish of West African origin, meaning the fruit of the banana or plantain tree.

**Banbury-cake** (băn' bəri kāk), *n.* A kind of cake filled with mincemeat.

The town of Banbury, in Oxfordshire, has been noted for its cakes for more than three hundred years. Other well-known eatables connected with English place-names are Yorkshire pudding, Lancashire hot-pot, and Norfolk dumpling. In the seventeenth century Banbury became known for its very strict Puritanism, and so a person who assumed unreasonable airs of goodness was nicknamed a Banbury-man.

**band** (bänd), *n.* That which binds or confines; a stripe of colour; a layer of different material; a driving belt; one of the two short white linen strips worn at the neck by certain ministers of religion, by barristers, and others; a number of persons united together for some definite purpose; a company of musicians attached to a regiment or ship. *v.t.* To fasten or confine with a band; to paint a coloured band or strip round; to unite together into a band. *v.i.* To come together with a band; to unite. (F. *bande*, *lien ruban*.)

The ruffs which men and women wore in Tudor times were called bands, and the bandbox (*n.*) gets its name from the fact that it was first used for carrying ruffs in. The word now means a rounded pasteboard box for holding millinery. The canvas binding extending along the entire length of a lawn-tennis net is called the band.

A bandage (bänd' aj, *n.*) is a long strip of woven material for binding. In surgery it is used for binding up wounds or keeping dressings or splints in place. To do this is to bandage (*v.t.*).

A band-saw (*n.*) is an endless band of thin steel, with teeth cut in one edge of it. The saw runs over two large pulleys, one of which



**Banana.**—This fruit is the chief food of millions of people, including this Fijian seated at the foot of a banana tree.

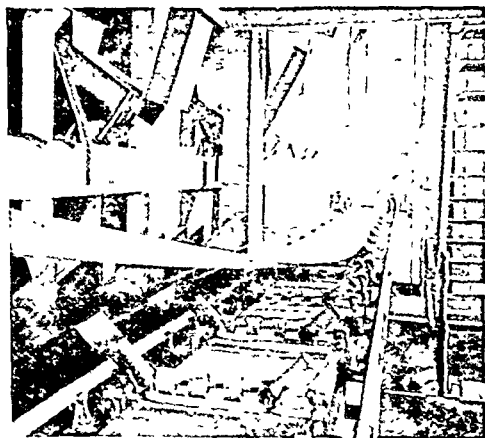
(drives it, and may be toothed to cut either wood or metal. A narrow bandsaw is useful for cutting out curved or irregularly shaped parts. Wood-cutting band-saws move at very high speeds, and will shave ships only a sixteenth of an inch thick off wide logs. Being very thin, they cut with very little waste.

The word band in the sense of a company of musicians covers a body of performers on any kind of musical instrument. It is used more commonly of players of wind instruments only, the word "orchestra" being kept for a mixture of wind and stringed instruments.

The leader or conductor of a musical band is a band-master (*n.*), and each member of a band a bandsman (*n.*). In many public places a band-stand (*n.*) is provided for bands to play in.

About 1848 children's temperance societies were founded, called Bands of Hope (*n. pl.*). Before sixty years had passed the number of members had grown to over three millions.

*Band*, meaning anything that binds together, is of Scandinavian origin, akin to G. *band*, A.-S. *bend*. Meaning a company it is connected with L.L. *banda* body of troops, perhaps from L.L. *bandum* banner or badge



Band.—A stout canvas band such as this, driven by machinery, is used in many warehouses and factories for carrying articles.

**bandana** (bān dān' ā), *n.* A bright-coloured, figured or spotted fabric; a handkerchief of this description. *adj.* Made of such material. The word is also spelt *bandanna*. (*F. bandane; de bandane.*)

In olden days Englishmen when they came home from India usually brought with them a supply of bandanas. So popular did these gaily-coloured silk handkerchiefs become that manufacturers in England took to making them in cotton as well as in silk.

The early bandanas had white or light diamond-shaped blobs on a ground of a darker colour. The spots were formed by tying up parts of the material so that the dye did not reach them. Nowadays bandana

cloth is made by a chemical process and the designs are far more complicated.

The word is from Hindustani *bandhna* the method of dyeing explained above

**bandeau** (bān' dō), *n.* A band for a woman's head or hat a bandage. (*F. bandeau.*)

Apart from the bandeaux (bān' dōz, *n. pl.*) worn over the hair for sports, ladies often wear an ornamental bandeau. The effect is very becoming when the bandeau is made, say, of sparkling jewels or of tiny flowers joined together. A bandeau is also used for putting inside a lady's hat to make it fit.



• Bandeau.—Miss Betty Nuthall wearing a bandeau.

*F. dim. of bande band.*  
**bandelet** (bān' e let), *n.* A ring-like moulding round

the column of a building. (*F. bandelette.*)

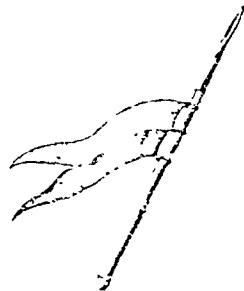
*F. dim. of bande, band*

**banderilla** (bān der il' yā), *n.* A small dart decorated with coloured paper which the bull-fighter sticks into the neck of the bull. (*F. banderille.*)

*Span. dim. of bandera (obsolete), F. bandiere, E. banner.*

**banderol** (bān' der ōl), *n.* A small flag or pennon once carried on weapons and on ships' masts, a scroll often found on old engravings, bearing a description of the picture; a band with an inscription used in Renaissance buildings. The word is also spelt *banderole* (bān' der ōl). (*F. banderole.*)

The word is of French origin, *dim. of (obsolete) bandure, E. banner.*



Bandrol.—The banderol once carried on weapons and on ships' masts.

**bandicoot** (bān' di koot), *n.* A large Indian rat, a pouched animal resembling the bandicoot. (*F. rat bandikout, rat géant.*)

According to its popular name the bandicoot is a pig-rat; according to its scientific name, *Mus giganteus*, it is a giant mouse. It is as large as a cat or a rabbit, and is very destructive to crops.

Some of the pouched animals or marsupials of Australia are called bandicoots, or bandicoot rats, because they resemble the true bandicoot in appearance. Actually they are not even related to it.

The name is said to be a corruption of two Telugu words, *pāndi* pig *'ohū* rat.

**bandit** (băn' dit), *n.* A lawless plunderer; an outlaw. (F. *bandit*.)

Originally used for an outlaw, this word came to be applied to any desperate robber, such as those composing the organized gangs that hide in almost inaccessible places in the mountainous districts of southern and southeastern Europe. From December 1911 to May 1912 Paris and its suburbs suffered much from a gang of motor bandits, who killed and injured many people, committed several robberies, and drove off in motor-cars. They were eventually brought to justice. Another form of the plural is *banditti* (băn dit' i), which is used especially for organized bands.

Ital. *bandito*, p.p. of *bandire* to outlaw, L.L. *bannire*, *bandire* to declare persons, places, or things to be forbidden or liable to police supervision. See *ban* [1].

**bandolier** (băn dô lēr'), *n.* A band or belt worn across the chest over the left shoulder, or round the waist, to carry charges for firearms. Another spelling of the word is *bandoleer*. (F. *bandoulière*.)



Bandolier.—The band in which a soldier carries cartridges.

The bandoliers worn by soldiers in Cromwell's time held a dozen small metal or wooden boxes, in each of which was a charge of powder and shot. Having the charges ready made loading quicker work. The modern military bandolier has pockets for clips of five cartridges. Sportsmen's belt bandoliers have loops for separate cartridges.

Span. *bandolera*, from *bandola* dim of *banda* sash, scarf

**bandore** (băn dôr'; băn' dôr), *n.* A musical instrument like a lute or a guitar. (F. *pandore*.)

The bandore, which had wire strings, was invented early in the reign of Queen Elizabeth by John Rose, or Ross, who named it after a very ancient three-stringed instrument the pandoura. The word banjo is a changed form of bandore.

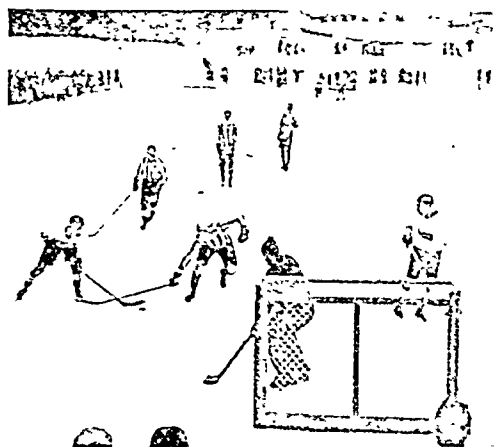
Spin. *bandurria*, Port. *bandurra*, L. *pandura*, all ultimately from Gr. *pandoura*

**bandy** [1] (băn' dī), *v.t.* To toss to and fro; to exchange. *adj.* Crooked. *n.* The game of ice hockey; the bent stick or club used in this game. (F. *renvoyer*, *tortu*; *resser*.)

The game of bandy is popular in all countries where ice abounds, and particularly in Canada and the northern states of the U.S.A. From the tossing about of the ball the word came to be used of the tossing to and fro of intangible things. For example when we bandy words with someone, we

toss about or exchange remarks or wrangle. We exchange blows when we bandy blows. Stories of a certain person may be bandied about from mouth to mouth. A person whose legs are bent outwards we describe as bandy-legged (*adj.*) or bandy (*adj.*).

F. *bander* to bandy at tennis, perhaps from *bande* company, side, L.L. *banda*, of Teutonic origin; cp. G. *band*, *binden*, E. *bind*. The E. suffix -y is unexplained.



Bandy.—A thrilling game of bandy or ice hockey in full swing at Davos, Switzerland.

**bandy** [2] (băn' dī), *n.* A light carriage or gig used in India, provided with a hood to keep off the rays of the sun.

The word comes from Telugu *bandi* cart.

**bane** (băn), *n.* That which causes destruction; ruin; harm; woe; poison; a disease of sheep. *v.t.* To injure. (F. *poison*, *fléau*, *ruine*; *nuire à*.)

This word is used chiefly in the sense of something that destroys well-being. Gambling, for instance, might be said to be the bane of some people. When used in combination with another word, bane means poison. Thus henbane is a poisonous plant. Ratsbane is poison for rats, generally a preparation containing arsenic.

Although the word generally has a sinister meaning, we sometimes use it lightly in ordinary conversation, as when we say: "That child is the bane of my life," meaning that he is a cause of worry. Anything which is destructive or harmful is baneful (băn' fūl, *adj.*), and acts banefully (băn' fūl lī, *adv.*), and has the quality of banefulness (băn' fūl nēs, *n.*).

A.-S. *bana* murderer, and similar forms in various Teut. languages; cp. Gr. *phonos* murder.

**baneberry** (băn' bēr i), *n.* A poisonous plant; its berry. (F. *herbe de Saint-Christophe*, *actée à l'épis*.)

This plant is also known as Herb Christopher. Its small white flowers turn into black berries, which are very poisonous. The



scientific name of the British species is *Actaea spicata*.

E. *bane* and *berry*.

**banewort** (bān' wěrt), *n.* The lesser spearwort; the deadly nightshade; a poisonous plant. (F. *flammette*, *belladone*.)

This word is used loosely in the country parts of Britain for any poisonous plant. It has been applied to the deadly nightshade and especially to the lesser spearwort (*Ranunculus flammula*), a plant that grows in wet places.

E. *bane* and *wort* plant.

**bang** [1] (bāng), *v.t.* To beat, move or perform various other actions violently; to outdo, to cut straight across. *v.i.* To resound with a crash, to move suddenly. *n.* A resounding blow; a sudden loud noise; a fringe. *adv.* With a violent blow, shock, or noise; suddenly; abruptly. (F. *battre*; *fermer violemment*; *faire un bruit fort*; *comp. pan.*)

This word nearly always conveys the sense of violence, noise, or abruptness. If a man bangs a drum his blows produce a loud noise. When we bang things about we handle them roughly. If a door bangs or is banged it slams or is slammed with a loud noise. If we walk about in a dark room we may come bang against a chair. A person bangs out of a room in a huff.

An American fashion in hairdressing that was once popular was to bang the hair, to cut the front hair across so that it ended abruptly in a straight line. A **bang-tail** (*n.*) is a horse with its tail cut off square or the tail of any animal so cut.

Bang is a word of Scandinavian origin: Icel., *banga* to beat, cp. G. *bengel* club.

**bang** [2] (bāng). This is another spelling of *bhāng*. See *bhāng*.

**bangle** (bāng' gl), *n.* An ornamental ring worn round the wrist, arm, or ankle. (F. *bracelet indien*.)

In India and Africa bangles are worn round the ankles as well as round the wrists or arms. Often a number of bangles are worn together, with little charms and other ornaments dangling from them. The so-called slave bangle is a broad band usually worn rather high up the arm. To be **bangled** (bāng' gl, *adj.*) is to be decked with bangles.

The word is derived from Hindustani *bangri*, literally, a coloured glass ring worn as a wristlet.

**banian** (bān' yān; bān' i ān). This is another spelling of *banyan*. See *banyan*.



Bangle.—A native of India wearing many bangles.

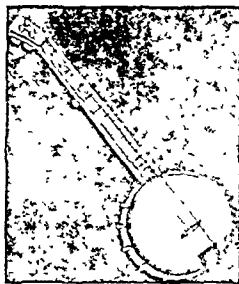
**banish** (bān' ish), *v.t.* To drive away; to dismiss; to condemn to leave the country. (F. *bannir*.)

A person could be banished from any country, not necessarily from his native land. **Banishment** (bān' ish ment, *n.*) means the act of banishing and also the state of being banished. As a legal punishment banishment was in use in England from the reign of Elizabeth down to the year 1853.

M. E. *banissen*, L. L. *bannire* to declare subject to police control, O. F. *banir* to outlaw. The suffix *-ish* comes from the F. pres. p. form in *-issant*. See *ban* [1]. SYN: Ban, eject, exile, expel, ostracize. ANT: Admit, harbour, retain.

**banister** (bān' is ter), *n.* The upright piece of wood or stone which supports the hand-rail of a staircase. The term **banisters** (*n. pl.*) is often applied to the supports and the rail as well. The word is a corruption of *baluster*. (F. *rampe*.)

**banjo** (bān' jō), *n.* A stringed musical instrument with a body like a tambourine and a long neck holding the tuning pegs. (F. *banjo*.)



Banjo.—A musical instrument with five or more strings.

The banjo was invented by the negroes of north America. It has five or more strings which pass over a bridge on the parchment sounding board and are plucked with the fingers of the right hand. In the hands of a skilled **banjoist** (bān' jō ist, *n.*) it can be very effective.

Banjo is a corruption of *bandore* or *pandore*, through *banjore*.

**banjo-frame** (bān' jō frām), *n.* A device used in a shipyard for transferring curves from one place to another. (F. *cadre d'hélice*.)

The exact shape of every frame, or rib, of a ship under construction is drawn full-size on the floor of the mould-loft, which is really a gigantic drawing-board. The **banjo-frame**, a kind of jig or pattern which can be bent to any curve, makes it easy to reproduce the outline of a frame already sketched to another part of the floor, or to a second board near the furnaces wherein the frames are heated for bending.

E. *banjo* and *frame*.

**banjulele** (bān jū lā' lē), *n.* A modern musical stringed instrument. (F. *banjulele*.)

The banjulele is a product of the modern desire for syncopated music of a light character. In design, it is very similar to a banjo, but smaller, and possessing a less powerful tone. Unlike the larger instrument, it has to be tuned afresh to suit each different key.

E. *banj(o)* and (*u*l) *ulele*.



Bank.—The wooded bank of one of the lakes of Killarney, famous in song and story. In the background is Glenna mountain.

**bank** [1] (bānk), *n.* A slope running upwards or downwards from the general level of the ground; a side of a cutting or embankment; an embankment or mound; the ground on one side of a river, etc.; a long, flat-topped mass of sand, clouds, etc.; the surface of the ground at the top of a mine shaft; a steep incline on a railway. *v.t.* To pile up. *v.i.* To rise and form banks, to tilt partly over. (*F. terrasse, rive, bord, banc terrasser, se terrasser.*)

The right bank of a river is that on the right hand of a person looking down-stream; the other is the left bank. A stoker has to bank up his fires at the day's end, by covering them with a layer of fine coal or ashes and shutting down the draught, so that they shall just keep alight. To travel with one wing of an aeroplane higher than the other is to bank. An aeroplane always banks when it is turning in order to prevent it from slipping sideways.

A **bank-engine** (*n.*) is a locomotive used to help trains up steep gradients, usually by pushing. In some mountainous districts, very powerful engines are used for this work. A **banker** (bānk'ēr, *n.*) is another name for a Newfoundland fishing smack, and is also a term applied to a labourer employed in making banks and ditches and to a hunting horse that can jump on and off high banks. The side of a bank is a **bank-side** (*n.*). **Bankside** (*n.*) is a district of London by the side of the Thames at Southwark. It was the site of the Globe Theatre and other playhouses. A **banksman** (*n.*) at a colliery attends to the unloading of coal-tubs from the cage when they reach the top of the shaft. **Bank-martin** (*n.*) and **bank-swallow** (*n.*) are names of the sand-martin.

*M.E. banke* of Scandinavian origin.

**bank** [2] (bānk), *n.* An institution which receives other people's money keeps it safe, pays it out on request, and makes a profit by lending or investing it; the amount of money in front of a player who plays against all in a game of chance. *v.t.* To put

(money) in a bank. *v.i.* To do banking business; to make a bank at a gaming-table; to rely. (*F. banque; déposer dans une banque, avoir pour banquier.*)

The Bank of England, commonly called "the Bank," was founded by William Paterson, a Scotsman, in 1694, during the reign of William III and Mary. It was granted certain privileges, such as managing the national debt, issuing bank-notes, and receiving public revenue. It is still the greatest bank of the country, and acts as the Government's bank. Since the Gordon Riots in 1780, when the Bank was thought to be in danger of attack, a military guard has gone on duty every night to protect it. The Bank is known as "the Old Lady of Threadneedle Street".

When a customer opens an account at a bank he is given a **bank-book** (*n.*) or pass book, in which the bank clerks enter all sums drawn out and paid in by him. On what is called a deposit account the bank pays interest; no interest is allowed on a current account.

A **bank-holiday** (*n.*) is a day on which all banks are allowed by law to be closed. Good Friday and Christmas Day have long been observed as bank-holidays, and in 1871 an Act of Parliament added to them, for England, Easter Monday, Whit Monday, the first Monday in August, and Boxing Day (December 26th). In Scotland the bank-holidays are New Year's Day, Good Friday, the first Mondays in May and August, and Christmas Day. A bank-holiday now means a general holiday.

A **bank-note** (*n.*) is a printed promise, issued by a bank, to pay to the possessor of it a certain sum in cash. At one time many banks issued notes, but much fewer are allowed to do so now. At the present time Bank of England notes, and no others, are legal tender. These notes have values of £5, £10, £20, £50, £100, £200, £500, and £1,000.

The **bank-rate** (*n.*) is the rate of discount fixed by the Bank of England from time to time. Suppose A owes £100 to B, and gives

B a bill for £100 payable in twelve months. If B wants his money at once, he takes it to a bank, which will pay him, not £100, but £100 less the bank-rate. If this be four per cent per annum, B will receive £96.

The capital stock of the Bank of England is called **bank-stock** (*n.*). A **banking house** (*n.*) is a firm of bankers or one which includes banking in its business. A security that a bank will receive is a **bankable** (*bānk' ābl, adj.*) security. From the fact that the man who keeps the bank at a gaming-table runs little risk comes the phrase to **bank on**, meaning to look upon as certain. To **break the bank** is to win at a gaming-table all the money in the bank.

A **banker** (*bānk' ēr, n.*) is an owner or part-owner of a private bank; a manager or director of a bank owned by shareholders; one who keeps the bank at a gaming table; the dealer in certain card games.

In the Middle Ages the Jews and after them the Italians of North Italy were the bankers of Europe. Perhaps it would be more correct to say that they were money-lenders, as they did not do everything that banks do now. The kings of England borrowed a great deal of money from the Italians during the thirteenth and fourteenth centuries. In 1290 the Jews were expelled from England, and Lombards from Italy became the chief bankers in England, settling in the street in London still called after them—Lombard Street. They in turn were sent away by Queen Elizabeth, and English merchants took up their business, which gradually changed into the modern system of banking.

*F. banc, from the same Teut. word as E. bench; cp. Ital. banco, G. bank, all meaning money-changer's table.*

**bank** [3] (*bānk*), *n.* A tier of oars in a galley; the rowers in one of these; a bench for the rowers; the oars in a single tier; a tier of keys in an organ, a printer's table for holding sheets; a raised portion of a glass-melting furnace. (*F. banc; berceau.*)

In a galley, a ship moved by oars as well as sails, the rowers—usually slave; or prisoners—were chained to benches.

*F. banc, from the same Teut. word as E. bench. See also bank [1] and [2].*

**banker** (*bānk' ēr, n.*) A wooden or stone bench on which bricks or stones are trimmed by bricklayers, or stonemasons; a revolving table on which a sculptor does his work.

The word in this sense is probably to be referred to Ital. *banco* bench.

**banket** (*bāng ket'*), *n.* A hard, gold-bearing rock occurring in reefs in the Transvaal, South Africa.

This is a South African Dutch word meaning **almond-rock**, which **banket** suggests by reason of the white quartz pebbles in it. These are held together by a cement or matrix of sandy quartz and iron pyrites, which contains the gold.

The reefs of **banket** were discovered in 1884. They run for many miles through the district called the Witwatersrand, near Johannesburg. Farms which before the discovery of the reefs were almost worthless quickly rose enormously in value. And well they might, for already gold to the value of hundreds of millions of pounds has been won from the **banket**, which now yields by far the greater part of the world's gold supply.

**bank-fish** (*bānk' fish*), *n.* Fish caught on the shallow banks off the coast of Newfoundland.

These stretch for some 300 miles S.E. from the island at depths of from 15 to 90 fathoms. Two currents meet there, the warm Gulf Stream and the icy Labrador current. Both bring abundant food for the countless fish that make these banks their home and provide the world's richest harvest of the sea. The fishery led to serious disagreement between France and England, which was not settled until 1904.

There has of late years been a decline in the importance of this fishery, but fleets of fishing vessels, known as **bank-smacks** or **bankers**, still gather plentiful supplies of cod and halibut. Kipling describes the fishery vividly in "Captains Courageous."

**bankrupt** (*bānk' rūpt*), *n.* A person who cannot pay his debts or carry on business on account of the money he owes. *adj.* Not able to pay debts discredited; wanting *m. v.t.* To make bankrupt. (*F. failli, banqueroutier, en faillite, en banqueroute, mettre en faillite.*)

According to Dr. Johnson, it was said that when an old Italian money-lender failed, his counter was broken up

A bankrupt trader is one who has been declared bankrupt by the Bankruptcy Court, and his condition is one of **bankruptcy** (*bānk' rūpt si, n.*). The word is also used fancifully. Thus, the reputation of a person who has done something disgraceful is said to be **bankrupt**, and a writer is said to be **bankrupt** of ideas when he cannot think of any new



Banker.—The revolving table on which a sculptor works is called a banker.

subjects to write about. The Bankruptcy Laws require a bankrupt to give up practically all his property in part payment of what he owes.

Ital. *banca rotta* broken bank, from *banca* bench, L. *rupta* fem sing p.p. of *rumpere* to break.

**Banksia** (bānk' sī ā), *n.* A genus of Australian flowering shrubs. (F. *banksia*.)

Sir Joseph Banks sailed as naturalist with Captain Cook on his famous voyage in 1768, and it was in his honour that the proteads of Australia were named banksias. These shrubs form part of the scrub. They bear clusters of long tubular flowers which have gained for them the name of honeysuckle trees. Many species are grown in England.

**banner** (bān' er), *n.* A kind of flag bearing the device of a guild or other society; a standard; a flag bearing the arms of a person; a moral emblem; a division of the imperial Manchu army; the large upper petal of certain flowers. (F. *bannière*.)



Banner.—Banners of Knights of the Garter in St. George's Chapel, Windsor.

In the days of chivalry the banner was the standard of a feudal lord. It was carried into battle at the head of the troops, for whom it served as a rallying-point. Banners with symbolical devices, especially the banners of patron saints, were also carried into battle, and these were the forerunners of the banners that we see in the Lord Mayor's Show and other processions to-day.

From this custom of carrying the banner into battle come such expressions as to follow or join the banner of or fight under the banner of

The imperial Manchu army consisted of eight divisions, each of which had its special banner and was therefore called a banner. A **bannerman** (bān' ēr mǎn, *n.*) is a man who carries a banner, and is also the name of a member of a division of the Manchu army and sometimes of a Manchu.

In botany a banner is the large upper petal of what are called papilionaceous or butterfly-shaped flowers, such as those of the bean and the pea.

A **banner-screen** (*n.*) is a fire-screen hung like a banner either from a pole or from a mantelpiece. Anything which is furnished with banners or carried on a banner is **bannered** (bān' ērd, *adj.*).

A small banner is called a **bannerette** (bān' ēr et, *n.*). A **bannerol** (bān' ēr ol, *n.*) is a small banner which is sometimes carried at the funeral of some great person and afterwards placed upon his tomb.

ME and O.F. *banere*, I.L. *banleria*, from *bandum*, Goth *banda* standard

**banneret** (bān' ēr et), *n.* A grade of knighthood; a knight made on the field of battle. (F. *banneret*.)

In England a banneret was a knight made on the field, the ceremony, performed by the monarch in person, being the cutting off of the point of the soldier's standard, thus making it into a banner. No such knighthood has been bestowed since 1642, when Charles I thus knighted Sir John Smith at Edgehill. Originally, it was the custom to call a knight a banneret if he were able to lead ten other knights into action under his own banner against the enemy.

ME, O.F. *banerit*, literally one who is bannered, the suffix *-it* representing L. p.p. *-atus*.

**bannock** (bān' ok), *n.* A flat round cake usually made of pease-meal or barley-meal, baked on an iron plate or girdle. The word is chiefly used in Scotland and the North of England. (F. *galette*.)

Gaelic *bannach*, possibly connected with L. *pains* bread

**banns** (bānz), *n.pl.* An announcement in a church of an intended marriage. (F. *bans de mariage*.)

This word is the plural of *ban* (bān), which means a proclamation. To publish the banns or to put up the banns is to give public notice of an intended marriage, in order that anyone who wishes to do so may have an opportunity of forbidding the banns, that is, of giving a reason why the marriage should not take place.

A variant spelling of the pl. of *ban* [1], in the sense of proclamation

**banquet** (bāng' kwet), *n.* A lengthy and elaborate meal. *v.t.* To entertain at a banquet. *v.i.* To take part in a banquet; to feast. (F. *banquet*; *donner un banquet à*, *régaler*.)

Nowadays, the word banquet is usually applied to a state or ceremonial feast followed by speeches. One of the best-known

## BANQUETTE

instances is the Lord Mayor's banquet, held at the Guildhall on the evening of Lord Mayor's Day. A person who banquets is a banqueter (bāng' kwét' er, n.).

*F. banquet*, Ital. *banchetto* dim. of *F. banc*, Ital. *banco* bench, hence (table for a) feast.

**banquette** (bāng ket'), n. A step formed in the rear slope of a parapet, on which a rifleman stands to fire over the top of the parapet. A banquette becomes necessary when the height of a parapet is greater than that of a man. (*F. banquette.*)

The *F.* word is a dim. of *banc* bench.

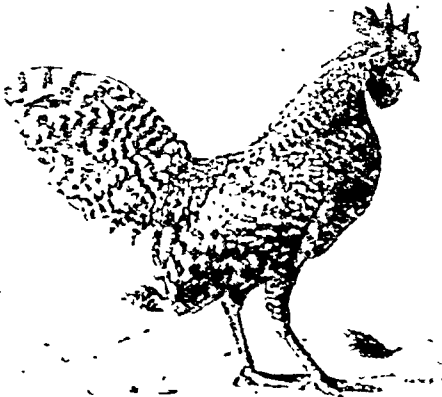
**banshee** (bān' shē), n. A fairy who is supposed to give warning of a death by wailing at night under the windows of the house. (*F. fée.*)

Legends of the banshee, who is usually thought to take the form of a woman, abound in Celtic folklore, especially in that of Ireland and the Scottish Highlands. In Ireland a banshee was supposed to be attached to particular families.

Gaelic *bean* female, *sith* fairy.

**bantam** (bān' tām), n. A small variety of domestic fowl; a small and self-important person; a person or thing small by comparison with the usual standard. (*F. bantam.*)

Most of these small fowls, with their feathered legs, have been bred from undersized specimens of the ordinary domestic fowl. From the fact that the cock birds are very fond of fighting and strut about proudly the name is sometimes given to a small, pompous person with aggressive manners. It is also sometimes applied to persons or things that are below the



**Bantam.**—The domestic fowl known as the bantam is supposed to have come from Bantam, in Java.

average size. In the World War (1914-18) battalions of men below the average height and weight were called bantam battalions. A bantam-weight (n.) is a boxer who does not weigh more than 118 pounds.

The bantam is supposed to have been introduced into England from Bantam in Java.

**banteng** (ban' tēng), n. A species of Asiatic wild ox. (*F. banteng.*)

The banteng (*Bos banteng* or *B. sonnatiensis*) is found only in Burma and the Malay islands. Called also the Javan ox, it resembles the domestic ox in appearance, and is strong, fleet, and active. It lives in wooded valleys, in small herds guarded by watchful sentries.

The word is of Malay origin.

**banter** (bān' tēr), v.t. To tease in a friendly, joking way. v.i. To indulge in good-humoured teasing. n. Good-natured teasing. (*F. badiner*; *badinage.*)

When a person speaks in a spirit of good-humoured chaff he speaks in a bantering (bān' tēr ing, *adj.*) way or banteringly (bān' tēr ing li, *adv.*) and can be called on that occasion a banterer (bān' tēr er, n.).

No satisfactory etymology of the word has been suggested. *Syn.*: v. Jest, joke, rally. n. Badinage, chaff, raillery.



**Bantu.**—A Bantu pounding his food in a hole in a tree trunk before cooking it.

**Bantu** (bān too'), *adj.* Belonging to the old native races of South Africa, apart from Bushmen and Hottentots. n. A member of these races; their language. The name is from the native (a)bantu meaning men or people. (*F. bantou.*)

**banyan** (bān' yān) n. The East Indian fig-tree; a Hindu trader; a loose gown or jacket. Another spelling is banian. (*F. banian.*)

The Hindu banyans or merchants have given their name to an article of clothing and to a tree.

Under a wide-spreading East Indian fig-tree, growing near Gambroon, on the Persian Gulf, some banyans built a pagoda. The tree became known as the banyan tree, and the name gradually spread to others of the same kind. This tree (*Ficus Bengalensis*) is famous for its habit of sending down from its branches shoots which take root and grow into new trunks that support the old branches and send out new branches.

Thus the banyan tree spreads and forms a living colonnade, often of great extent.

The word is Portuguese, through Arab. from Sansk. *vanij* merchant.

**baobab** (bā' ô bâb), *n.* An African tree belonging to the mallow family. (F. *baobab*.)

Although not very tall, the baobab (*Adansonia digitata*) is in girth one of the biggest trees in the world, measuring as much as thirty feet in diameter. It is also called the monkey-bread tree because monkeys are very fond of the gourd-like fruit. Other popular names are the sour gourd and the cream-of-tartar tree. A small species (*Adansonia Gregorii*) is found in Australia. Baobab is the native name of the tree in the French colony of Senegal in West Africa.

**baphomet** (băf' ô met), *n.* An idol or symbol which the Knights Templars were charged with worshipping. (F. *baphomet*.)

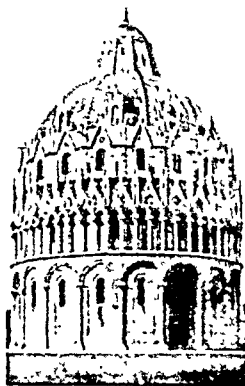
Various fanciful etymologies have been suggested, none of them satisfactory. It may possibly be a corruption of Mahomet.

**baptize** (băp tîz'), *v.t.* To sprinkle with or immerse in water, as a sign of admission into the Christian Church 'to purify; to consecrate, to christen; to give a name to. *v.i.* To administer the sacrament of baptism. (F. *baptiser*.)

The rite of baptism (băp' tîzm, *n.*) usually takes place shortly after birth. By this ceremony an infant is consecrated to the service of God, and is given a Christian name. When a ship is named it is said to be baptized or christened. The consecration of church bells is described as a baptism.

The unbaptized Christian martyrs, whose blood was shed for their faith, regarded their death as a baptism of blood. Those who were burned at the stake suffered a baptism of fire. This expression is also used for a soldier's first experience of battle or for any other severe ordeal although the phrase had its origin in the baptism with the Holy Ghost in tongues of fire on the day of Pentecost. The forerunner of Christ was known as John the Baptist (băp' tist, *n.*) because he heralded the Messiah with a baptism of repentance.

The word Baptist to-day is generally applied to a member of the Baptist Church. He does not accept infant baptism, nor sprinkling as the right method of baptism. According to his belief only adult believers should be baptized, and that by immersion.



Baptistery.—The Romanesque baptistery at Pisa, Italy.

The place where the sacrament of baptism is received is the baptistery (băp' tîs tēr i, *n.*) or baptistry (băp' tîs trî, *n.*). The vessel which holds the water is the baptismal (băp tîz' māl, *adj.*) font. The name given at the font is given baptismally (băp tîz' māl li, *adv.*).

*L. baptizāre*, from Gr. *baptizein*, from *baptein* to dip in water.

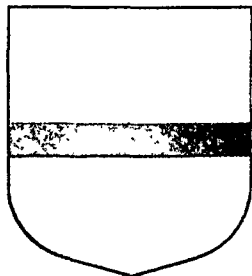
**baquet** (băk' ā), *n.* A small wooden tub or trough. (F. *baquet*.)

In 1778 Paris was visited by a German physician, Friedrich Mesmer, who has given his name to mesmerism, or animal magnetism. He professed to be able to effect wonderful cures by electricity, and people flocked to his consulting-room.

An apparatus used by him was an oaken baquet, in which he arranged layers of bottles spoke-wise. These had been filled with "magnetized" water, supposed to have magic virtues. In spite of his many mysterious tricks, Mesmer was denounced as an impostor and had to leave Paris.

Baquet is a dim. of F. *bac*, large bucket, trough.

**bar** [1] (bar), *n.* A piece of wood, iron, or other hard material, very long in proportion to its thickness; a barrier; a place at which the prisoner stands in a law court; the profession of barrister; a counter across which liquor is sold; a mark in a horse's mouth; the back ends of the wall of a horse's hoof; a musical sign; a horizontal band across an heraldic shield; a band of colour. *v.t.* To obstruct; to close in with bars; to exclude; to stripe with colour. (F. *barre*, *barreau*, *barrière*, *comptoir*, *banc des accusés*, *barrer*, *exclure*.)



Bar.—The horizontal band or bar in heraldry.

In the first-mentioned sense bar is widely used. Thus we have the bars of a window sash, which divide the panes of glass; the horizontal bars of a gate; the bars placed across a window to keep people in or out. Wrought iron rolled out into bars fit for forging and welding is called bar-iron (*n.*). It is cut into lengths by a bar-shear (*n.*).

A barrier across the mouth of a river formed by a sandbank is called a sand-bar, or simply a bar, as in Tennyson's well-known poem "Crossing the Bar." In the bar or bar-room (*n.*) of a public house the bar separates the customers from the bar-tender (*n.*), barman (*n.*), or barmaid (*n.*) who serves them.

In a criminal court there is a barrier railing off the space in which the prisoner stands. Hence the words "prisoner at the bar" used by the judge in addressing him. Another

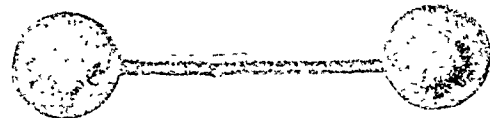
barrier separates the ordinary barristers from senior barristers concerned in the case. This is the bar referred to in the expression to be called to the bar, which means to be made a barrister; and in another expression, to be called within the bar, or to be created a senior barrister or King's Counsel. We find the word also in a trial at bar, a special but rare form of trial.

Again, in the House of Commons and in the House of Lords there is a bar near the entrance, beyond which non-members may not go. Sometimes a person is summoned to the bar of one of the Houses, to answer and apologize for some slight on the dignity of the House.

A bar-bell (*n.*) is a bar with a ball at each end, of wood or iron, used by gymnasts and "strong men." Eugen Sandow was able to lift a bar-bell weighing 300 pounds above his head. On one occasion he raised a bar-bell with hollow balls, each containing a man. In the days of Nelson naval guns fired a double shot like a bar-bell in shape, called a bar-shot (*n.*), to destroy masts and rigging. Since it spun round and round in the air, it was much more likely to hit something than plain shot.

In some church windows of the Gothic style the stonework between the lights is so shaped that it looks as if it had been bent, rather than cut out of the solid. This kind of work is known as bar-tracery (*n.*). A red dye, made from the wood of a tree growing in West Africa, is called barwood (*n.*). Another name for it is camwood (*see* camwood). Anything crossed by bars to prevent passage, or striped with colour, is barred (*bard*, *adj.*). In heraldry the word Barry (*bar'* i, *adj.*) is used instead of striped.

The last bar to be noticed is that employed in a musical score. It is an upright line drawn across the stave to divide the music into equal portions, as shown by the time signature at the beginning. The part between two bars is sometimes called a bar,



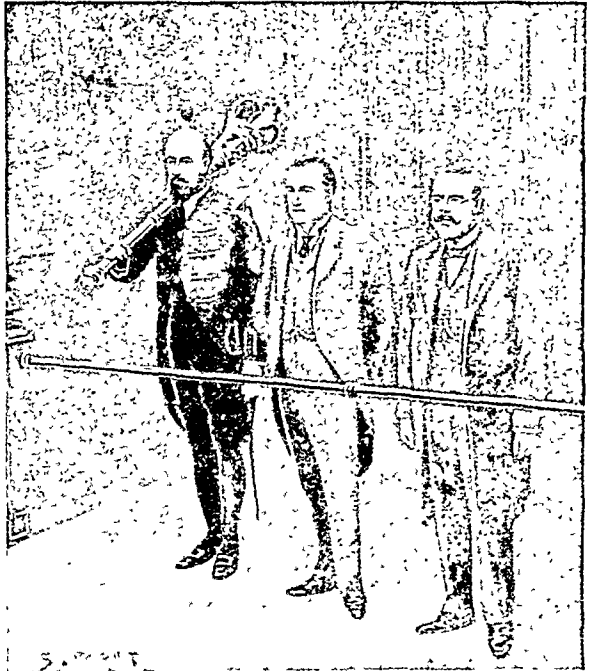
Bar-bell.—A bar-bell is a bar with a ball at each end used by gymnasts.

but "measure" is the correct word. A double-bar of two bars close together shows the end of a complete movement, or where there is a change of time or key.

In order to maintain as secure a foothold as possible, footballers are permitted to affix flat strips of leather to the soles and heels of their boots. These are called bars (*barz*, *n. pl.*). They are placed across the width of the boots,

and may not be more than half an inch in thickness. Circular pieces of leather called studs are more generally in favour than bars.

M.E. *barre*, O.F. *barre*, L.L. *barra*. The ultimate etymology is unknown.



Bar.—The bar of the House of Commons, beyond which non-members may not go. A person may be summoned to the bar to make an apology.

bar [2] (*bar*), *n.* A European salt-water fish of the pike kind. It is also called the maigre, or "umbra marina." (*F. bar.*)

bar [3] (*bar*), *n.* The standard of atmospheric pressure, equal to the weight of a column of mercury 29.531 inches in height.

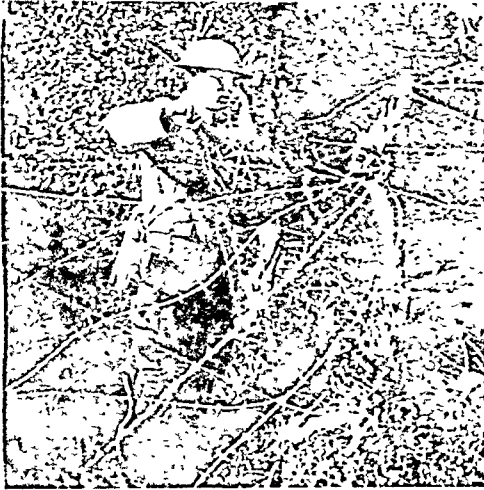
The height at which the mercury stands in the glass tube of a barometer changes with the pressure of the atmosphere. For convenience in recording small changes of pressure, the "bar" has been taken as the standard and divided into 1,000 parts, called millibars. The daily weather charts published in various newspapers show the pressures at different places in millibars, each of which is about one thirty-third of an inch.

Gr. *baros* weight.

barb [1] (*barb*), *n.* A beard, or growth resembling it (as on the mouth of the barbel); a backward-pointing projection on the tip of a hook, arrow, or sting which makes it difficult to pull out. *v.t.* To provide with barbs. (*F. barbe, pointe; faire des dents à.*)

The small plumes of a feather on each side of the central rib are called barbs. They have small hooks which lock them together. Barbed wire (*barbd' wir*, *n.*) is formed by twisting two wires together, round one

of which have been wound short pieces of wire, sharpened at both ends. Enormous quantities of this wire were used to protect trenches during the World War (1914-18). Fishes and plants that are provided with barbs are described as *barbate* (bar' bāt, *adj.*).  
F from L. *barba* beard.



Barbed wire.—A soldier placing barbed wire in position during the World War.

**barb** [2] (barb), *n.* A breed of horse and pigeon coming from Barbary, in North Africa. (F. *barbe cheval de Barbarie* pigeon *d' Barbarie*.)

The horse known as the barb was brought into Barbary when the Arabs conquered that country in the seventh century. The pigeon has a curious growth on the beak and rings of feathers round the eyes.

**barbarian** (bar bar' i ān), *n.* A member of an uncivilized tribe or race, not necessarily a savage, a person having no respect for politeness, kindness, or culture; in Greek history one who is not Greek, and in Roman history one who is neither Greek nor Roman; a person belonging to a country, etc., outside the Roman Empire; a heathen, a foreigner, whose customs and language differ greatly from those of the speaker. *adj.* Wild-uncivilized. (F. *barbare*.)

Unpleasant as it may seem, most peoples are inclined to despise other races whose ways of life and whose beliefs do not resemble their own. To the Chinese, Europeans are barbarians and some Europeans are tempted to call any man a barbarian who does not wear clothes of a certain accepted pattern.

People who live a crude outlandish life lead a **barbaric** (bar bār' ik, *adj.*) life. Barbarians love noise and bright colours, and so we speak of barbaric splendour or of barbaric music, in which drums, cymbals, and bells make a rich blood-stirring, but hardly civilized clamour.

Elegance and restraint are valued in the art and literature of civilized people, and

when anyone uses or writes a crude sentence, expresses himself in a foreign way, or shows a want of refinement or culture, he commits a **barbarism** (bar' bā rizm, *n.*). The state in which barbarians live is barbarism. Cruelty or a ruthless act of destruction, that is, a barbarism, is also **barbarity** (bar bār' i ti, *n.*).

A wild powerful tribe may **barbarize** (bar' bā rīz, *v.t.*) a weaker, more civilized people, by forcing them to give up their culture, and a language is barbarized when it is corrupted, or its standards are lowered, through the carelessness or ignorance of those who speak it. To break the laws of grammar is to **barbarize** (*v.t.*), and we also say that a nation falling away from civilization, is slipping back into **barbarization** (bar bā rī zā' shūn *n.*), the state of barbarity.

A **barbarous** (bar' bā rūs, *adj.*) tribe is one lacking industries and arts, and not far above savagery. Anything crude, cruel, uncouth, or harsh-sounding is said to be barbarous, especially a brutal act typical of the worst side of barbarian life, but not so blood-thirsty as a savage act. To act in some such crude or cruel way is to behave **barbarously** (bar' bā rūs li, *adv.*); it is also an example of **barbarousness** (bar' bā rūs nes, *n.*), the quality of being barbarous.

**Barbaresque** (bar' bā resk, *adj.*) pictures, statues, etc., are those that are barbarous in style and, in a different sense, anything belonging or relating to the country of Barbary in Africa is **barbaresque**.

When the ancient Greeks heard a strange foreign language, they probably tried to imitate the jumbled, meaningless sounds, by using the syllables "bar bar," in the same way as the word murmur imitates the gentle noise of waters and distant voices, and so the Greek word *barbaros* first meant only a person speaking a different language.

But as the Greeks, and later the Romans, were the most advanced nations of their times, it was natural that they looked down upon foreigners, as being less civilized, and even crude and brutish, and in this way the word barbarous obtained its present meaning.

L. *barbanus*, Gr. *barbaros*, originally meaning one who stammers (L. *balbus*.).

**Barbary ape** (bar' bā rī āp), *n.* An ape found in North Africa, also remarkable as providing the only European species of monkey. (F. *magot*.)

A colony of Barbary apes has long inhabited the rock of Gibraltar, where they were formerly very numerous, but the damage they caused to gardens and orchards almost led to their extinction. New specimens were obtained from Africa, and they are now carefully protected.

The Barbary ape is known also as the magot, and is a tailless ape of yellowish brown colour, growing to three feet in length and of very active habits. It is the monkey usually carried by organ grinders. Its scientific name is *Macacus munus*.



Barbary is an old name for the countries of North Africa west of Egypt and north of the Sahara. It is derived from its inhabitants the Berbers, who were known as *Barabara* to the Egyptians about 1700 B.C. The name has been much confused with *barbarian*.

**Barbary gum** (bar' bà ri güm), *n.* One of the several kinds of gum arabic.

This gum oozes out from cuts in the tree called *Acacia gummifera*, grown in Morocco.



Barbary sheep.—The Barbary sheep is common on the southern slopes of the Atlas Mountains.

**Barbary sheep** (bar' bà ri shēp), *n.* An African maned sheep.

Rufous-yellow in colour, the Barbary sheep has masses of hair on the fore-quarters, and a long tail. Known to the natives as the *arui*, its scientific name is *Ovis tragelaphus*.

**barbecue** (bar' bè kū), *n.* A framework resembling a very large gridiron; an ox or other animal roasted whole; a floor for drying coffee beans. *v.t.* To roast an animal whole, or to smoke or dry meat over a fire. (F. *barbacoa*, une sorte de grill, animal rôti entier, faire cuire un animal tout entier.)

One of the very earliest methods of cooking flesh was to roast or grill it over a fire, and at first a simple grid, or grill, was made by crossing green twigs and laying the meat on them turning it until it was done. Later, the twigs were replaced by bars of metal, and this was called a barbecue.

In the United States an open-air social gathering or feast at which an animal roasted whole is eaten is called a barbecue.

The word is from the Spanish *barbacoa*, originally the native Haitian name for a sort of scaffolding.



Barbel.—The barbel, a freshwater fish, showing the barbels hanging from its mouth.

**barbel** (bar' bêl), *n.* An organ of touch found in certain fish, in the form of two or more fleshy threads hanging from the mouth. (F. *barbeau*.)

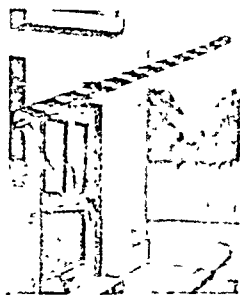
In England there is a freshwater fish, *Barbus vulgaris*, especially well barbelled or barbeled (bar' bêld, *adj.*), and thence known as the barbel. It grows to a weight of 15 lb. but its flesh is not much valued as food.

M.E. *barbelle*, O.F. *barbel*, L. *barbellus*, dim. of *barbus*, from L. *barba* beard.

**barber** (bar' ber), *n.* One who makes a business of shaving or trimming beards, and cutting and dressing the hair (now more often called a hairdresser). *v.t.* To shave or trim beards, and cut and dress hair. (F. *barbier*, *barbifier*, *raser et couper les cheveux*.)

A well-groomed man is one carefully barbered. In olden times barbering (bar' ber ing, *n.*) was a profession, barbers also acted as surgeons and dentists, and were called barber-chirurgeons. In Henry VIII's reign the old Company of Barber-Surgeons was changed. Barbers were limited to simpler kinds of surgery, such as blood-letting and drawing teeth; surgeons were forbidden to do barbering (bar' be ri, *n.*), as shaving, etc., was called. Under George II, the two professions were finally separated.

Barber shops were once like clubs to which idle people went for gossip and entertainment. Musical instruments were provided for the customers' use and in Tudor times most people could play or sing. Even now, the barber is often a centre of news, and we have the phrase "every barber knows that," meaning it is common gossip.



Barber's pole. A reminder of the days when a barber was also a surgeon.

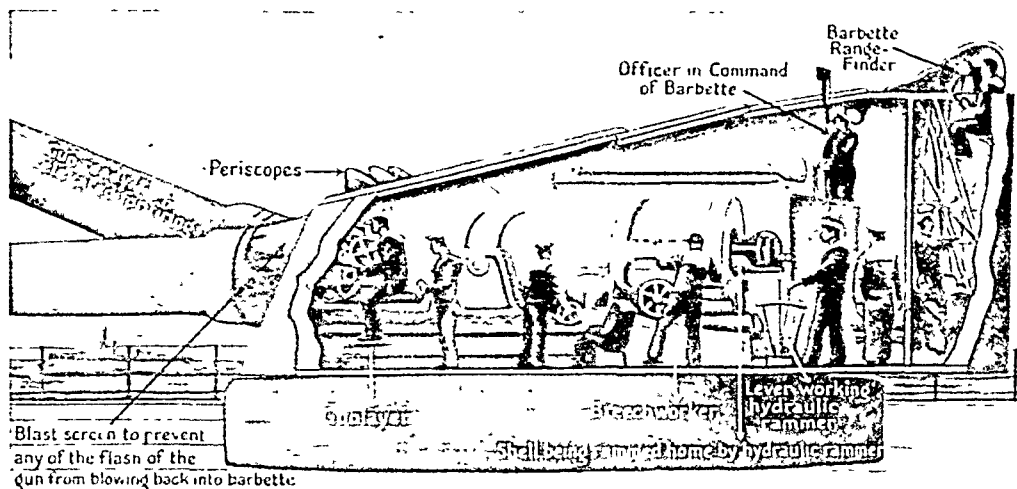
Wigs were made up and displayed on a rounded block known as a barber's block (*n.*), and the barber's pole (*n.*), painted spirally with red and white stripes, which is still to be seen hanging outside some hairdresser's shops, is a reminder of the days when the barber was a surgeon. The white stripe represented the bandage fastened round the arm in blood-letting. The gilt knob at the end of the pole is all that survives of the brass basin that once hung there.

M.E. *barbour*, O.F. *barbeur*, L.L. *barburus*, from L. *barba* beard.

**barberry** (bar' ber ri, *n.* A flowering shrub of the genus *Berberis*, the fruit of the shrub. Another spelling is *berberry* (ber' ber ri) (F. *épine-rinette*.)

The common barberry (*Berberis vulgaris*) is a wild shrub, cultivated for its abundance of small yellow flowers much visited by bees, and its long, red, acid fruit, from which a preserve is made. Its roots and bark yield a yellow dye.

The origin of the name is unknown, but has nothing to do with E. *berry*. It appears in L.L. and Spanish as *barbris*.



Barbette.—The barbette of a modern battleship with part of the armour-plating removed to show the interior.

**barbet** (bar' bët), *n.* A tropical bird belonging to the woodpecker family, a poodle with long curly hair. (*F. barbu, barbet.*)

The barbets are gaily coloured, fruit-eating birds which get their name, meaning bearded, from the tuft of bristles at the base of the bill. The name is given to a number of species found in the warmer parts of the world.

The barbet poodle has hanging ears and long, silky, curly, black and white hair.

The name is from *L. barbatus* bearded, *p p* of an assumed *v barbare* to furnish with a beard.

**barbette** (bär bet'), *n.* A circular wall of steel armour on a warship's deck inside which a big gun or guns turn. (*F. barbette.*)

The guns (generally there are two) are mounted on a turn-table inside the barbette, and fire over the top of the barbette through openings in the barbette shield, which covers and moves with them.

The barbette itself protects the platform and the lower parts of the gun. The turn-table has fastened to its lower side a circular chamber, called the working chamber, and a large tube through which ammunition is hoisted from the magazine. Guns mounted in this fashion are said to be *en barbette*.

In the eighties of the last century a number of battleships of what was called the "Admiral" class were built. The barbettes were mounted at the front and back—or bow and stern, to use nautical language. Of the six ships of this type built between 1882 and 1886, one had two 12-inch guns in each barbette, four had 13.5 inch guns, and the "Benbow" had a single 16.5-inch gun that weighed a 110 tons mounted at each end.

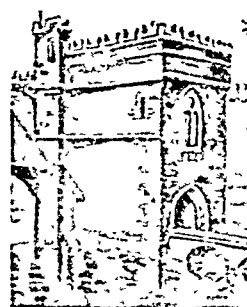
The term barbette is also applied to any mound or platform from which guns are fired over a parapet.

The word is the dim. of *F. barbe* beard

**barbican** (bär' bi kân), *n.* An outwork of a castle or city, defending a gate or drawbridge. (*F. barbacane.*)

A barbican not only gave extra protection to points most likely to be attacked, but enabled the defenders to fire on the flanks of a besieging force. At one time a fortification of this kind stood outside the walls of old London, near the Aldersgate. It was destroyed long ago,

but its name survives in the street still called Barbican. A good example of a barbican is to be seen at Warwick Castle.



Barbican.—An outwork defending a gate or drawbridge.

*L.L. barbacana* outwork. The word is supposed to be derived from an Arabo-Persian compound *bâb-khâne* house of the gate.

**barbule** (bar' bül), *n.* A small barb; the filament of a feather; the beard of mosses. (*F. barbule.*)

Just as the shaft, or rachis, of a feather bears a vane of hooked barbs, so each barb is fringed with little barbs or barbules, which interlock by means of hooks, and so hold the barbs together. The barbules of mosses, such as *Tortula*, are fine, thread-like outgrowths, forming the teeth round the rim of the spore cases.

*L. barbula*, dim. of *barba* beard.

**barcarole** (bar' kâ rôl), *n.* A Venetian boat-song; a piece of music resembling such a song. (*F. barcarolle.*)

The gondoliers of Venice are called *barcaroli*, and the songs they sing, as they propel their gondolas through the water, are called barcaroles.

Ital. *barcarola*, from *barca* boat, barge.

# BARDS: MINSTRELS AND POETS

*Men who kept Green the Memory of Heroes in Verse, Song, and Story*

**bard** [1] (bard), *n.* A Celtic minstrel; a poet recognized at the Eisteddfod; a poet generally. (*F. barde, poète*).

In a general way this word is used for a wandering minstrel and as a poetical name for a poet. In Wales a bard is a poet who has been recognized at the Eisteddfod or Welsh national bardic (*bar' dik, adj.*) festival. Anything to do with bards is bardic or bardish (*bar' dish, adj.*) and the whole system of the bards is bardism (*bar' dizm, n.*). A youthful poet is sometimes called a **bardling** (*bard' ling, n.*).

Bardism was a Celtic institution. The bards of Wales and also of Ireland were a class apart. They enjoyed special rights and privileges that were handed down from father to son. The Irish bards were divided into three classes. One class devoted itself to family history, another to the national laws, and the third to hymns of praise for famous victories.

In much the same way the Welsh bards gave poetic expression to the religious and national feelings of their countrymen. From time to time a great meeting of bards was held, and to this the most skilful poets and singers came from miles around. This meeting, the Eisteddfod, is still held.

One of the most picturesque of the ceremonies connected with the Eisteddfod is the rite with which it opens. The arch-druid, who presides over the proceedings, stands in a prominent position before the

assembled multitude, hemmed round by great unhewn stones. Three or four bards, clothed in flowing robes of various colours, come forward bearing the arch-druid's sword, an enormous weapon like the sword of a giant.

The arch-druid then begins to draw the massive blade from its sheath and, while doing this, utters thrice in a loud voice the words, "Is it peace?" The assembly shouts its reply, "It is peace." Having been thus reassured, the arch-druid thrusts back the partly-drawn blade into the scabbard and the Eisteddfod is ready to begin.

The name appears in Gaelic and Irish as *bard*, in Welsh as *bardd*.

**bard** [2] (bard), *n.* A covering for the flanks of a war-horse, armour for a man-at-arms, a slice of bacon for covering a towl before roasting. *v.t.* To provide with bards. (*F. barde*).

The bards of a man-at-arms consisted of metal plates. Those of a war-horse were usually made of metal plates or of leather studded here and there with metal knobs and spikes. On the battlefield these spikes and bosses would do a considerable amount of damage.

At tournaments and on other ceremonial occasions chargers were barded simply for ornament and not for any warlike purpose, and then the bards would be made of costly and gorgeous fabrics.

*F. barde* horse-armour, kind of saddle, Arabic *barda'ah* stuffed pack-saddle.



Bard.—A bard singing at the Royal National Eisteddfod held every year in Wales.

**bare** (bār), *adj.* Without covering or protection: bald, meagre, unadorned. *v.t.* To uncover, to strip (F. *nu*, *simple*; *mettre à nu*.)

Our feet are bare when they are uncovered by shoes and stockings, an animal is bare when it is without hair, fur, etc., a tree when it has no leaves, a tract of land when it has no vegetation. Cloth is said to be bare when the nap has worn off, and a fight with bare fists is one in which the fists of the contestants are ungloved. An empty cupboard is described as being bare. Bare necessities of life are the least that is required for living.

**Bareback** (bār bāk, *adv.* and *adj.*) means without a saddle and a horse without a saddle is said to be bare-backed (*adj.*), as is a person without covering on the back. In its literal sense barefaced (bār fāsd, *adj.*) means without a covering on the face, but it is more generally used in the sense of impudent, shameless or without any attempt at disguise. To tell a lie barefacedly (bār fāsed li, *adv.*) is to lie without shame or with barefacedness bār fās ed nes *n.*). **Barefoot** (bār fūt *adj.* and *adv.*) or barefooted (*adj.*) means without covering on the feet in the way of shoes or stockings and bare-headed (*adj.*) is with the head uncovered.

A room with little furniture is barely (bār'ly *adv.*) furnished and a sound may be so low that it is barely heard. **Bareness** (bār'nes *n.*) is the quality of being bare. Anything which is barish (bār ish *adj.*) is only partly or poorly covered.

**ME** *bar* A-S *baer* cp G *baar*, *bar* mere **SYN.**: *adj.* Bald, destitute, naked, scanty, uncovered *v.* Expose, reveal, uncover. **ANT.**: *adj.* Attired, dressed, luxurious, swathed *v.* Clothe, cover, wrap.

**baresark** (bār' sark). This is another form of berserk. *See* berserk.

**bargain** (bar'gin), *n.* An agreement about a sale; a contract or promise; a thing sold, especially a thing sold cheaply. *v.i.* To make a bargain or contract; to haggle over terms. (F. *marché*, *contrat*; *faire marché*, *marchander*.)

A bad bargain is an agreement or purchase which is unfavourable to the bargainer (bar'gin'er, *n.*). Anything done or given into the bargain is over and above what was covered by the bargain. If one finds that a bad bargain has been made it is natural to wish to be out of one's bargain, that is, to be released from carrying it out. Usually, however, one has to make the best of a bad bargain, or do the best possible when things turn out badly.

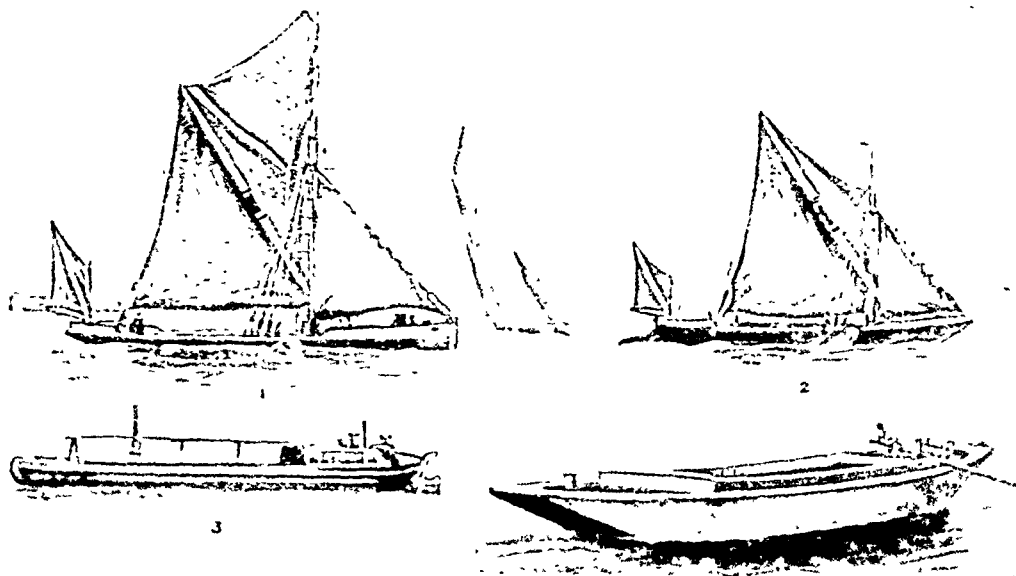
It is common to bargain for, or expect, more than one gets; on the other hand sometimes one gets more than one bargained for of an unpleasant thing. To strike a bargain is to come to terms.

O.F. *bargaignier*, L.L. *barcanare*, possibly from *barca* boat, in the sense of travelling by water from one place to another, or of transferring goods by similar means. **SYN.**: *n.* Agreement, contract, transaction *v.* Barter, haggle, negotiate.

**barge** (barj), *n.* A flat-bottomed boat. (F. *barge*, *canot*.)

The name is applied to most slow-moving freight boats, with or without sails, ranging from ornamental state boats to houseboats, or boats which are used for carrying goods by canal or river and are drawn by a horse walking along the towing path. The second boat of a man-of-war is also called a barge.

A bargee (bar'jē, *n.*) is the man in charge of a barge, who is also called a bargeman (*n.*)



**Barge.**—1. The topsail sailing barge. 2. The "stumpy" sailing barge. 3. The "monkey" barge used on canals. 4. The "dumb" barge or lighter.

**bark** [2] (bark), *n.* The rind or outside covering of a tree. *v.t.* To strip the bark off (a tree). (*F. écorce*; *écorcer*.)

The bark of a tree is separated into two main layers, the inner bark and the outer bark. The first is generally of a stringy, fibrous nature, and provides the material called bast, used for weaving and other purposes.

A layer, called cambium, separates the bark from the woody centre of the tree, and year by year adds fresh layers to the outside of the tree's centre, and to the inside of the bark. Thus, as the wood grows, its covering is constantly made to fit it. The outer bark gradually stretches and cracks, and may fall off, but the new layers being added inside it maintain the necessary thickness.

The sap which feeds a tree rises through the cambium, and if the bark does not stretch sufficiently the tree becomes bark-bound (*adj.*), and the sap supply is stopped. The remedy is to make slits in the bark to relieve the pressure. If a ring of bark be cut off all round the sap ceases to flow, and the tree dies. Rabbits do much damage in young plantations by barking the trees in this fashion.

The barks of trees are very useful to mankind. Bast has already been mentioned. The bark of oak, willow, mangrove, and some other trees produces tannic acid, used in tanning leather. Oak bark is stripped off a felled tree by a barker (bark'er, *n.*), crushed in a bark-mill (*n.*) and placed with water in a bark-pit (*n.*), in which hides are tanned. The bark of a certain kind of oak grown in Southern Europe and North Africa yields cork, which is stripped once every ten years or so. The cork-oak is a very barky (bark'y, *adj.*) tree as compared with most others.

The valuable drug quinine is made from the bark of the cinchona tree, or bark-tree (*n.*), which grows wild in Peru. As the first quinine came from that country it is also called Peruvian bark. A bed consisting of spent bark, and used for forcing young plants, is known as a bark-bed (*n.*).

The word is of Scandinavian origin.

**bark** [3] (bark). This is another spelling for barque. See barque

**barking-bird** (bar'king bērd), *n.* A bird found on the Pacific coast of South America. (*F. oiseau aloyen*.) It receives its name because of its peculiar cry, resembling the short, sharp bark of a dog.

**barley** (bar'li), *n.* A hardy bearded cereal belonging to the genus *Hordeum*; the grain of the plant. (*F. org.*)

Barley was formerly a very important food for man and beast, but it is now chiefly used for malting purposes and the making of alcoholic beverages. A stack of barley is called a barley-mow (*n.*).

The Greeks of old made a kind of barley-wine (*n.*), a name now sometimes given to strong ale. Strong beer also goes by the

name barley-broth (*n.*), although this really belongs to a genuine broth made of pot barley, vegetables, and meat. Pot-barley (*n.*) is the grain with the outer husk removed, while pearl-barley (*n.*) has the inner skin also removed. Barley-sugar (*n.*) was so called because the sugar was originally boiled with pearl-barley water, and barley-water (*n.*) is still made as a soothing drink in cases of fever and inflamed throats.

A barley-corn (*n.*) is a grain of barley. In the days of Edward II a law was passed that the grain was to be used as a means of measurement, three barley-corns making one inch.

*M.E. barlic, barli, A.-S. bærlīc* from *bere* barley, suffix *-lic* like. The word is probably ultimately connected with *L. far* grain, corn.

**barm** (barm), *n.* A plant-like growth which feeds upon sugar and causes fermentation; yeast. (*F. levure*.)

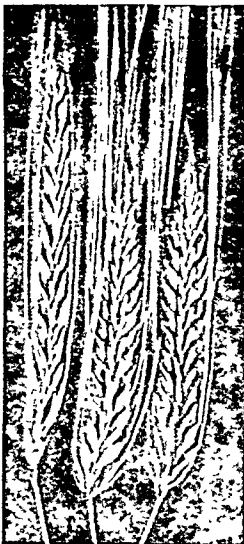
Barm converts sugar partly into alcohol, and in doing so causes

carbonic acid gas to form. A brewer uses barm to start fermentation and change the malt sugar into alcohol. More barm grows on the surface of the vat, and this is collected. A baker mixes barm with his dough so that it may create gas. During the baking of the dough the gas imprisoned in it swells, making the bread spongy and light. It was by the study of fermentation that Louis Pasteur, the great French chemist, did much to improve the quality of the brewers' products.

*M.E. bearme, bearme, A.-S. beorma*, cognate with *Low G. barm*, *Mod. G. barme*, *cp. ferment*.

**Barmecide** (bar'me sid), *n.* The family name of a line of nobles, descendants of Barmak, living at Bagdad about A.D. 800; one who gives imaginary benefits, *adj.* Of or relating to the Barmecides; satisfying only to the imagination. (*F. Barmecide*.)

This word is used to indicate the emptiness of some things on which we have set our hearts. In the tale of the Barber's Sixth Brother in the "Arabian Nights" a beggar is invited by a prince to a banquet and has placed before him, instead of the splendid repast he was led to expect, a succession of empty dishes. The beggar turns the tables on his host by pretending that the entertainment is entirely to his liking. A barmecidal (bar me si' dāl, *adj.*) or barmecide feast is an unreal, unsatisfying repast.



Barley.—According to Pliny, the Roman naturalist, barley was the earliest food of man.

**barn** (barn), *n.* A covered building in which grain, hay, and other agricultural produce are stored; a building like a barn. (F. *grange, grenier*.)

A storage-place for such produce as hay and grain must necessarily be free from unnecessary furnishing, and so we have come to use the word barn to represent any big, bare, sparsely furnished and empty-looking room or building. Such a place we describe as being barn-like (*adj.*) or a barn of a place. Probably the barn owl (*n.*) got its name because it sleeps during the day in old buildings such as barns, as well as in trees and rocks. The scientific name of this bird is *Strix flammea*.



Barn owl.—The downy head of the barn owl, a bird which seeks its food at night.

A barn-yard (*n.*) is the yard adjoining a barn, where fowls walk about picking up stray grains of corn, etc., and in which there are sheds, styes, and other buildings to house the rest of the animals belonging to the farm. Sometimes the name farm yard is used instead of barn-yard. A barn-door (*n.*) is always very large to allow carts to be driven in and out, and so the word barn-door is applied to a target so large that no one could fail to hit it.

In cricket *barndoor*ing (barn' dor ing, *n.*) means defensive batting. It is better known as stonewalling.

A-S *bern* (=ber-ern) from *berc* barley, and *arn* house

**barnacle** (bar'nakl), *n.* A species of wild goose, a genus of stalked crustacea; a hanger-on. (F. *bernacle, bernacle*.)

The barnacle or bernacle goose (*Unser bernicula* or *Anas leucopsis*) is closely related to the Brent goose. Breeding only in the Arctic regions, it was known in Britain as a summer visitor, and became the object of a very curious fable. It was said by some to be produced by trees growing on the seashore, either as the fruit of the tree or from the fruit; by others to grow from shell-fish

which grew on the tree or from rotting wood in the water.

The "shell-fish" from which the goose was supposed to spring was the barnacle, which may be found in clusters on the piles of piers and in similar situations. The barnacle belongs to the Cirripeds, whose "feathery feet" or cirri are useful in causing currents of water to flow through the open shell bringing food with it.

The name of the true stalked barnacle, *Lepas anatifera* means the goose-bearer or goose-producer, as does also the popular name, goose mussel. Stalkless cirripeds, such as the acorn-shell or sea acorns are sometimes called barnacles. A person who follows another continually and is difficult to shake off, may be called a barnacle.

ME *bernaque, bernacle* the latter a dim. of OF *bernaque, bernique* and LL *bernuet* (L. *dim. sultus, culla*)

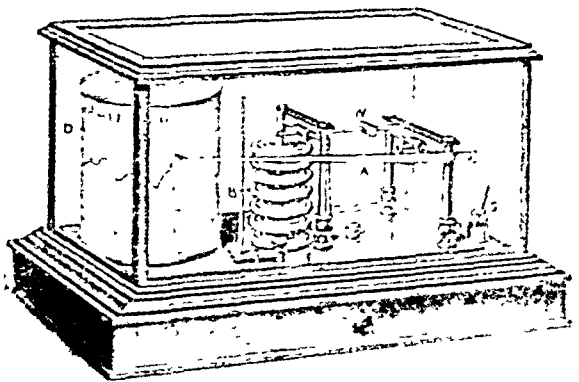
**barnacles** (bar naklz), *n. pl.* An instrument placed on the nose of a horse to keep it quiet while it is being shod.

Barnacles are a kind of pincers consisting of two branches joined by a hinge. Perhaps from the fact that they are placed across the nose and sometimes pinch it spectacles are sometimes called barnacles.

ME *bernaque*, dim of OF *bernaque*, perhaps of Oriental origin. In the sense of spectacles the word has been referred to OI *bernaque* eye glass, from L. *beryllus* crystal.

**barograph** (bär o gräf), *n.* An aneroid barometer which makes a record of atmospheric pressure. (F. *barograph*.)

Instead of a needle and dial this kind of barometer has a pen which rises and falls with changes of pressure. The pen presses on a card wrapped round a cylinder

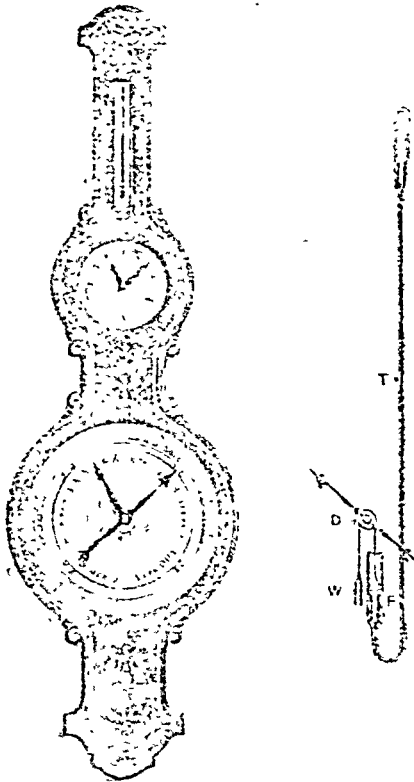


Barograph.—The tier of corrugated boxes (B) from which the air is taken out expand or contract according to the pressure of the atmosphere, and by means of the various rods and levers with which it is connected, move the spring arm (A) up and down. At the end of the arm is a pen. This marks the chart on the drum (D), which is revolved by clockwork within it. The weight (W) is to counterbalance the arm, and (S) is a supply of the special ink used.

driven by clockwork. It draws on the card a line called a barogram (bär o gräm),

which shows exactly any changes in pressure that happen during twenty-four hours.

Gr. *baros* weight, *graphein* to write, draw.



**Barometer.**—(T) is a glass tube filled with mercury and with one end closed. The variations in weight of the atmosphere acting on the exposed surface of the mercury cause the float (F) to rise or fall accordingly. A silken cord attached to the float, balanced by a weight (W), and passing round a drum (D), works the pointer.

**barometer** (bā rom'ē ter), *n.* An instrument for measuring the pressure of the atmosphere and for foretelling the weather. (F. *baromètre*.)

There are two kinds of barometer, the mercury barometer and the aneroid. The mercury barometer was invented in 1643 by an Italian, Evangelista Torricelli (1608-47). It is an upright glass tube containing mercury. The upper end of the tube is sealed; the bottom end is open and dips into a small cup of mercury. As there is no air in the tube above the mercury, the weight of the mercury in the tube above the surface of that in the cup must be equal to the air pressure on an area equal to the bore of the tube. The mercury, therefore, rises and falls with changes in atmospheric pressure.

The aneroid barometer has a flat sealed chamber of crinkled metal from which the air has been partly exhausted. Changes of pressure make the top move inwards or outwards, and the movements are passed on to a pointer, which revolves over a dial.

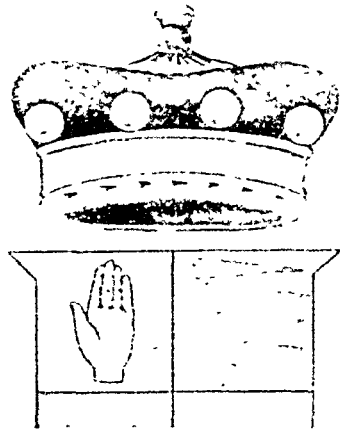
The barometer "rises," or shows a greater pressure, when the air becomes drier, and so a rise usually means the approach of fine weather. The instrument is also used for measuring height above sea level, as the pressure of the atmosphere becomes steadily smaller with increase of height. A reading given by a barometer is a *barometric* (bār ō met' rik, *adj.*) or *barometrical* (bār ō met' rik āl, *adj.*) reading. With the aid of a barometer, height is found *barometrically* (bār ō met' rik āl li, *adv.*). The art of using a barometer is called *barometry* (bā rom' ē tri, *n.*). The science of measuring changes of atmospheric pressure is *barometrography* (bār ō me trog' rā fi, *n.*)

Gr. *baros* weight, *metron* measure

**baron** (bār' ōn), *n.* The title of the lowest grade of the British peerage; one who bears this title; a foreign title. (F. *baron*.)

Originally a baron was one who held land by military or other service from his king or other superior. Later the title was chiefly applied to what was called a great baron, that is, one who attended the Great Council in person. From the time of Henry III those who were summoned by writ to Parliament were called barons. The judges of the old Court of Exchequer were called barons.

A baron of beef is a large piece of meat, formed by two sirloins not cut apart at the back-bone. **Baronage** (bār' ō nāj, *n.*) means



**Baron.**—The coronet of a baron, the lowest grade of the British peerage, and the badge (the hand) of Ulster which is part of a baronet's coat-of-arms.

the British order of barons, the whole body of barons, and also a book giving a list of barons with historical notes, etc. The wife or widow of a baron, or a lady who holds in her own right a rank equal to that of baron, is called a *baroness* (bār' ō nes, *n.*).

A *baronial* (bā rō' ni āl, *adj.*) castle is one belonging to or worthy of belonging to a baron. To receive a *barony* (bār' ō ni, *n.*) is to be given the rank or dignity of baron. Large estates or manors in Scotland, even when not owned by barons, are known as

baronies, and so are the sub-divisions of counties in Ireland, which were once the domains of independent chiefs.

M.E. *barūn*, O.F. *ber* (acc. *bar-on*), L.L. *baro* (acc. *barōn -em*) man, vassal, the first meaning of which is said to be stupid.

**baronet** (bār' ō net), *n.* A titled order of commoners, ranking next below barons and above all knights except Knights of the Garter; one who bears this rank. *v.t.* To raise to the rank of baronet. (F. *baronnet*; *créer baronnet*.)

The rank of baronet, a diminutive of baron, is the lowest that can be inherited. It is indicated by the abbreviation *Bart.* or *Bt.* placed after the name, for example, Sir John Doe, Bart.

A **baronetage** (bār' ō net āj, *n.*) is the rank or state of baronet, and by the baronetage we mean either baronets considered as a group or a book giving a list of baronets, with historical details, etc. We speak of a person being advanced to a **baronetcy** (bār' ō net si, *n.*), that is, to the rank of a baronet.

James I instituted the present order of baronets by selling titles of this rank for the purpose of raising money to pay his army in Ulster, Ireland. In memory of this a blood-red hand, the badge of Ulster, is still part of a baronet's coat of arms. Earlier in history a baronet was simply a younger or lesser baron.

The word is a dim. of baron

**baroque** (bā rōk'), *adj.* Irregularly shaped; fantastic. *n.* Grotesque decoration (F. *baroque*.)

This word was at first a jeweller's term, but gradually it came to be applied to architecture, furniture, and furnishings, etc. The wildly extravagant and meaningless art forms that were popular in the early eighteenth century are baroque.

Port. *barroco*, Span. *barrueco* irregular, oval-shaped pearl. The ultimate etymology is unknown. *SYN.*: *adj.* Bizarre, grotesque, rococo

**baroscope** (bār' ō skōp), *n.* A barometer. An observation made with the aid of a baroscope is a **baroscopic** (bār' ō skop' ik, *adj.*) observation. (F. *baroscope*.)

Gr. *baros* weight, *skopein* to look, observe.

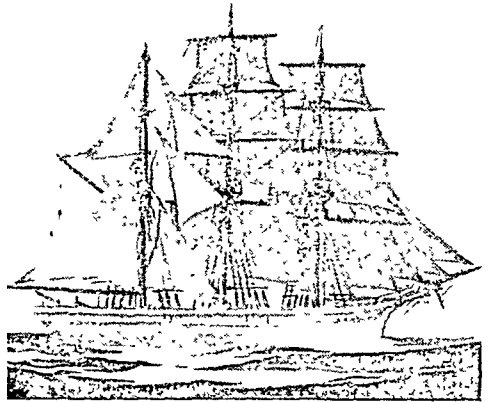
**barothermograph** (bār' ō thēr' mō grāf), *n.* An instrument which makes records on charts of changes in both the pressure and the heat of the atmosphere. (F. *barothermographie*.)

Gr. *baros* weight *thermos* hot, *graphein* to write.

**barouche** (bā roosh'), *n.* A horse-drawn carriage. (F. *calèche*.)

This old type of vehicle, originally two-wheeled, later had four wheels, a double seat for two couples facing each other, and an outside seat for the driver. In bad weather the occupants were protected by a big hood.

Derived ultimately from L. *birotus*, from *bi*(s) twice, two, and *rotā* wheel, the word occurs in G. in the form *barutsche*, in Ital. as *baroccio*.

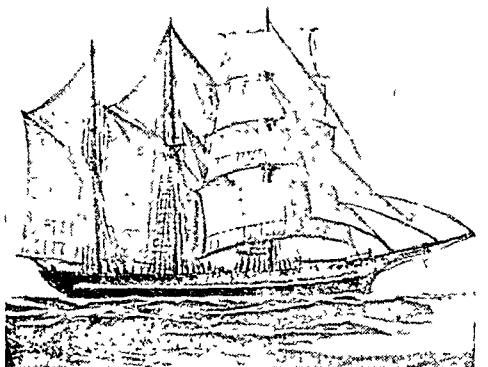


**Barque.**—The foremast and mainmast of a barque are square-rigged, and its mizzen-mast schooner-rigged.

**barque** (bark), *n.* A sailing ship with its foremast and mainmast square-rigged and its mizzen-mast schooner-rigged (with fore-and-aft sails). Also spelt bark. (F. *barque*.)

The barque may be quite a large ship. The fact that it is barque-rigged (*adj.*) makes it a barque. An alteration in the arrangement of sails would change its name. A **barquentine** (bar' ken tēn, *n.*) or **barkentine** is a three-masted sailing ship, carrying square sails on the foremast, and fore-and-aft sails on the mainmast and mizzen-mast.

The F. word (E. bark) is derived from L.L. *barca* boat vessel, perhaps of Celtic origin.



**Barquentine.**—A barquentine carries square sails on the foremast, and fore-and-aft sails on the mainmast and mizzen-mast.

**barrack** (bār' āk), *n.* A large building in which soldiers are housed. *v.t.* To place in barracks. *v.i.* To cheer ironically; to jeer. (F. *caserne*; *caserne*.)

Barrack was first used to describe a temporary hut, also a straw-thatched roof on posts used to protect hay from rain. Nowadays it is almost always used in the plural as a military word, as when we say that soldiers live in barracks.



Sometimes big bare buildings used to house a number of people, such as orphanages, are referred to as barracks. The officer in charge of military barracks is known as the *barrack-master* (*n.*)

Spectators at cricket matches often barrack a batsman who is slow in scoring runs or a fieldsman who is lax in the field. Sometimes it may be the umpire, who is barracked for giving a decision which is disapproved of by certain of the onlookers. Footballers, too, are often barracked.

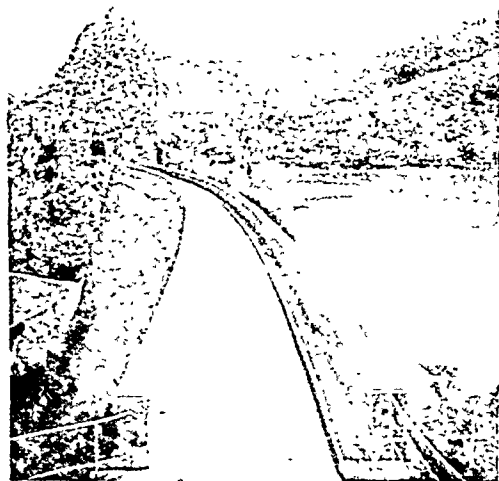
F. *baraque* hut, Ital. *baracca*, Span. *barriaca* soldiers' tent, perhaps ultimately from L.L. *barra* bar, enclosure.

**barrad** (bār' ād), *n.* A cap shaped something like a cone, that is, rising to a point in the centre, and originally worn by country folk in Ireland.

Irish *bairread*, from F. *bariette*, E. *barrel*.

**barrage** (bar' āj), *n.* A dam built across a river to raise its water level; a screen of artillery fire. (F. *barrage*.)

Among the greatest river barrages are those which span the Nile at Esna, Assiut, Cairo, and Zifta to turn the water into canals which irrigate the land on both sides of the river. When the Nile is in flood,



Barrage.—The barrage at Rochetaillé, France, on the River Aujon.

the many sluice gates in a barrage are opened to give the water free passage, and they are closed again as the flood subsides. By means of the barrages the Nile is changed from a simple slope into a great water staircase, each step of which ends at a barrage.

Artillery barrages were much used in the World War (1914-18) to prevent the enemy interfering with an advance. In a creeping barrage the range is gradually increased, so that the shells fall a short distance ahead of the advancing troops.

F. from L.L. *barra* bar. The suffix *-age* comes through F. from L. *-aticum*, indicating function or place where.

**barrator** (bār' ā tor), *n.* A person who makes a habit of stirring up quarrels and causing lawsuits. Another spelling is *bar-rater* (bār' ā ter). (F. *chicaneur*; *personne capable de baraterie*.)

The behaviour of a barrator is called *barratry* (bār ā tri, *n.*), a term which is also applied to the wilful wrongdoing of the master and crew of a ship which causes injury to the ship or cargo. Stealing cargo and abandoning or scuttling the ship without good reason are *barratry*, or *barratrous* (bār' ā trūs, *adj.*) acts.

The word was earlier spelt *baratour*, from M.E. and F. *barat* trickery, strife, possibly cognate with *barter*.

**barrel** (bār' el), *n.* A cask; a round wooden vessel, larger at the middle than at the ends, which are flat; the capacity or contents of a barrel; the belly and loins of a horse. *v.t.* To put into barrels. (F. *baril*, *embariller*.)

The ordinary cask or barrel is built up from a number of staves held together at the ends and at points between them by four iron hoops. The largest cask in the world is the Great Tun of Heidelberg, in Germany, which holds 49,732 gallons and was made in the year 1751.

The word barrel is also applied to the metal tube of a firearm, a cylinder, and the cylinder-like part of a boiler or other objects. A *barrel-drain* (*n.*) is a drain of barrel-like shape, and a *barrel-vault* (*n.*) is so named from its semi-cylindrical shape. *Barrel-bulk* (*n.*) is a nautical measure of five cubic feet.

A *barrel-organ* (*n.*) is a mechanical organ on wheels, played by turning a handle. The handle slowly revolves a metal barrel, or cylinder, which has pins sticking out from it, as in a musical box. The pins strike reeds or levers, which produce the notes.

Anything packed into barrels or shaped like a barrel is *barrelled* (bār' ēld, *adj.*).

The word is perhaps derived from L. *barra*, with reference to the hoops or staves round it.

**barren** (bār' en), *adj.* Not productive. *n.* A tract of unproductive land. (F. *stérile*; *terre stérile*.)

A tree which produces no fruit is described as barren. Land which is not suitable for providing crops is said to be barren. In a figurative sense we use the word to express unprofitable when we say that "our efforts were barren of results."

The term is especially applied to certain land at a high altitude in the United States on which small trees grow but no large ones. To grow *barrenly* (bār' en lī, *adv.*) is to grow without reproduction and *barrenness* (bār' en nes, *n.*) is a state of being unproductive.

M.E. *baran*, O.F. *baraigne*, Modern F. *barbare*, the ultimate etymology of which is unknown. Syn.: Arid, sterile, unfruitful, unproductive. Ant.: Fertile, fruitful, productive, profitable.

**barren-wort** (bär' én wërt), *n.* The English name of the genus *Epimedium*. (F. *chapeau d'évêque*, *épimède des Alpes*.)

The Alpine barren-wort (*Epimedium alpinum*), which is found in mountain woodlands, bears heart-shaped leaves, and beautiful purple and yellow blossoms. It was called barren-wort by the old herbalist Gerarde. It is sometimes met with in hilly districts of northern England.

*E. barren* and *wort* plant.

**barret** (bär' ét). *n.* A flat cap. (F. *barrette*.)

Barret is a general name for any small flat cap, the best-known of which are the biretta and the beret.

Itali. *beretta*, L.L. *birrètum*, properly meaning a red cap (such as is worn by cardinals), from L.L. *birrus* yellowish-red, Gr. *pyrrhos*.

**barricade** (bär i käd'), *n.* A hastily formed obstruction, usually in a street, placed in the way of an enemy; a barrier. *v.t.* To obstruct by employing a barricade or barrier (F. *barricade*; *barricader*.)

Works of obstruction were employed to bar the progress of Hannibal in his attack on Saguntum in 219 B.C., and Carthage for several days stayed the advance of the Romans in 146 B.C. by a similar device. The term barricade, however, was first used in 1588, when the Parisians, adopting this means of warfare during the Wars of the League, forced the soldiers of Henry III to retire from the French capital.

Parisians have several times witnessed the throwing up of barricades in their streets. Another occasion was during the war of the Fronde, a French party which opposed the Court and Cardinal Mazarin, the prime-minister during the minority of Louis XIV in 1648. In 1830 again, when Charles X was compelled to relinquish the throne, barricades were erected in the streets, and in 1848, 1851, and yet again in 1871, during the Commune of Paris, barricades figured prominently in the fighting that took place in the French capital.

In the "History of a Crime," which relates the story of the *coup d'état* by Louis Napoleon on December 2nd, 1851, Victor Hugo describes the throwing up of the barricades in the Faubourg St. Antoine and the Rue Thévenot in which he took an active part.

Those of the Representatives of the People who had not already been arrested marched to the Faubourg St. Antoine, gathering but few supporters of the insurrection on the way. Their entire forces, in fact, numbered only 150, and few were armed.

A peasant's cart rumbled along the

faubourg, the Representatives and their supporters overturned it. This was the beginning. A milk-cart met the same fate. A baker approached with his bread-cart. He lashed his horse into a gallop, in an endeavour to escape but failed. His cart was overturned, and it took its place beside the peasant's vehicle and the milk-cart.

Next came an omnibus—it was thrown over to strengthen the barricade. A few baskets were added to make the barrier higher and thicker and thereon some of the



**Barricade.**—An incident in the battle of Beaune-la-Rolande in the Franco-Prussian War of 1870-71. Soldiers forming a barricade of furniture and bedding taken from cottages.

Representatives took up positions in readiness for the attack.

Presently the soldiers of Napoleon appeared. Some of the Representatives advanced to meet them, to induce them to support the insurrection. The soldiers were ordered to "Fix bayonets—charge!" The bayonets were lowered, the soldiers doubled towards the Representatives, who remained motionless—unarmed. The soldiers turned their bayonets aside—their hearts were with the people.

Then, unfortunately, a shot was fired by someone on the barricade and the soldiers replied to the shot with a volley and advanced to the assault. The defenders of the barricade replied with a volley, but the barricade fell and the leader of the little party was killed shot through the head.

For his part in the insurrection Victor Hugo was outlawed. He found a haven in Brussels, and returned finally to Paris in 1871, a year that once again saw the citizens in revolt, and taking part in barricade warfare.

The Spanish word *barricada* (pp tem of *barricare*) literally means something made with casks filled with earth, Span. *barrica* a cask ep. barrel

**barrier** (bär' i er), *n.* Something which forms a dividing line, a defence a hindrance to approach or attack; an obstacle that separates people or things or keeps them apart. *v.t.* To shut off with a barrier. (F. *barrière*; *barrer*.)

A barrier or rail is often put up to prevent a mass of people from passing beyond a certain point. When entering some foreign cities, certain taxes have to be paid, and a barrier or gate is erected at the point of entry. In olden times, those taking part in races had to start from barred cells, which formed a barrier before the race began.

Anything which is not a solid or material thing may also form a barrier. For instance, poverty sometimes forms a barrier to success or the refusal of someone who has legal control in the matter may form a barrier to the marriage of two people.

A barrier-gate (*n.*) is a gate forming part of a long barrier. A large upright column of coal which supports the roof of a coal-mine is a barrier-pillar (*n.*). A ridge or reef built up by coral-polyps and forming a barrier between the mainland and the ocean is a barrier-reef (*n.*). The best-known is the Great Barrier Reef off the north-east coast of Australia, which extends for about one thousand two hundred miles.

M.E. and O.F. *barriere*, from F. *barre*, L.L. *barra*, *barria*. SYN.: Bar, hindrance, obstacle, obstruction, rampart. ANTR.: Entrance opening, passage, thoroughfare

**barrier-treaty** (*bār' i et trē' ti*), *n.* A treaty dealing with certain fortified cities in the Netherlands. (F. *traité de la barrière*.)

Until 1572 Holland and Belgium formed one country called the Netherlands, under Spanish rule. In that year the northern provinces revolted under William the Silent and set up the Netherlands Republic. Between the republic and the southern provinces a barrier of fortified towns was made including Namur, Tournai, and Menin.

After the battle of Malplaquet (1709) a Barrier Treaty between England and the republic gave the Dutch the right to occupy these towns. In 1715 another Barrier Treaty conferring the same rights, was concluded between the republic and Austria (which then owned the southern provinces).

**barrister** (*bār' i tēr*), *n.* A lawyer who has been admitted to practise as an advocate at the bar, that is, to conduct cases in a higher court of law. (F. *avocat*.)

Being admitted a barrister is known as being called to the bar, from the bar or rail which separates the counsel or barristers from the public part of the court. A

revising barrister (*n.*) is one appointed to hold a court every year to revise the register or list of those entitled to vote at Parliamentary elections.

The word probably means a person connected with, admitted to plead at the bar, with suffix *-ster*, denoting agency.

**barrow** [1] (*bār' ō*), *n.* A hill or hillock; a heap of stones or earth over a burial place; a grave mound of early times; a tumulus. (F. *tumulus*.)

From prehistoric times to the days of the Vikings it was a common practice to cover tombs with mounds of earth and stone. There are many of these barrows in England to-day, as anyone who walks in the Cotswold Hills can see, and they give us much knowledge about early times, because, even with races that cremated their dead, tools, necklaces and vases were usually put into the graves. The long barrows of the New Stone Age are sometimes three hundred feet in length and contain bones of many people and animals. Large blocks of stone, weighing many tons, form the inner tombs.

The round barrows of the Bronze Age are even more interesting, and one, six feet across, was found to be given up entirely to the bones of a single small child. In some of the Viking barrows, full sized ships have been discovered, equipped as though sailing the sea, with the dead owner lying in state in a cabin on the deck.

M.E. *beruh*, A.-S. *beorg* hill, G. *berg* mountain.

**barrow** [2] (*bār' ō*), *n.* A device for carrying small loads. (F. *brouette*, *civière*.)

A hand-barrow is like a stretcher, and carried by two men, one at each end. A wheel-barrow has one wheel, usually in front. In the Chinese type the wheel is under the middle, so that the user has to balance as well as push the barrow.

A sack-barrow is a frame with two small iron wheels and a flat iron foot which can be pushed under a sack. The word is also applied to small two-wheeled carts, such as are used by costermongers. The quantity of anything which a barrow will contain is called a barrowful (*bār' ō ful*, *n.*).

M.E. *barrow*, from A.-S. *beran* to bear; cp. Gr. *pherein*, L. *ferre*, with same meaning, from root *bher*.



Barrow.—A grave mound of early times at Upsala, Sweden. Similar barrows may be seen on the Cotswold Hills and elsewhere in England.

# BARTER: MOTHER OF TRADE

*When the World's Needs and Wants were Supplied without Money*

**barter** (bar' tēr), *v.t.* To trade by exchanging certain things (not money) for others. *n.* Trade by exchange. (F. *troc*; *troquier*.)

The earliest way of trading was to barter, say, animal skins for fish. A prehistoric fisherman needed a new skin coat, and a hunter who had a store of skins fancied a change of diet, so the two decided to barter, or exchange their wares. To barter away is to dispose of anything in this way, and the phrase often conveys the suggestion of not getting equal value in return—a man may barter away his honour for some empty reward.

Trade by exchange is known as barter, but money has, of course, put an end to this method of trade between civilized peoples, although ships still take cargoes of beads, small mirrors, nails, and similar things to uncivilized countries as barter for native produce. Schoolboys often use this method for obtaining new treasures, and will offer a friend so many marbles for his top.

In the days of James I, an Englishman named Captain Jobson led an expedition to the west coast of Africa. He voyaged into the unknown jungle far up the River Gambia, and, after many alarming adventures, reached the kingdom of Tinda. The natives there marvelled at the white men who killed wild beasts with what they thought was thunder, but Jobson had as great a surprise, for he saw a negro wearing an English sword, and women with English bracelets on their arms.

He asked for an explanation, and was told that caravans often came from the north, across the Sahara, with Moors and Arabs who gave such articles in return for gold-dust and ivory. That this was a very ancient trade is shown by the glass beads that have since been found in many parts of West Africa. These beads were made in Italy and Egypt long before Christ was born, and prove that, somehow or other, the civilized people of the far-off north bartered with the negroes for gold thousands of years ago.

Exchanges developed between groups of people and not between single traders. A group or tribe usually produces enough food, etc., for its own needs, and so the growth of

barter would be slow. It might first take the form of a tribal exchange of presents, such as we find among the Australian aborigines—who, by the way, expect a present equal in value to the one they give. In the early world, however, tribes who ate grain had one great need, and that was for salt. It is quite likely that barter began with the sending of gifts of bronze, amber, jade, or gold to tribes owning salt deposits, in exchange for that mineral.

With the rise of the great trading nations, barter became general. We know how the

Phoenicians brought their produce to Britain in return for tin. The export of woven goods, etc., from Carthage, Sidon, and Tyre grew into a vast trade that was first carried on wholly by barter. Commerce among the great peoples of the East was much the same. Chinese silks, Babylonian carpets, and Indian spices were bartered with the West.

Bartering was greatly complicated by alterations of value, and merchants were continually puzzling their heads over the

comparative worth of different articles. Therefore, when trade grew, many ancient nations adopted a fixed standard of values. The worth of a thing was then given in terms of slaves or cattle, as in Italy, where ten sheep equalled one ox. In this way, a trader could say that a shield cost two oxen and five sheep. Elsewhere, and at different periods, corn, skins, and tobacco (in North America) were used as mediums of exchange, much as whale's teeth, red feathers, or shells have been used in the South Sea Islands. This step marks the beginning of coinage.

Cattle were a kind of "walking money," whose chief drawback was that it had to be fed. Eastern nations used lumps of metal (silver, gold, or iron, which was once a rare material) as their standard.

In arithmetic, the "rule" or method of working out what quantity of a commodity is equal in value to another commodity is known as barter. A person who exchanges one thing for another is called a barterer (bar' tēr er, *n.*).

O.F. *barer* to exchange, barter, cheat, *barat* bartering, cheating. The ultimate etymology is unknown.



Barter.—Merchants bartering their wares at Peshawar, on the caravan route between Afghanistan and India.

**bartizan** (bar' ti zăn), *n.* A small turret built out from an angle of a tower or wall. (F. *brèche*.)

Bartizans are a feature of old Scottish castles. They enabled a warder to keep a look-out in several directions and to fire through arrow slits on to an enemy beneath.

The word is a corrupt form of *bratticing*, cognate with G. *brett* board, wooden partition, parapet.

**barton** (bar' tön), *n.* A farmyard; the part of an estate which the lord of a manor kept for himself. (F. *cour de ferme*.)

The word means barley-enclosure, or barley-field, which in olden times the landowner would have handy to the house, since a large part of the country was uncleared. As a source of food it was very valuable, hence we can understand that, though he might let-off outlying lands, he would keep his barley-field for himself. Later, perhaps, the meaning was given to the place where the barley was stacked, and so came to signify a yard.

A-S. *bere* barley, *tūn*, town, enclosed place.

**baryta** (bā rī' tā), *n.* A heavy, earthy compound of barium. (F. *baryte*.)

Baryta is the heaviest of the earthy compounds. It is a monoxide of barium, each atom of barium being combined with one atom of oxygen. Baryta water, a solution of baryta in water, is used as a test by chemists. Among the barytic (bā rī' ik, *adj.*) compounds is barytes (bā rī' tēs, *n.*) or heavy spar, a natural sulphate used to adulterate white lead paint, as well as to give weight and a smooth surface to paper.

Gr. *barytēs* heaviness, from *barys* heavy.

**barytone** (bār' i tön). This is another spelling of baritone. See baritone.

**basal** (bā' sāl), *adj.* Of or relating to a base. See base [2].

**basalt** (bās' awlt; bā sawlt'), *n.* A dark-coloured rock, containing iron, lime, and magnesium. (F. *basalte*.)

Basalt covers large districts of Scotland, northern Ireland, Germany, America, India, and Africa. It is sometimes thrown out in vast quantities as lava by a volcano. Some of the old lava flows have taken the form of columns, as at the Giant's Causeway. These basaltic (bā sawlt' ik, *adj.*) formations are very curious and interesting.

L. *basaltēs* a hard dark-coloured rock found in Ethiopia. The word according to Pliny in his "Natural History" (xxvii, 7, 11) is of African origin.

**basan** (bās' ān), *n.* A leather used in book-binding. **Bazan** (bās' ān) is another spelling. (F. *basane*.)

Basan is a sheep-skin tanned in oak or hark bark. It is harder than roan.

Port. *lázana*, Span. *lázana*, Arabic *butūn* blung.

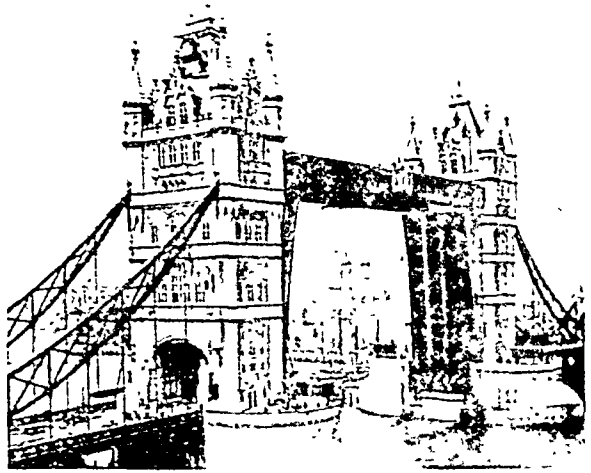
**basanite** (bās' ā nīt), *n.* Touchstone; Lydian stone. (F. *basanite*, *piere de touche*.)

Basanite is a flinty, velvety-black jasper, used as a touchstone to test alloys of gold and other metals. The nature of the alloy is judged from the colour made by it when rubbed on the touchstone.

Gr. *basanitēs* (lithos), L. *basanitēs* (lapis), from Gr. *basanos* touchstone, test.

**bascule** (bās' kŭl), *n.* A balanced lever, like that of a weighing machine or see-saw. (F. *bascule*.)

Bascules are used in some lifting bridges.



**Bascule.**—The two huge bascules of the Tower Bridge, which form the roadway for traffic. They are slowly raised to allow ships to pass up or down the Thames.

A bascule-bridge (*n.*) has a leaf or leaves that can be turned upright to allow ships to pass. The largest example is the Tower Bridge, London, opened in 1894. Its two huge bascules, or leaves, are 100 feet long. Each turns on a great steel pin 21 inches thick and 48 feet long, and weighs, with its counterweight of lead and iron, 1,200 tons.

The bascules are raised and lowered by powerful engines, and when standing upright leave a clear way 200 feet wide for ships.

For the F. word, the first meaning of which is see-saw, *bas* down or *bat-tre* to beat, and *cul* the back have been suggested as etymologies.

**base** [1] (bās, *adj.* Mean; despicable; inferior. (F. *bas*, *faux*.)

A person who is cowardly is said to be *base* and acts *basely* (bās' lī, *adv.*), his unworthy conduct being *baseness* (bās' nēs, *n.*). A thing of inferior quality is sometimes described as *base*. One who is of low birth is *base-born* (*adj.*).

Metals other than precious are distinguished from the latter by being called *base metals* (*n.pl.*), and counterfeit coins, or those that are not genuine, are *base coins* (*n.pl.*). The outer court of a mansion or castle is referred to as the *base-court* (*n.*). In law a *base-fee* (*n.*) or *base-tenure* (*n.*) is the grant of an

**bash** (bāsh), *v.t.* To strike with the result of smashing. *v.i.* To strike very hard. *adv.* With force. *n.* A bang. (F. *briser avec violence*, *écraie*; *frapper violemment*; *par force*; *tape*.)

Mischievous boys will sometimes delight to bash a fence, and in doing this they may bash into it with their shoulders. A cyclist, losing control of his machine, may bash into a tree and strike it with a bash.

The word is probably onomatopoeic, or imitative, and of Scand. origin; Swed. *basa*, Dan *baske* to thrash. SYN.: Bang, crash, smash, strike

**bashaw** (bā shaw'), *n.* This is an earlier form of pasha. See pasha.

**bashful** (bāsh' fūl), *adj.* Shy self-conscious; very modest. (F. *qui a conscience de soi-même*; *modeste*.)

The boy who is shy of strangers and the hero who escapes before he can be rewarded for a brave deed are bashful. A man who has just returned from distant solitudes may at first behave bashfully (bāsh' fūl *li*, *adv.*) in society, but with use his bashfulness (bāsh' fūl *nes*, *n.*) will disappear.

The word is a shortened form of *abashful*, from *abash* to be dumbfounded, and suffix *-ful*. SYN.: Modest, reserved, retiring, shy. ANT.: Bold, confident, forward, impudent.



Bashi-bazouk.—Two bashi-bazouks, or irregular Turkish soldiers, noted for lawlessness.

**bashi-bazouk** (bāsh i bā zook'), *n.* A Turkish soldier, not belonging to the regular army, and noted for lawlessness and brutal behaviour. (F. *bashi-bouzouk*.)

The bashi-bazouks fought well under British officers in the Crimea, but when not under proper discipline they prove very troublesome, and their name remains a by-word for savage soldiery. The word bashi-bazoukery (bāsh i bā zook' *er i*, *n.*) means the bashi-bazouks considered as a whole, and is also used for such brutal and disorderly conduct as is characteristic of them.

Turkish *bashy-bözüq* (*bash* head, *bözüq* spoilt, disordered) explained as either one whose head is turned, madcap, or as one whose clothes, headgear, etc., are not uniform.

**basic** (bā' sik), *adj.* Of or relating to a base. See base [2].

**basic slag** (bā' sik slāg), *n.* Slag produced during the conversion of pig-iron containing much phosphorus into steel. (F. *scorie basique*.)

When phosphoric iron is treated in a Siemens steel furnace, lime is added to it to absorb the phosphorus. The slag formed by the combination is rich in phosphates, and when ground up into a very fine powder makes a valuable manure.

E *basic* and *slag*

**basidium** (bā sid' i ūm), *n.* One of the spore-producing cells of fungi. (F. *baside*.)

In many of the fungi each of the gills consists of a number of cells called basidia (bā sid' i ā, *pl.*). From these cells a number of fine threads arise, on the top of which are spores. Hence the name basidium-fungi.

*Basidium* is a modern Latin diminutive of Gr. *L. basis* base

**basil** [1] (bāz' il), *n.* Sweet-smelling plants of the genus *Ocimum*. (F. *basilic*.)

The sweet basil (*Ocimum basilicum*) is the best-known species. Another is the holy basil (*Ocimum sanctum*) of India, sacred to the god Vishnu. The name is also given to other plants, the so-called wild basil being the hedge calamint (*Calamintha clinopodium*) and the basil thyme the field calamint (*Calamintha acinos*).

O.F. *basile* (Modern F. *basile*), from L. *basilicum*, Gr. *basilikon* royal, both neuter adjectival forms. The plant was supposed to be a remedy for the bite of the basilisk, whence its name.

**basil** [2] (bāz' il), *n.* The skin of a sheep which has been tanned in bark. (F. *basane*.)

Bark is very largely used in tanning all kinds of leather. Basil is used in book-binding, and it is tanned with the bark of oak or larch trees.

A corruption of *basan* or *bazan*, ultimately from Arabic *bulāna* lining.

**Basilian** (bā zil' i ān), *adj.* Of or relating to St. Basil or the order founded by him; of or relating to a French order of priests who train men for the priesthood. *n.* A member of either of these orders. (F. *Basilien*.)

In the fourth century St. Basil, Bishop of Caesarea, founded a monastery in Pontus and an order of monks, which quickly spread over eastern Europe. Nearly all the Greek and Oriental monasteries are Basilian, that is, they follow the rule of St. Basil.

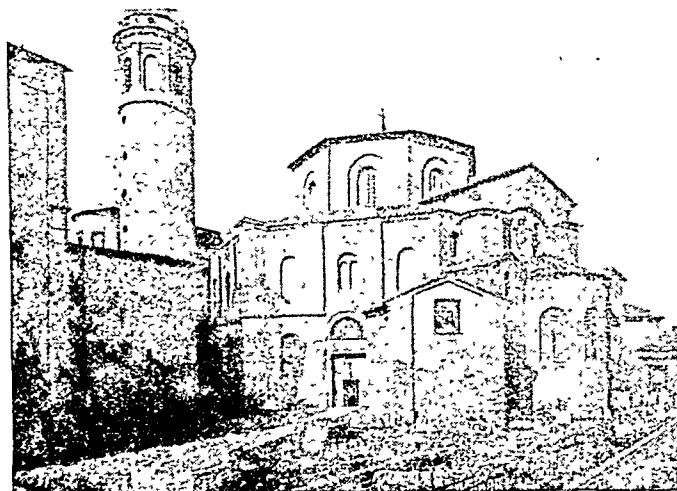
The Basilian order of priests was founded in 1800, at St. Basil, in Vivarais, France.

**basilica** (bā zil' i kā), *n.* A large oblong hall with colonnades and an apse used in ancient Greece and Rome as a law court or place of assembly; such a building adapted as a church; a church built in this style (F. *basilique*.)

Basilicas were originally used as courts of justice. They were built in nearly the same style as churches, so that later, after the introduction of Christianity, they were easily converted into churches. The name was applied specially in Rome to the seven chief churches founded by Constantine the Great. A church built like a basilica is *basilican* (bā sil' i kăn, *adj.*) in style.

*Basilicon* (bā zil' i kôn, *n.*) and *basilicum* (bā zil' i kûm, *n.*) are names that were given to certain kinds of ointment supposed to possess great healing value.

*Basilica* (*domus* house) is the fem. sing. of *L. basilicus* royal, *Gr. basilikê* (stoa portico), from *basileus* king, suffix *-ikos* connected with.



*Basilica.*—The basilica of San Vitale at Ravenna, in Italy. This fine old church dates from the sixth century.

**basilisk** (bāz' i lisk; bās' i lisk), *n.* The name given by the ancient Greeks and Romans to a fabulous monster of a very deadly kind; a harmless South American lizard. (*F. basilic.*)

The basilisk or king of serpents, sometimes thought to be the same as the cockatrice, was believed in by the ancients and by many people in the Middle Ages. It was hatched, so the legend ran, from a cock's egg by a serpent. Its breath and even its look killed in a moment, and it withered everything that it touched. The only creatures feared by the basilisk were the cock, whose crowing killed it, and the weasel. Travellers, therefore, often carried a live cock with them as a protection.

Very possibly the basilisk was the deadly cobra di capello, whose hood might be turned by the imagination into a crown such as a "king" of serpents should wear. In India the cobra is attacked and killed by the mongoose, an animal with a weasel-like body, and this fact seems to fit in with the suggestion that the basilisk was a snake.

The word basilisk is now used of certain kinds of tree lizards found in S. America,

which have a sort of bag on the head that can be blown out at will. These basilisks are quite harmless and are eaten by the natives.

*L. basiliscus*, *Gr. basiliskos* little king, dim. of *basileus*.

**basin** (bās' n), *n.* A hollow, circular vessel to hold water; a bowl; an enclosed sheet of water in a harbour or dock; the tract of country drained by a river and its branches; a formation in the ground where the layers of rock or other material slope downwards on all sides towards a centre, as in an artesian basin. (*F. bassin, cuvette, darse.*)

M.E. and O.F. *bacin*, L.L. *bachin-us*, *-um*, probably from L.L. *bacca* vessel for holding water, cp. *G. becken*.

**basinet** (bās' i net), *n.* A light steel helmet. *Basnet* (bāz' net) is another form. (*F. bassin.*)

The "tin hats" worn by soldiers of all the armies during the World War (1914-18) were a kind of basinet.

O.F. *bacinet*, dim. of *bacin* basin, and so called from its resemblance to one.

**basis** (bā' sis), *n.* A base or foundation; a groundwork. The plural is *bases* (bā' sēz). (*F. base, fondement.*)

The basis of an agreement is the general conditions which both parties are ready to accept. These have to be worked out in detail

until the complete agreement has been built up on them.

*L. Gr. basis*, literally going, step, pedestal, from *Gr. bainem* to go. *SYN.*: Base, foundation, groundwork. *ANT.*: Apex, top.

**bask** (bask), *v.t.* To expose to pleasant warmth. *v.i.* To expose oneself to pleasant warmth; to revel in pleasant warmth; to give oneself up to the enjoyment of pleasant influences. (*F. chauffer; se chauffer.*)

We bask ourselves by the fire in winter and in the genial sunshine in summer. We get bronzed by basking in the sun. We may also bask in glory, or in good fortune, or in the sunshine of our lady's smiles.

Of Scand. origin: O. Norse *badhash* to take a bath, *sk* representing the reflexive pronoun.

**basket** (bas' kêt), *n.* A receptacle or vessel made of cane, rushes, or similar material. *v.t.* To put in a basket. (*F. panier, corbeille.*)

When the Romans arrived in Britain in the first century A.D. they found the natives masters of the craft of making baskets, an industry which the invaders soon introduced to Rome. The method of making

baskets has undergone little change since those early times, and is still largely carried on by hand.

**Basket-work** (*n.*), or anything that calls into practice similar methods, such as the making of a **basket-hilt** (*n.*) or hand protection for a sword-stick, or a **basket-carriage** (*n.*), a vehicle with a body of woven cane or osiers, is also called **basketry** (*bas'ket ri, n.*). A quantity of things sufficient to fill a basket is a **basketful** (*bas'ket ful, n.*), and a woman who sells wares from a basket is referred to as a **basket-woman** (*n.*). In knitting the use of the **basket-stitch** (*n.*) produces a pattern resembling wickerwork or basketry. A popular game in England and the United States of America now called **net-ball**, was originally known as **basket-ball** (*n.*). We sometimes use the phrase **the pick of the basket**, when we mean the finest of a number of things.

**Etymology unknown** It is doubtful whether the *L. bascauda*, which originally meant a vessel in which cups and dishes were washed or meat cooked, had anything to do with it. The supposed Celtic originals are probably adopted from English.

**basking-shark** (*bas'king shark, n.* A shark of the North Atlantic Ocean. (*F. grand chien de mer, pèlerin.*)

This shark gets its name from its habit of lying quite still on the surface of the water on calm days when the weather is warm. It is sometimes thirty feet long. The scientific name is *Selache maxima*.

*E. basking (adj.) and shark.*

**bason** (*bās'n, n.* A bench with an iron plate having a fire beneath it, used formerly in the making of felt hats. *v.t.* To harden the felt in hat-making. (*F. bassin, forme.*)

The wool fibres were beaten and pressed on this, so that their scales interlocked and the felt began to form.

The word is probably another form of *basin*.

**Basque** (*bas'k, n.* One of the races that live among the western Pyrenees, their language, a kind of skirt. (*F. Basque.*)

The present populations of all European countries come of very mixed stocks, but here and there remnants survive of the early races of inhabitants. The Basques are such a remnant of an ancient race. They live in the district once known as Vasconia, in the Pyrenees north of Spain and south of France and the Bay of Biscay. Their language is peculiar for it is not akin to the Aryan or Indo-European tongues spoken in other parts of Europe.

The word *basque* (perhaps because part of the costume of the Basques, like that of the Gaels or Celts of ancient Ireland and Scotland, was the kilt or short skirt falling between the girdle and the knees) is applied to a lady's jacket which extends below the waist forming a kind of skirt. A garment so made is said to be **basqued** (*bas'kt, adj.*)

From *L.L. F. basca*, from which also *Gael. n.* *basca* is derived.



Basque.—Two little Basque children and their home at Lemona, in Spain.

**bas-relief** (*bas're lēf, ba're lēf, n.* Low relief, sculpture and carving in which the subjects project only a little way from a flat background. (*F. bas-relief.*)

The finest example is the frieze of the Parthenon at Athens. Heads are shown in **bas-relief** on many memorial tablets put up in our great churches.

Ital. *basso-rilievo*, from *L.L. bassus* low, *L. relevare* to lift up.

**bass** [1] (*bās, n.* A tough vegetable fibre. Another form of the word is **bast** (*bāst*). (*F. tulle.*)

The **bass** used for tying plants is made from a mallow which grows in Cuba. The inner part of the bark of the lime tree also yields **bass**, which, when dried, can be woven into mats and baskets. The wood of the American lime tree is called **bass-wood** (*n.*). It is pale yellow in colour, and, being light and easily worked, is largely used for making furniture.

*M.E. bast, A-S. ba* inner bark of tree, occurring in several Teut. languages. See *bast*.

**bass** [2] (*bās, n.* A sea fish akin to the perch. *Basse* is another spelling. (*F. sandre.*)

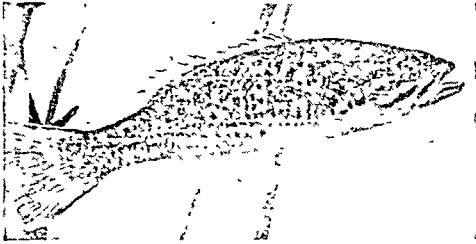
This fish is very fierce and is known also as *sea-wolf* and *sea-dace*. Its scientific name is *Morone labrax*.

In North America there are freshwater fish known as **bass**. The perch of Lake Huron is known as **black-bass** (*n.*), and the sea-perch (*Centropomus striatus*) common on the Atlantic shore, is generally known as **sea-bass** (*n.*). The American **striped-bass** (*n.*) is the rock fish, *Roccus lineatus*.



From their readiness to take any bait, their size and their fierceness they furnish excellent sport to sea-anglers.

A.-S. *baers*; cp. G. *barsch*, from Teut. *bars* sharp, bristly.



**Bass.**—The black bass, a freshwater fish found in American rivers and lakes.

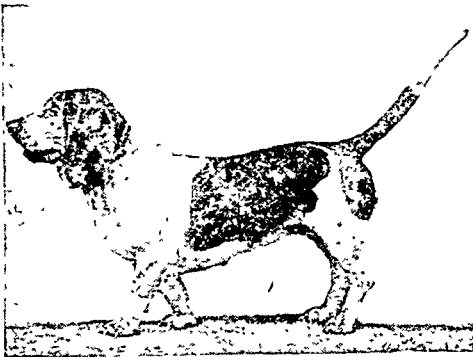
**bass** [3] (*bās*), *n.* The lowest part in harmony and in all musical compositions; the lowest of all the male voices; one who has this voice; the lowest tones of a musical instrument; a string that produces these. *adj.* Relating to any of these. (F. *basse*; *bas*, *grave*.)

There are varying degrees of the bass voice. For instance, there is the basso-cantante, or singing-bass; the basso-buffo, which means a comic bass singer; and the basso-profundo, a wonderfully deep voice, like the sound of a great organ pipe. A bass-viol (*n.*), or violoncello, is a stringed instrument, used for playing bass.

Ital. *basso* low, deep, from L.L. *bassus*.

**basset** [1] (*bās' èt*), *n.* A very short-legged dog used for sporting purposes. (F. *basset*.)

The basset, or basset-hound, comes from France, where it is used for driving game from cover. It combines the body and markings of a foxhound and the head of a bloodhound with a dachshund's legs. It is sometimes employed for drawing badgers



**Basset.**—A native of France, the short-legged basset is much used for sporting purposes in the British Isles.

and foxes from their earths, and in packs for hunting hares.

The F name, a dim. in form, comes from L.L. *bassus* low, in allusion to the dog's short legs.

**basset** [2] (*bās' èt*), *n.* The edge of a layer of the earth's crust, where it comes to the surface; an outcrop. *adj.* Outcropping. *v.i.* To outcrop. (F. *affleurement*; *affleurant*; *affleurant*.)

Originally many of the strata, or layers, which make up the hard outside of the earth were level. Volcanic or other action bent them into folds, and weather and water have worn away the tops of the folds, baring the layers edgewise. The layers then basset, that is, are level with the new surface of the ground. The word is now rare.

Like other similar words, basset in this sense may be derived from L.L. *bassus* low, but this etymology is considered doubtful.




**basset-horn** (*bās' èt hòrn*), *n.* A wooden musical instrument of the clarinet class, also called the alto clarinet. (F. *cor de basset*.)

F. *basset*, Ital. *bassetto*, dim of *basso* low, and E. *horn*.

**bassinet** (*bās i net'*), *n.* An oblong wicker basket with a hood over one end used as a cradle; a perambulator shaped like this. (F. *bercelonnette*.)

F. *bassin*, dim of *basin* basin, and so called from the shape.

**basso clef** (*bās' ò klef*), *n.* The lowest of the clefs, the bass. (F. *clef de fa*.)

The basso clef is shown thus in music  although nowadays in a song written for the bass voice the solo part is nearly always written in the treble clef, thus.  In part-writing, however, that is when the music is written for several voices,  the bass clef sign is used, in order to distinguish the bass part from the rest. This is also the case in compositions written for piano or orchestral instruments, and for organ.

Ital. *basso* low, deep, F. *clef* key



**Bassoon.**—The bass of the wood-wind instruments of an orchestra is the bassoon.

**bassoon** (*bā soon*), *n.* A musical instrument made of wood and played through a bent metal mouthpiece. (F. *basson*.)

The bassoon is the bass of the wood-wind instruments, including the oboe and clarinet, of an orchestra. Its ability to give out curious sounds has caused it to be called the clown of the orchestra, a title which now perhaps more properly belongs to the saxophone. A bassoonist (*bā soon' ist*, *n.*) is one skilled in playing on the bassoon.

Intensive form of F *basse* deep, or a compound of *bas son* deep sound.

**bassorin** (*bās' ò rin*), *n.* A gum obtained from Bassorah gum and other gums. (F. *bassorine*.)

Bassorah gum, from Bassorah near the Persian Gulf, gum tragacanth, and the gum from cherry trees and plum trees all contain bassorin, which cannot be dissolved in water, but swells up and forms a kind of jelly.

**Bast** [1] (bāst), *n.* A goddess of the ancient Egyptians. (F. *Bast*.)

In sculptures and inscriptions Bast is represented with a lion's or a cat's head. The cat was sacred to Bast, and great numbers of the animals were kept at Bubastis, a city built in honour of the goddess. Many hundreds of thousands of people visited Bubastis when a festival was held there, as Bast was one of the more important deities. The Greeks identified her with Artemis, the Romans with Diana.

**bast** [2] (bāst), *n.* The inner bark of certain trees and plants. (F. *écorce intérieure*.)

The bast consists of thin woody fibres, which, in the case of the lime tree, flax, hemp, and some kinds of nettles and mallows, are so tough as to be very useful for manufacturing purposes. Linen is made from the bast of the flax plant, ropes from that of hemp, and baskets from lime bast.

M.E. *bast*, A-S. *baest* inner bark of trees, occurring in several Teut. languages.

**baste** (bāst), *v.t.* To pour fat or gravy over (meat while roasting it); to beat with a stick; to sew (cloth) together loosely. (F. *arroser*, *bâtonner* *bâtir*.)

Every cook knows that meat must be basted to keep it from drying up and to improve its flavour. In the sense of beating the word is rarely used now. The parts of a piece of cloth are basted in order to keep them in place for fitting, etc.

The first and second meanings are probably both of Scand. origin. The third is from O.F. *bastir*, modern F. *bâtir*, from L.L. *bastire* to construct, or from O.H.G. *besten* to stitch up, ultimately from *bast* the inner bark of a tree, the fibres of which were used as thread.

**bastille** (bas tēl'), *n.* A famous prison fortress in Paris, destroyed in 1789; any prison, especially one in which the prisoners are cruelly treated; a fortified tower; a bastion of a castle; a small fortress; a wooden tower on wheels, used to cover troops attacking a fort, etc.; one of a chain of huts defended by trenches, forming the outworks of a defending or besieging force. (F. *bastille*.)

There were many bastilles, or forts, round old Paris. The largest and strongest of these became known as the Bastille, and the other bastilles were forgotten. Many great people of France were imprisoned in the Bastille. Paul Pellisson (1624-93), the history writer, who made a spider his companion and taught it to eat from his hand; the mysterious Man in the Iron Mask, who died there in 1703—these names suggest two of the romantic stories about the Bastille that everyone should read, in the novels of Dumas or in history books.

The Bastille became a symbol of all that was cruel and despotic, and in the early days of the French Revolution the mob stormed the building, powerful though it was, and razed it to the ground.

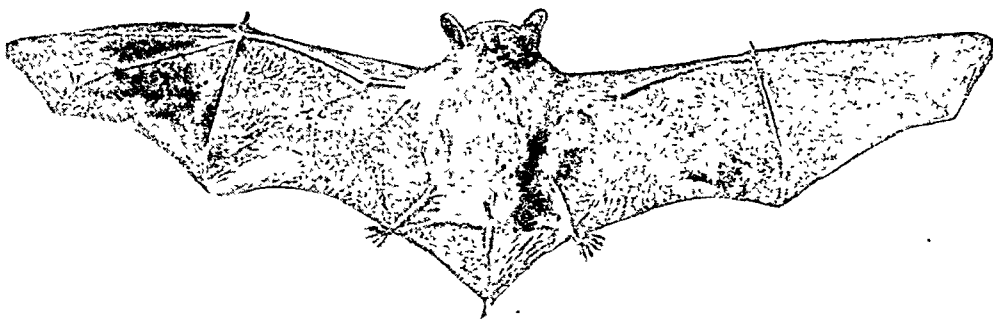
O F. *bastir* to build, L.L. *bastilia* (pl.) fortress.

**bastinado** (bās ti nā' dō), *n.* Beating with a stick, especially on the soles of the feet; a rod. *v.t.* To beat with a stick, especially on the soles of the feet. This is the European word for an Oriental punishment. (F. *bastonnade*; *bâtonner*.)

A corruption of Span. *bastonada*, from Span. *baston*, L.L. *basto* (acc. -nō-em) stick; cp. *baton*. The suffix -ado is the Span. equivalent of L. participial -atus, as if from a verb *bastonare*.



Bastille.—The great prison fortress in Paris known as the Bastille as it appeared before it was captured and destroyed by an armed mob in 1789.



**bastion** (bās' ti ōn), *n.* A portion of a fortification, either at an angle or in the line, which projects and has two faces and two flanks. (F. *bastion*.)

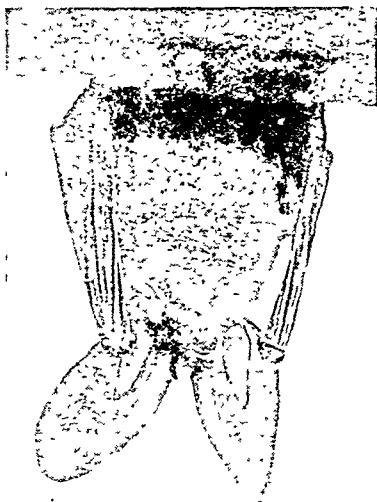
The bastion form of construction has been in use ever since Roman times, and many great mediaeval castles and forts are constructed with thick-walled bastions. All the five angles of a bastion are salient, that is, pointing outwards towards the country surrounding the fortification. The bastion was a favourite shape of part of a fort, because it could be defended by fire from other parts of the fort. It was a kind of projecting wall shaped like a pentagon, an outpost of the fort, where defenders could gather and fire all along the walls of the fort when the latter were being attacked.

Ital. *bastione*, verbal *n.* from Ital. and L.L. *bastare* to build; cp. O.F. *baštir*.

**bat** [1] (băt), *n.* An animal like a mouse, which flies at night by means of wings formed of a membrane supported by the fingers and stretching from the side of the neck to the tail. The order to which bats belong is Chiroptera. (F. *chauve-souris*.)

When we say a person is as blind as a bat or bat-blind (*adj.*) we mean that he is as blind as a bat is during the day, or, in a fanciful sense, that he will not see something or is too much of a dunce to see the point of some argument. The ordinary gas-burner which burns without a mantle is called a batwing (*adj.*) or batwing (*adj.*) burner because the flame is shaped like the wing of a bat. A sediment found in old wine is called batwing (*n.*).

Bat is of Scand. origin, and in its present form is a corruption of M.E. *bakke*; cp. Dan. *bakke*, Sc. *bachie-bird*.



Bat.—The top picture shows the pipistrelle, the common bat of the British Isles. Below is a long-eared bat, hanging head downwards, taking a rest.

**bat** [2] (băt), *n.* A shaped piece of wood with a handle used in cricket; any similar implement used in ball games, a person who uses a bat. *v.t.* To strike with or use a bat. *v.i.* To take an innings in a game, using a bat. (F. *crosse*; *qui manie la crosse*; *manier la crosse*.)

Anyone who bats in a cricket match is called a batsman (băt's man, *n.*), and if he is not out at the end of the innings he is said to have carried his bat. If he does anything entirely unaided people say he has done it off his own bat, an expression which is also used in a general sense. A small bat is sometimes referred to as a batlet (băt' let, *n.*), and this name is also given to a flat

wooden mallet used for beating linen.

The earliest cricket bat was probably a tree branch shaped at the thick end, and later on it took the form of a hockey stick, having most of its weight in the crook. This gave place to a straight piece of wood, wide at the base and sloping gradually towards the top, which in turn made way for the "shouldered" bat, more like the present-day article, a good specimen of which could be obtained for about five or, at the most, six shillings.

During the first half of the nineteenth century cricket bats were usually cut out of a solid piece of wood, handle as well, the blade being the same thickness over all. Towards the end of the eighteenth century it was ruled that no bat should be wider than four and a half inches, a measurement that holds to this day. The length of the modern bat, which is made of willow, must not exceed thirty-eight inches. Lawn tennis, badminton, and other rackets are sometimes called bats.

The popping-crease, the line parallel to the bowling crease, is also known as the **batting-crease** (n.).

A-S. *batt*, but cp. M.E. *batte*, F. *batte* mallet, beater, from *battre* to beat.



Bat.—A skilled workman binding the handle of a cricket bat on a lathe.

**batanga** (bà tăn' gâ), n. A bamboo pole used as an outrigger on native boats in the Philippine Islands. (F. *batanga*.)

The boats used by the natives are really a kind of canoe and would easily upsets in the sea if it were not for the steadiness which is given to them by the batangas. Batangas is the name of a town and province on the island of Luzon.

**batata** (ba ta' tâ), n. The sweet potato. (F. *patate*, *la pomme de terre douce*.)

The batata (*Batatas edulis*) is a West Indian plant belonging to the convolvulus family and is sometimes called *Convolvulus batatas*. It is widely grown in hot countries for its tubers or sweet potatoes, which are quite distinct from the common potato.

A native American (Haitian) word whence Span. and Port. *patata*. See potato.

**Batavian** (bà tâ vi an), adj. Of Batavia. n. One of the people of Batavia. (F. *Batave*, *Hollandais*.)

Batavia is the old name of Holland and the Netherlands.

**bat-boat** (bât' bôt), n. A flying boat or seaplane.

The bottom of the boat is so shaped that the hull is raised as speed increases, until it is skimming the surface of the water. When in this condition the wings can lift it into the air.

E. *Lit* and *boat*.

**batch** (bäch), n. The amount of bread produced at one baking; a lot or set. (F. *portion*, *troupe*.)

A batch may mean the quantity of dough used at one baking as well as the number of loaves baked at one time. On your birthday anniversary you may receive a

batch of letters. A number of men may be arrested in a batch by the police.

M.E. *lacche* a baking, A-S. *bacan* to bake. SYN.: Collection, lot, quantity, set, sort. ANT.: Individual, one, unit.

**bate** [1] (bât), v.t. To reduce, to beat down; to lessen. (F. *réduire*, *rabattre*, *diminuer*.)

When a shopkeeper finds the prices of his goods too high to attract customers, he may bate, or lower, them. When listening to anything which causes excitement one may check one's breathing, and so listen with bated breath.

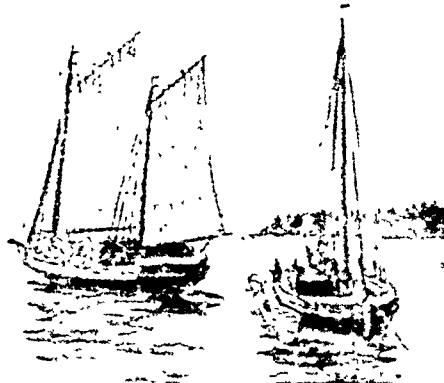
A shorter form of *abate*, from F. *abattre* to beat down, from L.L. *a-*—*ad*, *battere* to beat.

**bate** [2] (bât), n. An alkaline solution used in tanning the soft leathers for the upper parts of boots. v.t. To steep in a vat of bate. This process is also called grainering. (F. *solution alcaline*; *macérer*.)

Cp. G. *beize* caustic lye, *beizen* to cause to bite, Swed. *beta* to bite (using a corrosive) to tan. See bait.

**Bateau** (ba' tō), n. A Canadian flat-bottomed boat with one or two masts. (F. *bateau*.)

The rivers of Canada, in their upper courses, present many difficulties to the traveller. Swift rapids and unexpected shallows obstruct the streams, making ordinary boats useless. Bateaux (ba' tōz, n.pl.), however, draw so little water that they



Bateau.—The flat-bottomed bateaux used on Canadian rivers.

pass over banks which would wreck a keeled boat. Some bateaux are light enough to be carried round the worst rapids. In them French-Canadian trappers and hunters travel into the wilds of eastern Canada.

A **bateau-bridge** (n.) is a bridge built of these boats, like the pontoon bridge of our military engineers.

F. from L.L. *batellus*, dim. of *latus*, boat of Teut. origin; cp. A-S. *lāt*.

**bath** [r] (bat'), *n.* A vessel for washing or swimming in; the act of washing or immersing the body in water or other fluid; the water or other liquid used for the purpose; a room or building for bathing in; a town where bathing is carried on in medicinal springs or special buildings; the act of dipping or immersing anything in any liquid; an order of knighthood. *v.t.* To wash or put in a bath. (F. *bain*; *baigner*.)

Baths are of various shapes and sizes and are named from their shape or for the purpose for which they are used. A **hip-bath** (*n.*) is one which can be moved from room to room and in which there is just room to sit but not to lie. A **swimming-bath** (*n.*) is a large bath, sometimes outdoor, in which people can learn to swim or take swimming exercise. An **eye-bath** (*n.*) is a small glass or rubber vessel which fits over the eye to allow one to bathe the eyes. Nearly all modern houses in big towns have a bath in a special room called the **bath-room** (*n.*).

The Jews, Mohammedans, and Buddhists all take baths as a religious rite. The baths built by the Romans are among the most wonderful ever erected, there being room in some of them for 2,000 bathers at a time. There the Romans used to meet and sit and talk in beautiful heated lounges.

Many of the things which originally came from Bath, in Somerset, are called after that city. A **bath-chair** (*n.*) is a chair used by invalids, and was so called because of the number in use in Bath, whose hot springs attract many invalids. **Bath-brick** (*n.*), used for cleaning knives and metal, is so-called from its resemblance to **Bath-stone** (*n.*), a building stone found near Bath. Bath-brick actually comes from Bridgwater in Somerset. A **bath-bun** (*n.*) is a spiced bun supposed to have been originally made in Bath, while a **bath-chap** (*n.*) is a pig's cheek, pickled, dried, and cured.

The Order of the Bath is one of the knightly orders. When the order was first founded newly-made knights went through a solemn form of bathing, to indicate purity. It was at the coronation of Charles II in 1661 that the last knights were created in this way.

**Bathonian** (ba thō' ni ān) means belonging to or having to do with the city of Bath, or a native of that city. In geology, the name is given to a division of Jurassic rocks.

*A.-S. bæth*; cp *G. bad*. The word is a verbal *n.* from a Teut. *v.* meaning to foment, cp. *G. baken*, *L. fovère*. Bathonian is an adj. from *Bathonia*, a later *L.* name for Bath (formerly *Aquæ Sulis*).

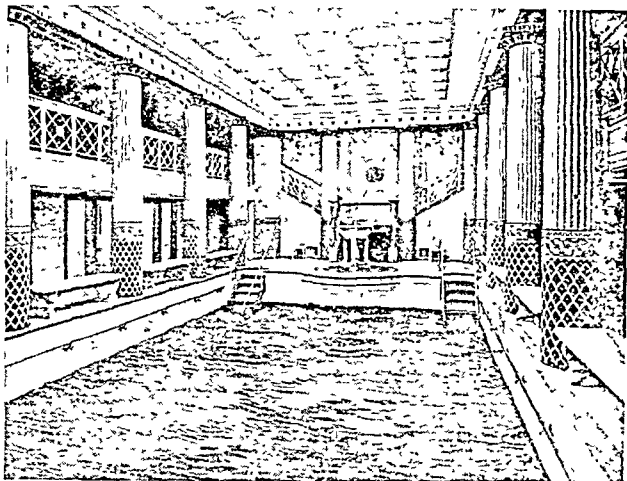
**bath** [2] (bāth), *n.* An old liquid measure once used by the Hebrews. (F. *bath*.)

This old measure, which contained about two-thirds of a firkin, or six gallons, is not used now.

The Heb. word occurs in Gr. and *L.L.* as *batos* and *batus*, but the derivation is unknown.

**bathe** (bāth), *v.t.* To dip in water; to envelop (in light, etc.); to moisten all over. *v.i.* To take a bath. *n.* The act of taking a bath, especially in the sea. (F. *baigner*; *se baigner*; *action de se baigner*.)

After a long walk it is comforting to dip, or bathe, the feet in water. We bathe our eyes when they are inflamed, and bathe a wound



Bath.—The luxurious sea water swimming-bath on board the Cunard liner "Berengaria."

to prevent poisoning. Often on a hot day we are bathed in perspiration, after working in a garden bathed in sunshine. At the seaside a bather (bā'th' er, *n.*) often enters the sea from a covered dressing-box, sometimes wheeled, known as a **bathing-machine** (bā'thing mǎ shēn', *n.*).

*A.-S. bathian*, from *bath*; cp. *G. baden*. *SYN.*: Immerse, lave, plunge, wash.

**bathometer** (bā thom' è ter), *n.* A delicate spring-balance for measuring ocean depths without a sounding line. (F. *bathomètre*.)

This instrument was invented by Sir William Siemens in 1866. Weight is due to the pull of the earth, which increases very slightly as the distance between an object and the earth is decreased. An object suspended in the sea, near the surface, will therefore weigh more in shallow than in deep water. The bathometer shows very small changes in weight, and so gives a fairly accurate measurement of the depth of water.

Gr. *bathos* depth, *metron* measure.

**bathos** (bā' thos; bāth' os), *n.* A fall from the lofty or noble in writing or speech to the commonplace or absurd, an anticlimax. (F. *antichmax*.)

Suppose that a lecturer, giving an address on bravery, quotes examples from history

and, after referring to such men as Drake and Nelson, speaks of the bravery of a man who gets up on a cold winter's night to search for a mouse—that would be bathos. And the lecturer's treatment of his subject would be said to be bathetic (*bà thet' ik, adj.*).

Gr. *bathos* depth.

**bathybius** (*bà thib' i ùs*), *n.* A name given to supposed living matter dredged from the bottom of the Atlantic. (F. *bathybius*.)

Scientists are always trying to find out how life began on the earth, and when a kind of jelly-like substance was dredged from the bottom of the Atlantic in 1857, it was thought that one of the simplest forms of life had been found, and the famous scientist Huxley called it bathybius. It was afterwards shown that the substance was not alive, but was a curious chemical form of calcium.

Gr. *bathys* deep, *bios* life.

**bathymetry** (*bà thum' èt ri*), *n.* The art of taking soundings, or measuring depths of the sea. (F. *bathymétrie*.)

Soundings are taken in shallow water while a ship is moving by means of a lead on a string marked in fathoms. For plumbing very great depths a sounding-machine is used. This has a drum geared to a pointer and fitted with a brake. On the drum are some miles of steel piano wire, carrying a heavy weight.

To take a sounding, the weight is allowed to sink and draw out the wire as fast as the brake permits. When the weight strikes bottom the wire slackens, and at this moment the reading shown by the pointer is taken.

A bathymetric (*bàth i met' rik, adj.*) or bathymetrical (*bàth i met' rik àl, adj.*) method recently introduced finds depths by measuring the time taken by a sound to travel to the bottom and back. This is called the echo method.

Gr. *bathos* depth (*bathys* deep), *metron* measure.

**batlet** (*bàt' let*) *n.* A small boat. See under *bat* [2].

**batman** (*bàt' mán*), *n.* A soldier who acts as a servant to an officer. (F. *conducteur d'un cheval de somme, soldat servant*.)

Originally a batman was a man who was in charge of a bat-horse (*n.*), a horse which carried officers' luggage during a war. From that the word batman has come to mean a soldier who acts as the servant of an officer. A batman generally receives extra pay called bat-money (*n.*) or bat-pay (*n.*).

F. *bât*, O.F. *bast*, Ital. *basto*, L.L. *bastum*, all meaning pack-saddle. It is suggested that the word comes from Gr. *bastazein* to lift, carry.

**baton** (*bât' òn*), *n.* A staff or stick; a staff carried as a symbol of office; a conductor's wand for beating time. *v.t.* To strike with a baton. (F. *bâton*; *bâtonner*.)

This French word means a stick of various kinds. A policeman's truncheon, a field-marshal's staff, a club carried as a weapon, a stick used by the conductor of an orchestra to beat time—all these are batons. When a policeman strikes anyone with his truncheon he is said to baton him.

F. *bâton*, O.F. *baston*, L.L. *basto* (acc. *on-ém*); cp. Ital. *bastone*, perhaps, like *bat-* in the word *batman*, ultimately from Gr. *bastazein* to lift, bear, support. SYN.: Rod, sceptre, staff, truncheon, wand.

**Batrachia** (*bà trā' ki à*), *n.* The zoological order including the frogs and toads. (F. *batraciens*.)

Formerly all reptiles capable of living either in, or out, of water were called Batrachia, but the name is now given only to such amphibia as have neither gills nor tail in the adult state, that is, to frogs and toads. An interesting feature of these batrachians (*bà trā' ki anz, n.pl.*) is the absence of ribs. Their croaking has been called the "batrachian (*bà trā ki àn, adj.*) hymn of the swamps." Anything frog-like in form is said to be batrachoid (*bât' rà koid, adj.*).

Gr. *batrakheios* of or connected with a frog (*batrakhos*).

**batswing** (*bàtz' wing*), *n.* The name given to an ordinary gas-burner from the shape of the flame. Called also batwing (*bât' wing*). See under *bat* [1].

**batta** (*bât' à*), *n.* Extra payment made to native Indian regiments on a campaign. (F. *solde supplémentaire*.)

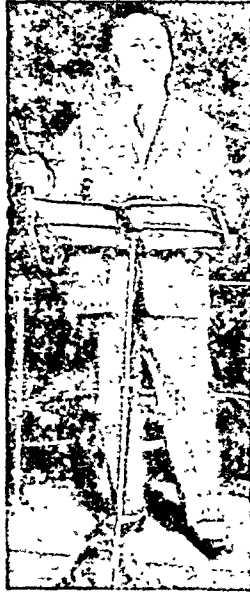
The word is also used for extra pay given to officers and men in general.

Hind. *blātā*, of doubtful etymology. Possibly from the element *bat* (pack-saddle) in *bat-man*, *batta* or *bat-money* then meaning extra money for carrying baggage in a campaign. Another suggestion is that the word means rice in the husk, hence rations.

**battalion** (*bà tál' yón*), *n.* The standard unit of infantry in an army. (F. *bataillon*.)

A battalion consists of about 1,000 men under a lieutenant-colonel. It is divided into four companies of equal strength, each commanded by a major or captain, and a company is again divided into four platoons of about sixty men apiece, each under a lieutenant or sub-lieutenant. Four battalions make up a British brigade of infantry, three brigades, with artillery, a division; two divisions, with cavalry added, an army corps.

F. from Ital. *batta from*, L.L. *battalio*, pack-train, body of troops. See *battle*.



Baton.—Siegfried Wagner, son of the famous composer, wielding a baton.

**battels** (bät'iz), *n.pl.* Bills for provisions received from college kitchens and butteries at Oxford University. *v.i.* To have an account for battels.

The buttery is the store for ale, bread, butter, etc., and strictly speaking the word is used for the accounts from there, but it is sometimes used for the general college accounts.

A somewhat similar word, "battlings," is in use at Winchester. Anthony Trollope in his autobiography says: "Every boy had a shilling a week pocket money, which we call battels." This should be "battlings."

The word is perhaps akin to batten[2].

**batten** [1] (bät'n), *n.* A length of wood from two to eight inches wide, and not more than two inches thick. *v.t.* To strengthen or fasten with battens. (F. *volige, planche de sapin.*)

Battens are used for many purposes in carpentry, as for flooring, for facing doors flat on one side, for holding the slates or tiles of roofs. The process of putting battens in place is called **battening** (bät'ning, *n.*), a term applied also to the battens when in place. The tarpaulins over a ship's hatches are secured by battens; hence to batten down is to close the hatches and make everything snug and watertight.

Another form of baton.

**batten** [2] (bät'n), *v.i.* To become fat; to thrive; to prosper; to prey upon. (F. *s'engraisser.*)

Sheep batten upon rich pasture. An oppressor battens upon the people whom he oppresses, becoming more wealthy and prosperous by wringing money from them.

Probably of Scand. origin, O. Norse *batna* to improve, akin to A.-S. *bet* better.

**batten** [3] (bät'n), *n.* A frame used in weaving to beat up each cross thread of the weft after it has been shot by the shuttle. (F. *châsse, battant.*)

A woven material is composed of threads running lengthwise (the warp), and threads running crosswise (the weft). The batten, also called the "lay," of the loom has upright wires running between the warp threads. As it moves forward after a weft thread has been shot, it presses the thread up against the one shot immediately before it.

F. *battant*, from *battre*, from L.L. *battere* to beat.

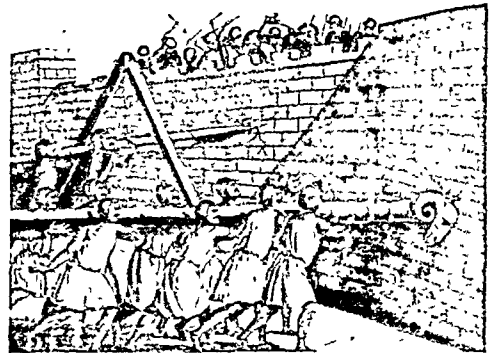
**batter** [1] (bät'ér), *v.t.* To strike repeatedly so as to bruise or break; to attack with artillery; to beat out of shape; to deface printing type. *v.i.* To hammer at. *n.* A mixture of ingredients for a pudding; a defect in printing. (F. *battre; pâte feuilletée.*)

We say an enemy batters against a fort with his big guns, or a policeman batters down a door when he breaks it open. A mixture of eggs and flour and other ingredients used largely in cooking for making pancakes, fritters, and so on, and for frying fish and other food in is a batter. Any paste of

flour and water or other kind of paste is also called a batter. When a piece of type has been spoilt by a blow, the mark on the face of the type is called a batter.

A **battering-gun** (*n.*) or **battering-piece** (*n.*) is a gun used for besieging purposes, and a **battering-charge** (*n.*) is the heaviest charge of a siege-gun. A **battering-engine** (*n.*) or **battering-machine** (*n.*) is an appliance used for breaking down the walls of a fort or castle, or other defences of an enemy.

In early times besieging armies used to use a weapon called a **battering-ram** (*n.*) for breaking down the walls of cities and forts. Some of these old rams were over a hundred feet in length. They consisted of a long beam of wood with a heavy mass of iron or bronze at one end, often in the shape of a ram's head. This ram's head was driven repeatedly against the walls by soldiers until the wall gave way under the tremendous



**Battering-ram.**—An old-time weapon, the battering-ram was used for breaking down walls and forts.

blows. Any similar battering instrument is called a **battering-ram**. A number or train of siege-guns is called a **battering-train** (*n.*).

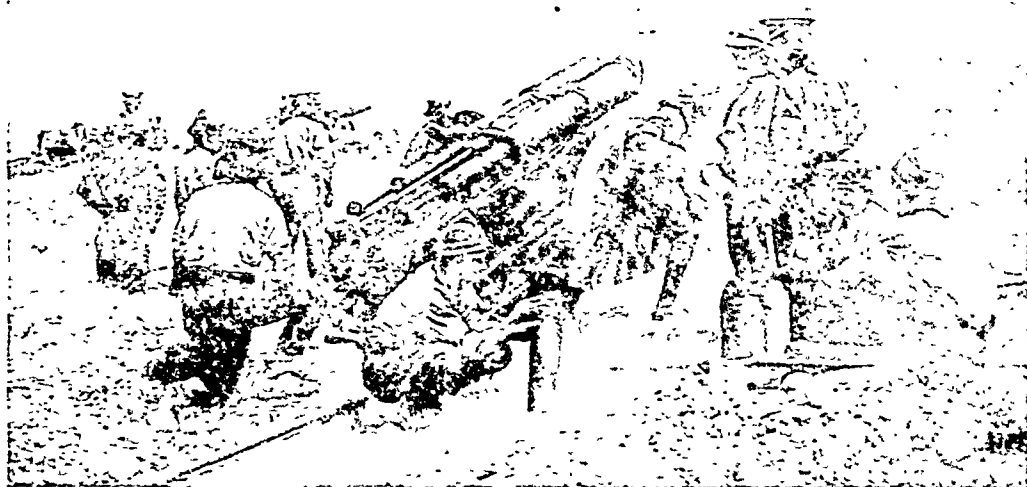
M.E. *batren*, frequentative (with suffix *-er*) from O.F. *batre*, L.L. *battere* to beat, hammer. The word used in cooking, in M.E. *batere*, *bature*, O.F. *bateure*, is also to be referred to L.L. *battere*. SYN.: *v.* Beat, belabour, destroy, injure, weaken.

**batter** [2] (bät'ér), *v.t.* To slope backwards (of a wall, embankment, parapet, etc.). *n.* A backward slope of a wall, etc. (F. *avoir du fruit; fruit.*)

The walls of embankments and many thick retaining walls slope backwards from the ground towards the top to give them greater strength. The plumb-line which shows when a wall is vertical was sometimes called the **batter-rule** (*n.*) when showing that a wall was not vertical. Architects describe a structure which slopes inwards as **battering** (bät'éring, *adj.*).

Possibly from F. *abattre* to beat down

**battery** (bät'ér i), *n.* The act of beating or striking; a number of guns working together as a unit, with their men, horses, and supplies; the part of a fortification or ship



Battery.—A battery of howitzers in action during the Gallipoli campaign of the World War in 1915.

n which guns are placed: a number of electric cells joined together; a number of similar devices forming a group (as a battery of boilers or mining stamps.) (*F. batterie.*)

In law an assault is committed if an attempt is made to beat or strike or apply force to another person; if force is actually applied or the person is beaten or struck, the act is called battery.

In the British army a field battery usually consists of four guns, and is commanded by a major. Such a battery should be able to fire 100 rounds a minute if necessary. Sometimes six guns are grouped in a battery, to reduce the number of officers needed. Field batteries are grouped into artillery brigades, each of three gun batteries and one howitzer battery.

A heavy gun, firing a very large shell, is called a battery-piece (*n.*). A battery-wagon (*n.*) goes with a battery to carry ammunition, stores or forage. When two batteries a distance apart are trained on the same target, they are said to be cross-batteries (*n.pl.*). An enfilading battery (*n.*) is one able to fire on the enemy's flanks and rake the whole line.

Every battleship is a floating battery (*n.*) in a sense, but the words are used specially of vessels equipped with guns to cover troops landing on an enemy's coast. Such batteries were tried unsuccessfully by the French and Spaniards at the siege of Gibraltar in 1779-83. They were very solidly built, and the ten which were brought into action mounted over two hundred guns.

A masked battery (*n.*) is one hidden from the enemy. During the World War (1914-18) the masking of batteries became quite an art, since it had to prevent guns being seen from the air. To fight the German submarines in 1916 and 1917 certain merchant ships were sent to sea with guns masked behind shutters, screens, and dummy bulk-

heads. These "Q" boats, as they were called, had the appearance of quite harmless and peaceful ships. Their purpose was to lure the submarines within range and then sink them.

On February 17th, 1917, H.M.S. "Q5" was torpedoed by a submarine and began to sink. A sham "panic" party at once took to the boats and pulled away. The submarine's commander believing the "Q5" to be deserted, brought his boat to the surface. The men left aboard the "Q5" who had been lying low for over half an hour, while the ship sank under them, now opened fire and destroyed the submarine. The "Q5" was safely brought to harbour and her commander received the Victoria Cross for the exploit.

In an electrical battery the cells are usually connected "in series," with the positive pole of one joined to the negative pole of the next, so that all their separate pressures are added together. A battery of over 500 cells has thus been formed, giving a pressure of 10,000 volts. A primary battery (*n.*) creates electricity; a secondary battery (*n.*), or accumulator, stores electricity created by a dynamo.

A high-tension battery (*n.*), that is, a high-pressure battery, has a large number of cells joined in series; a low-tension battery (*n.*) only a few cells. A dry-battery (*n.*) is a primary battery with the chemicals soaked up by some absorbent material, while in a wet-battery (*n.*) liquid solutions are used.

*F. batterie* (from *battre* to beat; *L.L. battens*, literally a beating, then a battery or place for a battery).

**batting** (băt' ing, *n.*) Material made up of prepared cotton fibres arranged in sheets ready for use in making quilts and bed-covers. (*U. cotton quille.*)

The word, originally meaning beating with a bat or baton, was afterwards used as above.



# BATTLE ON LAND AND SEA

*A Word that Describes big Actions during War and also Peaceful Struggles*

**battle** (băt'l), *n.* A fight between large forces. *v.i.* To struggle with or against (F. *bataille*; *se battre*.)

Although a fight between two people is sometimes described as a battle, the word is more commonly used where armies or other large forces are engaged. Armies battle against each other, or one with another. Clever men in opposition often engage in a battle of wits. A swimmer battles against the waves, and everyone at times is forced to battle against difficulties. Ships or armies in readiness for battle may be spoken of as **battled** (băt'ld, *adj.*). In a different sense, a battled building is one defended or protected by a wall or mound.

The word occurs frequently in combination with other words. A trial by battle or wager of battle was a trial employed in olden times in which the parties to a dispute fought each other with staves, spears or swords until one of them gave way. As late as 1818 an alleged murderer named Thornton escaped punishment by challenging the brother of the murdered person to wager of battle. The right was then abolished by law. Troops and ships are in line of battle when they are drawn up in readiness for action, and a ship suitable for taking part in a general fleet action is referred to as a line-of-battle ship.

Where the time and place of a combat have been arranged beforehand, it is spoken of as a pitched battle. To have sound nerves is a big advantage or half the battle in, say, mountain-climbing. The victorious side after a fight can claim to have the battle, and two forces starting a general combat are said to join battle.

Troops in readiness for an engagement are

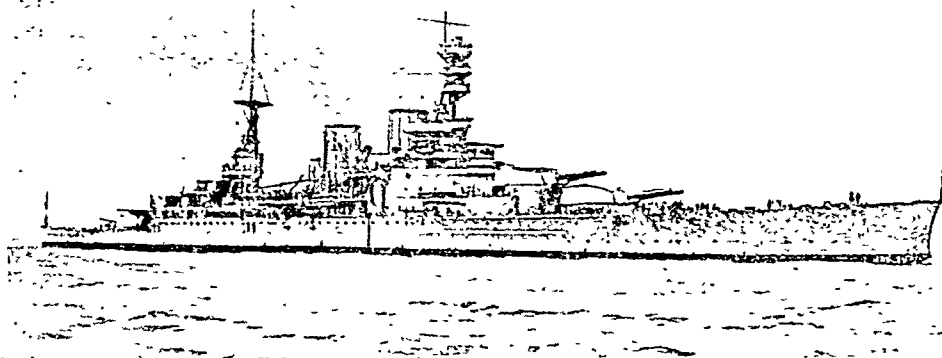
in battle-array (*n.*). In olden times men went into battle with an axe-shaped weapon called a battle-axe (*n.*).

A war-cry or a phrase adopted as a motto or watchword may be spoken of as a battle-cry (*n.*). The scene of a battle, large or small, is a battle-field (*n.*). A poem, picture etc., describing a battle is known as a battle-piece (*n.*). A large well-armed military aeroplane is called a battle-plane (*n.*), a word used rather loosely to distinguish this type of flying-machine from the small nimble single-seater scout.

A bitter quarrel between several persons may lead to a free fight or battle-royal (*n.*). A battle-ship (*n.*) is a warship fitted, by the guns she carries, to take its place in line of battle, and a battle-cruiser (*n.*) is a large, fast warship sufficiently heavily armed and armoured to fight alongside battleships in a general naval action.

The first British battle-cruisers, the "Invincible" and "Inflexible," were laid down in 1905. The difference between battle cruisers and battleships is now mainly one of speed, which is much higher in the case of a cruiser. The "Hood" the largest warship yet commissioned, is a battle-cruiser. Her armour is up to 15 inches thick, and she carries eight 15-inch guns. Though she displaces 41,200 tons of water, her 144,000 horse-power turbines can drive her at a speed of 31 knots, or about 35 miles an hour. A shell fired from a 15-inch gun weighs no fewer than 1,920 lbs.

O.F. *bataille*, L.L. *battalia*, neuter pl. *adj.* from *battere* to strike, beat. SYN.: Combat, contest, encounter, engagement, fight



Battle-cruiser.—H.M.S. "Repulse" a battle-cruiser of 26,500 tons. She carries six 15-inch guns and seventeen 4-inch guns, and has a speed of 32 knots.

**battledore** (băt'1 dör), *n.* A wooden bat used in washing clothes; the bat used to strike a shuttlecock; a game in which a shuttlecock is used. (F. *battoir*; *raquette*).

There are several articles called by this name. A battledore to a washerwoman is the bat or "beetle" used in washing or smoothing clothes. To bakers it is the long-handled paddle used for placing loaves in the oven. Children know it as the racket used in the game of battledore and shuttlecock. The flat part of the racket may be made of wood or parchment, or it may be stringed.

M.E. *batidore*, O.F. *bata-doir*, ultimately from *battre* to beat; -*doir* in Span. *batidor*, Port. *batedor* (washing beetle) represents the L. agent suffix *-tor*.

**battlement** (băt'1 ment), *n.* A parapet or wall on the top of a

building, with openings in it at intervals. (F. *créneau*.)

In the days of bows and arrows this form of protection was very convenient, as it allowed the defenders to shoot without exposing themselves unduly. The openings in a battlement are called embrasures, or crenelles. Nowadays a building is **battlemented** (băt'1 ment ed, *adj.*) merely for the sake of ornament.

M.F. *battlement*, O.F. *bataillment*, *bataille* (battle) in O.F. is said to have also meant fortification. The ultimate etymology of *bataille* is L.L. *battere* to beat, but it is suggested that there may be a confusion with *bastille* to fortify, cp. modern F. *bâti* to build. -ment is L. -mentum.

**battue** (ba too'), *n.* Beating the bushes in game shooting; a shooting party, wholesale slaughter. (F. *battue*.)

This is a sporting term applied to the act of beaters driving the game from the woods, bushes, etc., towards the waiting sportsmen, or to a shooting-party conducted on these lines. It also means the killing of people or animals on a large scale.

F. from p.p. form of *battre*, L.L. *battere* to beat.

**bauble** (haw'bl), *n.* A worthless, showy thing; a cheap trinket; a mere toy; a piece of childish folly; a trivial matter; originally a court jester's wand. (F. *babiole*, *bagatelle*.) "A child's toy," the O.F. meaning of this

word sums up the contempt with which it is now used. A piece of jewellery which the owner thinks is very fine, though it is really worthless, a medal that has not been won by merit, a foolish idea that some mistaken person uses as a golden rule of life, all these things are baubles.

In old days, the court fool, who was kept to amuse the king, carried a bauble, which was a short stick having a head with asses' ears, etc., carved at one end. Sometimes a blown-out bladder, containing sand or dried peas, hung from the tip, and with this the jester playfully belaboured the people around him. This kind of bauble is derived from the stick called a *babyll* (M.E.) which had a lump of lead hanging from its end and was once used for beating dogs.

One of the most striking scenes in English history occurred when Oliver Cromwell lost patience with the Long Parliament, or "Rump," as it was derisively called, and rose from his seat in a great fury, abusing the members and their ways. Then, after calling in his soldiers to break up the sitting, he noticed the mace, which is the Speaker's symbol of authority. "What shall we do with this fool's bauble?" he shouted. "Here, take it away!"

O.F. *baubel*, *babel* plaything, toy. A connexion with L.L. *babulus* babbler, fool, with reference to the jester has been suggested. SYN.: Gaud, gewgaw, guncrack, plaything, trifle.

**baulk** (bawk). This is another spelling of balk. See balk.

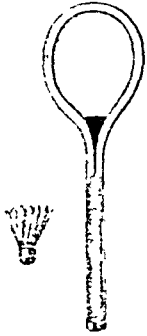
**bauxite** (bō' zit), *n.* A clay from which alum and aluminum are obtained. (F. *bauvite*.)

Bauxite is named from Baux, in France. It is found in large quantities at Larnie, in Ireland, and in various parts of the United States. The aluminum is separated from the other substances in the clay by the great heat of an electric furnace.

**bawbee** (haw bē'), *n.* An old Scottish coin. (F. *son*, *liard*.)

When first issued in the sixteenth century the bawbee was worth about threepence in Scottish money, the equivalent of a halfpenny in English money. The word is now sometimes used for a halfpenny.

The word, at a spell *babu*, is of unknown origin. It is suggested that it is so called from a name, *Sabbawby* (1541).



Battledore. — A battledore and shuttlecock used in the game of battledore.



Battlement. — The battlement of a castle, behind which its defenders fought.



Bauble. — The bauble of a Court fool.

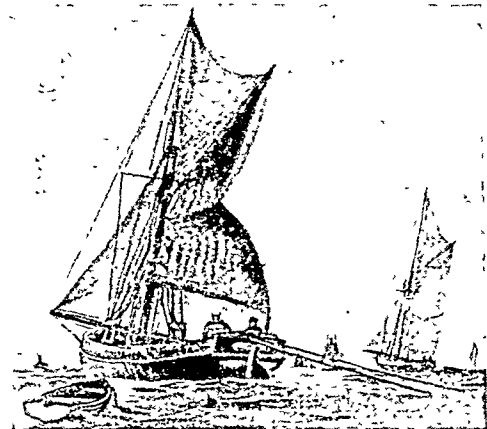
**bawl** (bawl), *v.i.* To shout loudly; to bellow. *v.t.* To proclaim by outcry. *n.* A loud cry. (F. *crier*, *cri*.)

Bawling is noisier and more prolonged than mere crying or shouting. We may cry out when we are hurt, but unless we are cowards we do not bawl. One boy calling to another some distance away will often bawl to make himself heard. The cry of street-hawkers is frequently a bawl.

The word is onomatopoeic or imitative, of Scand. origin, Icel. *baula* to bellow, low, or from L.L. *baulare* to bark. SYN.: Bellow roar shout shriek, yell.

**bawley** (bawl' e), *n.* A sailing boat of special rig used for trawling in the mouth of the Thames and Essex rivers.

The chief feature of the bawley is a big, high-peaked mainsail without a boom, which enables sail to be shortened quickly. This is very necessary because the boat works all day in the way of big steamers and other vessels.



**Bawley.**—A type of sailing boat used for trawling in the Thames and Essex rivers.

**bawn** (bawn), *n.* In Ireland a courtyard or quadrangle; the bailey of a castle; a walled yard in which to keep cattle from being stolen at night; a cattle fold. (F. *cour intérieure*, *parc*.)

In Ireland, and in Irish books, a bawn also means a hull, and sometimes a house, or any kind of dwelling place.

Irish *babhun* rampart, enclosure.

**bay** [ɪ] (bā), *n.* An inlet or arm of the sea or a lake; an opening; a recess; a portion of an aeroplane's wings. (F. *baie*, *ouverture*.)

Bays on the shores of lakes have been formed by the inflowing of rivers, and coastal bays have come into existence through the submergence or flooding of land, or the uplift or throwing up of parts of the seabottom to form two more or less parallel peninsulas or tongues of land. Massachusetts, a state of the United States of America, is called the Bay State (*n.*) from its original name Massachusetts Bay Colony. Large crystals of salt produced by evaporation are

called bay-salt (*n.*) from the early method of obtaining them from sea, or bay, water.

The space between the pillars or columns of a building, or a recess of a room, is a bay, and so is the part of a ship's deck which is used as a hospital for sick passengers and members of the crew. Any large recess of a workshop is known as a bay, and that portion of an aeroplane's wings composed of two



**Bay.**—The bay of Naples, with Mount Vesuvius in the distance.

pairs of struts, and the wing section between them is called a bay. Some biplanes have two bays on each side of the body, and a central bay over the body itself. A rigid airship has a large number of gas bags each of which is contained in a separate section of the metal framework called a bay.

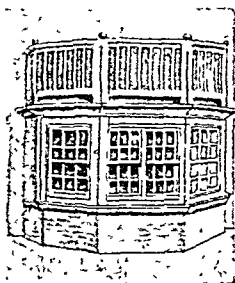
A square or angular-shaped window built out from a room so that additional light and a better view can be obtained, is called a bay-window (*n.*). It consists of more than two parts, usually three

M.E., F. *bauc*, L.L. *baia*, of doubtful origin. In the sense of opening or recess, the word possibly comes from O.F. *baer*, L.L. *badare* to gape.

**bay** [ɪ] (bā), *n.* The bark of a dog. *v.t.* To bark at. *v.i.* To bark. (F. *aboiment*; *aboyer* a.)

The continuous barking of hounds in pursuit of a fox or other quarry is baying, and when they have come up with their prey and he turns upon them the hunted animal is said to be at bay. A human being who is similarly cornered is also at bay. If he shows fight and manages to keep his pursuers from capturing him, at least for a time, he holds them at bay. In placing him in such a desperate position his pursuers have managed to bring him or drive him to bay.

O.F. (a)*baier*, from *a* = L. *ad* to, *baier* to bark, L.L. *badare* to open the mouth, bark.



**Bay-window.**—A square or angular-shaped window built out from a room.

**bay** [3] (bā), *n.* An evergreen tree. (F. *baie, laurier*.)

The name was originally applied to the fruit of a variety of plants, but is now given to the trees themselves. The best known is the sweet bay tree (*Laurus nobilis*), a native of the southern districts of Europe and cultivated in England, which reaches a height of about forty feet.

Of shrub-like growth, it is the plant from which the leaves for victor's laurels were obtained. In the spring it bears small yellowish flowers, and these are succeeded by purple-hued berries, from which comes the oil of bay used in the treatment of horses.

F. *lau* from L. *baca* berry.

**bay** [4] (bā), *adj.* Of a reddish-brown colour. *n.* A horse of that colour. (F. *bai, d'un rouge brun*.)

Next to chestnut, which it approaches in shade bay is probably the most common colour among horses.

F. *bai*, from L. *badus* reddish brown, chestnut coloured.

**bay** [5] (bā), *n.* The second branch of a stag's horn. It is also called the bez-antler. (F. *second andouiller*.)

The word is an abbreviation of bay-antler or bez-antler, the first element being probably from L. *bis* twice, second

**bayberry** (bā' ber ī), *n.* A plant of the myrtle order. (F. *baie de laurier, crier*.)

This shrub-like plant, whose scientific name is *Myrica carifera*, is a native of North America and the West Indies. It attains a height of six feet, though generally it is rather under this size. By distilling rum in which the leaves of the bayberry have been steeped bay rum is obtained. Another name for the bayberry is candleberry. **Bayberry tallow** (*n.*) is a variety of tallow procured from the fruit of the wax myrtle.

E. *bay* (laurel) and *berry*

**Bayeux tapestry** (ba yeh' tãp es trī), *n.* A very old and remarkable piece of embroidery in which are worked over seventy scenes connected with the Norman conquest of England in 1066. (F. *tapisserie de Bayeux*.)

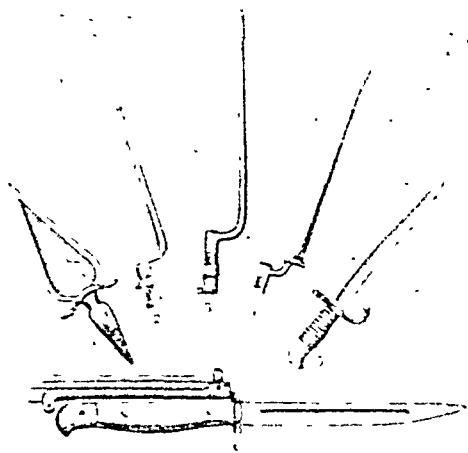
This unique piece of needlework is to be seen in a museum at Bayeux, Normandy. It is 10 inches wide and over 200 feet long. Though tradition ascribes it to Queen Matilda, the Conqueror's wife, there is little reason to think that she had anything to do with the working of it. Some authorities suppose it to have been made by Normans in England. It is rather roughly executed on coarse canvas, but is valuable as a record of the dress and armour of the Norman period.

**bayonet** (bā' o net), *n.* Stabbing or thrusting blade fastened to the muzzle of a rifle. *v.* To stab with a bayonet. (F. *known to, joined avec la baïonnette*.)

The modern sword bayonet adds about twelve to eighteen inches to the length of the rifle, and is fitted so that the ring of the rifle is not interfered with.

The plural form, bayonets, refers to the rank and file of an infantry regiment; thus a general might say that he had 25,000 bayonets, meaning that number of infantrymen.

The bayonet is so perhaps called from having originally been made at Bayonne in France.



Bayonet.—1. English bayonet, seventeenth century. 2. Bayonet with ring and socket. 3. Four-edged bayonet. 4. Triangular bayonet. 5. French bayonet. 6. Modern British bayonet.

**bayou** (bi' oo), *n.* The outlet or inlet of a lake, or bay. (F. *bayou*.)

The term is applied in the southern part of the United States to an inlet or outlet of a lake or bay, or to a branch of a river entering the sea through a delta. Mississippi is often referred to as the Bayou State in allusion to its many bayous.

Bayou is possibly a French adaptation of a native American word *bayoue* meaning rivulet; or it may be a corrupt form of F. *boyau* gut, a long and narrow piece of water.

**bazaar** (bā zar'), *n.* A market-place in the East; a sale for charitable purposes. (F. *bazar*.)

The Oriental bazaars serve the same purpose as European market-places. They consist of long rows of small shops and stalls where the various articles for sale (sweetmeats, spices, curios, rugs, jewels, scarfs, furs, etc.) are usually displayed in the open air. Sales or fairs held in England in aid of the funds of a church or charity are also called bazaars.

The word is Persian, adopted in various other Oriental languages.

**bdeillum** (del' i um), *n.* A balsam-bearing tree; the resin of this tree; a gem. (F. *béllum*.)

We find the word used in the Bible in the Book of Genesis (iii, 12). "And the gold of that land is good; there is bdeillum and the onyx stone." Pliny gives an account of it in his "Natural History" (xii, 25).

L. *baddion*, Gr. *béllum*, from Heb. *bé'el'el*, meaning pearl or precious stone.



Beach.—A part of the beach, known as the Children's Corner, at Brighton, the famous Sussex seaside resort

**be-** (bē). A prefix, the weak form of *by*, with the original meaning of "about," "around," in which sense it occurs in such words as *bedeck*, to deck about, *before*, about the front of, and *besprinkle*, sprinkle about. It changes intransitive verbs into transitive verbs, examples being *bemoan* and *bethink*. When affixed to nouns and adjectives these are changed into transitive verbs, as for instance, *bedew*, *bedim*, *befool*, and *belittle*.

Intensity is given to certain transitive verbs by the addition of this prefix, as may be seen in the word *belaud*. It changes nouns into transitive verbs that signify to *make* or *call something*, as, for example, *befriend*, *bedevil*, and nouns with the suffix *-ed* into adjectives, such as *beflagged*. In *behead* (and some other verbs now obsolete) the prefix has a privative force.

**be** (bē), *v.i.* and *auxiliary*. To live; to exist; to happen; to occur; to become; to remain; to have a certain state or quality. (F. *être*, *arriver*, *devenir*.)

*Be* is usually an auxiliary helping to form a present infinitive, or a present subjunctive, or a future tense; or it is simply a link showing a connexion between subject and predicate. It forms with an adjective or a noun an imperative, for example, "Be prepared," "Don't be an idiot!" It is used in conditional sentences to express doubt, for example, "If that be true!"

Hamlet, in Shakespeare's play (ii, 1) says "To be or not to be," meaning "To happen or not to happen." "The powers that be" are the powers that exist (and must be obeyed). "Can such things be?" means "Can such things exist or occur?" "He will be fourteen on Tuesday" means "He will become fourteen on Tuesday." Let it be used to signify let it remain, and let be for leave alone. *Be-all* (n.) is the sum of everything.

M.E. and A.-S. *bēon*, cognate with L. *fore* (future infinitive of *esse*), Gr. *phyein*, ultimately from Indo-European root *bhu*.

**beach** (bēch), *n.* A sandy or pebbly sea-shore; shingle. *v.t.* To run aground or haul up on to a beach. (F. *plage de galets*, *grève*, *échouer*.)

Many gravel-beds and sand-beds found far inland were once sea beaches. Movements of the earth's crust gradually raised them above sea-level. In Scotland, Norway, New Zealand and other countries may be seen good examples of the raised beach (n.) near the sea. Some of them have two or three terraces, showing that they were raised at different periods. A person who manages to pick up a living by doing odd jobs on the beach, is known in the Pacific as a *beach-comber* (n.).

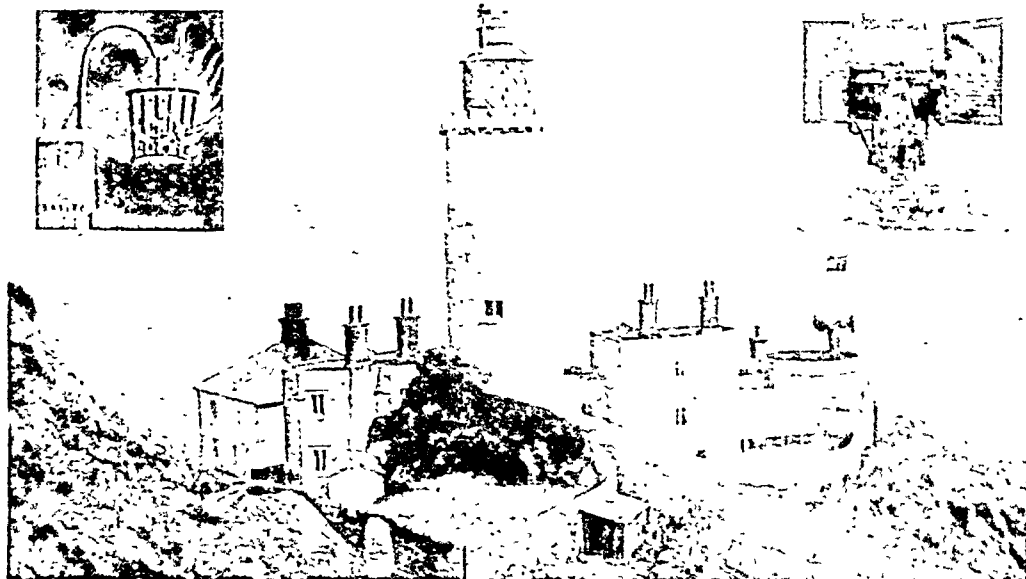
*Beach-grass* (n.) is a tough, thin grass which grows in sand-dunes. Its long, running roots form a network which is very useful in holding the sand together. This grass, also called *marram-grass*, has been planted on many coasts to keep the sea at bay.

When troops have to be landed on to a beach the operation is commanded by a *beach-master* (n.). A boat run up on to the beach is *beached* (bēchd, *adj.*). Ground is described as *beachy* (bēch' 1, *adj.*) if covered with pebbles like those of a beach.

The word *beach* is probably of E. origin, its first meaning being pebbles on the sea-shore. *SYN.*: Coast, seaboard, shore, strand.

**beacon** (bē' kón), *n.* A fire burning in a metal frame-work, or cresset, fixed on a pole, or on a building; a signal-fire on a hill; a conspicuous hull, probably once used for signal fires, a watch-tower; a lighthouse; a pole, tower, or other fixed signal to give warning of a shoal, rock, or to mark the fairway; anything which serves as a warning or indicates danger. *v.t.* To light up; to supply with beacons. (F. *feu*, *signal d'alarme*, *balise*, *phare*; *allumer*.)

The news of the fall of Troy was conveyed to Greece by means of beacons that had been



Beacon.—The Start lighthouse, a beacon at Start Bay, in Devonshire. Inset (left) is a beacon of the eleventh century, and (right) the aerial beacon at Croydon aerodrome.

prepared long years before, and a similar chain of signals in England told our waiting sailors and land forces that the Spanish Armada was approaching. A signal flare lights up or beacons the darkness. To beacon a dangerous coast, is to furnish it with a beacon or beacons as a warning to ships.

Money paid for the up-keep of beacons, buoys etc., as guides to ships, is known as *beaconage* (*bē' kon aj, n.*). Besides meaning a tax, this term is often used of a system of lights, buoys, etc., arranged round sandbanks and other dangerous spots.

ME *bēcn*, A-S *bēacen*, *bēan*, akin to various Teut. words, such as G. *baue* (beacon)

**bead** (*bēd*), *n.* A small piece of glass, metal or other substance with a hole through it, used as an ornament; a drop; a sight of a gun; an architectural moulding. *v.t.* To thread beads or decorate with beads. (F. *grain*, *maç baguette*, *cuiller*.)

In Middle English the word *bide* meant prayer, and as it was the custom—as it still is in the Roman Catholic Church—to count prayers by means of little objects strung on a thread, the word bead gradually came to be used for any ornament of this kind. To tell or say one's beads means to say prayers with a rosary.

There are several words with bead, meaning prayer, in them. For instance, a *bead-house* (*n.*) literally means a house of prayer, and was used for an almshouse whose inmates prayed for the soul of the founder. In the same way *beadsman* (*bēds' man, n.*) and *beadswoman* (*bēds' wūm ān, n.*), originally man or woman of prayer, came to mean a male or female inmate of an almshouse. In Scotland what were known as the King's

Bedesmen were beggars who, in return for the privilege of being allowed to ask alms throughout the country, were supposed to say prayers for the king and his realm. They were also known as Blue Gowns from their dress.

A *bead-roll* (*n.*), another name for a list and especially a list of names, used to mean a list of benefactors or other people to be prayed for. The name *bead-tree* (*n.*) is given to various trees from whose seeds rosary beads are made, especially the East Indian *holly tree* or *pride of India*.

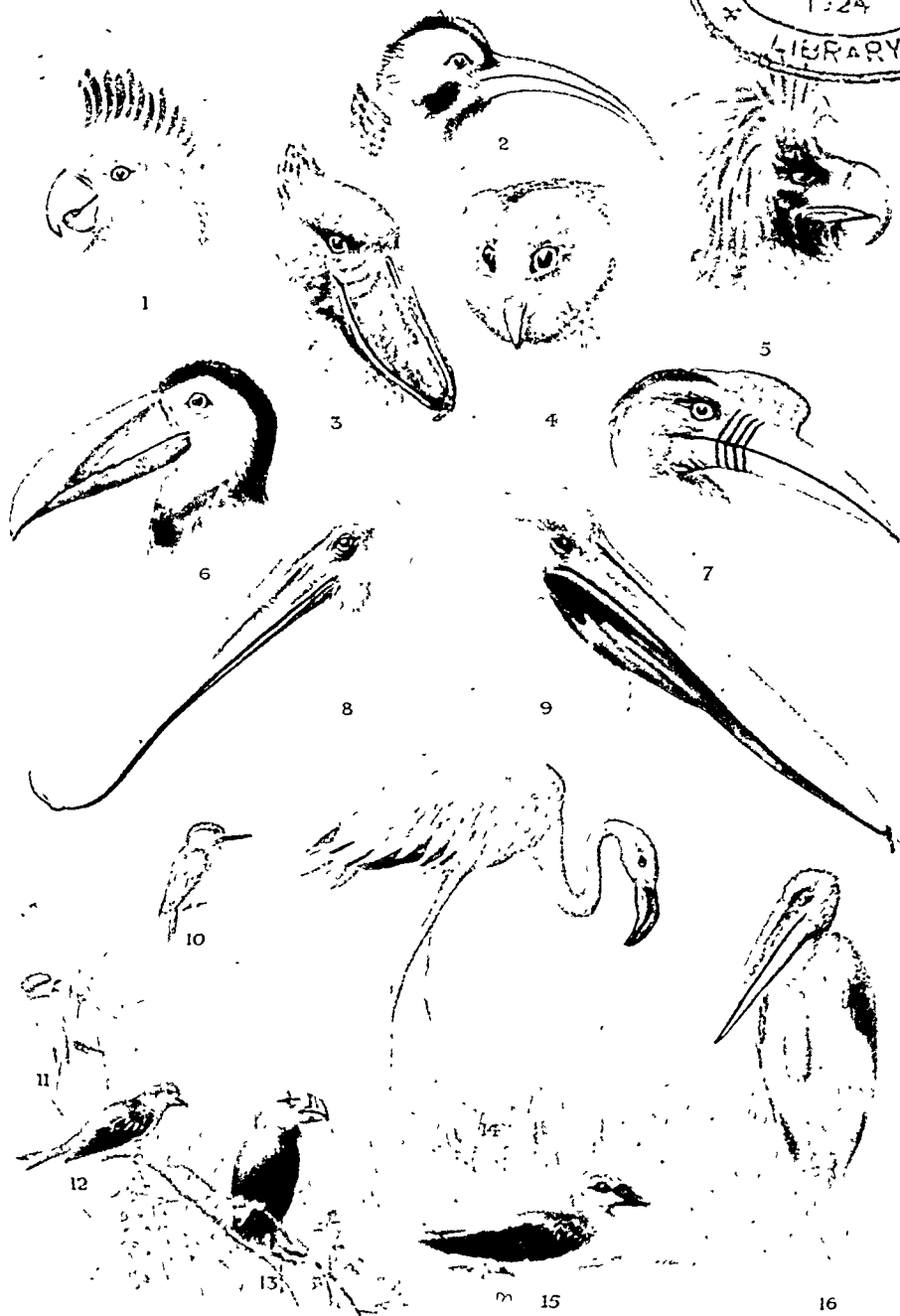
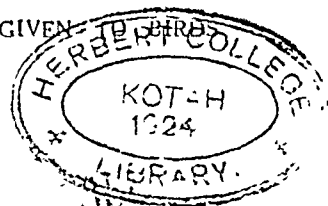
When the sun is in total eclipse what looks like a string of bright beads can be seen for an instant along its edge, and these are called *Baily's beads* (*n.pl.*) after Francis Baily, who observed them in 1836. The abacus, or frame for counting by means of beads, is also called a *bead-frame* (*n.*). The word *beading* (*bēd' ing, n.*) is used for a kind of bead or moulding on buildings and also for threading beads and for ornamental *bead-work* (*n.*).

Anything that looks like a bead can be called *beady* (*bē' di, adj.*). A man whose eyes are small and very bright might be described as having *beady eyes*. When a soldier aims his gun at a target we say that he is drawing a bead on it.

ME *bēde*, A-S *bēgōd* prayer, *bēddan*, to ask, cognate with G. *bitten* prayer.

**beadle** (*bēd' l*), *n.* A messenger, a crier, or an usher of a court; a petty officer, or servant of a church, parish, college, etc. (F. *huissier*, *bédau*.)

It was the duty of the parish beadle to bid people to attend vestry meetings, and the word, in an earlier sense, meant one who bid or asks. The beadle kept order in church.



Beaks.—1. Cockatoo. 2. Bird of Paradise. 3. Whale-headed or Shoe-bill Stork. 4. Barn Owl.  
5. Vulture. 6. Toucan. 7. Hornbill. 8. Spoonbill. 9. Pelican. 10. Kingfisher.  
11. Blue Titmouse. 12. Crossbill. 13. Puffin. 14. Flamingo. 15. King Eider Duck. 16. Adjutant-bird

and carried out all the lesser business of the parish.

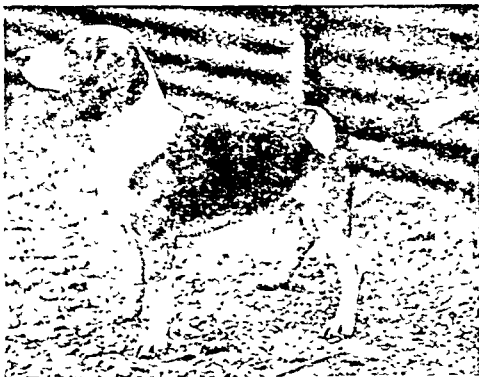
He was often a fussy, over-bearing official, filled with conceit, like Mr. Bumble, the famous beadle described in Dickens' "Oliver Twist," and this has given rise to the word **beadledom** (bēd' l dōm, *n.*) in the sense of "stupid officiousness," although the word also means a body of beadles, or their ways of behaving. The office or function of a beadle is a **beadleship** (bēd' l shīp, *n.*), and in universities the beadle carries a mace in processions and has a few other formal duties. It is an old custom, and the title of these officers, **bedel** at Oxford, and **bedell** at Cambridge, are old spellings of the word. At Oxford there are four bedels who represent the faculties of medicine, law, divinity and art, at Cambridge there are two. A **bedral**, **bederel**, or **betherel** is a kind of beadle in Scottish churches.

A-S. *bydel* herald, summoner, from *bēodan* to proclaim, bid, command. The word occurs in L.L. in the form *bedellus*.

**beagle** (bē' gl), *n.* A dog of the foxhound type, but smaller, used in packs for hunting hares. (F. *bigle*.)

The beagle dates back at least to the time of Queen Elizabeth. It stands from 11 to 16 inches high at the shoulder, as compared with the 22 to 25 inches of the foxhound. Beagles are very intelligent dogs and, for their size, show great speed and endurance.

Perhaps from F. *bégucule* formerly a noisy shouting person, from *bēer* to gape, *gueule* jaw.



Beagle.—A dog of the foxhound type used in packs for hunting hares.



Beadle.—A beadle carrying a mace in a procession.

**beak** (bēk), *n.* A bird's bill; the sharp metal ram on the prow of an ancient warship; a pointed projecting part, such as the beak of an anvil. (F. *bec*, *éperon*, *bigorne*.)

The beaks of birds, which serve as teeth, vary greatly in shape and character, being suited to deal with the kind of food on which they live. Thus birds of prey have very powerful beaks, fit for tearing flesh; finches, hard short beaks able to crack seeds and berries; ducks and their kind, flat beaks that sift food from the water; humming birds, long slender beaks that can reach the honey at the bottom of a flower.

Parrot's beaks are much like those of eagles and hawks. The New Zealand parrot, the kea, lived on fruit and vegetables until the year 1866. Then it began to put its powerful, hooked beak to a very evil purpose, tearing open the backs of sheep to get at the kidney fat. The kea has done so much damage among the flocks that there is now a price on its head. The cuttle-fish and octopus are beaked (bēkt, *adj.*), and the bottom of the ocean is in some places littered with the beaks of these creatures.

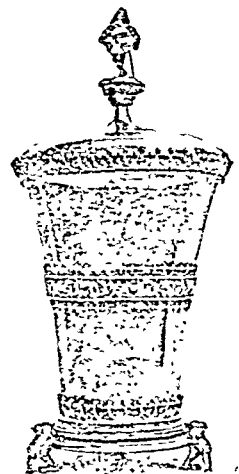
M.E. and F. *bec*, from L. *beccus*, L.L. *beccum*, supposed to be of Celtic origin.

**beaker** (bē' kēr), *n.* A large wide-mouthed vessel to contain liquid for drinking or chemical work; its contents (F. *gobelet*.)

The large goblets so much used in the olden times for drinking were called beakers. The word was also used for the drink itself; thus in "Ivanhoe," Prince John, at the banquet after the great tournament, takes up his goblet and says: "We drink this beaker to the health of Wilfred of Ivanhoe, champion of this Passage of Arms."

The chemical beaker is of glass, has a flat bottom and straight sides, and there is usually but not always, a small spout to the lip.

M.E. *biker*, from O. Norse *bikarr*, ultimately from L.L. *bicarium*, the latter being perhaps a dim. of Gr. *bikos* an earthen wine-vessel. See pitcher.



Beaker.—A beaker and cover of the late fifteenth century in the Victoria and Albert Museum.

**beam** (bēm), *n.* A long piece of timber, iron, or stone used generally for supporting weight in a building, ship, or other structure; a ray of light; that part of the head of a stag from which the antlers spring. *v.t.* To radiate; to send out (rays); to send forth.



*v.i.* To shine brilliantly. (*F. pointer, rayon merain; daider.*)

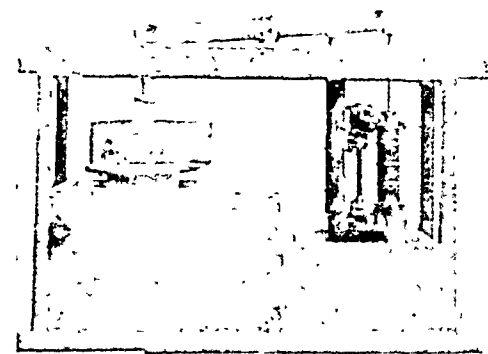
The word beam is specially applied to the bar of a balance on which scales are hung; a cylinder in a loom on which the warps or the completed cloth are wound; the chief timber part of a plough; the width of a ship or boat; the shank of an anchor, and one of the horizontal cross-timbers built into a ship to support the deck.

The rays of the sun are 'beams of light. A smile or bright, happy look is called a beam, and a cheerful face is said to be **beaming** (*bēm' ing adj.*) with happiness.

The ends of a ship's beams are called the **beam-ends** (*n.pl.*), and when she is thrown completely on her side in a storm she is said to be on

her beam-ends. Sometimes when a person has been through great trouble and is penniless, he is said to be on his beam ends. The look-out on a ship will cry out that he sees another ship on the port beam or on the starboard beam, meaning to the left or right of his own vessel, some distance ahead and anything seen on the beam means at right angles to the direction in which the ship is going.

Anything behind a line drawn across the centre of a ship is called abaft the beam. The cargo between the beams of a ship is called beam-filling (*n.*), while a ship that is very



Beam engine.—A double acting beam-engine for pumping, built by James Watt (1736-1819).

broad is called **beamy** (*bēm' i, adj.*), and is said to be well beamed (*bēmd adj.*). Any structure without large timber supports which usually has them, is called a **beamless** (*bēm' less adj.*) structure.

The pans of a weighing machine are usually hung from a beam, and if one pan flies up it is said to kick the beam and from that a

person who is defeated is said to kick the beam or be outweighed. Draughtsmen and architects and engineers use a special compass for drawing very large circles, called a **beam-compass** (*n.*) from the fact that one arm is a beam of wood or metal along which the pointer describing the circle can easily be moved.

One of the earliest forms of the steam engine was the **beam-engine** (*n.*), a steam engine which was used to drive all the machinery in cotton mills, workshops, and so on. The whitebeam, a tree with yellowish-white hard wood largely used for making axles for carts, is sometimes called the **beam-tree** (*n.*).

A.-S. *bēam*, akin to G. *baum* tree, and other Teut. words. In the sense of ray (of light), the word must be equivalent to something like a post or shaft. SYN.: *n.* Bar baulk, ray, r. Gleam, glitter shine

**beam-wireless** (*bēm' wir' lēs*), *n.* The system of sending wireless telegraphic or telephonic messages by waves gathered into a beam, like the rays of light from a searchlight, so that their direction is controlled and their useful effect increased. See wireless.



Bean.—Four stages in the life of a bean, showing the radicle pushing down to form the root and the plumule reaching up to form the stalk.

**bean** (*bēm*), *n.* The smooth kidney-shaped seed of many plants; the plant bearing such a seed. (*F. fève.*)

Certain kinds of beans, such as French, or kidney beans, broad beans and haricot beans, are cultivated as human food. Varieties grown in England are the broad, the scarlet runner and the dwarf French beans. Beans are given to horses for food, and after a meal of them a horse is ready to do his work. He is said to be **bean-fed** (*adj.*), or full of beans, meaning in good condition, and any person who is lively and willing to exert himself is, therefore, also said to be full of beans.

An employer who is pleased with his workmen may take them for an annual outing called a bean-feast (*bēn' fēst, n.*). In many European countries bean-feasts are held on Twelfth Day, January 6th. A big cake, the twelfth cake, is eaten, and the one who has the piece in which a bean has been placed, becomes king of the revels, or bean-feast.

Bean-straw (*n.*) is the stalk of the bean plant. On the latter the grub of the bean-fly (*n.*), a beautiful purple insect, feeds.

The bean-tree (*n.*) is the name given to a number of trees, especially the carob, whose fruit resembles a bean, and the bean-trefoil (*n.*) is the popular name given to laburnum, from the shape of its flowers. The bean-goose (*n.*) is a well-known variety of British goose.

In ancient Greece the magistrates and other leaders were elected by beans thrown into a helmet by the citizens, and Pythagoras, the famous Greek philosopher, forbade any of his followers to use beans, so that they should not be mixed up in politics.

When we say a person does not know how many beans make five, we mean that he is foolish, that he is easily imposed upon, or that he cannot add two and two together to make four. Once children were always taught to add by moving beans and a child who could not learn to do this quickly was said not to know how many beans make five.

M.E. *bēane*, A.-S. *bēan*, a word of Teut. origin; cp. G. *bohne*.

**bear** [1] (*bār, n.*) A furry animal of the flat-footed order; one of two groups of fixed stars (the Great and Little Bears); a rough, ill-mannered person; one who sells stocks or commodities for a fall. (F. *ours*, *ourse*, *grossier*, *baissier*.)

With the exception of the polar bear (found in the Arctic but not in the Antarctic regions) bears are flesh-eating only to a limited extent, their food being largely made up of roots, wild honey, berries, fruit, and insects. The brown bear belongs to Europe and Asia; the grizzly bear and the black bear are found in North and South America. The honey bear inhabits the northern parts of India. Australia has no bears, and Africa none except in the north west corner of the continent.

Dr. R. Brown tells an interesting story about the polar bear. "I have seen it," he relates, "watch a seal for half a day. When the seal finally escaped the rage of the animal was boundless; it roared hideously, tossing the snow in the air, and trotted off in a most indignant state of mind."

The Great Bear constellation or group of stars, also called Charles Wain and the Dipper, is well known because, to find the North, or Pole star, a line must be followed through two stars of that constellation, named the Pointers.

On the Stock Exchange the term bear is applied to a person who sells stocks or shares



Bear.—The polar bear, which is found in the Arctic but not in the Antarctic regions.

not in his possession in the hope that the price will fall and that he will be able to buy cheaply before the time comes when the stocks or shares have to be handed over.

Since a bear is a surly and morose creature, a person who shows those qualities is termed bearish (*bār' ish, adj.*) and his behaviour bearishness (*bār' ish nes, n.*). Many years ago the fat of bears, bears'-grease (*barz' grēs, n.*), was used as a pomatum for the hair.

In earlier days the cruel practice of bear-baiting (*n.*) was carried on, the unfortunate animal being chained to a stake and worried by dogs in a bear-garden (*n.*), a term now used to describe a noisy and unruly gathering.



Bear.—A brown bear demanding his dinner at the London Zoological Gardens.

Any species of *acanthus*, especially the European, is known as bear's-breech (*n.*); the auricula, a beautiful kind of primrose found in Switzerland, is called bear's-ear (*n.*), and bear's-foot (*n.*) is a perennial low-growing herb belonging to the order *Ranunculaceae*.

The tall furry cap worn by the Foot Guards and other regiments of the British Army is a bearskin (*bēr' skin, n.*), a term also applied to a coat or wrap made of a bear's skin.

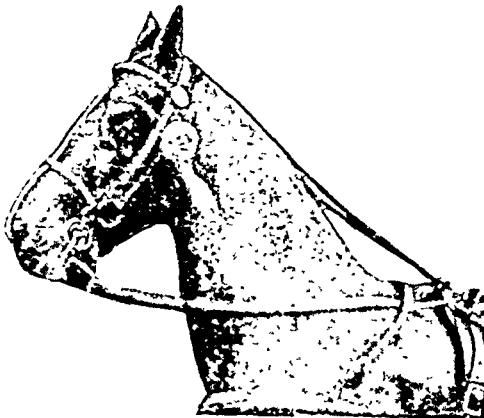
M.E. *berc*, A.-S. *bera*, a word common to the Teut. languages: cp. G. *ba*.

**bear** (2. (*bar*), *v.t.* To support or carry; to display; to wear; to endure; to bring forth or produce. *v.i.* To behave; to have relation (to) to suffer; to take a direction. *p.t.* bore, *p.p.* borne. (F. *porter, supporter, produire, se conduire, souffrir, tourner*.)

A horse may bear a heavy load and a notice board bear an announcement. We may wear or bear a badge or medal, bear or endure pain. A tree is said to bear fruit. To bear away a prize is to win it, but in the case of a ship to bear away means to alter its course so as to get the wind more astern



Bearskin.—The tall furry cap worn by various British regiments



Bearing-rein.—The bearing-rein, which prevents a horse from putting its head down, is now seldom used

To sail in the direction of a thing or point is to bear down on it. Heavy taxation is said to bear hard on or make things difficult for a nation. Evidence is required at a trial to bear out, or confirm, statements made in court. To bear up under misfortune is to endure it cheerfully but to bear up on the sea is to turn the helm up so that the ship shall run into the wind. In a naval action a captain brings (his guns) to bear on the enemy.

It is sometimes difficult to bear with, or endure, the conduct of other people, but

patience makes many things bearable (*bār' ābl, adj.*). The sun is bearably (*bār' āb li, adv.*) hot when it does not cause serious discomfort. A bearer (*bār' ēr, n.*) is one who bears or carries (a coffin at a funeral), brings anything (such as news), holds an office, or presents a letter or cheque. A bearing-rein (*bār' ing rān, n.*) is a short rein, fixed at the back end of the harness, to prevent a horse from putting its head down.

M.E. *beran*, A.-S. *beran*, cognate with various Indo-European words, such as L. *ferre*, Gr. *pherein*, from the root *bler*. SYN.: Allow, carry, cherish, maintain, suffer, sustain, yield. ANT.: Drop, protest, release, resist.

**beard** (*bērd*), *n.* The hair on the lower part of the face; hairy tufts on the face of some animals. *v.t.* To furnish with a beard; to chip or plane away; to defy. (F. *barbe; garnir d'une barbe, barber, brater*.)

Man is not alone in possessing a beard. The word is also applied to all the long hairs on the chin of goats and some other animals; the feathers at the base of the beak of some birds; the threads in the mouth of certain fishes; the gills of oysters; the silky threads (byssus) of mussels, etc.; the bristle-like ends of barley, oats, etc., the point or barb of an arrow; the part of a printing type, above and below the face; the sharp edge of a board.

A carpenter beards the edges of a board when he planes or rounds them to the required shape. We beard a man by calling on him when we know he is seeking us with the intention of doing us some injury. A goat is a bearded (*bērd' (d, adj.)*) animal, and an arrow may be a bearded missile. To be youthful or without a beard is to be beardless (*bērd' les, adj.*), and one may speak of the beardlessness (*bērd' les nēs, n.*) of youth.

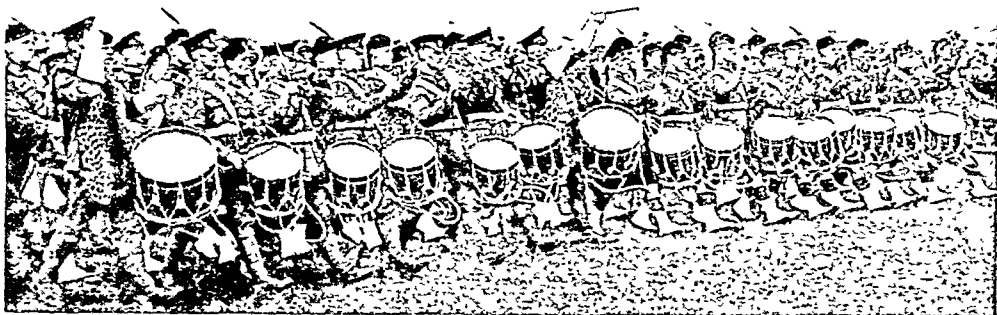
The climbing shrub known as the wild clematis, or traveller's joy, is also called old man's beard.

M.E. *berd*, A.-S. *beard*, a common Teut. word cp. G. *bart*.

**bearer securities** (*bar' er se kū' ri tis, n.pl.* Stocks and bonds which can change hands without any formal transfer. (F. *une traite payable au porteur*.)

The scrip, or certificate, of a bearer security has no owner's name on it. Attached to it are numbered coupons. Whoever bears, or presents, these is entitled to receive payments of interest as they fall due. A registered security, on the other hand, has the name of the owner for the time being entered in the books of the issuer. It can be transferred only by deed, and on the presentation of the certificate, on which the owner's name appears.

**bearing** (*bar' ing*), *n.* A part of a machine in which an axle or shaft turns; a part of a beam where it rests on a support; the direction of an object as given by the compass; the behaviour or carriage of a person; an heraldic device. (F. *red. incl. rechement, maintien, arm. mss.*)



Beat.—Highland drummers beating their drums at a royal review.

In machinery, a plain bearing has a large surface fitting the part, called the journal, of the shaft or axle turning in it, and the surfaces are kept from touching by a film of oil or grease.

In a ball-bearing (*bawl' bär ing, n.*) very hard steel balls, and in a roller-bearing (*röl' èr bär' ing, n.*), very hard steel rollers, separate the fixed from the moving part, with which they run round. These two kinds of bearings cause very little friction indeed, and for this reason are used in bicycles and motor-cars, and wherever very easy turning is needed in a machine. See picture on page 317.

To lose one's bearings is to be uncertain of one's position or direction.

E. *bear* and suffix *-ing* forming verbal nouns.

**beast** (*bēst*), *n.* An animal; a quadruped; a cruel or objectionable person or thing. (F. *bête*.)

A horse is a beast of burden, a cow a domestic beast, a man who cruelly ill-uses animals, or is brutal in his behaviour towards other people is a beast and acts in a beastly (*bēst lī, adv. and adj.*) manner, or is beast-like (*adj.*) in his actions. A dirty, disgusting person, a glutton for food or drink, or one who eats in a disgusting way, is beast-like or beastly, and his conduct may be called beastliness (*bēst' lī nes, n.*).

The Beast is the Anti-Christ mentioned in the thirteenth chapter of Revelation. A beast-fable is a story in which all the actors are animals. The story of the fox who was brought before the lion and all the other animals is one of the best known beast-fables, which at one time were very popular with adults as well as children.

M.E. *beste*, O.F. *beste* (modern *bête*), L. *bestia*.

**beat** (*bēt*), *v.t.* To strike; to pound; to conquer, defeat, or master; to tread; to move in rhythm or in time. *v.i.* To strike; to throb. *p.t.* *beat* (*bēt*), *p.p.* *beaten* (*bēt' en*). *n.* A stroke or blow; an area of patrol. (F. *battre frapper, vaincre, marquer le temps*.)

We may beat a carpet to get the dust out, beat time with a baton, beat a substance into a powder or beat an egg into a frothy liquid. A boxer beats his opponent when he wins a bout. The heart beats.

A person is said to be dead-beat when he is tired out or overcome with fatigue. A child

is beaten (*bēt' en, adj.*) by his father for being naughty or is beaten in a game of tennis by another player. The earth of a pathway is beaten down by continually treading on it, and to turn back or retire is to beat a retreat or beat back.

An enemy who is attacked and overwhelmingly defeated is said to be beaten hollow, just as one person who wins a game against another very easily is said to have beaten his opponent in a hollow fashion. To beat about the bush is to argue round a thing or to approach it slowly, while to beat one's brains about anything is to puzzle for a long time over it. The conductor of an orchestra beats time, and the regular interval between the rise and fall of his baton is called a beat. The area which a policeman has to patrol or guard is called his beat, and a man's beat is his occupation or his sphere of activity.

We speak of the beating (*bēt' ing, n.*) of the rain upon the windows, the beating of the waves upon the sea-shore, and the beating of drums.

Sailors, when they are steaming or sailing against the wind, speak of beating into the wind or sailing against the wind. To beat a tattoo is to signal on a drum that it is time for soldiers to go to their quarters. On certain days of the year in many villages and parishes the parish boundaries are beaten at certain points with rods. This is called beating the bounds.

A person who beats bushes and undergrowth to make pheasants and partridges and other game come out for sportsmen to shoot at is called a beater (*bēt' èr, n.*), a name given to any instrument used for beating. The one specially used for beating up eggs is called an egg-whisk or egg-beater (*n.*). When we bargain with anyone to reduce the price of an article we say that we are beating him down in price.

M.E. *beten*, A.-S. *bēatan*, common Teut. word. SYN.: Batter, crush, defeat, hammer, overcome, strike, vanquish.

**beatify** (*bē āt' ī fī*), *v.t.* To make happy or blessed. (F. *béatifier*.)

In the Roman Catholic Church it means to pronounce publicly that a deceased person has been received in heaven, and is entitled to be called "Blessed." The declaration is

made by the Pope on the ground of a person's holy and blameless life, and is generally the first step to the canonization of a new saint. The ceremony is called beatification (bē āt' fī kā' shūn, *n.*).

Whatever has the power to make us supremely blessed, or exalt us to heavenly delight, is beatific (bē ā tīf' ik, *adj.*). The sight of God which confers blessedness on the Christian who has left this life is called the beatific vision. To do a thing beatifically (bē ā tīf' ik āl li, *adv.*) is to do it in a way that brings great joy and blessing.

The highest kind of blessedness is beatitude (bē āt' i tūde *n.*). Such a word is used to describe the heavenly joy which the Saviour promised in the Sermon on the Mount to particular Christian virtues. It is supreme and heavenly bliss.

*F. beatus* from *L. beatificare*, from *beatus* happy, blessed, and *facere* to make

**beau** (bō, *n.* A top; a lover. The *pl.* is beaux (bōz) (*F. damoiseau, petit maître, amoureux.*)

The word may mean a dandy who pays too much attention to his dress or a man who is seeking a lady's hand in marriage. The most perfect type of beauty or the highest degree of excellence we can imagine may be referred to as our beau-ideal (bō i dē' al, *n.*).

*O.F. b. t., L. bellus, bonus* for *bonus* dim. of *bonus* good, pretty.

**beaune** (bōn) *n.* A red Burgundy wine. (*F. beaune.*)

This wine, considered to be one of the best of its kind gets its name from the French town Beaune, in the department of Côte d'Or, which is a centre of the Burgundy wine trade.

**Beauseant** (bō sā an'), *n.* The banner and battle-cry of the Knights Templars (*F. beauseant.*)

The Knights Templars were a military order founded in 1119 to defend pilgrims on their way to Jerusalem against attacks by the Saracens. They played an important part in the Crusades, and many thousands died on the battlefield, where their banner and cry were dreaded by the enemy.

Their battle-cry is said to be an O.F. word for a horse with black and white stripes, with reference to similar stripes on the banner.

**beau y** (bā' ti), *n.* The quality, or group of qualities which pleases the eye or other senses—grace, charm. (*F. beauté.*)

Anything very pleasant to the sight may be said to possess beauty—the human face or form, a flower garden, the sky, a piece of furniture. Beauty, however, may be present

without being seen. Persons and objects having qualities that give pleasure to, or satisfy, a sense or feeling also have beauty. For example, a voice, a scent, a character, a thought—these are but a few of the things that may possess beauty in some degree.

A very good-looking woman is sometimes spoken of as a beauty, but the word is also ironically used in an uncomplimentary sense, as when we speak of a man who has behaved disgracefully as a beauty. In a special sense one may say "that's the beauty of it," meaning "that is the particular point that gives satisfaction."



Beauty.—Nature and architecture join to make the island of San Giulio on the lake of Orta, in Italy, a place of almost matchless beauty.

In poetry, a thing having beauty is sometimes described as beauteous (bū' te us, *adj.*) Pretty flowers, graceful dancing sunsets, and rainbows are all beautiful (bū ti fūl, *adj.*). An artist may paint a picture beautifully (bū ti fūl li, *adv.*). That which appeals to you in a person or object may be referred to as the beautiful. A plain thing that grows beautiful is said to beautify (bū' ti fi, *v. t.*), and when we place flowers in a room we beautify (*v. t.*) it.

A precious stone which adds beauty to a ring or brooch, and a person who adorns a doorway by carving beautiful figure on it may each be called a beautifier (bū' ti fi er, *n.*).

A beautiful district is referred to as a beauty-spot (*n.*), a term also used of a spot or other mark placed on the face to add to the beauty. The few hours' sleep one has before midnight is known as beauty-sleep (*n.*). because late hours spoil one's beauty.

M.E. *bealle*, *beaute*, O.F. *bellet*, from an assumed L. noun *bellitas* from *bellus* pretty. SYN.: Grace, loveliness, picturesqueness, radiance, splendour. ANT.: Blemish, deformity, disfigurement, eyesore, ugliness.

**beaver** [1] (*bē'vēr*), *n.* A kind of water rodent or gnawing animal; the fur of the beaver; a hat made from the fur. (F. *castor*.)

Beavers were once extremely common in Europe and North America, but they are becoming very rare. They have sharp teeth and are very clever at gnawing down trees, and felling them across a stream in the exact direction they want them to fall. The dam or house half under water, which they build is called a beaver-dam (*n.*).

The beaver is the only rodent that has its hinder feet webbed, and its tail, which is flat, broad, and protected with a horny covering, is used as a rudder. The latter also serves a useful purpose for splashing the water and thus calling the attention of other members of the family when danger threatens. The entrance to the beaver's home is below the water, but the house itself, which may measure eight feet in diameter, is above the surface.

Beaver-rat (*n.*) is another name for the musquash or muskrat, and beaver-tree (*n.*) or beaver-wood (*n.*) are names used in America for the sweet bay-tree. There is a cotton fabric which has a pile on it something like velvet known as beaverteen (*bē' ver tēn*, *n.*).

M.E. *bever*, A.-S. *beofor*, cognate with G. *biber*, L. *fiber*. The word is supposed to be from a doubled Indo-European root *bhrū* brown.



Beaver.—An animal once common in Europe and North America, the beaver is now becoming rare.

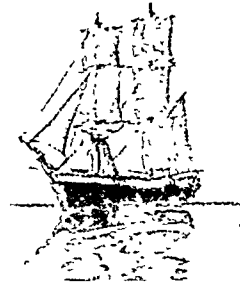
**beaver** [2] (*bē'vēr*), *n.* A hat made of beaver skin; the lower part of the visor of a helmet. (F. *chapeau fait avec du poil de castor*, *visière*.)

The beaver of a visor had to be lifted when its wearer wished to eat or drink. A person furnished with or wearing a beaver is said to be beavered (*bē' verd*, *adj.*).

M.E. *baviere*, O.F. *baviere* a child's bib (*baver* to slobber), which it is supposed to resemble.

**becalm** (*bē kam'*), *v.t.* To make calm; to soothe; to deprive (a ship) of wind. (F. *calmer*, *apaiser*, *abrèver*.)

The air and the earth are often becalmed before a storm. A warning will sometimes becalm an angry crowd. A sailing ship is becalmed when there is no wind to fill its sails.



Becalm.—A ship becalmed at sea owing to lack of wind.

**became** (*be kām'*). This is the past tense of become. See become

E prefix *be-*, and *calm* SYN.: Hush, quell, quiet, soothe stay. ANT.: Arouse, frighten, impel, move

**because** (*be koz'*; *bē kawz'*), *conj.* By reason, or on account (of), for; since. (F. *parce que*.)

This word introduces a sentence giving a reason for a statement in another sentence to which it is joined. We put up an umbrella because it is raining. A boy may be popular because of his good nature. We may feel confident because we know our lesson.

A.-S. prefix *be-* = *by*, and E *cause* by the cause, for the reason (that) SYN.: As, for, inasmuch as, since. ANT.: Although, however, nevertheless, notwithstanding, yet.

**bechance** (*be chans'*), *v.i.* To happen, to befall, to come by chance. (F. *arriver*.)

Shakespeare makes use of this word in "The Two Gentlemen of Verona" (i, i): "All happiness bechance to thee in Milan."

A.-S. prefix *be-* = *by*, and E *chance*.

**becharm** (*be charm'*), *v.t.* To charm; to captivate, to fascinate. (F. *charmer*, *captiver*.)

E. prefix *be-*, and *charm*

**bêche-de-mer** (*bāsh de mar'*), *n.* The sea-slug or trepang. (F. *trepang*.)

The sea-slug, or sea-cucumber (*Holothuria edulis*) is a soft-bodied creature, eaten as a delicacy by the Chinese.

The F. compound *bêche-de-mer* literally means sea-spade.

**beck** [1] (*bēk*), *n.* A bow, a curtsey, a sign made by using finger, hand, or head. *v.t.* To give a mute signal; to curtsey or bow. *v.t.* To call by giving a mute signal. (F. *salut*, *signe*, *faire signe*, *saluer*.)

Milton, in "L'Allegro" writes: "nods and becks, and wreathed smiles." We still use the word when we say that someone is at the beck and call of another person, that is, he is ready to do exactly as the other wishes.

The word is a shortened form of *beckon*.

**beck** [2] (*bēk*), *n.* A brook or rivulet. (F. *ruisseau*.)

This name is given in the north of England to a brook or rivulet. The term is a survival of the occupation of the northern region from Lincolnshire to Cumberland by Danes and Norwegians.

M.E. *beck* O Norse *bekk-r*; cp. G. *bach*

**beck**et (bek' et), *n.* A ring, hook, or loop of rope used aboard ship for holding ropes or spars in position, or for securing another rope. (F. *attache*.)

The word may perhaps be akin to Dutch *beek* and E. *beak*.

**be** on (bēk' ōn), *v.t.* To make a signal by a motion of the hand or finger, or by a nod. *v.t.* To order to approach by a motion of the hand or a nod, etc. (F. *faire signe* *faire signe a*.)

We can say "he beckons for me to approach" or "he beckons me."

M.E. *beknen*, A.-S. *blicnan* to make a sign or "beacon"

**be**cloud (be kloud'), *v.t.* To cover as with a mist or cloud; to dim; to obscure. (F. *couverir de nuages*, *obscurcir*.)

Dr. Watts, in one of his hymns, has these words:

And see the Canaan that  
we love  
With unbeckoned eyes."

1 prefix *be-* and *cloud*

**be**come (be kŭm'), *v.i.* To come into existence, to come to be; *v.t.* To change into; to be changed to; to enter into (some state or condition) to be suitable to; to be worthy of, to agree with or be in harmony with. (F. *devenir* *convenir*.)

A dress becomes or suits its wearer, while a tadpole becomes a frog, or changes into a frog when it grows up. A dress is said to be becoming (be kŭm' ing *adj.*) when it makes its wearer look charming or graceful, and to suit its wearer becomingly (be kŭm' ing li, *adv.*). Its becomingness (be kŭm' ing nes, *n.*) is its suitability to the wearer. When we wonder what has happened to a person or where he is we often ask what has become of him?

A.-S. *bicuman* from *bi-* -by, *cuman* to come. SYN.: Adorn change convert, correspond suit

**Becquerel rays** (bek' rel rāz), *n.pl.* Invisible rays given off by uranium and its compounds. (F. *rayons Becquerel*.)

They get their names from the French scientist, Antoine Henri Becquerel, who discovered them in 1896, while using a salt of uranium, and found that they passed through opaque objects in just the same way as Röntgen or "X" rays. His discovery led to the further discovery by Pierre and Marie Curie of radium.

**bed** (bed), *n.* A piece of furniture to sleep on or in; a couch; a soft heap to lie on; a firm mass in which an object is fixed, or on which it rests; a garden plot for plants; the bottom of a river or sea; a layer; the grave. *v.t.* To put to bed; to plant in a garden bed; to fix in a bed or embed. (F. *lit*, *carré*, *jeu*, *couche*, *mettre au lit*, *planter*, *coucher*.)

The ancient Egyptians, Greeks, and

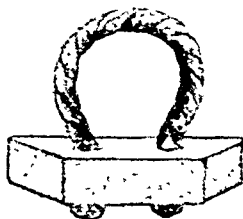
Romans had beds shaped like a wooden couch or sofa. The Anglo-Saxons seem to have introduced the four-poster bed, with bed-hangings (*n. pl.*) consisting of a canopy overhead and curtains all round to keep draughts away. The belief that night air was bad for health no doubt accounts for the long popularity of the four-poster. Nowadays a simpler open bed is preferred, since people know the value of plenty of fresh air.

In Russia and North China, the winter cold is so intense that beds are placed for warmth on the tops of stoves. The Great Bed of Ware, mentioned by Shakespeare in his play, "Twelfth Night" (iii, 2), is said to have been made for Warwick the King-maker. This giant among beds, which may still be seen at Rye House, in Hertfordshire, is twelve feet square and able to hold a dozen people. A charge made for bed and board is one for lodging and food.

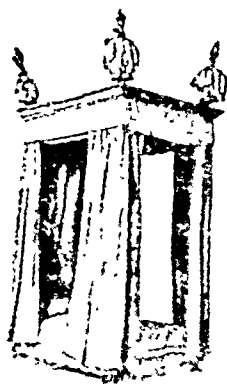
A sleeping apartment is called a bed-chamber (*n.*) or bedroom (*n.*). The bedding (bed' ing, *n.*) or bed-clothes (*n. pl.*), usually consists of an overlay, a bed-tick (*n.*), or square bag stuffed with feathers or flock, blankets, bed-linen (*n.*), such as sheets and pillow-cases, pillows, and a bed-spread (*n.*) or bed-quilt (*n.*). The bedstead (bed' sted, *n.*) may be of iron or wood, the iron variety generally having a bed-post (*n.*), or upright support, at each of the four corners.

The framework of an iron bedstead is tightened up by a bed-key (*n.*) and a somewhat similar key is used to tighten up the wire mattress when this kind of mattress is used. In the colleges at Cambridge University the beds of the students are made by a person known as the bedmaker (bed' mā ker, *n.*) or bedder (bed' er, *n.*).

Anyone who shares a bed with another is a bed-fellow (*n.*), and a bed-ridden (*adj.*) invalid is one who is unable to leave his bed. This curious word is a corruption of our meaning bed-rider. A person who sits by the bedside (*n.*) of such an invalid and helps him to pass the weary hours is a kindly bedside (*adj.*) companion. Few children look forward to bed-time (*n.*), the hour for retiring to rest and whenever possible they defer going bedward (bed' wārd *adv.*) as long as possible.



Becket.—A ring, hook, or loop of rope of this kind is a becket.



Bed.—A state bed, supported by bed-posts, and showing bed-hangings.

In gardening, a plant for bedding out is called a bedder (*bed'ér, n.*), and plants that are to be put into beds are known as bedding-plants (*n.pl.*). In geology the arrangement of rocks in beds or layers is referred to as bedding (*n.*), the top or bottom surface of such a layer or stratum being called a bedding-plane (*n.*). The rock beneath the surface formations is the bed-rock (*n.*), a term often used in a general way for the bottom basis, or foundation of anything. Hence we speak of the bed-rock or lowest possible price of an article.

The French kings used to receive people and deal out justice in their bedrooms. Hence the name of bed of justice came to be given to a session of the French Parliament presided over by the monarch. To make a bed is to put it in order after use. Since a carelessly made bed is uncomfortable, it is easy to see why the words to lie in the bed one has made mean having to suffer for one's own mistakes.

When a friend arrives unexpectedly, the hostess offers to make up a bed for him. Bed being the best place for a sick person, to take to one's bed is to be laid up by illness.

A common Teut. word; cp. G. *bett*.

**bedabble** (*bè dāb' l*), *v.t.* To sprinkle or wet; to splash with mud. (F. *mouiller, éclabousser*.)

If we walk in a meadow in the early morning we get bedabbled with dew.

E. prefix *be-*, and *dabble*.

**bedaub** (*bè dawb' l*), *v.t.* To daub over; to adorn in a vulgar or tasteless manner. (F. *barbouiller*.)

A bad artist bedaubes the walls of a building with gaudy frescoes; a flatterer bedaubes his patron with excessive praises.

E. prefix *be-*, and *daub*.

**bedazzle** (*bè dāz' l*), *v.t.* To confuse or make half blind by a strong light. (F. *éblour*.)

Thus Shakespeare says, in the "Taming of the Shrew" (iv, 5): "Bedazzled by the Sun."

On many motor-cars the lamps can be turned downwards, to prevent them from bedazzling people they meet.

E. prefix *be-*, and *dazzle*.

**bedeck** (*bè dek' l*), *v.t.* To deck out; to adorn; to ornament; to grace. (F. *orner, parer*.)

On a great occasion the streets of a town are bedecked with flags.

E. prefix *be-*, and *deck*.

**bedeguar** (*bed' è gar*), *n.* A mossy gall on rose bushes. (F. *bédégar*.)



Bedeguar.—A mossy growth on rose bushes caused by a small insect.

The bedeguar, or robin's pincushion, is a mossy growth caused by a small insect (*Rhodites rosae*) which punctures the stalk and lays an egg therein. This causes a curious gall to grow, covered with long reddish hairs. It is really an imperfect leaf.

The word is from Pers. *bādāwar* brought by the wind, from *bad* wind, *awardan* to bring.

**bedel** (*bè' dl*), *n.* An official at Oxford University. At Cambridge University the corresponding official is called bedell. See beadle.

**bedevil** (*bè dev' l*), *v.t.* To treat devilishly; to bewitch; to bewilder; to confound or muddle. (F. *luter, égarer*.)

A simple-minded person may be reduced to a state of complete bedevilment (*bè dev' l mēt, n.*) or mental confusion by becoming the victim of a heartless jester.

E. prefix *be-*, and *devil*.

**bedew** (*bè dū' l*), *v.t.* To sprinkle or moisten with dew; to wet. (F. *humecter*.) A child's cheeks may be bedewed with tears.

E. prefix *be-*, and *dew*.

**bedim** (*be dim' l*), *v.t.* To make dim. (F. *voiler, obscurcir*.) Clouds bedim the sun; one's memory may be bedimmed by illness.

E. prefix *be-* and *dim*.

**bedizen** (*be dīz' n*, *bè dīz' n*) *v.t.* To dress in cheap or vulgar finery. (F. *attifer*.)

The word is always used with more or less contempt or disapproval. The bedizement (*bè dīz' n mēt, n.*) of an old lady dressed unsuitably for her years is bad taste.

E. prefix *be-*, and *dizen*.

**Bedlam** (*bed' lām*), *n.* A lunatic asylum; a scene of wild uproar; madness. *adj.* Mad, lunatic. (F. *maison de fous, tumulte; fou*.)

After the priory of St. Mary of Bethlehem in Bishopgate Street, London, was turned into the first English lunatic asylum, in 1547,



Bedeck.—The crowning of a May queen. She is surrounded by attendants bedecked with flowers.



the place was known as Bethlehem Hospital, and then as B. dlam : now any place in which people conduct themselves like lunatics is called bedlam. Thus we might say of a noisy or riotous meeting that it was bedlam.

Very foolish things are sometimes called bedlam things : we might describe some plan such as would be concocted by a madman as a bedlam scheme. A bedlamite (bed' lām it n.) was at first a patient of the Bethlehem Asylum who had been cured and discharged with the right to beg for a living ; now the word describes a mad person.

In the old days, when the Bethlehem Hospital was still at Bishopsgate, the public visited the place much as they now visit the Zoo and amused themselves by staring at the poor lunatics kept there. Later people ceased to regard the spectacle as particularly funny, and the lunatics were more decently treated. At the beginning of the nineteenth century, the asylum was transferred to a new site in Lambeth, London, S.E.

**bedlington** (bed' līng tōn), *n.* A crisp-haired breed of game terrier.

The bedlington, named from a place near Morpeth in Northumberland, is a first-class sporting dog, either on land or in water, and makes a fine house dog. In colour he varies from bluish grey to tan or white.

**Bedouin** (bed' u in), *n.* A wandering Arab. *adj.* Belonging to wandering Arabs. (F. *Bédouin*.)

Some Arabs live in villages or towns, but

others live in the desert, wandering about and shifting their tents from place to place, and these nomads, or roammers, are the Bedouins. Sometimes the word is applied to describe any wanderer ; a tramp, a gipsy, being known as a Bedouin. The home of the desert Arab is the Bedouin tent.



Bedouin. — A Bedouin girl of Tunisia.

*Arabic bādū, m.*, pl. of *bādū* = one living in the desert (*bādū*.)

**bedraggle** (be drāg' l), *v.t.* To soak (clothes, etc.) so that they hang limp ; to trail in the dirt. (F. *salir, croûter*.) This word is chiefly used in the *p.p.* as an *adj.*, as bedraggled skirts.

E. *prehens*, *b.*, and *draggle*.

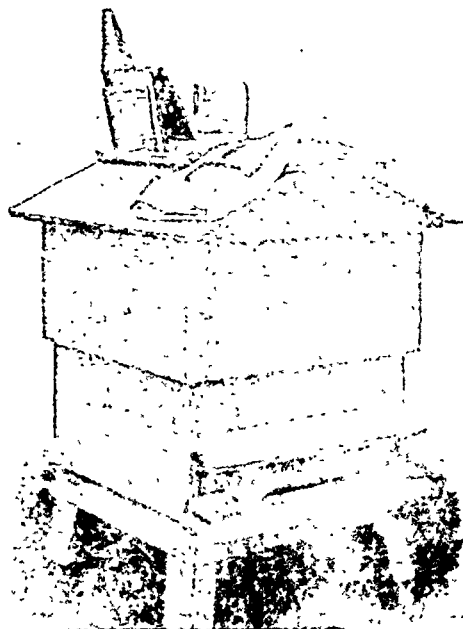
**bedstraw** (bed' straw), *n.* One of several species of plants belonging to the genus *Galium*, especially the lady's bedstraw. (F. *calli-lait*.)

The genus *Galium* belongs to the madder family (*Rubiaceae*), and includes such familiar species as the bedstraws and cleavers or goosegrass, which, together with the closely related madder and woodruff are described as

stellate plants, because the small leaves are arranged in star-like whorls.

The best known of the bedstraws are the yellow-flowered lady's bedstraw (*Galium verum*) and the white-flowered hedge bedstraw (*G. mollugo*). The popular name of bedstraw was given because the dry plants were formerly used as bedding.

The F. name is derived from the plant being supposed to possess the quality of curdling (*cailler*) milk. E. *bed* and *straw*.



Bee. — A bee-keeper's outfit: beehive, smoker, feeder, and veil for protecting the face.

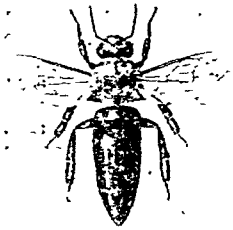
**bee** (bē), *n.* A four-winged stinging insect producing wax and honey ; a hard or busy worker ; in America a party of neighbours assembled for a common task. (F. *abeille*.)

There are many kinds of bee beside the hive bee or honey bee from which we get honey, as the humble bee or bumble bee. Some kinds, like the mason bee, are called solitary bees, because they do not live in large groups or communities like the social bees. A swarm of bees is a flight of bees following the queen-bee, who leads them out to form a colony, when the hive is overcrowded, leaving a young queen behind with the rest. Most of the bees in a hive are undeveloped females called worker-bees. Only the queen lays eggs.

A bee flies home in a straight line, hence the shortest distance between two points is called a bee-line (*n.*). The wooden or straw home in which bees live, rear their young, and make their honey, is called a beehive (bē' hīv, *n.*). A straw beehive is also called a bee-skep (*n.*). Houses which are shaped like large beehives are called beehive houses or beehive huts. A bee-master is

or bee-mistress (*n.*) is a person who keeps bees, especially on a large scale. Some American bee-keepers (*n.*) have thousands of hives.

The bee-bird (*n.*) is another name for the spotted flycatcher, while the bee-eater (*n.*) is a bird of gorgeous plumage which lives on bees and wasps. The bee-moth (*n.*) lays its eggs in beehives, the caterpillars feeding on the beeswax (*bēz' wāks, n.*), the yellow solid substance of which bees make their honey-combs.



Bee.—A queen bee, which sometimes lays three thousand eggs a day.

Bees feed their young on a mixture of honey and pollen called bee-bread (*n.*), and fill up chinks in the hive with a substance called bee-glue (*n.*) or propolis.

On old port wine a fine film forms called beeswing (*bēz' wing, n.*). This film when broken up into small pieces looks

like the wings of bees. At one time there used to be a craze for the spelling-bee (*n.*), a game in which each person in turn is asked to spell certain words. If he fails to spell one correctly he drops out of the game, and so on, until only one is left. When we say that a man has a bee in his bonnet we mean that he is mad on some points.

A.-S. *bēo, bīo, bī*, common Teut. word; cp. G. *bienen*.

**beech** (*bēch*), *n.* A forest tree with smooth, greyish bark, and yielding a kind of nut; the timber of the tree. (F. *hêtre*.)

The beech is one of our noblest trees, and its leaves are beautiful in spring, summer, and autumn. Caesar says that he could find no beeches in England, but there is little doubt that there were beeches here at the time of his invasions (55 and 54 B.C.). The wood of the beech is used for making tools and furniture, especially chairs, and for cabinet work.

The fruit of the beech, nuts called beech-mast (*n.*), is good food for pigs, and yields an oil, beech-oil (*n.*). The beech grows best on chalk; Buckinghamshire is called beechy (*bēch' i, adj.*) because of its many large beech woods; a table is beechen (*bēch' en, adj.*) if made of beech. The beech-fern (*n.*) is a pretty species of fern generally distributed in Britain. Its Latin name is *Polypodium phegopteris*.

A.-S. *bōeca, bēce*, common Teut. word; cp. G. *buche*; Gr. *phēgos*, L. *fagus*, properly a tree the fruit of which was eatable (Gr. *phagein* to eat).

**beef** (*bēf*), *n.* The flesh of a fully grown ox, cow, or bullock; such an animal fattened for food; *pl.* *beeves* (*bēvz*) or *beefs*. (F. *bœuf, chair du bœuf*.)

The domestic animals commonly eaten as food have Anglo-Saxon names when alive,

but in each case their flesh is called by a word derived from French, the language of the flesh-eating Norman aristocracy. Thus the cow becomes beef; pig, pork; sheep, mutton; and calf, veal. Much of our beef is brought from Australia and Argentina, in a chilled or frozen condition. A beef-steak (*n.*) is a thick slice cut from the hinder part of the carcass.

A beefeater (*n.*) is a Yeoman of the Guard or a warder of the Tower of London. The guard was formed in 1485 by King Henry VII, and, as well-fed household servants were familiarly called beef-eaters, the word came to be used for these royal attendants. A South African bird which pecks insects from the back of cattle is also named beef-eater.

The drink called beef-tea (*n.*) used by invalids is made by soaking minced raw beef in water, heating below boiling-point for some hours, and straining off the liquid. A beefy (*bēf' i, adj.*) taste is one like that of beef. A big, muscular man may be familiarly described as beefy, and his condition may be called beefiness (*bēf' i nes, n.*). The red timber of Australian trees belonging to the genus *Casuariza* and *Banksia* is sometimes called beef-wood (*n.*).

O F. *boef*, from L. *bos* (acc. *bou-em*), Gr. *bous* ox.



Beefeater.—Beefeaters at the Tower of London wearing their Tudor uniforms.

**Beelzebub** (*bē el' ze būb*), *n.* A god worshipped by the Philistines; the Devil. (F. *Béelzébut*.)

His name signifies that he was "lord of flies," or the god who presided over the plagues of insects which infest the east. He had a temple at Ekron. Heathen gods were regarded by the Hebrews as demons, and the name came to be used for Satan, or any evil spirit.

Heb. *Ba'alzebūb*.

**been** (*bēn*). The past participle of *be*. See *be*.

**bee orchis** (bē' ūr kis), *n.* A British wild orchid, the flower of which resembles a bee. (*F. orchis*.)

Of the wild orchids, the flowers of which resemble an insect, the most striking and beautiful is the bee orchis (*Ophrys apifera*) found in June and July in dry pastures, especially in limestone districts. The broad convex lip of the flower, which is downy and of a rich brown colour variegated with yellow, bears a really striking resemblance to a bumble-bee.

In contrast with most of the species of orchis the bee orchis is able to use its own



Bee orchis.—A British wild orchid.

pollen to fertilize its seeds, the pollen masses on their long stalks dangling limply in front of the stigma, so that the slightest breeze is sufficient to bring them into contact.

*E. bee*, and *L. orchis*, from *Gr. orchis*. The spelling orchid, due to the botanist, J. Lindley (1799 - 1865), wrongly assumes a *L.* stem orchid-, the gen. being really *orchis*, not *orchidis*.

**beer** [ɪ] (bēr), *n.* A fermented drink made from malted barley and flavoured with hops; a general term, sometimes including ale, as well as stout and porter. (*F. bière*.)

The process of making beer, called brewing, has been known for thousands of years. Legends tell us that the Egyptian god Osiris taught mankind how to prepare beer from barley.

In the thirteenth century the water at Burton-on-Trent was found to be so excellent for beer-making that this town became the great brewing centre of England.

The word beer is given to various fermented drinks, as those made from mullet, in Africa, and from rice in the Far East. Ginger beer is slightly alcoholic. A beer-barrel (*n.*), in which beer is sent out from a brewery, holds exactly thirty-six gallons. A beer-engine (*n.*), worked by a lever called a beer-pull (*n.*), is used to draw beer in measured quantities from the cellar to the bar of a beer-house (*n.*), a shop licensed to sell malted liquors, but not spirits.

A person excited by drinking beer, though not actually drunk, is said to be in a beery (bēr' i, a bē) condition, and while he is in this condition we may say that he talks small beer, or things of no account.

A-S. *ber*, cognate with *G. Bier*, possibly connected with *E. barley*, hence meaning literally barley-juice.

**beer** [2] (bēr), *n.* A term used by weavers for a number of threads gathered together from the ends of a warp.

The beer allows the warp threads to be

divided more easily, as when there are many hundreds of warp threads, it is easier to deal with them in bundles of forty or so.

The word is identical with *bier*, anything adapted for bearing or carrying. It is curious that an alternative Scottish name is *porter* (cp. French *porter*).

**beeswax** (bēz' wāks), *n.* A substance collected by bees. See under bee.

**beeswing** (bēz' wing), *n.* A film on port wine. See under bee.

**beet** (bēt), *n.* A food-plant of the goose-foot family. (*F. bette*.)

The beets include the cultivated common red beet or garden beet (*Beta vulgaris*), the mangel wurzel, and the white or sugar beet (*B. cicla*). The garden beet, called also beet-radish (*n.*) and beet-rave (*n.*), is grown for its deep red fleshy beetroot (*n.*), used as a vegetable and a salad; the white beet is grown extensively in England and on the Continent for making beet-sugar (*n.*). Beets are infested by the beet-fly (*n.*).

M.E. and A-S. *bēte*, from *L. beta*, whence also *F. bette*.

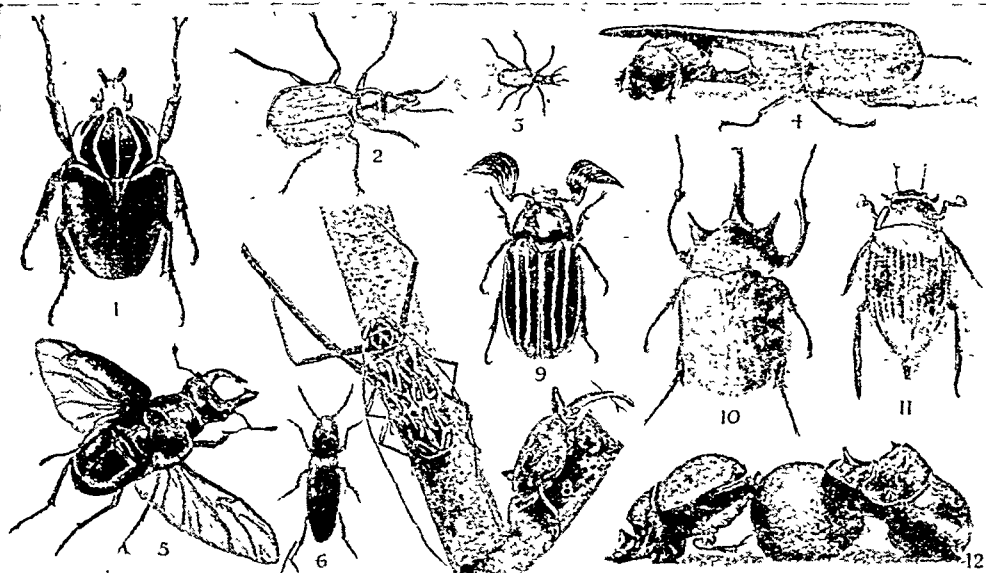


Beet.—The making of beet-sugar is now an important British industry. The workers are trimming off the leaves ready for transport to a factory. A beet is shown in the inset.

**beetle** [ɪ] (bēt' l), *n.* One of an order of insects with a hard skin and only one pair of flying wings, the upper pair having been changed into hard, horny wing-cases. (*F. scarabée, escarbot*.)

Beetles as an order are named Coleoptera, or "sheathed-winged" insects, on account of the horny cases formed out of the upper wings to protect the delicate lower pair and the body. Many kinds have the wing-cases stuck together, and therefore cannot fly.

About 150,000 species of beetles are known. Among the largest of all insects is the African goliath beetle, six inches long and two inches broad. Some beetles are very brilliantly coloured; for example, the diamond beetle of Brazil, used by jewelers.



Beetle.—1. Goliath beetle. 2. Colosoma inquisitor, pursuing a bombardier beetle (3). 4. Hercules beetle. 5. Male stag beetle in flight. 6. Wireworm or click beetle. 7. Harlequin beetle. 8. Snout weevil. 9. Chafer beetle. 10. Elephant beetle. 11. Large water beetle. 12. Scarab beetle.

A beetle, like a butterfly, passes through the grub, pupa, and winged stages.

M.E. *bētl*, A.-S. *bitula*, from *bītan* to bite.

**beetle** [2] (*bēt' l*), *n.* A large wooden mallet or maul, for driving pegs and stakes into the ground, and doing other heavy hammering; a heavy cylindrical wooden implement with short handles, used for ramming down paving stones, etc.; a machine for hammering cotton cloth and other fabrics. *v.t.* To beat with a beetle. (F. *gros maillet*, *hie*.)

A machine containing beetles for hammering cloth is called a **beetling machine** (*n.*).

M.E. *bētel*, A.-S. *bētel*, *bytel*, from *bēatan* to beat.

**beetle** [3] (*bēt' l*), *adj.* Projecting, overhanging. *v.i.* to overhang, to jut out. (F. *surplombant*; *surplomber*.)

The adjective is hardly ever used except to qualify the word brows. A beetle-browed (*adj.*) person has bushy or overhanging eyebrows, giving the face a rather scowling look.

The verb is nearly always used to describe a rock or cliff. **Beetling** (*bēt' ling*, *adj.*) cliffs often overhang the shore.

M.E. *bitel* (*browed*). The etymology is very doubtful; it is suggested that there may be a reference to the appearance of the antennae of certain beetles.

**befall** (*bē fawl'*), *v.t.* To happen to. *v.i.* To happen; to occur; to come to pass. (F. *arriver à*; *arriver*.)

When Jacob sent his sons into Egypt to buy corn, he would not allow Benjamin to go with them, "lest peradventure mischief befall him."

E. prefix *be-*, and *fall*. **SYN.**: Betide, happen, chance.

**befit** (*bē fit'*), *v.t.* To suit. (F. *convenir à*.)

A public man of high position should not only dress in a befitting (*bē fit' ing*, *adj.*) manner, but should do all things befittingly, (*bē fit' ing li*, *adv.*).

E. prefix *be-*, and *fit*.

**befog** (*bē fog'*), *v.t.* To wrap in a fog; to confuse; to mystify. (F. *envelopper d'un brouillard*; *mystifier*.)

To befog a person is to put him in a state of complete confusion of mind or misunderstanding.

E. prefix *be-*, and *fog*.

**befool** (*bē fool'*), *v.t.* To make a fool of; to delude; to deceive; to dupe. (F. *tromper*, *duper*.)

We may say that it is not easy to befool a wise or cautious man.

E. prefix *be-*, and *fool*.

**before** (*bē fōr'*), *prep.* In front of (space and time); in the presence of; in the knowledge of; in preference to. *adv.* Ahead; in front (space); in the past. *conj.* Rather than; sooner than; previous to the time when. (F. *devant*, *avant*; *avant*, *auparavant*; *avant que*.)

Here are some examples of the word "before" used as a preposition: Before him sound the drums; a man who carries everything before him; it is easy to be a lord if your father is one before you; before a large audience; the matter was before the Court. In the following sentence "before" is used as an adverb: "Not lost but gone before"; and is used as a conjunction in "Think before you speak."

The phrase before the mast, applies to sailors who have their quarters in the fore'sle, the portion of the ship in front of the

foremast, and before the wind means that the wind is directly behind. *B.C.* placed after a date is an abbreviation of Before Christ; thus 1000 *B.C.* means 1,000 years before the birth of Christ. A lawyer may write in a legal document the words *before-cited* (*adj.*) to denote something or someone mentioned in a previous part, or may call upon us to tell the truth before God, meaning in the sight of God. Referring to statements already made we may say the *before-going* (*adj.*) statements, or *before-mentioned* (*adj.*). To be *beforehand* (*adv.*) means to get there before someone else, and *beforetime* (*adv.*) means formerly, or in the olden times.

*M.E. biforen, A-S bi-foran, from be- = by, about, and foran (adv.) in front. SYN.: Above, ahead, before, formerly preceding. ANT.: After, behind, late, subsequently.*

**befoul** (be' foul'), *v.t.* To make foul or dirty, to stain, to soil. (*F. salir, souiller.*) Prefix *be-*, and *foul*.

**befriend** (be' friend'), *v.t.* To act as friend to, to help. (*F. traîner en ami, aider.*)

After his defeat at the battle of Culloden Moor (1746), Charles Edward Stuart, called the Young Pretender, was forced to flee for his life, but being befriended by Flora Macdonald, a brave Highland lady, he managed to escape to France.

Prefix *be-*, and *friend*.



Beg.—A Pomeranian dog begging while the puppy makes a bold attempt without success.

**beg** [1] (beg), *v.t.* To ask earnestly; to beseech. *v.i.* To ask alms. (*F. prier; implorer.*)

One begs another person's attention to some matter, or begs him to accept a present, and if one has offended him one may beg his pardon. To beg the question is to take for granted the thing to be proved. A prisoner begs the question if he pleads in defence that he is not the sort of person to have committed

the act with which he is charged, assuming an innocence which he has to prove.

Goods so little wanted that the seller has to beg people to buy them, or goods that cannot be sold at any price, are said to go a-begging. A person who makes a living by asking money for himself is a beggar (beg' ar, *n.*), but a good beggar means someone who is successful in collecting money for hospitals or other charities. To beggar (*v.t.*) is to reduce to a state of great poverty, which condition is called beggary (beg' ar i, *n.*). If a description of a scene seems poor beside the reality, the scene is said to beggar description. In the card game known as *beggar-my-neighbour* (*n.*), play lasts until one player has beggared the others by winning all their cards.

A beggarly (beg' ar li, *adj.*) existence is a mean or poverty-stricken life, and such a life, we say, is spent in beggarliness (beg' ar li nes, *n.*). A beggarly gift is a mean one, unworthy of the giver.

The verb, like the noun *beggar*, is probably derived from *O.F. begard, beghard, L.L. begardus. See Beghard. SYN.: Beseech, entreat, implore, solicit, supplicate. ANT.: Demand, insist.*

**beg** [2] (beg). This is another form of *bey*. See *bey*.

**begin** (be' gin'), *v.t.* This is the past tense of *begin*. See *begin*.

**beget** (be' get'), *v.t.* To cause to exist. (*F. engendrer, faire naître.*)

William Cowper uses the word in his poem, "The Task" (iv, 580): "Increase of power begets increase of wealth."

E prefix *be-*, and *get*.

**Beghard** (beg' ard), *n.* A member of a religious society, a mendicant order, established in Antwerp early in the thirteenth century. (*F. biguard.*)

The rules governing this society were similar to those covering the *Beguines*. The members employed themselves in making linen and cloth, but at any time they could return to the outer world.

*O.F. beghard*, from the name of the founder, Lambert le Begue. See *Beguine*.

**begin** (be' gin'), *v.t.* To arise; to enter on something new; to start. *v.i.* To open up; to enter on; to start off. (*F. commencer.*)

To begin with means to take first, or when used as an adverb means firstly. A beginner (be' gin' er, *n.*) is one who is learning or one who is the first to do anything. The first state of anything or the first cause is called the beginning (be' gin' ing, *n.*), and we find the word used so in Genesis (i, 1).

*A-S. beinnan, from be- and a suppletive innian to begin (obsolete now, compounds of which are common in Teut. languages, cp. G. beinmen. SYN.: Commence, enter upon, launch, open, start. ANT.: Close, finish, complete, conclude, end.*

**begirdle** (be' gird' l), *v.t.* To encircle like a girdle or belt. (*F. ceindre.*)

E prefix *be-*, and *girdle*. *SYN.: Circle, surround, encircle.*

**beglerbeg** (beg' lër beg), *n.* A title of various Oriental officials. *Beylerbey* (bā' lër bā) is another spelling. (F. *bégler-bey*.)

In the days of the old Ottoman Empire the governor of a province was called a *beglerbeg*. Algeria used to be governed by a Turkish *beglerbeg*. In Persia *beglerbeg* is the title of mayor or chief magistrate.

*Beyler-bey* is Turkish, literally meaning bey of beys.

**begone** (bè gawn'; bè gon'), *inter.* Go away; depart; get you gone. (F. *va t'en ! allez-vous-en*.)

An old song opens with the words: "Begone! dull care; I prithee, begone from me!"

From *be-* imperative=be thou, and *gone*, *p.p.* of *go*.

**begonia** (bè gō' ni à; bè gō' nyà), *n.* A genus of plants cultivated in English gardens. (F. *bégonia*.)



**Begonia.**—A flower without true petals. The *Begonia* was named after a Frenchman.

The *begonias* are natives of South America, India, and the East and West Indies. They are fleshy shrubs and herbs, with large leaves, often prettily marked, and so shaped that some species are known as elephant's ears. The brilliant flowers have no petals, their place being taken by the sepals.

The plant was so named as a compliment to Michel Begon (1638-1710), a French administrator much interested in natural science.

**begot** (bè got'). This is the past participle of *beget*. See *beget*.

**begrime** (bè grim'), *v.t.* To blacken or soil with grime. (F. *barbouiller, noircir*.)

E. prefix *be-*, and *grime*.

**begrudge** (be grūj'), *v.t.* To grudge; to envy (a person) the possession of. (F. *envier* à.)

A man who has failed in life may begrudge a successful man his prosperity. Sir Walter Scott uses the word in "The Talisman" (xvi, 151): "A gift that is begrudged is already recalled."

E. prefix *be-*, and *grudge*.

**beguile** (bè gil'), *v.t.* To deceive; to charm; to charm away. (F. *tromper, faire passer*.)

This word is used in both a good and a bad sense.

An amusing book beguiles a long railway journey. John Bunyan, the author of "The Pilgrim's Progress," beguiled the weary hours in Bedford jail by playing his flute. A notorious beguiler (bè gil' èr, *n.*) of innocent folk may attempt to hide his real character under the most beguiling (bè gil' ing, *adj.*) manners, but however beguilingly (bè gil' ing li, *adv.*) he may act, his beguilements (bè gil' mentz, *n.pl.*) should be shunned.

E. prefix *be-*, and *guile*. SYN.: Amuse, delude divert.

**Beguine** (bā gën'; beg' in), *n.* A member of a religious society for women founded by Lambert le Bègue about 1170. (F. *béguine*.)

The Society of *Beguines* did not forbid its members to return to the outer world, if they so wished. It prohibited begging, and encouraged its members to support themselves by the work of their hands. The house where such members or sisters lived was called the *beguinage* (bā gē nash'; beg' in àj, *n.*).

**begum** (bè' gūm), *n.* A lady of high rank, a queen or princess, in India (F. *bégun*.) *Begum* is a Pers. word, the feminine of the Turkish *beg* (*bey*).

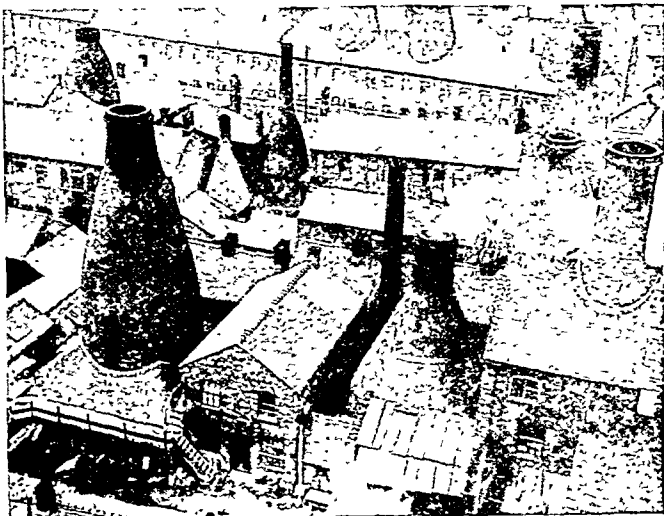
**begun** (bè gun'). This is the past participle of *begin*. See *begin*.

**behalf** (bè haf'), *n.* Interest; stead. (F. *en faveur, au nom de*.) We say that we act on behalf of a person, or on his behalf. Both expressions mean in the interest of.

M.E. *on mi behalfe* at my side, from A.-S. *bi by, healf* half, side (the oldest sense)

**behave** (bè hāv'), *v.i.* To act; to conduct one's self. (F. *se conduire*.)

When we say a person knows how to behave we usually mean that he is well-behaved (*adj.*), that he shows good



**Begrime.**—Smoke in the Potteries district of Staffordshire begrimes the houses. Some 2,500,000 tons of soot escape from the chimneys of the British Isles every year and are sent broadcast over the country.

manners. This behaviour (*bè hā' vyēr, n.*) is his manner towards, or treatment of, other people. A motor-car may be said to behave well or badly, and the behaviour of a ship in a rough sea may be splendid or alarming.

Prefix *be-* = *by*, and *have*, in the sense of having or keeping under control.

**behead** (*bè hed'*), *v.t.* To cut the head off. (*F. décapiter.*)

The mode of putting criminals to death by beheading them is said to have been introduced into England by William the Conqueror, but it was usually reserved for offenders of high rank. The last person beheaded in England was Simon, Lord Lovat, who, in 1747, was executed for having taken part in the Jacobite rebellion. Beheadings (*bè hed' ingz, n.pl.*) were carried out in public, usually on Tower Hill, London, but Charles I was beheaded in Whitehall.

During the reign of Tarquinius Superbus, (534-510 B.C.), the last legendary king of Rome, the town of Gabi revolted. The king's son, Sextus, managed to enter the town by pretending that he was fleeing from his father's cruelties, and when he had won the confidence of the townsfolk, he sent a message to his father, asking what he should do next.

The king said not a word to the messenger, but, walking up his garden, he cut off the heads of the tallest poppies with his sick. At last the messenger grew tired of waiting for an answer, so he went to Sextus and told him what had happened, and Sextus, who immediately understood his father's unspoken advice, commanded that all the chief men of the city should be beheaded. This story is obviously taken from one in Herodotus (iii, 151) relating the capture of Babylon by Zopyrus by a similar stratagem.

M.E. *bekēydan*, A.-S. *bekēafdan* from *be-* implying removal, *lēafol* head

**beheld** (*bè held'*). This is the past tense and past participle of behold. *Se' behold*

**behemoth** (*bè'he moth; bè hē' moth, n.*). An animal described in the Bible in the Book of Job (xl, 15-24). (*F. béhémoth.*)

The animal is not mentioned anywhere else in Scripture, but it is thought to be the hippopotamus. The word is sometimes used figuratively for any huge beast.

The Heb. word is supposed to be of Egyptian origin, meaning water-ox.

**behest** (*bè hest'*), *n.* A command; an order. (*F. commandement, ordre.*)

The word is used in a well-known hymn: "The darkness falls at Thy behest."

M.E. *bēhian*, A.-S. *bēhian*, verbal *n.* from *bēhitan* from prefix *be-* = *by* and *hitan* to command. *Syn.*: Imposition, charge, precept.

**behind** (*bè hind'*), *prep.* On the further side of, at the back of; in the rear of; inferior to. *adv.* At the back; backwards; in reserve. *n.* The back part of a person, animal, or partment. (*F. derrière, en arrière, de derrière, derrière*)

The band of a regiment goes in front, the rest of the men march behind it, or follow behind. Things said behind one's back are said out of one's hearing and without one's knowledge. In a theatre the actors, when not on the stage, are said to be behind the scenes, meaning the scenery which forms a background to the stage. We say a person is behind the scenes if he is in a position to gain special knowledge of private matters, and that someone with old-fashioned ideas is behind the times.

M.E. *behinden*, A.-S. *behindan*, from *be-* = *by* in, *indan* at the back, rear. *Syn.*: Back, astern, rearward. *Ant.*: Before, in front of.



Behind.—Behind the scenes at a theatre.

**behold** (*bè höld'*), *v.t.* To have in sight; to look carefully at; to see. *v.i.* To look. (*F. voir, regarder.*)

The original meaning of the word was to hold something in sight, and to keep one's eyes fixed on it. A beholder (*bè höld' er, n.*) is a looker-on, a spectator. A person beholden (*bè höld' en, adj.*) to another is indebted or bound by gratitude, to him.

M.E. *behaldden*, A.-S. *bihæaldan*, from prefix *be-* and *halddan* to hold, keep in sight. *Syn.*: Descry, discern, gaze, regard, view. *Ant.*: Ignore, disregard.

**behoof** (*bè hoof'*), *n.* Advantage; use; benefit; profit. (*F. avantage, profit.*)

A rich, selfish man may be said to devote all his money to his own behoof. The word is often wrongly used in the sense of behalf.

M.E. *to bihēfe, bihēce* (*Li*) for the use of, A.-S. *bēhfe*, from prefix *be-* and *hōf*, verbal *n.* from *hētan* to have, take up. See *have*. The original meaning appears to be to grasp, hence to keep and use. The word is ultimately connected with *Li*, *capture* to take. *Syn.*: Advantage, benefit, profit, use. *Ant.*: Detriment, disadvantage, loss.

**behoove** (*bè hōv'*), *v.t.* To behoove. *v.i.* To be needful to. Behoove (*bè hōov'*) is another spelling of the word. (*F. il convient, il faut.*)

In the Bible we read: "And thus it behoved Christ to suffer" (St. Luke xiv, 26). A.-S. *bēhōvian*, from *bēhōf* behoof.

**beige** (bāzh), *n.* A material made of undyed or unbleached wool. (F. *beige*.)

There is also a pinkish-fawn colour called beige, which is very fashionable amongst ladies for dress fabrics.

O.F. *bise*, F. *bis*, Ital. *bigio*, L.L. *bisus* grey. It is suggested that the word may be a shortened form of *bombycinus* of cotton.

**being** (bē'ing), *n.* Existence; a person or thing which exists. *adj.* In existence. (F. *être*, *existence*; *existant*, *en existence*.)

A fleet is said to be in being when it is mobilized for war and able to fight. A beaten and captured fleet ceases to be in being, but one that scatters to fight again is still in being—has not been finally disposed of, and is still a danger, though perhaps not so for the time being, or at the moment. God is the Supreme Being.

*Be* and suffix *-ing*, forming verbal *n.* of action. SYN.: Actuality, existence, life, reality.

**Beja** (bē zha), *n.* Nomad tribes of north-east Africa.

The Bejas or Nubians belong to the Hamitic race. They are dark-skinned, fuzzy-headed people, very different from negroes. The Bejas who live between the Red Sea and the Nile are brown or chocolate in colour, have fine, handsome features, and slender elegant forms. Divided into tribes, such as Bisharin and Hadendowa, they are a pastoral, wandering people, savage in nature.



Beja.—A Beja or Nubian girl of the northern Sudan.

**bekko-ware** (bek'ō wär), *n.* A Chinese pottery, delicately veined with colour like tortoiseshell.

Japanese *bekko* tortoiseshell.

**belabour** (bē lā' bōr), *v.t.* To beat soundly; to thrash. (F. *rosser*.)

An unmerciful driver belabours his horse when it is tired or overloaded, to make it go faster.

E. prefix *be-*, and *labour*.

**belated** (bē lā tēd), *adj.* Late. (F. *attardé*.)

A good host is not annoyed with a belated guest. He is sorry that his friend has been prevented from arriving in good time, and sympathizes with him for his belatedness (bē lā' tēd nēs, *n.*).

E. prefix *be-*, and *lated*, p.p. of an old verb (*be*)late.

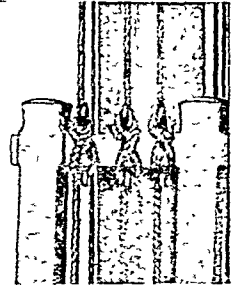
**belaud** (bē lawd'), *v.t.* To praise greatly or excessively. (F. *louer outre mesure*.)

E. prefix *be-*, and *laud*.

**belay** (bē lā'), *v.t.* To make a rope fast, by giving it several turns round a cleat or pin. (F. *amarrer*.)

When a running rope aboard ship is being hauled on, the men are ordered to belay or make it fast, when the hauling has gone far enough. In such a case, stopping and belaying mean much the same thing. The sailor's "Belay there!" shouted at someone else, therefore means simply "Stop!"

A belaying-pin (bē lā'ing pin, *n.*) is a strong, movable iron pin fitting in a socket on a mast or the ship's side for belaying ropes to. In tales of the sea a belaying pin is often mentioned as a useful weapon during a scuffle.



Belaying-pin. — Three belaying-pins for belaying or fastening ropes are shown.

A.-S. *beleggan*; from prefix *be-* and *lay* (cp. G. *belegen*). The nautical use is perhaps from Dutch *beleggen*.

**belch** (belch), *v.t.* To throw out violently; to eject. *v.i.* To issue forcibly from. *n.* A burst of flame or smoke; the sound of a gun or volcano. (F. *éructer*; *roter*; *vomissement*.)

We may say that the belch of a gun warned us that the volcano was already belching forth ashes and lava.

M.E. *belken*, A.-S. *bealcian*.

**beldam** (bel' dām), *n.* An old woman; a hag; a witch; a grandmother or more remote ancestress. Another spelling of the word is *beldame*. (F. *vieille femme*, *sorcière*.)

Though beldam is used when speaking of an ill-favoured, ugly woman, the original meaning of the word was "fair lady or dame". The poet Milton employs the word figuratively in its remote ancestress sense in "Vacation Exercise" (xlvi): "When beldam Nature in her cradle was."

F. *belle dame*, L. *bella domina* fair lady. SYN.: Hag, virago, witch.

**beleaguer** (bē lē' gēr), *v.t.* To surround with an army so as to prevent escape; to besiege; to invest; to blockade. (F. *investir*, *assiéger*.)

When an army cannot capture a city by attack, it has to make use of a terrible ally—famine. If the beleaguering (bē lē' gēr mēt, *n.*) or siege be carried on long enough, the city will have to surrender sooner or later.

Dutch *beleggen* to camp round; cp. prefix *be-* and the old word *leaguer* camp (cp. G. *lager*).

**belemnite** (bel'ēm nīt), *n.* The internal skeleton of an extinct variety of cuttle-fish; the mollusc itself. (F. *belemnite*.)

It was a very large creature with ten arms provided with hooks for grasping its victims. The general name for this variety of cuttle-fish is *belemnioidea* (bel'ēm nōi' de ā, *n.pl.*).

Gr. *belemnōn* dart, and E. scientific suffix *-ite* connected with, belonging to.



**belfry** (bel' fri), *n.* A tower, especially that of a church, in which bells are hung; the space for bells in a tower or steeple. (*F. beffroi.*)

Originally this word had nothing to do with bells. Some centuries ago a belfry was a wooden tower on wheels used to protect the besiegers of a castle or town.

M.E. *belfrai* O.F. *berfrois*, L.L. *berfredus*, *berfredus*, from Teut.; cp *G. bergfriede*, *berfried*, from *berien* to place in security, and *fride* peace, protection.

**Belgian** (bel' ji an, bel' jan), *adj.* Of Belgium. *n.* A native of Belgium. (*F. belge; Belge.*)

In 1914 the German armies marched into Belgian territory, thus committing an act of war against the Belgians. As an adjective *Belgic* (bel' jik) means of the ancient Belgae, a people of northern France, and also of Belgium. Caesar, who fought them, said they were the bravest of the Gauls.

**Belial** (bē' li al), *n.* The Devil. (*F. Belial, Satan.*)

In the Old Testament the word is not a proper name, but simply signifies what is good-for-nothing or utterly worthless. In the New Testament, as the personification of all that is bad (II Corinthians vi, 15) it is applied to Satan. In "Paradise Lost" it is the name of a fallen angel. A lawless, worthless fellow is a son of Belial, or a man of Belial.

Heb. *beli* without, *va'al* use, profit.

**belie** (be li'), *v.t.* To give the lie to; to tell lies of; to misrepresent. *Pres.p.* belying (be li' ing), *p.p.* belied (be lid'). (*F. démentir, calomnier.*)

If a man preaches what is good, but himself leads a bad life, his actions are said to belie his words.

A.-S. *belājan* to calumniate, from prefix *be-* and *lie*.

**believe** (be lēv'), *v.t.* To put trust in; to have confidence in; to accept a statement of anything or by a person. *v.i.* To think; to have faith. (*F. croire.*)

A person will say, "Yes, I believe that," when he means that he accepts the story which has been told him, or that he accepts as true something about which others have been talking and of which he has no direct evidence. When a child says he believes in fairies he means that he has faith that fairies really exist.

One person believes in another when he put trust in his honesty, or relies upon him.

To make believe is to act or to pretend. A child may make believe he is a Red Indian when he is playing in a wood, or he may make believe that he is not nervous when he is in the dark, though he really is afraid.

A small child has a belief (bē lēf, *n.*) in the existence of Father Christmas, a Christian has a belief in the power of prayer. The acceptance of the existence of God and a next world is belief, and another name for the Apostles' Creed is the Belief.

Anything which can be believed is said to be believable (bē lēv' ābl, *adj.*) and to have the quality of believable-ness (bē lēv' ābl nēs, *n.*), while a person who believes a statement, or becomes a convert to Christianity, or is already a Christian, is called a believer (bē lēv' er, *n.*).

Sometimes we refer to a person as a true believer when we mean he accepts the Christian belief. He is said to be a believing (bē lēv' ing, *adj.*) person when he accepts most things told him. He speaks believably (bē lēv' ing li, *adv.*) about anything when he speaks as though he had great faith in it, or is thoroughly convinced he is right.

M.E. *beloven*, from A.-S. (*ge*)*liefan*, from prefix *be-* (in place of older *ge-*) and the root

of *lief*, and *love*, the original meaning being probably to hold dear or valuable, to be satisfied with.

**belike** (be lik'), *adj.* Likely; perhaps; possibly. (*F. vraisemblablement; peut-être.*)

Shakespeare uses the word in his play, "Two Gentlemen of Verona" (iii, 1): "Belike, boy, then you are in love."

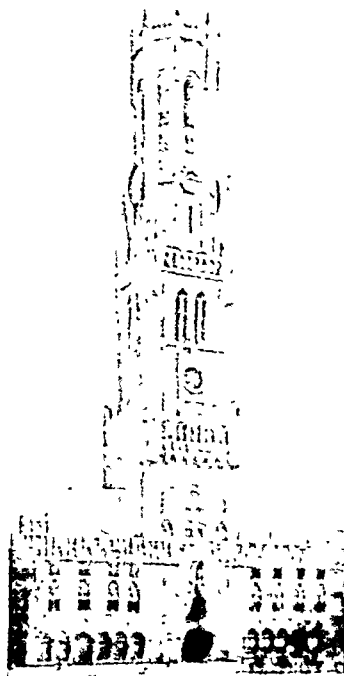
*Be-*—by, and *like*, here apparently a noun: *ly*, according to what is like or likely. *Syn.*: Perhaps, possibly, probably. *Ant.*: Improbable.

**belittle** (be lit' l), *v.t.* To make little of; to disparage; to depreciate; to sneer at. (*F. faire peu de cas de, déprécier.*)

A man may leap off London Bridge and save a boy from drowning. In most people's eyes this would be an heroic act, but jealous people might try to belittle it, by saying that the feat was not so dangerous as it looked because the man was a very fine swimmer and that there would have been plenty of other help if needed.

The word appears to have arisen in America, where it is used in the literal sense, hardly known in England, of making small, or dwarfing.

*E. prefix be-, and little.*



Belfry.—The belfry at Bruges, in Belgium. Within is a chime of forty-eight bells.

# BELLS AT HOME AND ABROAD

*England's Largest Bell is a Baby compared to the Tsar Kolokol at Moscow*

**bell** (bel), *n.* A cup-shaped body of cast metal giving forth a single clear musical note when struck by a hammer or clapper. *v.t.* To supply with a bell. *v.i.* To roar as a stag; to grow in the form of bells. (*F. cloche; attacher une cloche à; croître en forme de cloche.*)

It is not known when the first bells were used, but it must have been many hundreds of years ago, long before the tenth century, when they first came to be made in England. Small hand-bells were used in the East, centuries earlier, for calling the gods to feasts, and such bells were in common use among the early Greeks and Romans.

There is no doubt that church-bells were used in France as early as the second half of the sixth century, and soon after this they were introduced into England. Like the pen, bells have at least once proved themselves mightier than the sword, the occasion being the siege of Sens in 610, by Clotaire II, who was so surprised and alarmed by the ringing of the church bells that he raised the siege.

The largest bell in the world is the Tsar Kolokol at Moscow. It was cast in 1733, and weighs about 220 tons, but has never been used, having been broken in the making. Another Moscow bell, the largest in actual use, weighs more than 110 tons. In a pagoda at Burma there is a bell weighing 87 tons, the largest in perfect condition in the world. Among the largest bells in England, all small, however, in comparison, are Great Paul in St. Paul's Cathedral and Big Ben in the clock tower at Westminster. The former weighs 17 tons, and the latter 13½ tons.

Bells are hung in a bell-turret (*n.*) or bell-gable (*n.*), which, when of small size, is known as a bell-cot (*n.*) or bell-cote (*n.*), but in churches and other public buildings the part of the tower or steeple in which the bells are hung is called a belfry. Often the bell-tower (*n.*) is a separate building called a campanile, famous examples being the towers at Chichester and Pisa, and by St. Mark's, Venice.

**Bell-founding** (*n.*) or the manufacture of bells, in which a special bell-metal (*n.*), composed of an alloy of copper and tin is used, has been practised in England for many centuries, a bell-foundry (*n.*) at Whitechapel, London,

being one of the oldest in the country. If the art of the bell-founder (*n.*) goes back a long way, that of the bell-hanger (*n.*) and the bell-ringer (*n.*) is, of course, equally old. In bell-hanging (*n.*) it has long been the custom to hang together a number of bells of different pitch, so that the ringer can play the "chimes" or simple tunes on them.

At one time all church bells were rung by pulling a bell-rope (*n.*), but to-day chiming is often done by machinery. The old type of house bell was rung by means of a bell-pull (*n.*) of iron or rope, but far fewer of that type of bell are now seen, electric bells having largely replaced them. Sometimes on

account of the position of these old-style bells, it was necessary to employ a bell-crank (*n.*), an L-shaped lever which enabled one bell wire to have its motion carried to another.

Various compound words have bell as their first part. Thus we speak of a bell-shaped (*adj.*) flower, bell-bottomed (*adj.*) trousers, like British sailors wear, a bell-glass (*n.*), a glass shaped like a bell and placed over flowers as a protection, and a bell-wether (*n.*), the leader of a flock of sheep, who wears a bell.

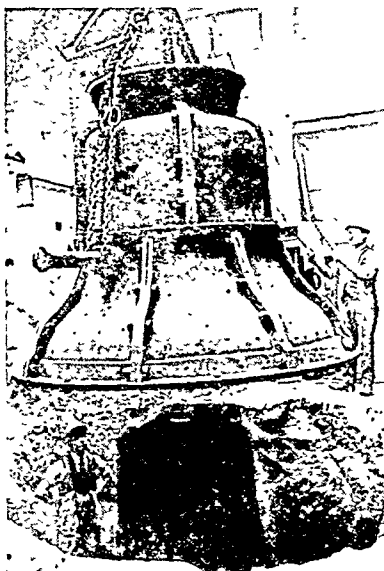
We often say a thing is as sound as a bell or as clear as a bell, when we mean it is, perfect or without a flaw, and when we use the phrase to bell the cat we mean to be a leader in a dangerous enterprise, the allusion being to the

mice in the fable who suggested placing a bell round the cat's neck so that they might hear him coming.

On board ship time is divided into seven periods, or watches, of from two to four hours each, and every half-hour of a watch is signalled by striking a bell, the first being one bell, the second two bells, and so on.

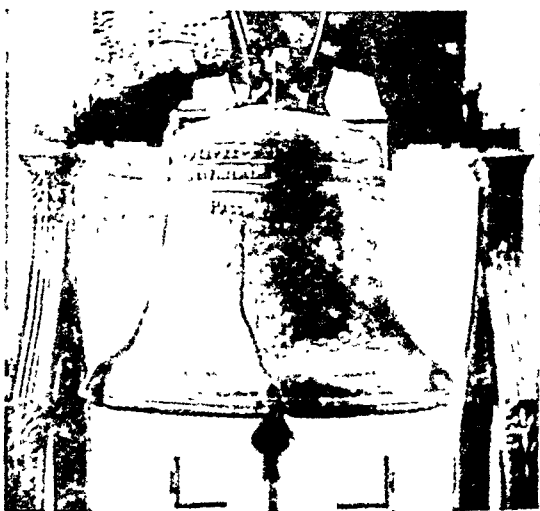
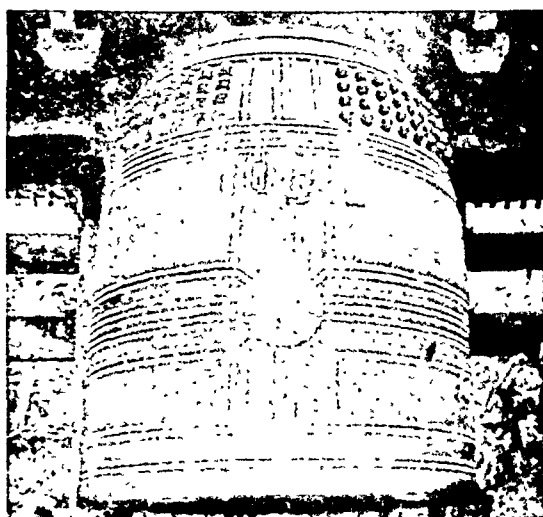
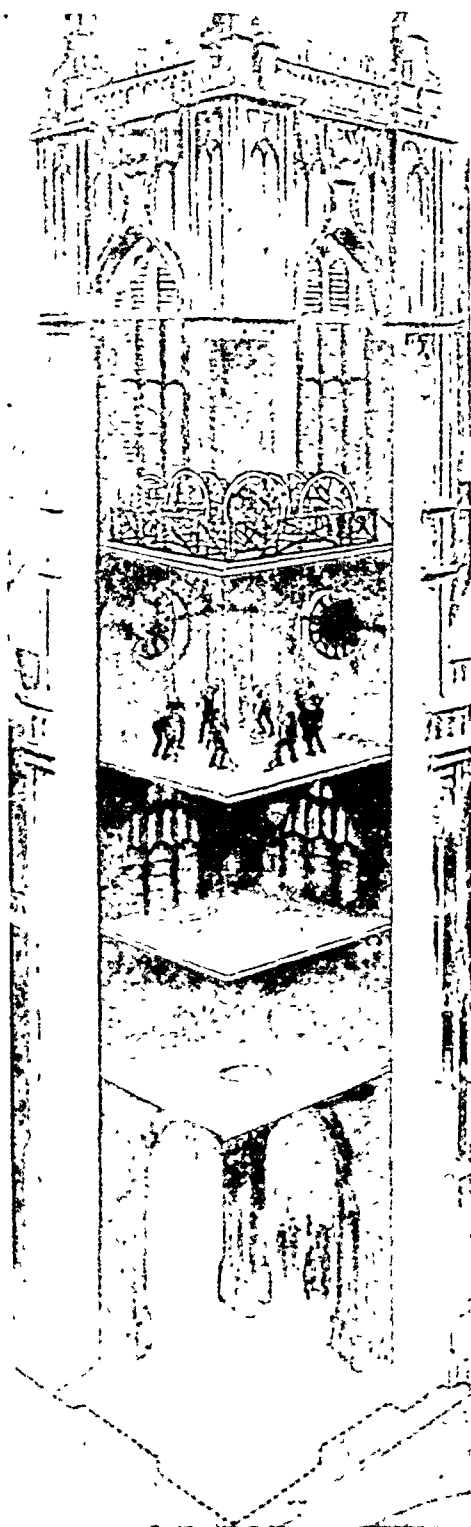
Bells have been used to call worshippers to church or citizens to assemblies, to invite to prayer at a fixed hour (Angelus), at the consecration of the Host (Sanctus), when a person is dying (passing bell), or at a death; to celebrate victories, festivals, and weddings, to give notice that lights must be put out (curfew), or that fire or enemies threaten the city (tocsin, alarum).

M.E. and A.-S. *bell*, perhaps from A.-S. *bellan* to bellow, bell, with reference to its noisiness.



**Bell-founding.**—The mould of a bell being lowered into the baked mud core, round which the molten metal is poured.

# A COLLECTION OF SOME OF THE WORLD'S MOST FAMOUS BELLS



Bell. On the left is the Bell-tower of Westminster Abbey. At the top is Big Ben, of the Houses of Parliament. Beneath is the world's largest suspended bell. It is at Kyoto, in Japan, and weighs sixty-three tons. The cracked bell is the Liberty Bell of Philadelphia, U.S.A.

**belladonna** (bel à don' à), *n.* The deadly-nightshade; a drug prepared from the root, of the plant. (F. *belladone*.)

The belladonna (*Atropa belladonna*), or "lovely lady," as it is called, has berries of a dark purple colour and sweet to the taste. These, like the rest of the plant, are very poisonous.

The drug called atropine obtained from it has, however, many uses. One of them is to expand the pupil of the eye when the inside of the eye has to be examined. A drop of atropine causes the pupil to remain wide open for a long time. It was used by Italian ladies as a cosmetic for putting on the eyes.

**bell-bird** (bel' bērd), *n.* A genus of South American birds.

They are named from their call, a resounding metallic note repeated a number of times at short intervals. The scientific name is *Chasmorhynchus niveus*.

E. *bell* and *bird*.

**bell-buoy** (bel' boi), *n.* A floating object which warns sailors of danger.

Bell-buoys have a cage, above the water, within which is a bell that is set ringing by the waves.

E. *bell* and *buoy*.

**belle** (bel), *n.* A beautiful girl or woman.

The word is the feminine of beau, the French for beautiful. The belle of a party means the most beautiful woman present.

**belles-lettres** (bel letr'), *n. pl.* Literature that calls for taste and imagination, and not for knowledge only. (F. *belles-lettres*.)

Belles-lettres is the French for fine letters or literature. A text-book on physics, or any other book that sets out to be very accurate without any claims to artistic excellence, is not an example of belles-lettres, but a finely written poem or romance is. A great poet might be called a belletrist (bel let' rist, *n.*), and his writings might be described as belletristic (bel let ris' tik, *adj.*), but these clumsy words are deservedly seldom used.

**bell-flower** (bel' flou ér), *n.* A genus of flowering plants, having the petals united in a cup-shaped corolla, usually blue; a campanula. (F. *campanule*, *clochette*.)

The harebell or bluebell of Scotland and the Canterbury bell are two of the best-known bell-flowers, of which there are about 250 species. They belong to the campanula family, and are mostly perennials.

E. *bell* and *flower*.

**bellicose** (bel' i kōz), *adj.* Warlike; fond of fighting. (F. *belliqueux*.)

The word is literary, and not much used in common speech. **Bellicosity** (bel i kos' i ti, *n.*) is inclination to war or fighting.

*L. bellicosus*, from *L. bellum* war, suffix *-osus* full of, fond of. **SYN.**: Contentious, pugnacious, quarrelsome, warlike. **ANT.**: Gentle, mild, pacific, peaceable, unwarlike.

**belligerent** (bè lij' ér ènt), *adj.* Waging war. *n.* A nation or person engaged in war. (F. *belligérent*; *puissance belligérente*.)

A belligerent nation is not merely a nation in a state of war, but one fighting another nation, according to the rules of the law of nations. A country or group of persons rebelling against its lawful government is not a belligerent, unless it can set up an orderly government recognized as such by neutral states, and wages war in a civilized way. Its belligerency (bè lij' ér èn si, *n.*) or belligerent condition, may be then admitted.

*L. belligerare* (pres. *p. belligerans*, acc. *-ant -em*) to wage war, from *bellum* war, *gerere* to carry on. **SYN.**: Antagonistic, contending, hostile, warlike. **ANT.**: Friendly, pacific, peaceful.

**bellite** (bel' it), *n.* An explosive made from nitrate of ammonia and nitro-benzene. (F. *bellite*.)

Many high explosives have to be handled very carefully. Bellite, which is several times more powerful than gunpowder, cannot be exploded by a shock. It is therefore safe to transport without excessive precautions.

Said to be named after its inventor, Bell.

**bellman** (bel' mán), *n.* A public crier who rings a bell to attract the attention of the people, a town crier; formerly also a night-watchman. (F. *crieur public*, *crieur de nuit*.) See town-crier.

E. *bell* and *man*.

**Bellona** (bel lõ' ná), *n.* The Roman goddess of war. (F. *Bellone*.)

There was a temple to Bellona outside the city of Rome, and in front of it there was a special pillar from which a spear was thrown whenever a declaration of war was made. The word is sometimes used for a woman of a stern, determined character. Sir Walter Scott in "The Abbott," says: "Her features inflamed, and resembling those of a

Bellona." The priests who were called upon to perform the rites connected with the worship of the goddess were called Bellonarii.

*L. bellum* war; for similar formations *cp. Pomōna*, the goddess of fruit, *Epōna*, the goddess of horses.



**Belladonna.**—The berries of this plant, often called the deadly nightshade, are very poisonous.



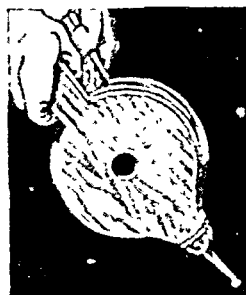
**Bell-flower.**—*Campanula isophylla*, one of the numerous bell-flowers.

**bellow** (bel' ō), *v.i.* To make a loud noise like the cry of a bull; to bawl; to roar (as with pain). *v.t.* To shout (words) at the top of one's voice. *n.* The cry of a bull or any similar noise. (*F. beugler, vocifer; beuglement.*)

Figuratively, lifeless things, like cannon, thunder the wind or the sea may be said to bellow.

M.E. *belan*, A.-S. *bylgian*, perhaps akin to A.-S. *bellan* to roar, bell; cp. G. *bellen* to bark, clamour.

**bellows** (bel' ōz), *n.pl.* An instrument for giving a strong blast of air. (*F. soufflet.*)



Bellows.—A small fire bellows.

This is a plural word, although now used for a single thing. It is curious that the word bellows was formerly the singular of belly, which meant "a bag." A pair of bellows, or a bellows, consists in its simple form of a kind of bag which is alternately compressed and expanded by two boards forming its

upper and lower sides. Air is drawn in through a valve and driven out through a pipe or nozzle.

Bellows may be worked by hand, as the small fire bellows, those in a smithy, or the hand-pumped organ bellows; or by foot, as the bellows used for glass blowing; or by steam or electric power. The word is also used for the extending portion of a photographic camera.

Many modern organs are so powerful that they are blown entirely by mechanical means, and in some the bellows have given place to electrically driven rotary blowers, as is the case with the magnificent instruments in St. Paul's cathedral and Liverpool cathedral. Both these stages marked an amazing improvement, for in the early days of organ building many bellows were provided, and they were usually so small that a man could work two of them.

Probably one of the first organs for which a steam engine was used to work the bellows was that in St. George's Hall, Liverpool, although for a time its efforts had to be assisted by hand-pumped bellows because some of the large pipes required more wind than the engine could provide. The bellows of the organ in the Alexandra Palace, London, are situated in the basement, and feed no fewer than twenty-four reservoirs in the instrument itself.

M.E. *belh*, *belh*, *belh* *pl.* *belh*, *belh*, A.-S. *belh*, *belh*, *belh*. The A.-S. for bellows is *belh*, *belh*, *belh* *pl.* cp. G. *bell* *pl.*

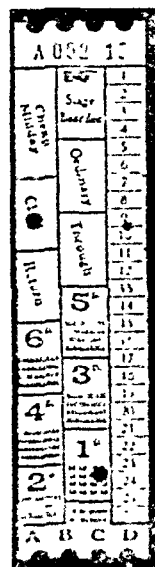
**bell-punch** (bel' pan h), *n.* A device for punching holes in travel tickets. (*F. soufflet* *pl.* *pl.*)

Everyone who has ridden in a tramcar or omnibus has seen a bell-punch in use. The conductor places a ticket in a narrow slot, and presses down the punch, or cutter which makes a hole in the ticket. The old kind of bell-punch rang a bell to notify the passenger that the hole had been made, whence the name. The hole in the ticket is to inform the passenger to what place or stage of the journey his fare entitles him to travel.

Some bell-punches have a space into which the disks, or pieces punched from the tickets fall; this enables a check to be taken of the number of passengers carried and the amount of the fares paid.

An improved type of bell-punch, in which a different button is pressed for each fare value, does away with the need for carrying a variety of different coloured tickets. The tickets are in the form of a roll inside the machine, and the pressure on any one of a number of buttons punches three holes in the ticket, showing the class of ticket issued, the stage at which the vehicle was boarded, and the amount of fare paid. In addition, the machine records the number of tickets of each class and value issued, and also the total number of tickets sold.

E. bell and punch.



Bell-punch. This bell-punch not only delivers tickets, but records the class of ticket issued, the fare paid, and other particulars.



**belly** (bel' i), *n.* The lower part of the front of the human body; the corresponding part in quadrupeds and birds; the stomach and bowel, or the stomach only; a bulging front surface, as of a violin. *i.e.* To bulge or swell out, like a sail. (*F. ventre; pl. ventres.*)

The hold of a ship and the bulging part of a jar or bottle may be called the belly. In driving harness a belly-band *bel* is a strap attached to the saddle which passes under the horse's belly to hold the shaft down. It is usually a strip of canvas or leather, the middle



**Below.**—This remarkable photograph shows a penguin diving below the water to seize a fish.

to give extra strength. A bellying (bel' i ing, *adj.*) sail is one swollen by the force of the wind.

M.E. *bely*, A.-S. *baelig*, *belg*, originally meaning bag. The word, a doublet of bellows, is common to Teut. languages.

**belong** (bè long'), *v.i.* Only used with *to*. To be owned or possessed (by); to have a relation (to) or connexion (with); to be a part, quality. or concern (of). (F. *appartenir à*.)

The dog belongs to the same family as the wolf. When a man has bought a dog it belongs to him as his property, but the dog's collar belongs to the dog as something connected with it. Authority belongs to kingship. Shakespeare belonged to Stratford-on-Avon. Things that belong to one are one's belongings (bè long' ingz, *n.pl.*), and some times we call our relatives belongings.

When the great Trojan hero Aeneas escaped from Troy he took with him some of his most precious belongings. On his back he carried his aged father Anchises with the household gods, and his son Ascanius he led by the hand out of the fallen city.

E. prefix *be-* and *long*, an old verb meaning to pertain, from O.E. *gelang* dependent on, "along of."

**beloved** (bè luv' éd; bè lüvd'), *p.p., adj.* Greatly loved; very dear. *n.* One greatly loved. (F. *bien aimé*.)

As a *p.p.* the word is generally pronounced bè lüvd, and is a survival of the otherwise obsolete verb *belove*. Thus we may say: "She was beloved by all her children." With the *adj.* the old pronunciation bè luv' éd is more usual, because it is chiefly used in religious or grave and serious language, as in the Prayer Book exhortation, "Dearly beloved brethren." Otherwise beloved is often used in a rather sarcastic manner, as "he returned to his beloved newspaper."

E. prefix *be-* and *loved*.

**below** (bè lō'), *prep.* Lower in position than; inferior to in quality, price, value, etc.; under; beneath. *adv.* In a lower place. (F. *au dessous de*; *en bas*.)

To speak below one's breath is to speak in a whisper. The cry "Below!" from a place aloft is to warn people underneath or to draw their attention. The note, "See below," in a book means look lower on the page, or further on in the book. Here below is here on earth. When we say that we feel below par we mean that our health is lower than its usual standard.

E. prefix *be-* and *low*. *SYN.*: Beneath, under, underneath. *ANT.*: Above, aloft, on high.

**belt** (belt), *n.* A girdle for the waist; a band encircling anything; a strip crossing a surface; a zone. *v.t.* To encircle or mark with a belt; to thrash with a belt. (F. *ceinture*, *bande de cuir*; *ceindre*.)

As an article of dress a belt is usually of leather or some stiff material. To hit below the belt, a phrase taken from boxing, is to act unfairly in fighting or argument. A belt is also an endless band or strap for driving machinery. The belt of Saturn consists of its rings.

Often, however, the word belt does not imply that the object encircles anything, but merely that it is much longer than it is broad. Thus we speak of "a belt of trees"; "the totality belt of an eclipse," the strip of land and water over which complete darkness falls; a belt of cartridges for a machine-gun is a band of tape to which they are fixed. Two straits in the Baltic are called the Great and Little Belts. Belted (bel' ted, *adj.*), means wearing a belt; or surrounded with a belt.

Bands for transmitting a turning motion from an engine to a machine or from one part of a machine to another are known collectively as belting (bel' ting, *n.*). It is employed where the distance is too great for

the use of toothed wheels. It runs on pulleys at speeds up to a mile a minute. Most belting is made of leather or woven cotton.

Belts of thin and very flexible steel cannot stretch like other belts, and may be prevented from slipping by magnetizing the pulleys. Heavy cotton belting supported on rollers provides a quick method of moving material between two places not very far apart. If faced with rubber, it will withstand for a long time the wear and tear of carrying coal, ore, and other heavy substances.

**M.E. and A.-S. belt.** The word, borrowed from *L. beltus*, is common in Teut. languages.

**Beltane** (bel' tăn), *n.* An ancient Celtic festival held on May Day to celebrate the beginning of summer.

In the Scottish Highlands, Ireland, and Brittany there are still traces of the festival. Until the nineteenth century fires were lighted on Old May Day, that is, the First of May reckoned by the unreformed calendar, twelve days before the true date. The first description of Beltane, written about A.D. 900 in Ireland, tells how people and cattle were driven between two blazing fires, because it was thought that fire gave health.

Gael. *bealltainn*, Irish *bealltaine*, of unknown origin. The popular explanation, "fire of, Bel or Baal," is baseless.

**belt-filler** (belt' fil' ēr), *n.* An apparatus for filling machine-gun belts with fresh cartridges.

Some machine-guns, the Vickers, for example, are fed with cartridges by means of a belt, which has on it a large number of equally spaced loops, each carrying a cartridge. The gun plucks the cartridges from the belt in succession and fires them. An empty belt is quickly recharged by the filler.

**E. belt and filler.**



**Beluga.**—The white whale, which shares with the great sturgeon the name of beluga.

**beluga** (b- loo' gi), *n.* The great sturgeon; the white whale. (*F. beluga*.)

The great or hansen sturgeon (*Acipenser hus*) is a large fish, sometimes 24 ft. long and weighing about 2,000 lb., found in the Caspian and Black Seas, and the large rivers flowing into them. The white whale (*D. phocaena*), which reaches a length of from 15 to 21 ft., belongs to the dolphin family. It is found in herds in the northern seas and estuaries, and is hunted for the valuable oil obtained from it. *Am. beluga*, a term for white.

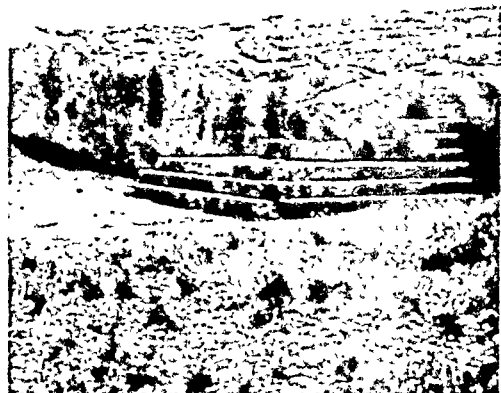
**Am. beluga**, a term for white.

**belvedere** (bel ve dēr'), *n.* A building or part of a building from which a view can be seen. (*F. belvédère*.)

Usually a belvedere is a turret perched high on a building, or else an open gallery; affording a view of the surrounding country. The name is also given to a summer-house built on a piece of high ground. The Court of the Belvedere in the Vatican at Rome gave its name to the famous old statue known as the Apollo Belvedere.

Ital. beautiful view or sight, from *bel*(lo) beautiful, *vedere* to see, from *L. bellus* and *videre*.

**belying** (bē li' ing), *n.* The act of uttering untruths about one; denial. *Sic behe*.



**Bema.**—The hill of the Poros at Athens, showing the remains of the bema from which Greek orators spoke.

**bema** (bē' mā), *n.* A platform from which Greek orators spoke; the inner end of the chancel of an early Christian church, the sanctuary. (*F. bēma*.)

The general assemblies of the Athenians were held in the open air near the Areopagus. The speakers addressed the people from the bema, a platform cut out of the rock, still to be seen. It resembled our hustings. In the Roman basilica, or law-court, the judges sat in a semicircular recess at one end, named the bema.

An early Christian church, also called basilica, had a recess of the same shape and same name, and in it the altar was placed. It was ascended by steps, which still separate the sanctuary from the rest of a church.

Gr. *Uima*, from *Uimen* to go, mount.

**bemoan** (be mēn'), *v.t.* To degrade, abase. (*F. dégrader*.)

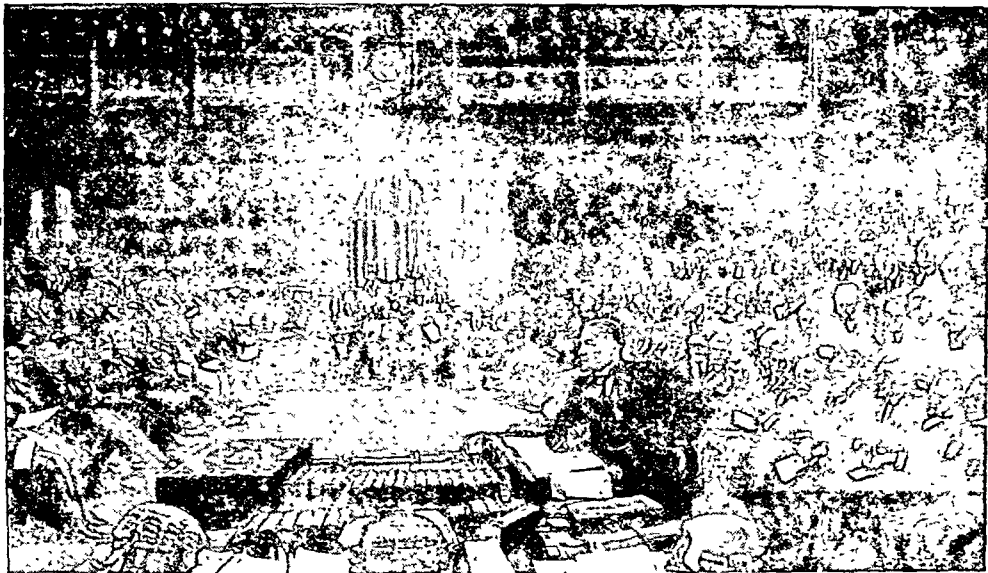
This word is not often used now, although we may sometime hear somebody say that he cannot bemoan himself by doing what he thinks is beneath him.

**E. prove to and name.**

**bemire** (be mir'), *v.t.* To befoul with mire; to plunge in mire. (*F. et. mirer*.)

A horse or wagon that stuck fast in a boggy place is bemired.

**E. prove to and name.**



Bench.—The first bench on the right-hand side of the Speaker's chair in the House of Commons is the Treasury bench, occupied by the members of the Ministry; the front bench on the opposite side is reserved for leading members of the Opposition.

**bemoan** (bè mōn'), *v.t.* To moan or grieve over; to lament. (F. *déplorer, lamenter*.)

Mrs. Gummidge, the old widow in Dickens' "David Copperfield," though comfortably installed in the hospitable Peggotty's home, was a difficult woman to please. She was forever thinking of "the old 'un" (her late husband), and never ceased to bemoan her lot.

E. prefix *be-* and *moan*. SYN: Complain, grieve, grumble, mourn. ANT.: Exult, rejoice.

**bemuse** (bè mūz'), *v.t.* To make a thing confused or muddled, as from the effects of drink. (F. *hébéter*.)

A politician whose ideas are not clear is said by his critics to be bemused. A worker on the land in harvest time may display the bemusing effects of beer.

E. prefix *be-*, and *muse* (*v.*)

**ben** [1] (ben), *n.* A mountain or hill, a mountain-peak. (F. *mont, pic.*)

In Scotland *ben* is used as part of a particular name, as in Ben Nevis and Ben Lomond; or as a general name, as when a stream is said to flow from a *ben*.

Gaelic *beann*.

**ben** [2] (ben), *prep.* In or into the inner room of a building. *adv.* Inside, into, or towards the inner part of a house. (F. *dedans*.)

A Lowland Scotch and North English word. The *but* and *ben* means both the outer and inner parts of a house. Neither the expression *but* and *ben* nor the word *ben* are very much used now. The word appears in Sir Walter Scott's "Guy Mannering" (chapter xxiii): "... that she might run *ben* the house."

A.-S. *binnan* within; E. *by* and *in*.

**bench** (bench), *n.* A long seat; a form; a special seat used by judges, members of

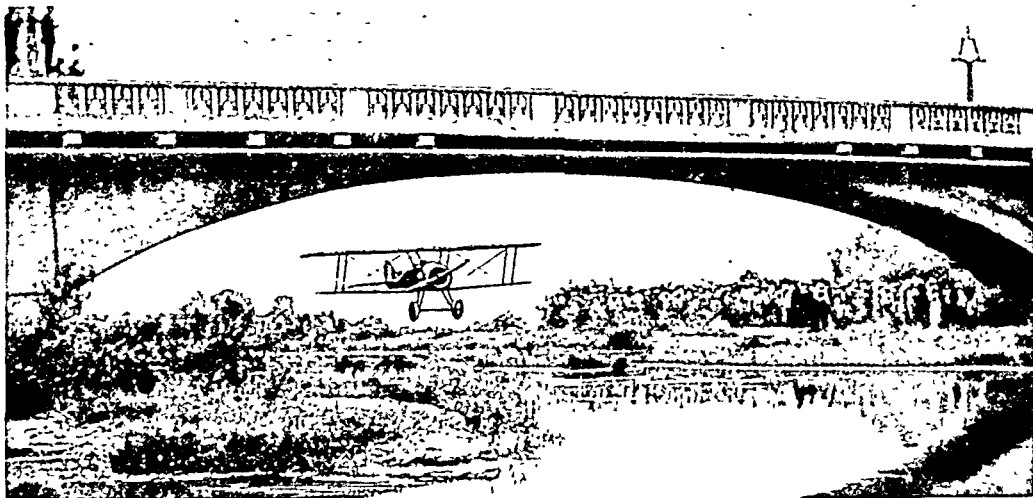
Parliament, etc.; a terrace or ledge in a quarry or earthwork; a strong table at which a joiner or mechanic works. *v.t.* To provide with benches; to place on sleeping platforms or show benches. (F. *banc, siège, établi; garnir de bancs.*)

In its meaning of a seat of dignity the word applies to that on which a judge sits in court. Hence "the bench" comes to mean judges collectively, and to be raised to the bench signifies to be made a judge. At one time the sovereign presided in person over a court called the King's Bench or Queen's Bench, according to whether a king or queen were reigning. This court is now one of the divisions of the High Court of Justice. By the Bench of Bishops is meant all the archbishops and bishops of the Anglican Church, more especially those who sit in the House of Lords as peers.

In the Houses of Parliament certain parts are set apart for the different political parties, and are known as the Conservative, Liberal, and Labour benches. The first bench on the right hand side of the Speaker's chair in the House of Commons is the Treasury bench, occupied by the members of the Ministry in power; the front bench, on the opposite side, is reserved for the leading members of the Opposition.

Surveyors, when taking levels, cut marks in rock, kerb-stones, and other hard and fixed objects to show where their instruments were set up. A reference mark of this kind is called a *bench-mark* (*n.*). Large wooden surfaces are levelled and smoothed with some form of *bench-plane* (*n.*), such as a smoothing plane or jack plane. A *bench-show* (*n.*) is a dog-show at which all the dogs are shown on





Beneath.—An aviator flying beneath a bridge at a speed of one hundred and twenty miles an hour. The arch is only seventy-five feet wide and less than twenty feet in height from this surface of the water.

raised platforms. In some churches there is a stone seat running round the walls, and often in the porches; this is called a bench-table (*n.*).

A bench-warrant (*n.*) is a warrant for the arrest of a person, issued by a judge at an assize court, or by two justices at quarter sessions, as distinct from an ordinary magistrate's warrant. Each of the four Inns of Court appoints five of its leading members to form a Council which looks after the training of persons who wish to become barristers, and has the power of admitting candidates to the bar. A member of this council is called a *bencher* (bench'ér, *n.*).

M.E. *benche*, A.-S. *benc*; common in Teut. languages; cp. G. *bank*.

**bend** (bend), *v.t.* To curve by force; to make crooked; to deflect; to direct; to subdue; to tie. *v.i.* To curve; to change shape from straightness; to bow; to submit. *n.* A curve or sudden turn; a deflection from straightness; sole leather of high quality; a knot in a rope; a sign in heraldry; a bent piece of piping for connecting two straight pieces. (F. *courber*, *plier*, *bander*, *soumettre*; *courber*, *dévier*, *s'incliner*, *se soumettre*; *courbe*, *déviatiou*, *noeud*, *bande*.)

We may bend a bow by pulling the string. To submit or give in is to bend the mind to another's desire. To deflect a ray of light is to bend it, and to tie a rope is to bend it. When sailors are ordered to bend a sail they make it fast to its spar or other support, and in doing so spread it. When a person frowns he is said to bend the brows. Anyone who

has made up his mind to do a certain deed is bent on doing it.

In heraldry, a bend is a band crossing the shield cornerwise. A bend dexter extends from the top left-hand (dexter chief) corner, to the bottom right-hand (sinister base) corner. A bend sinister crosses between the other two corners. The thickest kind of leather, used for repairing boots and shoes, is called bend-leather (*n.*).

A.-S. *bendan* to restrain with a string or band, to bend; (a bow). SYN.: Bow, curve, incline, influence, twist. ANT.: Resist, stiffen, straighten.

**beneath** (bè nêth'), *prep.* Below, under, as regards place or position; unworthy of. *adv.* Below, in a lower place. (F. *sous*, *au dessous de*; *en bas*.)

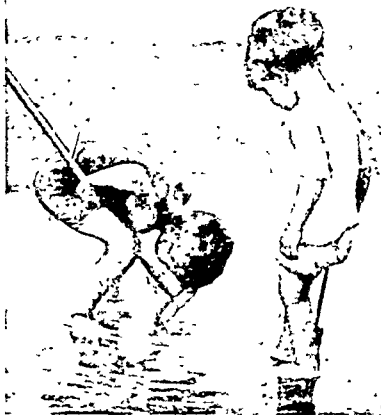
We use the phrase all things beneath the moon, and speak of living beneath the same roof, of the earth beneath our feet, and of sinking beneath the waves; and, figuratively, of sinking beneath our burdens, of people beneath others in position, and of conduct beneath us. And we contrast the heaven above with

the earth beneath as mentioned in the Book of Exodus (xx, 4).

A.-S. *bencothan* from *be-* = by, *noeth-an* below; cp. G. *nieder*. See *nether*. SYN.: Below, under, underneath, unbecoming. ANT.: Above, aloft, over, superior to.

**benedicite** (ben é dī' si ti), *n.* A certain canticle; the grace before a meal. (F. *benédicite*.)

This word describes the hymn used in the morning service of the Anglican Church



Bend. The little shrimp is bending to see what he has caught in his net.

as an alternative to the Te Deum, which begins with the word "Benedicite," and is taken from the song of the Three Holy Children, in the Apocrypha.

L. pl. imper. of *benedicere*, from *bene* well, *dicere* to speak.

**benedick** (ben' è dik), *n.* A man who has just got married. Another spelling is *benedict* (ben' è dikt). (F. *nouveau marié*.)

This word is the name of a character in Shakespeare's comedy, "Much Ado About Nothing." Benedick makes out that he does not like the idea of marrying, but he eventually falls in love with and marries Beatrice. St. Benedict being a determined opponent of marriage, the name in this sense is satirical.

The name is L. *benedictus* blessed.

**Benedictine** (ben è dik' tin), *n.* A monk of the famous order founded by St. Benedict; a liqueur formerly made by these monks. *adj.* Relating to St. Benedict, or to this order. (F. *bénédictin*.)

The Benedictines usually wear a black habit, and so they are also called Black Monks. The order was founded in the sixth century and spread very rapidly, becoming one of the greatest civilizing forces of the Middle Ages. The famous liqueur, now produced in a factory at Fécamp, in Normandy, used to be made in the monastery there. It is also called Dom from the letters on the label, which stand for the Latin *Deo optimo maximo* (to God the best and greatest).

L. *benedictus* blessed, p.p. of *benedicere* to bless, and suffix *-ine*.

**benediction** (ben è dik' shùn), *n.* A solemn prayer for the divine blessing. (F. *bénédiction*.)

At the close of divine service a blessing is sought from God for the congregation, and in general usage this prayer is the benediction. A particular use of the word is given by the Roman Catholic Church in the "benediction of the Blessed Sacrament," in which the priest, holding over the people the vessel containing the sacred Host, makes with it the sign of the cross, and gives in silence the benediction. Grace before and after meat is a benediction.

The benediction used to be observed in an unusual manner at Clifford's Inn, London. The person presiding at the table received four loaves joined together as one, possibly emblematic of the four gospels, and after raising them three times, in allusion to the Trinity, handed them to the butler. What is known as the Apostolic Benediction is found in II Corinthians (xiii, 14).

An ancient service book containing the forms of blessing to be pronounced by the bishop on different Sundays and festivals was called the *benedictional* (ben è dik' shùn àl, *n.*). Anything relating to the benediction is *benedictory* (ben è dik' tò ri, *adj.*).

The hymn of Zacharias (St. Luke, i, 68-79) is known as "Benedictus" (ben è dik' tús, *n.*), taking its name from its opening word.

From the earliest times it has been used in the Roman and Anglican Churches. The word is also applied to a portion of the Roman Catholic Mass, as well as to a musical setting of the hymn.

L. *benedictio* (acc. *benediction-em*), from *benedictus*, p.p. of *benedicere*, from *bene* well, *dicere* to speak. SYN.: Benison, blessing. ANT.: Curse, execration.

**benefactor** (ben è fāk' tōr), *n.* A person who gives help to others. (F. *bienfaiteur*.)

A man who gives a large sum of money to a religious or charitable society or a hospital or other institution is called a benefactor of that institution, and his gift is a benefaction (ben è fāk' shùn, *n.*). The act of giving is also a benefaction.

Anyone who makes a great discovery or invents something which helps in the progress



Benefactor.—Thomas Alva Edison, whose benefactions to mankind include the incandescent electric lamp, the phonograph, and the cinematograph.

of the world is often called a benefactor of the human race. A person who helps another in great trouble or helps him in his life generally is a benefactor. When a woman helps others in a similar way she is called a benefactress (ben è fāk' trēs, *n.*).

L.L. *benefactor*, from *bene* well, *factor* one who does, from *facere* to do, *-tor* suffix of the agent. SYN.: Friend, patron, supporter. ANT.: Enemy, oppressor.

**benefice** (ben' è fis), *n.* The living held by a priest; the temporal endowments attached to church appointments, except bishoprics. (F. *bénéfice*.)

One who holds such a living, as a rectory, vicarage, or deanery is a *beneficed* (ben' è fisd, *adj.*) priest, or a *beneficiary* (ben è fish' àry, *n.*). He does not own the revenues, but he has the administration of them. The legal meaning of beneficiary is one who has an interest in an estate which is held in trust

by others, and the general meaning is one who receives any kind of benefit.

L.L. *beneficium*, originally gift of an estate, L. an act of kindness, from *bene* well, *facere* to do.

**beneficence** (bèn ef' i sèns), *n.* The quality or practice of doing good; charity. (F. *bienfaisance*.)

The giving of sums of money for charitable purposes is one form of beneficence. Whoever is kind and charitable is **beneficent** (bèn ef' i sènt, *adj.*), and whoever adds graciousness and benevolence to his almsgiving gives **beneficently** (bèn ef' i sènt li, *adv.*). Whatever confers a benefit, or is helpful, is **beneficial** (bèn è fish' àl, *adj.*). Whoever aids or helps another acts **beneficially** (bèn è fish' àl li, *adv.*).

L. *beneficentia*, *beneficus* (*adj.*) doing good (comparative *beneficentior*), from *bene* well, *facere* to do. SYN.: Benevolence, bounty, charity. ANT.: Hatred, malevolence, miserliness.

**benefit** (benèfit), *n.* Favour; advantage; kindness; gain; charity. *v.t.* To do good to. *v.i.* To receive benefit or derive advantage from. (F. *bienfait*, *avantage*; *faire du bien à*; *profiter de*.)

Benefit has a number of different meanings. A person may do something for our benefit or advantage; we then get the benefit or advantage of his action. A child suspected of copying at school may be given the benefit of the doubt, that is, be assumed to be innocent rather than guilty.

Allowances or privileges granted by a club or insurance society are called benefits, and the institution granting them is a **benefit club** or **society**. Sometimes a **benefit** is given at a theatre for an actor or actress—that is, he or she receives all or most of the profits from a particular performance.

Benefit of clergy is the name given to an old law which protected clergymen from being punished by the ordinary courts of law. As those were days when few people except the clergy had even the simplest education, benefit of clergy came to cover all who could read and write, even if they were not in holy orders. This law was abolished in 1827.

O.F. *bienfet*, L. *benefactum*, from *bene* well, *facere* to do (p.p. *factus*, neuter *-um*). SYN.: *n.* Blessing, interest, profit, service. ANT.: *n.* Detriment, disadvantage, loss, prejudice.

**benevolent** (bè nev' ó lènt), *adj.* Well-wishing; charitable. (F. *bienveillant*.)

A man who is desirous of the good of others, is a **benevolent** man. He acts **benevolently** (bè nev' ó lènt li, *adv.*) towards his fellow men and expresses his benevolence (bè nev' ó lèns, *n.*) in a hundred different ways.

In English history what were called **benevolences** were sums of money extracted by the kings from their subjects without the consent of Parliament. At first they were supposed to be loans, but gradually they came to be simply forced gifts. The first time that the word was used in this way was in 1473, when Edward IV asked his subjects to show their goodwill or benevolence by making him such

"gifts." Nowadays the word is sometimes used for outrageous demands of this kind.

L. *benevolens* (acc. *-ent-em*), from *bene* well, *volens* (gen. *volentis*) pres. p. of *velle* to wish. SYN.: Beneficent, generous, kind-hearted. ANT.: Malevolent, malicious, selfish, unkind.

**Bengal** (ben gawl'), *n.* A thin stuff named after a province of British India. (F. *toile du Bengale*.)

Various piece goods brought to England from Bengal retain the name of their place of origin. A **Bengal-light** (*n.*), or blue light, is a firework signal of very bright blue, used at sea by ships in distress, and in ordinary firework displays ashore. A sort of striped gingham, or thin cotton cloth, made to imitate lawn, was at first brought from Bengal, and is known as **Bengal stripes** (*n.*).



Bengali.—Two Bengali sweetmeat sellers in a Calcutta street.

**Bengali** or **Bengalee** (ben gaw' li, *adj.*) natives are those who live in Bengal, and who speak the Bengali or Bengalee language. The word is used also as a noun, as when we speak of one of these natives as a Bengali, or Bengalee, or when we use it to describe his language—a language sometimes also called **Bengalese** (ben gawl' ès').

**benighted** (bè nī' téd), *p.p.* Overtaken by the darkness of night. *adj.* Ignorant. (F. *surpris par la nuit*; *ignorant*.)

Sometimes darkness comes on very quickly, and woe betide the traveller who is thus benighted while crossing a moor or other desolate and dangerous country. We also speak of savages being benighted who live in darkness of the mind and soul.

E. prefix *be-* and *night*. The *v.* *benight* is now only used in the *p.p.*

**benign** (bè nīn'), *adj.* Kind; mild; favourable. (F. *bénin*, *bénigne*, *favorable*.)

A venerable clergyman beaming **benignly** (bè nīn' li, *adv.*) behind his spectacles at the schoolchildren on the village green is a delightful sight, **benignity** (bè nīg' nī ti, *n.*)

shines forth from every feature of his kind old face. Benignant (bè nig' nânt, *adj.*) means almost exactly the same as benign. Thus we call a mild form of disease either benign or benignant. To people who believe in astrology, that is, who think that the position of the stars have a bearing on men's lives, when the stars are favourable the influence is said to be benign.

O.F. *benigne*, L. *benignus* kind, from *bene* well, -genus born, from old L. *genere* to beget. SYN.: Amiable, bland, friendly, genial, gracious. ANT.: Hatelul, malignant, surly, unkind.

**benison** (ben' i zôn), *n.* A blessing or benediction. (F. *bénédiction*.)

At the end of the second act of "Macbeth" the old man bidding farewell to his son, Rosse, says: "God's benison go with you." Nowadays we say instead: "God's blessing go with you."

O.F. *benison*, L. *benedictio* (acc. -ôn -em) from *bene* well, *dicere* to speak.

**benjamin** (ben' jâ min), *n.* A gum obtained from benzoin; a tree yielding the gum. (F. *benjoin*.)

The fragrant gum or resin, called benzoin, is obtained from the benjamin-tree (*Styrax benzoin*) of Sumatra, and the neighbouring islands. The North American benjamin-tree or benjamin-bush (*Benzoin odoriferum*) yields an aromatic oil, a similar substance being obtained from a third benjamin-tree, the East Indian fig-tree (*Ficus balsamicus*).

Arabic *lubân jâur* Java frankincense, corrupted to *banjawi* and further to *benjamin* in E.

**bennet** (ben' ét), *n.* The common avens. (F. *benoîte*.)

The common avens (*Geum urbanum*), belonging to the rose family, was called herb bennet, the blessed herb, because it was believed to possess magic properties in warding off evil spirits. Other plants have also been called herb bennet, including the common hemlock (*Conium maculatum*) and the great wild valerian (*Valeriana officinalis*).

O.F. *benoite*, from L. *benedicta* blessed, from *bene* well, *dicere* (p.p. *dictus*) to say.

**bent** [1] (bent), *n.* Inclination; tendency of mind; disposition. (F. *penchant*, *disposition*.)

A person with a bent towards some particular business, trade, or branch of art or science has his mind naturally fitted for or inclined to it. He naturally turns his wishes and thoughts in its direction, hence he has what is called a "turn" for it, which is the same thing as a bent. If the bent is very strong, one is more likely to work to the top of one's bent, to put heart and soul into the work.

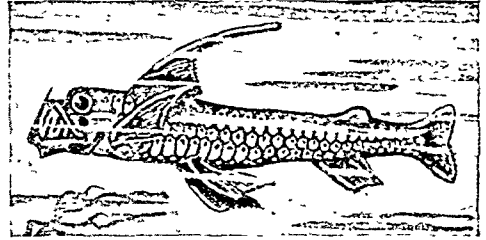
Probably formed from the verb *bend*, on the analogy of several E. words in -ent, like *descent*. SYN.: Bias, disposition, leaning, proneness, tendency. ANT.: Disinclination, dislike.

**bent** [2] (bent), *n.* A stalk of stiff, coarse grass; a group of certain kinds of stiff grasses. (F. *agrostide*.)

The stiff stalk of various grasses, such as may be seen sticking up from a lawn or

meadow, is called a bent. There are many kinds of bent-grass (*n.*), but only a very few are of any use to the farmer or gardener. They all have comparatively few flowers, and some flourish only on poor land. In the north of England and Scotland the term bent is sometimes used of a wild open space covered with coarse grass. The expression to take to the bent therefore means to take to the wilds, to flee into the open country when pursued.

M.E. *bent*, A.-S. *beonet*, a word probably of Teut. origin; cp. G. *binse* rush, M.H.G. *binz*; it is suggested that the ultimate meaning is growing in damp ground, from *bi-* in, *naz*=G. *nasse* moisture.



**Benthal.**—A benthonic fish, that is, one which lives at a depth of over one thousand fathoms.

**benthal** (ben' thál), *adj.* Belonging to ocean depths greater than one thousand fathoms (6,000 ft.); belonging to the bed of the ocean or other body of water.

By some the term benthos (ben' thos, *n.*) is used to include all life in water beyond the thousand fathom limit, so that benthal or benthonic (ben thon' ik, *adj.*) life is spent in utter darkness and intense cold. One species of deep-sea fish is called *benthosaurus* (ben thó savr' ús, *n.*). Others use the term benthos to include all living things fixed to, or moving upon, the bed of the ocean, or other body of water, salt or fresh, whatever its depth.

Gr. *benthos* depth of the sea, and suffix -al (L. -alis).

**Benthamism** (ben' thám izm), *n.* The utilitarian philosophy of Jeremy Bentham. Jeremy Bentham (1748-1832) was the son of a London attorney. He went to Westminster School and to Oxford University, and afterwards was a lawyer of Lincoln's Inn. He wrote a good deal on law and government, and did much to achieve a more reasonable theory of punishment for prisoners.



**Benthamism.**—Jeremy Bentham, whose teachings are known as Benthamism.

In a way he was a prophet of the Liberal or Radical view in politics, when he set forth his famous doctrine of "utility." He taught that increase of happiness and avoidance of pain are the

**Berenice's Hair** (ber è nî' sèz hâr), *n.* A small indistinct group of stars in the northern sky, near the tail of Leo. (F. *chevelure de Bérénice*.)

The story goes that when Ptolemy Euergetès, king of Egypt (third century B.C.), set out on a dangerous expedition, his queen Bérénicè vowed to give her beautiful hair to the temple of Venus if he returned safely. She kept her vow, and Jupiter placed her shining tresses among the stars.

Another story says that the group of stars was so named by the astronomer Conon in order to console Queen Bérénicè for the loss of a lock of her hair which she had presented to the temple of Venus.

**beret** (bè rā'), *n.* A flat cap. **Berret** (bèr' èt) is another spelling. (F. *béret*.)

In England, about 1925, the beret, or berret, a kind of flat skull-cap, fitting closely above the ears, and made without a peak, began to be popular for sports-wear. It had been introduced by the famous French tennis players at Wimbledon, and was an adaptation of the cap worn by Basque peasants — the country folk who live among the Pyrenees.



Beret.—The flat skull-cap for sports-wear.

Sometimes the name is also given to the square cap worn by priests, the biretta.

Ital. *berretta*, L.L. *birrētum* cap, from *birrus*, *burrus*, Gr. *pyrrhos* reddish.

**berg** (bèrg), *n.* A mass of ice. See iceberg.

**Bergamask** (bèrg' à mask), *n.* A country dance. (F. *le Bergamasque*.)

The folk of Bergamo, in Northern Italy, were reputed to be stupid and clownish in speech and manners. A clumsy kind of country dance, imitating or mocking the Bergamo people, was called a Bergamask, or Bergomask.

At the end of the play in "A Midsummer Night's Dream," Bottom asks, "Will it please you to see the epilogue, or to hear a Bergomask dance?" and Theseus replies, "No epilogue, I pray you. But come, your Bergomask, let the epilogue alone."

Ital. *Bergamasco*, belonging to Bergamo.

**bergamot** (bèrg' à mot), *n.* A species of orange; a fragrant oil obtained from the orange; a plant belonging to the mint family; a juicy kind of pear. (F. *bergamote*.)

The bergamot (*Citrus Bergamia*) is a species of orange tree, from the flowers and fruit of which a delightfully fragrant oil is obtained. A similar oil is yielded by some of the mint plants, among them being the bergamot mint (*Mentha citrata*).

In the last sense from Turkish *beg armudî* pear (*armud*), of a prince; in the others from the town of Bergamo, in North Italy.

**berhyme** (bè rim'), *v.t.* To compose rhymes about; to ridicule in verse. **Berime** (bè rim') is another spelling. (F. *rimier*, *rimailler*.)

We say that a subject is much berhymed if it often has been made the theme of rhymes or poems.

E. prefix *be-* and *rhyme*.

**beriberi** (ber' i ber i), *n.* A disease common in East Asia, the West Indies, and Central and South America. (F. *beribéri*.)

Beriberi, or beri beri as it is sometimes written, is a mysterious complaint. It haunts certain districts and even certain buildings and ships. Its cause is unknown, though there is reason for believing that it is the outcome of eating badly prepared food, such as unrefined rice and raw fish.

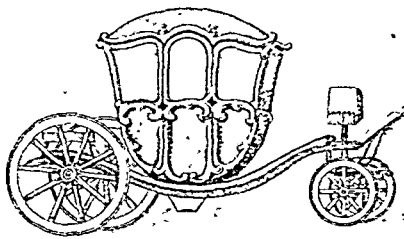
The disease produces paralysis of the nerves and limbs and sometimes ends fatally, as no efficient treatment has been discovered.

The word is of Sinhalese origin, the language spoken by the majority of the inhabitants of Ceylon. It is an emphatic reduplication of *beri* lack of health and strength.

**Berkeleian** (bark lē' àn), *adj.* Of Berkeley, or his teachings. (F. *relatif à Berkeley*, *relatif à Berkeleyisme*.)

George Berkeley (1685-1753), Bishop of Cloyne, Ireland, was born in Kilkenny, and educated at Trinity College, Dublin.

He was a notable philosopher who held the theory that matter does not exist outside our minds or imaginations. This theory he set down in various books, and it was much debated. Those who accepted it as being true were known as Berkeleians (bark lē' ànz, *n.pl.*).



Berlin.—The four-wheeled Berlin was first made in the city of that name about 1670.

**Berlin** (bèr lin'), *n.* A four-wheeled carriage. Another spelling is berline (bèr lèn). (F. *berline*.)

This carriage had a front seat for the driver, a covered seat for two passengers, and another seat behind, sometimes fitted with a hood. It was first made in Berlin about 1670, hence its name, and became fashionable in England during Queen Anne's reign.

Berlin has given its name to many products. A special enamel that produces a shiny black surface which resists heat, is called Berlin black (*n.*), and it is used for painting stoves and hardware. Berlin wool

(*n.*) is of fine quality and is used for embroidery, crochet, and knitting. Gloves made with this wool are sometimes called Berlin gloves (*n.pl.*).

**berm** (bĕrm), *n.* A narrow ledge, or brim. (F. *berme*.)

Between the moat and the base of the ramparts in a fort, a ledge a few feet wide was always left, so that any masonry dislodged from the ramparts might fall there, instead of falling into the moat which would render it useless as a fortification. This ledge or brim of the moat, is known as a berm.

Sometimes the bank of a canal opposite the towing-path is called the berm, or berm-bank (*n.*).

The F. word is probably of G. origin; cp. G. *bräme*, E. *brim*.

**Bermuda grass** (ber mŭ' dā gras), *n.* A species of wiry grass found on the sandy shores of Europe, Africa, and Asia. (F. *herbe des Bermudes*.)

This grass (*Cynodon dactylon*) is a low, creeping plant with jointed roots which spread rapidly in all directions. It is used as a lawn grass in some parts of North America, and in India it is grown for fodder.

**Bernardine** (bĕr' nār din), *adj.* Of St. Bernard; of the Cistercian monks. (F. *bernardin*, *de St. Bernard*.)

Bernardine tradition tells how St. Bernard (1090-1153), a young nobleman, heard a call from heaven and, after a great struggle with the fiends, decided to obey this call by becoming a monk. In spite of opposition from his parents he kept this resolution, and so had to renounce everything—his heritage, his home, and the beautiful girl to whom he was betrothed.

Joining the society of monks called the Cistercians, he soon became widely famous for his godliness, and during his lifetime he founded no fewer than seventy monasteries. Martin Luther said of St. Bernard that "if there ever lived on the earth a God-fearing and holy monk, it was St. Bernard of Clairvaux." A Cistercian monk is sometimes called a Bernardine.

**berretta** (ber ret' à), This is another spelling of biretta. See biretta.

**berry** (ber' i), *n.* A small juicy fruit the seeds of which are scattered throughout the pulp; the egg of a shell-fish. *v.i.* To bear berries; to gather berries. (F. *baie*.)

A true berry is a many-seeded, simple fruit, as the grape, gooseberry, currant, and mistletoe. The strawberry, blackberry, and raspberry are not true berries.

M.E. *berie*, A.-S. *berig*. The word is common in Teut. languages; cp. G. *beere*.

**bersagliere** (bār sa lyär' ā), *n.* A skilled marksman; a sharpshooter of the Italian army. (F. *bersagliier*.)

The bersaglieri (bār sa lyär' i, *n.pl.*) are a corps of soldiers who were formed in 1836 in Italy and who played a great part in making Italy a united country instead of a collection of small states. They are very



Berry.—Gooseberries (top), grapes (centre), and currants are all berries which most people enjoy.

skilled in the use of a rifle and are noted for their picturesque plumed hats.

Ital. *bersaglio* mark, target, O.F. *berser* to shoot, possibly from L. *versare*, frequentative of *vertere*, with reference to turning about, shifting one's place when aiming.

**Berserk** (bĕr' sĕrk), *n.* A Scandinavian hero famed for his courage; a reckless fighter. *adj.* Furious. (F. *Berseker*; *furieux*.) Other spellings are berserker (bĕr' sĕrk ěr) and baresark (bār' sark).

Among the Scandinavian warriors of the old stories none was so famous as Berserk, whose reckless fury in battle was handed down undiminished to his twelve mighty sons. These warriors of old took an immense joy in fighting. They fought in a kind of frenzy, and this tremendous battle-fury came to be known as "berserk's way," or the "berserk's rage." The name berserk was later given to the Viking bodyguards of the Scandinavian kings and heroes.

Probably bear-sark, from wearing a bear's skin as shirt. A popular explanation is bare-sark (shirt), wearing a shirt alone.

**berth** (bĕrth), *n.* Sea-room; a convenient place for mooring a vessel; a sleeping-place in a ship or a railway carriage; a situation. *v.i.* To moor. (F. *mouillage couchette, emploi*; *amarrer*.)

One ship is said to give a wide berth to another when allowing it plenty of room to swing at anchor; a man may say he has given an acquaintance a wide berth when he has avoided going near him, or kept clear of him. A vessel is moored in its own berth or place at a wharf. On board ship people sleep in berths or shelf-beds fixed to the cabin walls. One man may ask another who has been seeking work if he has found a berth yet.

To berth a ship is to moor it or provide it with a mooring place. Berthage (bĕrth' ăj, *n.*) is either accommodation for mooring ships, or the fees paid for the accommodation of a ship in dock.

The word is perhaps a verbal *n.* from the *v.* *bear*, in the sense "room-way made by bearing-off"; the original meaning, which is said to be a suitable position. **Syn.**: Anchorage, bed, post.

**Bertha** (bĕr' thă), *n.* A German long range gun; a woman's collar, usually of lace. (F. *Berthe*.)

The Bertha, or Big Bertha as it was more commonly called, was a huge naval gun used on land, and it could fire a shell a distance of seventy-five miles. These guns, named after Bertha Krupp, the head of the Krupp war factory, were used to shell Paris in 1918. The shells from these guns reached a height of several miles on their long journey to Paris.

**Berthon boat** (ber' thŏn bŏt), *n.* A collapsible canvas-covered boat, invented by the Rev. E. L. Berthon, an English clergyman.

When folded, the boat occupies very little room. It has a double skin, and when opened out, air is drawn in between the skins, rendering the boat unsinkable. Berthon boats are carried on many merchant vessels and warships, especially submarines and destroyers, and they are sometimes used by soldiers to cross rivers.

**Bertillon** (bĕr ti yon'), *adj.* Of Bertillon, or his system. (F. *de Bertillon, système Bertillon*.)

The Bertillon system was invented by Alphonse Bertillon, born at Paris in 1853. It is a method of recording the measurements and other characteristics of persons, and is used by the police of some countries to identify criminals.

Measurements taken on the left side of the body, since this side is less liable to change are written down and filed. The measurements include the length and breadth of the head, the ear, the hand, and the foot; the finger-print is also recorded and such details as the colour of the eyes.

**beryl** (ber' il), *n.* A light precious stone. (F. *béryl*.)

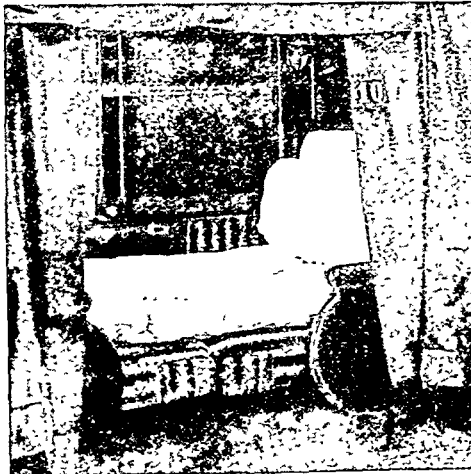
The beryl belongs to the same class of precious stones as the emerald. It is actually a chemical combination of two metals, beryllium (bĕ ril' i ūm, *n.*) and aluminum.

Any gem or stone resembling a beryl is called a berylline (ber' il ěn, *adj.*) gem.

L. *beryllus*; Gr. *beryllos*; cp. Arabic and Pers. *billūr* crystal.



Bersagliere.—A sharpshooter or bersagliere of the Italian Army



Berth.—The lower berth in a Pullman sleeping car.



Besech.—Queen Philippa beseeching her husband Edward III for the lives of the burghers of Calais, which he captured in 1347. Her plea was granted and the inhabitants were given food and money.

**beseech** (bè sêch), *v.t.* To ask earnestly. (F. *supplier, implorer.*)

In Shakespeare's "The Tempest" (iii, 1), Ferdinand begs Miranda to tell her name:

... I do beseech you,  
Chiefly that I might set it in my prayers,  
What is your name?

The sense of the word is that of seeking earnestly to have something granted. An old form of the word was *beseek* (bè sêk'), and we find it written thus in the second part of Shakespeare's "King Henry IV" (ii, 4), when the hostess says to Pistol:

Good Captain Peesel, be quiet, 'tis very late,  
I beseek you now, aggravate your choler.

A beggar asks for alms in a beseeching (bè sêch' ing, *adj.*) way, and in doing so will look at you beseechingly (bè sêch' ing li, *adv.*).

M.E. *bisechen, biseken*, from prefix *be-* and *sechen, seken*, A.-S. *sêcan* to seek. SYN.: Ask, entreat, implore, solicit, supplicate. ANT.: Demand, grant, order.

**beseem** (bè sêm'), *v.t.* To be suitable or proper for; to be fit; to be becoming to. *v.i.* To seem; to appear. (F. *convenir à; sembler, paraître.*)

The word is used of conduct or dress. We may say that it does not beseem a person who holds a high position to be undignified, for his conduct should always be beseemly (bè sêm' li, *adj.*), that is to say, he should act beseemingly (bè sêm' ing li, *adv.*).

E. prefix *be-* and *seem*.

**beset** (bè set'), *v.t.* To surround; to besiege; to attack from all sides; to set upon. (F. *entourer, assiéger, assaillir.*)

A besetting (bè set' ing, *adj.*) sin is one which a person is specially likely to commit, and is therefore a sin he must always be on guard against. To be beset by troubles is to be in great trouble. The state of being beset is besetment (bè set' ment, *n.*).

A.-S. *be settan* to set about. SYN.: Beleaguer, besiege, invest, surround. ANT.: Defy, repel.

**beside** (bè sîd'), *prep.* By the side of; side by side; close by; away from; in comparison with. *adv.* By the side; in addition. (F. *à côté de, auprès de; d'ailleurs.*)

We may sit beside another person on a settee, and when arguing we may say "that is beside the point," meaning that the argument put forward has nothing or very little to do with what we are talking about. A person who gets excited or loses control of himself or goes mad is said to be beside himself.

"Besides (*adv.* and *prep.*) you and me, my sister will be there," means that in addition to ourselves the speaker's sister will be present. Or a person having given a list of reasons why he cannot go to a party might add: "Besides, there is no train by which I can get back home so late," meaning in this case, finally, or moreover.

E. prefix *be-* and *side*. SYN.: Near, close together. ANT.: Far, distant.

**besiege** (bè sêj'), *v.t.* To beset a place; to surround a place with the intention of capturing it; to crowd round. (F. *assiéger.*)

During the World War (1914-18) the Turks besieged General Townshend and the British



troops in Kut and captured them. A man who has made a fortune is sometimes besieged by requests to give to charity, while a popular hero or sportsman is often besieged by admirers wanting his autograph. Anyone who besieges is a *besieger* (bè sēj' èr, *n.*), and is said to act *besiegingly* (bè sēj' ing li, *adv.*).

E. prefix *be-* and *siege*. SYN.: *Beleaguer*, invest. ANT.: *Defy*, repel.

**besmear** (bè smēr'), *v.t.* To rub or daub over with something greasy or dirty. Inky fingers will often besmear the whiteness of a page. (F. *barbouiller*.)

A.-S. *besmerwan*; E. prefix *be-* and *smear*. SYN.: *Bedaub*, *smear*.

**besmirch** (bè smērč'), *v.t.* To soil; to sully. (F. *souiller*, *tacher*.)

A person's good name or reputation may easily be besmirched by malicious gossip.

E. prefix *be-* and *smirch*. SYN.: *Stain*, *vilify*.

**besom** (bè' zòm), *n.* A broom made of a bundle of twigs bound round a handle; any work that sweeps away impurities. (F. *balai*.)

Nathaniel Hawthorne in "The Scarlet Letter" uses the word figuratively: "The besom of reform has swept him out of office."

M.E. *besme*, A.-S. *besma*, *besema* bundle of twigs. The word is common in Teut. languages; cp. G. *besen*.

**besot** (bè sot'), *v.t.* To make stupid; to confuse or render foolish with drink. (F. *hébété*, *enivrer*.)

A besotted (bè sot' éd, *adj.*) person is one whose mind has been weakened or degraded by the habit of drinking to excess.

E. prefix *be-* and *sot*.

**besought** (bè sawt'). The past participle of *beseech*. See *beseech*.

**bespangle** (bè späng' gl), *v.t.* To deck with spangles or small shining objects. (F. *orner de paillettes*.)

The night sky is bespangled with stars; figuratively a speech or poem may be bespangled with wit.

E. prefix *be-* and *spangle*.

**bespatter** (bè spät' èr), *v.t.* To soil by spattering or sprinkling; to load with abuse or with exaggerated compliments. (F. *éclabousser*.)

It is sometimes worse to be bespattered with flattery than with insults.

E. prefix *be-* and *spatter*.

**bespeak** (bè spèk'), *v.t.* To arrange for; to order or engage in advance; to ask for; to speak to; to betoken, indicate. *p.t.* *Bespoke* (bè spök'). *p.p.* *Bespoken* (bè spök' èn). (F. *commander d'avance*, *demand*, *montrer*.)

We bespeak a room at an inn by letter for a certain date, or a copy of a book to be sent to us as soon as it is published, and we are

told that a thing is bespoken or bespoke when someone else has already ordered it. In trade, one who makes boots to order is often called a *bespoke* bootmaker. In poetical language an orator is said to bespeak an assembly. A man's good deeds bespeak a kind heart.

A.-S. *besprecan*; E. prefix *be-* and *speak*.

**bespread** (bè spred'), *v.t.* To cover with; to spread over. (F. *couvrir*.)

We may speak of a wedding breakfast table being bespread with good things to eat.

E. prefix *be-* and *spread*.

**besprinkle** (bè spring' kl), *v.t.* To sprinkle over with anything; to spot. (F. *arroser*, *tacher*.)

A book containing many inaccuracies is besprinkled with errors.

E. prefix *be-* and *sprinkle*.

**Bessemer process** (bes' è mēr prō' ses), *n.* A process of making steel cheaply, invented by Sir Henry Bessemer in 1856. (F. *procédé Bessemer*.)

Ordinary steel is pure iron combined with a very little carbon. It is much tougher than iron and resists wear much better. But before the invention of the Bessemer process railway companies could not afford to use steel for rails on account of its high cost, which was almost entirely due to the difficulty of making it.



Bessemer process.—A Bessemer converter throwing a fountain of liquid steel.

Bessemer had the idea of melting crude pig iron as it came from the blast furnace and blowing air through it until all the impurities, except a little of the carbon, had combined with the oxygen of the air and burned away, leaving nothing but steel behind. In its complete form the Bessemer process revolutionized the steel industry all over the world, and led to a rapid increase in railways, since a rail of Bessemer steel now costs less than an iron rail, but lasts six times as long. The apparatus for forcing a blast of air through a mass of molten iron to make Bessemer steel is called a *Bessemer converter*.

**best** (best), *adj.* Most good. *adv.* In the best way. *v.t.* To get the better of; to defeat; to cheat. (F. *le meilleur* : *le mieux* ; *l'emporter sur*, *tromper*.)

To say that a certain motor-car is capable of a speed of fifty miles an hour at best, means that is all it can do under the most favourable conditions. A winning team is said to get, or to have the best of the contest with their opponents.

To make the best of one's way is to go as fast as one can, or by the quickest route. When we walk hard and steadily we put our best foot foremost. When we do something as well as we can, we do it to the best of our ability, or do our best. To the best of our knowledge means so far as we know.

A singer or cricketer is at his best when his skill has reached its highest point, when he is in his best form. To act for the best is to do something with the best intentions, and if we believe that what seems a misfortune is the best thing that could have happened we say it was all for the best. The best part means the largest part, more than half, as the best part of an hour. A bridegroom is attended at his wedding by a friend called the best man (*n.*).

A.S. *bet(e)st* (cp. Goth. *bansī-*) superlative from a root *bat-* good : cp. boot [1].

**best-ball match** (best' bawl mäch), *n.* A golf match in which a player plays against the best of two or more opponents.

For example, suppose A is playing B, C, and D who do a hole in four (B), five (C), and six (D), the four of B would be set against the number of strokes taken for the hole by A.

**bestead** [1] (be sted'), *v.t.* To help; to avail. (F. *aider servir*.) A rare word, now chiefly used in poetry.

*Be-* intensive and the rare or obsolete *v. stead* to help, from *n. stead*.

**bestead** [2] (be sted'), *part.* and *adj.* Placed situated; beset. (F. *situé, entouré*.)

Generally used after words like *ill*, *hard*, *sore*, as in Isaiah (viii, 21) : "They shall pass through it hardly bestead and hungry."

M.E. *bistad*, from *be-* intensive and O. Norse *stadd-r* placed.

**bestial** (bes' ti äl), *adj.* Of or like a beast; brutal; extremely depraved or cruel. (F. *bestial, brutal*.)

When a cat torments a bird or mouse, we may stop it, but we do not blame the cat, because a beast acts by instinct, and does not realize what it does, but when a person does such a thing it is bestial, and the doing of such a thing is bestiality (bes ti äl' i ti, *n.*). To lower from human dignity to the level of the brutes is to bestialize (bes' ti ä liz, *v.t.*) whoever is thus degraded; and to do a thing in an exceedingly brutal way is to do it bestially (bes' ti ä li, *adv.*).

L. *bestialis* (rare), from *bestia* beast, suffix *-älis* belonging to. The *n. beast* is derived from O.F. *beste*, from L. *bestia*. SYN.: Beastly, brutish, obscene. ANT.: Cultured, decent, humane.

**bestiary** (bes' ti är i), *n.* A mediaeval book about animals. (F. *bestiaire*.)

These popular natural histories, which show what curious things our ancestors believed about beasts, birds, and fishes, treat their habits allegorically, or use them to point a moral.

L.L. *bestiārum* a place where beasts are kept, then a book about them, from *bestia* and suffix *-ārum* denoting locality.

**bestick** (be stik'), *v.t.* To stick a thing or things in or on (a thing). (F. *attacher, coller*.)

E. prefix *be-* and *stick*. SYN.: Bedeck, pierce. **bestir** (bè stër'), *v.t.* To rouse into action; to make busy. (F. *remuer, occuper*.)

The verb is generally used reflexively, as in the sentence, we must bestir ourselves.

A.S. *bestyrrian*; E. prefix *be-* and *stir*.

**bestow** (bè stō'), *v.t.* To give; to confer. (F. *donner, conférer*.)

The poet Cowper says in his "Boadicea" (43) : "Empire is on us bestowed," or given to us. The thing given, or an act of bestowing, is a bestowal (bè stō' äl, *n.*) or, more rarely, a bestowment (bè stō' mēt, *n.*).

E. prefix *be-* and *stow*. SYN.: Award, give, grant, present. ANT.: Appropriate, receive, seize.



from the famous painting, "The Sower," by Millet.  
Bestrew.—The sower bestrewn the ploughed land with seed.

**bestrew** (bè strū'), *v.t.* To strew or cover (with scattered objects); to scatter. Another form is bestrow (bè strō'). *p.p.* Bestrewn (bè strūd'), bestrewn (bè strūn'), bestrown (bè strōn'). (F. *parsemer de, éparpiller*.)

The poet Wordsworth in "The White Doe of Rylstone" writes of "the dewy turf with flowers bestrown."

A.S. *bestreōwian*; E. prefix *be-* and *strew*.

**bestride** (bè strîd'), *v.t.* To sit or stand with one leg on each side of ; to span ; to straddle ; to stride across. *p.t.* Bestrode (bè strôd'), *bestrid* (bè strîd') ; *p.p.* bestridden (bè strîd' n). (F. *enfourcher, enjamber*.)

In Shakespeare's "Julius Caesar" (i, 2), Cassius says of Caesar : "Why, man, he doth bestride the narrow world like a Colossus," referring to a huge bronze statue that was erected at the entrance to the harbour of Rhodes about 280 B.C. This statue was popularly thought to have straddled the entrance, whereas really it stood on one side of it. Spectacles are said to bestride the nose ; a bather bestrides the beach with long steps.

A.-S. *bestridan* ; E. prefix *be-* and *stride*.

**bet** (bet), *n.* A wager ; a mutual undertaking to forfeit a sum of money or other object to the other party if his assertion regarding some future event or disputed fact proves correct ; the stake or forfeit in such an agreement. *v.t.* To stake (money or a thing). *v.i.* To wager. (F. *pari* ; *parier*.)

The making of small bets easily becomes a habit, which has led many betting men or betters (bet' êrz, *n. pl.*) to ruin or disgrace. Betting in public places is forbidden by law.

The word is probably a shorter form of *abet*. *Syn.* : Stake, wager.

**beta** (bè' tà), *n.* The second letter in the Greek alphabet, B or β ; the second star in a constellation ; the second of two or more closely similar things. (F. *bêta*.)

Usually the star marked Beta (written B) is the second brightest in a group, but this is not always the case. Thus of the Twins, Pollux or Beta Geminorum is brighter than Castor or Alpha Geminorum, the brightness of the two stars having changed. The third sense of the word is chiefly used in chemistry and biology.

Gr. from the Phœnician name of the letter, *beth*=house.

**betake** (bè tāk'), *v.t.* To take (oneself). *p.t.* Betook (bè tuk'). *p.p.* Betaken (bè tāk' ên). (F. *s'en aller à recourir à*.)

In modern English the verb is always reflexive, and is followed by *to* or its equivalent. To betake oneself to bed is to go to bed. So we may say, he betook himself home. To betake oneself to one's heels is to take to flight ; to betake oneself to crime is to resort to crime.

Prefix *be-* and *take*.

**betel** (bè' tel), *n.* A climbing plant with evergreen leaves, cultivated in India and the Malay Archipelago. (F. *bétel*.)

The betel is also called the *betel-pepper* (*n.*) since it belongs to the pepper family, and *betel-vine* (*n.*) on account of its climbing

growth. Its leaves are chewed by natives along with *betel-nut* (*n.*), which comes from the *betel-tree* (*n.*) or *betel-palm* (*n.*).

This graceful palm grows in India, Ceylon, the Malay Archipelago, the Philippine Islands, and many other parts of the East. It bears a fruit about the size of a hen's egg, inside which is the so-called nut. The nuts are boiled, cut into slices and dried.



Betel.—Workers on a betel-nut plantation in the Straits Settlements.

A *betel-chewer* (*n.*) wraps a piece of nut and some lime in a leaf of the betel-vine, and chews it with great pleasure. The betel blackens the teeth, but is said to preserve them and to help digestion. About one-tenth of the world's population are thought to be betel-chewers, and the custom is so general in Malaya that few natives abstain from it. Areca nut is the correct name for the nut. It is called betel-nut because it is used with the betel leaf for chewing.

Port. *betele*, from S. Indian *vetilla* the leaf itself.

**bethankit** (bè thang' kit), *n.* A Scottish word for grace after meat.

In contrast to the formal Latin prayers of the Roman Catholic Church the Scottish Presbyterians introduced extempore prayers often in very homely language and of extraordinary length, especially in the case of grace before and after meals. If the person called upon to pronounce such a blessing spoke shortly and with insufficient fervour his prayer was called a bethankit, and was regarded with disfavour.

Lowland Scottish (The Lord) *be thankit* (thanked).

**Bethel** (beth' el), *n.* A sacred place ; a chapel.

This name was given to a place of worship by devout Methodists and others, who felt that their own chapel was as truly a "House

of God as Bethel, which in Hebrew means God's House. "Jacob called the name of the place where God spake with him, Bethel" (Genesis xxxv, 15). See Bethesda.

**Bethesda** (bèth ez' dà), *n.* A Nonconformist chapel.

It was a practice among Welsh Nonconformists to give names like Bethel, Ebenezer, Mizpah, to their places of worship which would connect them with the sacred places of the Bible. "Bethesda," meaning house of mercy, was sometimes chosen because this place was the scene of Christ's saving mercy (St. John v, 2).

**bethink** (bè think'), *v.t.* To occupy or engage in thinking. *v. reflexive.* To reflect, consider, meditate. (F. *rappeler*, *se rappeler*.)

Bethink is always used with self, except in the old-fashioned phrase bethink me, where me is reflexive. We say, let me bethink myself about it, meaning let me think it over.

A-S *bethencan*; E. prefix *be-* and *think*.

**betide** (bè tid'), *v.t.* To happen to. *v.i.* To happen. (F. *arriver à*.)

This verb is only used in the third person, and usually of some misfortune. Thus we say, whatever betide (whatever may happen) I shall do it. In such a phrase as "Woe betide the man who sails to-night" the words express what one fears, rather than what one hopes may happen.

E. prefix *be-* and *tide*. SYN.: Perchance befall, happen, occur.

**betimes** (be timz'), *adv.* In good time; soon, early. (F. *de bonne heure*.)

A boy is said to be up betimes for school when he is up early, in good time, so that he will not be late. When a person says he will do a thing betimes he means he will get it done by the time it is wanted.

Originally spelt *betime*, *s* being an adverbial addition. M.E. *bitime*, A-S. *bi tima*=by time. SYN.: Early, seasonably, soon. ANT.: Late, tardy, unseasonable.

**betoken** (bè tōk' n), *v.t.* To be a token or sign of; to signify; to indicate; to foreshadow; to be an omen of. (F. *indiquer*, *présager*.)

Heavy clouds in the sky betoken rain, tears betoken grief.

E. prefix *be-* and *token*. SYN.: Augur, forecast, denote, imply, represent. ANT.: Belic, misrepresent.

**beton** (bāt' on; bet' òn), *n.* Concrete made of broken stone sand, and Portland cement. (F. *béton*.)

O.F. *betun* rubble, L. *bitūmen* a kind of mineral pitch used in making cement.

**betony** (bet' ò ni), *n.* A plant belonging to the order Labiate. (F. *bétoine*.)

Wood betony (*Stachys Betonica* or *Betonica officinalis*), is a common British plant, with purple flowers, and bitter, aromatic leaves. It was formerly believed to have medicinal and even magical properties, warding off evil spirits and witchcraft. The so-called water betony, or brook betony (*Scrophularia aquatica*) is a figwort; while St. Paul's betony (*Veronica officinalis* or *V. serpyllifolia*) is a species of speedwell.

L. *betonica*, *vettonica*, so called from the Vettones, who occupied a territory in modern Portugal, and are said by Pliny in his "Natural History" (xxv, 84) to have discovered it.

**betook** (bè tuk'), The past tense of betake. See betake.

**betray** (bè trā'), *v.t.* To deliver or reveal treacherously or disloyally (a person or a thing) to an enemy; to be false to; to deceive or lead astray; to reveal against one's will or promise. (F. *trahir*.)

In a famous old French poem, the Song of Roland, that great hero in the army of the Emperor Charlemagne was betrayed by his stepfather Ganelon, to whom the Saracen king had paid ten mules' loads of gold. Ganelon sent the false news that the Saracens had submitted, and proposed that as Charlemagne and his Franks marched home from Spain Roland should command the rear-guard.

In the Pyrenees he and his band were overwhelmed by 400,000 Saracens. When all but he had fallen, Roland blew his mighty horn, but Charlemagne, who heard it far away, was told by Ganelon that he was hunting a stag. So the great hero of the Franks perished, and his betrayer (bè trā' yēr, *n.*) was put to death for his base betrayal (bè trā' yāl, *n.*).

We betray a secret when we tell it to someone to whom we have promised not to tell it; we also betray the friend who trusted us with it. We betray our feelings or ourselves when we blush or turn pale on hearing some remark. A boy playing hide and seek betrays his hiding-place by laughing.

M.E. *betraien*, from prefix *be-* and *traien*, from O.F. *trair*, from L. *traderē* to hand over. SYN.: Disclose, divulge, ensnare, expose, reveal. ANT.: Conceal, hide, hush up, secrete, withhold.

**betroth** (bè trōth'; be trōth'), *v.t.* To bind with a promise to marry. (F. *fiancer*.)

When a man and woman become engaged to be married they are said to be betrothed



Betony.—A common British plant, the betony was once thought to have medicinal properties.

(bè trôthd', *adj.*) couple, and their engagement is spoken of as a betrothal (bè trô' thâl, *n.*) or a betrothment (bè trôth' mënt, *n.*) between them. The act of agreeing to become engaged to marry one another is also called



Betrothal.—The betrothal of Lucy Ashton and Edgar Ravenswood, an incident in Sir Walter Scott's "Bride of Lammermoor."

a betrothal, and one person is said to be the betrothed (*n.*) of the other.

"The Betrothed" is one of the Tales of the Crusaders by Sir Walter Scott.

Prefix *be-* and *troth*. SYN.: Affiance, engage.

**better** (bet'ér) *adj.* Superior; more excellent; more desirable; improved in health. *adv.* In a superior manner. *n.* A superior person or thing. *v.t.* and *v.i.* To amend; to improve. (F. *meilleur*; *mieux*; *supérieur*; *améliorer*.)

The word better is used in a great many different senses. One dinner is better (more delicious, more nourishing, or more skilfully cooked) than another. We say that it is better (wiser) to smile than to cry. A sick person is better (less ill) than he was. A man who has decided something wisely is said to have chosen the better part.

People who get on and rise in the world are said to better themselves, and we say of a child who is less naughty than he was that he has grown a better boy. To reconsider an opinion or decision is to nor better of it. A doctor works for the betterment (bet'ér mënt, *n.*) of public health. Those who are our superiors are called our betters (bet'érz, *n.pl.*).

M.E. and A.-S. *bet* (*adv.*), M.E. *betere*, A.-S. *betera*, *betra* (*adj.*). Similar forms are common to the Teut. languages. From a root *bat-* good. See boot [2]. SYN.: Amend, improve, reform, wiser. ANT.: Degrade, impair, injure, make worse.

**between** (bè twën'), *prep.* In the space separating two persons or things; related to two things or persons. (F. *entre*.)

A prize is divided between two children, but among three or more children. It is a

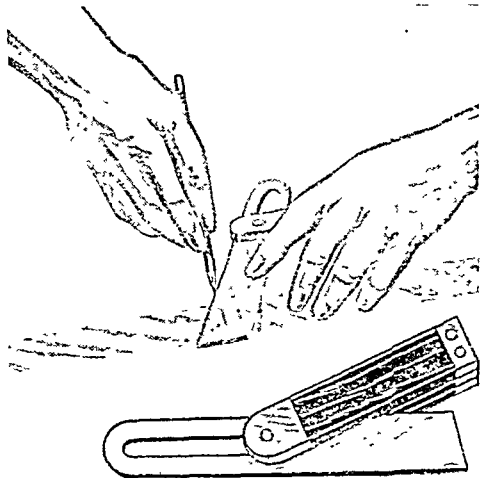
very common mistake to say that a prize was divided between fifty people. The word comes from an old Anglo-Saxon word which means two, and it should only be used when referring to two things.

A go-between (gō' bè twën, *n.*) is one who conveys messages from one person to another, or who acts as a peacemaker between them, or between two sets of persons. When we tell another person something in confidence we say "this is between ourselves." Sailors talk about between-decks (bè twën' deks, *n.*), meaning between the upper and lower decks of a vessel. The word is also used for the actual space between the decks.

A between-maid (bè twën' mād, *n.*), often called a "tweeny," is a servant who divides her time between the kitchen and the rest of the house, helping the cook and the house-maid. Anything done now and then or at odd times is said to be done between-whiles (bè twën' hwilz, *adv.*). Far between means at long intervals of time or space, but betwixt (bè twikst', *prep.* and *adv.*) means neither one thing nor the other, or half and half.

Thus we may say that we will meet someone betwixt and between five and six o'clock. Needles which are neither very small nor very large are called betwixt and betweens.

A.-S. *betwēon-an*, *-um*, that is, by *twain*, *twēonum* being the dative pl. of *twēone* double, two. SYN.: Amid, among, betwixt. ANT.: Beyond, without.



Bevel-square.—When a carpenter wishes to make an angle on wood he uses a bevel-square for the purpose.

**bevel** (bev'él), *n.* An angle that is not a right or square angle. *adj.* Slanting; sloping. *v.t.* To cut away to a slope. *v.i.* To recede; to slant. (F. *biais*, *angle oblique*; *en biais*; *tailler en biais*.)

A chisel has a bevel-edge (*n.*), which is formed by grinding away one side of the

flat steel bar out of which it is made. In machines one shaft drives another shaft not in line with, nor parallel to, itself through bevel-gearing (*n.*). On each shaft is a bevel-wheel (*n.*) shaped like part of a cone, and having teeth cut in the sloping face.

In most motor-cars power is transmitted from the engine to the back axle through bevel wheels, and a carpenter uses a bevel-square (*n.*) for measuring angles when he has to put bevelling (*bev' ling, n.*) on the edge of a board or wishes to mark timber before sawing. The tool consists of a steel blade, working on a screw set in a wooden stock, which may be adjusted to whatever angle is required.

Assumed O.F. *bevel* (*n*), whence F. *biveau*, with varying first-syllable vowel. There is an O.F. verb *bever* to slope.

**beverage** (*bev' èr àj*), *n.* A drink; the liquid for drinking. (F. *breuvage, boisson*.)

In James Thomson's "The Castle of Indolence" (ii, 7), we read: "He knew no beverage but the flowing stream."

O.F. *beverage*, from L. *bibere* to drink. The suffix *-age* is from L. *-aticum*, through F., expressing action, etc., here something for drinking.

**bevy** (*bev' i*), *n.* A company or number. (F. *troupe, volée*.)

We speak of a bevy of beautiful damsels, when there are a number of beautiful girls gathered together, and a bevy of quails or larks. A herd of roes is also called a bevy.

The word perhaps originally meant a drinking party, O.F. *bevee* drinking-cup, *beverie* drinking, Ital. *bevere*, from L. *bibere*

it begins to cry or complain loudly because it has lost something or cannot get its own way.

A person who loudly bewails that things have gone wrong is said to act bewailingly (*bè wâl' ing li, adv.*), and his act of bewailing is called bewailment (*bè wâl' mènt, n.*).

E. prefix *be-* and *wail*. SYN.: Deplora, ire about, lament, mourn. ANT.: Exult, rejoice.

**beware** (*bè wâr'* ), *v.i.* To be cautious; to be on one's guard; to take care. *v.t.* To be on guard against; to be cautious about. (F. *prendre garde; se garder de, prendre garde à*.)

We say "Beware of that person" when we mean that one should be careful in his dealings with him lest he should do him an injury or an ill-service. The phrase, "Beware of the dog," tells us to be on our guard and not go too close to the dog lest he should attack us. The notice "Beware of the trains" warns us to keep a sharp look out and not to cross the line or stand too near the edge of the platform without looking to see if a train is coming.

E. *be* imperative, and *ware*. SYN.: Be wary, look out, mind. ANT.: Be careless, ignore, neglect, reckless.

**bewig** (*bè wig'* ), *v.t.* To put on a wig. (F. *porter perruque*.)

Lawyers and judges are said to be bewigged (*bè wigd'* , *adj.*) when they are in court, for there they wear grey wigs. As judges, who represent the power of the law, always wear wigs, the word bewigged has also come to mean bound with red tape, all legal documents and papers being fastened with red tape. Thus bewigged used in this sense means ruled by convention.

In the eighteenth century all the heroes in plays used to be bewigged with blond wigs and all the villains with black wigs, so that even to this day villains in novels and stories are often described as being dark-haired and heroes as light-haired.

E. prefix *be-* and *wig*.

**bewilder** (*bè wil' dèr*), *v.t.* To perplex; to confuse; to lead astray. (F. *égarer*.)

If we use difficult words we are likely to bewilder our listeners. A boy may find a lesson he does not understand bewildering (*bè wil' dèr ing, adj.*) and think it to be bewilderingly (*bè wil' dèr ing li, adv.*) difficult. We may say that his bewilderment (*bè*

*wil' dèr mènt, n.*), caused by the lesson, is great.

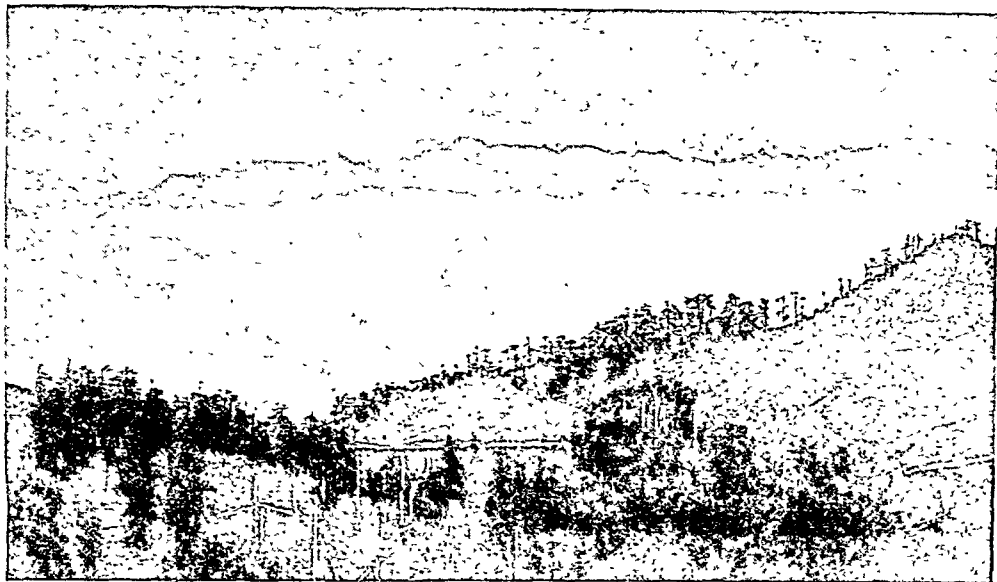
E. prefix *be-* and obsolete (except in poetry) *wilder* to lead astray, appearing in *wilderness* (M.E. *uilderne, wildernes*); formed on the analogy of *wander*. SYN.: Confuse, distract, mislead, perplex. ANT.: Clear, enlighten, explain.



Bewail.—Jews bewailing the fall of Jerusalem at the wall in the Holy City which is known as the Jews' Wailing Place.

**bewail** (*bè wâl'* ), *v.t.* To mourn for; to express sorrow for. *v.i.* To express grief. (F. *pleurer*.)

We say that a person is bewailing (*bè wâl' ing, adj.*) his fate when he is stating that things have not gone right with him. A child is said to set up a bewailing (*n.*) when



Beyond.—The tree-clad heights of Sandakphu, in the district of Darjeeling, Bengal, with the towering Himalaya Mountains in the background.

**bewitch** (bè wích'), *v.t.* To cast a magic spell over; to practise witchcraft against; to charm; to enchant; to fascinate. (F. *ensorceler, enchanter*.)

We often read in fairy tales how wicked fairies bewitch mortals, perhaps by turning them into animals or casting some other spell over them. A girl who is very charming and casts spells of fascination over people is said to be bewitching (bè wích' ing, *adj.*). She behaves bewitchingly (bè wích' ing li, *adv.*), and we may speak of her bewitchment (bè wích' mēt, *n.*), though this word is not often used nowadays.

E. prefix *be-*, and *witch* (*v.*). SYN.: Allure, charm, delight, entrance. ANT.: Avoid, recoil, repel, repulse.

**bey** (bā), *n.* A governor of a Turkish province or town. Another spelling is beg (bēg). (F. *bey*.)

A beylic (bā' lik, *n.*) is the district or province ruled over by a bey, who dispenses beylical (bā' lik āl, *adj.*) justice. The title bey is sometimes given as a mark of courtesy to native military officials and eminent foreigners.

**beyond** (bè yond'), *prep.* On, to, or towards the farther side of; past; later than; more than; outside the limit of; *adv.* At a greater distance than; farther away. *n.* The future life. (F. *au delà de; plus loin que, là-bas.*)

We may say that the sea is beyond the land, or the future beyond the present. A thing we cannot understand is said to be beyond us, meaning that it is outside our limits of understanding. The Beyond is a term for that which lies beyond human experience, as that which occurs after death.

A very out-of-the-way place is referred to as the back of beyond.

A-S. *begeondan*, from *be-* about, *geondan* across, beyond, from *geond* throughout. SYN.: Afar, farther, yonder. ANT.: Hereabouts, near, nigh.

**bezant** (be zānt'; bez' ānt), *n.* A gold or silver coin. (F. *besant*.)

This coin was first issued by one of the Byzantine emperors at Byzantium, or Constantinople as it is now called, hence its name, and later was circulated throughout Europe. Its average value was about nine shillings, but the silver bezant of the same period was worth about two shillings. In heraldry a gold roundel or ball on a coat of arms is called a bezant.

1. Crusaders were often paid for their services in bezants, and so gradually the coin came into use in their own countries. In England bezants were in wide circulation during the thirteenth and fourteenth centuries. The Crusades made the bezant an almost sacred symbol, and it often appears on heraldic shields.

1. The most reasonable explanation of the three golden balls of the pawnbroker's sign is, that they were symbols of the three bezants forming the badge of the Medici family. This badge became the national arms of Lombardy and the Lombards were among the earliest bankers or professional money-lenders to settle in England.

From L. *Byzantius* Byzantine, with *nummus* coin understood.

**bezel** (bez' èl), *n.* A sloping edge like that of a chisel or other cutting tool; the face cut on a diamond or other precious stone; the groove which holds a watch-glass in place or a precious stone in its setting. (F. *biseau, chaton*.)

Rider Haggard uses the word in his book, "She": "The scarab that I knew was not set thus in the bezel of a ring."

O.F. *bisel*, assumed from F. *biseau*, of doubtful origin.

**bezique** (bè zēk'), *n.* A game of cards. (F. *bésigue*.)

Bezique is played with two special packs of cards, and came, originally, from France.

The word is possibly connected with the Pers. *bāzichah* play.

**bhang** (bāng), *n.* A stupefying drug made from hemp; the hemp plant. Another spelling is bang. (F. *bang*.)

In India hemp is called bhang, but what is usually understood by bhang is a drug made from hemp. The drug consists of the dried leaves of the plant with little bits of stalk and some of the fruits mixed with it. It is either smoked, or eaten with honey and spices like a sweetmeat, or else made into a drink. It is greenish-brown in colour, hardly tastes at all, but has an overpowering smell.



Bhils.—Bhil women of Kathiawar carrying water.

**Bhils** (bēlz), *n.* One of the primitive races of India. (F. *Bhils*.)

The Bhils are a dark, sturdy race of hunters inhabiting the valleys of the Nerbudda and Tapti, and the slopes of the Vindhya and Satpura hills. They are a freedom-loving people, disliking regular work, but having a liking for war and plunder. They are rather low in the scale of civilization, but are improving under British rule. They are very faithful and truthful.

**bi-** (bi). A Latin prefix meaning two, twice, double, once in every two, every two.

It is frequently met with in botanical terms, and less often in mathematical, chemical, and zoological terms. In some instances it is placed before English words, as for example, *biangular* (bī āng gū' lār, *adj.*), which means a figure possessing two angles.

L, earlier *dui-* from *duo* two

**bias** (bi' ās), *n.* Leaning of the mind, tendency, bent, prejudice. *v.t.* To give a bias to; to influence unduly; to prejudice. *adj.* Slanting, cross-wise. *adv.* Slantingly. (F. *penchant*, *préjugé*; *faire pencher*, *influencer*; *de biais*.)

In the game of bowls the bowls were formerly weighted on one side, and are now flattened on one side, to make them swerve or roll obliquely instead of straight forward; this slanting tendency is known as the bias. Hence bias means a slant in the mind, and people are said to have a bias towards things or ideas they like particularly, or to be biased (bi' āst, *adj.*) against those which they dislike.

In dressmaking, material cut out diagonally across the texture or on the slant or cross is said to be cut on the bias, or cut bias. Bias binding is binding cut on the cross so that it will lie flat round curved edges of stuff.

F. *biais* slanting. SYN.: Inclination, lopsidedness, obliquity, prepossession, propensity. ANT.: Reaction, repulsion, repugnance.

**biaxial** (bi āks' i āl), *adj.* Having two optical axes. Another spelling is biaxal (bi āks' āl). (F. *à deux axes*.)

In certain crystals, such as nitre and topaz, there are two directions in which light can pass without being doubly refracted. Since each of these directions is called an optic axis, such crystals are said to be biaxial.

E prefix *bi-* two, double, and *axis* with suffix *-al* (L. *-ālis*).

**bib** (bib), *v.t.* and *i.* To drink much or often, especially alcoholic drink. *n.* A cloth put under a child's chin to keep the front of the clothes clean; the top part of an apron; a small fish. (F. *buwater*; *bavette*.)

The verb is now rare, but a man who drinks a great deal is sometimes said to be a bibber (bib' ēr, *n.*). He may be said to have a bibulous (bib' ū lūs, *adj.*) nature and to behave bibulously (bib' ū lūs li, *adv.*).

A child wears a bib at meals and many aprons have fronts or tops which are called bibs. To put on one's best bib and tucker is a jocular phrase for to dress in one's best clothes. Bib is the name of a small fish, allied to the haddock, and known also as the pout.

Both *v.* and *n.* are probably connected with L. *bibere* to drink, the *n.* expressing the purpose of the child's bib, to prevent his spilling his drink over himself.

**bibelot** (bēb' lō), *n.* A small article of beauty or rarity. (F. *bibelot*.)

Small curiosities or knick-knacks of the kind you see in china cabinets, or on little shelves or tables in a drawing-room, are bibelots.



# BIBLE: THE BOOK OF BOOKS

*The Gradual Growth and many Versions of the Library of Sacred Writings*

**Bible** (bi' bl), *n.* The collection of sacred writings recognized by the Christian Church, containing the Old and New Testaments. (F: *Bible*.)

It was not until the thirteenth century that the word was used in English literature in this special sense. Before that time these writings were known as "the sacred library," or *bibliotheca sacra* by the scholars, because the Bible is really made up of many books. In the Old Testament there are thirty-nine and in the New Testament twenty-seven books, without counting certain writings known as the Apocrypha, which the Roman Catholics regard as part of the Scriptures.

It was not until the reign of James I, in the year 1604, that our present authorized English version of these writings was begun. There were English versions before that. The first translation of the whole Bible was that commonly ascribed to John Wyclif about 1382. Tyndale's translation of the Pentateuch, Jonah, and the New Testament was the first printed English version (1525-31). Coverdale's Bible, largely translated from German and Latin, appeared in 1535, and Matthew's, on which our Authorized Version is based, in 1537.

The clergy, meanwhile, had petitioned the king in 1534 to nominate "some honest and learned men" to translate the Scriptures accurately and in a way that the people could understand. The result was the official version of 1539, which bore the arms of Cromwell, showing that it was undertaken under his patronage. Because of its size, for its pages were fifteen inches by nineteen inches, it was known as "the Great Bible." This version, mainly a revision of that of Matthew, was prepared under the guidance of Coverdale.

Two improvements were attempted. One by a party of English exiles in Geneva, which is sometimes known as "the Breeches Bible," because it uses the word "breeches" for "aprons" in Genesis (iii, 7); and the other by a company of bishops, known as "The Bishops' Bible," adorned with engravings

and wood-cuts, which was ordered to be placed in the churches, and also in the dining-rooms of the bishops' palaces for the use of servants and strangers.

The Geneva Bible was, however, the most popular. It was cheaper and more convenient in size than the magnificent folio of the "Bishops' Bible." In addition it was furnished with notes for the unlearned. But the Roman Catholic Church was not at all satisfied with translations which had been prepared by Protestants.

So in 1582 a party of English Roman Catholics, who had settled at Douai and established a college for the reconversion of England, began to publish what is known as "the Douai Bible," correcting the errors of the other versions, and providing for Roman Catholics a translation which to this day is the Bible for Christians of this faith.

It was because of the perplexities created by these differing versions and the earlier attempts to translate the Bible into English that King James I was petitioned to have the Authorized English Version prepared. This celebrated version, really a careful revision of the Bishops' Bible, occupied about fifty of the best Hebrew and Greek scholars of the day from 1604 to 1611. It is generally

acknowledged to be a masterpiece of English literature, and has had an immense influence in forming and fixing the literary language.

Towards the end of the nineteenth century it was felt that this translation needed to be revised in accordance with modern scholarship, which had made great progress in understanding the ancient languages and in determining the original form of the texts. Also the English of the seventeenth century did not always render to the modern reader the full meaning of the original Scripture. Hence the Revised Version of 1881-1884, and the American Standard Revised Bible of 1901.

Before any English version had been attempted, the Bible had been read for centuries in Latin, into which language, as the common tongue of the people of the



Bible. — William Tyndale translating the Pentateuch, Jonah, and the New Testament into English. He did not live to complete the entire Bible.

Roman Empire, the available texts of Scripture written in Hebrew, Greek, and Aramaic, had been translated. "The Vulgate" is the Bible in the "vulgar" or "common" tongue of the Roman people, and upon this version all the early English Bibles were based. It was written at Bethlehem by St. Jerome about A.D. 384. He followed the Hebrew and Greek originals, though his New Testament is to a great extent a revision of older Latin versions.

In sundry times and in divers manners spake God in time past unto the Fathers. Gradually He unfolded His mind and purpose to man. Gradually the "Library of Sacred Writings" grew. Gradually the Word "which liveth and abideth for ever" was sifted from

### The first Chapter.



It begyn  
nyngē God  
created hea  
uen & earth:  
and y<sup>e</sup> earth  
was voyde  
and emptye,  
and darck-  
nes was v-  
pon the de-  
pe, & y<sup>e</sup> spī-  
te of God  
moued vpo  
the water.

And God sayde: let there be light, & there  
was light. And God sawe the light that it  
was good. Then God denyded y<sup>e</sup> light from  
the darcknes, and called the light, Daye: and  
the darcknes, Night. Then of the euēnyng  
and mornynge was made the first daye.

From the copy in the British Museum.

Bible.—A portion of the first printed English Bible. It was translated by Miles Coverdale, and produced abroad in 1535.

that which passeth away. Not in one document, but in many did God preserve the truth, until at length it could be brought together and delivered to us in the compass of a single volume which we treasure and call "the Bible."

Anything related to the Bible is said to be biblical (bib' li kál, *adj.*), as, for instance, biblical criticism, which is criticism of the literary history of the sacred text. Anything that is said after the style or manner of the Bible is spoken biblically (bib' li kál li, *adv.*). A strict regard for biblical doctrine, or the letter of the Bible is biblicism (bib' li sizm, *n.*). One who is versed in biblical knowledge, or who makes the Bible his sole rule of faith

is a **biblicist** (bib' li sist, *n.*) or **biblist** (bib' list, *n.*).

L.L. *Biblia* taken as a fem. sing., really a neuter pl. from Gr. *biblia* little books, a dim. of *biblos* papyrus, a book written on its pith.

**biblio-** *prefix.* Relating to books, or to the Bible. (*F. biblio-*.)

This prefix occurs in a number of words in the English language. A **biblioklept** (bib' li ó klept, *n.*) is one who steals books. **Bibliology** (bib li ol' ó ji, *n.*) is the scientific study of books, and is applied also to the systematic knowledge of the Bible, and anything pertaining to it is **bibliological** (bib li ó loj' ik ál, *adj.*). A person who is mad about books or collecting books is called a **bibliomaniac** (bib li ó mā' ni āk, *n.*), and is said to suffer from **bibliomania** (bib li ó mā' ni ā, *n.*). An unusual name for a bookseller is **bibliopole** (bib' li ó pól, *n.*) or **bibliopolist** (bib li op' ól ist, *n.*), and his trade is **bibliopoly** (bib li op' ó li, *n.*). He is occupied with **bibliopolic** (bib li ó pol' ik, *adj.*) or **bibliopolical** (bib li ó pol' ik ál, *adj.*) affairs. A **bibliotheca** (bib li ó thē' ká, *n.*) is a large library, such as that of the British Museum.

Gr. *biblio(n)* book.

**bibliography** (bib li og' rá fi), *n.* The methodical description and history of books; a classified list of books of any subject or author. (*F. bibliographie.*)

We speak of a bibliography of games when we mean a list of books, papers, and articles about games, stating the authors, when and where they were published, and by whom. A bibliography of Kipling is a list of all books, stories, etc., written by Mr. Rudyard Kipling. A man who prepares such lists or writes about books is called a **bibliographer** (bib li og' rá fér, *n.*), and the books he writes are called **bibliographical** (bib li ó gráf' ik ál, *adj.*) books.

Gr. *bibliographia* properly the writing of books, then writing about, or cataloguing them, from *biblio(n)* book, *graphein* to write.

**bibliolatr** (bib li ol' át ri), *n.* Extravagant reverence for the Bible. (*F. bibliolâtr.*)

One who regards the mere words or letter of the Scriptures with superstitious veneration is called **bibliolatr** (bib li ol' át rūs, *adj.*) or a **bibliolater** (bib li ol' át ér, *n.*).

Gr. *biblo(n)* book, *latreia* worship.

**bibliomancy** (bib' li ó mǎn si), *n.* A method of attempting to discover future events or obtain guidance by random reference to the Bible. (*F. bibliomancie.*)

In olden times it was a custom with many people to open the Bible at random and read the first verse they saw to guide them in their doings for the day or the future. It was a common thing when a bishop was elected for those electing him to do the same thing, and if the verse they read was suitable to any particular man they voted for him.

This practice of opening the Bible at random to seek guidance for the future is called **bibliomancy**. St. Augustine,

one of the greatest Fathers of the Church, who in his youth had drifted away from Christianity, opened the Bible in this way at Rome in 386, and on reading it became a convert to Christianity.

Another form of bibliomancy was used to detect witchcraft. A person suspected of witchcraft or magic was placed in one pan of a pair of large scales and one of the large Bibles formerly used was placed in the other. If the Bible proved heavier the supposed witch was acquitted, but if not she was found guilty and punished.

Gr. *biblo(n)* book, *manteia* divination. The termination *-mancy* comes from L.L. *-mantia* through O.F. *-mancie*.

**bibliophile** (bib' li ô fil), *n.* A lover of books. (F. *bibliophile*.)

The word is specially used of one who collects and values books for their rarity or beauty, rather than for their contents. He is sometimes called a bibliophilist (bib li of' il ist, *n.*), and his pursuit is bibliophilism (bib li of' il izm, *n.*) or bibliophily (bib li of' il i, *n.*).

One of the most famous bibliophiles was the late J. Pierpont Morgan, the American banker, who housed his wonderful treasures in a magnificent marble building in New York, where they are now available for use by students from all parts of the world. Included in the collection are over five hundred volumes of illuminated manuscripts, and scores of shelves are devoted to the productions of the early printers, rare bibles, psalters, Gospels and service books, and Elizabethan and Jacobean first editions. There are also priceless drawings, etchings, and mezzotints.

Gr. *biblo(n)* book, *philos* friend.

**bibulous** (bib' ū lūs), *adv.* One given to habitual drinking. See bib.

**bicameral** (bi kām' ér āl), *adj.* Having two law-making bodies. (F. *ayant deux chambres législatives*.)

The British legislature or parliament is a bicameral one, the two law-making bodies being the House of Lords and the House of Commons. The U.S.A. has a bicameral government—the Senate and Congress.

E. prefix *bi-* two, double, L. *camera* chamber, suffix *-al* (L. *ālis*).

**bicarbonate** (bi kar' bôn āt), *n.* A carbonate containing two portions, or equivalents, of carbonic acid to one of the

base, such as bicarbonate of soda, bicarbonate of lime. (F. *bicarbonate*.)

E. prefix *bi-* and *carbonate*.

**bice** (bis), *n.* A blue pigment made from smalt or from blue carbonate of copper. (F. *petit gris*.)

There is also a green bice, made by mixing blue with orpiment, a sulphide of arsenic. Both pigments are very lasting.

F. *bis* dark-coloured, from Ital. *bigio* ashen grey, L. *bombycinus* of the colour of dark silk (*bombyx*).

**bicentenary** (bi sent' é nār i; bi sèn tē' nār i), *adj.* Consisting of two hundred years. *n.* The two hundredth anniversary. (F. *bicentenaire*, *deuxième centenaire*.)

A bicentennial (bi sèn ten' i āl, *adj.*) affair is one occurring every two hundred years, or lasting two hundred years. As a noun, bicentennial is an American form of bicentenary.

E. prefix *bi-* and *centenary*.

**bicephalous** (bi sef' ā lūs), *adj.* Having two heads; two-headed. (F. *bicéphale*.) At old country fairs a bicephalous calf was quite a common sight.

E. prefix *bi-*, Gr. *kephalē* head, and adjectival suffix *-ous*.

**biceps** (bi' seps), *n.* The big muscle in

front of the upper arm, used in bending the arm; also a similar muscle behind the upper part of the leg, used in bending the knee. (F. *biceps*.)

The word means two-headed, and is applied to these muscles because each is attached at one end to the bone by two tendons. The biceps of the arm forms a hard lump when the hand is clenched and the elbow bent. The late Eugen Sandow, the famous strong man and physical trainer, measured nineteen and a half

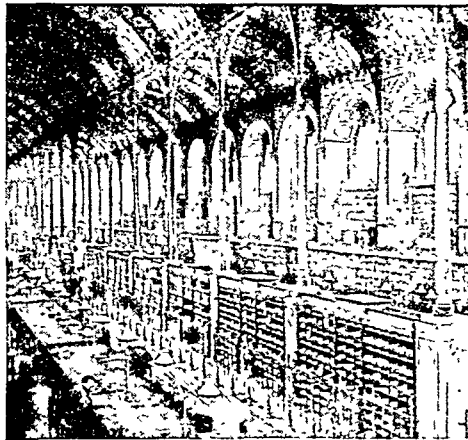
inches round the biceps when he was twenty-nine years old. Bicipital (bi sip' i tāl, *adj.*) means pertaining to the biceps.

L. *biceps* (acc. *bicipit-em*) from prefix *bi-* and *capit* head.

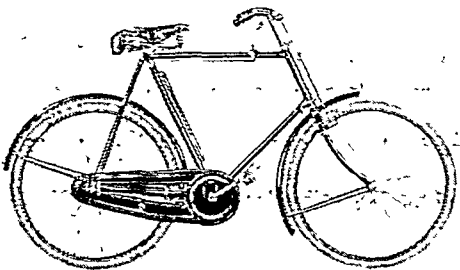
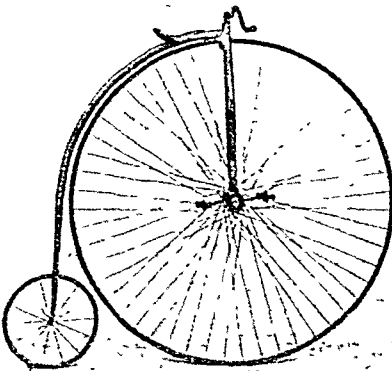
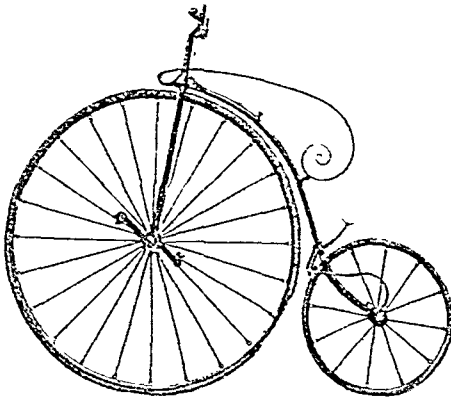
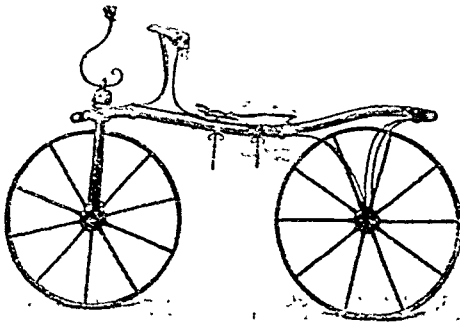
**bichloride** (bi klōr' id), *n.* A compound in which two atoms of chlorine are combined with one atom of another element. (F. *bichlorure*.)

The only bichloride we hear much about is mercury bichloride. This is an extremely poisonous substance known as "corrosive sublimate," a preparation of which is often used to preserve the skins of stuffed birds and other animals from decay.

E. prefix *bi-* and *chloride*.



Bibliophile.—The reading-room of the Bibliothèque Sainte-Geneviève, Paris, beloved of bibliophiles.



Bicycle.—Reading from top to bottom, the gradual development of the bicycle is shown: the hobby horse, invented by Charles, Baron von Drais, in 1818; Starley's spider-wheel bicycle, 1872; Rudge ordinary bicycle, 1884; Raleigh gentleman's safety bicycle.

**bicker** (bik'ér), *v.i.* To dispute, wrangle; to patter, flicker, glitter. *n.* A skirmish; a trivial quarrel or altercation; a rattling or pattering noise. (F. *se quereller, fouetter, trembler; escarmouche, picoterie.*)

We often say two children are bickering, when we mean they are squabbling over something. It is almost quarrelling, and a bickering (bik'ér ing, *n.*) is a quarrelsome dispute. In a fanciful sense a flame is said to be bickering when it flickers, or the rain is said to be bickering down, meaning it is pattering on the roof or windows.

.M.E. *bikerin* to fight; perhaps connected with O.F. *béquer* to peck with the beak (*bec*), or E. *beck* mattock (A.-S. *becca*). SYN.: Disagree, jangle, quarrel, squabble. ANT.: Agree, harmonize.

**bicorporate** (bi kôr' pò ràt), *adj.* Having two bodies. (F. *à deux corps.*)

The figure of an animal with two bodies but only one head, sometimes seen on coats of arms, is bicorporate, or bicorporal (bi kôr' pò ràl, *adj.*).

Prefix *bi-* and *corporate*, from L. *corporatus*, p.p. of *corporare* to make into a body (*corpus*).

**bicuspid** (bi kûs' pid), *adj.* Having two points. *n.* A tooth with two cusps, or points. (F. *bicuspidé.*)

The premolar teeth, the two teeth between the canines and molars on each side of the upper and lower jaws, are bicuspids. A flower or leaf that has two points is described as bicuspid or bicuspidate (bi kûs' pid àt, *adj.*).

Prefix *bi-* and L. *cusps* (acc. *cuspid-em*) point.

**bicycle** (bi' sild), *n.* A vehicle with two wheels, one in front of the other, propelled by pedals or a motor. *v.i.* To ride on a bicycle. (F. *bicyclette; aller à bicyclette.*)

The history of the bicycle in a primitive form goes back to the eighteenth century, or even earlier. The old velocipede or draisine, popular about 1817, was propelled by striking the ground with the feet. It was not till 1840 that a Scotsman named McMillan, who lived in Dumfriesshire, invented a bicycle with pedals, although it was not much used. The improvements made by the French about 1865, and the use of rubber tires in 1868, first made bicycles really popular. Until about 1885 the "ordinary" bicycle had a front wheel about four feet six inches high, and a very small back wheel.

For a long time it was thought to be a very daring thing for a lady to ride a bicycle. The tandem bicycle has a long frame and two seats, one behind the other. For a short time a craze arose for a bicycle with a very long frame and as many as six to ten seats, so that parties could go out cycling on one machine. Anyone who rides a bicycle is called a bicyclist (bi' si klist, *n.*) or cyclist.

Prefix *bi-* two, double, and *cycle* (Gr. *kýklos* wheel).

**bid** (bid), *v.t.* To offer; to invite; to utter or wish; to command. *v.i.* To make an offer. *p.t.* Bade, bad, bid; *p.p.* bidden.

**n.** An offer; a sum offered at an auction. (F. *offrir*, *inviter*, *souhaiter*, *commander*; *offrir*; *offre*.)

Bid is a word which has gone partly out of use, but is still employed in many different senses. A person is said to bid defiance to his enemies when he challenges them or tells them to do their worst. At an auction, one person may bid ten pounds for a picture, and another follows with eleven pounds; if no higher bid is made, it is sold to the highest bidder (bid'ér, *n.*). The parties at an election bid for votes or for power by making promises to the electors.

When we say it bids fair to be fine we mean it promises or seems likely to be fine. We may bid our friends to a wedding, and when they come we bid them welcome or good morning. In Scotland or the North of England one may bid, that is, order or tell, a child to go to bed. Anyone who obeys you does your bidding (bid'ing, *n.*), while an obedient person is said to be biddable (bid'ábl, *adj.*). The so-called bidding prayer, used at the universities and in cathedrals, is not really a prayer, but a "bidding of prayers," that is, an invitation or direction addressed to those present to pray for the Church and for various classes of people. The word beadsman comes from the same old word as bid. See *under* bead.

The two meanings are due to a confusion of different roots: (1) M.E. *bidden* to ask, pray, A.-S. *biddan*, akin to G. *bitten*, E. *bead*, Gr. *peithen* to persuade; (2) M.E. *beden* to proclaim, command, offer, A.-S. *bēodan*, akin to G. *bieten*. SYN.: Command, direct, order, propose.

**bide** (bid), *v.i.* To remain; to wait; to stay; to abide. *v.t.* To await; to endure. (F. *rester*; *attendre*, *endurer*.)

This is now an old-fashioned word, being generally replaced by abide. It is chiefly used in the phrase to bide one's time, that is, to wait for a favourable opportunity to arrive. To bide by a promise is to stick to it. In poetry bide is used much more commonly. A place where a person stays is sometimes called his place of biding (bid'ing, *n.*).

M.E. *biden*, A.-S. *bidan*. The word is common to the Teut. languages. SYN.: Bear, dwell, reside, stay, tarry. ANT.: Depart, go, protest, resist.

**biennial** (bī en' i ál), *adj.* Occurring once in two years; lasting two years. *n.* A plant which lives for two seasons or years, flowering and dying in the second season. (F. *biennal*.)

A festival which takes place regularly at intervals of two years is a biennial festival and occurs biennially (bī en' i ál li, *adv.*). The hollyhock is a biennial. A period of two years is a biennium (bī en' i ūm, *n.*).

L. *biennius*, *adj.*, *biennium*, *n.*, from prefix *bi-* and *annus* year.

**bier** (bēr), *n.* A movable stand on which a coffin or a dead person is carried to the grave. (F. *bière*.)

A.-S. *baer*, from *beran* to carry; cognate with G. *bahren*.

**bifacial** (bī fā' shál), *adj.* Having two fronts. (F. *bifacial*.)

This word is mostly used as a botanical term, a leaf with its opposite faces not alike being called bifacial. Sculptured figures or effigies on coins are sometimes bifacial, and a clock with two faces might be so called.

E. prefix *bi-* and *facial* (L. *facies* face).

**biffin** (bif' in), *n.* A red Norfolk apple; a flattened, baked apple. (F. *pomme tapée*.)

The biffin apple is an excellent cooker, and is often sent to market dried and flattened.

The word, formerly *beefing*, is said to come from beef owing to its colour.

**bifid** (bi' fid), *adj.* Split partly into two; forked; two-cleft. (F. *bifide*.)

This term occurs in botany, and denotes that there is a cleft in a petal or leaf reaching half way down it. See *bipartite*.

L. *bifidus*, from prefix *bi-* and *findere* (preterite *fini*) to cleave, split.

**biflorate** (bī flōr' át), *adj.* Bearing two flowers. (F. *biflore*.)

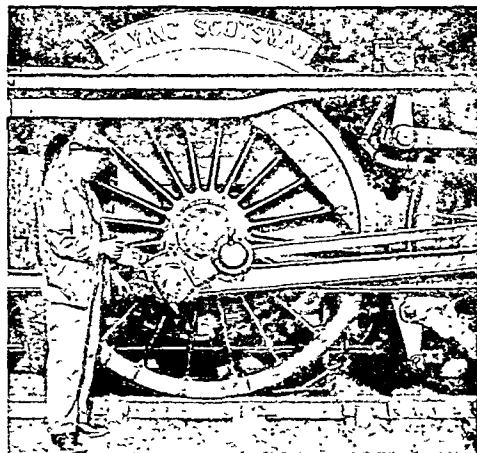
A plant with two leaves is bifoliate (bī fō' li át, *adj.*), and, if it has two leaflets, bifoliolate (bī fō' li ō lát, *adj.*).

E. and L. prefix *bi-* and L. *flōs* (acc. *flor-em*) flower, and p.p. suffix *-ate*.

**bifurcate** (bī fūr kāt), *v.i.* To divide into two forks or branches. *adj.* Divided thus. (F. *se bifurquer*; *bifurqué*.)

A road is said to bifurcate when it breaks into two roads, one to the right and one to the left. A bifurcate branch of a tree is one which is forked or divided into two branches. The point at which it is forked is called its bifurcation (bī fūr kā' shùn, *n.*).

L.L. *bifurcari* (p.p. *bifurcatus*), from *bifurcus*, from prefix *bi-* two, double, *furca* fork.



Big-end. — Oiling the big-end of the connecting-rod of a London and North Eastern Railway engine.

**big** (big), *adj.* Large; great in bulk; grown-up; teeming; important; boastful. (F. *gros*, *grand*, *vantard*.)

A big boy is one who is tall and broad for his age; if his bones are large we say he is

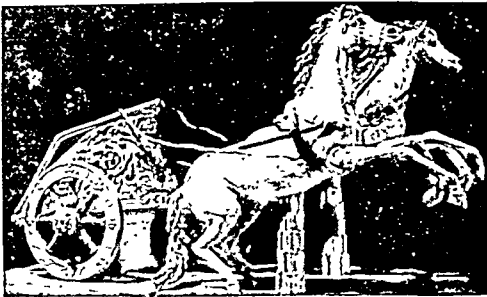
**big-boned** (*adj.*). A person is sometimes said to be big with news when he is so full of it that he seems to have grown larger than usual with importance. People who boast are said to talk big.

A man who insists on differing from other people about some trifling matter is sometimes called a **big-endian** (*big en' di an, n.*). This comes from Dean Swift's "Gulliver's Travels." When Gulliver visited the island of Lilliput, in this story, he found there a religious party who believed it was right to break any boiled eggs they ate at the big end; they were considered heretics by the rest of the people, who broke theirs at the small end. In writing this Jonathan Swift was making fun of the fanatical religious partisans of his day.

The crank-end of an engine's connecting-rod is known as the **big-end** (*n.*) from the fact that it has to be enlarged to encircle the crank-pin, which it turns round and round when its other end is moved to and fro.

The larger quadrupeds that are hunted are called **big game** (*n.*), and certain enormous trees in California, the Sequoias, are known as **big trees** (*n.*). The Rocky Mountain sheep is called the **big-horn** (*n.*) from its remarkably large horns. **Bigwig** (*n.*) is a familiar and slightly contemptuous name for a man of importance. In Queen Anne's time fine gentlemen wore very long wigs. The quality of being big or large or important is called **bigness** (*big' nés, n.*). Thus we say that Cecil Rhodes was distinguished by the **bigness** of his projects or plans.

**M.E. bigg(e).** The word is possibly Scand., but of unknown origin. The earliest meanings are strong, violent, rich. **SYN.**: Great, gross, large, haughty, pompous. **ANT.**: Humble, little, small.



Biga.—A sculpture of a Roman biga in the Vatican Museum, Rome.

**biga** (*bī' gā, n.*). A two-horse chariot used by the ancient Romans. (*F. bige.*)

The horses were harnessed abreast and not tandem-fashion.

**Bigae**, the commoner L. pl. form, is a contraction of *bijugae*, from *bi(s)* twice, double, *jugum* yoke.

**bigamy** (*big' ā mi, n.*). Entering into a second marriage illegally. (*F. bigamie.*)

Bigamy is a crime punishable by imprisonment. One who commits this crime is a **bigamist** (*big' ā mist, n.*), and he or she is

said to contract a **bigamous** (*big' ā mūs, adj.*) marriage.

Prefix *bi-*, Gr. *gamos* marriage, L.L. *bigamus* twice married.

**bigaroon** (*big ār oon', n.*). A firm-fleshed, heart-shaped cherry. Another spelling is **bigarreau** (*big' ā rō*). (*F. bigarreau.*)

*F. bigarré* varied, from L. *bis* twice, *variare* to vary.

**bigg** (*big*), *n.* The four-rowed barley. Another spelling is **big**. (*F. orge d'hiver.*)

Bigg is a coarse variety of the six-rowed barley (*Hordeum hexastichon*). Very hardy and thriving in the poorest soil, it is grown in Ireland and North Scotland for malting and the manufacture of spirits.

Of Scand. origin, O. Norse *bygg* barley; cp. A.-S. *bēow* corn, grain.

**bight** (*bīt*), *n.* A recess in the shore; a large bay; the loop of a rope. (*F. baie, boucle.*)

A bay contained in the bend of a coastline between two capes or headlands, is sometimes known as a bight. Such are the Bight of Heligoland, the Great Australian Bight, and the Bights of Biafra and Benin in the Gulf of Guinea, West Africa.

A.-S. *byht*, from *bigan* to bend; cp. G. *biegen*, *bucht*, E. *bow*.

**bignonia** (*big nō' ni ā, adj.*). A genus of plants with trumpet-shaped flowers. (*F. bignonie.*)

The bignonias are ornamental shrubs and trees, natives of the tropics and other warm regions. Several of them are cultivated under glass for their beautiful flowers, and one, *Bignonia radicans*, is a climber, hardy enough to grow in the open in England.

The plant was named after A. J. Bignon, librarian of Louis XV.

**bigot** (*big' ôt, n.*). A person unreasonably or superstitiously devoted to some religious party or belief; a fanatic; an intolerant partisan. *adj.* Fanatical; bigoted. (*F. bigot.*)

A fanatic is said to be **bigoted** (*big' ô téd, adj.*) in his opinions, and to display **bigotry** (*big' ô tri, n.*).

The name was first given by the French to the Normans to signify contempt, like the modern *boche* now used of the Germans. There is no satisfactory etymology. **SYN.**: Fanatic, zealot.

**bijou** (*bē zhoo', n.*). A trinket or jewel. *adj.* Small and choice; *pl.* *bijoux* (*bē' zhoo*). (*F. bijou.*)

Any small and pretty work of art is called a bijou. A bijou edition of a book is one of small size, beautifully printed and bound. Articles made of gold or other metals and set with jewels or mother-of-pearl, tortoiseshell, etc., are called *bijouterie* (*bē zhoo' té ri, n.*).

It is suggested that the *F.* word is of Celtic origin, from Breton *bizou* ring.

**bilateral** (*bī lāt' ér āl, adj.*). Having or pertaining to two sides; affecting two parties. (*F. bilatéral.*)

We speak of a coin as having bilateral inscriptions, meaning that it has wording on

both sides, and it is said to have been stamped bilaterally (*bi lāt' ér ál li, adv.*). In law, a bilateral contract binds both sides.

E. prefix *bi-* two, double, *latus* (gen. *lateris*) side, suffix *-al* (L. *-ālis*).

**bilberry** (*bil' ber i*), *n.* A dwarf shrub, related to the heaths; a whortleberry; the fruit of the plant. (F. *airelle*.)

The common bilberry (*Vaccinium myrtillus*) is found on heaths and stony moors, and in peaty mountain woods. The pretty, waxen flowers give place to small, juicy berries, pleasantly acid to the taste, and blue-black in colour. To both this and the bog-bilberry (*V. uliginosum*) of more northern districts, the names whortleberry and blaeberry are also given.

A word of Scand. origin, Dan. *böllebaer*, with the Scottish form blaeberry; cp. G. *blaubeere*, with reference to the colour of the berry.

**bilboquet** (*bil bō ket'*), *n.* A cup-and-ball plaything. (F. *bilboquet*.)

The game of cup-and-ball used to be popular many years ago among people of all ages.

F. *bille* ball, *bocquet* spear-head, lance (in heraldry).

**bile** (*bil*), *n.* A greenish-yellow fluid made by the liver and stored in the gall-bladder; gall; anger. (F. *bile*.)

From the gall-bladder the bile passes through a small tube into the intestines, where it helps in the digestion of food. Bile is extracted from the blood by the liver. A *bile-stone* (*n.*) is a stone which forms in the gall-bladder. The passage of such a stone into the intestine causes great pain. Biliary calculus is another name for bile-stone, or gall-stone, biliary (*bil' i à ri, adj.*) meaning of or pertaining to the bile.

A bilious (*bil' i ūs, adj.*) attack, or an attack of biliousness (*bil' i ūs nēs, n.*) is a passing ailment, often resulting in nausea or sickness, caused by too free a flow of bile, or other disorder of the liver. A person liable to such attacks has a bilious disposition. As the bile, or choler, as it used to be called, was formerly thought to be the cause of anger, a peevish, irritable person is sometimes called bilious.

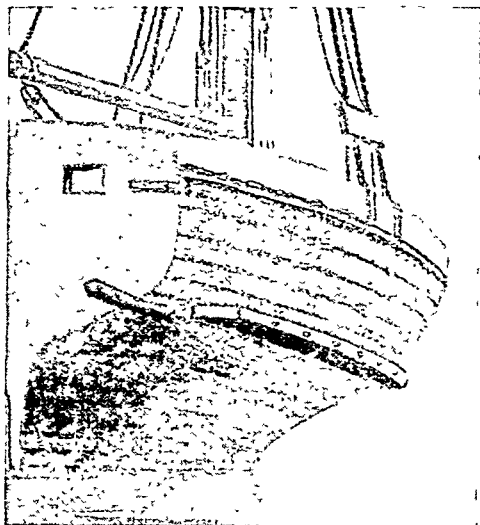
L. *bilis*, for *bistis*, cp. Welsh *bustl* gall.

**bilge** (*bilj*), *n.* The bottom of a ship amidships; bulge-water. *v.t.* To cause to spring a leak. *v.i.* To spring a leak. (F. *petit fond, eau de cale*; *faire faire eau*; *faire eau*.)

The word is used also of the middle of casks. Many big ships have a bilge-keel (*n.*) fixed on either side, along the rounded corners between the bilge and the sides. The bilge-keels help to prevent rolling in a rough sea. Any water that finds its way through a ship's skin collects in the bilge, where there are wells for the purpose of sounding its depth.

A bidge-pump (*n.*) is used to remove the evil-smelling bilge-water (*n.*) from the bilge.

The word is another form of bulge.



Bilge-keel.—A device which helps to prevent a ship rolling in a rough sea.

**bilingual** (*bi ling' gwāl*), *adj.* Written or spoken in two languages; knowing two languages. (F. *bilingue*.)

Many of the notices at the great railway stations are bilingual notices, being given in French and English for the benefit of travellers. A man who speaks two languages or can write in two languages is called a bilinguist (*bi ling' gwist, n.*), and he is said to be able to speak or write bilingually (*bi ling' gwāl li, adv.*).

Prefix *bi-* two, double, *lingua* tongue, language, suffix *-al* (L. *-ālis*).

**bilk** (*bilk*), *v.t.* To cheat; to evade payment of; to dodge; to escape; to spoil an opponent's score in the card game of cribbage. *n.* An act of bilking at cribbage. (F. *tromper, flouer*.)

A man is said to bilk his creditors or bilk their bills when he avoids paying them the debts he owes, or he is said to bilk the Revenue authorities when he makes a false return of his income.

The word is perhaps another form of *balk* barrier, obstacle, originally beam, O. Norse *bjaltri* beam, *balkr* partition.

**bill** [*1*] (*bil*), *n.* A beak; a long projecting tongue of land (as Selsey Bill); the point of the fluke of an anchor. (F. *bec, pointe d'une ancre*.)

An anchor is "acock bill" when it is hanging from the cathead of the ship, ready for letting go, with the bills acock, or pointing upwards. To be billed (*bild, adj.*) is to have a bill or beak. Birds may be classed as soft-billed, hard-billed, straight-billed, curved-billed, and so on.

A.-S. *bile*, cognate with [*2*], and originally meaning something pointed, to pierce or cut with.



Bill.—Part of the tongue of land known as Selsey Bill, in Sussex, a few miles from Chichester.

**bill** [2] (bil), *n.* A tool or weapon having a short, curved blade mounted in line with the handle. (*F. serpe.*)

A long-handled bill, called a hedge-bill (*n.*), is used for trimming hedges. A bill-hook (*n.*) is a short-handled chopper with a sharp curved point, or bill, at the end, which is useful for collecting brushwood.

A.-S. *bil(l)* instrument for cutting, chopper; common in Teut. languages; cp. G. *beil* axe.

**bill** [3] (bil), *n.* A note demanding payment, as for goods delivered or work done; a written promise to pay certain money; a draft containing the text of a proposed Act of Parliament; a poster or loose sheet containing a public announcement; in law a written statement of a case. (*F. compte, addition, billet, projet de loi, affiche.*)

A bill of credit is a note, used as money, issued by a government which promises to pay the amount when due; a bill of exchange, sometimes called a draft, is a written order from one person (the drawer) to another (the drawee) to pay a sum on a given date; if such a bill is drawn, not demanding payment for value received, but to give credit, it is called an accommodation bill. A man who trades in bills of exchange is called a bill-broker (*n.*) or bill-discounter (*n.*).

At a restaurant we ask for the bill of fare; a menu or list of dishes that may be ordered for our meal. When we leave we ask for the bill, that is, a slip of paper stating the amount we owe for our food.

A bill of health is a seafaring term for a certificate regarding the health of crew and passengers, which has to be given by the authorities of a port to the master of a ship, when that ship is leaving a port where there is infectious illness. A clean bill of health is one which states that all on the ship are free from any infection; this expression is also used fancifully to mean that a person is above suspicion. When the master of a ship gives a written acknowledgment of goods received on his vessel it is known as a bill of lading.

When a man borrows money and delivers goods as security for repayment, he often gives the lender a bill of sale, which is permission to sell the goods if the money is not repaid within a given time. When goods are being taken from one country to another they have to pass through the customs of the country of arrival and be described in a bill of entry, so that the custom-house officials can decide what, if any, duty must be paid on them. If the goods are of a kind that cannot be described accurately, the person bringing them into the country may be given a bill of sight, which is permission to land the goods for the custom-house authorities to view them.

The Bill of Rights was a declaration of the rights and privileges of the English people. This was delivered to the Prince of Orange, a foreigner who might be supposed not to know English ways, when he and his wife accepted the British throne in 1688 as William III and Mary. Hence it has come to mean any written summary of the rights and privileges claimed by a nation.

A private bill is the draft of an Act of Parliament for the granting of something to a company, corporation, or private person; a public bill is the draft of an Act which concerns the general public.

When a man is accused of a crime the evidence against him is written out and presented to the grand jury. If they think the evidence is strong enough for the man to be sent for trial, they write on the statement "A true bill was found against So-and-so." If they do not consider the case strong enough they write "No true bill," and the case against the man is dismissed.

A bill-poster (*n.*) or bill-sticker (*n.*) is a man employed to stick up bills or placards in public places.

Anglo-F. *bille*, Anglo-L. *billa* leaden seal, a document so sealed (cp. the papal bull), for L. *bull* anything rounded, a bubble, boss. SYN.: Account, draft, menu, note, poster.

**billet** [1] (bil'èt), *n.* A note; an official order for a soldier's lodging; a place where a soldier lodges; destination. *v.t.* To find or provide lodgings for (a soldier). (*F. billet; loger.*)

When troops are marched from one place to another place more than a day's march away, they must be provided with billets or quarters for the night. The commanding officer sends details of the route to the police, who make arrangements for billeting the troops on inn-keepers or private householders at the stopping places. Such a person must not refuse without proper reason to provide billets, and what he may charge for food and lodging for men and houses is limited by law.

**Billet doux** (bil ā doo'), *n.*, *pl.* *billets doux* (bil ā doo'), is a French term, literally "sweet note." It is often used in English for a love letter.

O.F. *billette*, from I.L. *billet(t)a*, dim. of *billa* (*bull*a).



**billet** [2] (bil' èt), *n.* A small log of firewood; a thick bar rolled out of an ingot of steel or other metal; a short cylinder used to decorate a moulding in Norman architecture; an oblong bearing on an heraldic shield. (F. *bûche, billette*.)

The word is a dim. of F. *bille* log of wood.

**billiards** (bil' i árdz; bil' yárdz), *n.pl.* An indoor game played on a special cloth-covered table with ivory or other balls, which are set in motion by striking them with sticks called cues. (F. *billard*.)

The game of billiards was known in France in the fifteenth century, but the first known mention of it in England is by the poet Spenser in 1591. In Shakespeare's "Antony

**billow** (bil' ô), *n.* A big, swelling sea wave; anything which resembles such a wave. *v.i.* To have a billowy motion; to rise in billows; to surge forwards. (F. *vague; s'élever en vagues*.)

Great waves of air, fire, or sound may be described as billows. We speak of the **billowy** (bil' ô wi, *adj.*) waves breaking on the seashore when we mean those big curling waves which bend over and seem to hang for a little while in the air before they break. Piled-up masses of clouds in the sky are often called billowy clouds, and from an aeroplane flying above such clouds, they appear to be rolling in great white billows.

A word of Scand. origin, O Norse *bylgja*, Dan. *bølge*, literally that which swells; cp. M.H.G. *bulge* and E. *bulge*.

**billy** (bil' i), *n.* A tin can used as a kettle. (F. *casserole de champs*.)

This word is probably a shortened form of **billy-can** (*n.*), a variety of tin kettle used by Australian bushmen. At one time meat preserved in tins was often labelled "bœuf bouilli," and the tins, referred to as bully, or billy, tins, were used by sailors as vessels in which to boil water.

A male goat is called a **billy-goat** (*n.*), a name also applied to a man's tufted beard, from its resemblance to the hair on a goat's chin.

F. *bouillir* to boil.



Billiards.—A scene during play for the Boys' Billiards Championship.

and Cleopatra" (ii, 5), the Egyptian queen invites Charmian, one of her ladies, to play billiards with her. The game became more popular when the doctors advised Louis XIV of France to play the game for the sake of his health.

The singular, **billiard**, is only used in compounds, as **billiard-table** (*n.*), **billiard-ball** (*n.*), and **billiard-cue** (*n.*). The points made by each player in turn are marked up on a special board called a **billiard-marker** (*n.*). A man who regularly puts up the score on this board for other players is also called a **billiard-marker**.

The F. word *billard*, from *bille* stick with curved end, originally meaning the cue, is now used for the game.

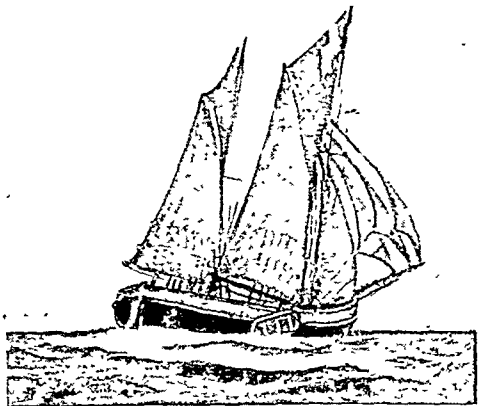
**billion** (bil' i òn; bil' yón), *n.* A million times a million, in figures 1,000,000,000,000. (F. *trillion*.)

In France and America the word is used for a thousand millions only, also called a milliard, a number a thousand times smaller than the English billion.

E. prefix *bi-* twice, to the second power, and *million*.

**billon** (bil' òn), *n.* Silver alloyed with a large quantity of copper, used in making medals and coins. (F. *billon*.)

F., originally meaning mass, lump, from *bille* log of wood, L.L. *bilho* (acc. *-ôn -em*).



Billy-boy.—A barge-like boat used on the east and north-east coasts of England.

**billy-boy** (bil' i boi), *n.* A boat of barge-like build, used on the east and north-east coasts. (F. *petit navire marchand*.)

Why such a name should have been given to these boats is a sea-mystery. In the 'seventies billy-boys plied in the Thames and round the Kentish coast. They are described by a writer of that period as being barges with tanned sails.

**billy-cock** (bil' i kok), *n.* A round-crowned hard felt hat. (F. *chapeau melon*.)

Billy-cock is often said to mean a hat cocked in a bully's fashion, and in 1721 a

smart Oxford man is said to wear "a broad-bully-cocked hat." But some think the word in its present form and sense comes from the name Billy Coke (Mr. William Coke, 1752-1842), who first wore such hats at shooting parties at his estate of Holkham Hall in Norfolk. Billy-cock hats are still called "Coke hats" by hatters whose shops date from the days of Billy Coke.

**biltong** (bil' tóng), *n.* Lean meat, cut into strips and dried in the sun.

Biltong, made from the flesh of oxen, buffaloes, or antelopes, used to be a necessary part of the equipment of every hunter and explorer in South Africa.

S. African Dutch *bil* bullock, *tong* tongue.

**Bimana** (bí' mǎ nǎ; bim' á nǎ), *n.* Two-handed animals; human beings. (F. *bimane*.) Frédéric Cuvier, the French naturalist, placed human beings by themselves in the class Bimana, as being the only two-handed or bimanal (bim' á nǎl, *adj.*) or bimanous (bim' á nūs, *adj.*) creatures. It is, of course, still true that man is the only bimane (bí' mǎn, *n.*), but the term is not much used. In his body man differs less from the apes, than apes do from monkeys, and by naturalists he is now placed in the order Primates together with apes, monkeys, and lemurs.

E. prefix *bi-* two, double, *manus* hand.

**bimeridian** (bí' mē rid' i ǎn), *adj.* Happening regularly at midday and midnight. (F. *biméridien*.)

This word is used chiefly by scientists, but it may be said that the chiming of the hour of twelve by a clock is a bimeridian occurrence.

E. prefix *bi-* and *meridian*.

**bimetallic** (bí' mē tǎl' ik), *adj.* Of two metals; descriptive of bimetallism. (F. *bimétallique*.)

Though our system of coinage is based on the gold standard, we use silver and copper coins as well, but silver is not "legal tender" beyond two pounds, nor copper beyond one shilling in value. In a country where the coinage system bimetallism (bí' mēt' ǎl izm, *n.*) has been adopted, two metals, usually gold and silver, are legal tender to any amount, the value of the one being fixed in relation to that of the other. A person who favours bimetallism is a bimetalist (bí' mēt' á list, *n.*).

E. prefix *bi-* two, double, and *metal*, suffix *-ism* giving the idea of a system.

**bimillenary** (bí' mil' ǎn á r i), *n.* Two thousand; a period of two thousand years. (F. *bimillénaire*.)

E. prefix *bi-* and *millenary*.

**bi-monthly** (bí' mūnth' li), *adj.* Appearing twice a month or happening twice a month. (F. *bimensuel*.)

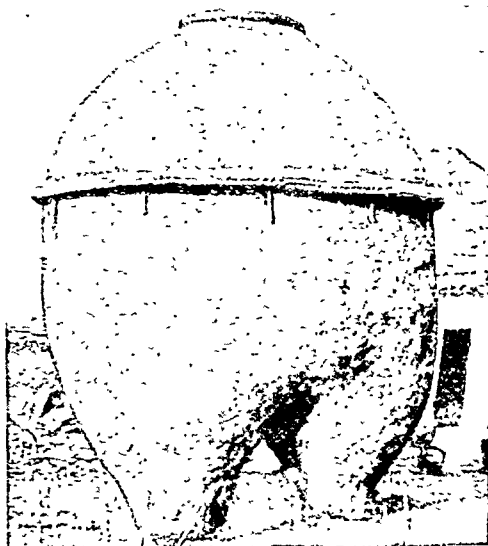
A magazine which appears twice in each month is said to be a bi-monthly publication; a meeting taking place twice every month might be called a bi-monthly event.

E. prefix *bi-* and *monthly*.

**bin** (bin), *n.* A holder in which corn, coal, bread, hops, or wine is kept. *v.t.* To place in a bin. (F. *huche*, *coffre*, *porte-bouteilles*.)

When wine is said to come from a particular bin, we mean that the bottle has been taken from a bin where special wines or wines of a particular date are kept. In the hop-fields the hops are placed by the pickers in a large canvas receptacle or bin, as it is called, and we may then say that the hops have been binned.

M.E. *binne*, A.-S. *binn*; possibly of Celtic origin, the first meaning being wicker-work basket or carriage (Gaulish and Ital. *benna*, G. *benne*, F. *banne*.)



Bin.—The strange corn bin of the Komkombwa people of Danomey, in Africa. It has a movable top and holds several tons of corn

**binary** (bí' nǎ ri), *adj.* Made up of a pair or pairs; double; dual. (F. *binnaire*.)

The word is used chiefly by scientists. In chemistry a binary compound (*n.*) is a compound that is made up of two elements, and the binary theory (*n.*) is the theory stating that acids and salts are made up of two parts, one electro-positive and the other electro-negative; thus, if an electric current is passed through a solution of these substances in water the parts move in opposite directions, and the substance is split up.

A binary measure (*n.*) in music is a measure having two beats in a bar. The binary scale (*n.*) in mathematics is a system counting in twos instead of tens. A binary star is a star which, when carefully examined through a telescope, is found to consist of a pair of stars or suns revolving round a common centre or each other.

L. *binarius* in twos, from *bin* (pl. *adj.*) two at a time.

**bind** (bind), *v.t.* To tie; to fasten together; to attach to or on; to restrain or confine. *v.i.* To stick; to tie up; to be obligatory. *n.* A sign in music which groups

notes together. *p.t.* and *p.p.* bound (bound). (F. *lier, attacher; être obligatoire; liaison.*)

The word bind can be used in many different senses. We bind up a wound, bind one's wrists together, or bind a person to a tree. A girl binds the edges of a piece of cloth with braid, while a printer binds the



Binding.—A binder in a bindery putting the finishing touches to the binding of a book.

leaves of a book together. When two substances are made to stick together by glue or some other substance, the substance is said to bind them together. When a man is brought before a magistrate and charged with attacking a neighbour, the magistrate may bind him over to keep the peace or to be of good behaviour, or to appear in the court on another day.

An employer binds an apprentice to him by means of indentures, a form of agreement, and a person binds himself to do something by promising to do it, or by signing a document that he will do so. In music a bind is a curved mark placed over two notes of the same pitch to show that the second is sustained, not played afresh. Any form of band or tie is often called a bind. In mining a bind is hard clay mixed with oxide of iron or rust.



Bindweed.—Members of the convolvulus family are bindweeds.

An agreement between two persons is said to be binding (*bind' ing, adj.*) when each person is obliged to do what the agreement says, and we may say that such persons are bindingly (*bind' ing li, adv.*) associated. A binding (*n.*) in building is a band of iron, wood, masonry, etc. We may also say binding is the best thing for a wound. The cover of a book is called its binding, and the edging and braiding used on cloth and dresses is called binding.

A man who binds books is called a binder (*bind' er, n.*), and his workshop is called a bindery (*bind' er i, n.*). Plants belonging to the convolvulus family are commonly called bindweeds (*bind' wēdz, n.pl.*) because they climb up and bind themselves to other plants.

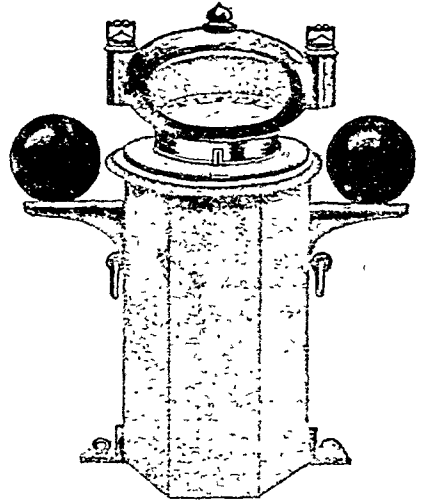
M.E. *binden*, A.-S. *bindan*, akin to similar words in various Teut. languages, ultimately from Indo-European root *bhendh-* to bind. SYN.: Compel, fasten, fetter, secure, tie. ANT.: Disconnect, free, loosen, unfasten, untie.

**bine** (*bin*), *n.* A shoot or slender stem of a climbing plant, especially of the hop. (F. *tige sarmenteuse.*)

The word is another form of bind.

**binnacle** (*bin' ākl*), *n.* The pillar-like stand which supports and encloses the compass of a ship. (F. *habitacle.*)

The binnacle is made either of wood or brass, and on the top of it is a brass hood enclosing the compass bowl. The two lamps fixed on the sides of this bowl illuminate the



Binnacle.—The binnacle of a ship, showing the compass bowl, lamps, and correctors.

compass card during the night-time. Outside the binnacle there are two brackets, one on each side, holding hollow iron spheres, known as correctors, which are used to adjust the compass when it is influenced by the iron in the ship.

The word was originally spelt *bittacle*, from Port. *bitácola* which, like Span. *bitácora*, has lost the initial syllable preserved in F. *habitacle*, the original meaning little dwelling, from L. *habitaculum*, from *habitare* to dwell.

**binocle** (*bin' ōkl*), *n.* A field-glass or opera-glass with a tube and lenses for each eye. (F. *binocle.*)

Anything that has two eyes, or is suitable for use by both eyes at once, is said to be binocular (*bi nok' ū lār, adj.*). A binocular

(*n.*), or a pair of binoculars, is usually the same instrument as a binocle, but sometimes the word is used when speaking of a binocular microscope.

*L. binī* two at a time, *oculus* eye.

**binomial** (bi nō' mi āl), *n.* An algebraic expression. *adj.* Consisting of two terms or names. (*F. binôme.*)

In algebra an expression is a collection of symbols denoting a quantity, and a binomial is an expression of two terms joined by plus or minus signs, such as  $(x + y)$  or  $(x - y)$ . When Sir Isaac Newton found that such a quantity could be raised to any power without actual multiplication he named the necessary formula the binomial theorem (*n.*).

In biology, binomial or binominal (bi nom' in āl, *adj.*) is used of a name composed of two words, one denoting the genus and the other the species.

*L.L. binōmius*, *L. binōminis*, from prefix *bi-* and *nōmen* name.

**binoxide** (bin oks' id), *n.* A dioxide. (*F. bioxyde.*)

When combination between an element and oxygen takes place, in certain cases one atom of the element combines with either one or two atoms of oxygen. The combination with two atoms is the binoxide, although the word dioxide is now more generally used. Thus, when carbon is burned with a plentiful supply of air we get carbon binoxide or carbon dioxide.

*L. binī* two and two, *Gr. oxy(s)* sharp, pungent (*cp. oxygen*), chemical suffix *-ide*.

**bio-** This prefix is derived from the Greek word *bios* meaning life. Placed in front of a word it implies that we are dealing with living things. Thus, bio-chemistry (*n.*) is the chemistry of living things. See biology.

**biogenesis** (bi ō jen' ē sis), *n.* The doctrine that all living matter originates only from living matter. Biogeny (bi oj' en ī) has a similar meaning. (*F. biogénèse.*)

This word recalls the great discussion which arose in the nineteenth century as to the origin of living things found in decaying matter, such as mites in cheese and maggots in food. Most people thought that the maggots and mites were simply the result of decay, and that they arose spontaneously, or of their own accord. However, Pasteur, Tyndall, and other scientists proved this to be a wrong theory by discovering that all life arises from life, or rises biogenetically (bi ō jē net' ik āl li, *adv.*). See under biology.

By preventing the access of air to substances which usually decay and then

showing that no moulds or bacteria had appeared in them, the scientists proved that these forms of life arise only from spores or germs floating in the air. Thus they also laid the foundations for modern methods of food preservation.

*Gr. bio(s)* life, *genesis* generation, birth.

**biograph** (bi' ō grāf). This is another name for the bioscope. See bioscope.

**biography** (bi' ōg' rā fi), *n.* The story of the life of a person. (*F. biographie.*)

One of the best biographies ever written is James Boswell's account of the life of the great man of letters, Dr. Samuel Johnson. By writing this Boswell became a famous biographer (bi' ōg' rā fēr, *n.*) and Dr. Johnson a biographee (bi' ōg' rā fē', *n.*), though this word is seldom used. Boswell wrote biographically (bi' ō grāf' i kāl li, *adv.*), that is, in a biographic (bi' ō grāf' ik, *adj.*) or biographical (bi' ō grāf' ik āl, *adj.*) way.

*Gr. bio(s)* life, *graphein* to write.

**biology** (bi' ōl' ō jī), *n.* The science which deals with natural life. (*F. biologie.*)

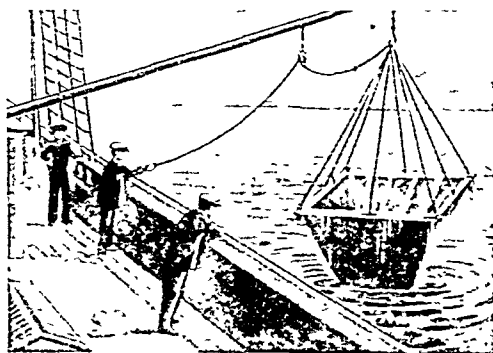
Biology is the most comprehensive of all sciences as it includes all those studies which

deal with animals and plants, both living and extinct. As no one can possibly study carefully all its various branches the biologist (bi' ōl' ō jist, *n.*) or biological (bi' ō loj' ik āl, *adj.*) student chooses one or two of them for his special study.

Zoology deals with animals and botany with plants, but the microscope has revealed the existence of countless tiny

organisms which seem to be intermediate between them, so that these two branches overlap. At the same time it has been found that many great laws of life processes apply throughout the realm of Nature and may be studied both in plants and animals. The laws of movement in living things make up the study of biodynamics (bi' ō dī nām' iks, *n.*), and the important relation between electricity and life is the subject of biomagnetism (bi' ō māg' nē tizm, *n.*).

**Bionomics** (bi' ō nom' iks, *n.*) deals with the habits and distribution of living things, and **biometry** (bi' ōm' ēt ri, *n.*) deals with their size and variations. The fact that no two living things are exactly alike gives opportunity for endless biometrical (bi' ō met' rik āl, *adj.*) research in the attempt to classify and explain this variety. These furnish a basis for biogenetics (bi' ō jen' ēt' iks, *n.*), the study of heredity or of the resemblance which living things bear to their parents. To



Biology.—One of the many types of instruments used by marine biologists for obtaining specimens.

explain this resemblance, units of living matter known as biogens (bi' ō jenz, *n.pl.*) or bioblasts (bi' ō blāsts, *n.pl.*) have been supposed to exist, from which living things are built up.

Bioplasm (bi' ō plāzm, *n.*) is a name invented by Professor Lionel Beale in 1861 for the simplest form of matter which shows signs of life. To some extent it agrees with the idea of protoplasm, but that occurs in all living forms, while Beale restricted his bioplasm to forms which show no organization and which he believed might be found as minute specks of matter living an independent life. To these he gave the name bioplasts (bi' ō plāsts, *n.pl.*). Scientists of to-day, however, are doubtful as to the existence of such forms.

Biotic (bi' ō t' ik, *adj.*) is a word used in dealing with theories as to the origin, forms, and activities of living things as compared with inanimate objects. No theory has yet been put forward which satisfies everyone, but there are writers who think that by using the word biotic instead of "living" or "vital" they are getting nearer to the solution.

Gr. *bio(s)* life, *logos* discourse, study, or science of.

**bioscope** (bi' ō skōp), *n.* An instrument for portraying objects in movement; a series of photographs or drawings showing objects in motion; an exhibition of photographs or drawings showing objects in motion. (*F. bioscope.*)

The bioscope, also called a biograph (bi' ō grāf, *n.*), was the first form of the kinematograph. From the first simple moving pictures of horses trotting and people walking about has been built up the huge industry which gives endless delight to millions of children and grown-ups throughout the world. See kinematograph.

Gr. *bio(s)* life, *skopein* to look, see.

**bipartite** (bi' par' tit), *adj.* Having two corresponding parts; in botany, forked nearly to the base. (*F. biparti.*)

The leaves or petals of some plants, such as the common chickweed, are bipartite, a characteristic described as bipartition (bi' par' tish' ūn, *n.*). See bifid.

L. *bipartitus*, p.p. of *bipartire*, from prefix *bi-* and *partire* to divide into two parts (*pars*, acc. *partem*).

**biped** (bi' ped), *n.* An animal with two feet. (*F. bipède.*)

A human being is a biped, and so is a bird, and both can be described as bipedal (bi' pèd āl; trip' ed āl, *adj.*). Four-footed animals are known as quadrupeds.

L. *bipēs* (acc. *biped-em*), from prefix *bi-* and *pēs* foot.

**bipetalous** (bi' pet' ā lūs), *adj.* Having two petals. (*F. bipétalé.*)

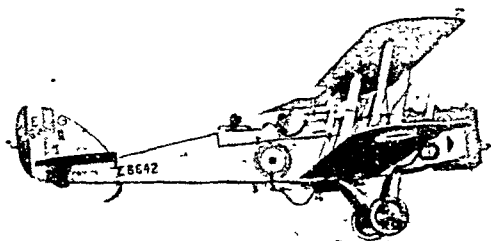
This is a botanical term. Dipetalous has the same meaning.

E. prefix *bi-* and *petal*.

**bipinnate** (bi' pin' āt), *adj.* Twice pinnate. (*F. bipenné.*)

Pinnate leaves are divided into pairs of leaflets, and when the leaflets themselves are pinnate, the leaves are described as bipinnate.

E. prefix *bi-* and L. *pinnātus* (for *pennātus*), p.p. form, from *pinna* (*penna*), wing, feather



**Biplane.**—A D.H. 9a light bomber biplane of the Royal Air Force. The two tiers of wings give strength and stiffness.

**biplane** (bi' plān), *n.* An aeroplane with two tiers of wings, one above the other. (*F. biplan.*)

The two tiers are joined by struts and wires which give the structure great strength and stiffness. See aeroplane.

E. prefix *bi-* and *plane*

**biquadratic** (bi' kwod rāt' ik), *adj.* Raised to the fourth power. *n.* The fourth power itself. (*F. biquadratique.*)

In mathematics, a quadratic equation is one which involves the second power of the unknown quantity; a biquadratic is one that involves the fourth power, that is, the square of a square.

E. prefix *bi-* and *quadratic*.

**birch** (bērč), *n.* A hardy northern tree of the genus *Betula*; the wood of the tree; a birch-rod. *v.t.* To whip with a birch-rod. (*F. bouleau, verges; battre à coups de verges.*)

The most familiar species of the birch is the common birch (*Betula alba*), often known as the silver birch or white birch, because of the colour of its bark. The dwarf birch (*Betula nana*), found on the Scottish moorlands, is a low, wiry shrub. Birch-oil (*n.*) is obtained from the bark of the silver birch and is used in the manufacture of Russian leather. Birch-water (*n.*) is the name given to the sap of the birch in spring, and from this birch-wine (*n.*) is made. A birch-broom (*n.*) is a broom made of slender birchen (bēr' chèn, *adj.*) twigs, and a birch-rod (*n.*), formerly used for chastising unruly boys, was a bundle of birch twigs. A whipping with such a rod was called a birching (bēr' ching, *n.*).

M.E. *birche*, A.-S. *beorc*, *byrc*, *birce*; cp. G. *birke*. It is one of the few original Indo-European tree-names.



Bird.— 1. Peican. 2. Whinchat. 3. Toucan. 4. Secretary bird. 5. Vociferous sea eagle. 6. Great American egret. 7. Whale-headed stork. 8. Kingfisher. 9. Penguin.

# BIRDS IN FACT AND STORY

## *The Marvellous Mechanism that Enables the Fowls of the Air to Fly*

**bird** (bĕrd), *n.* A feathered member of the animal kingdom. (F. *oiseau*.)

Birds belong to the class *Aves* of the animal kingdom, and form one of its highest groups, ranking next in order to the mammals. They are warm-blooded vertebrates, or back-boned animals, characterized by having feathers and wings.

According to most authorities, birds may be classified into two main groups—the Saururæ and the Neornithes. The former contains only one species, the *Archæopteryx*, a long extinct bird, with pronounced reptilian features, fossilized remains of which have been found in rocks of the Jurassic period. The Neornithes group has two divisions, the *Ratitæ*, comprising the flightless birds, such as the ostrich, cassowary, emu, and apteryx or kiwi, and the *Carinatae*, by far the larger division, consisting of those birds with a keeled breastbone, and having the power of flight.

The bird of Paradise (a native of the East Indies) is related to the crows, and is noted for its plumage. The peacock was sacred to Juno and is known as the bird of Juno, the eagle is the bird of Jove, or Jupiter, the principal god of Roman mythology, and the dove is the bird of peace. A bird of prey is a member of the order *Accipitres*, such as an eagle, a hawk, or an owl.

The wonderful way in which they are fitted for flight makes the birds, so far as their bodies are concerned, perhaps the highest form of life. They are very light, their bones are hollow, and their bodies are half-filled by nine air sacs, which extend even into the bones. The bones of the skull are fused together into a single brain box, suited for withstanding the pressure of the powerful air currents they meet.

The wing muscles, which form the breast of the bird, are splendidly developed. A special keel on the breastbone gives these muscles a large, strong point of attachment. Hard work, such as flying, means deep and rapid breathing. This is effected by the large, flexible ribs, which may be seen in

rapid movement; hold a bird's sides and it will quickly die of suffocation. The air sacs assist the lungs in supplying air to the blood.

This rapid breathing leads to a high temperature. While man's usual temperature is ninety-eight degrees, that of the sparrow is one hundred and seven degrees. The covering of feathers prevents the escape of this heat, for it encloses a layer of warm air next to the skin. The feathers are also made waterproof by a thin film of oil from a gland near the tail. The preening of birds is simply the means by which this oil is spread. Absence of teeth means hasty

bolting of food, but their place is taken by the pebbles in the gizzard which crush the food, and digestion is then very quick. Long pauses on the ground, which would expose birds to danger from their natural enemies, are thus avoided.

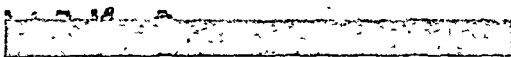
More than 10,000 species of birds are known, of which between 300 and 400 are British.

Birds are often kept as pets. They are placed in a bird-cage (*n.*) and fed chiefly on bird-seed (*n.*) such as hemp, millet, and canary

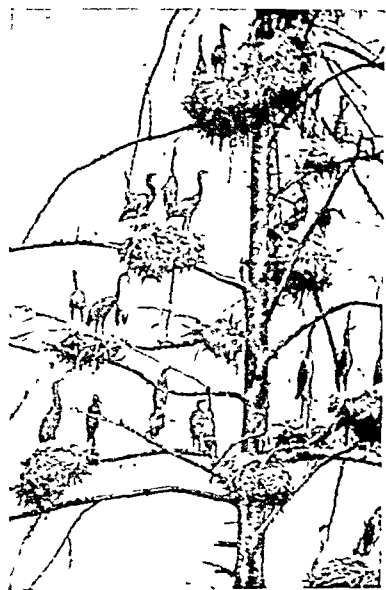
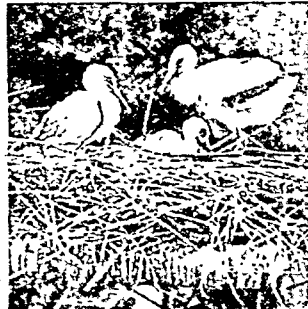
seed. Once birds were often captured by spreading bird-lime (*n.*), a sticky substance obtained from holly bark, on tree boughs to which their claws stuck, but this cruel method is now illegal. Sometimes they are lured to capture by a bird-call (*n.*), an instrument which produces the notes of a bird. When caught, the birds are sold to a bird-fancier (*n.*), a person who rears and deals in birds.

The word bird appears in such phrases as "a bird in the hand is worth two in the bush," meaning that it is better to be sure of one thing than doubtful of two, and "a bird of passage" means a migratory bird or a person journeying about the world. "Birds of a feather" implies persons of similar ideas and tastes, and to "kill two birds with one stone" means to gain two ends at one time, or effect two purposes with the effort required for one.

A.-S. *brid*, literally a young bird; no other Teut. language supplies instances of kindred words.



Bird.—An eagle swooping to earth to seize its prey. Birds have the keenest sight among animals.



Bird's-nest.—Reading from left to right, the nest of tawny owls, of swallows (top), of storks, and of blue herons are pictured.

**bird's-eye** (bërdz' i), *n.* One of several plants with small bright flowers; a kind of tobacco. *adj.* Resembling a bird's eye. (F. *œil d'oiseau*.)

A brand of tobacco in which the ribs of the leaf are cut with the leaf itself is called bird's-eye from the eye-like appearance of the rib cuttings. A pocket-handkerchief with "eye" markings is described as a bird's-eye handkerchief, and a view of a city or district from high above is referred to as a bird's-eye view.

Pheasant's-eye, a plant of the buttercup order, and the germander speedwell, are sometimes called bird's-eye, and the *Primula farinosa*, an English wild plant, is better known as the bird's-eye primrose (*n.*).

**bird's-foot** (bërdz' fut), *n.* A plant of the order Leguminosae. (F.  *pied d'oiseau*.)

This plant, an annual herb, is found in many parts of Europe and North Africa. It has many long stems with leaves consisting of from six to fourteen pairs of leaflets. It gets its name from the resemblance of its seed pods to a bird's foot or claw. Its flowers are white, streaked with red. Bird's-foot trefoil (*n.*), also one of the Leguminosae with bright yellow flowers, is found in Europe, Asia, and North Africa. Lady's slipper is another name for it.

**bird's-nest** (bërdz' nest), *n.* Nest of a bird; a shelter at a mast-head. (F. *nid*.)

Many birds are very particular about the building and furnishing of their homes. The rook builds a nest on the top of the tallest tree with the skill of an engineer, and it is the rarest thing for it to be shaken down by the strongest gale. The house martin is a clever architect who builds a neat little house with tiny lumps of mud or clay under

the eaves of a house or elsewhere. Its near relation the sand-martin bores a hole, sometimes a yard deep, in a sandy cliff, and makes a nest of feathers at the end. The weaver birds of Africa join forces and build a large dome-shaped structure of grass large enough to contain several nests under the same roof.

Some bird's-nests may be eaten, for example, those of some kinds of swift found in Australia. The Chinese make a soup of them. On board ship the shelter at the mast-head provided for the look-out man is called the bird's nest or crow's nest. A certain species of fern is known as the bird's-nest fern (*n.*) and the *Neottia nidus-avis* is popularly called the bird's-nest orchid (*n.*).

**bireme** (bi' rëm), *n.* An ancient galley having two banks or rows of oars at each side, arranged one over the other. *adj.* Having oars arranged thus. (F. *birème*.)

The Phoenicians were probably the first sea-going people to build ships with two or more tiers of benches for rowers. This made the vessel more speedy than the older type of galley with one line of rowers, without making it longer and unhandy. Sails, of course, were used when the wind was favourable, but the extra oars made all the difference when chasing or escaping from an enemy.

On some Greek vases we see pictures of biremes with bows shaped like the heads of sea-monsters, and some are evidently pirates, as they are shown overhauling broad, heavily-laden trading ships. Egyptians and Romans also built boats of the bireme type, and it is their Roman name that we use to-day.

*L. birëmis*, from *bi(s)* two, double, *rëmus* oar.



**biretta** (bi ret' à), *n.* A square or three-cornered cap worn by the clergy of the Roman Catholic Church, and also by some of those of the Church of England. (F. *barrette*.)  
The cardinal's cap is red, the bishop's purple, and the priest's black.

Ital. *beretta*, L.L. *birrētum*, a red cap, from *birrus*, *burrus*, Gr. *pyrrhos* reddish.

**birth** (bërth), *n.* The fact of bringing forth or of being born; creation; descent; origin; parentage. (F. *naissance*.)

The law demands that the birth of every child shall be notified to a person called a registrar of births, so that there shall be an official record or birth certificate (*n.*) of the day on which any person was born. A person of high birth is one descended from nobles. New birth or regeneration means a change of heart, conversion.

A birthday (bërth' dā, *n.*) is the day on which a person is born, and the same day of the year in any year following the event. The word is also used of the first day in the history of a thing or invention; for example, the day on which a ship is launched and named. The 15th day of November, 1783, was the birthday of ballooning, as on that day the first balloon ascent was made. Some people keep a birthday-book (*n.*), in which to write the birthdays of their relatives and friends. The peerages, knighthoods, and other honours conferred on the king's birthday are called birthday honours (*n.pl.*). A gift presented to a person on his or her birthday is a birthday-present (*n.*).

Many people are born with some mark on the body which never disappears, and is a means of recognizing them; such a mark is a birth-mark (*n.*). The place in which a person is born is his birth-place (*n.*). The birth-rate (*n.*) of a town is the yearly number of births in it for every thousand people. To take an example: if in a population of one million people there are forty thousand births a year, the birth rate is forty.

Any right or property to which a person is entitled by birth is a birthright (bërth' rit. *n.*). The eldest son of a family has long had certain rights in regard to inheriting property and titles. In Britain a birthright of the eldest son of the sovereign is that he shall succeed to the throne. Esau sold to his

younger brother Jacob his birthright of being blessed by his father Isaac.

M.E. *byrthe*, probably of Scand. origin, cognate with A.-S. *gebyrd*, G. *geburt*, all ultimately from Indo-European root *bher* to bear, produce.

SYN.: Family, origin, parentage, source.

**bis** (bis), *adv.* Twice; again; repeat. (F. *bis*.)

This word is chiefly used in music. At the end of a piece or part of a piece, *bis* is written to indicate to the player that the preceding bars should be played again.

L. *bis* for an older *dus* twice.

**Biscayan** (bis' kā ān), *adj.* Of or relating to Biscay. *n.* A native of Biscay. (F. *de la Biscaye*; *Biscaien*.)

Biscay, in the north of Spain, is one of what are called the Basque provinces, being inhabited by members of the ancient, mysterious, and hardy Basque race. The Basque fishermen were the first Europeans to go whale-hunting.

**biscuit** (bis' kit), *n.* A small thin flat cake of flour and water and other materials which has been baked to crispness; porcelain or other ware after its first baking before it is glazed; a kind of fine white unglazed porcelain; a fine pipe-clay ware. *adj.* Pertaining to or resembling biscuit or

biscuits; pale brown. (F. *biscuit*, *porcelaine cuite*.)

The word biscuit comes from two Latin words meaning twice cooked, and biscuits were formerly always so cooked and were hard and crisp. Nowadays, however, many biscuits are soft and only cooked once. Biscuits are made by machinery, the process taking from five to forty minutes. A jar or vessel in which biscuits are always kept for table use is called a biscuit-barrel (*n.*). Silk or other material of a light brown colour is called biscuit coloured, or biscuit. The kind of pottery known as biscuit is more often called biscuit ware (*n.*).

L. *bis* twice, *coctus*, p.p. of *coquere* to cook.

**bise** (bēz), *n.* A north or north-north-east wind which blows in Switzerland and surrounding districts. (F. *bise*.)

This is a strong, dry, cutting, and searching wind; it is often dangerous to run or even walk quickly against it, and warm wraps are needed when it blows.

It is suggested that the name comes from F. *bis* dark, gloomy, or from G. *bisen* to storm, rage (of the wind).



Biretta.—The biretta worn by many clergymen.



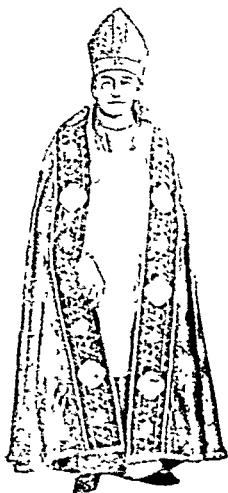
Birth.—The birth of a chicken, which has just pecked its way out of the egg.

**bisect** (bī sekt'), *v.t.* To divide into two parts, equal or unequal. (F. *bisecter*, *couper en deux*.)

In geometry the **bisection** (bī sek' shŭn, *n.*) of an angle, line, or figure always means its division into two equal parts. A **bisector** (bī sek' tŏr, *n.*) is a line bisecting an angle.

E. prefix *bi-* twice, in two, *sect(us)*, *p.p.* of *secāre* to cut.

**bishop** (bish' ōp), *n.* A spiritual overseer in the early Christian Church; one consecrated to the highest order of clergy; a chessman with its top shaped like a bishop's mitre; an old-fashioned drink made of wine, lemons, or oranges, and sugar. (F. *évêque*, *four*.)



Bishop.—An Anglican bishop wearing cope and mitre.

In the Church of England there are more than forty diocesan bishops, that is, bishops each governing a district called a diocese, besides a number of suffragan bishops who help them but have no dioceses. An Anglican bishop ranks between an archbishop and a dean. The office of a bishop, and sometimes his diocese, is called a **bishopric** (bish' ōp rik, *n.*), or see.

A bishop in partibus infidelium or titular bishop, is a bishop of the Roman Catholic Church whose nominal diocese is no longer in actual existence as a diocese. A bishop's apron (*n.*) is part of a bishop's ordinary dress. It hangs down to the knees, and was originally a shortened cassock to keep his legs dry when he was riding about his diocese. The Bishops' Bible is a revised edition of the Great Bible of 1539, carried out by Archbishop Parker and seven other bishops, and published in 1568.

A bishop's court (*n.*) is a court presided over by the bishop of a diocese, or by a chancellor to try any clergyman of his diocese charged with any offence against the Church. A size of artists' canvas, measuring 107 × 70 inches, is known as a bishop's length (*n.*), and a canvas measuring 56 × 44 inches as a half bishop's length (*n.*). Goutweed or goatweed, a common British wayside plant, eaten by cattle, is also known as **bishopweed** (*n.*).

A.-S. *bisc(e)op*, L. *episcopus*, Gr. *episkopos* overseer, from *epi* over, *shepein* to look, see.

**bisk** (bisk), *n.* A rich, nourishing soup made from fish, birds, etc. Another spelling is **bisque**. (F. *bisque*.)

This soup is made commonly by boiling down the flesh of various birds and flavouring with various sauces. It is sometimes made with crayfish, crabs, or shrimps.

**bismuth** (biz' mŭth), *n.* A reddish-white brittle metal. (F. *bismuth*.)

Bismuth, which is obtained in the United States, Bolivia, Chile, Germany, and other countries, melts at a much lower heat than lead, and at a slightly higher heat than tin. When mixed with both of these metals it forms an alloy which melts much more easily than any of the metals separately. This quality makes it valuable in soft solders used by tinnmen.

By adding cadmium, the melting point can be brought well below that of boiling water. Wood's metal, a preparation of bismuth used for fixing crystals in the detectors of wireless sets, melts readily in a cup of very hot tea. Doctors find bismuth very valuable in medicines for stomach troubles.

Obsolete G. *bismuth*, now *wismut*, of unknown origin.

**bison** (bī' sŏn; biz' ōn), *n.* A kind of wild ox. (F. *bison*.)

The European bison *Bos bonasus*, largest of land mammals in Europe, reaching a height of six feet at the shoulder and ten feet in length, is now very rare, but a herd is preserved in Latvia, and there are a few in the wilder parts of the Caucasus Mountains.

The American bison, *Bos americanus*, often miscalled buffalo, slightly smaller than the above, is distinguished like it by its large head and by the humped back, due to the



Bison.—The European bison, now a very rare animal only found in Latvia and the Caucasus Mountains.

very large spines on the backbone. The shaggy mane is also peculiar to the bison. This was once the most numerous of large animals. A hundred years ago there were millions of them on the great plains of North America, but after they had been almost killed out, measures were taken to preserve them, and their numbers are now rapidly increasing in the preserves of the Far West.

L. *bison*, a word of Teut. origin; cp. A.-S. *uwend*, G. *wisent*.

**bisque** [ɪ] (bisk), *n.* A stroke or point allowed a weaker opponent in certain games. (F. *bisque*.)

In match play at golf, the stronger player may agree to allow his opponent to deduct a stroke from his score at any hole the latter chooses. In lawn-tennis a *bisque*, now no longer in use, was a point given to a player or team which could be claimed at any part of the game. An extra stroke granted to an opponent in croquet is also called a *bisque*.

**bisque** [2] (bisk), *n.* A kind of unglazed porcelain used for statuettes; porcelain and pottery in the "biscuit" condition.

After its first baking pottery or porcelain has a dull surface, rough enough to be marked by a lead pencil. In this condition it is *bisque*, or *biscuit*. Glazing and ornamenting with colours require one or more further bakings.

Shortened from *biscuit*.

**bissextile** (bis seks' til), *adj.* Belonging to leap-year. *n.* Leap-year. (F. *bissextil*; *année bissextile*.)

Modern leap-year is formed by adding a twenty-ninth day to February, but the Roman plan was to double, or count twice, February 24th, the sixth day before March 1st.

This day was called *bis(s)extus*, from L. *bis* twice, *sextus* sixth, the year itself being called *bis(s)extilis*.

**bistort** (bis' tōrt), *n.* A plant with twisted, underground stems, belonging to the knot-weed or Polygonum order. (F. *bistorte*.)

The common bistort (*Polygonum bistorta*) is a plant of moist pastures, especially in the northern counties of England. Its spikes of flesh-coloured flowers spring from the curiously twisted underground stems which have given the plant its names, bistort or twice-twisted, snake-weed, and adder-wort.

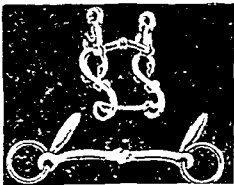
L. *bis* twice, *tortus* (fem. *torta*), p.p. of *torquere* to twist.

**bistre** (bis' tēr), *n.* A transparent brown paint. *adj.* Coloured with bistre. (F. *bistre*; *bistré*.)

This paint, much used by water-colour artists, is made from the soot of burning wood, particularly beech, by boiling and straining. Anything strained with bistre may be called *bistred* (bis' tērd, *adj.*).

F. *bistre* of doubtful origin.

**bit** [ɪ] (bit), *n.* The iron part of the bridle placed in the mouth of a horse; the boring,



Bit.—A seventeenth century bit and a modern type of snaffle-bit.

cutting, or nipping part of certain tools, especially the drill and plane; a short, sliding piece of tube in a cornet for altering the tone; the part of a key at right angles to the shank or stem. *v.t.* To put a bit into the mouth of (a horse); to restrain. (F. *mors*, *mèche*, *panneton*; *bridier*.)

To take the bit between one's teeth means to become reckless or unmanageable or out of control, as a horse becomes out of control if it seizes the bit in its teeth. To draw bit is to stop a horse by pulling on the reins and drawing the bit to the back of its mouth.

M.E. *bit(t)*, A.-S. *bite*, from *bitan* to bite, common Teut. word; cp. G. *beissen*.

**bit** [2] (bit), *n.* A small piece or morsel of food; a fragment or small quantity of anything; a small silver coin; a brief period of time; somewhat. (F. *petit morceau*, *un peu*.)

This bit is so small, we say, that it will not be missed. We spend a three-penny bit (thrip'én i bit' n.). A bit means a little. We promise to do something a bit later, to come a bit oftener, to wait a bit. A lengthy piece of work we do bit by bit, that is, gradually, until we have done it every bit. One person is every bit, or quite, as good as another.

Anyone who did what little he could to help his country in the World War was said to be doing his bit. A man who can speak rather well in public may be called a bit of an orator. To give somebody a bit of one's mind is to tell him bluntly what one thinks of him. In the North of England and in Scotland bittock (bit' ōk, *n.*) means a small portion or a short distance.

M.E. *bite*, A.-S. *bita*, common Teut. word; cp. G. *bischen*. SYN.: Atom, fragment, morsel, part, piece ANT.: Mass, whole.

**bitch** (bich), *n.* A she-dog; a female of any of the dog family. (F. *chienne*.)

M.E. *bieche*, A.-S. *biċce*, of doubtful etymology.



Bite.—Runners in an obstacle race, with arms behind their backs, trying to bite treacle apples, which are suspended by strings.

**bite** (bit), *v.t.* To seize, tear, or pierce with the teeth or mandibles; to cut, as a weapon or tool; to grip, take firm hold of; to sting or cause to smart; to leave a sharp

or burning taste on ; to corrode or eat into. *v.i.* To be in the habit of biting ; to get a hold ; to be sharp or pungent. *p.t.* bit (bit) ; *p.p.* bitten (bit' n), bit. *n.* An act of biting ; a wound made by the teeth ; a mouthful ; a grip. (F. *mordre* ; *morsure*.)

The front teeth are used to bite off pieces of food, and the side teeth to chew with. Great force is needed when food is hard or tough. Without knowing it, we may exert a pressure of fifty pounds or more. A wolf has been known to bite a gun-barrel right through.

To bite the dust is a poetical expression for being killed in battle. A person sometimes has to bite the lip—press a lip between the teeth—to keep back a cry of pain, a word of anger, or a laugh. The blade of a sword, a keen cold wind, a sharp frost, pepper, a strong acid, a bitter word, may all be said to bite, or to be biting (bit'ing, *adj.*). In winter the wind is often biting (bit'ing li, *adv.*) cold. When the wheels of a locomotive grip the rails without slipping, they are said to bite the metals.

Acids are used to bite in designs on glass or on copper or zinc. An etching is made by drawing with a sharp steel point on a copper plate covered with a thin layer of wax. When the drawing has been finished acid is poured over the plate and bites into the copper wherever it has been bared by the tool, forming grooves in it. The plate is then cleaned, rubbed over with ink, cleaned again, and squeezed in a press against the paper to be printed on. The paper picks the ink out of the grooves. Book illustrations also are made with the help of acid.

After an unsuccessful day's fishing an angler will say the fish would not bite, or he did not get a single bite.

A biter (bi' tēr, *n.*) is that which bites ; or in another sense, one who tries to cheat or trick somebody else. In the days when pirates were common on the seas, a warship sent to hunt them would be disguised as a merchant ship to lure a pirate craft within range of its guns, and then the pirates' fate provided an example of the biter bit. German submarines were served in the same way by British "Q" boats in the World War.

M.E. *bitten*, A.-S. *bitan*, common Teut. word ; cp. G. *beissen*, L. *fidī* (p.t. of *findere* to cleave), Sansk. *bhid*.

**bitt** (bit), *n.* A short iron or wooden post strongly bolted to a ship's deck for making fast heavy ropes or wire cables. (F. *bitte*.)

A sailor always speaks of "the bitts", as bitts are used in pairs. When a cable

has been paid out, the extreme end remaining on board, known as the bitter (*n.*), is made fast round the bitts. This is supposed to be the origin of the phrase, "to the bitter end", that is, to the last extremity.

With this word, which occurs in several European languages, cp. O. Norse *bili* cross-beam, A.-S. *bæling* ship's cable, G. *betting* (E. *bitt*). The ultimate origin of the word is probably *bitan* to bite.

**bitten** (bit' n). This is the past participle of bite. See bite.

**bitter** (bit' ēr), *adj.* Harsh or acrid to the taste ; the opposite of sweet ; causing bodily or mental pain or distress ; expressing or indicating misery ; harsh-tempered or unkind. *n.* A drink with a bitter flavour. *v.t.* To make bitter. (F. *amer*, fem. *amère*, *pénible*, *dur* ; *absinthe*, *bitter* ; *vendre amer*.)

The four chief tastes are sweet, bitter, sour, and salt. Quinine, aloes, and wormwood taste bitter. The bitter almond (*n.*) has a smaller kernel than the sweet almond eaten as dessert. The oil made from the kernels is used for flavouring. An oil tasting like it is made from coal-tar.

**Bitter-apple** (*n.*) is a plant that grows principally in north Africa, Syria, and north-west India. A drug, named *colocynth*, is made from the apple-like fruit. Another drug, useful in medicine, is extracted from the stem of the bitter-sweet (*n.*), or, woody nightshade. Pleasures that are mixed with, or followed by, pain or sadness are called bitter-sweet (*adj.*). Bitter-wood (*n.*) ; also called bitter-ash (*n.*) and quassia, grows in tropical America.

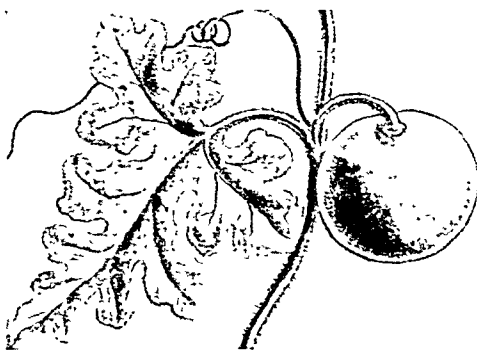
A man who has suffered bitter wrongs may cherish bitter feelings, shed bitter tears, utter bitter truths, and make bitter enemies. A fault may be regretted bitterly (bit' ēr li, *adv.*) or deeply by the person who commits it, though the person wronged may feel no bitterness (bit' ēr nēs, *n.*) or resentfulness. A drink flavoured with some bitter substance to give an appetite or aid digestion is called bitters (bit' ērz, *n.pl.*). Anything having a slightly bitter taste is bitterish (bit' ēr ish, *adj.*).

M.E. and A.-S. *biter*, from *bitan* to bite. The word is common in Teut. languages. SYN. : Acrimonious, harsh, pungent, stinging, unpalatable, virulent. ANT. : Dulcet, honeyed, sweet.

**bitterling** (bit' ēr ling), *n.* A fish resembling the bream. (F. *cyprin amer*.)

The bitterling (*Rhodeus amarus*) is a small freshwater fish of central Europe, belonging to the carp family.

E. *bitter* and dim. -ling.



**Bitter-apple.**—The drug named *colocynth* is obtained from the bitter-apple, which grows in north Africa, Syria, and north-west India.

**bittern** [1] (bit' érn), *n.* A wading bird, allied to the heron, but smaller and with a shorter neck. (F. *butor*.)

The common bittern (*Botaurus stellaris*), once frequent in England, is now restricted to the undrained parts of the Fen districts. Its loud cry, known as booming, caused it to be regarded as a bird of evil omen. Strange tales, but quite incorrect, were told of its producing this cry by blowing through a reed. Country people call it the butter-bump.

The young offer a remarkable case of protective colouring. With bill pointing straight up they stand among the reeds always facing apparent danger. In this position their striped markings harmonize so well with the reeds as to render them practically invisible.

M.E. *bitor*, *bitour*, from F. *butor*, perhaps from L.L. *būtīre* to cry like a bittern (*būtīlo*), probably an imitative word.

**bittern** [2] (bit' érn), *n.* The liquid which remains when brine or sea water has had the salt removed from it. (F. *bittern*, *eau mère*.)

It gets its name from its very bitter taste, due to the chlorides of calcium and magnesium present. Bromine is obtained from it.

Perhaps a form of *bittering*, from E. *bitter* and verbal noun suffix *-ing*.

**bittock** (bit' ok), *n.* A little bit. See bit.

**bitumen** (bi tū' mèn; bit' ū mèn), *n.* A natural mineral pitch, solid or liquid; a paint prepared from this. (F. *bitume*.)

This substance contains eighty-five parts of carbon to twelve of hydrogen and three of oxygen. The most remarkable deposit of bitumen exists in the island of Trinidad, in the West Indies, where there is a lake of it ninety-nine acres in extent. Bitumen was once called asphalt, a word now used for bituminiferous (bi tū mi nif' ér ūs, *adj.*) limestone, which means limestone having its pores full of bitumen.

Bituminized (bi tū' min izd, *adj.*) paper, that is, paper soaked in bitumen, is used for roofs. Bituminous (bi tū' min ūs, *adj.*) coal gives out bubbles of a tarry bitumen as it burns. Bituminization (bi tū min iz ā' shūn, *n.*) is the process of converting into or impregnating with bitumen.

**bivalve** (bi' vālv), *adj.* Having two valves or shells. *n.* A mollusc or soft fleshy animal with two shells or valves that open and close. (F. *bivalve*.)

The oyster, the mussel, and the scallop are bivalves. The two shells, or more correctly half-shells, are joined together on a hinge which tends to draw them apart.

When young, bivalves possess a head.

This becomes rudimentary; that is, only partly developed or indefinite, but the mouth is always present. Food is taken in through a canal or tube called a siphon. Most varieties of bivalves are food for man.

E. prefix *bi-* and *valve*.



Bivouac.—Soldiers in bivouac after a long and tiring march.

**bivouac** (biv' u āk), *n.* A temporary encampment without tents. *v.i.* To make such an encampment. (F. *bivouac*; *bivouaquer*.)

On fine warm nights soldiers on the march often bivouac, while if they are carrying out a forced march, where time must not be wasted, they bivouac so that they can leave their camp as quickly as possible, without having to take down and pack tents.

F. *bivouac*, from Swiss G. *beiwacht*, from *bei* by, in addition, *wachen* to watch. We adopted this word, during the war of the Spanish Succession (1701-1713), from the French, who borrowed it in the Thirty Years' War (1618-1648). The Swiss *beiwacht* was an extra patrol of citizens in times of disturbance.

**bi-weekly** (bi wēk' lī), *adj.* Occurring once in two weeks. (F. *bihebdomadaire*.)

Many periodicals and magazines are issued weekly or monthly, but few are published bi-weekly.

E. prefix *bi-* and *weekly*.

**bizarre** (bi zar'), *adj.* Eccentric; grotesque; odd. (F. *bizarre*.)

A violent clash of colours in a dress produces a bizarre appearance. The character or quality of bizarre objects is *bizarrierie* (bi zar' é ri, *n.*).

From Span. *bizarro* courageous, manly; cp. Ital. *bizzarro* irascible, queer-tempered, odd, whence the modern sense may have originated.

The word is probably of Basque origin, from *bizarra* beard. SYN.: Eccentric, fantastic, outlandish, whimsical. ANT.: Normal, ordinary, orthodox, usual.



Bizarre.—The bizarre appearance of a chief of Nigeria.

**blab** (blāb), *v.i.* and *t.* To tell tales; to reveal or betray a secret. *n.* A tell-tale. (F. *bavarder*; *divulger*; *bavard*, *rapporteur*.)

This word has usually a bad meaning and implies the idea of sneaking or betrayal. A person who talks indiscreetly or who cannot be trusted with a secret is a blab or blabber (blāb'ēr, *n.*).

An imitative word found in various Teut. languages. M.E. *blabbe* a blabber, *blaberen* to blab; cp. G. *plappern*. SYN.: Blurt out, peach, sneak.

**black** (blāk), *adj.* Of the darkest colour (the opposite of white); dark; dirty; wicked; sinister; gloomy; sorrowful; ill-omened. *v.t.* To make black. *n.* A very dark colour (the opposite of white); a black or dark person; a black dye or other pigment; black clothing, especially mourning; a piece of soot or dirt; a fungus on wheat. (F. *noir*, *sinistre*, *sombre*, *funeste*; *noircir*; *noir*, *deuil*.)



Black Feet.—The Black Feet tribe of American Indians at their encampment in Glacier National Park, Montana, U.S.A. In Canada the Black Feet live on the plains of Alberta.

Strictly speaking, black is not a colour, but the absence of all light, and therefore of colour. This word is used in many senses. Sometimes it relates to colour only, or it may imply dark or deadly purposes, death and gloom, and mourning and sorrow, disgrace and liability to punishment, or wickedness and sin; or again, it may refer to things that are against what is natural or seemly, things that betoken misfortune, and so on.

Some people like milk in their coffee; others prefer it black, that is, without milk. When things look unfavourable we say that prospects are black. However good the influences to which a black-hearted (*adj.*) man has been exposed throughout his life, he yet may die with a black lie on his lips. When a man is very angry he will look blackly (blāk'li, *adv.*) about him.

We black our shoes now with polishes and pastes, which are much cleaner to use than

the old-fashioned blacking (blāk'ing, *n.*). If a little of the polish happens to drop into a bowl of water it will make the water blackish (blāk'ish, *adj.*). A revengeful man will go out of his way to blacken (blāk'ën, *v.t.*) the fair fame of one who was his friend. In time of war the censorship is very strict, and the government is particular to black out passages in the newspapers that are against public policy. Blackness (blāk'nēs, *n.*) is not so much a colour as the absence of colour. We sometimes call a negro a black (*n.*). Our forefathers would have called him a blacky (blāk'i), or a blackamoor (blāk'āmoor). When we are in mourning we wear black.

The word black occurs in many terms and phrases. To beat anyone black and blue is to beat so hard that the skin becomes discoloured. A black and tan terrier is one whose coat is black and brown. The black-and-tans (*n.pl.*) were the auxiliary police created in Ireland in 1921 for special duties. There were not enough of the green uniforms in the Royal Irish Constabulary to go round, and so the new force wore khaki with black hats and black armlets.

A picture, or a reproduction of a picture, done with pen, pencil, or charcoal, one in which no colour appears, is called a black-and-white drawing. When we say that we cannot believe a thing until we see it in black and white, we mean until we see it written or printed. A black mark (*n.*) placed against a name is a sign of disgrace. A gloomy person is sometimes spoken of as being black-browed (*adj.*), and coals are jokingly referred to as black diamonds (*n.pl.*).

In the term black cap (*n.*), black implies death. It is a square of black cloth which a judge puts on his head at the moment when he pronounces sentence of death. At other times the judges hold it in their hands as a part of their full dress.

A clergyman is sometimes, not very reverently, called a black-coat (*n.*). This term is also applied to clerks as a class—because they have to keep up appearances by dressing well—as opposed to manual labourers, who can wear their working clothes.

The Black Country (*n.*) of the English Midlands, round Birmingham and Wolverhampton, is a land of collieries and factories. Day and night the furnaces are alight, and the whole district is blackened with smoke and dust.

The Black Death (*n.*), the terrible plague that raged in Asia and Europe in the fourteenth century, got its name from the black

appearance of the skin which was one of the symptoms. About a quarter of all the people in Europe died of it.

Two dark coloured medicines to which the word black is applied are the old-fashioned physic known as black draught (*n.*), of which senna was an important ingredient, and the so-called black drop (*n.*), containing opium and vinegar.

Another kind of black drop may be seen during what are called solar transits of the planets Mercury and Venus. When these planets pass in front of the sun a strange change comes over them; they look quite dark, and at the two moments when they have just come in front and are just about to pass off, they appear to be lengthened like a drop of water or a pear.

When a boy hits another near the eye he may give him a black eye (*n.*)—that is, the skin round his eye may become discoloured. Black-eyed (*adj.*) beauties, girls whose eyes are very dark, are admired by many people. "Black-eyed Susan," Douglas Jerrold's famous melodrama, drew all London across the water to the Surrey Theatre by its breezy and gallant flavour of the sea.

The regular name of the aboriginals of Australia is blackfellow (*n.*). The Black Feet (*n.pl.*) are a tribe of North American Indians. The name is explained in two ways. It is supposed to be derived either from the fact that they wore black moccasins, or that their leggings were blackened by the ashes of prairie fires.

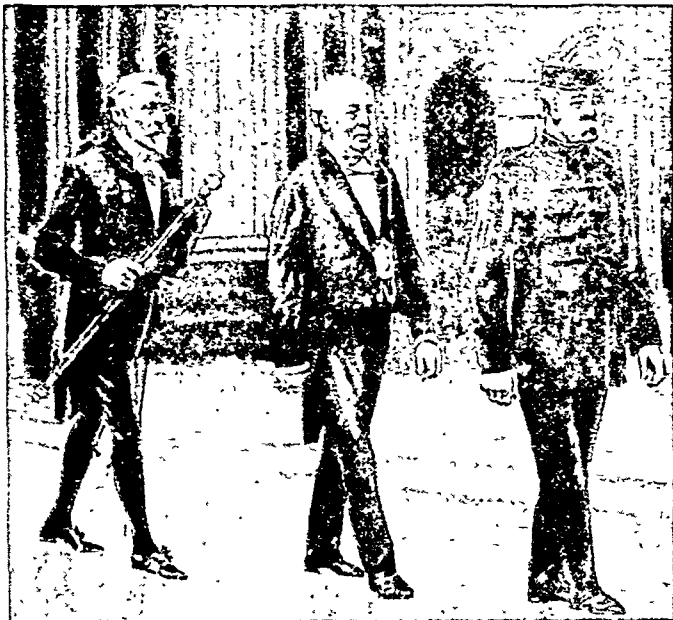
From his black cloak and hood a Dominican friar came to be known as a blackfriar (*n.*). The part of a town where a Dominican convent rose was called Blackfriars, a name which is still used for a district of London. The monks of the Benedictine Order are called black monks (*n.pl.*) because their habit is usually black.

Two days of the week have, through certain associations, been characterized as black, namely, Monday and Friday. The Monday when boys go back to school has been called Black Monday (*n.*), as being a day of sorrow after the joy of the holidays. In history there are two days known as Black Monday—Easter Monday, 1360, which for the time of year was very dark and very cold; and another Easter Monday, in 1209, when five hundred of the citizens of Dublin, while quietly celebrating Easter, were killed by the native Irish. The Friday, December 6th,

1745, when news reached London that the young Pretender was at Derby, was called Black Friday (*n.*) because it caused a financial panic in the city. Black Friday, May 11th, 1866, was so called from another time of financial stress, when the famous banking house of Overend, Gurney and Company, suspended payment.

Black game (*n.*) is another name for the bird known as black-cock. See black-cock.

From the glossy black head of the male, the duck, known in Britain as the scaup;



Black Rod. — The official of the House of Lords known as Black Rod by reason of his ebony wand of office, which has a little lion in gold on the top. He summons the Commons to the House of Lords when required, such as when a speech is read from the throne.

is called in North America the black-head (*n.*). Black-head, too, is another name for a symptom of the skin-disease acne.

Black Mass (*n.*) is a Roman Catholic Mass said for the dead. Black pudding (*n.*) is a very rich, dark-coloured kind of sausage. Black Rod (*n.*), the official of the House of Lords who summons the Commons to the other House when the royal assent is given to bills or when a speech is read from the throne, gets his title from the colour of his wand of office. This is made of ebony and has a lion in gold on the top.

Sometimes a lamb is born black when all its brothers and sisters and other relations are of ordinary colour. This is looked upon as a freak of nature, and so the term black sheep (*n.*) is used for a somewhat similar departure from the ordinary course among human beings.

A family may have been known as having for many years provided a succession of worthy members of society. Then, without any apparent reason, one of its members will

develop bad tendencies and prove a disgrace to the family. Such an unworthy betrayer of a good tradition is called a black sheep.

A mixture of treacle and rum and a cheap brand of port wine or other dark-coloured wine are both known as black-strap (*n.*), and blackwash (*n.*) is a lotion made of calomel and lime-water.

For black art, black-ball, and other words of which black is the first part, *see* below.

A-S. *blac*, *blaec*, also meaning ink, like many similar words in various Teut. languages.

**black art** (blāk' art), *n.* Magic; witchcraft. (*F. magie noire, nécromancie.*)

The black art is a term used for magic and witchcraft generally, and specially for magic that is practised with a view to causing misfortune, disease, or death—black magic. It is also used for what is called necromancy, that form of magic by which the future was supposed to be foretold by pretended consultation with the spirits of the dead.

In the Middle Ages necromancy was often called "nigromancy," as if it were derived from the Latin word for black, *niger*, and so "nigromancy" and all kinds of magic came to be known as the black art.

*E. black and art.*

**black-ball** (blāk' bawl), *n.* A vote against somebody. *v.t.* To record such a vote; to exclude. (*F. boule noire; rejeter au scrutin.*)

When a vote had to be taken in ancient Greece a man who wanted to vote for a person dropped a white ball into a box. If he wanted to vote against him he used a black ball. Although nowadays voting is usually done with pieces of paper, many clubs still use black and white balls, and we still say that a man has been blackballed for a club, and that so many black balls exclude from membership.

*E. black and ball.*

**black-band** (blāk' bānd), *n.* An iron ore of a very dark colour, due to the presence of streaks of coal. (*F. black-band; fer lithoïde.*)

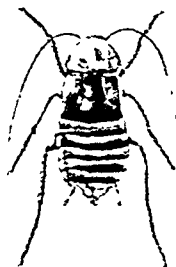
Black-band seams occur in certain Scottish coal-fields, but most of them have now been worked out. In smelting it required less coal and was therefore highly valued.

*E. black and band.*

**black-beetle** (blāk' bētl), *n.* Another name for the cockroach. (*F. blatte.*)

A more inaccurate name could scarcely have been chosen, because the insect is a near relative of the cricket and not a beetle at all, and it is brown, not black. Black-beetles slun the light, but hunt at night for their food, which ranges from kitchen-refuse to cloth, leather, and paper.

*E. black and beetle.*



Black-beetle.—The black beetle is neither black nor a beetle.

**blackberry** (blāk' ber ri), *n.* A popular name for the common bramble; its fruit. (*F. mûre de ronce.*)

One of the chief delights of the country is blackberrying (blāk' ber ri ing, *n.*). What girl or boy does not enjoy roaming with hooked stick along common and hedgerow, to return with baskets heavy laden? So plentiful is this delicious fruit that it has come to be a symbol of plenty and we say that a thing is as common as blackberries in September. The blackberry belongs to the same order as the rose. The scientific name is *Rubus fruticosus*.

*E. black and berry.*



Blackbird.—A male blackbird on sentry. The nest is built of twigs, fibres, and moss, lined with mud and clay.

**blackbird** (blāk' bērd), *n.* A British songbird; a black slave. (*F. merle.*)

Everybody knows this handsome songbird, with its black coat and bright yellow beak. The hen bird is not black but dark brown, and her beak is not nearly so bright as her mate's. Although the blackbird damages fruit it makes up for this by eating an immense number of slugs, caterpillars, and other vermin. There are blackbirds in nearly every country of Europe, and also in Asia and Africa. The blackbird is also called the merle, ousel, or black thrush, and its scientific name is *Turdus merula*.

In the days of the slave trade, when the high seas carried many shiploads of kidnapped negroes, the slave-traders and pirates called their unfortunate captives blackbirds, and the hideous traffic was known as blackbirding (*n.*).

*E. black and bird.*

**blackboard** (blāk' bōrd), *n.* A large board made of wood or papier mâché coloured black, used by teachers to write or draw upon with chalk. (*F. tableau noir.*)

*E. black and board.*

**black book** (blāk' buk), *n.* A book containing a record, especially of misbehaviour; a book on the black art. (*F. registre des punitions; grimoire.*)

Official books bound in black were known as black books. One of the best-known of these is the Black Book of the Admiralty, a book of sea rules of the time of Edward III.



Formerly in the army and at Oxford university the names of those who had committed various offences were entered in what was called a black-book, and so to be in the black books of anyone means to be in disgrace and under suspicion.

*E. black and book.*

**black buck** (bläk bük), *n.* An Indian antelope. (*F. antilope indienne.*)

The male Indian antelope, the scientific name of which is *Antilope cervicapra*, derives its popular name from the glossy black colour of its coat above, which contrasts strongly with the pure white of its coat underneath and on the inside of its legs. On the face and neck are a few chestnut-coloured markings. The females and the young bucks are fawn-coloured, and only the males are horned, the horns being long and twisted spirally.

These antelopes are found throughout India, especially where waste land adjoins open cultivated plains, in which districts they are very destructive to the crops. So swift are they that they cannot be run down by greyhounds; they have to be caught and pulled down by the cheetah or hunting leopard.

*E. black and buck.*

**blackcap** (bläk' kăp), *n.* A small British songbird. (*F. fauvette à tête noire.*)

This name is given by country people to various British birds that have what looks like a black cap on their heads. It is particularly applied to a little brownish-grey bird of the warbler family. It is only the male that has a black cap, the female being brown on the top of the head. The blackcap is one of the sweetest singers among British birds. Its scientific name is *Sylvia atricapilla*.

*E. black and cap.*

**black-cock** (bläk' kok), *n.* A name of the black grouse. (*F. coq de bruyère.*)

Sometimes black-cock are called black game, and the female bird is often known as the grey hen. The male is a very handsome bird with glossy black plumage shot with purple and blue. The plumage of the female

is a sober brown barred with black. Black-cock are found in Asia as well as in Europe. They are most plentiful in the Scottish Highlands. The scientific name of the bird is *Tetrao tetrix*.

*E. black and cock.*

**black-currant** (bläk kūr' änt), *n.* A well-known garden bush; its fruit. (*F. groseille noire, cassis.*)

The plant belongs to the order Ribesiaceae. It is a native of Britain and is also found in other parts of Europe. Its fruit is used for tarts and jams, jellies and wine, and black-currant lozenges are a favourite remedy for sore throats. Unlike red and white currants, the fruit buds of black-currants grow on last year's wood, and so, when the bushes are pruned, it is the old wood that has to be cut away.

Black-currants are very liable to a disease called "big bud" caused by a mite. The scientific name of the black-currant is *Ribes nigrum*.

*E. black and currant.*

**black-fish** (bläk' fish), *n.* The name of various dark-coloured fish. (*F. poisson noir.*)

The name black-fish is used especially for a species of wrasse found off the Atlantic coasts of the United States of America, and also for the huge black ca'ing whale. At a certain stage of their life salmon are known

as black-fish, and in Scotland black-fishing (*n.*) is carried on by the light of torches. The name may be due to the fact that they are caught when nights are dark.

**black flag** (bläk flag), *n.* A flag of black cloth; the flag formerly flown by pirates. (*F. pavillon noir, pavillon de pirate.*)

When the black flag is run up over a prison it means that someone has been hanged. Another black flag that was a sign of death, or of deadly purposes, was the one flown by pirates of old to show that they would neither give nor expect quarter. The bands of Chinese robbers that infested the mountain regions of Tongking after the Tai-ping rebellion called themselves Black Flags.

*E. black and flag.*



Black buck.—Only the males of the black buck of India are horned. They are so fleet of foot that they easily outrun a greyhound.



Blackcap.—The black feathers on the head of the blackcap gave this feathered songster its name.

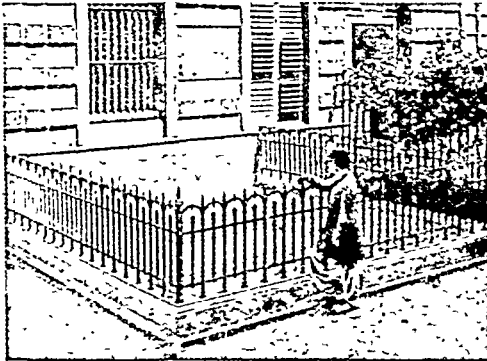
**blackguard** (blăg' ard), *n.* An unprincipled scoundrel. *v.t.* To abuse violently. (F. *polisson*; *injurier*.)

We call a man a blackguard when he has lost all sense of what is decent and seemly and is ready to commit any crime on the slenderest of excuses. His way of life is blackguardism (blăg' ard izm, *n.*), and his ideas and words are blackguardly (blăg' ard li, *adj.*).

At different times the word has had different meanings. It was formerly applied to the humblest retainers of a great household, those who looked after the kitchen utensils. When the family travelled these kitchen knaves rode in a wagon among the pots and pans, and, becoming thoroughly grimed with them, were referred to as the black guard.

The men and boys who, before the streets were properly lighted, carried torches to light passengers on their way, were called blackguards, and so were the poor children of the streets.

E. *black* and *guard*.



Black-hole.—The Black Hole of Calcutta, where one hundred and forty-six Europeans were imprisoned by the Nawab of Bengal in 1756. Only twenty-three came out alive.

**black-hole** (blăk' hōl), *n.* A room in which soldiers under arrest were placed; the guard-room. *v.t.* To place in the guard-room. (F. *cachot*, *trou noir*, *salle de garde*; *mettre aux arrêts*.)

To black-hole a soldier was to confine him for some offence in the guard-room, or black-hole. The military jail or black-hole at Fort William, Calcutta, has gone down in history as the Black Hole of Calcutta. It was eighteen feet long and fourteen feet ten inches wide, and had only two tiny windows. Into this confined space were crammed one hundred and forty-six European prisoners during the stifling night of June 20th, 1756, and only twenty-three came out alive. The word is not now used in the army, but it is still used generally for shutting up anyone by way of punishment.

E. *black* and *hole*.

**black-jack** (blăk' jăk), *n.* A leather vessel for holding liquor; a miner's term for the mineral called blende. (F. *outré en cuir*; *blende*.)

In the sixteenth century this name was given to large black leather jugs and drinking vessels. Sometimes they were painted with coats of arms, initials, or other decorations, but they seldom had any silver on them. In the British Museum there is one that belonged to Charles I. On it is a crown with his initials and the date 1646.

Cornish miners call the zinc ore, usually known as blende, black-jack.

E. *black* and *jack*.

**blacklead** (blăk' led), *n.* A form of carbon; graphite; plumbago. *v.t.* To rub or colour with blacklead. (F. *mine de plomb*.)

Blacklead is used for polishing stoves and lubricating machinery and employed in the manufacture of crucibles and pencils. Natural blacklead is found in the ground in thin sheets or lumps. It contains no lead, but is so-called because of its metallic appearance. Most of it comes from Siberia, Ceylon, New Brunswick, New Zealand, and Germany, but it is mined in England near Keswick. Artificial blacklead is made by heating coke in an electric furnace.

E. *black* and *lead*.

**blackleg** (blăk' leg), *n.* A swindler; a workman who works during a strike; a disease of sheep and cattle. (F. *escroc*, *renard*.)

This word, of unknown origin, has long been used for any gambler or cheat, and especially for one who swindles people at race meetings. When a strike or lock-out is in progress a workman who goes on working is called a blackleg, and so is a man who is brought in from outside to do the work of a striker.

**black-letter** (blăk' let er), *n.* The style of type used by the earliest printers. *adj.* Printed or written in this style. (F. *caractères gothiques*.)

When printing was invented about the middle of the fifteenth century the types that the printers used were based upon the so-called black-letter style of handwriting that was common in Germany and the Netherlands at that time. Gradually this black-letter type was replaced by what is called Roman type, the ordinary type used for books to-day.

Black-letter, or, as it is also called, Gothic or Old English, or Elizabethan type, is now used chiefly in ornamental printing and often for the title of a newspaper on the front page. The Germans long used it as their ordinary printing type. When saints' days were marked in the calendar in red, a day that was not so marked was a black-letter day, and so this name came to be used for a day that was considered unlucky.

E. *black* and *letter*.

**black-list** (blăk' list), *n.* A list of persons under suspicion or in disgrace. (F. *liste des punitions*.)

To be on the black-list means in ordinary usage much the same as to be in anyone's

black books. Formerly a list was kept of confirmed drunkards whom publicans were not allowed to supply with drink. This was called the black list.

The term was also used in two connexions during the World War (1914-18)—for the lists of enemy firms in various parts of the world with whom British firms were not allowed to do business, and for a list drawn up by the British government of persons and firms who through misbehaviour were not allowed to carry out contracts for the public services.

E. *black* and *list*.

**blackmail** (blāk' māl), *n.* The crime of demanding money by threats; money so demanded. *v.t.* To demand money in this way. (F. *chantage*; *faire chanter*.)

To attempt to extort payment from anybody by threatening to do violence to him or to expose some crime or foolish action he may have committed is one of the most contemptible of crimes. A blackmailer (blāk' māl' ēr, *n.*) is always very severely dealt with by judges.

In Richard Blackmore's fine romance of Exmoor, "Lorna Doone," it will be remembered that the robber Doones exacted tribute in the form of money, corn, and other property from the farmers, in return for which they undertook to refrain from plunder. This form of blackmail was common in early days, especially on the borders of England and Scotland.

The earliest meaning of the word was rent paid not in silver or, as it was called, white money, but in baser coin, or in cattle.

E. *black* and *mail* (not used except in Scotland and North England) tribute, rent, of Scand. origin, cp. O. Norse *māl* payment, agreement.

**Black Maria** (blāk mā rī' ā), *n.* A conveyance in which prisoners are taken to courts or prison.

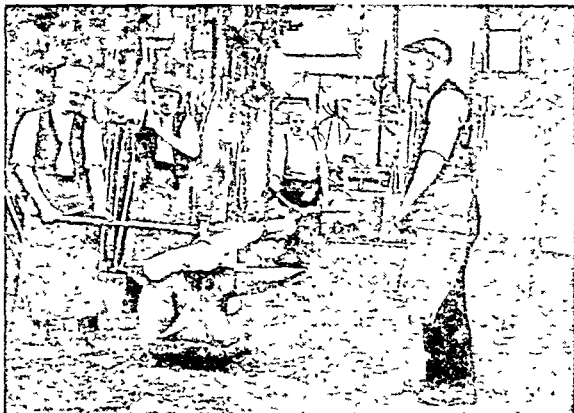
The van in which prisoners are conveyed to or from prison or court is known familiarly as Black Maria. Many years ago in the United States of America there was a negro woman named Maria Lee, who kept a sailor's lodging-house in Boston, Massachusetts. The story goes that Black Maria was very muscular, and that she often helped with troublesome prisoners, and so from her unofficial connexion with the lock-up the prison van was named after her.

From the very black smoke given off by the heavy howitzer shells which the Germans used during the World War of 1914-18 they were called Black Marias.

**blacksmith** (blāk' smith), *n.* A smith who works in iron. (F. *forgeron*.)

The word blacksmith is used to distinguish a smith working in iron from a whitesmith, who works in white metal, that is, tin. Among smiths of legend are Hephaestus, the

Greek god of fire, whose forge was on Mount Olympus, and the wonder-working Wayland Smith, of Teutonic folklore. Both were lame, like many smiths in early times, who being unable to fight were employed in making arms.

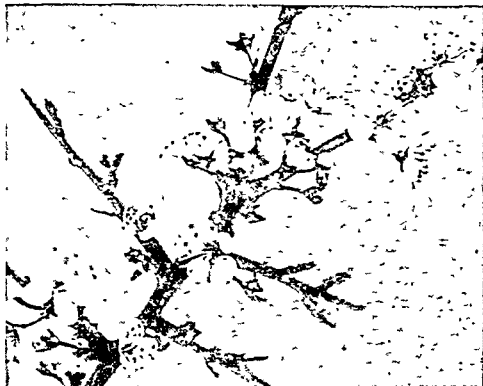


Blacksmith.—Busy blacksmiths at the Derby works of the London, Midland and Scottish Railway.

One of the most famous blacksmiths in real life was the one who used to marry runaway couples at Gretna Green, a little village near the border of Scotland and England.

E. *black* and *smith*.

**blackthorn** (blāk' thörn), *n.* Another name for the sloe; a walking-stick or cudgel made from this tree. *adj.* Made of or relating to the tree. (F. *épine noire*; *d'épine noire*.)



Blackthorn.—The blackthorn belongs to the same order as the rose. Its blossom makes its appearance before the leaves.

The flowers of the sloe appear before the leaves, and perhaps it was the fact of the leafless boughs appearing very dark against the white blossoms that suggested the name blackthorn. The tree belongs to the same order as the rose, and has a great many stiff, twiggy branches, which make excellent walking-sticks. The scientific name of the tree is *Prunus spinosa*.

E. *black* and *thorn*.

**Black Watch** (blāk wō'h'), *n.* The 42nd Highland Regiment.

In 1739, at a time when cattle-raiding and other disorders were rife in the north of Scotland, a force of men was formed to keep order. Their tartans were dark-coloured, and so they came to be known as the Black Watch. The regiment was added to the British Army in 1740, and it won great distinction at the battle of Fontenoy in 1745. From that day to this it has been considered one of the finest regiments in the British army.

**blackwood** (blāk' wud'), *n.* A name of various foreign trees and their timber. (*F. melanoxylo.*)

Among the trees of this name one of the best known is the blackwood of Australia, which is a kind of acacia. It grows to an enormous size and its timber is used for furniture. Its scientific name is *Acacia melanoxylon*. What is called East Indian rosewood comes from two Indian blackwood trees, whose scientific names are *Dalbergia latifolia* and *D. sissooides*. The timber of both these trees, like that of the Australian blackwood, is used in making furniture.

**bladder** (blād' ēr), *n.* The bag in which the liquid waste from an animal body collects; a bag inflated with air. (*F. vessie.*)

Most kinds of fish have an air-bladder, or swim-bladder, which acts as a lung or helps the fish to rise and sink at will. Sometimes the bladder of an ox or sheep, inflated with air, is used by those learning to swim to keep them afloat. Shakespeare uses the word in this sense in "Henry VIII" (iii, 2): "Like little wanton boys that swim on bladders."

The bladder-nut (*n.*) is the seed of the bladder-tree (*n.*), a native of America, whose scientific name is *Staphylea trifolia*. The seeds of other plants belonging to the family

Staphylea are also called bladder-nuts. There are several varieties of bladder-wort (*n.*), a rootless plant that grows suspended in water. Some of its bladders serve as traps for the insects on which it feeds. Bladder-wrack (*n.*) is a species of seaweed that has large bladders in its fronds. The scientific

Bladdery (blād' ēr i, *adj.*) means resembling a bladder, or having bladders or bladder-like cells or cavities.

M.E. *blad(d)re*, A.-S. *blad(d)ra*; word common to Teut. languages, from the root of *blow*; cp. *G. blasen* bladder, *blasen* to blow, *blatter* pustule, vesicle.

**bladder campion** (blād' ēr kām' pi ōn), *n.* A species of campion, with an inflated bladder-like calyx. (*F. silene.*)

The bladder campion (*Silene inflata*), which belongs to the pink order, bears white flowers, which are faintly scented at night. The bladder-like calyx has a network of veins, often purple, fabled to represent the purple veins in the bloated face of the intemperate Silenus of old Greek myths.

**bladder plum** (blād' ēr plūm), *n.* A plum with an undeveloped stone.

The bladder plum is not a natural species of plum, but merely one which fails to develop the "stone" which contains the seed or kernel. Instead, a thin bladder is formed, and in some cases the whole fruit is little more than a thin bladder.

**bladder-seed** (blād' ēr sēd), *n.* A genus of umbel-bearing plants, with bladder-like fruits. (*F. physosperme.*)

This genus of umbel-bearers is called *Physospermum* (literally bladder-seed), because the outer

coat of the dry fruits is loose and bladder-like. The only British species is the Cornish bladder-seed (*Physospermum commutatum*) which is found only near Bodmin in Cornwall, and near Tavistock in Devon.

*E. bladder and seed.*

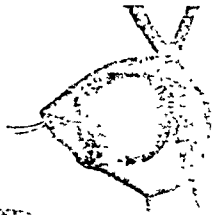
**blade** (blād), *n.* The leaf or young stalk of a grass; the broad, flat part of a leaf; the cutting part of an instrument; the broad part of a bat or racket; any broad part resembling these. (*F. brin, feuille, lame, plat.*)

A knife, a sword, a razor, each has a blade; so has an oar, a spade, a paddle. The part of a cricket bat into which the handle is fitted is the blade. It is made of willow, the face or front being flat and the back curved outwards, with the thickest part behind the hitting or driving portion of the face. The stringed part of a lawn-tennis racket is sometimes referred to as the blade. The blade of the tongue is the part between the tip and the root. Corn or grass not yet in ear is in the blade. The flat, broad bone in the shoulder of man and the other mammals is the blade-bone (*n.*), shoulder blade, or scapula.

The blade of a racing oar is slightly curved, so that its concave surface may offer more resistance to the water.



Black Watch.—An officer of the famous regiment known as the Black Watch, or 42nd Highland Regiment.

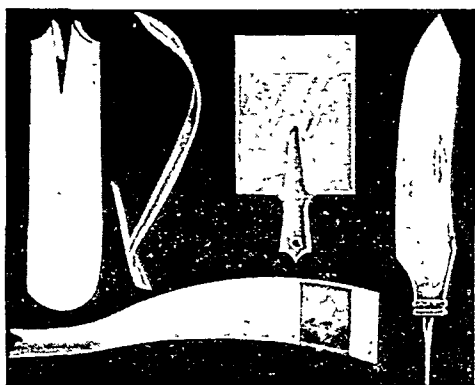


Bladder-wort.—One of the bladders of the bladder-wort, much magnified.

name is *Fucus vesiculosus*. It is to be found on the coasts of Britain and is used in the making of kelp.

A sword is often referred to as a blade, and so in the sword-carrying days a swaggering, reckless fellow used to be called a blade.

A.-S. *blæd*; a word common to Teut. languages; cp. G. *blatt*.



Blade.—Blades of many kinds: cricket bat, grass, spade, knife and oar.

**blaeberry** (blā' bër i), *n.* The bilberry. **Bleaberry** (blē' bër i) is another spelling. (F. *aivelle*.)

People in Scotland and the North of England often call the bilberry the blaeberry, as *blae* in northern dialects means dark blue or lead-coloured. Another name for it is whortleberry.

**blain** (blān), *n.* An inflamed sore on the skin, a blister. *v.t.* To cause to blister or have blains. (F. *pustule*; *faire venir des pustules, former en pustules*.)

This word is not often used by itself, but is familiar in the combination chilblain.

M.E. *blein(e)*, A.-S. *blegen*.

**blame** (blām), *v.t.* To find fault with; reproach. *n.* Censure; responsibility for anything wrong. (F. *blâmer*; *blâme, faute*.)

We blame the weather for spoiling a picnic, blame a boy for carelessness, blame ourselves when things go wrong. We put the blame on others. We offer to take the blame or shoulder the blame should our experiment fail. We are to blame for not taking care; if a mistake is our fault we are blameworthy (blām' wërth i, *adj.*), and if the mistake could have been avoided it is blameable (blām' ābl, *adj.*) or blameful (blām' fül, *adj.*).

We have acted blameably (blām' āb li, *adv.*) or blamefully (blām' fül li, *adv.*). Our blameableness (blām' ā bl nēs, *n.*) or blameworthiness (blām' wërthi nēs, *n.*) is clear. But if we make no mistake we are blameless (blām' lēs, *adj.*) and our blamelessness (blām' lēs nēs, *n.*) saves us from reproof.

M.E. *blāmen*, O.F. *blasmer*, from L. *blasphemāre*, Gr. *blasphēmēin*. *SYN.*: Censure, rate, scold. *ANT.*: Approve, honour, laud, praise.

**blanch** (blanch; 'blānch), *adj.* White. *v.t.* To cause to turn pale or lose colour; to bleach; to remove the skin of a kernel. *v.i.* To turn pale; to lose colour. (F. *blanc*; *blanchir, faire pâlir décortiquer*; *pâlir*.)

The green colour of leaves and other parts of a plant is due to a substance called chlorophyll, produced in them by the action of sunlight. If a board be left lying on a lawn for a week or two, the grass underneath it will have turned more or less white, or have blanched, because the light has been shut off from it. Letters and other designs can be formed on leaves by pinning on stencils which cover and blanch parts of them.

A gardener blanches lettuces by tying up the tops and keeping light away from their hearts. He blanches celery stalks by piling earth round them, and sea-kale and rhubarb by covering them over with pots or boxes. A cook blanches almonds by removing the skins after loosening them with boiling water.

Long imprisonment in a dark cell has a blanching effect on the human skin. Fear causes a person's face to blanch suddenly.

In old law **blanch farm** (*n.*) meant rent paid in silver (white money) as opposed to that paid in labour or goods, such as a part of the crops. In Scotland it is a nominal rent, like a peppercorn rent in England; and a **blanch holding** (*n.*) is a form of tenure or holding of a property, under which such rent has to be paid—a penny, a rose, or some other practically valueless thing.

F. *blanchir* to make white, from *blanc* white.

**blancmange** (blā monzh'), *n.* A mixture of arrowroot or corn-flour with milk, sugar, and some flavouring matter, boiled and poured into a mould to cool. In another form of blancmange the arrowroot or corn-flour is replaced by isinglass or gelatine. (F. *blanc-manger*.)

F. *blanc white, manger* eating, food (L. *manducare* to chew, eat).

**bland** (blānd), *adj.* Mild; pleasant in manner; soothing. (F. *doux, aimable*.)

Barley-water is a bland drink, wine a stimulating one. To smile blandly (blānd' li, *adv.*) is to smile pleasantly. **Blandness** (blānd' nēs, *n.*) is the quality of being bland.

L. *blandus* mild, perhaps for *mlandus*, cognate with *mollis* (soft) and E. *mild*. *SYN.*: Affable, genial, gentle, soft, tender. *ANT.*: Biting, harsh, rough, rude.

**blandish** (blān' dish), *v.t.* To influence or try to influence by flattery. (F. *caresser, flatter*.)

To say sly, pleasing things is to blandish or to use blandishment (blān' dish mēnt, *n.*). **Blandiloquence** (blān dil' ó kwēns, *n.*) is the kind of coaxing talk that is otherwise known as humbug or, in Ireland, as blarney.

M.E. *blanden*, *blandissen*, F. *blāndir*, L. *blāndirē* to caress, flatter. The suffix *-ish* is from F. *-iss-* found in verbs like *finir*, pres. p. *finissant*, as in *blāndissant*.

**blank** (blāngk), *adj.* Empty; free from writing or other marks; needing certain words to be added; without expression; fruitless; utter, downright. *n.* An unfilled part of a document; a lottery ticket with no name or number on it; a plain disk out of or on which something is to be stamped; an

emptiness or void. *v.t.* To make blank. (F. *blanc, vide, confus; blanc; confondre.*)

A blank cartridge (*n.*) is charged with powder, but has no bullet in it. In a blank cheque (*n.*) the amount is left to be filled in by the person to whom it is payable. Hence to give anyone a blank cheque means to give him leave to spend as much as he likes or finds necessary. The unrhymed verse in which many plays (such as those of Shakespeare) and epic poems are written is called blank verse (*n.*). A blank wall (*n.*) has no door or other opening in it. To contradict a person blankly (*blāngk' li, adv.*) is to contradict him flatly, and to look at him blankly is to wear an expression of doubt or lack of understanding, or of blankness (*blāngk' nēs, n.*).

F. *blanc*, O.H.G. *blanch*, Modern G. *blank*, white, shining, *blinken* to shine; cp. E. *blink*. SYN.: Bare, drear, utter. ANT.: Full replete.

**blanket** (*blāng' ket*), *n.* A sheet of soft woollen cloth used as a bed-covering, as a garment, or for keeping a horse warm; a piece of cloth placed between the platen and the type in a printing machine. *v.t.* To cover with a blanket or as if with a blanket; to toss in a blanket; to take the wind out of the sails (of a boat). (F. *couverture, blanchet; envelopper d'une couverture, berner.*)

The blanket, being warm and loosely-woven, is a comfortable and healthy stuff for use as bed-clothing; it is placed between the upper sheet and the quilt or coverlet.

The kind of person whose mere presence can kill the fun or silence the conversation at a party is known as a wet blanket (*n.*). Yachtsmen, when they take the wind out of

**blare** (*blār*), *v.i.* To make a loud noise like that of a trumpet. *v.t.* To sound loudly as with a trumpet. *n.* The noise of a trumpet; the roar or bellowing of beasts. (F. *beugler, rugir; rugissement.*)

M.E. *blaren*, cp. M.H.G. *bleren*, Modern G. *plärren* to bleat, cry. The word is probably imitative.

**blarney** (*blar' ni*), *n.* Smooth, coaxing speech. *v.t.* To coax. *v.i.* To talk in a coaxing way. (F. *flagonerie, flagoner.*)

When people try to obtain favours in a round-about way, by using soft, flattering talk, they blarney us.

There is a legend that powers of talking persuasively are given to those who kiss the blarney-stone (*n.*), a triangular stone in the



Blarney.—A visitor about to kiss the famous blarney-stone in the wall of an old castle at Blarney, in Ireland.

wall of an old castle at Blarney, near Cork, Ireland. Here, it is said, an Irish chieftain once held out against the English, not by force, but by putting off his surrender day after day with honied speeches and promises, until at last the English Lord President, who was his victim, became the laughing-stock of Queen Elizabeth's court.

The stone itself is still to be seen, high in the castle wall. Visitors, however, usually kiss another stone, nearer the ground, which is said to be quite as effective.

SYN.: *n.* Blandishment, cajolery, flattery. *v.* Cajole, coax, wheedle.

**blase** (*blā' zā*), *adj.* Bored; over-indulged in pleasure and excitement. (F. *blasé.*)

F. *p.p.* of *blaser* to pall, sicken.

**blaspheme** (*blās fēm'*), *v.t.* To speak or write profanely of (as sacred things). *v.i.* To act in such a way. (F. *blasphémer.*)

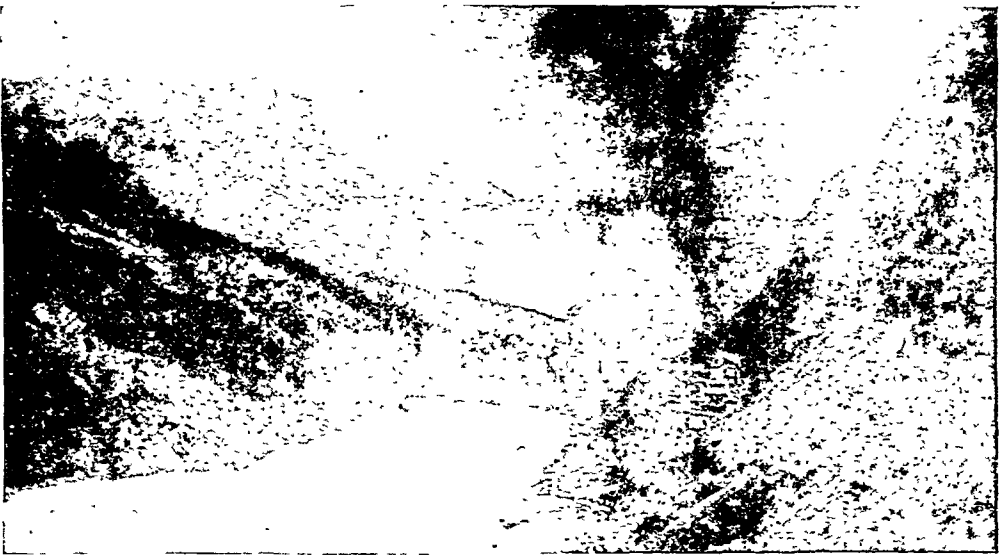
A man blasphemes who ridicules God, or Christianity, or the Bible. Such a one is a blasphemer (*blās fēm' ér, n.*). He acts blasphemously (*blās' fē mūs li, adv.*), his conduct is blasphemous (*blās' fēm ūs, adj.*), and his misdeed is blasphemy (*blās' fē mī, n.*)



Blanket.—A Dutch Boy Scout being tossed in a blanket and thus receiving a blanketing.

the sails of another craft by passing to windward of it, are said to blanket it. The stuff of which blankets are made is called blanketing (*blāng' ket ing, n.*), and a person tossed in a blanket receives a blanketing.

O.F. *blanquette*, F. *blanchet*, a dim. of *blanc* white; cp. L.L. *blanchetus*.



Blast.—A mountain of earth which slid into the Panama Canal being blasted away. Blasting-gelatine, a powerful explosive made from gun-cotton and nitro-glycerine, is often used for the purpose because it is not affected by water.

The word is also used in connexion with any person or thing that, though not sacred, is held by most people to be worthy of the highest esteem. Thus, to speak scoffingly of the beauties of home life, or to hold up to ridicule such a writer as Shakespeare might be accounted blasphemy.

*L. blasphemāre*, Gr. *blasphēmein*. The word is probably compounded of Gr. *blabē* harm, and *phanai* (first person pres. *phēmī*) to say. SYN.: Ridicule, scoff. ANT. Revere, reverence, venerate.

**blast** (blast), *n.* A terrific gust of wind; a strong stream of air from a bellows or blowing engine, a dislodging of rock or earth with an explosive; a loud sound from a brass musical instrument. *v.t.* To blow up with an explosive; to wither; to blight; to ruin. (F. *coup de vent*, air, son, explosion; *faire sauter*, ruiner.)

The blast of air caused by an avalanche snaps stout trees like mere twigs. A big blast in a quarry brings down thousands of tons of rock. Misfortune will often blast the highest hopes.

In the smelting of iron a stream of very hot air is blown in at the bottom of a blast-furnace (*n.*), a lofty circular structure shaped inside like parts of two cones placed base to base. The furnace is kept charged with iron ore, coke, and limestone. The blast creates an intense heat, which melts the iron out of the ore and makes it collect in the lowest part of the furnace, whence it is drawn off.

When a furnace is working it is in blast, and so to be in full blast has come to mean being very busy or working very hard.

The exhaust steam from a locomotive's cylinders shoots out from a blast-pipe (*n.*) through the chimney. The air blown out by

the steam is replaced by other air rushing in through the furnace, the fire in which is thus kept burning fiercely.

Blasting-gelatine (blast' ing jel' à tin, *n.*) is a powerful jelly-like explosive, made from gun-cotton and nitro-glycerine. It contains from ninety to ninety-five per cent of nitro-glycerine, is pale yellow in colour, and, except when frozen, is not sensitive to shock. It is not affected by water. To explode it a powerful detonator is needed.

A.-S. *blāest* blast, *blāwan* to blow; cp. *L. flāre*, *G. blāhen*. Word common in Teut. languages.

**blastema** (blās tē' mā), *n.* The simple living substance of plants and animals. (F. *blastème*.)

The various tissues of plants and animals are developed from blastema. Thus the budding and sprouting part of plants are blastemal (blās tē' māl, *adj.*). In a germinating seed the blastema is the tiny mass of living matter that gives rise to the stem and roots of the seedling; but the name is giving place to more special names.

Gr. *blastēma* sprout, shoot, from *blastanein* to sprout, grow.

**blatant** (blā' tant), *adj.* Loud; noisy; forcing itself upon one's notice. (F. *bruyant*.)

The quality of being blatant, blatancy (blā' tāt si, *n.*), is always used in a bad sense, for self-advertisement is regarded as an offence against good taste. While there is no harm in trying to appear attractive, this should never be carried to the point of blatantly (blā' tant lī, *adv.*) compelling attention.

The word is probably imitative; cp. old Sc. *blaitand* bleating, and *L. blātire* to babble.

**blather** (blāth' er). This is another spelling of blether. See blether.

**blatta** (blät' ä), *n.* A genus of beetles, including the cockroach. (F. *blatte*.)

This name was formerly given to various insects, such as moths and beetles, which come out when it is dark. It is now applied only to the common cockroach (*Blatta orientalis*) and its relatives.

**blaze** [1] (blāz), *n.* The flame produced when anything is burning fiercely; a fire with more flame than smoke; a glow; an outburst. *v.t.* To burn with bright flame; to be brightly coloured; to shine. (F. *flamme*, *explosion*; *flamber*.)

Burning is the result of heat so intense that the oxygen of the air combines chemically with the material that is burned. This usually contains carbon, and the blaze is produced by tiny particles of carbon heated so as to give off a bright light.

From this brightness the word blaze is used to describe any intense or brilliant colour. A field of buttercups is a blaze of gold, and cottage gardens are a blaze of colour. From its sudden appearance and intense heat blaze is also used to describe hot temper which may burst into a blaze of passion. Hunting men speak of a very hot scent as a blazing (blāz' ing, *adj.*) scent. Soldiers blaze away their ammunition when they fire continuously.

M.E. *blase*, A.-S. *blæse* flame, torch; cp. G. *blass* pyle (shining). SYN.: *n.* Conflagration, flare, glare. *v.* Flare, glow.

**blaze** [2] (blāz), *n.* A white mark on the face of an ox or horse; the white mark left on the trunk of a tree by chipping off the bark. *v.t.* To mark (a tree) by cutting the bark; to mark (a path or boundary). (F. *toile*, *coche*; *marquer*.)

When the trappers and pioneer adventurers in America first began to penetrate the great woods, they used to blaze trees as they went along so that they should not lose their way. In a fanciful sense we speak of anyone who is first to mark out a new route in any way, or the first to show others how to do something, as blazing the trail. Sir Samuel Hoare, the Air Minister, who was the first to fly from Croydon to India on the air route, blazed the trail for passengers on that route.

In this sense the word is akin to G. *blass*, pale, blasse paleness, whiteness. O. Norse has the word *blesi* meaning the white spot on the face of a horse. See blaze [1].

**blaze** [3] (blāz), *v.t.* To spread (news). (F. *répandre*, *publier au loin*.)

A person blazes news abroad when he tells

everybody he meets all about the news he has.

M.E. *blasen*, from O. Norse *blāsa* to blow; cp. E. *blare* and *blast*.

**blazer** (blāz' ér), *n.* A coat, often of brilliant ("blazing") colours, worn at cricket or other sports. It usually displays the chosen colours of some club, college, or school.

E. *blaze* and suffix *-er*.

**blazon** (blā' zón), *n.* A coat of arms; the description of or the art of describing coats of arms; fame. *v.t.* To proclaim; to boast of; to decorate with heraldic devices; to describe according to the rules of heraldry. (F. *blason*, *éloge*; *proclamer*, *blasonner*.)

When a knight appeared at a tournament a trumpet was blown. Then, in a loud voice, a herald described the coat of arms on the knight's shield, or his blazon. From this blazonry (blā' zón ri, *n.*) came to mean the art of describing coats of arms so that anyone could make a correct drawing of the arms or blazons, while the description given by the herald was known as the blazonment (blā' zón mēt, *n.*).

Coats of arms were brightly coloured, and so blazon began to be applied to any brilliant show of colours, etc.

In the sense of proclaim, proclamation, the word is a corrupt formation from blaze [3]; in the sense of portraying coats of arms it appears in M.E. as *blasoun*, *blasoun* shield, from F. *blason*. Span. *blasonar* means to boast, blow one's own trumpet, cp. G. *blasen* to blow. SYN.: *v.* Adorn, exhibit, vaunt. ANT.: Conceal, suppress.

**bleaberry** (blē' bér i). This is another spelling of bleaberry. See bleaberry.

**bleach** (blēch), *v.t.* To whiten by exposure to sunlight or by the use of chemicals. *v.i.* To turn white or lose colour. (F. *blanchir*.)

Cotton cloth as it comes from the loom has a brownish tinge. To give it pure whiteness, the cloth is boiled in lime-water, treated with acid, boiled again in soda-ash solution, and washed. It then passes through a bath of bleaching liquid (*n.*), made by dissolving chloride of lime, called bleaching powder (*n.*) in water. This chemical takes all colour out of the cotton.

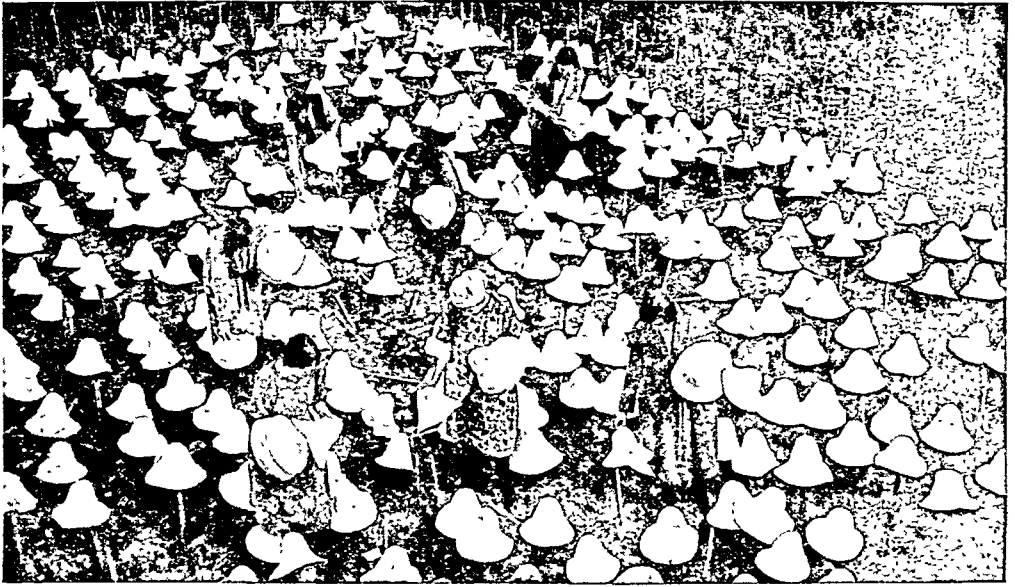
Linen cloth is treated by a bleacher (blēch' ér, *n.*) in the same way in a bleachery (blēch' ér i, *n.*) or place where bleaching is done, and afterwards is exposed to sunlight in a bleach field (*n.*).

M.E. *blechen*, A.-S. *blaccan* to bleach, whiten, from *blāc* shining; cp. G. *bleichen*. See bleach.



Blazer.—An athlete wearing a blazer, a jacket associated with various sports.





Bleach.—Panama hats being bleached by the sun in a bleach field at Luton, the Bedfordshire town which numbers straw-plaiting for hats among its industries.

**bleak** [1] (blēk), *adj.* Cold; cheerless. (F. *froid, sombre.*)

A person buffeted by a bitter east wind, while crossing a treeless moor, might complain of the bleak air or of the bleak appearance of the country. If he came across a cottage on the hillside, he might remark that it was bleakly (blēk' li, *adv.*) situated, or that it looked bleakish (blēk' ish, *adj.*) amid the bleakness (blēk' nēs, *n.*) of the moorland.

M.E. *blac*, O. Norse *bleikr* pale; cp. A.-S. *blāc*, pale, G. *bleich*. SYN.: Desolate, exposed, raw. ANT.: Balmy, cheerful, sheltered.

**bleak** [2] (blēk), *n.* A small silvery-scaled freshwater fish. Its scientific name is *Leuciscus alburnus*. (F. *ablette.*)

So called from its pale colour.

**blear** (blēr), *adj.* Dim; misty. *v.t.* To make dim. (F. *chassieux; rendre chassieux.*)

Colds, old age, and other causes produce a watery film over the eyes, which are then said to be blear. People whose eyes are affected in this way are called blear-eyed (*adj.*); they suffer from blearedness (blērd' nēs, *n.*).

M.E. *blere*; cp. G. *blerr* soreness of the eyes.

**bleat** (blēt), *v.i.* To make a noise like a sheep. *v.t.* To utter like this; to say (something) which has no sensible meaning. *n.* The cry of the sheep; any sound like it. In spring we can hear the lambs bleating. (F. *béler; bêlement.*)

M.E. *bleten*, O.E. *blāetan*. The word is probably imitative; cp. L. *bālāre* to bleat, cry out.

**bleb** (bleb), *n.* A small blister; a small bladder; a bubble in glass. (F. *vésicule, bulle.*)

The word is imitative, referring to the action or sound of bubbling; cp. M.E. *blubber*, E. *blob*.

**bled** (bled). This is the past tense and present participle of bleed. See bleed.

**bleed** (blēd), *v.t.* To draw (blood) from a body or (sap) from a tree; to extort money from. *v.i.* To lose blood, sap, or juice; to become exhausted. (F. *saigner, extorquer de l'argent; saigner.*)

In the sense of blood-letting, bleeding (blēd' ing, *n.*) was at one time a favourite remedy for many forms of illness, and might even be employed when the patient was suffering from loss of blood. It was performed by barbers, whose sign was a red pole with a white bandage wound corkscrew fashion on it. The sign still survives, though blood-letting is no longer performed by barbers, and only in special cases by doctors or surgeons.

The phrase, the heart bleeds, is used to express great pity or sorrow.

M.E. *bleden*, A.-S. *blēdan*, from *blōd* blood; cp. G. *bluten*.

**blemish** (blem' ish), *v.t.* To spoil, to tarnish. *n.* A flaw. (F. *gâter, ternir; défaut.*)

A small defect which spoils the appearance of anything is a blemish. A wrong action is a blemish on the character. Mark Antony, in Shakespeare's "Antony and Cleopatra" (iv, 12), says to Cleopatra:

Vanish, or I shall give thee thy deserving

And blemish Caesar's triumph.

M.E. *blemissen*, *blemishen*, O.F. *blesmir* to injure, soil, Modern F. *blêmir* to grow pale. -ish is from F. -iss- found in verbs like *finir*, pres. p. *finissant*. SYN.: *v.* Damage, impair, injure. *n.* Defect, imperfection, stain. ANT.: *v.* Correct, improve, repair. *n.* Beauty, grace, perfection.

**blench** [1] (blensh), *v.i.* To shrink; to flinch. (F. *reculer*.)

When confronted by so tremendous a convulsion of nature as an earthquake even the stoutest hearts will blench. If a man of very forcible personality stares fixedly at a person of a mild and gentle nature, the eyes of the latter are almost sure to blench before the strong man's gaze.

M.E. *blenchen*, *blenken*, A.-S. *blencan* to deceive, perhaps causal of E. *blink* with the idea of making a person blink and so deceiving him.

**blench** [2] (blench). This is another form of blanch. See blanch.

**blend** (blend), *v.t.* To mix, especially different kinds of the same substance together so as to produce a mixture of a certain quality. *v.i.* To become mingled; to shade off into each other; to harmonize. *n.* A mixture. *p.p.* *blent* (blent). (F. *mêler*, *mélanger*; *se mêler*; *mélange*.)

China tea and Ceylon tea have different tastes. By mixing the two kinds together a blend which combines the two tastes is obtained. Tobacco is also blended. In football we speak of players blending when they play well together.

In the Natural History Museum, London, may be seen some wonderful examples of the manner in which the colours and markings of birds and their eggs blend with the ground. The eggs of some shore birds blend so perfectly with the shingle in which they are laid that it is very difficult to find them. The stripes on a tiger's or zebra's skin blend wonderfully with the places in which these animals live, especially at dusk, when they go to the water to drink.

M.E. *blenden*, of Scand. origin; cp. O. Norse *blanda* to mix, A.-S. *blandan*. SYN.: *v.* Coalesce, fuse, merge *n.* Fusion, mixture AN1.: *v.* Divide, separate, sever.

**blende** (blend), *n.* A natural compound of zinc and sulphur. (F. *blende*.)

It is usually found as dark brown or black crystals, which often resemble those of lead sulphide ores, so that the early finders of the ore thought it to be lead.

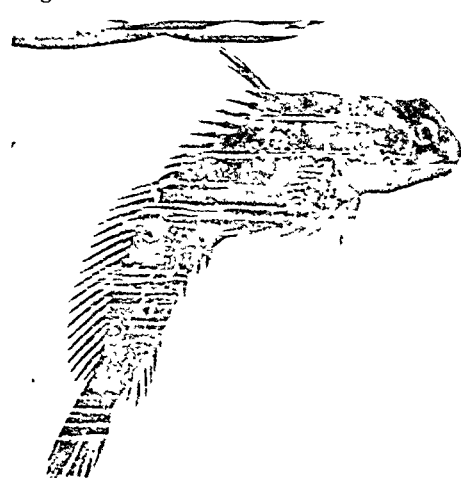
G. *blenden* to make blind, deceive, because although blende resembles galena, it produces no lead



Blenheim.—A Blenheim toy spaniel, named after the palace given by the nation to the first Duke of Marlborough.

**Blenheim** (blen' im), *n.* A kind of spaniel; a kind of apple.

The Blenheim spaniel is so called from Blenheim Palace, in Oxfordshire, where the breed has been preserved ever since the palace was built in the early eighteenth century. The Blenheim apple is also called a Blenheim orange from its deep yellow skin streaked and tinged with red.



Blenny.—One of the commonest British species of blenny is the shanny, which is pictured above.

**blenny** (blen' i), *n.* A genus of spiny-finned fish. (F. *baveuse*.)

The blennies mostly live on or near the sea bed. One of the commonest British species is the shanny or shan (*Blennius pholis*), which may be found lurking under stones when the tide is out. One of the prettiest is the eyed blenny, so called from the large dark eye-spot on its dorsal or back fin, which is so large that the name butterfly fish has been given to this south-coast species.

L. *blennius*, Gr. *blennos* slime, with which this fish's scales are covered.

**blent** (blent). This is the past participle of blend. See blend.

**bless** (bles), *v.t.* To make holy; to consecrate; to make happy; to praise; to ask for God's favour on. (F. *bénir*.)

We say that a clergyman blesses his congregation when he calls upon God to help the worshippers to lead good and happy lives and make them contented. A father blesses his children when he pats them on the head and praises them. If he is surprised at something they have done, he may say, "God bless me!" or "Bless me!" or "Bless the children!"

A person who receives a blessing (bles' ing, *n.*) is said to be blessed (bles' ed; blest, *adj.*) or blest (blest), and if he is contented and happy he is in a state of blessedness (bles' ed nes, *n.*). More or less in fun we say that anyone unmarried is in a state of single blessedness.

To ask a blessing is to say grace before a meal.

Anyone who has no money is said to have not a penny to bless himself with. This phrase is a survival of the times when some coins had on them a cross, which, being a holy sign, was thought to ward off bad luck. A person who is determined not to do anything says, "I'm blest if I'll do it!" and here blest has exactly the opposite of its usual meaning.

M.E. *blessten*, *bletsien*, A.-S. *blētsian*, *blēdsian*, originally meaning to sprinkle with *blōd* - blood. SYN.: Exalt, glorify, praise, worship. ANT.: Abuse, curse, rebuke, scold.

**blether** (*bleth' ēr*), *v.i.* To chatter foolishly. *n.* Continuous silly talking. The word is also spelt *blather* (*blāth' ēr*). (F. *jaser*, *jaserie*.)

O. Norse *blathra* nonsense, cp. L. *blaterare* to talk foolishly.

**blew** (*bloo*). This is the past tense of blow. See blow.

**blewits** (*bloo' its*), *n.* An eatable mushroom with a dark blue top.

F. pl. of *bleuet*, *bluet*, dim. of *bleu* blue.

**blight** (*blit*), *n.* An influence in the atmosphere that affects plants unfavourably; various diseases of plants caused by insects or fungus, such as rust, mildew, and smut; a kind of aphid that damages fruit-trees; a hazy, overcast state of the atmosphere; an unknown evil influence. *v.t.* To affect with blight; to exert an evil influence on; to spoil. (F. *brouissure*, *nielle*; *brouir*, *nieller*, *fêtrir*.)

Rose trees are subject to *blight*, a green fly which covers the buds and ruins them. A man's career is said to be *blighted* when it has been ruined from some cause or other. Such a cause has a *blighting* (*blit' ing*, *adj.*) influence and acts *blightingly* (*blit' ing li adv.*).

The word is possibly from the same root as E. *leach*, *bleak*; if so, it would mean to make white or pale, and so to affect injuriously. SYN.: *n.* Canker, corruption, decay, havoc, rot. *v.* Blast, destroy, mar, wither.

**blimbing** (*blim' bing*), *n.* The acid fruit of a small Indian tree, belonging to the oxalis family. (F. *bilimbi*.)

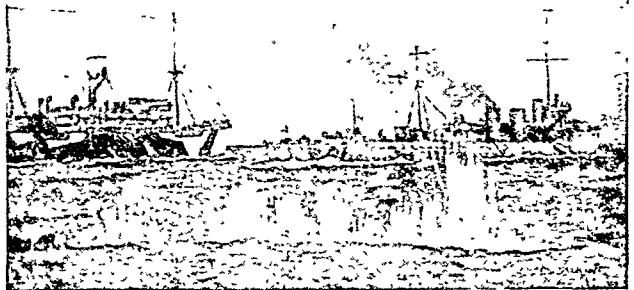
Blimbing is the name given in India and Ceylon to the fruit of *Averrhoa bilimbi*. The yellowish fruit, which is about two and a half inches in length, is pulpy and acid, and is eaten raw, preserved and pickled, as is also the similar fruit of the carambola (*Averrhoa carambola*), which is very juicy and refreshing.

The acid taste is due to the presence of oxalate of potash.

Malay *bilimbing*, Tamil *bilimbi*.

**blimp** (*blimp*), *n.* A small non-rigid airship used during the World War (1914-18) for scouting for submarines.

A blimp may be described as an aeroplane body hung from a gas envelope. Its crew consisted of a pilot and two other men



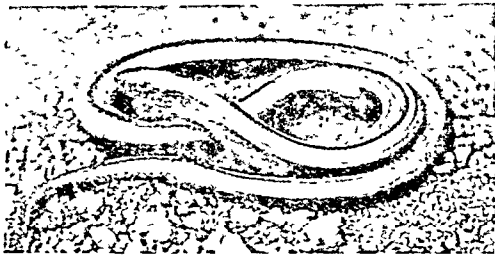
Blimp.—One of the small British airships called blimps which were used during the World War for scouting for submarines

The first airships of this name were constructed early in 1915. In the next year appeared blimps with a boat-shaped car, capable of floating in the water and being towed. In 1917 the Admiralty produced a larger blimp with two engines, which had a speed of fifty miles an hour, and could stay out on patrol for fifty hours on end. The official name was sea-scout.

**blind** (*blind*), *adj.* Without sight; unseeing; dark; unseen. *n.* Blind persons collectively; something which shuts out the light, a pretext or pretence. *v.t.* To take away the sight of; to darken; to deceive. (F. *aveugle*, *obscur*; *aveugle*, *store*; *aveugler*, *obscurcir*.)

A blind person is one who cannot see because his eyes have failed him, or because his eyes are covered with a bandage or a

handkerchief, as in the game of blindman's-buff (*n.*). In this game the one who has his eyes covered with a bandage has to catch and identify one of the others. To bandage the eyes of a person is to blindfold (*blind' fold, v.t.*) him. A man is said to be blind to an argument when he refuses to understand it, or blind to facts when he refuses to draw an obvious conclusion from them. A boy may be blinded by the rays of the sun just as he is going to hit a cricket ball, meaning that he is temporarily not able to see because of the glare.



Blind-worm.—A legless lizard with tiny eyes, the blind-worm is ten to fourteen inches in length.

There is one part of the eye which is not affected by light, and anything passing in front of it is temporarily lost sight of. It is called the blind spot (*n.*), and we say figuratively that someone has a blind spot when we mean that he has a trait in his character which prevents him seeing something he should see, or which makes him easily swayed by the will of others. Thus the blind side (*n.*) of any man is that side of his nature which is most weak. The blind side of a fortification is that side which is most unprotected and so most vulnerable to attack.

A person who is blind suffers from blindness (*blind' nes, n.*), and a person who acts blindly (*blind' h, adv.*) is one who does something without thinking, or without making proper inquiries. We say that a person is as blind as a bat if he is very dense about some matter, or if his eyesight is not good. This phrase, however, is strictly not relevant, for a bat is not blind.

A street which is walled up at one end is said to be blind, or to be a blind alley (*n.*), so we say that an occupation which does not lead to promotion is a blind-alley (*adj.*) occupation. A window or door which has been walled up is called a blind-window (*n.*) or blind-door (*n.*), and a wall with no opening in it is a blind-wall (*n.*). In the post office special men are employed to read badly-addressed letters, and they are called blind-readers (*n.pl.*), or blind-officers (*n.pl.*). The ornamentation of book covers made by pressing hot tools on them is called blind-tooling (*n.*) or blind-blocking (*n.*).

In dressmaking girls often use the blind-stitch (*n.*), a stitch which does not show, and they are said to blind-stitch (*v.t. and i.*)

when they are making such stitches. A blind-worm (*n.*) is another name for the slow worm, but it is neither a worm nor is it blind. It is a legless lizard with very small, lidded eyes. The blind-fish (*n.*) is a fish without eyes, found in many underground streams. A blind ditch (*n.*) is a concealed ditch, and a blind turning (*n.*) is a turning out of a road which is hidden by such obstructions as high hedges or trees. Blind-coal (*n.*) is a coal which burns without any flame, that is, smoulders.

The dark lantern used by a policeman is often called a blind-lantern (*n.*), because the light is kept hidden by a shade until it is wanted. We speak of the blind leading the blind when we mean that the leader is just as ignorant as his follower. The word also occurs in the Rugby football term, "blind side of the scrum," that is, the side on which the fewest outsides or players other than forwards are formed up. It is also found in the cricket term, "blind stroke," which is a wild stroke made with the bat when the eyes are off the ball.

Word common to the Teut. languages; A.-S. *blind*. SYN.: Ignorant, sightless, uninformed, unseeing. ANT.: Clear-sighted, discerning, far-seeing, sensitive.

**blink** (*blink*), *v.t.* To move the eyelids; to twinkle; to glimmer. *v.t.* To shut the eyes to; to evade; to shirk. *n.* A gleam; a twinkle; a glitter. (F. *clignoter*; *ne pas vouloir voir, esquisser*; *clignement*.)

When our eyelids blink at short intervals in order to wash the surfaces of our eyes, we are not conscious of their movement, but



Blinkers.—The blinkers worn by a horse.

a sudden, strong light will make us consciously blink our eyes to shut out the glare. Therefore to blink at something unpleasant means to pretend not to know of it, or to overlook it. We may say that a man has blinked (*blink't, adj.*) eyesight if his eyes are affected with blinking, and we then should call him a blinker (*blink'er, n.*). The leather shields fixed on the

bridle of a nervous horse to screen his eyes from sight of the traffic are called blinkers (*n.pl.*) and so are the goggles that are used to protect the eyes from dust or extreme cold. In the Polar regions the presence of ice-floes is betrayed by the glitter of the sun on them. This glitter is called ice-blink.

Word occurring in various Teut. languages. M.E. *blenken*; cp. Dutch, G. *blinlen*; perhaps related to A.-S. *blīcan* to shine, twinkle. SYN.: Ignore, overlook, wink. ANT.: Note, notice, mark.



**Blizzard.**—One of the worst enemies of explorers in the Polar regions is the blizzard. Captain Scott and his party were overwhelmed by one on their return from the South Pole in 1912.

**blirt** (blért), *n.* A violent burst of tears ; a short burst of rain with gusts of wind. *v.i.* To weep violently. *v.t.* To disfigure (the face) with weeping. (F. *torrent de larmes, rafale ; fondre en larmes.*)

This word is mostly used in the north of England and in Scotland, though sailors sometimes use it when speaking of the weather. A blirty (blért' i, *adj.*) day is a cold, cheerless, and rainy day.

Probably a variant of *blurt*.

**bliss** (blis), *n.* Perfect happiness ; heavenly joy ; heaven. (F. *félicité.*)

Preachers and hymn writers refer to being in heaven or heaven itself as bliss, a state of perfect happiness, or blissfulness (blis' fúl nés, *n.*). A happy, contented man is said to be a blissful (blis' fúl, *adj.*) man, and we may speak of a lovely place as being blissful. We may say a person is blissfully (blis' fúl i, *adv.*) ignorant or blissfully unconscious of any hidden danger that may threaten him.

Thomas Gray uses the word in his verses, "On a Distant Prospect of Eton College" : "Where ignorance is bliss 'tis folly to be wise."

M.E. *blis(se)*, A.-S. *bliths, blis*, from *blithe*, happy, blithe. Etymologically the word has nothing to do with *bless*. *SYN.* : Blessedness, ecstacy, felicity, joy, rapture. *ANT.* : Misery, suffering, torment, woe, wretchedness.

**blister** (blis' tēr), *n.* A swelling on the skin containing watery fluid ; a similar swelling on plants, paint, or other surfaces ; such a swelling produced medically ; a substance used for this purpose. *v.t.* To come out in blisters. *v.t.* To make blisters on. (F. *ampoule, pustule, vésicatoire ; se former en ampoules ; faire venir des ampoules.*)

A burn or scald will raise a blister, and so may rowing until our hands are hardened with practice. When the sun is very hot the paint on a house is apt to become blistery (blis' tēr i, *adj.*), so blinds are often hung in front of doors to prevent the paint from getting a blistered (blis' tērd, *adj.*) surface. To reduce inflammation doctors often raise blisters on the part affected by the application of plasters. Such plasters, often made of mustard, are called blisters or blister-plasters (*n.*).

When iron is being made into steel the gas that is formed causes blisters to rise on the surface of the molten metal. Steel at this stage of manufacture is called blister-steel (*n.*).

M.E. *blester*, perhaps from O.F. *blestre*, O. Norse *blāstr* a swelling, originally a blowing, from *blasa* to blow. See *blast*.

**blithe** (blith), *adj.* Gay ; cheerful ; merry. (F. *gai, joyeux.*)

William Wordsworth addresses the cuckoo "O blithe newcomer", a happy person walks with a blithe step, a lucky person talks blithely (blith' li, *adv.*) of his good fortune.

"Blithesome (blith' sūm, *adj.*) and cumberless" is James Hogg's description of the joyous skylark. There is a blitheness (blith' nés, *n.*) in the air of a perfect spring morning. A merry, laughing party of children is full of blithesomeness (blith' sūm nés, *n.*).

M.E. and A.-S. *blithe* ; common Teut., cp. *bliss*. *SYN.* : Buoyant, cheerful, jocund, joyful, sprightly. *ANT.* : Cheerless, dismal, dispirited, dull, joyless.

**blizzard** (bliz' ārd), *n.* A fierce storm of snow and wind. (F. *tempête de neige.*)

In the Western States of America wild storms of intensely cold wind and fine, blinding snow have frequently overwhelmed wide areas and brought disaster to many men and beasts. Blizzards are one of the worst enemies with which explorers in the Polar regions have to contend. It was a blizzard which overwhelmed gallant Captain Scott and his party of four men as they were returning from the South Pole, having reached it on January 17th, 1912, barely a month after Amundsen.

An imitative word of colloquial American origin, akin to *blow*, *blast*. The suffix *-aid* (*-ait*) is generally used with a bad or intensive meaning (F. *-ard* from G. *hart*, hard).

**bloat** (blôt), *v.t.* To cause to swell; to cure herring partially by salting and smoking; to make vain or conceited. *v.i.* to swell; to grow conceited. (F. *gonfler*; *bouffir*.)

Anything swollen or puffed out may be said to be bloated (blôt'ed, *adj.*), but the word is usually employed figuratively, as when speaking about the condition of a person who eats and drinks too much, and so grows puffy and disagreeably fat. We say that a man who is utterly conceited is bloated with pride, and we say that he is in a condition of bloatedness (blôt'ed nes, *n.*).

Of Scand. origin. M.E. *blout*, *blote* soft, from O. Norse *blautr* soaked, cp. Swed. *blöt* soft, *blöta* to soak. The word was later taken to mean swollen, as if akin to *blow* (blown out).

**bloater** (blô' tēr), *n.* A partially cured herring. (F. *hareng bouffi*.)

After herrings have been partially cured by steeping them in dry salt and by smoking them they are called bloaters.

Originally *bloat herring*, a fish softened by being steeped or soaked in dry salt; from obsolete E. *bloat* soft with moisture, half-dried (*see* *bloat*) and the suffix *-er* expressing relation.

**blob** (blob), *n.* A drop of liquid; a spot of colour; the round base of an iron post; a score of nothing at cricket. (F. *goutte*, *bulle*.)

A batsman who fails to secure any runs is said to have got a blob, or a duck. A person who has thick, swollen lips is called blobber-lipped (blob'er lipt, *adj.*).

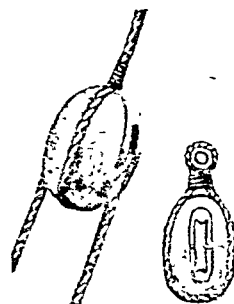
An imitative word like *blab*, *bleb*, *bubble*.

**block** (blok), *n.* A solid mass of wood, stone, or other material; a log of wood; a tree stump; a pulley or system of pulleys mounted in a frame; an obstruction or hindrance of any kind; a hard-hearted person. *v.t.* To obstruct; to enclose; to shut up; to shape; to stamp the cover of a book. (F. *bloc*, *obstacle*; *bloquer*, *fermer*.)

The piece of wood on which traitors laid their necks before being beheaded was called

a block. Hatters use a shape or block on which to mould their hats. A connected group of houses or other buildings is sometimes referred to as a block. In Parliament the notice which members give when they are going to oppose a Bill is called a block, and they are said to block a Bill when they carry this opposition into effect. We some-

times speak of a jam in the traffic as a block, meaning an obstruction, and in cricket the term denotes the place within the popping or batting crease where the batsman grounds his bat. In Association football the term to block is used for the obstruction of an opponent, and in lawn tennis to play the ball by holding the racket



Block.—Front and side views of a block used on board ship.

stationary is to block it.

We say that a boy is a chip of the old block when we mean that in his ways he is very like his father, but if he is foolish or stupid we may call him a blockhead (*n.*), say that he is blockish (blok' ish, *adj.*) in his ways, and that he acts blockishly (blok' ish li, *adv.*), or in a sullen, stupid, or clumsy manner. We might also describe him as suffering from blockishness (blok' ish nes, *n.*).

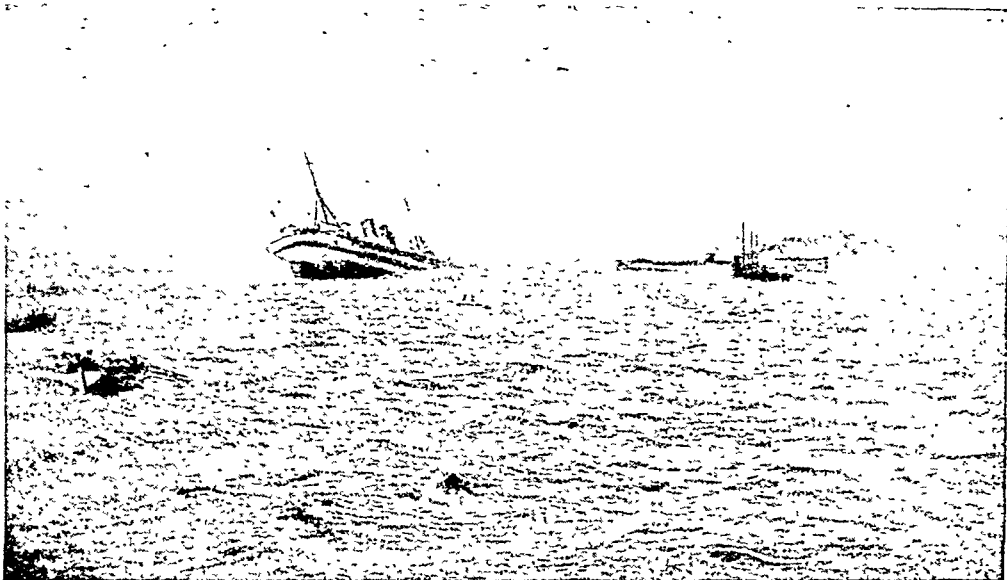
Some railways have a system of signalling known as the block-system (*n.*) by which the line is divided into sections and no two trains are allowed on the same section at the same time. Such a system is in use on the



Block.—A block in the traffic in the Strand, London. Narrow streets and the increasing number of motor vehicles are mainly responsible for this state of things.

Underground Railway in London, and the signal for a train to stop, because the next section is not clear, is a block-signal (*n.*).

The piece of hard wood or metal on which figures are engraved for printing from is known as a block, and a book printed from wooden blocks on which the letters or pictures have been cut in relief is a block-book (*n.*).



Blockade.—In her attempt to blockade Britain during the World War, Germany resorted to the most desperate measures, including the use of submarines and floating mines. The hospital ship "Anglia" was sunk by one of the latter in the English Channel in 1915. Our photograph shows the vessel just before she went down.

The earliest printed books were of this type. Printing from engraved wooden blocks is called block-printing (*n.*), while block-letters (*n.pl.*) are either square capital letters or large wood type used in printing.

The piece of head-shaped wood on which barbers prepare and mount wigs is called a barber's-block (*n.*), and the endless driving chain on a bicycle is called a block-chain (*n.*). Tin cast in the form of bricks or ingots is known as block-tin (*n.*).

During the South African War (1899-1902) small forts made of corrugated iron were erected in parts of South Africa where it was necessary to protect railways, bridges, and other objects of military importance, against attack by the Boers. Such fortifications, also built of wood or stone, are called blockhouses (*n.pl.*). In the days when North America was being opened up by pioneers, blockhouses were much in use as a protection against the Indians.

To block out any work is to mark or map it out roughly. An artist is said to block in a picture when he sketches it out roughly, sketching in the big subjects of the picture before he begins to draw the details. An architect often makes a rough sketch of the outlines of buildings showing their relative positions without any detail, and this is called a block-plan (*n.*). A blocking-course (*n.*) is a course of heavy stone which a builder erects on the back of a cornice or projecting slab of masonry, to keep it from toppling over.

M.E. *blok*, O.F. *bloc*, from a Teut. source; cp. G. *block*. The *v.* from F. *bloquer* from *bloc*. SYN.: *n.* Lump, mass. *v.* Barricade, obstruct, stop. ANT.: *v.* Aid, assist, free, open.

**blockade** (blok ād'), *n.* The siege of a place by land or sea to compel it to surrender through starvation, or to prevent outside communication. *v.t.* To surround a place with ships or troops; to obstruct. (F. *blocus*; *bloquer*.)

In February, 1915, during the World War (1914-18), Germany declared a blockade of Great Britain, and to make it as effective as possible, German submarines were given orders to sink at sight practically all merchant vessels encountered on the high seas. Great Britain's determination to blockade Germany was declared the following month.

A blockade-runner (*n.*) is a vessel which attempts to enter a port which is being blockaded, and a paper blockade is a blockade which has been declared, but which is not effective in practice. When a man is obstructed or prevented from doing anything he desires we may say that he is blocked, or blocked in his desires.

From *block* and suffix *-ade*, denoting action (L. *-āta*, fem. of p.p. *-ātus*, through F.

**block-ship** (blok' ship), *n.* A ship sunk in the entrance of a harbour or port, to prevent the passage of hostile ships. (F. *gardecôte*.)

On April 23rd, 1918 (St. George's Day) the British Navy conducted an operation which will for ever rank as one of its most gallant feats. The Germans had made the inland harbour of Bruges, in Belgium, a base for their submarines. Bruges is connected with the North Sea by two canals, one running west of Ostend, and the other north-west to Zeebrugge. Issuing from these two ports, German craft had delivered so many

attacks on our ships and coasts that the Admiralty decided to end the attacks, if possible, by blocking the sea-entrances to the canals.

A plan was worked out very carefully and in great secrecy. Certain old warships, filled with concrete, were to be used as block-ships—the "Thetis," "Intrepid," and "Iphigenia" at Zeebrugge, and the "Brilliant" and "Sirius" at Ostend. To divert the enemy's attention, a special attack was to be made on the Mole at Zeebrugge, and a general bombardment to be carried out by guns and aeroplanes.

The assault on the Mole was to be entrusted to H.M.S. "Vindictive," upon which was built a high false deck to enable the blue-jackets and marines to land on the Mole. Then came the question of the date when the attack was to be launched. It had to be at high water, and preferably late on a moonless night. Discovering that conditions were favourable on St. George's Day, that day was selected.

The night of the 22nd-23rd April was cloudy, and the "Vindictive," towing two small Mersey ferry-boats, the "Iris" and the "Daffodil," reached the Zeebrugge Mole and the landing parties scrambled ashore and began a fierce conflict with the surprised enemy. Meanwhile a submarine, the "C3," laden with high explosive, worked her way under the viaduct connecting the Mole with the land. Her commander and crew, after lighting a time-fuse attached to the explosive, got away in a small motor-boat. The explosion which followed shattered the viaduct, and thus prevented reinforcements being rushed from the land.

The three block-ships, under cover of a dense smoke-screen, made for the canal entrance, and the "Iphigenia" and "Intrepid" were sunk where planned, but the "Thetis," unfortunately, ran aground near the western pier-head. Then the Zeebrugge expedition, having accomplished its purpose, set off for home. Of the gallant attackers one hundred and eighty-eight were killed or mortally wounded, three hundred and eighty-four were wounded, and sixteen were missing.

At Ostend things did not go quite so well, for the block-ships grounded and had to be blown up outside the harbour. However, on the night of May 9th, H.M.S. "Vindictive," now converted into a block-ship herself, was taken in by Commander A. E. Godsal and sunk in the harbour entrance with comparatively small loss of life. Thus, though Zeebrugge and Ostend had not been completely sealed, they ceased to be sally-ports for torpedo craft, and Bruges ceased to have any value as a submarine base.

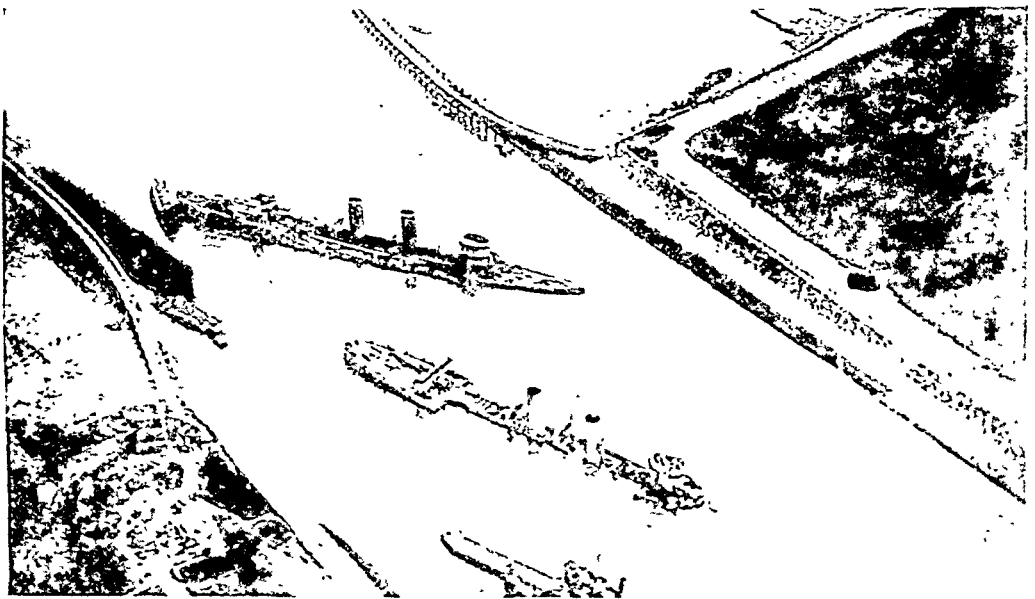
#### E block and ship

**blond** (blond), *adj.* Having fair hair and complexion; light in colour. *n.* One who has fair hair and complexion. Another form is **blonde** (blond). (*F. blond, fem. blonde.*)

The chief of the blond races is the Nordic, to which many North Europeans belong. The feminine form blonde is generally used when speaking of a woman.

A kind of lace, at first made of raw silk, is called **blonde lace** (*n.*).

*F* from *LL blondus*, Ital *biondo*, Span. *blondo*, perhaps connected with *A-S. blandan, blondan* to mix, blend; cp. *blanden-jeax* grey-haired, with hair of mixed colour.



Block-ship.—The two block-ships "Iphigenia" and "Intrepid" sunk in the entrance channel at Zeebrugge on St. George's Day, April 23rd, 1918, to prevent the Belgian port from being used by German destroyers and submarines.



# THE BLOOD BY WHICH WE LIVE

*The Wonderful Fluid that Supplies Food to every Part of the Body*

**blood** (blūd), *n.* The red fluid which circulates through the heart, arteries, and veins of man and the higher animals, supplying nourishment to all parts of the body; a similar fluid in the lower animals; sap; juice, especially if red; lineage; descent; kinship; high birth; slaughter; guilt occasioned by murder; mettle; a man of fashion. *v.t.* To stain with blood, to draw blood from; to afford a first practical experience. (*F. sang, parenté; saigner, ensanglantier.*)

Human blood is bright red in the arteries and bluish-red in the veins. Its red colour is due to tiny cells, called corpuscles, of which there are tens of thousands of millions in a cubic inch. The blood also contains millions of white cells, which keep it clean and attack germs, as well as salts of iron, sodium, calcium, and other metals.

At one time blood and the emotions were thought to influence each other, and ill-feeling, or what we call bad blood, between people was ascribed to a bad state of the blood. As anger was supposed to heat the blood, to commit a violent act, such as a murder, in cold blood now means to do it deliberately and without passion. Actually, the heat of healthy blood varies hardly at all. Blood-heat (*n.*), the average heat of blood in our bodies, means a temperature of about ninety-eight degrees Fahrenheit.

By a blood-and-thunder story or play is meant one full of very sensational happenings. An insult or trial is said to be more than flesh and blood can stand when it taxes human nature almost beyond endurance.

When we speak of a person as being of the blood we mean that he or she is of royal blood, such as the Prince of Wales and Princess Mary.

Shakespeare uses the expression blood-boltered (*adj.*) in the sense of clotted with blood, of the ghost of Banquo.

Anything obtained at the cost of life is blood-bought (*adj.*). A brother by both parents is a blood-brother (*n.*). Among some races a similar term is used of one who has been adopted into the tribe after an actual ceremonial exchange of a little blood.

A deadly quarrel between families which

leads each into killing members of the other is called a blood feud (*n.*). Blood feuds were once common in some parts of the United States, as well as in Corsica, Sicily, and Sardinia, where it was regarded as a point of honour to avenge insults.

Intense cold causes a frost-bitten or blood-frozen (*adj.*) condition of limbs, the circulation of the blood through them being stopped. One who sheds the blood of another purposely incurs blood-guilt (*n.*) or blood-guiltiness (*n.*), and becomes blood-guilty (*n.*).

A horse coming from a good and pure stock, and having a pedigree or record of descent, is a blood-horse (*n.*). The blood-hound (*n.*) gets its name from the fact that its keen scent makes it useful for tracking criminals.

A victory gained without fighting or loss of life is bloodless (blūd' lēs, *adj.*) and won bloodlessly (blūd' lēs li, *adv.*).

Not so very many years ago doctors had great faith in blood-letting (*n.*), or the drawing off of blood, as a cure for many complaints, including even those due to scarcity or poorness of blood. It is now

used only in special cases.

By blood-money (*n.*) is meant either money paid in some countries by the slayer to the nearest relative of the person slain, or money gained at the cost of another person's life such as the thirty pieces of silver paid to Judas Iscariot for betraying Christ.

An orange with dark red streaks in its pulp is called a blood orange (*n.*).

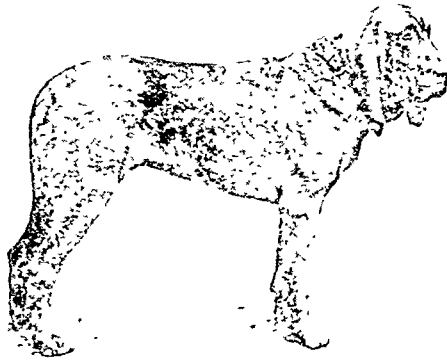
The entry of poisonous matter into the blood causes a condition named blood-poisoning (*n.*), which leads to festering and severe inflammation.

A sunset sky, such as Turner delighted to paint, may be blood-red (*adj.*).

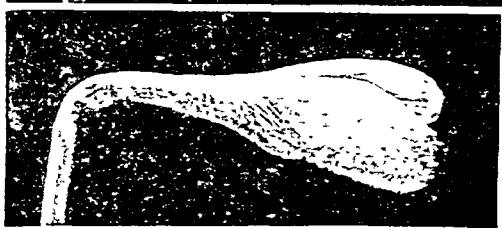
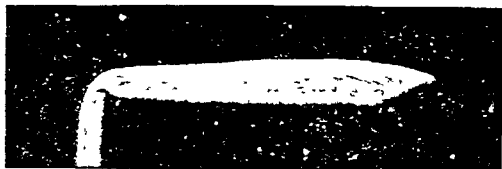
A relation by birth is a blood-relation (*n.*), as opposed to a relation by marriage or adoption.

The shedding of human blood is bloodshed (*n.*). Inflammation of the eyes causes the whites of the eyes to become tinged with blood, in which state they are said to be bloodshot (*adj.*).

A horse suffering from blood-spavin (*n.*) has the veins inside its hocks much swollen by blood.



Blood-hound.—The blood-hound is so named because its keen sense of smell makes it useful for tracking people.



Bloom. The gradual growth of the bloom of a daffodil from the tiny bud to the fully developed flower.

Blood produces a mark called a bloodstain (*n.*) on any surface upon which it falls. The place is then bloodstained (*adj.*). A deed is bloodstained if disgraced by the shedding of blood.

A form of chalcedony, called bloodstone (*n.*), was at one time much used for rings and brooches. It is a dark green stone, spotted with red, and is found in Iceland, the Hebrides, India, and Australia. Its name comes from the old belief that it was able to check bleeding.

The leech is a good example of a blood-sucker (*n.*), or creature which lives by sucking the blood of other animals. The word is used also of one who wrings money out of others.

The weasel is a bloodthirsty (*adj.*) animal, for it drinks the blood of its victims greedily. A fox shows great bloodthirstiness (*n.*), in killing all the birds of any poultry-run which it manages to enter.

Each of the channels through which the blood circulates in an animal's body is a blood-vessel (*n.*).

In stagnant water may sometimes be seen a tiny red wriggling creature, called a blood-worm (*n.*), which, at a later stage of its life, turns into a gnat.

The bloodwort (*n.*) is a variety of the dock plant, and is named after the red, vein-like markings in its leaves. It was at one time thought to be able to staunch a flow of blood.

An act attended by bloodshed, fighting in which there is great loss of life, or anything stained or wet with blood is bloody (*blūd' i, adj.*). The bloodiness (*blūd' i nēs, n.*) of a battle is measured by the loss of life.

A baronet of England or Ireland has a bloody hand (*n.*)—the red hand of Ulster—on his coat of arms.

Common Teut. word. M.E. *blōd*, A.-S. *blōd*; cp. G. *blut*.

**bloom** [1] (*bloom*), *n.* A flower; the waxy dust on ripe plums; the colour on healthy cheeks; flush; perfection. *v.i.* To flower; to be vigorous. (F. *fleur, duvet; fleurir.*)

When a plant or tree has its flowers out it is in bloom, and if the flowers are many it is bloomy (*bloom' i, adj.*) or full of bloom. A plant that produces a profusion of flowers is a good bloomer (*bloom' ēr, n.*), and one that has no flowers is bloomless (*bloom' lēs, adj.*).

A person or industry in a healthy or prosperous condition is blooming (*bloom' ing, adj.*), or getting on bloomingly (*bloom' ing li, adv.*).

Of Scand. origin; O. Norse *blōm(i)* flower; cp. A.-S. *blōcan* to blow, bloom, G. *blume*. SYN.: *n.* Blossom, flour, flush. *v.* Blossom, sprout.

**bloom** [2] (*bloom*), *n.* A thick bar beaten by a steam hammer out of a ball of puddled iron. *v.t.* To perform this process. (F. *loupe, bloom.*)

Puddled iron is made by working molten pig iron about with a rod in a furnace and separating it from impurities. The ball formed on the rod is spongy, and has some slag in it. This is forced out by hammering in a bloomery (bloom'ér i, *n.*), a place fitted with the necessary machines. The bloom formed is pure iron, fit for rolling into shape.

A.-S. *blōma* lump of metal, ball.

**blossom** (blos'òm), *n.* A flower, especially one that is followed by fruit; the flowers of a tree collectively. *v.i.* To flower; to be fruitful; to promise well; to fulfil promise. (*F. fleur; fleurir.*)

While offering one of the loveliest sights in nature the true end of blossom is to attract insects. These fly from flower to flower and carry the pollen without which no fruit or seed can be produced.

Of a person who shows promise we say he is blossoming out. Plants with no flowers are blossomless (blos'òm lès, *adj.*); those with very many are called, especially by poets, **blossomy** (blos'òm i, *adj.*).

M.E. *blos(t)me*, A.-S. *blōs(t)ma*, from A.-S. *blōwan* to blow. *SYN.*: *n.* Bloom, inflorescence. *v.* Bloom, develop.

**blot** (blot), *n.* A spot, especially of ink; a black or dark patch; a blemish; a disgrace; a disgraceful deed; a disgraceful charge. *v.t.* To deface by making blots; to efface; to disfigure; to disgrace; to dry by means of blotting-paper. *v.i.* To produce blots; to become blotted. (*F. tache, pâté; tacher, sécher, boire.*)

From the disfigurement that a blot causes on a clean page the word came to be used for any blemish or unsightliness. "A lie," wrote the author of Ecclesiasticus (xx, 24), "is a foul blot in a man." King David's treachery to Uriah was a blot on his fair fame. Alexander Pope, writing on the art of poetry, speaks of "the last, the greatest art, the art to blot", that is, knowing what to leave out. In total eclipses the moon blots out the sun.

A comparatively modern use of the verb is to dry by means of blotting-paper (*n.*). Although blotting-paper has been found in old books of accounts dating back as far as 1465, till the latter part of the nineteenth century the usual method of drying ink was to sprinkle sand upon it.

A blotter (blot'ér, *n.*) or blotting pad (*n.*) consists of several sheets of blotting-paper fastened together, the outermost of which can be removed when used up. The paper is sometimes stretched over a curved wooden block and provided with a handle for easier use.

Possibly O.F. *bloute, blotte, bloche* clod of earth, clot, anything that would stain or disfigure; *blotter* to stain. *SYN.*: *v.* Blur, pollute, smear, spot, tarnish.

**blotch** (bloch), *n.* An eruption on the skin; a disfiguring spot or mark; a patch; a disease of dogs. *v.t.* To mark with blotches. (*F. pustule; couvrir de pustules.*)

This word is especially used of flaws in the complexion, but we can also speak, for instance, of a leaf being covered with unsightly blotches.

Anything that is marked with blotches can be described as blotched (blocht, *adj.*) or blotchy (bloch' i, *adj.*).

Probably an enlarged form of *blot*, and connected with the idea of *patch* and *botch*.

**blouse** (blouz), *n.* A loose bodice, fastened at the waist, worn by girls and women; a loose, light upper garment, like a smock, worn by French workmen; any garment resembling this. (*F. blouse.*)



Blow.—A typical negro trumpeter of the Sahara, blowing a musical instrument.

**blow** [1] (blō), *v.i.* To move (of the wind); to send air more or less violently from the mouth; to expel air, or water, or steam; to give out musical sounds; to pant. *v.t.* To direct a current of air upon or through; to sound (a wind instrument); to put out of breath; to puff out; to taint by laying eggs in. *n.* A strong wind; a breath of pure air; the act of expelling air, water, etc.; the egg of a meat-fly; the process of converting a charge of iron into steel by the Bessemer process. *p.t.* blew (bloo), *p.p.* blown (blōn). (*F. souffler, sonner; coup de vent.*)

Anyone who is in favour of a thing one minute and against it the next is said to blow hot and cold.

A boiler has to blow off steam through a safety-valve when the pressure reaches a certain point. To blow out a candle is to extinguish the flame by blowing, whereas to blow out a toy balloon is to expand it by blowing air into it. A storm blows over when it dies down. An engineer blows up a rock with explosive, which may blow up of itself if handled carelessly.

A wind blows up as it rises, while a master blows up or scolds a servant for misconduct. A **blow-line** (*n.*) is a line used by anglers which allows the bait to be blown over the face of the water by the wind.

A **blower** (*blō' ér, n.*) is a device for causing a strong current of air, either by forcing or, as in a locomotive's blower, by suction. Windy weather is **blowy** (*blō' i, adj.*) weather.

M.E. *blowen*, A.-S. *blāwan*; cp. G. *blühen*, L. *flāre*.

**blow** [2] (*blō*), *v.i.* To burst into blossom; to bloom; to flourish; to reach perfection. *n.* The state, manner, or time of blossoming; a display. (F. *s'épanouir*, *fleurir*; *épanouissement*.)

A.-S. *blōwan*; cp. G. *blühen*, also L. *flōs* flower, *flōrere* to bloom. See bloom [1], blossom.

**blow** [3] (*blō*), *n.* A stroke made with or received from a weapon, a fist, or other instrument; a shock; an unexpected and serious calamity. (F. *coup*; *calamité imprévue*.)

A thing is done *à a blow* when it is carried out in a single effort. To come to blows is to fight.

Late M.E. *blaw*, of unknown origin. SYN: Cuff, knock, rap, thump.

**blow-ball** (*blō' bawl*), *n.* The downy seed-head of the dandelion and similar plants. (F. *fleur de dent-de-lion*.)

The blow-ball is probably so-called from the old custom of girls blowing on it and crying: "He loves me—he loves me not," alternately with each blow, until all the downy head is blown away, the last words to be used indicating whether she is loved or not.

E. *blow* and *ball*.

**blow-fly** (*blō' flī*), *n.* Another name for the common blue-bottle. (F. *mouche à viande*.)

The blow-fly lays its eggs on meat and is sometimes, therefore, called the meat-fly. It is also a serious pest to sheep. In a year in New South Wales it has done as much as two million pounds' worth of damage.

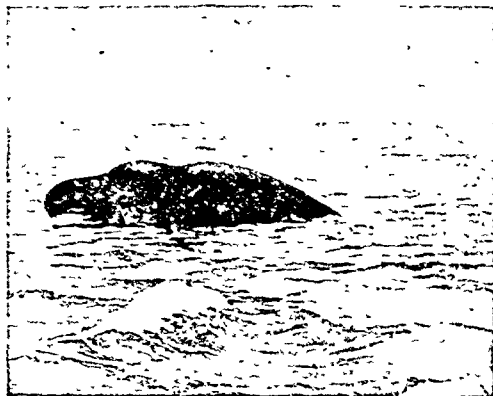
Its ravages are combated in a curious way. From time to time thousands of blow-fly chrysalises are sent out to the great sheep-raising countries. These chrysalises have been treated by skilled entomologists, and from them emerge not blow-flies but insects that prey upon the blow-fly and that at once attack their natural enemy.

E. *blow* (the sense of depositing eggs) and *fly*.

**blow-hole** (*blō' hōl*), *n.* A hole or opening to allow smoke, air, or other vapour to escape; an air-hole in a mass of metal, glass, or other material; the nostril of a whale. (F. *soufflure*, *évent*.)

Whales, though they live in the sea, must come up to the surface to breathe. When they do they often send up fountains of spray through their nostrils or blow-holes, as they expel the foul air and inhale fresh.

E. *blow* and *hole*.



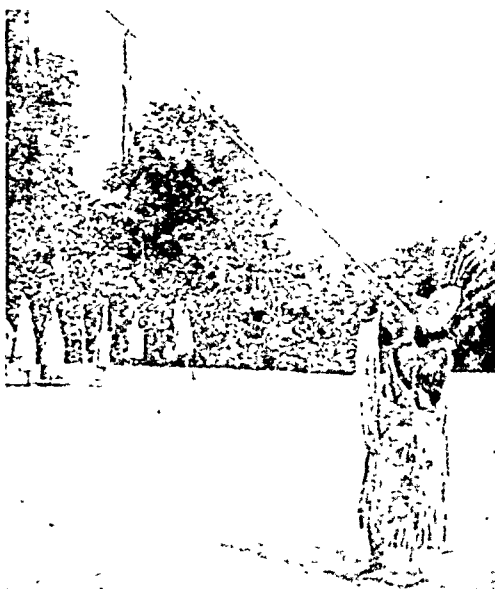
**Blow-hole.**—The nostrils of the whale are called blow-holes, and it is through them that they breathe and send up fountains of spray.

**blowing-engine** (*blō' ing en' jin*), *n.* An engine used for driving blowers to supply air under pressure to blast-furnaces, mines, stokeholds, etc. (F. *machine soufflante*.)

For blast-furnaces large gas-engines, burning the waste gas from the furnaces themselves, are employed. These are usually coupled direct to large air-pumps, which will deliver up to fifty thousand cubic feet of air a minute at a pressure of two to ten pounds per square inch. To drive fan-blowers steam turbines may be preferred.

E. *blowing* (*adj.*) and *engine*.

**blow-pipe** (*blō' pīp*), *n.* A tube for sending a current of air into a flame in order to concentrate the heat upon a certain spot; a tube used by savages for shooting arrows and other missiles; the tube through which the bag of the bag-pipe is filled with air. (F. *chalumeau*.)



**Blow-pipe.**—The blow-pipe used in the mash dance of the Kobena Indians of Colombia.

House-painters use a blow-pipe for burning off the old paint before repainting. Blow-pipes are also used for soldering and welding metal, and special kinds by chemists and glass-blowers.

The blow-pipe is a popular weapon among the Indians of South America and the Dyaks of Borneo, and also in the Philippine Islands. It acts in the same way as a pea-shooter.

The tubes vary much in length—from three to four feet in the Philippines to as much as fifteen feet in South America—and so do the arrows, which range from three inches up to eighteen. Usually the arrows are poisoned. A South American Indian can generally be depended upon to hit his mark at a distance of fifty or sixty yards.

E. *blow* and *pipe*.

**blubber** (blüb'ér), *n.* The fat of whales and various other big sea animals; a kind of jelly-fish; weeping. *adj.* Swollen. *v.i.* To weep uncontrollably. *v.t.* To disfigure with tears; to utter while weeping. (F. *graisse de baleine, méduse; gonflé; pleurer comme un veau; gonfler à force de pleurer.*)

Train-oil is obtained from blubber. A boy weeping in a corner is having a blubber, but by a blubber a sailor means a sea-nettle, a species of jelly-fish. A blubber face is one with swollen eyes and cheeks, and pouting lips.

A person weeping in a noisy way, and so as to swell and disfigure the face, is said to blubber, or he might be said to blubber his face. To tell a tale with sobs and tears is to blubber it out.

M.E. *blober* a bubble; a word imitating a bubbling sound; cp. *bleb, blob*.

**blucher** (bloo'kér; bloo'cher), *n.* A kind of strong shoe. (F. *soulier-botte.*)

This heavy leather high shoe, or half-boot, is named after Field-Marshal von Blücher, the famous Prussian soldier, who at a critical moment reinforced Wellington at the battle of Waterloo, and completed the overthrow of Napoleon.

**bludgeon** (blüj'ôn), *n.* A short, stout club or stick. *v.t.* To strike with this. (F. *gourdin; gourdiner.*)

Sometimes the end of a bludgeon is loaded with some heavy substance like lead, so as to make a blow with it more dangerous.

A late word of unknown origin.

**blue** (bloo), *adj.* Of the colour of the deep sea, or the unclouded sky; leaden-coloured; depressed; relating to certain political parties. *n.* The colour blue; the sea; the sky; a blue pigment; a blue powder used in washing clothes, etc.; the badge of those who represent certain universities and schools in certain athletic and other contests; such a representative; the badge of certain political parties; a member of such a political party; the second ring from the middle of the target in archery; a species of butterfly. *v.t.* To make blue; to heat metal to make it blue. (F. *bleu; bleuir.*)

A thing that is rather blue in colour is bluish (bloo'ish, *adj.*) or bluey (bloo'i, *adj.*), it stands out bluishly (bloo'ishli, *adv.*) among things of other colours, and is known by its bluishness (bloo'ishnés, *n.*), which is not so blue as blueness (bloo'nés, *n.*). Blue-black (*n.*) is either blue so dark that it is almost black, or else bluish black.

The word blue can be applied to various things that are not actually blue, and can be used either alone or with other words to express various meanings. For instance, we speak of the blue smoke from a chimney and of the blue distance, that is, the farthest distance, of a landscape. A thing that happens once in a blue moon (*n.*) is a thing that happens very seldom. Our veins show blue

through our skins, especially when the skin is very delicate, and so blue blood (*n.*) has come to mean high or noble birth, and blue-blooded (*adj.*) of good family.

When we are very cold, or when we have had a knock or a blow our skin may become leaden-coloured. This, too, we call blue. And so, when we are suffering from any kind of disturbance—when, for example, we are in low spirits and generally miserable, or anxious or dismayed—we say we feel blue, or look blue, or have got the blues, or the blue devils (*n.pl.*).

When a candle burns blue, that is, with a very pale flame with no red in it, superstitious



Bluejacket.—A bluejacket on sentry-go.

people think that there will be a death, or that there are ghosts or evil spirits about; or even that the Devil is at hand. Perhaps this is because brimstone, which is associated with the flames of the underworld, always burns with a blue flame.

The blue that is used for making linen and cotton things a good colour when washed is made of bicarbonate of soda and glucose with ultramarine or indigo. Many a boy or girl, and, for that matter, many a grown-up, too, has run into the wash-house after being stung by a wasp, for a blue-bag (*n.*) is a remedy for wasp-stings.

From the unwavering blue colour of the sky, blue is regarded as a colour which betokens constancy, and so has been chosen as

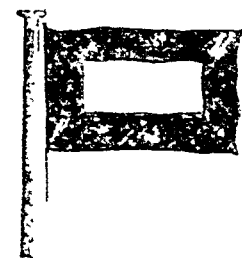
the badge of various political parties. The term true blue also is often used in the sense of genuine, faithful, staunch, and the like. Thus the Covenanters, those unflinching upholders of Presbyterianism, adopted blue for their colour as opposed to the red of the Royalists, and were described as true blue, as also have been staunch champions of Tory principles. The blue triangle was adopted as the emblem of the Young Women's Christian Association to distinguish it from the red triangle of the Young Men's Christian Association.

In the seventeenth century the mighty fleet of Britain was divided into three squadrons, known as the Red, the White, and the Blue. Later these terms were used simply to show the seniority of flag officers. During the War of the Austrian Succession (1741-48), when a captain was promoted for active service, he was said to have been made Rear-Admiral of the Blue. At one period of his career Nelson was Rear-Admiral of the Blue; at Trafalgar he was Vice-Admiral of the White. Bluejacket (*n.*) was applied to a man in the Navy from the colour of his jacket, and it is used especially for a seaman as distinct from a marine. Because of their blue uniform the Royal Horse Guards are known as the Blues. In the seventeenth century this famous regiment was called the Oxford Blues because their colonel was the Earl of Oxford.

The open sea is often called blue water (*n.*), and the people in Britain who were in favour of having a very strong navy with the army as a second line of defence were called the blue-water school (*n.*). Another nautical term containing the word blue is the Blue

Peter (*n.*). This is the name of the blue flag with a white square in the middle which is run up just before a ship leaves port.

A blue is the term used for a man who, by his prowess at certain sports or games, is entitled to wear either the light blue cap and blazer of Cambridge University, or the dark blue of Oxford. In some sports, such as



Blue Peter.—The flag which a ship flies just before leaving port.

golf and polo, only half-blues are given, in others full-blues. A light-blue is one who represents his university or school in certain sports or games at either Cambridge or Eton. At Oxford and Harrow such a one is called a dark-blue. An old blue is a man who has rowed for either of these universities, or has played in some contest between them.

For blue-bell, blue-bird and other words of which blue is the first part, *see below*.

M.E. *blau*, from F. *bleu*, from a Teut. source; cp. G. *blau*, also L. *flav-us* yellow.

**bluebell** (bloo' bel), *n.* The wild hyacinth; the harebell. (F. *jacinthe des bois, campanule*.)

The wild hyacinth, that lovely flower which paints our woods in spring with a haze of blue, is the bluebell of England. It belongs to the order Liliaceae, and is a perennial plant. Its scientific name is *Scilla nutans*. The dainty little harebell of our grassy downs is the bluebell of Scotland, and is known to botanists as *Campanula rotundifolia*.

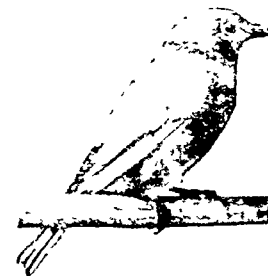


Bluebell. — The wild hyacinth or bluebell.

E. *blue* and *bell* (from the shape of the flowers).

**blue-bird** (bloo' bērd), *n.* A small North American bird.

This pretty bird, with its sky-blue coat and rich brown breast and throat, is a cousin of the English thrush. The scientific name is *Sialia sialis*. It is as friendly as the robin red-breast, and will build quite close to houses. It is larger than the robin, which it resembles in some of its habits.



Blue-bird. — The North American cousin of the thrush, the blue-bird.

In Maurice Maeterlinck's exquisite fairy play of this name the "blue-bird" which the boy and girl of the story set out to find is really happiness.

E. *blue* and *bird*.

**blue-bonnet** (bloo bon' ēt), *n.* A flat blue cap; one who wears it; the cornflower and other flowers. (F. *bonnet bleu, bluet*.)

In olden days nearly every man in Scotland wore a blue woollen cap, or bonnet, as a cap is called in Scotland, and so blue-bonnet came to be a name for a Scottish peasant and also for a Scottish soldier. In Scotland various flowers with round blue heads are called blue-bonnets, such as scabious and cornflowers.

E. *blue* and *bonnet*.

**blue-book** (bloo' buk), *n.* An official report issued by order of the British government. (F. *livre bleu*.)

The name arose from the fact that most of the British parliamentary and consular reports have blue covers. Many other British official documents besides those mentioned are known as blue-books. Foreign Office documents, however, are called white papers. The government publications of other countries usually have covers of a particular colour. Those of France, for instance,

are bound in yellow, those of Belgium in grey, and those of Spain in red.

*E. blue and book.*

**blue-bottle** (bloo' botl), *n.* The blow-fly or meat-fly; a common field flower. (*F. mouche bleue à viande, bluet.*)

This nasty insect is a large blue-bodied cousin of the ordinary house-fly. When its loud persistent buzzing is heard housewives rejoice that the meat in the larder is carefully covered up, for the creature, if it has a chance, will lay its eggs in the meat. The scientific name is *Calliphora erythrocephala*.

Sometimes the name is given to the blue cornflower of our fields and gardens, known to botanists as *Centaurea cyanus*, as well as to other blue flowers.

The insect is so called from the colour of its abdomen, the flower from having bottle-shaped rays.

**blue-cap** (bloo' kăp), *n.* A Scottish peasant or soldier; a titmouse; the blue cornflower; a young salmon. (*F. bonnet bleu, mėsange, bluet, saumoneau.*)

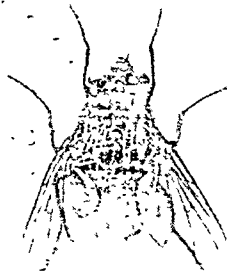
This name is used in the same way as blue-bonnet for Scots-men generally, and especially for a peasant or soldier of the olden days. It recalls the time when blue was a favourite colour for clothes in Scotland. In the world of birds the name is especially applied to that charming little acrobat of our gardens, the blue tit, because its head is blue on top. The scientific name is *Parus coeruleus*.

At different stages in the life of a salmon the fish bears different names. When it reaches what is known as the grilse stage it is called by some people a blue-cap, because it then has a blue spot on its head.

*E. blue and cap.*

**blue-coat** (bloo' kōt), *n.* A pensioner; a blue-coat school boy. (*F. habit bleu.*)

In olden days servants and tradespeople, charity-school boys, almoners, and pensioners generally all wore blue clothes, and so the name blue-coat came to be applied to any of them. To-day the name survives in the blue-coat schools, of which the best-known is Christ's Hospital, founded by Edward VI.



Blue-bottle.—It gets its name from the colour of its abdomen.



Blue-coat boy.—A blue-coat boy of Christ's Hospital.

At first it was housed in the old monastery of Grey Friars, in Newgate Street, London. It was moved to Horsham, Sussex, in 1902.

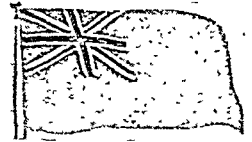
These schools were founded as charity schools, and so the scholars wore the characteristic blue dress. Nowadays, blue-coat boys (*n. pl.*) wear the original long blue coat of the old almoners, knee breeches, and bright yellow stockings. Until about the year 1850 they wore blue caps; since then they have worn no covering on their heads.

*E. blue and coat.*

**blue ensign** (bloo en' sīn), *n.* A blue flag with the Union Jack in the upper corner next the staff. (*F. enseigne bleu.*)

This flag is flown by ships of the British Royal Naval Reserve and certain authorized vessels of the British Mercantile marine. A few yacht clubs, also, are allowed to fly this flag as a special privilege. See ensign.

*E. blue and ensign.*



Blue ensign.—A flag flown by certain British merchant and other vessels.

**blue-fish** (bloo' fish), *n.* A fish mostly found off the Atlantic coast of North America. (*F. poisson bleu.*)

The blue-fish is a saltwater fish resembling the mackerel, but considerably larger. It is known by a number of popular names, among them being skip-jack, blue snapper, green-fish, saltwater tailor, and horse-mackerel. It is most abundant off the Atlantic coast of the United States, where it provides good sport and is exceedingly good to eat. The scientific name is *Temnodon saltator*. A species of fish found off the coast of Cuba and the Bahamas is also called the blue-fish.

*E. blue and fish.*

**blue-gown** (bloo' gown), *n.* A licensed beggar in Scotland. (*F. robe bleue.*)

These King's Bedesmen, or "men of prayer," got their other name from the long blue gowns which, like all pensioners, they wore. They were supported by the king and were allowed to beg from anybody in any part of Scotland. In return for these privileges they said prayers for His Majesty and his realm.

There was one blue-gown for every year of the king's age. Each year, on the king's birthday, a fresh one was added to their number, and each received a new gown, a bottle of ale, a loaf, and a purse containing,

as many pennies as there were years in the king's age. The last blue-gown was appointed in 1833.

*E. blue and gown.*

**blue gum tree** (bloo güm' trē), *n.* A large Australian tree. (*F. gommier bleu.*)

Australia is the home of the gum trees, huge trees from which oozes a kind of gum. The scientific name of this family of trees is eucalyptus, and from the blue gum tree especially comes that strange-smelling eucalyptus oil which is so good for colds. The blue gum tree is one of the largest trees in the world. It sometimes grows as tall as three hundred and seventy-five feet. The scientific name is *Eucalyptus globulus*.



Blue gum tree.—The tall blue gum tree of Australia.

*E. blue, gum and tree.*

**blue-john** (bloo' jon), *n.* Dark violet fluor-spar. (*F. fluorine violette.*)

This name is given in Derbyshire to a particularly beautiful form of the mineral fluor-spar which is found in a natural cave near the village of Castleton. The fluor-spar from the Blue John "Mine," as the cave is called, has lovely dark violet veins running through it. It is used for making ornamental vases.

**Blue Mantle** (bloo' mäntl), *n.* A member of the lowest rank of heraldic officers. (*F. poursuivant.*)

The office of Blue Mantle was founded by Edward III. He is what is called a pursuivant, which means an attendant. In the days of chivalry the pursuivants actually attended on the heralds. Nowadays they are junior officers at the Herald's College or College of Arms, the society in Queen Victoria Street, London, that looks after coats of arms and other matters to do with heraldry. Blue Mantle's colleagues at the College have names just as romantic as his own, the other pursuivants being Rouge Croix, Rouge Dragon, and Portcullis.

*E. blue and mantle.*

**blue-mould** (bloo' möld), *n.* A furry growth found on ripe cheese or other decaying foodstuffs. (*F. moisissure bleue.*)

When a cheese is very ripe it sometimes gets a velvety blue appearance. This blue mould, as it is called, is really thousands of very tiny fungi. The scientific name of this fungus is *Aspergillus glaucus*.

*E. blue and mould.*

**blue pill** (bloo' pil), *n.* A medicine containing mercury. (*F. pilule mercurielle.*)

This remedy is good for anyone who is liverish and suffering from headache. It

consists of certain parts of mercury; liquorice, and confection of roses.

*E. blue and pill.*

**blue ribbon** (bloo rib' ön), *n.* A very high honour; the badge of a society of total abstainers. (*F. ruban bleu.*)

The knights of that most ancient and illustrious order of knighthood, the Garter, wear a blue ribbon, and so this term has come to denote a mark of the highest possible distinction in various walks of life. For instance, the blue ribbon of the law is the lord chancellorship, and the winner of the Derby is said to gain the blue ribbon of the turf.

A narrow strip of blue ribbon was the badge of the Blue Ribbon Army, a society, prominent in the later years of the nineteenth century, consisting of people who abstained totally from alcohol. They were known as blue-ribbonites (bloo rib' ön itz, *n.pl.*) and their principles were called blue-ribbonism (bloo rib' ön izm, *n.*).

*E. blue and ribbon.*

**blue rock** (bloo' rok), *n.* A species of pigeon. (*F. biset bleu.*)

Not only is this the name of a well-known fancy pigeon, but it is from the wild blue rock pigeon that all the beautiful pigeons that we keep tame have come. The blue rock pigeon is smaller than the wood pigeon. It is found all round the rocky coasts of Europe, and builds its nest in caves and in crevices of the cliffs. The scientific name is *Columba livia*.

*E. blue and rock.*



Blue shark.—Common in tropical seas, the blue shark sometimes visits the southern shores of Britain.

**blue shark** (bloo' shark), *n.* A species of shark, of a fine slaty-blue colour above and white beneath. (*F. requin bleu.*)

The blue shark, common in tropic seas, is a not infrequent visitor, in early summer, to the southern shores of Britain. It usually grows to a length of six or eight feet, but sometimes attains double that length. It incurs the deadly hatred of fishermen because of its destructive habits. It wreaks destruction among shoals of pilchards, and when it finds them caught in the fishermen's net, it bites out huge mouthfuls, cutting the valuable net to pieces. The scientific name is *Carcharias glaucus*.

*E. blue and shark.*



**bluestocking** (bloo' stok ing), *n.* An intellectual woman. *adj.* Relating to intellectual women and their assemblies. (F. *bas-bleu* ; *de bas-bleu*.)

In the middle of the eighteenth century a noted Society leader, Mrs. Elizabeth Montagu, having grown tired of the empty fashionable amusements of the day, began inviting to her house a number of friends of literary tastes for intellectual discussions.

At Mrs. Montagu's the things of the intellect were supreme ; there was no card-playing, no tittle-tattle, no elaborate dressing. Indeed, nearly everybody at the meetings dressed very plainly, and it is said that one, if not more, of the men so far defied convention as to appear in blue stockings instead of the usual black silk. This is one explanation of the name. Others say that Mrs. Montagu herself wore blue stockings and so set the fashion for her new literary club.

In the fifteenth century there had been a similar society in Venice, the members of which wore blue stockings, and later in France literary ladies were called blue-stockings. Now that it is the custom for women to be well educated an intellectual woman is no longer something to be made fun of, and the word bluestocking is used of those who give themselves airs of intellectual superiority.

E. *blue* and *stocking*.

**bluethroat** (bloo' thrôt), *n.* A bird of northern Europe and Asia. (F. *gorge bleue*.)

The bluethroat is a species of redstart or red-tailed warbler. It is a beautiful songster, allied to the nightingale, and gets its name from a spot of brilliant light blue on the throat. It is sometimes called the Swedish nightingale, and the Laplanders name it the bird of a hundred tongues, because it mimics the notes of many other birds. The scientific name is *Cyanecula suecica*.

E. *blue* and *throat*.

**bluff** [1] (blüf), *adj.* Having a broad, flat front ; hearty ; outspoken. *n.* A cliff or headland with a broad, precipitous front. (F. *escarpé*, *brusque* ; *escarpement*.)

Bluff King Hal (Henry VIII) was so nicknamed because of his hearty, outspoken manners. He behaved bluffly (blüf' l, *adv.*) to all men, and his name has come down to us as representing bluntness (blüf' nés, *n.*).

Sailors call a ship bluff or bluff-bowed (*adj.*) or bluff-headed (*adj.*) when she has bows which are vertical or almost vertical.

A bluffy (blüf' i, *adj.*) coastline is one which has bold headlands.

Perhaps of Dutch origin ; cp. O. Dutch *blaf*, flat, broad. SYN.: Abrupt, frank, off-handed, precipitous. ANT.: Gentle, gradual, reserved, smooth.

**bluff** [2] (blüf), *n.* Heavy betting on a weak hand in certain card games with a view to deceiving an opponent into thinking it is a strong one ; misleading speech or action with a like motive. *v.t.* and *i.* To delude one's opponent at cards by making oneself

out to be in a strong position ; to deceive by such tactics in politics or other matters. (F. *bluff* ; *bluffer*, *esbrouffer*.)

This word at first meant a horse's blinker. A blinker prevents the horse from seeing what is passing, and this is how the word came to be used as it is to-day.

Originally a blinker (*n.*) and to hoodwink (*v.*), of unknown origin.

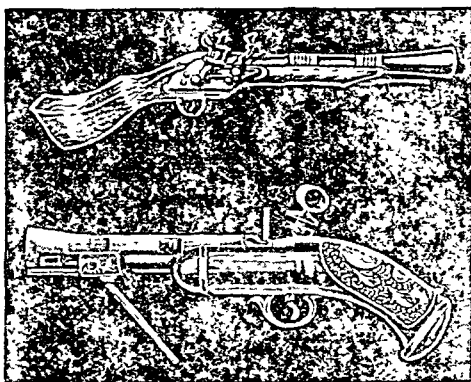
**blunder** (blün' dér), *v.i.* To act stupidly. *n.* A stupid mistake. (F. *faire une bêtise* ; *bévue*.)

The order which sent the Six Hundred of the Light Brigade on their famous charge at the battle of Balaklava, the charge celebrated in Tennyson's poem, was given because someone had blundered.

To tell a thing stupidly or thoughtlessly is to blunder it out. A person lost in a mist on a mountain, who suddenly comes on the path again, is said to blunder upon it.

Not to make the best of one's chances is to blunder them away. This is the act of a blunderer (blün' dér èr, *n.*)—a muddle-headed person, a blunderhead (blün' der hed, *n.*). To act stupidly is to act blunderingly (blün' der ing li, *adv.*) or in a blundering (blün' der ing, *adj.*) way.

M.E. *blunderen*, *blondren* to move blindly, perhaps a frequentative from O. Norse *blonda* to slumber, doze ; perhaps akin to *blend* in the sense of getting mixed. SYN.: *v.* Bungle, flounder, stumble.



Blunderbuss.—Two blunderbusses of the seventeenth century. The blunderbuss was the favourite weapon of the guards of stage-coaches.

**blunderbuss** (blün' dér būs), *n.* A short, smooth-bored gun with a bell mouth. (F. *espingole*.)

The name of this old-fashioned weapon means "thunder gun," and no doubt was quite a suitable one. The bore was large, and on to the top of a big charge of powder a number of bullets or any other handy bits of metal were poured.

The blunderbuss was a shot gun, suitable for repelling an attack at short range.

Dutch *donderbus* thunder gun, from *donder* thunder, *bus* gun, originally box or tube ; cp. G. *büchse* case, musket.

**blunge** (blŭnj), *v.t.* To mix clay or other pottery ingredients with water. (F. *plonger dans l'eau*.)

Formerly blunging was done by hand, but now machinery is generally used. The implement used is called a blunger (blŭn' jēr, *n.*), a wooden blade with a cross-handle.

An imitative word, with reference to *plunge*, *blend*.

**blunt** (blŭnt), *adj.* Without edge or point; dull; abrupt. *v.t.* To make less sharp; to dull. *v.i.* To become less sharp. *n.* A short thick needle. (F. *émoussé, brusque; émousser; s'émousser*.)

A man who says exactly what he means, regardless of the feelings of others, is a blunt man; a dull, stupid man is a blunt-witted (*adj.*) one. If a man were to try to cut a stick with a razor he would blunt the razor. We blunt the pain of a wound by applying a soothing ointment.

A blade which is not very sharp is blunty (blŭnt' ish, *adj.*). Some people obey only when treated bluntly (blŭnt' li, *adv.*). Whatever is dull, or lacks edge or point, has the quality of bluntness (blŭnt' nes, *n.*).

M.E. *blunt* stupid, of unknown origin. *SYN.*: *adj.* Edgeless, obtuse, plain-spoken. *ANT.*: Keen, sharp, urbane.

**blur** (blēr), *n.* A smear; a stain; an indistinct appearance. *v.t.* To smear; to stain; to make indistinct. (F. *tache; tacher*.)

On a misty morning, when nothing can be seen clearly, everything looks a blur. Sometimes an artist allows water to float over his painting so as to produce a misty effect. When he does this he blurs his picture.

Perhaps a variant of *blear*.

**blurt** (blērt), *v.i.* To utter without thinking; to burst into tears. (F. *laisser échapper; pleurer comme un veau*.)

A person who through carelessness or impulsiveness tells what he ought to have kept to himself is said to blurt out the secret.

An imitative word; cp. M.E. *bleren* to utter suddenly, make a loud noise, like *blare*; Sc. *blirt* to cry out with tears.

**blush** (blŭsh), *v.i.* To grow red, particularly from some emotion; to feel shame. *v.t.* To make red; to express or achieve by blushing. *n.* Reddening of the face, especially through emotion; a rosy glow. (F. *rougir, avoir honte; rougeur; rendre rouge*.)

A girl who blushes readily might be described as a blushful (blŭsh' ful, *adj.*) or a blushing (blŭsh' ing) maiden. A person who is shameless is blushless (blŭsh' lēs, *adj.*). Something done very modestly, as if with shame, is done blushfully (blŭsh' fŭl li, *adv.*) or blushingly (blŭsh' ing li). A blush-rose (*n.*) is a rose coloured like a blushing cheek.

One who is made to blush through shame is put to the blush. A thing which at the first blush seems easy to do is one of the difficulties of which are not seen at once.

Probably of Teut. origin. M.E. *blus(s)hen*; cp. A.-S. *blýsian, blýscan* to blush.

**bluster** (blŭs' tēr), *v.i.* To be stormy; to swagger; to bully. *v.t.* To blow about. *n.* Aggressive talk or swaggering; idle threats; a boisterous blast; a disturbance. (F. *tempêter, faire le fanfaron; tapage, fureur*.)

When wind blows in stormy squalls it may be said to bluster. A man blusters when he noisily plays the bully or the swaggerer.

A gust of wind is a bluster. A gust of windy talk, empty threats or boasting is also bluster, and is the talk of a blusterer (blŭs' tēr ēr, *n.*). Such talk is blustering (blŭs' tēr ing, *adj.*) or blustery (blŭs' tēr i, *adj.*) talk, and the person who uses it speaks blusteringly (blŭs' tēr ing li, *adv.*).

Perhaps of Scand. origin; cp. O. Norse *blāstr* blast, stormy weather. *SYN.*: *v.* Boast, hector, rage, storm. *ANT.*: *v.* Cringe, fawn.

**bo** (bō), *inter.* An exclamation used to frighten or startle. Another spelling is boh (bō). (F. *hou!*)

When we say that a person cannot say bo to a goose, we mean that he is too timid to stand up to even such a foolish creature as a goose, in other words that he cannot speak up for himself.

This is an imitative word.



Boa-constrictor.—Living in the forests of South America, the boa-constrictor kills its prey by crushing it.

**boa** (bō' ā), *n.* A large snake found in South America; A long snake-like tippet of fur or feathers worn by ladies round their necks. (F. *boa*.)

These snakes are not poisonous, but kill their prey by wrapping it in their coils and crushing it. The looseness of their jaw and skull bones gives them amazing powers of swallowing animals which appear to be far too large for them. From this habit of compressing or constricting its prey one of the species is known as the boa-constrictor (*n.*); it sometimes reaches a length of 12 feet.

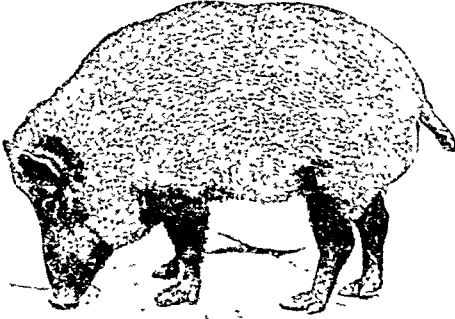
L. *boa*, a large serpent, possibly connected with *bos* bull, from its size and strength.

**Boanerges** (bō ā nēr' jēz), *n.* A forcible speaker or preacher.

The word means "sons of thunder," and is the name given by Christ to James and John (Mark iii, 17), who, when the Samaritans would not receive their Lord and His disciples, begged that fire should descend to consume them (Luke ix, 54).

- **boar** (bör), *n.* A male pig. (F. *verrat*, *sanglier*.)

The wild boar, *Sus scrofa*, is still found in many parts of Europe, as in the forests of the



Boar.—The European wild boar, which was once common in the British Isles, but died out some three hundred years ago.

Ardennes, but it is in India and Africa that boar-hunting (*n.*), called pig-sticking in India, is especially practised. The weapons used are boar-spears (*n.pl.*)

The word boarish (bör' ish, *adj.*) means resembling a boar either in manners or appearance. The plant, green hellebore, is sometimes called boar's foot (*n.*).

Of Teut. origin. M.E. *bore*, A.-S. *bār*.

**board** (börd), *n.* A long, thin plank of sawn timber; a slab of wood; the thick stiff paper used for making the covers of books; a table; food, especially regular meals supplied at a fixed rate; the members of a council or the directors of a business; the side of a ship; the course taken by a ship when tacking; a passage in a coal-mine across the grain of the coal; *pl.* the stage. *v.t.* To cover with planks; provide with food; to attack and force one's way on to a ship; to go on to a ship, train, or other vehicle. *v.i.* To have meals at a fixed charge in another person's house. (F. *planche*, *bord*, *pension*, *administration*, *bord*; *planchéier*, *prendre en pension*, *aborder*; *être en pension*.)

The slab of wood on which certain games, such as draughts and chess, are played is

called a board, and so is one, often covered with cloth, on which notices are put. The word is also applied to the table at which food is eaten, and to the table round which a council or the directors of a business sit.

To board out is to have meals in a house other than the one in which one lives, and it also means to place a poor child in another household. A house in which visitors can obtain regular meals at a fixed price is a boarding-house (*n.*), and each visitor is a boarder (börd' ér, *n.*). Schoolboys and schoolgirls who are fed at and live at school are also called boarders, and a school where such children are taken is a boarding-school (*n.*). A structure made of boards is called boarding (börd' ing, *n.*).

A Board-school (*n.*) was one that was managed by a board under the Education Act of 1870. Such schools are now governed by county councils or town councils.

A person does anything above board when he does it openly, without concealment.

To be on board ship is to be on a ship. If a person on a ship falls over the side he is said to have fallen overboard. Anything which has fallen over or been thrown over the side of a ship is said to have gone by the board. And so, if we have failed in some enterprise we say that our schemes have gone by the board, that is, that they have failed.

When a ship is attacked and the enemy are about to climb on board the captain gives the command, "Repel boarders!"

When their master and mistress go away for a holiday the servants are usually given board-wages (*n.pl.*), extra money above their



Board.—The boarding of H.M.S. "Broke" by the Germans during the World War in 1917. For a time Midshipman D. A. Gyles kept the boarders back single-handed.

usual wages to enable them to board or feed themselves.

M.E. and A.-S. *bord* plank, table, ship's side. The nautical senses are partly from F. *bord* ship's side, from Teut., and F. *aborder* (*v.*) to board (a ship).

**boarding-steamer** (börd' ing stēm' ēr), *n.* An armed steamer used in war for stopping and searching ships suspected of carrying goods to help the enemy. (F. *vapeur d'abordage*.)

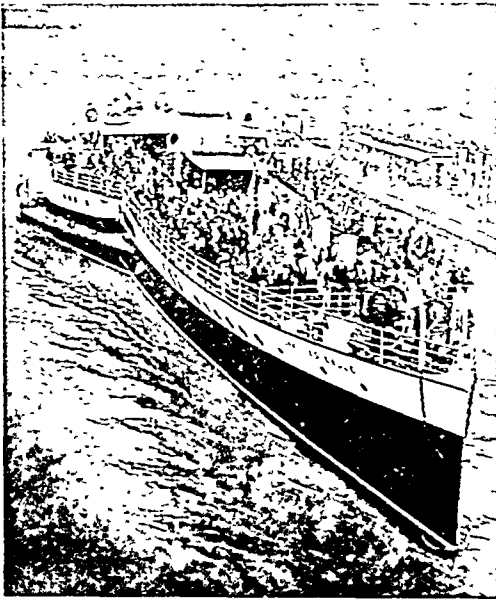
*E. boarding* (verbal *n.*) and *steamer*.

**boast** (bōst), *n.* Praise of oneself, usually exaggerated; a fact or object one is proud of. *v.i.* To praise oneself unduly. *v.t.* To possess and be proud of. (F. *vanterie*; *se vanter*; *vanter*.)

It is an Englishman's boast that he never knows when he is beaten. Boys boast of their skill at games. A town boasts a park or a picture gallery.

Some early adventurers were boasters (bōst' ērz, *n.pl.*), bragging of their deeds in boastful (bōst' fūl, *adj.*) language. They were not ashamed to allude to their exploits boastfully (bōst' fūl li, *adv.*), or to announce boastingly (bōst' ing li, *adv.*) what they would do to their enemies. Boastfulness (bōst' fūl nēs, *n.*) they thought quite proper.

M.E. *bōsten* to boast, of unknown origin. SYN.: *v.* Brag, flaunt, vaunt. ANT.: *v.* Deprecate, undervalue



Boatful.—A boatful of holiday-makers on an oil-burning steamer about to leave London for Margate.

**boat** (bōt), *n.* A small open vessel propelled by oars or sails; a steamer, fishing vessel, or any large vessel; a utensil, somewhat like a boat, for containing sauces, etc. *v.t.* To go in a boat upon. *v.i.* To row; to go in a boat. (F. *bateau*; *transporter par bateau*; *aller en bateau*.)

Fishing vessels, whatever their size, are usually called fishing boats. The boat-train (*n.*) is the train which connects with a steamship or liner by which one is going to sail. A small boat is kept in a boat-house (*n.*), and it is pulled to the shore or held away from

it or from the side of a ship by a boat-hook (*n.*), a pole with an iron hook on the end.

To be in the same boat is to be in the same situation as other people.

A man who lets boats out for hire, or who rows or sails a boat for other people, is called a boatman (*n.*).

On board ship the officer who is in charge of the rigging, cables, stores, and so on, and who calls the seamen to their work with a whistle is known as the boatswain (bōs' n, *n.*). The boatswain's mate is the boatswain's right-hand man and is responsible for inflicting any corporal punishment to which a sailor may be sentenced.

A race between boats is a boat-race (*n.*), and the most famous one is that rowed in eight-oared boats every year on the Thames between the Oxford and Cambridge crews. A boatful (bōt' fūl, *n.*) of persons is as many as a boat will hold safely. The charge for carrying any goods by boat is called boatage (bōt' āj, *n.*).

The boat-bill (*n.*) is a South American bird with a large beak shaped rather like a boat. The boat-fly (*n.*) is a water-insect which swims on its back and looks like a boat being propelled by tiny oars.

M.E. *boot*, A.-S. *bāt*; O. Norse *bātr* is probably borrowed from A.-S.

**bob** [ɪ] (bob), *n.* A weight at the end of a pendulum, rope, or chain; a jerk or sudden jerking action; a curtsy; a knot or bunch of hair. *v.t.* To move with a short jerking motion. *v.i.* To have a short jerking motion; to move rapidly up and down; to curtsy; to fish for eels with a bob. (F. *lentille*, *secousse*, *révérence*; *secouer*; *se secouer*.)

The shortened tail of a horse is called a bob, and to cut closely the hair of a person or a horse is to bob it. A small cluster of worms used in fishing for eels is also known as a bob. In bell-ringing a bob minor is change-ringing on six bells, a bob triple on seven, a bob major on eight, a bob royal on ten, and a bob maximus on twelve. Treble bob is a method of change-ringing in which the treble has a zigzag course.

The game of bob-cherry (*n.*) is a favourite one with children. Cherries are hung from a string and each child has to seize one in its mouth without using the hands. A bob-sled (*n.*) or bob-sleigh (*n.*) is two short sleighs fastened together and used for sleighing or for drawing logs. Many girls and women nowadays have their hair cut short, or bobbed.

A bob-tailed wig (*n.*) or bob-wig (*n.*) is a short wig. Bob-tail wigs were fashionable in the days of the ancient Egyptians, and it was only in comparatively recent times that long wigs came into favour. A bob-tail (*adj.*) or bob-tailed (*adj.*) horse or dog is one which has had its tail cut short, and a bob-tail (*n.*) is a short tail.



**Bob-sleigh.**—In countries where snow and ice are to be found there is no more enjoyable pastime than sleighing. The bob-sleigh, formed by fastening together two short sleighs, is a great favourite for the purpose.

Sailors speak of a bob-stay (*n.*), one of the chains or ropes which hold the bowsprit down. Tag-rag and bob-tail is an expression used for a disorderly crowd of people.

M.E. *bob*(be) bunch, bob (of cherries), *bobben* to strike, perhaps imitative, suggesting the sound of a sudden pull or jerky motion up and down.

**bob** [2] (bob), *n.* A shortened form of the Christian name Robert.

The word is used in two combinations at Eton, a dry-bob (*n.*) being a boy who plays cricket, tennis, and other games on land, and a wet-bob (*n.*), a boy who takes up rowing. A light-bob (*n.*) was a name for a soldier of light infantry.

**bobbin** (bob' in), *n.* A wooden cylinder on which thread, yarn, etc., is wound; a spool. (*F. bobine; fuseau.*)

In spinning mills we may see yarn or thread being wound on to, or drawn off, narrow cylinders of wood with wide circular flanges or disks at each end; these are the long spools called bobbins. A piece of string with a wooden bar for working a door-latch is also called a bobbin. Bobbin-lace (*n.*) or bobbin-work (*n.*) is work woven with bobbins, and bobbinet (bob' in et, *n.*) is a machine-made cotton net in imitation of bobbin-lace.

*F. bobine*, perhaps connected with *L. bombyx* silk, *bombycinus* silken.

**bobolink** (bob' o link), *n.* An American bird resembling the starling. (*F. bruantin.*)

The bobolink, also called the rice-bird, rice-bunting or reed-bird, is a bird that it is difficult to classify, some regarding it as being near to the starling. It feeds largely on rice and other cereals, is noted for its song, and is a strong flyer. It was formerly

called Bob Lincoln, in imitation of its note, corrupted into bobolink.

**bode** [1] (bōd), *v.t.* To foretell; to foreshadow; to presage; to forebode. *v.i.* To portend (evil or good). (*F. présager.*)

We say that a broken mirror bodes ill, that is, it will bring bad luck, and a person who has a feeling that something is about to happen is sometimes said to have a bodement (bōd' mēt, *n.*). Boding (bōd' ing, *adj.*) thoughts are those which worry people with feelings of presentiment, and anything which happens bodingly (bōd' ing li, *adv.*) happens in an ominous way.

M.E. *bodien*, A.-S. *bodian* to bode, announce, boda messenger; cp. *G. bole*. *SYN.*: Augur, forebode, foreshadow, presage

**bodhi** (bō' di), *n.* The supreme wisdom which Buddha found and all Buddhists seek to attain. (*F. sagesse parfaite.*)

To find this wisdom Buddha, at the age of twenty-nine, left the luxury of his father's court, and went as a beggar to the schools of the priests. Dissatisfied with their teaching, he sought the solitude of the forest, and spent seven years meditating upon the meaning of life, and seeking the philosophy of perfection.

When he came forth he preached that existence was an evil; the highest good was absolute repose from the changes and passions of this earthly life, which was only to be reached by the severest self-denial and the widest charity; even then the soul of man must pass through many different orders of life before the goal can be reached.

Through first one and then another existence does the soul travel on its quest for Nirvana; those who have been good passing to a higher order and those who have been

evil sinking to a lower order of existence in the scale of life. For this reason no Buddhist ever takes life, he reverences everything living in nature, and even protects from death animals that are dangerous and loathsome.

A full statement or analysis of the philosophy of this teaching is called *bodhi-dharma* (bō' di dar' mā, *n.*)

Sansk. *bodhi* wisdom.

**bodice** (bod' is), *n.* The upper part of a dress, which extends down to the waist; an inner vest worn by a girl or woman. (F. *corset*, *corsage*.)

Really pl. of *body* (a pair of bodies); a similar instance of a pl. being used as a sing. is *baize*.

**bodied** (bod' id), *This is the past tense and past participle of body. See body.*

**bodiless** (bod' ilès), *adj.* Without material form. *See body.*

**bodily** (bod' i li), *adj.* Relating to the body; physical. *adv.* In the body; as a whole. *See body.*

**bodkin** (bod' kin), *n.* A needle with a large eye; a pin for the hair; an instrument used by printers. (F. *passe-lacet*, *épingle à cheveux*.)

A needle, with large eye and blunt point, used to draw tape or cord through a hem, etc., is a *bodkin*, a term also applied to a pin for keeping up a woman's hair. When a printer has set up type and finds a correction necessary, he sometimes has to pick out the letters with a small awl-like tool known as a *bodkin*. There is another kind of *bodkin* used for piercing holes in cloth, etc.

Country folk speak of a person wedged between two others as a *bodkin*, and say that to ride or sit in this way is to ride or sit *bodkin*.

M.E. *boðdekin*, perhaps akin to Welsh *bidog* dagger.

**Bodleian** (bod lē' ān; bod' li ān), *adj.* Of or relating to Sir Thomas Bodley (1545-1613), or to the Bodleian Library at Oxford University. (F. *bodléien*.)

The Bodleian, as this Oxford library is called, was refounded by Sir Thomas Bodley in 1597, and now has one of the finest collections of rare books and old manuscripts in Europe. By the Copyright Act the Bodleian receives a copy of every work printed in the United Kingdom.

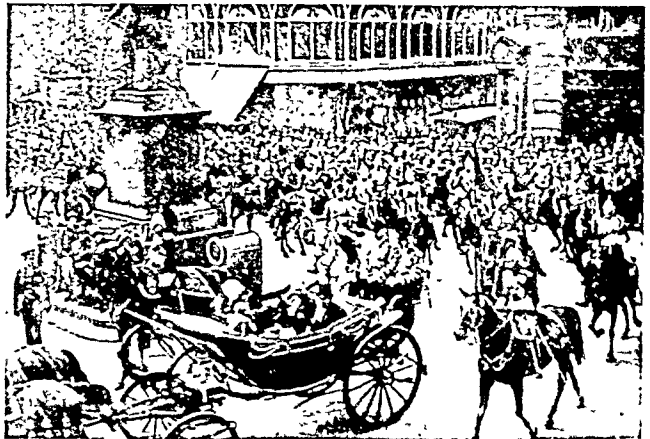
**body** (bod' i), *n.* The physical part of a man or animal; matter as distinct from spirit or mind; strength (as of wine); the trunk; the main part of anything; a corpse; a general collection of persons or things; a human being; in geometry, a solid figure; in chemistry, any substance; in printing, that part of type which forms the shank.

*v.t.* To provide with a body; to embody. (F. *corps*; *donner un corps à*.)

We may say that an athlete has a well-developed body, or that an animal has a splendid body. A person who is obviously not thinking about what people round him are saying is said to be present in body but absent in spirit. People sit in the body of a motor-car, or in the body, that is, the main part, of a hall when listening to a lecture.

A large body of people may go to a meeting, or the body of an army, that is, the majority, may be routed by the enemy. Of persons, we may say that one body is like another, and we refer to a star, a planet, or a sun as a heavenly body. A corpse is a dead body, and one who stole corpses in olden days, or took them from graves for dissection purposes, was a *body-snatcher* (*n.*), the act being *body-snatching* (*n.*).

A valet or a man who attends to the personal requirements of another is a *body-servant* (*n.*), and the soldiers or persons who are responsible for the safety of the king or other highly-placed people are called a *body-guard* (*n.*). The *body politic* (*n.*) is a term used for the State or a nation, or for



**Body-guard.**—A distinguished statesman from a foreign country being escorted through London by a body-guard of cavalry.

an organized community. Painters use *body-colour* (*n.*), a pigment which has a greater degree of body, that is, consistency or thickness, than the ordinary tints or paints they use.

To pick a person up *bodily* (bod' i li, *adv.*) is to lift him completely off the ground, and to do this one has to make *bodily* (*adj.*) exertion. Anything without material form is *bodiless* (bod' i lès, *adj.*), and to *body forth* is to give mental shape to anything or to embody it.

A.-S. *boðig*, of uncertain origin; perhaps, like G. *botlich* cask, ultimately from Gr. *apolhikē* store-house. SYN.: Assemblage, consistency, crowd, matter, party, trunk. ANT.: Mind, soul, spirit.

**Boeotian** (bē ō' shi àn), *adj.* Stupid, dull. (F. *béotien*.)

Boeotia was a country of ancient Greece, and the people who lived there were devoted chiefly to farming and agriculture. In those days the more educated Greeks used to speak of the people in Boeotia as having no more sense or wit than the cattle and other farm animals they attended. Even the air they breathed was said to be heavy and thick, making the natives still duller, and so the term came to be used for very slow and dull-witted persons.

**SYN.:** Dull, ignorant, stupid, slow-witted.  
**ANT.:** Bright, brilliant, keen, lively, witty.

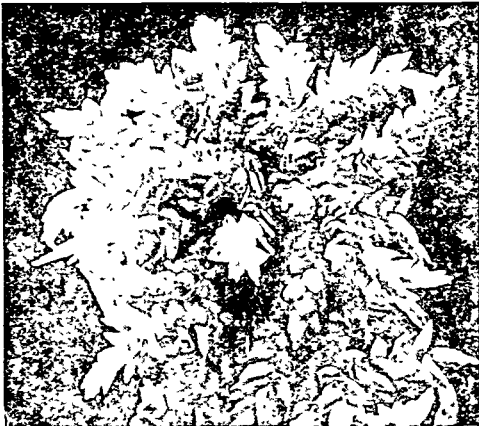
**Boer** (boor), *n.* A South African of Dutch birth or extraction.

The Boers first settled at the Cape of Good Hope in the seventeenth century. Their descendants began to colonize Natal in the first half of the nineteenth century, and later spread into the Transvaal and Orange Free State. They fought and were defeated by the British in 1899-1902, and they are now in the British Empire, the Union of South Africa including the Transvaal and Orange Free State. They are engaged chiefly in farming.

A Dutch word meaning peasant, farmer; cp. G. *bauer*, E. *boor*.

**bog** (bog), *n.* Wet and spongy ground; a quagmire, marsh, or morass. *v.t.* To sink in a bog. (F. *marais*; *embourber*.)

Bogs are common in Ireland and various low-lying countries. One who lives in a boggy land is often called a *bog-lander* (*n.*) or a *bog-trotter* (*n.*) in allusion to the number of bogs in his country. Land where bogs are common or where the ground is wet and spongy is *boggy* (bog' i, *adj.*) land, and such land is in a state of *bogginess* (bog' i nes, *n.*). A small bog is called a *boglet* (bog' lèt, *n.*)

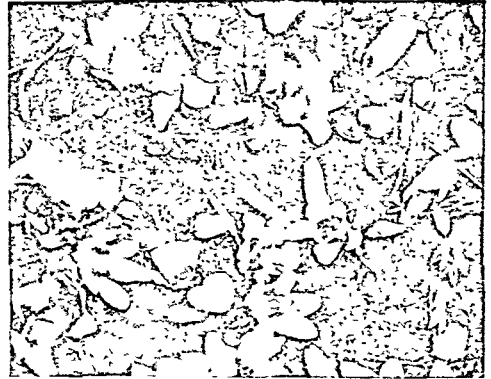


**Bog-moss.**—Each generation of bog-moss grows on top of the last and thus forms a velvety carpet.

Rushes, sedges, mosses, and similar plants are found in bogs, among them being *bog-moss* (*n.*), a variety of *Sphagnum*. The wood of trees found buried in bogs is called

*bog-wood* (*n.*), and *bog-oak* (*n.*) is the name given to the wood of oak trees found in preserved states in bogs. *Bog-berry* (*n.*) is another name for the cranberry, and *bog-violet* (*n.*) is another name for the common butterwort. The *bog-asphodel* (bog às' fô del, *n.*), with its golden star-like flowers, is found in marshy places. The *bog-pimpernel* (*n.*) is a creeping plant with pink flowers.

Of Celtic origin; cp. Irish *bogach* Gaelic *bogan*, from *bog* soft.



**Bog-pimpernel.**—A creeping plant, the bog-pimpernel has pink flowers.

**bog-butter** (bog' but ér), *n.* Animal fat found in the peat bogs of Ireland and Scotland. (F. *espèce de tourbe*.)

Until the eighteenth century people living near peat bogs used to enclose fresh suet, tallow, or lard in baskets and barrels, which they buried deeply in the peat, knowing its preserving power. Many of these forgotten deposits have come to light after hundreds of years.

E. *bog* and *butter*.

**bogey** [1] (bō' gī), *n.* A standard score for a golf course; also called "Colonel Bogey," from an imaginary player.

In a bogey competition the competing players play against a score fixed for each hole of the stipulated round before the competition opens. Should a player take, say, two strokes fewer than the total number fixed for the round, he is said to finish two up on bogey; if he takes two more than the fixed number, he is two down on bogey.

**bogey** [2] (bō' gī). This is another spelling of bogey. See bogey.

**bogey** [3] (bō' gī). This is another spelling of bogie. See bogie.

**boggle** (bog' l), *v.i.* To take fright; to invent difficulties; to attempt awkwardly. (F. *reculer*, *hésiter*.)

Sometimes when a measure is being discussed in Parliament members who are opposed to it raise all manner of trivial objections; in other words, they boggle at the bill. In all its meanings this word suggests difficulties that exist in the imagination.

Probably from *boggle* (*n.*), a form of *bogle*.

**bogie** (bō' gi), *n.* A pivoted frame with four or six wheels, supporting the front of a railway locomotive, or each end of a long railway carriage. It is also spelt bogey, *bogy*. (F. *truck*.)

The object of a bogie is to allow the engine or carriage to travel easily round a curve. A bogie-car (*n.*) is a railway carriage, and a bogie-engine (*n.*) a locomotive engine fitted to a bogie.

A Northumbrian word meaning a low cart or trolley.

**bogle** (bō' gl), *n.* A terrifying phantom; a bugbear; a scarecrow. (F. *épouvantail*, *loup-garou*.)

In the north of Britain people often call a scarecrow a bogle. In its meaning of phantom or bogy superstitious people usually think of a bogle as a black thing that has something human about it.

Perhaps from Welsh *bwg* ghost, *bwgwl* terror, terrifying; cp. *bogy*, *bug*.

**bogus** (bō' gūs), *adj.* Sham; counterfeit. (F. *faux*, *contrefait*.)

A bogus report is published to deceive, a bogus company is formed to swindle people. A bogus address may be given by a person who wishes to obtain goods under false pretences.

A slang U.S.A. word, first used of bad money. SYN.: Dishonest, false, fictitious, spurious. ANT.: Honest, open, truthful, unfeigned.

**bogy** [1] (bō' gi), *n.* A phantom; a bugbear. Another spelling is bogey. (F. *fantôme*, *épouvantail*.)

Any person or thing that we particularly dislike or fear we sometimes call our chief bogy. Lazy people look upon work as a bogy; enforced idleness is the bogy of the industrious.

From the same source as *bogle* and *bug*.

**bogy** [2] (bō' gi). This is another spelling of bogey. See bogey.

**bohea** (bō hē'), *n.* Black China tea of poor quality. (F. *bohé*, *thé bohéa*.)

Linnaeus, the great naturalist, thought black tea and green tea grew on different bushes, so he called the black *Thea bohea* and the green *Thea viridis*. In the eighteenth century bohea was used for the finest black China tea; now the word means the poorest.

The tea takes its name from Bu-i (or Wu-i), the name of the Chinese hills where it is found.

**Bohemian** (bō hē' mi ān), *n.* A native of, or dweller in, Bohemia; a Czech; a person who lives in a free and easy manner; a gipsy. *adj.* Belonging to, or coming from, Bohemia. (F. *bohémien*.)

At one time there were very many gipsies in Bohemia (now part of Czecho-Slovakia) and neighbouring countries. So gipsies came to be known as "Bohemians." Since gipsies led a free, roving life, with manners and customs of their own, other people in big cities, such as Paris, who behaved in a free-and-easy manner that rather shocked other people called themselves Bohemians.

A careless and free way of life, in which people do not take much notice of the strict rules of society, is called bohemianism (bō hē' mi ān izm, *n.*), and to live in this way is to bohemianize (bō hē' mi ān iz, *v.i.*).

L.L. *Bohemia*, from the town *Boiohēmum*, "home of the Boii," an ancient Celtic tribe that inhabited the country.



Bohemian.—A Bohemian peasant girl in national costume. Bohemia now forms part of Czecho-Slovakia.

**boil** [1] (boil), *v.i.* To reach the heat at which a liquid changes into its gaseous form; to bubble-up with heat; to be furious with passion. *v.t.* To make (a liquid) bubble with heat; to cook (food) or heat (anything) in boiling water. *n.* The act or state of boiling. (F. *bouillir*.)

A liquid will boil away, or slowly disappear, if it be allowed to keep on boiling. In cooking some things have to be brought to the boil and then kept on or at the boil. When a cook wishes to boil down or thicken a soup, she boils away part of the water in it. The contents of a saucepan placed on a fierce fire are liable to boil over the edge. A liquid does not bubble-up until it reaches its boiling-point (boil' ing point, *n.*), the heat at which it turns into gas.

The boiling-point of water exposed to the air at sea-level is 212 degrees Fahrenheit (212° F.) or 100 degrees Centigrade (100° C.). But it falls with decrease of pressure; so that heights above sea-level can be measured by the heat of the boiling-points at those heights. On the other hand, in an enclosed vessel, from which the steam cannot escape, the boiling-point rises with the pressure.

O.F. *bolle*, from L. *bullire* to bubble, from *bulle* a bubble.



**boil** [2] (boil), *n.* An inflamed swelling of the skin and the tissues beneath, caused by a microbe. (*F. furoncle.*)

Boils generally occur when the blood is in a poor state, owing to bad health or unsuitable food.

Common Teut. word; M.E. *bile*, A.-S. *byl*; cp. G. *beule*.

**boiler** (boil'ér), *n.* A vessel for boiling anything in; a closed vessel in which steam is raised; one who boils. (*F. bouilloire, bouilleur.*)

Open boilers are of cast iron, wrought iron, steel, brass, or copper. Those used for special purposes, such as boiling jam and chemicals, are in some cases plated inside with silver or nickel, or lined with lead.

A boiler in which steam is raised under pressure is constructed of plates, riveted together, and tubes. A boiler-plate (*n.*) is from a quarter of an inch to half an inch thick, according to the size of the boiler and the pressure which it has to stand, and in most cases is of mild steel. Copper plates are used for the furnaces of some boilers.

A boiler-tube (*n.*) is made of steel, brass, or copper, and is from one-eighth to half an inch thick, and from one to five inches across inside. In most boilers a series of tubes is used so as to increase the area of metal exposed to the furnace heat on one side, and water on the other. This area is called the heating surface of the boiler.

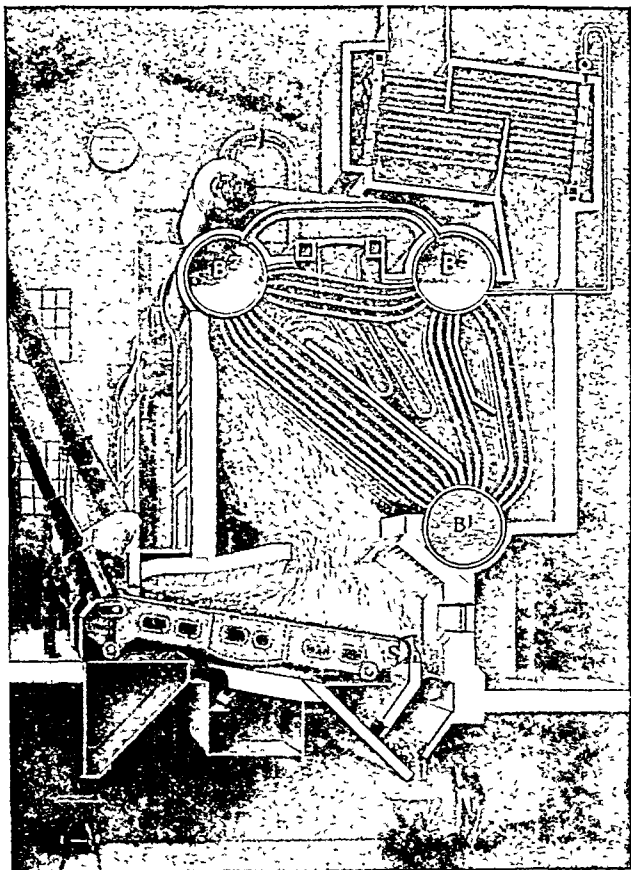
As far as possible, parts of a boiler are made cylindrical or spherical, since such shapes are least easily changed by pressure. Where flat plates have to be used, they are tied together by rods. Such a rod is a boiler-stay (*n.*).

A Lancashire boiler has two furnaces in large circular flues running from end to end. In a locomotive boiler a large square box at the back end is connected with a smoke-box at the front by many tubes, called fire-tubes, running through the circular part, or barrel, of the boiler. The largest boilers of this kind have up to 5,000 square feet of heating surface. The Scotch boiler used on ships has three or four furnaces. The furnace gases travel from them to a chamber at the other end, and back through other tubes over the furnaces. A vertical boiler is one with a furnace at the bottom, and upright tubes leading to the chimney.

In all these boilers the furnaces and tubes

are surrounded by the water to be heated. A water-tube boiler has its furnace below a horizontal steam-and-water-drum. The heat passes among rows of sloping tubes, full of water and leading into the drum above. Boilers of this kind are used in warships and at electric power stations.

The pressure in early steam boilers was only a few pounds to the square inch. Nowadays pressures of from four hundred to four hundred and fifty pounds are not uncommon. A boiler to stand twelve hundred pounds to the square inch has been made.



Boiler.—A section of a tri-drum water-tube boiler. The tubes of the economizer (top right) heat up the feed water to the boiler. The water circulates through the tubes in the direction of B1, B2, and B3.

Its shell is a steel forging four inches thick and weighing eighty tons. Another boiler, consisting only of tubes, is designed for a pressure of three thousand two hundred pounds, the highest that can possibly be reached. At this pressure the hydrogen and the oxygen of the water separate. A boiler in which the water is heated by a naked flame burning in the middle of it is called an internal combustion boiler.

E. *boil* and suffix *-er*, expressing the instrument or agent.

**boisterous** (bois' tēr ūs), *adj.* Wild; stormy; violent; noisily cheerful. (F. *violent, bruyant, turbulent.*)

There is generally some element of cheerfulness connected with the use of this word. A boisterous sea, boisterous waves, or boisterous wind, suggest roughness, but not cruelty. A boy or girl who flings open the door and bursts into the room enters boisterously (bois' tēr ūs li, *adv.*), but the word would not be used if he or she entered in a rage. The boisterousness (bois' tēr ūs nēs, *n.*) of some people's manners often annoys us.

M.E. *boistous* rough, clumsy. The correspondence in form of O.F. *boisteus* (F. *boiteux*) lame is curious. SYN.: Bluff, breezy, hearty, turbulent. ANT.: Calm, gentle, mild, quiet.

**bolás** (bō' lās), *n.* A contrivance used by South American Indians for capturing horses and cattle. (F. *bolás.*)

It consists of two or more balls or stones strung together. It is swung round the head and with great skill made to entangle the legs of the animal marked out for capture.

The name is the pl. of Span. *bola*, ball.

**bold** (bōld), *adj.* Full of courage; daringly planned; vigorous, prominent; impudent; shameless. (F. *hardi, audacieux, impudent.*)

An explorer must be a bold man, for to go unarmed into a savage country is a bold deed. When a friend is in danger bold action is necessary. Bold handwriting is clear, big and firm; bold printing type stands out well. A bold rascal is ashamed of nothing. A bold tongue speaks fearlessly.

A high, projecting cape or hill stands out boldly (bōld' h, *adv.*). A spirit of boldness

(bōld' nēs, *n.*) makes people do brave deeds. **Bold-face** (*adj.*) is a term used in printing for heavy, conspicuous type. **Bold-faced** (*adj.*) means impudent or without shame, but **bold-spirited** (*adj.*) means full of bravery. To make so bold or to be so bold are timid ways of making suggestions.

Common Teut. word, M.E. *bold*, A.-S. *beald*. SYN.: Brave, brazen, conspicuous, courageous, enterprising, fearless. ANT.: Chicken-hearted, cowardly, craven, timid.

**bole** [1] (bōl), *n.* The trunk of a tree; a column or other object shaped like this: (F. *tronc.*)

Of Scand. origin. M.E. *bole*, O. Norse *bol-r* trunk of a tree.

**bole** [2] (bōl), *n.* A brown, yellow, or red greasy clay. (F. *bol.*)

Bole is found in holes in rocks and is used in the preparation of colouring matters. One kind, found in Armenia, known as Armenian bole, or bole armeniac, was once largely used to stop blood flowing from a cut. L.L. *bōlus*, from Gr. *bōlos* lump, clod.

**bolection** (bō lek' shūn), *n.* A projecting moulding. (F. *moulure en saillie.*)

Upon the framework of panelling used in architecture, especially in the seventeenth and eighteenth centuries, there was a moulding which projected beyond the face of the panelling. It was often on a separate piece of wood, nailed to the framework. This is what is called a bolection.

**bolero** (bō lār' ō; bō lēr' ō), *n.* An animated Spanish dance; the music for it; a kind of short woman's jacket. (F. *boléro.*)

The bolero is a very popular dance in Spain, and is usually danced to the accompaniment of castanets.



**Bold.**—In 1923 lawless Afridis on the Indian frontier carried off Miss Mollie Ellis, an English girl. Mrs. Lillian Starr, a brave English nurse, took the bold measure of crossing the frontier, and succeeded in tracking the culprits. Here she, the leader of her escort, a native chief, and the criminals are discussing terms.

**boletus** (bō lē' tūs), *n.* A genus of fungi. (F. *bolet.*)

These fungi differ from mushrooms in that underneath the head are pores instead of gills. Several of them are eatable, and a few are poisonous. Anything relating to the boletus is **boletic** (bō let' ik, *adj.*).

*L. bōlētus*, from Gr. *bōlītēs*, from *bōlos* lump.

**bolide** (bō' līd; bō' lid), *n.*  
A large meteor. (F. *bolide.*)

Of the meteors that rush from space into the earth's atmosphere the large ones which burst into fragments are called fire-balls or bolides.

Gr. *bolis* (acc. *bolida*) missile, meteor, from *ballein* to throw.

**boll** [1] (bōl), *n.* A seed-pod. (F. *balle.*)

This word is used especially for the rounded seed-vessel of the cotton plant. Among insects which cause damage to the cotton crops are the boll-worm (*n.*) and the boll-weevil (*n.*). See boll-weevil.

A-S. *bolla* rounded cup or bowl, seed-pod.

**boll** [2] (bōl), *n.* A measure of capacity and weight. Another form is bow (bō). (F. *mesure.*)

The boll was a Scottish measure—six bushels—for wheat, beans, oats, barley, and potatoes. A boll of salt consisted of two bushels, and a boll of meal was one hundred and forty pounds in weight. The boll was abolished in 1879.

Probably O. Norse *bolli* bowl.

**Bollandist** (bol' ān dist), *n.* One of the Jesuit editors or writers who continued the *Acta Sanctorum* (Lives of the Saints), begun by John Bolland, a Flemish Jesuit, in 1643. (F. *Bollandiste.*)

Jesuits have been at work writing their "Lives of the Saints of the Christian Church" for over three hundred years, and the task is still unfinished. Rosweyd, a Flemish Jesuit, started collecting materials for it, and these were passed on to John Bolland, who published the first five volumes and formed a society, known as the Bollandists, to help in the work and continue it after his death.

The suppression of the Jesuits hindered progress, but the Belgian government started the New Bollandist Association in 1837, and since then Jesuit scholars have studied in all the great libraries of the world, and brought the total of completed volumes of the *Acta Sanctorum* to over sixty.

**bollard** (bol' ārd), *n.* A strong post or iron casting fixed on a pier, wharf, quay, or ship's deck for fastening mooring ropes or cables. (F. *poéau, pieu d'amarrage.*)

On wooden piers bollards are sometimes formed out of the projecting tops of the big upright timbers along the sides.

Perhaps from E. *bole* (tree stem), suffix *-ard*.

**boll-weevil** (bōl' wē vil), *n.* A small grey beetle, belonging to the weevil order, very destructive to the cotton crop. (F. *charançon du coton.*)

This snout-beetle (*Anthonomus grandis*) has caused the loss of many millions of pounds in the United States, into which it made its way from Mexico in the year 1892.

The weevil is about the size of an ordinary house-fly, and lays its eggs in the flower-buds of the cotton plant. When the eggs develop the flowers drop off and so produce no cotton seeds. Later in the year the little pest lays its eggs in the bolls or seed capsules, and when they develop the cotton is ruined.

The beetle takes its name from attacking the boll or seed-pod of the cotton plant.

**bolograph** (bō' lō grāf), *n.* A record made automatically of the change in temperature indicated by the bolometer. *v.t.* To produce a bolograph. (F. *bolographe.*)

Such a record is a **bolographical** (bō lō grāf' ik, *adj.*) record, and has been produced **bolographically** (bō lō grāt' ik āl li, *adv.*).

Gr. *bolē* a throw, ray, *graphein* to write, record.

**Boloism** (bō' lō izm), *n.* Treacherous dealing with, or on behalf of, an enemy in time of war.

Paul Bolo was a Frenchman who received large sums of money from Germany during the World War (1914-18) to spread a peace movement in France and so make the French stop fighting. He was arrested and shot as a spy in April, 1918. Following his arrest, the act of anyone who treacherously helped the enemy came to be called **boloism**.

**bolometer** (bō lom' ét ér), *n.* A very delicate electrical instrument for measuring heat. (F. *bolomètre.*)

In the year 1871, Professor Samuel Langley of Washington, U.S.A., began a study of the invisible rays sent out by the sun. To detect these he invented the bolometer. Its action depends on the fact that a wire lets current pass less easily as it becomes hotter. The bolometer has two wires which offer the same resistance to a current. If only one of them is exposed to the sun's rays it allows less current to pass, and the difference of current between the two wires is sufficient to move a little mirror attached to a galvanometer. The movements are greatly magnified by a beam of light reflected from the mirror on to a strip of photographic paper, on which they are recorded.

So wonderfully sensitive is the bolometer that it responds to a change of heat not greater than the one hundred millionth part of a degree Centigrade.

Gr. *bolē* a throw, ray, *metron* measure.



Boll.—The seed-vessel of the cotton plant is called the boll.

**Bolshevist** (bol' shé vist), *n.* A Russian revolutionary. *adj.* Relating to the Bolsheviks. Another form is Bolshevik (bol' shé vik). (*F. bolshéviste.*)

In Russia, in 1917, Lenin led a revolt which destroyed the government of the Tsar and put in its place a government of Communists,



**Bolshevist.**—Soldiers of the early Bolshevik government of Russia taking food and wares from a shop without paying.

or Bolsheviks—a government, that is, of those who believe that the mass of the common people should by violent revolution seize power and themselves rule their country under the guidance or dictation of a small minority.

The Bolshevik believes in the class-war advocated by the German, Karl Marx—the war of the proletariat or labouring class against the capitalists (employers), the middle class (*bourgeoisie*), and the upper class, and he would promote this war in all countries, with a view to causing world revolution. When he forces others to adopt the Bolshevik theory of government he is said to Bolshevize (bol' shé viz, *v.t.*) them.

The Russian word *bolshevik* (pl *bolsheviks*) is derived from *bolshe* greater, more, and literally means those in a majority, that is, the majority at a convention of Russian Socialists held in London in 1903.

**bolster** (böl' stér), *n.* A long pillow, cushion, or pad, especially one used to support the small pillow on a bed; a punching tool. *v.t.* To support with or as if with a bolster; to pad; to fight against

with bolsters. *v.i.* To fight with bolsters. (*F. traversin, percoir; soutenir.*)

Bolsters are usually stuffed with hair or feathers. As a bolster helps to support the head and pillow in bed, so does a bolster, made of wood, or metal, or other material, help to support machinery on its foundations.

A bricklayer's bolster is a kind of very broad chisel used for cutting and shaping bricks.

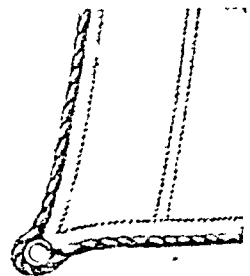
To bolster up is to lend support or back up. We bolster up an argument with facts, or bolster up a person when we are trying to save him from disgrace. The director of a company is said to bolster up a poor business when he does everything he can to save it from failing. Such action is bolstering (böl' ster ing, *n.*), and any support, or stuffing, or padding is often called bolstering.

A-S. *bolster*, the suffix *-ster* indicating the agent. The word comes from an old Teut. *bul-* to swell; cp. G. *polster*.

**bolt** [r] (bölt), *n.* A sliding bar for fastening a door, window, etc.; the part of a lock which fits into the staple or keeper; a metal pin for holding things fast; a short thick arrow with a blunt head; a thunderbolt; a thing that comes upon one suddenly and unexpectedly; a sudden flight or breaking away; a roll or bundle of a certain length or size; the act of swallowing food without chewing. *v.t.* To shut or fasten with a bolt or bolts; to swallow without chewing. *v.i.* To break away suddenly. *adv.* Swiftly or straight, like the bolt from a cross-bow. (*F. verrou, pêne, boulon, coup; verrouiller, avaler sans mâcher; décamper, filer.*)

Carpenters and builders put a bolt through two portions of a structure which are to be joined together, the bolt very often being screw-headed and held in place, so that it cannot sh'ft, by a nut.

A bolt-head (*n.*) is the head either of a cross-bow bolt or of a bolt for fastening things together, and bolt-head is also the name of a globe-shaped flask with a long neck used in distilling. Sailors call a rope sewn round the edge of a sail to keep the canvas from tearing, a bolt-rope (*n.*).



**Bolt-rope.**—The bolt-rope round the edge of a sail.

Canvas and a few other similar fabrics are sold by the bolt, a roll or bolt of canvas containing thirty yards. A bolt of osiers or

reeds is a bundle measuring about three feet round.

A bolt from the blue is a phrase used to describe the startling effect of a vivid flash of lightning in a cloudless sky. We sometimes use this phrase also to denote any happening which is equally unexpected.

To make a bolt for shelter is to make a sudden rush for it.

When we speak of anybody sitting bolt upright we mean that he is sitting up very straight.

A horse bolts when it runs away suddenly, usually as the result of nervous fear. A bolter (bōlt'ér, *n.*) is a person or an animal given to running away suddenly. Such an act may be described as bolting (bōlt'ing, *n.*). We use the same word for the act of fastening with bolts and of swallowing without chewing, and also for a bundle of straw.

The place into which a person or animal escapes after running away, as well as any means of escape from a difficult position, can be called a bolting-hole (*n.*).

Probably of Teut. origin. A.-S. *bolt*; cp. G. *bolz(en)* bolt, arrow, peg. SYN.: Escape, fasten, gulp. ANT.: Open, unbolt, unfasten.

**bolt** [2] (bōlt), *n.* A special kind of sieve used for separating bran from flour. *v.t.* To separate by passing through a sieve or cloth; to inquire into closely. Another spelling is *boult* (bōlt). (F. *blutoir*; *bluter*, examiner.)

To bolt out is to separate by sifting. A sieve, cloth, or other article used for sifting is sometimes called a bolter (bōlt'ér, *n.*). A bolting-cloth (*n.*) is a cloth with a very fine mesh used for sifting meal, and the tub, box, or other receptacle into which the flour or meal is sifted is called a bolting-hutch (*n.*). A machine for sifting flour or meal is called a bolting-machine (*n.*) or a bolting-mill (*n.*).

O.F. *bulter* (=bureter), F. *bluter*, from O.F. and F. *bure* drugged, coarse cloth; cp. L.L. *buletare*, *buratare*, from *bur(r)a* coarse reddish (L.L. *burrus*, Gr. *pyrrhos*) cloth.

**bolus** (bō' lūs), *n.* A large pill; a rounded mass; anything distasteful; a kind of clay. (F. *bol*, *bolus*.)

In the eighteenth century doctors were fond of prescribing boluses.

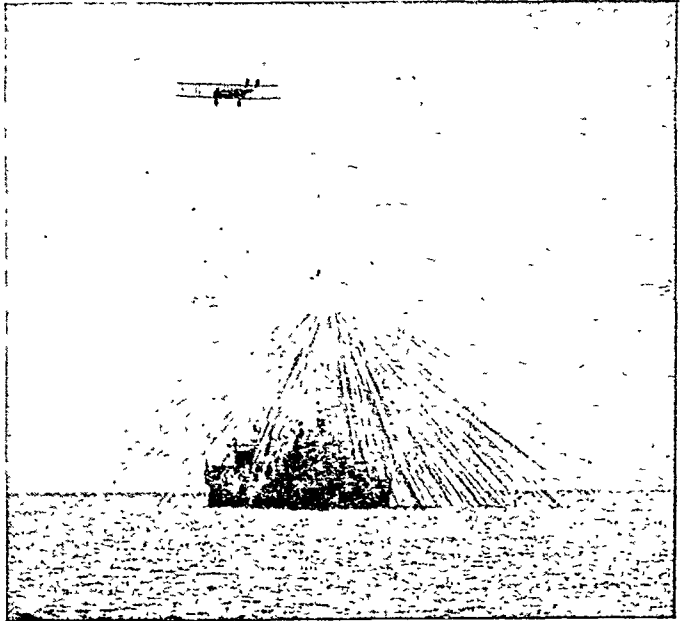
From its large size and the consequent difficulty in swallowing it, bolus came to be used for a thing that is figuratively difficult to swallow. As a term for clay bolus is another form of bole. See bole [2].

L. *bōlus*, Gr. *bōlos* clod, lump. *..*

**bomb** (bom), *n.* A steel or cast-iron shell filled with explosive, for throwing by hand, firing from a mortar, or dropping from aircraft. *v.t.* To attack with bombs, especially from aircraft. (F. *bombe*.)

A bomb depends for its effect almost wholly on its explosive charge, which is fired by a fuse. In the sixteenth century certain bodies of troops, called grenadiers, were trained to throw hand-bombs, named grenades. The use of these grenades ceased after a time, though the word grenadier remained, as meaning a tall soldier, such as was the old-time bomb-thrower.

During the Russo-Japanese War (1902-



**Bomb.**—A direct hit on a battleship by a phosphorus bomb dropped from an aeroplane. The bomb weighed one hundred pounds.

1904) hand bombs appeared again, and in the World War (1914-18) several kinds were employed for driving troops out of trenches. Aerial bombs (see *aero-bomb*), dropped by aircraft on troops, towns, and places of importance to the enemy, also came into use and did much damage in some places. A soldier who throws bombs, or an aeroplane used for bombing is a bomber (bom'ér, *n.*).

A bomb-crater (*n.*) is a hollow blown in the ground by a bomb, especially an aerial bomb. The largest ever made was caused by a bomb weighing nearly two tons. It measured sixty-five feet across and nineteen feet in depth, and would have needed over a thousand tons of earth to fill it. Bomb-proof (*adj.*) shelters, able to resist a heavy bomb, are needed in modern warfare to protect troops during an attack with bombs, called a bombing-raid (*n.*).

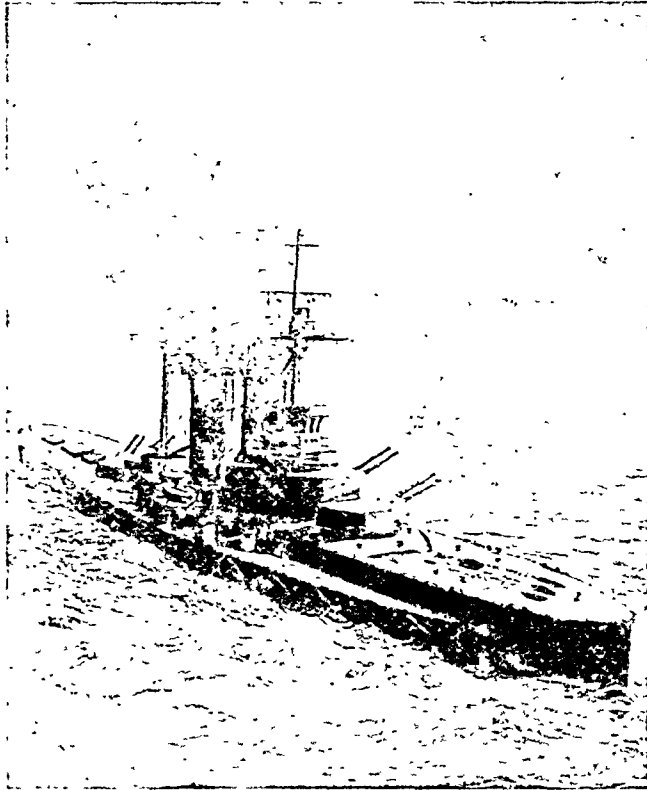
A bomb-shell (*n.*) is a large bomb thrown from a mortar. An unexpected event which

causes great dismay is sometimes called a bomb-shell. Any person or machine that hurls a bomb is a bomb-thrower (*n.*), but the word now usually means a trench mortar used for this purpose.

A rounded or pear-shaped mass of lava thrown from a volcano is called a volcanic bomb. A bomb-ketch (*n.*) or bomb-vessel is a small war vessel for carrying mortars.

*F. bombe, L. bombus, Gr. bombos* booming, buzzing noise See boom

**bombard** (bom' bard; bŭm' bard, *n.*; bom bard', *v.*), *n.* The earliest form of large cannon. *v.t.* To attack with heavy gun-fire; to assail with questions or abuse. (*F. bombarde; bombardier.*)



Bombardment.—H.M.S. "Queen Elizabeth" bombarding a Turkish position during the Gallipoli campaign of 1915.

Early in the fourteenth century, when gun-powder was coming into use, men began to make big guns by welding iron bars edge to edge in the form of a tube and binding them with iron hoops. A bombard, as such a gun was called, fired a stone ball weighing anything up to two hundred pounds.

A battery of bombards took part in a battle fought in 1380, between the fleets of Venice and Genoa. We are told that they did much damage, although it was not thought safe to fire them more than once a day.

A bombardier (bom bār dēr'; bŭm bār dēr',

*n.*) was originally a soldier skilled in handling bombards. The word now means the lowest grade of non-commissioned officer in the Royal Artillery. A certain kind of beetle which, when frightened, discharges a puff of liquid is named the bombardier-beetle (*n.*).

The act of bombarding is a bombardment (bom bard' mēt, *n.*). During the World War (1914-18) a terrific bombardment of the enemy's trenches took place just before and during an attack. The noise of some of these bombardments could be heard plainly a hundred miles away, in England.

*O.F. bombarde, L.L. bombardu,* originally a kind of catapult; *cp. bomb* and suffix *-ard*, here perhaps with an intensive meaning. The verb is from *F. bombardier*.

**bombardon** (bom bar' dŏn), *n.*

A large brass instrument of the saxhorn class; a bass reed-stop on the organ. Another form of the word is bombardone (bom bār dō' ni). (*F. bombardon.*)

A bombardon is a very long brass tube, tapering gradually to the mouthpiece. For convenience it is bent into a coil of several turns. By means of valves extra lengths of tubing can be brought into circuit with the main tube, to allow any note to be played which the main tube does not naturally emit.

*Ital. bombardone* from *bombardo* a deep-toned musical instrument (see bombard), with suffix *-one* denoting great size; *cp. E. -oon*.

**bombasine** (bom bā zēn'; bŭm bā zēn'), *n.* A dress material of worsted, either alone or mixed with silk or cotton, and having a twilled or ridged texture. Another spelling is bombazine. (*F. bombasin.*)

This stuff was formerly used for dresses, but it is seldom seen nowadays.

*F. from L.L. bombācinum* silk, *Gr. bombyx* silkworm, silk.

**bombast** (bom' bāst; bŭm' bāst), *n.* High-sounding, extravagant talk. (*F. boursoufflage.*)

Bombast comes from an old French word for the head

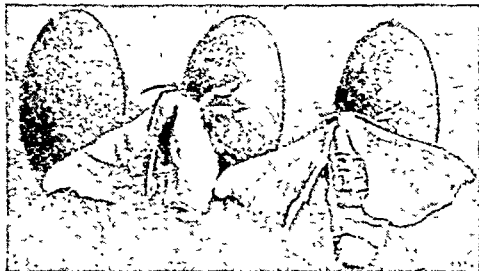
of the cotton plant. As cotton-wool is used for padding or stuffing, bombast originally had this meaning in English. Gradually this use was dropped and bombast came to mean talk in which grand words were used to make it sound more imposing.

A person who talks in this way talks bombastically (bom bas' tik āl h, *adv.*), and is a bombastic (bom bas' tik, *adj.*) or bombastical (bom bas' tik āl, *adj.*) man.

*O.F. bombace* cotton, from *L.L. bombar* (*see bombācinum*), *Gr. bombyx* silk, cotton. *SYN.*: Fustian, grandiloquence, magniloquence, pomposity, turgidity.

**Bombay duck** (bom bā dūk'), *n.* A fish which, when dried and salted, is exported from Bombay. It is also called *bummalo* (būm' à lō) and *bummaloti* (būm à lō' ti). (*F. canard de Bombay.*)

The Bombay duck is eaten as a relish. It is a small deep-water fish.



**Bombyx.**—Silk moths, which belong to the genus *Bombyx*, drying their wings after coming out of their cocoons.

**Bombyx** (bom' biks), *n.* A genus of moths to which the silk moth belongs. (*F. bombyx.*)

The most famous of the bombycid (bom' bi sid, *adj.*) moths is the cream-coloured silk moth (*Bombyx mori*). The greyish caterpillar or silkworm spins a cocoon of silk, which comes from a spinneret in its mouth, one pound of silk being produced by some sixteen hundred moths. It was brought from China to Constantinople by some Greek monks in the reign of Justinian.

*Gr. bombyx* silk-worm.

**bona fide** (bō nā fi' dē), *adv.* In good faith. *adj.* Genuine. (*F. de bonne foi.*)

To act honestly and sincerely is to act *bona fide*. A *bona fide* action is a sincere one, a *bona fide* story a true one, a *bona fide* article a genuine one. *Bona fides* (bō nā fi' dēz, *n.*) means good faith, absence of intention to deceive.

Ablative of *L. bona fides* in, with good faith.

**bonanza** (bō nān' zā), *n.* A successful enterprise. *adj.* Very prosperous; well-equipped. (*F. coup de bonheur.*)

In America when a prospector strikes a rich mine, or when a speculator has a run of luck, or a dealer makes a very profitable deal, the rich mine, run of luck, or profitable deal is called a bonanza. A big and prosperous farm in the West is a bonanza farm (*n.*).

Span. fair weather, prosperity, from *L. bonus* good, successful.

**Bonapartism** (bō' nā part izm), *n.* Attachment to the line of emperors founded in France by Napoleon Bonaparte; the system or policy of Napoleon I. (*F. Bonapartisme.*)

A full knowledge of the story of Napoleon I (1769-1821), the puny lieutenant of artillery, who rose to be one of the world's great conquerors, is necessary to our proper understanding of Bonapartism.

One who supported the imperial cause, especially a follower of Napoleon I and III, is termed a Bonapartist (bō' nā part ist, *n.*).

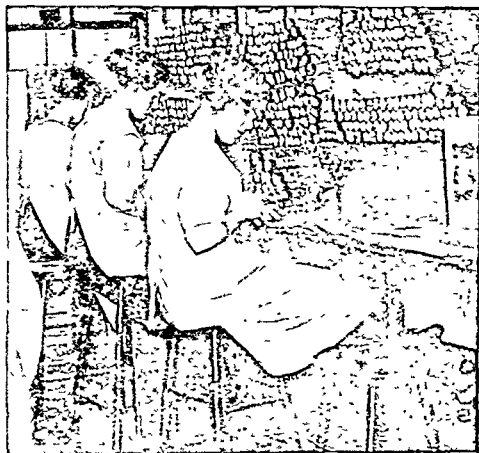
This name is also given to a person who seeks to revive the Bonapartist (*adj.*) dynasty.

**bon-bon** (bon' bon), *n.* A sweetmeat; a Christmas cracker. (*F. bonbon.*)

The contents of a box of chocolates are bon-bons, as are most of the good things one can buy in a confectioner's shop.

Millions of bon-bons are manufactured every year, and vary from tiny crackers to large specimens that hold dozens of smaller ones. Some are made in the form of Christmas puddings that explode when a match is applied and shower crackers over the assembled guests. Although bon-bons do not require elaborate machinery for their production, they pass through many hands from start to finish. Caps, crackers, toys, mottoes, and other little gifts have to be put inside, and no bon-bon would be complete without a scrap on the outer case.

Reduplication of *F. bon* good.



**Bon-bon.**—Putting the finishing touches to Christmas bon-bons before packing them.

**bonce** (bons), *n.* A large marble; a game played with large marbles. (*F. grande bille.*) Perhaps connected with bounce.

**bond** [ɪ] (bond), *n.* That which holds together or restrains; an agreement; a vow; a promise; a mode of arranging bricks in building; the timber which holds two walls of a building together; a written acknowledgment of a debt, or a legal agreement to pay money in some way; a debenture or share in a company. *v.t.* To bind together; to place in a bonded warehouse; to mortgage. *v.i.* To hold together. (*F. lien, obligation, maçonnerie en liaison; lier, mettre en entrepôt; tenir ensemble.*)

We say that a man's word is his bond when we mean that he has such a good reputation for honesty that he need only give his word to do something and need not sign a legal document to bind him. A mother is bound to her children, and a husband to his wife, by bonds of affection.

Bricklayers arrange bricks in various ways. In English bond and Flemish bond the bricks are laid alternately lengthwise and across to a standard pattern. A stone or brick which reaches a considerable distance into a wall to bind it together is called a **bonder** (bond'ér, *n.*) or **bond-stone** (*n.*), and **bonding** (bond'ing, *n.*) is the placing of bonders in position. A piece of timber built into a wall to strengthen it is called a **bond-timber** (*n.*).

Tobacco, spirits, and other goods which come into a country, and on which duty is levied are kept in **bond**, that is, in a special warehouse, and the duty is paid when the goods are withdrawn. Such a warehouse is called a **bonded warehouse**, and the goods stored in them are **bonded goods**. A person who holds goods in a bonded warehouse is a **bonder**, and the **bonding** of goods is the placing of them in bond.

Companies and governments issue shares or bonds bearing interest, and a person who holds such bonds is called a **bond-holder** (*n.*). A **bond-creditor** (*n.*) is a creditor who has a bond or security for money owed him. A **bonded debt** (*n.*) is one which has been contracted by the issue of bonds.

Another form of band, M.E. *band*, *bond*.

**bond** [2] (bond), *adj.* In a state of slavery or serfdom (F. *serf*, *en état de servitude*.)

A **bond-maid** (*n.*) is a slave-girl, a **bondsman** (*n.*), **bondman** (*n.*), or **bond-slave** (*n.*) is a slave, and a **bondswoman** (*n.*) or **bondwoman** (*n.*) a female slave. When one person offers a bond as security for another person he is also called a **bondsman**.

A **bond-servant** (*n.*) is a male or female slave, and he or she is said to be in **bondage** (bon' dāj, *n.*), or in subjection, captivity, or slavery. **Bond-service** (*n.*) is service rendered by one who is in slavery.

In Scotland a **bondager** (bon' dāj' er, *n.*) is a labourer who is bound to do certain things for a farmer.

Of Scand. origin. M.E. *londe* (cp. *londe-man*) husbandman, servant.

A-S *bōnda*, *būnda* householder, master of a household (husband), a holder under an inferior kind of tenure, from O. Norse *bōndi* with the same meaning, from *būa* to dwell, manage a farm, cultivate (cp. A-S. *būan*). The later idea of servitude is the result of a confusion with *bound* (pp of *bind*) and *bond*.

**bond** [3] (bond), *n.* A league. (F. *ligue*.)

The **Afrikaner Bond** was a confederation of Afrikaners, or Dutchmen born in South Africa, formed in 1880 to secure an independent South Africa.

Dutch *bond*, G. *bund*, from *binden* to bind.

**bone** (bōn), *n.* One of the hard parts which form the skeleton, or framework, that supports and protects the softer portions of the body; the material of which such parts are made; a piece of liorn, or fibre, fixed in the sole of a golf-club—the part that rests on the ground—to prevent it from splitting. *v.t.* To take the bones out of fish, poultry, etc. (F. *os*; *désosser*, *ôter les arêtes*.)

A bone is two-thirds earthy matter and one-third animal matter. The outside material is very hard, but the inside of a massive bone is full of cells. As a tree grows in girth by adding "rings" under the bark, so a bone increases its thickness by the addition of layers under its membranous sheath. Long straight bones are hollow and contain marrow.

The bones (bōnz, *n.pl.*) of nigger minstrels are two pieces of bone held in each hand and rattled usually to the accompaniment of a banjo. The man who plays them is often called **bones**.

Since dogs fight over bones, the term, **bone**

of contention, is used for a matter forming the cause of a quarrel. To have a bone to pick with a person means to have a grievance against him, and to make no bones about a matter means not to make a fuss. An owl swallows a mouse body and bones, that is, entirely. To the bone means deep, or to the inmost part, as of a cut.

A **big-boned** (*adj.*) horse has unusually massive bones. A jellyfish is **boneless** (bōn' les, *adj.*)—it has no bones; but a boneless person is one without strength of character. Such **bonelessness** (bōn' les nes, *n.*) is a serious drawback in life. Some fishes are **bony** (bōn' i, *adj.*) in the sense of having a great number

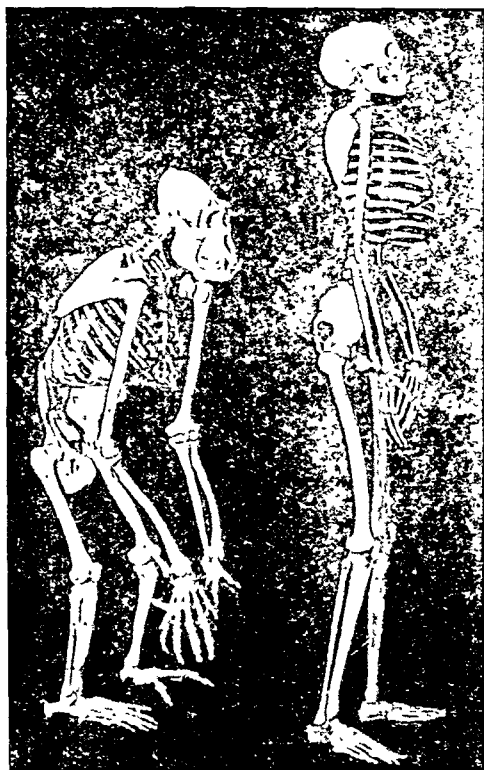
of bones (see **bony** fishes). The fish known as the **bony pike** is very much like a pike, but has a head more like a herring's. An animal may be described as **bony**, or as being marked by **boniness** (bōn' i nes, *n.*), if its bones show under its skin.



**Bondage.**—Women in an Eastern bazaar waiting to be sold into bondage.



Bone-ash (*n.*) or bone-earth is an ash made by burning bones; it is largely used for making plants grow. Bone-dust (*n.*) consists of bones ground to a powder, and used for the same purpose. Bone-black (*n.*), made by charring bones, is used for refining sugar and also as a pigment by painters. Bone-oil (*n.*)



Bones.—The bones of a man (right) and of a gorilla.

is a dark-brown, evil-smelling liquid distilled in the making of bone-black. Its more common name is oil of hartshorn.

A bone-bed (*n.*) is a term used by geologists for a thick layer of bones of extinct animals and fishes. One of the most famous of these is at Axmouth, in Devonshire. A bone-cave (*n.*), in the same way, is a cave containing the bones of extinct animals.

The old-fashioned bicycle, which had, not pneumatic tires, but hard tires, was called a bone-shaker (*n.*) because of the way it shook anyone riding it over uneven roads. Bone-lace (*n.*) is a kind of lace, the bobbins for which were originally made of bone. A bone-setter (*n.*) is a man who sets broken or dislocated bones and is not necessarily a doctor of medicine. A bone-spavin (*n.*) is a bony lump on the inside of a horse's hock.

The process of judging the straightness of a line or a surface by means of rods set close together is called boning (*bōn' ing, n.*), and a rod used for this is a boning-rod (*n.*).

For bone-manure and bone-meal, *see below.*

Common Teut. word. M.E. *bōn, bān, A.-S. bān*; cp. G. *bein*.

**bone-manure** (*bōn mã nūr'*), *n.* Manure made from ground bones. (F. *engrais d'os.*)

Bones are rich in phosphates, which greatly benefit grass and root crops. The finer the bones are broken, the quicker they are absorbed. The process is hastened further by boiling the bones to rid them of fat and gelatine. Dissolved bone-manure is made by treating bones with sulphuric acid.

E. *bone and manure.*

**bone-meal** (*bōn' mēl*), *n.* Bones ground to a powder for use as manure. (F. *farine d'os.*)

A good bone-meal passes through a sieve with one-sixteenth-inch holes and contains about fifty per cent of phosphates. Very finely ground meal is called bone-flour (*n.*)

E. *bone and meal.*

**bonfire** (*bōn' fir*), *n.* A large fire in the open air. (F. *feu de joie.*)

When on some great occasion a large fire is kindled as a mark of public joy, such a fire is a bonfire. The fire for burning up garden rubbish is also a bonfire.

Formerly spelt bone-fire, and originally meaning a fire for burning bones or dead bodies.

**bonhomie** (*bōn' ô mē*), *n.* Good-nature. (F. *bonhomie.*)

A kind, simple, easy-going person has the quality of bonhomie.

F. *bon* good, *homme* man, L. *homo*. SYN.: Companionableness, geniality, sociability. ANT.: Churlishness, sullenness, surliness.

**boniface** (*bōn' i fās*), *n.* An innkeeper.

Will Boniface was the innkeeper in George Farquhar's play, "The Beaux' Stratagem," which was produced in 1707. He was a stout, jolly fellow who was always cheerful, and ended nearly every sentence with "as the saying is."

L.L. *Bonifacius* (proper name), from *bonus* good, *facere* to do, or *facies* face.

**bonito** (*bō nē' tō*), *n.* A fish, the striped, tunny. (F. *bonite.*)

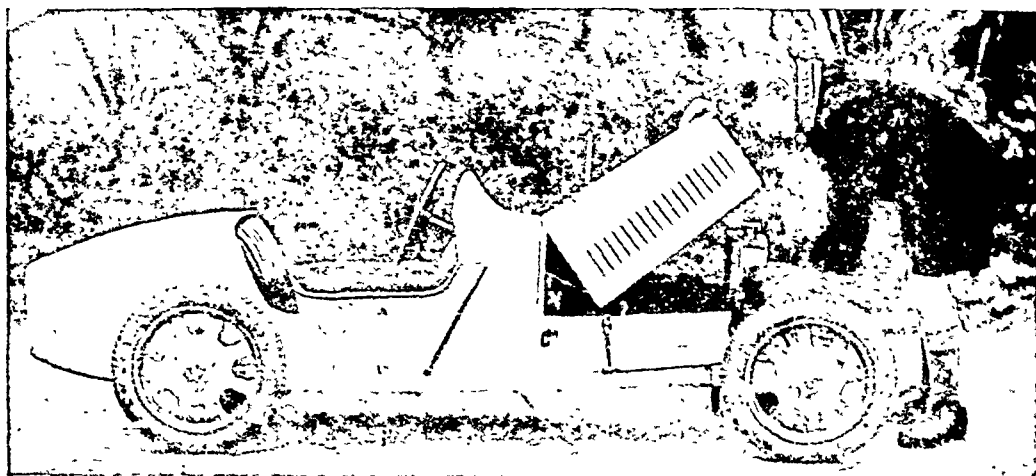
The bonito is found in warm and tropical seas and its chief food is the flying fish. Its scientific name is *Thunnus pelamys*. The name bonito is also given to other fish somewhat like the striped tunny.

Span. *bonto* (adj.) pretty, good, nice.

**bon mot** (*bōn mō*), *n.* A clever, witty remark. The plural is *bons mots* (*bōn mō*). (F. *bon mot.*)

A small boy was once asked to write a composition on a cricket match. At the end of the lesson he handed in a blank piece of paper. On being asked why he had written nothing, he replied: "Please, sir, the match was abandoned owing to rain, without a ball being bowled." His bon mot saved him from punishment.

F. *bon* good *mot* word (from L. *mutum* word, from *mut(t)ire* to mutter, murmur). SYN.: Epigram, repartee, sally, witticism.



**Bonnet.**—This young motorist is lifting the bonnet of his beautiful model car, which is driven by electricity and reaches a speed of ten miles per hour.

**bonnet** (bon' èt), *n.* A head-dress worn by females; a flat Scottish cap; an additional part of a sail fastened to its foot; the cowl of a chimney; the part of a motor-car which covers the engine. *v.t.* To crush the hat of (a man) over his eyes; to put a bonnet on. (F. *bonnet, bonnette*; *écraser le chapeau sur la tête à.*)

In England a cap used to be called a bonnet. A gold coin of the reign of James V of Scotland had the king's head on it wearing a bonnet and was called a bonnet-piece (*n.*).

The red cap worn by the French revolutionists, the emblem of red republicanism, was known as the *bonnet rouge* (bon nā roozh', *n.*). A person who wears a bonnet is *bonneted* (bon' et éd, *adj.*), and one who is said to have a bee in his bonnet is *eccentric*.

M.E. and O.F. *bonet*, from L.L. *bo(n)netus*, properly the name of some material.

**bonny** (bon' i), *adj.* Comely; healthy-looking; plump; fine. (F. *gentil, potelé.*)

"What a bonny child!" is a phrase often used of a child glowing with health and happiness. Of a child recovering from an illness we may say that he is going on *bonnily* (bon' i li, *adv.*), when he is making good progress. *Boninness* (bon' i nēs, *n.*) is the quality of being bonny.

A Sc. and North E. word, possibly from F. *bonne*, fem. of *bon* good-looking, healthy.

**bonspiel** (bon' spēl), *n.* A curling match. (F. *curling.*)

This word was once used for a match at any game, but is now used only for a match at curling, a game like bowls played on ice.

It seems clear that *spiel* means sport, game (Dutch *spel*, G. *spiel*), while *bon* may be Dutch *bond* league, with reference to the clubs taking part in the game.

**bonus** (bō' nūs), *n.* Something, usually money, given over and above what is due by contract or arrangement; extra dividend or wages. *v.t.* To help by bonuses; to give a bonus to. (F. *boni, prime*; *donner un boni à.*)

A trading or insurance company which has agreed to pay its shareholders, say, five per cent, if it finds itself making a lot of money, may divide the extra profits and distribute them as a bonus. During the World War (1914-18), when prices rose very rapidly, many people's wages or salaries were increased by a bonus, which was large or small according as prices were high or low.

A *bonus-share* (*n.*) is an extra share issued to holders of shares in a limited liability company. To provide for bonus shares the nominal (and issued) capital of the company is increased.

L. *bonus* (masc.) good, wrongly used for neuter *bonum*.

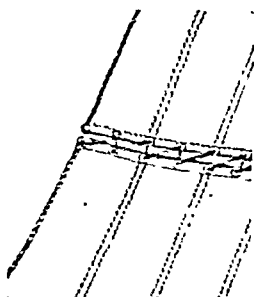
**bony** (bōn' i). This is the adjective formed from the noun bone. See bone.

**bony fishes** (bō' ni fish' èz), *n.* Fishes with bony skeletons. (F. *poissons osseux.*)

The true fishes are divided into four classes, to one of which belong all those with a hard, bony skeleton, as contrasted with the gristly skeleton of such fishes as sharks and rays. Bony fishes are again divided into two groups, those with bony plates on the surface of the body and those with horny scales.

It is these scaly fishes, such as the mackerel, trout, and salmon, that are called *teleosts*, and are regarded as the true bony fishes, the whole skeleton being bony. Other features are the even-lobed tail and the swim-bladder. They form by far the largest order of fishes.

E. *bony* and *fish*.



**Bonnet.**—An additional part of a sail laced to its foot is called a bonnet.

**bonze** (bonz), *n.* A term used by Europeans for members of the Buddhist religious orders and for Buddhist priests in Japan, China, and the Far East generally. (F. *bonze*.)

Long and wide sleeves are a feature of the silken robes of the bonzes. These disciples of Buddha shave their heads and many of them live entirely on charity. A Buddhist monastery is a bonzery (bonz' è ri, *n.*) or bonzary (bonz' à ri, *n.*), and a female bonze is a bonzess (bon' zes, *n.*).

Span., Port. *bonzo*, from Japanese *bonzō*, from Chinese *fan seng* religious person.

**boo'** (boo), *inter.* and *n.* A sound as of the lowing of a cow, often used to express contempt or dislike. *v.i.* To make such sounds. *v.i.* To groan at in disapproval. F. *beuglement*; *beugler*; *huer*.)

A coward is greeted with shouts of "Boo!" An unpopular speaker has to endure the boos (booz, *n.pl.*) of his audience. Sometimes he cannot be heard because of the booing (boo' ing, *n.*), or he grows angry because he is booed (bood, *p.p.*).

Imitative of the lowing of a cow; cp. E. *moo*.

**booby** (boo' bi), *n.* A stupid fellow; a dunce; a sailor's name for various species of birds of the gannet type, known for their stupidity. (F. *nigaud*, *boubie*.)

We tell a person not to act or stare like a booby. A boy or girl who cries in a childish manner might be called a great booby, and might be told not to act in a boobyish (boo' bi ish, *adj.*) way. At whist or bridge drives a booby-prize (*n.*) is frequently given to the player with the lowest score. A common example of a booby-trap (*n.*) is to put a pillow or some light article that cannot harm on top of a door left slightly ajar, and then persuade someone to open the door.

A booby-hatch (*n.*) is a wooden cover over a hatchway or opening in a ship's deck.

Span. *bobo* blockhead, booby (bird), possibly connected with *L. balbus* stammering, silly. SYN.: Blockhead, dolt, noodle.

**boo-hoo** (boo hoo'), *n.* The sound of loud weeping or, less often, of noisy laughter. *v.i.* To weep loudly; to roar; to hoot. (F. *pleurer*, *rire à grands cris*, *huer*.)

An imitative word.

**book** (buk'), *n.* A number of printed sheets folded into pages and bound together, a collection of sheets of ruled paper similarly bound for keeping accounts; a lengthy written composition; the principal division of a treatise, poem, or other work; the words of an opera or play; the first six tricks won at whist. *v.i.* To enter a record in a book; to secure by previous payment (as a theatre or train seat); to purchase a railway ticket. (F. *livre*; *enregistrer*, *retenir*, *prendre*.)

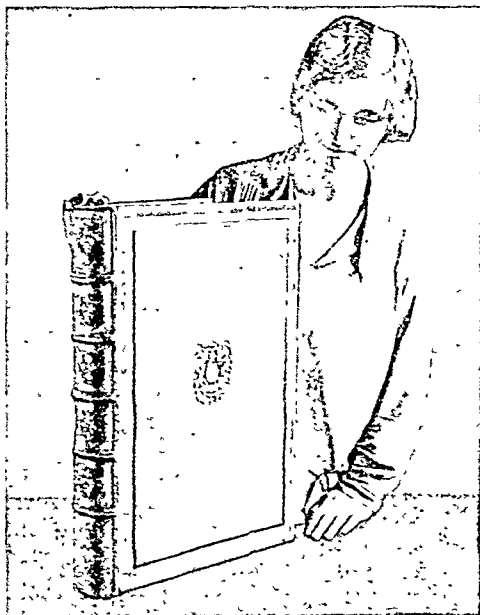
There was a time when books were made from the bark of trees, and also when the necessary material was obtained from the papyrus plant of Egypt, whence the word paper. Parchment, manufactured from animalskins, was for long a favoured material,

but since its adoption in the eleventh century paper has gradually come into use.

Books were just long hand-written scrolls down to the fourth century A.D., when square sheets of parchment, tied together with thongs, took their place. A thousand years ago the practice arose of binding books in covers, often very beautiful, and bookbinding (*n.*) showed promise of becoming the art that the modern bookbinder (*n.*) now practises in his bookbindery (*n.*).

To-day, the bookish (buk' ish, *adj.*) person, one who is bookishly (buk' ish li, *adv.*) inclined or a lover of books, has every opportunity to satisfy his bookishness (buk' ish nes, *n.*), books on every possible subject being available at a very low cost.

The book-learned (*n.*), or those who have acquired book-learning (*n.*), book-knowledge (*n.*), or book-lore (*n.*), as learning acquired by



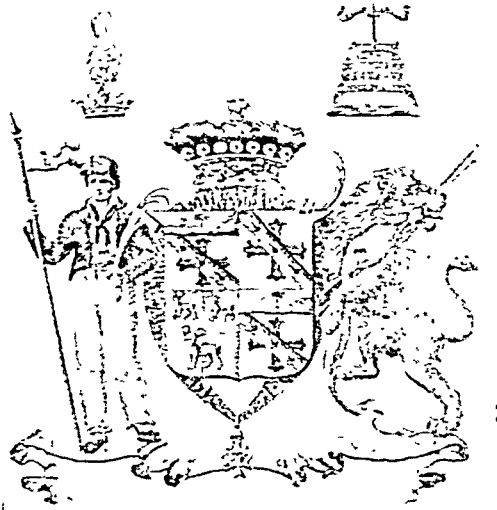
Book.—The Golden Book presented to Great Britain by France in 1927, as a pledge of friendship and in remembrance of the World War.

reading books is variously called, owe much to the book-maker (*n.*), the man whose occupation is that of book-making (*n.*), or producing literary manuscript in book form.

This word is generally used now in a rather contemptuous sense. For instance, a book that has been put together with little art, chiefly from the author's desire to write a book, might be called a piece of mere book-making. This book-maker is, of course, quite distinct from the book-maker who has to do with horse-racing.

One who has gained much learning from books was formerly said to be bookful (*adj.*), but this word is now only used as a noun in referring to a quantity equal to that of a book that is full.

The bookman (*n.*), or literary man, is far better catered for nowadays than formerly. The publisher produces for him a well-bound book at a reasonable cost. There is often a book-mark (*n.*), or book-marker (*n.*), a strip of tape, silk, or card, provided for indicating the page at which to resume reading. A book-plate (*n.*), or label for the owner's name, to be pasted inside on the cover provides a



Book-plate.—The book plate used by Lord Nelson, the hero of Trafalgar.

safeguard against loss, and the postal authorities even introduced special cheap rates for the dispatch of books by book-post (*n.*).

In ancient times books were preserved or arranged for use on shelves or in niches, but the book-case (*n.*), sometimes called book-press (*n.*), a wooden article of furniture fitted with shelves, is now used to hold them. Many tables and chairs are now fitted with a book-rest (*n.*), on which a volume may be rested while being read. Another useful device is the book-slide (*n.*), an expanding stand for containing books placed on a desk or table. A book-end (*n.*) is used as a support for books.

In many large villages, certainly in every town, anyone desirous of buying books can find a bookseller (*n.*), and it is also possible to make a purchase at the book-stall (*n.*) of the local railway station. The study of books of rules or text-books is known as bookwork (*n.*), and a person who is continually reading books of any kind is called a book-worm (*n.*), a name also given to the larva of a small beetle which bores holes in the covers and pages of books.

A book account (*n.*) is a record of debit and credit dealings by anyone with a company or business firm. Such an account is entered in a special account book by a book-keeper (*n.*), whose occupation is that of book-keeping (*n.*) or accountancy. Its duty is to ensure

that all business dealings are booked (*bukt*, *adj.*), and to record among other items any book-debt (*n.*).

At every railway booking-office (*n.*), the office at which one purchases railway-tickets, there is a booking-clerk (*n.*), who issues the tickets that passengers must possess before they can travel from one station to another. Railway companies often issue a booklet (*buk' let*, *n.*), or small book, giving information about their train services and the towns and seaside resorts to which their trains travel.

A book referred to for information, such as a gazetteer or encyclopaedia, is known as a book of reference. The Bible is often called The Book, or the Book of God, and its divisions are also described as books, such as the Book of Job, the Book of Genesis, and so on. To bring to book is to call a person to account; to be in one's bad books or black books is to be disliked by that person; to speak by the book is to speak correctly or with authority, and to speak without the book is to speak from memory. When we take a leaf out of anyone's book we act in a similar manner to the person named.

Book-muslin (*n.*) is a fine, light kind of muslin, and gets its name from the book-like way in which it is folded.

Common Teut. word. M.E. *bōk*, A.-S. *bōc*; cp. O. Norse *bōk*, G. *buch*. The connexion with A.-S. *bōc*, *bēce* beech-tree (cp. G. *buche*, L. *fagus* beech, Gr. *phēgos* an oak with edible acorn), due to the idea that the Teut. peoples originally used tablets of beech-wood for writing upon, is now regarded as uncertain.

**boom** [1] (boom), *n.* A loud, deep, resounding noise; sudden progress or prosperity. *v.i.* To make a resounding noise; to rush; to rise quickly in value or popularity. *v.t.* To utter resonantly; to make widely known. (F. *grondement*, *hausse rapide*; *gionder*, *hausser*; *faire crotte en valeur*.)

The boom of the bittern is a deep, ringing cry. A big clock booms the hour. A ship in full sail booms along.



Boom.—The boom keeps the bottom part of a sail taut.

A trade boom is a rush of business, and to boom anything is to force it into public notice.

An imitative word. M.E. *buncken*, *bunmen* to hum, make a booming sound; cp. G. *bunnen*, Dutch *bommen*.

**boom** [2] (boom), *n.* A long spar at-

tached to the mast of a ship at one end and controlled by a rope at the other end, used for keeping the bottom part of a sail taut; a barrier across a waterway to prevent vessels from entering. (F. *bout-hors*, *estacade*.)

A boom-jigger (*n.*) is a tackle for rigging the top-mast studding-sail booms in or out, a boom-sail (*n.*) is a sail attached to a boom, and a boom-sheet (*n.*) is a sheet or rope fastened to a boom to control it.

Dutch *boom*, tree, beam, bar; cp. G. *baum*, E. *beam*.

**boomerang** (boo' mè rāng), *n.* A missile or throwing weapon invented and used by the natives of Australia; a speech or other proceeding that recoils on the person from whom it originates. (F. *bommerang*.)

The boomerang is a curved, flattened piece of hard wood, rather like the wooden part of a coat-hanger, so shaped that when thrown sickle-wise it describes a number of curves in the air before striking the object aimed at. If it does not hit its mark it returns to the thrower.

When a native wishes to catch birds alive, he first rigs up a net near trees so that it is not easily seen. As soon as a flock appears he hurls his boomerang just short. This scares his prey so much that they swoop down into the decoy on the ground, the net is released by the pull of a rope, and the unfortunate captives are secured.

The name of the missile is that given to it by the natives of Australia.

**boon** [1] (boon), *n.* A favour; something very advantageous or helpful. (F. *bienfait*, *faveur*, *avantage*.)

We do not often use this word now, though we still sometimes speak, for instance, of a thing being a boon to mankind, meaning that it has proved of very great benefit to the world at large.

Of Scand. origin, M.E. *bōne*, O. Norse *bōn*; cp. A.-S. *bēn*, all meaning petition, and later the gift of the thing asked for, probably from a confusion with [2].

**boon** [2] (boon), *adj.* Gay; jolly. (F. *joyeux*.)

A boon companion is a jovial or sympathetic friend, one who shares the joys of another.

F. *bon* good, jovial, from L. *bonus* good.

**boor** (boor), *n.* An ill-mannered person; a peasant; a rustic. (F. *paysan*, *rustre*.)

This was once the regular word for a peasant or countryman, and because peasants used to be very unrefined and ignorant, it has come to be applied to anyone who has churlish manners. The word was formerly used of Dutch or German peasants.

To be boorish (boor' ish, *adj.*) is to be rough and unsympathetic, and one who has manners like this behaves boorishly (boor' ish li, *adv.*), or with boorishness (boor' ish nēs, *n.*).

Probably from Dutch *boer* farmer, or Low G. *būr*, cognate with A.-S. *ge-būr* dweller, husbandman, from *būan* to dwell, cultivate; cp. G. *bauer* peasant, *bauen* to build, till.

**booster** (boost' èr), *n.* An electric generator used in long circuits to keep up the pressure. (F. *survolteur*.)

Suppose that current has to be sent from a power station through a conductor twenty miles long supplying power to a tramway. The resistance of the conductor itself, and the tapping of the current by many trams along the route, would cause a steady fall in the strength of the current towards the far end if measures were not taken to



Boomerang.—An Australian native using a boomerang for the purpose of driving wild ducks into a net. As soon as the ducks touch the net it falls and they become prisoners.

prevent this. A second conductor, called a feeder, is therefore run straight from the station to the far end of the main conductor, and a booster dynamo pumps sufficient current through this feeder to make up for any loss in pressure.

When the current on the return cable of an electric railway or tramway is too strong, negative boosters are used to draw some of it off.

Some steam locomotives have a booster engine (*n.*) to help the main engine when starting a train or mounting an incline. The booster goes out of action automatically when a certain speed is reached.

U.S.A. *boost* (slang word) to push or shove behind, assist.

MANY TYPES OF BOOT FOR MANY TYPES OF PEOPLE



Boot.—Reading from top left the boots pictured are those of an important official in China, of a girl of Greenland, of a Basque peasant of Spain, of a Cossack of Georgia, in Transcaucasia, of a fisherman of Normandy, and of a Laplander.

# BOOTS: THEIR AGE-LONG MARCH

*From the Time when the Sole was tied to the Foot to the Present Day*

**boot** [1]-(boot), *n.* A foot-covering that reaches above the ankle; an instrument of torture; a compartment for luggage in a coach. *v.i.* To put boots on. *v.t.* To torture with the boot. (F. *botte, bottine, brodequin, coffre*; *mettre des bottes*; *mettre au brodequin*.)

A boot differs from a shoe in height. A shoe does not cover the ankle, whereas a boot may come up to, and over, the thigh. Most boots are made of leather, but some have the upper parts made of cloth, while those for use in water are made of cotton canvas covered with rubber. A diver wears boots weighted with thick soles of lead in order to preserve his balance when he is under water.

The earliest form of foot-covering was the sandal, which was little more than a sole tied to the foot. In cold regions men put their feet into roughly-shaped bags of untanned hide. It was from these two primitive forms of foot-wear—soles without uppers and uppers without soles—that the boot and shoe developed.

The ancient Romans were rather elaborately shod. The *caliga*, from which the Emperor Gaius got his nickname Caligula, was a heavy boot for soldiers, thickly studded with nails.

After the coming of the Normans English boots and shoes began to take on the strangest shapes. By the reign of Edward IV the points of the toes had become so long that they had to be turned up and fastened to the knee. Such extravagances were abolished by law, and then the toes went to the opposite extreme, becoming almost square.

Not until the reign of Queen Elizabeth was the heel invented, to keep the foot more firmly in the stirrup, and for hundreds of years a right boot in England was the same shape as a left. Boots were made the same shape for both feet until late in the eighteenth century.

The upper parts, or "uppers," of a boot are stitched together by a machine or workman called a boot-closer (*n.*), and then the bootmaker (*n.*) sticks the uppers on to the soles. Long boots, such as those used when riding horseback, are pulled on with a boot-hook (*n.*) passed through a loop on the boot, and are pulled off with the aid of a boot-jack (*n.*). This is a short piece of

board, notched at one end, which is raised off the ground by a bar underneath. The heel of the boot is pushed into the notch and pulled, while the jack is held down by the other foot.

When not being worn a boot can be kept in shape by placing inside it a boot-tree (*n.*), an instrument consisting of two wooden blocks and a wedge. This instrument is sometimes called a boot-last (*n.*). The warm, woollen overstockings which a fisherman puts on underneath his rubber thigh boots are called boot-stockings (*n.pl.*) or boot-hose (*n.pl.*), and the narrow piece of leather or woven material used for tying up boots is a boot-lace (*n.*). In cold weather little children often wear knitted boots or gaiters, known as bootees (boo tēz', *n.pl.*) or bootkins (boo' ti kinz, *n.pl.*), but many poor children have to go barefooted or bootless (boot' les, *adj.*). The man who puts soles and heels on our boots and in other ways gives them a new lease of life is a boot-repairer (*n.*).

At an hotel the boots (boots, *n.*) is the man or boy who cleans boots, looks after luggage, and does other odd jobs. A person with his boots on is said to be booted (boo' tēd, *adj.*), and to be booted and spurred means to be prepared or to be in a state of readiness. This expression dates back to the time when travelling generally meant riding horseback. At the trumpet-call known as "boot and saddle" cavalrymen mount their horses. When we say that the boot is on the other foot we mean that the rights of a matter are the other way round, or that things have changed completely round.

During the sixteenth and seventeenth centuries a terrible instrument of torture called the boot was used in Scotland and elsewhere as a punishment or to make prisoners confess their crimes. The boot was an iron framework into which the leg was thrust. Wedges were then driven between the boot and the leg until the suffering prisoner either confessed or fainted from the great pain.

The boot of a carriage in which luggage used to be stowed was in earlier times an open seat for a servant.

M.E. *bōte*, O.F. *bote*, from L.L. *botta*, a word of unknown origin.



Boot.—The top boots of a Guardsman.

**boot** [2] (boot), *n.* Use ; advantage ; something over and above. *v.t.* To benefit. *v.i.* To be of service. (F. *profit, avantage, en sus ; profiter à ; servir.*)

This word is seldom used nowadays, except in poetical language, and in the phrase to boot. If we say that a person is a good friend and a good enemy to boot, we mean that over and above his faculty for keeping friends he has a well-developed capacity for hating.

If a man wants to see a friend and finds on arriving at his house that he is not at home, he has gone on a bootless (boot' les, *adj.*) errand. He will be disappointed at its bootlessness (boot' les nés, *n.*), and the friend will regret that the journey has been undertaken bootlessly (boot' les li, *adv.*).

Common Teut. word. M.E. *bōte* repair, A.-S. *bōt* advantage, remedy ; cp. *better, best.*

**Bootes** (bō ō' tēz), *n.* A group of stars in the northern sky, near the tail of the Great Bear. (F. *le Bouvier.*)

According to the Greek myth, Bootes was the man who invented the plough, and he was rewarded by being placed in the sky as a group of stars together with the Plough. Sometimes Bootes is represented not as the Ploughman or Wagoner, but as the Great Bear keeper, with two hunting dogs on the leash.

L. from Gr. *bōōtes* herdsman, from *bous* (gen *bo-os*) ox.

**booth** (booth), *n.* A temporary shelter or dwelling built of light material. (F. *baraque.*)

Originally a booth was a shelter built of, or at least roofed over with, boughs of trees. To-day, the covered stalls erected at a fair, usually constructed of canvas and wood, are called booths. During an election, the place where we record our votes is called a polling booth.

Of Scand. origin. Dan. *boð* (from O. Dan. *both*), cognate with G. *bude*.

**booty** (boo' ti), *n.* The spoil or plunder taken from an enemy or carried off by a thief. (F. *butin.*)

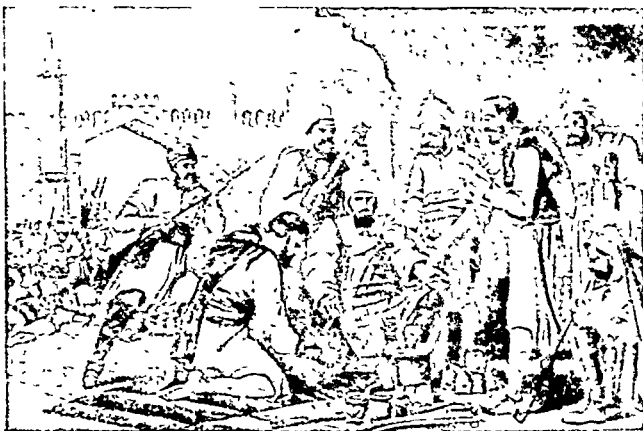
In the life-story of Sir Francis Drake we may read of the rich booty of bars of gold and silver and other treasure which the great navigator took from Spanish ships and towns. It is on record that from one treasure ship alone Drake secured eighty pounds weight of gold, thirteen chests of pieces of eight, and a vast quantity of jewels. On another occasion he and his men secured a convoy of some eight hundred pounds of silver, and surprised a lonely Spaniard asleep with over a dozen bars of silver by his side.

If anyone in a game or other contest plays

purposely to make his side lose, we say that he is playing booty.

Perhaps F. *butin*, probably of Low G. or Scand. origin. O. Norse *byti* exchange, booty, Dan. *bytte*, G. *beute*. The *oo* is probably due to a confusion with E. *boot* [2]. SYN.: Loot, plunder, spoil.

**bo-peep** (bō pēp'), *n.* A game often played by small children, in which one player hides



Booty.—Sikh troops dividing booty taken from mutineers after the relief of Lucknow in 1857.

and then suddenly jumps out, startling the other players by crying "Bo!" The game is also known as peep-bo. (F. *cligne-musette.*)

E. *bo* and *peep*.

**boracic** (bör äs' ik), *adj.* Of or relating to borax. See borax.

**borage** (bür' äj), *n.* A blue-flowered plant used for flavouring. (F. *bourrache.*)

Formerly borage was much used as an ingredient in various medicines, but nowadays its use is mostly confined to the flavouring of salads and certain drinks. It has hairy leaves and stem, and the flower is a very bright blue. It is a native of the central and southern regions of Europe and also of north Africa. The scientific name is *Borago officinalis*.

O.F. *bourage*, *bourace*, from L.L. *borago*, L.L. *borra* a coat of coarse stuff, with reference to the hairy leaves. Others derive from Arabic *ab-rashh* father of sweat, causing sweat.

**borax** (bör' äks), *n.* A crystalline sodium salt of heated boric acid. (F. *borax.*)

Borax is used in metal working to make mixtures melt or flow more easily, and also in washing powders. Anything connected with or derived from borax is said to be boracic (bör äs' ik, *adj.*). In volcanic regions in Italy great jets of steam burst out from time to time, and these jets carry a whitish substance that is gradually deposited around them. This is boric acid (*n.*), often known as boric acid (*n.*), because anything boric (bör' ik, *adj.*) is related to the chemical element boron (bör' ōn, *n.*), a light-weight element present in borax, boric acid, etc.



Formerly this acid was used to preserve foods, but it is not allowed to be used for that purpose now. It gives a pretty green colour when dusted into the flame of methylated spirit. Boracite (bō' rā sīt, *n.*) is a native borate of magnesia.

Of Arabic or Pers. origin. M.E. *borace*, O.F. *boras*, L.L. *boracum*, Arabic *būrāh*, Pers. *būrah*.

**Bordeaux** (bör dö'), *n.* French wines grown in the Gironde district; claret. (F. *Bordeaux*.)

The white and red wines grown in the Gironde and exported from Bordeaux, whence their name, are noted for their delicate bouquet. St. Julien, Graves, Sauterne, and St. Emilion are all famous Bordeaux. The wine grown in Médoc, in the Bordeaux district, is known to us as claret.

**border** (bör' dër), *n.* Edge; limit; boundary; frontier. *v.t.* To make an edging or border; to adjoin. *v.i.* To lie on the border. (F. *bord*, *frontière*; *border*, *confiner*; *toucher à*.)

The border or bordering (bör' dër ing, *n.*) of a garment or other article is often ornamental, and the border of a garden is often planted with hardy plants called border-plants (*n.pl.*). The boundaries of a country are its borders, and the people living near them are borderers (bör' dër èrz, *n.pl.*). In the days when men spoke of the boundary line between Scotland and England as the border, border warfare was often waged between the two races. The land near the border of two countries is known as the border-land (*n.*).

We may speak of the borderless (bör' der lès, *adj.*) blue of the sky; of the cold waters that border the warmer waters of the Gulf Stream. We may say that a person on the verge of crying is bordering upon tears, or may speak of a rash action as bordering upon madness.

M.E. and O.F. *bordure*, L.L. *bordātūra* edge, edging, from Teut. *bord* edge. SYN.: Boundary, brim, edge, limit, verge. ANT.: Centre, interior.

**bordure** (bör' dūr), *n.* A term used in heraldry for the border of a shield or banner. (F. *bordure*.)

Round the edge of an heraldic shield or banner there runs a band or bordure, as it is called, and this should occupy a fifth part of the whole shield or banner.

F. word, adopted in E.; cp. *border*.

**bore** [ɪ] (bör), *v.t.* To pierce through. *v.i.* To make a hole. *n.* A hole made by boring. (F. *percer*; *trou*.)

To make any kind of hole by a tool that is rotated or turned round and round is to

bore it. A tool called an auger is used for boring holes in wood, a steel drill is used for metal, and for boring holes deep down into the earth a special percussion boring tool worked by steam or compressed air is employed. Very deep borings are made to find coal or ore, and in making artesian wells. Hard rock is pierced by striking it with a steel bit at the end of a long rod, which is whirled round in the hole. The fragments are removed by lowering a tube with a valve in its lower end. A person who goes on his way steadily bores along, and in racing a horse, boat, or athlete is said

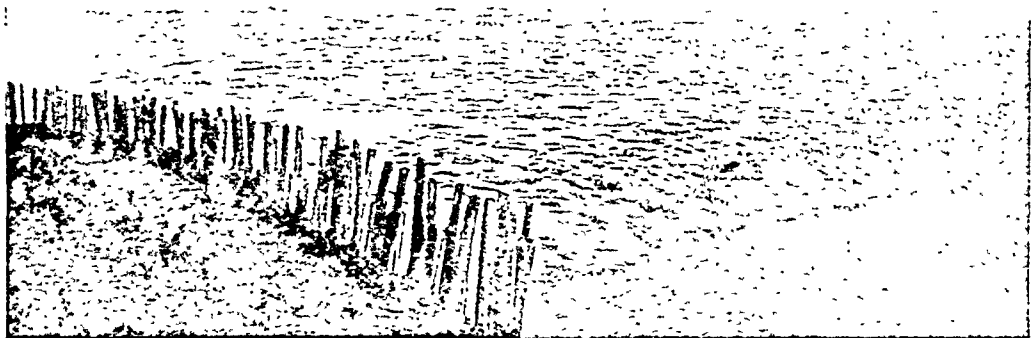


**Bore.**—After over four years of hard work, in 1911 the two parties of men who had been boring the Loetschen Tunnel, in Switzerland, joined hands in the centre of the mountain.

to bore if pushing against another competitor. The action of a boxer who rushes an opponent round the ring or on to the ropes by sheer force of weight is called boring.

The hole that is drilled is called a bore, a name that is also given to the long cavity or boring (bör' ing, *n.*) of a gun-barrel, and to the diameter of the cavity of the gun-barrel or other tube. Any person, animal, or machine which bores is described as a borer (bör' èr, *n.*), a name that is also given to certain insects, especially the destructive *Teredo*, or shipworm.

Common Teut. word. M.E. *boren*, A.-S. *borian*; cp. G. *bohren*, akin to L. *forāre* to perforate. SYN.: Drill, penetrate, perforate, pierce.



Bore.—A bore flowing up the Chinese river Taientang. It rushes in the opposite direction to the current. A similar tidal wave takes place in the River Severn.

**bore** [2] (bôr), *n.* A high tidal wave. (F. *raz de marée*.)

Visitors to the West of England may observe the curiosity known as a bore in the River Severn. It occurs at spring-tides, that is, about the time when the moon is at the full or there is a new moon, rarely at other times. The tidal wave rushes up the river channel from the mouth with such force that it sounds like the rolling of distant thunder. It marches up the river in the opposite direction to the current, reaching a height of about three feet, and sometimes causing considerable damage to shipping. Other British rivers, the Trent for example, have bores or eagres.

In other parts of the world bores reach a greater height, that in the Brahmaputra rising to upwards of twelve feet. Bores only occur in swiftly-flowing rivers, which have a funnel-shaped estuary, and a large bar of sand which is practically dry at low-water.

Perhaps O. Norse *bjra* billow.

**bore** [3] (bôr), *n.* A person or thing that is tiresome. *v.t.* To weary with dull chatter. (F. *ennuyeur*; *ennuyer*.)

The earliest use of the word in these senses occurred about the middle of the eighteenth century, when it also meant boredom (bôr' dôm, *n.*), the state of being bored.

Apparently of F. origin, perhaps from *bourrer* to stuff, satiate. *SYN.*: Plague, vex, weary, worry. *ANT.*: Delight, gratify, please.

**bore** [4] (bôr). This is the past tense of the verb bear. (See bear.)

**Boreas** (bôr' é ás), *n.* The north wind. (F. *Borée*.)

According to the old Greek tales, Boreas, the spirit or personification of the north wind, was the son of a Titan named Astræus, his mother being Eos, the morning. Boreas was believed to live in a cave on Mount Haemus, in Thrace. The word is used only in poetry and in poetical writing. Boreal (bôr' é âl, *adj.*) is used of anything relating to the north or the north wind.

**borecole** (bôr' kôl), *n.* A loose, open-headed variety of cabbage. (F. *chou vert*, *chou d'hiver*.)

The borecole is a variety of cabbage (*Brassica oleracea*) with curly or wrinkled leaves. It is also called curly kail and peasant's cabbage, and is grown for winter use.

Dutch *boerenkool*, from *boer* peasant, *kool* cabbage, cole (kale, kail), from L. *caulis* stalk, cabbage.

**boreen** (bô rên'), *n.* A narrow lane or bridle path; (fancifully) an opening or narrow way through a crowd. (F. *sentier*, *route cavalière*.)

Of Celtic origin. Irish *botharín*, dim. of *bothar* lane, passage, bridle-path.

**boric** (bôr' ik), *adj.* Of or derived from boron. See borax.

**born** (börn), *p.p.* and *adj.* Brought forth; produced. *p.p.* of bear. See bear [2]. (F. *né*, fem. *née*, *produit*, fem. *produite*.)

This word is often used in such expressions as born rich, born to be hanged, a born genius. To be "born with a silver spoon in one's mouth" is to be born to wealth, and "born under a lucky star" is said of one who is fortunate in life or a particular venture.

**borne** (börn). The past participle of bear, in the sense of carry. See bear [2].

**boron** (bôr' ôn), *n.* A non-metallic solid element. See borax.

**borough** (bûr' ô), *n.* A town with a corporation and privileges conferred on it by royal charter; a town which elects a member to Parliament. See burgh. (F. *bourg*.)

A municipal borough which has its own government, may form part of a parliamentary borough. The term borough is not often used of a town which has the rank of a city. The Borough is the name given to the borough of Southwark in London, or more usually to the central part of it.

A pocket or close borough was one owned by one or a few persons, and to own or purchase a borough was to have the power to control the election of its member or members to Parliament. So a rotten borough

was one which was only a borough in name, its member being elected to Parliament purely through the power of money or family influence. A county borough is a borough of more than fifty thousand inhabitants which ranks for governing purposes as a county.

**Borough-English** (bŭr' ō ing glish, *n.*) was a form of tenure, common in some parts of England, by which the youngest son inherits all the real estate.

Common Teut. word. M.E. *borgh*, *burgh*, A.-S. *burh*, *burg*, literally a fortified place *beorgan* to protect, shelter; cp. G. *burg*, *bergen*. The word appears in terminations of place-names like Edinburgh, Canterbury, and Peterborough.

**borrow** (bor' ō), *v.t.* To obtain on loan or security; to take honestly for a time without payment; to adopt or derive from another. (F. *emprunter*.)

There are two kinds of borrowing (bor' ō ing, *n.*). In the one you get the lender's consent, and have the thing borrowed for a time only; you mean to return it, and a pledge may be given to do so. In the other, no consent is asked, and it is not meant to return the thing borrowed. Thus, authors, artists, and inventors borrow ideas or style or both from others; and words are taken into one language from another. *Serviette*, for instance, now English, is borrowed from the French.

Sometimes borrowing is very close to stealing, and borrowed is often a sarcastic way of saying stolen.

A golfer on a sloping putting green when he plays his ball up the slope so that it shall roll back toward the hole is said to borrow.

In Scotland the borrowing days, under the old system of counting the year, were the last three days of March, which that month was supposed to have borrowed from April, and made the first rainy, the second a day of snow and sleet, and the third one of keen frost. The saying does not now fit exactly, but the last days of March are still sometimes called the borrowing days.

M.E. *bor(e)wen*, A.-S. *borgian* to take or give a pledge, from *borg* pledge, security: cp. G. *borgen* to lend or borrow.

**bort** (bört), *n.* Small fragments of diamond. (F. *bort*, *diamant de peu de valeur*.)

These fragments are crushed into powder and used for cutting and polishing other diamonds and precious stones. Bort may consist of fragments split from diamonds in roughly shaping them; or of small diamonds of inferior quality, valueless as jewels. The name is also given to a kind of diamond found in massive form in Brazil, and used in diamond drills and stone saws.

Perhaps from O.F. *bort* (also spelt *bord*, *bourc*) hence counterfeit imperfect.

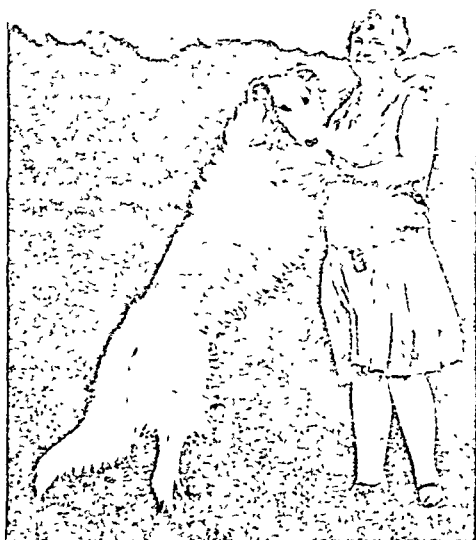
**borzoi** (bör zoi'), *n.* The Russian wolfhound. (F. *lévrier russe*.)

The borzoi has the general lines of a greyhound but is a much larger and heavier

dog, standing up to thirty-three inches. Its coat is thick and silky, and usually white, marked more or less with lemon or other colour.

In Russia borzois are used in couples to hunt wolves. When a wolf is sighted, a brace of borzois are slipped. They soon overtake their quarry and attack it from either side; and, on getting a hold, hang on till the huntsmen come up and dispatch the wolf. The first borzois to reach England were a pair given to King Edward VII (then Prince of Wales) by the Tsar Alexander II in 1870.

Rus. *borzoi* swift and (as a *n.*) greyhound



**Borzoi.**—In Russia borzois are used in couples to hunt wolves. The first pair to reach England belonged to King Edward VII, when Prince of Wales.

**boscage** (bos' kà), *n.* A mass of trees or shrubs; woodland; thick foliage. Another spelling is *boskage*. (F. *bocage*.)

M.E. *boshage*, F. *boscage*, *bocage*, L.L. *boscus* bush, akin to G. *busch*, E. *bush* and collective suffix -age, from L. -*altum* through F.

**bosh** (bosh), *n.* Nonsense. *inter.* Rubbish! (F. *galimatias*, *farce*.)

This word is a comparatively recent addition to the English language, for it only came into use in the first half of the nineteenth century. In 1834 James Morier (1780-1849), an Englishman in the diplomatic service, published a fascinating Eastern romance called "Ayesha, the Maid of Kars." In this book he several times used the word *bosh*, and as "Ayesha" was very popular, this word quickly came into general use.

Turkish *bosh* empty, worthless

**bosk** (bosk), *n.* A thicket; plantation. (F. *bosquet*.)

The words *bosket* (bos' kèt, *n.*) and *bosquet* (bos' kèt, *n.*) are also used in the same way as *bosk*, and often mean the

small trees of a garden or park. We say that a part of a country is bosky (bos' ki, *adj.*), meaning that it is covered with bushes or thickets, and its condition is boskiness (bos' ki nēs, *n.*).

Bosk (M.E. *bush*, *busch*) is probably another form of bush. Bosket is from F. *bosquet*, from Ital. *bosco* wood, dim. *boschetto* thicket.

**bosom** (buz' ūm), *n.* The breast of a human being; the part of the dress which covers the bosom; an embrace; the breast or heart as the seat of feelings; the inmost part, midst; the surface of water or of the ground. *v.t.* To put into or hide in the bosom; to receive into close friendship. (F. *sein*, *cœur*, *intérieur*; *renfermer dans son sein*, *faire intimité avec*.)

A girl's dearest and best friend is her bosom friend, whom she introduces to the bosom of her family, that is, takes into their midst. Abraham's bosom is a biblical term for the abode of the blessed dead. A convert is received into the bosom of the Church. Poetically, flowers may be said to deck the bosom of the earth, and precious stones are hidden in its bosom, while a boat may be rocked on the bosom of the deep. Milton ("L'Allegro," 78) writes of towers "bosom'd high in tufted trees."

M.E. *bōsem*, A.-S. *bōsm*, *bōsum*, akin to Dutch *boezem*, G. *busen*. SYN.: Core, depth, heart, recesses.

**boss** [1] (bos), *n.* A rounded hump or protuberance; an ornament of this form; in architecture a knob at the point where the ribs of a vault intersect. *v.t.* To fashion into a bossy shape; to emboss; to ornament with bosses. (F. *bosse*; *orne* *de bosses*.)

Among the various kinds of boss are the metal projection in the centre of a shield, the round knobs on each side of a horse's bit, the metal studs with which book-covers were sometimes decorated, also the thickened part of a shaft to which a wheel is attached. Geologists give the name boss to a mass of rock which has welled up through a fissure in the earth and formed a hill.

Anything bossed (boss, *adj.*) is ornamented with a raised design, and a bossy (bos' i, *adj.*) design or article is one that is studded with raised ornaments.

M.E. *bocce*, *boche*, O.F. *bocce*, F. *bosse*, perhaps from O.H.G. *bōzen* to beat, causing a bump or swelling.

**boss** [2] (bos), *n.* A person in authority, such as a master, or a foreman. *adj.* The most important or the best of its kind. *i.t.* To take command of; to domineer over; to manage. (F. *maître*; *le meilleur*; *jouer le premier rôle*, *diriger*.)

"The boss" is a rather slangy expression in England for a person in authority, but in America, whence the word comes, the name is given more or less officially to the head of an organised political party. "To boss it" over others is to take upon oneself the attitude of a person in authority, to domineer.

U.S.A. colloquialism, from Dutch *baas* master.

**boston** (bos' tōn), *n.* A game of cards; a kind of dance. (F. *boston*.)

The game of cards, which resembles whist, is named after the city of Boston in America, and various terms used in the game refer to its siege and capture by the Americans in 1776. The dance also takes its name from the city.

**Boswell** (boz' wèl), *n.* A very careful and minute biographer.

The life and character of no great man are better known than those of Dr. Samuel Johnson, and this is due to the genius of James Boswell, the Scotsman who wrote his biography. And so, when a great man dies and everybody wants to know all about his life and career and what manner of man he was, we say we hope he will find a worthy Boswell, that is, a man who can write the story of his life really well.

When anybody writes a biography in such a way as to bring out his hero's character in great detail he is said to Boswellize (boz' wèl iz, *v.t.*), and his writing is Boswellian (boz' wèl' yān, *adj.*) or Boswellism (boz' wèl izm, *n.*).

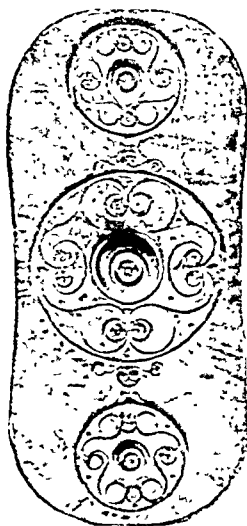
**botanic** (bō tăn' ik), *adj.* Relating or pertaining to plants or the scientific study of them. Also botanical (bō tăn' ik āl), (F. *botanique*.)

Botanic gardens are gardens which are specially laid out so that those who wish can study plants. There are famous gardens at Kew for that purpose. A botanist (bot' ā nist, *n.*) is a person who makes a study of botany (bot' ā nī, *n.*) or the science which treats of the vegetable kingdom. When he is studying plants he is said to

botanize (bot' ān iz, *v.i.*) and so study botanically (bō tăn' ik āl li, *adv.*).

Botany Bay is the name of a settlement in New South Wales, Australia, whither convicts were once sent from England. It was so named from the number of new plants discovered there by Captain Cook's expedition in 1770. Botany wool (*n.*) and Botany yarn (*n.*) are the wool from Botany Bay and the yarn made from it.

Gr. *botanikos* connected with plants, from *botanē* grass, plant, from *boskein* to eat or supply grass or herbage.



Boss.—The boss on an enameled bronze shield found in the Thames and now in the British Museum.



Botanic.—A magnolia in full bloom in the botanic gardens at Kew, one of the most famous places of its kind in the world.

**botargo** (bó tar' gō), *n.* A sauce or relish made from the roes of mullet and tunny. (F. *boutarge*.)

Ital. *botargo*, from Arabic *butar'ha*, from Coptic *outarakhon*, *ou-* being the indefinite article and *tarakhon* the Gr. *tarikhos* dried or pickled fish.

**botch** (boch), *n.* A clumsy patch or piece of work. *v.t.* To patch or repair clumsily. (F. *rapidéctage*; *rapidécteur*.)

A man called in to do repairs to the house who does them in a careless, untidy manner bungles or botches the work. Such a workman would be called a botcher (boch'er, *n.*), and his labours would result in botch-work (*n.*) or botchery (boch'er i, *n.*).

Probably another form of *boss* [1]; cp. *patch* and G. *batsen*.

**bot-fly** (bot' fli), *n.* A term applied to a genus of insects whose maggots live inside various domestic animals. (F. *cestre du cheval*.)

The bot (bot, *n.*) is the larva of the bot-fly. The common bot-fly (*Gastrophilus equi*) lays its eggs on the hair of horses. When the part upon which the eggs are laid begins to irritate, the horse licks it and, in so doing, swallows the eggs. Bots also infest sheep and cattle. The disease caused by them is sometimes called the bots or the botts.

No connexion with *bite*; cp. Gaelic *batar*, botting maggot.

**both** (both), *adj.* and *pron.* The two, the one and the other. *adv.* With equal truth in two cases. (F. *tous les deux*.)

We say, both my brothers are older than I am, and they are both (or both of them are)

good cricketers. One of them is both good-looking and clever.

Of Scand. origin. O. Norse *bóthir*, cp. G. *beide*. For *bo-*, cp. A-S *bī*, L. *ambo* (Gr. *am-pho*; *th* is O. Norse *thir* meaning they, the word being thus a compound).

**bother** (both' er), *v.t.* To tease, to annoy; to worry; to confuse or bewilder. *v.i.* To be troublesome; to make a fuss. *n.* Fuss, worry. (F. *ennuyer*, *embarrasser*; *c're emmuseur*, *s'inquiéter*, *ennui*, *embarras*.)

If anybody makes a fuss or worries himself about anything, he bothers, and if he worries other people about it he becomes bothersome (both' er sum, *adj.*). Bother is worry, fuss, little troubles, disturbance. **Botheration** (both' er á' shun, *n.*) means much the same; and both this word and the imperative bother are used as exclamations of annoyance or impatience.

Perhaps of Celtic origin, cp. Irish *beirfaint* trouble, M.E. *þóthren*, and E. *pothier*. See Harass, molest, pester, tease, vex, worry. ANS.: Calm, compose, quiet, soothe.

**bothy** (both' n), *n.* A hut, hovel, or outhouse, in which the unmarried men-servants on a Scottish farm are lodged. Another form is *bothie* (both' n). (F. *luthie*.)

The bothy system is the Scottish plan of building all the barns, outhouses and men's quarters in one large building, in which the labourers all live together.

Perhaps of Celtic origin, cp. Irish and Gaelic *luth* cottage, tent; cp. *luth*.

**bo-tree** (bō' trē), *n.* The sacred fig tree of the Buddhists. (F. *figuier sacré*.)

It is the name given to the pupal or peepul of India (*Ficus religiosa*, the "tree

of wisdom" under which the great Indian sage Gautama was sitting (about 533 B.C.) when he is said to have received the revelation which made him the Buddha. It is planted close to every Buddhist temple, and is also revered by the Hindus.

**botryoid** (bot' ri oid), *adj.* Resembling a bunch of grapes in form. (F. *botryoïde*.)

Some minerals, such as chalcidony, occur in the form of small globules clustered together, somewhat like a bunch of grapes; certain compounds of cobalt are also botryoid, or botryoidal (bot ri oi' däl, *adj.*). Flowers, such as those of the lilac, clustered together in the same form, are said to be racemose or botryose (bot' ri ôz, *adj.*).

Gr. *botrys* bunch of grapes, *eidos* likeness, form.

**bottle** [1] (bot' l), *n.* A narrow-necked vessel for containing liquids; a bottleful. *u.t.* To put into bottles. (F. *bouteille*; *mettre en bouteilles*.)

We who are accustomed to seeing bottles of glass find it hard to believe that hundreds of years ago skin was the material generally used for such vessels. Later on bottles were made of leather, and even nowadays bottles are not always made of glass. The rind of the fleshy gourd plants often serve for bottles in Italy, and in America bottles of paper are by no means uncommon.

A bottle-brush (*n.*) is a flexible brush for cleaning the inside of bottles. There is a special glass used in bottle-making called bottle-glass (*n.*), and its green hue has given rise to the term bottle-green (*n.* and *adj.*) for a colour of its tint. Bottle-washer (*n.*) is the name given to a person or machine that washes bottles, and the supporter who waits on a pugilist in the ring is familiarly called a bottle-holder (*n.*). From the fact that the fore part of its head suggests a bottle one member of the whale family is known as the bottle-nosed whale (*n.*) or bottle-head (*n.*), and anyone who has a thick, heavy nose is described as bottle-nosed (*adj.*).

The iron screws used on a big ship to tighten up her rigging, etc., are known as bottle-screws (*n.pl.*). A simple form of these screws, used on a smaller yacht, are sometimes called rigging-screws.

The expression fond of the bottle means given to heavy drinking, and to bottle up one's feelings is to restrain them or hold them back.

The bottle-tree (*n.*) or barrel-tree, of Australia (*Stroculia robusta*), is so called because its trunk is swollen into the form of a huge soda-water bottle, which may

measure some thirty to forty feet in circumference. The trunk is soft and porous, and its cavities contain a gummy substance which is squeezed out and used as food by the natives, as well as watery sap which is said to be lapped and drunk by thirsty travellers.

The bottle-gourd (*n.*) is a native of Africa and Asia with a pear-shaped fruit used for making tobacco pipe bowls as well as bottles. The scientific name of this plant is *Lagenaria vulgaris*.

M.E. *botel*, F. *bouteille*, from L.L. *buticula*, dim. of L.L. *butis* butt, cask, Gr. *pylinē* flask.



Bottle-tree.—The bottle-tree of Australia, the trunk of which looks like a huge bottle.

**bottle** [2] (bot' l), *n.* The name of several plants. (F. *bouteille*.)

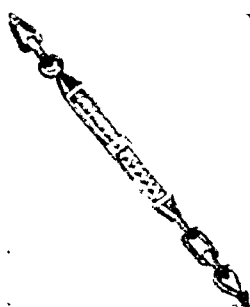
The yellow bottle, also called the buddle, is the corn marigold; the white bottle is the bladder campion; the blue bottle or bluebottle is the cornflower; the lungwort is sometimes called bottle-of-all-sorts.

Partly from the flower name *buddle*, of unknown origin, partly from bottle [1].

**bottle-brush plant** (bot' l brúsh plant), *n.* A plant shaped like a bottle-brush, especially the horse-tail and the mare's tail. (F. *goupillon*.)

Of the plants resembling a bottle-brush in the arrangement of the flowers and leaves, the horse-tail (*Equisetum arvens*) and the mare's tail (*Hippuris vulgaris*) are common in some parts of England, especially in marshy districts. In the U.S.A. a species of grass (*Asprella histris*) is called the bottle-brush grass; while the Australian bottle-brush (*Callistemon lanceolatus*) belongs to the myrtle family.

E. *bottle* and *brush*.



Bottle-screws.—Screws used on big ships to tighten up the rigging are called bottle-screws.

**bottom** (bot' òm), *n.* The lowest part of a thing; base; foundation; the part on which anything rests; bed of a stream or of a sheet of water; valley. *adj.* Last. *v.t.* To fathom; to put a base or bottom to. (F. *bas*, *fond*; *dernier*; *sonder*, *mettre un fond à*.)

If you are at the bottom of your class at school your name is last on the class list and you have fewer marks than anyone else. A small valley, or the lowest part of a village lying in a valley below the houses on the hillside, is called a bottom. The bottom of a pond is its floor under water, its area below the surface.

To be good at bottom is to be good at heart and in reality, in spite of careless or indifferent behaviour. To thank one from the bottom of one's heart is to express the most earnest, sincere gratitude.

The bottom of a dining-table is the end at which the hostess sits, as opposed to the top or head, which is the end occupied by the host. A ship's bottom is the lower portion in which the cargo is stowed, and goods imported in British bottoms are those brought in British vessels. A boat may be sent to the bottom by a collision, or may float bottom up. The system of lending money to a ship-owner on the security of his ship is called **bottomry** (bot' òm ri, *n.*).

To bet one's bottom dollar is an American expression meaning to bet or stake one's last penny or all one's fortune. The leader or planner of any venture is said to be the person at the bottom of it, and to get to the bottom of a story is to inquire into every detail of it.

A bottom is a ball of thread used in weaving, and Shakespeare had this meaning of the word in mind when he called the weaver in "A Midsummer Night's Dream" by the fitting name of Bottom.

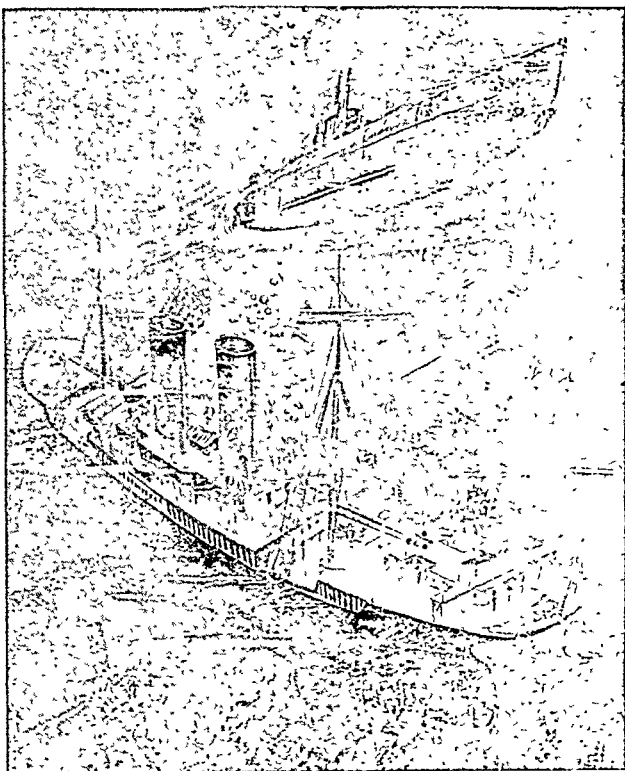
A **bottomed** (bot' òmd, *adj.*) object is one which has a base or bottom, while a **bottomless** (bot' òm lès, *adj.*) one has no base or floor, is of unknown depth, or is unfathomable. The bottomless pit is the abyss of hell. The **bottommost** (bot' òm mōst, *adj.*) book in a pile is the one underneath all the others.

M.E. *bothem*, *bōtum*, A.-S. *botm*; cognate with G. *boden*, L. *fundus*, Gr. *pythmēn*. SYN.: Base, floor, foundation, groundwork, keel, nadir, root. ANT.: Apex, crest, crown, head, summit, top.

**botulism** (bot' ū lizm), *n.* A disease or poisoning caused by a germ found in decomposed meat. (F. *botulisme*.)

The germs of botulism are found particularly in sausage meat, and for that reason the disease, which is very often fatal, is most common in Germany, where it is customary to eat raw or partly-cooked sausages. Proper cooking destroys the germs.

L. *botulus* sausage, and suffix *-ism* expressing state or condition (due to the effect of diseased sausage meat).



Bottom.—A sunken liner and a smaller steamer resting at the bottom of the sea. Passing over the former is a submarine.

**boucher** (boo shā'), *n.* In archaeology, a flint tool used as an axe. (F. *boucher*, *hache en silex*.)

Primitive savages had no idea of the use of metals, and they used flints with a sharp, chipped edge in place of the modern axe and knife. A flint tool of a special shape is called a boucher after a famous French archaeologist, Jacques Boucher de Crèvecœur de Perthes (1788-1868), who wrote a number of books on ancient man.

**boudoir** (boo' dvar), *n.* A lady's private sitting-room. (F. *boudoir*.)

This word comes from the French verb *bouder* to pout or sulk, and the idea of the boudoir, therefore, is of an apartment where a lady may give way to annoyance or ill-humour.

**bouffant** (boo fan'), *adj.* Puffed out. (F. *bouffé*.)

This French word is used mainly to describe the very full skirts and sleeves that have from time to time formed part of fashionable attire in England. At the time of Henry VIII, for instance, there was an influx of fashions borrowed from the French Court, and men's dress became extremely elaborate. The sleeves were bouffant, that is, puffed out and stiffened, then slashed and elaborately lined and trimmed.

Pres. p. *F. bouffer* to swell, imitative word, like the sound made in puffing out the cheeks.



**Bouffant.**—Henry VIII wearing bouffant sleeves, a fashion borrowed from the French Court.

**bougainvillaea** (boo gan vi lē' ā), *n.* A genus of tropical plants, the flowers of which are surrounded by large red or purple bracts. Another spelling is *bougainvillia* (boo gan vil' i ā). (*F. bougainvillee*.)

The plant was named in honour of Louis Bougainville, a French admiral, who commanded an expedition round the world in 1766-69, and made many discoveries.

**bough** (bou), *n.* A large arm of a tree, from which many smaller arms, or branches, may spring. (*F. branche*.)

*A.-S. bōg, bōh*, originally meaning the arm or shoulder; *cp. G. bug*, bow, bend, *bugen* to bend. *Syn.*: Arm, branch, limb.

**bought** (bawt). This is the past tense and past participle of *buy*. See *buy*.

**bougie** (boo' zhē), *n.* A wax candle; an instrument used by surgeons.

This is the French word for candle. It is derived from Bougie, a seaport of Algeria, which has long been famous for making wax candles.

**Boulangism** (boo' lan zhizm), *n.* The policy of Boulanger. (*F. Boulangisme*.)

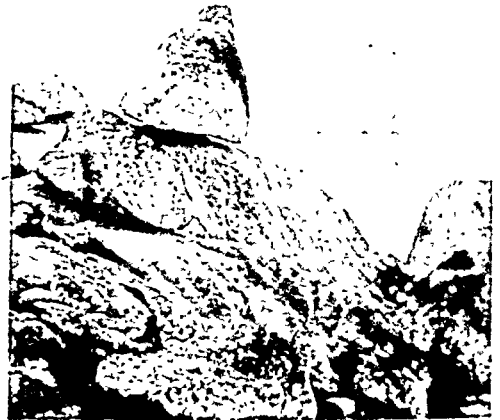
From about 1880 to 1885, Parisians had a picturesque and popular idol in the person

of General Georges Ernest Jean Marie Boulanger (1837-91)—the General on a Black Horse. Germany had invaded and defeated France in 1870; Boulanger clamoured for revenge, and wanted for this purpose to make of France an armed camp under his own leadership. He almost brought about a revolution, for he had a very strong following. The government, however, regarded him as a dangerous firebrand, and were determined to be rid of him.

Once he had been war minister, but his name was struck off the army list, and a warrant was issued for his arrest. He escaped to London, but finally he shot himself in Brussels. His political views were called Boulangism, his followers Boulangists (boo' lan zhists, *n.pl.*).

**boulder** (bōl' dēr), *n.* A large mass of stone more or less rounded by the action of water or ice. (*F. grosse pierre arrondie*.)

Boulders line the beds of many rapid streams, and cover the shores of rocky coasts. During the Ice Age, the mountains were covered deep in ice. As this slid down slowly, it tore pieces from the rocks and wore away their edges as it carried them along. The fine particles worn off by the ice formed a thick layer, which, when the ice melted, was deposited on the ground beneath as boulder-clay (*n.*), containing many boulders.



**Boulder.**—Masses of stone or boulders which have been more or less rounded by the action of water or ice.

This boulder formation (*n.*), as geologists call it, covers much of the low grounds of Scotland and Northern England, and a large part of Canada, Sweden, Poland, Germany, and Switzerland. The clay is so fine and closely packed as to be watertight, while the boulders, which may be many yards in length and have been carried great distances, show the action of the ice by the scratches on their surface.

Possibly of Scand. origin. *M.E. bullerstein*; *cp. Swed. bullerstein*, from *bulira* to roar (then stone, imitative of the sound of large stones rolling down).



**boulevard** (bool' var), *n.* A broad street in a town, planted with trees. (F. *boulevard*.)

This word was originally a French technical term. The original boulevards of Paris were the broad earthen ramparts surrounding the city just outside the walls.



Boulevard.—The Boulevard des Capucines, looking towards the Madeleine, Paris.

When the old fortifications were given up, these ramparts were turned into avenues. Afterwards other avenues or boulevards were laid out in the city. It was thought that they would make it easier to suppress insurrections. The boulevards of Paris, and of many other foreign cities, are favourite promenades, and anyone who is fond of strolling up and down them is a boulevardier (bool var' di ā, *n.*).

In recent years some boulevards have been formed in London, as, for instance, on some parts of the Thames Embankment.

F. from G. *böllwerk* bulwark.

**boulter** (böl' tēr), *n.* A fishing-line which has several hooks on it.

Boulters are often used by fishermen at sea who want to catch fish as quickly as possible, especially when they run into a small shoal of fish. Another name for a boulder is a ledger line.

Other forms are *bulley* and *bultow*.

**bounce** (bouns), *v.i.* To bound or rebound, as a ball; to move hastily and noisily; to talk boastfully; to bluster; to swagger. *v.t.* To cause to bound; to bluff; to bully. *n.* A sudden, noisy blow or thump; a leap, spring, or rebound; an impudent boast; audacity. *inter.* and *adv.* Bang; with a bounce. (F. *bondir*, *faire le fanfaron*; *bruit soudain*, *saut*, *audace*; *pan*.)

To slam a door, or to throw a ball so that it rebounds, is to bounce it; something that springs up suddenly bounces. A noisy boy bounces into a room, and a person who talks big about himself, or enters company in a noisy, unceremonious fashion, or acts impudently, is a bouncer (bouns' ēr, *n.*), so also is a boastful lie. Pushing people often get their way by sheer bounce. Something large of its kind, particularly a boy or girl or young animal, active, bold and vigorous, is

a bouncing (bouns' ing, *adj.*) creature, and something that is done with a bounce is done bouncingly (bouns' ing li, *adv.*).

An imitative word; cp. bump, M.E. *bunsen* to beat, Dutch *bonzen*, G. *bumps*, *buns bang*! whack!

**bound** [1] (bound), *v.i.* To leap lightly; to bounce. *n.* A leap; a spring; a bounce. (F. *bond*, *saut*; *bondir*, *sauter*.)

A rubber ball thrown to the ground will bound or rebound, and deer and other animals bound forward. In certain dances it is necessary for those taking part to bound from one foot to the other. An onrushing wave is said to bound at the moment that it is about to break. A runner who catches up with an opponent very quickly is said to overtake him by leaps and bounds. A person or thing which leaps or bounds is a bounder (bound' ēr, *n.*).

F. *bondir*, originally meaning to resound and so recoil, rebound; cp. L.L. *bombitäre*, L.L. *bombus* humming or buzzing sound, Gr. *bombos*, E. *boom*, *bomb*. *Syn.*: Leap, jump, skip, spring.

**bound** [2] (bound), *n.* Limit; restriction. *v.t.* To limit; to set bounds to. (F. *limite*; *limiter*.)

The plural is generally used in the noun, as in the phrase out of bounds, meaning beyond certain limits set by military or school authorities. Beating the bounds is an English custom of long standing, the practice of which preserved the bounds or limits of the parish. The custom consists of beating the boundary stones with sticks by boys, who are escorted on their rounds by church and parish officials. A sea, a lake, or a mountain range may bound a country, but many countries have artificial or man-made bounds or borders.



Bound.—A clever performer bound by ropes from which he will wriggle himself free.

Space is regarded as boundless (bound' lēs, *adj.*), and thus possesses boundlessness (bound' lēs nēs, *n.*). We may say that a person is boundlessly (bound' lēs li, *adv.*) impudent when he is extremely impudent.

Perhaps of Celtic origin. M.E. *bounde*, O.F. *bonne*, *bonne*, *bonne*, L.L. *bonna*, *bonna* limit. *Syn.*: Border, confine, edge, margin, verge.

**bound** [3] (bound). The past tense and past participle of *bind*. *adj.* Tied; confined; fastened between covers, as a book; obliged; certain (to). (F. *lié*, *religé*, *obligé*.)

A bound book is one in a permanent binding, and not merely in paper covers; it may be morocco-bound, or bound in calf. If a man's fortunes are bound up with his

party they rise or fall together. A man who is certain to succeed is bound to win. "I am bound to say that you are right" means I feel compelled (by reason or a sense of honesty) to say so.

**bound** [4] (bound), *adj.* Ready; prepared; on the way. (F. *prêt, allant à, en destination pour.*)

A ship is homeward bound which is ready to sail home, or on its way thither. A traveller going from London to York is bound for the latter city.

Of Scand. origin. M.E. *boun(de)*, O. Norse *būnn* ready, p.p. of *būa* to cultivate, make ready.

**boundary** (bound' ār i), *n.* A limiting line; a limit; four runs at cricket. *adj.* Pertaining to a limit. (F. *limite; de limite.*)

A boundary stone is one set to mark the limit of a parish, county, or other division of land. In cricket a batsman is said to score a boundary when he hits the ball up to the fence or rope which marks the limits of the playing field. On all the chief cricket grounds in England and other cricket-playing countries such a hit adds four runs to the batsman's score, but should he lift the ball over the boundary without a bounce six runs are scored by him.

E. *bound*, and suffix *-ary*, L. *-ārium*, denoting place where. SYN.: Bound, circumference, frontier, limit.

**bounden** (bound' en), *p.p.* and *adj.* Bound; to which one is bound; binding.

An old form of the p.p. of bind, seldom used now except when Old English language is imitated. Thus Scott writes of a bounden slave, Thackeray of being bounden to others, Tennyson of one thrust bounden out of door. In the Prayer Book we find the phrase "our bounden duty and service."

**bounty** (boun' ti), *n.* Generosity; a gift, grant, or allowance. (F. *générosité, don.*)

One who gives largely is bounteous (boun' tyūs, *adj.*) or bountiful (boun' ti fūl, *adj.*); his conduct is marked by bounteousness (boun' tyūs nēs, *n.*) or bountifulness (boun' ti fūl nēs, *n.*), and he acts bounteously (boun' tyūs li, *adv.*) or bountifully (boun' ti fūl li, *adv.*).

For the benefit especially of the poorer clergy, Queen Anne restored to the Church of England the "first fruits and tenths" which had been taken away by Henry VIII.

The fund so established; which still exists, is called Queen Anne's Bounty.

To encourage the industry, the British government agreed to pay a bounty to the producers for every ton of beet sugar produced in Great Britain.

M.E. *bountee*, O.F. *bontet*, L. *bonitas* (acc. *-itāt-em*), from *bonus* good, generous. SYN.: Benefaction, liberality, munificence. ANT.: Miserliness, niggardliness, stinginess.

**bouquet** (bu kă'), *n.* A bunch of flowers; a cluster; a delicate perfume, such as that given off by wine. (F. *bouquet.*)

This is a French word which has been adopted into the English language. The only single word we have in English to describe a bunch of flowers is nosegay. But a bouquet can be a very elaborate and costly



Boundary stone.—A boundary stone from Babylon, in the British Museum.



Bouquet.—The Duchess of York being presented with a beautiful bouquet of flowers.

bunch of flowers, whereas a nosegay is a modest and inexpensive bunch.

O.F. *bosquet* a little wood (F. *bois*), Ital. *boschetto*, L.L. *boscus*. See *bosage*.

**Bourbon** (boor' bôn), *n.* A member of the noble family of that name, from which so many European kings have sprung, including the former rulers of France and the present royal house of Spain.

The great barony of Bourbonnais, a rich district in the centre of France, gave the Bourbons their name. The elder French line became extinct in 1883.

Attachment to the Bourbon dynasty or their cause is termed Bourbonism (boor' bôn izm, *n.*), and this word is also used to describe their policy, which was an obstinate conservatism. A Bourbonist (boor' bôn ist, *n.*) is a supporter or follower of the Bourbons.

**bourdon** (boor' dôn), *n.* A bass stop on an organ. (F. *bourdon.*)

The bourdon pipes of an organ are grouped with those of other stops of the part of an organ known as the great organ, and there is also a bourdon on the pedal organ. The pipes are of wood and are square-cornered, that for

the lowest C on the keyboard usually measuring eight or sixteen feet in length. An eight-foot pipe is stopped up at the end to make it give the same note as an open sixteen-foot pipe.

An imitative word; cp. L.L. *burdo* (acc. *burdōn-em*) drone-bee, organ-pipe.

**bourg** (boorg), *n.* A town or borough. (F. *bourg*.)

Writers of history use this French word for a town or village under the shelter of a castle. More generally it means any French or continental town, especially a market-town.

For etymology see borough.

**bourgade** (boor gad'), *n.* A straggling village or town without walls. (F. *bourgade*.)

This word was formerly in common use for English towns and villages. It is now chiefly applied to places in France or Switzerland.

Dim. of F. *bourg*; for etymology see borough.

**bourgeois** [1] (boor' zhwa), *n.* A French citizen; a member of the middle classes. *adj.* Of or relating to the middle classes; commonplace. (F. *bourgeois*.)

Originally the bourgeois were the freemen of a city or borough, as distinguished from the peasants and the nobility. The name is now given to the middle classes, including merchants and shopkeepers, who, taken together, make up the bourgeoisie (boor zhwa zē', *n.*).

O.F. *burgeis* burgher, from L.L. *burgus*. See borough.

**bourgeois** [2] (bēr jois'), *n.* A kind of printing type between long-primer and brier. (F. *gaillarde*.)

This line is set in bourgeois type.

It is an eight and a half point type, and eight and a half lines go to an inch.

The name is possibly derived from that of a typefounder or printer.

**bourgeon** (boor' jon). This is another spelling of burgeon. See burgeon.

**bourne** [1] (börn), *n.* A small stream, especially a winter stream of a chalk district. Another form is bourn. (F. *ruisseau*.)

Downland villages are often situated on a bourne or winter watercourse, which is dry in summer. The word bourne is found in English place-names, such as Eastbourne, Pangbourne, Bournemouth.

Common Teut. word. M.E. *burne*, A.-S. *burne*, *burna*, *brunna*, akin to G. *brunn-en*.

**bourne** [2] (börn), *n.* A limit; a goal. Another form is bourn. (F. *borne*.)

Often this word is employed to indicate a frontier or boundary, as in the famous

line from "Hamlet" (iii, 1): "The undiscovered country from whose bourne no traveller returns."

O.F. *bonne*, *bodne*, L.L. *bodina*, *bonna* limit. See bound.

**bourse** (boors), *n.* A building where merchants, brokers, bankers, etc., meet to transact business. (F. *bourse*.)

The best known bourse of the world is that of Paris, which corresponds to the London Stock Exchange.

L. *bursa* purse, skin, Gr. *byrsa* hide.

**bourtrees** (boor' trē), *n.* A name for the elder tree. (F. *sureau*.)

In Scotland and elsewhere in Northern Britain the elder (*Sambucus nigra*) is called the bourtrees. The young branches are very pithy and from them pop-guns or bourtrees-guns (*n. pl.*) are made by extracting the pith.

Said to be so called from its being hollow and easily bored with the object of driving out the pith.

**boustrophedon** (bou strō fē' dōn), *adj.* Written from right to left and from left to right in alternate lines. (F. *boustrophédon*.)

When the Greeks and other peoples of the olden world, began to carve their inscriptions they sometimes did it in a curious way. The first line they wrote from right to left, the second from left to right, the third from right to left, and so on.

An ox draws the plough first down one furrow and then turns right round and goes down the next furrow in the opposite direction. It was from these movements of the ox in ploughing that this strange way of writing was named.

Gr. adverbial form, from *bous* ox, *strephēn* to turn.

**bout** (bout), *n.* A round or turn; an attack; a contest. (F. *coup*, *assaut*, *allaque*.)

We say that a child has had a bout of illness when he has had a severe attack, or that two boys have had a bout with their fists, meaning that they have been fighting.

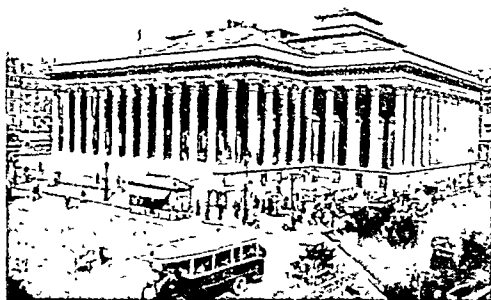
Formerly spelt *bought* (pronounced bout), the word is probably a duplicate of *bight*, from the root *bug-* meaning to bend, turn.

**bovine** (bō' vīn), *adj.* Like an ox; sluggish; dull. *n.* One of a class of animals comprising the ox, buffalo, bison, and yak. (F. *bovine*.)

Because the ox is a heavy, slow-moving animal any dull person who thinks and moves slowly is said to be bovine.

L.L. *bovinus*, from L. *bos* (gen. *bovis*) ox, cow.

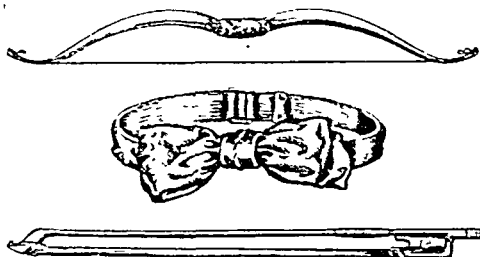
**bow** [1] (bō), *n.* A curve; a weapon for shooting arrows; a kind of loop or knot; an appliance with which a violin and some



Bourse.—The Paris Bourse, which corresponds to the London Stock Exchange.

other stringed instruments are played. *v.t.* and *i.* To play with this. (F. *courbe, arc, naud, archet; jouer de.*)

Long ago, according to legend, there lived a famous archer who roamed the beautiful forest of Sherwood an outlaw. His name was Robin Hood, and he had been declared an outlaw because, as we are told, he had killed one of the royal deer and in self-protection had taken the life of one of the king's foresters.



Bow.—A bow for shooting arrows, a bow to wear, and a bow for a violin.

He was the most skilful bowman (*bō' mán, n.*) of the merry band who aided him, nor could anyone be found in all the country round to shoot a bow with such precision.

Many stories are told of this great archer, and among them is one of a shooting match at Nottingham, in which Robin Hood, disguised in beggar's clothing, figured. It took place in the presence of the sheriff, who had arranged the contest in the hope that the outlaw might be tempted to take part and thus lay himself open to capture.

There were ten competitors in all, and of these the three best, among them Robin Hood, shot again to decide who should secure the prize. It was Robin Hood who shot last, and as his bow-hand (*n.*) gripped the bow and he drew back the bow-string (*n.*), there was the tensest silence. Straight and true flashed the arrow, which found a resting-place in the centre of the target and gave Robin Hood the victory.

In olden times, before the introduction of firearms, the bow was a deadly weapon in warfare, and the occupation of a bowyer (*bō' yēr, n.*), that is, a maker of bows, was an exceedingly important one.

A pair of compasses jointed in such a way that the legs can be turned inwards are termed bow-compasses (*n.*), and their legs are bow-bent (*adj.*). When fitted with a pencil or pen a pair of bow-compasses are called a bow-pen (*n.*).

A saw which has a frame resembling a stretched bowstring is called a bow-saw (*n.*). For the same reason a person whose legs are bent sideways is said to be bow-legged (*adj.*), and a window that curves outwards from the room is called a bow-window (*n.*). The Greenland right whale is called the bow-head (*n.*), and a special wickerwork net for catching lobsters and various fish is called a bow-net (*n.*). A string, ribbon, or necktie, when knotted or looped in a certain way, is said to be tied in a bow.

The word occurs in various phrases, such as to draw the long-bow, that is, to exaggerate; and to have two strings to one's bow, to have a second resource, opportunity, or choice. It was usual at one time to measure distance by the bowshot (*bō' shot, n.*), or the space covered by an arrow shot from a bow.

The bow used in playing violins and other similar instruments is a thin staff of wood strung with horsehair.

Common Teut. word. M.E. *bowe*, A.-S. *boga*, *būgan* to bend, akin to O. Norse *bogi*, G. *bogen*.

**bow** [2] (*bou*), *v.i.* To bend; to incline the head. *v.t.* To cause to bend; to express by bowing; to escort with bowing. *n.* An act



Bow-window. A window that curves outwards from the room.



Bow.—The gentleman is bowing to the lady, and the lady is curtsying to the gentleman.

of respect. (F. *s'incliner; courber, éconduire; salut, révérence.*)

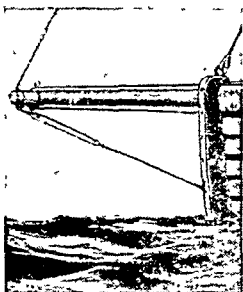
We may bow to a friend on meeting or leaving him, and we may bow down under a heavy load when carrying it. The branches of a tree may be bowed (*boud, adj.*) with the weight of its fruit, and a person who has lived many years may be bowed with age.

M.E. *bowen*, *būgen*, A.-S. *būgan* to bend, bow, flee (in this last sense akin to L. *fugere*, Gr. *phugein*).

**bow** [3] (bōu), *n.* The curved fore-end or front part of a ship or boat; the person who rows nearest to this part. (F. *avant*, *proue*, *rameur d'avant*.)

The bow, or as it is often called, the bows (*n.pl.*) of a ship or boat is that part which cleaves the water. When a sailor says he sees another ship or some object on the port bow or on the starboard bow, he means it is to the left or right of his ship and some distance ahead.

Sailors call a gun in the bow of a ship a **bow-chaser** (*n.*), and a fender or kind of buffer made of rope and canvas, placed round the bows and sides of a ship to prevent it from being damaged by floating timber or ice, a **bow-grace** (*n.*). A **bowline** (bō' līn; bō' līn, *n.*) is a rope fastened to the middle of the weather side of a sail to keep it taut when sailing close to the wind, and it is fastened to the cringles, or rings on the sail, with a **bowline knot** (*n.*), a knot which does not easily come undone.



**Bow.**—The bow of a boat and the bowsprit running out from it.

The man in a rowing boat nearest the bows is sometimes called the **bow** or **bowman** (*n.*). The **bowsprit** (bō' sprit, *n.*) of a vessel is a wooden spar which runs out from the bows and to which the forestays and certain sails are fastened.

Of Scand. origin, from O. Norse *bōgr* shoulder.

**bow** [4] (bō), This is another form of **boll**. See **boll** [2].

**bowdlerize** (boud' lēr īz), *v.t.* To remove objectionable parts of a book. (F. *expurger*.)

The word comes from Thomas Bowdler (1754-1825), who, in 1818, published an edition of Shakespeare omitting certain passages which he considered offensive according to existing standards of taste. Anyone who treats a book in this way practises **bowdlerism** (boud' lēr īzm, *n.*) or **bowdlerization** (boud lēr ī zā' shūn, *n.*), and is a **bowdlerizer** (boud' lēr ī zēr, *n.*).

SYN.: 'Expurgate.

**bowel** (bou' ēl), *n.* Any part of the food-canal below the stomach of a human being or other animal. *v.t.* To remove the bowels of. (F. *entrailles*, *arracher les entrailles*.)

This word is generally used in the plural. The bowels were formerly thought to be the seat of the tender emotions, just as the heart is fancifully regarded to-day, and this idea gave rise to such expressions as bowels of compassion, bowels of pity, etc.

As the bowels are situated deep within the body the word came to be used for the inner parts or centre of a thing. Thus we

speak of the bowels of the earth, meaning deep down in the earth.

M.E. *bouel*, *buele*, O.F. *boël*, L. *botellus* (dim. of *botulus*) little sausage, in L.L. with meaning intestine. SYN.: Entrails, intestines.

**bower** [1] (bou' ēr), *n.* A leafy retreat; an arbour; a humble dwelling; a retiring apartment; a boudoir; the playground of the bower-bird. (F. *berceau de verdure*, *retraite*, *boudoir*.)



**Bower-bird.**—The bower-bird in its bower on the ground.

When we speak of a bower of roses we mean an overhanging mass of roses which form a screen and a protection. Any nook or spot which is pleasantly shady and secluded may be called **bowery** (bou' ēr ī, *adj.*) or **bower-like** (*adj.*).

The **bower-bird** (*n.*) is a native of Australia and New Guinea, and is something like our starling. It builds a kind of bower on the ground, and sometimes adorns it with feathers and shells and other objects of attractive appearance. It does not lay its eggs in the bower but in its nest in the trees.

M.E. and A.-S. *būr*, literally chamber, from A.-S. *būan* to dwell; cp. O. Norse *būr* apartment, storehouse, Swed. *būr* and G. *bauer* cage.

**bower** [2] (bou' ēr), *n.* One of the two highest cards in the card game euchre.

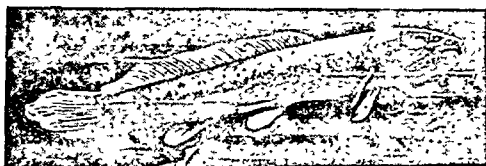
The right bower is the knave of trumps, and the left bower the knave of the other suit of the same colour.

From G. *bauer* peasant, knave in cards.

**bower** [3] (bou' ēr), *n.* A large anchor carried in the bows of a ship; the cable attached. (F. *ancree de bossoir*.)

The starboard bower is known as the **best-bower**, and the port bower as the **small-bower**.

So called from being carried at ship's bows.



**Bowfin.**—A North American mud-fish with many names, including bowfin, bow-fish, and dog-fish.

**bowfin** (bō' fin), *n.* The freshwater mud-fish of North America. (F. *limande*.)

The bowfin (*Amia calva*) is variously known as the bow-fish of Lake Champlain, the dog-fish of Lake Erie, and the marsh-fish in Canada.

It has an oblong flattened body, covered with thick slime or mucus, and its bony scales show that it is a very ancient type of fish.

Its well-developed swim-bladder is used as a lung, the fish rising to the surface to gulp in a supply of air. Other popular names are brindle, grindle, and lawyer.

**bowie-knife** (bō' i nif), *n.* A hunter's knife. (F. *couteau-poignard*.)

The bowie-knife has a handle and point like a dagger. The blade has one edge sharp all the way, but the other, from near the point to the handle, is thick, to give stiffness when cutting. It was first made by Colonel James Bowie (1796-1836), a renowned hunter and Indian-fighter, of Texas, America, from an old file with which he had already killed a man.

**bowl** [1] (bōl), *n.* A vessel for containing liquids; a basin. (F. *bol*, *vase*.)

Bowls may be made of china, earthenware, tin, enamel, and other materials. Their shape varies, but generally they are fashioned rather like the half of a ball.

The contents of such a vessel and various things shaped like a bowl are also called bowl. From its shape a type of hat made of felt and having a hard, low, round crown, is styled a bowler (bōl' er, *n.*).

M.E. *bolle*, A.-S. *bolla*, so called from its round form; cp. O. Norse *bolli*, M.H.G. *bolle*.

**bowl** [2] (bōl), *n.* A ball used in the game of bowls. *v.i.* To roll a ball at bowls or deliver a ball at cricket; to move along smoothly. *v.t.* To deliver (a ball); to dismiss a batsman by bowling; to make a ball roll. (F. *boule*; *servir*; *renvoyer*, *faire rouler*.)

The game of bowls is played on a bowling-green (bōl' ing grēn, *n.*), and each player is called a bowler (bōl' er, *n.*). The green should be perfectly level, and only special turf obtained from Cumberland should be used in its preparation.

The bowls are usually made of lignum vitae, the wood of a West Indian tree. They measure about sixteen and a half inches in



Bowling. — A bowler bowling overarm.

circumference, and weigh not more than three and a half pounds, and are given what is called a bias, that is, a weight to one side, so that they may turn away gradually from a straight line when rolled along the green.

The object of the game is to get a bowl, or "wood," as it is called, nearest to a white ball called the jack, placed fifteen feet away.

To bowl at cricket is to propel the ball at the wicket defended by the batsman. The person who does this is called the bowler, and he may deliver the ball either from above the shoulder—overarm bowling (bōl' ing, *n.*)—or from below the shoulder—underarm bowling.

The bowler delivers the ball from the bowling-crease (*n.*), a white line drawn in a line with the stumps, which are placed in the centre. This is eight feet eight inches long, and at each end has a short white line extending backwards from and at right angles to it called the return crease. The bowler must bowl from within the space between the two return creases, and have one or both feet on the ground behind the bowling-crease.

A place in which the game of skittles is played is sometimes referred to as a bowling-alley (*n.*).

M.E., F. *boule*, L. *bull*a bubble, ball.



Bowls.—Bowlers enjoying their favourite pastime, which is played on a bowling-green.

**bowler** (bōl' er), *n.* A kind of stiff felt hat. (F. *chapeau melon*.)

See under bowl [1].

**bowline** (bō' lin; bō' lin), *n.* A ship's rope. (F. *bouline*.) See under bow [3].

**bowman** [1] (bō' mǎn), *n.* One who shoots with a bow and arrow. See under bow [1].

**bowman** [2] (bou' mǎn), *n.* An oarsman nearest the bows of a boat. See under bow [3].

**bowsprit** (bō' sprit), *n.* A ship's spar. (F. *beaupré*.) See under bow [3].

E. *bow* and *sprit*.

**bow-window** (bō win' dō), *n.* A window curving outwards. (F. *fenêtre en saillie*.) See under bow [1].

**bow-wow** (bou wou'; bou' wou), *inter.* An exclamation representing the bark of a dog. *n.* The bark of a dog or a sound like it; a childish name for a dog. *adj.* Barking. *v.i.* To bark. *v.t.* To bark at. (F. *baubau*; *aboïement*, *toutou*; *aboyer*.)

This word is sometimes used figuratively in the sense of growling or bullying, or loud and showy. The term bow-wow theory has been given to the theory that human speech started by such imitations of animal sounds as bow-wow.

**bowyer** (bō' yēr), *n.* A maker of bows. (F. *fabricant d'arcs*.) See under bow [1].

# BOX: A WORD OF MANY MEANINGS

*The Many Ways in which the Name of a Useful Article is Used in English*

**box** [ɪ] (boks), *n.* A case made of wood, steel, or other material, having four sides and a bottom piece, and generally provided with a lid, used chiefly for containing solids. *v.t.* To place in, or provide with, such a receptacle. (F. *boîte*; *enfermer dans une boîte*.)

It has often and truly been said that English is a very difficult language for a foreigner to learn because so many of its words have such a variety of meanings. Of few words is this truer than of box, which is the name of a whole host of objects.

Besides applying to a wooden or other case, it may stand for the partitioned-off seating space in a coffee-house, tavern, or theatre, for the compartment in a stable or vehicle occupied by a horse, for a coachman's seat, for one of the small divisions of a printer's type-case, or for the protective casing enclosing machinery.

We call a wooden bed with folding sides and sliding panels a box-bed (*n.*). We give the name box-cloth (*n.*) to a certain closely-woven fabric, and for a thick overcoat worn by a coachman we use the term box-coat (*n.*).

We refer to a smoothing-iron provided with a heating space as a box-iron (*n.*), to the office for booking tickets at a theatre as the box-office (*n.*), to the T-shaped implement used for turning on water at the main as a box-key (*n.*), and to a double-fold in a dress or other garment as a box-pleat (*n.*).

A fishing-box (*n.*) is a small country house for entertaining fishing parties, and a shooting-box (*n.*) is a similar class of residence for shooting parties. A jury-box (*n.*) and a witness-box (*n.*) are the spaces partitioned off in law courts to accommodate the jury and witnesses

during a trial; and a loose-box (*n.*) is a compartment for stalling a horse which has sufficient space for the animal to walk about freely.

The giving of a Christmas-box (*n.*), usually a present of money, to servants and others on Boxing Day (*n.*), the first week-day after Christmas, is a custom that is gradually declining. It was at one time very general, and many a coin found its way into the receiver's money-box (*n.*) or purse as a result.

Box appears in a number of nautical expressions. To work a ship from one tack or direction to another by bracing the headyards aback in certain circumstances is to box-haul (*v.t.*); to box-off (*v.t.*) is to throw the ship's head away from the wind; and to box the compass is to name the thirty-two points in their proper order.

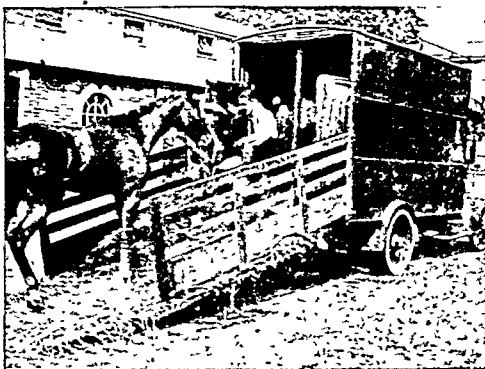
Figuratively, to box the compass means to adopt all possible opinions on a subject one after another until the first one is again reached.

A quantity of anything which fills a box is described as a boxful (boks' fül, *n.*), and to one whose task it is to place objects or material in a box the term boxer (boks' ér, *n.*) is sometimes given.

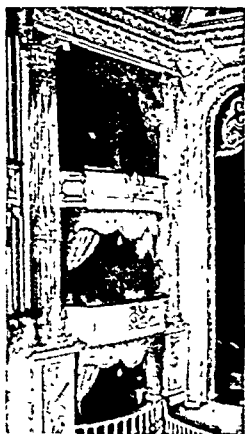
In Scotland a special day during vacation or recess is set apart by the court of session for the lodging of defences, pleadings, and other documents. It is called box-day (*n.*) from the boxes into which the documents dealing with the various actions are placed. This practice began in 1690.

To find oneself in the wrong box means to discover that one is in a position or situation where one should not be.

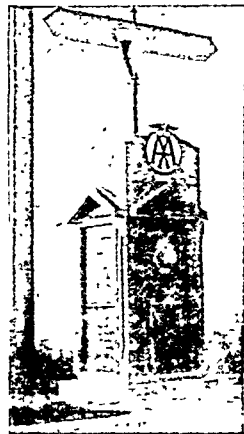
M.E. and A.-S. *box*, box-tree, L. *buxum* anything made of boxwood, Gr. *pyris*; cp. G. *büchse*. Pyx is derived from the same source, and so is bush (of a wheel).



Box.—A motor horse-box for carrying horses long distances by road.



Box.—Private boxes at a London theatre.



Box.—A telephone box for the use of motorists.

**box** [2] (boks), *n.* An evergreen shrub or tree. (F. *buis*.)

The tree is called the box-tree (*n.*) and its wood box-wood (*n.*). The scientific name of the common box-tree is *Buxus sempervirens*. Box-trees are largely used in gardens for making borders for paths. Anything made of box-wood or resembling it is called boxen (boks' en, *adj.*).

M.E. and A.-S. *box*, L. *burus*, Gr. *pyxos*.

**box** [3] (boks), *v.i.* To spar or fight with gloved fists. *v.t.* To strike with the flat hand. (F. *boxer*; *souffleter*.)

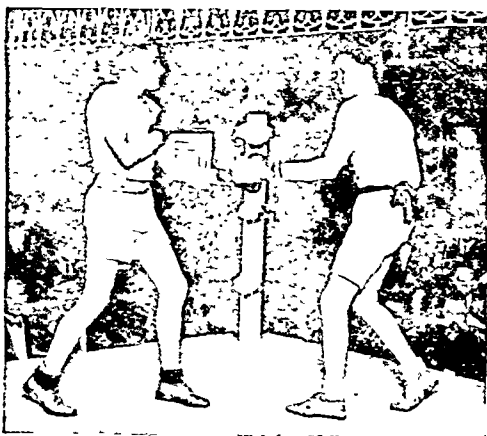
A flat-handed blow is sometimes called a box (*n.*), as a box on the ears. A boxer (boks' er, *n.*) is a person who engages in a pugilistic or boxing (boks' ing, *adj.*) contest with an opponent, the hands of each being covered with a special kind of gloves.

Formerly a contest without gloves was classed as boxing, but to-day such an encounter is regarded as fighting, and is not recognized by the boxing authorities.

In China a Boxer is a member of a more or less secret society. In 1900 this society was responsible for a rising against the European missionaries in northern China.

The foreign legations at Peking were besieged, and a relief expedition of British, French, German, and other soldiers was dispatched to the scene of the disturbance. After about two months' fighting Peking was entered, and the besieged Europeans were set free.

M.E. *box* a slap on the ear; cp. Dan. *bakse*, *bask* a blow.



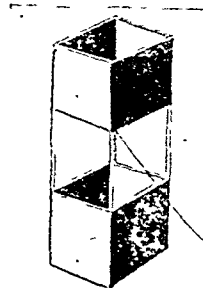
Boxing.—Two young boxers having a boxing bout. Formerly a contest without gloves was classed as boxing.

**box elder** (boks el' dër), *n.* The ash-leaved maple of North America. (F. *érable à feuilles de frêne*.)

This tree, whose scientific name is *Acer negundo*, has been introduced into British shrubberies. It owes its popular names to the shape of its leaves, which are compound like those of the ash and the elder.

**Boxing-day** (boks' ing dā), *n.* The first weekday after Christmas Day. See *under box* [1].

**box-kite** (boks' kīt), *n.* A kite with two or more four-sided cells, connected together at the corners by sticks.



Box-kite.—This is a toy box-kite, but some kinds are used for scientific purposes.

The box-kite was invented by L. Hargrave, of Sydney. Each of its cells is, as it were, a box of fabric, without top or bottom. The boxes may be square-cornered or diamond-shaped. A kite of this kind is very steady. Box-kites have been used to carry instruments for examining the condition of the atmosphere to heights of three or four miles.

E. *box* and *kite*.

**box-thorn** (boks' thörn), *n.* A plant of the genus *Lycium*, belonging to the nightshade family. (F. *lycium*.)

The box-thorns are ornamental foreign plants. The European box-thorn (*Lycium europaeum*) is a spiny plant grown in Tuscany as a hedge-plant.

In England the willow-leaved species (*Lycium barbarum*), a native of Barbary, is grown as a pleasing covering for walls and arbours. It is sometimes called the tea-tree, or the Duke of Argyle's tea-tree, because one of the dukes suggested the use of the leaves as a substitute for those of the tea-plant, which they resemble.

E. *box* and *thorn*.

**boy** (boi), *n.* A male child or youth; in some countries a servant or labourer. (F. *garçon serviteur*, *domestique*.)

In the old days, when slavery was rife in America, an African man slave was called a boy. In "Uncle Tom's Cabin," by Harriet Beecher Stowe, the slave auctioneer, when about to sell Uncle Tom in the New Orleans market, commands him to get up on the stand, saying, "Now then, up with you, boy, d'ye hear?" An Indian or African manservant is called a boy, and the native workers in the South African mines are called boys. At one time guineas used to be called yellow boys.

The period of life when one is a boy is called boyhood (boi' hud, *n.*). Things suitable to a boy are said to be boyish (boi' ish, *adj.*), and things done as a boy would do them are said to be done boyishly (boi' ish li, *adv.*). If a girl or a grown-up acts in a boyish way we say that she or he has boyishness (boi' ish nès, *n.*). We describe a task easy to accomplish as boy's play (*n.*), meaning that it is so trifling that a boy could carry it out.

M.E. *boi*, *bōie*, akin to O. Norse *bōfi*, Dutch *boef*, G. *bube* boy, rascal. In A.-S. *bōfa* is a personal name.



**boyar** (bó yar'; boi' ár), *n.* A nobleman of Old Russia. (F. *boyard*.)

The boyars of Old Russia once held, by right, all the highest offices in the country, and were of such importance that even the greatest rulers made a point of opening their decrees with the words, "The Emperor has ordered, the boyars have agreed, etc." This dangerous rivalry was ended by Peter the Great, who took away all the boyars' privileges. The term is sometimes applied to a landed proprietor.

Rus. *boyárin*, perhaps from root *bol* meaning great (cp. *bol-shevik*).

**boycott** (boi' kót), *v.t.* To combine against; to refuse to have dealings with. *n.* The action of boycotting. (F. *boycotter*; *boycottage*.)

In Ireland, between 1880-81, the Land League took up the cause of the tenants who had been turned out of their farms because they could not pay any rents, as there had been a bad harvest. People were ordered to shun unpopular landlords and tenants who took over the empty farms. Nobody was to work for them, sell food to them, or to appear to notice them in any way. One of the chief victims was Captain Boycott, a land agent, of Mayo, whose name was soon adopted to describe this cruel, but effective treatment.

A country, for some political reason, may boycott another country's products or merchandise by refusing to import them. A man guilty of some social wrong may be shunned or boycotted by his friends, as a form of punishment. The victim of a boycott is called a *boycottee* (boi kót ē', *n.*), and the people who combine against him are the *boycotters* (boi' kót erz, *n.pl.*). The principle of boycotting is known as *boycottism* (boi' kót izm, *n.*).

**Boys' Brigade** (bois bri gād'), *n.* An organization for promoting in boys habits of reverence and self-respect.

The movement was founded in 1883 by William (later Sir William) Smith, who died March 10th, 1914.

Boy members of the brigade are from twelve to seventeen years old, and are enrolled in companies, connected with places of worship and Sunday Schools. A uniform cap, belt, and haversack are worn with ordinary clothes. A similar organization exists in the United States.

**Boy Scouts** (boi skoutz), *n.pl.* Members of an organization founded in 1908 by Sir Robert Baden-Powell.

The aim of this great movement is, to use the Chief Scout's own words: "Individual efficiency for the service of others—that is,

true citizenship. It is brought about by personal example and by encouraging the boy to develop, through activities which appeal to him, the attributes of character, health, handcraft, and service for others." The working unit of the movement is a

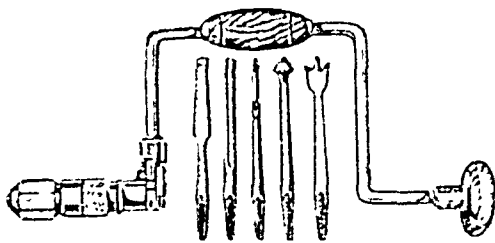
"patrol" of six to eight boys, under a patrol-leader. Any number of patrols may be combined into a local "troop," controlled by a scout-master. Each patrol has its distinctive sign, such as Wolf, Bull, Raven, or Curlew. The uniform consists of a shirt or jersey, shorts, stockings, belt, scarf, and hat. The uniform and badge may not be worn until the recruit has passed a simple test called the Tenderfoot test. Badges are awarded for proficiency in the many different occupations a scout is taught.

A junior branch for boys from eight to eleven years of age was started in 1916 under the title of Wolf Cubs, and a senior branch, the Rover Scouts, for lads of over fifteen and a half years came into being in 1918. To-day, practically every country has its Boy Scouts. The Scouts, Rover Scouts, and Wolf Cubs in Great Britain

and Ireland total over 320,000, and those in the Empire over 520,000 (including British troops in foreign countries). The world total exceeds 1,560,000.



Boy Scout.—A Boy Scout summoning the members of his patrol by bugle.



Brace.—A brace and types of bits for use. The tool is used for boring holes and tightening screws.

**brace** (brās), *n.* A thing that draws or holds together. *v.t.* To tighten; to strengthen; to give firmness to; to gird (F. *attache, lien*; *serrer, fortifier*.)

The strap which connects the body of a coach to the springs is a brace. In writing, printing, or music, a sign called a brace is used to indicate that two or more words, lines, or staves are to be linked together. A brace of pheasants or partridges is a pair. A piece of wood to strengthen the framework of a building is known as a brace, and carpenters use a tool called a brace and bit for boring holes and tightening screws.

A drummer calls the leather thong on the cord of his drum which regulates the stretching of the skin a brace, and he gives the same

name to the cord itself. Braces (*n.pl.*) is the name given to the straps with which a man's trousers are supported.

When we brace ourselves for an effort we gather together all our energy and resolution.

A bracelet (*brās' lèt, n.*) is an ornamental circlet or band for the wrist or arm.

In archery and fencing, the protective covering put on the arm is called a bracer (*brās' ér, n.*). A bracing (*brās' ing, adj.*) speech is an enthusiastic one; a bracing climate is one which imparts vigour.

O.F. *brace* the arms, hence grasp, hold, L. *brāchium* (pl. *brāchia*) arm. SYN.: *v.* Bind, fasten, invigorate, strap, tie. ANT.: *v.* Enervate, loosen, relax, unfasten, untie, weaken.

**brachial** (*brā' ki āl, adj.*) Relating to or resembling an arm. (F. *brachial*.)

The brachial artery is the artery that carries the blood to the arm. A plant or a tree is brachiate (*brā' ki āt, adj.*) when it has pairs of branches which are nearly at right angles to the stem and which cross each other alternately.

L. *brāchiālis* connected with or relating to an arm (*brāchium*), Gr. *brakhion*.

**brachiopod** (*brāk' i ó pod, n.*) A two-valved or two-shelled sea animal with an arm-like appendage on each side of its mouth. (F. *brachiopode*.)

The plural is brachiopods or brachiopoda (*brāk i op' ód ā*), and anything relating to or resembling a brachiopod is brachiopodous (*brāk i op' ó dūs, adj.*).

Gr. *brakhion* arm, *pous* (acc. *podā*) foot.



Brachycephalic.—A Laplander, who belongs to one of the brachycephalic or short-headed races.

**brachycephalic** (*brāk i sè fāl' ik, adj.*) Short-headed; having a skull the width of which is at least four-fifths of the length. Another form is brachycephalous (*brāk i sèf' ā lūs*). (F. *brachycéphale*.)

Mongols, Lapps, Finns, and Poles are some of the brachycephalic races.

Gr. *brakhkephalos*, from *brakhy(s)* short, *képhalē* head.

**brachylogy** (*brā kil' ó ji, n.*) Concise speech; briefness in the use of words. (F. *brachylogie*.)

A form of speech in which the least possible number of words is used is called brachylogy, but the word is used especially of the leaving out of a word or words wrongly in order to secure briefness of expression.

Gr. *brakhylogia*, from *brakhy(s)* short, *logos* speech.

**brachyura** (*brāk i ūr' ā, n.pl.*) The short-tailed, stalk-eyed crustacea, including the crab and its relatives. (F. *brachyures*.)

The large order of ten-legged crustacea is divided into two main groups according to the size of the "tail." Examples of these two groups may be found in rock-pools, the green shore-crab (*Carcinus moenas*), with its short tail closely folded under it, representing the short-tailed or brachyurous (*brāk i ūr' ūs, adj.*) group, and the shrimp, the long-tailed or macrurous group.

Gr. *brakhy(s)* short, *oura* tail.

**bracken** (*brāk' én, n.*) The commonest of British ferns. (F. *fougère*.)

Bracken is sometimes called brake-fern. It varies in height from six inches to twelve feet, according to the soil. The scientific name is *Pteris aquilina*.

Of Scand. origin. M.E. *braken*; cp. Dan. *bregne*, Swed. *bräken*.

**bracket** (*brāk' èt, n.*) A piece standing out on a wall or machine or other structure, usually flat on the top to support something; a mark used in pairs in printing to enclose words or figures; the space between two shots fired in range-finding. *v.t.* To provide with a bracket or brackets; to place between brackets; to couple as equally deserving. *v.i.* To find the range for a gun by firing shots beyond and short of the target. (F. *tas-seau, console, crochet; mettre en crochets*.)

In architecture a bracket is the same as a corbel.

Brackets on a church wall often support statues. A gas-bracket carries the burner and globe or other fittings, and a lamp-bracket the lamp. The sides or cheeks of a gun-carriage are called brackets, and a set of shelves attached to or hanging on a wall may be called a bracket. These marks [ ], used in printing to enclose words or figures separated from the context, are brackets.

When two or more competitors come out equal in an examination they are said to be bracketed (*brāk' èt èd, adj.*) first or second, or however they may be placed.



Bracket.—A bracket supporting a bay-window.

In range-finding the gunner, liaving estimated the range as best he can, fires a trial round. If this falls short he elevates his gun more. Should the second shell fall beyond the target, he has the target bracketed, and knows that the correct elevation lies somewhere between the two elevations tried. In the Navy the word straddle is used with much the same meaning.

The framework which supports a moulding or cornice is called a bracketing (brāk' ēt ing, *n.*).

*F. braguette, brayette* flap or front part of a pair of breeches, dim. of *brague* breeches, also a projecting moulding, from *L. bracae* breeches, probably of Celtic origin. The meaning is perhaps from the bulging of the front of an early type of breeches, or their resemblance to a forked architectural bracket.

**brackish** (brāk' ish), *adj.* Having a salty taste; spoilt by mixing. (*F. saumâtre.*)

Water taken from a river not far from its entrance into the sea may taste brackish, and this brackishness (brāk' ish nēs, *n.*) is very unpleasant.

Dutch *brak*, of the same meaning; suffix *-ish* meaning somewhat.

**bract** (bräkt), *n.* A leaf which bears between itself and the stem of the plant a flower or a branch which ends directly in a flower. (*F. bractée.*)

A plant which has bracts is bracteate (brāk' tē āt, *adj.*) and anything of the nature of a bract is bracteal (brāk' tē āl, *adj.*). Anything made of metal beaten to the thinness of a leaf is called bracteate. A plant which has no bracts is bractless (bräkt' lēs, *adj.*). A bracteole (brāk' tē ōl, *n.*) is a little bract, and a plant that has bracteoles is bracteolate (brāk' tē ō lāt, *adj.*).

*L. bractea* any thin plate of metal, gold-leaf.

**brad** (bräd), *n.* A slender nail with no regular head. (*F. pointe, clou sans tête.*) Brads are very largely used by bootmakers.

Of Scand. origin. M.E. *brod*, O. Norse *broddr* spike, point; cp. A.-S. *brord*.

**bradawl** (bräd' awl), *n.* A boring tool used by carpenters and others. (*F. poinçon.*)

A bradawl is used to make a hole in which to put a brad or screw, or drive a nail. A hole made first by a bradawl often prevents the wood from splitting when a nail is driven into it.

*E. brad and awl.*

**brae** (brā), *n.* A hill; a slope. (*F. colline.*)

In Scotland and Northern Ireland a little hill is called a brae. The word is used often by

Burns in his poems, as in "Ye banks and braes o' bonnie Doon." The slope bounding a river valley is also called a brae.

Of Scand. origin. M.E. *brā, brō*, O. Norse *brā* brow of a hill; cp. A.-S. *brēaw, brāew* eyelid. **brag** (bräg), *n.* Boastfulness; boastful talk; a thing boasted of; a game of cards. *v.i.* To boast. (*F. vanterie; se vanter.*)

In the game of brag the players have to brag of their cards in order to induce others to make bets.

A braggart (bräg' ärt, *n.*) is a boastful person, and braggart (*adj.*) words are boastful words.

Spenser, in his "Faerie Queene," drew a character whom he called Braggadocio. This man boasted greatly, but was proved to be an impostor. Hence the word braggadocio (bräg ä dö' shi ō, *n.*) is sometimes used to describe an empty boaster and empty boasting.

Perhaps of Scand. origin. M.E. *braggen* to boast, sound loudly, akin to *L. fragor* loud noise, crash. SYN.: *v.* Bluster, swagger, vaunt. ANT.: Cringe, fawn, whimper.

**brahma** (bra' mā), *n.* A variety of domestic fowl. Also called brahmapiotra (bra' mā poo trā). (*F. brahmapoutre.*)

The brahma, which is noted for its large size, is kept for show purposes more than for laying and eating. It is named from the River Brahmapootra, in India, whence it first came.

**Brahmin** (bra' min), *n.* A member of the highest or priestly caste of the Hindus. Another form is Brahman (bra' män). (*F. brahmane.*)

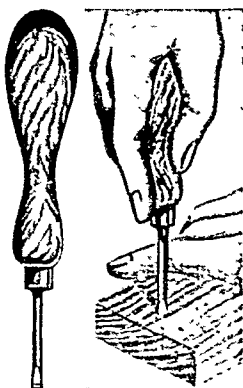
The teaching believed in and followed by these people is known as Brahminism (bra' min izm, *n.*). As a religion Brahminism has been swallowed up by Hinduism, but the caste system, which it originated, is still strongly held by all true Brahmins.

They hold that the first Brahmin came from the head of the supreme god Brahma, and was the father of the priestly lawgivers, who were to be the guardians of the people's faith. From the arms of Brahma came the princes and warriors, of inferior birth to the Brahmins, and known as the Kshatriyas. From the legs of Brahma came the husbandmen or Vaisyas. From his feet came the Sudra caste. All the rest of mankind were regarded as outcasts.

Whatever belongs to the Brahmin caste or to its doctrine is Brahminic (bra min' ik, *adj.*) or Brahminical (bra min' ik āl, *adj.*).



Brahmin.—A Brahmin girl of Simla, India.



Bradawl.—A bradawl and how it is used.

A female Brahmin is called a Brahminee (bra min ē', *n.*), and Brahminee (bra' min ē, *adj.*) is a word used to describe certain animals, trees, etc., which the Brahmins regard as sacred.

Sansk. *brāhmana*, from *brahman* praise, worship.

**braid** (brād), *v.t.* To plait; to trim with a narrow band of material. *n.* A narrow band of material used for trimming or binding; anything braided. (F. *tresser*; *tresse*.)

The material which is used for edging or trimming any other material is called braiding (brād' ing, *n.*), and so is embroidery decorated with braid.

Common Teut. word. M.E. *breiden*, A.-S. *bregdan*, *brēdan* to move quickly, brandish, pull, weave, braid; cp. *broider*. SYN.: *v.* Interlace, interweave. ANT.: *v.* Loosen, unbind.

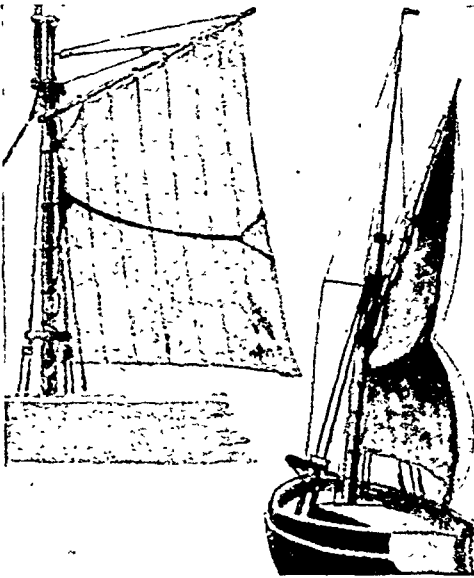
**brail** (brāl), *n.* A rope used to gather up a sail to reduce its area (usually in *pl.*); a piece of leather used in falconry to secure a hawk's wing. *v.t.* To haul up (a sail) by using brails; to fasten (the wing of a hawk) with a brail. (F. *cargue*; *carguer*.)

The poet Longfellow uses the word in the nautical sense in "The Golden Legend" (*v.*):

Cheerily, my hearties! Yo heave ho!

Brail up the mainsail, and let her go!

O. F. *brail* girdle, belt, properly for fastening up breeches, from L.L. *bracāle*, from *bracae* breeches.



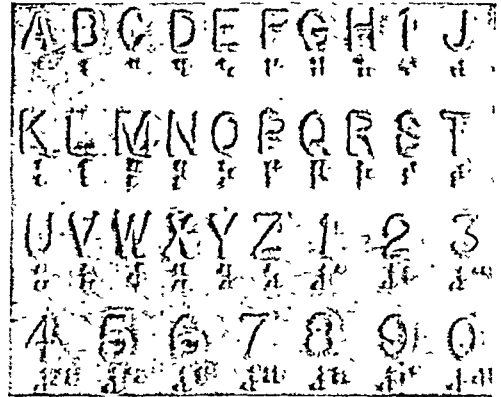
Brail.—Working through a block attached to the mast, a brail runs across a sail and is fixed to its outer edge. A pull on the brail, as shown on the right, reduces the area of the sail.

**braille** (brāl), *n.* A method of printing used by the blind. (F. *braille*.)

The invention of braille has made thousands of blind people happy. Many methods had been tried of printing special books for the blind, but it was not until Louis Braille (1806-52), a Frenchman who was himself

blind, invented his system of raised dots, that many books for their use were printed.

Braille type (*n.*) is the type or the dots used in the braille system, and braille music (*n.*) is music set up in braille characters. The instrument used for writing with braille type is known as a braille writer (*n.*).



Braille.—The alphabet and numerals in braille, a system of raised dots, for the instruction of those who cannot see.

**brain** (brān), *n.* The organ of thought, feeling, and voluntary movement; intellect. *v.t.* To dash out the brains of. (F. *cerveau*, *intelligence*; *faire sauter la cervelle à*.)

The brain may be regarded as the telephone exchange of the body, for in it end the nerves through which messages are sent to and received from all parts of the body. It is protected from damage by the bones of the brain-pan (*n.*), or skull. Its main part, the cerebrum, is divided into two hemispheres, right and left, and has a deeply crinkled surface, covered by grey matter composed of nerve cells. It is now known which organ or part of the body every part of it serves.

Though very delicate, the brain has a wonderful power of recovery, and men have lived after being shot through it. Its average weight is forty-nine and a half ounces for a man and forty-four ounces for a woman.

A certain kind of coral is named brain coral (*n.*) because it is very crinkled like the brain.

Among the troubles to which the brain is subject are brain-fag (*n.*), due to over-work, and brain-fever (*n.*), an inflammation of its tissues.

A brainless (brān' lès, *adj.*) person is one who shows little intelligence or common sense, a brainy (brān' i, *adj.*) person one who is unusually clever.

M.E. *brain*, *brayne*, A.-S. *brægc(e)n*, akin to Dutch *brœm*.

**braird** (brārd), *n.* The fresh young shoots of grain or grass. *v.i.* To sprout. (F. *pousse*; *pousser*.)

The same word as *brerd*, which in M.E. and A.-S. means margin, brim, but the sense is the same as A.-S. *brord* blades of grass.

**braiso** (brāz), *v.t.* To cook or stew in an enclosed cooking vessel. (F. *braiser*.)

Braised meat is meat cooked in a pan with a tightly-fitting lid, often with vegetables and herbs to add to its flavour. The utensil used is called a braising-pan (brāz'ing pān, *n.*).

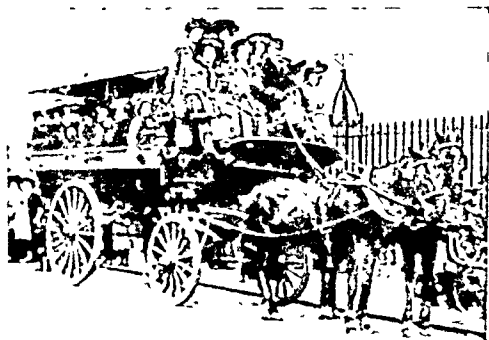
F. *braiser*, from *braise* live coals.

**brake** [1] (brāk). This is another name for bracken. See *Bracken*.

**brake** [2] (brāk), *n.* A toothed instrument for crushing flax or hemp; an instrument for peeling the bark from willows; a heavy harrow for breaking up earth; a framework for holding a horse while being shod; a light carriage for training horses to be driven in harness; a large wagonette (also break). *v.t.* To crush flax or hemp. (F. *macque*, *grosse herse*; *char-à-bancs*; *briser*.)

Before the coming of the motor-car or char-à-bancs nearly all school-treats, bean-feasts, and parties on a day's outing drove in brakes.

M.E. and Low G. *brake*, from Dutch *breken* to break.



**Brake.**—A brake such as was used for excursions before the coming of the motor char-à-bancs.

**brako** [3] (brāk), *n.* An appliance for checking the motion of anything, especially a wheel. *v.t.* To check with a brake. (F. *frein*, *break*; *mettre le frein à*.)

The brake on a bicycle acts on the rim of the wheel and is made to press against it when the rider wants to stop. A bicycle without brakes is *brakeless* (brāk'les, *adj.*).

Many motor-cars nowadays are fitted with four-wheel brakes, brakes which act on all four wheels at once.

The guard on a train rides in the *brake-van* (*n.*), a van containing an emergency brake. A man who attends to a brake is a *brakesman* (brāks'mān, *n.*).

M.E. *brake*, perhaps from O.F. *brac*, oblique case of *bras*, from L. *brachium* arm, lever.

**brako** [4] (brāk), *n.* A thick clump of small trees or bushes. (F. *taillis*.)

A path across a wood which is overgrown with brushwood is called *braky* (brāk'tī, *n. pl.*).

M.E. *brake*; cp. Low G. *brake* tree-stumps, perhaps that which grows on rough or broken ground.

**brake** [5] (brāk). This is an earlier form of the past tense of break. See *break* [1].

**bramah** (bra' mā), *adj.* Invented by Joseph Bramah, an English engineer (1749-1814). *n.* A lock or key invented by him.

His chief inventions were the *bramah-lock* (*n.*) and the *bramah-press* (*n.*), or hydraulic press.

**bramble** (brām' bl), *n.* A rough prickly shrub. (F. *ronce*.)

This word is applied especially to the blackberry bush. Anything which is overgrown by brambles is said to be *brambled* (brām' bld, *adj.*), and any place which is full of brambles is *brambly* (brām' bli, *adj.*). A net used for snaring birds is called a *bramble-net* (*n.*).

M.E. *brembel*, A.-S. *brēmel*, *brembel*, *brember*, dim. of *brōm* brushwood, broom; cp. Dutch *braam*, Dan *brom*(baer), G. *brom*(beere) blackberry



**Bramble.**—A blackberry bramble in flower. It fruits in the autumn.

**brambling** (brām' bling), *n.* The mountain finch. (F. *pinson de montagne*.)

The *bramble finch*, *brambling*, or *mountain finch* (*Fringilla montifringilla*) is a near relation of the chaffinch, which it so closely resembles that it is also called the *mountain chaffinch*.

From E. *bramble* and suffix *-ling* belonging to.

**bran** (brān), *n.* The husks or coarser part of corn when it has been separated from the flour by being sifted through a bolting-machine or a bolting-cloth. (F. *son*.)

We do not eat bran as we do the rest of the separated grain, but it is useful in other ways, as, for instance, for packing breakable articles, for cleaning furs, etc.

M.E. *brin*, *bren*, from O.F. *bren*; there are several similar Celtic words of the same meaning, probably derived from E.

**branch** (bran-sh), *n.* A limb of a tree or plant, or a shoot from a bough; any offshoot from a main stem. *v.t.* To divide or arrange into branches; to adorn with a design of leaves or flowers. *v.i.* To put forth branches; to divide into branches, to turn away from the original direction. (F. *brancher*; *diviser en branches*; *poisier des branches*.)

We speak of a *branch* of the family, meaning another part of the family, such as our cousins, and of a *branch* of a river, meaning a tributary. A railway *branch* is a small railway line dividing off from the main line. A road *branches* where it divides into two or more roads. The English are a *branch* of the human race.

To do anything thoroughly is to do it root and branch. For example, when a city is destroyed by an enemy and all its inhabitants are killed, it is said to be destroyed root and branch and such methods are root and branch methods.

Branched-work (*n.*) is a term used in architecture for carved foliage.

Any tree or plant without branches is branchless (*branch' lès, adj.*), while if it has many branches it is branchy (*branch' i, adj.*). A small branch or twig is sometimes called a branchlet (*branch' lèt, n.*), and a young bird which has just left its nest and is hopping about among the branches of a tree is called a brancher (*branch' èr, n.*).

*F. branche*, from *L.L. branca* an animal's paw; cp. *L. brachium* arm. *SYN.*: *n.* Arm, bough, division, offshoot, ramification.

**branchiae** (*brāng' ki è*), *n.pl.* The gills of fishes and certain other water creatures. Another form is *branchia* (*brāng' ki à*). (*F. branchies.*)

Branchiae are breathing organs, with very thin walls, which allow air to pass into them from the water. Anything that has the shape of gills may be described as branchiform (*brāng' ki fōrm, adj.*).

Fish are the most familiar of branchiate (*brāng' ki àt, adj.*), branchiferous (*brāng kif' èr ùs, adj.*) or gill-bearing animals. Their gills are supported on bony branchial (*brāng' ki àl, adj.*) arches. Other branchiates are the larvae of such insects as dragon-flies and gnats; and crustaceans, such as the lobster and the prawn.

Certain small crustaceans are called Branchiopoda (*brāng ki op' ô dà, n.pl.*) because their gills are on their feet. A single one is a branchiopod (*brāng' ki ô pod, n.*). Among these branchiopodous (*brāng ki op' ô dūs, adj.*) creatures are the brine shrimp and the crab shield-shrimp.

*Gr. brankhia* gills, *pl.* of *brankhion* fin.

**brand** (*brānd*), *n.* A piece of burning or partly burnt wood; an iron used red-hot for making a mark that cannot be removed; an instrument for stamping such a mark; the mark so made; a mark of disgrace; a trademark; a class; a sword. *v.t.* To mark with or as if with a brand. (*F. brandon, flétrissure, estampille; flétrir.*)

In olden times branding was a frequent punishment for criminals. It was done upon the face in ancient Greece and Rome, and later upon the shoulders, breast, arms or legs, and the brand used was mostly a suitable letter of the alphabet. For instance, a Roman thief (*fu*) or runaway slave

(*fugitivus*) was branded with an F on the cheek.

In England during the sixteenth century the letters V (vagabond) for gipsies and tramps, S for runaway slaves, and M for malefactor (criminal) were used. In 1829, after branding with hot irons had been stopped by law, soldiers who deserted had the brand D tattooed on their skins with ink or gunpowder, or B.C. (bad character) if they were considered worthless men.

At the time of the Indian Mutiny an act was passed in 1858 ordering deserters to be branded with a D below the left armpit. This act remained in force until 1879.

One of the chief characters in Dumas' famous story, "The Three Musketeers," is a branded woman, Milady, who in her girlhood had the fleur-de-lis, the French national emblem, burned on her shoulder as a punishment for stealing.

The branding-iron (*brānd' ing i' èrn, n.*), the instrument used for branding, consisted of a long bolt, shaped at the end to the form of a letter, with a wooden handle.

Sheep and cattle are branded with the initials of their owner or some other distinctive mark, so that they may be recognized if they stray. Goods often bear a brand or trade-mark to guarantee that they are genuine.

A brand from the burning means a person rescued from sin or other moral danger, as a brand is plucked from a fire.

An article is said to be brand-new (*adj.*) or bran-new (*adj.*) when it has no signs of wear or use but looks just fresh from the furnace or factory.

A brander (*brānd' èr, n.*) is a gridiron, and to brander (*v.t.*) is to cook on one. Brand-iron (*n.*) also means gridiron and is sometimes applied to a trivet and other kitchen utensils.

Common Teut. word. *M.E.* and *A.-S. brand, brond* (cp. *O. Norse brand-r* brand, firebrand, sword-blade), from *brinnan* to burn; cp. *G. brennen*. *SYN.*: *v.* Imprint, stigmatize.

**brandish** (*brān' dish*), *v.t.* To flourish or wave about. *n.* A flourish. (*F. brandir; mouvement brandissant.*)

To brandish was originally used of waving a sword, or brand perhaps from its flashing in the light like a torch or firebrand.

A man attacked by thieves may flourish or brandish his stick about his head to intimidate his assailants, or a person receiving a telegram containing good news may brandish it in his excitement. We may call both these individuals brandishers (*brān' dish èrz, n.*). The knights of olden days sometimes



Brandish.—Basuto warriors in war dress brandishing their knobkerries.

gave a brandish with their weapons to hearten themselves before going into battle.

*M.E. brandishen*, from *brandissant*, pres. p. of *brandir* to brandish a sword, from O.F. *brand* sword, from O. Norse *brand-r*. The *E.* suffix *-ish* comes from *-iss-* of the *F.* *SYN.*: Flourish, shake, wave.

**brandling** (brānd' ling), *n.* A small earthworm; a young salmon. (*F. branle-queue, saumoneau.*)

The worm called a brandling has bright red rings round its body and is a bait much used by freshwater fishermen. The young salmon, before it takes to the sea, is known by many different names, brandling being one of them. Parr is another name for the same young fish.

*E. brand* (from the red colour of its markings), and dim. suffix *-ling*.

**brandy** (brān' di), *n.* A spirit distilled from wine or fresh grapes. *v.t.* To refresh with brandy; to mix with brandy. (*F. eau de vie.*)

Real brandy is the purest of alcoholic liquors, hence its use medicinally, and because of its purity it keeps good a long time. When first distilled it is a colourless liquid, but after a while it acquires a golden tint from the oak casks in which it is kept. Dark brown brandy is made by colouring the spirit with caramel. Old, well-matured brandy is called liqueur brandy. British, or imitation, brandy is common spirit mixed with flavouring and colouring substances. Cherry and raspberry brandies are common brandy mixed with the fruit essences.

If we give a fainting person brandy to drink we brandy him, and when we add a little brandy to a Christmas pudding in order to preserve it we brandy it. A **brandied** (brān' did, *adj.*) pudding will keep much longer than one that has not been so treated. A **brandy-ball** (*n.*) is a boiled sweetmeat flavoured with brandy, **brandy-snap** (*n.*) is gingerbread rolled into thin wafers, and a mixture of brandy and water is sometimes known as **brandy-pawnee** (*n.*). *Pāni* is the Hindustani for water.

The word was formerly spelt *brand-wine*, *brandy-wine*. Literally meaning burnt wine, it is derived from Dutch *brande-wijn*, from *branden* to burn, *wijn* wine; cp. *G. branntwein*.

**branks** (brānks), *n.pl.* A kind of gag or bridle once used for punishing scolding, fault-finding women; a bridle; a muzzle. (*F. bridon.*)

The instrument of punishment called the branks, supposed to have originated in Scotland, consisted of an iron framework to go over the head, with a projection inside which fitted into the mouth and pressed on the tongue, thus rendering the wearer incapable of speech. There is one, dated 1633, in the church of Walton-on-Thames,

Surrey, which bears the words, "a bridle to curb women's tongues that talk too idle." It was also known as the "Gossips' or scolds' bridle," and was probably quite as unpleasant a punishment as the ducking-stool, another punishment meted out to scolding women.

The bridle called branks had a piece of wood along each side of the horse's head, the two being joined by another piece or a halter.

Perhaps akin to Dutch *pranger* pincher, iron collar, *G. pranger* pillory, or Gaelic *brangas* scold's bridle, horse's halter.

**brank-ursine** (brānk' ēr sin), *n.* A plant of the genus *Acanthus*. Another name for it is bear's-breech. (*F. branche-ursine.*) See under bear [1].

*L.L. branca ursina* bear's claw. See branch, ursine.

**bran-new** (brān' nū). This is another spelling of brand-new. See under brand.

**brant-geese** (brānt' goos). This is another spelling of *brent-geese*. See *brent-geese*.

**brash** (brāsh), *n.* Loose rock or rubble. (*F. brèche.*)

This word is mostly used in the north of England. A loose, crumbling surface of a road is said to be *brashy* (brāsh' i, *adj.*), and broken ice is sometimes spoken of as **brash-ice** (*n.*).

Probably a corruption of *F. brèche* rocks in the bed of a torrent, *Ital. breccia*; otherwise the word is imitative.

**brass** (bras), *n.* A yellow alloy of copper and zinc; any article made of this alloy; a monumental tablet. *v.t.* To cover with brass. *adj.* Made of brass. (*F. airain, cuivre jaune, laiton; couvrir de cuivre jaune; de cuivre jaune.*)

In the strict technical sense, brass is an alloy of the two metals copper and zinc, but the name is often given to other alloys in which copper and zinc are only the principal constituents. The old engravings on brass plates placed over burial places in churches are known as *brasses*. In a loose way money is sometimes referred to as brass. If we cover an object with a thin coating of brass, we are said to *brass* it. An establishment where brass is cast is called a **brass-foundry** (*n.*).

A company of musicians chiefly using brass instruments is a **brass band** (*n.*); a plate of this metal engraved with name, trade, profession, or other record, is a **brass plate** (*n.*), and the phrase, not worth a **brass farthing** (*n.*), means worth practically nothing. In the navy a midshipman is sometimes called a **brass-bounder** (*n.*), and this term is also applied to an officer in the Merchant Service.



Branks.—The gag or branks once used to punish fault-finding women.

We may say that anything like brass is brassy (bra' si, *adj.*), because brass is used in making imitation gold jewellery, brass is also used to describe anything base or showy. Thus it can be said that a bold or shameless person is brassy, or that he shows brassiness (bra' si nēs, *n.*). Anything done in a bold or impertinent manner, or a piece of music played harshly and loudly is done brassily (bra' si li, *adv.*). A golf club having a wooden head faced with brass is called a brassy (brās' i, *n.*).



Brassy.—The golf club known as a brassy.

M.E. *bras*, *brasen* (*adj.*), A.-S. *braes* brass, *braescn* (*adj.*). Connexion with similar Scand. words is doubtful.

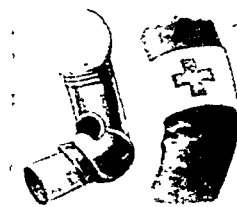
**brassage** (brās' aj), *n.* The fee charged by a mint for coining money. (F. *brassage*.)

Until 1925 anybody could take gold to the Royal Mint in London and ask to have it made into sovereigns and half-sovereigns. The cost of doing so, or the charge made for doing so, was called brassage. To-day, the Bank of England alone may avail itself of this privilege.

F. from *brasser* to rake and stir fused metal, for purposes of coinage.

**brassard** (brās' ard), *n.* A badge worn on the arm. (F. *brassard*.)

In the days when plate armour was worn during battle, the brassard or brasset was the metal piece which protected the upper part of the arm and held together the shoulder and elbow pieces. Nowadays the name is given to any badge worn on the arm to indicate the rank of, or the special work allotted to, the wearer. The red-cross armlet worn by members of the Royal Army Medical Corps during active service is a brassard.



Brassard.—Once a piece of armour, a brassard is now a badge

F. from *bras*, from L. *brachium* arm, with suffix *-ard* expressing instrument, etc., from G. *hart*, E. *hard*.

**brassica** (bras' ik ā), *n.* A genus of plants of the order Cruciferae. (F. *brassicé*.)

The plants belonging to this genus, which furnish valuable food-crops, bear long pods with seeds set in a single row. Although the name comes from the Latin for cabbage, the genus includes such plants as the turnip, colza, and mustard. Among the species of brassica in England we have the wild cabbage, the turnip, the swede, the rape or cole seed, the wild mustard or charlock, the white mustard, and the black mustard.

L. *brassica* cabbage.

**brat** [1] (brät), *n.* A cloak; an apron; a pinafore. (F. *manteau*, *tablier*.)

This word is chiefly used in Scotland and the north of England. In Scotland the expression, the bit and the brat, means food and clothing.

Probably of Celtic origin; cp. Gaelic and Irish *brat* cloak, apron, rag.

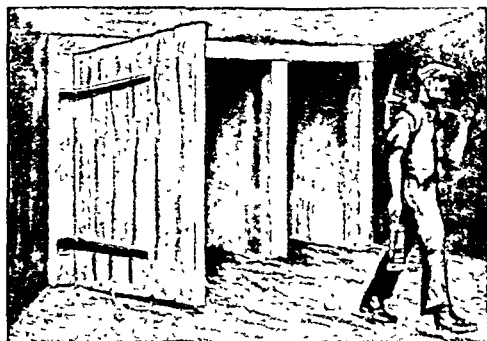
**brat** [2] (brät), *n.* A child; a baby. (F. *marmot*, *bambin*.)

Though this term used to be applied without any harsh meaning to a child, nowadays it is used only in a slighting or contemptuous sense.

Possibly of the same etymology as [1], meaning child, from the sense of swaddling clothes.

**brattice** (brät' is), *n.* A lining or a partition in a mine. *v.t.* To divide by a brattice. (F. *cloison*; *cloisonner*.)

A brattice, in mining, is a plank or brick lining or partition in a shaft or gallery, usually constructed to form an air-passage,



Brattice.—The lining or partition in a shaft or gallery of a mine, usually for the purpose of ventilation, is called a brattice.

or to force the air to flow in a certain direction. It is necessary to brattice most mine-shafts. Brattice-work (*n.*) or bratticing (brät' is ing, *n.*) is sometimes done with heavy, tarred cloth, called brattice-cloth (*n.*), instead of boards. A board guard round machinery is also called a brattice.

To an architect bratticing, or brattice-work, is open work of foliage or other rich design cast in metal or carved in stone.

M.E. *bretasce*, O.F. *bretesche*, F. *bretèche*, L.L. *breta(s)chia*, perhaps from G. *brett* plank, board.

**bravado** (brā va' dō; brā vā' dō), *n.* Insolent defiance; boastful behaviour. (F. *bravade*.)

In describing the attitude of anyone in a difficult or dangerous position, we may say that he assumed an air of bravado, meaning that he tried to look as though he were not in the least alarmed, when, as a matter of fact, he was extremely nervous.

Span. *bravada* boast, brag, verbal *n.* from *bravo* brave.

**brave** (brāv), *adj.* Courageous; showy. *n.* A Red Indian fighting man. *v.t.* To meet boldly. (F. *courageux*; *brave*; *braver*.)



A brave man is not afraid of dangers, for when he braves them they seem to disappear, and this for the very reason that he has faced them bravely (brāv' lī, *adv.*). When one has done anything wrong it is better to own up at once than to adopt a defiant attitude and attempt to brave it out.

In the old days before he began to suffer from contact with the "pale-face," the Indian brave was a noble savage. Boys of all ages have delighted in stories of his bravery (brāv' ē rī, *n.*) and of his free life on the prairie. Who has not thrilled at such splendidly stirring Indian tales as Thomas Mayne Reid's "The Scalp Hunters," and James Fenimore Cooper's "The Last of the Mohicans"? Even now the Indian brave is a romantic figure, especially when arrayed in all the bravery of feathers and beads.

*F. brave*, from Ital. *bravo* brave, gallant. *SYN.*: Bold, courageous, gallant, gay, valiant. *ANT.*: Cowardly, craven, timid.

**bravo** [1] (bra' vō), *n.* A hired ruffian or assassin. *pl.* Bravoes, bravos (bra' vōz). (*F. bravo.*)

Ital. *bravo*, L.L. *bravus* assassin. Some connect the word with L. *barbarus*.

**bravo** [2] (bra' vō; bra vō'), *inter.* Well done! Capital! Excellent! *n.* A cry or shout of approval; a cheer. The superlative bravissimo (bra vis' si mō) means very well done!

**bravura** (brā voo' rā), *n.* Brilliant artistic execution; a musical passage requiring great skill and dash. (*F. air de bravoure.*)

This is the name given to a particular style of playing or singing music which contains highly ornamental or florid passages. These have to be rendered boldly with an air of complete mastery.

Ital. *bravura*, literally skill, bravery.

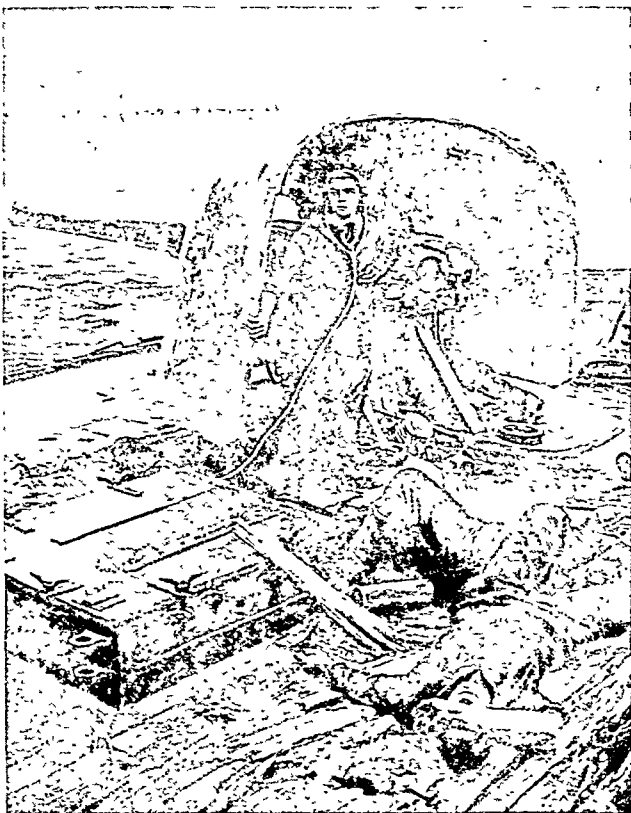
**brawl** (brawl), *v.i.* To quarrel noisily; to squabble; to make a disturbance; to roar as a torrent. *v.i.* To shout vulgarly. *n.* A noisy quarrel. (*F. clabauder, murmurer; clabauderie.*)

When running water brawls it tumbles noisily over the obstructions in its bed, such as stones or rocks. In legal language, people who brawl are those who interrupt divine service in a consecrated place or building, and this is an offence punishable by law. A person who indulges in noisy quarrels is a brawler (brawl' ēr, *n.*) or a quarreling (brawl' ing,

*adj.*) person, and he behaves brawlingly (brawl' ing lī, *adv.*).

M.E. *brawlen*; cp. Dutch *brallen*, G. *prahlen* to boast, brag. *SYN.*: Quarrel, squabble, wrangle.

**brawn** (brawn), *n.* Muscle, especially of the arm or calf of the leg; thick flesh; great muscular strength; boar's flesh pickled or potted. (*F. muscle, force musculaire. chair de sanglier.*)



Brave.—Although mortally wounded, brave John Travers Cornwell, V.C., a boy of seventeen, gallantly continued at his post on H.M.S. "Chester" at the Battle of Jutland in 1916.

Shakespeare uses the word brawn to denote the muscular part of the arm in the play of Coriolanus (iv, 6).

In a special sense, brawn is the flesh of the boar, and we give the same name also to a pig's head which has been boned, rolled up, bound with a string, and potted. In a figurative sense we use the word brawn to mean strength.

A brawny (brawn' i, *adj.*) arm or a brawny man is one with plenty of muscular strength, and his condition of muscular strength may be described as brawniness (brawn' i nes, *n.*). A brawner (brawn' er, *n.*) is a boar which has been specially fattened for the table. Such an animal has become brawnied (brawn'd, *adj.*).

M.E. *brawn* muscle, flesh of a boar, from O.F. *brawn*; cp. G. *braten* roast meat.

**bray** [1] (brā), *v.t.* To pound or crush small, especially with a pestle and mortar; to beat fine. (F. *broyer*.)

M.E. *brayen*, *bratin*, from O.F. *breier*, F. *broyer*; cp. Span. *bregar*, Ital. *brigare*, perhaps akin to G. *brechen* to break.

**bray** [2] (brā), *v.i.* To make a harsh, discordant noise like an ass. *v.t.* To utter with a harsh noise. *n.* The cry of an ass; any similar noise. (F. *crier comme un âne*; *faire résonner*; *braiment*, *braire*.)

The bray or hee-haw of the donkey is a grating, ugly, long-drawn-out sound. The noun and verb are also used of the harsh, jarring sound often made by a trumpet or other loud wind instrument, or an inferior gramophone, or of the noise of a storm, and scornfully, in allusion to the ass, of the voice of a noisy and foolish speaker.

O.F. *brat*, *brat*; L.L. *bragire*, cognate with L. *fragor*, a crashing noise.

**brayer** (brā'yer), *n.* A wooden instrument used for preparing printing-ink. (F. *pilon*.)

For etymology see **bray** [1].

**braze** [1] (brāz), *v.t.* To solder with an alloy of brass and zinc. (F. *braser*.)

The parts of a bicycle frame are brazed together at the joints. The surfaces to be joined are cleaned thoroughly and red-heated by a blowpipe. The brass solder, called spelter, is then applied to the joint in the form of wire or powder, along with borax, and heated until it melts and runs into the joint. A brazed joint is much stronger, and will stand much greater heat, than one made with a soft solder of tin, lead, and bismuth.

F. *braser* to solder; cp. O. Norse *brasa* to expose to fire.

**braze** [2] (brāz), *v.t.* To make of or colour like brass; to decorate with brass. (F. *travailler en airain*.)

Probably a modern derivative of *brass* on the analogy of *glass*, *glaze*; but cp. A.-S. *brasian* to braze.

**brazen** (brā'zén), *adj.* Made of brass; like brass; shameless. *v.t.* To face or acknowledge impudently; to make shameless. (F. *de cuivre jaune*, *d'airain*; *payer d'effronterie faire effronté*.)

Besides being used to describe things made of brass, the adjective is applied to people and things that have certain of the qualities possessed by brass. The poet John Milton, in "Paradise Lost" (xi, 713), speaks of the brazen throat of war, meaning the loud, harsh, terrifying din of battle.

People who are so hardened that they have lost all sense of what is seemly can be described as brazen or brazen-faced (brā'zén fāst, *adj.*), they behave brazenly (brā'zén lī, *adv.*), or with brazenness (brā'zén nēs, *n.*), and, when taxed with any fault, they brazen it out.

The ancients used to divide the history of mankind into different ages. The brazen age,

one of the ages imagined by the Greek poet Hesiod, was an age of violence, of cruelty and war, an age which was ended by its own violence.

A.-S. *braesen*. See **brass**.

**brazier** [1] (brā zhër), *n.* A worker in brass. (F. *chaudronnier*.)

The art of working in brass, and articles made of brass are called braziers (brā zhër i, *n.*).

From E. *brass* and suffix *-ier* denoting occupation, as in *collier*, *glazier*.

**brazier** [2] (brā'zhër), *n.* A pan or perforated vessel for holding burning coal or charcoal. (F. *brasier*.)

In Italy and other warm countries where fire-places and stoves are not much used for warming rooms, braziers are commonly used for this purpose in cold weather. A watchman also has a brazier standing near his hut when he keeps guard in the streets or elsewhere in the open on cold nights. The hot charcoal or other fuel not only warms him but cooks his food when needed.

Although the two words are of different origin, braziers are often used by braziers and other metal-workers.

F. *brasse* live coals or wood, embers, from a Teut. source. See **braze** [1].



Brazier.—The watchman's brazier keeps him warm and also cooks his food.

**brazil** (brā zil'), *n.* A hard reddish wood used in dyeing. (F. *bois du Brésil*.)

Brazil or brazil-wood (*n.*) is the product of an East Indian tree known as sappan. In the Middle Ages people spoke of an "Island of Brazil" far out in the Atlantic, where such trees were supposed to grow, and when a similar wood was discovered in South America, the country where it was found became known as the Land of Red Dye-Wood, or Terra de Brasil. Gradually people dropped this long title and simply called the country Brasil, or Brazil, the name by which it is now known. The brazil-nut (*n.*) is the large three-sided nut, or edible seed, which is the fruit of a native tree of Brazil.

**breach** (brēch), *n.* The act of breaking; an opening or gap; a violation (of a law, duty, etc.); a breaking off (of friendship or friendly relations). *v.t.* To make a gap or opening in. *v.i.* To leap from the water (as a whale). (F. *brèche*, violation, rupture; *faire brèche*.)

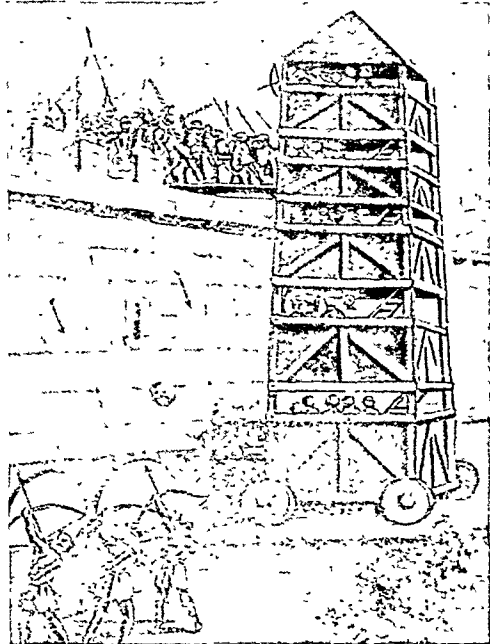
A person who does not carry out a duty entrusted to him is guilty of a breach of faith, that is, of breaking the trust placed in him. The words breach of promise apply specially to failure to keep a promise to marry. Any act of violence done in public, such as an assault or taking part in a riot, is called a breach of the peace, and he who commits it can be at once arrested. An opening made by guns in a fortification or by the waves in a sea-wall is a breach.

M.E. *breche*, A.-S. *brece*, *bryce* fracture, influenced by F. *brèche*, from a Teut. source; cp. G. *brechen* to break. SYN.: Break, dissension, quarrel, rupture, violation. ANT.: Amalgamation, completeness, reconciliation, union.

**breaching-tower** (brēch' ing tou' er), *n.* An enclosed structure on wheels, carrying a battering-ram with which to breach a wall. (F. *beffroi*.)

Before the invention of gunpowder, the battering ram was the chief means of breaking down the walls of a besieged town or castle. A breaching-tower was in effect a strongly-roofed shed, which both supported the ram and protected the crew against missiles hurled or shot downwards from the walls.

E. *breaching* (verbal adj.) making a breach, and tower.



Breaching-tower.—Before the invention of gunpowder breaching-towers were used to support the battering ram and protect its crew.



Bread.—Tigris boatmen making a meal from loaves of bread that are three feet in length.

**bread** (bred), *n.* A staple food made of flour kneaded into dough, usually with yeast, divided into loaves, and baked. (F. *pain*.)

To break bread may mean either to take food in the ordinary sense, or to partake of the Holy Communion. When we speak of a man working for his bread and butter we mean that he earns money to provide himself with the necessities of life; for bread and butter, and still more, bread and cheese, contain a great deal of nourishment at a very small cost.

The bread-winner (*n.*) of a family is usually the father, who earns money to keep himself, his wife, and children until the latter are old enough to support themselves. To take the bread out of a man's mouth means to take away his job or otherwise prevent him from earning his living. A rich and fortunate man is often said to have his bread buttered on both sides; while one who is well aware what is to his interest knows on which side his bread is buttered.

Bread-crumbs (*n.pl.*), which hungry birds appreciate in the winter, are used in the kitchen, crumbled very fine through a sieve, for dressing dishes of fried fish, etc., and for eating with hot roast pheasant and other game. Bread-fruit (*n.*) grows on a tree in the South Sea Islands, and makes a good substitute for bread when roasted.

The bread-root (*n.*) is an herbaceous plant which grows in North America; its carrot-like root is eaten as food. The bread-tree (*n.*), which is found in South Africa, is used as bread by the natives.

Common Teut. word. M.E. and A.-S. *brēad*, piece of a loaf; cp. G. *brod*.

**breadth** (bredth'), *n.* Width; measure from side to side; largeness; tolerance. (F. *largeur*.)

A surface has two measures—length and breadth—and when we measure any surface from side to side, we measure it breadthways

(breadth' wāz, *adv.*) or breadthwise (bredth' wīz, *adv.*). We speak also of the length and breadth of any object, as of a ship. Breadth is often used to denote things not material—such as the mind, the opinions, or the style, of an artist. Thus, if we say that a certain painter's style has breadth we mean that the work of the artist is simple and clear, and that more attention is paid to bringing out the chief features in a bold manner than to crowding the canvas with detail.

We show breadth of mind when we are charitable and look at things from every point of view, and when we are tolerant of other people who differ from us in opinion or belief. When we possess a fair knowledge of a wide range of subjects we are said to possess breadth of culture.

M.E. *brede*, A.-S. *brāðu*, from *brād* broad, *-th* being added through the influence of *length*, etc.

**break** [ɪ] (brāk), *v.t.* To part or separate by violence; to sever; to divide; to crush or shatter; to violate; to interrupt. *v.i.* To separate into parts; to fall to pieces; to burst. *n.* The condition of being broken; the act of breaking; an opening; an interval. *p.t.* Broke (brōk), formerly and in Bible brake (brāk), *p.p.* broken (brō' ken), also sometimes broke. (F. *rompre*, *casser*, *briser*, *violer*; *se casser*, *éclater*; *interruption*.)

To pull into two pieces a length of string, to shatter a window, to accustom a horse to the harness are to break them. Waves break on the shore, and the frost breaks when there is a thaw. Clouds break when blue sky appears. We break a journey when we stop on the way; we break silence by speaking and break our fast by eating. To stop or interrupt the flow of electricity is to break it; to lessen the force of a blow is to break

its power, and to cashier a soldier or sailor, or reduce him in rank, is to break him.

To break a bank is to force it to stop payment. An author breaks the continuity or connectedness of his story when he leaves certain of his characters and deals with others, and anyone who makes a sudden appearance before others breaks in upon them.

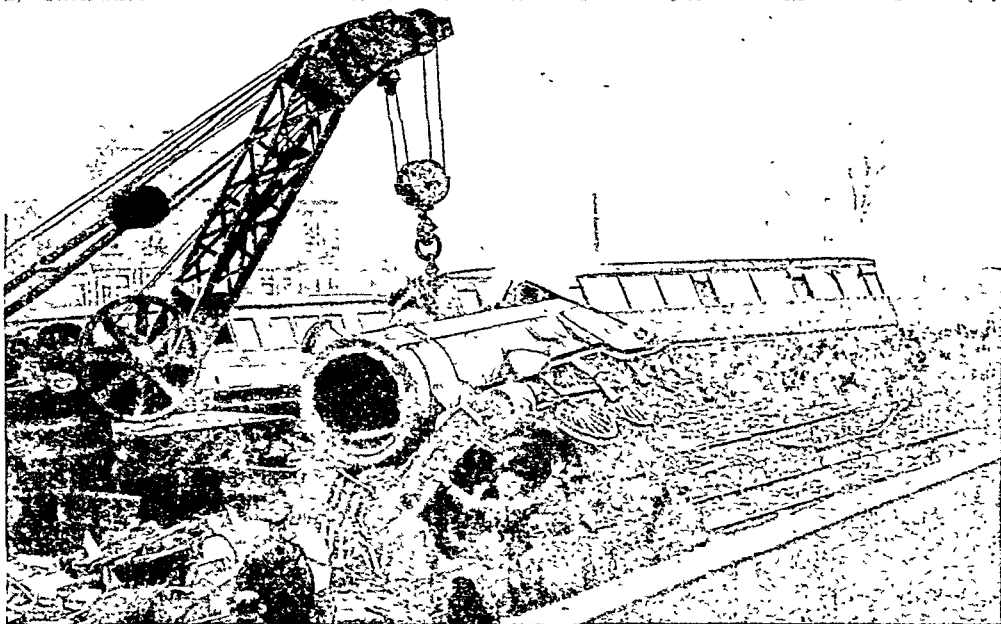
The health of a person who becomes ill is said to break, or break down, and if he is gradually dying he is breaking up. A boy's voice breaks when it changes at about the age of fourteen. In another sense one's voice breaks when one loses control of it through strong feeling. To break with a friend is to quarrel with him. A horse may break from a trot into a canter, or from a canter into a gallop, and a cricket or tennis ball can be made to break, or turn from its true course after striking the ground; the former by having a spin given to it by the fingers at the moment of delivery, and the latter by drawing the racket across the ball when striking it.

To begin a game of billiards is to break, and a number of points scored by a player at any one visit to the table is a break. The point in music where the voice registers changes, as from tenor to bass, is a break, and so is an interruption in time, such as the dinner-hour in a working-day.

If one fails to fulfil a promise to another he breaks faith with him, or breaks his word. To commit a crime or offence is to break the law. A person is said to break a lance with another when he engages in a test of skill, a trial of strength, or a controversy with another. To start the unloading of a ship's cargo is to break bulk, and a fox or



Break.—Not only is their work perilous to themselves, but housebreakers have to be careful that no part of the house they are breaking falls on to the street below. A portion of the hoarding erected to prevent such an accident is seen near the workman on the right.



Break-down gang.—A break-down gang at work clearing the line after a railway accident. The necessary apparatus for dealing with an accident such as this is kept in instant readiness at various suitable points.

other animal that darts from its hiding-place is said to break cover. An athlete during training may sustain an injury and break down.

A burglar who forcibly enters a house is said to break into it, and a dog that can snap its chain is able to break loose. To disclose sad tidings without causing sudden alarm is to break the news. When war begins suddenly it is said to break out; so does an epidemic of influenza, and so do pimples or blotches on the skin.

A workman is said to break the back of a task when he gets the greater part done, and if it is a particularly disheartening task he may refer to it as one to break one's heart, or cause one to despair. To break the ice is to take the first step, or make the first effort, to get rid of the reserve or shyness which strangers often feel when they meet. To break up is to reduce to small pieces, to disband, or to separate, or to begin school holidays.

In Australia the stampeding of cattle is referred to as a break-away (*n.*), a term that is also applied to a single animal which escapes from the herd. A train which is subject to a break-down (*n.*) or accident, causes a stoppage on the line, so the earliest attendance of the break-down gang (*n.*), men who have to clear the track, is necessary. One who becomes seriously ill is said to suffer a break-down in health. In building a special arrangement of bricks, plates, etc., by which the joints do not come immediately over each other is a break-joint (*n.*).

A terrific speed, or one which endangers the neck, or life, of anyone is described

as break-neck (*adj.*), and the falling apart of a substance, or its being reduced to pieces, is a break-up (*n.*). Such a substance is breakable (*brak' à bl, adj.*), and the act of breaking, or its state after being broken, is breakage (*brāk' aj, n.*).

M.E. *breken*, A.-S. *brecan*, akin to Dutch *breken*, G. *brechen*, L. *frangere*, Gr. *rhēgnynai*, ultimately from Indo-European root *bhreg* to break. SYN.: *v.* Fracture, impair, shatter, smash, tame. ANT.: *v.* Fasten, join, unite, weld.

**break** [2] (*brāk*). This is another spelling of brake. See brake [2].

**breaker** [1] (*brāk' ér*), *n.* One who breaks; a thing which breaks; a breaking wave. (*F. briseur, brisant.*)

A man who crushes stones is a breaker of stones, and one who violates the law is a breaker of the law, or a law-breaker. A crested wave which dashes itself against the shore or a sand-bank is a breaker. The word is often used as a figure of speech, and in the plural form, as when we say there are breakers ahead, meaning there is danger or trouble near at hand.

E. *break*, and suffix *-er*, denoting the agent.

**breaker** [2] (*brāk' ér*), *n.* A keg, a small water-cask used at sea. (*F. baril de galère.*)

A breaker, holding about seven gallons, is used in boats to supply the crew with water, or for carrying water aboard ship.

Span. *barrica*, *bareca* a small cask.

**breakfast** (*bræk' fást*), *n.* The first meal of the day. *v.t.* To provide with this meal. *v.i.* To eat this meal. (*F. déjeuner.*)

The meal called breakfast gets its name from the fact that it is the one at which a

person breaks his fast, or eats again after the interval of the night.

*E. break and fast.*

**breakwater** (brāk' waw tēr), *n.* A wall or other structure built in the sea to ward off the force of the waves. (*F. brise-lames.*)

When we go to the seaside we may see exactly what a breakwater is. Many seaside towns have a long stone structure, usually curving round, to form a protection for shipping in the harbour. This is a breakwater. At many, too, there are small stone or wooden projections reaching seaward which break the force of the waves as they roll shorewards. These are called groynes, and a groyne is a small breakwater.

The form which a breakwater takes depends on the depth of water and other conditions. It may be merely a long, wide pile of stones tipped from barges till they rise above high water level, as at Plymouth; or it may be a wall built up from the sea-bed with huge concrete blocks laid by powerful cranes, as at Dover; or again, it may be a stone pile capped with solid blocks, as at Portland.

At Newhaven, in Sussex, breakwaters were formed by dropping huge sacks of concrete through the bottoms of special barges, one sack containing up to one hundred and eighty tons of the material, which hardened after it was in place.

The great mole at Zeebrugge, in Belgium, now famous on account of the gallant attack made in the harbour on St. George's Day, 1918, was already well known among engineers because of the novel method used in making the outer end of it.

Thus is formed of the largest concrete blocks in existence. They weigh four

thousand five hundred tons each, and were made as follows. Great iron boxes, having double walls a few feet apart, were built near the shore, and weighted with enough concrete to make them float upright. They were then towed out to the position they had to occupy in the mole, and sunk by adding more concrete. The inside space was then filled in solid.

Breakwaters indeed must be massive. In 1898 a storm moved bodily a part of the Peterhead breakwater in Scotland, weighing three thousand three hundred tons, without breaking the joints.

*E. break and water.*

**bream** [1] (brēm), *n.* A freshwater fish of the genus *Abramis*. (*F. brème.*)

The only well-known British bream is the carp-bream (*Abramis brama*), the white bream being somewhat rare. It has a flattened body, and high arched back, and is sometimes called the yellow bream because of its colour.

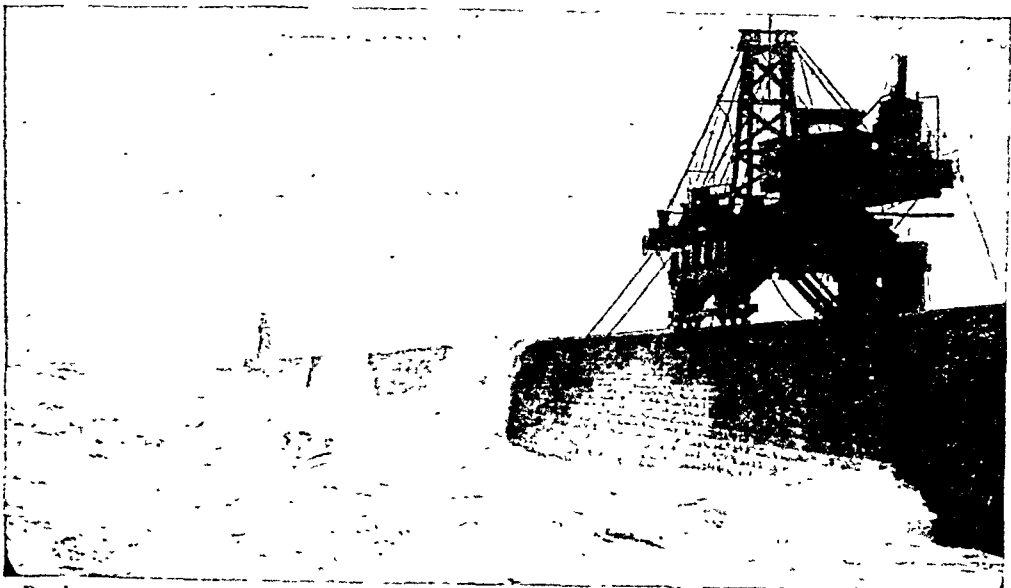
*M.E. brème, O.F. brasme, from a Teut. source; cp. O.H.G. brahsema, G. brassen.*

**bream** [2] (brēm), *v.t.* To clean (the bottom of a ship) by burning. (*F. chauffer.*)

A ship's bottom gradually becomes foul with mud, shells and seaweed, which become firmly attached to the pitch with which it is coated. Breaming the ship's bottom consists of burning it with kindled furze, reeds, seaweed, and similar material. This softens the pitch and loosens the rubbish, which is then easily removed.

Perhaps from Dutch *brem* broom, furze.

**breast** (brest), *n.* The front upper part of the human body; the bosom or chest; the corresponding part in a quadruped or



**Breakwater.**—A breakwater receiving the full force of a gale. Granite is often used, but concrete blocks weighing 4,500 tons each were employed in making the great mole at Zeebrugge, in Belgium.

bird; the part of a coat covering the chest. *v.t.* To oppose or face. (F. *sein, poitrine; opposer la poitrine à*.)

The breast or chest was regarded as the seat of the feelings and thoughts, hence we still speak of the secrets of one's breast, and to make a clean breast of it is to make a full confession.

The long flat bone in the front part of the chest is the **breastbone** (*n.*). To this the front ends of most of the ribs are attached. **Breast-deep** (*adj.* and *adv.*) water is water deep enough to reach the breast; and a thing that stands up as high as the breast is **breast-high** (*adj.*). When the scent lies breast-high, hounds run with their heads in the air.

A **breast-drill** (*n.*) is a drill with a flat top on which the workman can press with his breast. A **breast-pin** (*n.*) is worn in a scarf for an ornament, a **breastplate** (*n.*) for protection against arrows and spears, and even, in the Great War, against bullets. The Jewish high-priest's breastplate, of twelve jewels on embroidered linen, was part of his vestments. Turf is pared with a **breast-plough** (*n.*) pushed by the user. A **breast-rail** (*n.*) is used at breast height on a balcony or parapet.

A **breastsummer** (*n.*) or **bressummer** (*bres' um ér, n.*) is a long, wide girder supporting a wall over a shop-front or bay window. A water wheel turned by water flowing between it and a curved masonry slope is named a **breast-wheel** (*n.*). A **breastwork** (*n.*) is a sloped bank of earth thrown up by soldiers as a protection against rifle fire and artillery, and a **breast-wall** (*n.*) is a retaining wall erected to hold a bank of earth in place. The word also means a railing across a ship.

M.E. *brest*, A.-S. *brēost*; common Teut., akin to O. Norse *brjóst*, Dan. *bryst*, G. *brust*.

**breath** (*breth*), *n.* The air drawn in and expelled by the lungs; a single act of breathing; the power of breathing; a slight breeze; an instant; a pause; a trifle. (F. *haleine, soufle*.)

Actually the word **breathless** (*breth' lès, adj.*) means without breath, but often it is used in a different sense as when William Wordsworth speaks of "a nun breathless with adoration," or when we are said to listen eagerly or breathlessly (*breth' lès li, adv.*) to an exciting story. When we become breathless from running, we get out of breath, or lose our breath, in the sense that we find

it difficult to take into the lungs enough air to supply our needs.

If the word **breathlessness** (*breth' lès nès, n.*) were used in its strict meaning, that is, without breath, it would also mean without life. Useless argument or discussion is said to be waste of breath. Because we take a breath every few seconds the word has come to mean a short space of time, as when Shakespeare says "Give me some breath,

some little pause," or when Lord Tennyson says "Sweet and bitter in a breath." A single breath is a very small thing, so trifles and even mere words are spoken of as breath. We may speak of a breath of wind, or a breath of scandal. In breathing the vocal chords are wide apart, but when we sing or speak they should be brought close together, otherwise the air escapes too rapidly from our lungs and our voice becomes **breathy** (*breth' i, adj.*). The singing master may then reprove us for our **breathiness** (*breth' i nès, n.*).



**Breastplate.**—The breastplate used by Italian soldiers during the World War of 1914-18.

M.E. *brēth*, A.-S. *bræth* odour, reek, vapour rising from anything burning, from

Teut. root *brac-* to burn, heat; cp. G. *brodem* vapour. See **brawn**, **broad**.

**breathe** (*brēth*'), *v.t.* To draw into or expel air from the lungs; to live; to take breath; to rest. *v.t.* To inhale or exhale; to utter; to allow to recover breath. (F. *respirer, souffler*.)

All living things breathe, and to breathe one's last or to stop breathing is to die. **Breathable** (*brēth' ābl, adj.*) air which must contain enough oxygen, and be practically free from harmful gases, may be taken in by means of lungs, gills, breathing-pores (*n.*), as in insects and plants, or even through the moist skin. When we are doing anything very active it is necessary to breathe more rapidly or more deeply than when we are at rest; it may even be necessary to pause now and again for a breathing-space (*n.*) or breathing-time (*n.*), just as a wise rider will stop to breathe, or refresh, his panting horse. Anyone who breathes is said to be a **breather** (*brēth' ér, n.*), and the same word is often used for a short spell of exercise in the open air.

During times of fear or anxiety it is difficult to breathe properly, so we are said to breathe again, or to breathe freely, when we are relieved from fear or anxiety. Flowers may be said to breathe out fragrance, a musician may breathe an air upon a flute, angry people may breathe threats, a light wind may be said to breathe

softly through the trees, and when a secret is to be kept we are warned not to breathe a word about it. The action of respiration is called breathing, and if we say that a statue is a breathing (*brēth' ing*, *adj.*) likeness of a man, we mean that it is life-like. In grammar breathing (*n.*) means to sound or aspirate the letter *h*.

M.E. *brēthen* from *brēth* breathe.

**bred** (*bred*). This is the past participle of *breed*. See *breed*.



**Breech**.—The breech of a 16-inch naval gun, a weapon which weighs one hundred and seventeen tons and fires a shell of one ton.

**breech** (*brēch*), *n.* The hinder part of anything. *pl.* breeches (*brich' ēz*). A garment for the lower part of the body. *v.t.* To clothe with breeches. (F. *culotte*, *culasse*; *mettre en culotte*.)

The breech of a gun is that part which lies behind the bore, or the ammunition chamber, and a breech-loader (*n.*) is a gun loaded at this part, the process being called breech-loading (*n.*). There is a movable piece in a gun called the breech-block (*n.*) which has to be withdrawn before the cartridge or shell can be inserted, and closed again before firing. Other parts connected with the breech of a gun are the breech-pin (*n.*), breech-screw (*n.*), breech-wrench (*n.*), and breech-sight (*n.*).

The part of a draft horse's harness called the breeching (*brēch' ing*, *n.*) or breech-band (*n.*) is the broad strap that runs behind the legs. A stout rope used to fasten a gun to a ship's side is also called a breeching. The plural form of the word, breeches, denotes a garment worn by men which covers the lower part of the body, and reaches just below the knees. To be without such a garment is to be breechless (*brēch' les*, *adj.*). The life-saving breeches-buoy (*n.*) is a pair of canvas breeches fitted to a kind of life-buoy slung and hauled upon a rope.

M.E. *brēch* (*sing.*), A.-S. *brīc*, *pl.* of *brōc*; common Teut., originally a garment for the loins and thighs; cp. obsolete G. *bruch*. See *brogue*.

**breed** (*brēd*), *v.t.* To beget; to give birth to; to bring forth; to rear. *v.i.* To come into being. *n.* Family; stock. (F. *engendrer*, *élever*; *s'engendrer*; *race*.)

This word has many uses, all having the same idea of something being brought into the world, and cared for, well or badly. We may say that people were born and bred in a certain place; that they are well-bred or ill-bred, and a person's breeding (*brēd' ing*, *n.*) is usually taken to include his parentage as well as his training and behaviour. Any-one interested in breeding sheep rears them in order to improve their qualities, and such people are called breeders (*brēd' ērz*, *n.pl.*). When the young of animals are like their parents the latter are said to breed true.

To be of the same breed means to come of the same parents or stock. Figuratively, we may speak of badly drained districts breeding malaria, of our climate breeding hardy Englishmen, of poverty and injustice breeding revolution, and of people breeding ideas and plans.

M.E. *brēden*, A.-S. *brēdan* to keep warm, hatch, from the stem of *brood*; cp. G. *bruten* to hatch. See *breath*. SYN.: *v.* Bear, generate, produce *n.* Family, line, lineage, pedigree, race.

**breeze** [1] (*brēz*), *n.* A light wind; a slight quarrel. *v.i.* To blow lightly, as a breeze. (F. *brise*.)

We use the word breeze figuratively to mean a more or less unimportant verbal disagreement, as, for example, when two speakers at a public meeting disagree and each airs his views, though not entirely losing self-control. Also we use the word of a faint rumour, a report which is only whispered from one to another.

A calm sea, entirely unruffled by any wind or even the faintest breeze, may be described as breezeless (*brēz' les*, *adj.*). A breezy (*brēz' i*, *adj.*) spot is a place that is exposed to the breezes and also to the heavier, stronger winds. In a figurative sense the word breezy means brisk, jovial, lively, as when we say he has a very breezy manner. Such a man would speak breezily (*brēz' i li*, *adv.*) or with breeziness (*brēz' i nes*, *n.*).

Formerly spelt *brize*. In various Romance languages (Span. *brisa*, Port. *briza*, Ital. *brezza*) the word has the meaning of F. *bise* a cold north wind, and was introduced into E. from the Spanish West Indies.

**breeze** [2] (*brēz*), *n.* A term applied to various flies, such as the gadfly, that annoy cattle and horses. Another spelling is *brize* (*brēz*). (F. *taon*.) This word is used chiefly in old and poetical books, and still occasionally in the country.

A.-S. *brīosa*. There is said to be no connexion with G. *brenise*.

**breeze** [3] (*brēz*), *n.* Fuel of a small size; a kind of concrete made into slabs for building. (F. *poussier*.)

This particular fuel is mainly used by brick-makers. It consists of small cinders, cinder-dust, or the refuse from coal and coke.



The same materials, mixed with cement and poured into moulds, form a cheap substitute for bricks, especially in partition walls.

From F. *braise* live coals, embers; cp. *brazier* (pan for burning charcoal).

**Brehon** (brē' hōn), *n.* An hereditary judge in Ireland under the ancient law of that country.

**Brehon law** (*n.*) was the law of all Ireland until its conquest by the English. Edward III partly abolished the old laws, and they were finally done away with by James I. The old writings giving the laws were translated into English during the second half of the nineteenth century. Some of the laws are very ancient, and show a Brehon to have once been much the same as a Druid of Julius Caesar's time.

O. Irish *bríthem* judge.

**brent-goose** (brent' goos), *n.* The smallest of the wild geese. (F. *oie sauvage, cravant*.)

The brent-goose or brant-goose breeds only in the far north, but is a winter visitor to the coasts of Britain. It has a black head and neck marked with small white patches and the body is dark. The scientific name is *Bernicla brenta*.

Brent (meaning burnt) refers to the bird's dark colour; cp. G. *brand-gans*.

**bresummer** (bres' ūm er). This is another spelling of breastsummer. See under breast.

**brethren** (breth' rēn). This is a plural form of brother. See brother.

M.E. *bretheren*, a double pl. from earlier *brethre*, A.-S. *brōðēre*.

**bretwalda** (bret wawl' dā), *n.* A ruler of Britain or the Britons; a title given to some early Anglo-Saxon kings who were higher in power than the rest. (F. *bretwalda*.)

As this word occurs in only two writings of the ninth century, it is possible that modern writers of history have made it seem too important. Many early kings who have been given this title had no extensive power, though the title seems to imply a claim to succeed the Roman official called *dux Britanniae*, "lord of Britain." The growth of England into a single kingdom was slow and uncertain, but, at any rate, out of the Bretwaldadom (bret wawl' dā dōm, *n.*), or empire of vassal kings, came the kingdom as we know it to-day.

A.-S. "wielder," or ruler of the Britons.

**breve** (brēv), *n.* A note of time in music. (F. *brève*.)

In point of time, the breve is double the length of a semibreve, thus being equal to four minims, but in this kind of music the minims are played at the same rate as crotchets, or double the usual rate. In the Middle Ages the breve was a short note and was written square in shape.

Ital. *breve*, from L. *brevis* short.

**brevet** (brev' èt), *n.* An honorary commission in the army; an official document that confers certain privileges. *v.t.* To bestow by brevet. *adj.* Honorary. (F. *brevet, commission; breveter; honoraire*.)

Certain officers in the British Army may be granted a commission, or brevet, whereby they assume a higher rank but do not receive an increase of pay. Thus a captain who has served six years may be made a brevet-major (*n.*). To brevet a man means to raise him to an honorary rank or position by conferring on him a brevet. After an

aeroplane pilot has passed certain tests he is given a certificate, or brevet, to show that he is fully qualified.

F. dim. of *bref* (*n.*) brief, note, from L. *brevis* short.

**breviary** (brē' vi à ri), *n.* A Prayer Book for the daily use of the Roman Catholic clergy. (F. *bréviaire*.)

All clergy belonging to the Roman Catholic Church have to say daily the special prayers for the day set forth in the

breviary. The modern breviary, though it has been frequently revised, came into being during the lifetime of Pope Innocent III (1198-1216).

L. *breviārium* summary, abridgment, from L. *brevis* short, and suffix *-ary* (L. *-ārius*).

**brevier** (brē' vēr), *n.* A size of printing type. (F. *petit-texte*.)

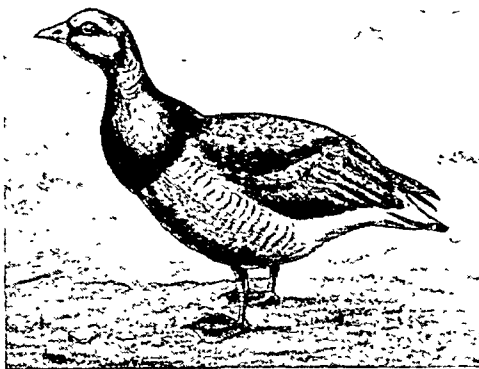
In size, this type is between bourgeois and minion. It was probably so named because breviaries, or Prayer Books, used to be printed in this type.

**brevity** (brev' i ti), *n.* Shortness. (F. *brève*.)

A full statement in few words has brevity.

In Shakespeare's play "Hamlet" (ii, 2), Polonius—the man least given to practising brevity—says: "Since brevity is the soul of Wit . . . I will be brief."

Anglo-French *brevete*, from L. *brevitas* (acc. *-tāt-em*), from *brevis* short, suffix *-ty* of abstract nouns (L. through F. *ité*). SYN.: Briefness, conciseness, pithiness, pointedness. ANT.: Circumlocution, length, prolixity, verbosity.



Brent-goose.—The smallest of the wild geese, the brent-goose is a winter visitor to Britain.

**brew** (broo), *v.t.* To prepare by boiling, steeping, and fermenting; to concoct; to plot. *v.i.* To make beer or ale; to be in preparation. *n.* The process or product of brewing. (F. *brasser, tramer; faire de la bière, se préparer; brassage, liqueur brassée.*)

We brew ale or beer, porter or stout, by boiling, steeping, and fermenting a concoction of malt, but we brew a pot of tea by boiling and steeping only. When beer is being made or when something is being prepared or concocted, we say that it is brewing. Black, heavy clouds darkening the sky usually show that a storm is brewing. The operation and product of brewing is called a brew or brewage (broo' àj, *n.*), and the person who does the brewing is a brewer (broo' èr, *n.*).

Formerly the word brewster was usually applied to a female brewer, though it was sometimes used when speaking of a male brewer, but nowadays the term is used only in the phrase Brewster Sessions (*n.pl.*), the name given to the annual meeting of magistrates who decide what licences shall be granted to people to sell beer and other alcoholic liquors. The place where beer is made is a brew-house (broo' hous, *n.*) or brewery (broo' er i, *n.*).

Common Teut. word. M.E. *brewen*, A.-S. *brōwan*; cp. G. *brauen*. SYN.: Compound, concoct, hatch, mix.

**briar** (brī' ār), *n.* This is another spelling of brier. See brier.

**Briareus** (brī ār' e ūs, *n.* A many-handed person; in mythology, a giant with a hundred arms. (F. *Briarée.*)

In Greek mythology, Briareus was a son of the god Uranus, or Poseidon, and Gaea (Earth), a monster with one hundred hands and fifty heads, like his brothers Cottus and Gyges. The three brothers, according to one story, aided Zeus (Jupiter) in defeating the Titans, and, according to another, themselves attacked Zeus, who had them imprisoned in the bowels of the earth.

Gr. *Briarēōs*, from *brīān* to be strong.

**bribe** (brib), *n.* A gift offered to influence conduct or opinion. *v.t.* To influence by such a gift. *v.i.* To practise bribery. (F. *don destiné à corrompre, corruption; corrompre.*)

When something is given to induce a course of action to be taken, especially a wrongful course of action, to one who otherwise would have acted differently, that gift is a bribe. To make such a gift is to bribe the person who accepts it, and it is a corrupt practice thus to bribe.

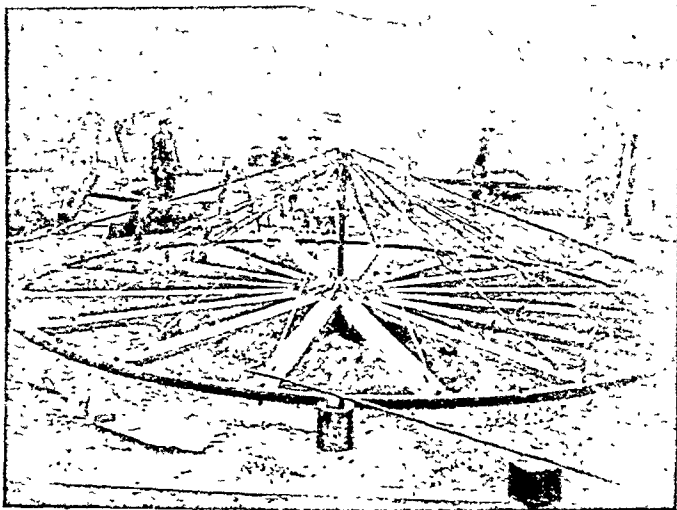
One whose action or opinion can be influenced by such a gift is a bribable (brīb' ābl, *adj.*) person, and we say that he has bribability (brī bā bil' i ti, *n.*). A man who takes a bribe is a bribee (brī bē', *n.*), but one who cannot be bribed is a bribeless (brīb' lès, *adj.*) man. Whoever offers bribes is a briber (brīb' èr, *n.*) and is said—especially when he offers bribes to influence votes—to practise bribery (brīb' èr i, *n.*), a word which sometimes also denotes the taking of a bribe.

M.E. and F. *bribe* morsel of bread or meat given to beggars; cp. Ital. *birba*, Span. *briba* practice of begging.

**bric-à-brac** (brik' à brāk), *n.* Ornaments; curiosities. (F. *bric-à-brac.*)

Odds and ends, the sort of things we might expect to find in an old curiosity shop, are bric-à-brac.

F., cp. *de bric et de brac* from here and there the words being a mere jingle.



Brick.—The wash mill of a brick-field in which the clay used for making bricks is mixed with chalk.

**brick** (brik), *n.* A block of baked clay and sand, usually oblong in shape; bricks collectively; a loaf shaped like a brick. *v.t.* To lay or build with bricks. (F. *brique; bâtir en briques, briqueter.*)

Most red, or terra-cotta, buildings are built of brick. One of the blocks a child uses for toy building is a toy brick, and there is an oblong loaf of bread called a brick or tin loaf. A broken piece of brick, especially when used as a missile, is called a brickbat (brik' bāt, *n.*). The clay used for making bricks and the clayey earth found in the London area is known as brick-clay (*n.*) or brick-earth (*n.*).

Powdered brick is brickdust (*n.*), and a brickdust (*adj.*) garment is one tinged with or coloured like this powder. Brickmaking (*n.*) is carried on in a brickfield (*n.*), where bricks are baked in an oven-house called a

brick-kiln (*n.*). A workman who builds with bricks is a bricklayer (*brik' lā ēr, n.*).

When the foliage of the tea plant is softened by steam and pressed into oblong blocks it is called brick-tea (*n.*). Brickwork (*brik' wërġ, n.*) may mean either the work of bricklaying or the work done by a bricklayer, or, in the plural, a brickyard, a place where bricks are baked and stored. Brickwork built into a timber framework is known as brick-nogging (*n.*).

To brick a wall is to build it of brick, or to plaster it in imitation of brick, and to brick up a door or window is to block it up with bricks. A bricken (*brik' ěn, adj.*) house or wall is one made of brick, and a bricky (*brik' i, adj.*) heap is a heap of bricks either whole or in bits, or of some material like bricks.

Probably from O.F. *brigue* broken piece, of Teut. origin; cp. break.

**brickfielders** (*brik' fēld ērs*), *n.pl.* Hot, dusty winds that blow in South Australia.

Brickfielders is the popular name given by Australians to the unpleasant, dry, hot, dusty winds that in summer sometimes blow outwards and southwards from the desert lands in the interior of the continent. These winds often do much damage to crops, and are called brickfielders because of the red dust which they carry from the arid territory.

**bricole** (*brik' ōl; bri kōl', n.*). The rebound of a ball from a wall or from a cushion; a harness for men employed in hauling field guns; a kind of catapult used in ancient warfare. (F. *bricole*.)

In billiards, a stroke made off the cushion to pocket the ball, or to make a cannon, is a bricole, or indirect stroke. In tennis, it applies to a stroke in which the ball strikes a wall before reaching the floor.

When horses cannot be used or procured to drag field guns the work often has to be done by soldiers. The harness which they wear when employed thus is called a bricole. An instrument for hurling heavy stones, known as a bricole, was formerly used with deadly effect against a mass of men or the walls of a besieged city.

F. from L.L. *bricola*.

**bride** [1] (*brid*), *n.* A woman newly married, or about to be married. (F. *nouvelle mariée, fiancée*.)

A newly married man or one about to be married is called a bridegroom (*brid' groom, n.*), and the friend who attends him at the wedding as his best man is the bridesman (*bridz' mǎn, n.*). The bridesmaid (*bridz' mǎd, n.*) is the young unmarried woman who

attends the bride. A wedding was formerly called a bridal (*brid' āl, n.*), but this word is now used as an adjective, as in bridal (*adj.*) veil—the veil worn by a bride—bridal day, and so on. The bride-cake (*n.*) is the cake distributed among wedding guests, and the bride-bowl (*n.*), bride-cup (*n.*), or bride-ale (*n.*) is a bowl or cup of spiced wine sometimes served with the bride-cake.

M.E. *brid*, A.-S. *bryd*; common Teut., cp. O. Norse *brúth-r*, G. *braut*. F. *bru* daughter-in-law is from Teut. Originally perhaps the meaning was "she who brews or makes broth." Cp. L. *Frūts* a name of Venus as mother. *Bridal* is from bride-ale.



Bride.—A bride and bridegroom just leaving the church after being married. The two little children following the train-bearers are bridesmaids.

**bride** [2] (*brid*), *n.* A bonnet string; the delicate net-work which connects the pattern in lace.

F. *bride* bridle.

**bridewell** (*brid' wel*), *n.* A reformatory; a prison. (F. *maison de correction, prison*.)

Bridewell, the holy well—dedicated to St. Bride, or St. Bridget—that once existed in London between Fleet Street and the Thames, gave its name to a royal palace, which stood there, and to the surrounding parish. Edward VI gave this palace to the city for use as a refuge for the poor, but later it became a prison and a house of correction for vagabonds and other troublesome people.

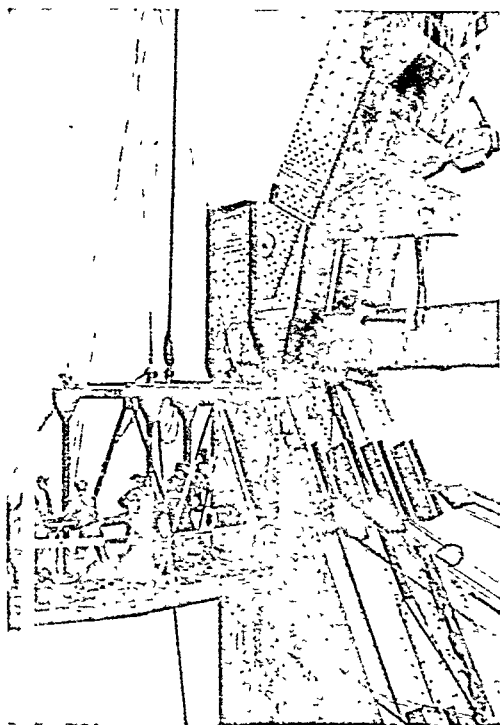
The building was partly destroyed by the Great Fire (1666), but it remained in use as a prison until 1864. The name has survived as a general term for other reformatories.

**bridewort** (*brid' wërġ*), *n.* The meadow-sweet. (F. *spirée ulmaire*.)

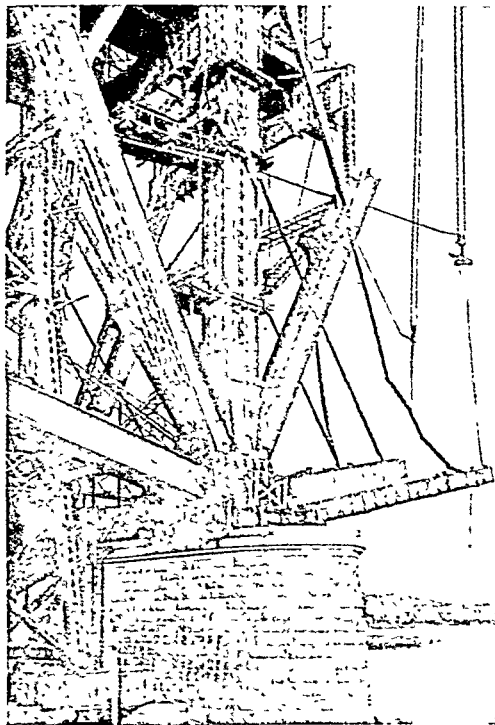
The meadow-sweet is sometimes called bridewort because its beautiful feathery sprays of creamy-white flowers were thought to resemble the white feathers once worn by brides. The scientific name is *Spiraea ulmaria*.

E. *bride* and *wort* (plant).

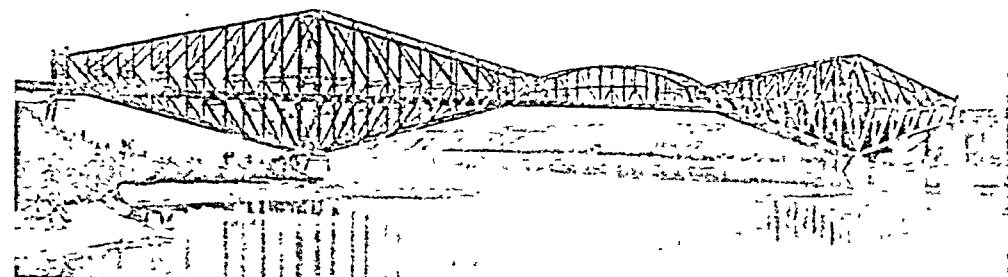
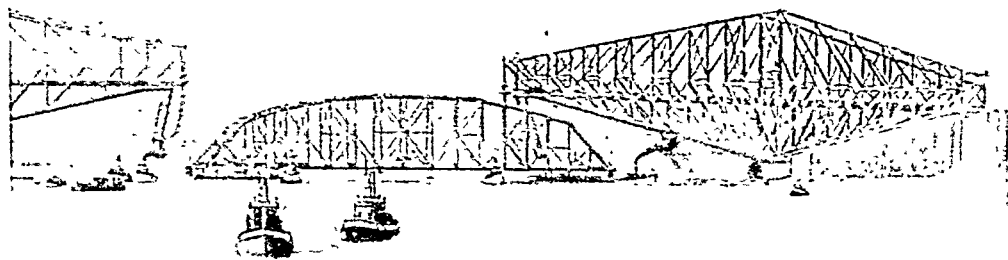
# THE BUILDING OF THE QUEBEC BRIDGE ACROSS THE ST. LAWRENCE RIVER



Bridge.—Connecting a panel of the cantilever arms of the famous Quebec bridge which spans the St. Lawrence.

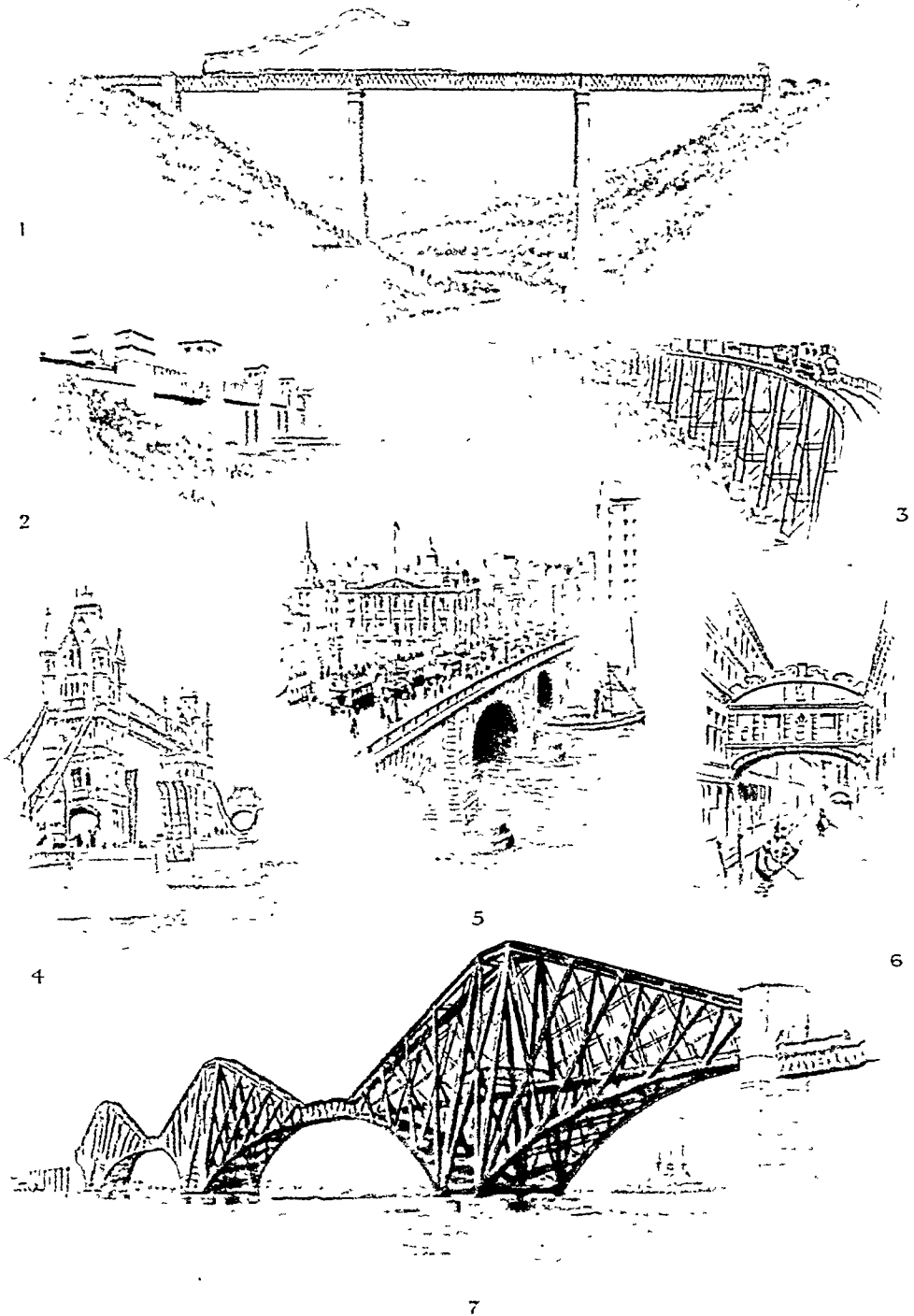


Bridge.—The shoe and lower chord of the Quebec cantilever bridge, which carry the main weight of the structure.



Bridge.—The centre truss of the Quebec bridge, which joins together the two huge brackets resting on piers, being placed in position. The bottom photograph shows the completed bridge. In 1907 a bridge was built to span the St. Lawrence at Quebec, but a great part of it fell into the river, and about eighty lives were lost. The present bridge was opened 1917.

# SEVEN NOTABLE TRIUMPHS OF THE BRIDGE BUILDERS



Bridge.—1. The Fades viaduct, below St. Eloy, France. 2. The Britannia tubular bridge across the Menai Strait. 3. Trestle bridge in Uganda. 4. Tower Bridge, London. 5. London Bridge. 6. The Bridge of Sighs, Venice. 7. The Forth Bridge, begun in 1882 and completed in 1889. Its length is 5,330 ft., and some 38,000 tons of steel were used in its construction.

# BRIDGES FROM EARLY TIMES

*The Important Part they have Played in the Story of Mankind*

**bridge** [ɪ] (brij), *n.* A structure which carries a road or path over a river, ravine, or road; the upper part of the nose; the thin piece of wood over which the strings of a musical instrument are stretched. *v.t.* To span with a bridge. (F. *pont, dos, chevalet; construire un pont sur.*)

Bridges have played a much more important part in history than we might at first think. A wide river is a barrier which can only be crossed with the greatest difficulty. Hence towns grew up at fords, where the river was shallow, as in the case of Oxford, or where it was narrow enough for men to bridge it, as in the case of London.

In very early times bridges, called pile-bridges, were sometimes made by driving big stakes into the river bed and making a roadway over them. A more usual way was to place a pile of stones or earth on each side of the river and lay a tree upon them.

In order to bridge over a stream too wide for a single tree or log, a strong piece of timber was fixed firmly in each bank. These timbers stretched out over the water and a third piece was placed on top of them to complete the bridge.

We still use this idea of a bracket stretching over the water and supporting the level main-piece of a bridge, and call it the cantilever method of building.

The Romans, who were very clever engineers, were the first to use arches, and so well built were the bridges that some, such as the Pont du Gard in southern France, still stand to-day. They made the arches half-circular in shape, but in the Middle Ages the arches became pointed, with the road rising sharply over. To-day we generally build our arches lower and wider, to give more space underneath for boats and more level road on top.

The first cast iron bridge was built in 1779, but as cast iron was not found very suitable for long spans, the Britannia Bridge over the Menai Strait was made of long straight tubes of wrought iron resting on three towers of stonework.

From this bridge of tubes came the idea of the lattice bridge, so called because the iron girders used for the sides look like

lattice-work. These lattice bridges were cheaper than those made of tubes, and as they were just as strong they are now nearly always used when steel bridges are built over wide spans.

The Forth Bridge, which is one and a half miles long, and the largest and finest cantilever bridge in the world, is made of steel. On three piers are three huge double brackets or cantilevers joined by ordinary girders. It carries a double railway track, and was opened for traffic in 1889.

In some countries a rope bridge is made by suspending a rope across a river, and drawing across a car by means of a pulley. This idea

was improved and men made the suspension bridge, in which the roadway is suspended by ropes or chains passed over towers at each side of the river, and then firmly anchored to the ground.

Some bridges are made to move in various ways. Those that lift up in one or two parts such as drawbridges, and the Tower Bridge over the Thames, are called bascule-bridges, but swing-bridges, which either move on a pivot in the centre or have two swinging leaves at either side, are more

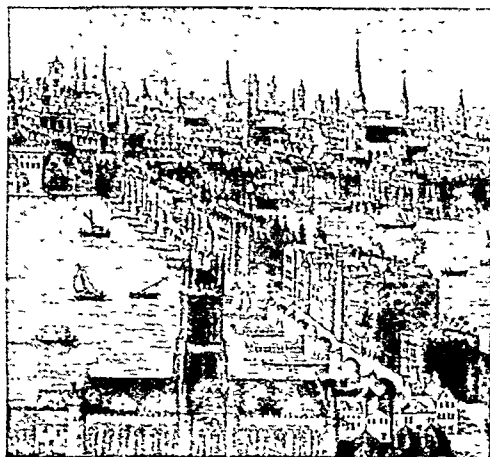
common. Across the River Arun is a bridge which can be rolled back on wheels.

In time of war, bridges are so important that the ends nearest to the enemy are fortified. These fortifications are called bridge-heads (*n.pl.*), and bands of skilled engineers, with their equipment, known as bridge-trains (*n.pl.*), are employed to build temporary bridges when a river is bridgeless (*brij' les, adj.*).

Sometimes a river is spanned quickly by moving a line of boats abreast and placing across them a path of planks, and this is called a bridge of boats.

The bridge of the nose is the upper bony part of the nose, and the bridge of a ship is the raised platform on which the captain stands. The bridge of a violin is the small piece of wood which raises the strings above the sounding-board, and the bridge in billiards is the support made by the left hand for the cue.

Common Teut. word. M.E. *brigge, brugge*; A.-S. *brycg*; cp. G. *brücke*.



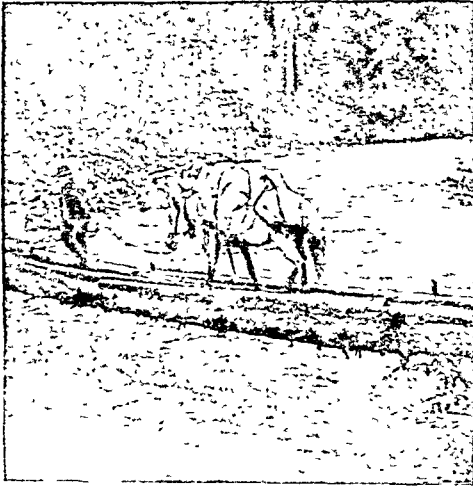
Bridge.—Old London Bridge, with its houses and shops, as it appeared in 1616. The present bridge was opened in 1831.

**bridge** [2] (brij), *n.* A card game. (F. *bridge*.)

This game, probably of Greek origin, is very much like whist, except that one hand is laid on the table. The scoring is complicated, and is entrusted to the bridge-scorer (*n.*) who keeps account of the points won and lost by means of a device called a bridge-marker (*n.*). Auction-bridge (*n.*) and bridge-whist (*n.*) are varieties of the game. See auction bridge; whist.

**bridle** (brī dl), *n.* The harness on the head of a horse or other animal; a check; a mooring hawser. *v.t.* To put a bridle on; to restrain. *v.i.* To raise the head and draw in the chin as an expression of pride, resentment, or scorn. (F. *bride*, *frein*; *brider*; *redresser la tête*.)

The head-stall, bit, and bearing or riding rein—that part of the harness by which a horse is controlled—is his bridle, therefore



Bridle-bridge.—A traveller and his horse crossing a bridge in British Columbia. It is made of trees lashed together.

to put a bridle on a person or thing means to put a check or restraint on the person or thing. A man may bridle up, or start up, with anger if we injure his pride in any way. To a sailor certain ropes—mooring hawsers, for instance—are known as bridles, and to a doctor a ligament which checks movement in the body is a bridle.

A bridge which horses, but not vehicles, may cross is a bridge-bridge (*n.*), and a track for horses, or horsemen, is a bridle-path (*n.*), or bridle-road (*n.*), or bridle-way (*n.*). When riding horseback the reins should be held in the left hand, or bridle-hand (*n.*), as it is called.

M.E. *A.-S. bridel*, for *brigel* from *bregdan* to move quickly, pull, and suffix *-le*, forming nouns expressing the instrument. SYN.: *v.* Check, control, curb, govern, master. ANT.: *v.* Loosen, relax, slacken.

**bridoon** (brī doon'), *n.* The snaffle and rein of a double bit, of which the other part is a curb bit. (F. *bridon*.)

In a bit and bridoon—a curb and snaffle used together—each bit has its separate pair of reins. The bridoon is used for ordinary guiding, the curb being kept in reserve for sudden checking, if the horse should get out of hand.

A derivative of F. *bride* a bridle.

**brief** (brēf), *adj.* Short; concise, *n.* A short writing; a summons; a written summary of evidence. *v.t.* To reduce to a brief; to instruct, or retain, a barrister. (F. *bref*, *court*; *abrégé*; *abrégé*, *donner une cause à*.)

Any short thing—such as a short sermon, a short story, a short holiday—is a brief thing. An official letter from the Pope is known as a brief, and in law a brief is the name of the summary of facts and evidence given to a lawyer who is to be a counsel in a case. To make a statement in brief is to make it in as few words as possible.

To reduce the facts of a law case to the form of a counsel's instruction, is to brief it, and to brief a barrister is to instruct him to conduct a case. A barrister who gets no such instruction, and is consequently without work, is a briefless (brēf' les, *adj.*) barrister, and his condition may be called brieflessness (brēf' les nēs, *n.*). A statement in few words is made briefly (brēf' li, *adv.*), and has the quality of briefness (brēf' nēs, *n.*).

M.E. *bref*, F. *bref*, L. *brevis* short, *breve* a note. SYN.: Concise, curt, short. ANT.: Lengthy, diffuse, verbose.

**brier** [1] (brī' ér), *n.* A prickly shrub, especially a wild rose; the stem of a wild rose on which a cultivated rose is grafted. Another spelling of the word is briar (brī' ár). (F. *ronce*, *églantier*.)

A briery (brī' ér i, *adj.*) or briary (brī' ér i, *adj.*) place is a place where many wild roses grow, or a brambly or thorny place. Thus we may speak of a nightingale singing from a briery thicket. The two commonest brier-roses (*n.pl.*) are the dog-rose (*Rosa canina*) and the field-rose (*R. arvensis*), while the commonest sweet-brier (*n.*), a wild rose with sweet-smelling leaves, is *R. rubiginosa*.

M.E. *brère*, A.-S. *brēr*, of unknown origin.

**brier** [2] (brī' ér), *n.* The white or tree heath; a tobacco pipe made from the roots of this plant. Another spelling of the word is briar (brī' ár). (F. *bruyère*, *pipe en bois*.)

The so-called brier-root (*n.*), from which brier-wood (*n.*) tobacco pipes are made, is the root of the white or tree heath (*Erica arborea*), the French name of which was confused with the word brier. In manufacturing tobacco pipes the thick roots of this plant are simmered in a vat until they become rich yellow-brown in colour and are soft enough to be easily shaped and polished.

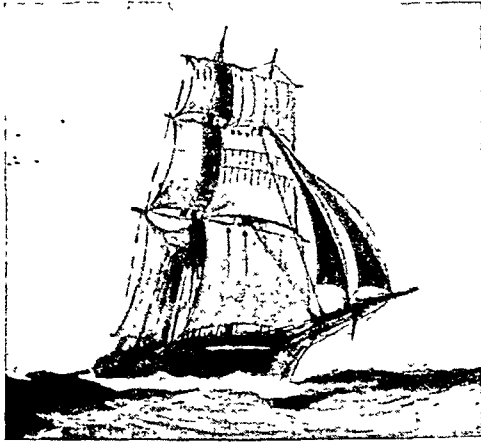
F. *bruyère* heath, L.L. *brugäria*.

**brig** [1] (brig), *n.* The Scottish and Northern form of bridge. See bridge.

**brig** [2] (brig), *n.* A sailing vessel with two masts, both carrying square sails. (F. *brick*.)

Both masts of a brig are square-rigged, thus differing from a brigantine, which is square-rigged only on the foremast, the other being rigged like a schooner's mainmast.

A shortened form of *brigantine*.



Brig.—A brig is a sailing vessel carrying square sails on its two masts.

**brigade** (bri gād'), *n.* A body of troops under a general officer; an organized body of workers. *v.t.* To form into one or more brigades. (F. *brigade*.)

The composition of a brigade varies in different countries, but in the British army a brigade consists of a group of battalions, regiments, or batteries, under the command of a general officer called a brigadier (brig ā dēr', *n.*) or brigadier-general (*n.*), who is assisted by a staff officer called a brigade-major (*n.*). An infantry brigade consists of four battalions and a cavalry brigade of three regiments. In the artillery, a brigade of horse artillery consists of two batteries, a brigade of field artillery consists of three batteries, a brigade of medium siege artillery consists of four batteries, and a brigade of heavy siege artillery consists of two batteries. A mixed brigade includes engineers, artillery, and ambulances, and numbers from two thousand to five thousand men.

Outside the army the name brigade is given to any organized body of workers, wearing a uniform, such as the Fire Brigade, or to such organizations as the Boys' Brigade and the Church Lads' Brigade.

F. *brigade*, Ital. *brigata* a company, fem. p.p. of *brigare* to brawl, fight, Ital. and L.L. *briga* strife, quarrel. See brigand.

**brigand** (brig' ānd), *n.* A robber; a mediaeval light foot-soldier. (F. *brigand*.)

In the Middle Ages bodies of foot-soldiers, lightly armed and obliged to find their own upkeep wherever they went, wore a kind of body-armour called brigandine. These fighting men were brigands.

Nowadays the term is applied to robbers, especially to those who live in gangs in mountainous countries, and have a leader and a sort of law of their own.

The highway robbery and other doings of these outlaws are called brigandage (brig' ān dāj, *n.*). To behave like these robbers is to act in a brigandish (brig' ān dish, *adj.*) way and to practise brigandism (brig' ān dizm, *n.*).

O.F. *brigant*(t), Ital. *brigante* irregular foot-soldier, bandit, brawler, from L.L. *briga* strife. SYN.: Bandit, footpad, freebooter, highwayman.

**brigandine** (brig' ān dēn), *n.* Body armour, made of small plates or rings of iron sewn on quilted linen or leather and covered with the same material, worn by the light foot-soldiers of the Middle Ages. Another spelling is brigantine (brig' ān tēn). (F. *brigandine*.)

These bands of fighting-men could not wear the heavier armour, for they had to move quickly from place to place and forage for their upkeep wherever they went. They were called brigands. See brigand.

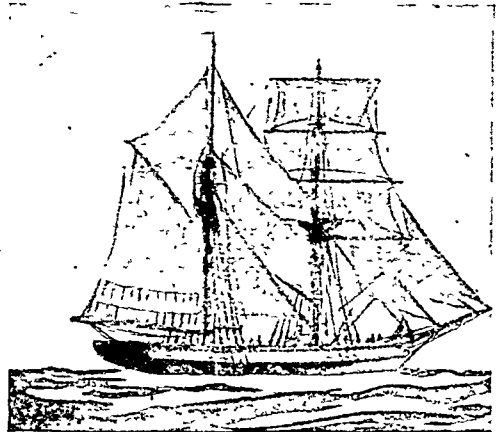
E. *brigand* and suffix *-ine* (L. *-inus*) relating to.

**brigantine** [1] (brig' ān tēn). This is another spelling of brigandine. See brigandine.

**brigantine** [2] (brig' ān tēn), *n.* A two-masted vessel with foremast square-rigged as in a brig and a schooner-rigged mainmast; a pirate ship. (F. *brigantin*.)

In olden times this term was applied to a small and very easily-handled vessel, used in the Mediterranean for piracy, reconnoitring, or protecting larger ships.

Ital. *brigantino* originally meaning a corsair or pirate's ship, skirmisher, from *brigante* brigand.



Brigantine.—The foremast of a brigantine is square-rigged as in a brig, and the mainmast schooner-rigged.

**bright** (brīt), *adj.* Filled with light; cheerful; clever. (F. *brillant*, *heureux*, *habile*.)

This word is used in many senses. A room that gets the sun is always bright. A boy who is quick at his lessons is bright and so are his prospects.





**Brilliant.**—Brilliant illuminations at Blackpool, the well-known Lancashire seaside resort. The brilliancy of the effect is heightened by the reflection of the myriad electric lights on the roadway and pavement.

After a fog the weather brightens (bril' tenz, *v.t.*), the sun shines brightly (bril' li, *adj.*), and the resulting brightness (bril' nes n.) brightens our outlook on life.

Common Teut word A-S *brorht*, *briht*, akin to L *flagrare*, Gr. *phlegme* to flame. SYN.: Brilliant, lively, intelligent, shining. ANT.: Cheerless, dull, gloomy, stupid.

**brill** (bril), *n.* A flat-fish related to the turbot. (F. *barbue*.)

In appearance the brill is like a small turbot but it is inferior in quality to that fish and is more abundant, especially on the south coast of Britain. Its scientific name is *Pleuronectes rhombus* or *Rhombus vulgaris*.

**brilliant** (bril' i änt; bril' yänt), *adj.* Sparkling; glittering; lustrous; extremely clever or talented; illustrious; distinguished. *n.* A diamond cut and polished in a particular way; a printing type. (F. *brillant*, *éclatant*; *brillant*.)

Brilliant objects sparkle and glitter in the light. Extremely successful students are described as being brilliant; orators are said to make brilliant speeches, and a group of clever or illustrious people is called a brilliant assembly. A very small type used in English printing is named brilliant, and it measures nineteen and three-quarter lines to the inch. The following quotation is set in this type:—

It was a man of brilliant language.

The name brilliant is also given to a diamond which is cut into the form of two pyramids, base to base, the upper one having the point cut away so as to form a flat polished surface. Both pyramids are cut into a number of little faces, called facets, the most perfect brilliants having as many as fifty-eight such facets. It is upon the proper cutting and polishing that the brilliancy (bril' i äns, *n.*) or brilliancy (bril' i äns, *n.*)

of the stone depends. If held in a ray of sunlight the stone glitters even more brilliantly (bril' i änt li, *adv.*).

F *brillant*, pres. p. of *briller* to glitter (cp. Ital. *brillare*), from L. *brillus* beryl. SYN.: Bright, celebrated, flashing, glittering, renowned. ANT.: Dark, dull, obscure, stupid.

**brillantine** (bril' i äns tēn), *n.* A preparation for making the hair glossy. (F. *brillantine*.)

The skin of the head, if it is healthy, produces a natural oil sufficient to keep the well-brushed hair soft and glossy. If the skin fails to produce this oil, a little brilliantine, a preparation containing oil, may be applied to the scalp to keep the hair in good condition. Brilliantine may be obtained either in liquid or solid form.

F. *brillantine*, from *brillant* brilliant, and the suffix *-ine* denoting a preparation.

**brim** (brim), *n.* An edge. *v.t.* To fill up to the brim. *v.i.* To be full to the brim. (F. *bord*; *remplir jusqu'au bord*; *être plein jusqu'au boid*.)

The edge of a cup or other vessel, the margin of a lake or other body of water, the rim of a hat—each of these edges is a brim.

A goblet, if filled to overflowing, is said to brim over. A goblet which can hold no more is a brimming (brim' fül, *adj.*) goblet. A river just about to overflow its banks is a brimming (brim' ing, *adj.*) river.

In Tennyson's poem, "The Brook," the brook tells of its journey down from the hills:—

Till last by Philip's farm I flow

To join the brimming river,

For men may come and men may go,

But I go on for ever.

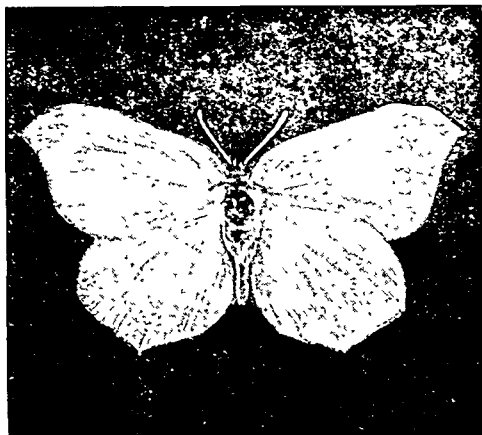
M.E. *brim*; cp. O. Norse *brim-r* brim, G. *brame* edge.

**brimstone** (brim' stón), *n.* Sulphur, a yellow element, found chiefly in Sicily, Japan, and the United States. (F. *soufre*.)

M.E. *brimstoon*, *brenstoon*, from *brennen*, *brinnen* to burn, *stoon* stone; cp. O. Norse *brennistein-n*, G. *bernstein*.

**brimstone butterfly** (brim' stón büt' ér flī), *n.* A species of butterfly the colour of brimstone. (F. *cléopâtre*.)

This butterfly is one of the commonest British hedgerow species, and its appearance



**Brimstone butterfly.**—The brimstone butterfly, familiar in British hedgerows in the spring.

is one of the earliest signs of coming spring. It hibernates and comes out on bright days in late autumn. Each of its sulphur-yellow, angular wings has an orange spot in the centre. The scientific name, *Gonepteryx rhamni*, means the angle-winged butterfly of the buckthorn, the plant on which it lays its eggs.

E. *brimstone* and *butterfly*.

**brimstone moth** (brim' stón moth), *n.* A species of moth with sulphur-yellow wings.

This moth (*Runia crataegata*) is on the wing from April to September. It has a chestnut-coloured spot on each forewing. Its stick-like caterpillars feed on the sloe and the plum.

E. *brimstone* and *moth*.

**brindle** (brin' dl), *adj.* Grey or tawny with streaks of a darker hue; streaked. *n.* An animal so marked. The form *brindled* (brin' dld) is also used. (F. *tavelé*, *tacheté*.)

The fur of a tiger, as of some domestic cats, is brindle or brindled.

Of Scand. origin. Formerly written *brinded*, the word is probably the same as *branded*, meaning marked. See *brand*.

**brine** (brīn), *n.* A strong solution of salt and water. *v.t.* To pickle; to treat with brine. (F. *saumure*; *tremper dans la saumure*.)

Salt is got from the great deposits in Cheshire and Worcestershire by dissolving it with water sent down through pipes and pumping the brine to the surface. Brine is heated in a large shallow iron vessel, called

a *brine-pan* (*n.*), until the water has all boiled away, leaving the pure salt behind.

Water with enough salt in it to give it a strong salty taste is *briny* (brin' i, *adj.*). Hence the sea is often referred to as the briny.

A-S. *bryne* perhaps "a burning," from the quality of the salt liquor; cp. Dutch *brjn*.

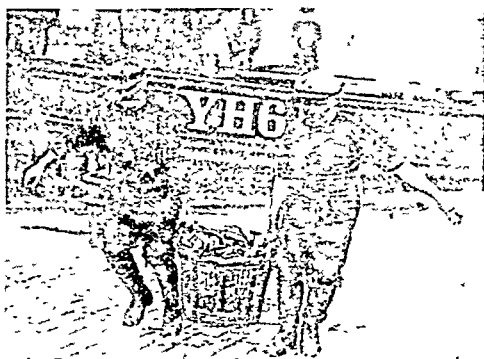
**bring** (bring), *v.t.* To cause to come; to carry; to result in. The *p.t.* and *p.p.* are brought (brawt). (F. *amener*, *apporter*, *produire*.)

The meanings of this word are simple enough. We ask a man to bring a friend with him the next time he visits us. If one of the two is musical we may ask the musical one to bring his music, for music brings brightness.

To bring about an event is to make it happen, but to a sailor to bring about a ship is to turn it round. To bring back happy days is to recall them.

To bring down a person's pride is to humble it, to bring down a bird is to shoot or kill it, to bring down a price is to lower it, to bring down the history of a political party or the statistics of an industry to a certain date is to carry it on or continue it. An actor brings down the house when he gains very great applause from the whole audience.

A good tree is said to bring forth fruit. To raise a point in debate is to bring it forward. When a book-keeper brings forward a sum, he carries it from the bottom of one folio to the top of the next. To convince a person of a truth is to bring it home to him.



**Bring.**—Bringing in part of the harvest of the sea from a Great Yarmouth trawler.

A member of Parliament proposing a measure is said to bring in a bill, and a jury announcing its decision is said to bring in a verdict. Robinson Crusoe swam out to the wreck to bring off things he needed. To bring off a bargain is to make the bargain.

Eating very sweet things will sometimes bring on toothache. To bring on a subject of debate is to introduce it.

Illustrations in a book help to bring out the meaning of the text; danger helps to bring out character; a lady introducing her

daughter to society is said to bring her out ; to bring out a play is to have it acted on the stage ; an author is said to bring out a new book when he publishes it.

A persuasive orator tries to bring over his hearers to the opinion held by himself. Cold water dashed on the face helps to bring to, or revive, a person who has fainted. A sailor brings his ship to when he checks her course. When we cause something to happen we bring it to pass.

To bring up a boy is to rear and educate him ; to bring up a topic is to lay it before a meeting ; to bring up a motor-car is to stop it ; to bring up a ship is to stop it by letting go the anchor ; to bring up to date is to carry on to the present time, as a diary or history. This sentence, coming last in the present paragraph, might be said to bring up the rear.

To bring into play is a term in Rugby football. When the ball has become " dead " (out of play) from any cause it is brought into play, or the game is resumed, by means of a line out (a throw in from touch) or a scrummage.

Common Teut. word. A.-S. *bringan* ; cp. G. *bringen*. SYN. : Bear, convey, fetch, produce.



Brink.—Standing on the brink of a precipice in Arizona, the land of canyons.

**brink** (brink), *n.* Edge ; verge. (F. *bord*.)

Besides being used for the edge of a precipice, or a pit, or the sea, and so forth, this word is also used figuratively. For instance, on the brink of tears means about to cry.

Probably of Scand. origin Cp. Dan. *brink*, verge.

**briony** (brí' ó ni). This is another spelling of bryony. See bryony.

**briquette** (bri ket'), *n.* A block of compressed coal-dust ; a block of artificial

stone. *v.t.* To compress into bricks. Another form is briquet (brik' ét). (F. *briquette*.)

In making briquettes the coal-dust is moistened and heated and then compressed into blocks of the size and shape of small bricks.

F. dim. of *brique* brick.

**brisance** (brē zans'), *n.* The very violent and rapid bursting effect of powerful explosives. (F. *brisance*.)

The explosives used in military shells, mines, and bombs must have brisance in order to do their work properly. Brisance is due to the extraordinary speed at which the whole mass of explosive ignites and is converted into gas at an enormous pressure.

A slow-acting explosive begins to make room for itself before it is fully ignited, and the pressure is therefore not so high, having the effect of a push rather than a blow.

F. from *briser* to break, burst.

**brisk** (brisk), *adj.* Lively ; bracing. *v.t.* To make brisk. *v.i.* To become brisk. (F. *vif, actif, animé* ; *animer* ; *s'animer*.)

A brisk person is an active, bustling person ; a brisk breeze is a keen, stimulating one ; a brisk race is a fast one. When we brisk up a slothful or slovenly person we smarten him up.

A man who is depressed by misfortune may brisk up on receiving good news. A person who goes about his business briskly (brisk' ly, *adv.*) infects the people he comes across with briskness (brisk' nes, *n.*).

F. *brusque*, Ital. *brusco* harsh, sour. Others suggest a connexion with Gaelic *brisg*, Welsh *brysg* nimble-footed. SYN. : Alert, animated, sprightly, vivacious. ANT. : Indolent, slothful, slow, sluggish.

**brisket** (bris' ket), *n.* The part of the breast of an animal that covers the breast-bone ; a joint cut from this. (F. *brechet, poitrine*.)

Our distant ancestors would have laughed if they had seen the small joints, such as the brisket, which we eat to-day. They had tremendous joints, like the baron of beef, or the saddle of mutton, which were passed round the table, each man cutting off a portion with his knife or dagger, and helping himself with his fingers.

The breast-bone is sometimes called the brisketbone (*n.*).

O.F. *brischet* ; cp. Dan. *brusk*, O. Norse *brjósk*.

**bristle** (bris' l), *n.* A short, coarse, stiff hair. *v.t.* To cause to stand up like bristles ; to provide with bristles ; to stir up. *v.i.* To stand up like bristles ; to show anger ; to be thickly strewn as if with bristles. (F. *soie* ; *hérissier* ; *se hérissier*.)

The roundish, glossy hairs on the back and sides of the hog and wild boar are bristles, and are used in making brushes of good quality. The stiff hairs of a beard clipped short and those on some plants are bristles.

When one's hair stands erect, as through fear or horror, it is said to bristle. To bristle up is to show anger. An enterprise that is thickly beset with difficulties is said to bristle with difficulties. Whatever is covered with bristles is a bristly (bris' li, *adj.*) thing, and has the quality of bristliness (bris' li nés, *n.*).

M.E. *bristle*, *berstle*, A.-S. *byrst*, -le *dim.* suffix : cp. G. *borste*.

**Bristol-board** (bris' tól börd'), *n.* A thin, white, smooth-surfaced cardboard of high quality used by artists. (F. *carton - bristol fin.*)

E. *Bristol* and *board*.

**Bristol-brick** (bris' tól brik'), *n.* A fine flinty sand made up into the form of bricks and used for cleaning cutlery, metals, and stonework. (F. *brique de Bristol*.)

The bricks are manufactured at Bridgwater, in Somersetshire, from sand found in the River Parret. They are also called Bath bricks.

E. *Bristol* and *brick*.

**Bristol diamond** (bris' tól di' à mōnd), *n.* A kind of rock-crystal found in limestone at Clifton, near Bristol. It is also called Bristol stone. (F. *pierre de Bristol*.)

The stone is transparent and takes a high polish. A cut and polished piece is called a diamond.

E. *Bristol* and *diamond*.

**brit** (brit), *n.* The young of various fishes. (F. *petit hareng*.)

The name brit is given especially to young sprats and herrings, which are sold and eaten as whitebait. The myriads of small creatures on which whales feed are called whale brit.

**Britannia** (bri tăn' yà), *n.* The name given by the Romans to ancient Britain; a poetical name for Britain; Britain personified as a woman; the female figure on British copper coins. (F. *Britannia*.)

The figure of Britannia first appeared on coins during the reign of Charles II, on copper halfpennies. It was designed by a French artist called John Rotier, and Frances Teresa Stewart, one of the beauties of the court, who became Duchess of Richmond and Lennox, is said to have sat as the model. In 1860 the representation of a lighthouse was put in on the left of Britannia and that of a ship on the right, but these were taken out in 1895.

The word *Britannic* (bri tăn' nik, *adj.*) means of Britain, and is now used chiefly in the phrase His Britannic Majesty. A *Briticism* (brit' i sizm, *n.*), or as it is sometimes called, a *Britishism* (brit' ish izm, *n.*) is a word or phrase which is used in Britain but not in the English spoken in the U.S.A., where a railway is termed a railroad. The word *British* (brit' ish, *adj.*) means of or relating to ancient Britain, modern Britain or the Empire, and their inhabitants.

The term *Britisher* (brit' ish er, *n.*) is used



Britannia.—Ancient Britain was called Britannia by the Romans, but it was not until the reign of Charles II that the name was represented on coins by a woman. In our picture Britannia is seen holding the crown and sceptre.

by the people of the U.S.A. to denote a native of Britain as distinguished from an American citizen. *Briton* (brit' ōn, *n.*) is generally used for a member of the races that dwelt in the southern part of ancient Britain when the Romans invaded our island. Nowadays the term is sometimes used in the sense of a native of the Britain of to-day or of the British Empire, especially in poetry. When we wish to lay stress on such a characteristic of the race as quiet, dogged perseverance we use such a phrase as to work like a Briton.

L. *Britannia*, from *Britann-us* a Briton, *Briton* from M.E. and F. *Breton*, from L. *Britto* (gen. *Brittōn-is*). See *Brython*.

**Britannia metal** (brit ān' yā met' āl), *n.* A metallic alloy. (F. *métal anglais*.)

This alloy is composed chiefly of tin with smaller quantities of copper and antimony; sometimes a little lead, zinc, or bismuth is added. It is white with a bluish tinge, and is made to imitate silver.

It is used chiefly for the manufacture of spoons, forks, and other table articles; by itself for cheap goods, but also as a foundation for silver plate. The name Britannia is a trade name given by the original Sheffield makers.

*E. Britannia and metal.*

**British** (brit' ish), *adj.* Relating to Britain or the British Empire. *See* Britannia.

**brittle** (brit' l), *adj.* Fragile or easily broken. (F. *fragile, cassant*.)

Glass and ice are brittle and have the quality of brittleness (brit' l nēs, *n.*).

*M.E. britul* (also *biotel, brutel*), from *A.-S. brēotan* to break, and suffix *-le* denoting aptness, liability. *SYN.*: Crumbling, delicate, fragile, frail. *ANT.*: Malleable, strong, sturdy, tough.

**Briza** (bri' zā), *n.* A genus of grasses, including the quaking or tottering grass. (F. *brize*.)

Not one of the ten species of Briza is of much value. The graceful loose panicles of flattened spikelets constantly quiver on their hair-like stalks; hence the name quaking grass. Of the two British species the only familiar one is the common quaking grass (*Briza media*), found on dry and poor pastures.

*Gr. briza* a grain like rye; *cp. brizein* to nod, totter.

**brize** (brēz). This is another spelling of breeze. *See* breeze [2].

**broach** (brōch), *n.* A tapering, pointed instrument; a roasting-spit; a church spire without a parapet. *v.t.* To pierce a cask; to open; to turn suddenly to windward. (F. *broche*; *embrocher, entamer, faire chapelle*.)

Most of the various objects called a broach are, or contain, a pointed instrument.

The following are some of the objects that may be denoted by this word: a roasting-spit, an awl, a bodkin, a skewer, the sharp stick used by thatchers, the narrow pointed chisel used by masons, the boring bit or drill used by watchmakers and dentists, and a gimlet for opening casks.

A broach-spire (*n.*) or broach-steeple (*n.*) is a spire or steeple which rises directly from the walls of the tower without any parapet. This kind of spire or steeple is sometimes denoted by the word broach alone.

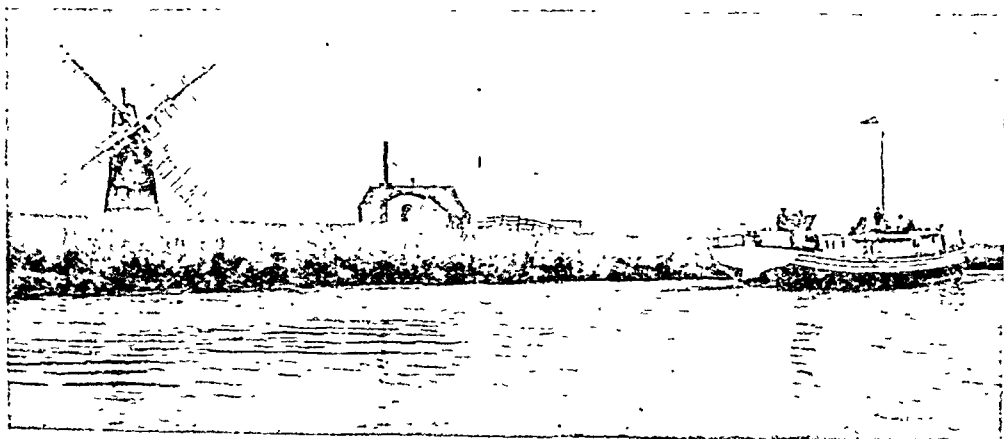
To broach a cask of liquor means to open it for the first time, so we may say that a subject is broached in conversation when it is first mentioned. To broach a ship is to cause her to lie broadside to the wind and waves, and ships are said to broach to when they perform this action of their own accord. Many vessels have been wrecked through broaching to in heavy gales.

*M.E. F. broche, L.L. brocca* pointed stick, *L. brocc-us, brocc-h-us* projecting (of a tooth). *See* brooch. The *v.* is from the *n.*, *M.E. brochen*; *cp. F. brochrr*. The nautical sense is perhaps from turning as on a spit. *SYN.*: *v.* Open, pierce, tap.

**broad** (brawd), *adj.* Wide; extensive; of wide range; general; tolerant; bold; free in style. *n.* A wide expanse of inland water. *adv.* Widely. (F. *large, grossier*.)

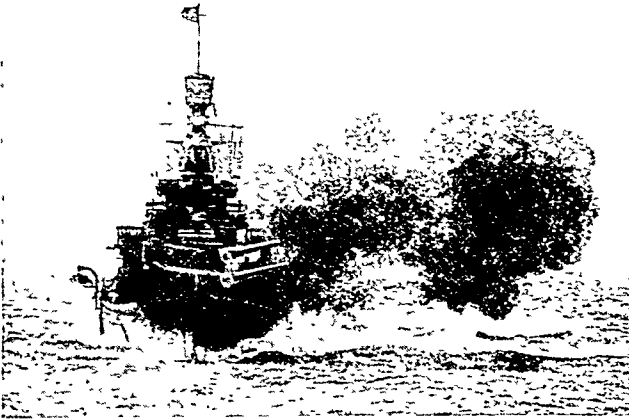
Broad is the opposite of narrow in all senses of the term, as when we speak of a broad channel, a broad expanse of ocean, of taking a broad view, or of speaking generally or broadly (brawd' li, *adv.*). We speak, too, of broad daylight and broad sunlight, using the word in the sense of full. The Broad Church (*n.*) is a party in the Church of England which takes a broad, tolerant, or liberal view of the rites and dogmas of the Church. For anything to be as broad as it is long it must be the same whichever way it is measured or considered.

There are many things whose names indicate that they are broad. The wide



Broad.—The wide lakes formed by the broadening out of a river are sometimes called broads, and there are many such in Norfolk and Suffolk. This photograph is typical of Broadland scenery.

lakes formed by the broadening out of a river are sometimes called broads, as in Norfolk and Suffolk. The broad-axe (*n.*) was once used in warfare, but now it is the name of a broad-edged axe used for hewing timber. The broad-bean (*n.*) is grown for the edible seeds in its wide pods, and its scientific name is *Faba vulgaris*. Broad-cloth (*n.*) is a fine, black woollen cloth, double the usual width, and it is used chiefly for men's clothing. A large sheet of paper printed on one side only is known as a broadsheet (*n.*), and a broadside (*n.*) is the side of a ship, or all the guns on one side of a warship. A broadsheet is sometimes called a broadside.



Broadside.—H.M.S. "Repulse," a battle-cruiser of twenty-six thousand five hundred tons, firing a broadside with her fifteen-inch guns.

Broad-silk (*n.*) is silk in the piece as distinguished from silk in ribbon, and the broad-sword (*brawd' sörd, n.*) is a sword with a broad blade having one or both edges sharpened. A broad arrow (*n.*) is a mark resembling an arrow-head, and it is stamped or cut on property belonging to the British Government. If the gauge of a railway, that is, the distance between the rails, is wider than the usual measurement of four feet eight and a half inches, it is called a broad-gauge (*n.*).

To be broad-spoken (*adj.*) is to speak in a dialect or to be plain-spoken, but it may mean to speak coarsely. An alert or broad-awake (*adj.*) man should be able to broaden (*brawd' en, v.t.*) his mind. If we look at an object broadways (*brawd' wāz, adv.*) or broadwise (*brawd' wīz, adv.*) we regard it in the direction of its breadth, or, as it was formerly called, its broadness (*brawd' nes, n.*).

M.E. *brād, brōd*, A.-S. *brād*; common Teut.; cp. O. Norse *breith-r*, G. *breit*. SYN.: Ample, extensive, large, liberal, tolerant. ANT.: Contracted, confined, limited, prejudiced.

**broadcast** (*brawd' kast*), *v.t.* To scatter in all directions, especially by wireless. *adj.* Scattered haphazard and widely. *adv.* So as to spread widely. *n.* The act or

method of sowing in this way; a thing sent out broadcast. The *p.l.* and *p.p.* are broadcast.

Before the invention of seeding-drills all small seed was broadcast, or sown broadcast, instead of in drills or rows as at present. The Parable of the Sower gives us a picture of a broadcaster (*brawd' kast er, n.*) at work, that is, one who sows broadcast.

While the broadcasting (*brawd' kast ing, n.*), or random scattering, of seed has gone out of fashion, the broadcasting, in the sense of the wide distributing, of knowledge and news has become more and more important. The printing-press has played a great part in this form of broadcasting, by producing

many millions of copies of books and newspapers, which get into everybody's hands. During the World War (1914-18) thousands of printed pamphlets were broadcast from aeroplane; and balloons.

When we speak of broadcasting to-day we generally mean the sending out of signals and sounds by wireless telephony and telegraphy. This is broadcasting in the fullest sense, since anyone at almost any place on the earth's surface can hear what is broadcast, if he has a suitable receiving apparatus.

A ship in distress broadcasts appeals for help. Certain wireless stations broadcast time signals and weather reports.

From many other stations news, lectures, songs, and other items of a regular programme are broadcast daily. Occasionally a broadcast of a play or an important speech is given. A station from which programmes are broadcast is called a broadcasting station (*n.*).

E. *broad and cast*

**Brobdingnagian** (*brob ding nā' jī an*), *adj.* Of or relating to Brobdingnag; gigantic. *n.* An inhabitant of Brobdingnag; a giant. (F. *Brobdingnagéen, gigantesque; Brobdingnagéen, géant.*)

One of the strange countries visited by Lemuel Gulliver, the hero of Jonathan Swift's story, "Gulliver's Travels," was called Brobdingnag. It was a land of giants, with men as tall as church steeples.

SYN.: Enormous, huge, stupendous, vast. ANT.: Lilliputian, pigmy, tiny, dwarf.

**brocade** (*brō kād'*), *n.* A figured silken woven stuff with a raised pattern. *v.t.* To work or weave with a raised pattern; to ornament with brocade. (F. *brocart.*)

The woven silk fabrics used for good quality furniture-covers, chair-covers, etc., are often brocades.

Span. *brocado* embroidered, Ital. *broccato*; cp. F. *brocher*, L.L. *broccare* to prick, figure. See broach, brooch.

**brocard** (brô' kârd), *n.* A short, pithy rule in law or philosophy; a cutting speech. (F. *maxime, brocard.*)

"Ignorance of the law is no excuse", that is, not to know the law is no excuse for having broken it. This is a brocard.

The first meaning arises from the ecclesiastical canons of Burchard, bishop of Worms. The second is a Gallicism from the same source.

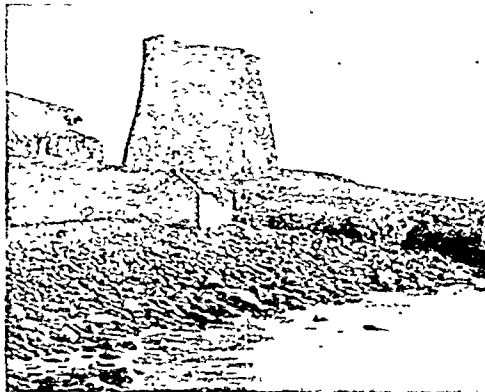
**broccoli** (brok' ô h), *n.* A green vegetable similar to the cauliflower, in season during winter and early spring. Another spelling is **brocoli**. (F. *brocoli, chou-fleur.*)

Ital. pl. of *broccolo*, dim. of *brocco* splinter, stalk, sprout.

**broch** (brokh), *n.* An ancient round tower. (F. *broch, tour ronde.*)

Here and there in Scotland and the islands of the North one comes across the remains of an ancient round tower, built of stone and having usually an inner and an outer wall. These brochs, as they are called, are supposed to have been strongholds of the Picts.

O. Norse *borg*. *cp.* A.-S. *burh*. See borough, burgh



Broch.—The broch of Mousa, in the Shetland Islands. Such round towers are thought to have been strongholds of the Picts.

**broché** (brô shâ'), *adj.* Worked with raised designs or figures in gold, silver, etc., on silk or satin; brocaded; stitched. (F. *broché.*) A paper-covered book is said to be broché.

F. *brocher* to stitch; see broach.

**brochure** (brô shoor'), *n.* A small pamphlet.

This is a French word. The few sheets of printed and stitched paper distributed to advertise some commodity is a brochure.

F. *brocher* to stitch, and suffix *-ure* forming verbal noun.

**brock** (brok), *n.* An old name for the badger.

A.-S. *bræc*, from Welsh *broch* badger.

**Brook bullet** (brok bul' et), *n.* An incendiary bullet for use against air-craft, named after the inventor.

Bullets containing a substance which ignited on the bullet being fired proved very fatal to Zeppelins and captive balloons during

the World War. The airship brought down by Lieut. W. L. Robinson, on September 2nd, 1916, was set on fire by Brock and Pomeroy incendiary bullets, fired alternately.

**brocket** (brok' èt), *n.* A stag in its second year with its first horns; a genus of South American deer which have short prongs for horns. (F. *daguet, brocard.*)

In its second year a red-deer stag gets its first horns, which are unbranched and straight. It is then called a brocket.

The South American deer called brockets include the red brocket (*Cariacus rufus*) and the wood brocket (*Cariacus nemorivagus*).

F. *brocard*, from *broche* spit, tine, or prong of a stag's horn.

**brogue** (brög), *n.* A primitive shoe, worn in Ireland and Scotland; a heavy shoe; an accent, especially that used by an Irishman in speaking English. (F. *brogue*; *accent irlandais.*)

The stout shoe, usually punched, used for such sports as golf, is based on the untanned hide brogue worn in the remoter parts of Ireland and the Scottish Highlands.

We speak of a southern Irishman as talking English with a rich brogue.

Of Celtic origin. Gaelic and Irish *brög*, the wearers of the shoe being supposed to speak with an accent named from it.

**broil** [1] (broil), *n.* A noisy quarrel. (F. *tumulte, querelle.*)

A fight between armies in the field is a battle, but a fight between a few people who have quarrelled, perhaps at a street corner, is a broil. Shakespeare uses the word in his play "Macbeth" (i, 2):—

Say to the king thy knowledge of the broil,

As thou didst leave it.

F. *brouiller* to throw into confusion, embroil; *cp.* Ital. *brogliare*, from *broghio* tumult, *imbroglio* disturbance, confusion (also in common use in E.). *Syn.*: Brawl, contention, discord, quarrel.

**broil** [2] (broil), *v.t.* To cook on a gridiron; to scorch. *v.i.* To grow hot; to be in the heat. *n.* Broiled meat. (F. *griller*; *se griller*).

In the grill-room of a restaurant we may see a chef cooking meat on a grid over an open fire; he is said to grill, or to broil, the meat. A person sitting in great heat, as in the sun, is said to broil. Meat which has been broiled is a grill, or a broil; and we speak of both the fire that cooked it and the chef who cooked it as a broiler (broil' èr, *n.*), or griller. To ask a poulterer for a broiler is to ask for a chicken suitable for broiling.

M.E. *broilen*, O.F. *bruillir*, perhaps connected with F. *brûler* to burn.

**broke** [1] (brök), This is the past tense and old past participle of break. See break.

**broke** [2] (brök), *n.pl.* Short wool.

A fleece contains two chief kinds of wool, that from the edges near the neck and belly being much shorter than elsewhere. The fleece is broken up and sorted into long wool, called "matchings" or "combing sorts," and short wool called "brokes."

A.-S. *broc*, from *brecan* to break.

**broken** (brō' kèn), *adj.* No longer whole; infirm; violated; ruined. *p.p.* of break (brāk). (F. *cassé*, *rompu*, *brisé*.)

A glass smashed in pieces is a broken glass; a man humbled by misfortune is a broken man; a promise not kept is a broken promise. The method of oil painting used by certain artists, in which spots of pure colour are placed together all over the canvas, is a method of using broken colour. A person whose back is broken is said to be broken-backed (*adj.*), and a broken-backed ship is one which droops at the stern and stem because of some damage to the keel.

A broken-down (*adj.*) man is one ruined in health, character, or finance, and a broken-hearted (*adj.*) person is one crushed in spirit, as by great grief. Water no longer calm is broken water (*n.*), and broken meat (*n.*) is scraps or pieces of food. In cricket, when one or both of the bails have been dislodged from the stumps, the wicket is said to be broken. The term for this is broken wicket (*n.*) A broken-winded (*adj.*) person, or dumb animal, breathes noisily and with difficulty because of defective breathing organs. To speak jerkily, as in the midst of sobs or tears, is to speak brokenly (brō' kèn lī, *adv.*).

For etymology see break. *SYN.*: Shattered, smashed. *ANT.*: Made whole, repaired, restored.

**broker** (brō' ker), *n.* An agent. (F. *courtier*, *agent de change*, *brocanteur*.)

A person who does business for others, as a sort of middleman, is a broker. A shipbroker, for instance, acts for ship owners, or for those who wish to send cargoes by ships, or for both; similarly, stock-brokers deal with stocks and shares and exchange-brokers with bills of exchange. Some brokers are specially licensed to sell goods which have been seized to pay a debt.

To seize the goods of a debtor who does not pay is to put the brokers in. The business of a broker, or what he charges for doing business, is called his brokerage (brō' kër āj, *n.*); another name for his business is broking (brō' king, *n.*).

M.E. and O.F. *brocour*, from L.L. *brocātor* one who broaches a cask, retailer, intermediary.

**brome-grass** (brōm' grās), *n.* A genus of oat-like grasses.

There are about forty species of brome-grass, mostly coarse and of little value. One of the species cultivated as fodder is the awnless brome, or Hungarian forage grass (*Bromus inermis*), which has a creeping, underground stem. Perhaps the commonest

is the soft brome-grass (*B. mollis*), the seeds of which are poisonous, as are those of the smooth brome-grass (*B. secalinus*), found among corn.

*Gr. bromos* (not *brōmos*) a kind of oat, E. grass.

**bromine** (brō' min; brō' mīn), *n.* A dark brown-red liquid which gives off very irritating fumes. (F. *brome*.)

There are two liquid elements, bromine being one and mercury the other. Chemists call it a non-metallic element. If bromine is dropped on the skin it will cause nasty sores to appear. Bromal (brō' māl, *n.*) is a liquid made by the action of bromine upon alcohol. Anything bromic (brō' mīk, *adj.*) has bromine in its composition, and a bromate (brō' mâte, *n.*) is a salt of bromic acid.

A bromide (brō' mīde, *n.*) is a combination of bromine and a metal, as potassium bromide which is used in medicine to calm the nerves. If used too long it is harmful, and brings on a state called bromism (brō' mīzm, *n.*). To bromize (brō' mīz, *v.t.*) is to allow bromine to act upon another substance.

*Gr. brōmos* stink, chemical suffix *-ine*.

**bronchus** (brong' kūs), *n.* Each of the two main divisions of the windpipe. The *pl.* is bronchi (brong' kī). (F. *bronche*.)

The windpipe divides into two branches, or bronchi, one passing to each lung, and each bronchus divides into smaller branches, called bronchia (brong' kī ā, *n.pl.*) or bronchial (brong' kī āl, *adj.*) tubes, which are

also sometimes called bronchi. The lining of these air tubes is called the bronchial membrane, and inflammation of this membrane is called bronchitis (brong kī' tīs, *n.*). This bronchitic (brong kit' īk, *adj.*) disease, if accompanied by inflammation of the lungs, is broncho-pneumonia (brong' kō nū mō' nī ā, *n.*). When surgeons have to open a windpipe the operation which they perform is bronchotomy (brong kot' ō mī, *n.*).

Modern L. from Gr. *brongkhos* the windpipe.

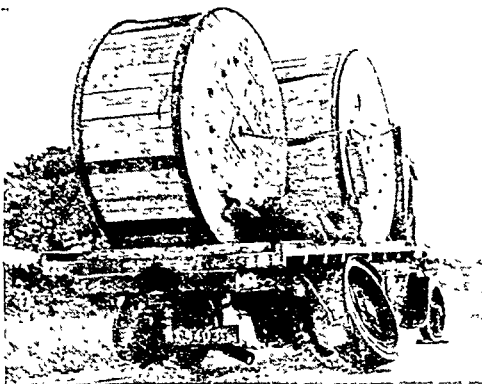
**bronco** (brong' kō), *n.* A half-tamed, or unbroken native horse of California or New Mexico, especially a mustang.

Span. *bronco* rough, rude.

**brontosaurus** (brōn tō sōr' ūs), *n.* A huge fossil reptile, with a very small head.

The remains of the reptile called brontosaurus have been discovered in the Jurassic strata of rocks in Wyoming and Colorado, U.S.A. The body was short and thick, and the neck long and slender.

*Gr. brōnē* thunder, *sauros* lizard.



Broken.—A wagon with a broken back axle, which found the mounting of the Hog's Back, in Surrey, too great a strain.





bronze. Reading down from top left picture: Early bronze spearheads; early Christian bronze lamp; bronze helmet with mask, found in Lancashire; Greek bronze vase of the third century, B.C.; bronze statue from Delphi, Greece; enamelled bronze helmet; bronze jug; bronze shield; bronze bust of Dionysus.

# BRONZE: MAN'S FIRST METAL

*The Wonderful Age that Dawned when Weapons and Tools of Stone gave place to Bronze*

**bronze** (bronz), *n.* A mixture of copper and tin, or copper, tin, zinc, and lead; a brown colour, like that of bronze; a work of art done in bronze. *v.t.* To give a bronze-like appearance to metal or wood, etc. *v.i.* To become browned or tanned by the sun. *adj.* Made of or of the colour of bronze. (*F. bronze; bronzer; se bronzer; de bronze.*)

This brown-coloured metal, consisting chiefly of copper, is of great antiquity. Men first used it during the Bronze Age (*n.*), the period when they had ceased to use stone weapons and tools, but before they had discovered how to work iron. Much of the old Egyptian stonework was apparently hewn with bronze tools, which some people suppose to have been made of a harder bronze than can be produced to-day.

The art of bronze-casting (*n.*) was practised by the ancient Greeks, who made a great number of statues in this metal. One of these, the Colossus at Rhodes, is said to have been one hundred feet high, and another, of the god Zeus, at Tarentum, sixty feet high. The Romans also did much work in bronze. The Roman historian, Pliny, tells us of a man who used over three thousand statues to decorate one theatre.

On account of the weight and cost of the metal, a bronze statue is cast hollow, the metal being only a small part of an inch thick. As the reader may wonder how the work of casting is done, here is a short description of the two methods used. First, a full-size model is made in clay or plaster by the sculptor. If the sand-casting process is to be used, a mould is taken in sand from the model, the mould being arranged so that its parts come away freely from the figure inside it. When the mould is hard and dry, it is stripped off, put together again, and filled with rammed sand. Again the mould is taken off, so that the surface of the sand model may be scraped down all over to a depth equal to the thickness that the bronze is to have. The mould is now put together round the core—as the scraped-down sand model is called—and molten bronze is poured into the space between mould and core.

The other method is named the "cire perdue," or "lost wax" process. The

original clay or plaster model is varnished, and a gelatine or plaster mould taken from it. After the model has been taken out of the mould, the mould is coated inside with wax as thick as the bronze is to be. The workmen next fill the space inside the wax with a mixture of brickdust and plaster, take off the first mould, and make another mould of the same materials as the filling. The wax, which has the same outward size and shape as the original model, is then melted out by heating the whole mass. Where the wax was, there is now a space. This space is completely filled with bronze.

Large statues are cast in several separate pieces, which are welded together so cunningly that the joints cannot be seen.

The biggest bronze statute is the colossal figure of Liberty enlightening the world which stands on Bedloe's Island in New York Harbour. It was a gift from the French people to the citizens of the United States. The height of the figure from the base to the top of the torch in the uplifted hand is over 151 feet. The statue is the work of F. Bartholdi and was dedicated in 1886.

Bronze is also used in making coins, bells,

gongs, etc. The addition of a small amount of phosphorus gives us the hard mixture known as phosphor bronze from which ships' propellers and bearing bushes in machinery are made. To bronze metals and other articles means to give them a lustre, and a bronze-like appearance, and this is done by applying bronze-powder (*n.*) on the top of size, or by the use of chemicals. This process is known as bronzing (bronz' ing, *n.*).

The mineral bronzite (bronz' it, *n.*) is a compound of silicon, magnesium, and iron, and is found in many kinds of rock. It gets its name from its bronzy (bronz' i, *adj.*) appearance. A man must live a healthy, outdoor life in order to bronze his face.

The bronze-wing (*n.*) is a species of pigeon found in Australia and the East Indies, and is so named because of the bronze-like appearance of the colour patches on its upper wing coverts.

F. from Ital. *brunzo*, L. *aes Brundisium* brass of Brundisium (Brindisi), where there were bronze mirror factories.

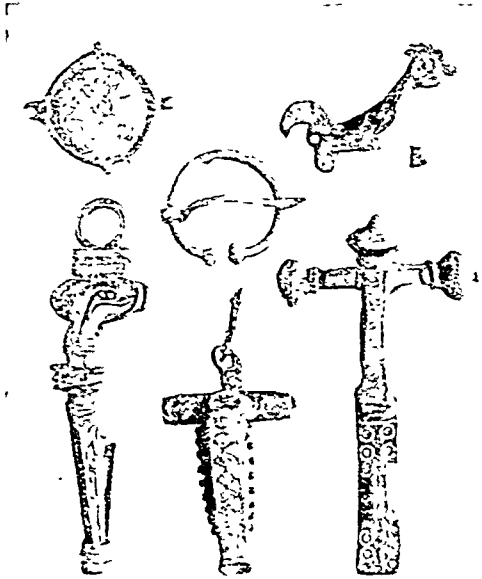


Bronze.—People of the Bronze Age, who were the first users of weapons and other articles of bronze.

**brooch** (brōch), *n.* An ornamental clasp, with a pin. (F. *broche*.)

The pin or clasp used for fastening some part of a woman's dress, or worn simply for display, is called a brooch. The origin of this useful ornament is lost in the mists of time, but the safety pin type is thought to date from the close of the Bronze Age.

M.E. and F. *broche* spit, pin, point, L.L. *broc(c)a* pointed stick, spike; cp. *broach*.



Brooch.—Six Roman brooches found in Britain and now in the British Museum.

**brood** (brood), *n.* A family of birds hatched at the same time; offspring. *v.t.* To sit on eggs; to hover (over); to ponder moodily. *v.t.* To sit upon (eggs) to hatch them, to cherish moodily. (F. *couvée*, *nichée*, *couver*, *couver*, *méditer sur*.)

We have different names for families of different creatures, and a family of young birds is called a brood. Sometimes we use the word to describe the whole of the mother's family, but, strictly speaking, the word applies only to those hatched at the same time. The word is sometimes used in a scornful way to denote a family of human beings.

When a hen broods over her eggs she spreads out her wings in order to supply more heat and protection. Heavy, lowering, spreading clouds are said to brood over the landscape and when we say that a man will brood over an insult he has received, we mean that he will think almost incessantly about it, and that his thoughts will be black and moody. A man who broods over plans for revenge ponders over them perpetually until they are thoroughly matured or hatched.

A broody (brood' i, *adj.*) hen is one that is inclined to sit still in a corner as if trying to

hatch eggs; and a morose and sullen person, inclined to think moodily and constantly about his grievances, is sometimes described in the same way. Such a state of moody concentration is called broodiness (brood' i nēs, *n.*). A brooder (brood' ér, *n.*) is a funnel-shaped or umbrella-shaped cover used for sheltering chickens that have been hatched artificially, and not by the mother-bird.

A.-S. *brōd*, akin to Dutch *broed*, G. *brut*, from a Teut. root meaning to keep warm.

**brook** [I] (bruk), *n.* A rivulet or small stream. (F. *ruisseau*.)

A brooklet (bruk' lēt, *n.*) is a small brook, just as a rivulet is a small river, and a streamlet a small stream. In brooky (bruk' i, *adj.*) districts we find such birds as the brook-ouzel (*n.*) and such plants as the brook-mint (*n.*) and the brooklime (bruk' līm, *n.*). The latter is a kind of speedwell and is sometimes used in salads. The scientific name is *Veronica beccabunga*.

A.-S. *brōc*; cp. Dutch *broek*, G. *bruch* a marsh, perhaps akin to G. *brechen* and E. *break*, meaning that which breaks forth.



Brook.—A little brook that "runs deep into the shadows of the wood."

**brook** [2] (bruk), *v.t.* To bear; to endure; to tolerate; to permit. (F. *souffrir*, *tolérer*, *permettre*.)

We may say that unbroken horses cannot brook restraint, or that an important matter does not brook delay. Shakespeare uses the word in "King John" (iii 1): "Fellow, be gone: I cannot brook thy sight."

Common Teut. word. M.E. *bro(u)ken*, A.-S. *brūcan* originally, to make use of; cp. G. *brauchen*, L. *frui* (fruit-us) to enjoy. SYN: Abide, bear, endure, permit, tolerate.

**broom** (broom), *n.* A genus of pod-bearing shrubs, with yellow flowers; an implement for sweeping. *v.t.* To sweep with a broom. (F. *genêt*, *balai*; *balayer*.)

The shrub commonly known as broom is what is called a switch-plant, that is, a plant with slender green branches and small leaves. It has bright yellow blossoms. The scientific name is *Sarothamnus* or *Cytisus scoparius*. Dyer's broom (*Genista tinctoria*) is a *Genista*, but the plant to which the Plantagenets owed their name was probably the common broom.

From the use of the branches of the common broom as a besom to sweep floors, etc., this article got its name broom, the broom-stick (*n.*) being the handle of it. Among other materials used for brushes and brooms are the panicles of the *Sorghum vulgare*, or broom-corn (*n.*), a tall, reed-like grass.

The leafless broom-rape (*n.*), belonging to the genus *Orobanche*, is a parasite on the roots of broom, clover, and other plants belonging to the same order.

The butcher's-broom (*n.*) (*Ruscus aculeatus*) belongs to the great lily family. It was so called because its masses of pointed, leaf-like branches were used by butchers to clean their blocks.

Land on which broom is growing in profusion may be called broomy (broom' i, *adj.*).

M.E. *brome*, A.-S. *brōm*; cp. Dutch *brem* and E. *bramble*.

**brose** (brōz), *n.* A Scottish dish made by pouring boiling water, milk, or broth on to oatmeal or oatcake, stirring the mixture, and seasoning it with salt and butter. (F. *brouet*.)

M.E. *brewes*, O.F. *brouetz* broth. An old form is *brewis*. See *broth*.

**broth** (broth), *n.* The liquor in which anything has been boiled; a sort of soup. (F. *bouillon*.)

Mutton broth and chicken broth are among the best-known kinds of broth. Scotch broth has chopped vegetables, barley, rice, etc., added to the liquor.

When we speak of a broth of a boy we mean a high-spirited fellow, the very essence of a boy.

Common Teut. word. A.-S. *broth*, akin to O. Norse *broth*, literally a thing brewed, a brewing.

**brother** (brūth' ēr), *n.* A son of the same parents or parent; one of a number united by a common tie, such as race, religion, or occupation. (F. *frère*.)

The ordinary plural is brothers; brethren (breth' rēn) is used chiefly to denote spiritual and professional relationships. A preacher addresses his congregation as brethren; certain members of the Corporation of Trinity House, London, which has the supervision of lighthouses, buoys, etc., are called the Elder Brethren.

Members of a religious order or of a church call themselves brothers or brethren. Many of the titles of religious orders and sects contain the word brothers or brethren, such as Brethren of the Free Spirit, and Plymouth Brethren. Fellow-creatures, too, are called brothers; St. Francis of Assisi spoke of the birds as his little brothers and sisters.

When a parent marries a second time a son of the first marriage is half-brother to a son of the second marriage. A brother-german (*n.*) is a full brother. One's sister's husband and also the brother of one's husband or wife is one's brother-in-law (*n.*).

As John Bull personifies England, so Brother Jonathan means the people of the U.S.A.

As an *adj.* brother means belonging to the same profession, nation or other group. Thus an officer speaks of his brother officers.

The relationship between brothers is called brotherhood (brūth' ēr hud, *n.*). A brotherhood is an association of persons of the same interests. To be without a brother is to be brotherless (brūth' ēr les, *adj.*).

To be affectionate, like a brother, is to be brotherlike (brūth' ēr lik, *adj.*) or brotherly (brūth' ēr li, *adj.*), and to show such affection is to show the quality of brotherliness (brūth' ēr li nēs, *n.*).

Indo-European, appearing in nearly all these languages. Some examples are A.-S. *brōthor*, G. *bruder*, Rus. *brat'*, L. *frāter*, (whence F. *frère*), Gr. *phratēr*.



Broom. — Butcher's-broom, so called because it was used by butchers to clean their blocks.

**brougham** (broom; broo' ām; brō' ām), *n.* A sort of carriage. (F. *coupé*, *brougham*.)

Lord Brougham (1778-1868), who was associated with others in starting the "Edinburgh Review," and who helped much in passing into law the Reform Bill of 1832, is also remembered by the vehicle he had built to his own design—a closed four-wheeled carriage adapted to carry two or four persons.

**brought** (brawt). This is the past tense and past participle of bring. See *bring*.

**brow** (brou), *n.* The projection over the eyes; one of the eyebrows; the forehead; the countenance; the projecting edge of a hill or other steep place. *v.t.* To form the brow of. (F. *sourcil*, *front*, *sommet*.)

To knit the brows is to frown. A brow-antler (*n.*) is the lowest tine or prong of a deer's horns nearest the brow. When a barrister bullies and tries to confuse a timid witness, he may be said to browbeat (*v.t.*) him.

M.E. *browe*, A.-S. *brū*, akin to O. Norse *brūn*, Gr. *ophrys*, Sansk. *bhrū*.

**brown** (broun), *adj.* Of the dark or tawny colour resulting from the mixture of red, yellow, and black. *n.* This colour; a pigment of this colour; a term applied to various things of this colour. *v.t.* To give a brown colour to. *v.i.* To become brown. (F. *brun*; *brunir*; *se brunir*.)

When we say that a person is dressed in brown, or that a shade of colour is a brown, we use the word as a *noun*. In the same way, for instance, a brown butterfly is sometimes called a brown, and so is a brown fly used in angling.

The condition of being brown is **brownness** (broun' nes, *n.*), and anything which is rather brown is **brownish** (broun' ish, *adj.*) or **browny** (broun' i, *adj.*).

**Brown Bess** (*n.*) is the name given to the old flint-lock musket used by British infantry before the rifle came in. It was used during the campaign of Waterloo and was called brown from the colour of the wooden stock. An earlier infantry weapon was the **brown-bill** (*n.*), a kind of halberd painted brown.

The term **brown bread** (*n.*) is applied either to bread made from ordinary flour with some bran added, or to what is more usually called wholemeal bread, that is, bread made from unbolting or unsifted flour.

**Brown coal** (*n.*) is another name for lignite, a kind of coal which is really wood before it has quite turned into coal. The stout wrapping paper which we call **brown paper** (*n.*) was used as early as the sixteenth century.

If we open the door of a great scholar's library noiselessly and peep inside we may find the learned man reading or writing, or perhaps in what we call a **brown study** (*n.*), that is, a state between waking and dreaming, in which he may either be musing deeply and to good purpose, or else thinking of nothing at all.

**Brown sugar** (*n.*) is sugar of a light brown colour which has not been refined so much as loaf sugar. A kind of pottery is known as **brown ware** (*n.*).

Common Teut. word. M.E. *broun*, A.-S. *brin*, akin to Dutch *brun*, G. *braun*, Indo-European root *bhrū* brown; cp. *beaver*, the brown animal. F. *brun*, Ital. *bruno*, etc., are borrowed from Teut.

**brownie** (broun' i), *n.* A good-natured household fairy, supposed to haunt farmhouses in Scotland; a benevolent fairy; a member of the youngest grade of the Girl Guides.

The kindly goblin, the brownie, is believed to creep into a farmhouse whose owners have gained his favour. Waiting till the household are asleep, he nimbly carries out various domestic duties, such as churning, thrashing corn, and so on. R. L. Stevenson was helped in his work by what he called his dream brownies.

Brownies are those members of the Girl Guides who are from eight to eleven years old. They wear a brown uniform consisting of a brown hat, a brown tunic with a leather belt, and a brown knotted tie. The junior members of the Girl Scouts of the U.S.A. are also called Brownies.

E. *brown* and the Sc. dim. *-ie*; cp. the "swart elves" of O. Norse mythology.

**browse** (brouz), *v.t.* To nibble (young shoots or leaves or roots); to feed (animals) on these. *v.i.* To eat in this way; to dip into books. *n.* Young shoots or leaves; the act of eating these; the act of dipping into books. (F. *brouter*; *brouement*.)

If a field has very little grass in it cattle or sheep will often go round the hedges and nibble the tender parts of the rough plants growing in them. This is called browsing. Sometimes the red deer of Exmoor do a great deal of damage by browsing in a field of swedes or mangold-wurzels, nibbling root after root.

From the idea of passing casually from one plant to another the word has come to be used of anyone who passes from one book to another, reading a little from each. Many people enjoy a browse in a good library.

The **browsing-line** (*n.*) is the level in trees to which sheep, etc., can reach.

M.F. *brouster*, F. *brouter*, from M.F. *broust*, F. *brout* tender shoot, sprig, perhaps connected with O. Saxon *brustian* to bud. cp. *breast*.

**brucine** (broo' sin), *n.* A vegetable poison. (F. *brucine*.)

Brucine is a very bitter, poisonous alkaloid found, together with strychnine, in the bark and the seed of *nux vomica* (*Strychnos nux-vomica*) and other species of *Strychnos*. It is obtained in the form of crystals.

From *Brucea*, generic name of a tree from which it was mistakenly supposed to be obtained.

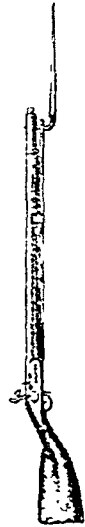
**Bruin** (broo' in), *n.* A name for the brown bear. (F. *ours*.)

In the famous beast-epic, "Reynard the Fox," the various animals were each given a name, and the brown bear was called Bruin. The word is used not only as a proper name but also as the ordinary class-name of the big, lumbering, soft-furred brown bear.

*Bruin* is the Dutch word for brown.

**bruise** (brooz), *v.t.* To injure by a blow which discolours but does not break the skin; to pound or crush. *v.i.* To show the effects of a blow by discoloration of the skin; to fight with the fists; to box. *n.* An injury from a blow which discolours but does not break the skin. (F. *meurtrir*; *meurtissure*.)

A body bruise is due to the tiny blood-vessels under the skin being broken and releasing blood. Since boxing and bruises naturally go together, it is easy to understand



Brown Bess.



Brunt.—British troops during the World War bearing the brunt of the defence of Villers Bretonneux in April, 1918, when the Germans made a determined bid for Amiens.

why a professional boxer, or pugilist, is sometimes called a bruiser (brooz' er, *n.*).

M.E. *brūsen*, A.-S. *brysan* to crush, influenced by O.F. *bruser*, F. *briser* to break, perhaps from the same source as the A.-S. word. SYN.: Batter, deface, pommel. ANT.: Assuage, heal, soothe.

**bruit** (broot), *n.* Noise; tumult; report; rumour. *v.t.* To rumour; to report; to noise abroad. (F. *bruit*; *ébruiter*.)

We may say that the news of a fire soon becomes bruited or noised abroad, but if the report is false we may say that the news is a bruit or rumour. Keats uses the verb intransitively in "Endymion": "Bronze clarions awake and faintly bruit."

F. from *bruire* to make a noise, to be heard, perhaps from L. *rugire* to roar; cp. L.L. *brugitus*.

**brume** (broom), *n.* Fog or mist. (F. *brume*.)

Fogs occur chiefly in the season of winter, and anything that relates to winter is sometimes described as brumal (broom' al, *adj.*). Foggy or wintry weather is said to be brumous (broom' us, *adj.*) weather. During the French Revolution a new calendar was arranged, and the name brumaire (bré mār, *n.*) was given to the second month (October 22nd—November 20th) of the French Republican year, because at that time mists and fogs were frequent. On Brumaire the 18th in the year viii of the Republic (November 9th, 1799), Napoleon established his supremacy by overthrowing the Directory and replacing it by the Consulate.

F. *brume* fog, from L. *brūma* = *brevissima* the shortest day in winter.

**brunette** (broo net'), *n.* A woman or girl of dark hair and complexion. *adj.* Brown-haired; of dark complexion. (F. *brunette*; *brunet*.)

The majority of South European women are brunettes, but the majority of Danish women are fair-haired and fair-complexioned, or blonds, as we call them.

F. *brunet*, fem. *brunette*, dim. of *brun* brown.

**Brunswick** (brünz' wik), *adj.* From or relating to Brunswick.

Brunswick is the capital of a German republic of the same name, which was formerly a duchy and state of the German Empire. Brunswick-black (*n.*) is a varnish made of lampblack and turpentine, and is used to give metal articles a jet black appearance. A green pigment made from oxychloride of copper is called Brunswick-green (*n.*).

Low G. *Brunswik*, G. *Braunschweig*.

**brunt** (brünt), *n.* The shock of a strong attack or danger. (F. *choc*.)

After almost completely destroying a British force at Isandhlwana on January 22nd, 1879, the victorious Zulu army, about four thousand strong, made for Natal, to attack the white settlers there. To reach Natal they had to cross the Tugela River at Rorke's Drift, where there were about eighty British soldiers under Lieutenants Chard and Bromhead.

On this small garrison fell the brunt of the Zulu attack. The defenders, of whom about one-half were in hospital, hastily threw up a breastwork of army stores and defended

this so heroically that after a great struggle the Zulu army was forced to withdraw.

Perhaps imitative; but cp. O. Norse *bruna* to rush on like fire, and Sc. *brunt* burnt, the brunt of the battle being where it rages hottest. SYN.: Impulse, onslaught, shock



Brush.—A Samoyede having its morning brush-up while its companion awaits its turn.

**brush** (brūsh), *n.* A sweeping or scrubbing instrument usually made of bristles, feathers, hair, or wires; an instrument for grooming the hair or for applying paint; undergrowth. *v.t.* To clean with a brush; to touch lightly. *v.i.* To move with a sweeping motion; to skim over. (F. *brosse*, *pinceau*.)

We use a hair brush to smooth our hair, a tooth brush to clean our teeth, a blacking brush to polish our shoes, and a clothes brush to remove dust from our clothes. When we have a painting lesson we colour our work with a paint brush. When untidy we have a brush-up (*n.*).

The bushy tail of a fox is called his brush, and sometimes the word is used in the sense of a skirmish or an attack, as in the phrase a brush with the enemy. A bundle of wires or plates, or a strip of metal used in a machine to form electrical contact is called a brush.

An artist is sometimes called a man or servant of the brush, the thin brush he uses for fine work is a brush-pencil (*n.*), and the way he applies the paint with his brush, or the effect thus produced, is his brush-work (*n.*). Brush or brushwood (*n.*) is undergrowth or thick bushes, and a brush-wheel (*n.*) is a toothless wheel which drives another by the contact of bristles, cloth, or leather. We may brush fluff off our coat, brush up the crumbs left after a meal or brush past a person. If we have almost forgotten a subject and look it up to refresh our memory we are said to brush up our knowledge of the subject. We may say that anything like a brush is brushy (brūsh'ī, *adj.*).

M.E. *brusche*, *brusse*, O.F. *broce* brushwood, brush, F. *brosse*, L.L. *bruscia* thicket of brushwood; perhaps akin to G. *borste* bristle, *bürste* brush.

**brush-turkey** (brūsh tēr' kī), *n.* A large bird found in Australia.

The brush-turkey is about the size of a turkey, and, like that bird, is adorned with wattles. It is also called the mound-turkey because it builds a huge mound of loose soil, twigs, and decaying leaves in which it lays its eggs, and there leaves them to be hatched by the natural warmth of this strange nest. The scientific name is *Cathelurus latham*.

E. *brush* and *turkey*.

**brusque** (brūsk; brusk), *adj.* Rough-mannered; abrupt. (F. *brusque*.)

A man with a reputation for brusqueness (brusk' nes, *n.*) will probably just grunt instead of saying "Good morning," but however brusquely (brusk' li, *adv.*) he may greet you, the chances are that beneath his brusqueries (brus' ke riz, *n.pl.*) there is a heart of gold.

F. from Ital. *brusco* sharp, sour. SYN.: Blunt, uncereomious, uncouth. ANT.: Polished, polite, suave.

**Brussels carpet** (brūs' elz kār' pèt), *n.* A carpet having an upper surface of wool and a back of strong linen thread, named after the capital of Belgium. (F. *moquette bouclée*.)

A Brussels carpet has its pile, or nap, formed by looping worsted thread over wires, which are pulled out afterwards. This kind of carpet is now made at Kidderminster and several other places in England.

**Brussels lace** (brūs' elz lās), *n.* A kind of needle-made lace first produced at Brussels. (F. *point de Bruxelles*.)

There are several kinds of Brussels lace. One kind is worked on a net, made by hand, on a pillow. Another kind is worked on a thread continually looped on itself to form the pattern. The industry is centuries old.



Brussels lace.—The making of Brussels lace, showing the large number of pins and bobbins that are used.

**brussels sprouts** (brūs' elz sproutz), *n.* A kind of cabbage. (F. *choux de Bruxelles*.)

This plant, belonging to the order *Cruciferae*, has a long stem covered with small green buds like tiny cabbages, and is crowned at the top with a large head of blistered leaves. It is a valuable vegetable. The seeds were imported from Brussels.

**brute** (broot), *n.* One of the lower animals; man's animal nature; a coarse, cruel or unintelligent person; a very objectionable person or thing. *adj.* Not human; beastlike; not founded on reason; without intelligence. (F. *brute*; *brut*, *brutal*.)

When we speak of brute beasts or the brute creation we mean the lower animals as distinguished from man. We call a man a brute, the animal side of whose nature is the most highly developed. We also, in ordinary conversation, often call a person or thing that we dislike very much a brute. For instance, a very savage dog or one that persists in barking might be called a brute of a dog.

Brute force is force exerted without intelligence. Brutehood (broot' hud, *n.*) is the condition or rank of animals. Some men lower themselves to brutehood.

A brutal (broot' ál, *adj.*) nature is one which resembles that of an animal, one which is revealed by the display of lower instincts unredeemed by a higher or more spiritual nature. Brutality (broo tál' i ti, *n.*) consists in such qualities as cruelty, coarseness, self-indulgence, and lack of consideration for others. A single action of this kind may also be described as a brutality.

Anyone of a brutal nature acts brutally (broot' ál li, *adv.*), and anything which makes a person brutal—such, for instance, as bad living conditions—is said to brutalize (broot' ál iz, *v.t.* and *i.*) him. To brutalize also means to treat brutally and to become brutal. The act, process, or result of making brutal is brutalization (broot ál i zā' shún, *n.*).

To brutify (broot' i fi, *v.t.* and *i.*) means to make or become brutal, and brutification (broot i fi kā' shún, *n.*) is the act, process, or result of making brutal. These two words are seldom used. Brutalism (broot' ál izm, *n.*) means a brutal state. We can speak of a race rising from brutalism to a high pitch of civilization.

A brutish (broot' ish, *adj.*) nature resembles that of a brute, and a person with such a nature behaves brutishly (broot' ish li, *adv.*) or with brutishness (broot' ish nés, *n.*).

F. *brut* raw, rough, brutish, from L. *brūtus* dull, stupid, uncultivated.

**bryology** (brī ol' ó jil), *n.* The science of mosses; the mosses, considered as a whole, found in a certain region. (F. *bryologie*.)

A bryologist (brī ol' ó jist, *n.*) is a person who studies mosses, and anything relating to mosses is bryological (brī ó loj' ik ál, *adj.*).

Gr. *bryon* moss, *logos* discourse, study or science.

**bryony** (brī' ó ni), *n.* A genus of climbing plants belonging to the cucumber family. Another form is briony. (F. *bryone*.)

The true British bryony is the white bryony (*Bryonia iodica*), which clammers up hedges by means of spiral tendrils. It is easily distinguished by its pale, somewhat rough, scalloped leaves from the so-called black bryony (*Tamus communis*), which has dark, smooth, pointed leaves.



Brute.—A hippopotamus is an ugly brute to tackle, particularly when the hunter is in a frail canoe such as that shown. Fortunately the incident, which took place on the White Nile, did not end disastrously.

The two plants are not related, their only resemblance being that they are both climbers.

Gr. and L. *bryōna*, from *bryein* to burst forth, teem.

**bryophyta** (brī of' i tá), *n.pl.* Moss-like plants, including the true mosses and the liverworts. Another form is bryophytes (brī' ó fits, *n.pl.*).

The bryophyta or moss-plants are among the simpler kinds of green plants. Neither mosses nor liverworts possess true roots or woody tissues, nor do they bear flowers or seeds. They are spore-bearers, and among such plants they rank highest next to the ferns. The largest of the mosses is the sphagnum, which occurs on damp moorlands as bright green patches. It sometimes grows to a length of several feet.

Gr. *bryon* moss, *phyton* plant



**bryozoon** (brī ō zō' ōn), *n.* A lowly compound water animal.

The **Bryozoa** (brī ō zō'ā, *n. pl.*) live together in masses which take a leaf-like or tree-like form and often look very like a seaweed. They were formerly wrongly included among the molluscs, from which they are quite distinct. Some writers prefer the name Bryozoa, or "moss-animals"; others prefer the name Polyzoa, which means "many-animals," or a colony.

Gr. *bryon* moss, *zōon* animal.

**Brython** (brith' ōn), *n.* A member of that branch of the Celtic race which had occupied England, Wales, and the Scottish Lowlands before the coming of the Romans.

The Brythons, who spoke a language from which the Brythonic (brī thon' ik, *adj.*) languages, Welsh, Cornish, and Breton, are derived, formed a second wave of Celtic invaders from the Continent, following the older settlers, called Goidels or Gaels. From their name are derived the words Britain and Briton.

Welsh *Brython* a Briton.

**Bryum** (brī' ūm), *n.* A large genus of common mosses. (F. *bryon*.)

The mosses grouped together under this name are very plentiful, forming small dense patches on damp rocks and earth. The spore-capsules, which are borne on stalks at the ends of the branches, are pear-shaped and drooping, and they have a double row of teeth around the mouth.

Gr. *bryon* moss.

**bubble** (būb' l), *n.* A globule of water or other liquid filled with air or other gas; a globule of air or other gas; a delusion; a swindle. *adj.* Delusive; fraudulent. *v.i.* To form bubbles; to come to the surface in bubbles; to make a noise like that of bubbles; to give vent to an emotion. (F. *bulle*, *chimère*, *flouerie*; *chimérique*; *boulloner*.)

Various solid materials, such as ice, amber, or glass, may hold bubbles. There can be bubbles in the body of a liquid, as in champagne. Bubbles can also form on the surface of a liquid. The air left in a spirit level is a bubble.

The fact that a bubble looks so much more substantial than it really is has given rise

to the use of the word to denote anything which is unsubstantial, such as an unsound business, scheme, or some other visionary idea which never comes to anything.

An example of the use of the word in this sense is the South Sea Bubble. This was a gigantic scheme formed in 1710 by the South Sea Company for taking over the national debt in return for the monopoly of trade with South America and the Pacific Islands. There was the wildest excitement all over the country, everyone being anxious to invest money in the project and so make their fortunes. But before long the whole scheme crashed and there was a great panic. The shares became valueless and thousands of people were ruined.

A person may bubble over either with laughter or with rage. Bubble-and-squeak is vegetables and meat fried together. It is so called from the noise made while it is being cooked.

There is a fish found in the River Ohio which is called a bubbler (būb' lēr, *n.*) because it makes a peculiar bubbling or grunting sound.

The word is imitative of the sound of forming a bubble with the lips; cp. *bleb*, *blob*, *blubber*. *SYN.*: *n.* Dream, fancy, trifle.

**buccaneer** (būk ā nēr'), *n.* A piratical rover. *v.i.* To behave as a buccaneer. (F. *boucanier*.)

The name buccaneer was first given to French hunters and settlers in the West Indies, who preserved meat by drying and smoking it on a *boucan* after the manner of the Indians. When these hunters were ill-treated and driven out of business by the Spaniards, who tried to keep the trade entirely in their own hands, they took to the sea and waged war on them, behaving very much like pirates.

These were the first buccaneers, but men of other nations, especially the English, took to buccaneering (būk ā nēr' ing, *n.*) and preyed upon Spain.

F. *boucanier*, from *boucaner* to smoke dry, from *boucan* smoking place, smoke-dried meat. *Boucan* is the F. spelling of a native Brazilian word meaning a frame for smoking and drying meat and fish. *SYN.*: Filibuster, freebooter, pirate.



Bubble.—A little girl blowing soap bubbles out of a big pipe.

**buccina** (bŭk' si nà), *n.* A trumpet used by the ancient Romans. *pl.* **buccinae** (bŭk' si nē) or **buccinas** (bŭk' si nāz). (*F. buccin.*)

In its earliest form the buccina seems to have been the long twisted shell of the whelk. Later it was carved out of horn, and later still made of metal. The watches of the day and night were blown on the buccina, which



**Buccina.**—The twisted trumpet of the ancient Romans.

was used also at festivals and funerals.

The muscle in the cheek which is used in blowing is called the **buccinator** (bŭk' si nā tōr, *n.*). It is very highly developed in glass-blowers and in players of wind instruments.

*L. buc(c)ina* trumpet, from *bucca* cheek.

**Bucentaur** (bū sen' tawr; bu' sen tawr), *n.* The state barge or galley of the republic of Venice. (*F. bucentaure.*)

In memory of a victory won by the Venetian fleet it was the custom for the Doge of Venice to sail out in the Bucentaur and throw a ring into the sea every year on Ascension Day, thus making the city the bride of the sea as a symbol of the power of Venice. This was the ceremony known as the wedding of the sea.

Three Bucentaurs were built and used, one after another, over a period of six hundred years. The last was burnt by French soldiers after Italy was invaded by Napoleon. Some portions of the galley were spared because of their gold work, and may still be seen in Venice.

Ital. *bucentoro*, apparently from *L.L. būcentaurus* ox-centaur, from *Gr. bous* ox, *kentauros* the fabulous monster, half-man half-horse. But it is more probable that the Italian word is really a corruption of *buzino d'oro* golden ship or barge.

**Bucephalus** (bū sef' à lūs), *n.* A name for a riding-horse. (*F. bucéphale.*)



**Bucephalus.**—Alexander the Great riding Bucephalus.

**Bucephalus** was the name of Alexander the Great's celebrated war-horse on which he rode in a great many battles. He perpetuated its memory by building a city in India called Bucephala.

*Gr. bous* ox, *kephalē* head.

**buck** [1] (bŭk), *n.* The male of the fallow-deer, hare, rabbit, and other

animals; a dashing man of fashion. *v.i.* To leap and kick in an attempt to throw a rider. (*F. daim élégant; faire le saut de mouton.*)

From buck, the dandy, comes the words **buckish** (bŭk' ish, *adj.*) foppish, buckishly

(bŭk' ish li, *adv.*) foppishly, and **buckishness** (bŭk' ish nēs, *n.*) foppishness.

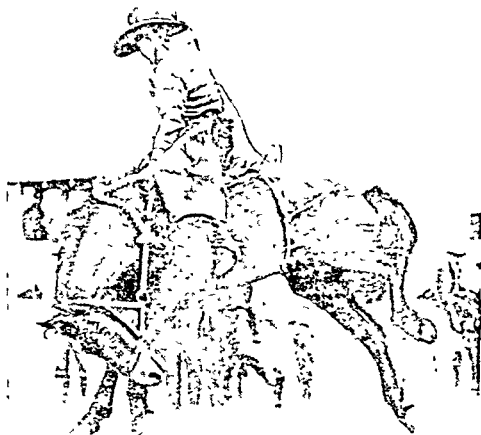
The use of the horns of the male deer for knife-handles has given rise to such words as **buckhorn** (*n.*) and **buck-handled** (*adj.*).

**Buck-shot** (*n.*) is a coarse kind of shot, larger than swan-shot, used for shooting deer and other large game. A **buck-hound** (*n.*) is rather smaller than a stag-hound. **Buckskin** (*n.*) means not only the skin of a buck, but also soft, yellow leather made from this or from sheepskin. **Buckskins** (*n.pl.*) are breeches made of buckskin.

A **buckjumper** (*n.*) or **bucker** (bŭk' ér, *n.*) is a vicious or unbroken horse that buck-jumps (*v.i.*), that is, leaps and bounds with feet drawn together and arched back in an attempt to throw its rider.

For buckbean, buckthorn, and buckwheat, see below.

*M.E. bukke*, *A.S. buc* male deer, *bucca* he-goat, akin to Dutch *bok*, Dan. *buk*, G. *bock*.



**Buckjumper.**—A cowboy of Western Canada riding an unbroken horse known as a buckjumper.

**buck** [2] (bŭk), *n.* The body of a wagon or cart.

A **buck-wagon** (*n.*) or **buck-cart** (*n.*) is a rough vehicle formed by fastening a long, springy board across the axle-trees of two pairs of wheels. This **buck-board** (*n.*) takes the place of the body, springs and gear of the ordinary wagon.

Perhaps from obsolete *E. both*, *A.-S. būc* belly.

**buckbean** (bŭk' bēn), *n.* A genus of bog or water plants, belonging to the gentian family. (*F. méntanthe.*)

The buckbean (*Menyanthes trifoliata*), called also the bog bean and marsh trefoil, is found in wet bogs and shallow ponds. The white blossoms, tipped with red and prettily fringed, are among the most beautiful of our wild flowers. The leaves are very bitter, and have been used instead of hops.

The name buckbean is said to be derived from *Flem. bocks boonen* buck's beans; the spelling bogbean refers to the plant's habitat.

**bucket** (buk' èt), *n.* An open vessel, scoop, or other receptacle for holding water and other substances; as much as this will hold; the piston of a pump. *v.t.* To carry, draw, or dip in a bucket; to ride a horse unmercifully. *v.i.* To hurry the forward swing in rowing; to move quickly. (F. *seau*, *baquet*.)

The simplest form of bucket is made of wood, iron, or leather, and fitted with a curved handle. Buckets are used in various mechanical operations. Dredgers are fitted with buckets, which, when filled with the silt or other matter to be removed, are drawn up, emptied, and let down again. Grain, coal, and other materials are lifted in the same way. Some wheels for raising water have buckets attached to them which lift the water as the wheel turns.

The leather socket into which a whip is put during driving is called a bucket, and so is the leather holder at the side of a saddle into which a rifle, carbine, or revolver may be slipped.

A bucketful (bük' èt fül, *n.*) is as much as a bucket will contain.

From O.F. *buket* pail, or A.-S. *būc* pitcher.

**buckie** (bük' i), *n.* A spiral or twisted shell; an unreasonable person.

This word is commonly used in Scotland to describe the shell of the common whelk. Cp. L. *buccinum* whelk. See *buccina*.

**buckle** (bük' l), *n.* A metal frame, with a tongue or catch, for fastening straps, etc.; a bend. *v.t.* To fasten with or as if with a buckle; to equip earnestly for. *v.i.* To bend out of shape; to set to work resolutely. (F. *boucle*, *combe*; *baucles*; se *combes*, *s'y methe*.)

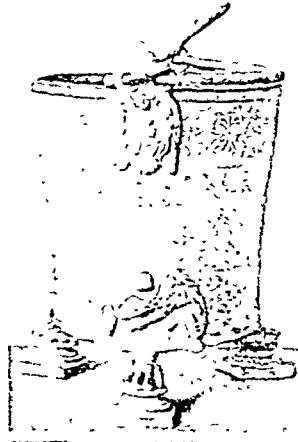
A buckle may be ornamental as well as useful. From very early times buckles have been used for fastening clothing. Elaborate buckles for this purpose were worn by the early Britons and Franks, and the sword-belts of the Middle Ages were often richly ornamented. At the present day much artistic taste is expended on buckles for shoes, waist-belts, cloak fastenings, etc.

In olden times when a warrior prepared for battle his armour was buckled on him. And so, when we say that we buckle ourselves to a task, or buckle to it, or simply buckle to,

we mean that we apply ourselves resolutely to it.

If a plate, or rod, or pillar is permanently bent engineers say that it has buckled. When a bicycle wheel is bent and twisted out of shape we also say that it has buckled.

M.E. *bokel*, O.F. *bocle*, F. *boucle*, L.L. *buccula* guard of a helmet to protect the mouth and cheeks, boss of a shield, from L. *bucca* cheek, and *-ula*, dim. suffix. SYN.: *n.* Catch, clasp, fastening. *v.* Attach, bind, grapple, tie. ANT.: *v.* Detach, loose, unfasten.



British Museum  
Bucket.—An Etruscan bucket of the fifth century B.C.

**buckler** (bük' lër), *n.* A small round shield; the hard protective covering of various animals; the cover of the hawse-hole of a ship to keep out water; the movable head of a cask used to press down the contents; a means of defence. *v.t.* To defend. (F. *bouclier*.)

In the Bible this word is used several times to mean a protector or protection, and it is in this sense that it is chiefly used to-day.

**Buckler-fern** (*n.*) is another name for shield-fern, a term applied to the genus *Aspidium* from the shield-shaped covers of the spore cases.

M.E. *bokcler*, O.F. *boucler* a small shield. See *buckle*.

**buckram** (bük' räm), *n.* A coarse kind of cloth stiffened with paste; a stiff manner. *adj.* Made of this fabric; stiff. (F. *bougran*, *guinderie*; de *bougran*, *guindé*.)

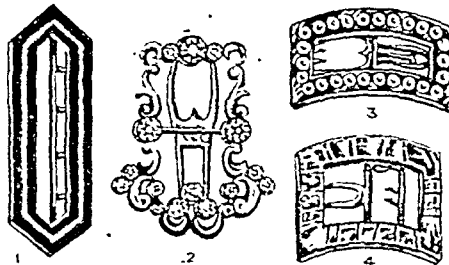
When we try on a suit at the tailor's before it is finished it has rough-looking stiff cloth on certain parts of it. This is

buckram. Buckram is also used in book-binding. In olden times buckram meant quite a different kind of cloth; it was a fine material, which was used for rich clothing.

In Shakespeare's play, "King Henry" (ii, 4), the fat, boastful Falstaff tells how he was set upon by a number of men in buckram. Sometimes

he makes out that there were four of them, sometimes eleven, sometimes nine, and so on, and in the end it turns out that he was not attacked at all by anybody. And so we use the phrase men in buckram for people that are purely imaginary.

M.E. *boheram*, O.F. *boquerant*, or Ital. *bucherame*, of uncertain origin, perhaps from Ital. *bucherare*, to pierce full of holes.



Buckle.—1 and 3. Buckles of the eighteenth century.  
2. French shoe buckle of gold and paste diamonds.  
4. Heavy brass shoe buckle.

**buckthorn** (būk' thörn), *n.* A shrub belonging to the genus *Rhamnus*. (F. *nerprun*.)

The two British species of buckthorn are the common buckthorn (*Rhamnus cathartica*) and the alder buckthorn (*Rhamnus frangula*). The former bears greenish male and female flowers on separate plants, the female plants producing the round, black berries which are used in medicine.

From the juice of the berries is prepared sap-green, which is used in water-colours; and dyes of various colours are yielded by the berries and bark of both species.

*E. buck and thorn.*

**buckwheat** (būk' hwët), *n.* An herbaceous plant belonging to the order Polygonaceae. (F. *blé noir*; *sarrasin*.)

The large three-sided seeds or fruits of this plant are used in Britain as food for pheasants and poultry. In other countries people use them as food, buckwheat cakes being a favourite dish in the U.S.A. The scientific name is *Fagopyrum esculentum*.

Probably from Dutch *boekweit*, G. *buchweizen*, literally "beech-wheat," so called from the fruit resembling beech-nuts, or from A.-S. *bōc* beech and *wheat*.

**bucolic** (bū kol' ik), *adj.* Relating to herdsmen or shepherds, or to the country generally. *n.* A pastoral poem. (F. *bucolique*; *bucolique*.)

When we want to say that somebody is very countrified indeed we sometimes use the word bucolic. A townsman who has retired into the country might be said to be living bucolically (bū kol' ik āl li, *adv.*).

The word is chiefly used as a term to describe pastoral poetry, poetry about shepherds and country life. In ancient times the Greek poet Theocritus wrote exquisite bucolics, imitated by the Roman poet Virgil.

L. *būcolicus* pastoral, Gr. *boukolikos*, from *boukolos* cowherd. SYN.: Pastoral, rustic, untutored. ANT.: Cultured, polished, town-bred.

**bucranium** (bū krā' ni ūm), *n.* An ornament resembling an ox-skull found in Roman architecture. (F. *bucrane*.)

In certain orders of Roman architecture bucrania (bū krā' ni ā, *n.pl.*) were carved on the friezes of buildings, especially temples. Originally the skulls of sacrificed oxen were hung up on the temples.

L. from Gr. *boukrānion*, from *bous* ox, *krānion* skull. See *cranium*.

**bud** (būd), *n.* The first shoot of a leaf, flower, or branch; an unexpanded leaf or flower. *v.i.* To put forth buds; to begin to grow. *v.t.* To insert (a bud from one tree) under the bark of another. (F. *bourgeon*; *bourgeonner*, *écussonner*.)

As a bud is a young leaf or flower, which in time will expand and grow to be a mature leaf or flower, we may describe a boy as a bud of manhood, meaning that in time he will reach the perfect state of manhood. When we say that a plant has begun to bud



Bud.—A section of a chestnut bud showing the tiny leaves forming within.

we mean that it is beginning to grow, that it is putting forth buds.

A beautiful girl, who has not yet reached the perfect state of womanhood, may be described as a budding beauty, for she is developing in loveliness. In zoology the organism which will develop into a complete animal is called a bud.

A plant which is putting forth shoots is said to be in bud or budded (būd' ed, *adj.*), but one that is not is budless (būd' les, *adj.*). A very small bud may be described as a budlet (būd' let, *n.*).

M.E. *budde* (*n.*), *budden* (*v.*), possibly connected with Dutch *bot*, *botten*.

**Buddha** (bud' ā), *n.* The founder of a religion, called after him, known as Buddhism. (F. *Bouddha*.)

The title Buddha, meaning the wise or enlightened one, was given to Siddhartha, an



Buddha.—A beautiful statue of Buddha in marble, dating from the eighteenth century.

Indian prince of the Sakya tribe. He was also called Sakyamuni, the Sakya sage, the name preferred by his followers in China and Japan; while by the Buddhists (bud' istz, *n.pl.*) of Burma and Ceylon he is known as Gautama or Gotama, the most victorious.



Buddhist.—Two Buddhist priests in the grounds of a Buddhist temple in Japan.

According to Buddhism (bud' izm, *n.*) or Buddhistic (bud is' tik, *adj.*) or Buddhistical (bud is' tik al, *adj.*) teaching, no one can escape from evil, even by death, except those who live in perfect obedience to the laws laid down by Buddha. These faithful ones, after death, pass into Nirvana, that is, a state of complete peace and freedom from desire, ill-will, and stupidity.

Sansk. enlightened, awakened. *pp.* of *budh* to awake, perceive.

**buddle** (būd' l), *n.* A machine used in mining to separate the richer portions of ground ore from the poorer. *v.t.* To wash ore in a buddle. (F. *caisse à laver*, buddle; *laver*.)

There are several kinds of buddle, but they all work on the same general principle. A stream of water containing the ground ore flows through the buddle and the heavier and richer portions settle, while the lighter portions are washed away.

Possibly connected with *G. buttl* to shake.

**buddleia** (būd' h ā; būd lē' ā), *n.* A genus of shrubs belonging to the figwort family.

The buddleias, grown as ornamental plants in our gardens, are natives of Africa, Asia, and America. Some are evergreens,

while others shed their leaves each year. Among the most ornamental species are the *Buddleia Neemda*, of India, and the *B. globosa*, of Chile. The red admiral butterfly is very fond of sunning itself on the blooms of the buddleia.

Named after Adam Buddle, an English botanist.

**budge** [1] (būj), *v.i.* To move; to stir. *v.t.* To move a little, especially something heavy. (F. *bouger*; *remuer*.)

When we refuse to budge from our position we obstinately insist upon staying exactly where we are, and when we cannot budge another person, we are unable to make him move. Although we may push hard against a heavy boulder we may not budge it.

F. *bouger* to stir, like Prov. *bolegar* to disturb oneself, and Ital. *bulicare* to bubble up, from a frequentative of L. *bullire* to bubble, from *bulla* bubble.

**budge** [2] (būj), *n.* A kind of fur made of lambskin with the wool turned outwards. (F. *peau d'agneau*.)

The winter coats worn by British soldiers during the World War (1914-18) were sometimes lined with budge to give them extra warmth. Formerly men's gowns, such as those of university graduates, were ornamented with budge, and this is perhaps the reason why the word was sometimes used to describe anyone or anything pompous or formal.

M.E. *bugee*, *bugeye*, perhaps from O.F. *bouchet*, *bochet* a kid, dim. of *bouc* goat.

**budgerigar** (buj' ēr i gār), *n.* The Australian grass parakeet, also called the Australian love-bird.



Budgerigar.—The Australian love-bird or budgerigar.

A fierce little fighter, despite its more usual name of love-bird, the brilliantly coloured budgerigar is common in many parts of Australia. Breeding them as cage-birds is quite an industry on the continent of Europe, from whence they are sent to many parts of the world.

The scientific name is *Mcopsittacus undulatus*.

The word means pretty bird.

**budget** (būj' ēt), *n.* A small leather bag; the contents of such a bag; a bundle; a collection of news, songs, etc.; a statement of money received and spent, especially the yearly statement of the nation's finances. *v.t.* To make a budget or estimate. (F. *budget*.)

Every year the Chancellor of the Exchequer makes a statement in the House of Commons in which he gives the nation's income and expenditure of the past year and an estimate for the coming year. When he prepares this estimate he is said to budget for the year.

Originally the papers giving these financial details were brought to Parliament in a small leather bag, called a budget, but soon the name became applied to the papers themselves. Anything relating or belonging to the budget, or to any statement of income and expenditure, is called a budgetary (būj' èt àr i, *adj.*) matter.

*F. bougette*, dim. of *bouge*, *L. bulga* a leathern bag, of Gaulish origin; *cp. O. Irish bolg* sack; *see bulge*.

**buff** (būf), *n.* Soft, thick leather prepared from buffalo skins; a light yellow colour. *adj.* Made of buff; of the colour of buff. *v.t.* To polish with buff. (*F. buffle*; *de couleur chamois*.)

The skins of other animals, similarly prepared, are also sometimes called buff, which is a light yellowish colour like a man's bare skin. The East Kent regiment is known as the Buffs because of the buff-coloured facings on the soldiers' uniforms. Anything of buff colour, such as a military coat, is called buffy (būf' i, *adj.*). In medicine, however, a buffy coat means a buff-coloured coating on congealed blood.

A buff-wheel (*n.*) or buff-stick (*n.*) is a wheel or stick covered with buff leather and sprinkled with emery, and is used for polishing silver and other metals. Polishing by this process is called buffing (būf' ing, *n.*), and the term is also applied to the process of removing the grain, or hair side of a leather hide, and roughening the surface. A buff-coat (*n.*) or buff-jerkin (*n.*) was a stout coat once worn by soldiers to protect themselves against sword-cuts.

*F. buffle* buffalo. *See* buffalo

**buffalo** (būf' à lō), *n.* A kind of ox, found chiefly in India and Africa; *pl.* buffaloes (-lōz). (*F. buffle*.)

Large numbers of buffaloes are found in the swampy wilds of Africa. They are very sturdy animals, with thin coats of reddish or blackish hair, large ears and short necks. The Indian species is more heavily built, its hair is black and usually it has long, curling horns and short ears. In some of the districts of India the buffalo does much damage to crops. The scientific name of the African buffalo is *Bos caffer*, and the Indian buffalo is *B. bubalis*.

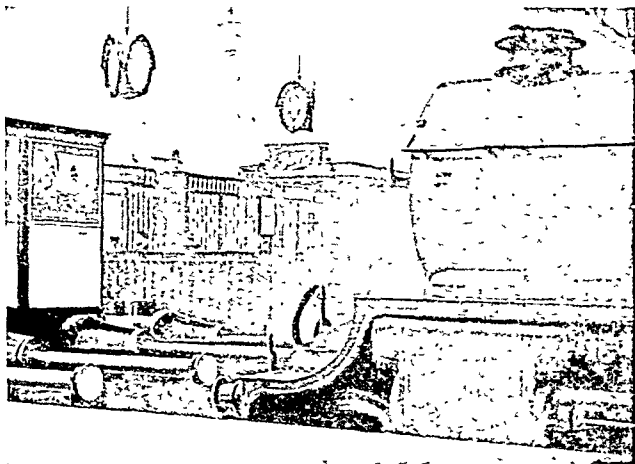
The Indian buffalo, unlike the African, is often kept as a domestic animal. Buffaloes have long been kept in southern Italy and on the lower Danube.

The prepared skin of the North American bison, often wrongly termed a buffalo, is called buffalo-robe (*n.*), and some varieties of prairie grass are known as buffalo-grass (*n.*).

Probably from *Port. bufalo*, from *L.L. bufalus*, popular form of *būbalus*, *Gr. boubalos* an antelope, later a wild ox.

**buffer** (būf' èr), *n.* A mechanical device for reducing the shock when one thing strikes another; a shock-absorber fixed on railway engines or carriages. (*F. tampon, butoir*.)

A railway buffer is a round-headed ram sliding inside a casting bolted to the buffer-beam (*n.*) of the engine or carriage. In



**Buffer.**—One of the front buffers of a railway engine and a pair of hydraulic buffers commonly placed at the end of a platform bay at a terminus. The latter have long projecting plungers which act as shock absorbers.

moving it compresses a very strong spring, or disks of rubber between metal plates.

A stop-buffer (*n.*), placed at the end of a siding, or at the end of a platform bay at a terminus, is usually an hydraulic buffer (*n.*). This has a very long projecting plunger working inside a cylinder filled with water. When the plunger is driven in, the water is forced out through holes into a chamber partly filled with compressed air. The further the plunger is driven in, the more the air is squeezed, thus increasing the resistance of the buffer.

In the most modern type of hydraulic buffer the cylinders are filled with oil.

From the dialect *v. buff* to sound like a soft body when struck, and suffix *-er*

**buffer state** (būf' èr stāt), *n.* A small state or country lying between two larger states or countries. (*F. état tampon*.)

A buffer is a means of preventing a harmful collision, hence the use of the term for a country, usually small and relatively weak and unimportant, which lies between two powerful countries which are or may become, rivals. A buffer state—Switzerland, for example—may do good work in keeping such nations apart, especially by preventing frontier disputes.

*E. buffer* and *state*.

**buffet** [1] (būf' èt), *n.* A blow with the fist or hand; a disaster. *v.t.* To strike with the fist or hand; to cuff; to beat back. *v.i.* To struggle. (*F. soufflet*; *souffleter*; *lutter*.)

In the story-books we may read how King Richard I, wandering in Sherwood Forest, met Robin Hood, and how the outlaw, not recognizing his king, challenged him to a buffet match. The victor in such contests was the man who felled the other to the ground with one blow of his fist.

Figuratively, we often allude to a disaster or misfortune as a blow or buffet of Fate. If we thump anyone on the back we may be said to buffet that person, and a swimmer who struggles against a heavy sea is said to buffet with the waves.

O.F. dim. of *buffe* a blow; cp. *buffer*, blind-man's *buff*.

**buffet** [2] (būf' ét), *n.* A cabinet or sideboard for silver, china, glass, etc.; a refreshment bar (būf' ā). (F. *buffet*.)

The buffet, an ancestor of the sideboard, is a familiar object in dining rooms. It serves a useful as well as ornamental purpose, for the broad shelves may hold the various necessities for dining not placed upon the table. Food is often served from the buffet, so the name has been given to any restaurant where one can obtain light refreshments, and also to the counter from whence they are served.

F. connected by some with *bouffer* to puff out the cheeks, to eat heartily.

**buffoon** (būf oon'), *n.* A jester; a clown. (F. *bouffon*.)

Not so very long ago, quack doctors and other sellers of cheap and usually faked medicines, used to take an assistant with them into the villages which they visited. This fellow was a clown, or buffoon, and his jests or buffoonery (būf oon' ēr i, *n.*), would soon draw a crowd round the quack, who then proceeded to sell his wares.

F. *bouffon*, from Ital. *buffone*, from *buffa* a jest, *buffare* to puff, perhaps in the sense of puffing out the cheeks. SYN.: Fool, mountebank, wag.

**bug** [1] (būg), *n.* A terrifying object, especially an imaginary one; a hobgoblin. (F. *épouvantail*.)

This word is seldom used except in the compound bugbear (būg' bar, *n.*), which probably meant at first a spectre in the form of a bear, hence a bogey invented to frighten children, and then any imaginary terrifying notion. Another word from the same source is bugaboo (būg' ā boo, *n.*), with the same meaning.

Probably from Welsh *bug* (boog) a ghost, spectre; cp. Irish *bogán* hobgoblin, also Lithuanian *bugti* to terrify, all from a root meaning to bend (E. *bow*), hence to turn aside, flee. See boggle, bogle, bogey.

**bug** [2] (būg), *n.* A blood-sucking, wingless, evil-smelling insect infesting beds; a name applied to various, mostly small, beetles, grubs, and other insects. (F. *punaise*.)

Among the insects called bugs are the field bug, harvest bug, or harvest mite, May bug or cockchafer, June bug of North America, and water bug. The true bug is distinguished as the bed bug. In America

the word bug is loosely used for almost any kind of insect. Anything which is infested with bugs may be said to be buggy (būg' i, *adj.*).

Regarded by some as a special sense of *bug* [1], by others as a corruption of M.E. *budde*, A.-S. *budda* beetle.

**bugbane** (būg' ban), *n.* A genus of plants belonging to the crowfoot family. (F. *cinicaire*.)

Bugbane, or bugwort (būg' wért, *n.*), the English form of the genus *Cimicifuga*, is so called because of its use in destroying insect pests. In Europe *Cimicifuga foetida* was used, and in America *C. ramosa*.

E. *bug* [2] and *banc*.

**buggy** (būg' i), *n.* A light carriage. (F. *boghei*.)

A buggy varies slightly in appearance according to the country in which it is built and used. In America, the name is given to a four-wheeled vehicle with one seat and drawn by one or two horses; in England, to a very low, two-wheeled carriage; in India, to a four-wheeled vehicle with one seat and a hood. In all cases it is a light vehicle.

Possibly from *bogie* in the sense of low cart or truck.

**bugle** [1] (bū' gl), *n.* A small military trumpet; a hunting horn. *v.t.* To sound by bugle. *v.i.* To sound a bugle. (F. *clairon*, *cor de chasse*; *sonner le clairon*.)



Bugle.—Unlike many other musical instruments, the bugle has no keys or valves.

The bugle formerly used by huntsmen for signalling to the hunt was made of the horn of a wild ox. Its place is now taken by a metallic horn.

The bugle in military use is a wind-instrument of a penetrating tone which carries for long distances, and is used for signalling or summoning purposes.

It is generally made of copper, or copper and brass, and as it has no keys or valves, it can only produce certain notes. It is a long, tapering tube, coiled several times.

A bugle-call (*n.*), sounded by a bugler (bū' glér, *n.*), is a signal by bugle used in the army, both in barracks and in the field. A small bugle is called a buglet (bū' glét, *n.*).

Short for *bugle-horn*, *bugle* (now only in dialects) meaning a young bull, a buffalo, O.F. *bugle*, L. *bulculus*, dim. of *bos* (gen. *bovis*) ox.

**bugle** [2] (bū' gl), *n.* A long, slender, usually black, glass bead. (F. *perle de Venise*.) Bugles were formerly used to trim ladies' bonnets and dresses.

Of very doubtful origin, possibly from *bugle* [1] in sense of a little horn. There is a Dutch word *beugel* a ring.

**bugle** [3] (bū' gl), *n.* A genus of labiate plants with flowers of a bluish-purple or yellow colour. (F. *bugle*.)

There are about thirty species of the genus *Ajuga* or bugle, distributed all over the temperate parts of the Old World, including Australia. The blue flower commonly called by this name in England grows plentifully in pastures and woods.

F. *bugle*, L.L. *bugula*; cp. L. *bugillo*, perhaps the same plant.

**bugloss** (bū' glos), *n.* The name of several plants belonging to the borage order. (F. *buglosse*.)

To their rough, hairy leaves a number of plants owe their popular name bugloss, or ox-tongue. The true bugloss is the small, common, or field bugloss (*Lycopsis arvensis*), others being the common alkanet (*Anchusa officinalis*) and the viper's bugloss (*Echium vulgare*). This last is a very rough plant with large blue flowers, which got its name from its spotted stem which was thought to show that the plant was a cure for the bites of vipers and other poisonous snakes.

F. *buglosse*, L. *buglōssa*, Gr. *buglōssos*, from *bous* 'ox, *glōssa* tongue.

**buhl** (bool), *n.* Cabinet work inlaid with brass, tortoiseshell, etc. *adj.* Inlaid in this style. (F. *boule*.)

The style was introduced by André Charles Boulle or Boule (1642-1732), a cabinet-maker in the service of Louis XIV.

Buhl work is a rather elaborate method of cutting unburnished gold, brass, tortoiseshell, mother-of-pearl, etc., into patterns, then setting them in the wood-work of furniture. The effect is very ornate.

A Germanized corruption of the name Boulle.

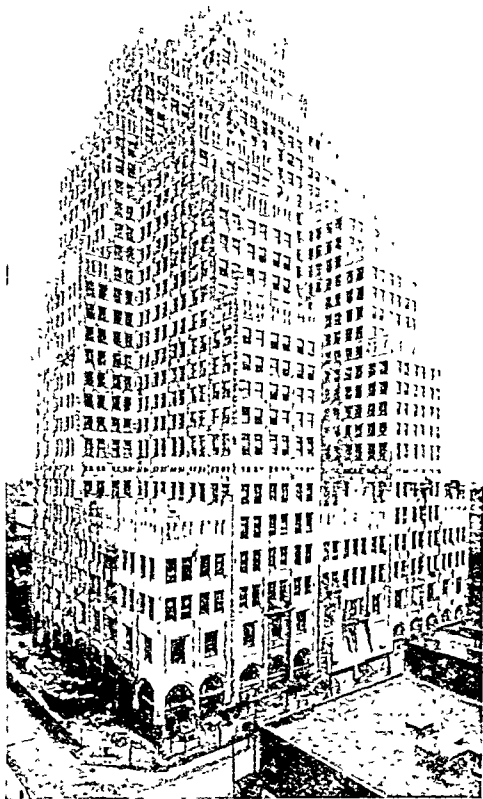
**build** (bild), *v.i.* To frame, construct, and raise (as a house); to make by putting together; to establish. *v.i.* To exercise the building art; to rely. *n.* Style; figure. *p.t.* and *p.p.* Built (bilt), in poetry also builded (bild' ed). (F. *bâtir*, *construire*; *forme*, *taille*.)

Houses are built by builders (bild' erz, *n.pl.*), this term being now applied almost solely to the master builder or employer; ships, engines, carriages, organs, and stacks are also built, so are nests, and one builds a fire by arranging the fuel. Many successful businesses have been built upon small beginnings, but those who try to build their fortunes on nothing but hope too often build castles in the air. It is not wise to build on vague promises.

That which is built, as a house, a block of flats, railway station, etc., is a building (bild' ing, *n.*)<sup>1</sup> if it is to become the property of the ground landlord when the lease of the land on which it stands falls in, that lease is known as a building-lease (*n.*), while a building society (*n.*) is an organization that accepts periodical payments from its members and lends them in advance the lump sum for building or purchasing a house.

"I was not built that way" is a common expression for indicating refusal to adopt some suggested course of action, or of mere disapproval; one speaks of the build of a ship, of a car, or of a man, meaning the general proportions or style of construction of the object named; while after an illness one—or one's health—may be said to need building up.

M.E. *bylden*, *bulden*, A.-S. *byldan*, from *bold*, a form of *bol* a dwelling, from *buan* to dwell, with suffix *-il* denoting the instrument. See *boor*. SYN.: Construct, erect, fabricate, frame. ANT.: Demolish, dismantle, pull down, undo.



Building.—An American building of the twentieth century in St. Louis, the largest city of the State of Missouri, U.S.A.

**bulb** (būlb), *n.* A swollen underground stem sending roots below and leaves above; a roundish swelling; the glass covering of an incandescent electric lamp. *v.i.* To form or swell into bulbs. (F. *bulbe*, *oignon*, *ampoule*.)

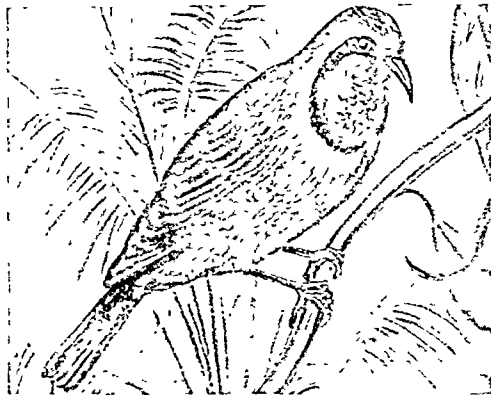
Onions and lilies have bulbs, and the term is also commonly but not botanically applied to certain corms as of the crocus, and tubers as of the dahlia. The spherical mercury-container of a thermometer is also a bulb, as are the hollow rubber ball which is pressed in taking a photograph, the root-end of a hair and other similar swellings, which are



described as being bulbose (bül' bōz, *adj.*), bulbous (bül' būs, *adj.*), bulbiform (bül' bi fōrm, *adj.*), or merely bulbed (bülbd, *adj.*).

A plant which produces bulbs is often itself spoken of as a bulb, and is said to be bulbiferous (bül bif' ér ūs, *adj.*) or bulbaceous (bül bā' shūs, *adj.*).

*L. bulbos*, Gr. *bolbos* onion.



Bulbul.—The gold-fronted green bulbul of India. It belongs to the thrush family.

**bulbul** (bul' bul), *n.* A genus of Asiatic birds belonging to the thrush family. (F. *rossignol persan*.)

The bulbuls of west and south-west Asia are small birds forming one branch of the great thrush family. So sweetly do some of them sing, that one especially (*Pycnonotus jocosus*) is known as the Persian nightingale, and being easily tamed is kept as a songster. The bulbul of the old Persian poets seems, however, to have been a true nightingale.

Figuratively, the name is given to any sweet singer or poet, Moore being called "the Irish bulbul."

Pers. from Arabic *bulbul*, an imitative word.

**bulge** (bülj), *n.* A convex or swollen part; an outward swell of a warship's sides below the water-line; a swelling. *v.t.* To be swollen; to swell out. *v.i.* To cause to swell irregularly; to stave in (the bottom of a ship). (F. *bombement*; *bomber*.)

The part of a barrel about its greatest diameter is its bulge, and mountain-chains may be called bulges on the earth's surface. Anglers speak of the eddy caused by a rising salmon as a bulge.

The bulge of a warship, also called a blister, was introduced early in the World War (1914-18). It consists of an outer air-chamber and an open inner chamber full of water. It forms an effectual protection against torpedoes and mines.

A closed bag pushed out of shape by its contents is bulgy (bül' ji, *adj.*), and provides a good example of bulginess (bül' ji nēs, *n.*) When one is eagerly attentive one's eyes are said to bulge. In golf a wooden driver or

brassy, with a convex or outward-curving face is called a bulger (bül' jēr, *n.*).

O.F. *boulge* (F. *bouge*) a bag, from *L. bulga*, of Gaulish origin. See bilge, budget. *SYN.*: *v.* Protrude, pout, swell. *n.* Convexity, hump. *ANT.*: *v.* Flatten. *n.* Concavity, dent.

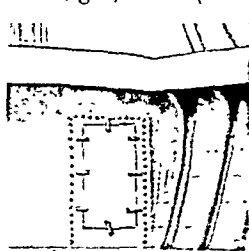
**bulk** (bülk), *n.* The main mass; mass; volume; size; body; cargo. *v.i.* To seem large or important. *v.t.* To pile up; to ascertain the volume or weight of. (F. *grosneur*, *volume*, *gros*, *charge*.)

The noun is a blending of two words, one a nautical term for the contents of a ship's hold, the other meaning the trunk or body of a person. The expression in bulk, for in the mass, or in large quantities, is applied to cargo when in the hold, and to sell in bulk thus means to sell the whole cargo. When we speak of the bulk of anything we may mean the great majority (as the bulk of the nation is peace-loving), or its size (as a man of huge bulk).

That which has much bulk is bulky (bül' ki, *adj.*) and has bulkiness (bül' ki nēs, *n.*). Bulker (bül' kēr, *n.*) is used only in shipping circles for one who measures up cargo to decide its freightage, duties payable, etc. The verb to bulk is practically confined to figurative uses, as "the question of armaments bulked large in the public eye after the World War."

M.E. *bolke*, *bulke*, probably of O. Norse origin; cp. Icel. *bülki* heap, cargo; in the senses of belly, huge body, ship's hull, size, affected by obsolete *E. bouk* belly, A.-S. *būc*; cp. G. *bauch*. *SYN.*: Amplitude, extent, majority, mass. *ANT.*: Fraction, littleness, morsel, part.

**bulkhead** (bülk' hed), *n.* A partition forming separate or watertight compartments in a ship; a partition of stone or wood in a mine or tunnel to hold back water, gas, etc. (F. *cloison étanche*.)



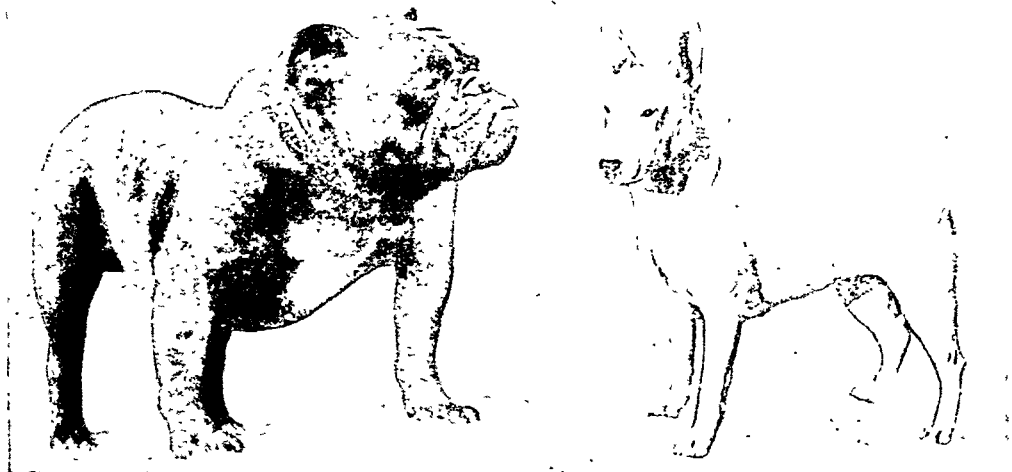
Bulkhead.—The bulkhead, closed by an iron door, of a cargo steamer.

Most liners and warships nowadays, besides the collision-bulkhead in the bow, have a large number of compartments below the water-line, the bulkheads of which can be closed at a moment's notice.

Probably from obsolete *E. bulk* stall in front of a shop, perhaps from O. Norse *bälk-r*, *bälk-r* beam (see balk), and *E. head*.

**bull** [1] (bul), *n.* A full-grown male of the ox family; the male of certain other large animals; the constellation and zodiacal sign "Taurus"; one who speculates for a rise in prices. *adj.* Resembling or belonging to a bull. *v.t.* To raise (prices) by speculation. *v.i.* To speculate for a rise. (F. *taureau*, *haussier*; *hausser*.)

Full-grown male elephants, elkes, whales, seals, and alligators are called bulls. A bull



**Bulldog.**—On the left is a bulldog, an animal always associated in the minds of foreigners with the British, because determination is one of its traits. Looking at the bulldog is a bull-terrier.

in a china-shop is the proverbial type of a person who plays havoc with anything by reckless or clumsy behaviour. To take the bull by the horns is to deal boldly and promptly with a difficulty. The name John Bull (*n.*), meaning the English nation or the typical Englishman, is derived from a satire called "Lav is a Bottomless Pit," written in 1712 by John Arbuthnot.

**Bull-baiting** (*n.*) was the barbarous sport of setting dogs to attack a bull—which sport took place in a **bullring** (*n.*); in a **bullfight** (*n.*), still a public spectacle in Spain, the animal is first worried and then attacked by mounted men. Bull's flesh is known as **bull-beef** (*n.*); **bull-board** is a kind of deck quoits, and a **bull's-eye** (*n.*) may be the centre of a target or the shot that hits it (the latter called also simply a bull), the rounded lens of a lantern or a lantern furnished with one, a hard sweetmeat, or the central boss in a sheet of blown glass.

A **bullfinch** (*n.*), perhaps a corruption of bull fence, is a high hedge with a ditch on one side of it, but the more familiar **bullfinch** is a red and black English songbird with a stoutly built head. Other words combined with bull denote animals that have, or are fancied to have, something **bullish** (**bul' ish**, *adj.*) about them, as **bull-frog** (*n.*), a large, deep-voiced American frog; **bull-trout** (*n.*), a large trout with a short and thick head; **bullhead** (*n.*), a small river-fish. **Bull-headed** (*adj.*) is applied both to a person with a large head and to one who is obstinate and impetuous. A **bull neck** (*n.*) is short and thick.

A **bulldog** (*n.*), the female of which is a **bulbitch** (*n.*), and the young a **bullpup** (*n.*), is a variety of dog formerly used for bull-baiting. It is very strongly built, with short legs and very powerful short jaws. A **bull-terrier** (*n.*) is a cross between a bulldog and a terrier. The proctors' attendants at the universities are commonly known as

bulldogs, as also are certain pistols, and bulldog courage, bulldog tenacity, etc., signify that the quality mentioned cannot be overcome.

The **bullroarer** (*n.*) is a flat slip of wood with a string attached to one end. When whirled round it produces a deep roar like the bellowing of a bull. Though only a toy in England it has been used in many parts of the world to inspire awe during the celebration of religious mysteries.

On the Stock Exchange one who buys large blocks of shares in the expectation of re-selling them at a profit before being obliged to take them up is said to be "**bulling the market**."

*M.E. bule, A.-S. bule* (only found in combination); *cp. O. Norse bole, Dutch bul, bol, G. bulle*. Probably from a *v.*, meaning to roar; *see* bell (of stags), bellow.

**bull** [2] (**bul**), *n.* A Papal edict. (*F. bulle.*)

It is still an act of high treason (punishable by death) to procure, publish, or put in use any bull in England; but bulls affecting British Roman Catholics are still frequently promulgated, and so long as obedience to them does not entail law-breaking, no objection is taken. The word formerly had a wider meaning, for the Golden Bull, of 1356, was issued by Charles IV



**Bullhead.**—The bullhead, often called miller's thumb, a freshwater fish.

to regulate the election of the Holy Roman Emperors.

*L. bulla* bubble, globular object, leaden seal attached to an edict. *See* *bull*.

**bull** [3] (*bul*), *n.* An amusing blunder in speaking or writing in which the speaker or writer either contradicts himself, or connects ideas which clearly cannot be connected. (*F. boulette.*)

On a notice in a graveyard in Ireland appeared the statement that the fee for the burial of parishioners was nothing, and for that of those outside the parish it was half as much again! This is an example of an Irish bull.

The term first came into use in the seventeenth century, but it was long before it came to be associated especially with the Irish. Possibly this association was due to the many famous bulls made by Sir Boyle Roche (1743-1807), a member of the Irish Parliament. In one of his speeches referring to the union of England and Ireland, he expressed the wish that the countries—"the two sisters," as he called them—should "embrace like one brother!"

The oldest recorded meaning is a deliberate jest or joke, and rather earlier is found the *v. bull*, meaning to mock or befool, probably from *O.F. bouller* to deceive, from *boule* fraud, trickery.

**bull** (*bul' á*), *n.* A watery swelling under the skin; a genus of freshwater molluscs; a circular golden ornament worn by patrician children in ancient Rome. (*F. bulle, cloche.*)

*L., cp. bull* [2].

**bullace** (*bul' ás*), *n.* A wild English plum tree; its fruit. (*F. prunelle.*)

The fruit, which is larger than a sloe, is sour, but useful for cooking. There are black and white varieties.

*M.E. bolace, O.F. beloce* bullace, from assumed *L.L. pilottea* fem. (*adj.*), "like a pellet," from *L.L. pilota*, dim. of *pila* a ball. *See* pellet, pelota.

**bullet** (*bul' ét*), *n.* A small globular or cylindrical missile, for firing from small arms; a small round shot used in explosive shells and in slings, catapults, etc.; a plumb or sinker for fishing. (*F. balle.*)

As distinguished from shot, bullets are generally fired singly from the barrel, and fit the bore, the rifling of which gives them a spin. The modern bullet is a cylinder with a conical end. Anything capable of resisting bullets is bullet-proof (*adj.*); a bullet-headed (*adj.*) person is one with a round-shaped or "bullet" head, and also, in America, an obstinate or "pig-headed" fellow.

*F. boulette* small ball, and *boulet* cannon-ball, dims. of *boule* ball, from *L. bulla* bubble, etc. (*See* *bull* [2] and *bowl* [2]).

**bulletin** (*bul' é tin*), *n.* A short report of some matter of public or private importance, especially about the health of a sick person. *v.i.* To announce in this way. (*F. bulletin.*)

If we see straw laid down in front of a house we know this means that somebody is ill, and if we look at the door we usually see a note saying how the invalid is. This is a bulletin. If a royal or other distinguished personage is ill bulletins signed by the physicians are published in the newspapers.

*F. from Ital. bulletino* a safe-conduct, ticket, dim. of *bulletta*, dim. of *bull* a seal. *See* *bull* [2].

**bullion** (*bul' yón*), *n.* Uncoined gold and silver in bars or other masses; fringe of gold or silver thread. *adj.* Made of gold or silver. (*F. matières d'or ou d'argent.*)

The word is sometimes used of money in coin, as opposed to paper money. Hence a bullionist (*bul' yón ist, n.*) is a person who favours metallic coinage or currency rather than paper money.

Anglo-French bullion mint, where gold and silver were melted down or "boiled," *L.L. bullio* (acc. *bullion-em*) a boiling, a mass of melted metal, verbal *n.* from *bullire* to bubble, boil from *bull* bubble. *See* *boil* [1], *bouillon*; *bull* [2].



**Bullion.**—Bullion in the form of ingots or bars of silver being unloaded at a railway station for transfer to the London Mint.

**bullock** (*bul' ók*), *n.* An ox or steer. (*F. boeuf.*)

The word originally meant a young bull. It is sometimes used loosely for any bovine animal.

*A.-S. bulluc; bull* [1] and dim. *-ock*.

**bully** [1] (*bul' 1*), *n.* An overbearing, browbeating fellow, a cowardly tyrant; a hired ruffian. *v.t.* To treat tyrannically; to persecute; to terrorize. *v.i.* To bluster, use threats. (*F. matamore; malmener; faire le fendant.*)

Bullies are to be found not only at school but in all walks of life. Judge Jeffreys was a notorious bully, bullying counsel are by no means unknown to witnesses in the Law Courts to-day, and attempts to bully Parliament—which never will be bullied—into some course of action are still made from time to time. During the Napoleonic wars of the early nineteenth century British artists

were fond of caricaturing Napoleon I as a bully, and the German Emperor was similarly portrayed during the World War.

Originally a lover, sweetheart, hence a gallant, dashing fellow, perhaps from Dutch *boel* (bool) lover; cp. G. *buhle*. SYN.: *n.* Swashbuckler; *v.* Domineer, hector, intimidate, tease.

**bully** [2] (bul' i), *n.* Tinned beef. (F. *bouilli*.)

Bully or bully-beef (*n.*), as it is also called, was at one time the principal food of soldiers on active service, and many thousands of tins of this meat were eaten during the South African War of 1899-1902. In the World War of 1914-18 most of the tinned food served to the soldiers consisted of meat and vegetables boiled together in the tins, but this was a different ration from what is generally known as bully.

F. *bouilli*, p.p. of *bouillir*, L. *bullire* to boil, from *bulla* a bubble.

**bully** [3] (bul' i), *n.* A term in hockey; a scrimmage or mêlée in the Eton game of football.

In hockey, the game is started by the bully off. This is performed by a player from each side, standing in the centre of the field, striking the ground and then his opponent's stick three times alternately, and then playing the ball. A penalty bully is a bully given for an obstruction within the circle.



Bulrush.—The infant Moses in the ark of bulrushes, as pictured by the famous French artist Delaroche.

A pipe or whistle is often made by removing the pith and cutting notches. The poet Elizabeth Browning tells how Pan, the goat-footed god of country places, did this:—

He cut it short did the great god Pan  
(How tall it stood in the river!)

Then drew the pith like the heart of a man,  
Steadily from the outside ring,  
And notched the poor dry empty thing  
In holes as he sat by the river.

M.E. *bulrysche*, either from *bull* [1], used to suggest something large and stout, or *bole* stem (Dan. *bul*), and *rush*.

**bulwark** (bul' wärk), *n.* A rampart of earth or other material; a fortification; a breakwater; the part of a ship's side above the deck; a defence or protection. *v.t.* To protect or furnish as with bulwarks. (F. *rempart*, *pavois*).

Sir William Blackstone, about 1770, finely called the Royal Navy of England our island's "floating bulwark"; Campbell echoed this in his description of the Danish fleet in "The Battle of the Baltic" with "Like Leviathans afloat lay their bulwarks on the brine." In "Ye Mariners of England" he uses the word in the literal sense of ramparts: "Britannia needs no bulwarks. No towers along the steep!"

Late M.E. *bulwerke*, adopted perhaps through O.F. *bo(u)llewer* (F. *boulevard*), from a Teut. source; cp. Dutch *bolwerk*, G. *bollwerk*, Dan. *bulvaerk*, probably="bole-work," a work built of tree-trunks



Bully.—In hockey the game is started by the bully off. A penalty bully is awarded for an obstruction within the circle.

**bullyrag** (bul' i räg). This is another spelling of ballyrag. See ballyrag.

**bulrush** (bul' rüş), *n.* A tall rush which grows in water. (F. *jonc*.)

The plant *Typha latifolia*, usually called bulrush, also reed-mace, cat's tail or club-rush, bears tall, cylindrical brown spikes containing the flowers and seeds. Along the margins of streams bulrushes grow very high and thick, so that a bulrushy (bul' rüş i, *adj.*) river makes a good hiding place. The infant Moses was placed in an ark of bulrushes and hidden among the flags in the Nile. These were the papyrus or paper reed. Bulrushes are plentiful in the neighbourhood of the Norfolk Broads.

**Bumble** (būm' bl), *n.* A fussy overbearing minor official, especially a parish officer.

This designation is taken from Dickens' "Oliver Twist," where Bumble the beadle is a leading character, pompous and arrogant, and cruel to unfortunates placed under him. His astonishment when, after an inadequate meal, Oliver "asked for more" is in the true spirit of what has come to be called bumbledom (būm' bl dōm, *n.*).

Probably suggested by the dialect word *bumble* a bungler, blunderer

**bumble-bee** (būm' bl bē), *n.* A large wild bee; a humble bee. (*F. bourdon.*)

So called because of the sound they make. Several species of bumble bees are found in Britain, the commonest, and one of the first to appear on the wing in spring, being *Bombus terrestris*.

Obsolete *v.* *bumble* to buzz, from *boom*; *v.* and *dim.* or frequentative suffix *-le*, and *bee*.

**bumkin** (būm' kin), *n.* A spar projecting from a ship, to which a rope is led to change the position of a sail. (*F. porte-lof.*)

A bumkin may be at the bows (for a toresail) or at the stern (for a mizen sail).

*Boom* [2] and the *dim.* *-kin*, perhaps from Dutch *boomken* little tree. See *bumpkin*, beam.

**bummalo** (būm' à lō), *n.* This is another name for the Bombay duck, an Asiatic fish. See *Bombay duck*.

**bump** (būmp), *n.* A dull, heavy blow; a sudden collision; a swelling, such as is caused by these; one of the prominences on the human skull; the act of striking the boat in front. *v.t.* To cause (one thing) to strike forcibly against another; to hurt in this way; to overtake (the boat in front). *v.i.* To run into an object with sudden force;

to move with bumps. *adv.* With a bump. (*F. choc, bosse; cognér.*)

This word expresses the sound which it represents. When we knock against anything with a bump we do so with a dull, hard sound, and if any part of the human frame is struck in this way very often a bump or swelling follows.

The human skull has certain prominences or bumps, said by phrenologists to indicate certain faculties and tendencies of the mind.

At what are known as the bumping-races at Oxford and Cambridge Universities each boat tries to bump the one in front of it. Every time this is achieved, the bump given is scored to the credit of the boat responsible for it, and the two boats change places the next day.

A bumper (būmp' er, *n.*) means a glass filled to the brim, especially when ready for drinking a toast, and when we speak

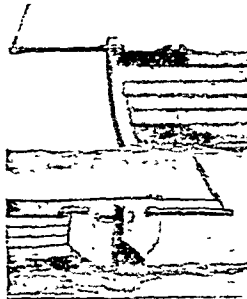
of a bumper harvest we mean an overflowing one, a very good one. In the game of whist, a bumper is a score of two games to the opponents' none. A bumpy (būm' pi, *adj.*) road is an uneven road, one which we travel with a succession of jolts and bumps.

When a batsman in cricket hits a ball from off the ground, or on to the ground at about the moment of its contact with the bat, it is called a bump-ball (*n.*). Should the ball rise into the air and be caught by a fieldsman the batsman is not out, the ball having touched the ground before the catch was made.

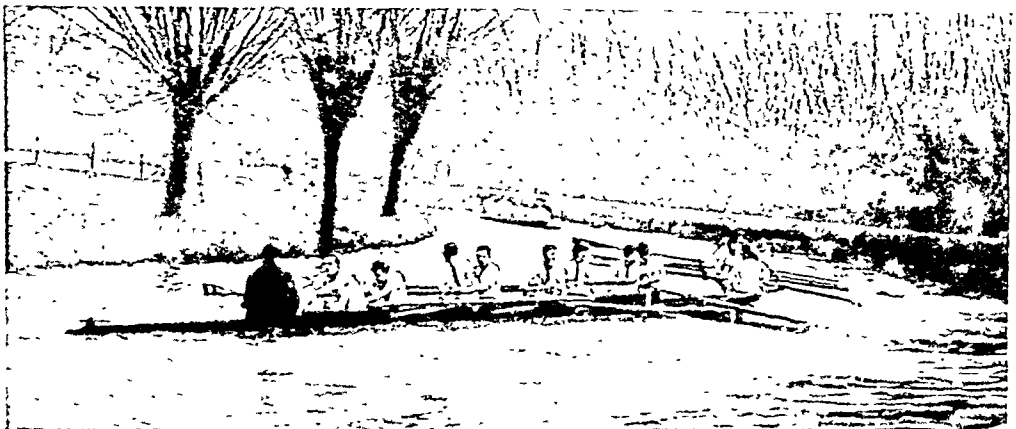
Imitative; similar words occur in Dan. and Welsh

**bumpkin** (būmp' kin), *n.* An awkward rustic; a lout. (*F. rustaud.*)

"A country bumpkin," says Lord Chesterfield (Letter xlv), "is ashamed when he comes into good company; he



Bumkin.—A bumkin at the bows and at the stern of a boat.



Bump.—At what are called the bumping-races at Oxford and Cambridge Universities, each boat tries to bump the one in front of it, as shown in this photograph. Every time this is done the bump given is scored to the credit of the boat that made it, which next day changes its place with the boat that has been bumped, thus securing a higher position on the river.

appears embarrassed, does not know what to do with his hands, is disconcerted when spoken to, answers with difficulty, and almost stammers; whereas a gentleman . . .," etc.

At first apparently a jocular name for a Dutchman; perhaps Dutch *boomken* little tree (see *bumkin*) or Middle Dutch *bommekijn* little barrel. SYN.: Boor, clod-hopper, clown, yokel.

**bumptious** (bŭmp' shŭs), *adj.* Self-assertive; obviously on good terms with oneself. (F. *présomptueux*.)

An arrogant and conceited person acts **bumptiously** (bŭmp' shŭs li, *adv.*) and possesses **bumptiousness** (bŭmp' shŭs nès, *n.*).

A jocular word made up from *bump* in the sense of swell or swelling and the adjectival ending *-tious*, as in *fractious*, *captious*. SYN.: Conceited, consequential, supercilious. ANT.: Bashful, deferential, modest.



Bun.—Trays of buns ready for the oven at one of London's largest bakeries, where thousands of buns are made every day.

**bun** (bŭn), *n.* A kind of cake. (F. *brioche*.)

This word has different meanings in different places. In England what we call a bun is usually a little round cake with currants in it. In Scotland a very rich cake, filled with fruit and heavily spiced, is known as a bun.

On Good Friday it is the custom in some Christian countries to have hot cross buns to commemorate the fact of the celebration of the day of Our Lord's Crucifixion. That is why the buns are marked with a cross.

M.E. *bunne*, probably from O.F. *bugne* (Modern F. *bigne*) a swelling caused by a blow, in modern dialect a fritter; cp. the O.F. dim. *bugnete* Modern F. *beignet* a little raisin cake, fritter, bun, from O.H.G. *bungo* bump.

**bunch** (bŭnch), *n.* A set of things growing; tied, or gathered together; a collection of people or things. *v.t.* To form into a bunch; to gather in folds. *v.i.* To stick out. (F. *botte*, *bouquet*, *trousseau*; *lier en botte*; *faire bosse*.)

We speak of a bunch of flowers, or grapes, or keys, etc. Of a number of people to choose between we might say that the most desirable was the best of the bunch.

**Bunchy** (bŭn' chi, *adj.*) means either like a bunch or sticking out.

Imitative; cp. *bounce*, *hunch*, *lunch*, *punch*, M.E. *bunchen* to thump.

**buncombe** (bŭng' kŭm). This is another spelling of *bunkum*. See *bunkum*.

**Bundesrat** (bun' dez rat), *n.* The federal council of the old German Empire; the federal council of Switzerland. (F. *bundesrat*.)

Both councils are second chambers, and, in relation to the parliament elected by the people of these countries, they somewhat resemble the House of Lords. The Reichsrat has taken the place of the German Bundesrat.

G. council of the federation (*bund*); cp. E. *bond* and *rede* (advice).

**bundle** (bŭn' dl), *n.* A number of things or a quantity of material tied together; a package; a collection; a definite quantity of some things. *v.t.* To bind into bundles; to put together hurriedly; to send away in a hurry. *v.i.* To go away hurriedly. (F. *paquet*, *fagot*, *javelle*; *empaqueter*.)

We can speak of man generally as being a bundle of habits. A very fussy man we might call a bundle of nerves, and a man who is very sorry for himself a bundle of troubles. A parcel of yarn of twenty hanks is a bundle, and so are two reams of paper.

A doctor may bundle a patient off to a hospital, and an employer may bundle off an employee for dishonesty, that is, dismiss him without ceremony.

M.E. *bundel*, dim. of A.-S. *bund* bundle, from *bindan* to bind; cp. Dutch *bundel*.

**bung** (bŭng), *n.* A stopper for a hole in a barrel. *v.t.* To close up with or as if with a bung. (F. *bonde*; *bondonner*.)

A bung is the cork stopper of the hole in a cask through which it is filled with beer, etc. The hole is known as the **bung-hole** (*n.*). A bung may have a small hole in it which allows gases to escape; this hole is known as the **bung-vent** (*n.*).

Middle Dutch *bonghe* bung, L. *puncta* orifice, fem. p.p. of *pungere* to prick.

**bungalow** (bŭng' gā lō), *n.* A dwelling-house with a single floor.

Bungalows are very common in India and other hot countries. In such countries they are often built as rest houses for travellers, and generally have thatched roofs.

Hindustani *banglā* Bengalese (house), from *Bangala* Bengal.

**bungle** (bŭng' gl), *v.t.* To perform clumsily. *v.i.* To act clumsily; to fail through such action. *n.* A badly-executed

piece of work; a muddle. (F. *saveter*: *s'y prendre de travers*; *gâchis*, *bévue*.)

Anything done unskilfully is a bungle and is the work of a bungler (*būng' glēr n.*) or of a bungling (*būng' gling, adj.*) worker. It has been carried out bunglingly (*būng' gling li, adv.*).

Perhaps imitative; cp. O. Swed. *bunga* to strike, Swed. dialect *bangla* to bungle. SYN.: v. Botch, mar, mismanage, muddle, spoil.

**bunion** (*būn' yōn*), *n.* A painful swelling on the inner side of the great-toe joint, often caused by badly-fitting shoes. (F. *oignon*.)

Cp Ital. *bugnone* augmentative of *bugno* a boil, swelling, from a Teut. source. See bun.

**bunk** (*būnk*), *n.* A box or shelf used as a bed; a sleeping berth in a ship or train. (F. *couchette*.)

During the battle of Trafalgar in 1805, Nelson, the British admiral, standing on the quarter-deck of the "Victory," his breast ablaze with medals, was shot by a Frenchman perched in the rigging of one of the enemy ships.

He knew that the end had come, and as he was carried below he covered his face with his handkerchief, so that his men should not know that their leader had been wounded. Tender hands laid him in a midshipman's bunk in the cockpit. Within a few hours he was dead, but not before the news had been brought to him that the British had won the day.

Probably of Scand. origin; cp. O. Swed. *bunke* wooden shelter for cargo.

**bunker** (*būng' kēr*), *n.* A coal-bin; a sandy hollow or other obstruction on the golf links. *v.t.* To fill a ship's bunkers with; to land (a golf ball) in a bunker. (F. *soute a charbon*.)

On board ship the huge amount of coal needed by the furnaces is stored in the bunkers, and although the giant hoists at



**Bunker.**—A golfer who has been bunkered playing a ball out of the bunker.

the big ports load hundreds of tons an hour, the work of bunkering ship is one of the hardest and most unpleasant tasks that fall to the lot of the seaman.

A golfer, too, dislikes bunkers, for to him they represent the sandy hollows or other difficult places into which he drives his ball if he plays an unskilful stroke.

Of Sc. origin, perhaps from *bunk*, the oldest meaning being a wooden seat serving also as a chest hence an earthen seat or bank.

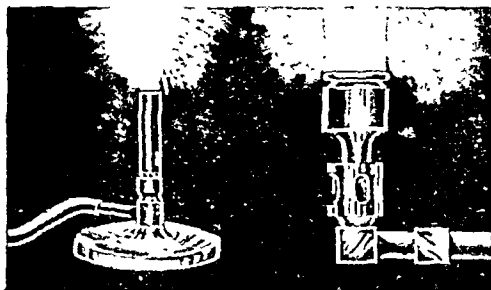
**bunkum** (*būng' kūm*), *n.* Insincere speaking or action in politics; humbug. Another spelling is *buncombe* (*būng' kūm*). (F. *blague*.)

In 1820, during a debate in the Parliament or Congress of the U.S.A., the member who represented the district containing Buncombe County, North Carolina, made a very long speech which had nothing to do with the matter that was being discussed. When asked why he had done this he replied that his electors would never have voted for him if they had thought he would not make a speech for Buncombe.

This is how the word got its present meaning.

**bunny** (*būn' i*), *n.* A child's name for a rabbit. (F. *lapin*.)

From *bun*, an old familiar name for the rabbit (possibly from *bun* tail of a hare) and dim. suffix *-y*.



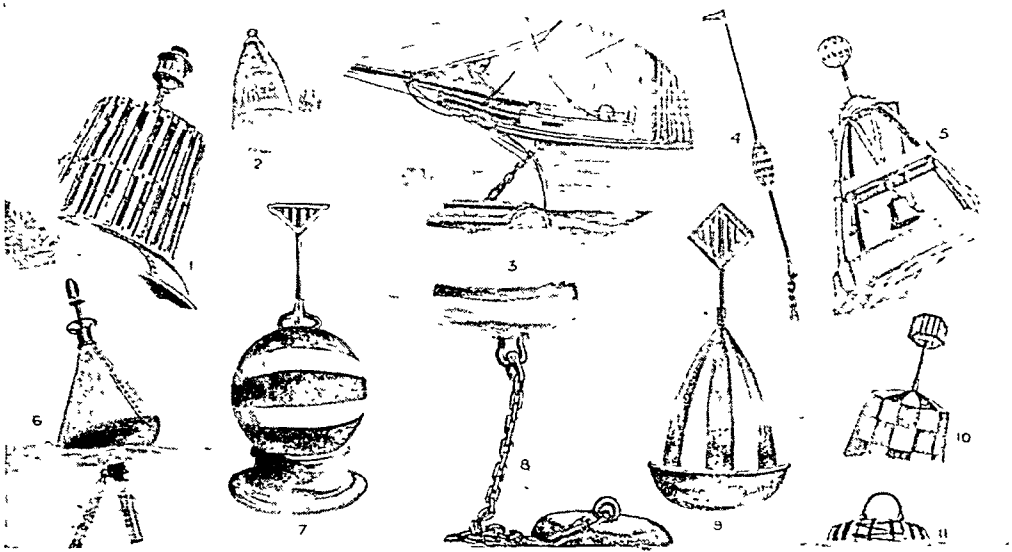
**Bunsen burner.**—Two types of Bunsen burner, in which air is sucked in and mixes with the gas.

**Bunsen burner** (*būn' sēn bēr' ner*), *n.* A gas burner invented by the German chemist, R. W. Bunsen (1811-99). (F. *bec Bunsen*.)

In this burner a jet of gas is directed into a tube open at both ends. Air is sucked in at one end of the tube and mixes with the gas. When the mixture is lighted it burns with a very hot and almost invisible flame.

Bunsen also invented the Bunsen cell (*n.*) for creating electric current. The positive element is a carbon block standing in nitric acid, in a porous pot, outside which is another pot containing diluted sulphuric acid and the negative element, a zinc plate.

This type of cell gives out a strong and steady current, but is now little used on account of its poisonous fumes.



Buoy.—1. Gas buoy. 2. Wreck buoy. 3. Mooring buoy. 4. Dan buoy, used as a temporary mark at sea. 5. Bell buoy. 6. Whistle buoy. 7. Spherical buoy. 8. Method of anchoring a buoy with a heavy iron or stone sinker. 9. Conical buoy. 10. Can buoy. 11. Anchor buoy.

**bunt** [1] (bünt), *n.* The baggy part of a fishing net; the middle part of a sail. *v.i.* To swell, as a sail. (F. *fond de voile*; *s'enfler*.)

The **buntline** (bünt' lin, *n.*) is the rope which is attached to the foot of a square sail and which passes up the front of the canvas. It is used to draw the sail up to the yard when furling, and also serves to keep the sail taut.

Possibly Dan. *bundt*, Swed. *bunt* bunch, bundle, connected with *bind*.

**bunt** [2] (bünt), *n.* A disease which attacks wheat; the fungus which causes the disease.

**bunter** (bun' tēr), *n.* A term usually applied to the new red sandstone which forms the lower of the two British series of Triassic rocks.

Shortened from G. *bunter sandstein* variegated sandstone, G. *bunt*, from L. *punct-us* dotted, spotted, p.p. of *pungere* to prick, -er being nom. masc. case-ending.

**bunting** [1] (bün' ting), *n.* The cloth used for flags and streamers; a collection of flags, especially a ship's flags. (F. *étamine*.)

Perhaps from the obsolete or provincial *v. bunt* (M.E. *bonten*) to bolt or sift meal. F. *étamine* means both bolting cloth and bunting.

**bunting** [2] (bün' ting), *n.* The common name given to a group of small birds. (F. *bruant*.)

The yellow-hammer, or yellow bunting, which asks in its song for a "little bit of bread and no cheese," belongs to this group. Other British species are the corn bunting, girl bunting, reed bunting, and snow bunting. The scientific name of the yellow-hammer is *Emberiza citrinella*.

M.E. *bounting*, also *buntyle*, of doubtful origin; cp. Sc. *buntin* plump.

**buoy** (boi), *n.* A float which marks the position of rocks, reefs, etc., and so serves as a guide to ships. *v.t.* To mark with buoys; to keep afloat; to sustain. (F. *bouée*; *baliser*, *soutenir*.)

A **life-buoy** (*n.*) is a buoy, usually ring-shaped and made of cork covered with canvas, which is used to keep a person afloat in the water till he or she can be rescued.

We may speak of a lump of lead as being difficult to buoy up or keep afloat in water, and also of a man's spirits as being buoyed up by encouraging words.

To undertake the **buoyage** (boi' áj, *n.*) of a coast is to provide it with buoys.

The property of being able to keep afloat in a liquid or in air is known as **buoyancy** (boi' án si, *n.*). Similarly we speak of the buoyancy of young people because of their light-heartedness and power of resisting depression. Stocks and shares show buoyancy when they tend to rise in price.

A piece of cork has **buoyant** (boi' ánt, *adj.*) power; a buoyant fluid bears up things put in it; and a buoyant laugh is a hearty cheerful laugh. The stout-hearted man buoyantly (boi' ánt li, *adv.*) waits for good news.

Late M.E. *boye*, either from O.F. *boie*, or M. Dutch *boeye*, both from L.L. *boia* a fetter, chain, in L. *boiae* (pl.) collar. Buoyant from Span. *boyante* or O.F. *bouyant*, pres. p. from same source. SYN.: *v.* Animate, cheer, encourage, support. ANT.: *v.* Deject, depress, drown, sink.

**bur** [1] (bēr), *n.* A prickly fruit; a knot on a tree; a person difficult to shake off; a lump in the throat. Another spelling is *burr*. (F. *bardane*, *glouteron*.)

When we go for a walk through the fields we often notice prickly little balls which



attach themselves to our clothing. They are the fruits of such plants as the burdock (*n.*) and the bur-thistle (*n.*), which is sometimes called the spear-thistle.

This is how Nature arranges for them to spread. The wind cannot carry them very far, and so they stick to our clothes and to the wool of sheep, and are scattered in this way. Hence we sometimes call a person who is hard to get rid of, a bur.



Bur. — Burs, or prickly fruit, of the burdock.

In furniture shops we frequently see beautifully marked wood, and if we ask we shall probably be told that it is bur-walnut (*n.*). The markings are caused by burs in the tree.

M.E. *borre*, *burie*; cp. Dan., Swed. *borre* burdock, Teut. *bers-* to bristle. See bristle, burr.

**bur** [2] (*bër*). This is another spelling of burr. See burr [1].

**burbot** (*bër' bôt*), *n.* A freshwater fish. (F. *lotte*.)

Also called the eel-pout, this peculiar flat-headed fish, with a barb or sort of beard under its chin, is common in the Rhine and other continental rivers, but uncommon in England. Although it lives in fresh water, it belongs to the cod family. Its scientific name is *Lota vulgaris*.

Obsolete or dialect F. *boubotte* (Modern F. *barbote*), from *bourboter*, *bourbeller* to wallow in mud, *bourbe*, L.L. *boiba*, Gr. *boiboros* mud.

**burden** (*bër' den*), *n.* Anything borne; a load; the bearing of loads: that which weighs heavily; the carrying capacity of a ship; the weight of a ship's cargo, the main theme; a refrain. *v.t.* To place a load on; to overload. An older form is *burthen* (*bër' then*), which is still often used for the carrying capacity of a ship (F. *ardeau*, refrain; *charger*.)

We speak of a ship as of so many tons burden or carrying capacity and also of something making our life a burden to us. There are beasts of burden and ships of

burden, that is, merchant-ships. The burden of a speech is the subject or point upon which the speaker dwells, and the burden of a song is the refrain, the words repeated at the end of each verse.

In law, the burden of proof means either the burden of establishing the proposition upon which a case depends, or the burden of bringing forward evidence on any special point at the beginning of the action or later.

We burden our memory with facts, and a government may burden a country with taxes. Anything which weighs heavily is burdensome (*bër' den süm, adj.*), and anything that is put upon us in a way that makes it difficult to bear is imposed burdensomely (*bër' den süm li, adv.*). When something becomes burdensome we speak of its burdensomeness (*bër' den süm nès, n.*).

M.E. *byrthen*, *byrden*, A.-S. *byrthen*, from *beran* to bear, with double suffix *-th* and *-en*. In senses of refrain, main theme, from or influenced by *bourdon*, which see. SYN.: *n.* Chorus, rift, incubus, tenor, trial, trouble. ANT.: Alleviation, assuagement, consolation, case, mitigation.

**burdock** (*bër'dok*), *n.* A plant with prickly flower-heads. See under bur [1].

**bureau** (*bür' ö*), *n.* A desk or writing-table fitted with drawers to keep papers, etc., in; an office, especially a public one; a government department. The plural is *bureaux* (*bür' öz*). (F. *bureau*.)

We fit our study with a bureau, perhaps beautifully inlaid and lacquered in the French style of the eighteenth century; we go to an emigration bureau, or an employment bureau or an information bureau; and when a country is governed by professional and permanent officials who are not under the control of the elected representatives of the nation, or by officials who not only pay undue attention to petty details



Burden.—An Arab burdened with an enormous load which has just been unloaded from a river-craft.

but also hold exaggerated views of the importance and powers of their departments, we term such government a bureaucracy (*bür ö' krä si, n.*).

Such an official, as well as one who advocates or supports such a government, is



Burgher.—"The Burgers of Calais," a beautiful group by the French sculptor Auguste Rodin, outside the British Houses of Parliament.

**burglar** (bĕrg' lār), *n.* One who breaks into a dwelling-house at night with the intention of committing a crime. (F. *cambricoleur*.)

According to English law night in this connexion is from nine p.m. to six a.m. What the burglar commits is termed burglary (bĕrg' lā ri, *n.*), what he is guilty of is burglarious (bĕr glār' i ūs, *adj.*) conduct; and what he enters a house for is to burgle (bĕrg' l, *v.t.*) it.

Honourable men do not burgle (*v.i.*), and never enter a house burglariously (bĕr glār' i ūs l, *adv.*), that is, with an intent to burgle.

Anglo-French *burgler*, *burglour*, Anglo-Latin *burg(u)lātor*, from *burgulāre* to commit "burgh-breche," the M.E. law term for burglary, from A.-S. *burh* in the sense of enclosed place, close. See borough, burgh. The *v. burgle* is a modern jocular back formation, apparently of American origin.



Burgomaster.—A burgomaster of Amsterdam as painted by the Dutch painter Van der Helst in the seventeenth century.

**burgomaster** (bĕr' gō mas tēr), *n.* The chief magistrate of a Dutch, Flemish, or German town; a kind of gull. (F. *bourgmestre*.)

The office of burgomaster is much the same as that of mayor of an English borough and provost of a Scottish burgh (or borough).

Sailors call the glaucous gull (*Larus glaucus*) the burgomaster.

Adapted from Dutch *burgemeester*. See borough, master.

**burgonet** (bĕr' gō net), *n.* A light helmet or head-piece used during the sixteenth and seventeenth centuries. (F. *bourguignotte*.)

It was sometimes fitted with a visor, that is, a plate which could be raised and lowered at will and which protected the lower part of the face.

F. *bourguignotte*, dim. from *Bourgogne* Burgundy.

**burgoo** (būr goo'), *n.* A thick oatmeal gruel or porridge used by seamen; also called loblolly.

**burgoyne** (bĕr goin'), *n.* A jointed trenching-tool intended for use as a spade or axe.

This ingenious implement was probably named after Field Marshal Sir John Burgoyne (1782-1871), who fought in the Peninsular and Crimean Wars. It has a perforated blade, which enables it also to serve the purpose of a mantelet or screen.

**burgrave** (bĕr' grāv), *n.* The governor of a castle or fortified town, especially in old Germany; a noble ruling by hereditary right over a town or castle, together with the country round.

The rank, office, or domain of a burgrave is a *burgaviate* (bĕr grā' vi āt, *n.*).

G. *burggraf*, from *burg* town, castle, and *graf* a count.

**Burgundy** (bĕr' gūn di), *n.* A district in France; the wine grown there. (F. *vin de Bourgogne*.)

Burgundy is one of the oldest wine-growing districts in Europe. The wines are mostly red, such as the well-known Beaune. Of the white Burgundies, Chablis is a popular example.

L. *Burgundia* land of the *Burgundi* a German tribe.

**Burgundy mixture** (bĕr' gūn di miks' chūr), *n.* A solution of copper sulphate and washing soda used for spraying potatoes, celery, tomato plants, etc., to kill fungus pests.

E. *Burgundy* and *mixture*.

**burial** (ber' i āl), *n.* The act of placing a person or thing, especially a dead body, under earth or water. (F. *enterrement*, *sépulture*.)

We sometimes read of the burial of a city as the result of, say, a volcanic eruption, such as that of the ancient city of Pompeii. In the case of a burial at sea the body is committed to the waves.



Burlesque.—Don Quixote and Sancho Panza, two characters whom Cervantes made famous in "Don Quixote," which is in part a burlesque on Spanish society of the sixteenth century.

A place for burying is a **burial-place** (*n.*), or a **burial-ground** (*n.*). The religious service that takes place during the burial of the dead is termed the **burial-service** (*n.*).

M.E. *burial*, *biriel*, a false sing. from the older *biriels*, A.-S. *byrgels* from *byrgan* to bury. SYN.: Entombment, inhumation, interment, sepulture. ANT.: Disinterment, exhumation.

**Buriat** (*boor' i ät*), *n.* A member of a race of people dwelling in the district around Lake Baikal in central Siberia.

**burin** (*bür' in*), *n.* A pointed tool used by engravers on copper; the style of an engraver; a pointed tool used by marble-workers. (F. *burin*.)

The distinctive style of a first-rate engraver is often described by such expressions as a soft, a graphic, or a brilliant burin. A **burinist** (*bür' in ist*, *n.*) means an engraver.

F., probably from O.H.G. *bora* boring-tool; cp. G. *bohren* to bore.

**burke** (*bèrk*), *v.t.* To hush up; to suppress quietly and effectively. (F. *étouffer*.)

William Burke (1792-1829) was an Irishman who took to earning his living by supplying dead bodies to the anatomists. His method was simplicity itself. He and his accomplice, William Hare, lured their victims to a lodging-house and then suffocated them.

And so, when discussion of some important question is stifled, or when some matter that ought to be made widely known is hushed up, we say that it is **burked**.

**burl** (*bèrl*), *n.* A little knot or lump in wool, thread, or cloth. *v.t.* To dress

cloth, especially by removing burls. (F. *nøpe*; *nøper*.)

Cloth is **burled** with a **burling-iron** (*berl' ing i' èrn*, *n.*), **burling-comb** (*bèrl' ing kôm*, *n.*), or **burling-machine** (*bèrl' ing mà shèn*, *n.*).

O.F. *bourle*, dim. of F. *bourre* wool fluff, L.L. *burra* a woollen pad; cp. L. *burrae* (pl.) trifles.

**burlap** (*bèr' läp*), *n.* Coarse cloth made of jute, flax, or hemp, used for wrapping.

Perhaps a corruption of Dutch *boenlap* a rubbing clout.

**burlesque** (*bür lesk'*), *n.* A literary or dramatic composition which treats of something in a manner that excites ridicule. *adj.* Calculated to excite laughter or ridicule. *v.t.* To ridicule. (F. *burlesque*.)

In Shakespeare's "A Midsummer Night's Dream" there is an excellent example of a burlesque of serious acting. We see Bottom, the weaver, and his fellow workmen rehearsing a play, called "Pyramus and Thisbe," and later acting it before Duke Theseus of Athens. Bottom takes the part of Pyramus, the hero; Flute, the bellows-mender, that of Thisbe, the lady Pyramus loves; Snug, the joiner, takes the lion's part; another workman represents moonshine, and another a wall!

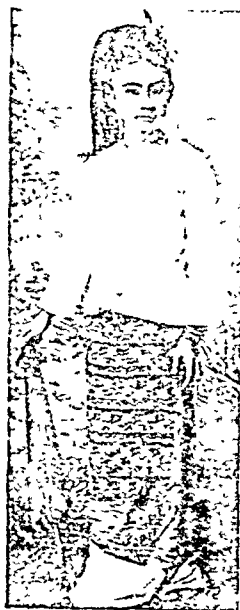
F. from Ital. *burlesco*, properly *adj.* from *burla* mockery, fun, and suffix *-esco* (L. *-iscus*) forming *adj.* SYN.: *n.* Caricature, extravaganza, parody, travesty.

**burletta** (*bür let' ä*), *n.* An old-fashioned comic opera or musical farce. (F. *vaudeville*.) Ital. dim. of *burla* mockery. See *burlesque*.

**burly** (*bèr' li*), *adj.* Of large and massive build. (F. *gros et grand*.)

We speak of a burly ruffian or a burly oak-tree. Burliness (bēr' li nēs, *n.*) is the quality of being burly.

M.E. *bor(e)lych*, *burlich* stately, goodly, handsome, perhaps originally fit for a bower (A.-S. *bū*) or lady's chamber. The form *bowerly* survives in dialects. SYN.: Big, bulky, heavy. ANT.: Puny, slight, small, spare.



Burman.—A Burman or Burmese woman.

**Burman** (bēr' mǎn), *n.* A native of Burma, British India. (F. *birman*.)

Burma is a British possession in India, inhabited by the people called Burmans (*n.pl.*) or the Burmese (bēr mēz', *n.pl.*); their language is Burmese (*n.*). The Burmese (*adj.*) people are a very engaging folk.

Whatever is Burmo-Chinese (*adj.*)—for instance, a Burmo-Chinese custom—relates or belongs to both Burma and China, especially to the part of south-east Asia east of the Indian Peninsula, not including the Malay Peninsula.

Burma and the suffix

-an (L. *ānus*) belonging to.

**burn** [1] (bērn), *v.t.* To destroy or injure by fire or chemicals; to subject to the action of heat; to produce a result like that of heat; to consume for artificial heating or lighting; to combine with oxygen or other gas. *v.i.* To be on fire, or as if on fire; to be bright; to give out light; to be greatly stirred by emotion; to be near a hidden object in certain games. *n.* The result of burning. Burnt (bērn't) is the more usual form of the *p.t.* and *p.p.*, but burned (bērn'd) is also used. (F. *brûler*; *brûlure*.)

To burn away is to consume anything by fire or to be gradually consumed. To use artificial light wastefully in the day-time is to burn daylight. It is possible to burn in a design on wood with a hot metal point, and to burn off old paint with flame from a blow-lamp.

The expression to burn one's boats means to make a decision from which there is no possible retreat. To burn one's fingers is to get into trouble through meddling with other people's business, or to lose money by rash buying.

A thing is burnable (bērn' ābl, *adj.*) if it can be burned, and burning (bērn' ing, *adj.*) when on fire. Burning bush (*n.*) is the name given to several varieties of ornamental

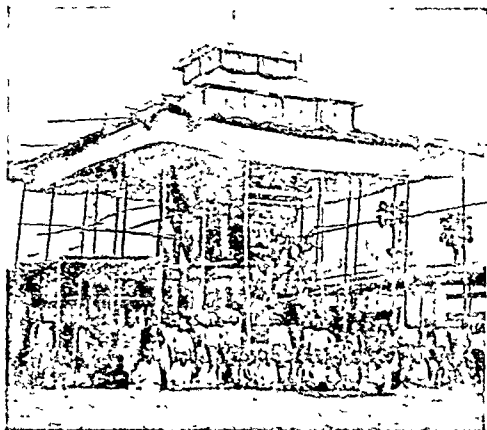
shrubs with bright flowers. The burner (bērn' ēr, *n.*) of a gas or other light is that part from which the flame comes.

The rays of the sun can be brought together into an intensely hot point by a convex lens called a burning-glass (*n.*), or by a concave mirror named a burning-mirror (*n.*).

A burning question is a matter that causes hot argument, or that urgently needs a decision. A grievance so great as to arouse general indignation is a burning shame. In hunting, a burning scent is one so strong that the hounds can follow it easily.

A burnt offering (*n.*) or burnt sacrifice (*n.*) is something burned in honour of a deity. Burnt-ear (*n.*) is a disease in grain caused by a fungus. Burnt sienna (*n.*) is a mahogany-brown pigment obtained by burning raw sienna.

Common Teut.; the modern *v.* is a blending of the strong intransitive M.E. *brinnen*, *bernen*, A.-S. *birnan*, *beornan*, with the weak transitive M.E. *barnen*, A.-S. *baernan*, the latter being a causal derivative of the former; cp. O. Norse *brenna*, G. *brennen*. SYN.: *v.* Blaze, cauterize, char, ignite, scorch, singe. ANT.: *v.* Cool, extinguish, smother, stifle, subdue.



Burnt-offering.—Natives of Burma before a beautifully carved gift presented by them to the Arakan Pagoda, Mandalay, as a burnt-offering.

**burn** [2] (bērn), *n.* A small stream. (F. *ruisseau*.)

It is chiefly in Scotland and Northern England that a stream is called a burn, as when Robert Burns says that "three lairds' lands met at a burn." The word is common in the names of places situated on or near a stream, such as Bannockburn, Blackburn.

M.E. *b(o)urne*, A.-S. *burna* spring, well, stream, common Teut.; cp. O. Norse *brunn-r*, G. *brunn-en* L. G. *born*. See *bourne* [1].

**burnet** (bēr' net), *n.* The name of certain plants of the rose family.

The great burnet (*Potirium officinale*) is common in dry meadows all over Europe and is used for cattle food. The common or lesser burnet (*P. sanguisorba*) is found in sunny places in Europe, including England.

The burnet-moths (*n.pl.*) form a group of moths usually with dark green or blue fore-wings with red spots and red hind-wings.

The best-known British species is the six-spotted burnet, great companies of which may often be seen resting with sloping wings on the flowers of thistles, scabious, and other plants. The scientific name of this burnet-moth is *Zygaena filipendula*.

Obsolete E. adj. *burnet* dark brown; cp. O.F. *burnete* name of a flower, properly fem. of adj. *burnet*, *brunet*, dim. of *brun* brown. See *brunette*.

**burnish** (bēr' nish), *v.t.* To make bright, especially by rubbing. *v.i.* To become bright. *n.* Gloss. (F. *brunir*; *prendre du brillant*; *bruni*.)

We burnish metal by rubbing it with a burnisher (bēr' nish ēr, *n.*). Burnishers are of different kinds, some made of polished steel, others of precious stone (such as agate), or of the teeth of dogs. One who burnishes is also called a burnisher.

A thing burnishes when it becomes bright or glossy. The gloss on the edges of some books is a burnish.

M.E. *burnisshen*, from O.F. *burnir* (stem *burniss-*) variant of F. *brunir* to make or turn brown, polish, from *brun* brown. SYN.: Brighten, glisten, polish, shine. ANT.: Bedim, cloud, dull, scratch.

**burnt** (bērnt). This is the past tense and past participle of burn. See burn [1].

**burr** [1] (bēr), *n.* The rough edge left on metal and other substances after cutting, etc.; the rounded knob at the base of a deer's antler; a kind of chisel; a dentist's drill; an overburnt brick or clinker; a mass of hard rock in a softer rock; a rough guttural pronunciation of the letter *r*. *v.t.* To pronounce the letter *r* with a burr. *v.i.* To speak with a burr; to speak indistinctly; to murmur; to say "burr." (F. *barbes*, *balèvre*.)

This is a word with a great many meanings, most of which have the sense of roughness. As regards the way of pronouncing *r* the Northumbrian burr is the best known example. A burr-stone (*n.*) is a coarse stone used for millstones. Burry (bēr' i, *adj.*) means rough.

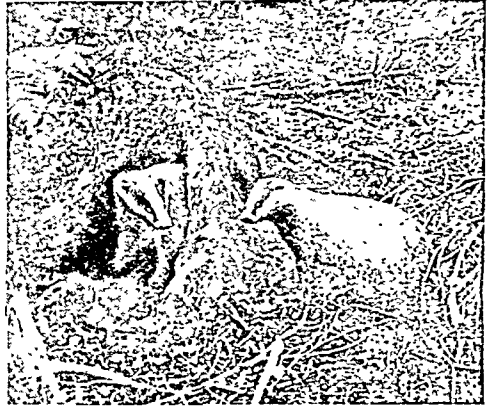
In most senses probably identical with *bur*, which see; the Teut. root being *bers-* to bristle. The Northumbrian *burr* is partly imitative.

**burr** [2] (bēr), *n.* A washer placed on a rivet; a circle of light round the moon. (F. *contre-rivure*, *halo lunaire*.)

In the second sense the forms *brough* and *burrow* are found. The word is probably a form of *burgh*, *borough*, *broch* in the sense of enclosure; cp. G. *lof* meaning both court and lunar halo.

**burr** [3] (bēr). This is another spelling of bur. See bur [1].

**burrow** (būr' ō), *n.* A hole tunnelled into the earth. *v.t.* To dig (such a hole). *v.i.* To dig into the earth. (F. *terrier*; *terrer*; *se terrer*.)



Burrow.—The burrows of a wild rabbit (top), of a badger, and of a mongoose.

Rabbits and many other animals live in burrows, or burrow in holes which they dig out or burrow for themselves.

Probably a variant of *borough* (a word applied in dialects to rabbits' burrows) in the sense of stronghold or shelter.

**burrow-duck** (bŭr' ō dŭk), *n.* Another name for the sheldrake. (F. *ladorne*.)

This name is sometimes given to the sheldrake because it usually nests in an old rabbit burrow, or at the inner end of a burrow it has made for itself. Its scientific name is *Tadorna cornuta*.

E. *burrow* and *duck*.

**burrowing-owl** (bŭr' ō ing ōul), *n.* An owl common in the U.S.A.

Its strange habit of living in a burrow made by itself in the ground, or in an old burrow of the prairie marmot, or prairie dog, has earned this small grey owl this name. It is also called the prairie owl. Its scientific name is *Speotyto cunicularia*.

E. *burrowing* (adj.) and *owl*.

**bursa** (bĕr' sâ), *n.* A sac or pouch in a muscular part of the body.

In the structure of the body little sacs, containing a lubricating liquid, are found between surfaces which move on each other. At the joints such *bursae* (bĕr' sê, *n.pl.*), or *bursal* (bĕr' sâl, *adj.*) pouches, containing a liquid called synovia, act as water-cushions and lubricators, thus greatly reducing friction.

A thing that is pouch-shaped may be called *bursiform* (bĕr' sî fŏrm, *adj.*) or *bursiculate* (bĕr' sîk' ū lât, *adj.*).

L.L. *bursa* purse, Gr. *byrsa* hide, wine-skin.

**bursar** (bĕr' sâr), *n.* A treasurer, a student holding a bursary or exhibition at a Scottish university. (F. *économiste, boursier*.)

The bursar or treasurer of a school or college holds the office called a bursarship (bĕr' sâr ship, *n.*); his official room is a bursary (bĕr' sâr i, *n.*), and his duties are bursarial (bĕr' sâr' i âl, *adj.*). A bursar or exhibitor in a Scottish university receives an endowment or fixed money payment called a bursary.

The term *burse* (bĕrs, *n.*) is used for the embroidered purse which forms part of the insignia of office of the Lord Chancellor, and also for the square silk pocket in which the corporal and pall are carried when not being used in the Mass.

L.L. *bursarius*, from *bursa* (which see) and suffix *-arius* relating to.

**burst** (bĕrst), *v.t.* To break suddenly or violently. *v.i.* To break open as the result of pressure from within; to rush or break forth; to be filled to overflowing. *n.* A sudden explosion; a sudden breaking forth; a sudden splitting; a sudden effort; a sudden breaking into view. (F. *crever*; *éclater*.)

Steam may burst the vessel which contains it, a person may burst a door or force it open, and someone may burst into tears or burst out laughing. At the end of a long lane

with high hedges a beautiful landscape may burst into view.

Bubbles burst when they are pricked, trees burst into life and birds into song; and a volcano bursts forth in a terrible eruption. We burst in when we enter a room suddenly and with force. Anything that can be burst is *burstable* (bĕrst' äbl, *adj.*).

M.E. *bersten*, *bresten*, A.-S. *berstan*; common Teut.; cp. G. *bersten*. Perhaps an intensive form from *break*. SYN.: *v.* Crack, explode, rend, split. ANT.: *v.* Bear, cohere, hold, stand.



Burst.—A burst in a water-pipe in a London street.

**burthen** (bĕr' thĕn), This is another form of burden. See burden.

**burton** (bĕr' tŏn), *n.* A light hoisting tackle used in ships. Another form is *barton* (bar' tŏn).

A single burton consists of two single blocks or pulleys, and is sometimes used in merchant ships for loading and discharging cargoes. A top burton (*n.*) is a tackle with a double and a single block, and is used, among other things, for raising or lowering sails or yards and setting up or tightening the rigging.

**burtonize** (bĕr' tŏ niz), *v.t.* To treat water chemically in order to make it like the water of Burton-on-Trent.

Burton has long been famous for its ale, and for a long time ales of that particular quality could not be made at other places. Then chemists took the matter up, and analysed the water used in making the ale.

As a result it was found that the natural Burton water may be imitated by adding various substances, such as sulphate of lime,

salt, and sulphate of magnesia, to soft water, and using the treated water to brew the ale.  
**E. Burton** and suffix *-ize* (Gr. *-iscin*) forming verbs.

**bury** (ber' i), *v.t.* To place in the grave ; to conduct the funeral service of ; to cover so as to hide ; to put out of sight or mind ; to occupy very closely. The *p.t.* and *p.p.* are buried (ber' id). (*F. enterver, cacher.*)

Pirates usually buried their treasure in the ground. A city may be buried by an earthquake. An important state document that has been missing may be found buried under a pile of papers on an official's desk. A man may be so buried in his studies that he forgets the world around him. A town-dweller who retires and buries himself in the country may sometimes long for the bustle of his working life.

The act of placing a dead body in its last resting-place is **burying** (ber' i ing, *n.*), and the place in which the grave lies is a **burying-ground** (*n.*) or **burying-place** (*n.*).

To bury the hatchet after a disagreement is to dismiss the affair from our minds—to bear no malice, to forgive and forget. This expression comes from a custom of the North American Indians, who, at their tribal councils, bury a war-hatchet or tomahawk as a symbol of peace.

**M.E. *burien, berien*, A.-S. *byrgan***, from the Teut. *berg-* to protect, cover. The meaning bury is almost confined to **E.** **SYN.**: Conceal, entomb, hide, inter, secrete. **ANT.**: Disinter, exhume, expose, resuscitate.

**burying-beetle** (ber' i ing bāt' l), *n.* A genus of beetles which bury small animals on which they lay their eggs.

The burying-beetles (*Necrophora*) are so called from their habit of burying the dead bodies of mice, moles, small birds, and other small animals by digging away the ground from under them. On the buried bodies the beetles deposit their eggs, so that the grubs find abundant food when they hatch out.

Some of these beetles are beautifully coloured, the clavicorn beetle having a striking combination of orange and black bands on its wing-cases or elytra.

**E. *burying*** (pres. *p.*) and ***beetle.***

**bus** (būs), *n.* A shortened form of the word omnibus. *v.i.* To travel by this. Another form is 'bus. The plural of the noun is buses (būs' ez) or 'buses. (*F. omnibus, autobus.*)

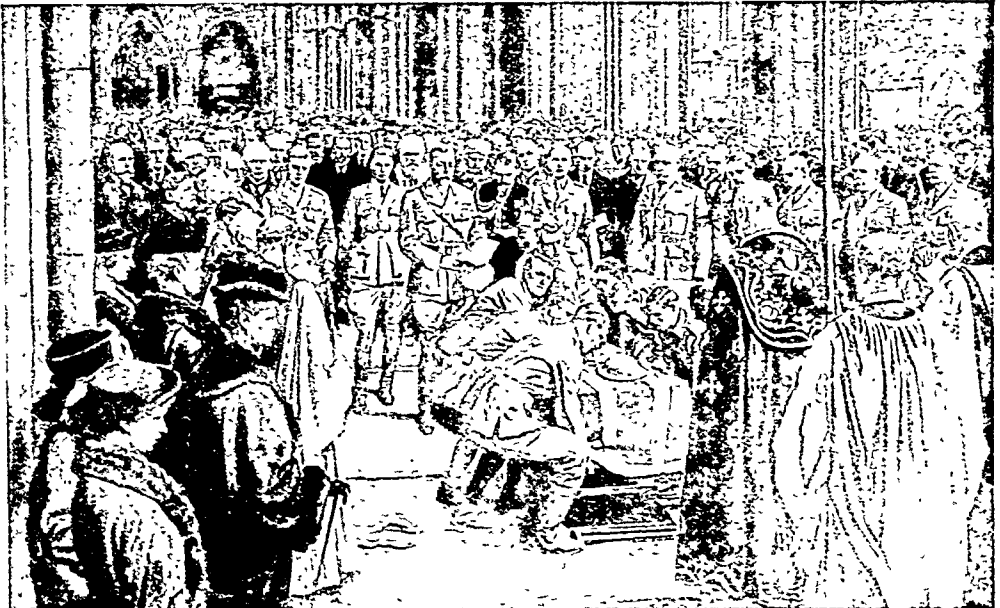
This word is the last syllable of the Latin word *omnibus*, meaning "for all," just as van is the last syllable of caravan.

**busby** (büz' bi), *n.* A tall fur cap with a bag hanging from the top on the right side worn by hussars and horse artillery. (*F. colback.*)

Originally a large bushy wig, later called a *buzz* or *buzzwig*. Perhaps from the surname Busby.

**bush** [I] (bush), *n.* A thick shrub or clump of shrubs ; uncleared land ; a tavern sign ; anything like a bush. *v.t.* To set with bushes ; to use a bush-harrow on. *v.i.* To grow like a bush. (*F. buisson.*)

In Shakespeare's time a bush was a bunch of ivy hung outside an inn. There was a popular saying, "Good wine needs no bush," that is, if the inn sells good wine everybody will know—there is no need of a sign to indicate the fact



Bury.—The burial of the British unknown warrior of the World War (1914-18), whose body was brought home from France and buried in Westminster Abbey.

The commonest use of the word is in the sense of shrub. A bush-harrow (*n.*), for instance, is a harrow whose bars are interwoven with shrubs. Land which contains many bushes is said to be bushy (*bush' i, adj.*), and its characteristic is bushiness (*bush' i nès, n.*).

Such land is common in the colonies and is itself called bush, or the bush (from Dutch *bosch*). The men who live in these remote parts lead wild, adventurous lives, and many words and phrases with bush in them illustrate this.

To take to the bush is to become an outlaw. A bush-fighter (*n.*) is one who does not fight in the open, but takes full advantage of natural cover. This kind of warfare is called bush-fighting (*n.*). In Australia the term bush-lawyer (*n.*) is applied to a man who is not a lawyer but who thinks he knows about the law.

A man who does not come straight to the point is said to beat about the bush.

Bush-rope (*n.*) is the name given to a tropical plant like a vine.

For bush antelope, bushman, and other words of which bush is the first part, see below.

M.E. *bush*, from O Norse *busk-r* (cp G. *busch* F. *bois*), from L.L. *boscus*.

**bush** [2] (*bush*), *n.* The soft-metal or hard steel lining of a hole in which an axle or pin turns. *v.t.* To furnish with this (F. *coquille, busclure*.)

When the bush becomes worn it can be removed and a new one can be put in its place. Bush-metal (*n.*) is an alloy consisting of two or more of the following metals: copper, tin, lead, zinc, antimony, and iron.

Probably Middle Dutch *busse* box, bush of a wheel (G. *büchse* has both meanings). See box [2].

**bush antelope** (*bush än' tè lōp*), *n.* One of several species of African antelopes, belonging to the genus *Tragelaphus*.

The bush antelopes, or bush bucks, belong to the harnessed antelopes, so called because they have white stripes somewhat in the form of a saddle on their back and sides.

The guib is one of the smallest, being about the size of a goat, but far more elegant and graceful. It is pale bay in colour, and has

straight horns with spiral twists. Like the other bush antelopes, it lives in forests or thick bush near fresh water.

Dutch *bosch* bush and E. *antelope*.

**bushel** (*bush' l*), *n.* A dry measure of capacity containing four pecks or eight gallons; a vessel that holds as much as this; a large quantity. (F. *boisseau*.)

Corn, potatoes, fruit, etc., are measured by the bushel. Before 1826, when the imperial bushel began to be used, the regular

bushel was the Winchester bushel, which was so called because the actual standard or model used was kept in the town hall at Winchester. The imperial bushel contains 2218.192 cubic inches.

A bushful (*bush' l fūl, n.*) means as much as a bushel will hold or sometimes simply a large quantity.

M.E. *bu(t)sshel*, O.F. *boissel* (F. *boisseau*), dim. of O.F. *boiste* box, L.L. *buxis* (acc *buxid-a*). See box.

**bushman** (*bush' mán*), *n.* A settler in the bush; a member of an aboriginal tribe of South Africa. (F. *habitant de la brousse*.)

The South African bushmen are a very short, lean people of a dirty yellow colour. They wander about from place to place, carrying their dome-shaped huts with them.

Sometimes they live in caves. They use poisoned arrows and are famous as hunters.

The word bushmanship (*bush' mán ship, n.*) means the varied knowledge—such as being able to find one's way in unsettled and difficult country—possessed by those who live in the bush.

Dutch *boschjesman* (in second sense), equivalent to E. *bush* and *man*.

**bushmaster** (*bush' mas ter*), *n.* A South American snake.

This snake is fierce and very poisonous. It is often ten feet long. It has a ridge along the middle of its back. The scientific name is *Lachesis muta*.

E. *bush* and *master*.

**bushranger** (*bush' rān jēr*), *n.* An outlaw of the bush.

When, in Australia, a man goes into the bush, or the woods, and becomes an outlaw, living by robbery, he becomes a bushranger.

E. *bush* and *ranger*.



Bushman.—A bushman boy of South Africa practising with bow and arrow at the entrance to his home.



**busily** (biz' i li). This is the adverb formed from busy. See busy.

**business** (biz' nés), *n.* Occupation; trade; work; something needing special attention; commercial transactions; a commercial concern; duty; an affair; action and movement on the stage as opposed to speaking or singing. (F. *affaire, métier, commerce*.)

One dealer does business with another; business is brisk or slack; a proprietor sells his business; we make it our business to attend a meeting; and we speak of an affair as being a queer business.

Some men are born business men or men of business; they seem to take naturally to managing a commercial concern. To do a thing in a business-like (biz' nés lik, *adj.*) manner is to do it in a practical, orderly way. We mean business when we are in earnest about anything. To mind one's own business is to look after one's own affairs and not meddle with those of others.

The business end of a pin is the point.

M.E. *bisines*, A.-S. *bisignus*, busy and suffix -ness. SYN.: Calling, employment, job, profession.

**busk** (büsk), *n.* A flat slip of wood, whalebone, or steel used for stiffening or supporting a corset in front. (F. *busc*.)

F. *busc*, perhaps from Ital. *busco* sprig.

**buskin** (büs' kin), *n.* A high boot fastening with a lace; the thick-soled boot worn by actors in the ancient Athenian tragedy; tragedy. (F. *brodequin, cothurne*.)

The Athenian tragic actors wore buskins to make themselves look taller, while in ancient Greek comedy the actors wore a light sock or shoe. Hence the use of the word buskin in the sense of tragedy. We speak not only of buskined (büs' kind, *adj.*) feet, but also of a buskined style, buskined language, etc., where the term means tragic or sublime.

M.F. *b(ry)onsequin* or M. Span. *boscagui*; cp. Ital. *borzacchino*, all perhaps through L.L. from Gr. *byrsa* hide.

**buss** [1] (büs), *n.* A kiss. *v.t.* and *i.* To kiss. (F. *baiser*; *baiser*.)

Earlier *bass*, F. *baiser* L. *bāstāre*, *v.*, *bāstum*, *n.*

**buss** [2] (büs). *n.* A two or three-masted fishing vessel used in the Dutch herring-fishery.

The buss is an old type of small ship, mentioned in writings as far back as the fourteenth century.

M.E., O.F. *busse*; cp. A.-S. *butse*, O. Norse *buza*, Dutch *buis*, etc.

**bust** (büst), *n.* A piece of sculpture showing the head, shoulders, and breast of a human figure; the upper part of the body below the neck. (F. *buste*.)

The bust is a sculpture what the "head and shoulders" portrait is in photography.

F. *buste*, Ital. *busto*, L.L. *bustum*.

**bustard** (büs' tård), *n.* A large bird related to the cranes and the plovers. (F. *oultarde*.)

It is nearly a century since a great bustard nested in Britain, although stragglers from Central Europe sometimes visit our shores in winter. It is a big bird, standing over three feet high and weighing about thirty pounds. Its scientific name is *Otis tarda*. There are other species of bustards in India, Africa, and Australia.

O.F. *bistarde*, *oustarde*, L. *avis tarda* (Pliny) literally slow bird, perhaps a corruption of a non-Latin word, as the bird is very swift. See avian, tardy.

**bustle** [1] (büs' l), *n.* Activity with hurry and noise. *v.i.* To be or to appear to be very active. *v.t.* To make a person hurry.

(F. *mouvement, tumulte*; *se remuer*.)

In a crowded street there is much hurrying about and noise, and we say it is in a bustle, and that people bustle to and fro. We speak of the bustling (büs' ling, *adj.*) towns of a manufacturing district, and of a person as being a bustler (büs' lér, *n.*) in some things and an idler in others.

M.E. *bustelen* (once) to wander stupidly; cp. Norw. *busta* to be violent, Icel. frequentative *bustla* to splash like a fish. SYN.: *n* Commotion, excitement, flurry, stir. ANT.: *n.* Calm, idleness, inactivity, indolence, quiet.

**bustle** [2] (büs' l), *n.* A pad once worn by women under their dress at the back just below the waist. (F. *tournure*.) Its purpose was to expand the skirts.

Possibly from *bustle* [1].

**busy** (biz' i), *adj.* At work; fond of work; interfering. *v.t.* To occupy oneself. (F. *occupé, actif*.)



Bust.—A bust of Cosimo de Medici by Benvenuto Cellini.



Bustard.—The great bustard, an occasional visitor to the British Isles.

What we call a busy person is always busy about something. To be busily (*biz' i li, adv.*) engaged upon some work is the way to be happy.

**Busyness** (*biz' i nes, n.*) is a very different thing from business. Business means one's affairs or one's work; busyness is the state of being busy. Sometimes extreme busyness leads a person to meddle with the affairs of others, and so we call someone who does this a busybody (*biz' i bod i, n.*).

M.E. *bisi, busi*, A.-S. *bisig*; cp. Dutch *bezig*. SYN.: Engaged, industrious, meddlesome, occupied, officious, working. ANT.: Idle, lazy, placid, slothful.

**but** (*büt*), *conj.* Yet; still; except that. *prep.* Except; without. *adv.* Only. *n.* An objection or exception. *v.t.* To make an objection or exception. (F. *mais*; *excepté*. *moins*; *seulement*; *qui ne*.)

As a conjunction *but* introduces an idea contrary to the previous one; its business is to subtract, as that of *and* is to add. "Take all but this one." "But that you told me," show *but* as a preposition; "He is but young," "I can but do my best," as an adverb.

But me no buts means make no objections. All *but* (*adv.*) means almost or nearly; but then and but there are expressions used in conversation for still or yet; cannot but do and cannot choose but do are ways of saying forcibly must do; not but that means although, though at the same time.

M.E. *bute*, A.-S. *bütan*, *be-ütan* from *be* by, *ütan* out, literally without. SYN.: Merely, nevertheless, notwithstanding, save, though, unless, yet.

**butane** (*bü' tăn*), *n.* An inflammable gas very much like marsh-gas, with formula  $C_4H_{10}$ . (F. *butane*.)

In lands where mineral oil is found there are very often large stores of gas beneath the earth, and when a boring is made this gas comes out with great force. Sometimes the supply is so large and constant that the gas can be used for lighting and heating purposes.

It is known as natural gas, and in this gas butane is found.

L. *bütyrum* butter and chemical suffix *-ane*.

**butcher** (*buch' ér*), *n.* A man who kills cattle, sheep, pigs, and other domestic animals for food; one who sells meat; a cruel person who delights in killing; an artificial salmon-fly. *v.t.* To put to death in a cruel or wanton way; to massacre; to spoil by bad performance. (F. *boucher*.)

Butcher's meat (*n.*) is fresh beef, mutton, veal, or pork. It does not include poultry, game, fish, or cured meat, such as ham or bacon.

The Duke of Cumberland, who defeated the Jacobites at Culloden in 1746, is still known in Scotland as the Butcher, or the Butcher of Culloden, from the harshness with which he suppressed the rebellion. The rebels whom he caught he executed in a butcherly (*buch' ér li, adj.*) or cruel manner. He put so many of them to death that people called his methods mere butchery (*buch' ér i, n.*), that is, pitiless and senseless slaughter.

M.E. *bocher*, O.F. *bo(u)chier*, from *boc* he-goat; cp. *buck*. Originally one who kills goats, or deals in their flesh. SYN.: *v.* Kill, murder, slaughter, slay.



Butcher-bird. - A male butcher-bird perched on its nest.

**butcher-bird** (*buch' ér bërd*), *n.* A shrike. (F. *écoucheur*.)

A butcher hangs his meat on hooks. The butcher-bird hangs its prey on thorns, close to its favourite haunt in a hawthorn thicket. Mice, bumble-bees, and various other

insects are sometimes found in these larders at the same time.

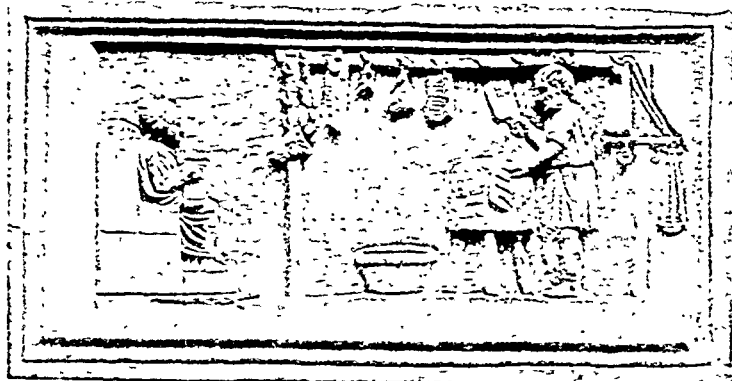
The red-backed shrike, the best-known British species, comes to the south of Britain in early summer, and nests there. Its scientific name is *Lanius collurio*.

E. *butcher* and *bird*.

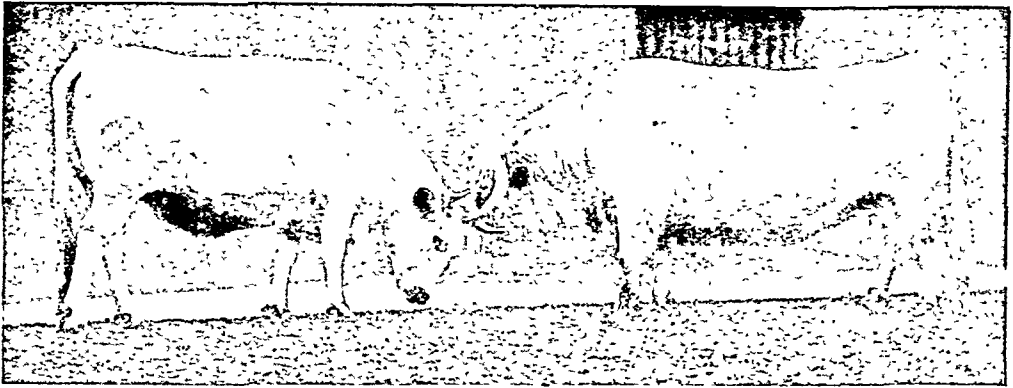
**butcher's - broom** (*buch' érz broom*), *n.* A prickly, evergreen English shrub.

This shrub is so called because a bunch of it is often used by butchers for sweeping their blocks. It has leathery leaf-like branches bearing scarlet berries like cherries. It belongs to the lily order, and is closely related to asparagus. The scientific name is *Ruscus aculeatus*.

E. *butcher's* and *broom*.



Butcher. - A pork butcher in his shop in ancient Rome as shown in a sculpture of the time. The cleaver and block are similar to those in use to-day.



Butt.—Two fine specimens of English cattle butting one another at the London Zoological Gardens.

**butler** (büt' lér), *n.* A head servant, usually in charge of the wine and silver. (F. *sommelier*.)

It was through Pharaoh's butler that Joseph became the chief man in Egypt during the seven years of famine. When nobody could read Pharaoh's dream, the butler remembered how, when he was in prison, Joseph had told him the meaning of his dream, and that he would soon be restored to his butlership (büt' lér ship, *n.*) and once more prepare his master's wine in his butlery (büt' lér i, *n.*).

Joseph was brought before Pharaoh, foretold the famine, and was put in charge of all the corn supplies of Egypt.

The dukes and marquesses of Ormonde, heads of the great Irish family of Butler, long held the hereditary office of royal butler in Ireland.

M.E. *buteler*, O.F. *bouteillier*, L.L. *buticulārius*, from *buticula* bottle (which see); suffix *-ārius* denoting person connected with.

**butomus** (bü' tò müs), *n.* The flowering rush family.

These plants are common in British ponds and ditches and are also often cultivated. Plants of this order are said to be butomaceous (bü tò mā' shüs, *adj.*).

Modern L. from Gr. *boutomos*.

**butt** [1] (büt), *n.* The thicker or heavier end of a tool or other object; the part that remains; the end of a piece of timber that comes squarely against another piece; the joint thus made; the thickest and most valuable part of an ox-hide. (F. *gros bout*, *about*.)

The butt or butt-end (*n.*) of a rifle is the broad end of the stock, the butt or butt-end of a tree is the part nearest the root, the butt or butt-end of a cigarette is the part that a smoker throws away when he has finished smoking.

The term butt-joint (*n.*) is used for a joint made by placing two pieces of timber or iron squarely against each other, and holding them together by riveting or welding. Butt-hinges (*n.pl.*), also called butts, are hinges consisting of two plates screwed to

the door itself and to the frame of the door. A butt-weld (*n.*) is a weld formed by forcing bars together without any overlapping.

Of Teut. origin; cp. O. Norse *butt-r*, Dutch *bot*, short, thick-set, stumpy. In some senses influenced by F. *bout* end.

**butt** [2] (büt), *n.* A large cask; a wine and spirit measure of one hundred and twenty-six gallons; a beer measure of one hundred and eight gallons. (F. *pipe*, *tonneau*.)

O.F. *boute*, F. *botte*, *boute*, L.L. *butta*, *buttis* wine-skin, cask.

**butt** [3] (büt), *n.* A target; a mound behind targets; the shelter for the marker on a shooting range; a person at whom ridicule, abuse, or criticism is aimed. (F. *but*, *cible*, *plastron*.)

Butts (*n.pl.*) is the regular term for a shooting range. We make a butt of someone when we make him the object of ridicule or other attack.

F. *butte* mound to shoot at, or *but* target, goal; O.F. *boter*, F. *buter* to hit, take aim, from O. Teut. *baut-an* to beat (which see). SYN.: Aim, laughing-stock, mark, object.

**butt** [4] (büt), *v.i.* To strike or push with or as if with the head or horns; to meet at the end. *v.t.* To strike or push with or as if with the head or horns; to come against. *n.* A blow or push with the head; a fencing stroke. (F. *cosser*; *coup de tête*, *botte*.)

A ram butts or strikes with its forehead or horns. To butt anyone away is to push or drive him away much as a ram does. In the Polar regions a ship butts the ice.

M.E. *butten*, O.F. *boter*, *buter* to thrust, strike. See butt [3].

**butte** (büt), *n.* A hill or peak rising abruptly; a steep bluff. (F. *butte*.)

The term butte is properly given to the flat-topped detached hills or ridges which rise abruptly to a height between that of a hill and that of a mountain, but actually the term is more generally used. The word is most common in the Western States of the U.S.A., where buttes form landmarks visible from afar. When this country was being opened up the Three Buttes of Wyoming



Butter. The long and tiring process of butter-making in Persia, where the milk is churned in a kind of swing-boat.

helped to guide many a settler across the uncharted plains.

F. *butte* hillock, connected with *but* butt [3].

**butter** (büt' ér), *n.* The fatty particles of milk brought together into a stiff mass by churning; any other substance of the same appearance and greasy nature; flattery. *v.t.* To spread with such a substance, to flatter. (F. *beurre*; *beurrer*.)

The word is sometimes used in the sense of insincere praise or flattery. Thus we may say of two men exchanging flattering compliments that the butter, or flattery, was laid on thickly. Since butter is greasy, and it is difficult to hold things with greasy hands, butter-fingered (*adj.*) means apt to let



Butter.—Dairymaids making butter in England with the aid of modern churns.

things fall, as if the hands were always greasy. A butter-fingered person is called a butter-fingers (*n.*), the term especially being applied to a cricketer who allows a ball to slip through his fingers. Butterine (büt' ér én, *n.*) is a butter-like substance, used as butter, and prepared from animal and vegetable fats. It is now usually known as margarine. Buttermilk (*n.*) is that part of the milk which remains when the butter fat, or cream, has been taken from it.

Pats of butter are ornamented by being pressed with a butter-print (*n.*) or butter-stamp (*n.*), a piece of wood having a design carved into its surface. A woman who sells butter at a market is sometimes known as a butter-wife (*n.*) or butter-woman (*n.*), and a boat-shaped vessel for sauce is called a butter-boat (*n.*). Some greases have a buttery (büt' ér i, *adj.*) or butter-like appearance, without having the butteriness (büt' ér i nés, *n.*) of real butter.

A.-S. *butere*, L. *butyrum*, Gr. *boutyron*, apparently from *bous* cow, *tyros* cheese, but probably altered from a Scythian word.

**butterbump** (büt' ér bŭmp), *n.* A name given to the bitter. (F. *butor*.)

Also *butterbump*, from M.E. *butor*, *butare* bitter, and early modern E. *bump* to boom as a bitter.

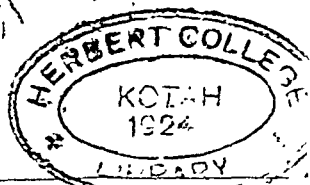


Buttercup.—The golden flowers of the familiar meadow buttercup.

**buttercup** (büt' ér kŭp), *n.* A yellow, cup-shaped wild flower. Another name is butter-flower (büt' ér flou' ér, *n.*). (F. *bouton d'or*.)

The buttercups belong to the genus *Ranunculus*, which also includes various kinds of crowfoot, some having white flowers, the spearworts, and the pilewort, or lesser celandine. The flowers of the buttercup being the colour of golden butter, no better name could have been given to this plant. There are several kinds, the commonest being the bulbous buttercup (*Ranunculus bulbosus*), the creeping buttercup (*R. repens*), and the meadow buttercup (*R. acris*). The seeds are found in the little central carpels in the ripened flower.

E. *butter* and *cup*.



Butterflies.—1. Small Copper. 2. Pale Clouded Yellow. 3. Clouded Yellow 4. Painted Lady.  
5 and 8. Clifden Blue. 6. Orange Tip. 7. Heath Fritillary. 9. Swallow-tail. 10. Chalk Hill Blue.  
11. Purple Emperor. 12. Dark Green Fritillary. 13. Peacock. 14. Common Blue. 15. Comma.  
16. Queen of Spain. 17. Red Admiral. 18. Marbled White. 19. Small Tortoiseshell.

# BUTTERFLIES IN THOUSANDS

*The four-winged Friends and Foes of Man which add Beauty and Colour to the World*

**butterfly** (büt' ér flī), *n.* A day-flying insect with clubbed antennae belonging to the order *Lepidoptera*; a showily-dressed or frivolous person. (*F. papillon.*)

Various suggestions have been made to explain why butterflies were so named, and

perhaps the most likely is that the name was suggested by the butter-like colour of the brimstone butterfly. These insects belong to the order *Lepidoptera*, which includes the moths.

Butterflies have four wings, often beautifully coloured and marked, and, like the moths, the wings are covered with tiny scales, showing great beauty of colour and form under the microscope. Butterflies have two compound eyes, six legs, and they fly only in daylight. They have two antennae pointing straight out from the head and each has a tapering knob at the tip.

There are over sixty different species of butterflies in the British list, some very rare, and a few now extinct. From the eggs of the butterfly caterpillars or larvae are hatched, which, in due time, change into pupae or chrysalises, from which finally emerge the imagines, or perfect butterflies. When the butterfly bursts out of the case which encloses it in its pupa stage, it rests while its wings expand and dry, then it is ready to fly. The life of a butterfly is a period of days only, except in the case of the species which hibernate during the winter.

When a butterfly is about to lay its eggs, it is guided by some wonderful sense to choose and attach them to the particular food plant most suited to the needs of its own caterpillars. Each species has its

favourite plant. The food plant of the small tortoiseshell butterfly, for example, is the stinging nettle, which is also favoured by the red admiral and the peacock butterflies. The caterpillars of the large tortoiseshell butterfly, on the other hand, feed on the leaves of the

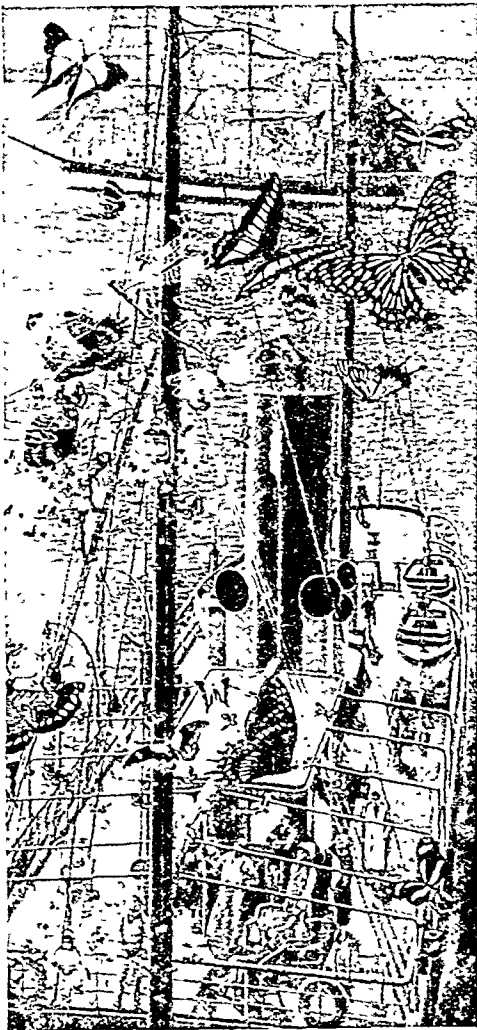
elm, aspen, and one or two other trees. Nettles are common enough, and so are small tortoiseshells. As a contrast, the most beautiful of all the British butterflies—namely, the swallowtail—which was once common, is now very rare, because its natural food plants have all but disappeared owing to the fens and marshes having been nearly all brought under cultivation.

By providing the caterpillars with their own food plants, butterflies can be reared in captivity, and there are "butterfly-farms," where this is done as a business, and eggs, pupae, and perfect insects sold to collectors.

Although butterflies are frail creatures, it has been proved that such species as the Painted Lady and the Monarch are great travellers. There is trustworthy evidence that on occasion butterflies have rested on the surface of the sea and resumed their flight. The order *Lepidoptera* is an enormous one, and includes several hundreds of thousands of species and varieties.

A vain or showily-dressed person is sometimes called a butterfly. The metal screw known as a butterfly has two wings which enable it to be screwed on and off with ease. This kind of screw is much used for shutters.

A.-S. *butterflēoge*, from *butter* and *fly*: cp. Dutch *boterlieg*, G. *butterfliege*. The reason for the name is obscure.



Butterfly.—Butterflies are frail insects, but many have been known to fly from land to a ship which was lying twenty or thirty miles distant from the shore.

**butterfly orchis** (büt' ér flī ör' kis), *n.* A species of orchis found in woods or on heaths.

The butterfly orchis is not well named, for the flower bears little resemblance to a butterfly, although at a distance the flowers have a light likeness to a cluster of moths. The sweetly-scented white flowers of the lesser butterfly orchis (*Habenaria bifolia*) may be found in June and July on moist heaths and woodland borders; the greenish flowers of the greater butterfly orchis (*H. chlorantha*) are found in moist places a month later, in July and August.

*E. butterfly and orchis.*

**butteris** (büt' ér is), *n.* A tool used by farriers for paring a horse's hoof before shoeing it. (*F. boutoir.*)

Also obsolete *E. butter*, *F. boutoir*.

**butter-nut** (büt' ér nüt), *n.* A North Amer can tree; its fruit.

Country boys in Eastern Canada gather butter-nuts by the sackful every autumn. The tree on which this nut grows is called the butter-nut, or white walnut. It produces a dark yellow wood, which is used for making furniture. The nuts yield oil, and from the bark a brown dye is obtained. The scientific name is *Juglans cinerea*.

*E. butter and nut.*

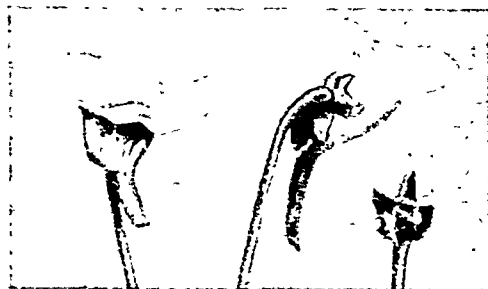
**butter-scotch** (büt' ér skoch), *n.* A kind of candy. Butter and sugar are the chief ingredients of this toffee.

*E. butter and Scotch.*

**butter-tree** (büt' ér trē), *n.* A name given to a genus of trees, the fruit of which yield a butter-like substance.

In Nepal, India, a tree called *Bassia butyacea* is greatly valued by the natives, who extract from its oily seeds a substance something like lard. The mowha-tree of Bengal, whose scientific name is *B. latifolia*, yields a similar fatty substance. The seeds of the African butter-tree (*B. parkii*), are boiled to obtain shea-butter.

*E. butter and tree.*



**Butterwort.**—The flowers of the butterwort, a plant which feeds on insects.

**butterwort** (büt' ér wért), *n.* A small plant that absorbs insects.

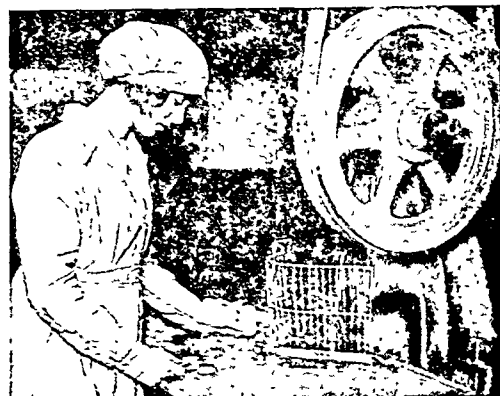
The leaves of this strange plant are covered with a very sticky fluid which has powerful digestive properties. When a fly or other

insect settles on a leaf, the edge of the leaf bends inward and presses the insect against the surface until it is digested. The plant grows in boggy places. The scientific name is *Pinguicula vulgaris*.

**buttery** (büt' ér i), *n.* A room in which provisions are kept. (*F. dépense.*)

A buttery is strictly a large, cool room in which liquor is stored, but in colleges at Oxford and Cambridge the name is applied to a place where students can buy light refreshments. These are served out over a half-door called the buttery-hatch (*n.*).

*M.E., O.F. boterie, L.L. botària, from bota, a form of butta cask. See butt [2].*



**Button.**—A busy worker feeding a machine that pierces holes in buttons.

**buttock** (büt' ök), *n.* The hinder part of an animal (usually in *pl.*); a joint of meat; a manoeuvre in wrestling. *v.t.* To throw a man by this manoeuvre. (*F. fesse, cimier.*)

In the wrestling manoeuvre known as a buttock the hip is used as a lever to throw one's opponent to the ground. Every wrestler should know how to buttock, for it is a throw extremely useful in difficult situations. Another name for a rump-steak is buttock-steak (*n.*).

*M.E. buttoke, dim. of butt [1] with suffix -ock.*

**button** (büt' ön), *n.* A knob or disk used for fastening or ornamenting a dress; a bud; the knob on a fencing foil; the disk used to connect an electric bell circuit; *v.t.* To fasten or make secure by means of buttons; to furnish with buttons. *v.i.* To be fastened up with buttons. (*F. bouton; boutonner.*)

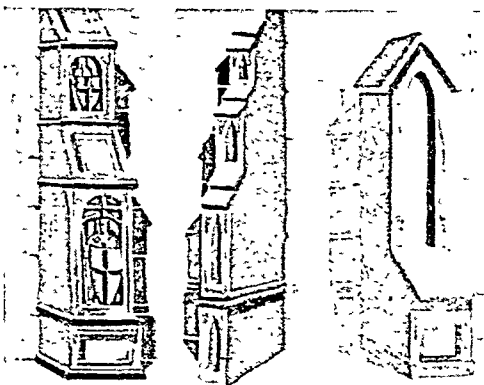
A small bud on a plant is called a button, and so is the globular head of a mushroom. We press the button of an electric bell to make it ring, and the button on the point of a fencing foil renders the weapon harmless. The small catches and fasteners on windows and doors are sometimes known as buttons. A page-boy is sometimes called buttons because he usually wears a uniform decorated with these ornaments. Anything valueless

we term not worth a button, and when we are indifferent about a thing, we say we do not care a button.

To fasten a garment we draw a button through a buttonhole (*n.*), and to fasten a button-boot (*n.*) we sometimes use a button-hook (*n.*). The little posy a man may wear in the buttonhole of his coat is known as a buttonhole, and when one detains another person by catching hold of his coat lapels one is said to buttonhole (*v.t.*) him, and one who does this may be called a buttonholer (*n.*). Sometimes in tailoring a special assistant is kept to buttonhole garments, who is called a buttonholer.

A button-mould (*n.*) is a disk of bone, metal, or other substance before it is covered with cloth to form a button. A coat with buttons on it is buttoned (*but' ond, adj.*), but one without buttons on it is buttonless (*büt' on lès, adj.*). We button our clothes when we fasten them by means of buttons, and dressmakers button the clothes they make when they fix buttons on them. Before going out on a cold day we button up to keep warm. Any object like a button is said to be buttony' (*büt' on i, adj.*).

M.E. *botoun*, O.F. *boton* (cp. Ital. *botone*, Span *boton*), bud, button, from O.F. *bouter* (F. *bouter*) to thrust, sprout as a bud. See butt [3, 4].



Buttress.—Three types of buttress: thirteenth century (left), fifteenth century, and twelfth century.

**buttress** (*büt' rès*), *n.* A supporting structure built against a wall; a support; a prop. *v.t.* To support by a buttress; to prop. (F. *contre-fort*; *arc-bouter*.)

In order to support and strengthen a wall a mass of masonry, called a buttress, is often built against it. Thus, figuratively, we may speak of a strong man as being the buttress of any cause to which he is devoted. If the wall of a house is noticed to be cracking it may be necessary to buttress it with a temporary wooden support.

M.E. *bouteras*, *butres*, perhaps from O.F. *bouteret*, pl. of *bouteret* flying buttress, from *bouter*, *buter* (F. *bouter*) to thrust, push. See butt [4].

**butty** (*büt' i*), *n.* A mate; a partner; a man who takes on contracts in coal-mining. (F. *camarade*, *chef d'équipe*.)

In some coal mines the raising of the coal is done by a group of men called a butty-gang (*n.*), who contract to hew and remove a certain amount of coal for a fixed sum, which is divided among them. This system of working a mine is called the butty-system (*n.*).

Perhaps the obsolete adj. *booty* sharing, participating, from *booty* (*n.*), or *boot* gain, profit.

**butyl** (*bū' til*), *n.* A group of atoms belonging to the alkyl class. (F. *butyl*.)

Butyl is a little family made up of our atoms of carbon and nine atoms of hydrogen. It acts almost like a single atom when it goes into various compounds. Thus we have butyl alcohol (*n.*), the scientific formula for which is  $C_4H_9OH$ , when butyl goes into the molecule of water,  $H_2O$ , and takes the place of one of the hydrogen atoms. Butylene (*bū' ti lèn, n.*) is an inflammable gas. It is a kind of distant relation of the gas butane, but each molecule has two atoms of hydrogen less in the molecule.

L. *butyrum* butter, and chemical suffix *-yl*.

**butyraceous** (*bū ti rā' shùs*), *adj.* Of the nature of butter containing butter. (F. *butireux*.)

Cocoa-butter is butyraceous. Seeds such as the nutmeg and the illipé are butyraceous, as they contain buttery substances. Any-

thing related to butter is butyric (*bū tir' ik, adj.*) as, for example, butyric acid (*n.*), an acid of unpleasant odour found in rancid butter, and formed when rotten cheese acts upon a solution of sugar.

When an alkali or a metal acts upon butyric acid a butyrate (*bū' ti rāt, n.*) is formed. Butyrine (*bū' ti rin, n.*) is a combination of glycerine and butyric acid found in butter fat. Butyroacetic (*bū*

*ti rō à sē' tik, adj.*) refers to a combination of butyric and acetic acids.

L. *butyrum* butter, and suffix *-aceous*, forming adjectives.

**buxom** (*büks' òm*) *adj.* Blithe; gay; full of health; plump. (F. *enjoué*, *gaillard*, *potelé*.)

Formerly the word meant compliant or obedient, but now we use the word in the sense of gay or lively, as when we speak of a buxom lass. In Shakespeare's play, "Henry V", Pistol speaks of Bardolph as a soldier of buxom valour, using the word in the sense of sprightly or vigorous. When buxom is applied to women it may also mean comely or plump, as well as full of health. We may say that on account of her buxomness (*büks' òm nès, n.*), a woman is much admired, and that anything done in a sprightly manner is done buxomly (*büks' òm lì, adv.*).

M.E. *buksum* obedient, from A.-S. *būgan* to bend (see bow), and *adj.* suffix *-some*: cp. G., *biegsam* pliant. The meaning developed from obedient to obliging, kindly, amiable, and so to the modern senses. SYN.: Blithe, bonny, healthy, jolly, plump. ANT.: Dull, inactive, lean.



**buy** (bī) *v.t.* To give money in exchange for (an article); to procure by giving something else; to gain by bribery. *p.t.* and *p.p.* bought (bawt). (F. *acheter*, *corrompre*.)

Though we may buy many things in a shop, we often have to buy our wisdom with experience. A man who secures an appointment by means of a bribe is said to buy it, and we are said to buy, or buy over, a person when we bribe him. Anyone who buys anything is a buyer (bī' ér, *n.*), a term which is applied in a special sense to one whose duties consist in buying stock for a business house. The articles exposed for sale in a shop are buyable (bī' äbl, *adj.*).

To buy up means to buy the whole supply of anything, but to buy out is to release oneself by the payment of money, as in the case of a soldier who buys himself out of the army, or to buy a business or estate so as to get rid of the owner. A person is said to buy in when at an auction he buys something back for the owner, or a stockbroker buys in when, having bought stock and the seller having failed to deliver it by the stated time, he purchases the stock in the market and charges the extra cost to the seller who has failed him.

To buy the refusal of anything is to make a payment for the right to purchase it in the future, and we are said to buy off a competitor when we make him a payment to induce him to discontinue any opposition.

M.E. *bigen*, *bien*, A.-S. *byg-*, as in *bygest*, *bygeþ*, second and third persons sing. pres. ind. of *bycgan*, cp. Goth. *bugjan*. *Syn.*: Acquire, bribe, corrupt, purchase, suborn. *Ant.*: Hawk, retail, sell, vend.

**buzz** [1] (büz), *n.* A hum, like that of a bee; a confused noise; bustle. *v.i.* To make a noise like humming; to whisper; to spread a rumour. *v.t.* To tell in a low whisper; to spread secretly. (F. *bourdonnement*; *bourdonner*; *chuchoter*.)

Buzz is one of those words formed in imitation of a noise, as if the letter *z* were being continually sounded. Such a noise is made by such insects as bees and flies, and by many people all talking together. Because a circular saw makes just such a noise when cutting wood it is called a buzz-saw (*n.*).

Anything which makes a buzzing (büz' ing, *adj.*) noise may be called a buzzer (büz' er, *n.*), and the name is specially given to a steam siren and an instrument used in telegraphy. Persons who whisper rumours are buzzers, and those who hover or bustle about in an annoying way are said to buzz about.

Imitative; cp. Ital. *buzzicare* to hum.

**buzz** [2] (büz), *n.* A bur; a fuzzy beetle. (F. *glouteron*.)

In some parts of England, especially in the south and east, the burs of plants, bristly or hooked seed-vessels such as those of the burdock and cleavers, are called buzzes by country folk. The buzz used by the angler as a bait is either a little downy beetle, whose scientific name is *Rhizotrogus solstitialis*, or else an imitation of this beetle.

Perhaps for burs, pl. of bur.

**buzzard** (büz' ärd), *n.* A hawk-like bird of prey; a dunce. (F. *buse*, *busard*.)

A bigger bird than the peregrine falcon, the common buzzard, which nests in Britain, is far slower on the wing, and is quite unable to capture pigeons and other birds as the falcon does. It therefore feeds on mice, rats,

and other small creatures that live on the ground. Buzzards, of which there are about twenty species, are found in many countries. The scientific name of the common buzzard is *Buteo vulgaris*. Because a buzzard is heavy and slow the name is sometimes given to a dunce or blockhead.

F. *busard* from *buse*, L.L. *busio* for L. *buteo* sparrow-hawk, with contemptuous suffix -ard.

**by** (bī), *prep.* Beside; close to; across; over; through the agency of; with the aid of. *adv.* Close at hand; past; aside. *adj.* Off the main track; of lesser importance; extra; private. (F. *près de*, *par*; *près*.)

This small but very important word enters into many expressions. For instance, by

and by means presently, at some future time. Used as a noun, the words denote the future. To do anything by oneself is to do it without help or advice. To be by oneself is to be alone.

The phrases by the by, by the bye, and by the way, introduce some matter which the speaker has just thought of, and which may have nothing to do with the subject being discussed. We should be careful to abide by, or be faithful to and carry out, any promises we may make, as in this way we shall come by, or gain, the confidence of our friends.

To do by, or behave towards, others as we would wish them to do by us, is a good rule. To set store by is to value. To stand by one's friends is to support them or back them up.

When soldiers or sailors are told to stand by, they wait about, ready to obey any order that may come. If a person is saved from drowning, any harm done to his clothing is quite a by-consideration (*n.*) or matter of small importance. When a member of Parliament dies or resigns, a by-election (*n.*)

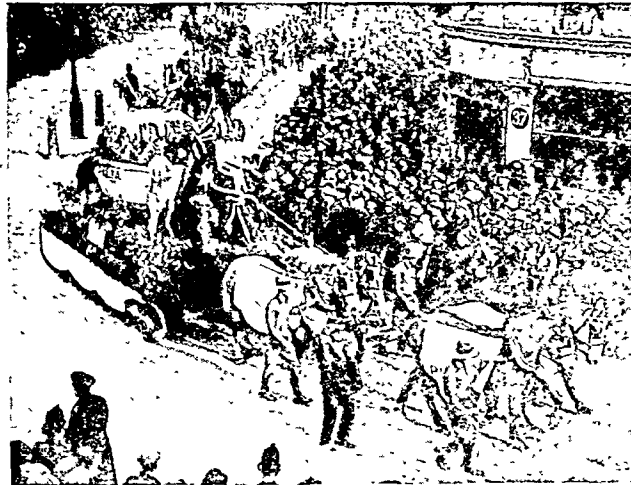


Buzzard.—The common buzzard, a bird of prey which feeds on small animals.

has to be held in his constituency to choose someone to fill his place.

A *bygone* (*adj.*) event is one that has gone by or which belongs to the past. Such an event is called a *bygone* (*n.*). To let bygones be bygones is to forget past injuries or misunderstandings.

A *by-lane* (*n.*) is a lane leading from a high road. A *by-pass* (*n.*) is a way round an obstruction. Sometimes a gas burner has a *by-pass*, which allows enough gas to reach the burner to keep it just alight when the tap is turned off. Many *by-pass* (*adj.*) roads have been made lately to enable traffic to pass outside towns.



Bystander.—A throng of interested bystanders watching the Lord Mayor's Show in London. The car in the foreground represents Australia.

A *by-passage* (*n.*) is a private passage to a house, or a side passage between streets. A *by-path* (*n.*) is a private or little-used path. A *by-path* of knowledge or science means some branch of it to which few people have given attention.

*By-play* (*n.*) on the stage is action, usually in dumb show, carried on apart from the main acting. It generally adds greatly to the interest of the piece.

A *by-product* (*n.*) is something produced in the making of something else. Coke, tar, and ammonia are *by-products* of gas-making. As science has advanced, many *by-products* which at one time were wasted have been turned to good account.

Thus the gas from iron-smelting furnaces, instead of being allowed, as formerly, to escape into the air, is made to work very powerful gas-engines. Petrol and heavy fuel oil, produced while paraffin oil was distilled from petroleum, used to be a great nuisance to refiners. Now they are as important as the paraffin itself.

A *by-purpose* (*n.*) is a side or secondary purpose, just as a *by-road* (*n.*) is a side road and a *by-street* (*n.*) a side-street. A

*bystander* (*n.*) is an onlooker or witness of an event in which he takes no part. A *by-walk* (*n.*) or *by-way* (*n.*) is the same as a *by-path*, in both senses of that word.

A *byword* (*n.*) means a phrase often quoted, such as a proverb, and also a person or institution that has come to be regarded as an object of contempt.

*By-work* (*n.*) is work of less importance than one's regular or main work—a side-line of work. For example, many professional golfers use their spare time for the *by-work* of making golf-clubs.

A.-S. *bī*; cp. Dutch *bij*, G. *bei*, also Gr. *am-phr*, L. *am-bi*- about. The prefix *be-* is the unstressed form.

*bye* (*bī*), *n.* Something of lesser importance; a term used in several branches of sport with various meanings.

In cricket, football, tennis, billiards, and other pastimes, the entrance of a player into a round without having been required to take part in the previous round is called a *bye*.

In golf and cricket it also has special meanings. A *bye* at cricket is a run scored without the ball having been struck by the bat or any part of the person. A hole or holes that have not been played when a match has finished are called a *bye* in golf. A *leg-bye* (*n.*) is a run scored as a result of the ball when bowled hitting the batsman's leg.

From E. *by*, (*adv.*).

*bye-law* (*bī' law*), *n.* A law, rule, or regulation made by a public body, such as a town council, or by a company, such as a railway company. (F. *loi locale, règlement.*)

M.E. *bilage, bilawe*, from O. Norse *by-r* village, town (cp. names like Derby), *lōg law*; cp. Dan. Swed. *bilag* association of townsmen. Influenced by *by-* in sense of secondary, as in *by-law*. There was also a word *byrlaw, birley*, meaning local custom for settling disputes.

*byre* (*bir*), *n.* A term, used chiefly in Scotland and the north of England, for a cow-house.

A.-S. *byre*, probably from the same source as E. *bower*.

*Byronic* (*bī ron' ik*), *adj.* Like Lord Byron in character or like his poetry; exaggerated in feeling; theatrical. (F. *byronien.*)

Byron was a man of moods, and was so unrestrained that he would attack violently many things, good as well as bad. He gave himself airs of mysterious gloom and melancholy, and his own romantic personality is easily recognised in all his heroes. Anything expressed after the manner of Byron is *Byronically* (*bī ron' ik āl li, adv.*) expressed. By *Byronism* (*bī' rōn izm, n.*) is meant a

characteristic of Byron or his poetry, or an imitation of either.

The name *Byron* and suffix *-ic* (L. *-icus*) forming adjectives. SYN.: Cynical, moody, passionate.

**byssus** (bis' ūs), *n.* A fine yellowish flax; the linen made from it; the tuft of fibres or bundle of fine silky filaments by which starfish and other molluscs fasten themselves to rocks and other objects; the thread-like stalk of certain fungi which are found on decaying wood and in coal-mines and other dark places. (F. *byssus*.)

Byssus is another name for the "fine linen" often mentioned in the Bible, in which priests, kings, and other important personages of Biblical times were clothed.

The byssus threads of molluscs are secreted in a gland of the foot, and quickly grow again if they are torn or cut away. They are seen in a very simple form in the common eatable mussel, which is always fixed securely to its surroundings (usually a rock) by a bunch of golden threads.

In some bivalves, such as the freshwater mussel, the byssus is only found in the young, never in the older mussels. Byssus threads are mixed with silk and woven into stockings and gloves in the south of Italy and in Sicily.

The word *byssiferous* (bis sif' ēr ūs, *adj.*) means bearing or producing a byssus, and *byssine* (bis' in, *adj.*) means made of fine flax or linen.

L. *byssus*, Gr. *byssos* a fine yellowish flax, later cotton, silk, from a Semitic root *būts* to bewhite.

**byzant** (bi zānt'), This is another spelling of *bezant*. See *bezant*.

**Byzantine** (bi zān' tīn; bi zān' tīn; biz' ān tīn), *adj.* Of or relating to the Later Roman Empire; of or relating to Byzantium. *n.* A ruler or subject of the Later Roman Empire; a native or inhabitant of Byzantium; a *bezant*. Another form, **Byzantian** (bi zān' shiān; bi zān' shiān, *adj.*), is occasionally found. (F. *byzantin*.)

It was on the site of the ancient city of Byzantium that Constantine the Great founded in A.D. 330 his new capital, Constantinople or New Rome, and the term Byzantine came to be used especially to describe the various features of the wonderful civilization that centred in that splendid city. The Byzantine Empire, or, as it is also called, the Later Roman Empire, the Greek Empire, or the Eastern or East-Roman

Empire, lasted from 395 to 1453, when the Turks took Constantinople.

Byzantine architecture is characterized by the semi-circular arch, the dome, and decoration in mosaic. The most notable example of this style is Sancta Sophia, originally erected as a Christian cathedral, and now a handsome mosque. Destroyed several times by fire, it was rebuilt by Justinian in the sixth century. Legend has it that when the emperor first saw the beautiful interior of the church, with its rose-red, green, and black-and-white marble,

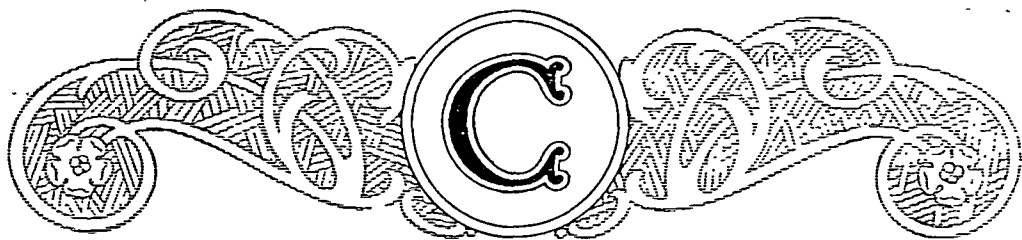


Byzantine.—Embarking for a pleasure-trip at the Golden Horn at the time of the Byzantine Empire, which lasted from 395 to 1453.

he exclaimed: "God be praised, Who hath esteemed me worthy to complete such a work. Solomon, I have surpassed thee!"

What is usually called the Greek Orthodox or Eastern Church is sometimes known as the Byzantine Church. To *Byzantinize* (bi zān' tīn īz; bi zān' tīn īz, *v.t.*) art is to make it Byzantine in character. *Byzantinesque* (bi zān tīn esk'; bi zān tīn esk', *adj.*) as applied to art means in the Byzantine manner, which may be described as *Byzantinism* (bi zān' tīn īzm; bi zān' tīn īzm, *n.*).

L. *Byzantin-us*, from *Byzantium*, and the adjective suffix *-in-us*, E. *-ine*.



**C, c** (sē). The third letter of the English and other alphabets of Latin origin.

The letter *c* has two quite distinct sounds, one a hard guttural like the letter *k*, which is formed in the throat, and the other a sibilant or hissing-sound similar to *s* and *z*. The former of these sounds is uttered in words like can, cat, click, clock, crack, cross, cot, colt, cuté, custom, and the other in words in which the following letter is *e*, *i*, or *y*, such as cease, cemetery, cider, civil, cycle, cypress.

Like *b* and *d*, its immediate neighbours, and a few other letters, it sometimes appears in words without producing any sound effect at all, as, for example, when it precedes *k*, in such words as brick, flick, nick, and also in words like fuchsia, muscle, victuals. Besides the above-mentioned sounds, in certain Anglo-Saxon words *c* had the value of *ch*, as, for example, in *cild*, which in English is child. This value is also found in the words cheap, chull, church (A.-S. *cēap*, *cīele*, *cirice*).

In words which have come from the Greek, *ch* has the guttural sound of *k*, instances being chemist, christen, chromatic, echo, scheme. In words which we have acquired through the French, as charlatan and champagne, it has the sound of *sh*. Sometimes it possesses the sound of the German *ch*, as in the Scottish word loch, and occasionally it is mute, as in yacht.

In music *C* is the first note in the scale of *C* major or *C* minor. The scale of *C* major has no sharps or flats, and on this account is called the natural key. Middle *C* on the piano is a very important note as it is a third below the first line in the treble, and a third above the fifth line in the bass, and is consequently a kind of dividing note between the treble and the bass clefs.

As an abbreviation the letter *c* has many duties to perform. It stands for Christ in

Before Christ (B.C.); for centigrade (the thermometer of Celsius, with freezing point 0° and boiling point 100°); for common metre in hymns; for Conservative in politics; for cloudy in nautical language; for *circa*, meaning about, as *c.* 1427, about the year 1427; for cent, the hundredth part of a dollar, and for centime, the hundredth part of a franc. It is also used with other letters, as C.A. for Chartered Accountant, C.B. for Companion of the Order of the Bath,

C.O.D. cash on delivery, C.U. Cambridge University.

As a symbol it indicates the number one hundred and carbon in chemistry, and the third of the dominical letters; and as a motor-car index-mark it stands for the West Riding of Yorkshire.

The interesting story of how the letter *c* came into the alphabet is related on page x.

**Caaba** (ka' ā bā), *n.* A sacred building at Mecca.

The Caaba, or the Holy of Holies of Islam, is the sacred shrine at Mecca containing the black stone which, according to tradition, was presented by the angel Gabriel to Abraham,

who is reputed to have built the shrine.

Arabic *kaabah* square house.

**cab** [I] (kăb), *n.* A public covered carriage with two or four wheels; the enclosed part of a locomotive which shelters the driver and the fireman from the weather. *v.i.* To travel by cab. (*F. fiacre*.)

The word, derived from the French *cabriolet*, came into use about 1830, soon after these two-wheeled covered vehicles first plied for hire upon the London streets. Later, the four-wheeled conveyance, commonly called a growler, was known by this name. An improved two-wheeled conveyance, introduced later, in which the driver was placed in a high seat at the back of the cab, was called a hansom-cab (*n.*). With the coming of the tax-cab, a four-wheeled



Caaba.—The sacred building at Mecca known as the Caaba containing the stone which, according to legend, was given by Gabriel to Abraham.

motor-car, horse-drawn cabs gradually lost their popularity. The driver of a cab is a **cabman** (*n.*), or in popular language, a **cabby** (*kāb' i, n.*), and a **cab-stand** (*n.*) is a place set apart in the streets in which cabs, awaiting hire, may stand. A man who calls cabs from a **cab-rank** (*n.*), a row of cabs on such a stand, or who follows cabs with the hope of being employed to unload their luggage, is a **cab-runner** (*n.*) or **cab-tout** (*n.*).

**cab** [2] (*kāb*), *n.* A Hebrew dry measure, about three English pints.

Heb. *qab* hollow vessel.

**cabal** (*kā bāl'*), *n.* A small party of persons united for a secret purpose; a clique. *v.i.* To combine with others in order to intrigue. (*F. cabale; cabaler.*)

Until 1671, the word had practically the same meaning as cabinet, but in this year a cabinet was formed including five persons whose initial letters, by a curious chance, made up the word "Cabal." The members—Clifford, Arlington, Buckingham, Ashley, and Lauderdale—became so disliked through their intrigues, that the word was afterwards used only as a term of reproach. In its general sense, cabal is now applied to a group of intriguers working in an underhanded way. In politics, cabals may be formed to discredit a minister, or to secure a change in party leadership. A Prime Minister is sometimes compelled to resign because of a cabal among his supporters which has the effect of seriously weakening his authority. A person who joins such a secret party in order to cabal is a **caballer** (*kā bāl' ēr, n.*).

*F. cabale, L.L. cabala* the cabbala, hence a secret matter. *SYN:* Conspiracy, coterie, faction, league, plot.

**cabala** (*kāb' ā la*), *n.* This is another spelling of cabbala. *See* cabbala.

**caballero** (*ka ba lyar' ō*), *n.* A gentleman; an old Spanish dance.

This is the Spanish word for knight or horseman. The knights of the olden days were not true to their order unless they were courteous, or gentle, therefore a knight was necessarily a gentleman. The dance known as the caballero was a great favourite with the nobility of old Spain.

Span., from *caballo, L. caballus* horse; *cp.* cavalier.

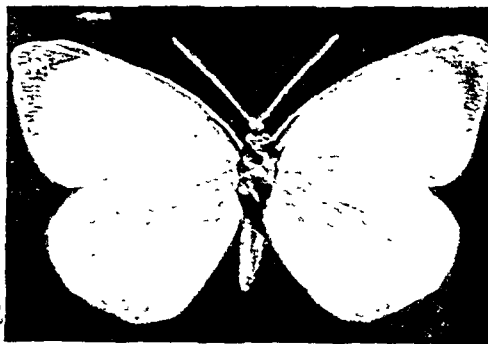
**cabana** (*kā ba' nā*), *n.* A cigar of a certain brand or quality; named after the exporting firm.

**cabaret** (*kāb' ā rā*), *n.* A tavern; a kind of restaurant; an entertainment. (*F. cabaret.*)

Though the word denotes a drinking-house, usually of a low class, it has come to mean any entertainment given while meals or refreshments are being served, or the place where such an entertainment is provided.

*F., of uncertain origin.*

**cabbage** [1] (*kāb' āj*), *n.* A large-leaved garden vegetable, grown for its leaves. (*F. chou.*)



Cabbage-butterfly.—The cabbage-butterfly, so called because it is an enemy of cabbages.

This hardy vegetable, belonging to the order Cruciferae and the genus *Brassica*, is an important food-plant. Besides the common cabbage (*B. oleracea*) there are several other useful vegetables of the same genus which are sometimes known by this name, such as the savoy, broccoli, brussels sprouts, kale, cauliflower, and kohlrabi. The parent of them all seems to be the wild or sea-cabbage, which grows near the sea in England and in some parts of the continent of Europe. The wild plant is very unlike any of its cultivated descendants. The Greeks and Romans ate cabbage both cooked and raw, and thought it to be a cure for headache.

A kind of cabbage which flourishes in Jersey grows to a height of ten feet or more, and has leaf-stalks so thick that walking-sticks are made from them.

Two great enemies of the cabbage are the cabbage-butterfly (*n.*) and the cabbage-moth (*n.*). The first is white, with dark wing-tips, and is one of the commonest of British butterflies. It lays its eggs on the leaves of the plant, which the caterpillars attack as



Cabbage-rose.—The old-fashioned and sweet smelling cabbage-rose, the ancestor of many modern varieties.

soon as they are hatched. The second lays its eggs in the heart of the cabbage, and this is destroyed by the larvæ from these eggs, called cabbage-worms' (*n.pl.*).

The cabbage-palm (*n.*) or cabbage-tree (*n.*), which is found in the West Indies, is so called because the big bud at the top of the plant is like a cabbage, and can be boiled and eaten as a vegetable. The old-fashioned and very sweet cabbage-rose (*n.*) is large and cabbage-like in appearance. It came originally from the Caucasus and is the ancestor of many modern varieties. There is little waste if a cabbage is boiled in a cabbage-net (*n.*), and even the stems or cabbage-stumps (*n.pl.*) may be used as pig-food.

M.E. *caboche*, *cabache* properly the head of the plant (cabbage-cole). F. (Picard dialect) *caboche* great head; cp. Ital. *capoccia*, augmentative from L. *caput* head.

**cabbala** (kāb' ā lā), *n.* A Jewish system of religious philosophy; a mystical doctrine. Another spelling is *cabala*. (F. *cabale*.)

Cabbala is derived from the Hebrew word meaning tradition, that is, teachings handed down. In its original sense it embraced the Jewish scriptures—the first five books of the Old Testament excepted—and the doctrines handed down by word of mouth. At about the beginning of the thirteenth century it came to be used of a system of philosophy said to have been given by God to Adam, but probably introduced at that time by one Isaac the Blind and his disciples.

Cabbalism (kāb' ā lizm, *n.*) has some points in common with Christian doctrine, and it seems to have borrowed also from Greek philosophy. Its teachings are mysterious, and understood only by a cabbalist (kāb' ā list, *n.*), a person skilled in reading its veiled meanings. Therefore, cabbalistic (kāb' ā list' ik, *adj.*) or cabbalistical (kāb' ā list' ik āl, *adj.*) signifies mystic, as in the phrase a cabbalistic sign, and anything said in the manner of the cabbalists is said to be expressed cabbalistically (kāb' ā list' ik āl li, *adv.*).

“L.L.”, from Heb. *qabbālāh* tradition, from *qibbēl* to accept.

**caber** (kā' bër), *n.* A heavy pole used by competitors in the Highland sport of tossing the caber.

The competitor lifts the caber, which is usually about twenty feet in length, into an upright position with the thick end pointing upwards, and raises it till the bottom is about level with his waist. Then, with a strong heave, he throws it from him in such a way

that it shall turn over in the air and come down thick end first. The man who makes the longest throw wins.

Gaelic *cabar* pole, rafter, probably from assumed L.L. *caprio* rafter. See *chevron*.

**cabin** (kāb' in), *n.* A small hut; a temporary dwelling; a room in a ship or aircraft. *v.i.* To dwell in a cabin. *v.t.* To shelter in a cabin; to confine in a small space. (F. *cabane*.)

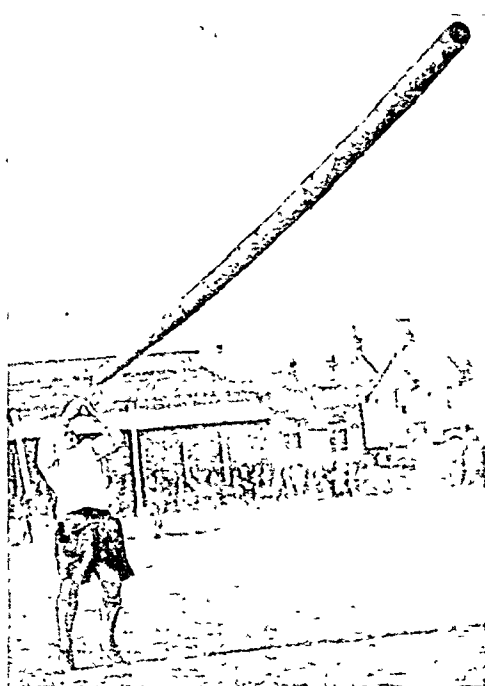
Cabins are used as dwelling places in many undeveloped lands. The pioneers of North America constructed their cabins of logs, stuffing the crevices with moss to keep out the bitter winds. Rooms or cabins in ships are allotted to all ocean travellers, but one who pays for accommodation in the better

part of a ship is called a cabin-passenger (*n.*). There are also special cabins for different officials, such as the captain, the doctor, and the purser. The boy who waits on the passengers in a cabin, or on the officers of a vessel, is known as a cabin-boy (*n.*). During storms passengers are sometimes confined to their cabins, or are cabined by order of the captain, who wishes to keep them in safety.

M.E., F. *cabane*, L.L. *capanna*, *cabanna*.

**cabinet** (kāb' i nèt), *n.* A small room or cabin; a piece of furniture with shelved cupboards or drawers in which to keep curiosities or collections; a council-chamber; a council consisting of the principal members of the British Government. (F. *cabinet*.)

When a ministry resigns, the sovereign calls upon some statesman to become premier, or prime minister, and to form another government. The chosen statesman selects men to be heads of the chief government departments, which together share the work of governing the country, and from among these chief ministers he chooses a number to act with him and counsel him. This council is called the Cabinet, and the



Caber.—In the Highland sport of tossing the caber, the man who makes the longest throw wins, provided that the caber strikes the ground thick end first.

members are Cabinet Ministers (*n. pl.*). At a meeting of the Cabinet for the purpose of consultation, called a Cabinet Council (*n.*), though the sovereign is not present, the prime minister immediately informs him of what takes place at the meeting. Apart from this the proceedings are kept strictly secret; not even an official record being made.

A cabinet edition (*n.*) of a book is one better printed and bound than a popular edition, but inferior to a library edition. A cabinet lock (*n.*) is a small, neatly-made lock suitable for the doors and drawers of cabinets and bureaux.

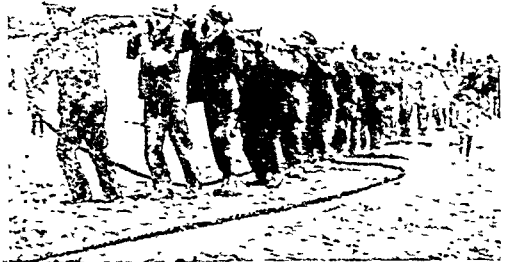
A skilled workman who makes the finer and more expensive kinds of household furniture is called a cabinet-maker (*n.*), and the term is also applied to a prime minister engaged on forming a government. The work done by either kind of cabinet-maker is cabinet-making (*n.*). A photograph measuring six-and-a-half by four-and-a-quarter inches, is called a cabinet photograph (*n.*).

Originally *cabanet*, dim. of M.E. *cabane* cabin, influenced by F. *cabinet*, Ital *gabinetto*, similarly formed.

**cable** (kā'bl), *n.* A thick, strong rope; the rope or chain to which an anchor is fastened; a marine measure of distance; a wire rope; a telegraph line under the sea. *v.t.* and *i.* To tie with a cable; to send a message by cable. F. *câble*; *amarre*, *câbler*.)



Cable.—At work on an ocean telegraph cable. The thickest kind is used on the coast, where damage is most likely.



Cable.—Landing the submarine telephone cable that connects Dumption Gap, Broadstairs, with La Panne, Belgium.

Any rope or wire more than ten inches round may be described as a cable. Every ship has one or more cables by which it is worked in and out of dock and moored to the quayside. Battleships of a fleet, when cruising, keep a certain distance from each other, which is measured by cable lengths, one cable's length being one hundred fathoms or two hundred yards.

The rope or chain attached to an anchor is known as a cable, and this name is also given to a telegraphic line under the sea and a wire rope used for conveying electric lighting or power.

A message sent by cable is called a cablegram (kā'bl grām, *n.*), and nowadays it is possible to cable to almost any part of the globe. News flashed in this way travels from one end of the world to the other in a space of time measured by seconds.

A small cable, a rope less than ten inches round, is sometimes called a cablet (kā'blèt, *n.*), and anything twisted like the strands of a cable may be described as cable-laid (*adj.*). In architecture, the decoration of columns by means of mouldings in the shape of a rope is termed cabling (kā'bling, *n.*).

M.E. *kable*, O.F. *cable*, probably from L.L. *cap(u)lum* halter for holding cattle, from L. *capere* to take hold.

**caboose** (kā boos'), *n.* A kitchen on a merchant ship; a portable cooking-stove; a car on a United States goods train used by the conductor, etc. (F. *cabuse*, *fourgon*.)

Dutch *kabuis*, M. Low G. *kabhüse*, perhaps shortened from Dutch *kaban-huys* cabin-house.

**cabotage** (kāb'ô tāj), *n.* Coasting-trade; navigation along the coast. (F. *cabotage*.)

F., from *caboler* to coast, from Span. *cabo* cape, hence to sail from cape to cape.

**cabriolet** (kāb ri ô lāj'), *n.* A two-wheeled covered carriage, drawn by one horse. (F. *cabriolet*.)

About 1830 the name of this horse vehicle was shortened to cab, which term soon became applied to the four-wheeled carriage as well. See cab.

F., dim. of *cabriole* a caper, leap as of a goat; cp. Ital. *capriola* kid, caper, dim. of Ital., L. *capra* she-goat. See capriole. The cabriolet was so called from its light, springy motion.

**ca' canny.** (ka' kǎn' i), *inter.* Go easily!  
*n.* The policy of taking things easily, especially in industry.

*Sc.* and Northern E. *ca'* call, that is, to drive a horse, and *canny* cannily.

**cacao** (ká kǎ' ô), *n.* A tropical tree from the seeds of which cocoa is prepared. (F. *cacaotier*.)

The cacao is a native of tropical America, where, apparently, it was cultivated long before the discovery of the New World by Columbus. It is now cultivated in the West Indies, Ceylon, West Africa, Mexico, and many other tropical countries. The fruit is pod-shaped, and contains a large number of seeds, buried in the pulp.

In the manufacture of cocoa the seed is separated from the pulp and fermented in barrels, then dried, roasted and skinned. The nibs, as the prepared seeds are called, are then ground and squeezed to extract some of the cacao-butter (*n.*) or natural fat. The powder that remains, called cocoa, if mixed with sugar and heated, becomes chocolate. The scientific name of the cacao tree is *Theobroma cacao*.

Span. from Mexican *caca*.

**cachalot** (kǎsh' á lot; kǎsh' á lô), *n.* A genus of whales having teeth in the lower jaw: the sperm whale. (F. *cachalot*.)

The sperm whale, one of the largest members of the whale family, has for centuries been pursued for its valuable oil and bones. In the heyday of the whale fishing industry eighteen hundred to two thousand whales were killed off the coast of Greenland every year. With the introduction of coal-gas for lighting purposes the demand for sperm-oil grew less, and so the whale fishing industry declined also.

It is the habit of the whales belonging to this genus to associate in large numbers. These schools of whales, as they are termed, sometimes cause damage to ships at sea, and they are to be found both in warm and cold waters.

F., from Gascon dialect *cachalut* probably meaning toothed, from a dialect word *cachau*, *carchal* tooth, grinder.

**cache** (kǎsh), *n.* A hiding-place, especially for provisions; the stores hidden. *v.t.* To store in a hiding-place. (F. *cache*; *cacher*.)

Arctic and other explorers, making a dash for some objective, find it necessary to travel as lightly-burdened as possible, so they hide provisions for the return journey under mounds of stone or in the ground. These

hiding-places are called caches. In 1859, in one such store place, Sir Francis McClintock's expedition discovered the relics and papers which finally settled the fate of the Sir John Franklin Arctic expedition, which had left England in 1845. On the Mount Everest expedition it was found necessary to cache food in order to make the progress of the final stages of the ascent easier by lightening the burden of the climbers.

In the records of Sir Francis Drake's voyage of 1595, allusion is made to the fact that on the approach of the English invaders the inhabitants of the South American towns hid their treasures in caches. Some animals store food in caches.

F. from *cacher* to hide, from L. *coact-us*, p.p. of *cogere* to collect, from *co-* = *cum* with, together, *agere* to drive, carry.

**cachexia** (ká kek' sí á), *n.* A very unhealthy condition of the body or mind. Another form is *cachexy* (ká kek' sí). (F. *cachexie*.)

Such diseases as cancer and tuberculosis cause a wasting of the body and great exhaustion, and, generally speaking, a cachectic (ká kek' tík, *adj.*) condition of the body. Any

very unhealthy condition of things, including mind and even trade, may be described as a cachexy. The words are seldom used.

Modern L., from Gr. *kakhexia*, from *kakos* bad, *hexis* condition, from *chein* to have, be in a condition.

**cachinnate** (kǎk' in át), *v.i.* To laugh loudly or uncontrolledly. (F. *éclater de rire*.)

When a writer asks "Shall our cachinnatory (kǎk' in á tór i, *adj.*) muscles remain rigid?" he means: "Shall we not laugh?" Robert Browning's character in "The Ring and the Book" (iii, 8), who "moved to mirth and cachinnation (kǎk in á' shùn, *n.*) all," was a humorist who made everybody laugh loudly. These words are rarely used.

L. *cachinnāre*, p.p. *cachinnāt-us* an imitative word; cp. Gr. *kakhezein*, E. giggle, cackle

**cacholong** (kǎch' ô long), *n.* The pearl-opal. (F. *cacholong*.)

Instead of glowing with many colours, as the ordinary opal does, the cacholong is usually milk-white, but occasionally greyish or yellowish-white. It sometimes coats that variety of quartz which is called chalcedony, giving it a soft waxen lustre.

Kalmuck *kashchilon*, literally beautiful stone.

**cachou** (ká shoo'), *n.* A sweetmeat made from the cashew-nut and sucked to perfume the breath. (F. *cachou*.)

F. form of *cashew*, *acajout*. See these words.



Cacao.—Workers on a cacao plantation in Trinidad. The seeds from which cocoa is prepared are in the fruit.



**cacique** (kâ sêk'), *n.* A prince or head chief of the native Indians of tropical America. Another spelling is **cazique** (kâ zêk'). (F. *cacique*.)

The **caciques** who visited Columbus, Pizarro, and Cortes were the princes of the Indians who lived in Mexico, Peru, the West Indies, and other parts of Central America. The chiefs of such Indians as remain independent still bear the same title.

Span. from native Haitian.

**cackle** (kâk' l), *n.* The noise made by a hen or goose, especially after an egg has been laid ; silly or idle talk. *v.i.* To make such a noise ; to chatter. (F. *caquet* ; *caqueter*.)

A fowl that cackles, or a person who is continually talking or who is fond of telling tales of little interest, is a **cackler** (kâk' lër, *n.*), and the noise, or what is said, is **cackling** (kâk' ling, *n.*).

M.E. *kakelen*, frequentative and imitative, to keep on making the sound *kak*. cp. G. *gackeln* also E. *gabble*, *gobble*.

**cacodemon** (kâk ô dê' môn), *n.* An evil spirit or person, a nightmare. (F. *démon*, *cauchemar*.)

When Queen Margaret, in Shakespeare's "King Richard III" (i, 3), called Gloucester a **cacodemon** she meant he was a very evil person. **Cacodemonic** (kâk ô dê mon' ik, *adj.*) powers are the powers of evil. Those distressing dreams called nightmares were formerly called **cacodemons**, as though they were caused by evil spirits. These words are seldom used now.

Gr. *kakodaimôn*, from *kakos* bad and *daimôn* a supernatural being, deity. See **demon**.

**cacodyl** (kâk' ô dil), *n.* An evil-smelling compound of arsenic, carbon, and hydrogen.

Not only has **cacodyl** a disgustingly offensive odour, but its vapour is poisonous and takes fire in air. **Cacodylic** (kâk ô dil' ik, *adj.*) acid, or alkargen, obtained from it, has no smell and is not poisonous.

Gr. *kakôdes* stinking, from *kakos* bad and root *od-* smell, and chemical suffix *-yl*, from Gr. *hylê* matter.

**cacography** (kâk og' ra fi), *n.* Incorrect spelling ; bad handwriting. (F. *cacographie*.)

A letter or other manuscript may be **cacographical** (kâk ô grâf' ik âl, *adj.*) in either or both of two ways. It may contain wrongly spelt words, or it may be so badly written that it is very difficult to read it. **Cacography**, therefore, is the opposite of both orthography, or correct spelling, and calligraphy, or good handwriting. These words are rarely used.

Mediaeval Gr. *kakographia*, from *kakos* bad *graphein* to write.

**cacolet** (kâk ô let), *n.* A litter for carrying sick or wounded people. (F. *cacolet*.)

The **cacolet** is a litter in the form of two chairs slung on either side of a mule or horse and it was first used in the Pyrenees for carrying tourists over the mountains. The French were the first to adopt it for a

military purpose, during the Crimean War (1854-55).

F., from the dialect of Bearn in the Pyrenees.

**cacology** (kâ kol' ô ji), *n.* The wrong use or bad choice of words ; bad pronunciation.

A certain shop-keeper is said to have "debated with his customers, and pretended to correct their **cacology**, provincialisms, and other defects" of speech. Such **cacological** (kâk ô loj' ik âl, *adj.*) defects were either a wrong use of words or a wrong pronunciation of words.

Gr. *kakologia* evil speaking, from *kakos* bad, *logos* speech.

**cacoon** (kâ koon'), *n.* A climbing plant found in tropical America ; a seed of this plant.

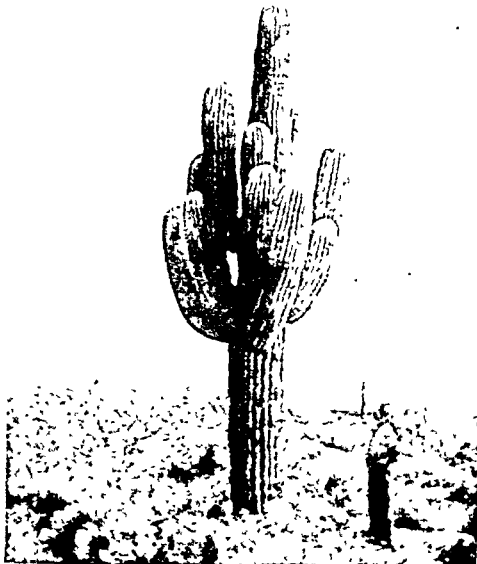
The **cacoon** is a kind of bean which bears pods of great length. The pods, sometimes eight feet in length, are jointed, and each joint contains a brown, hard, shiny seed. The seeds, mostly used to make snuff-boxes, spoons, and other small articles, are used by the negroes of Jamaica to cure various complaints. They are also employed as an antidote for certain poisons.

Perhaps an African word.

**cacophony** (kâ kof' ô ni), *n.* A harsh, discordant noise. (F. *cacophonie*.)

In music a **cacophony** is a discord, therefore **cacophonous** (kâ kof' ô nus, *adj.*) music is a piece full of discords.

Gr. *kakophōnia*, from *kakos* bad, *phōnê* voice, sound.



Cactus.—A giant cactus of Central America. Some cacti, most of which produce no leaves, grow to a height of sixty feet.

**cactus** (kâk' tûs), *n.* An order of fleshy, prickly plants, found in hot, dry regions. *pl. cacti* (kâk' ti). (F. *cactus*.)

Nearly all the many kinds of cactus are natives of tropical America. Most of them are leafless, but some bear large and brilliant flowers. In height they range from a few inches to as much as sixty feet. These strangely-shaped, spiky plants manage not only to live in the most arid places, but to store up large quantities of water, which many a time has saved the lives of men and animals. There are several species of cactal (kāk' tál, *adj.*) or cactoid (kāk' toid, *adj.*) plants; that is, plants in some way like the cactus, and such plants are also said to be cactaceous (kāk tā' shūs, *adj.*).

*L. cactus*, Gr. *kaktos* cardoon, an entirely different plant. The modern use is due to Linnaeus.

**cad** (kād), *n.* A person guilty of unmannerly conduct. (*F. canaille.*)

The term was once applied to a man who did odd jobs, and to the conductor of an omnibus, but it has now lost such meanings, and refers only to one who acts in an ungentlemanly or caddish (kād' ish, *adj.*) manner.

A shortened form of *caddie*.

**cadaverous** (kā dāv' ér ūs), *adj.* Corpse-like; pale; ghastly. (*F. cadavéreux.*)

Ill-health is usually the cause of a person looking cadaverously (kā dāv' ér ūs li, *adv.*) pale, and such a person is in a state of cadaverousness (kā dāv' ér ūs nēs, *n.*). Cadaveric (kā dāv' ér ik, *adj.*) is a technical term relating to a corpse.

*L. cadāverōs-us* (*adj.*), from *cadāver* corpse, from *cadere* to fall. *SYN.*: Ashy, bloodless, pale, pallid, wan.

**caddice** (kād' is), *n.* This is another spelling of caddis. See caddis.

**caddie** (kād' i), *n.* A person employed by a golfer to carry clubs and do other small services. Another spelling is *cadie*.

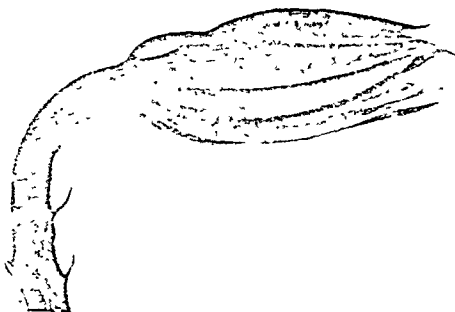
Formerly this Scottish term was applied to a messenger-boy or to a man who did odd jobs, but now it denotes a boy, man, or girl who attends a golfer during his play. The chief duties of a caddie are to carry the player's clubs and to tee up the ball for him. A caddie may offer advice to his employer as to how he should play a ball, a privilege denied to any other person watching the game.

Originally an army cadet, also called *cadee*. *F. cadet.*

**caddis** (kād' is), *n.* The larva of the May-fly and other insects of the genus *Phryganea*. Another spelling is *caddice*.

This larva, sometimes called a caddis-worm (*n.*) builds itself a tube-like dwelling, or caddis-case (*n.*) composed of sand, bits of reed, wood, and stone, etc., and lives therein, under water, well protected by its armour from the attentions of hungry fish. After passing into the pupa stage it finally emerges from the water a perfect May-fly or caddis-fly (*n.*).

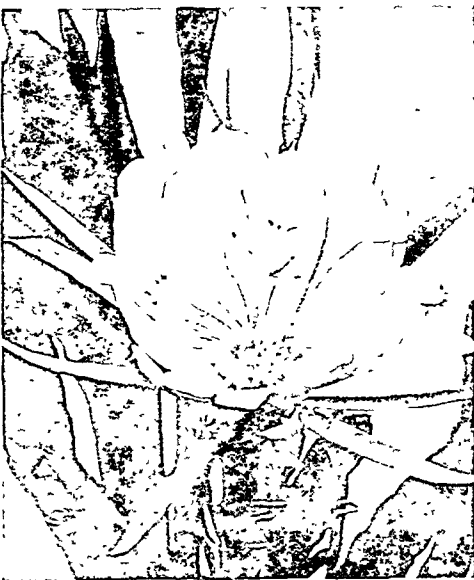
Formerly also *cad*, *cad-worm*, *cod-bait*, *caddy* etc



Cactus.—The night-flowering cactus is one of the most interesting varieties of this kind of plant. Here it is just about to open.



In this picture the same cactus, photographed one minute after the above, is shown with the bloom about to make its appearance.



Finally, after an interval of only two and a half minutes from the time of taking the first of this series of photographs, we see this night-flowering cactus in full flower.

**caddy** (kād' i), *n.* A small wooden box or tin in which tea is kept. (*F. boîte à thé.*)

In days when tea and sugar were dearer than they are now, the **caddy-box** (*n.*) was a common sight. This had two caddies in it, separated by a space for the sugar-bowl, and it was kept locked.

Malay *kati* a weight of one and one-fifth pound. *See catty.*

**cadence** (kā' dēns), *n.* The lowering of the voice at the end of a sentence; modulation of the voice; rhythm in speaking, music, or movement; the end of a movement in music. *v.t.* To compose in a rhythmic form. (*F. cadence; cadencer.*)

The marching of a body of troops to music is **cadenced** (kā' dēnst, *adj.*) by the beat of their feet. In heraldry, **cadency** (kā' dēn-si, *n.*) deals with the symbols borne on the shields of the younger members and branches of a family, to distinguish them from the shield of the head of the house, so the word has come to mean descent from a younger branch. In astronomy, the moon is said to be **cadent** (kā' dēnt, *adj.*) when it is going down or setting, and a piece of rhythmical music may also be described as cadent.

A **cadenza** (ka dent' sà, *n.*) is a brilliant passage in a piece of music, which may be interpreted as the player wishes as regards time. Such passages are usually shown in small notes on the score, and occur at the end of a movement or between two parts of a movement. Sometimes the performer introduces his own version, but, in any case, while the **cadenza** lasts, the orchestral, or other accompaniment, ceases, leaving the soloist to exhibit his skill by himself.

*F. cadence, Ital. cadenza, L.L. cadentia* a falling, from *L. cadere* to fall.

**cadet** (kā det'), *n.* A younger son; a boy or young man training for a commission in the naval, military, or air service. (*F. cadet.*)

The younger son of a family is called a **cadet**. A naval cadet is trained for four years at the Royal Naval College, Dartmouth, then, after passing an examination, he is transferred to a training ship, where he remains for about eight months. A military cadet is trained at the Royal Military Academy, Woolwich, or the Royal Military College, Sandhurst, or the Royal Air Force College, Cranwell. The position held by a cadet is a **cadetship** (kā det' ship, *n.*).

*F., from Gascon dialect capdet, L.L. capitillum* little (younger) head, dim. of *L. caput* head.

**cadge** (kāj), *v.t.* To obtain by begging. *v.i.* To beg in a mean manner. (*F. achalander.*)

A person who begs in a mean, artful manner is a **cadger** (kāj' ēr, *n.*). This word also denotes a man who goes about the country collecting eggs and other farm produce to sell in town. A person who invites himself to his friends' meals may soon find himself regarded as a cadger.

*M.E. caggen* to bind or tie, later to carry as a pedlar's pack. Perhaps a form of *catch*.

**cadi** (ka' di; kā' di), *n.* A judge under the Mohammedan system of law. (*F. cadi.*)

A **cadi** will be found in almost every Turkish, Arab, or Persian town or village. He is both a magistrate and a religious teacher, since Mohammedan law is based upon the Koran, the sacred book of Mohammed.

Arabic *qādī*, from *qada* to judge.

**cadie** (kād' i), *n.* This is another spelling of **caddie**. *See caddie.*

**Cadmean** (kād mē' ān), *adj.* Of or belonging to Cadmus, the legendary founder of Thebes, in Greece. (*F. cadméen.*)

According to the legend, Cadmus, the son of Agenor, king of Phoenicia, founded the city of Thebes, and, after killing a great dragon, which he encountered, he was instructed by the goddess Athena to sow the dragon's teeth. This he did, and immediately there sprang up an armed host of men. Cadmus, by throwing a stone among them, caused them to fight with each other until only five were left. Hence the term a **Cadmean victory** (*n.*), for a victory which injures the winner almost as much as the vanquished.

*L. Cadmus, Gr. Kadmeios* (*adj.*), from *Kadmos* Cadmus, *E. adj. suffix -an.*

**cadmium** (kād' mī ūm), *n.* A soft bluish-white metal, somewhat like tin. (*F. cadmium.*)

Cadmium is not found in a pure state, and most of the metal is extracted from the zinc ores mined in the U.S.A., Bohemia, and Belgium. Mixed with tin and lead it forms an alloy that melts at a very low heat. A brilliant yellow pigment called **cadmium-yellow** (*n.*) is made from the combination of sulphur and cadmium named **cadmium sulphide**. A **cadmiferous** (kād mif' ēr ūs,



Cadet.—Winchester cadets taking part in a field day of the Officers' Training Corps.

*adj.*) or *cadmic*· (kăd' mik, *adj.*) substance has cadmium in it.

Modern L., from L. *cadmia*, Gr. *kadmēia* (gē) Cadmean earth, calamine, from Thebes in Boeotia, the city of Cadmus (see Cadmean); chemical suffix *-ium*, used in names of elements.

**cadre** (ka'dr), *n.* A framework; the permanent skeleton of a regiment. (F. *cadre*.)

A military cadre consists of officers and non-commissioned officers, the most important members of a regiment, and perhaps a few privates. When necessary, the regiment is filled up by enlisting men. A cadre may be compared with the "nucleus" crew on some warships in times of peace.

F., from Ital. *quadro*, L. *quadrū* square.

**caduceus** (kā dū' sē ūs), *n.* The winged staff of the Roman god Mercury. (F. *caducée*.)

Heralds carried *caducei* (kā dū' sē ī, *n. pl.*) in ancient times as symbols of peace, just as we carry a white flag of truce to-day. Mercury's caduceus, which showed him to be the messenger of the gods, was a rod with two serpents turned round it and sometimes a pair of wings at the top. A staff of this kind is a *caducean* (kā dū' sē ān, *adj.*) staff.

L. *cadūceus*, Doric Gr. *kārykeion*, properly neut. *adj.* from *kāryx* (acc. *kārykh-a*)=Attic Gr. *kēryx* herald.

**caducous** (kā dū' kūs), *adj.* Falling or dropping off, especially at an early stage of growth. (F. *caduc*.)

The sepals of the poppy are caducous; they fall off before the flower opens. The gills of salamanders fall off at certain stages; they, too, are caducous. Such objects may be said to possess the property of *caducity* (kā dū' si ti, *n.*), but this word is seldom used.

L. *cadūcus*, from *cadere* to fall, and E. suffix *-ous*.

**caecum** (sē kūm), *n.* The blind gut near the point where the large and small intestines meet; any tube with one end closed. (F. *caecum*.)

The part of the large intestine between the place where the small intestine enters it and its upper end is the caecum. It is a kind of blind-alley, in which a smaller blind alley, the appendix, ends. Fishes have a large number of caeca (sē' kā, *n. pl.*).

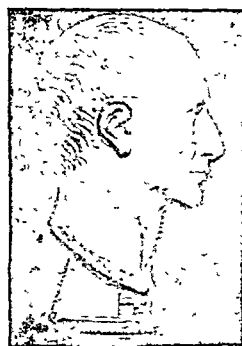
L. neuter of *caecus* blind.

**Caen stone** (kā' ēn stōn; kan' stōn), *n.* A pale creamy-yellow limestone from Caen, in Normandy. (F. *la pierre de Caen*.)

This stone is very soft when first quarried, but hardens with exposure to air, and, being easily cut and carved, is much used for building. It is found in many English churches built during the fifteenth and sixteenth centuries.

**Caesar** (sē' zār), *n.* The family name of the Roman dictator, Julius Caesar; the title of the Roman emperors from Augustus to Hadrian; the title of the heir presumptive of the Roman emperors; an absolute monarch; an emperor; the civil power. (F. *César*.)

The great Julius Caesar was not an emperor himself, but his great nephew, Augustus, the first Roman emperor, took the name as part of his title, as did other emperors after him. The word, in a changed form, appears in the German Kaiser and the Russian Tsar.



Caesar.—Julius Caesar, whose surname became a title.

**Caesarian** or **Caesarean** (sē zār' i ān, *adj.*) means of or relating to Caesar and so imperial, and a **Caesarian** (*n.*) or a **Caesarist** (sē' zār ist, *n.*) one who is a supporter of a Caesar or of autocratic government. Such a

system of government is called **Caesarism** (sē' zār izm, *n.*).

**caesious** (sē' ze ūs), *adj.* Of a bluish-grey colour. (F. *bleuâtre*.)

In 1860 the German chemist, R. W. von Bunsen (1811-99), discovered a soft metal, one of the elements, and very like potassium. To it he gave the name of **caesium** (sē zi ūm, *n.*). His reason for doing this was that its spectrum showed bluish-grey lines.

L. *caesius* bluish-grey, E. *adj.* suffix *-ous*.

**caestus** (sēs' tūs). This is another spelling of *cestus*. See *cestus*.

**caesura** (sē zūr' ā; sē sūr' ā), *n.* A pause at about the middle of a line of verse; the dividing of a metrical foot between two words, especially at certain places near the middle of a line. (F. *césure*.)

A **caesural** (sē zūr' āl; sē sūr' āl, *adj.*) point in a line is where one would naturally pause for breath, as in:

Full many a gem // of purest ray serene

The dark unfathomed // caves of ocean bear. But there may be several caesuras in one line.

In Latin and Greek verse the caesura divides a foot into two parts. Here is what is called a hexameter broken up into feet by single upright lines:

Sorrow and / silence are / strong /; and / patient en / durance is / godlike.

The caesura (shown by the double lines) comes in the middle of the third foot.

L. *caesūra*, verbal *n.* from *cadere* (p. p. *caes-us*) to cut.

**café** (kăf' ā), *n.* A coffee-house; a restaurant. (F. *café*.)

The word comes from France, where much coffee, but comparatively little tea, is drunk. In England, where tea is of much greater importance, a *café* is much the same as a tea-shop. A *café-chantant* (kăf' ā shan' tan, *n.*), or "singing *café*," is a music-hall and restaurant combined, the customers being entertained by turns on a stage.

Coffee with milk in it is *café au lait* (kăf ā ō lă', *n.*); coffee without milk is *café noir*

(kăf ā nwawr, *n.*) or black coffee. Any substance derived from coffee is *cafféine* (kă fē' ik, *adj.*).

F. *caffé* coffee. See coffee.



Café.—An open-air café in France, from which country we obtained the word, which means coffee.

**cafféine** (kăf' e in), *n.* A white, bitter substance extracted from coffee or tea. (F. *cafféine*.)

The cheering effect of coffee and tea is due to this substance, which is, as a rule, got from tea, since tea contains a larger proportion of it. Caffeine is used in medicine to stimulate the heart and for other purposes.

F. *cafféine*, from *caffé* coffee, and chemical suffix *-ine*.

**Caffre** (kaf' r). This is another form of Kafir. (See Kafir.)

**caftan** (kăf' tăn; kăf tan'), *n.* A tunic with wide, loose sleeves and a girdle at the waist, worn in the East. (F. *caftan*.)

The caftan is very similar to the Japanese kimono.

Turkish *qaflân*.

**cage** (kăj), *n.* An enclosure formed partly by wires, wickerwork, or iron bars, for keeping birds or animals in; a prison; a lift-chamber in a mining or other shaft; an outer framework of timber; a part which holds the balls or rollers of a bearing in place. *v.t.* To shut up in or as if in a cage. (F. *cage*; *encager*.)

Formerly cages were commonly used for exposing prisoners in. Alexander the Great is said to have kept the historian Callisthenes in a cage for seven months for refusing to believe him to be divine.

A lift cage runs in guides, and is provided with safety devices to check it if the rope should break. Some mine cages move at a speed of thirty miles an hour.

A *caçeling* (kăj' ling, *n.*) is a bird kept in a cage.

F. *cage*, L. *cavea* (in L.L. pronounced *cavja*), from *cavus* hollow.

**caiman** (kă' măn). This is another spelling of cayman. See cayman.

**Cain** (kăn), *n.* One who murders a brother. (F. *Cain*.)

Cain has always been regarded with horror for his cold-blooded murder of his brother Abel, as told in the fourth chapter of Genesis.

In the second century A.D. arose a sect who approved of the bad characters in the Bible and worshipped evil. A follower of this creed was known as a *Cainite* (kăn' it, *n.*).

**Cainozoic** (kī nō zō' ik; kă nō zō' ik), *adj.* Of or relating to the most recent geological era or division.

Geologists measure time by the age of the rocks, classifying the various formations of the earth's crust in a number of divisions. The Cainozoic includes the formation of the Tertiary period, as well as such deposits as flats which adjoin the estuaries of rivers and are still being formed.

In Britain these formations are above the chalk, and include London clay, boulder-clay, glacial drift, etc.



Cage.—A mine cage which is worked by electricity and travels at the rate of fifteen feet a second.

**caïque** (kă êk'), *n.* A light rowing boat used by the Turks; a small sailing vessel of the Levant. (F. *caïque*.)

F., from Turkish *kaik* boat.

**caird** (kard), *n.* Scottish term for a travelling tinker; a tramp. (F. *drouineur*, *vagabond*.)

Gaelic *ceard* metal-worker, from O. Irish *ceard* craftsman, artist, from *ceard* (Welsh *cerdd*) art.

**cairn** (kärn), *n.* A pile of stones raised as a landmark or over a grave. (F. *cairn*.)

The ancient grave-cairns, made long before

the days of history, are huge mounds of loose stones, enclosing one or more burial chambers and a passage in from the outside. In these cairns were laid the bodies of the members of a family or tribe, along with weapons, ornaments, and pottery.

The cairn thus served the same purpose as an Egyptian pyramid, which it resembled roughly in shape and construction.

Gaelic (also Irish, Welsh, Breton) *carn* heap of stones.

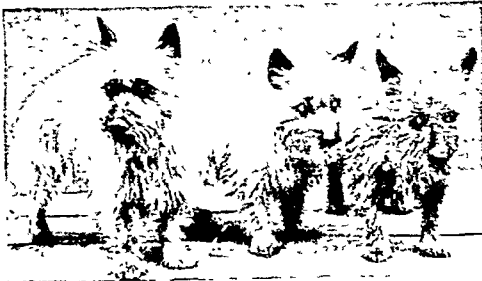
**cairngorm** (kärn görm'), *n.* A brown or yellow stone, used in Scotland for jewellery. (F. *quartz enfumé*.)

This substance is a kind of quartz, named after the peak of the Grampians where it was first found. Other deposits have since been found in the island of Arran, and in Ireland, Switzerland, and Colorado, U.S.A.

Gaelic *carn* cairn, *gorm* blue.

**Cairn terrier** (kärn ter' i ér), *n.* The original terrier of Scotland.

This shaggy and friendly dog is also the smallest terrier in Great Britain. The legs are fairly straight, the feet are turned outwards, and the head reminds one somewhat of a fox. In colour the Cairn terrier is usually reddish or wheaten.

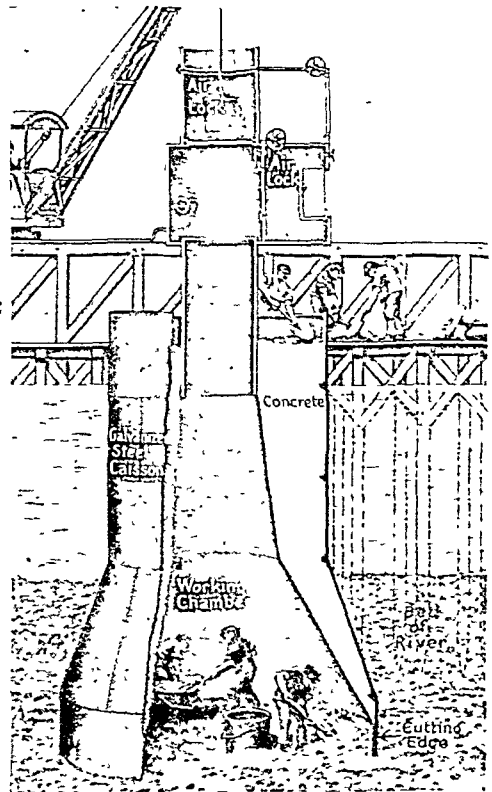


Cairn terrier.—The shaggy Cairn terrier is the native terrier of Scotland.

**caisson** (käs' ön; kã soon'), *n.* An ammunition wagon; a floating chamber to close a dock's entrance; a water-tight chamber used for sinking the foundations of bridge piers, tall buildings, etc.; a deep panel in a ceiling. (F. *caisson*, *tour de cuvelage*.)

The caisson used by engineers is a square or circular structure of steel without a bottom. It is floated into position and sunk where needed. The ground inside is dug away, and the caisson sinks by its own weight. When it has reached the depth needed it is filled in level with concrete. If water cannot be kept out of it in any other way the top is covered in and compressed air is used. The caisson then becomes a pneumatic caisson.

The Forth Bridge rests on twelve huge caissons, about seventy feet across; the Singer Building, New York, on thirty-four caissons, two hundred feet deep, carried down to solid rock. The last were started on the



Caisson.—The interior of a caisson, showing the men within it at work on the bed of a river and others above filling-in with concrete.

surface and added to at the top as they sank.

F., from *caisse* chest, L. *capsa* box, from *capere* to hold, with suffix *-on* (cp. E. *-oon*) denoting large size.

**cajole** (kã jöl'), *v.t.* To persuade or deceive by fair words or flattery. (F. *cajoler*.)

A cajoler (kã jöl' ér, *n.*) is a flatterer or deceiver, one who uses *cajology* (kã jöl' er i, *n.*) or *cajolement* (kã jöl' mënt, *n.*). He attains his end by speaking cajolingly (kã jöl' ing li, *adv.*), that is, in a coaxing way.

F. *cajoler* to chatter like a jay, to cajole; perhaps imitative; cp. *cackle*. SYN.: Beguile, coax, inveigle, wheedle.

**cajuput** (kãj' ü püt), *n.* An East Indian tree belonging to the myrtle family.

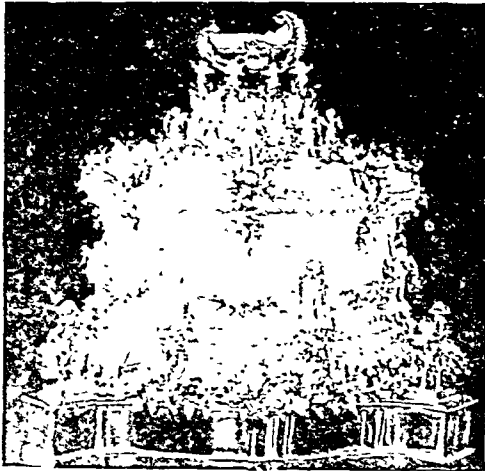
From the leaves of the cajuput (*Melaleuca minor* or *M. cajuputi*) is obtained a green aromatic oil, used as a stimulant and otherwise in medicine.

Malay *käyu-pütih*, from *käyu* wood, *pütih* white.

**cake** (kãk), *n.* A mixture of flour and other materials baked in a tin; the same, rolled out flat and baked; a flat mass or lump of eatable or other material. *v.t.* To form into a hard mass. *v.i.* To take the shape of a cake; to harden into lumps. (F. *gâteau*, *croûte*; *coller*; *se cailler*.)

Ground when dug cakes, and so does mud on shoes or clothes. Anything which has the shape, nature, or quality of a cake, or which hardens easily into lumps is caky (*kāk' i, adj.*).

Probably O. Norse (late) *haka*; from the same root as provincial E. *cookie*, G. *kuchen*: cake, but not E. *cook*.



Cake. The cake made for the celebration of the christening of Princess Elizabeth, daughter of the Duke and Duchess of York.

**calabash** (*kāl' ā bāsh*), *n.* A kind of gourd; a bowl, pot, or other vessel made out of the hard rind of a gourd or similar fruit. (F. *calebasse*.)

The calabash tree is a native of West Africa, tropical America, and the West Indies. The fruit contains a soft pulp, which is scooped out, and the hard shell serves as a cup or other utensil. In India the fruit of the bottle-gourd is used for the same purpose, and in Africa calabashes are made from the fruit of the baobab tree.

A calabash-pipe (*n.*) is one in which a small calabash is used for the bowl.

F. *calebasse*, through Span and Arabic from Pers *kharbuza* melon, from *khar* ass (hence large, coarse) and *buzā* fragrant fruit.

**calaber** (*kāl' ā ber*), *n.* The fur of the Siberian squirrel. Another spelling is *calabar* (*kāl' ā bār*).

M.E. *Calabre* a foreign fur, properly Calabrian. **caladium** (*kā lā' dī ūm*), *n.* A genus of plants belonging to the arum family.

These plants are natives of tropical America. Some of them are grown in our greenhouses for their foliage. The leaves of one species (*Caladium sagittifolium*) are cooked and eaten, as are the thick starchy roots of this and several other species.

Modern L., from Malay *kaliady*.

**calamanco** (*kāl ā māng' kō*), *n.* An old-fashioned woollen fabric, made in Flanders. (F. *calamandé*.)

This material had a glossy surface and showed a chequered pattern on one side. Garments made of it, called calamancoes

(*kāl ā māng' kōz, n. pl.*), were fashionable in the eighteenth century.

**calamander** (*kāl ā mǎn' dēr*), *n.* A kind of ebony obtained from a tree growing in south-eastern India and Ceylon.

The wood is of a rich brown colour, striped and mottled with black. Its hardness and closeness of grain, added to its great beauty, make it very valuable for veneering furniture. It has now become very scarce.

Perhaps from Cingalese *kalumadiriya*.

**calamary** (*kāl' ā mā ri*), *n.* A name for the squid. (F. *calmar*.)

Some creatures, such as moths, conceal themselves by resting on objects which they resemble in colour and markings, but the calamary hides itself by colouring the water around it with a kind of ink. As well as using ink, it also has a cone-like structure inside it called a pen. The scientific name of the common calamary is *Loligo Foibesii*.

L. *calamāri-us* (adj.), from *calamus* pen; suffix *-ārius* relating to.

**calamine** (*kāl' ā mīn*), *n.* The name given to two kinds of zinc ore; zinc spar. (F. *calamine*.)

Calamine is found at Alston Moor, Cumberland, and Wanlockhead, Dumfriesshire, and in Belgium and Silesia. One form is the carbonate of zinc; the other is the silicate, also called smithsonite. Calamine is yellow, pink, brown, green, or blue in colour, and it contains a small proportion of the metal cadmium.

L.L. *calamina*, probably a corruption of L. *cadmita*, Gr. *kadmēia*. See cadmium.

**calamint** (*kāl' ā mint*), *n.* A genus of aromatic labiate plants. (F. *calament*.)

Of these fragrant herbs there are three British species: the common calamint (*Calamintha officinalis*); the field calamint (*C. Acanthos*), sometimes called horse-thyme, basil-thyme, and field-basil; and the hedge calamint (*C. clinopodium*), also called wild basil. The calamints have been used for making herb-tea.

L. *calaminthē*, Gr. *kalaminthē*, perhaps from *kalos* beautiful, *minthē* mint.

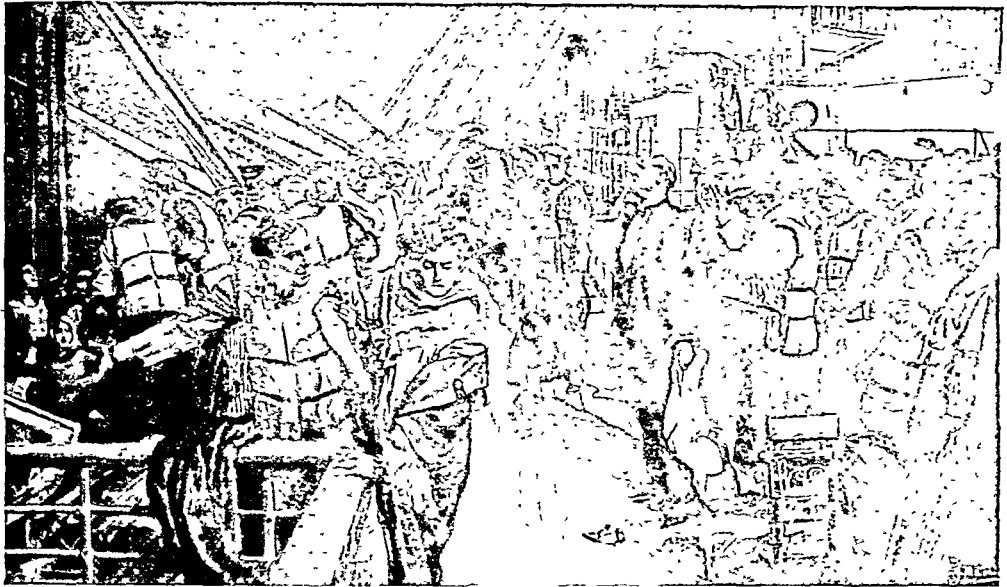
**calamity** (*kā lām' i ti*), *n.* A great misfortune. (F. *calamité*.)

The destruction caused by the flooding of a great river like the Mississippi, or by a severe earthquake, or by the burning of a town is calamitous (*kā lām' i tūs, adj.*), for it brings utter ruin to many. The World War (1914-18) was calamitously (*kā lām' i tūs li, adv.*) costly in human lives, and its calamitousness (*kā lām' i tūs nēs, n.*), or distressing effect, is still felt.

F. *calamité*, from L. *calamitas* (acc. *calamitāt-em*), from an assumed adj. *calamūs* injured, whence *incalamūs* uninjured. Sys.: Adversity, affliction, catastrophe, disaster, visitation.

**calando** (*kā lan' dō*), *adv.* and *adj.* Growing fainter and slower.

In musical compositions that end in a subdued and dreamy manner, such as lullabies, in approaching the final bars the



Calamity.—One of the most tragic calamities at sea was that which befell the "Titanic," an Atlantic liner of forty-five thousand tons, which struck an iceberg and sank on her first voyage on April 14th, 1912.

direction calando is often given. This means that the music gradually slackens in time and lessens in volume, giving an impression of peacefulness and rest, or of the mind being overcome by the influence of sleep.

Ital., from *calare* to slacken, descend, L. *chalāre*, Gr. *khalān* to let down.

**calash** (kā lāsh'), *n.* A light two-wheeled or four-wheeled carriage with a folding hood; a folding hood for a vehicle; an old-fashioned head-dress worn by women, which could be drawn forward or thrown back like a carriage-hood, hence the name. (F. *calèche*).

F. *calèche*, G. *kalesche*, Polish or Rus. *kolaska*, from Polish *kolo*, Rus. *koleso* wheel.

**calc-** A geological prefix meaning lime.

Water containing carbonic acid gas is able to dissolve lime from rocks as it passes through them. The gas and lime form carbonate of lime. This substance is deposited on things over which the water flows.

In its close, hard form the deposit is called calc-sinter (*n.*), and in a looser, porous form it has the name of calc-tuff (*n.*) or calcareous tufa. In yet a third form carbonate of lime is crystalline, and is known as calc-spar (*n.*), calcareous spar, calcite, and aragonite.

L. *calx* (acc. *calc-em*) lime

**calcaneum** (kāl kā' nē ūm), *n.* The heel-bone. (F. *calcaneum*.)

The arch of the foot consists of a number of bones, the calcaneum being that which forms the heel. To it calcaneal (kāl kā' nē āl, *adj.*) ligaments are attached.

L. (os) *calcāneum* (bone) of the heel, *calcaneus* (*adj.*), from *calx* (acc. *calc-em*) heel.

**calcar** [1] (kāl' kar), *n.* A furnace used for melting down and partly decomposing the materials used in glass-making.

A calcar is what is called a reverberatory furnace, that is, it is one in which the flames pass over the material to be melted. It is not now employed, as melting-pots have taken its place.

Ital. *calcara*, L. *calcāria* lime-kiln, properly fem. sing. of *adj. calcārius* from *calx* (acc. *calc-em*) lime.

**calcar** [2] (kāl' kar), *n.* A tiny hollow tube at the bottom of the petal of a flower; a small spur or projection, such as that on the first joint of a bat's wing.

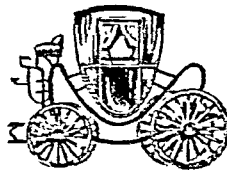
A flower or part of a flower which has calcars on it is **calcarate** (kāl' kā rāt, *adj.*).

L. *calcar* spur, from *calx* (acc. *calc-em*) heel.

**calcareous** (kāl kār' ē ūs), *adj.* Containing lime or relating to limestone. Another but less usual spelling is *calcarious*. (F. *calcaire*.)

Most calcareous rocks, such as chalk and limestone, were built up by coral polyps and other soft-bodied creatures out of the lime-salts of the water in which they lived long ages ago. The shells of birds' eggs are calcareous, for they contain much lime. They owe the hardness of their condition to their calcareousness (kāl kār' ē ūs nēs, *n.*). Bones are also calcareously (kāl kār' ē ūs lī, *adv.*) hardened.

Some waters are so calcareous that when they evaporate they deposit a somewhat soft porous rock called calcareous-tufa (*n.*). Contrasted with this are calcareous-spar (*n.*),



Calash.—A light four-wheeled calash.



a much harder crystalline limestone, such as Iceland spar, and the beautiful yellow and other spars found in Derbyshire.

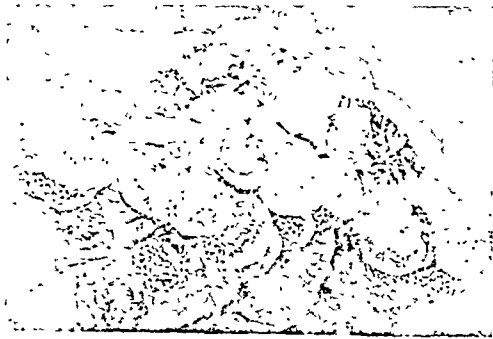
*L. calcāri-us* relating to lime, from *calx* (acc. *calc-em*) lime, and *E.* adj. suffix *-ous*.

**calcedony** (kāl sed' ó nī; kāl sē' dó nī). This is another spelling of chalcedony. See chalcedony.

**calceolaria** (kāl se ó lār' i à), *n.* A genus of South American plants belonging to the figwort family. (*F. calceolai.e.*)

The calceolarias, slipper-plants or slipper-woods, owe their names to the shape of the flowers, which are rather like very broad, blunt-toed slippers or shoes. Some of them are cultivated in our gardens for their showy calceolate (kāl' se ó lāt, *adj.*) or slipper-shaped flowers.

Modern *L.*, from *L. calceolus* slipper, dim. of *calceus* shoe, from *calx* (acc. *calc-em*) heel, and botanical suffix *-aria*.



Calceolaria.—The calceolaria is grown for its showy calceolate or slipper-shaped flowers.

**calcic** (kāl' sík), *adj.* Of, relating to, or containing lime.

The basis of lime is a light yellow metal, hard as gold and ductile, that is, easily worked. It is known to chemists as calcium (*see under calcite*). Calcic compounds contain calcium, an example being chloride of lime.

The bones of our bodies are largely calcic; they contain calcium phosphate and calcium carbonate, which are limes. Indeed, bone is about two-thirds lime, and so it is a calcic or calciferous (kāl síf' er ús, *adj.*) substance. A substance that occurs in the shape of lime or chalk is a calciform (kāl' sí form, *adj.*) substance.

To calcify (kāl' sí fī, *v.t.*) a thing is to turn it into stone by the gradual depositing on it of lime, and when a thing turns into stone like this, it is said to calcify (*v.i.*). It has become a calcific (kāl síf' ík, *adj.*) substance, and has undergone the process of calcification (kāl sí fī ká' shún, *n.*).

From *calceum* (which *see*) and suffix *-ic*.

**calcine** (kāl' sín; kāl sín'), *v.t.* To turn into quicklime or a chalky powder by heating; to drive out water or volatile substances by heat; to burn to ashes.

*v.i.* To undergo these processes. (*F. calciner; se calciner.*)

The alchemists in their attempts to make gold speak of the calcining of metals, and we know that many metals when strongly heated in air give rise to powders which are the oxides of the metals. Zinc, magnesium, and lead are examples. Anyone who calcines metals is a calciner (kāl' sín' er, *n.*), and the process is calcination (kāl sí nā' shún, *n.*).

*L.L. calcināre*, from *calcina* quicklime, from *L. calx* (acc. *calc-em*) lime.

**calcite** (kāl' sit), *n.* Carbonate of lime in crystalline form, as found in minerals. (*F. sulphate de chaux.*)

It is difficult to believe that these lovely transparent crystals are the same in composition as the white powder known as precipitated chalk, and yet chemical analysis shows us that this is so.

Calcium (kāl' sí' ūm, *n.*) is a soft metal which gives lime when heated in the air. Calcium chloride (*n.*), a combination of calcium and the gas chlorine, is a solid that goes liquid if exposed long to damp air; the term is often wrongly used to mean bleaching powder. Calcium-light (*n.*) is the lime-light of the theatre, a brilliant light got when an oxyhydrogen flame plays on to lime.

The prefix calcio- is frequently used to show the presence of calcium in minerals. For example, calcio-ferrite (*n.*) is a compound of lime and iron oxide, and calcio-thorite (*n.*) is a thorite containing calcium.

*L. calx* (acc. *calc-em*) lime and mineralogical suffix *-ite*

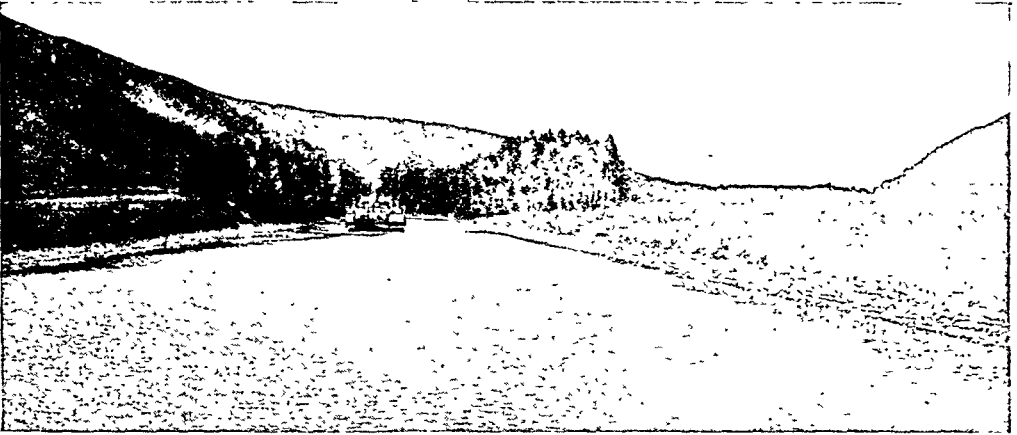
**calculate** (kāl' kū lāt), *v.t.* To reckon by arithmetic or other mathematical process; to foretell or forecast by reckoning; to estimate by eye or judgment. *v.i.* To reckon; to judge. (*F. calculer.*)

A happening or result is said to be calculated (kāl' kū lā ted, *adj.*) when it follows from an arrangement made beforehand. Thus a calculated crime is one done in a cold-blooded way, with a definite purpose. A cause is calculated to have a certain effect if well-fitted or likely to produce it.

That which can be reckoned is calculable (kāl' kū lābl, *adj.*). A person whose actions are guided by thoughts of his own good is calculating (kāl' kū lā ting, *adj.*). A calculation (kāl kū lā' shún, *n.*) is an act of or result of reckoning, an estimate, a judgment. Calculative (kāl' kū lā tiv, *adj.*) means belonging to or disposed to calculation.

The word calculator (kāl' kū lā tór, *n.*) denotes a person who calculates, a machine used for making calculations, or a table of figures which makes reckoning quicker, such as a wage-calculator. Some people able to work out difficult sums quickly in their heads are called "lightning calculators."

Calculating machines are now widely used in business houses. They are worked by keys like those of a typewriter. The more complicated ones seem almost to have a mind of their own.



Caledonian.—The Caledonian Canal, the beautiful inland waterway which joins the Atlantic Ocean to the Moray Firth. Its total length is over sixty miles, and it was completed in 1847.

*L. calculāt-us*, p.p. of *calculāre* to reckon, originally by means of pebbles, *calculus* pebble, dim. of *calx* (acc. *calc-em*) (lime)stone. SYN.: Compute, consider, count, deem, rate.

*calculus* (kāl' kū lūs), *n.* A stony mass formed in the body; a method of mathematical calculation. (F. *calcul*.)

Little stony masses called calculi (kāl' kū lī, *n.pl.*) are formed in unhealthy organs of the body, those in the gall-bladder being called gall-stones or biliary calculi. Anyone suffering in this way is said to be calculous (kāl' kū lūs, *adj.*).

In mathematics a calculus is a method, usually an advanced one, of dealing with problems. Examples are the differential calculus and the integral calculus.

*L.* a pebble, calculus, dim. of *calx* (acc. *calc-em*) a stone.

*cauldron* (kaw! drōn). This is another spelling of cauldron. See cauldron.

*Caledonian* (kāl é dō ni ān), *adj.* Of or belonging to Caledonia, the part of ancient Britain north of the firths of Forth and Clyde; Scottish. *n.* A Scotsman. (F. *Câlédonien*.)

The word is best known in connexion with the 'Caledonian Canal, which joins the Atlantic Ocean to the Moray Firth, a branch of the North Sea, and was completed in 1847.

The Caledonian Railway, from Carlisle to Aberdeen, was opened in 1847. It is now part of the London, Midland and Scottish group of railways.

*L. Calēdonia* Scotland, originally the land of the tribe of *Calidones*, whose name is said to survive in *Dunkeld* and *Schiehallion*.

*calefacient* (kāl é fāsh' yént; kāl é fāsh' yént), *adj.* Causing a feeling of warmth. *n.* A substance used for warming, especially in medicine. (F. *chauffant*, *agent chauffant*.)

The action of warming is calefaction (kāl é fāk' shūn, *n.*). A hot-water bottle is put in a bed because it is calefactive (kāl é fāk' tiv, *adj.*) or heating. A calefactor (kāl é fāk' tōr, *n.*) is a heating-stove or small oven.

*Calefactory* (kāl é fāk' tō rī, *adj.*) means the same as calefacient. In monasteries there was a room, heated by flues under the floor, in which the monks sat and warmed themselves in cold weather. This was called the calefactory (*n.*), a term also used for the metal ball containing hot water with which priests kept their hands warm while in church in winter.

Anything being heated and becoming warmer is calescent (kâ les' ènt, *adj.*) or in a state of calescence (kâ les' èns, *n.*).

*L. calefaciens* (acc. *-ent-em*) pres. p. of *calefacere* to warm, from *calere* to be warm, *facere* to make.

*calendar* (kāl' èn dâr), *n.* The method used for fixing the order, length, and divisions of years; a list of the months, weeks, and days of the week for a whole year, with particulars of festivals, special days, times of sunset and sunrise, etc.; an orderly list of persons, things, or events; a catalogue. *v.t.* To make a list or catalogue. (F. *calendrier*, *cataloguer*.)

Our calendar is based upon the solar year, that is, the time that the earth takes in making a complete circuit of the sun—three hundred and sixty-five days, five hours, forty-eight and three-quarter minutes. Julius Caesar adopted a year of three hundred and sixty-five days, and, to keep it in line with the solar year, added an extra day to every fourth year.

The amount added was too great by over eleven minutes a year, and in the course of centuries the calendar year got more and more ahead of the solar year. In 1582 Pope Gregory XIII started a new calendar, cutting out eleven days in October, so that 1583 should begin correctly by the sun.

The New or Gregorian calendar was not used in Britain till 1752, when the eleven days between September 2nd and 14th of that year were left out. This caused some trouble, as some people thought that they had been robbed of part of their lives. The artist Hogarth engraved a print showing an

election mob with a banner inscribed :  
" Give us back our eleven days."

A **calendar month** (*n.*) is a month according to the calendar, as opposed to a lunar month. It may be thirty days, thirty-one, or twenty-eight (twenty-nine days in a leap year) whereas the average length of a lunar month—the time in which the moon passes once round the earth—is only 29.53059 days.

A **calendarer** (*kāl' en dār' er, n.*) is one who draws up calendars.

*L. calendārium*, from *kalendae* the calends (which see) on which days interest was due.

**calender** [1] (*kāl' en der, n.*) A machine used to give linen, cloth, or paper a smooth, glossy surface. *v.t.* To glaze with a calender. (*F. calandre; calandrer.*)

A **calender** is a kind of mangle, having two or more rollers between which the material is passed. At least one roller is of polished metal, and usually heated by steam or gas. The rollers may move at the same speed or at different speeds, so that the material is both pressed and rubbed.

A **calenderer** (*kāl' en dēr' er, n.*) or **calendr** (*kāl' en drer, n.*) formerly called a calender as in Cowper's " John Gilpin ", is one who works a calender. A **calendry** (*kāl' en dri, n.*) is a place where calendering is done.

*F. calandre, L.L. calandra, celindra*, corruptions of *L. cylindrus* Gr *kylindros* a cylinder.



Calender.—Two wandering Calenders or religious devotees in Persia. Their disciple follows on foot.

**calender** [2] (*kāl' en dēr, n.*) A member of an order of wandering dervishes, or religious devotees, in Turkey and Persia. Other forms include **kalenderi** (*kāl' en der i*), **kalenderite** (*kāl' en der it*), and **calandarite** (*kāl' an dār it*). (*F. calender.*)

This word is well known because the calenders are mentioned in the collection of Eastern tales known as the " Arabian Nights' Entertainments " or the " Thousand and One Nights ". The calenders take a vow which compels them to be always travelling.

*F. calender, Pers. qalandar.*

**calends** (*kāl' endz, n.pl.*) The first day of any month in the ancient Roman calendar. Another spelling is **kalends**. (*F. calendes.*)

A Roman money-lender expected interest to be paid him on the first day of a month.

Hence his list of debtors was called a **calendarium**, a word which came to mean an almanac.

As calends were not used by the Greeks, to say that a thing will occur at the Greek calends means that it will never happen.

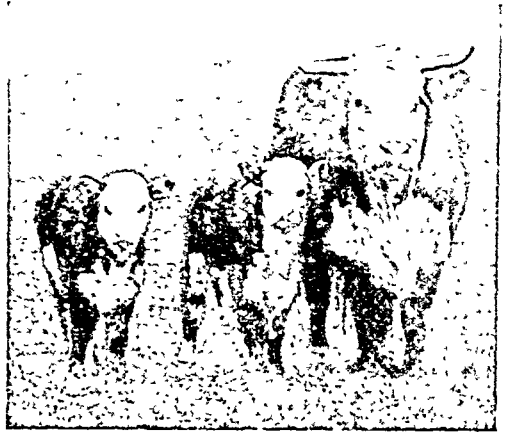
*L. kalendae* from the root *cal-*, as in *caläre* to proclaim, Gr. *kalein* to summon.

**calenture** (*kāl' en tür, n.*) A form of fever caused by great heat; sunstroke; burning passion.

This word was formerly given to various fevers that attacked sailors in tropical seas.

Span. *calentura* from *L. calēre* to be hot.

**calescence** (*kā les' ens, n.*) The state of growing warm. *See under* calefacient.



Calf.—A cow of the world-renowned Hereford breed and her two little calves.

**calf** [1] (*kaf, n.*) The young of the ox, buffalo, bison, and similar animals, especially of the domestic cow; the young of the elephant, rhinoceros, hippopotamus, whale, etc.; a small island close to a large one, such as the *Calf of Man*; a piece which breaks away from an iceberg; an awkward boy or young man. The *pl.* is calves (*kavz*). (*F. veau.*)

The golden calf, made of ear-rings of gold, set up by Aaron and worshipped by the Israelites while Moses was on Mount Sinai, has come to denote riches unduly prized or longed for.

A **calf-bound** (*adj.*) book is one bound in calf or calfskin (*kaf' skin, n.*), the skin of a calf, which is also used for the upper parts of boots. Calf's teeth (*n.pl.*) or milk teeth, are the first set of teeth in man and other mammals. **Calves-foot jelly** (*n.*), made from the feet of calves, is used for invalids.

**Calfhood** (*kaf' hud, n.*) is strictly the period of being a calf, but the term is also used to denote the time during which a youth is **calfish** (*kaf' ish, adj.*), that is, raw and inexperienced.

*A.-S. cælf* (stem *calf-*), common Teut.; cp. Dutch *kalf*, G. *kalb*.

**calf** [z] (kaf), *n.* The thick, fleshy part behind the leg below the knee. The *pl.* is calves (kavz). (F. *mollet*.)

A person with very thin legs may be described as calfless (kaf' lès, *adj.*), and one with very large calves as thick-calved (thik' kavd, *adj.*).

O. Norse *kālf*, perhaps akin to Gaulish *galba* corpulent, whence the name of the Roman emperor Galba.

**calibre** (kāl' i bër; kà lë' bër), *n.* The diameter of the bore of a gun, cannon, or tube; ability; degree of importance. Another but less usual spelling is caliber. (F. *calibre*.)

The calibre of a British army rifle is .303 inch. The calibres of cannon range from three inches in a field artillery piece to sixteen inches in the largest calibred (kāl' i bër, *adj.*) guns on battle-ships.

To **calibrate** (kāl' i brät, *v.t.*) originally meant to measure the base of a tube, such as that of a thermometer, so as to be able to mark it in degrees, etc. Now it more usually signifies to make a scale on any measuring instrument—a spring-balance, for example—or to correct it, if wrong. The process of doing this is called calibration (kāl i brä' shùn, *n.*).

F. and Span. *calibre*, Ital. *calibro*, perhaps from Arabic *qālib* mould for casting metal.

**calic-**. For words derived from calix and calyx, of which the first two syllables are calyc- or calic-, see under calyx and calicle.

**calicle** (kāl' ikl), *n.* A small cup-shaped part or organ of some animals.

Each living coral polyp is lodged in a stony cup-like cell or calicle of its own making. Anything relating to a calicle is calicular (kà lik' ü lâr, *adj.*).

L. *calculus* dim. of *calix* (acc. *calicem*) cup.

**calico** (kāl' i kō), *n.* Cotton cloth, either white or unbleached. (F. *calicot*.)

The first place in India at which Europeans landed, in 1496, was Calicut, on the West Coast, in Malabar. The cotton cloth for which the town was famous was imported into Europe by the Portuguese under the name of calicut, since changed to calico.

A calico-ball (*n.*) is one attended by ladies in cotton dresses. In some cases the cost of a dress is limited, and a prize is given to the wearer of the most tastefully designed dress.

The printing of patterns on calico, called calico-printing (*n.*), is a very important industry. The pattern is engraved on copper rollers, one roller for each colour, and the cloth is passed through these. They print the cloth with a substance called a mordant, which differs for every colour.

The cloth is then steamed and dipped in a dye called alizarin. The dye combines with each mordant to produce a particular and fast, or lasting, colour. Washing removes the alizarin from all the unmordanted parts.

**calipash** (kāl' i pāsh), *n.* The layer of greenish gluey tissue that grows close to the upper shell of the green or edible turtle. (F. *carapace*.)

In making turtle soup, for which the Lord Mayor's banquets in London are famous, not only are the meat and fat of the turtle used but also the thick layers of glue-like tissue that line the insides of the shells. That growing in the lower shell is called calipee (kāl' i pē, *n.*), and is light yellow.

Perhaps West Indian, or a corruption of Span. *carapacho* carapace.



Caliph.—A former Sultan of Turkey who was the Great Caliph or head of Mohammedanism.

**calipers** (kāl' i perz). This is another spelling of callipers. See callipers.

**caliph** (kāl if; kâ' lîf), *n.* The title given to the head of Mohammedanism as successor of Mohammed. Other forms are calif, khalif, khalifa. (F. *calife*.)

After his death in A.D. 632, Mohammed was succeeded by leaders who in turn held the caliphate (kāl' i fât; kâ' lî fât, *n.*), the office of caliph or head of the Mohammedans.

In the year 750 the eastern Mohammedans broke away from the western and founded a new caliphate, of which Bagdad was the centre. This city was wiped out by the Mongols in 1258, and afterwards the Sultan of Turkey was recognized as the Great Caliph, or "Commander of the Faithful." The

office is now in abeyance, the Grand National Assembly of the Turkish Republic having abolished it in 1924.

M.E., O.F. *caliphe*, L.L. *calipha*, Arabic *khalīfah* successor, from *khalāfa* to be behind.

**calix** (kāl' iks; kā' liks), *n.* A cup-shaped hollow or organ in an animal. The plural is *calices* (kāl' i sēz; kā' li sēz).

The word *calyx*, which is pronounced in exactly the same way as *calix*, is sometimes confused with this word.

L. *calix* a cup.

**calk** [1] (kawk), *v.t.* To trace; to copy a drawing or design by rubbing the back over with chalk or other colouring matter and then passing a hard point over the lines, so that they are transferred to a paper beneath. (F. *calquer*.)

The use of a special carbon tracing-paper does away with the need for calking the original design.

F. *calquer* to calk, Ital., L. *calcāre* to tread, from L. *calx* (acc. *calc-em*) heel. Not connected with *chalk*.

**calk** [2] (kawk), *n.* A spike put on shoes to prevent slipping on ice or hard snow. *v.t.* To put calks on. (F. *crampon*; *cramponner*.)

Ultimately from L. *calx* (acc. *calc-em*) heel. See *calkin*.

**calk** [3] (kawk). This is another spelling of *caulk*. See *caulk*.

**calkin** (kaw' kin; kāl' kin), *n.* A sharp point on a horseshoe or on a boot or clog to prevent slipping. (F. *crampon*.)

Probably O.F. *calcain*, L. *calcāneum* heel, from *calx* (acc. *calc-em*) heel.

**call** (kawl), *v.t.* To give a name to; to describe as; to summon; to arouse; to attract by imitating a cry. *v.i.* To cry in a loud voice; to pay a visit. *n.* A cry or shout; a sound made by or in imitation of that made by a bird or beast; an instrument for attracting birds; a signal such as is sounded by a bugle or whistle; an appeal; an invitation to take up a profession or position; a duty or necessity; a short visit to a house; a demand for payment of an instalment due on shares; a right to make a purchase by a certain time; a sign in whist that a partner is to lead trumps; a demand in whist from a player with two honours for his partner to play one. (F. *appeler*, *nommer*, *interroger*; *crier*; *appel*, *voix*, *siffler*, *obligation*, *visite*.)

In the second chapter of Genesis we are told how all the beasts and birds were brought before Adam "to see what he would call them: and whatsoever Adam called every living creature, that was the name thereof."

To call the roll is to call over a list of persons who should be present at a certain time and place in order to find out whether all

are there. To call to mind is to recollect, just as to call up is to bring something back to the memory. To call up also means to summon, as a soldier for service. To call upon a person may mean either to ask his help or merely to pay him a visit for social or business purposes.

To call to the bar is to admit a person formally to the profession of barrister. This is done by benchers of the Inns of Court on a special occasion known as *call-day* (*n.*) or *call-night* (*n.*). In a theatre a *call-boy* (*n.*) summons an actor when it is almost time for him to go on to the stage.



Call.—The call of the soldier to the civilian in the World War of 1914-18. A striking poster that appealed for Army recruits.

A bird utters its call-note (*n.*) to attract or warn its mate or young. A call-bird (*n.*) is a bird that has been trained to utter its note in order to attract its fellows into a snare.

A call-loan (*n.*) or call-money (*n.*) is money lent which can be asked for at any time, in other words, money that is *callable* (kawl' ābl, *adj.*).

A caller (kawl' ēr, *n.*) is one who visits someone else.

The word *calling* (kawl' ing, *n.*) denotes an occupation, trade, or profession by which a living is made, or all the people engaged in the same occupation. It also means an occupation to which a person feels called by special fitness for it or by duty, and so it can be used to signify a duty.

M.E. *callen*, O. Norse *kalla* to shout, summon, name; common Teut.; cp. Dutch *kallen*, O.H.G. *challōn*. SYN.: *v.* Convene, demand, invoke, muster, name, request, summon. *n.* Claim, invitation, obligation, right, summons.

**callant** (kāl' ānt), *n.* A term used in Scotland and the north of England for a lad. (F. *garçon*, *gaulard*.)

Sc., from Flem. *kalant* customer, chap, Picard F. *caland*, F. *chaland* customer, purchaser, from *cha-loir* to care, L. *calēre* to be warm.

**calligraphy** (kâ lig' rà fi), *n.* The art of writing in well-formed characters; good handwriting; handwriting generally; style of handwriting. (F. *calligraphie*.)

A **calligraph** (kâl' i grâf, *n.*) is something written by a **calligrapher** (kâ lig' rà fêr, *n.*) or **calligraphist** (kâ lig' rà fist, *n.*), that is, a highly-skilled penman, whose writing is **calligraphic** (kâl i grâf' ik, *adj.*) or **calligraphical** (kâl i grâf' ik âl, *adj.*), beautifully formed. To **calligraph** (*v.t.*) is to write beautifully or decoratively, and **calligraphic** or **calligraphical** may be used to describe **calligraphy** in any of its senses.

Gr. *kalligraphia*, from *kalli-* stem of *kalos* beautiful and *graphein* to write.

**Calliope** (kâ li' ô pê), *n.* One of the Muses; one of the asteroids; a genus of small birds. (F. *Calliope*.)

**Calliope** was the Muse who presided over epic poetry and eloquence. Her name has been given to a genus of small birds, including the Asiatic warbler, as well as to one of the asteroids, small planets revolving round the sun between Mars and Jupiter. A kind of steam organ which produces harsh notes when played, used on some American steamers, is called a **calliope**.

Gr. *kalliopê*, from *kalli-* stem of *kalos* beautiful and *op-s* voice.

**callipers** (kâl' i pèrz), *n.pl.* A kind of compasses for measuring the outside size or thickness of an object, or the size of a hole or bore. Another spelling is **calipers**. (F. *compas de calibre*.)

**Callipers** for outside measurements have legs curved or bowed inwards. The legs of those for inside measurements are straight and turned out at the ends. To **calliper** (*v.t.*) is to use callipers.

A **calliper-square** (*n.*) is a graduated steel rod with a fixed jaw at one end and a sliding jaw parallel to the first. It can be used for measuring either inside or outside. Special kinds of callipers, measuring to the ten thousandth part of an inch, are employed for very exact work.

Shortened from *calliper compasses*, **calliper** being a variant of *calibre*.

**callisthenic** (kâl is then' ik), *adj.* Giving strength and grace of body.

**Callisthenics** (kâl is then' iks, *n.pl.*) is a term used for the art or practice of exercises which make the body lissom and graceful—light gymnastics (especially for girls). The word is now seldom used.

Gr. *kallos* beauty, *sthenos* strength.

**callous** (kâl' ùs), *adj.* Hardened, as of a hand by work; hardened in mind. (F. *calieux*, *endurci*.)

People are rightly blamed for behaving **callously** (kâl' ùs li, *adv.*) to animals. War breeds **callousness** (kâl' ùs nès, *n.*) in those who take part in it. They gradually become hardened to sights that at first horrified them.

A **callosity** (kâ los' i ti, *n.*) is a thickening of the skin due to continual rubbing or pressure, or to an injury.

L. *callösus* hard-skinned, from *callum*, *callus* hard skin. SYN.: Brutalized, cruel, unfeeling, unrelenting. ANT.: Gentle, merciful, mild, tender

**callow** (kâl' ô), *adj.* Unfledged; of, relating to, or like unfledged birds; low-lying and swampy; inexperienced. *n.* A swampy, low-lying meadow near an Irish river. (F. *sans plume*, *novice*.)

The newly-hatched young of most birds are quite naked and without protection. From this **callowness** (kâl' ô nes, *n.*) of young birds comes the use of the word **callow** to describe one who is unused to the world and its ways.

M.E. *calewe*, A.-S. *calu* (definite form *calw-e*) bald; common West Teut. (cp. Dutch *kaal*, G. *kahl*), an early loan word from L. *calu-us* bald. SYN.: Budding,

crude, immature, undeveloped. ANT.: Accomplished, mature, versed.

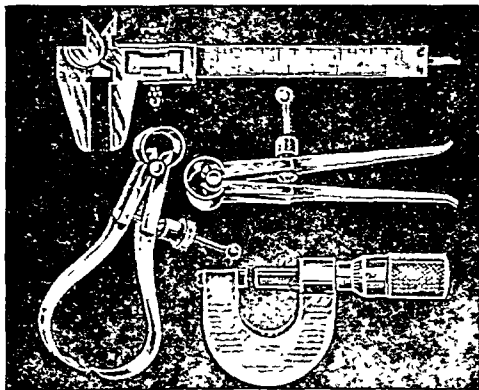
**callus** (kâl' ùs), *n.* A hard thickened part of the skin or outer covering of an animal or plant; a new growth on a broken bone. (F. *cal*.)

When the skin is subjected to much pressure it hardens and thickens, thus forming a protective **callus**. Similarly in plants a **callus** forms round and over a wound, and on the end of a cutting before it sends forth roots. A bony **callus** forms round a fracture in a bone, binding the two ends together until they are firmly jointed.

L., hardened skin; cp. Welsh *celed* hard

**calm** (kam), *adj.* Quiet; still; peaceful. *n.* Absence of wind or waves; freedom from disturbance. *v.t.* To quiet; to soothe. *v.i.* To become quiet or soothed. (F. *calme*; *calme*; *calmer*; *se calmer*.)

A wonderful example of calm bravery was given by the soldiers on the troopship "Birkenhead," wrecked in Simon's Bay, South Africa, on February 26th, 1832. Escape was impossible, but the men, drawn up on deck, kept to their ranks while the ship sank under them.



Callipers.—At the top of the picture is a calliper-square, below, inside callipers, at the bottom, micrometer callipers, and to the left, outside callipers.



Calm.—Evening calm off the west coast of Norway. The outline of the fishing smack gives the impression of a Viking ship of centuries ago.

A calmative (kāl' mā tiv; kam' ā tiv, *adj.*) medicine or a calmative (*n.*) is one given to quiet or soothe. When an angry person's temper is calmed (kamd, *adj.*) he is able to view things more calmly (kam' li, *adv.*) or with greater calmness (kam' nes, *n.*).

*F. calme*, (*n.* and *adj.*). The *F. n.* from Ital. or Span *calma* (in O Span. heat of the day; cp. Prov. *chaume* resting time of cattle), L. *L. cauma*, from Gr. *kauma* heat, noontide, from *kairein* to burn. Probably affected by L. *calere* to be warm. SYN.: *adj.* Collected, placid, serene *n.* Peace, serenity, stillness. *v.* Compose, pacify, tranquilize. ANT.: *adj.* Excited, frenzied, stormy. *n.* Agitation, disturbance, turbulence. *v.* Arouse, provoke, stir.

**calomel** (kāl' ō mel), *n.* A whitish powder used in medicine. (*F. calomel.*)

Chemists call it mercurous chloride and give it the symbol Hg: Cl<sub>2</sub>. It occurs in nature in the form of horny, whitish-grey crystals, sometimes called horn mercury or horn quicksilver.

*F.* from Gr *kalos* beautiful, *melas* black, so called because the white powder was prepared from a black substance.

**caloric** (kā lor' ik), *n.* Heat. (*F. calorique.*)

In olden days heat was supposed to be caused by a mysterious electric fluid, which was called caloric. When this theory was given up the word caloric came to be used simply for heat.

The Swedish-American engineer, John Ericsson (1803-89), invented an engine which was worked by the alternate heating and cooling of a body of air. This was named a caloric-engine (*n.*), or hot-air engine.

Living beings are able to develop heat in themselves by a power called calorificity

(kāl ō ris' i ti, *n.*). Calorescence (kāl ō res' ens, *n.*) means the changing of heat rays into light rays.

A calorie (kāl' ō ri, *n.*) is a unit of heat, the amount of heat needed to raise the temperature of one gram of water by one degree centigrade. What is called a large calorie is one thousand calories.

Fats are calorific (kā lor i fā' shent, *adj.*) or heat-producing foods. The calorific (kāl ō rif' ik, *adj.*) rays from the sun are its heating rays. Iron is smelted calorifically (kāl ō rif' ik ā li, *adv.*), that is, by means of heat. To calorify (kā lor' i fi, *v.t.*) is to heat.

A calorimeter (kāl ō im' i tēr, *n.*) is an apparatus for measuring the heat needed to warm a given weight of a substance one degree, or the heat given out by a given weight when burned. The science of making calorimetrick (kāl ō i met' rik, *adj.*) or heat-measuring tests is called calorimetry (kāl ō im' ē tri, *n.*).

*F. calorique*, from L. *calor* heat, E. suffix *-ic* belonging to.

**calotte** (kā lot'), *n.* A small brimless cap worn by clergy; a term applied in various connexions to a cap-like covering, such as the patch of colour on the head of some birds; a part hollowed out in a ceiling to improve the proportions of the building. (*F. calotte.*)

*F.*, dim. of O.F. *cale* a kind of cap. See *caul*.

**caloyer** (kāl' ō yēr), *n.* A Greek monk, especially one of the order of St. Basil. (*F. caloyer.*)

The monks of the Eastern or Greek Church wear black gowns, and leave their beards and hair uncut.

*F. caloyer*, Ital. *caloiere*, late Gr. *kalogeros*, from *kalos* beautiful, *-geros* old; hence "venerable man."

**calp** (käl'p), *n.* The name given in Ireland to a dark-grey limestone found in the island.

**calpac** (käl' päk), *n.* A tall felt cap worn in the East. Another spelling is **calpack**.

The calpac is sometimes worn with a shawl wrapped round it, to form a kind of turban.

Turkish *qalpaq*.

**caltrop** (käl' tröp), *n.* An instrument with four spikes, thrown on the ground to obstruct the advance of cavalry or bare-footed infantry; a name given to various plants that catch the feet or otherwise suggest the above. Among the various other spellings are **caltrap** (käl' tráp) and **calthrop** (käl' thröp). (F. *chausse-trape*.)

However dropped, a caltrop rested on three spikes, with the fourth pointing upwards. Bruce used them at the battle of Bannockburn, to keep off the English cavalry. The old historian Froissart tells us that on one occasion the English stuck spurs into the ground to serve the same purpose.

When applied to plants the form **caltrops** is often used. **Water-caltrops** (*n.pl.*) is the name given to certain water-weeds with spiky fruits.

M.E. *calketrappe* a gin or snare for the feet; cp. A.-S. *col(te)traeppe*, *calcatrippe*, O.F. *kauketrappe*, obsolete Ital. *calcatrippe*, a thorny plant; from L. *calx* (acc. *calc-em*) heel, and Teut. *trappa* trap

**calumba** (ká lüm' bá), *n.* The root of an African plant.

The scientific name of this plant is *Jateorhiza palmata*. It is a climbing plant which reaches the tops of the tallest trees. Its roots contain a bitter substance, **calumbic** (ká lüm' bik, *adj.*) acid, which is a mild tonic.

From *Colombo* in Ceylon, whence it was supposed to be obtained.

**calumet** (käl' ū met), *n.* The tobacco-pipe of the North American Indians, smoked especially as a sign of peace. (F. *calumet*.)

The "pipe of peace" had a long stem of wood or reed, fringed with eagle's quills, and a stone bowl. At a peace meeting between tribes and on other solemn occasions it was passed round for each person to take a whiff.

Norman and Canadian F. *calumet*, dim., equivalent to F. *chalumeau* pipe, from L. *calamus*, Gr. *kalamos* reed.

**calumny** (käl' ūm ni), *n.* Slander; deliberate misrepresentation of a person's acts or words; a malicious falsehood. (F. *calomnie*.)

A man **calumniates** (ká lüm' ni äts, *v.t.*) another when he attempts to damage his reputation by making a false charge against him or by twisting his words or actions into meaning what was never intended. Such a man is guilty of **calumniation** (ká lüm' ni ä' shùn, *n.*), and is a **calumniator** (ká lüm' ni ä' tór, *n.*). His statements are **calumnious** (ká lüm' ni ä' tó ri, *adj.*) or **calumnious** (ká lüm' ni üs, *adj.*), and have been made **calumniously** (ká lüm' ni üs li, *adv.*). The **calumniousness** (ká lüm' ni üs nes, *n.*) of such statements may lead to an action for libel or slander.

L. *calumnia* from an assumed *n. calumnus* old participial form from *calvi* to devise tricks, deceive. SYN.: Aspersion, defamation, detraction, libel, vilification.

**Calvary** (käl' vā ri), *n.* The place where Christ died upon the Cross; a representation of the Crucifixion, often life-size and in the open-air; a representation of the scenes of Christ's Passion in a chapel or church; a shrine or chapel containing such a representation. (F. *le Calvaire*.)

What is called **Calvary clover** (*n.*) is a plant nearly related to clover with little heads of yellow flowers. The scientific name is *Medicago echinus*.

In heraldry a **Calvary-cross** (*n.*) is a cross with three steps leading up to it.

L. *calvāria* a skull, from *calvus* bald.

**Calvinism** (käl' vīn izm), *n.* The teachings of the Protestant religious leader, John Calvin (1509-64). (F. *Calvinisme*.)

The chief beliefs taught by Calvin were that human nature is hopelessly wicked, and that God chooses certain people to be saved and that the rest will be lost, so that nothing a man can do will alter his fate. This is what is called the doctrine of predestination and election. Calvinism is opposed to the doctrine of Arminianism. (See under *Arminian*.)

A follower of Calvin is a **Calvinist** (käl' vīn ist, *n.*), and his beliefs are **Calvinistic** (käl' vīn is' tik, *adj.*) or **Calvinistical** (käl' vīn is' tik āl, *adj.*), and if he tries to persuade others to believe in Calvinism he speaks **Calvinistically**



Calpac.—A Tatar of Nizh wearing his calpac.



Calumet.—A Red Indian chief of Nebraska, U.S.A., smoking his calumet.



(kāl'vin is' tik āl li, *adv.*) in order to Calvimize (kāl'vin iz, *v.t.*) them.

Modern L. *Calvinus*, F. *Cauvin* or *Chauvin*, and suffix *-ism* indicating system or principles.

**calx** (kālks), *n.* The ash left after a mineral or metal has been burnt; a goal at Eton. *pl.*, In former sense, *calces* (kāl'sēz).

In their endeavours to change one metal into another the alchemists of old never tired of experimenting with metals. When they had heated a metal as thoroughly as we now burn lime in a kiln they thought they had got to the very root or essence of the metal, and this they called the calx.

Eton boys call a goal calx because one of the meanings of the Latin word *calx* is a goal marked out with chalk or lime.

L. *calx* (acc. *calc-em*) stone, lime.

**calyptra** (kā lip' trā), *n.* A hood, covering or lid. (F. *calyptré*.)

The spore-case or capsule of some mosses, such as the urn-mosses, has a calyptra, which falls off when the spores are ripe. Some flowers, too, such as those of *eschscholtzia*, are calyptrate (kā lip' trāt, *adj.*), the calyptriform (kā lip' tri form, *adj.*) body falling off when the flower opens.

Gr. *kalyptra* covering, veil, from *kalyptem* to cover.

**calyx** (kāl' iks; kā' liks), *n.* The outer covering of a flower made up of several leaves called sepals which are arranged around the stalk. Another spelling is *calix*, and the various derivatives mentioned below may sometimes have the prefix *calic-*. The *pl.* is *calyces* or *calices* (kāl' i sēz; kā' li sēz). (F. *calice*.)

The leaves which form the calyx are usually green and may be quite distinct or joined at the margins to form a kind of cup.

A **calyciferous** (kāl i sif' er ūs; kā li sif' er ūs, *adj.*) plant is one which bears a calyx. When the petals and stamens of a plant grow from the calyx we say it is **calycifloral** (kāl is i flōr' āl; kā li si flōr' āl, *adj.*), **calyciflorate** (kāl is i flōr' āt; kā li si flōr' āt, *adj.*) or **calyciflorous** (kāl is i flōr' ūs; kā li si flōr' ūs, *adj.*).

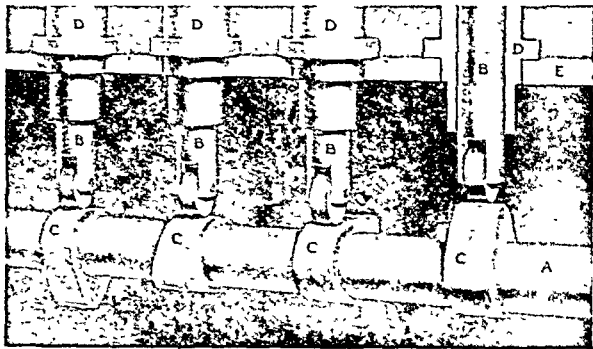
Anything belonging to or relating to a calyx or like one is said to be **calyciform** (kāl' i si form; kā' li si fōrm, *adj.*), **calycinal** (kā lis' in āl; kā lis' in āl, *adj.*), or **calycine** (kāl' i sin; kā' h sin, *adj.*).

A row of tiny leaves outside the true calyx is called a **calycle** (kāl' ikl; kā' likl, *n.*) or **calculus** (kā lik' ū lūs; kā lik' ū lūs, *n.*), and plants which have this little calyx are **calycleid** (kāl' i kld; kā' li kld, *adj.*), **calycular** (kā lik' ū lār; kā lik' ū lār, *adj.*), or **calyculate** (kā lik' ū lāt; kā lik' ū lāt, *adj.*).

L. *calyx*, Gr. *kalyx* (acc. *kalyka*) covering of flower, fruit or bud, related to *kalyptem* to cover. Confused with L. *calix* cup.

**cam** (kām), *n.* A mechanical device, which changes the turning movement of a shaft into any needed movement of another part of the machine. (F. *came*.)

What is called the eccentric of a steam-engine is a simple form of cam. It turns round with the crank shaft, but makes the steam-valve move to and fro.



Cam.—The cam shaft (A) of a motor-car, showing the cams (C), tappets (B), and tappet guides (D). A section of the crank case is shown (E).

The cam-shaft (*n.*) of a four-cylinder motor-car engine has eight cams on it, which move the eight valves up and down every revolution, and open and shut them at the correct moments.

Either Dutch *kam* or F. *came* with similar meaning; cp. Dan., Swed. *kam*, G. *kamm* comb. See comb.

**camaraderie** (kām ā ra' dēr i), *n.* Comradeship; good-fellowship among close friends. (F. *camaraderie*.)

F., from *camarade* comrade, and F. suffix *-erie* (E. *-ery*) forming abstract nouns. See comrade.

**camarilla** (kām ā ril' ā), *n.* A little band of intriguers. (F. *camarilla*.)

This word is the Spanish for a small room. It is used in English for a gang of unprincipled men surrounding a king or other great personage. It came into general use during the reign of Ferdinand VII of Spain (1784-1833), who put himself into the hands of a little band of low-born and unscrupulous favourites.

Span., dim. of *camara* chamber. SYN.: Cabal, clique, junto.

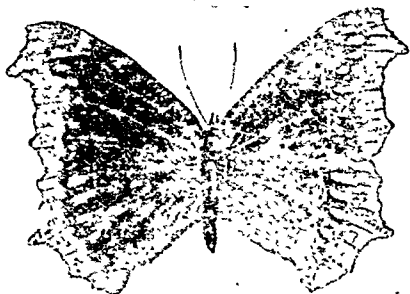
**camber** (kām' bër), *n.* A slight curve given to a beam, bridge, or arch to allow for sinking or to add strength; the crosswise curve of a road's surface to give good drainage; a small dock for timber; the part of a dockyard where timber is kept. *v.t.* To bend; to construct with an upward curve either above or beneath. *v.i.* To curve upwards in the middle. (F. *bombement*, *cambre*; *bomber*, *cambrer*; see *camber*.)

In old churches may be seen examples of the **camber-beam** (*n.*), which in shape suggests a very flat arch, supporting a roof truss.

A **camber-keeled** (*adj.*) ship has its keel cambered (kām' bër, *adj.*) or cambering

(kām' bër ing, *adj.*), that is, laid with a slight curve towards the middle. A **camber-slip** (*n.*) is a slightly curved wooden support used for a flat arch while it is being built. Like a cambered keel, the arch flattens out when it has to carry its load.

*F. cambre*, (*n.*), from *cambrer*, (*v.*), *L. camerāre* to vault, from *camera* a vault. *See* camera, chamber.



Camberwell beauty.—Although common on the Continent, the Camberwell beauty is only seen rarely in Britain.

**Camberwell beauty** (kām' bër wel bū'ti), *n.* A handsome butterfly occasionally, though very seldom, caught in Britain.

It is also called the white border, because its velvety brown wings have a white or cream coloured border. The butterfly is common on the Continent. British specimens have the border white; in Continental specimens it is yellow.

Several specimens were caught in the year 1748 at Camberwell, Surrey, hence the popular name. The scientific name is *Vanessa Antiopa*.

**cambist** (kām' bist), *n.* A person skilled in foreign exchange; a dealer in bills of exchange; a book that gives the coins, weights, and measures of various countries with their equivalents. (*F. cambiste.*)

A great many payments are made between different countries in what are called bills of exchange, which do away with the need for sending actual money. A cambist buys and sells such bills, and, as the rate of exchange in money varies from time to time, he must be well acquainted with such changes and the prices ruling from day to day. **Cambism** (kām' bizm, *n.*) is the science of exchange.

*F. cambiste*, from *L.L. cambium* exchange, and suffix *-ist* denoting the agent. *See* cambium.

**cambium** (kām' bi ùm), *n.* The soft living tissue between the bark and the wood of many trees. (*F. cambium.*)

Such trees as oak, elm, and lime show annual rings of growth in their wood. Each of these rings is formed by the cambium. It is slippery to the touch, especially in spring and early summer.

*L.L. exchange*, later in *E. sense*, from *L. cambire* to exchange. *See* change.

**cambrel** (kām' brèl), *n.* The curved piece of iron or wood used by butchers for hanging carcasses on; the joint in the upper part of the hind leg of a horse. Another form is **gambrel** (gām' brèl).

Perhaps Welsh *cambren* butcher's cambrel, from *cam* crooked and *pren* wood. The *E.* word may have been influenced by *camber*.

**Cambrian** (kām' bri òn), *adj.* Of or relating to Wales; of or relating to a geological group of very ancient rocks. *n.* A Welshman. (*F. gallois, du Pays de Galles; Gallois*)

Wales and the country round the Solway Firth were once known by the Latin name *Cambria* or *Cumbria*. Gradually *Cambria* came to be used for Wales only and *Cumbria* for what is now Cumberland and the neighbouring parts.

When geologists speak of *Cambrian* rocks they mean rocks that belong to the oldest system or group of rocks that contain remains of early forms of life. The group is so called because it is highly developed in Wales.

*L.L. Cambria* (*cp. Cumbria* Cumberland) from Welsh *Cynry* (kum ru) Welshmen, or *Cymru* Wales, Old Celtic *Combroges* fellow countrymen; *cp. L. cum* with, together.

**cambric** (kām' bri:k), *n.* White linen of very fine quality, named after *Cambrai*, in Northern France, a town long famous for its manufacture. (*F. batiste.*)

*Flem. Kamerijk, F. Cambrai*, the ancient *Camaracum*.

**came** [1] (kām), *n.* A small grooved bar of lead for framing glass in lattice or stained glass windows. (*F. plomb de vitrier.*)

*cp. Sc. calm* with the same meaning.

**came** [2] (kām). This is the past tense of *come*. *See* come.



Camel.—The head of a camel, an animal more useful than beautiful.

**camel** (kām' èl), *n.* A long-necked, padded-footed, grass-eating quadruped with one hump or two humps on its back; a great float for raising ships. (*F. chameau.*)

There are two distinct kinds of camel, the one-humped Arabian camel and the two-humped Bactrian camel.

The camel's padded feet allow it to travel easily over the soft sand of the deserts. Two of the chambers of its stomach have

cells in which large quantities of water can be stored, and the hump is a mass of fat which feeds the body when food is short. Consequently a camel can travel for days together without food or water, and this fact has given it the name of ship of the desert.

Camel-backed (*adj.*) means hump-backed. A camel-driver is called a cameleer (*kām e lēr', n.*). From the camel's very awkward temper comes the word camelish (*kām' el' ish, adj.*), meaning obstinate or mulish. Cameline (*kām' el in, adj.*) means relating to camels. Troops mounted on camels are camelry (*kām' el ri, n.*).

Camel's-hair (*n.*) is obtained chiefly from the long-haired Bactrian camel. A painter's camel's-hair brush, however, is usually made of hair from the tails of Siberian squirrels. Camel-brown (*n.*) is the name of an artificial fly used by anglers.

The camels used for raising sunken ships are huge cylindrical tanks, used in pairs, one on each side of the ship. The two camels of a pair are connected by a cable passed under the ship and fastened on when they are only just floating. Then the water is forced out by air and the camels together lift the ship from the bottom and allow it to be towed into shallower water, where the process is repeated.

A-S. *camel* and O. Northern F. *camel*, L. *camēlus*, Gr. *kamēlos*, from Sem.; cp Heb *gāmāl*, perhaps originally "carrier" (Arabic *jamala* to carry)



Camellia.—The flower of the camellia, a shrub which is a native of China and Japan.

camellia (*kā mē' h ā ; kā mel' h ā*), *n.* An evergreen shrub. (F. *camélia*.)

The camellia is a native of China and Japan. It was named after G. J. Camellus, or Kamel, a Jesuit traveller, who wrote an account of the plants that he found in Luzon, one of the Philippine Islands.

It has broad, shining leaves and large double flowers of red or white. A valuable oil is obtained from the Chinese camellia

camelopard (*kām' el ó pard ; kā mel' ó pard ;* popularly *kām el lep' ard*). This is an old name for the giraffe. See giraffe. (F. *caméléopard*.)

L. *camēlopardus*, Gr. *kamēlopardalis*, from *kāmēlos* camel, *pardalis* pard, leopard.

Camembert (*kām an bār'*), *n.* A soft, unpressed cheese originally made at Camembert, a village in Normandy, France. (F. *fromage de Camembert*.)

cameo (*kām' è ò*), *n.* A carving in relief on a dark ground. (F. *camée*.)

Cameos are cut in materials which have layers of different colours, such as rock crystals, agates, or amber. The lighter layer is used for the object, the darker for the background.

Ital. *cameo*, *cammeo*, L.L. *cammaeus*, *camahutus*, etc., of unknown origin.



British Museum.

Cameo.—A sardonyx cameo of the fourth century. The portrait on the right is of the Emperor Julian.

camera (*kām' èr ā*), *n.* A light-tight box or chamber used for taking photographs. (F. *appareil photographique*.)

The photographic camera has either a rigid or a folding body, with a lens in the front end which throws an image on to a sensitized plate or film at the back end. Our eyes are natural cameras.

The image in a camera is reversed. A pin-hole camera can be made by pricking a hole in the side of a large box, and closing the opposite side with tracing paper.

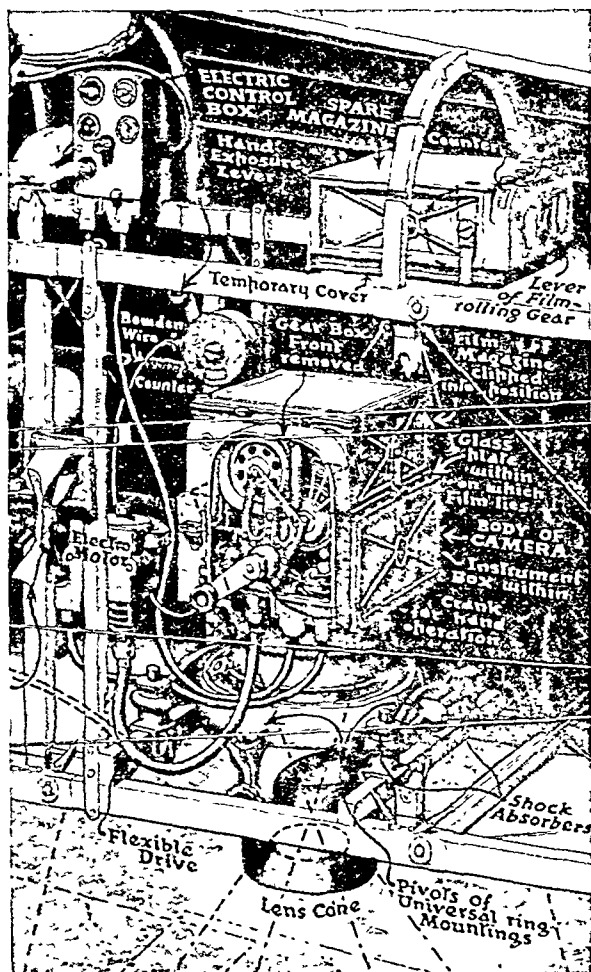
A camera lucida (*kām' èr ā loo' si dā*, *n.*) is a device containing a glass prism, which bends rays of light in such a way that anything which is reflected by it on to a piece of paper placed in front can be drawn in outline.

A camera obscura (*kām er ā ób skū' rā*, *n.*) is a darkened hut or tent with a revolving lens in the top. By means of a mirror, set at an angle of forty-five degrees, the lens image is thrown down on to a whitened table below. The periscope of a submarine is in principle a camera obscura.

When a law case is of such a kind that the public should not be present, the judge orders it to be heard in camera, that is, privately, in chambers. The judges' private room behind the court was formerly called the camera.

Shells which are divided into chambers are called camerated (*kām' er ā ted, adj.*) shells.

L. *camera* vault, vaulted room, Gr. *kamara*. See chamber.



Camera. The camera used in an aeroplane for surveying. It takes pictures at regular intervals while the aircraft flies up and down the area being surveyed. The films are pieced together afterwards.

**Cameronian** (kām' ēr ō' ni ān), *adj.* Of or relating to the Scottish Covenanter and field-preacher, Richard Cameron (died 1680). *n.* A follower of Richard Cameron. (F. *Caméronien*.)

The Cameronians became the Reformed Presbyterian Church of Scotland. The First Battalion of the Scottish Rifles (the old 26th Regiment of Foot) is descended directly from the Cameronian regiment, consisting of Cameronians and other Presbyterians, formed in the reign of William III.

**camisade** (kām' i sād'), *n.* A surprise attack at night. Another form is *camisado* (kam' i sa' dō). (F. *camisade*, *attaque de nuit*.)

When soldiers still wore armour it was sometimes found that they mistook their own allies for the enemy, especially during night attacks. To prevent this, a shirt was sometimes worn over the armour, and a

night attack in which this plan of recognition was adopted was known as a *camisade*.

F. from Span. *camizada*, *camisada*, from *camisa*, L.L. *camisia* shirt, perhaps of Celtic origin, suffix *-ade* denoting action. See *chemise*.

**Camisard** (kām' i zard), *n.* One of a small body of French Protestants in the Cevennes who, in the early part of the eighteenth century, actively resisted the religious persecution after the revocation of the Edict of Nantes. (F. *Camisard*.)

Inspired by the prophecies of a man called du Serre, the Camisards took up arms against King Louis XIV and for years carried on a fierce struggle with the royal troops. They were finally dispersed about 1715.

F. from Prov. *camisa* shirt, and contemptuous suffix *-ard*. See *camisade*. **camisole** (kām' i söl), *n.* A woman's short, light under-bodice; a loose jacket. (F. *camisole*.)

F. from Span. *camisola* dim. of *camisa* shirt.

**camlet** (kām' lēt), *n.* A kind of textile fabric; a garment made of this. (F. *camelot*.)

The stuff known as camlet has been made of many different materials in many different combinations—silk, wool, hair, cotton, etc.

F. *camelot*, Arabic *kham(a)lat*. The word was mistakenly connected with *camel*.

**cammock** (kām' ök). This is another name for the plant rest-harrow. See *rest-harrow*. (F. *arrête-bœuf*.)

A.-S. *cammoc*.

**camomile** (kām' ō mil), *n.* A well-known creeping plant or its dried flowers. Another spelling is *chamomile*. (F. *camomille*.)

This plant abounds in Cornwall. It has slender, branching, hairy stems and white flowers with yellow centres. Both leaves and flowers, which have a strong smell and very bitter taste, are used for medicine. The scientific name is *Anthemis nobilis*.

F. *camomille*, L. *chamomilla*, Gr. *khamaimēlon* from *khamai* on the ground, *mēlon* apple; so called from the scent of the flower.

**Camorra** (kā mor' ā), *n.* An Italian secret society formed early in the nineteenth century. (F. *camorra*.)

At first the Camorra was made up largely of criminals banded together to defy the law. A *Camorrist* (kā mor' ist, *n.*), or member of the Camorra, was bound by oath to the strictest secrecy, which it was death to break. In the later part of the nineteenth century the Camorra became a political party, and steps were taken to suppress it.

**Camorrist** (kā mor' izm, *n.*) means terrorism, or ruling by fear and force.

Ital., originally a kind of blouse or smock-frock.



Camouflage. 1. The pangolin or scaly ant-eater posing as a decayed branch. 2. Larva of firwort weevil on a stem. 3. Leaf insect and its natural surroundings. 4. Stick caterpillar imitating a twig. 5. Orange tip butterfly at rest on a flower. 6. Young scarulls in their nest. 7. Grasshopper hiding among withered foliage. 8. Weasel in winter dress.

# CAMOUFLAGE IN WARFARE

*Clever Aids to Deceive the Enemy that are Used by Men and Animals*

**camouflage** (ka moo flazh'), *n.* The altering of the appearance of guns, camps, etc., in order to mislead the enemy. *v.t.* To disguise in this way. (*F. camouflage; camoufler.*)

Many wild creatures have protective colouring of fur or skin, scales or feathers, which protects them from the eye of enemies or of prey. The striped black and tawny coat of the tiger, for instance, is not easily distinguished from the light and shade of the depths of the jungle where the tiger lives.

This principle has been adapted to the uses of modern warfare. Once a soldier's tunic was often scarlet—the colour most easily seen against the green of the battlefield; now it is usually khaki—a colour very difficult to see. Guns, camps, buildings, vehicles, etc., are now elaborately painted or otherwise disguised, to look like something other than what they really are.

The wholesale use of camouflage as a regular war policy came in with the World War (1914-18), but the principle itself is by no means new. Julius Caesar, when he invaded England, is said to have painted his ships green and clothed his men in green. When Tournai was besieged by Henry VIII of England in 1513, the defenders used canvas painted to look like trenchworks to deceive the besiegers. In Shakespeare's "Macbeth," the soldiers attacking Dunsinane carried boughs that made them look like the trees of Birnam wood.

It was only after the South African War (1899-1902) that the possibilities of camouflage were really seriously examined, but without much result. In the first months of the World War (1914-18), however, some French officers made further experiments, and succeeded so well that the *Section de Camouflage* was formed as a unit of the French armies. About a year later, the British Camouflage Service, a unit of the Royal Engineers, came into being.

The need for the protective devices of camouflage had become even more urgent as

the armies gradually became more stationary. Enemy airmen were able to take their time and make careful observation, aided by special cameras, of trenches, gun-emplacements, ammunition dumps, and so on. These, consequently, had to be disguised—made indistinguishable from their surroundings.

An effective way of doing this was not soon discovered. In the first attempts guns, for instance, were screened under branches gathered wherever possible in the vicinity. But the leaves of the branches withered and the watchful enemy at once discovered the deception. Next, large canvas covers, painted to imitate leaves or grass or earth, were erected over the guns. This also failed, for the simple reason that the paint, at certain angles and especially after rain, was shiny. The enemy saw the shine, and at once understood the deception that was being tried on them.



**Camouflage.**—A dress worn during the World War by American soldiers on observation duty in trees. The camouflage, or disguise, made them difficult to be seen among the branches even from a short distance away.

The problem was to find some sort of screen for the guns, etc., which should resemble the natural surroundings in every

way—in colour, tone, texture, outline, light and shade. The nearest approach to this ideal was a screen—eventually used throughout the remainder of the war on all fronts—composed of fish-netting or wire-netting, on which were fastened scrim (a sort of mesh-cloth) and strips of raffia (gardeners' bast), coloured as required, and thinned out towards the edges of the screen so as to make no harsh outline or shadow.

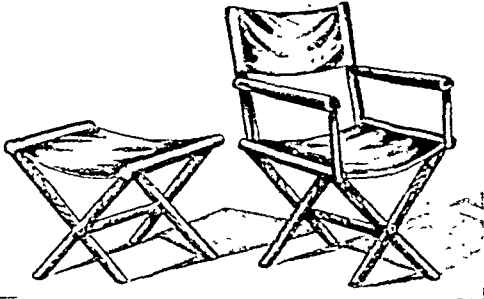
That is only one example of the many applications of the art of camouflage used to mislead the enemy. All kinds of dummies were invented and put into the field for them to shoot at—dummy soldiers, dummy guns, etc.

The artist Solomon J. Solomon (1860-1927) was a pioneer of the art of land camouflage and Norman Wilkinson of sea camouflage, which is called dazzle painting. *See* dazzle.

*F.*, from *camoufler* to blind or veil; cp. Ital. *camuffare* to make up; suffix *-age* denoting action.

**camp** (kämp), *n.* A station in which troops are trained; the ground or spot on which tents, huts, and the like are put up for an army, travellers, gipsies, etc.; a body of people encamped; a party or side. *v.t.* To provide shelter for. *v.i.* To encamp; to take up quarters. (F. *camp*; *camper*.)

Light folding articles of furniture are used for camping, such as the camp-bed (*n.*) or camp-bedstead (*n.*), the camp-chair (*n.*) and



Camp.—A camp-stool and a camp-chair, such as are used for camping.

the camp-stool (*n.*). A camp-ceiling (*n.*) is the ceiling of an attic, made up of part of the roof slopes and a flat in the middle. A flag used for marking the boundaries of a camp is a camp-colour (*n.*).

A fire lit in a camp is a camp-fire (*n.*), and a social gathering of soldiers, boy-scouts or others round such a fire is also called a camp-fire. A camp-follower (*n.*) is any person, not a soldier, who goes with an army in the field. Since some people of the kind have nothing to do with the army, but merely follow it to pick up what they can, the word has come to mean a hanger-on.

A camp-meeting (*n.*) is a religious gathering held out of doors in a temporary camp. It may last for a week or more. The first camp-meetings were held in America, in 1799, by members of the Methodist Church. In England such meetings were frowned upon, and so the Methodists that wanted to have them broke away and formed a new body, called the Primitive Methodists.

To camp out is to live in a camp in the open. The camper (kämp'er, *n.*) or camper-out (kämp'er out', *n.*) finds thus a very pleasant way of spending a summer holiday.

F. from Ital. or Span. *campo* camp, from L. *campus* field, drill-ground, battle-field.

**Campagna** (käm pa'nyä), *n.* The great Italian plain on the west side of central Italy, in which Rome stands. (F. *la campagne*.)

The Campagna is bounded on the west by the sea and on the east by mountains. The soil is very fertile and at one time the Campagna was dotted over with many cities but the ground appears to have sunk, so that the rivers which cross the plain became very sluggish and the water could not get away to the sea.

The Campagna then became swampy, and haunted by mosquitoes and malaria. The population gradually dwindled, especially in the southern district, called the Pontine or Pomptine marshes. In spite of attempts to drain it, a task which is made very difficult by the low level of the plain, the Campagna is still a dreary expanse and very thinly peopled.

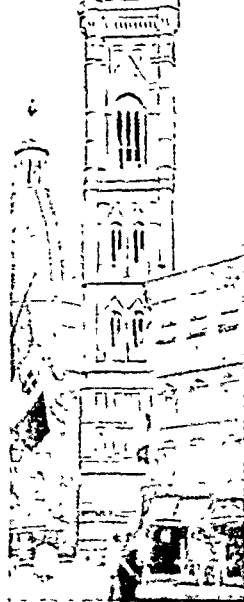
Ital., from L. *Campānia*, from *campus* plain, field.

**campaign** (käm pān'), *n.* A connected service of military operations forming the whole or a part of a war; an organized effort or struggle. *v.i.* To serve on a campaign. (F. *campagne*.)

In olden days armies went into winter quarters and then, as summer drew near, took the field again, that is, came out into the open country. This word was then used of the time during which an army was in the field for the operations then carried out. Any strenuous and organized work, such as that done before a political election, or for purposes of advertising, etc., may be called a campaign.

F. *campagne*, from Ital. *campagna* open country, plain. See *Campagna*, champagne, champagne.

**campanile** (kam pa nē' li, kam pa nēl'; käm'pā nil; käm'pā nil), *n.* A lofty bell-tower. The plural is *campaniles* or *campanili* (kam pa nē' lē). (F. *campanile*.)



Campanile. — Giotto's tower, the famous campanile at Florence, Italy.

The campanile is a striking feature of many churches in Italy. Usually it stands close to, but detached from, the church. The most famous campanile is that of St. Mark's, Venice, which fell suddenly in 1902, but has since been rebuilt. It is three hundred and twenty-five feet high. The campanile at Cremona towers to three hundred and ninety-six feet, that of Westminster Cathedral to two hundred and seventy-three feet.

The most curious campanile is the leaning tower of Pisa, Italy, which is more than sixteen feet out of the upright.

Ital., from *campana* bell. See *campanology*.

**campanology** (käm pā nol' o ji), *n.* The art of bell-ringing.

A campanologist (käm pā nol' o jist, *n.*) is a

person skilled in ringing heavy bells, or in giving campanological (kām pā nō loj' ik āl, *adj.*) performances on hand-bells.

L.L. *campāna* a church bell, said to have been first used at Nola, in Campania, South Italy, and suffix *-logy* science, from Gr. *logos* discourse.

**campanula** (kām pān' ū lā), *n.* A large genus of plants with bell-shaped flowers. (F. *campanule*.)

This genus of plants belongs to the order Campanulaceae. Among well-known species are the harebell (*C. rotundifolia*) and the Canterbury bell (*C. medium*). The long white roots of the rampion (*Campanula rapunculus*) are sometimes used as salad. Flowers belonging to this group may be called campanulaceous (kām pān ū lā' shūs, *adj.*), campanular (kām pān' ū lār, *adj.*), or campanulate (kām pān' ū lāt, *adj.*), because they are bell-shaped.



Campanula.—The harebell, a species of campanula.

Modern L., dim. of L.L. *campāna* a bell.

**camphene** (kām' fēn), *n.* A solid hydrocarbon found dissolved in many essential oils, such as ginger, citronella, and spike lavender. Another spelling is camphine (kām' fin). (F. *camphène*.)

E. *camphor* and chemical suffix *-ene*.

**camphor** (kām' fōr), *n.* A whitish, transparent substance with a peculiar odour obtained from a laurel which grows in Formosa, Japan, and China. (F. *camphire*.)

Besides being the name of an Australian timber tree (*Callitris robusta*), camphorwood (*n.*) is the wood of the camphor-tree (*n.*) or camphor-laurel (*n.*). In order to obtain camphor, the wood of the latter tree is cut up into small chips and placed in a



Camphor.—A native of Formosa gouging chips from a camphor-tree.

chamber through which steam is passed. The steam dissolves the camphor and when the steam condenses in the top of the chamber the camphor is left on the inside.

The raw camphor has then to be purified by being distilled. Camphor burns very readily, even when floating on water. This partly explains why celluloid, which has a large proportion of camphor in it, is so inflammable.

Artificial camphor is made from hydrochloric acid and turpentine. Camphor-oil (*n.*), obtained from camphor, is much used in the manufacture of embrocations. Anything containing camphor is camphoraceous (kām fōr ā' shūs, *adj.*), and to camphorate (kām' fōr āt, *v.t.*) is to treat or mix with camphor. An acid obtained from camphor is a camphoric (kām fōr' ik, *adj.*) acid, and the salt of such an acid is a camphorate (*n.*).

Formerly *camphire* (Song of Solomon, 1, 14). F. *camphire*, L.L. *camphora*, Arabic *kāfir*, from Malay *kāpūr* (*Bārūs*) literally "chalk of Barous" in Sumatra.



Campion.—The campion is perhaps so called because it was used to make chaplets for the crowning of champions at public games.

**campion** (kām' pi ōn), *n.* A British plant belonging to the genus *Lychnis*, or *Silene*.

It is thought that the campion received its name because it was used to make chaplets with which champions were crowned at public games. It is a native of Great Britain and is sometimes called the lamp-flower. Among well-known species are the white campion (*Lychnis alba*), the red campion (*L. diurna*), the rose campion (*L. coronaria*), and the bladder campion (*Silene latifolia*).

Perhaps from E. *campion*, obsolete form of *champion* (see above). O.F. name for the flower is *campagnon* companion.

**campshed** (kāmp' shed), *v.t.* To line (a river-bank) with piles and planks.

Along a river-bank we sometimes see huge stakes or piles driven into the ground to steady the bank and prevent it from being



washed or worn away. To protect river-banks in this way is to campshed them, and a bank or shore thus treated is said to be protected with **campshedding** (kämp shed' ing, *n.*) or **campsheeting** (kämp shët' ing, *n.*) or **campshot** (kämp' shot, *n.*).

If *campshot* is the earlier form, the word is perhaps from an assumed Dutch *kant-schoot* side-hoarding. See *cant* [2] and *wainscot*.

**camwood** (käm' wud), *n.* The red wood of a West African tree belonging to the bean family; a powder made from this, used for dyeing. (F. *santal rouge d'Afrique*.)

**Camwood**, first brought from Africa by the Portuguese, is grown in the districts around Sierra Leone where it is called *kambi*. Besides being used as a dye, it is employed in the manufacturing of knife-handles and ornamental knobs for furniture. It is sometimes known as *barwood* or *ringwood*.

Perhaps W. African *kambi* and E. *wood*.

**can** [1] (kän), *auxiliary v.* To be able to. Present ind. second sing. **canst** (känst), third sing. **can** *p.t.* could (kud), couldst (kudst); negative **cannot**, **can't** (kant). (F. *pouvoir*.)

That which is possible for us to do, that which we are able or are allowed to do, we can do. But in asking permission to do anything we should say, "May I?"

"May I play tennis with George?" is a question asking leave to play, but the question "Can I beat George at tennis?" invites opinion as to whether I am able to beat him..

An old preterite or past tense used as present, like *dare*, *may*, *must*, *shall*. A-S *can* (infinitive *cunnan*); cp. O Norse, G *hann* I am able, literally "I have come to know" (A-S *cennan* to ken), related to L. *gnō-scere*, Gr. *gī-gnō-skein* to learn, know. See *cunning*, *ken*, *know*.

**can** [2] (kän), *n.* A metal vessel or container. *v.t.* To put in cans in order to preserve. (F. *broc*, *boîte*, *boîtes*.)

Out of tin, or thin sheets of iron covered with tin, cans are made for holding various liquids. If fruits, meats, fish, and other foods are packed in cans sealed hermetically, that is, sealed by fusing the edges so that the contents are air-tight, they are proof against decay. A metal vessel filled with a liquid is a **canful** (kän' ful, *n.*).

In America, where the packing of foods in cans is a great industry, one who packs food in this way is said to **can** it. **Canned-goods** (känd' gudz, *n.pl.*) are packed by a **canner** (kän' er, *n.*) in a factory known as a **cannery** (kän' er i, *n.*).

A-S *canna*, common Teut.; cp. Dutch *kan*, G *kanne*.

**Canaan** (kä' nyan; kä' nän), *n.* The ancient name given to Western Palestine; the land of promise; Heaven. (F. *Canaan*.)

**Canaan** was the land promised by God to the children of Israel after their wanderings of forty years in the desert. From this we get the modern use of the word meaning some pleasant place to which we hope to go, particularly Heaven itself. The people living in Canaan before the children of Israel arrived were **Canaanites** (kä' nän its, *n.pl.*), who were the descendants of Canaan, the grandson of Noah. Anything to do with them or the land they lived in, is described as **Canaanitish** (kä nā nī' tish, *adj.*).

Heb. *Kan'an*.

**Canada balsam** (kän' ä dā bawl' sām), *n.* A pale, clear, liquid resin obtained from a Canadian tree. (F. *baume du Canada*.)

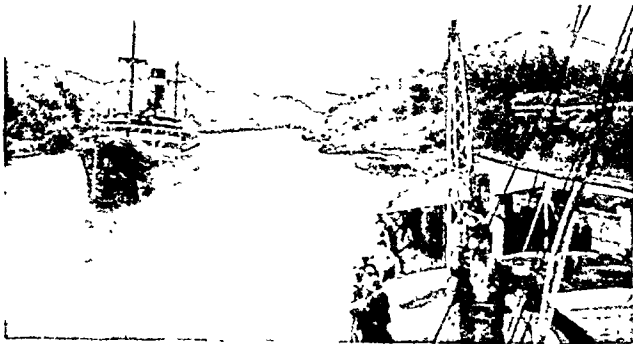
**Canada balsam**, which looks like thin honey, is obtained chiefly from a Canadian tree, the American silver-fir (*Abies balsamea*). It is used in medicine, and for mounting objects to be examined under the microscope. E. *Canada* and *balsam*.

**Canadian** (kä nā' di än), *adj.* Belonging to or relating to Canada. *n.* One born or living in Canada. (F. *canadien*.)

In 1783 Canada included only the two provinces of Quebec and Ontario. To-day the Dominion of Canada is the greatest of the Dominions of the British Empire, covering some 3,730,000 square miles and having a population of more than eight millions.

**canal** (kā nāl'), *n.* An artificial waterway; a passage. *v.t.* To make a canal across. (F. *canal*.)

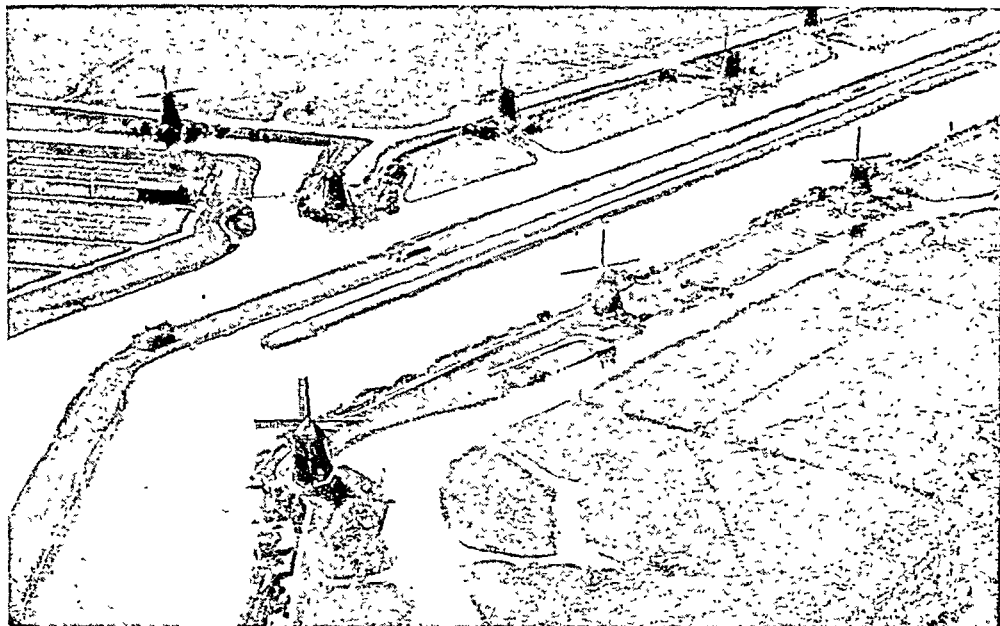
Great canals, like the Suez and Panama Canals, are dug-out waterways made as



Canal.—Two steamers passing through the Panama Canal, which links the Atlantic with the Pacific.

short-cuts from one sea or ocean to another. Canals connecting inland towns with each other or with the sea, such as the great Manchester Ship Canal, are really artificial rivers whose waters rise by easy stages from sea-level and are controlled by locks, or water-gates, so that sufficient water for navigation is always retained in each section.

Doctors speak of certain ducts or passages in the body as canals, and in architecture a canal is a fluting or groove. A canal in zoology is a groove seen in certain shells. Some astronomers believe that certain



Canal.—Holland is a land of canals and windmills, as is shown in this photograph, taken from an aeroplane, of the approaches to Kinderdyk.

markings observed on the planet Mars are waterways, so these markings are known as the canals of Mars (*n.pl.*). To canal or canalize (*kān' à liz, v.t.*) a country or a river is to supply the country with canals, or to make the river navigable. This work of digging out channels, etc., is called canalization (*kān à li zā' shùn, n.*). Canaliculate (*kān à lik' ū lāt, adj.*) or canaliculated (*kān à lik' ū lāt éd, adj.*) is a term in physiology meaning grooved or channelled.

F. *canal*, from L. *canāl*—is pipe, channel. See channel, kennel (gutter).

**canard** (*kā nard'; ka nar'*), *n.* An absurd story; a hoax. (F. *canard*.)

Long after the death of Charles Parnell (1846-91), the Irish politician, it was believed in parts of Ireland that he was not really dead and that one day he would emerge dramatically from his retirement. The story was spread that it was not Parnell's body but bricks or stones that had been buried in the coffin, but this was a canard.

F., properly a duck, from *cane* duck and the depreciative suffix *-ard*; the figurative meaning probably from the phrase *vendre un canard à moitié* to half sell a duck, hence to befool.

**canary** (*kā nār' i*), *n.* A sweet wine; a bird of the finch family; a yellow colour. *adj.* Of this colour. (F. *vin des Canaries; serin.*)

The wine of this name is a light, sweet

wine which is produced in the Canary Islands. It is also known as Teneriffe. The bird known as the canary is a sweet songster of the finch family, a native of the Canary Islands. The bright yellow which is the usual colour of the plumage of this bird is the colour known as canary, and whatever is of this colour is canary-coloured (*adj.*). Bird-fanciers feed a canary mostly on canary-seed (*n.*), which is the seed of the canary-grass (*n.*), known to botanists as *Phalaris Canariensis*. The canary-creeper (*n.*), sometimes called *Canariensis*, is a climbing plant related to the nasturtium. It has bright yellow flowers with fringed lower petals, and deeply-cut leaves. The scientific name is *Tropaeolum aduncum*.



Canary.—The canary was named after the Canary Islands, its native home.

F. *Canarie, L. (insula) Canāria* one of the Canary Islands, "isle of dogs," from *canāri-us* belonging to a dog, L. *can-is* dog.

**canaster** (*kā nās' ter*), *n.* A coarse kind of tobacco; a rush-basket. (F. *canastre*.)

This coarse tobacco was at first brought from America in a kind

of rush-basket called a canaster, hence its name.

Span. *canastra*, Gr. *kanastron* basket ' ' See canister.

**cancel** (*kān' sèl*), *v.t.* To strike out by drawing lines across; to wipe out; to do away with; to suppress. *n.* The taking out and reprinting of a part of a book; the part taken out. (F. *annuller, resilier, biffer.*)

Sometimes the die, or plate, from which an engraving is made is destroyed deliberately and this is done by scoring across it a lattice-work of lines. The plate is then said to be cancelled. To take back a promise or to revoke an order is to cancel it, and in arithmetic we are said to cancel common factors when we strike them out. When part of a book has to be taken out and reprinted, that part is a cancel, and to make this change is to make a cancel.

A stamp for defacing tickets is called a pair of cancels. In botany and zoology, anything that is like lattice-work, that is, spaced into divisions, is a cancellate (*kān' sèl át, adj.*), cancellated (*kān' sèl át éd, adj.*), or cancellous (*kān' sèl ūs, adj.*) thing. Cancellation (*kān sèl lā' shùn, n.*) is the act of cancelling; thus we may speak of the cancellation of an order which we have revoked.

The lattice-work rails between the choir and the body of a church are called cancelli (*kān sèl' ī, n.pl.*), and this is also the name given to the lattice-work in the spongy part of bones.

*F. canceller, L. cancellare* to cross out, from *cancelli* cross-bars, lattice, dim. of *cancer* lattice; cp *Gr. kinglys*. *SYN.*: *v.t.* Abrogate, annul, efface, rescind, revoke. *ANT.*: *v.t.* Confirm, maintain, sustain.

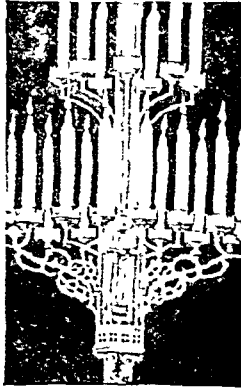
**cancer** (*kān' ser*), *n.* A constellation or group of fixed stars; a sign of the Zodiac; a disease. (*F. le Cancer, cancer.*)

Cancer, or the Crab, is the smallest constellation and the fourth sign of the Zodiac. The constellation lies between Gemini and Leo, and at the time the constellations were named it coincided with the zodiacal sign which, like the rest, has shifted in the course of ages. The Tropic of Cancer (23½ degrees north of the equator) marks the northern limit of the sun's course in summer. The sun stands over this at the summer solstice, which occurs on June 21st.

One of the worst scourges of the human race, which causes great suffering and death every year, is the spreading growth which affects different parts of the body and is known as cancer. Great efforts are being made to find a cure. Sometimes, figuratively, a moral evil is also spoken of as a cancer. In a part of the body developing cancer there is said to be a *canceration* (*kān ser ā' shùn, n.*) and it is said to be a *cancered* (*kān' serd, adj.*) or *cancerous* (*kān' ser ūs, adj.*) part.

Anything formed like a crab or a cancer is a *canceriform* (*kāng' kri form, adj.*) or a *cancroid* (*kāng' kroid, adj.*) thing. A crab-like animal is called a *cancroid* (*n.*), and the name is also given to a skin disease somewhat resembling cancer.

*L. cancer* a crab, a kind of tumour; cp. *Gr. karkinos*. *See* cancer.



Candelabrum.—An ornamental candlestick or candelabrum.

**candelabrum** (*kān dè lā' brūm*), *n.* An ornamental candlestick; a lamp-stand. *pl. Candelabra* (*kān dè lā' brā*). (*F. candelabre.*)

In the days before houses were lit by gas or electricity, a room of a great house was furnished with tall, ornamental candlesticks, usually branched. These were known as candelabra.

Another form of the word is *candelabra* (*kān dè lā' brā*). *pl. candelabras* (*kān dè lā' brāz*).

*L. candelabrum* candlestick, from *candēla* candle (which *see*).

**candescence** (*kān des' ent*), *adj.* Glowing with heat. (*F. incandescence.*)

The mantle on a gas-burner, when lighted, glows with a white heat, therefore we may say that the mantle is candescent, or that it is in a state of candescence (*kān des' ens, n.*).

*L. candescens* (acc. -*ent-ent*) pres. p. of *candescere* to begin to glow, inceptive *v.* from *candere* to be

white, to glow.

**candid** (*kān' did*), *adj.* Frank; sincere; outspoken. (*F. candide, franc, sincere.*)

A person who will tell us frankly and sincerely what is in his mind, whether it be the kind of thing we shall be pleased to hear or not, is a candid person. In thus telling us what he thinks he speaks candidly (*kān' did lī, adv.*), and what he says has the quality of candidness (*kān' did nēs, n.*).

*L. candidus* white, fair, pure, honest, from *candere* to shine; cp. Sansk. *chand* to shine. *SYN.*: Frank, honest, open, sincere, truthful. *ANT.*: Deceitful, designing, insincere, shift, sly.

**candidate** (*kān' di dāt*), *n.* One who seeks an office or appointment; one who is worthy of an office or an honour. (*F. candidat, aspirant.*)

In ancient Rome, when a person sought some office he wore a white toga, or robe, and the Latin word for "white-robed" is *candidatus*, from whence we get our word candidate, meaning one who seeks some office, appointment, or honour. Thus a person seeking election to Parliament is a parliamentary candidate, and the state of being a candidate is called *candidature* (*kān' di dāt tūr, n.*) or *candidateship* (*kān' di dāt ship, n.*).

*L. candidatus* clad in white, a candidate, from *candidus* white, and suffix of *p.p. -ātus*. *SYN.*: Applicant, aspirant.

**candied** (*kān' did*), *adj.* Coated with sugar; made into a candy. *See* under candy.

**candle** (*kān' dl*), *n.* A stick of wax or tallow surrounding a wick, used to give light by burning; a taper. (*F. chandelle, bougie.*)

Apart from wicks burning oil, in lamps, the chief means of lighting even great palaces

until the nineteenth century was the candle—a wick burning in the centre of a slender column of solid wax or tallow. Even to-day the power of light is measured as equal to so many candles, the standard candle which is made of spermaceti, or whale-fat, and burns at the rate of two grains a minute giving one candle-power (*n.*) of light.

A man working in a dark place needs an assistant to hold a light; hence one man may be said to be not fit to hold a candle to another, when he is so inferior to him that he is not worthy to render him the humblest service. To burn the candle at both ends is to be very wasteful of any precious possession, like health or money. When any undertaking does not seem worth going on with, we may say the game is not worth the candle.

**Candlelight** (*n.*) is the time at or during which candles are lighted. The wax of which some candles are made is the greenish-white wax which covers the berries of a shrub common in North America and called candleberry-myrtle (*n.*), or *Myrica cerifera*. The candleberry tree (*n.*) or candle-tree (*n.*) (*Aleurites triloba*), which grows in the Moluccas, bears an oily fruit, which is some times burnt as a candle. The utensil for holding candles is a candlestick (*n.*).

A.-S. *candel* (a church word), L. *candēla*, from *candere* to shine

**Candlemas** (kän' di mäs), *n.* The Church festival of the Purification. (F. *la Chandeleur*.)

On the second day of February the presentation of Christ in the temple and the purification of the Virgin Mary are celebrated in the Church of England. The former is observed on this day in the Eastern Church, and the latter by the Roman Catholics. The festival takes its name from the old custom of blessing candles for the year on this occasion.

In Scotland, Candlemas is one of the four term-days or quarter-days, on which rent and interest, etc., are paid.

A.-S. *candelmesse*, from *candle* and *mass*.

**candock** (kän' dök), *n.* The water-lily, especially the common yellow pond-lily. (F. *nénufar*.)

Water-lilies are called candocks because the seed-vessel is shaped like a can or flagon. In Staffordshire they are called watercans.

E. *can* [2] and *dock*

**candour** (kän' dör), *n.* Frankness. (F. *candeur*, *sincérité*.)

A person who is straightforward, sincere, given to saying what he truly thinks without fear or flattery, is said to have candour.

L. *candor* (acc. *candōr-em*) whiteness, purity, from *candere* to shine. SYN.: Openness, outspokenness, sincerity. ANT.: Disingenuousness, reserve, shiftiness.

**candy** (kän' di), *n.* Sugar boiled and crystallized for confectionery; a sugar sweet. *v.t.* To preserve or coat with sugar. *v.i.* To crystallize as or with sugar. (F. *candi*; *candir*.)

Sugar boiled and then allowed to harden into a white cake, perhaps with something added to colour or flavour it, is candy. Citron peel, cherries, and other fruits are dipped in boiling sugar, which candies them. Sugar, or anything encrusted with sugar, is said to candy. A candied (kän' did, *adj.*) apple is one encrusted with sugar. One who speaks flattering words may be said to have a candied tongue.

F. (*sucré*) *candi*, L.L. (*saccharum*) *candi* candied sugar, Arabic *qandi* made of sugar, through Pers. from Sansk. *khandā* a piece, also candied sugar, from *khand* to break.

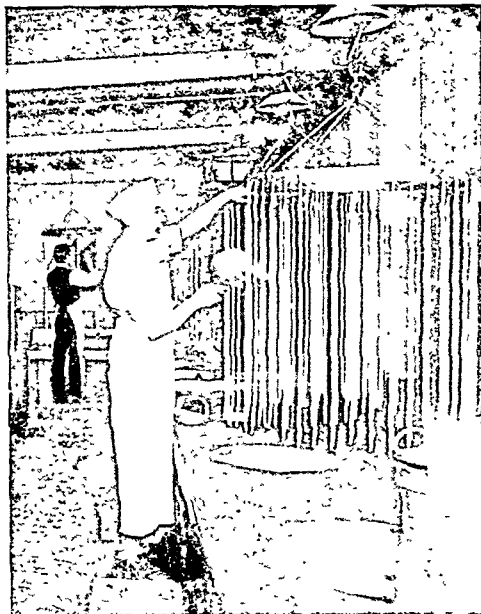
**candytuft** (kän' di tüft), *n.* A cruciferous plant with flat tufts of white, pink, or purple flowers. (F. *ibéride*.)

Several species of *Iberis* grown in gardens are called by this name, which was at first applied to a kind brought from Crete, formerly called Candia from its chief town.

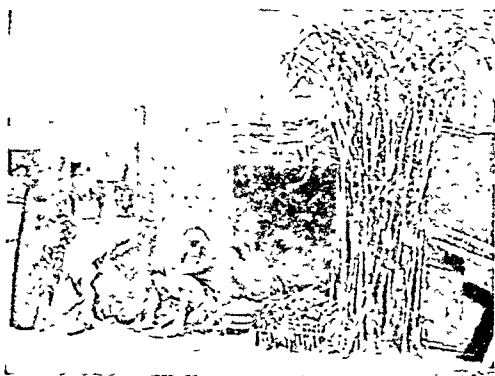
E. *Candy*, Candia = and *tuft*.

**cane** (kän), *n.* The straight, tough stem of a large reed or other plant: a length of the same used as a rod of punishment or a light walking-stick; material for caning chairs. *adj.* Made of or pertaining to cane. *v.t.* To beat with a cane; to furnish with cane. (F. *baguette*, *canne*.)

The stems of some plants such as palms, bamboo, rattan, sugar-cane, and other strong jointed reeds or grasses are known as cane. Cane, too, is the name used of the stem of a raspberry or similar plant. Glass-blowers call a solid stick of glass a cane.



Candle.—Coating the wicks of large candles with melted oil. This process is repeated as many times as necessary to make them the desired thickness.



Cane. Selling sugar-cane in Cairo. Some of the cane as it grows is seen to the right of the hut.

A cane-chair (*n.*) is one of which the seat, and sometimes the back, are made of inter-laced split canes stretched on the frame. A thicket of cane is a cane-brake (*n.*), and there is also a sort of grass called cane-brake. In a cane-mill (*n.*) sugar-canes are crushed; this is a process in the manufacture of cane-sugar (*n.*). The refuse from this manufacture is cane-trash (*n.*). A cany (*kā' ni*, *adj.*) thing is like cane. A thrashing with a cane is a caning (*kān' ing*, *n.*).

M.E., O.F. *cane*, *canne*, from L. *canna*, Gr. *lanna* a reed; probably Sem.; cp. Heb. *qāneh*.

**canella** (*kā nel' ā*), *n.* A group of West Indian plants or trees with highly-scented bark.

The white canella, or wild cinnamon, sometimes grows to a height of fifty feet, and when in blossom perfumes the whole neighbourhood, although its violet flowers seldom open. A scented oil is obtained from the bark, which is called white-wood bark.

L. L. dim. of *canna* cane.

**canephorus** (*kā nē' fōr ūs*), *n.* A sculptured figure of a basket-carrier. *pl.* *canephorī* (*kā nē' fōr ī*). (F. *canéphore*).

In ancient Greece youths or maidens carried on their heads baskets of sacred things for the feasts of Demeter, Bacchus, and other deities. Sculptured representations of such figures are *canephorī*.

Modern L., from Gr. *kanēphoros* (masc. and fem.), from *kaneon* basket, *-phoros* carrying, from *pherein* to carry.

**canescent** (*kā nes' ent*), *adj.* Rather hoary; whitish. (F. *blanchissant*.)

In botany, any part of a plant covered with a slight down which looks grey or whitish is called *canescent*. The state of

growing grey and hoary is called *canescence* (*kā nes' ens*, *n.*).

L. *cānescens* (acc. *cānescent-em*) pres. p. of *cānescere* to grow white, from *cān-us* hoary, white, *-esc-* denoting beginning.

**cangue** (*kang*), *n.* A Chinese instrument of punishment. Another spelling is *cang*. (F. *cangue*.)

In China wrongdoers are sometimes punished by being made to wear a heavy wooden collar round the neck. In this wooden frame there is a hole for the neck. The frame is in two halves, which may be opened to receive the neck, after which the *cangue* is nailed up and thus securely fastened on the criminal, who has to be fed by passers-by.

F. *cangue*, from Port. *cango*; cp. *canga* porter's yoke.



Cangue.—A Chinese prisoner wearing a heavy wooden cangue or collar.

**canicular** (*kā nik' ū lār*), *adj.* Belonging to the dog star, or to the dog days. (F. *caniculaire*.)

The dog star is Sirius, and the dog days were the days in July and August, before and after a date about the 11th of August, on which Sirius rose heliacally, that is, for the first time far enough from the sun to be seen. The star itself was believed to be the cause of fevers. The canicular year of the Egyptians was reckoned from one heliacal rising of Sirius until the next.

L. *caniculāris*, from *canicula* little dog, dog star, dim. of *canis* dog.

**canine** (*kān' in*; *kā nīn'*; *kā' nīn*), *adj.* Belonging to a dog or dogs; dog-like. *n.* An eye tooth. (F. *canin*, *de chien*, *de chiens*.)

The eye-teeth, the pointed teeth for tearing, which are in each jaw between the incisors—or front cutting teeth—and the molars—or grinders—are possessed by man as well as other animals, but are conspicuous in the canine or dog family, and are therefore called canine teeth or canines.

L. *caninus*, from *canis* dog.



Canephorus.—A graceful canephorus in the British Museum.

**canister** (kăn' i tēr), *n.* A metal box : a case of bullets fired from a cannon. (F. *boîte de ferblanc* ; *mitraille*.)

The tin box in which tea, coffee, or shot is kept is a canister ; but to fire canister is to fire canister-shot (*n.*)—a kind of shot no longer used, in which bullets were packed in metal cases which burst when discharged somewhat like modern shrapnel. It was sometimes called case-shot.

Thomas Hood punningly combined both meanings of the word, as well as of grape (grape-shot) in the lines :

If wine is poison, so is tea,

Though in another shape.

What matter if a man be killed

By canister or grape ?

*L. canstrum* basket, Gr. *kanastron* wicker basket, from *kanna* reed, cane.

**canker** (käng' kër), *n.* An ulcer ; a disease of trees ; anything causing rottenness or corruption. *v.t.* To infect with rottenness : to corrupt. *v.i.* To become corrupt.

A sort of ulcer in the mouth ; a diseased growth in a horse's foot ; an ear disease of dogs and cats ; a disease which deforms the boughs of trees, especially fruit trees ; anything which corrupts, eating away like a cancer, is a canker. Shakespeare uses canker in the old senses of dog-rose and canker-worm.

There is a form of scarlet-fever in which the throat develops ulcers ; this is called canker-rash (*n.*). The common British weed, ragwort, is also known as canker-weed (*n.*). Canker-worm (*n.*) or canker is a name applied to various grubs that feed on and canker buds and leaves. Cankered (käng' kerd, *adj.*) means diseased or corrupt. A cankered temper is one that is soured and spiteful. That which causes corruption is a cankerous (käng' ker üs, *adj.*) thing.

O. Northern F. *cancre* (F. *chancre*), *L. cancer* (acc. *cancer-um*), crab, also gangrene.

**canna** (kăn' à), *n.* A genus of plants with ornamental leaves and beautiful red or yellow flowers.

The canna, which is a native of Asia, Africa, and America, is also common in Indian gardens, and is used in England for bedding out in summer. Its black, hard, heavy seeds are called Indian shot.

*L. canna*, Gr. *kanna* reed.

**cannabis** (kăn' à bis), *n.* A genus of plants belonging to the natural order Cannabinaceae ; hemp.

The common or Indian hemp is a native of India and Persia, but is cultivated in Europe. From very early times it has been grown for its fibre, from which ropes and cloth are made.

The species of this genus are cannabine (kăn' à bin, *adj.*) plants. Cannabin (kăn' à bin, *n.*) is a poisonous resin obtained in hot countries from hemp. It is a narcotic or stupefying substance, and the eastern drug hashish, a preparation of hemp,

containing cannabin, is used to ease pain by an intoxicated sleep.

*L. cannabis*, Gr. *kannabis*, from an Oriental source, whence also A.-S. *haenep*, E. *hemp*.

**cannach** (kăn' àkh), *n.* The cotton-grass. Another spelling is *canna* (kăn' à).

The word is Scottish. When Sir Walter Scott in "The Lady of the Lake" (ii, 15) speaks of "the canna's hoary head," he means the silky or cottony mass which springs from the ripened seeds of the cotton-grass. These plants are really sedges, growing in damp places in Scotland and other northern countries, the commonest species being the narrow-leaved cotton-grass (*Eriophorum angustifolium*).

Gaelic *canach*.

**cannel** (kăn' el), *n.* A hard bituminous coal which burns with a bright flame. *adj.* Having the nature of cannel. (F. *cannel-coal*.)

This kind of coal, usually called cannel-coal (*n.*), is found in Lancashire and Scotland, and is used chiefly in gas-works, as it gives off a great deal of gas.

It has been supposed that this coal may have been used to give light, like a candle, called *cannel* in the Lancashire dialect.

**cannery** (kăn' ér i), *n.* A place in which fish, meat, etc., are canned. See *can* [2].



Cannibal.—A group of cannibal bushmen of the village of Foate, Solomon Islands.

**cannibal** (kăn' i bäl), *n.* A human being who feeds on human flesh ; an animal that devours its own kind. *adj.* Relating to cannibals or cannibalism. (F. *cannibale*.)

The act or practice of feeding on one's kind is called cannibalism (kăn' i bäl izm *n.*), and a feast on human bodies a cannibalistic (kăn i bäl is' tik, *adj.*) feast.

At one time cannibalism was very common among savage tribes of the East and West Indies, Africa, South America, and the Pacific. The Aztecs of Mexico practised it as a religious rite. Early explorers fell in

with many cannibal races. Cannibalism is now practised in but a few out-of-the-way parts of the globe.

Span. *Caibales* (pl.), people of *Caniba* or *Carib*, supposed name of the island of Haiti, really the name of the Caribbean people, in whose language *caribe* means brave. *Caliban* in Shakespeare's "Tempest" is probably a form of the word cannibal.

**canniness'** (kăn' i nēs), *n.* Caution; shrewdness. See under *canny*.

**cannon** [1] (kăn' ōn), *n.* A large gun or piece of ordnance; artillery; *pl.* cannons and cannons. *v.i.* To fire a cannon. *v.t.* To attack with a cannon. (F. *canon*; *se canonner*; *canonner*.)

The word is now seldom applied to modern weapons, being replaced by the term gun. When speaking historically or of old types of artillery, we still say cannon. In a machine, such as a watch, a hollow cylinder that turns on a shaft is called a cannon.

A cannon fires a **cannon-ball** (*n.*), a solid globular shot, or it may fire many kinds of

when we carelessly run against him, or we cannon into a lamp-post if we walk suddenly against it, not looking where we are going. There are many varieties of cannon in billiards, as the **anchor-cannon** (*n.*), when the two balls are jammed at the mouth of a pocket, and the **pendulum-cannon** (*n.*), a somewhat similar cannon, to the anchor-cannon, and the **nursery-cannon** (*n.*), one of a series of cannons in the making of which the three balls are kept very close together.

In America a cannon at billiards is called a *carom*, which is the older form of the word. In many countries there are no pockets on a billiard table.

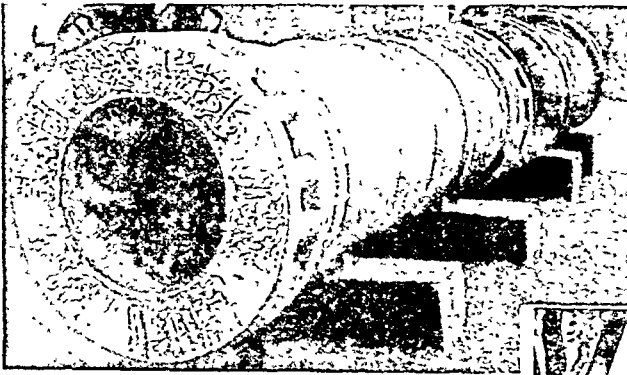
A corruption of *carom*, shortened from F. *caramboler* to make a cannon, from Span. *carambola* a device, trick.

**cannot** (kan' not). The negative of *can*. See *can* [1].

**canny** (kăn' i), *adj.* Prudent; shrewd; cautious; thrifty. (F. *fin*, *aisé*, *circonspect*, *ménager*.)

This Scottish word has been adopted to express qualities supposed to be specially Scottish. In Scotland, however, it now usually means quiet or gentle. If we say that a place does not seem quite canny, we mean that it has a mysteriously dangerous or unlucky character. **Cannily** (kăn' i li, *adv.*) means cautiously, and **canniness** (kăn' i nēs, *n.*) shrewdness.

From *can* in the sense of knowing, and *adj.* suffix -y; cp. Swed. *kunnig*, E. *cunning*.

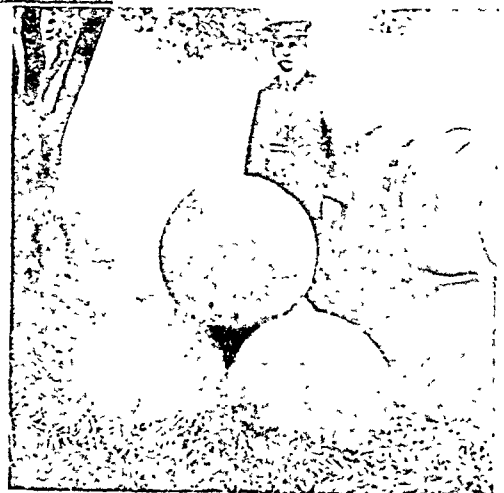


shot or shell. A fort, castle, or other defence is said to be **cannon-proof** (*adj.*) when it cannot be destroyed by cannon. The distance a cannon can fire a cannon-ball is a **cannon-shot** (*n.*). The British colonies on the West Coast of Africa used to extend a cannon-shot from the forts. The continuous firing at a fortress, ship, or other object by cannon (*pl.*) is a **cannonade** (kăn ōn ād', *n.*); a soldier in charge of a cannon was a **cannoneer** (kăn ōn ēr', *n.*). A **cannon-bit** (*n.*) is a straight, smooth bit for a horse. A **cannon-bone** (*n.*) is the shank bone of the horse and other hoofed animals. It extends from the knee to the fetlock of a front-leg, and from the hock to the fetlock of a hind-leg.

F. *canon* (cp. Ital. *cannone*), from L., Ital. *canna* reed, later tube, with augmentative F. suffix -on (Ital. -one; cp. E. -gon).

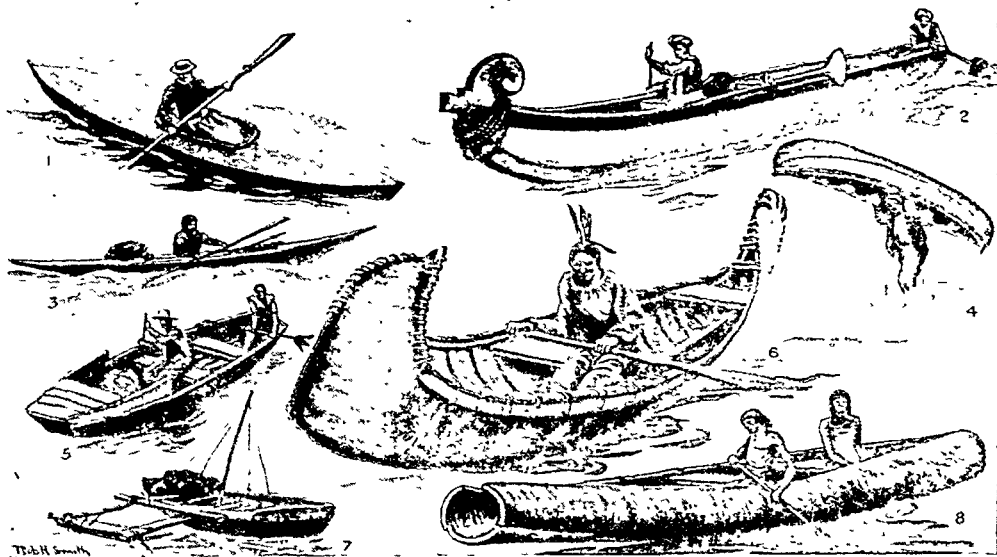
**cannon** [2] (kăn' ōn), *n.* A stroke in the game of billiards in which the player's ball touches each of the other two balls in succession, *v.i.* To make a cannon; to collide violently. (F. *carambolage*, *canam bala*, *se leuter*.)

We say we **cannon** against another person



**Cannon.**—A bronze Turkish cannon cast in 1648. The two parts screwed together, and fired stone cannon-balls that weighed six hundredweights, as shown in the bottom photograph.

**canoe** (kā noo'), *n.* A light kind of boat pointed at both ends, and usually propelled by hand paddles. *v.i.* To go in a canoe. (F. *pirogue*, *perissoire*.)



Canoe.—1. The canoe in which Rob Roy MacGregor voyaged for thousands of miles. 2. The native canoe used on the Tigris. 3. The kayak of the Eskimo. 4. A Canadian backwoodsman carrying his canoe. 5. A canoe used on the Gold Coast, Africa. 6. Birch-bark canoe of the North American Indian. 7. Outrigger canoe of the South Sea Islands. 8. Bark canoe used on the upper Amazon.

The simplest form of a canoe is one hollowed out of a large log—a “dug-out.” The war canoes of some tribes are very large, holding twenty men or more. In America, the Canadian open birch-bark canoe is much used. The Eskimos make canoes of seal or walrus hide stretched on a framework of whalebone and covered in at the top. Watertight aprons are made fast round the paddlers’ waists, and a skilful performer is able to turn his canoe right over sideways by strokes of his paddle, and bring it upright again.

Except in Eskimo and ordinary river canoes with covered ends, the single-bladed paddle is used. Some canoes are provided with small sails, and others, especially in the Pacific, are fitted with outriggers to prevent them from capsizing.

Span. *canoa* from the Haitian name for a boat. F. *canot* boat is probably unconnected.

**canon** (kăn’ ōn), *n.* A general law; a rule; a standard or test; a decree of the Church; the list of books accepted by the Church as forming the Bible; the official list of saints; that part of the Mass which includes the words of consecration; a member of the body of clergy, called the chapter, attached to a cathedral; the largest size of type to which a name is given; a piece of music, each part of which imitates the previous passage, one after the other; the metal loop on a bell by which it is hung. (F. *canon*, *règle*, *chanonnie*.)

Church law as laid down by Church councils is called canon law (*n.*), as distinguished from the law of the land, which is civil law. A canon regular (*n.*) is a priest who lives with other priests subject to certain

fixed rules or canons; women living in certain religious societies under rules are canonesses (kăn’ ōn es ēz, *n.pl.*).

Anything which has to do with canon law or a cathedral chapter, or any book included in the Bible, or any rule issued by Church authority, is *canonic* (kă non’ ik *adj.*) or *canonical* (kă non’ ik âl, *adj.*). The position or office of a canon at a cathedral is his *canonry* (kăn’ ōn ri, *n.*). Roman Catholic priests and monks say every day seven sets of prayers and psalms at certain hours, which are called the *canonical hours*. The same term is given in England to the hours (8 a.m. to 3 p.m.) when a wedding may be lawfully celebrated.

**Canonicals** (*n.pl.*) are the dress which a Church of England clergyman has to wear at divine service. A **canonist** (kăn’ ō nist, *n.*) is a canon lawyer, whose work is *canonistic* (kăn ōn is’ tik, *adj.*) or *canonistical* (kăn ōn ist’ ik âl, *adj.*), and who sees that things are done *canonically* (kăn on’ ik âl li, *adv.*), that is, according to the accepted rules. **Canonicity** (kăn ōn is’ i ti, *n.*) is the quality of being according to the rules, or of being an approved work.

To include someone in the official list of saints, or to declare a thing to be canonical, is to **canonize** (kăn’ ōn ize, *v.t.*), and the official declaration of a person’s saintliness is **canonization** (kăn ōn i ză’ shûn, *n.*).

A.-S. *canon*, L. *canōn*, Gr. *kanōn* a rod, rule, from *kanē* a form of *kanna* reed. See *cane*. In the sense of a Church dignitary canon is A.-S. *canonic*, L. *canonicus*, Gr. *kanonikos* pertaining to a canon or rule.

**cañon** (kăn’ yón). This is another spelling of canyon. See *canyon*.



**cantabile** (kan ta' bi lā), *adj.* In a smooth, melodious, and straightforward manner. *n.* A piece of music written in this style. (F. *cantabile*.)

In music, this word is a direction indicating that the composition is to be taken easily and with a good deal of graceful expression and style. It is also used for music of a gentle, peaceful, and elegant character, and denotes a composition written in this particular style.

Ital., from L.L. *cantāre* to sing (see *cant* [1]), and L. passive suffix *-ābilis* capable of, fit for.

**Cantabrigian** (kǎn tā brij' i ǎn), *adj.* Of or relating to Cambridge, especially to the University of Cambridge. *n.* A member of Cambridge University. (F. *de Cambridge*.)

The word is derived from *Cantabrigia*, the Latin name for Cambridge. **Cantab** (kǎn' tāb, *n.*) is a usual shortened form of the noun. A member of Oxford University is an Oxonian.

**cantaloup** (kǎn' tā loop), *n.* A small, round, ribbed melon. Another spelling is *cantalupe*. (F. *cantaloup*.)

The cantaloup, a small, juicy musk-melon, is the fruit of a trailing herb, and it received its name from Cantalupo, Italy, the place where it was first grown in Europe.

**cantankerous** (kǎn tǎng' kèr ùs), *adj.* Disagreeable; cross-grained; perverse; quarrelsome. (F. *acariâtre, revêche*.)

A person who persists in behaving disagreeably or cantankerously (kǎn tǎng' kèr ùs li, *adv.*) will soon find that his friends will avoid him because of his cantankerousness (kǎn tǎng' kèr ùs nès, *n.*).

Formerly *contankerous*, probably from M.E. *contehour*, *contecher* a quarrelsome person, agent noun from *conteken* to quarrel, M.E. and Anglo-F. *contek* strife, contention; of uncertain origin.

**cantar** (kǎn' tār), *n.* A measure of capacity and weight used in Southern Europe and the East.

As a measure of weight, the cantar varies, in different places, from about forty-five to five hundred pounds. In Spain the measure of capacity varies from two to four gallons.

Ital., Span. *cantaro*, from L. *cantharus*, Gr. *kantaros* a tankard.

**cantata** (kǎn ta' tà), *n.* Poetry set to music for soloists, chorus, and orchestra. (F. *cantate*.)

A cantata is actually a kind of opera written for concert work only. It is performed without scenery and without any dramatic action on the part of the performers. There are many beautiful works of this nature, such as Sir Arthur Sullivan's "Golden Legend," and Sir Edward Elgar's "King Olaf."

Ital., literally a thing sung, fem. p.p. of L. *cantāre*, frequentative of *canere* to sing.

**canteen** (kǎn tēn), *n.* A place where soldiers or sailors or workpeople may obtain provisions at low prices; a soldier's water-bottle; a chest containing cooking and table utensils. (F. *cantine, bidon*.)



Canteen.—Sailors enjoying a meal in a canteen.

Originally canteen denoted a soldier's water-bottle, but now the term is applied generally to a special place where refreshments, and sometimes entertainments, are provided for the members of the Army and Navy and industrial organizations. In a military barracks or camp the canteen is under the direct control of the Army authorities; in a battleship it is under the control of the Admiralty, and the canteens for workpeople are usually run by social-welfare societies, such as the Young Men's Christian Association and the Salvation Army.

The chest containing the cutlery and cooking utensils required for an army mess is also called a canteen, so the name is often given to any box or chest in which knives, forks, and spoons are kept.

F. *cantine*, from Ital. *cantina* cellar, cave, perhaps from L.L. *cantus* corner. See *cant* [2].

**canter** (kǎn' tēr), *n.* A kind of slow gallop. *v.t.* To cause a horse to go at this pace. *v.i.* To ride at a canter. (F. *petit galop*; [*faire*] *aller au petit galop*.)

The easy, ambling pace at which the pilgrims rode to visit the tomb of Thomas Becket in Canterbury Cathedral was called a Canterbury pace or gallop. Canter is a



Canter.—A horse cantering in Rotten Row, the prepared track in Hyde Park, London, reserved for horse-riders.

**Canto fermo** means a fixed melody that must not be altered, to which musical students must add suitable harmonies. This term also means a plain and simple air for choral singing.

**Ital.**, from *L. cantus* song, *canere* to sing  
**canton** (kǎn' tǒn; kǎn ton'), *n.* A district of Switzerland having its own laws and a government which deals with local affairs; a small subdivision of French territory under a justice of the peace; a square-cornered division in the upper corner of an heraldic shield. *v.t.* To divide into parts; (kǎn ton'; kǎn toon') to billet or allot separate quarters to. (*F. canton'; diviser en cantons, cantonner.*)

A **cantoned** (kǎn' tǒnd, *adj.*) building is one that has its corners decorated with mouldings, small pillars, or the like. The government of a Swiss canton is **cantonal** (kǎn' tǒn ǎl, *adj.*). A **cantonment** (kǎn ton' mǎnt; kǎn toon' mǎnt, *n.*) is a place of rest for an army. In India cantonments are fixed barracks for troops, generally a small military town a mile or two away from a city.

**F.**, from *Ital. cantone*, augmentative of *canto*, *L.L. cantus* corner. See cant [2].

**cantor** (kǎn' tǒr), *n.* A choir leader or precentor. (*F. grand chantre.*)

In large choirs the person who leads and directs the music is known as the cantor or precentor. The north side of the choir, where the cantor sits, is called the **cantorial** (kǎn tǒr' i ǎl, *adj.*) side, and the south side, where the dean has his seat, the **decani** or **decanal** side. The psalms are chanted by each side alternately.

**L.**, agent *n.* from *canere* to sing.

**Cantuarian** (kǎn tǔ ǎr' i ǎn), *adj.* Of or belonging to the city of Canterbury or to the archbishopric of Canterbury. (*F. de Cantorbérie.*)

The signature of the archbishop of Canterbury consists of his Christian name followed by the abbreviation Cantuar.

**L.L. Cantuārii** from *A.-S. Cantware* people of Kent, *L. Cantia* (*A.-S. Cent*) Kent, *A.-S. wariān* to inhabit. Canterbury is *Cantwara burh*, town of the people of Kent.

**canty** (kǎn' ti), *adj.* Lively. This is formed from the word cant. See cant [3].

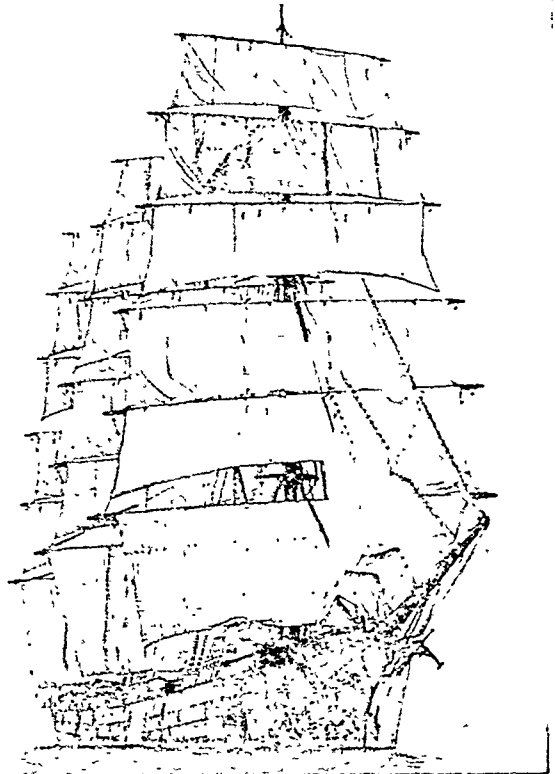
**canvas** (kǎn' vās), *n.* A strong, heavy cloth, made of flax, hemp, or jute, used for sails, tents, coverings, paintings, etc.; a painting; a ship's sails. *adj.* Made of canvas. (*F. canevas, voile, toile de canevas.*)

Sail-canvas or sail-cloth is woven from flax in lengths of forty yards and widths of eighteen or twenty-four inches. Yacht sails are sometimes of cotton-duck, for lightness. A specially fine canvas is used for paintings.

A ship is said to be under canvas when her sails are set, and troops are under canvas when camping in tents. A **canvas-town** (*n.*) is a very large number of tents pitched together.

The **canvas-back** (*n.*) of North America, famed for its very delicate flavour, is a kind of pochard or diving sea-duck. It is so named from the markings on its back and side. The scientific name is *Nyroca vallisneria*.

**M.E.**, *O. Northern F. canevas*, *L.L. canabacius* hempen cloth, originally an *adj.* from *L. cannabis*,



**Canvas.**—A barque under canvas in Falmouth Bay after voyaging from Australia.

**Gr. kannabis** hemp, a word borrowed from an Oriental language; *cp.* Sansk. *çana* hemp. See hemp.

**canvass** (kǎn' vās), *n.* The act of asking for votes, orders, subscriptions, and the like; a close examination. *v.t.* To ask for votes, etc., from, to examine. *v.i.* To go about asking for votes, etc. (*F. sollicitation de suffrages; solliciter.*)

Before an election people who have votes may be asked to give them to this or that candidate by a **canvasser** (kǎn' vās er, *n.*), who must not offer the voter any money or other gift, and is not paid for his or her work.

The oldest meaning was to toss in a canvas sheet, hence to shake up, discuss, debate a subject with. **SYN.**: *v.* Debate, discuss, investigate, sift, scrutinize.

**cany** (kā' nī), *adj.* Of or relating to or like cane. This is the adjective derived from cane. See cane.

**canyon** (kān' yōn), *n.* A deep gorge with steep sides worn in the earth by a river and the action of weather. Another spelling is **cañon** (kān' yōn). (F. *ravin profond*, gorge.)

The most wonderful of canyons are those of the River Colorado, in Utah and Arizona, U.S.A. There are twenty-five of them. The Grand Canyon, the greatest of all, is two hundred and seventeen and a half miles long, and has an average depth of four thousand feet. Its width at the top varies from four and a half to twelve miles. At places the water rushes along at a speed of twenty miles an hour.

In 1890 a party of ten men went through the canyons in boats, making a thousand-mile journey, which was one of the most exciting on record. The canyons were traversed again in 1872 and 1890.

A word of the western U.S.A., from Span *cañon* (ñ--ny), literally a great tube or conduit, augmentative of *caña*, L. *canna* reed. *Cannon* is a doublet.



**Canyon.** South Cheyenne Canyon, Colorado, U.S.A. The towering granite rises to a height of eleven hundred feet.

**canzone** (kant sō' nā), *n.* A verse-form much used in Italian poetry; a song or melody. The plural is **canzoni** (kant sō' nē).

In form the canzone is something like the sonnet. It was used with wonderful effect by Dante and Petrarch and in England by Drummond of Hawthornden and D. G. Rossetti.

By Italian composers canzoni are written in two or three parts, and are cleverly built up with phrases containing phrases of note and imitation of a highly finished and

ingenious type. English madrigals are somewhat similar in construction. A **canzonet** (kān zō net', *n.*) is a short form of canzone.

Ital., from L. *cantio* (acc. *cantiō-em*) a singing, verbal *n.* from *canere* to sing; cp F. *chanson* a song.

**caoutchouc** (kou' chook), *n.* Another name for rubber. See rubber. (F. *caoutchouc*.)

F., from Caribbean *ca'uchu*



**Cap.**—The cap of maintenance, which is always carried at the coronation of a British monarch.

**cap** [ɪ] (káp), *n.* A covering for the head; the top part of a column, wall, etc.; the upper part of a bird's head; a collar of wood or iron for joining masts or spars; a device for exploding a cartridge. *v.t.* To cover with or as if with a cap; to crown; to complete; to surpass; to salute by taking off the cap or hat. *v.i.* To take on the cap as a salutation. (F. *bonnet*, *casquette*; *coiffer*, *commencer*.)

The cap and bells were the official signs of an old-time court jester. To go cap in hand is to approach a person in a humble or cringing manner.

A cap of liberty was given to a Roman slave when freed by his master. During the French Revolution it was worn as a symbol of freedom from oppression. The cap of maintenance is borne before a British sovereign at his coronation. It has a turned-up brim and two points at the back.



**Cap.**—The international cap of a Rugby footballer.

The cartridge of a firearm or cannon is exploded by a percussion cap. Inside the cap, at the bottom, is a small quantity of a material which explodes when the cap is struck by a pin, and fires the charge.

In Association and Rugby football it is a great distinction to play for one's country. All players who are honoured in this way receive a cap, called an international cap, for each appearance. In certain circumstances caps are also awarded to players who are selected to play for their county eleven.

A **capful** (káp' fūl, *n.*) is as much as a cap will hold. Sailors call a light breeze that springs up suddenly a capful of wind.

Grocers wrap up sugar, coffee, etc., in a coarse paper called *cap-paper* (*n.*).

A *cap-stone* (*n.*) is put on the top of a pillar or wall to protect it from the weather. Another kind of cap-stone is the great flat stone, which, with its supporting upright stones, form the prehistoric monument known as a cromlech or dolmen. The topmost bed of stone in a quarry is also called the cap-stone, and the same term is applied to a kind of fossil sea-urchin, which looks rather like a cap laced down the sides.

A capping (*käp' ing, n.*) is the top part of a chimney or the bevelled bar fixed along the top of a wooden fence to protect it from rain.

A.-S. *caeppe*, L.L. *cappa*, perhaps borrowed from an Iberian (native Spanish) word. *Cape* and *cope* are related.

*cap* [2] (*käp*), *n.* Scottish name for a wooden dish with two ears or handles; an old Scottish measure, a fourth part of a peck.

Probably O. Northumbrian *copp* a cup, perhaps akin to *cup*.

*capable* (*kä' päbl*), *adj.* Having necessary power or fitness; qualified; skilful. (F. *capable, susceptible*.)

The quality of being capable is *capability* (*kä pä bil' i ti, n.*). A celebrated landscape-gardener named Lancelot Brown (1715-83) was known as "Capability" Brown because he laid out the great gardens at Kew, Blenheim, and elsewhere so capably (*kä' pä bli, adv.*). By capabilities we mean properties or faculties which are undeveloped or which are capable of being turned to account.

F. *capable*, L.L. *capābilis* comprehensible, from *capere* to take, suffix *-ābilis* that can be. SYN.: Able, competent, efficient, intelligent.

ANT.: Incapable, incompetent, inefficient, unqualified.

*capacity* (*kä pas' i ti*), *n.* Power to contain, receive, perform, absorb, etc.; ability; office or function. (F. *capacité, qualité*.)

The capacity of a ship is its ability to hold cargo and passengers. Water has a large

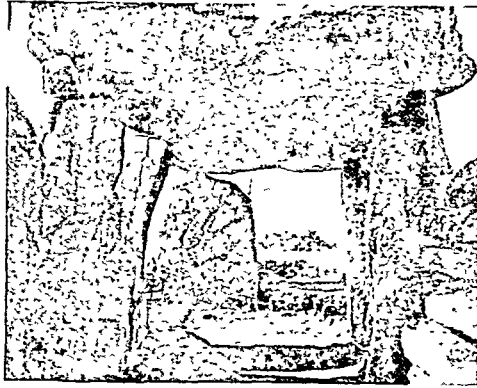
capacity for heat; it can absorb a great deal of it. A person of great capacity is a very able person. In law, capacity means the power to exercise various rights or to perform various contracts. For example, a person twenty-one years of age has the capacity for holding office and doing many other things which a minor may not do. A ship's captain gives orders in his capacity of commander.

The capacity of an electrical condenser is the measure of its ability to store electricity. A condenser has two or more electrically-conducting surfaces or plates, each separated from the rest by a non-conductor of electricity. Its capacity is measured partly by the size of the plates, partly by the distance between them, and partly by the material which separates the plates.

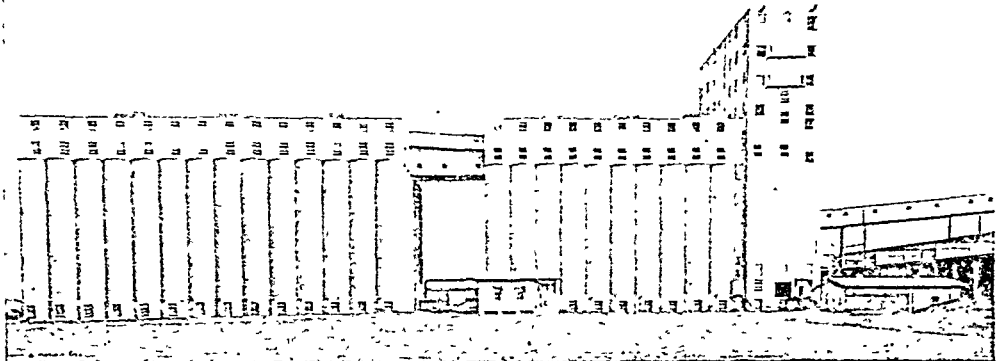
A capacity coupling in wireless is a condenser which connects two electrical circuits, and enables one circuit to have an electrical effect on the other.

The capacity of an airship or balloon is its volume or cubic contents—how much it can contain. If this is known it is possible to calculate what weight the vessel can lift.

A brain that can hold a great deal of knowledge is a *capacious* (*kä pä' shüs, adj.*) brain, and a room that has plenty of space



Cap-stone.—The cap-stone of a huge dolmen in Morbihan, France.



Capacity.—A public grain elevator at New Orleans, U.S.A. It has a capacity of no fewer than 2,622,000 bushels.

in it is a capacious room. A capaciously (kā pā' shūs li, *adv.*) designed house is one planned on large or liberal lines, so that it shall have great capaciousness (kā pā' shūs nes, *n.*) or roominess. To capacitate (kā pās' i tāt, *v.t.*) is to make capable, especially in the egal sense.

F. *capacité*, L. *capācitās* (acc. *capācitat-em*) quality of being *capax* (acc. *capāc-em*) able to take, from *capere* to take. SYN.: Competency, faculty, skill, space, volume. ANT.: Inability, incapacity, incompetency, inefficiency

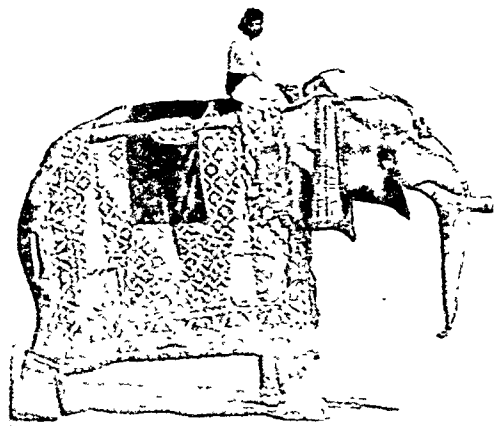
**cap-a-pie** (kāp a pē'), *adv.* From head to foot in a state of complete readiness. (F. *de pied en cap.*)

A knight in full armour was said to be armed cap-à-pie. The term is used figuratively of one who goes fully equipped into an enterprise.

O F *cap à pie* head to foot.

**caparison** (kā pār' i sōn; kā pār' i zōn), *n.* Ornamental harness and trappings for a horse or other beast of burden; gay or rich clothing. *v.t.* To deck out in gay harness or dress. (F. *caparaçon*; *capara-conner.*)

O.F. *caparasson*, from Span. *caparazon* cover for a saddle, extended from Span. L.L. *capa* cape. See *chaperon*. SYN.: *v.* Adorn, bedeck, embellish, garnish.



Caparison.—A state elephant of the Maharajah of Mysore richly caparisoned for a ceremonial occasion

**cape** [1] (kāp), *n.* A sleeveless covering for the shoulders and body down to the hips. (F. *collet*, *pèlerine.*)

A bicycling cape is complete in itself. Some capes are fastened to an inner garment reaching below the knees, which is then said to be caped (kāpt, *adj.*)

O. Northern F. *cap*, L.L. *cāpa*, a variant of *cappa* cap. See *cap*, *cope*

**cape** [2] (kāp), *n.* A piece of land projecting into a sea or lake. (F. *cap.*)

When we speak simply of the Cape we mean the Cape of Good Hope (Cape Colony)

In the year 1487 the great Portuguese navigator, Bartholomew Diaz, sailed down

the West Coast of Africa to find a way to India. His crew had suffered so many hardships that they begged their commander to put the helm about and return to Portugal. But Diaz held on, until one day the ship pointed northward, after a great headland had been passed.

A terrific storm now almost sank his ship, so Diaz named this headland the Cape of Storms. But when he reached Portugal



Cape.—North Cape in Norway, the most northerly cape in Europe. It is about fifty miles to the north of Hammerfest.

again, the king was so delighted to hear that Africa had been rounded that he re-named the headland the Cape of Good Hope. According to another tradition, Diaz himself called it the Cape of Good Hope.

A Cape boy is a South African half-breed. Cape wine is wine produced in the Cape province of South Africa, especially at Constantia, on the slopes of Table Mountain.

F. *cap*, Ital. *capo* L. *caput* head. SYN.: Headland, ness, promontory.

**capelin** (kāp' e lin), *n.* A small fish common off the coast of Newfoundland. Another form is *caplin* (kāp' lin). (F. *capelan.*)

In June and July this smelt-like fish comes close to the land in immense shoals. It is used by the cod fishermen as bait. It is very tender, and excellent eating. The scientific name is *Mallotus villosus*.

F. *cap(e)lan*, Span. *capelan*.

**caper** [1] (kā' pēr), *n.* A frisky leap, or other movement; a prank; a strange proceeding. *v.t.* To leap or dance in a playful manner. (F. *cabriole*; *cabrioler.*)

To cut a caper or caper is to prance or otherwise act fantastically. A caperer (kā' pēr er, *n.*) is one who capers.

Probably shortened from *cabriole* (*n.* and *v.*) Ital. *cabriolare* to skip as a kid, *cabriola* a caper, properly a kid, dim. of Ital., L. *capra* she-goat, fem. of L. *caper* he-goat.

**caper** [2] (kā' pēr), *n.* A low shrub which grows on the shores of the Mediterranean its unopened flower-bud. (F. *capre.*)

The caper-bush grows from crevices of rocks and walls, trailing its stem two or three feet. It begins to flower in the early summer and continues until winter appears.

The shrubs are visited every morning and the flower-buds picked before they open, and are put into salt and vinegar. When ready they are bottled and made into sauce, which is eaten with boiled mutton. Nasturtium seeds are sometimes pickled and called English capers.

Formerly *cap(p)ers*, mistaken for a pl., M.E. *caperis*, L. *capparis*, Gr. *kapparis*; cp. Pers. *kabar*.

**capercaillie** (kăp' èr kâl' yi), *n.* A species of grouse. Other forms, of which there are several, are *capercaillie* (kăp' èr kâ' li) and *caperally* (kăp' èr kâl' li).

Unlike its smaller cousin, the red grouse, which lives in the heather moors, this is a forest bird. It is also known as the wood-grouse, the mountain cock, and the cock of the woods. It is found in Scotland and elsewhere in the North of Europe. It died out in Scotland in the eighteenth century and the new stock was brought from Sweden. The scientific name is *Tetrao urogallus*.

Sc., from Gaelic *capull coille* "great cock" (literally horse; cp. L. *caballus* horse) "of the wood"; *coille* gen. of *coll* wood, related to E. *holt*. The *s* is a Sc. way of spelling *y* in combination with *l*; cp. the Sc. names *Dalsiel*, *Gilzean*.

**capful** (kăp' fûl), *n.* As much as a cap will hold. See *under* cap [I].

**capias** (kăp' i äs), *n.* A writ or order sent to a sheriff, commanding him to arrest some particular person. (F. *mandat d'arrêt*.)

It is very seldom that people are sent to prison nowadays for not paying their debts, but if a debtor can pay and refuses to do so he may be arrested by means of a writ of *capias*, which is so called from the Latin word with which it opens, meaning "thou mayest take," from *capere* to take.

Persons who are accused of certain crimes are sometimes arrested by this writ instead of by an order from a magistrate, but this method is dropping into disuse.

**capibara** (kăp i ba' rà). This is another spelling of *capybara*. See *capybara*.

**capillary** (kă pil' à ri; kăp' il à ri), *adj.* Hair-like; having a very small hole along the centre (of a tube or tube-like object); like or relating to the hair or to hair-like tubes. *n.* A very small blood-vessel connecting an artery with a vein. (F. *capillaire*.)

The capillary vessels or capillaries of the body are only about one-thirtieth part of an

inch long, and about one three-thousandth part of an inch in diameter.

**Capillarity** (kăp il' är' i ti, *n.*), which covers both capillary attraction and capillary repulsion, is the behaviour of liquids in very small tubes dipped into liquid. Capillary attraction makes the liquid rise higher in the tube than the level of the liquid outside; capillary repulsion has the opposite effect.

**Capillose** (kăp' i lôs, *adj.*), a word very seldom used, means hairy or having much hair, and is also an old name for the mineral millerite.

L. *capillaris* (*adj.*), from *capillus* a hair, dim. form, probably from *caput* head.

**capital** [r] (kăp' i tâl), *n.* The head of a column or pillar. (F. *chapiteau*.)

The capital is usually the most decorated part of a column. The kind of ornamentation varies in different styles of architecture.

L. *capitellum* dim. of *caput* head.

**capital** [2] (kăp' i tâl), *adj.* Chief; excellent; involving punishment by death; of large size and special shape (of letters); relating to the stock of a business firm or company. *n.* A capital letter; the chief city of a country or the seat of its government; wealth or possessions; money invested in a business; a means of producing wealth.

(F. *capital*, excellent; *majuscule*, *capitale*.)

Capital punishment is the heaviest that the law can inflict, namely death; it follows a capital sentence or sentence of death. A capital ship is one of the most heavily armed warships of a navy—a battleship or battle-cruiser, the latter being the faster of the two.

The fixed capital of a company is that part of its capital which is represented by buildings, machinery, and other things in continuous use for carrying on the business. Its floating or circulating capital is that part represented by raw materials, etc., which are constantly changing hands. To make capital out of an event is to turn it to one's own advantage.

**Capitalism** (kăp' it à lizm, *n.*) is the economic system of using wealth to produce more wealth. A person who owns wealth that can be thus used is a capitalist (kăp' it à list, *n.*).

**Capitalistic** (kăp it à lis' tik, *adj.*) means of or relating to capitalists. To capitalize



Capital.—The capital of a column of the Propylaea, the entrance to the Acropolis at Athens. It is usually the most decorated part of the column.

(kǎp' it á liz, kǎp it' á liz, *v.t.*) the reserve profits of a company is to convert them into shares, which are divided among the shareholders. To capitalize an income is to reckon what capital is needed to produce it. For example, an income of two hundred pounds is worth four thousand pounds yielding five per cent interest. The act of capitalizing is capitalization (kǎp it á lī zǎ' shùn, *n.*)

It has been proposed that, in order to pay off war debt, a part of all accumulated wealth, or capital, should be taken in addition to income tax or instead of it. This proposed taking of wealth is called the capital levy.

A **capitally** (kǎp' i tǎl li, *adv.*) sung song is one sung very well indeed.

O F., from L. *capitāl-is* (*adj.*), from *caput* head. SYN. *adj.* First-class, first-rate, leading, principal. ANT.: *adj.* Inferior, minor, mean, unimportant.

**capitate** (kǎp' i tāt), *adj.* Rounded or head-shaped; having a head or a swollen, rounded end. The form *capitated* (kǎp' i tād) is also used.

The primrose has a capitate stigma, like the head of a pin, and the daisy and other composite plants bear capitate clusters of florets. The beautiful eyed feathers of the peacock are capitate, and so are the feelers or antennae of many insects.

L. *capitāl-us* headed, *adj.* from *caput* (*gen. capit-is*) head; E. suffix *-ale* denoting furnished with, shaped like.

**capitation** (kǎp i tǎ' shùn), *n.* A tax or grant of so much per head. (F. *capitation*.)

In the year 1380, King Richard II needed money for a war in Brittany. It was decided that a capitation, or poll tax, as it is sometimes called, should be levied on everybody in the country, ranging from six pounds thirteen shillings and fourpence for the

wealthiest man in the kingdom, the Duke of Lancaster, to fourpence for an ordinary labourer.

The tax was most unpopular. When one of the collectors insulted the daughter of Wat Tyler, a revolt blazed up which spread right through the country, and was only put down by the personal bravery of the young king.

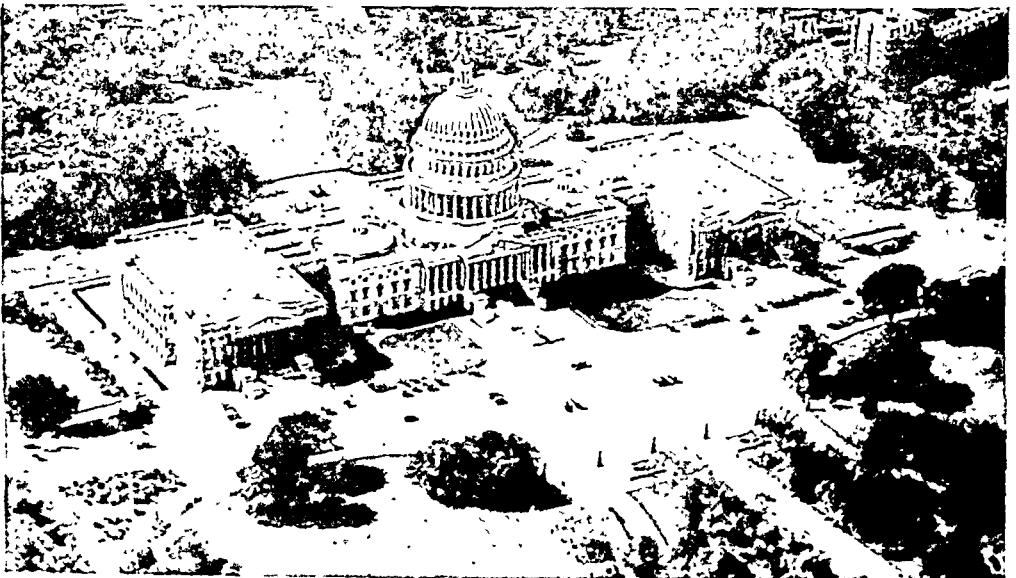
A capitation grant is the name given to a grant awarded for every person who fulfils certain conditions, as, for instance, the grant given by the War Office for each member of a school Officers' Training Corps who passes an examination.

L. *capitatio* (*acc. capitātō-em*) poll-tax, from *caput* (*gen. capit-is*) head; E. suffix *-ation* denoting action.

**Capitol** (kǎp' i tól), *n.* The great national temple and fortress of ancient Rome; the hill on which it stood; the building in which Congress, that is, the United States Parliament, meets; the building in which the legislature of some states of the U.S.A. meets. (F. *capitole*.)

On the smallest of the seven hills upon which the city of Rome is built was the Capitol. It was sacred to Jupiter, in whose honour the Capitoline (kǎ pit' ó lin, *adj.*) games were held. The hill was called the Capitoline hill, and at its southern end was the terrible Tarpeian Rock, eighty feet high, from which criminals were thrown. Another form of Capitoline is Capitolian (kǎp i tō' lián).

One of the most famous stories about the Capitol is that concerned with the saving of Rome by the sacred geese. Rome was at war with the Gauls, who sacked the city 390 B.C., but could not storm the steep Capitoline hill. One dark night the foe crept under

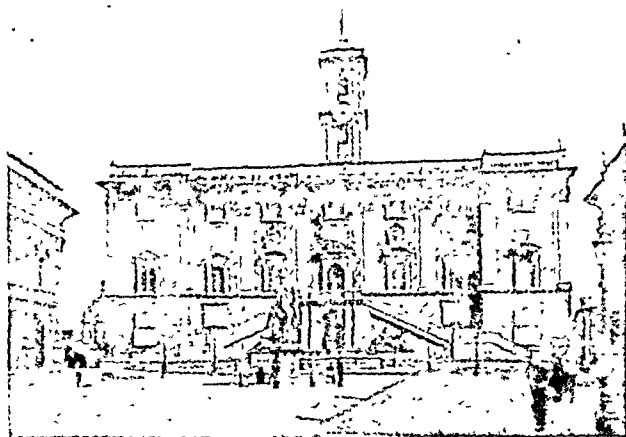


Capitol.—A photograph, taken from an aeroplane, of the Capitol at Washington, a stately building of sandstone and marble. It is the seat of the government of the United States.

the walls of the fortress. The sentinels were dozing, unaware of the danger.

Stealthily the enemy built up a ladder of shields, and were just about to mount the wall, when the geese, aroused more easily than the soldiers, broke into a loud cackling. The sentries awakened, realized the danger and drove off the enemy.

M.E., O. Northern F. *capitole*, L. *capitolium*, from *caput* head.



Capitol.—The Capitol at Rome. It was built in 1534 on the site of the ancient Capitol from the designs of Michelangelo, one of the most famous artists and sculptors of all time.

**capitular** (kă pit' ū lăr), *adj.* Of or relating to an ecclesiastical chapter; growing in a cluster of small heads, such as the flowers of the daisy; of or relating to a bone received into a hollow part of another bone. *n.* A member of an ecclesiastical chapter. (F. *capitulare*.)

The members of religious houses used to assemble every morning for the reading of a chapter from Scripture or from the rules of their order, and in time these gatherings themselves and those who attended them became known as chapters. Now the body of canons attached to a cathedral is called the chapter.

The discussions of a chapter may be described as capitular discussions, and when the canons assemble as a chapter they meet capitularly (kă pit' ū lăr h. *adv.*).

For the use of the word capitular as applied to flowers and to bones, see under capitulum.

L.L. *capitulār-is* (*adj.*), from *capitulum* chapter, dim. of *caput* (gen. *capit-is*) head.

**capitulary** (kă pit' ū lăr ū), *n.* A collection of laws made by the Frankish kings. (F. *capitulare*.)

They were so called because they were divided into chapters. L. *capitula*. See capitular.

**capitulate** (kă pit' ū lăt), *v. i.* To make terms of surrender. (F. *capituler*.)

At eleven o'clock in the morning of November 11th, 1918, the "Cease Fire" sounded on the Western Front. The World

War was over. The Germans, after their victorious advance in March, had been pushed steadily back until, when it was evident that they were finally beaten, they decided to capitulate. The armistice was signed, and the terms of the capitulation (kă pit' ū lă' shūn, *n.*) were agreed upon.

The arrangements by which foreigners living in other countries, such as Turkey, have been allowed to be governed by their own laws are called capitulations.

L.L. *capitulāt-us* p. p. of *capitulāre* to draw up terms under heads, from L. *capitulum* dim. of *caput* head. SYN.: Submit, yield

**capitulum** (kă pit' ū lūm), *n.* A cluster of stalkless florets or little flowers forming a flower-head; a head-shaped part of an animal. The plural is capitula (kă pit' ū lă).

The most familiar example of a capitulum is the flower head of the daisy and other composite plants, which may be described as capitular (kă pit' ū lăr, *adj.*). Others are the rounded end of a rib or other bone, the swollen end of the balancer of two-winged insects, and the knob on the end of the antennae of many insects.

In the common stalked barnacle the part which forms a head, as it were, to the foot-stalk is called the capitulum.

L., dim. of *caput* (gen. *capit-is*) head  
**capnomancy** (kăp' nō măn sŭ) *n.* The art of foretelling the future by means of smoke. (F. *capnomancie*.)

In all ages men have been anxious to know what lies in the future. The ancients would watch the smoke as it eddied and swirled about a burnt sacrifice, and base their forecast on the direction and form it took. If it went straight up from the altar the future smiled, but if it gathered over the altar, or was tossed this way and that by the wind, the omen was regarded as being unfavourable.

Gr. *kaphos* smoke, *mantia* divination, from *man-* stem of *manesthai* to rave, be frenzied. cp. F. *capnomancie*.

**caponiere** (kăp' ō nēr'), *n.* A covered passage, protected by logs and earth leading into a ditch of a fortification or other strong hold. (F. *caponnière*.)

F. *caponnière*, Span. *caponera*, originally a shed in which capons or fattened cocks were kept.

**caporal** (kăp' ō ral), *n.* A cheap French tobacco.

The novelist Hackelray, in "Pendennis," mentions the difficulty in finding "a bit of tobacco fit to smoke till we came to Strasbourg, where I got some caporal."

F., literally a corporal (which cp.



**capote** (kā pōt'), *n.* A long overcoat or cloak with a hood; a long mantle for women; a woman's hat fitting close to the head.

*F.*, dim. of *cape* *cape*.

**capric acid** (kāp' rik ās' id), *n.* A crystalline substance which when cold has a faint, goat-like smell.

This substance was first found in cow's milk, and afterwards in goat's milk, coconut oil, and a number of other oils. It smells stronger and more unpleasant on heating.

*L. caper* (acc. *capr-um*) a he-goat, *E. adj.* suffix *-ic*.

**capriccio** (ka prē' chō; ka prē' chi ō), *n.* A musical composition played in a fanciful, playful style with no distinct regard for time or form.

Music of this description is often written for the violin, as well as for other solo instruments, and when performed by a capable player it is very inspiring and effective. When a piece of music is marked *capriccioso* (ka prē' chō' sō; ka prē' chi ō' sō) it means that it is to be played in a whimsical manner.

*Ital.*, probably at first the frisk of a goat, from *L. caper* (acc. *capr-um*) he-goat, *adj.* suffix *-iceus*.

**caprice** (kā prēs'), *n.* A sudden and unaccountable change in feeling or opinion; a natural tendency to such changes; a fancy; a form of musical composition not governed by fixed rules. (*F. caprice.*)

A *capricious* (kā prish' ūs, *adj.*) person is one who is subject to sudden fads and fancies. Anyone who behaves *capriciously* (kā prish' ūs li, *adv.*) is apt to give other people a good deal of trouble. The *capriciousness* (kā prish' ūs nes, *n.*) of an invalid about food is often due to want of appetite.

*F. caprice*, *Ital. capriccio*. See *capriccio*. *SYN.* : Crotchet, fickleness, freak, humour, vagary, whim.

**Capricorn** (kāp' ri kōrn), *n.* A constellation or group of stars, the tenth sign of the Zodiac; a genus of beetles, including the musk-beetle. (*F. Capricorne.*)

The sun in its apparent yearly passage through the Zodiac enters Capricorn, the 'Goat, when at the most southerly point of its journey, at mid-winter. The Tropic of Capricorn marks that part of the earth over which the sun is vertical, or immediately overhead, on or about December 21st.

*F. capricorne*, *L. capricornus* goat-horned, also the constellation, from *caper* (acc. *capr-um*) he-goat, *cornu* a horn.

**caprification** (kāp ri fi kā' shūn), *n.* The fertilization of the fig by the aid of insects.

The flowers are right inside the fig, and the pollen has to be carried by insects from the male to the female flowers. Branches of the wild fig are therefore hung in the cultivated trees, in order that the gall-flies which haunt the wild figs may do the needed work.

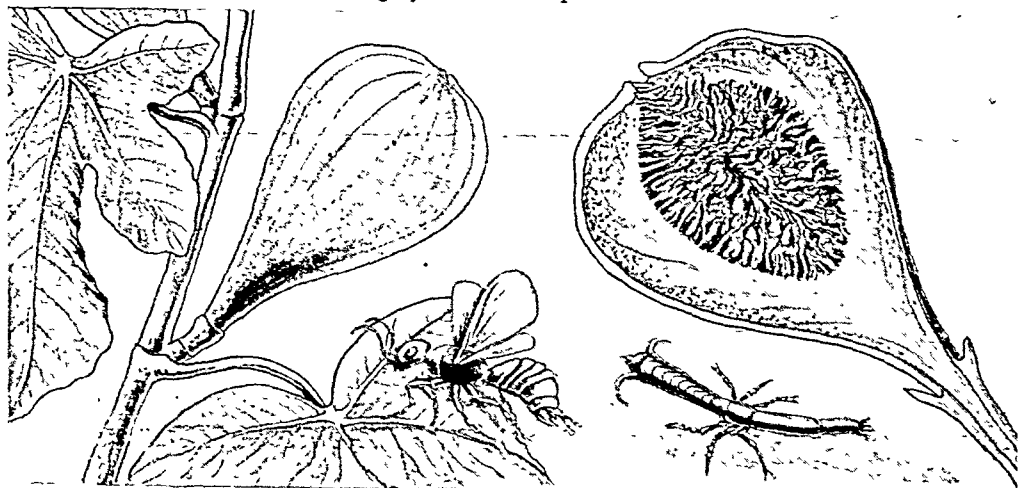
It has been suggested that the punctures these insects make in the flowers cause the fruit to ripen quickly. The Egyptians claim that they can hasten the ripening by puncturing the end of the fig with a needle dipped in oil.

*L. caprificatio* (acc. *-ātiōn-em*), *n.* of action from *caprificare* to ripen figs by the sting of the gall-fly, from *caprificus* wild figtree, from *caper* (acc. *capr-um*) he-goat, *ficus* figtree.

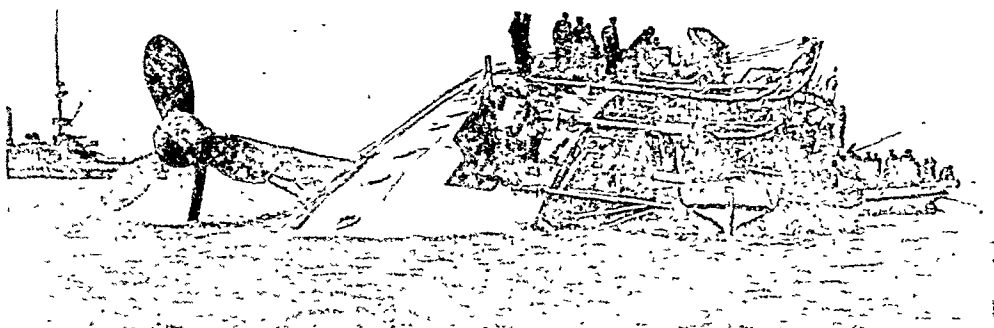
**capriform** (kāp' ri fōrm), *adj.* Goat-like in appearance.

Certain antelopes in Asia are so capriform that they are popularly called goats. The word *caprine* (kāp' rin; kāp' rin) is used with the same meaning.

*L. caper* (acc. *capr-um*) he-goat, *E. adj.* suffix *-form* (*L. -formis* from *forma* form) in the shape of.



Caprification.—Two insects, *Blastophaga grossorum* and *Apocrypta paradoxa*, which help in the caprification, or fertilization, of the common fig. They creep through the hole in the large end of the fig. The section shows the flowers inside the fig.



**Capsize.**—H.M.S. "Gladiator" after she had been in collision with a liner and capsized in the Solent, off Yarmouth, Isle of Wight, during a blizzard on April 25th, 1908.

**capriole** (kăp' ri ôl), *n.* A leap or spring; a flight of fancy. *v.i.* To leap or spring. (F. *cabriole*.)

This word is used specially to describe the action of a horse when it leaps without advancing.

F. *capriole* (now *cabriole*) a caper, Ital. *capriola* a kid, also a kid's leap, dim. of Ital., *L. capra* fem. of *L. caper* a goat.

**caproic acid** (kă prô' ik äs' id), *n.* A fatty acid with a peculiar goat-like smell.

Like capric acid, caproic acid is found in milk, coco-nut oil, and other oils.

Intentionally altered from *capric*, it being found with it.

**capsicum** (kăp' si kûm), *n.* A genus of plants belonging to the tomato family.

The pods and seeds of the capsicum are hot and pungent. Those of the common capsicum (*Capsicum annuum*) and the spur pepper (*C. frutescens*) of South America, are the chillies from which cayenne pepper is made. The small scarlet pods of *C. fastigiatum* from Zanzibar furnish the capsicum used for sore throats indigestion, and various other ailments.

Modern L., probably from *L. capsâ* pod. See capsule.

**capsize** (kăp siz'), *v.t.* To overturn, especially on water. *v.i.* To be overturned. *n.* The act of overturning; the state of being overturned. (F. *chavrier*.)

Occasionally a great disaster follows the capsizing—or turning turtle, as it is sometimes called—of a ship at sea. A memorable instance was the turning completely over of the ironclad H.M.S. "Captain" in 1870.

An upsetting is sometimes called a capsizal (kăp si' zâl, *n.*).

A sailor's word of unknown origin. It has been guessed that it may be a corruption of Span. *cabazar* to pitch as a ship, or *capuzar* to sink (a ship) by the head, Span. *cabza*, *cabo* a head, *L. caput*.

**capstan** (kăp' stân), *n.* An appliance used on board ship for weighing anchor and raising heavy sails, etc., and on land for hauling. (F. *cabestan*.)

The raising of a ship's anchor, unless it is done by machinery, marks the beginning of every voyage where the vessel is not docked, that is, where it is lying in a river or away from the shore in harbour. The capstan is a kind of drum worked on the principle of a wheel by levers.

First of all, it is manned, and then the sailors, often singing in chorus some shanty, or sea song, tramp merrily round, until the heavy anchor is raised to the level of the deck and either brought aboard or securely fastened by the ship's bows.

F. *cabestan*, Prov. *cabestran*, Span. *cabest(r)ante* from *L. capistrans* (acc. *capistrant-em*) pres. p. of *capistrare* to tie with a halter, from *capistrum* a halter, *capere* to take hold, and *L.* suffix *-istrum* denoting an instrument.

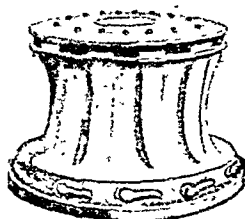
**capsule** (kăp' sül), *n.* A dry, gaping seed-vessel of a plant; a kind of envelope or cover enclosing a joint or other part of the body; a gelatine case for containing a dose of medicine; a metallic cover for a bottle or jar; a shallow saucer used by chemists. *v.t.* To provide or close with a capsule. (F. *capsule*.)

The capsule of a bottle prevents the air from getting into it and keeps the contents in good condition. The gelatine container is useful when a medicine is unpleasant.

Anything relating to or of the nature of a capsule is capsular (kăp' sū lâr, *adj.*), and anything shaped like a capsule is capsuliform (kăp' sū li fôr'm, *adj.*).

*L. capsula* dim. of *capsa* box, from *capere* to take, receive.

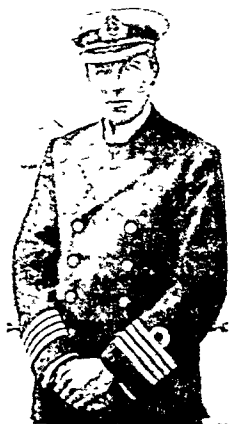
**captain** (kăp' tân), *n.* A chief or leader, especially an officer in the Army, Navy, or Royal Air Force; a great soldier. *v.t.* To lead; to be captain of. (F. *capitaine*.)



**Capstan.**—Slats, known as whelps, fit into the holes at the top of the capstan when it is manned.

A captain in the British Navy ranks next below a rear-admiral. The commodore whose duty it is to see that the fleet is in fighting trim is called Captain of the Fleet. In the British Army a captain ranks next below a major. The rank of a group captain in the Royal Air Force is equal to that of captain in the Navy and Colonel in the Army. The commander of a merchant ship or of a yacht is called captain.

The word is used especially for the leader of a team or side in games, and for the head boy of a school, and in Cornwall and elsewhere for the manager or superintendent of a mine. A captain of industry is one who controls a great industrial enterprise.



Captain.—A captain in the British Navy.



Captain.—Gold lace on the sleeve of a naval captain.



Captain.—A captain in the British Army and (left) the badge worn on the sleeves to denote his rank.



Hannibal was a great captain in the sense of being a military leader of great skill and experience, and the famous Spanish soldier, Gonsalvo de Cordoba (1453-1515) has gone down in history as "the Great Captain."

The rank or office of a captain or the time during which he holds it is called captaincy (kăp' tăn si, *n.*), less often captainship (kăp' tăn ship, *n.*), and to be without a captain is to be captainless (kăp' tăn lès, *adj.*).

M.E., O.F. *captain* L.L. *capitaneus*, *capitānus* (*adj.*) from L. *caput*, head. E. *chieftain* in a doublet.

**captation** (kăp tă' shùn), *n.* An ingenious effort to win a person over. (F. *captation*.)

The enemies of Julius Caesar won over to their side his greatest friend Brutus by

persuading him that Caesar's death was necessary if the Rome which he loved so dearly was to be preserved. The result was that Brutus was amongst those who plunged their daggers into Caesar.

It was the captation of Caesar's enemies that led Brutus to consent to his friend's death. The word is seldom used now.

L. *captatio* (acc. -*ātiōn-em*) *n.* of action from *captāre* to catch at, frequentative of *capere* (p.p. *capt-us*) to take.

**caption** (kăp' shùn), *n.* Arrest; the part of a legal document showing the circumstances under which it was executed; the heading or title of a chapter, section, illustration, etc., in a book, newspaper, or periodical. (F. *arrestation*, *entête*.)

This word is now chiefly used in the book or newspaper sense. Sometimes, too, a descriptive note to an illustration is called a caption, but the proper term for this is libretto.

L. *captio* (acc. *captiōn-em*), *n.* of action from *capere* (p.p. *capt-us*) to take.

**captious** (kăp' shùs), *adj.* Fault-finding; intended to mislead. (F. *captieux*.)

In 1821 there died in Rome, at the early age of twenty-five, a young man who is counted among the greatest of England's poets, John Keats. To-day everybody honours his name, but when he was alive he had to endure very captious criticisms, made in the "Quarterly Review," of his poem "Endymion."

His friends bitterly resented the captiousness (kăp' shùs nès, *n.*) of the articles. They would not have objected to fair criticism, but they knew that the writer in the "Quarterly Review" was criticising captiously (kăp' shùs li, *adv.*), intending to wound the young poet if he could.

L. *captiōs-us* (F. *captieux*), from *captio* a taking, a sophistical argument, from *capere* to take. See *caption*. SYN.: Carping, cavilling, censorious, quibbling. ANT.: Appreciative, complimentary, encouraging, laudatory.

**captive** (kăp' ti văt), *v.t.* To fascinate. (F. *captiver*, *charmer*.)

One of the most delightful of Shakespeare's stories is to be found in "A Midsummer Night's Dream." Oberon, the king of the fairies, being jealous of Titania, the fairy queen, because she possessed a little Indian boy, whom she refused to give up to him, decided to revenge himself upon her.

He ordered Puck, his knavish attendant, to squeeze into her eyes while she lay asleep a certain love-juice, which would cause the first object she beheld on waking to captivate her so much that she would fall in love with it. Puck fulfilled his mission and arranged that when Titania woke up her eyes should rest upon a rough workman named Bottom, whose head he had turned into that of an ass.

Titania immediately fell in love with this unpleasant object; she thought him the most captivating (kăp' ti văt ing, *adj.*) being

she had ever seen. Bottom enjoyed being with this lovely little lady, but he could not understand the captivation (kăp ti vâ' shùn, *n.*) he was exercising.

While Titania was in this state Oberon once more asked for the boy, and this time she granted his request. The spell was taken away, and henceforth the two fairies were firm friends.

L.L. *captivāt-us*, *p.p.* of *captivāre* to take captive, from *captivus* captive, which see. SYN.: Attract, bewitch, enrapture, entrance, ravish. ANT.: Disenchant, disgust, disillusionize, nauseate, repel.

**captive** (kăp' tiv), *adj.* Taken prisoner or kept a prisoner; enslaved by beauty or other influence. *n.* One held in bondage in the above ways. (*F. captif*, *fem. captive.*)

A prisoner of war is a captive, and so is a bird in a cage, and each is in a state of captivity (kăp tiv' i ti, *n.*). A man may admire a woman so much that he becomes a captive to her beauty or charm. A captive balloon (*n.*) is one that is moored to the ground by a rope.

To capture (kăp' chūr, *v.t.*) is to take, usually by surprise or force, and such an act is capture (*n.*). The person who performs the act is a captor (kăp' tōr, *n.*) or capturer (kăp' chūr ēr, *n.*)

L. *captiv-us* (*adj.*), from *capt-us*, *p.p.* of *capere* to take.

**capuche** (kă poosh'), *n.* The hood of a cloak, especially that of the Capuchin friars. (*F. capuce.*)

The Capuchin friars were an offshoot of the order of St. Francis. Their founder, Matteo di Bassi, thinking that the habit of the Franciscans was not that worn by St. Francis himself, devised a pointed hood, the capuche. In 1528 he obtained permission from Pope Clement VII for him and his followers not only to wear this hood, but also to go barefoot, grow their beards and live as hermits.

*F. capuche*, from Ital. *cappuccio* augmentative of *cappa* cap. See cap.

**Capuchin** (kăp' ū chin), *n.* A strict Franciscan friar; a woman's hood or hooded cloak, resembling the habit of the friars. (*F. capucin*, *mante à capuchon.*)

In or about the year 1182, in the Italian town of Assisi, was born one of the greatest saints who ever lived, Saint Francis. He lived in rough and dangerous times, yet he loved his fellow-men as they had rarely been loved before. But his greatest friends were the dumb creatures he saw about him—birds, lambs, and fishes.

We are told that they loved him, too, that the birds would come and nestle in his garments, and the lambs ran up to him and gambled around him. One day, as he was out walking, he stopped and preached a

sermon to the birds as they perched about the trees and meadows.

He gathered round him a band of men who took him for their leader and spent their lives in poverty, relieving the sick and unfortunate. They were called Franciscans or, from the brown garb they wore, brown friars.

After the death of Francis they gradually lost many of their ideals, but about the year 1525 there arose a very strict branch of the order, called from their capuche or hood, Capuchins, which finally became an independent branch.

The women who follow the rules of the Capuchins are called Capuchines (kăp' ū chēnz, *n.pl.*).

*F. Capuchin* (now *Capucin*). Ital. *cappuccio* little hood, also Capuchin, *dim.* of *cappuccio* cowl. See capuche.

**capuchin monkey** (kăp' ū chin mūng' kī), *n.* A genus of tropical American monkeys.

They are so called because the backward sweep of the hair above the pale face makes the hair on the crown of the head look like a friar's cowl or hood. They are often caught when small and tamed. The native name is sapajou, and the scientific name of a well-known species is *Cebus capucinus*.

*E. Capuchin and monkey.*

**capuchin pigeon** (kăp' ū chin pij' ōn), *n.* A fancy pigeon.

This breed of show pigeons has been so named because of the feathered crest at the back of the head, suggesting a friar's cowl.

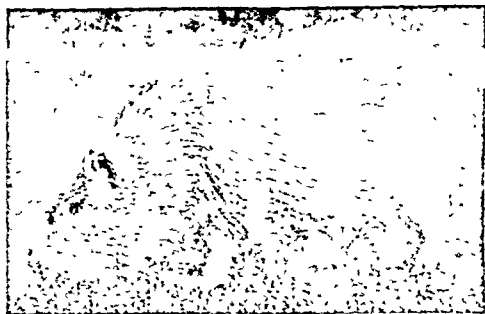
*E. Capuchin and pigeon.*

**capybara** (kăp i ba' rā), *n.* A South American animal. Another spelling is capibara (kăp i ba' rā).

The carpincho—to give it its Spanish name—belongs to the same group of animals



Capuchin monkey.—It is so called because the hair above the face looks like a friar's hood.



Capybara. The capybara of South America is the largest gnawing mammal in the world. It is also known as the carpincho.

as the field-mouse and the guinea-pig, and is the largest rodent, or gnawing mammal, in the world, weighing nearly one hundred pounds. It feeds on plants, and, living mostly by the waterside, is sometimes called

the water-hog. The scientific name is *Hydrochoerus capybara*.

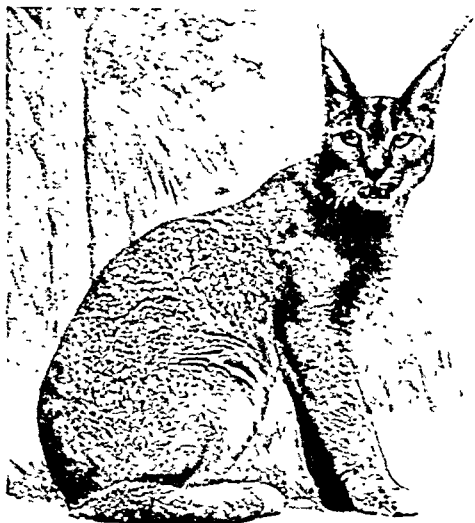
A native Brazilian word.

**car** (kar), *n.* A wheeled vehicle of various kinds; the basket of a spherical balloon; the enclosed framework carrying the engines and crew of an airship. (F. *char*, *chariot*, *nacelle*.)

The word is now used especially to denote a motor-car. A carful (kär' fül, *n.*) is the largest number of people that a car will hold; a carload (kar' lōd, *n.*), a full load for a car. A man who drives and delivers goods from a van is a carman (kar' măn, *n.*).

M.E., O. Northern F. *carre*, L.L. *carra* (L. *carus*), of Celtic origin; cp. Irish, Gaelic *car*, Welsh *car*.

**carabine** (kär' ä bin). This is another form of carbine, and carabinier (kär ä bi nēr') is another form of carbineer. See carbine.



Caracal.—The fierce caracal of South-Western Asia and Africa is also known as the Persian lynx.

**caracal** (kär' ä käl), *n.* The Persian lynx. (F. *caracal*.)

No domestic cat can surprise and strike down birds with the cunning and quickness of this red wild cat of South-Western Asia and Africa. It can also overtake small quadrupeds, such as hares, by superior speed. In length it is about three feet eight inches. The scientific name is *Felis caracal*.

F., from Turkish *qarah-qulak*, from *qarah* black, *qulak* ear.

**carack** (kär' äk). This is another spelling of carrack. See carrack.

**caracole** (kär' ä köl), *n.* A turn made by a ridden horse to right or left. *v.t.* To make a horse perform a caracole. *v.i.* To perform a caracole; to caper about. Another form is caracol (kär' ä kol). (F. *caracole*.)

F. *caracol(e)* a spiral, a caracole, from Span. *caracol* snail, spiral shell, winding stair; perhaps from a Celtic word; cp. Gaelic *carach* winding.

**carafe** (kâ raf'), *n.* A glass bottle for water. (F. *carafe*.)

This word is not often used in England, but is common in Scotland.

F. *carafe*, Span. *garrafa*, from Arabic *gharafa* to draw water, or Pers. *garābah* flagon; see carboy.

**caramel** (kär' ä mel), *n.* A brown substance produced by heating loaf-sugar till it froths up and then pouring it out to cool; a kind of sweetmeat. Another, but unusual, spelling is caromel (kär' ö mel). (F. *caramel*.)

Caramel is used in sauces and also for colouring wine, beer, and vinegar. It has a bitter taste, and dissolves easily in water.

F., from Span. or Ital. *caramelo*, of doubtful origin.

**carapace** (kär' ä päs), *n.* A protecting bony shield of some animals. (F. *carapace*.)

Nature protects the kernel of the nut with a hard outer shell. Equally effective is the carapace, which protects the soft bodies of turtles and tortoises, crabs, lobsters, and similar creatures.

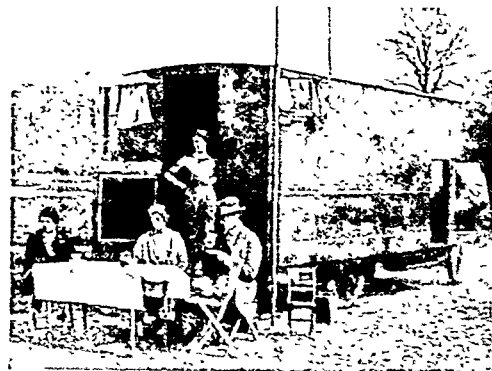
F., from Span. *carapacho*, perhaps a corruption of *caparazon* horse-armour, *caparison* (which see).

**carat** (kär' ät), *n.* A weight of about three and one-fifth grains troy, used in weighing precious stones; a standard of quality in gold alloys. (F. *carat*.)

The weight is derived from that of the bean of the carob or locust tree, which weighs a small fraction of an ounce.

In expressing the proportion of gold in gold coins and jewellery, a carat means a twenty-fourth part of the whole. A sovereign is twenty-two carat gold, that is, twenty-two twenty-fourths of it are gold.

Through F. and Ital. from Arabic *qirāt* weight of four grains, from Gr. *keration* (dim. of *keras* horn), a little horn, fruit of the locust tree, a small weight.



Caravan.—A modern motor-caravan fitted with a complete campers' outfit and wireless installation.

**caravan** (kär' ä vãn), *n.* A body of merchants, pilgrims, etc., travelling in company in the East or Northern Africa, especially in the desert; a voyage of the Knights of Malta against the Turks and Corsairs; a house on wheels; a travelling menagerie or circus. (F. *caravane*.)



Caravan.—A camel caravan on the march through the Algerian Sahara. For thousands of years such caravans have been the sole means of communication in many parts of the world. Some of these caravans are more than a mile long.

From very early times travelling together in bands has been a common practice in the East. In wild land such caravans afford security from brigands and other dangers. The leader of such a caravan is a *caravaneer* (kār ā vān' ēr', *n.*).

In the Middle Ages the caravans were the sole means of communication between Europe and the East. They were the medium by which the spices and silk of the Orient were placed upon the Western market. Later, before the opening of the Suez Canal, people travelling by the overland route to India went by caravan from Alexandria to Suez.

To-day the caravan is still an important institution in Central Asia. Once a year a great caravan passes through the Khyber Pass into India, bringing the products of Afghanistan and the remoter regions beyond.

In Great Britain caravans are chiefly used as the homes of gipsies and showmen, and for circuses and menageries. As a holiday recreation, too, *caravanning* (kār ā vān' ing, *n.*) has become popular, and *caravanists* (kār ā vān' ists, *n.pl.*) or *caravaners* (kār ā vān' ērz, *n.pl.*) are often seen on the roads and roadsides.

*F. caravane, Pers. kār wān.*

**caravanserai** (kār ā vān' sēr ī), *n.* An inn in the East for accommodating caravans; an inn or hotel. Other spellings are *caravansera* (kār ā vān' sēr ā) and *caravansery* (kār ā vān' sār ī). (*F. caravanseil.*)

The *caravanserai* is a large four-sided building enclosing a court for the camels.

*Pers. kār wānsarāi* (sarāi palace, mansion, inn).

**caravel** (kār ā vel), *n.* A kind of ship. The older English spelling was *carvel* (kār vel). (*F. caravelle.*)

This term has been applied at various periods to various kinds of ships. The best-known type is the caravel used by the

early Portuguese and Spanish navigators. It was a smallish boat with a high, narrow stern and broad bow and was more or less lateen-rigged. A Turkish war vessel was also called a caravel.

When Columbus set out upon the voyage which ended in the discovery of America, he was accompanied by several caravels.

Hernando Cortes, in his expedition which resulted in the conquest of Mexico, is said to have embarked in a ship of one hundred tons burthen, the other vessels of his fleet being caravels and open brigantines.

Through *F.* from Ital. *caravella* or Span. *carabela*, dim. of Span. *caraba, carabo, L.L. carabus, Gr. karabos* a small kind of ship.

**caraway** (kār ā wā), *n.* A plant belonging to the parsley order; the seed of the plant. Another spelling is *carraway*. (*F. carvi.*)

The caraway (*Carum carui*) is cultivated in England and Northern Europe for its small dry fruits, commonly called caraway seeds (*n.pl.*). They are used, because of their warm, aromatic oil, in confectionery and in medicine.

*L.L. carui* or *O. Span. alcarahueya* (al- being the Arabic definite article). Arabic *karawīyā-a*; cp. *Gr. karon, karzon* cumin.

**carb-, carbo-.** Prefixes meaning of or relating to carbon. The word *carbazotic* (kar bā zot' ik, *adj.*) means made up of carbon and nitrogen. We might think it would be carbonitic, but there is an old word *azote*, meaning nitrogen. *Carboñ* and *nitrogen* are chemical elements.

A carbide (kar' bīd, *n.*) is a compound of carbon and a metal. The best-known is calcium carbide, which gives off the gas acetylene when water is dropped on to it.

A carbohydrate (kar bō hī' drāt, *n.*) is a compound containing the elements carbon, hydrogen, and oxygen. This is a very

interesting class of compounds, for it includes the sugars, starches, etc., and cotton is practically made up of carbohydrates.

*L. carbo* charcoal.

**carbine** (kar' bin), *n.* A short rifle used by cavalry. Another spelling is *carabine* (kär'ä bin). (*F. carabine.*)

In the seventeenth century there were horse-soldiers called *carabins*, who carried short weapons, and the word has come to be used for the weapon instead of for the man. The soldier armed with a carbine in these days is called a *carbineer* (kar bi nēr', *n.*) or *carabinier* (kär ä bi nēr, *n.*). The 6th Dragoon Guards are known as the *Carabiniers*.

*F. carbine* the weapon of a *carabin* or mounted musketeer, perhaps a corruption of *O.F. calabrin* a light-armed soldier, or one who worked the *calabre*, *L.L. chadabula*, *catabola* an engine for throwing stones, *Gr. katabolē* overthrow, from *kata* down, *ballein* to throw.

**carbolic** (kar bol' ik), *adj.* Derived from coal-tar. (*F. phénique.*)

One of the best-known substances of this class is *carbolic acid* (*n.*), the disinfectant that was first used in surgery by the great Lord Lister, and which has saved innumerable lives by its power of destroying microbes. Although *carbolic acid* is the name in common use, a better name is *phenol*, and chemists always use this.

When we saturate anything with this substance we are said to *carbolyze* (kar' bō liz, *v.t.*) it.

*L. carbo* charcoal and chemical suffix *-ol*, either from *L. oleum* oil or shortened from *alcohol*.

**carbon** (kar' bōn), *n.* A non-metallic element found combined in nearly all organic substances, and free in charcoal, diamond, graphite, etc.; a pencil of fine charcoal used in arc-lamps. (*F. carbone.*)

When carbon burns in a small supply of air or oxygen we get a gas called *carbon monoxide* (*n.*), which is extremely poisonous and burns with a curious blue flame. It has one atom of carbon to one of oxygen. When there is excess of air we get *carbon dioxide* (*n.*), a gas which is present in our breath and which has two atoms of oxygen to one of carbon. The latter is also known as *carbonic acid gas* (*n.*) or *carbonic acid* (*n.*) when it is dissolved in water.

This name is an example of a *carbonic* (kar bon' ik, *adj.*) substance, that is, one derived from carbon. Another example is *carbonic oxide* (*n.*), which is another name for *carbon monoxide*.

What is known as a *carbonate* (kar' bō nāt, *n.*) is a salt of *carbonic acid*, and the term is also used in mining for an ore that contains a great deal of *carbonate of lead*. To *carbonate* (kar' bō nāt, *v.t.*) means either to charge with *carbonic acid* or to form into a *carbonate*.

A *carbonaceous* (kar bō nā' shūs, *adj.*) substance is one like coal or charcoal, or one that contains carbon.

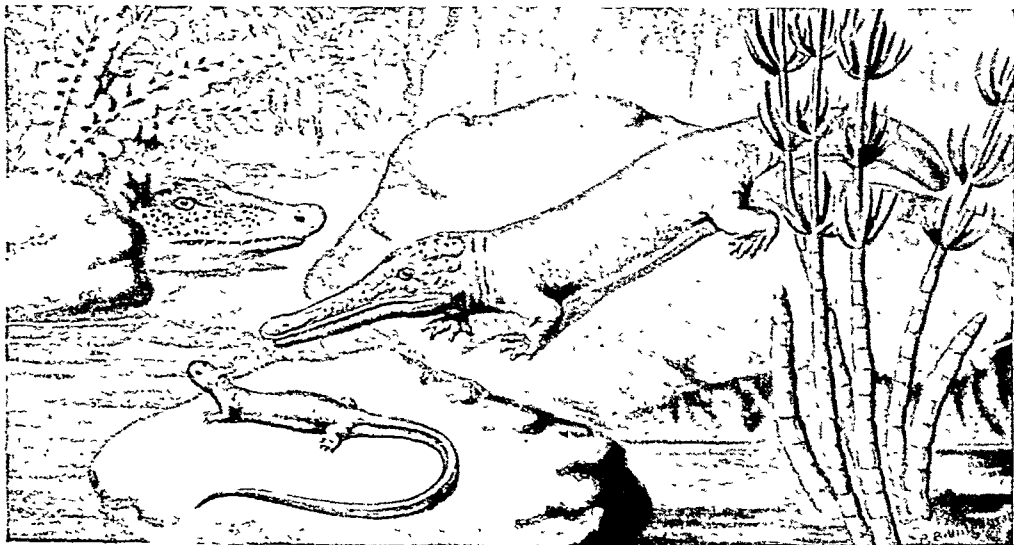
The word *carboniferous* (kar bō nif' ér ūs, *adj.*) means coal-bearing, and is applied to the underground coal layers. The *Carboniferous Age* or *Period* is the period when these layers, *carboniferous strata* (*n.pl.*), were being formed.

To *carbonize* (kar' bō nīz, *v.t.*) is to turn into carbon by heat or acids or to cover with charcoal, lampblack, etc., and a substance so treated undergoes *carbonization* (kar bō nī zā' shūn, *n.*).

The charcoal pencil called a *carbon* is also known as a *carbon-point* (*n.*).

*L. carbo* (acc. *carbō-em*) charcoal.

**Carbonaro** (kar bō na' rō), *n.* A member of an Italian and French secret



**Carboniferous.**—In the rocks of the Carboniferous Age the richest coal deposits occur. Three of the animals that lived during that period, *Loxomma* (left), *Archegosaurus* (right), and *Ceratopteris* (foreground) are shown in the picture.

society. The plural is *Carbonari* (kar bō na' rē). (F. *Carbonaro*.)

When the French in the days of Napoleon occupied the kingdom of Naples they met with great opposition from a section of the population. These discontented people took refuge in the forest regions of the Abruzzi, Calabria, etc., bound themselves together by a solemn oath, and formed a secret organization, which became a great force in Italy.

Many of the symbols used at their meetings were taken from the practices of the charcoal-burners, who were very plentiful in the mountains of the Abruzzi. A similar society was afterwards organized in France to promote Republican ends.

The political principles of the *Carbonari* are called *Carbonarism* (kar bō nar' izm, n.), and anything relating to them is *Carbonarist* (kar bō nar' ist, adj.).

Ital., literally charcoal-burner, L. *carbōnārius* (adj.), from *carbo* (acc. *carbōn-em*) charcoal.

**carbon-paper** (kar' bōn pā' per), n. Thin paper coated on one side with a film of colouring material, used for making copies of typewritten matter; paper coated with gelatine and pigment, used in photography. (F. *papier carbone*, *papier au charbon*.)

E. *carbon* and *paper*.

**carbon-printing** (kar' bōn print' ing), n. A process for printing a photograph from a negative. (F. *procédé au carbone*.)

The carbon tissue used is coated on one side with gelatine containing colouring matter. The tissue is placed in a solution of bichromate of potash and dried. It is then sensitive to the action of light. A piece of tissue exposed behind a negative has its film made more or less insoluble where the light reaches it through the negative.

The film is transferred to a stout piece of paper by soaking and squeezing, and the original backing is stripped off. The image is then developed by washing, which removes the gelatine from the parts not affected by light, or thins it where the action was weak. A print made in this way is very lasting.

E. *carbon* and *printing*.

**carboy** (kar' boy), n. A large glass bottle enclosed in wickerwork, used for holding acids and other liquid chemicals. (F. *tourie*.)

Pers. *qarābah* a large flagon.

**carbuncle** (kar' bŭnkl), n. The name applied to the precious stone, the garnet, when cut in a certain way; a painful boil or hard round tumour; a red spot caused by drinking too much. (F. *escarbouche*, *charbon*.)

The carbuncle is a beautiful deep-red stone found in the East Indies. It is usually hollowed out to show the colour. If held up to the light it looks exactly like a piece of burning coal, and in the Middle Ages it was popularly supposed to have the power of giving out light.

The Carbuncle of Ward Hill was a mysterious carbuncle which was said to be seen in May, June, and July, glowing fiery red at the top of the hill by people standing at the foot of it. But as soon as they climbed the hill in search of it, it always vanished. The legend is mentioned by Sir Walter Scott in his story "The Pirate."

A ring set with carbuncles is *carbuncled* (kar' bŭnkl, adj.), and anything relating to, or resembling, or resulting from a carbuncle (the inflamed spot) is *carbuncular* (kar bŭng' kŭ lār, adj.).

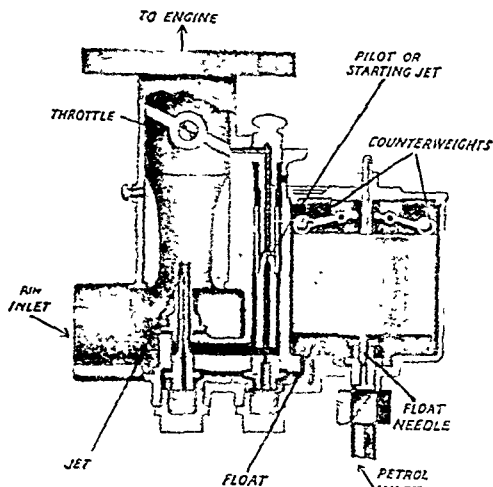
L. *carbunculus* a small coal, a glowing piece of charcoal, also in the E. senses, dim. of *carbo* (acc. *carbōn-em*) charcoal.

**carburet** (kar' bū rēt), n. A chemical compound containing carbon and another element, such as carburet of manganese. v.t. To combine with. (F. *carbure*; *carburer*.)

Hydrogen gas combined with carbon is *carburetted* (kar' bū rēt' ed, adj.) hydrogen.

To *carburize* (kar' bū rīz, v.t.) is to add carbon or a compound of carbon to another element or compound. To make steel, iron is carburized by the addition of a small proportion of carbon. Some kinds of gas undergo carburization (kar bū rī zā' shŭn, n.), that is, are enriched by mixing gas containing carbon, to increase their lighting power.

E. *carbon* and the chemical suffix *-uret*.



Carburettor.—The interior of the carburettor of a motor-car.

**carburettor** (kar' bū rēt or, n.). A device which mingles an inflammable gas with a regulated amount of air, to make an explosive mixture for use in a motor-car engine or other internal combustion engine. Another spelling is *carburetter* (kar' bū rēt' er). (F. *carbureteur*.)

In most carburettors the fuel (petrol, benzole, or paraffin oil) is sucked by the engine through a small hole into a mixing-chamber, which it enters in the form of a fine spray. This at once turns into vapour



and mixes with air coming into the chamber through another opening.

The size of the air passage is controlled either automatically by the engine, or by a sliding shutter worked by the throttle lever, so that the proportion of air to fuel shall be correct at all speeds and in all positions of the throttle. Where paraffin oil is used, the mixing chamber is heated by the exhaust gases from the engine.

E. *carburet* (v.), and the agent suffix *-or*.

**carcajou** (kar' kâ zhoo), *n.* A fur-bearing animal of the *Mustelidae* family. (F. *carcajou*.)

This cunning creature often turns the tables on the trapper who seeks its pelt, by waiting until some other animal has been caught in the trap and then devouring it. It is also known as the glutton, and the wolverine.

In appearance the carcajou is something like a badger with longer legs. It inhabits Northern Canada and Siberia, and is about three feet long. The scientific name is *Gulo luscus*.

F., probably of North American Indian origin.

**carcake** (kar' kâk), *n.* A sort of cake.

The eating of pancakes on Shrove Tuesday is customary in many places, but in parts of Scotland a small cake, baked perhaps with eggs, is eaten on that day. This is what is called the carcake, that is the cake of care or grief. On Shrove Tuesday it was the custom to grieve for one's sins and to confess them in readiness for Ash Wednesday and Lent.

**carcanet** (kar' kâ net), *n.* An article of personal adornment.

The carcanet was a kind of chain or circlet, either of gold or of gold set with jewels. Sometimes it took the form of a necklace or girdle; sometimes it was an ornament for the head.

The word is little used now, but is often found in poetry. In Lord Tennyson's "The Last Tournament," the prize for the winner of the tournament was a carcanet of ruby.

Dim. of F. *carcan*, O.F. *quercant* collar; cp. O.H.G. *queisca* throat.

**carcass** (kar' kâs), *n.* A dead body, especially the body of a sheep, ox, or pig dressed ready for cutting up into joints; a framework. Another spelling is *carcase*. (F. *carcasse*, *cadavre*.)

This word is not now used of the human body, dead or alive, except as a term of contempt. It can be applied to a thing that is in the last stages of decay, such as an old business concern that has not marched with the times. The framework of a building, or of a ship can be called a carcass.

M.E. *carcays*, A.F. *carcois*, *carcas*, L.L. *carcosium*; the Modern E. forms from Middle F. *carcasse*, dead body, from Ital. *carcassa* bomb-shell, frame, skeleton. Origin unknown.

**carcinology** (kar si nol' ô ji), *n.* The science dealing with crabs and other crustacea.

The **carcinologist** (kar si nol' ô jist, *n.*) studies many other creatures besides crabs, and since his science deals with crustacea of all kinds, it is also called crustaceology. A collection of crabs is a **carcinological** (kar sin ô loj' ik àl, *adj.*) collection.

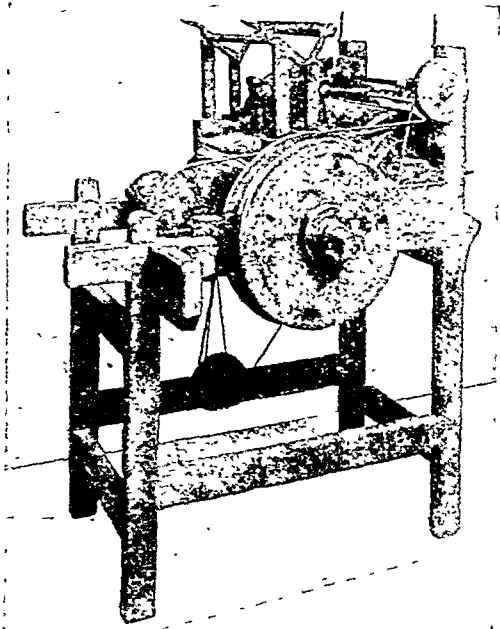
Gr. *karkinos* crab and E. suffix *-logy*, from Gr. *logos* discourse.

**card** [1] (kard), *n.* A wire brush or iron-toothed instrument for combing and putting in order the fibres of flax, wool, cotton, etc. *v.t.* To prepare fibres with a card. (F. *carde*; *carder*.)

A **carder** (kard' er, *n.*) is a person who cards wool, etc. Instead of a card the work may be done by a **carding-machine** (*n.*) or **carding-engine** (*n.*).

The invention of this machine was one of the things which has made Lancashire the centre of the cotton industry in England. **Carding** (kard' ing, *n.*) is the act of preparing fibres in this way for spinning.

F. *carde* teasel, Ital., Span. *cardo*, from L. *carduus* thistle.



Carding-engine.—Before the invention in 1775 of Arkwright's carding-engine, shown above, the combing and arranging of the fibres of wool, flax, and cotton was done by hand.

**card** [2] (kard), *n.* A piece of pasteboard for writing, drawing, or printing on; one of a number of small oblong pieces of pasteboard marked with pips and figures and used for playing games; the piece of pasteboard or other material on which the points are marked on a ship's compass. (F. *carte*.)

This word is used in a great many senses. For instance, it may mean a programme at a

race-meeting, or a list of events at a sports or similar meeting, or a ticket of admission.

Games with cards are of very ancient origin and were probably invented in the East. The earliest cards used in Great Britain were all painted by hand. The figures on the court-cards wear the costumes of the time of Henry VIII.

The earliest marks of the suits were hearts, bells, leaves, and acorns, on German cards. Then came swords, batons, caps, and money, on Italian cards. The marks now used appeared in the sixteenth century.

The game of cards has given many expressions to the language. We say a person has played his cards well when he has acted wisely and skilfully in some emergency. Anything that is likely to happen is said to be on the cards, and to throw up the cards is to acknowledge defeat.

A **card-party** (*n.*) is a number of people gathered together to play cards. A **card-sharper** (*n.*) is a person who swindles by means of card games or card tricks. People play cards on a **card-table** (*n.*). A **card-rack** (*n.*) is a rack in which visiting cards are placed, and a **card-case** (*n.*) is a case people carry to keep their visiting cards in.

**Cardboard** (*n.*) is white or coloured (usually brown) pasteboard used for making boxes and other articles. A **card-catalogue** (*n.*) or **card-index** (*n.*) is a catalogue or index in which each item is entered on a separate card, and a **card-filing cabinet** (*n.*) is a cabinet in which such cards are kept.

M.E. *carde*, altered from F. *carte* playing card, Ital. *carta* paper, L. *c(h)arta*, Gr. *khartē* papyrus leaf, paper, perhaps from Egyptian.

**cardamine** (*kar dām' i ni; 'kar dā mīn*), *n.* A genus of plants belonging to the Cruciferae. (F. *cardamine*.)

Of the five British species the most familiar is the cuckoo-flower or lady's-smock (*Cardamine pratensis*), with pale lilac flowers. The meadow-cress (*C. hirsuta*) is also quite common, and like its relative, the water-cress, is eaten as a salad.

Modern L., from Gr. *kardaminē*, from *kardamon* cress.

**cardamom** (*kar' dā mōm*), *n.* A spice, consisting of the capsules and seeds of certain plants of the natural order Zingiberaceae. (F. *cardamome*.)

The cardamoms belong to two genera, *Amomum* and *Elettaria*, grown in the East Indies and China. The capsules are thin and full of brown aromatic seeds, which are used for flavouring sauces, curries, cordials, and cakes, and also in medicine. The Malabar cardamom (*Elettaria cardamomum*) from Southern India is the only one used in British medicine.

L. *cardamōmum*, Gr. *kardamōmon*, from *kardamon* cress and *amōmon* an Indian spice.

**cardiac** (*kar' dī āk*), *adj.* Shaped like a heart; belonging to or relating to the heart; belonging to or relating to the upper

opening of the stomach; strengthening the action of the heart. *n.* A stimulant for the heart. The form **cardial** (*kar' di āl*, *adj.*) is rarely used. (F. *cardiaque*.)

A doctor may tell his patient that the cardiac nerves are affected, that is to say, the nerves of the heart, and may give his patient a cardiac to strengthen the heart.

Many people suffer from heartburn, a form of indigestion. This is called **cardialgy** (*kar di āl' jī, n.*), or **cardialgia** (*kar di āl' jī ā, n.*) by doctors, who say their patient has a **cardialgic** (*kar di āl' jīk*, *adj.*) attack.

If he suffers from inflammation of the heart he has **carditis** (*kar dī' tis, n.*), and the movements of his heart are detected by an instrument called a **cardiograph** (*kar' di ō graf, n.*). The act of using such an instrument or a description of the heart is called **cardiography** (*kar di ōg' rā fī, n.*). Doctors call study of the heart **cardiology** (*kar di ōl' ō jī, n.*).

Through F. and L. from Gr. *kardīakhos* belonging to the heart (*kardia*).

**cardigan** (*kar' dī gān*), *n.* A knitted woollen over-waistcoat, with or without sleeves. (F. *carmagnoles*.)

It was named after the seventh Earl of Cardigan, who led the famous Charge of the Light Brigade in the Crimean war (1854).

**cardinal** (*kar' di nāl*), *adj.* Chief; most important; of a deep scarlet, as the colour of a cardinal's robe and hat; relating to the hinge of a bivalve. *n.* A dignitary of the Roman Catholic Church; a short, scarlet cloak worn by women. (F. *cardinal*.)



Cardinal.—Pope Pius XI when he was Cardinal Ratti.

Anything on which something hinges or depends may be described as cardinal. Thus the word is used in the sense of chief or most important, as when we speak of a cardinal argument or a cardinal duty. Though the word is usually employed to describe abstract things a scientist will refer to that part of a bivalve shell upon which the hinges occur as the cardinal edge.

The **cardinal numbers** (*n.pl.*) are one, two, three, etc., as distinct from first, second, third,

etc., and the **cardinal points** (*n.pl.*) are the four points of the compass, namely, north, south, east, and west. The four chief winds which blow from these points are known as the **cardinal winds** (*n.pl.*), and in astrology, the **cardinal signs** (*n.pl.*) are Aries, Libra, Cancer, and Capricorn.

Prudence, Temperance, Justice, and Fortitude are the cardinal virtues (*n.pl.*), because they are the principal ones, on which all the others are said to hinge. Faith, Hope, and Charity are sometimes called the cardinal virtues of Theology. A subject of vital importance may be described as **cardinally** (*kar' di nāl li, adv.*) important.

In early times, each of the principal churches of Rome was called a cardinal church (*n.*), and later on the priests in charge of these churches became the Pope's councillors and received the title of cardinals. There are now seventy of these dignitaries, and each one is either a cardinal bishop (*n.*), a cardinal priest (*n.*), or a cardinal deacon (*n.*), according to his rank in the Sacred College. Their most important duty is, when necessary, to elect a new pope, who need not himself be a cardinal.

The office of a cardinal is a cardinalate (*kar' di nāl āt, n.*) or a cardinalship (*kar' di nāl ship, n.*). A woman's short cloak, once very fashionable, was known as a cardinal because it was usually made from a scarlet cloth, the colour of a cardinal's robe.

*F.* from *L. cardinalis* belonging to a hinge, on which something hinges or depends, principal, from *cardo* (acc. *cardin-em*) hinge, adj. suffix *-al*.

**cardinal-bird** (*kar' di nāl bērd*), *n.* A song-bird of Central and North America. (*F. cardinal.*)

This bird is so-named because its plumage is as rich a scarlet as is the cassock of a cardinal. It is common in Florida and northwards through the U.S.A. near the Atlantic. It is sometimes called the Virginian grosbeak or Virginian nightingale. The scientific name is *Cardinalis virginianus*.

*E. cardinal and bird.*

**cardinal-flower** (*kar' di nāl flou ēr*), *n.* The scarlet lobelia. (*F. cardinalis.*)

This plant with its large, brilliant, red flowers is a native of North America, though it is often seen in British gardens. The scientific name is *Lobelia cardinalis*.

*E. cardinal and flower.*

**cardioid** (*kar' di oid*), *n.* A heart-shaped curve.

In mathematics, a cardioid curve is one that would be described by a point on the circumference of a circle rolling round the circumference of another circle of the same size.

*Gr. kardioidēs* heart-shaped, from *kardia* heart and *eidos* form.

**cardoon** (*kār doon'*), *n.* A plant related to the artichoke. (*F. cardon.*)

The cardoon, a native of Mediterranean countries, is grown for the sake of its thick, fleshy stalks and leaves, which, after being

made tender by blanching, are eaten as a vegetable, especially in Spain and France.

*F. cardon*, Ital. *cardone* or Span. *cardon*, augmentative of Ital., Span. *cardo*, *L. carduus* thistle.

**care** (*kār*), *n.* Anxiety; concern; worry; the cause of worry; caution; watchfulness; protection. *v.i.* To be inclined; to be anxious; to have regard. (*F. souci, soin, attention; se soucier.*)

It has been said that care, or worry, will kill a man, but not work. We may warn a friend about to cross a busy street to take



Care.—The thoughtful care of the British policeman is admired throughout the world. Here is a policeman conducting a party of school children across a busy street.

care, meaning that he is to use caution. The care of a building at night is left to a night-watchman. A mother may care for, or look after, her children because she does not care for, or have a liking for, a certain nursemaid. The question, "Would you care to do this?" asks us whether we are willing to do it, or whether we wish to do it.

To be care-crazed (*adj.*) is to be distracted by anxiety or worry. A care-laden (*adj.*) or care-worn (*adj.*) man is a man who has a heavy load of cares to bear, or who is tired and worn in mind and body by his cares. Such a man's brow would probably be care-lined (*adj.*), that is, furrowed by the continual thought of his worries. The service of a caretaker (*n.*), a person who takes care of anything, is often employed for the protection of a house while the owner is absent, and is called care-taking (*n.*).

*A.-S. caru*, common Teut.; cp. Goth. *kara*, O.H.G. *chara* grief, G. *kar-freitag* Good Friday. Not related to *L. cura* care. *Syn.*: Anxiety, caution, charge, forethought, wariness. *Ant.*: Carelessness, disregard, indifference, oversight.

**careen** (*kā rēn'*), *v.t.* To turn a ship over on one side. *v.i.* To heel over because of the pressure of the sails, or of the cargo shifting. (*F. caréner; donner à la bande.*)

Nowadays, when the bottom of a big ship has to be cleaned or repaired, she is either taken into a dry-dock or she is lifted bodily out of the water by a floating-dock. In either case, the whole of her underwater surface is exposed so that the work may be

carried out with comparative ease. When and where such devices were not available, a ship needing repair used to be loaded heavily on one side, so that when the tide fell it would lie over at a steep angle, thus enabling the workmen to examine the part usually below water.

On August 29th, 1782, the warship "Royal George," was being careened in Portsmouth harbour in order to have a leak stopped, when she suddenly turned over and sank. In his poem, "The Loss of the Royal George," William Cowper tells how she went down with Rear-admiral Kempenfelt and "twice four hundred men." The Admiralty proclaimed that the disaster was caused by a sudden breeze which caused her to careen, or heel over, on her own account, but the opinion in the navy was that the moving of the weights caused a hole to be knocked through her rotten timbers. **Careenage** (kā rē 'nāj; *n.*) is the act of careening a ship, or the charge made for careening and cleaning her.

*F. carène, L. carina keel; cp. F. carène, Ital. carenare, Span. carenar to careen*

**career** (kā rēr'), *n.* A swift running; the history, progress, or conduct of a person or nation; a profession or occupation. *v.i.* To move rapidly; to gallop at full speed. (*F. carrière; s'élançer.*)

When a yacht is sailing rapidly along it is said to be in full career. America started on her career of independence in 1776. After a boy leaves school his parents must decide on an occupation or career for him. In falconry the ordinary flight of a hawk, about one hundred and twenty yards, is called a career. We may career, or run rapidly down a street, to catch a friend, or a mounted soldier may career, or gallop, along a road with an important message.

*F. carrière race-course, L.L. carrūna (via) road for cars, properly fem. adj. from L. carus car, of Celtic origin. SYN.: Conduct, course, history, passage, progress.*

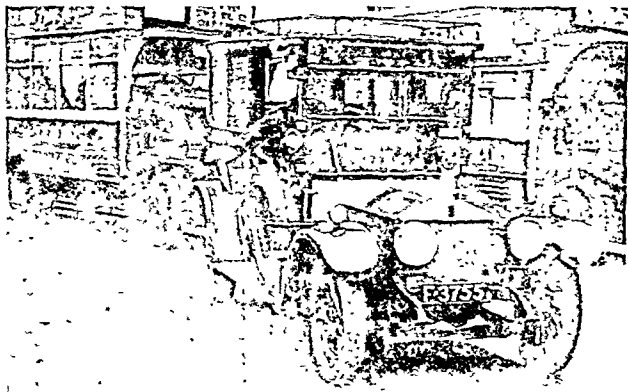
**careful** (kār' fūl), *adj.* Watchful; cautious; exact; thrifty. (*F. soigneux, attentif.*)

A careful man will walk slowly along a dark road. A clerk may be asked to make a careful, or exact, copy of a document, and a careful, or thrifty, boy will not spend all his pocket-money. To go carefully (kār' fūl li, *adv.*) is to watch where one is going, or to be cautious in what one does, and to carry out a task carefully is to do it with carefulness (kār' fūl nes, *n.*) or exactness.

*A.-S. carful, E. care (n.) and full. SYN.: Cautious, exact, heedful, vigilant, watchful. ANT.: Careless, heedless, negligent, reckless, thoughtless, wasteful.*

**careless** (kār' lès), *adj.* Free from care or worry; unconcerned; thoughtless; slovenly; inaccurate. (*F. insouciant, non-chalant.*)

A person's life may be careless, that is, free from worry or cares, but a careless person is one who is thoughtless or slovenly. A boy who dresses carelessly (kār' lès li, *adv.*) takes



**Careful.**—A careful motorist signalling to traffic following him that he is about to turn to the right. Such care if generally exercised would prevent many accidents.

little care over the fit or appearance of clothes, and carelessness (kār' lès nes, *n.*) is the quality or state of being careless.

*A.-S. carlēas, E. care and suffix -less. SYN.: Heedless, negligent, reckless, thoughtless, unconcerned, wasteful. ANT.: Cautious, exact, heedful, vigilant, watchful.*

**caress** (kā res'), *n.* An act of affection, an embrace; a kiss. *v.t.* To treat with affection; to pet; to flatter. (*F. caresser; caresser.*)

A caress may be an action or merely words spoken in an endearing manner. A man may caress his dog, and the animal will wag his tail to show delight at the caressing (kā res' ing, *adj.*) touch of its master's hand. All animals realize when they are being spoken to caressingly (kā res' ing li, *adv.*).

*F. carresse, Ital. carezza from an assumed L.L. carita abstract n. from L. carus dear. SYN.: v. Court, embrace, flatter, fondle, kiss. ANT.: v. Annoy, persecute, provoke, tease, vex.*

**caret** (kār' èt), *n.* A mark (Λ) used by writers and correctors of proofs to show that something has been left out. (*F. renvoi.*)

The word is Latin for "is wanting." The mark is made between the two words where the matter omitted has to be inserted. The words to be added are written over the caret, between the lines, or in the margin.

*L. carere to be without, to lack.*

**carex** (kār' eks), *n.* A genus of grass-like plants belonging to the Sedge family. *pl. Carices* (kār' i sēz). (*F. carex.*)

There are sixty species of carex to be found in the British Isles. Though carices are valueless as fodder, they are useful in other ways. The long, underground stems of the

sand carex (*Carex arenaria*) bind together the sand of the sea-shore and prevent it from drifting inland, and from these stems, and the rootstocks of several other carices, German sarsaparilla is made.

*L. carex* a kind of rush.

**cargo** (kar' gō), *n.* The goods loaded into and conveyed by a ship. (*F. cargaison.*)

When a merchant ship is in dock it is loaded with all kinds of goods which, collectively, are called its cargo. In a broad sense, cargo may denote human beings, as a cargo of emigrants, but legally the term is only applied to goods.

Span. *cargo*, from *cargar* to load, *L.L. carricare* to load a car, from *carrus* a car. See *car*, *carry*, *charge*. *SYN.*: Consignment, freight, goods, lading, merchandise.

**Carib** (kär' ib), *n.* A member of a race that once lived in the West Indies, but is now found in Central and South America. (*F. Caraïbe.*)

When the Spaniards discovered the New World in 1492 the Caribs, or "valiant men," inhabited the southern islands of the West Indies and the coasts of the Caribbean Sea. They were a fierce, warlike race, and were cannibals, a word which is derived from their name. In 1796, after a long war with the British, the Caribs of the West Indies were transported to an island off the coast of Honduras.

Span. *Caribe*, in the native Haitian, meaning brave.

**caribou** (kär i boo'), *n.* The North American reindeer. Another spelling is *cariboo*. (*F. caribou.*)

The caribous are of the same species as the European reindeer. The Barren Ground caribou, a



Carib.—A Carib woman of British Honduras.

small animal with long, curved antlers, roams the Arctic wastes of North America, while the Woodland caribou, a heavier animal with short, branching horns, inhabits the forest-lands of Canada. Unlike the reindeer, the caribou has never been domesticated.

Canadian *F.*, probably a native word.

**caricature** (kär' i kã tür), *n.* An exaggerated sketch or description. *v.t.* To draw such a sketch; to burlesque. (*F. caricature; caricaturer.*)

The object of a caricature is to make the person or thing so treated appear ridiculous or absurd. Important public men, especially ministers of the government, are often

caricatured in the newspapers by clever artists. A peculiar habit, feature, or dress is exaggerated by the caricaturist (kär i kã tür' ist, *n.*), but although the people sketched can be recognized, these exaggerated points give a ridiculous effect to the whole work. Persons whose appearance or habits are easily caricatured are said to have caricaturable (kär i kã tür' äbl, *adj.*) features or



Caricature.—A caricature of Napoleon I. as Gulliver with his little boat in the cistern, being watched by George III. It was published at the time of Napoleon's threatened invasion of England at the beginning of the nineteenth century.

habits, and any sketch like a caricature may be described as caricatural (kär i kã tür' äł, *adj.*) work.

Ital. *caricatura*, properly a loading, hence overloading, exaggeration, verbal *n.* from *carricare*, *L.L. carricare* to load a car, *L. carrus*. See *car*. *SYN.*: *n.* Burlesque, parody, travesty. *v.* Distort, exaggerate. *ANT.*: *n.* Likeness, portrait.

**caries** (kär' i ēz), *n.* Decay of the bones, teeth, or vegetable matter. (*F. carie.*)

Caries is a disease of the teeth or bones which causes the strong parts to break away, and anyone suffering from this disease is in a carious (kär' i ūs, *adj.*) condition. In botany the name is given to the disease which attacks the cells and vessels of a plant.

*L. caries* rottenness.

**carillon** (kã ril' yón; kã ri' yón), *n.* A set of bells upon which tunes can be played; the melody played on such bells; an instrument to imitate such bells. (*F. carillon.*)

Among the best-known carillons are those of Bruges and Malines in Belgium, Cattistock in Dorset, Loughborough in Leicestershire, Bournville in Warwickshire, Manchester Town Hall, and Freshwater in the Isle of Wight. The bells may be rung mechanically or played by a carillonneur (kã rē yon ner', *n.*) who strikes the levers of the "keyboard" with his fists, and the pedals with his feet as an organist does. The most famous makers of carillons on the continent were Frans and Pieter Hemony, who lived in the sixteenth century, and established themselves

at Zutphen, in the Netherlands. Of late years British bell-founders have given much attention to carillons, which are regarded with increasing favour as a means of adding to the attractions of a building and affording enjoyment to many people.

F., from L.L. *quadrilio* (acc. -*ōn-em*) set of four (bells), from L. *quatuor* four.

**carina** (kā rī' nā), *n.* A keel or ridge. *pl.* **Carinae** (kā rī' nē). (F. *carène*.)

Various structures in plants and animals are called *carinae* because they resemble the keel of a boat. Thus, the breast-bone of a bird, the glumes or husks of many grasses, and the fruitlets of some umbels, are *carinate* (kā' rī nāt, *adj.*) or *carinated* (kā' rī nāt ēd, *adj.*), while the two lower petals of pea-flowers form a *carina*. Some fishes have a long thin *cariniform* (kā rī' nī form, *adj.*) fin on their bellies, while on each side of the *carina* of some cirripeds or shell-fish of a low kind there is a *carino-lateral* (kā rī' nō lāt' er āl, *adj.*) chamber.

L. *carina* keel.

**cariole** (kā' rī ōl). This is another spelling of *carriole*. See *carriole*.

**carking** (kā' rī ōl), *adj.* Worrying. (F. *harassant*.)

Cares are carking when they are a burden on the mind and cause anxiety.

Pres. p. of the rare or archaic v. *carh* to burden, vex. M.E. *carhen*, O. Northern F. *carkier*, L.L. *carcāre* shortened from *caricāre* to load (a car), from L. *carus* a car. Carry and charge (v.) are doublets. Syn. . Distressing, harassing, vexatious.

**carl** (kā' rī), *n.* A Scottish countryman; a man of low birth; a strong fellow. Another spelling is *carle*. (F. *rushe*, *garçon*.)

In Scotland a country lad is called a callant, but when he grows older, and becomes a strong countryman, or churl, he may be called a carl, or carle. The word is often found in old songs and ballads, when it usually denotes a man of low birth, but nowadays the term, mostly used in contempt, has a meaning similar to knave.

The feminine form of the word, *carline* (kā' rī līn, *n.*), denotes an old woman or a witch.

O. Norse *karl* man; common Teut.; cp. E. *churl*, G. *kerl*, also the name *Charles*, G. *Karl*.

**carline** (kā' rī līn), *n.* A genus of thistle-like plants. (F. *carline*.)

The carlines differ from true thistles in the scales, which surround the flower-head, for these are very dry and sometimes coloured. The scales of the common carline thistle (*Carlina vulgaris*) are so sensitive to moisture that the flower-heads are used to forecast the weather. This plant is said to have got its name from Charlemagne, to

whom an angel pointed it out as a cure for the disease which was raging in his army.

Another species, *C. acaulis*, was formerly used in charms, and its bark, which contains a bitter, strongly-scented oil, was employed in medicine.

Said to be from L.L. *Carolina* fem. *adj.* 'belonging to Charles' (Charlemagne), L.L. *Carolus*, G. *Karl*.

**Carlism** (kā' rī līzm), *n.* Support of the claims of Don Carlos, brother of Ferdinand VII, King of Spain, and of those of his heirs. (F. *Carlisme*.)

When Ferdinand died in 1833, he was succeeded by his daughter Christina. Don Carlos (1788-1855)

claimed the throne under a law passed by his father, Philip V. Many people, calling themselves Carlists (kā' rī līst, *n.pl.*), supported him, and, when he died, his successors. A Carlist party still exists.

Span. *Carlismo*, from *Carlos*, L.L. *Carolus* Charles, and suffix *-ism* denoting principles

**carlock** (kā' rī lōk), *n.* A kind of isinglass, obtained from the sturgeon. (F. *colle de poisson*.)

Sturgeon is a fish which is plentiful, especially in the rivers of Russia, and from its air-bladder a kind of gluey substance called isinglass, or carlock, is obtained. It is used for clarifying wine, and as a cement or fish-glue, and for other purposes such as preserving eggs. Isinglass is also obtained from various other fishes.

Rus. *karluk* isinglass

**Carlovingian** (kā' rī lō vīn' jī ān). This is another form of Carolingian. See *Carolingian*.

**carmagnole** (kā' rī mā nyōl'), *n.* A revolutionary song and dance very popular in Paris in 1793, a costume consisting of a coat with several rows of buttons, a three-coloured waistcoat, and a red cap, much worn at the same period; a name for a soldier in the French revolutionary army, the



Carillon.—A carillonneur giving a recital on a carillon of fifty-three bells. The levers of the "keyboard" are struck with the fists, and the pedals are worked with the feet.

high-down style of the writers of the first French revolution. (F. *carmagnole*.)

Each verse of the song ended with words which may be rendered in English as :

Let us dance the *carmagnole* ; hurrah !  
for the cannon's roar !

The costume was a Piedmontese peasant dress introduced from Carmagnola, in North Italy.

**Carmelite** (kar me lit), *n.* A member of a society of begging friars ; a fine woollen material, usually grey.  
*adj.* Belonging or relating to the Carmelite order. (F. *carmité*, *de carmité*.)

In the twelfth century Berthold, a poor religious man and a few of his friends built a humble dwelling and a small chapel on Mount Carmel, in the Holy Land. Here they led a lonely and very hard life of prayer and meditation, and, gradually from this small chapel followers went forth over Europe begging their food as they went, and establishing chapels and rest houses for later members of their order. The order exists to this day.

Carmelite friars are sometimes known as White Friars, because they wear a brown habit with a white cloak. There is a Carmelite Street in London.

F. *Carmélite*, L. *Carmelitæ* an inhabitant of Mount Carmel

**carmine** (kar' min ; kar' min), *n.* A red or crimson pigment. *adj.* Of this colour. (F. *carmin*.)

Carminé is a beautiful crimson pigment or colouring matter obtained from the cochineal insect. It may be obtained in a number of shades from light red to deep crimson, the shade depending upon the purity. The natural product, however is gradually being displaced by dyes prepared by the chemist.

Spm. *carmin*, shortened from *carminem* (*adj.* from *carmin* (*n.*), Arabic *qirmiz*, crimson (which see).

**carnage** (kar' nap), *n.* Slaughter, especially of men. (F. *carnage*.)

Fighting or rioting which is accompanied by great bloodshed and the loss of a large number of lives is known as carnage.

F. from L. *carnis*, on tribute of the blood. L. *carnis*, *carnis*, flesh and blood. L. *carnis*, *carnis*, the flesh and blood.

nouns. SYN. : Bloodshed, butchery, massacre, slaughter.

**carnal** (kar' nāl), *adj.* Fleshly ; worldly ; material as opposed to spiritual. (F. *charnel*.)

Carnal is often used to indicate too great a fondness for worldly things ; for example, carnal-minded (*adj.*) means worldly-minded. One who indulges in comfort and pleasure to excess is called a carnalist (kar' nāl ist, *n.*), and is said to like carnalism (kar' nāl izm, *n.*), and to live in a state of carnality (kar nāl'

iti, *n.*) or carnal-mindedness (*n.*). To make a spiritual thing worldly is to carnalize (kar' nāl iz, *v.*) it.

An executioner was sometimes called a carnifex (kar' ni fiks, *n.*) because by executing him he made a living man to be dead flesh. The rare word carnify (kar' ni ti, *v.*) is used by doctors when bone or tissue is turned into a fleshy substance, and they call the process carnification (kar ni ti kā' shūn, *n.*). Anything resembling flesh is described as carneous (kar' ne ūs, *adj.*) or carnosé (kār nōs', *adj.*).

L. *carnālis* (*adj.*), from *carnō* (acc. *carn-em*) flesh. SYN. : Earthly, fleshly, sensual, temporal. ANT. : Exalted, pure, refined, spiritual, temperate.

**carnation** [1] (kār nā' shūn), *n.* A pale, rosy pink. *adj.* Of this colour. (F. *carnation*, *incarnat*.)

Carnation really means the colour of flesh but it is used for colours varying from a light pink to deep crimson. In painting, the word means that part of the picture which represents flesh.

F. from L. *carnālis* (acc. *carn-em*) fleshiness, from *carnō* (acc. *carn-em*) flesh and suffix *-ation* forming abstract *n.*

**carnation** [2] (kār nā' shūn), *n.* A cultivated variety of the wild pink. (F. *rosette groseille*.)

The wild pink (*Dianthus Caryophyllus*) of Southern Europe bears flowers lilac-purple in colour. From them by long and careful cultivation have been produced the carnations of our gardens, with their delicious fragrance and beautiful colours.

Likely from *carnation* [1] on account of its colour, or a corruption of *carnation*, an early name of the flower perhaps from its former L. name *caryophyllus* used for wreaths (L. *caryos*, seed).

**cornelian** (kār nē' li an), *n.* This is the spelling of cornelian. See cornelian.



Carnation. The carnation in the centre is named Lady de Ramsey, and the one on the left is called G. H. Cave.